

<b>Table of Contents</b>	
<b>Introduction</b>	<b>2</b>
<b>Instrument Cluster</b>	<b>7</b>
<b>Driving</b>	<b>11</b>
<b>Roadside Emergencies</b>	<b>23</b>
<b>Cleaning</b>	<b>29</b>
<b>Maintenance and Specifications</b>	<b>32</b>
<b>Scheduled Maintenance: General Information</b>	<b>59</b>
<b>Scheduled Maintenance: E-Series</b>	<b>66</b>
<b>Scheduled Maintenance: F-Super Duty</b>	<b>83</b>
<b>Scheduled Maintenance: Special Information</b>	<b>101</b>
Motorcraft Premium Gold Coolant change record	102

All rights reserved. Reproduction by any means, electronic or mechanical including photocopying, recording or by any information storage and retrieval system or translation in whole or part is not permitted without written authorization from Ford Motor Company. Ford may change the contents without notice and without incurring obligation.

Copyright © 2008 Ford Motor Company

## Introduction

### CALIFORNIA Proposition 65 Warning



**WARNING:** Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and certain vehicle components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.

Your new diesel engine will feel, drive and function somewhat differently than a gasoline engine. Therefore it is very important that you read and thoroughly familiarize yourself and others operating the vehicle with this guide. **A special procedure for turning off the diesel engine is in the *Driving* chapter. It is important to read and understand this material in order to maintain the best service life for your engine.**

This guide will acquaint you with the Power Stroke diesel engine. It provides recommendations on engine care and operating procedures. For complete vehicle information, also refer to the *Owner's Guide* included with the vehicle. It also describes equipment and gives specifications for equipment that was in effect when this guide was approved for printing, and should be considered a permanent part of the vehicle.

**Some aftermarket products may cause severe engine/transmission and/or exhaust system damage; refer to the *What is not covered* section in *The new vehicle limited warranty for your vehicle* chapter of your vehicle's *Warranty Guide* for more information. Your vehicle's Powertrain Control Systems can detect and store information about vehicle modifications that increase horsepower and torque output such as whether or not performance-enhancing powertrain components commonly referred to as "performance chips" have been used. This information cannot be erased and will stay in the system's memory even if the modification is removed. The Information can be retrieved by Ford Motor Company, Ford of Canada, and service and repair facilities when servicing your vehicle. This information may be used to determine if repairs will be covered by warranty.**

Ford may discontinue models or change specifications without any notice and without incurring obligations.

## Introduction

### Important notice

Ford vehicles are suitable for producing ambulances only if equipped with the Ford ambulance preparation package. In addition, Ford urges ambulance manufacturers to follow the recommendation of the *Ford Incomplete Vehicle Manual*, *Ford Truck Body Builder's Layout Book* (and pertinent supplements) and the *Qualified Vehicle Modifiers Guidelines*. Using a Ford vehicle without the Ford ambulance preparation package to produce an ambulance voids the Ford warranty and could result in elevated underbody temperatures, fuel overpressurization and the risk of fuel expulsion and fires. To determine whether the vehicle is equipped with the Ford ambulance preparation package, inspect the information plate on the driver's side door pillar. Contact the manufacturer of your vehicle to determine whether the ambulance manufacturer's followed Ford's recommendations.



### WARNINGS

Throughout this guide, you will find warnings identified by the symbol . Warnings remind you to be especially careful to reduce the risk of personal injury.

### NEW VEHICLE BREAK-IN

Your vehicle does not need an extensive break-in. Try not to drive continuously at the same speed for the first 1,000 miles (1,600 km) of new vehicle operation. Vary your speed to allow parts to adjust themselves to other parts.

Drive your new vehicle at least 500 miles (800 km) before towing a trailer. Make sure you use the specified engine oil by checking the engine oil specification chart under *Engine oil* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

Do not add friction modifier compounds or special break-in oils during the first few thousand miles (kilometers) of operation, since these additives may prevent piston ring seating. See *Engine oil* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter of this supplement for more information on oil usage.

### DIESEL ENGINE INFORMATION

The Diesel engine fuel system consists of:

- **On E-Series vehicles (6.0L engine)**, a Diesel Fuel Conditioner Module (DFCM) mounted on the driver-side frame rail next to the transmission

## Introduction

- **On F-Super Duty vehicles (6.4L engine)**, a frame-mounted Horizontal Fuel Conditioner Module (HFCM)
- an engine-mounted secondary fuel filter
- a unit injector for each cylinder

The FCM/HFCM acts as a primary fuel filter/water separator which removes both water and impurities from the fuel. The engine mounted filter filters finer impurities from the diesel fuel. The engine-mounted fuel filter and the FCM/HFCM filter should be changed at the recommended service interval. Refer to the *scheduled maintenance information* in this supplement for more information.

### F-Super Duty



### E-Series



The FCM/HFCM should be drained at regular intervals or when the WATER IN FUEL light illuminates in the instrument cluster.

The fuel injectors are located in the center of the combustion chambers in the cylinder head between the rocker arm assemblies. The glow plug system and fuel injection system are controlled through the Powertrain Control Module (PCM) and Fuel Injection Control Module (FICM) (6.0L engine only).

Fuel is drawn from the fuel tank by a frame-mounted electric fuel pump. The fuel pump provides pressurized fuel to the engine and is electronically controlled by the fuel pump PCM relay. The fuel pump contains a pressure relief valve for overpressure protection in the event of restricted flow.

### Engine protection mode

Ford diesel engines are equipped with engine protection and emission control systems. These systems monitor critical temperatures and pressures, and modify engine operation accordingly. These features are intended to modify engine performance characteristics. If these modified engine performance characteristics persist for an extended period or the service engine soon () or powertrain malfunction/reduced power/electronic throttle control light () is illuminated, seek service from your authorized dealer.

## Introduction

### Lubrication system

Extended oil change intervals can negatively affect engine performance, fuel economy and engine life. Refer to the engine oil specification chart located under *Engine oil specifications* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter of this supplement.

**On E-Series vehicles (6.0L engine)**, it is important to change the engine oil at the recommended service intervals because oil viscosity is important in maintaining the oil pressure required to actuate the fuel injectors.

**On F-Super Duty vehicles (6.4L engine)**, it is important to change the engine oil at the recommended service intervals to maintain oil viscosity with the addition of the diesel particulate filter (DPF).

### Fast start glow plug system

The glow plug system consists of:

- eight glow plugs
- the glow plug control module (GPCM)
- engine oil temperature (EOT) sensor
- barometric pressure (BARO) sensor

The glow plug system is electronically controlled by the PCM. The GPCM energizes the glow plugs immediately after the ignition is placed in the ON position, then determines how long the glow plugs will be on according to the EOT and BARO sensors. The required time for the glow plugs to be energized decreases as the engine oil temperature and barometric pressure increase.



### Engine cooling system

The engine cooling system contains an engine oil cooler and an Exhaust Gas Recirculation (EGR) cooler. The oil cooler's function is to regulate engine oil temperature. The EGR cooler function is to cool exhaust gases before they are circulated back through the engine to reduce emissions. Vehicles with diesel engines typically are used to carry heavy loads and accumulate mileage rapidly. These two factors may cause the additives in the coolant to "wear out" in a shorter time. Refer to the Special Operating Conditions section for more information about coolant additives and coolant change intervals. Operating the engine with insufficient coolant and/or coolant additive can cause severe engine damage.

## Introduction

### **Fuel and turbocharger cooling system (F-Super Duty only)**

The fuel and turbocharger cooling system contains a cooler which is mounted on the turbo interstage U-tube on the left side of the engine. The cooler's function is to regulate engine fuel temperature and cool the electronics that support the turbocharger. You may hear the auxiliary coolant pump running up to 10 minutes after the ignition is turned off in hot weather or if you are towing heavy loads. This is to control the temperature of the turbocharger.

### **Engine governed speed**

The engine governor is controlled by the PCM. The PCM controls fuel input to limit maximum engine speed. It will not, however, prevent engine overspeeding resulting from downshifting at high vehicle speed or by descending steep grades at too high a vehicle speed for the selected transmission gear.

**If your vehicle is equipped with a manual transmission,** refer to *Manual transmission shift speeds* in the *Driving* chapter of your *Owner's Guide* for maximum vehicle shift speeds in various gears. Do not exceed 4,000 rpm. Maximum engine governed speed is 3,700 rpm. Excessive rpm can only be achieved by manually downshifting at too high of a vehicle speed.

**Operating the engine beyond the governed speed can cause severe engine damage.**

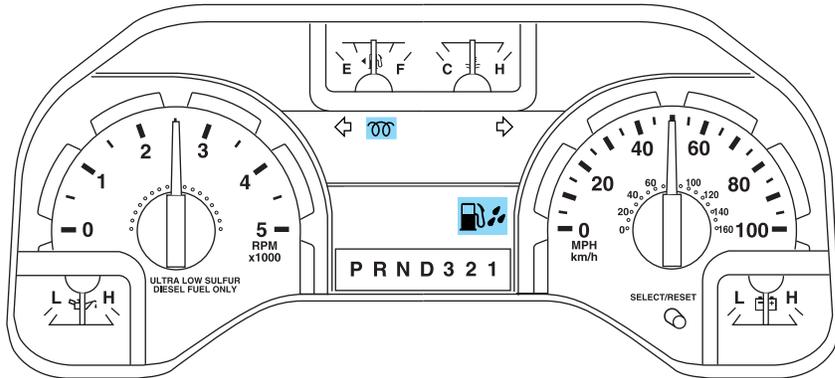
### **Speed control (F-Super Duty)**

If vehicle speed goes outside a predetermined range from the set speed, the RES (Resume) function will not reset vehicle speed. Vehicle speed will need to be reset with the SET +/- button after reaching desired speed using accelerator pedal.

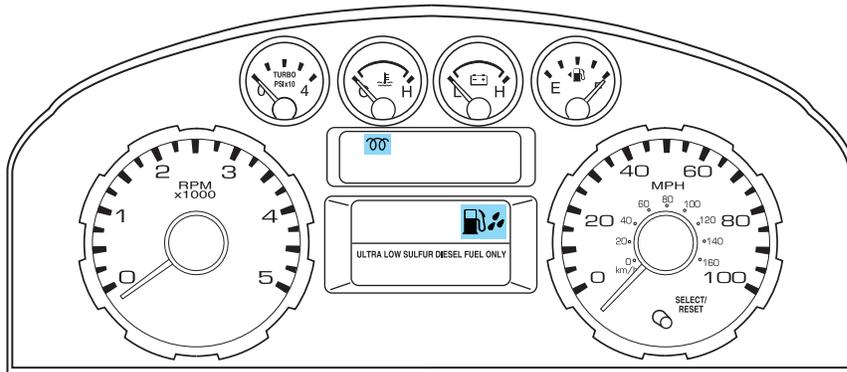
# Instrument Cluster

## WARNING LIGHTS

### E-Series

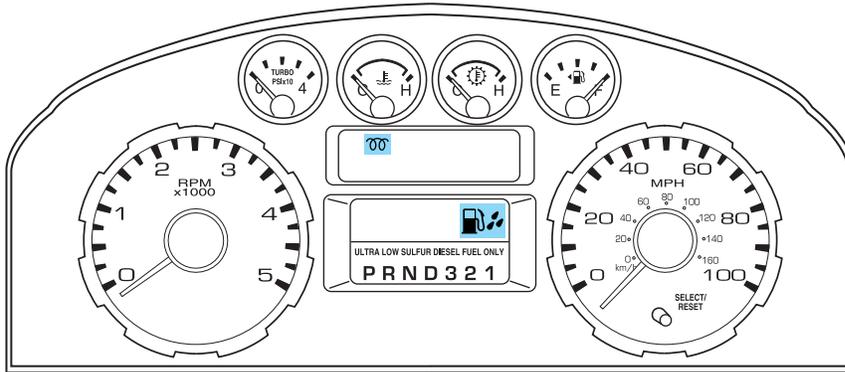


### F-Super Duty w/manual transmission

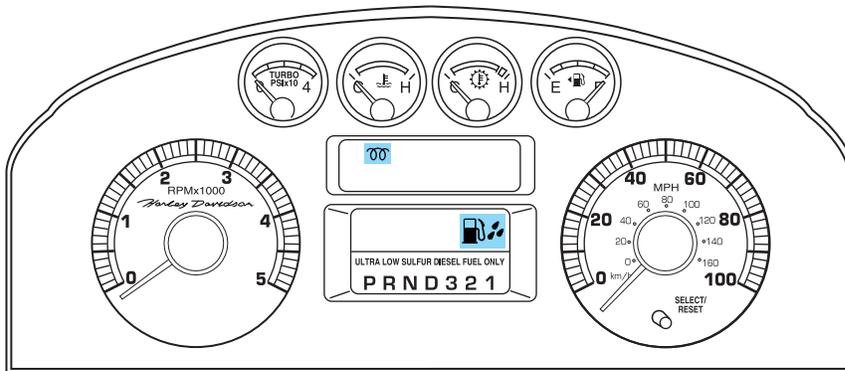


## Instrument Cluster

### F-Super Duty w/automatic transmission



### Harley-Davidson



**Note:** Some warning lights are reconfigurable telltale (RTT) indicator lights and will illuminate in the message center display and function the same as the warning light.

## Instrument Cluster

### Glow plug pre-heat indicator:



With the key in the on position, the  light will illuminate if glow plug heat is necessary as a starting aid. Wait until the light goes off before starting. Refer to *Cold weather starting* in the *Driving* chapter of this supplement. After the engine starts, the light should turn on. The light should always illuminate at least momentarily when the engine is cold and the ignition is turned to on. If it does not illuminate, the glow plug system should be checked and repaired promptly to avoid difficulty in cold starting.

### Water in fuel:

#### E-Series



#### F-Super Duty



During refueling, it is possible for water-contaminated diesel fuel to be pumped into your tank. Your vehicle's fuel system is equipped with a fuel filter/water separator to remove water from the fuel. The WATER IN FUEL light will illuminate when the ignition is turned to start (as part of the light function check) and when the FCM/HFCM has a significant quantity of water in it.

If the light illuminates when the engine is running, stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible, shut off the engine, then drain the FCM/HFCM. Refer to *Draining the FCM/HFCM and changing the fuel filters* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter of this supplement for the drain procedure. Allowing water to stay in the system could result in extensive damage to, or failure of, the fuel injection system.

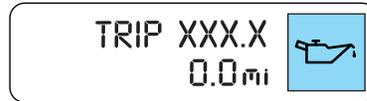


**WARNING:** Do not drain the water separator while the engine is running. Fuel may ignite if the separator is drained while the engine is running or the vehicle is moving.

## Instrument Cluster

### Engine oil pressure:

Illuminates when the oil pressure falls below the normal range. Refer to *Engine oil* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter for more information.



### Engine air filter (F-Super Duty only):

The engine air filter warning



message comes on in the message center when the air filter restriction gauge reaches the CHANGE FILTER MARK due to blockage in the air intake system.

The air filter condition should be verified by inspecting the underhood restriction gauge; the message is only a secondary indicator. Always use the underhood restriction gauge to determine when the air filter element needs to be changed.

The vehicle may be driven with the engine air filter message on or when the underhood air filter restriction gauge has moved to the CHANGE FILTER mark for up to 200 miles (320 km) without damaging the engine. However, the air filter element must be replaced at the earliest opportunity. Refer to *Air filter restriction gauge and air filter replacement* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter for more information.

## GAUGES

### Engine boost gauge (F-Super Duty only):

Indicates the amount of pressure in the engine. Driving with your pointer continuously at the high end of the scale may damage the engine.



## Driving

### STARTING THE ENGINE

Read all starting instructions carefully before you start your vehicle.

For temperatures below 32°F (0°C), the use of the correct grade engine oil is essential for proper operation. Refer to *Engine oil specifications* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter for more information.

Your vehicle may be equipped with a cold weather starting strategy that prevents severe engine damage by assisting in engine lubrication warm-up. In extremely cold ambient temperatures, this strategy activates and prevents the accelerator pedal from being used for 30 seconds after starting the vehicle. By not allowing the accelerator pedal to be used, the engine oil is allowed to properly lubricate the bearings preventing engine damage due to lack of proper lubrication. After the 30 second warm-up period, the accelerator pedal will be operational again as long as the pedal is not being pressed when the 30 second time limit expires. When starting the engine in extremely cold temperatures (-15°F [-26°C]), it is recommended to allow the engine to idle for several minutes before driving the vehicle.

**If your vehicle is equipped with a manual transmission,** make sure the parking brake is fully set before you turn the key. Depress the clutch pedal and place the gearshift in the neutral position. The clutch must be fully depressed in order to operate the starter. Do not press the accelerator during starting.

**If your vehicle is equipped with an automatic transmission,** ensure the gearshift lever is in P (Park) and the parking brake is fully set before you turn the key. Do not press the accelerator during starting.

### Engine-driven cooling fan (fan clutch)

Your vehicle is equipped with an engine driven cooling fan drive (also called a fan clutch). This fan drive changes the fan speed to match the vehicle's changing cooling air flow requirements. Fan speed, fan noise level and fuel consumption all will increase based on the driving conditions that include trailer towing, hill climbing, heavy loads, high speed and high ambient temperature, individually or in combination. The fan drive is designed to provide the minimum fan speed (and resulting fan noise and fuel consumption) required to meet the ever changing vehicle cooling air flow requirements. You will hear the amount of fan noise increasing and decreasing as the engine power requirements and vehicle driving conditions change as you drive. This is to be expected as being normal to the operation of your vehicle. High levels of fan noise might also be heard when your engine is first started, and should normally decrease after driving for a short time.

## Driving

### Cold weather starting

It is recommended that the engine block heater be used for starting when the temperature is -10°F (-23°C) or colder. Refer to *Engine block heater (if equipped)* in the *Driving* chapter of the *Owner's Guide*.

When operating in cold weather, use Motorcraft Cetane improvers or non alcohol-based Cetane improvers from a reputable manufacturer.

Do not crank the engine for more than 10 seconds as starter damage may occur. If the engine fails to start, turn the key to 3 (off) and wait 30 seconds before trying again.



**WARNING:** Do not use starting fluid, such as ether, in the air intake system (see air filter decal). Such fluid could cause immediate explosive damage to the engine and possible personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not add gasoline, gasohol or alcohol to diesel fuel. This practice creates a serious fire hazard and causes engine performance problems.

1. Turn the key to on without turning the key to start. **Do not start the engine** until the glow-plug pre-heat indicator  turns off.

2. When the glow plug pre-heat indicator turns off, turn the key to start, then release the key as soon as the engine starts. The glow plugs will continue to be activated for two minutes after the glow plug pre-heat indicator  has turned off. If the engine is not started before the glow plug activation time ends, the glow plugs will need to be reset by turning the key to off.

3. After the engine starts, **allow it to idle for about 15 seconds**. This is to protect the engine. Do not increase engine speed until the oil pressure gauge indicates normal pressure.

### ENGINE IDLE SHUTDOWN (IF EQUIPPED)

Your vehicle may be equipped with an engine idle shutdown system. This system will automatically shut down your engine when it has been idling in P (Park) or N (Neutral) for five minutes (parking brake set) or 15 minutes (parking brake not set). When the engine idle shutdown process has started:

- A chime will sound and the message center will display **ENGINE TURNS OFF IN XX** 30 seconds prior to shutdown and begins counting down to zero.

## Driving

- The timer can be reset by changing the position of the accelerator pedal, brake pedal or the park brake within the final 30 seconds.
- When the timer reaches zero, the engine shuts down and the message center will display **ENGINE TURNED OFF**.
- One minute after the engine has shut down, the electrical system will simulate key off, even though the ignition is still in the on position, initiating normal accessory delay period.
- The ignition must be moved to the off position to reset the system before restarting the vehicle.

**Note:** The engine idle shutdown idle timer will not start if:

- The engine is operating in power take-off (PTO) mode.
- The engine coolant temperature is below 60°F (16°C).
- The exhaust emission control device (DPF) is regenerating.

### STOPPING THE ENGINE

Turn the ignition to the OFF position.

**On E-Series vehicles**, to prolong engine life (after extended high speed or maximum GVW operation), it is recommended that a hot engine be idled for 7–10 minutes which will allow the turbocharged engine to cool down.

**On F-Super Duty vehicles**, to prolong engine life (especially after extended high speed, high ambient temperature, or high GVW/GCW operation), it is recommended that a hot engine be idled for 3–5 minutes which will allow the turbocharged engine to cool down.

### COLD WEATHER OPERATION

Changing to a lighter grade engine oil also makes starting easier under these conditions. Refer to *Engine oil specifications* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter of this supplement.

Diesel fuel is adjusted seasonally for cold temperatures. Diesel fuel which has not been properly formulated for the ambient conditions may form wax crystals which can clog the fuel filter. At temperatures below 20°F (–7°C), if the engine starts, stalls after a short time, and then will not restart, the fuel filter(s) may be clogged. For best results in cold weather, use a diesel fuel which has been formulated for the ambient conditions. If you have been using biodiesel, you may need to use a fuel with lower biodiesel content, try another brand, or discontinue using biodiesel.

## Driving

Your vehicle is equipped with either an FCM or HFCM which recirculates fuel from the engine to help prevent fuel filter clogging. Your vehicle is also equipped with a bypass relief valve, located in the fuel tank pick-up boot, which provides fuel flow to the engine if the fuel pickup should become plugged. To allow the bypass valve to function and avoid engine fuel starvation during cold weather operation of 32°F (0°C) or below, it is recommended that the fuel level in your tank should not be allowed to drop below 1/4 full. This will help prevent air from entering the fuel system and stalling the engine.

In cold weather below 32°F (0°C), the engine will slowly increase to a higher idle speed if left idling in P (Park). As the engine warms-up, the engine sound level will decrease due to the activation of PCM-controlled sound reduction features.

If your vehicle is operated in a heavy snow storm or blowing snow conditions, the engine air induction may become partially clogged with snow and/or ice. If this occurs, the engine may experience a significant reduction in power output. At the earliest opportunity, clear all the snow and/or ice away from inside the air filter assembly. Take the top off the assembly, leaving the air filter in, and remove any snow or ice.

In order to operate the engine in temperatures of 32°F (0°C) or lower, read the following instructions:

- Make sure that the batteries are of sufficient size and are fully charged. Check other electrical components to make sure they are in optimum condition.
- Use Motorcraft Premium Gold Engine Coolant solution at the concentration recommended to protect the engine against damage from freezing.
- Try to keep the fuel tank full as much as possible at the end of operation to prevent condensation in the fuel system.
- Make sure you use proper cold weather engine oil and that it is at its proper level. Also, if necessary, make sure to follow the engine oil and filter change schedule found under the *Special operating conditions* section in the *scheduled maintenance guide* information.
- At temperatures of -10°F (-23°C) or below, it is recommended that you use an engine block heater to improve cold engine starting.
- If operating in arctic temperatures of -20°F (-29°C) or lower, consult your truck dealer for information about special cold weather equipment and precautions.

**Note:** Idling in cold weather will not heat the engine to its normal operating temperature. Long periods of idling in cold weather can cause a buildup of heavy deposits of carbon and rust on valve stems causing them to stick, which in turn, can cause valve train damage.

## Driving

The following cold weather idling guidelines must be followed:

- Avoid idling the engine for more than 10 minutes at a time.
- Use Motorcraft Cetane improvers or non alcohol-based cetane improvers from a reputable manufacturer.
- Maintain the engine cooling system properly.
- Do not shut the engine down after an extensive idling period (10 minutes or more). Drive the vehicle for several miles with the engine at normal operating temperatures under a moderate load to burn off any accumulated carbon and varnish.
- Consider using an engine block heater.
- For extended idle times use an approved idle speed increase device.

### Winter operating tips for Arctic operation -20°F (-29°C) and below

The following information is provided as a guideline only, and is not intended to be the only source of possible solutions in resolving extreme cold temperature issues.

#### Starting aids:

The use of the factory engine block heater (refer to *Engine block heater [if equipped]* in the *Driving* chapter of the *Owner's Guide*) and oil pan heaters (aftermarket) will assist in engine starting, in extreme cold ambient temperatures.



**WARNING:** Do not use starting fluid, such as ether, in the air intake system (see air filter decal). Such fluid could cause immediate explosive damage to the engine and possible personal injury.

#### Idle control:

For periods of extended idle, the throttle should be set at an rpm that is sufficient to keep the engine at normal operating temperatures. This action can reduce the amount of engine damaging deposits.

- The engine contains a unique “Cold Weather - Idle up feature” calibration strategy within the PCM. Under the appropriate conditions, the strategy will automatically elevate the engine idle speed after 130 seconds of idling in cold ambient temperatures. For this feature to be activated, the truck must be in P (Park) (for automatic transmission), in neutral (for manual transmission) with the parking

## Driving

brake applied and engine oil temperature below 158°F (70°C). This strategy raises the rpm to a level that reduces the potential to produce “coking” or “wet stacking”, which is common to all diesel engines when idling for extended periods during cold ambient temperatures.

- Your vehicle may have a factory option for a Stationary Elevated Idle Control (SEIC) through dash-mounted Upfitter switches will allow the operator to elevate the idle rpm for extended idle periods, as well as aftermarket equipment such as PTO operation. This feature must be configured even if ordered from the factory. See your authorized dealer for required upfitting.

### Operation in snow

Vehicle operation in heavy snowfall or extreme rain conditions may feed excessive amounts of snow/water into the air intake system. This could plug/soak the air filter with snow and may cause the engine to lose power and possibly shut down.

Either of these conditions may cause the CHECK AIR FILTER message to appear in the message center.

You may not need to change the air filter and the vehicle may be driven up to 200 miles (320 km) under the following conditions:

- **Snow:** At the earliest opportunity, open the hood and clear all the snow and ice from the air filter housing inlet (do NOT remove the air filter) and reset the air filter restriction gauge.
- **Wet:** The air filter will dry after about 15–30 minutes at highway speeds. At the earliest opportunity, open the hood and reset the air filter restriction gauge.

Refer to *Air filter and restriction gauge* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter of this supplement for more information.

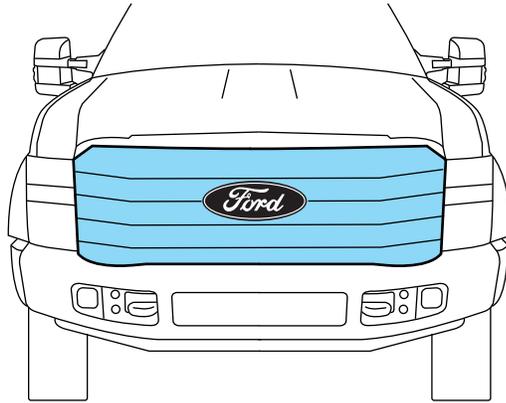
### Operation in standing water

Ingestion of water into the diesel engine can result in immediate and severe damage to the engine. If driving through water, slow down to avoid splashing water into the intake. If the engine stalls, and ingestion of water into the engine is suspected, do not try to restart the engine. Consult your dealer for service immediately.

## Driving

### Winter grille cover (F-Super Duty only) (if equipped)

If your vehicle includes a winter grille cover, it will enhance heater performance and will reduce the amount of time it takes to warm the inside of your vehicle in extremely cold conditions (below 0°F [-18°C]). The winter grille cover installs over the outside of the grille of your vehicle and restricts the air flowing to the engine compartment by covering the radiator grille openings.



### Usage guidelines

The winter grille cover should only be used while operating your vehicle in extremely cold temperatures or in heavy snow for extended periods of time. In these temperatures, the vehicle does not need a large amount of air to properly cool the engine. During periods of operation when more airflow is required to cool the vehicle, the winter grille cover should not be used. The following usage guidelines will allow adequate airflow for proper radiator and air cooler performance.

- Do not use the winter grille cover when temperatures are above 50°F (10°C). Use of the cover in these conditions could cause your vehicle to overheat. If this happens while the cover is being used, remove the cover and store properly.
- Do not use the winter grille cover above 32°F (0°C) if towing a trailer. The added power needed to tow a trailer requires the radiator grille to have full airflow under all conditions. Your vehicle may overheat if the cover is used while towing a trailer.
- Do not modify the winter grille cover. The winter grille cover does not block some sections of the front of the vehicle because these openings are needed to provide enough airflow to the radiator and air cooler in extremely cold temperatures.

## Driving

### **Installation instructions**

The “Installation Instructions” included with your winter grille cover packaging explain how to install and remove your vehicle’s winter grille cover. When installing or removing the winter grille cover, refer to the “Usage guidelines” listed previously. When you first attempt to fit the winter grille cover, it may appear to be undersized. This is due to the nature of the special vinyl, which will stretch during installation to ensure a tight fit. For this reason, the initial installation of the winter grille cover is best performed when the cover is warm.

### **Engine block heater (if equipped)**

Refer to the *Driving* chapter in the *Owner’s Guide*.

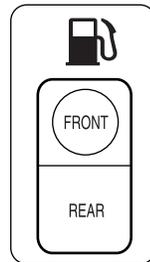
### **Rapid Heat supplemental heating system (if equipped)**

The optional Rapid Heat feature is an electrically powered device that is designed to provide supplemental heat during engine warm up. For maximum effectiveness mid to low blower speed is recommended during initial warm up. When operating in automatic mode (when equipped) the climate control unit will determine the appropriate blower speed for existing conditions.

**Note:** Additional aftermarket electrical loads operated during engine warm up may impact the performance of the Rapid heat supplemental heater.

### **DUAL FUEL TANK SELECTOR CONTROL (IF EQUIPPED)**

If your vehicle is equipped with dual fuel tanks, you will have a selector control, located to the right of the steering wheel, which allows you to draw fuel from either tank. Your fuel gauge will display the amount of fuel in the currently selected tank.



Fuel level indication is delayed for several minutes when the tank selector switch is actuated. Fuel level indication can be obtained immediately by turning off and restarting the engine.

## Driving

### TRAILER TOWING

Refer to your *Owner's Guide* for full details on towing a trailer.

#### Trailer towing tables - E-Series

Engine	Rear axle ratio	Maximum GCWR - lbs. (kg)	Maximum trailer weight - lbs. (kg)
<b>E-350 Regular Van (9500 GVWR)</b>			
6.0L	3.55	16000 (7257)	9500 (4309)
6.0L	4.10	20000 (9072)	10000 (4536)
<b>E-350 Extended/RV Van (9500 GVWR)</b>			
6.0L	3.55	16000 (7257)	9400 (4264)
6.0L	4.10	20000 (9072)	10000 (4536)
<b>E-350 Regular Wagon (12-passenger) (8950 GVWR)</b>			
6.0L	3.55	16000 (7257)	8900 (4037)
6.0L	4.10	20000 (9072)	10000 (4536)
<b>138" Wheelbase 9900 GVWR E-350 Cutaway with Single Rear Wheels (SRW)</b>			
6.0L	4.10	20000 (9072)	10000 (4536)
<b>138" Wheelbase 10000 GVWR E-350 Cutaway with Dual Rear Wheels (DRW)</b>			
6.0L	4.10	20000 (9072)	10000 (4536)
<b>138" Wheelbase 11500 GVWR E-350 Cutaway with Dual Rear Wheels (DRW)</b>			
6.0L	4.10	20000 (9072)	10000 (4536)
<b>158" Wheelbase 10000 GVWR E-350 Cutaway with Dual Rear Wheels (DRW)</b>			
6.0L	4.10	20000 (9072)	10000 (4536)
<b>158" Wheelbase 11500 GVWR E-350 Cutaway with Dual Rear Wheels (DRW)</b>			
6.0L	4.10	20000 (9072)	10000 (4536)
<b>158" Wheelbase 12500 GVWR E-350 Cutaway with Dual Rear Wheels (DRW)</b>			
6.0L	4.10	20000 (9072)	10000 (4536)

## Driving

Engine	Rear axle ratio	Maximum GCWR - lbs. (kg)	Maximum trailer weight - lbs. (kg)
<b>176" Wheelbase 10000 GVWR E-350 Cutaway with Dual Rear Wheels (DRW)</b>			
6.0L	4.10	20000 (9072)	10000 (4536)
<b>176" Wheelbase 12500 GVWR E-350 Cutaway with Dual Rear Wheels (DRW)</b>			
6.0L	4.10	20000 (9072)	10000 (4536)
<b>158" Wheelbase 13990 GVWR E-450 Cutaway with Dual Rear Wheels (DRW)</b>			
6.0L	4.10	20000 (9072)	10000 (4536)
<b>158" Wheelbase 14500 GVWR E-450 Cutaway with Dual Rear Wheels (DRW)</b>			
6.0L	4.10	20000 (9072)	10000 (4536)
<b>176" Wheelbase 13990 GVWR E-450 Cutaway with Dual Rear Wheels (DRW)</b>			
6.0L	4.10	20000 (9072)	10000 (4536)
<b>176" Wheelbase 14500 GVWR E-450 Cutaway with Dual Rear Wheels (DRW)</b>			
6.0L	4.10	20000 (9072)	10000 (4536)

## Driving

### Trailer towing tables - F-Super Duty

Maximum GCWR - lb (kg.)			
Engine	Rear axle ratio	Manual transmission	Automatic transmission
<b>F-250/F-350 Single Rear Wheel (SRW)</b>			
6.4L	3.55	—	23000 (10433)
6.4L	3.73	23000 (10433)	23000 (10433)
<b>F-350 Dual Rear Wheel (DRW)</b>			
6.4L	3.73/4.10	23500 (10659)	23500 (10659)
	4.30	—	26000 (11793)
<b>F-350 Dual Rear Wheel (DRW) Chassis Cab</b>			
6.4L	3.73/4.10	23500 (10659)	23500 (10659)
<b>F-450 Pick-up</b>			
6.4L	4.30	27000 (12247)	33000 (14969)
<b>F-450 Chassis Cab</b>			
6.4L	4.30/4.88	26000 (11793)	26000 (11793)
6.4L*	4.88	28000 (12701)	30000 (13608)
<b>F-550</b>			
6.4L	4.30/4.88	26000 (11793)	26000 (11793)
6.4L*	4.88	28000 (12701)	33000 (14969)

\* With high capacity trailer tow package; see rear axle label to identify actual vehicle content.

### Integrated hitch rating

The standard integrated hitch has two ratings depending on mode of operation:

- **Weight carrying** - requires a draw bar and hitch ball. The draw bar supports all the vertical tongue load of the trailer.
- **Weight distributing** - requires an aftermarket weight distributing system which includes draw bar, hitch ball, spring bars and snap-up brackets. The vertical tongue load of the trailer is distributed between the truck and the trailer by this system.

## Driving

	Hitch Type	Maximum Gross Trailer Weight - lb (kg)	Maximum Tongue Weight - lb (kg)
F-250/350 DRW Pick-ups 2.5" ID without adapter (requires 2.5" drawbar)	Weight carrying	8000 (3629)	800 (363)
	Weight distributing	15000 (6804)	1500 (680)
F-250/350 DRW Pick-ups 2.5" ID with adapter* (requires 2" drawbar)	Weight carrying	6000 (2721)	600 (272)
	Weight distributing	12500 (5670)	1250 (567)
All SRW Pick-ups 2" receiver	Weight carrying	6000 (2721)	600 (272)
	Weight distributing	12500 (5670)	1250 (567)
F-450 DRW Pick-ups 2.5" ID without adapter (requires 2.5" drawbar)	Weight carrying	8000 (3629)	800 (363)
	Weight distributing	16000 (7258)	1600 (726)
F-450 DRW Pick-ups 2.5" ID with adapter* (requires 2" drawbar)	Weight carrying	6000 (2721)	600 (272)
	Weight distributing	12500 (5670)	1250 (567)

 **WARNING:** Towing trailers beyond the maximum tongue weight exceeds the limit of the towing system and could result in vehicle structural damage, loss of vehicle control and personal injury.

\* Trailer hitch adapter is available from Ford dealers (Part number: 5C3Z-19H282-A).

## Roadside Emergencies

### JUMP STARTING YOUR VEHICLE (E-SERIES ONLY)

The following procedure is for E-Series vehicles only. F-Super Duty vehicles equipped with the 6.4L diesel engine can be jump started using the same procedure as a gasoline engine; refer to your *Owner's Guide* for the jump starting procedure.



**WARNING:** The gases around the battery can explode if exposed to flames, sparks, or lit cigarettes. An explosion could result in injury or vehicle damage.



**WARNING:** Batteries contain sulfuric acid which can burn skin, eyes and clothing, if contacted.

**Do not attempt to push-start your vehicle. Automatic transmissions do not have push-start capability; damage to the automatic transmission may result.**

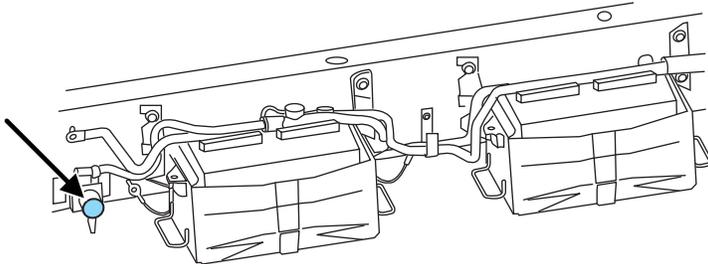
### Preparing your vehicle

When the batteries are disconnected or new batteries are installed, the transmission must relearn its shift strategy. As a result, the transmission may have firm and/or soft shifts. This operation is considered normal and will not affect function or durability of the transmission. Over time, the adaptive learning process will fully update transmission operation.

1. **Use only a 12-volt supply to start your vehicle.**
2. Do not disconnect the batteries of the disabled vehicle as this could damage the vehicle's electrical system.
3. Park the booster vehicle close to the passenger side of the disabled vehicle making sure the two vehicles **do not** touch. Set the parking brake on both vehicles.

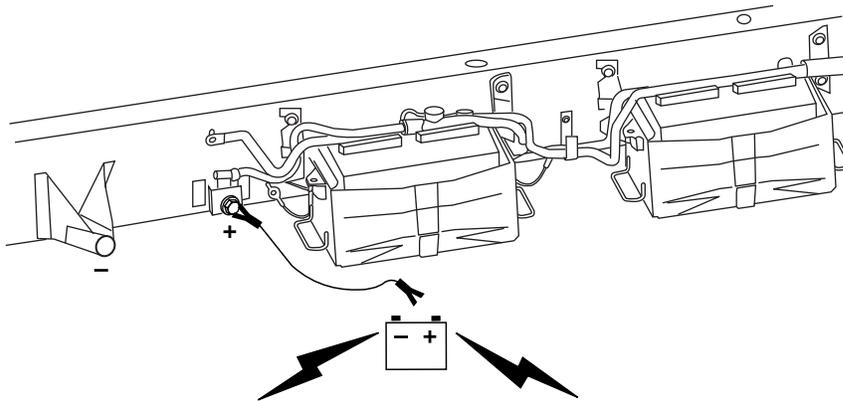
**Note:** This vehicle has two frame-mounted batteries located on the passenger side frame rail, behind the front passenger door. A battery positive (+) jumper stud is located on the frame rail behind the rear most battery box.

## Roadside Emergencies



- Location of positive (+) jumper stud; remove the cap to access the jumper stud.
4. Check the assisting vehicle battery terminals and the positive (+) jumper stud and remove any excessive corrosion before you attach the battery cables. Ensure that accessible vent caps are tight and level.
  5. Turn the heater fan on in both vehicles to protect from any electrical surges. Turn all other accessories off.

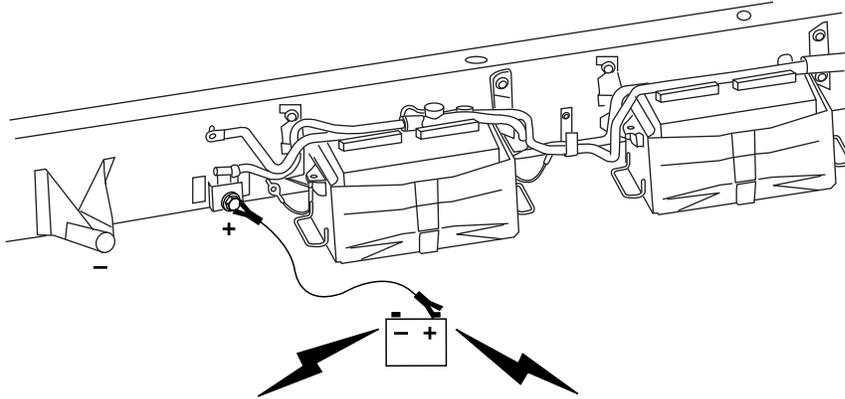
### Connecting the jumper cables



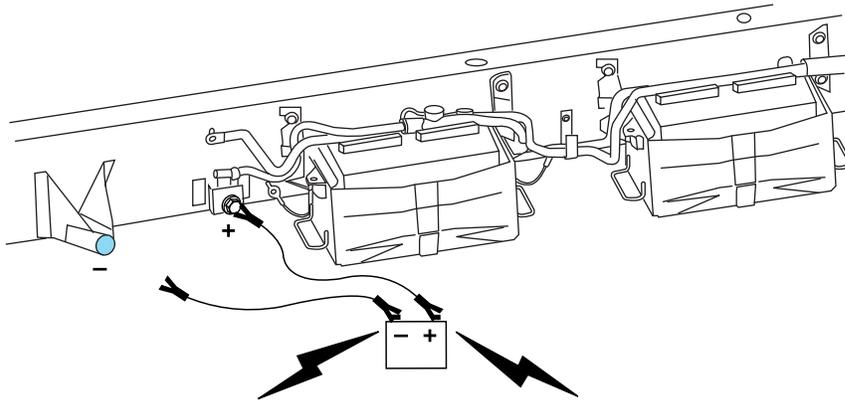
1. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) jumper stud located on the passenger side frame rail of the disabled vehicle.

**Note:** In the illustrations, *lightning bolts* are used to designate the assisting (boosting) battery.

## Roadside Emergencies

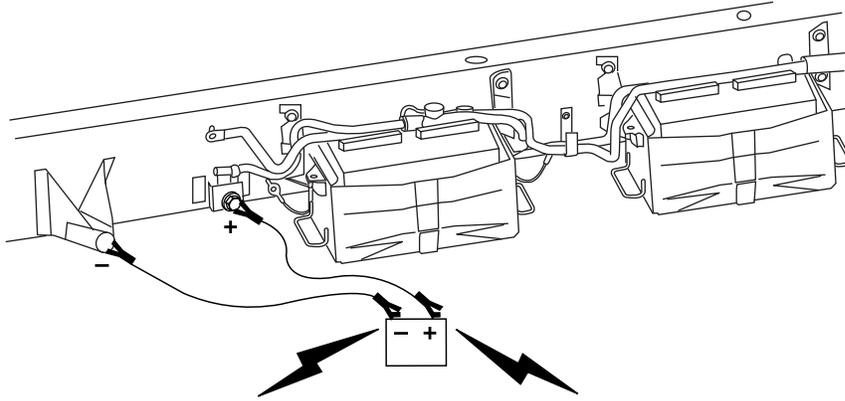


2. Connect the other end of the positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal of the assisting battery.



3. Connect the negative (-) cable to the negative (-) terminal of the assisting battery.

## Roadside Emergencies



4. Make the final connection of the negative (-) cable to an exposed metal part of the disabled vehicle's frame or chassis, away from the batteries. **Do not** use fuel lines, brake lines, exhaust components or the battery trays as *grounding* points.



**WARNING:** Do not connect the end of the second cable to the negative (-) terminal of the battery to be jumped. A spark may cause an explosion of the gases that surround the battery.

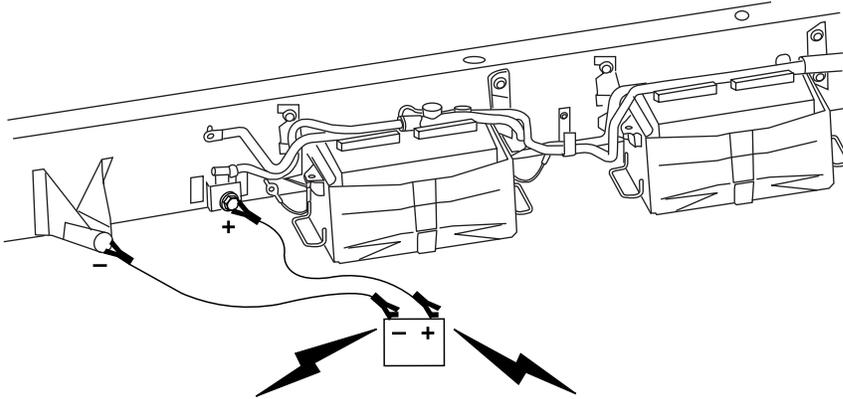
5. Ensure that the cables are clear of moving parts or any fuel delivery system, brake system or exhaust system parts.

### Jump starting

1. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and run the engine at moderately increased speed.
2. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.
3. Once the disabled vehicle has been started, run both engines for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

## Roadside Emergencies

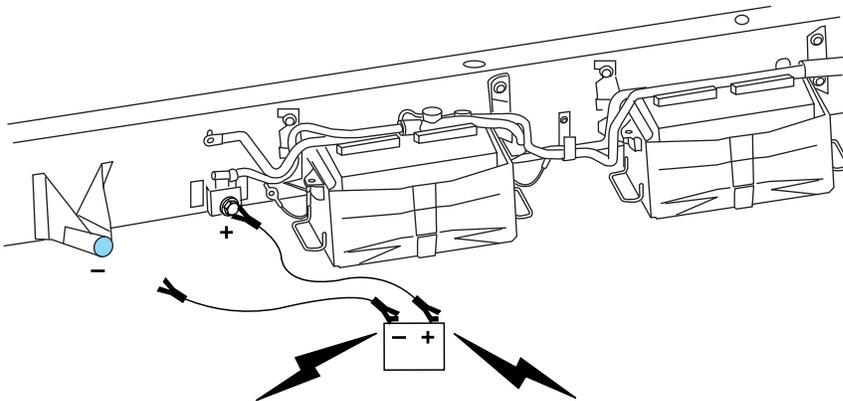
### Removing the jumper cables



**Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.**

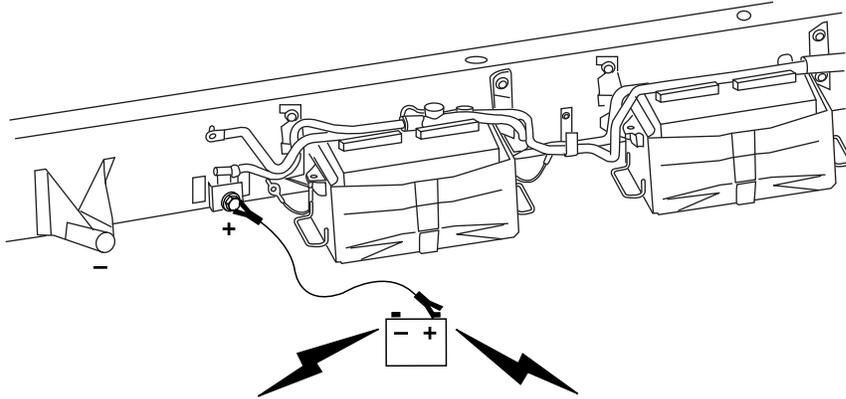
1. Remove the jumper cable from the *ground* metal surface.

**Note:** In the illustrations, *lightning bolts* are used to designate the assisting (boosting) battery.

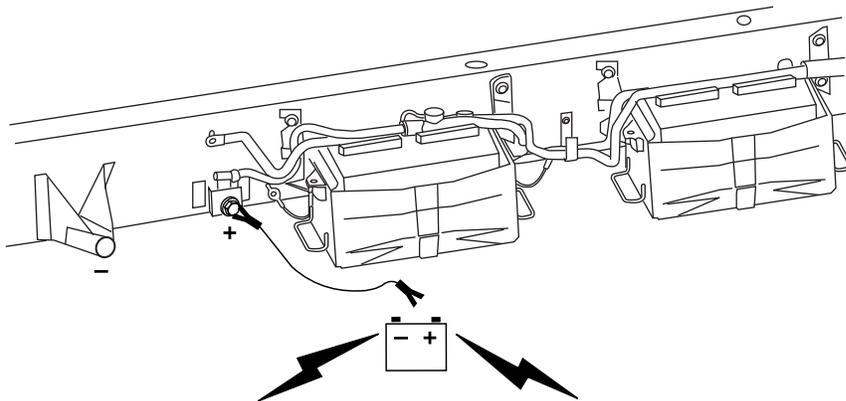


2. Remove the jumper cable on the negative (-) connection of the booster vehicle's battery.

## Roadside Emergencies



3. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle's battery.



4. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) jumper stud of the disabled vehicle. Reinstall the cap onto the jumper stud.

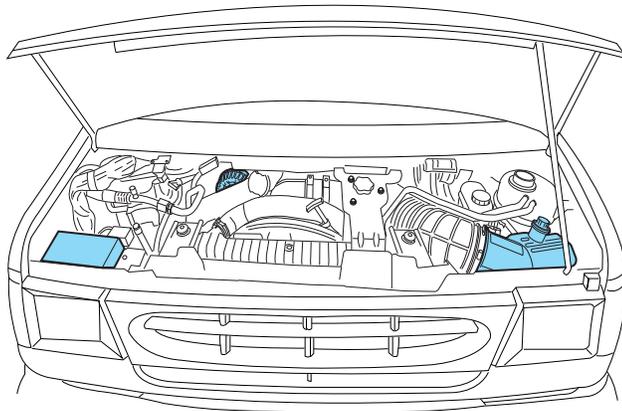
After the disabled vehicle has been started and the jumper cables removed, allow it to idle for several minutes so the engine computer can *relearn* its idle conditions.

## Cleaning

### ENGINE

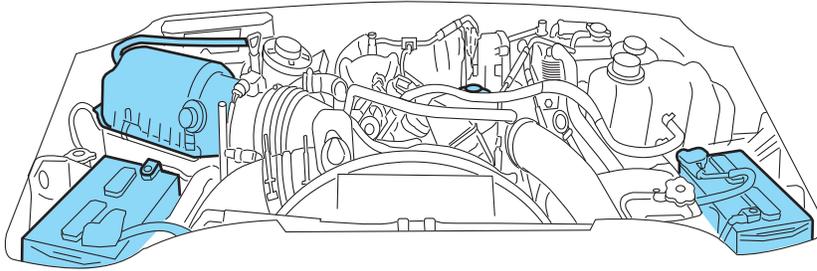
Engines are more efficient when they are clean because grease and dirt buildup keep the engine warmer than normal. When washing:

- Take care when using a power washer to clean the engine. The high-pressure fluid could penetrate the sealed parts and cause damage.
- Do not spray a hot engine with cold water to avoid cracking the engine block or other engine components.
- Spray Motorcraft Engine Shampoo and Degreaser (ZC-20) on all parts that require cleaning and pressure rinse clean.
- Never wash or rinse the engine while it is running; water in the running engine may cause internal damage.
- Cover the highlighted areas to prevent water damage when cleaning the engine.



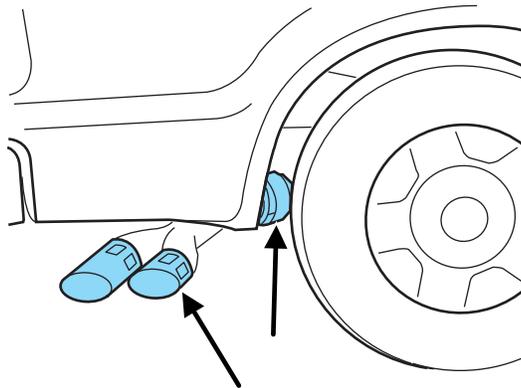
- **E-Series**

## Cleaning



- **F-Super Duty**

### EXHAUST (F-SUPER DUTY ONLY)



The visible holes in each leg of the twin tip and the holes under the shield just inboard of the right rear tire(s) are functional. The holes need to be kept clear of mud/debris or foreign material to maintain proper function of the exhaust system. Clean and remove debris or foreign material if present as needed. Spraying with a hose during regular washing of vehicle should help keep holes clean and clear of debris or foreign material.

## Cleaning



**WARNING:** Failure to maintain the functional holes, in the tailpipe section of the exhaust, clean and free of debris or foreign material may result in the holes becoming blocked or plugged. Do not modify or remove the tail-pipe section. Blocked or plugged holes or removal/modification of the system could result in elevated exhaust gas temperatures which may result in vehicle/property damage or personal injury

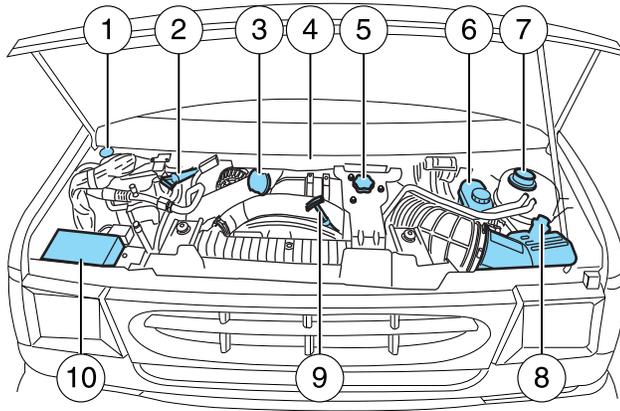


**WARNING:** The normal operating temperature of the exhaust system is very high. Never work around or attempt to repair any part of the exhaust system until it has cooled. Use special care when working around the diesel oxidation catalytic converter and/or the diesel particulate filter (DPF). The diesel oxidation catalytic converter and/or the DPF heats up to a high temperature after only a short period of engine operation and can stay hot even after the engine is turned off. Failure to follow these instructions may result in personal injury.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### IDENTIFYING COMPONENTS IN THE ENGINE COMPARTMENT

#### E-Series

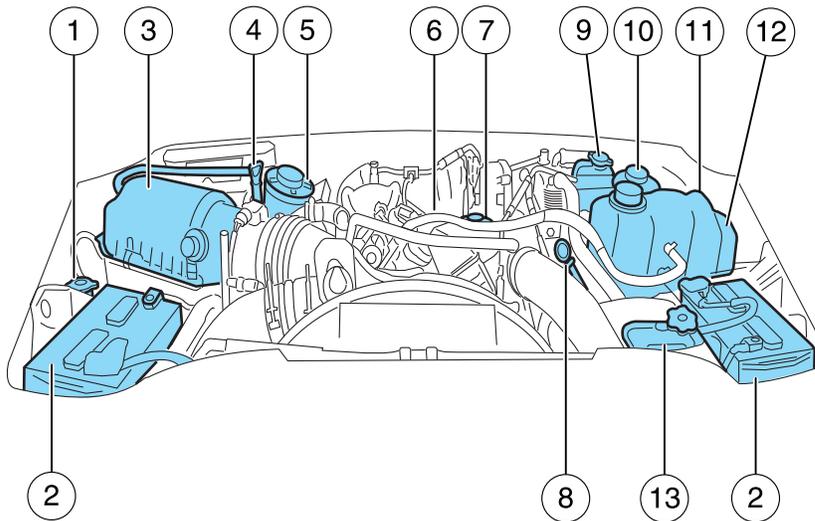


1. Windshield washer fluid reservoir
2. Automatic transmission dipstick
3. Engine oil filler cap
4. Secondary fuel filter assembly (out of view)
5. Power steering fluid reservoir
6. Brake fluid reservoir
7. Engine coolant reservoir
8. Air filter assembly
9. Engine oil dipstick
10. Power distribution box

The Fuel Conditioner Module (FCM) is located on the driver-side of the vehicle next to the transmission case.

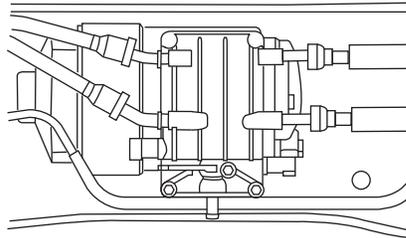
## Maintenance and Specifications

### F-Super Duty



1. Windshield washer fluid reservoir
2. Batteries
3. Air filter assembly, restriction gauge and auxiliary tube
4. Automatic transmission dipstick (if equipped)
5. Engine oil fill
6. Engine oil filter
7. Engine-mounted fuel filter assembly
8. Engine oil dipstick
9. Fuel coolant reservoir
10. Brake fluid reservoir
11. Power distribution box (behind engine coolant reservoir)
12. Engine coolant reservoir
13. Power steering fluid reservoir

## Maintenance and Specifications



The horizontal fuel conditioner module (HFCM) is located on the frame-rail under the driver-side floorboard near the transmission.

### SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE

The scheduled maintenance services in the *scheduled maintenance information* of this supplement are required because they are considered essential to the life and performance of your vehicle.

Use only recommended fuel, lubricants, fluids and service parts conforming to Ford specifications. Motorcraft parts are designed and built for best performance in your vehicle.

### FUEL REQUIREMENTS - CHOOSING THE RIGHT FUEL: VEHICLES OPERATED WHERE ULTRA LOW SULFUR DIESEL FUEL IS REQUIRED (UNITED STATES/CANADA/PUERTO RICO/U.S. VIRGIN ISLANDS AND OTHER LOCALES)

**Use only Ultra Low Sulfur (15 ppm Sulfur Maximum) number 1-D or 2-D diesel fuel (also known as ULSD) in your 6.4L diesel engine.**

The engine and exhaust system were designed to only use this fuel. Look for the **ULTRA-LOW SULFUR HIGHWAY DIESEL FUEL (15 ppm Sulfur Maximum)** label on fuel pumps when purchasing your fuel.

**Using low sulfur diesel fuel (16-500 ppm) or high sulfur diesel fuel (greater than 500 ppm) in a 6.4L diesel engine designed to use only Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel fuel will cause certain emission components to malfunction which may also cause the Service Engine Soon (  ) light to illuminate indicating an emissions-related concern.**

Diesel fuel is adjusted seasonally for cold temperature. For best results at temperatures below 20°F (-7°C), it is recommended to use a diesel fuel which has been seasonally adjusted for the ambient conditions. See *Cold weather operation* in the **Driving** chapter of this supplement.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### BIODIESEL

Diesel fuel containing no more than 5% biodiesel may be used. To help achieve acceptable engine performance and durability, it is important to only use biodiesel of good quality in your diesel engine. At a minimum, the biodiesel should comply with ASTM D6751 or an equivalent specification.

Use of biodiesel in concentrations greater than 5% may cause damage to your vehicle's fuel system components such as fuel tank, fuel lines, fuel pump, fuel sender and fuel injectors. Concentrations greater than 5% can also cause fuel filter restrictions that may result in a lack of power and or fuel pump and fuel injector failure.

Look for a label on the fuel pump to confirm the amount of biodiesel contained in a diesel fuel. Biodiesel content is often indicated with the letter "B" followed by the percent of biodiesel in the fuel. For example, B5 indicates a fuel containing 5% biodiesel. Ask the service station attendant to confirm the biodiesel content of a diesel fuel if you do not see a label on the fuel pump.

Biodiesel should not be stored in the fuel tank for more than three months. If your vehicle will be parked or stored for more than three months, then your vehicle should be drained and filled with a diesel fuel not containing biodiesel.

During cold weather, if you have problems operating on biodiesel, you may need to use a diesel fuel with lower biodiesel content, try another brand, or discontinue the use of biodiesel.

Biodiesel use may affect the recommended oil change intervals. Refer to the *Special Operating Conditions* section in the *schedule maintenance guide* for more information about oil change intervals and other maintenance when operating on biodiesel.

Biodiesel fuel is a product that has been converted from renewable fuel sources, including vegetable oil, animal fat and cooking oil. Raw or refined vegetable oil, animal fat, cooking oil or recycled greases should not be used.

**Do not use home heating oil, agricultural fuel or any diesel fuel not intended for highway use. Damage to the fuel injection system, engine and exhaust catalyst can occur if an improper fuel is used. Do not add gasoline, gasohol or alcohol to diesel fuel. This practice creates a serious fire hazard and engine performance problems.**

## Maintenance and Specifications

### **FUEL REQUIREMENTS - CHOOSING THE RIGHT FUEL: VEHICLES OPERATED WHERE ULTRA LOW SULFUR DIESEL FUEL IS NOT REQUIRED**

For a 6.4L engine to operate reliably on low sulfur or high sulfur diesel fuel, the 6.4L engine must be a high sulfur configured engine or a ULSD fuel-configured engine that has been retrofitted for high sulfur diesel fuel use.

**Use only a 6.4L diesel engine that has been configured for use with high sulfur diesel fuel in markets with diesel fuel that has sulfur content greater than 15 ppm. Using low sulfur diesel fuel (16–500 ppm) or high sulfur diesel fuel (greater than 500 ppm) in a 6.4L diesel engine designed to use only Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel fuel increases the likelihood of engine oil dilution with fuel which may lead to major engine damage. Engine damage from using the improper type of fuel is not covered under your warranty.**

Vehicles with 6.4L engines configured for use with high sulfur diesel fuel will only be made available for sale in countries where ULSD fuel is not available or mandated by the government. Vehicles originally sold in a ULSD fuel market that are subsequently exported to non-ULSD fuel markets will need to be retrofitted (at the customer's expense) in order to be reliably operated on non-ULSD fuel.

Vehicles equipped with a 6.0L engine that are operated in a market that does not require ULSD fuel may be operated on higher sulfur fuel without any engine fuel system or emissions-related concerns.

Diesel fuel is adjusted seasonally for cold temperature. For best results at temperatures below 20°F (-7°C), it is recommended to use a diesel fuel which has been seasonally adjusted for the ambient. See *Cold Weather Operation* in the *Driving* chapter of this supplement.

### **BIODIESEL**

Diesel fuel containing no more than 5% biodiesel may be used. To help achieve acceptable engine performance and durability, it is important to only use biodiesel of good quality in your diesel engine. At a minimum, the biodiesel should comply with ASTM D6751 or an equivalent specification.

Use of biodiesel in concentrations greater than 5% may cause major engine damage. Concentrations greater than 5% can also cause fuel filter restrictions that may result in a lack of power and or damage to components such as fuel tank, fuel lines, fuel pump, fuel sender and fuel injectors fuel pump and fuel injector failure.

## Maintenance and Specifications

Look for a label on the fuel pump to confirm the amount of biodiesel contained in a diesel fuel. Biodiesel content is often indicated with the letter “B” followed by the percent of biodiesel in the fuel. For example, B5 indicates a fuel containing 5% biodiesel. Ask the service station attendant to confirm the biodiesel content of a diesel fuel if you do not see a label on the fuel pump.

Biodiesel should not be stored in the fuel tank for more than three months. If your vehicle will be parked or stored for more than three months, then your vehicle should be drained and filled with a diesel fuel not containing biodiesel.

During cold weather, if you have problems operating on biodiesel, you may need to use a diesel fuel with lower biodiesel content, try another brand, or discontinue the use of biodiesel.

Biodiesel use may affect the recommended oil change intervals. Refer to the *Special Operating Conditions* section in the *schedule maintenance guide* for more information about oil change intervals and other maintenance when operating on biodiesel.

Biodiesel fuel is a product that has been converted from renewable fuel sources, including vegetable oil, animal fat and cooking oil. Raw or refined vegetable oil, animal fat, cooking oil or recycled greases should **NOT** be used.

**Do not use home heating oil, agricultural fuel or any diesel fuel not intended for highway use. Damage to the fuel injection system, engine and exhaust catalyst can occur if an improper fuel is used. Do not add gasoline, gasohol or alcohol to diesel fuel. This practice creates a serious fire hazard and engine performance problems.**

### Fuel quality

It should not be necessary to add any aftermarket additives to your fuel tank if you use a properly formulated diesel fuel that meets the ASTM D 975 industry specification. Aftermarket additives can damage the injector system or engine. Repairs to correct the effects of using an aftermarket product in your fuel may not be covered by your warranty.

**Do not blend used engine oil with diesel fuel under any circumstances.** Blending used oil with the fuel will significantly increase your vehicle’s exhaust emissions and reduce engine life due to increased internal wear.

Many of the world’s automakers approved the World-wide Fuel Charter that recommends diesel fuel specifications to provide improved performance and emission control system protection for your vehicle.

## Maintenance and Specifications

Diesel fuel that meets the World-wide Fuel Charter should be used when available. Ask your fuel supplier about fuel that meets the World-wide Fuel Charter.

### **Diesel fuel conditioner**

Additives that will improve fuel cetane numbers may be used to verify/enhance fuel quality. Use Motorcraft Cetane Booster & Performance Improver, PM-22-A (U.S.) / PM-22-B (Canada) or equivalent. The customer warranty may be void from using additives that do not meet or exceed Ford specifications.

Do not use alcohol based additives to correct fuel gelling. This may result in damage to the fuel injectors/system. Use Motorcraft Anti-Gel & Performance Improver, PM-23-A (U.S.) / PM-23-B (Canada) or equivalent. The customer warranty may be void from using additives that do not meet or exceed Ford specifications.

**Note:** This ultra-low sulfur formulation is designed to meet the emissions standards for the 6.4L engine and is backward compatible as well (i.e., can be used in Ford 6.9L, 7.3L, and 6.0L diesel engines).

### **Fueling tips**

If the engine fails to start in 30 seconds, turn the key to the off position and wait 30 seconds before trying again.

Truck stops have pumps and nozzles designed for larger, heavy-duty trucks. When refueling at truck stops: if the nozzle shuts off repeatedly when refueling, wait 5–10 seconds; then use a slower rate of flow (don't depress the nozzle trigger as far).

If air is allowed to enter the fuel system (during fuel filter change or if you run out of fuel) the engine will purge the trapped air as it runs. The engine may run rough and produce white smoke while air is in the system. This is normal and should correct itself in a short time.

An engine that suddenly becomes noisy or operates poorly after a fuel fill could be using substandard fuel (i.e., high water content, low cetane rating or gasoline in the fuel). Diesel fuel should be purchased from a reputable station which sells a large amount of diesel fuel.

Care should be taken whenever diesel fuel is stored. Use only clean, approved containers which will prevent the entry of dirt or water.

Diesel fuel must not be stored in a galvanized container. The fuel will dissolve the zinc in a galvanized container. The zinc will then remain in the solution until it is run through the engine where it will be deposited in the fuel injectors causing expensive-to-repair damage.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### Diesel fuel dispensing nozzle fill rate

This truck is equipped with a fuel fill pipe which is able to accept fuel up to 20 gallons per minute from an 1½” fuel dispensing nozzle. Pumping fuel at greater flow rates may result in premature nozzle shut-off or spitback.

### Fuel filler cap

Your fuel tank filler cap has an indexed design with a 1/4 turn on/off feature.

When fueling your vehicle:

1. Turn the engine off.
2. Carefully turn the filler cap counterclockwise until it spins off.
3. Pull to remove the cap from the fuel filler pipe.
4. To install the cap, align the tabs on the cap with the notches on the filler pipe.
5. Turn the filler cap clockwise 1/4 of a turn until it clicks at least once.

**If you must replace the fuel filler cap, replace it with a fuel filler cap that is designed for your vehicle. The vehicle warranty may be void for any damage to the fuel tank or fuel system if the correct genuine Ford or Motorcraft fuel filler cap is not used.**



**WARNING:** The fuel system may be under pressure. If the fuel filler cap is venting vapor or if you hear a hissing sound, wait until it stops before completely removing the fuel filler cap. Otherwise, fuel may spray out and injure you or others.



**WARNING:** If you do not use the proper fuel filler cap, excessive pressure or vacuum in the fuel tank may damage the fuel system or cause the fuel cap to disengage in a collision, which may result in possible personal injury.

### FUEL FILTER/WATER SEPARATOR

#### Fuel Conditioner Module (FCM - E-Series)

The vehicle is equipped with a Fuel Conditioning Module (FCM) located on the driver-side of the vehicle next to the transmission case.

## Maintenance and Specifications

Water should be drained from the module assembly whenever the warning light comes on. The WATER IN FUEL light will come on when approximately 0.2 pints (100 ml) of water accumulates in the module. If water level is allowed to exceed this level, the water may be passed through to the engine and may cause FIE (Fuel Injection Equipment) damage.



### Horizontal Fuel Conditioner Module (HFCM - F-Super Duty)

The vehicle is equipped with a Horizontal Fuel Conditioning Module (HFCM) located on the frame-rail under the driver-side floorboard near the transmission

Water should be drained from the module assembly whenever the warning light comes on. The WATER IN FUEL light will come on when approximately 0.13–0.16 pints (60–75 ml) of water accumulates in the module. If water level is allowed to exceed this level, the water may be passed through to the engine and may cause FIE (Fuel Injection Equipment) damage.



### DRAINING THE HFCM AND CHANGING THE ENGINE AND VEHICLE FUEL FILTERS

Your vehicle is equipped with two fuel filters; one is mounted on top of the engine. **On F-Super Duty**, the second filter, inside the HFCM, is mounted inside the frame rail under the driver-side floorboard near the transmission. **On E-Series**, the second filter, inside the FCM, is mounted on the driver-side of the vehicle next to the transmission case. **On all vehicles**, both filters should be replaced at the same time. Regular fuel filter changes are an important part of engine maintenance; failing to keep with the scheduled maintenance could lead to engine performance issues and/or fuel injection system damage. Refer to the *Scheduled Maintenance Guide* chapter of this supplement for more information.

Refer to *Motorcraft Part Numbers* later in this chapter for the fuel filter replacement part number. This part number includes filters and seals for both the engine-mounted and frame-mounted filters.

1. Stop the vehicle and **shut off** the engine.

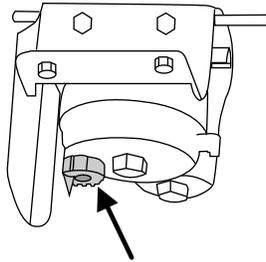
## Maintenance and Specifications



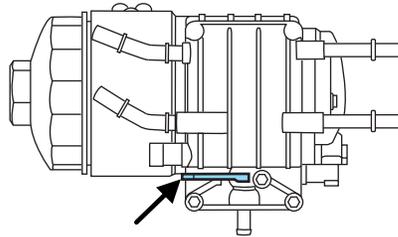
**WARNING:** The vehicle must be stopped with the engine off when draining the HFCM/FCM. Fuel may ignite if the separator is drained while the engine is running or vehicle is moving.

2. Locate the HFCM and place an appropriate container under the drain port (see illustration).

- **E-Series**



- **F-Super Duty**



3. Rotate drain lever to the outward position. Allow the HFCM/FCM to drain for approximately 25 seconds or until clean fuel is observed. Rotate the lever towards the housing until it is firmly seated.

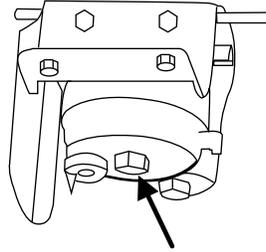
4. Verify that the drain valve is closed and latched, then remove the container from under the vehicle.

5. Restart the engine and check WATER IN FUEL indicator light; it should not be illuminated. If it continues to illuminate, have the fuel system checked and repaired.

## Maintenance and Specifications

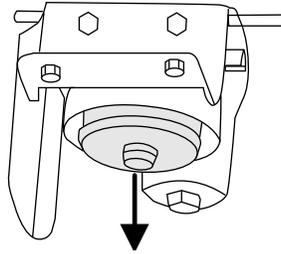
### Removal - FCM filter (E-Series)

1. Remove the fuel filter cap by turning counterclockwise.



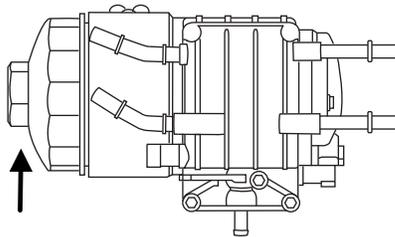
2. Remove and discard the old fuel filter element.

3. Carefully clean the mating surfaces.



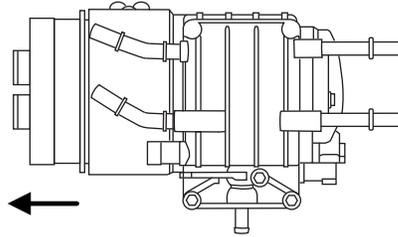
### Removal - HFCM filter

1. Remove the fuel filter cap by turning counterclockwise.



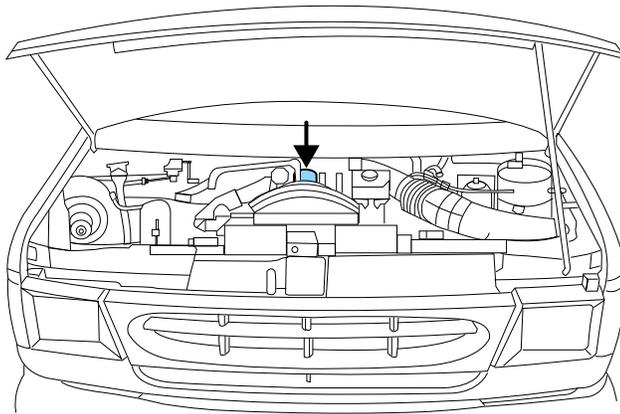
## Maintenance and Specifications

2. Remove and discard the old fuel filter element.
3. Carefully clean the mating surfaces.

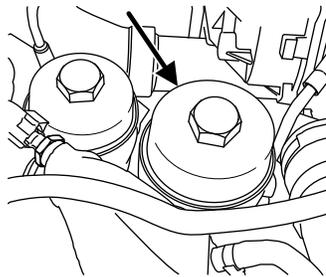


### Removal - Engine-mounted fuel filter

- E-Series



- F-Super Duty



1. Remove the fuel filter cap by turning counterclockwise.

## Maintenance and Specifications

2. Remove and discard the old fuel filter element.
3. Carefully clean the mating surfaces.

### Installation - both

**The engine will not run properly if the fuel filter is not installed in housing.**

1. Install the new fuel filter and cap seal into the fuel filter housing. Refer to *Motorcraft Part Numbers* later in this chapter for the fuel filter part number.

2. Tighten cap onto fuel filter housing slowly, allowing fuel to soak into the fuel filter element. Tighten cap until it contacts the housing.

Turn the ignition key to on for 30 seconds, then turn it to off. Do this a total of six times in a row to purge any trapped air from the fuel system.

Replace the filter bowl O-ring with new seal (included in filter kit) every time you service the filter.

After filter service, a no start or rough running engine may indicate that air is entering the system through the filter bowl seal or drain. Make sure the drain lever is pointing rearward and stowed against the HF<sub>CM</sub> case.

**Using a fuel which has more than average impurities may require the fuel filter to be replaced more frequently than the service interval specifies.**

## ENGINE OIL

### Checking the engine oil level

Because it is normal to add some oil between oil changes, check your engine oil level each time you stop for fuel. To check the engine oil level consistently and accurately, the following procedure is recommended:

1. Have engine at normal operating temperature (at least into the NORMAL range on the engine coolant temperature gauge).
2. Park the vehicle on a level surface, then turn off the engine and open the hood.
3. Allow at least **20 minutes** after engine shutdown to ensure that the oil contained in the upper parts of the engine has returned to the oil pan.
4. Protecting yourself from engine heat, pull out the dipstick, wipe it clean and reinsert fully.
5. Read oil level on both sides of dipstick and use highest level (reading) for the actual engine oil level.

## Maintenance and Specifications

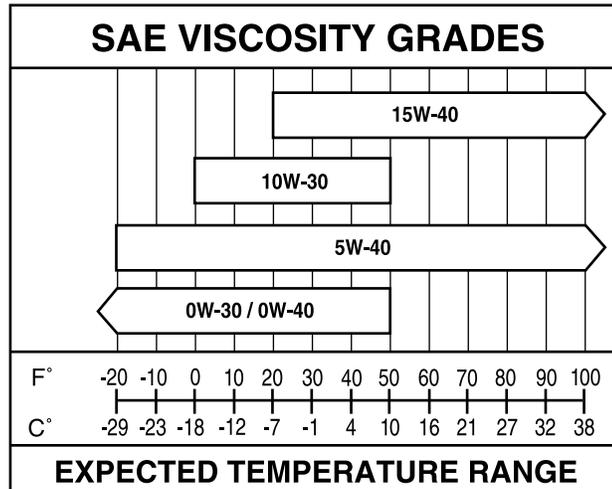
6. Maintain the oil level between MIN and MAX or the ADD and OPERATING RANGE on the dipstick by adding oil as required. The distance from MIN to MAX or ADD to OPERATING RANGE on the dipstick represents 2.0 quarts (1.9L). Do not overfill. If the oil level exceeds MAX or OPERATING RANGE, oil consumption may result.

### Engine oil specifications

To help achieve acceptable engine performance and durability, it is important that only engine oils of good quality are used in your diesel engine and it is changed at the recommended interval. For normal or severe service, use Motorcraft oil or an equivalent oil conforming to Ford specification WSS-M2C171-E or API service categories CJ-4 or CJ-4/SM. It is important to use these oils because they are compatible with the emission control equipment of your vehicle to meet the more stringent emission standards.

The use of correct oil viscosities for diesel engines is important for satisfactory operation. Determine which oil viscosity best suits the temperature range you expect to encounter for the next service interval from the following SAE viscosity grade chart.

## Maintenance and Specifications



- **An engine block heater must be used at temperatures below -10°F (-23°C).**
- Use the same engine oil and filter change intervals when using synthetic engine oil.
- **Heavier SAE 15W-40 and SAE 5W-40 engine oils are recommended for temperature over 50°F (10°C) and must be used for heavy duty driving and trailer towing.**

A symbol has been developed by the American Petroleum Institute (API) to help you select the proper engine oil. It will be included on the oil container you purchase. The top section of the symbol shows the oil performance by the API designation.

This should match the owner guide recommendation. The center section will show the SAE viscosity grade



## Maintenance and Specifications

### Changing engine oil and filter

Change your oil and filter according to the *scheduled maintenance information* in this supplement. Change more frequently if your vehicle operation includes extended periods of idling or low-speed operation, driving for a long time in cold temperatures or driving short distances. See the following section *Engine lubrication for severe service operation* for all severe duty restrictions.

Refer to *Motorcraft Part Numbers* later in this chapter for the engine oil filter part number. This filter protects your engine by filtering harmful, abrasive or sludge particles and particles significantly smaller than most available “will-fit” filters.

To replace the filter,

1. Unscrew the oil filter cap and wait a few seconds for the oil to drain through the built-in drain valve. **Note:** The filter should be changed before reinstalling the oil pan drain plug.
2. Reinstall and tighten the oil filter cap.



**WARNING:** Do not handle a hot oil filter with bare hands.



**WARNING:** Continuous contact with USED motor oil has caused cancer in laboratory mice. Protect your skin by washing with soap and water.

### Engine lubrication for severe service operation

The following severe service operating conditions require unique engine maintenance procedures:

- frequent or extended idling (over 10 minutes per hour of normal driving).
- if vehicle is operated in sustained ambient temperatures below -10°F (-23°C) or above 100°F (38°C)
- frequent low speed operation, consistent heavy traffic less than 25 mph (40 km/h)
- operating in severe dust conditions.
- towing a trailer over 1,000 miles (1,600 km)
- sustained, high speed driving at Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (maximum loaded weight for vehicle operation)

## Maintenance and Specifications

- use of biodiesel, up to and including 5% Biodiesel (B5)
- use of high sulfur diesel fuel

If you are operating your vehicle under any of these conditions, change engine oil and filter every 5,000 miles (8,000 km).

### AIR FILTER RESTRICTION GAUGE AND AIR FILTER REPLACEMENT

#### Air filter restriction gauge:

The restriction gauge, located on the upper housing of the air filter assembly, measures the vacuum inside the air filter. The more the air filter is restricted (dirty, clogged), the higher the vacuum reading



Check the air filter restriction gauge whenever the hood is raised to perform general engine maintenance at least every 7,500 miles (12,000 km). If the vehicle is operated in extremely dusty conditions, check and reset the gauge at least every 500 miles (800 km), or two weeks, whichever comes first.

Change the air filter when the gauge reads near the “change filter” line and the chamber is filled with yellow. Engine performance and fuel economy are adversely affected when the maximum restriction is reached.

**Blowing-out the air filter element with compressed air is not recommended as the compressed air may damage the filter paper.**

**Note:** It is not possible to determine the level of filter clogging by visual appearance alone. A filter which appears to be dirty may actually have several thousand miles (kilometers) of life remaining.

**Always use the underhood air filter restriction gauge to determine when the air filter element needs to be changed. The warning light on the instrument cluster should not be used exclusively for determining when the air filter element needs changing.**

## Maintenance and Specifications

After installation of the new filter element, reset the gauge by pressing the reset button on top of the gauge.

**Note:** Vehicle operation in heavy snowfall or extreme rain conditions may feed excessive amounts of snow/water into the air intake system. This could plug/soak the air filter with snow and may cause the engine to lose power and possibly shut down. Either of these conditions may cause the CHECK AIR FILTER message to appear in the message center.



You may not need to change the air filter and the vehicle may be driven up to 200 miles (320 km) under the following conditions:

- **Snow:** At the earliest opportunity, open the hood and clear all the snow and ice from the air filter housing inlet (do NOT remove the air filter) and reset the air filter restriction gauge.
- **Wet:** The air filter will dry after about 15–30 minutes at highway speeds. At the earliest opportunity, open the hood and reset the air filter restriction gauge.

The air filter warning message on the instrument cluster may be used, in addition to the underhood restriction gauge, to monitor the condition of the air filter element. Refer to the *Engine air filter* warning light in this chapter of the supplement.

### Air filter replacement:

When replacing the air filter element, use the Motorcraft air filter element listed in *Motorcraft Part Numbers* later in this chapter.



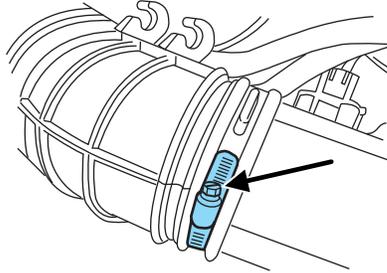
**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and/or personal burn injuries do not start your engine with the air filter removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

## Maintenance and Specifications

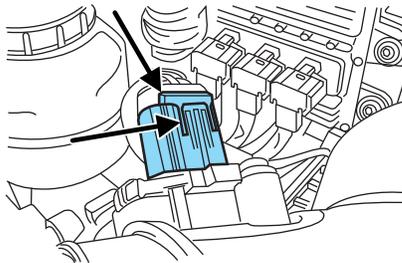
**Failure to use the correct air filter element may result in severe engine damage.**

- **E-series air filter:**

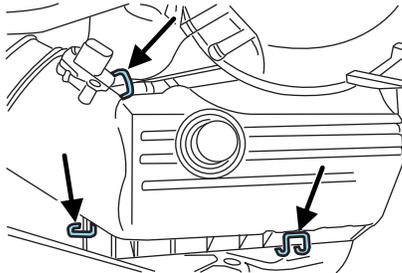
1. Disconnect the hoses from the air filter outlet tube.
2. Loosen the clamp and disconnect the air filter outlet tube.



3. Disconnect the mass air flow (MAF) sensor electrical connector. (Slide out the red lock, press tab and remove the electrical connector.)



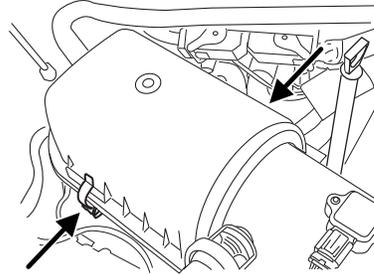
4. Disconnect the three latches and remove the air filter cover
5. Remove the air filter.



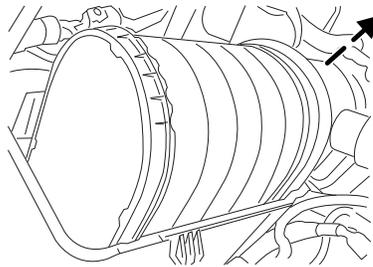
6. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

## Maintenance and Specifications

1. Release the toggle clamps and raise the air filter housing cover. It may be necessary to pull the auxiliary inlet tube away from the air filter to allow the cover to be removed.



2. Pull the top edge of the air filter out and away from the housing to release the air filter seal from the air filter housing, then remove the air filter. **Note:** Do NOT use a tool to pry the air filter from the housing. Failure to follow this instruction may result in damage to the air filter housing, air filter seal and engine.



3. When installing the air filter, first make certain the bottom of the air filter is positioned to the inboard side of the stop feature located in the bottom of the air filter housing, Then compress the air filter seal down and in towards the engine so the air filter is seated into the air filter housing. **Note:** If not installed properly, the air filter housing cover will not properly seat and the toggle clamps may not latch

4. Replace the air filter housing cover, push the auxiliary tube against the air filter and close the toggle clamps.

### **DIESEL EXHAUST SYSTEM: OXIDATION CATALYST/DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER SYSTEM (F-SUPER DUTY ONLY)**

Your vehicle is equipped with a diesel particulate filter (DPF), which is coupled to a diesel oxidation catalyst, that reduces the amount of harmful exhaust emitted from the tailpipe. As soot gathers in the system it begins to restrict the filter. The soot gathered inside the filter needs to be periodically cleaned. The soot can be cleaned in two different ways; passive regeneration and active regeneration. Both methods occur automatically and require no actions from the driver/operator. During either one of these regeneration methods you may notice an increase/change in exhaust noise/tone and increased engine idle speed.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### Passive regeneration

In passive regeneration, the exhaust constituents / temperature are at an appropriate level where some soot can be reduced or oxidized (burned) thus cleaning the filter. This method occurs naturally as a result of normal engine operating conditions (at varying levels due to drive patterns).

### Active regeneration

If there is not enough passive regeneration naturally occurring due to vehicle drive patterns, the engine control system will initiate an active regeneration. In an active regeneration, the filter is cleaned by raising the exhaust temperature to a point where the soot is burned away. This is accomplished through various engine actions which raise the exhaust temperature in the oxidation catalyst/DPF system to an appropriate high level where the soot is burned off. After the soot is burned off, the exhaust temperature and back-pressure (restriction) fall back to normal levels.

### Filter service/maintenance

Over time a slight amount of ash will build up in the DPF which is not removed during the regeneration process. The DPF may need to be removed for ash cleaning at approximately 120,000 miles (193,000 km) or greater (actual mileage can vary greatly depending upon engine/vehicle operating conditions) and replaced with a new or remanufactured (ash cleaned) part. The filter may need to be replaced at approximately 250,000 miles (400,000 km) depending upon engine/vehicle operating conditions. In both cases the engine control system will set a service light (  ) to inform you to bring the vehicle to the dealer for service.

If there are any issues with the oxidation catalyst/DPF system a service light (  or  ) will be set by the engine control system to inform you to bring the vehicle into a dealership for service.

### Resonator/Tailpipe assembly maintenance

The diesel resonator tail-pipe assembly is a uniquely functioning device that accompanies the Oxidation Catalyst/DPF assembly. The assembly serves multiple functions. First it serves as an acoustic device to attenuate exhaust noise. Second it provides an exit path for the exhaust from the vehicle. It also is designed to help control the temperature of the exhaust during DPF regeneration events. The visible holes in each leg of the twin tip and the holes under the shield just inboard of the

## Maintenance and Specifications

right rear tire(s) are functional. The holes need to be kept clear of mud/debris or foreign material to maintain proper function of the exhaust system. Clean and remove debris or foreign material if present as needed. Spraying with a hose during regular washing of vehicle should help keep holes clean and clear of debris or foreign material.

**Note:** Additions of aftermarket devices or modifications to the exhaust system can reduce the effectiveness of the exhaust system as well as cause damage to the exhaust system and/or engine. These actions may also affect the vehicle's warranty. See the vehicle's warranty guide for more information.



**WARNING:** Failure to maintain the functional holes, in the tailpipe section of the exhaust, clean and free of debris or foreign material may result in the holes becoming blocked or plugged. Do not modify or remove the tail-pipe section. Blocked or plugged holes or removal/modification of the system could result in elevated exhaust gas temperatures which may result in vehicle/property damage or personal injury.



**WARNING:** The normal operating temperature of the exhaust system is very high. Never work around or attempt to repair any part of the exhaust system until it has cooled. Use special care when working around the diesel oxidation catalytic converter and/or the diesel particulate filter (DPF). The diesel oxidation catalytic converter and/or the DPF heats up to a high temperature after only a short period of engine operation and can stay hot even after the engine is turned off. Failure to follow these instructions may result in personal injury.

### EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM(S) LAWS

Federal law prohibits vehicle manufacturers, dealers and other persons engaged in the business of repairing, servicing, selling, leasing or trading motor vehicles as well as fleet operations from unknowingly removing or rendering emission control system(s) inoperative. Further, modifications of the emission control system(s) could create liability on the part of the individual owners under the laws of some states. In Canada, modifications of the emission control system(s) could create liability under applicable Federal or Provincial laws.

Do not remove or alter the original equipment floor covering or insulation between it and the metal floor of the vehicle. The floor

## Maintenance and Specifications

covering and insulation protect occupants of the vehicle from the engine and exhaust system heat and noise. On vehicles with no original equipment floor covering insulation, do not carry passengers in a manner that permits prolonged skin contact with the metal floor. Provide adequate insulation.

### **NOISE EMISSIONS WARRANTY, PROHIBITED TAMPERING ACTS AND MAINTENANCE**

On January 1, 1978, Federal regulation became effective governing the noise emission on trucks over 10,000 lbs. (4,536 kg) GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating). The following statements concerning prohibited tampering acts and maintenance, and the noise warranty found in the *Warranty Guide*, are applicable to complete chassis cabs over 10,000 lbs. (4,536 kg) GVWR.

#### **Tampering with noise control system prohibited**

Federal law prohibits the following acts or the causing thereof: (1) The removal or rendering inoperative by any person other than for purposes of maintenance, repair or replacement of any device or element of design incorporated into any new vehicle for the purpose of noise control prior to its sale or delivery to the ultimate purchaser or while it is in use, or (2) the use of the vehicle after such device or element of design has been removed or rendered inoperative by any person.

Among those acts which the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency may presume to constitute tampering are the acts listed below:

- Removal of hood blanket, fender apron absorbers, fender apron barriers, underbody noise shields or acoustically absorptive material.
- Tampering or rendering inoperative the engine speed governor, so as to allow engine speed to exceed manufacturer's specifications.

The complexity of the diesel engine makes it so the owner is discouraged from attempting to perform maintenance other than the services described in this supplement.

If you experience difficult starting, rough idling, excessive exhaust smoke, a decrease in engine performance or excess fuel consumption, perform the following checks:

- a plugged air inlet system or engine air filter element.
- water in the fuel filter/water separator.
- a clogged fuel filter.
- contaminated fuel.

## Maintenance and Specifications

- air in the fuel system, due to loose connections.
- an open or pinched sensor hose.
- low engine oil level.
- wrong fuel or oil viscosity for climactic conditions.

If these checks do not help you correct the engine performance problem you are experiencing, consult an authorized dealer.

### FUELING



**WARNING:** Do not use starting fluid such as ether or gasoline in the diesel air intake system. Such fluids can cause immediate explosive damage to the engine and possible personal injury.

If you fuel your vehicle at a truck stop, you may notice that the fuel nozzle may shut off every 5–10 seconds. This is due to the flow rates being designed for larger heavy duty trucks. You may have to fuel at a slower rate (don't depress the nozzle trigger fully).

Do not run your diesel vehicle out of fuel as this will allow air to enter the fuel system which will make restarting difficult. The engine is designed to run roughly as the fuel tank nears Empty. This is a warning to the driver to add fuel as soon as possible. Longer engine cranking time may be required once air is in the fuel system. If air enters the fuel system (either through running the fuel tank(s) empty or during a fuel filter change), the engine will self-purge the trapped air once it starts running. The engine may run roughly and produce white smoke while air is in the fuel system; this is normal and should stop after a short time.

### MINOR TROUBLESHOOTING GUIDE

#### Air purge procedure

Turn the key on for 30 seconds, then turn off. Repeat procedure four or five times.

#### If the engine won't crank

Turn on the headlights. If the lights are dim, do not go on at all or when the ignition is turned to START the lights become dim or go out, the battery connections may be loose or corroded, or the battery may be discharged. If there is a clicking or stuttering sound coming from the engine compartment when you turn the key to START, this may also indicate a loose or corroded battery connection.

## Maintenance and Specifications

Check the battery connections at the battery posts, cable connection to the engine grounding point and at the starter connection.

If a discharged battery is suspected, have it checked and corrected.



**WARNING:** Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. **Wash hands after handling.**

- **For vehicles with manual transmissions,** the clutch pedal **must** be fully depressed in order for the starter to operate.
- **For vehicles with automatic transmissions,** the gearshift lever must be in P (Park) or N (Neutral) in order for the starter to operate.
- Try operating the starter switch several times. Should the switch be corroded, this operation may clean the contacts or make the switch temporarily operable until you can reach the dealer.
- If all electrical connections are tight and you need assistance to start, refer to *Jump starting* in the *Roadside Emergencies* chapter of your *Owner's Guide* (F-Super Duty) or refer to the *Jump starting* section in the *Roadside Emergencies* chapter of this supplement (E-Series).

### If engine cranks but won't start

Prolonged starter cranking (in excess of 10 seconds) could cause damage to the starter motor.

- Check the fuel gauge. You may be out of fuel. If the gauge shows that there is fuel in the tank, the trouble may be in the electrical system or the fuel system. If equipped with an auxiliary tank, be sure that the tank control switch is set for the tank with fuel and not on an empty tank.
- Leaving the ignition key turned to ON for over two minutes without starting may make starting difficult because the glow plugs will cease activation. Reset the system by turning the ignition key to OFF and then back to ON again.

### If the engine runs hot

The following could cause the engine to overheat:

- Lack of coolant.
- Dirty cooling system.
- Plugged radiator fins, charge air cooler, A/C condenser and/or oil cooler.
- Malfunctioning fan drive.

## Maintenance and Specifications

- Driving with frozen coolant.
- Sticking thermostat.
- Overloading or pulling heavy trailers during hot weather.
- Grill or radiator air blockage.
- Slipping or missing drive belt.
- Plugged or very dirty air filter.

### If fuses burn out

Burned-out or blown fuses usually indicate an electrical short-circuit, although a fuse may occasionally burn out from vibration. Insert a second fuse. If this fuse immediately burns out and you cannot locate the cause, return your vehicle to your dealer for a circuit check.



**WARNING:** Replacement fuses and circuit breakers must always be the same rating as the original equipment shown. Never replace a fuse or circuit breaker with one of a higher rating. Higher rated fuses or circuit breakers could allow circuit overloading in the event of a circuit malfunction, resulting in severe vehicle damage or personal injury due to fire.

Refer to the *Owner's Guide* for replacement of fuses.

### MOTORCRAFT PART NUMBERS

Item	Ford Part Number
Engine oil filter	FL-2016
Air filter - E-Series*	FA-1804
Air filter - F-Super Duty*	FA-1886
Fuel filter kit - E-Series (2 included - engine and frame rail mounted)	FD-4606
Fuel filter kit - F-Super Duty (2 included - engine and frame rail mounted )	FD-4609
Battery (2 Required)	BXT-65-750
* Always use the authorized Motorcraft air filter listed. <b>Failure to use the correct air filter may result in severe engine damage.</b>	

## Maintenance and Specifications

### MAINTENANCE PRODUCT SPECIFICATIONS AND CAPACITIES

Item	Capacity	Ford part name	Ford part number / Ford specification
Engine coolant - E-Series <sup>1</sup>	27.5 quarts (26.0L)	Motorcraft Premium Gold Engine Coolant (yellow-colored)	VC-7-B / WSS-M97B51-A1
Engine coolant - F-Super Duty <sup>1</sup>	29.6 quarts (28.0L) <sup>1</sup>	Motorcraft Premium Gold Engine Coolant (yellow-colored)	VC-7-B / WSS-M97B51-A1
Engine coolant additive	—	Diesel Cooling System Additive	VC-8 / ESN-M99B169-A
Engine coolant flush	—	Engine Cooling System Iron Cleaner	VC-9
Fuel coolant - F-Super Duty	2.0 quarts (1.9L)	Motorcraft Premium Gold Engine Coolant (yellow-colored)	VC-7-B / WSS-M97B51-A1
Engine oil (includes filter change)	15.0 quarts (14.2L) <sup>2</sup>	Motorcraft Motor Oil 15W40 Super Duty Motorcraft Motor Oil 10W30 Super Duty	XO-15W40-QSD, XO-10W30-QSD / WSS-M2C171-E
Fuel tank	Refer to <i>Owner's Guide</i>		
Manual transmission fluid	5.8 quarts (5.5L)	Full Synthetic Manual Transmission Fluid	XT-M5-QS / WSD-M2C200-C
Automatic transmission fluid	Refer to <i>Owner's Guide</i>		

<sup>1</sup> Includes heater and 5.0 quarts (4.7L) in coolant recovery.

<sup>2</sup> Includes 1 quart (1.0L) in oil filter.

**Note:** Use only the recommended coolant for topping off and coolant changes. Using any other coolant may result in engine damage.

## Scheduled Maintenance: General Information

### SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE GUIDE

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN):

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

Owner Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Address: \_\_\_\_\_

**Note:** Use only a 6.4L diesel engine that has been configured for use with high sulfur diesel fuel in markets with diesel fuel that has sulfur content greater than 15 ppm. Using low sulfur diesel fuel (16–500 ppm) or high sulfur diesel fuel (greater than 500 ppm) in a 6.4L diesel engine designed to use only Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel fuel increases the likelihood of engine oil dilution with fuel which may lead to major engine damage. Vehicles that are operated in high sulfur diesel fuel markets must be configured for the high sulfur fuel and require a different maintenance schedule.

\* See *Special Operating Conditions* in the *Scheduled Maintenance: F-Super Duty* chapter

### GENERAL MAINTENANCE INFORMATION

#### Why maintain your vehicle?

This guide describes the scheduled maintenance required for your vehicle. Carefully following this schedule helps protect against major repair expenses resulting from neglect or inadequate maintenance and may also help to increase the value of your vehicle when you sell or trade it.

It is your responsibility to see that all scheduled maintenance is performed and that the materials used meet Ford engineering specifications. Failure to perform scheduled maintenance in this guide will invalidate warranty coverage on parts affected by the lack of maintenance. Be sure receipts for completed maintenance are kept with the vehicle and confirmation of the work performed is always recorded in this guide.

## Scheduled Maintenance: General Information

Your Ford dealer, or Ford Quality Care Center has factory trained technicians who can perform the required maintenance using genuine Ford parts. They are committed to meeting your service needs and to assuring your continuing satisfaction.

### Protecting your investment

Maintenance is an investment that will pay dividends in the form of improved reliability, durability and resale value. To ensure the proper performance of your vehicle and its emission control systems, it is imperative that scheduled maintenance be completed at the designated intervals.

Your vehicle is very sophisticated and built with multiple complex performance systems. Every manufacturer develops these systems using different specifications and performance features. That's why it's important to rely upon your Ford dealership to properly diagnose and repair your vehicle.

Ford Motor Company has recommended maintenance intervals for various parts and component systems based upon engineering testing. Ford Motor Company relies upon this testing to determine the most appropriate mileage for replacement of oils and fluids to protect your vehicle at the lowest overall cost to you and recommends against maintenance schedules that deviate from the scheduled maintenance information.

Ford strongly recommends the use of genuine Ford replacement parts. Parts other than Ford, Motorcraft or Ford authorized remanufactured parts that are used for maintenance replacement or for the service of components affecting emission control must be equivalent to genuine Ford Motor Company parts in performance and durability. It is the owner's responsibility to determine the equivalency of such parts. Please consult your *Warranty Guide* for complete warranty information.

Non-Ford approved chemicals or additives are not required for factory recommended maintenance. In fact, Ford Motor Company recommends against the use of such additive products unless specifically recommended by Ford for a particular application.

### Oils, Fluids and Flushing

In many cases, fluid discoloration is a normal operating characteristic of the chemical compound and may not necessarily demonstrate that a fluid needs to be changed. Oils and fluids identified in this guide should be changed at the specified interval or in conjunction with a repair. Flushing is a viable way to change fluid for many vehicle sub-systems during

## Scheduled Maintenance: General Information

scheduled maintenance and should only be done using the same fluid required to finish the maintenance procedure, or a Ford approved flushing chemical.

### **Engine Emissions label**

Emissions information appears on the Engine Emissions label on the engine valve cover. This decal identifies engine displacement and provides certain engine specifications.

Any modification of the emissions control system could create liability under federal law (U.S.) if made prior to sale and registration, under the laws of some states if made thereafter. Further, federal law prohibits vehicle manufacturers, dealers and other persons engaged in the business of repairing, servicing, selling, leasing or trading motor vehicles as well as fleet operations from knowingly removing or rendering an emissions control system inoperative after sale and delivery to an ultimate purchaser. In Canada, modifications of the emissions control system could create liability under applicable federal or provincial laws.

### **Genuine Ford Parts and Service**

When planning your maintenance services, consider your Ford dealership for all your vehicle's needs.

### **Get the most from your service and maintenance visits**

There are a lot of reasons why your Ford dealership is a great way to help keep your vehicle running great.

### **Convenience**

To make your service visit even more convenient, in many cases, you'll find extended evening hours and Saturday hours. How's that for quality service?

### **Factory-trained Technicians**

Ford service technicians participate in extensive factory-sponsored training to help them become the experts on the operation of your vehicle. Many participate in Ford-sponsored training to become certified. Ask your dealer about the training and certification their technicians have received.

### **Factory Authorized Systems Checks**

In the event that your vehicle experiences a component related concern, please contact your Ford dealership. The Ford Motor Company Trained Technicians who work at Ford dealerships are specifically trained to understand your vehicle.

## Scheduled Maintenance: General Information

A proper repair begins with a thorough system check. A Factory Authorized Systems Check can ONLY be found at a Ford dealership. In some circumstances, the technician may need to request your authorization to perform additional operations to determine the final diagnosis. The technician's goal is to ensure that your vehicle is fixed right the first time, at the best value to you.

The following list represents several of the Factory Authorized Systems Checks available at participating Ford dealers:

- Air Conditioning
- Service Engine Soon Light
- All Wheel Drive and 4 X 4
- Automatic Transmission
- Engine Cooling and Cabin Heating
- Steering and Suspension
- Charge/Start/Battery
- Wheel Alignment
- Anti-Lock Brake System

### **Genuine Ford and Motorcraft Replacement Parts**

Ford dealerships stock Ford and Motorcraft branded replacement parts. These parts meet or exceed Ford Motor Company's specifications, and we stand behind them. Maintenance parts installed at your Ford dealership carry a nationwide, 12 months, 12,000 mile (20,000 km) parts and labor limited warranty. Your dealer can give you details.

### **Value Shopping for Your Vehicle's Maintenance Needs**

Your dealership recognizes the competitive landscape of maintenance and light repair automotive services. With factory-trained technicians, and one-stop service from routine maintenance like oil changes and tire rotations to repairs like brake service, check out the value your Ford dealers can offer.

## **WHICH MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE SHOULD YOU FOLLOW?**

### **Owner Checks and Services**

#### **Refer to Mileage Intervals for Additional Checks and Services**

Certain basic maintenance checks and inspections should be performed by the owner or a service technician at the intervals indicated. Service information and supporting specifications are provided in the *Owner's Guide*.

## Scheduled Maintenance: General Information

Any adverse condition should be brought to the attention of your dealer or qualified service technician as soon as possible for the proper service advice. The owner maintenance service checks are generally not covered by warranties so you may be charged for labor, parts or lubricants used.

### Maximum oil change interval (E-Series)

- Normal schedule: 7,500 miles (12,000 km) or 6 months, whichever occurs first.
- Special Operating Conditions: 5,000 miles (8,000 km), 6 months or 200 hours of engine operation, see appropriate schedule.

### Maximum oil change interval (F-Super Duty)

- Normal schedule: 10,000 miles (16,000 km) or 6 months, whichever occurs first.
- Special Operating Conditions: 5,000 miles (8,000 km), 6 months or 200 hours of engine operation, see appropriate schedule.

### Maximum fuel filter change interval (E-Series)

- Normal schedule: 15,000 miles (24,000 km) or 12 months, whichever occurs first.
- Special Operating Conditions: 10,000 miles (16,000 km) or 400 hours of engine operation, see appropriate schedule.

### Maximum fuel filter change interval (F-Super Duty)

- Normal schedule: 20,000 miles (32,000 km) or 24 months, whichever occurs first.
- Special Operating Conditions: 10,000 miles (16,000 km) or 400 hours of engine operation, see appropriate schedule.

### Motorcraft Premium Gold Engine Coolant change interval (E-Series)

- 6 years or 105,000 miles (168,000 km) - change Motorcraft Premium Gold Engine Coolant (whichever comes first)
- After initial change - change Motorcraft Premium Gold Engine Coolant every 3 years or 45,000 miles (72,000 km)
- For special operating conditions, see *Special Operating Conditions* at the end of this section

### Motorcraft Premium Gold Engine Coolant change interval (F-Super Duty)

- 6 years or 100,000 miles (160,000 km) - change Motorcraft Premium Gold Engine Coolant (whichever comes first)
- After initial change - change Motorcraft Premium Gold Engine Coolant every 3 years or 50,000 miles (80,000 km)
- For special operating conditions, see *Special Operating Conditions* at the end of this section

## Scheduled Maintenance: General Information

### Check every month

- Check function of all interior and exterior lights
- Check tires for wear and adjust air pressure (including spare tire)
- Check that holes in the tail-pipe of the exhaust system are clear of debris-the holes/slots are functional (F-Super Duty)
- Check engine oil level
- Check windshield washer fluid level
- Check and drain fuel filter/water separator

### Check every six months

- Check lap/shoulder belts and seat latches for wear and function
- Check that externally-mounted spare tire is tight (see *Owner's Guide*)
- Check power steering fluid level
- Check washer spray, wiper operation and clean all wiper blades (replace as necessary)
- Check parking brake for proper operation
- Check and lubricate all hinges, latches and outside locks
- Check and lubricate door rubber weatherstrips
- Check and clean body and door drain holes
- Check safety warning lamps (brake, ABS, air bag, safety belt) for operation
- Check engine cooling system level, coolant strength and hoses
- Check fuel cooling system for fluid level and coolant strength (F-Super Duty)
- Check battery connections and clean if necessary
- Check clutch fluid level, if equipped

### Retightening lug nuts

- On vehicles equipped with single rear wheels, retighten the lug nuts to the specified torque at 500 miles (800 km) after any wheel disturbance (tire rotation, changing a flat tire, wheel removal, etc.).
- On vehicles equipped with dual rear wheels, retighten the wheel lug nuts to the specified torque at 100 miles (160 km), and again at 500 miles (800 km) of new vehicle operation and after any wheel disturbance (tire rotation, changing a flat tire, wheel removal, etc.).
- Refer to *Wheel Lug Nut Torque Specification* in your *Owner's Guide* for the proper lug nut torque specification.

## Scheduled Maintenance: General Information

### Multi-point Inspection

In order to keep your vehicle running right, it is important that you have the systems on your vehicle checked regularly. This can help identify any potential issue before there are any problems. Ford Motor Company suggests the following multi-point inspection to be performed at every scheduled maintenance interval as the way to ensure your vehicle keeps running right.

#### Multi-point inspection - recommended at every visit

- Check and top up fluid levels:
- brake
- coolant recovery reservoir
- fuel coolant recovery reservoir (F-Super Duty)
- manual and automatic transmission
- power steering
- window washer
- Inspect tires for wear and check air pressure, including spare.
- Check exhaust system for leaks, damage, loose parts and foreign materials.
- Check that holes in the tail-pipe of the exhaust system are clear of debris; the holes/slots are functional (F-Super Duty)
- Check battery performance.
- Check operation of horn, exterior lamps, turn signals and hazard warning lights.
- Check radiator, coolers and heater and air conditioning hoses.
- Inspect windshield washer spray and wiper operation.
- Check windshield for cracks, chips and pitting.
- Inspect for oil and fluid leaks.
- Inspect air filter.
- Check shocks and struts and other suspension components for leaks and damage.

## Scheduled Maintenance: E-Series

### NORMAL SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE AND LOG

The following section contains the “Normal Schedule.” This schedule is presented at specific mileage intervals with exceptions noted.

#### **Additional information available on the Web**

To learn more about the importance of routine and dealer-performed maintenance on your vehicle, please visit the Ford Customer Service website. You’ll also find important warranty information, customer assistance, technical expertise, frequently asked questions and much more. The website location is at: [www.ford.com](http://www.ford.com) in the U.S. or [www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca) in Canada.

Then go to the vehicles and service pick at the web site.

<b>7,500 miles (12,000 km)</b>					
<input type="checkbox"/> Change engine oil and replace oil filter <input type="checkbox"/> Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted) <input type="checkbox"/> Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required <input type="checkbox"/> Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)	<div style="text-align: center; border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"><b>DEALER VALIDATION:</b></div>   <table style="width: 100%; border: none;"> <tr> <td style="border: none;"><b>RO#:</b></td> <td style="border: none;"><b>P&amp;A CODE:</b></td> </tr> <tr> <td style="border: none;"><b>DATE:</b></td> <td style="border: none;"><b>MILEAGE:</b></td> </tr> </table>	<b>RO#:</b>	<b>P&amp;A CODE:</b>	<b>DATE:</b>	<b>MILEAGE:</b>
<b>RO#:</b>	<b>P&amp;A CODE:</b>				
<b>DATE:</b>	<b>MILEAGE:</b>				

<b>15,000 miles (24,000 km)</b>					
<input type="checkbox"/> Change engine oil and replace oil filter <input type="checkbox"/> Replace engine- and frame-mounted fuel filters <input type="checkbox"/> Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted) <input type="checkbox"/> Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required <input type="checkbox"/> Inspect and lubricate steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie rod ends, driveshaft and U-joints (lubricate if equipped with Zerk fittings) <input type="checkbox"/> Inspect engine cooling system level, coolant strength and hoses <input type="checkbox"/> Inspect brake pads, shoes, rotors, drums, brake lines and hoses and parking brake system. <input type="checkbox"/> Inspect exhaust system and heat shields <input type="checkbox"/> Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)	<div style="text-align: center; border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"><b>DEALER VALIDATION:</b></div>   <table style="width: 100%; border: none;"> <tr> <td style="border: none;"><b>RO#:</b></td> <td style="border: none;"><b>P&amp;A CODE:</b></td> </tr> <tr> <td style="border: none;"><b>DATE:</b></td> <td style="border: none;"><b>MILEAGE:</b></td> </tr> </table>	<b>RO#:</b>	<b>P&amp;A CODE:</b>	<b>DATE:</b>	<b>MILEAGE:</b>
<b>RO#:</b>	<b>P&amp;A CODE:</b>				
<b>DATE:</b>	<b>MILEAGE:</b>				

## Scheduled Maintenance: E-Series

### 22,500 miles (36,000 km)

- Change engine oil and replace oil filter
- Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)
- Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required
- Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)

DEALER VALIDATION:

RO#:                      P&A CODE:  
DATE:                     MILEAGE:

### 30,000 miles (48,000 km)

- Change engine oil and replace oil filter
- Replace engine- and frame-mounted fuel filters
- Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)
- Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required.
- Inspect and lubricate steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie rod ends, driveshaft and U-joints (lubricate if equipped with Zerk fittings)
- Inspect engine cooling system level, coolant strength and hoses
- Inspect brake pads, shoes, rotors, drums, brake lines and hoses and parking brake system
- Inspect exhaust system and heat shields
- Inspect automatic transmission fluid level
- Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)

DEALER VALIDATION:

RO#:                      P&A CODE:  
DATE:                     MILEAGE:

### 37,500 miles (60,000 km)

- Change engine oil and replace oil filter
- Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)
- Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required
- Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)

DEALER VALIDATION:

RO#:                      P&A CODE:  
DATE:                     MILEAGE:

## Scheduled Maintenance: E-Series

### 45,000 miles (72,000 km)

- Change engine oil and replace oil filter
- Replace engine- and frame-mounted fuel filters
- Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)
- Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required
- Inspect and lubricate steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie rod ends, driveshaft and U-joints (lubricate if equipped with Zerk fittings)
- Inspect engine cooling system level, coolant strength and hoses
- Inspect brake pads, shoes, rotors, drums, brake lines and hoses and parking brake system.
- Inspect exhaust system and heat shields
- Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)

DEALER VALIDATION:

RO#:

P&A CODE:

DATE:

MILEAGE:

### 52,500 miles (84,000 km)

- Change engine oil and replace oil filter
- Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)
- Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required
- Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)

DEALER VALIDATION:

RO#:

P&A CODE:

DATE:

MILEAGE:

## Scheduled Maintenance: E-Series

### 60,000 miles (96,000 km)

- Change engine oil and replace oil filter
- Replace engine- and frame-mounted fuel filters
- Change automatic transmission fluid and filter on all vehicles equipped with the Torqshift transmission. Consult your dealer for particular requirements.
- Replace front wheel bearing grease and grease seals on 4x2 wheel bearings (if non-sealed bearings)
- Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)
- Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required
- Inspect and lubricate steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie rod ends, driveshaft and U-joints (lubricate if equipped with Zerk fittings)
- Inspect engine cooling system level, coolant strength and hoses
- Inspect brake pads, shoes, rotors, drums, brake lines and hoses and parking brake system.
- Inspect exhaust system and heat shields
- Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)

<b>DEALER VALIDATION:</b>	
<b>RO#:</b>	<b>P&amp;A CODE:</b>
<b>DATE:</b>	<b>MILEAGE:</b>

### 67,500 miles (108,000 km)

- Change engine oil and replace oil filter
- Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)
- Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required
- Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)

<b>DEALER VALIDATION:</b>	
<b>RO#:</b>	<b>P&amp;A CODE:</b>
<b>DATE:</b>	<b>MILEAGE:</b>

## Scheduled Maintenance: E-Series

### 75,000 miles (120,000 km)

- Change engine oil and replace oil filter
- Replace engine- and frame-mounted fuel filters
- Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)
- Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required
- Inspect and lubricate steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie rod ends, driveshaft and U-joints (lubricate if equipped with Zerk fittings)
- Inspect engine cooling system level, coolant strength and hoses
- Inspect brake pads, shoes, rotors, drums, brake lines and hoses and parking brake system.
- Inspect exhaust system and heat shields
- Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)

DEALER VALIDATION:

RO#:

P&A CODE:

DATE:

MILEAGE:

### 82,500 miles (132,000 km)

- Change engine oil and replace oil filter
- Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)
- Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required
- Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)

DEALER VALIDATION:

RO#:

P&A CODE:

DATE:

MILEAGE:

## Scheduled Maintenance: E-Series

### 90,000 miles (144,000 km)

- Change engine oil and replace oil filter
- Replace engine- and frame-mounted fuel filters
- Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)
- Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required
- Inspect and lubricate steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie rod ends, driveshaft and U-joints (lubricate if equipped with Zerk fittings)
- Inspect engine cooling system level, coolant strength and hoses
- Inspect brake pads, shoes, rotors, drums, brake lines and hoses and parking brake system.
- Inspect exhaust system and heat shields
- Inspect accessory drive belt(s)
- Inspect automatic transmission fluid level
- Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)

<b>DEALER VALIDATION:</b>	
<b>RO#:</b>	<b>P&amp;A CODE:</b>
<b>DATE:</b>	<b>MILEAGE:</b>

### 97,500 miles (156,000 km)

- Change engine oil and replace oil filter
- Change rear axle lubricant (E-450 equipped with DANA axles only)
- Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)
- Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required
- Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)

<b>DEALER VALIDATION:</b>	
<b>RO#:</b>	<b>P&amp;A CODE:</b>
<b>DATE:</b>	<b>MILEAGE:</b>

## Scheduled Maintenance: E-Series

### 105,000 miles (168,000 km)

- Change engine oil and replace oil filter
- Replace engine- and frame-mounted fuel filters
- Change engine coolant (see Motorcraft Premium Gold Coolant Change Record)
- Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)
- Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required
- Inspect and lubricate steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie rod ends, driveshaft and U-joints (lubricate if equipped with Zerik fittings)
- Inspect engine cooling system level, coolant strength and hoses
- Inspect brake pads, shoes, rotors, drums, brake lines and hoses and parking brake system.
- Inspect exhaust system and heat shields
- Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)

**DEALER VALIDATION:**

**RO#:**                      **P&A CODE:**  
**DATE:**                    **MILEAGE:**

### 112,500 miles (180,000 km)

- Change engine oil and replace oil filter
- Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)
- Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required
- Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)

**DEALER VALIDATION:**

**RO#:**                      **P&A CODE:**  
**DATE:**                    **MILEAGE:**

## Scheduled Maintenance: E-Series

### 120,000 miles (192,000 km)

- Change engine oil and replace oil filter
- Replace engine- and frame-mounted fuel filters
- Change automatic transmission fluid and filter on all vehicles equipped with the Torqshift transmission. Consult your dealer for particular requirements.
- Replace front wheel bearing grease and grease seals on 4x2 wheel bearings (if non-sealed bearings)
- Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)
- Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required
- Inspect and lubricate steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie rod ends, driveshaft and U-joints (lubricate if equipped with Zerk fittings)
- Inspect engine cooling system level, coolant strength and hoses
- Inspect brake pads, shoes, rotors, drums, brake lines and hoses and parking brake system
- Inspect exhaust system and heat shields
- Inspect accessory drive belt(s)
- Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)

**DEALER VALIDATION:**

<b>RO#:</b>	<b>P&amp;A CODE:</b>
<b>DATE:</b>	<b>MILEAGE:</b>

### 127,500 miles (204,000 km)

- Change engine oil and replace oil filter
- Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)
- Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required
- Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)

**DEALER VALIDATION:**

<b>RO#:</b>	<b>P&amp;A CODE:</b>
<b>DATE:</b>	<b>MILEAGE:</b>

## Scheduled Maintenance: E-Series

### 135,000 miles (216,000 km)

- Change engine oil and replace oil filter
- Replace engine- and frame-mounted fuel filters
- Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)
- Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required
- Inspect and lubricate steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie rod ends, driveshaft and U-joints (lubricate if equipped with Zerk fittings)
- Inspect engine cooling system level, coolant strength and hoses
- Inspect brake pads, shoes, rotors, drums, brake lines and hoses and parking brake system.
- Inspect exhaust system and heat shields
- Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)

DEALER VALIDATION:

RO#:

P&A CODE:

DATE:

MILEAGE:

### 142,500 miles (228,000 km)

- Change engine oil and replace oil filter
- Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)
- Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required
- Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)

DEALER VALIDATION:

RO#:

P&A CODE:

DATE:

MILEAGE:

## Scheduled Maintenance: E-Series

### 150,000 miles (240,000 km)

- Change engine oil and replace oil filter
- Replace engine- and frame-mounted fuel filters
- Replace accessory drive belt(s) (if not replaced in the last 100,000 miles [160,000 km])
- Replace front wheel bearing and wheel bearing grease seals (if non-sealed bearings)
- Change Premium Gold coolant (see Motorcraft Premium Gold Coolant Change Record)
- Change rear wheel drive (RWD) axle fluid - DANA axles **not** using synthetic fluid only
- Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)
- Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required
- Inspect and lubricate steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie rod ends, driveshaft and U-joints (lubricate if equipped with ZerK fittings)
- Inspect engine cooling system level, coolant strength and hoses
- Inspect brake pads, shoes, rotors, drums, brake lines and hoses and parking brake system.
- Inspect exhaust system and heat shields
- Inspect automatic transmission fluid level
- Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)

**DEALER VALIDATION:**

**RO#:**                      **P&A CODE:**  
**DATE:**                    **MILEAGE:**

## Scheduled Maintenance: E-Series

### SPECIAL OPERATING CONDITIONS

<b>Towing a trailer or using a camper or car-top carrier</b>	
<b>Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km) or 6 months</b>	Change engine oil and replace filter
<b>Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km)</b>	Check air filter restriction gauge (replace air filter as required or when air filter restriction gauge indicates) Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise
<b>Every 10,000 miles (16,000 km) or 400 hours of engine operation (whichever comes first)</b>	Change engine-mounted fuel filter and chassis-mounted (FCM) fuel filter
<b>Every 15,000 miles (24,000 km) or 600 hours of engine operation (whichever comes first)</b>	Check the Nitrite level of the coolant using Fleetguard® DCA4 Test Strip Kit CC2602A to determine if recharge is required. If the Nitrite level is above 800 ppm no action is required. If the Nitrite level is 800 ppm or lower add 32 fl. oz. (946 mL) of Supplemental Coolant Additive Motorcraft VC-8 or equivalent.
<b>Every 30,000 miles (48,000 km)</b>	Replace wheel bearing grease and grease seals on 4x2 wheel bearings (if non-sealed bearings)
<b>Every 30,000 miles (48,000 km) or 1200 hours of engine operation (whichever comes first)</b>	Check the Nitrite level of the coolant using Fleetguard® DCA4 Test Strip Kit CC2602A to determine if recharge is required. If the Nitrite level is above 800 ppm no action is required. If the Nitrite level is 800 ppm or lower add 32 fl. oz. (946 mL) of Supplemental Coolant Additive Motorcraft VC-8 or equivalent.
<b>Every 45,000 miles (72,000 km) or 1800 hours of operation (whichever comes first)</b>	Flush & refill engine coolant (refer to Motorcraft Premium Gold Engine Coolant Change Record) — Do not add Supplemental Coolant Additive

**Note:** When adding supplemental coolant additive, do not exceed the specified maximum of 32 fl. oz. (946 mL). Operating the engine with excessive supplemental coolant additive can cause severe engine damage.

## Scheduled Maintenance: E-Series

### Extensive idling and/or low-speed driving for long distances as in heavy commercial use such as delivery, taxi, patrol or livery

<b>Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km), 6 months or 200 hours of engine operation (whichever comes first)</b>	Change engine oil and replace filter
<b>Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km)</b>	Check air filter restriction gauge (replace air filter as required or when air filter restriction gauge indicates) Inspect brake system Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise Inspect and lubricate steering and suspension ball joints
<b>Every 10,000 miles (16,000 km) or 400 hours of engine operation (whichever comes first)</b>	Change engine-mounted fuel filter and chassis-mounted (FCM) fuel filter
<b>Every 15,000 miles (24,000 km) or 600 hours of engine operation (whichever comes first)</b>	Check the Nitrite level of the coolant using Fleetguard® DCA4 Test Strip Kit CC2602A to determine if recharge is required. If the Nitrite level is above 800 ppm no action is required. If the Nitrite level is 800 ppm or lower add 32 fl. oz. (946 mL) of Supplemental Coolant Additive Motorcraft VC-8 or equivalent.
<b>Every 30,000 miles (48,000 km)</b>	Replace wheel bearing grease and grease seals on 4x2 wheel bearings (if non-sealed bearings)
<b>Every 30,000 miles (48,000 km) or 1200 hours of engine operation (whichever comes first)</b>	Check the Nitrite level of the coolant using Fleetguard® DCA4 Test Strip Kit CC2602A to determine if recharge is required. If the Nitrite level is above 800 ppm no action is required. If the Nitrite level is 800 ppm or lower add 32 fl. oz. (946 mL) of Supplemental Coolant Additive Motorcraft VC-8 or equivalent.
<b>Every 45,000 miles (72,000 km) or 1800 hours of operation (whichever comes first)</b>	Flush & refill engine coolant (refer to Motorcraft Premium Gold Engine Coolant Change Record) — Do not add Supplemental Coolant Additive
<b>As required</b>	Replace cabin air filter, if equipped

**Note:** When adding supplemental coolant additive, do not exceed the specified maximum of 32 fl. oz. (946 mL). Operating the engine with excessive supplemental coolant additive can cause severe engine damage.

## Scheduled Maintenance: E-Series

<b>Extensive idling if vehicle is used for stationary operation</b>	
<b>Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km), 3 months or 200 hours of engine operation (whichever comes first) if vehicle is used for stationary operation</b>	Change engine oil and replace filter
<b>Every 10,000 miles (16,000 km), 400 hours of engine operation (whichever comes first) if vehicle is used for stationary operation</b>	Change engine-mounted fuel filter and chassis-mounted (FCM) fuel filter
<b>Every 15,000 miles (24,000 km) or 600 hours of engine operation (whichever comes first)</b>	Check the Nitrite level of the coolant using Fleetguard® DCA4 Test Strip Kit CC2602A to determine if recharge is required. If the Nitrite level is above 800 ppm no action is required. If the Nitrite level is 800 ppm or lower add 32 fl. oz. (946 mL) of Supplemental Coolant Additive Motorcraft VC-8 or equivalent.
<b>Every 30,000 miles (48,000 km) or 1200 hours of operation (whichever comes first)</b>	Check the Nitrite level of the coolant using Fleetguard® DCA4 Test Strip Kit CC2602A to determine if recharge is required. If the Nitrite level is above 800 ppm no action is required. If the Nitrite level is 800 ppm or lower add 32 fl. oz. (946 mL) of Supplemental Coolant Additive Motorcraft VC-8 or equivalent.
<b>Every 45,000 miles (72,000 km) or 1800 hours of operation (whichever comes first)</b>	Flush & refill engine coolant (refer to Motorcraft Premium Gold Engine Coolant Change Record) — Do not add Supplemental Coolant Additive

**Note:** For vehicles that operate under severe service conditions such as frequent or extended idle (over 10 minutes per hour of normal driving), maintenance requirements need to be adjusted. This needs to be considered when determining vehicle service intervals.

**Note:** When adding supplemental coolant additive, do not exceed the specified maximum of 32 fl. oz. (946 mL). Operating the engine with excessive supplemental coolant additive can cause severe engine damage.

## Scheduled Maintenance: E-Series

### Operating in dusty conditions such as unpaved or dusty roads

<b>Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km) or 6 months</b>	Change engine oil and replace filter
<b>Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km)</b>	Check air filter restriction gauge (replace air filter as required or when air filter restriction gauge indicates) Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise Inspect and lubricate steering and suspension ball joints
<b>Every 10,000 miles (16,000 km) or 400 hours of engine operation (whichever comes first)</b>	Change engine-mounted fuel filter and chassis-mounted (FCM) fuel filter
<b>Every 30,000 miles (48,000 km)</b>	Replace wheel bearing grease and grease seals on 4x2 wheel bearings (if non-sealed bearings)
<b>As required</b>	Replace cabin air filter, if equipped

### Off-road operation

<b>Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km) or 6 months</b>	Change engine oil and replace filter
<b>Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km)</b>	Check air filter restriction gauge (replace air filter as required or when air filter restriction gauge indicates) Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise
<b>Every 10,000 miles (16,000 km) or 400 hours of engine operation (whichever comes first)</b>	Change engine-mounted fuel filter and chassis-mounted (FCM) fuel filter
<b>Every 30,000 miles (48,000 miles)</b>	Replace wheel bearing grease and grease seals on 4x2 wheel bearings (if non-sealed bearings)
<b>Every 50,000 miles (80,000 km)</b>	Change rear axle lubricant (E-450 only)
<b>As required</b>	Inspect and lubricate steering and suspension ball joints Inspect and lubricate U-joints

## Scheduled Maintenance: E-Series

### Short trip in cold operating conditions

**Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km) or 6 months** Change engine oil and replace filter

**Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km)** Inspect and lubricate steering and suspension ball joints  
Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise

**Every 10,000 miles (16,000 km) or 400 hours of engine operation (whichever comes first)** Change engine-mounted fuel filter and chassis-mounted (FCM) fuel filter

### Use of Biodiesel, up to and including 5% Biodiesel (B5)

**Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km) or 200 hours of operation (whichever comes first)** Change engine oil and replace filter

**Every 10,000 miles (16,000 km) or 400 hours of operation (whichever comes first)** Replace engine-mounted fuel filter and chassis-mounted (FCM) fuel filter

## Scheduled Maintenance: E-Series

### Special Operating Conditions Log

<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p>RO#:            P&amp;A CODE: DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p>RO#:            P&amp;A CODE: DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p>RO#:            P&amp;A CODE: DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p>RO#:            P&amp;A CODE: DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p>RO#:            P&amp;A CODE: DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p>RO#:            P&amp;A CODE: DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p>RO#:            P&amp;A CODE: DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p>RO#:            P&amp;A CODE: DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p>RO#:            P&amp;A CODE: DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p>RO#:            P&amp;A CODE: DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>

## Scheduled Maintenance: E-Series

### Special Operating Conditions Log

<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE: DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE: DATE: MILEAGE:</p>
<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE: DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE: DATE: MILEAGE:</p>
<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE: DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE: DATE: MILEAGE:</p>
<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE: DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE: DATE: MILEAGE:</p>
<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE: DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE: DATE: MILEAGE:</p>

## Scheduled Maintenance: F-Super Duty

### NORMAL SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE AND LOG

The following section contains the “Normal Schedule.” This schedule is presented at specific mileage intervals with exceptions noted.

#### ***Additional information available on the Web***

To learn more about the importance of routine and dealer-performed maintenance on your vehicle, please visit the Ford Customer Service website. You’ll also find important warranty information, customer assistance, technical expertise, frequently asked questions and much more. The website location is at: [www.ford.com](http://www.ford.com) in the U.S. or [www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca) in Canada.

Then go to the vehicles and service pick at the web site.

5,000 miles (8,000 km)							
<input type="checkbox"/> Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheels for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted) <input type="checkbox"/> Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required <input type="checkbox"/> Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)	<table border="1"> <tr> <td colspan="2">DEALER VALIDATION:</td> </tr> <tr> <td>RO#:</td> <td>P&amp;A CODE:</td> </tr> <tr> <td>DATE:</td> <td>MILEAGE:</td> </tr> </table>	DEALER VALIDATION:		RO#:	P&A CODE:	DATE:	MILEAGE:
DEALER VALIDATION:							
RO#:	P&A CODE:						
DATE:	MILEAGE:						

10,000 miles (16,000 km)							
<input type="checkbox"/> Change engine oil and replace oil filter <input type="checkbox"/> Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheels for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted) <input type="checkbox"/> Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required <input type="checkbox"/> Lubricate steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie rod ends, drive shaft, 4x4 front axle U-joints and U-joints (lubricate if equipped with Zerk fittings) <input type="checkbox"/> Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)	<table border="1"> <tr> <td colspan="2">DEALER VALIDATION:</td> </tr> <tr> <td>RO#:</td> <td>P&amp;A CODE:</td> </tr> <tr> <td>DATE:</td> <td>MILEAGE:</td> </tr> </table>	DEALER VALIDATION:		RO#:	P&A CODE:	DATE:	MILEAGE:
DEALER VALIDATION:							
RO#:	P&A CODE:						
DATE:	MILEAGE:						

## Scheduled Maintenance: F-Super Duty

### 20,000 miles (32,000 km)

- Change engine oil and replace oil filter
- Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheels for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)
- Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required
- Replace engine- and frame-mounted fuel filters
- Inspect engine cooling system level, coolant strength and hoses
- Inspect brake pads/shoes/rotors/drums, brakes lines & hoses, and parking brake system
- Inspect exhaust system and heat shields
- Inspect and lubricate steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie rod ends, drive shaft, 4x4 front axle U-joints and U-joints
- Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)

DEALER VALIDATION:

RO#: P&A CODE:  
DATE: MILEAGE:

### 30,000 miles (48,000 km)

- Change engine oil and replace oil filter
- Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheels for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)
- Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required
- Lubricate steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie rod ends, drive shaft, 4x4 front axle U-joints and U-joints (lubricate if equipped with Zerk fittings)
- Inspect automatic transmission fluid level on all vehicles equipped with the Torqshift transmission
- Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)

DEALER VALIDATION:

RO#: P&A CODE:  
DATE: MILEAGE:

### 40,000 miles (64,000 km)

- Change engine oil and replace oil filter
- Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheels for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)
- Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required
- Replace engine- and frame-mounted fuel filters
- Inspect fuel cooling system level, strength and hoses
- Inspect engine cooling system level, coolant strength and hoses
- Inspect brake pads/shoes/rotors/drums, brakes lines & hoses, and parking brake system
- Inspect exhaust system and heat shields
- Inspect and lubricate steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie rod ends, drive shaft, 4x4 front axle U-joints and U-joints
- Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)

DEALER VALIDATION:

RO#: P&A CODE:  
DATE: MILEAGE:

## Scheduled Maintenance: F-Super Duty

### 50,000 miles (80,000 km)

- Change engine oil and replace oil filter
- Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheels for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)
- Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required
- Change rear axle fluid (DANA axles only. Refer to *Special Operating Conditions* for more information)
- Lubricate steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie rod ends, drive shaft, 4x4 front axle U-joints and U-joints (lubricate if equipped with Zerk fittings)
- Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)

DEALER VALIDATION:

RO#: P&A CODE:  
DATE: MILEAGE:

### 60,000 miles (96,000 km)

- Change engine oil and replace oil filter
- Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheels for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)
- Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required
- Replace engine- and frame-mounted fuel filters
- Inspect fuel cooling system level, strength and hoses
- Inspect engine cooling system level, coolant strength and hoses
- Inspect brake pads/shoes/rotors/drums, brakes lines & hoses, and parking brake system
- Replace front wheel bearing grease and grease seals on 4x2 wheel bearings (if non-sealed bearings)
- Inspect exhaust system and heat shields
- Change automatic transmission fluid and filter on all vehicles equipped with the Torqshift transmission. Consult your dealer for particular requirements.
- Inspect and lubricate steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie rod ends, drive shaft, 4x4 front axle U-joints and U-joints
- Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)

DEALER VALIDATION:

RO#: P&A CODE:  
DATE: MILEAGE:

## Scheduled Maintenance: F-Super Duty

### 70,000 miles (112,000 km)

- Change engine oil and replace oil filter
- Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheels for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)
- Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required
- Lubricate steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie rod ends, drive shaft, 4x4 front axle U-joints and U-joints (lubricate if equipped with Zerk fittings)
- Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)

DEALER VALIDATION:

RO#:

P&amp;A CODE:

DATE:

MILEAGE:

### 80,000 miles (128,000 km)

- Change engine oil and replace oil filter
- Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheels for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)
- Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required
- Replace engine- and frame-mounted fuel filters
- Inspect fuel cooling system level, strength and hoses
- Inspect engine cooling system level, coolant strength and hoses
- Inspect brake pads/shoes/rotors/drums, brakes lines & hoses, and parking brake system
- Inspect exhaust system and heat shields
- Inspect and lubricate steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie rod ends, drive shaft, 4x4 front axle U-joints and U-joints
- Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)

DEALER VALIDATION:

RO#:

P&amp;A CODE:

DATE:

MILEAGE:

### 90,000 miles (144,000 km)

- Change engine oil and replace oil filter
- Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheels for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)
- Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required
- Lubricate steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie rod ends, drive shaft, 4x4 front axle U-joints and U-joints (lubricate if equipped with Zerk fittings)
- Inspect automatic transmission fluid level on all vehicles equipped with the Torqshift transmission
- Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)

DEALER VALIDATION:

RO#:

P&amp;A CODE:

DATE:

MILEAGE:

## Scheduled Maintenance: F-Super Duty

### 100,000 miles (160,000 km)

- Change engine oil and replace oil filter
- Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheels for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)
- Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required
- Replace engine- and frame-mounted fuel filters
- Inspect fuel cooling system level, strength and hoses
- Inspect engine cooling system level, coolant strength and hoses
- Inspect brake pads/shoes/rotors/drums, brakes lines & hoses, and parking brake system
- Inspect exhaust system and heat shields
- Inspect accessory drive belt
- Change engine coolant and fuel coolant (refer to *Motorcraft Premium Gold Engine Coolant Change Record*)
- Change manual transmission fluid (refer to *Special Operating Conditions* for more information)
- Change rear axle fluid (DANA axles only. Refer to *Special Operating Conditions* for more information)
- Inspect and lubricate steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie rod ends, drive shaft, 4x4 front axle U-joints and U-joints
- Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)

DEALER VALIDATION:

RO#: P&A CODE:  
DATE: MILEAGE:

### 110,000 miles (176,000 km)

- Change engine oil and replace oil filter
- Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheels for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)
- Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required
- Lubricate steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie rod ends, drive shaft, 4x4 front axle U-joints and U-joints (lubricate if equipped with zerk fittings)
- Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)

DEALER VALIDATION:

RO#: P&A CODE:  
DATE: MILEAGE:

## Scheduled Maintenance: F-Super Duty

### 120,000 miles (192,000 km)

- Change engine oil and replace oil filter
- Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheels for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)
- Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required
- Replace engine- and frame-mounted fuel filters
- Inspect fuel cooling system level, strength and hoses
- Inspect engine cooling system level, coolant strength and hoses
- Inspect brake pads/shoes/rotors/drums, brakes lines & hoses, and parking brake system
- Replace front wheel bearing grease and grease seals on 4x2 wheel bearings (if non-sealed bearings)
- Inspect exhaust system and heat shields
- Inspect accessory drive belt
- Change automatic transmission fluid and filter on all vehicles equipped with the Torqshift transmission. Consult your dealer for particular requirements.
- Inspect and lubricate steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie rod ends, drive shaft, 4x4 front axle U-joints and U-joints
- Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)

**DEALER VALIDATION:**

**RO#:**                      **P&A CODE:**  
**DATE:**                      **MILEAGE:**

### 130,000 miles (208,000 km)

- Change engine oil and replace oil filter
- Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheels for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)
- Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required
- Lubricate steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie rod ends, drive shaft, 4x4 front axle U-joints and U-joints (lubricate if equipped with Zerk fittings)
- Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)

**DEALER VALIDATION:**

**RO#:**                      **P&A CODE:**  
**DATE:**                      **MILEAGE:**

## Scheduled Maintenance: F-Super Duty

### 140,000 miles (224,000 km)

- Change engine oil and replace oil filter
- Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheels for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)
- Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required
- Replace engine- and frame-mounted fuel filters
- Inspect fuel cooling system level, strength and hoses
- Inspect engine cooling system level, coolant strength and hoses
- Inspect brake pads/shoes/rotors/drums, brakes lines & hoses, and parking brake system
- Inspect exhaust system and heat shields
- Inspect and lubricate steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie rod ends, drive shaft, 4x4 front axle U-joints and U-joints
- Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)

DEALER VALIDATION:

RO#: P&A CODE:  
DATE: MILEAGE:

### 150,000 miles (240,000 km)

- Change engine oil and replace oil filter
- Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheels for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)
- Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required
- Replace accessory drive belt if not replaced in the last 100,000 miles (160,000 km)
- Change engine coolant and fuel coolant (refer to *Motorcraft Premium Gold Engine Coolant Change Record*)
- Replace front wheel bearing and wheel bearing grease seals on 4x2 vehicles (if non-sealed bearings)
- Inspect exhaust system and heat shields
- Change transfer case fluid (4x4 vehicles) (refer to *Special Operating Conditions* for more information)
- Change front axle lubricant
- Change rear axle fluid (DANA axles only. Refer to *Special Operating Conditions* for more information)
- Lubricate steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie rod ends, drive shaft, 4x4 front axle U-joints and U-joints (if equipped with Zerk fittings)
- Inspect automatic transmission fluid level on all vehicles equipped with the Torqshift transmission
- Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)

DEALER VALIDATION:

RO#: P&A CODE:  
DATE: MILEAGE:

## Scheduled Maintenance: F-Super Duty

### SPECIAL OPERATING CONDITIONS

#### Frequent or extended idling (over 10 minutes per hour of normal driving)

<b>Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km)</b>	Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise
<b>Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km) or 6 months</b>	Inspect and lubricate U-joints
<b>Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km), 3 months or 200 hours of engine operation (whichever comes first)</b>	Change engine oil and replace filter
<b>Every 10,000 miles (16,000 km), 6 months or 400 hours of engine operation (whichever comes first)</b>	Change engine-mounted fuel filter and chassis-mounted (HFCM) fuel filter
<b>Every 20,000 miles (32,000 km) or 800 hours of engine operation (whichever comes first)</b>	Check the Nitrite level of the coolant using Fleetguard® DCA4 Test Strip Kit CC2602A to determine if recharge is required. If the Nitrite level is above 800 ppm no action is required. If the Nitrite level is 800 ppm or lower add 32 fl. oz. (946 mL) of Supplemental Coolant Additive Motorcraft VC-8 or equivalent.
<b>Every 40,000 miles (64,000 km) or 1600 hours of engine operation (whichever comes first)</b>	Check the Nitrite level of the coolant using Fleetguard® DCA4 Test Strip Kit CC2602A to determine if recharge is required. If the Nitrite level is above 800 ppm no action is required. If the Nitrite level is 800 ppm or lower add 32 fl. oz. (946 mL) of Supplemental Coolant Additive Motorcraft VC-8 or equivalent.
<b>Every 60,000 miles (96,000 km) or 2400 hours of engine operation (whichever comes first)</b>	Flush & refill engine coolant (refer to Motorcraft Premium Gold Engine Coolant Change Record) – Do not add Supplemental Coolant Additive

**Note:** For vehicles that operate under severe service conditions such as frequent or extended idle (over 10 minutes per hour of normal driving), maintenance requirements need to be adjusted. This needs to be considered when determining vehicle service intervals.

**Note:** When adding supplemental coolant additive, do not exceed the specified maximum of 32 fl. oz. (946 mL). Operating the engine with excessive supplemental coolant additive can cause severe engine damage.

## Scheduled Maintenance: F-Super Duty

**If vehicle is operated in sustained ambient temperatures below -10°F (-23°C) or above 100°F (38°C)**

**Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km)** Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise

**Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km),  
3 months or 200 hours** Change engine oil and replace filter

Inspect and lubricate steering and suspension ball joints and tie rod ends (if equipped with zerk fittings)

**Every 10,000 miles (16,000 km),  
6 months or 400 hours of engine  
operation (whichever comes first)** Change engine-mounted fuel filter and chassis-mounted (HFCM) fuel filter

**Every 30,000 miles (48,000 km)** Replace wheel bearing grease and grease seals on 4x2 wheel bearings (if non-sealed bearings)

**Every 60,000 miles (96,000 km)** Change transfer case fluid (4x4 only)

## Scheduled Maintenance: F-Super Duty

### Frequent low speed operation, consistent heavy traffic less than 25 mph (40 km/h) and/or long rush hour traffic

<b>Every 5,000 (8,000 km) miles</b>	Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise Check air filter restriction gauge (replace air filter as required or when air filter restriction gauge indicates) Inspect brake system pads and rotors Inspect and lubricate steering and suspension ball joints and tie rod ends (if equipped with zerk fittings)
<b>Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km), 6 months or 200 hours of engine operation (whichever comes first)</b>	Change engine oil and replace filter
<b>Every 10,000 miles (16,000 km), 6 months or 400 hours of engine operation (whichever comes first)</b>	Change engine-mounted fuel filter and chassis-mounted (HFCM) fuel filter
<b>Every 20,000 miles (32,000 km) or 800 hours of engine operation (whichever comes first)</b>	Check the Nitrite level of the coolant using Fleetguard® DCA4 Test Strip Kit CC2602A to determine if recharge is required. If the Nitrite level is above 800 ppm no action is required. If the Nitrite level is 800 ppm or lower add 32 fl. oz. (946 mL) of Supplemental Coolant Additive Motorcraft VC-8 or equivalent.
<b>Every 40,000 miles (64,000 km) or 1600 hours of engine operation (whichever comes first)</b>	Check the Nitrite level of the coolant using Fleetguard® DCA4 Test Strip Kit CC2602A to determine if recharge is required. If the Nitrite level is above 800 ppm no action is required. If the Nitrite level is 800 ppm or lower add 32 fl. oz. (946 mL) of Supplemental Coolant Additive Motorcraft VC-8 or equivalent.
<b>Every 60,000 miles (96,000 km)</b>	Change transfer case fluid (4x4 only)
<b>Every 60,000 miles (96,000 km) or 2400 hours of engine operation (whichever comes first)</b>	Flush & refill engine coolant (refer to Motorcraft Premium Gold Engine Coolant Change Record) – Do not add Supplemental Coolant Additive

**Note:** When adding supplemental coolant additive, do not exceed the specified maximum of 32 fl. oz. (946 mL). Operating the engine with excessive supplemental coolant additive can cause severe engine damage.

## Scheduled Maintenance: F-Super Duty

### Frequent low speed operation if vehicle is used for stationary operation

**Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km),  
3 months or 200 hours of engine  
operation (whichever comes first) if  
vehicle is used for stationary  
operation**

Change engine oil and replace filter

**Every 20,000 miles (32,000 km) or  
800 hours of engine operation  
(whichever comes first)**

Check the Nitrite level of the coolant using Fleetguard® DCA4 Test Strip Kit CC2602A to determine if recharge is required. If the Nitrite level is above 800 ppm no action is required. If the Nitrite level is 800 ppm or lower add 32 fl. oz. (946 mL) of Supplemental Coolant Additive Motorcraft VC-8 or equivalent.

**Every 40,000 miles (64,000 km) or  
1600 hours of engine operation  
(whichever comes first)**

Check the Nitrite level of the coolant using Fleetguard® DCA4 Test Strip Kit CC2602A to determine if recharge is required. If the Nitrite level is above 800 ppm no action is required. If the Nitrite level is 800 ppm or lower add 32 fl. oz. (946 mL) of Supplemental Coolant Additive Motorcraft VC-8 or equivalent.

**Note:** When adding supplemental coolant additive, do not exceed the specified maximum of 32 fl. oz. (946 mL). Operating the engine with excessive supplemental coolant additive can cause severe engine damage.

**Note:** For vehicles that operate under severe service conditions such as frequent or extended idle (over 10 minutes per hour of normal driving), maintenance requirements need to be adjusted. This needs to be considered when determining vehicle service intervals.

## Scheduled Maintenance: F-Super Duty

### Operating in dusty conditions such as unpaved or dusty roads

**Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km)** Check air filter restriction gauge (replace air filter as required or when air filter restriction gauge indicates)  
 Inspect and lubricate steering and suspension ball joints and tie rods (if equipped with zerk fittings)  
 Inspect brake system pads and rotors  
 Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise

**Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km) or 6 months** Change engine oil and replace filter  
 Inspect and lubricate U-joints

**Every 10,000 miles (16,000 km) or 400 hours of engine operation (whichever comes first)** Change engine-mounted fuel filter and chassis-mounted (HFCM) fuel filter

**Every 30,000 miles (48,000 km)** Replace wheel bearing grease and grease seals on 4x2 wheel bearings (if non-sealed bearings)

## Scheduled Maintenance: F-Super Duty

### Off-road operation

<b>Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km)</b>	Check air filter restriction gauge (replace air filter as required or when air filter restriction gauge indicates) Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise Inspect brake system pads and rotors
<b>Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km) or 6 months</b>	Change engine oil and replace filter Inspect and lubricate U-joints
<b>Every 10,000 miles (16,000 km) or 400 hours of engine operation (whichever comes first)</b>	Change engine-mounted fuel filter and chassis-mounted (HFCM) fuel filter
<b>Every 30,000 miles (48,000 km)</b>	Replace wheel bearing grease and grease seals on 4x2 wheel bearings (if non-sealed bearings)
<b>Every 50,000 miles (80,000 km)</b>	Check front axle lubricant (4x4 only) Change rear axle lubricant (if equipped with a Dana rear axle, some F-350s, all 450–550)
<b>Every 50,000 miles (80,000 km)</b>	Change transfer case fluid (4x4 only)
<b>As required</b>	Inspect and lubricate steering and suspension ball joints and tie rod ends (if equipped with zerk fittings) Check that the functional holes in each leg of the twin tip and the holes under the shield just inboard of the right rear tire are kept clean/clear of debris or foreign materials (clean/remove debris as required). Refer to the <i>Cleaning</i> chapter for more information.

## Scheduled Maintenance: F-Super Duty

### Towing a trailer or using a camper or car-top carrier

<b>Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km)</b>	Check air filter restriction gauge (replace air filter as required or when air filter restriction gauge indicates) Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise Inspect brake system pads and rotors
<b>Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km) or 6 months</b>	Change engine oil and replace filter Inspect and lubricate U-joints
<b>Every 10,000 miles (16,000 km) or 400 hours of engine operation (whichever comes first)</b>	Change engine-mounted fuel filter and chassis-mounted (HFCM) fuel filter
<b>Every 20,000 miles (32,000 km) or 800 hours of engine operation (whichever comes first)</b>	Check the Nitrite level of the coolant using Fleetguard® DCA4 Test Strip Kit CC2602A to determine if recharge is required. If the Nitrite level is above 800 ppm no action is required. If the Nitrite level is 800 ppm or lower add 32 fl. oz. (946 mL) of Supplemental Coolant Additive Motorcraft VC-8 or equivalent.
<b>Every 30,000 miles (48,000 km)</b>	Replace wheel bearing grease and grease seals on 4x2 wheel bearings (if non-sealed bearings)
<b>Every 40,000 miles (64,000 km) or 1600 hours of engine operation (whichever comes first)</b>	Check the Nitrite level of the coolant using Fleetguard® DCA4 Test Strip Kit CC2602A to determine if recharge is required. If the Nitrite level is above 800 ppm no action is required. If the Nitrite level is 800 ppm or lower add 32 fl. oz. (946 mL) of Supplemental Coolant Additive Motorcraft VC-8 or equivalent.
<b>Every 60,000 miles (96,000 km)</b>	Change transfer case fluid (4x4 only)
<b>Every 60,000 miles (96,000 km) or 2400 hours of engine operation (whichever comes first)</b>	Flush & refill engine coolant (refer to Motorcraft Premium Gold Engine Coolant Change Record) — Do not add Supplemental Coolant Additive
<b>As required</b>	Change manual transmission fluid

**Note:** When adding supplemental coolant additive, do not exceed the specified maximum of 32 fl. oz. (946 mL). Operating the engine with excessive supplemental coolant additive can cause severe engine damage.

## Scheduled Maintenance: F-Super Duty

### Sustained high-speed driving at Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (maximum loaded weight for vehicle operation)

<b>Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km) or 6 months</b>	Change engine oil and replace filter
<b>Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km)</b>	Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise Inspect and lubricate steering and suspension ball joints and tie rod ends (if equipped with zerk fittings) Inspect brake system pads and rotors
<b>Every 10,000 miles (16,000 km) or 400 hours of engine operation (whichever comes first)</b>	Change engine-mounted fuel filter and chassis-mounted (HFCM) fuel filter
<b>Every 20,000 miles (32,000 km) or 800 hours of engine operation (whichever comes first)</b>	Check the Nitrite level of the coolant using Fleetguard® DCA4 Test Strip Kit CC2602A to determine if recharge is required. If the Nitrite level is above 800 ppm no action is required. If the Nitrite level is 800 ppm or lower add 32 fl. oz. (946 mL) of Supplemental Coolant Additive Motorcraft VC-8 or equivalent.
<b>Every 30,000 miles (48,000 km)</b>	Replace wheel bearing grease and grease seals on 4x2 wheel bearings (if non-sealed bearings)
<b>Every 40,000 miles (64,000 km) or 1600 hours of engine operation (whichever comes first)</b>	Check the Nitrite level of the coolant using Fleetguard® DCA4 Test Strip Kit CC2602A to determine if recharge is required. If the Nitrite level is above 800 ppm no action is required. If the Nitrite level is 800 ppm or lower add 32 fl. oz. (946 mL) of Supplemental Coolant Additive Motorcraft VC-8 or equivalent.
<b>Every 50,000 miles (80,000 km)</b>	Change rear axle lubricant (if equipped with a Dana rear axle, some F-350s, all 450–550)
<b>Every 50,000 miles (80,000 km)</b>	Change transfer case fluid (4x4 only)
<b>Every 60,000 miles (96,000 km) or 2400 hours of engine operation (whichever comes first)</b>	Flush & refill engine coolant (refer to Motorcraft Premium Gold Engine Coolant Change Record) – Do not add Supplemental Coolant Additive

**Note:** When adding supplemental coolant additive, do not exceed the specified maximum of 32 fl. oz. (946 mL). Operating the engine with excessive supplemental coolant additive can cause severe engine damage.

## Scheduled Maintenance: F-Super Duty

### Use of Biodiesel, up to and including 5% Biodiesel (B5)

**Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km),  
6 months or 200 hours of operation  
(whichever comes first)** Change engine oil and replace filter

**Every 10,000 miles (16,000 km),  
6 months or 400 hours of operation  
(whichever comes first)** Replace engine-mounted fuel filter and chassis-mounted (HFCM) fuel filter

### Use of non-Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel (ULSD) fuel - Vehicles operated where ultra low sulfur diesel fuel is not required/not available

**Every 2,500 miles (4,000 km) or  
3 months (If using high sulfur fuel  
with more than 3000 ppm sulfur)** Change engine oil and replace filter

**Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km) or  
6 months (If using high sulfur fuel  
with less than 3000 ppm sulfur)** Change engine oil and replace filter

## Scheduled Maintenance: F-Super Duty

### Special Operating Conditions Log

DEALER VALIDATION:  RO#:            P&A CODE: DATE:           MILEAGE:	DEALER VALIDATION:  RO#:            P&A CODE: DATE:           MILEAGE:
DEALER VALIDATION:  RO#:            P&A CODE: DATE:           MILEAGE:	DEALER VALIDATION:  RO#:            P&A CODE: DATE:           MILEAGE:
DEALER VALIDATION:  RO#:            P&A CODE: DATE:           MILEAGE:	DEALER VALIDATION:  RO#:            P&A CODE: DATE:           MILEAGE:
DEALER VALIDATION:  RO#:            P&A CODE: DATE:           MILEAGE:	DEALER VALIDATION:  RO#:            P&A CODE: DATE:           MILEAGE:
DEALER VALIDATION:  RO#:            P&A CODE: DATE:           MILEAGE:	DEALER VALIDATION:  RO#:            P&A CODE: DATE:           MILEAGE:

## Scheduled Maintenance: F-Super Duty

### Special Operating Conditions Log

<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p>RO#:            P&amp;A CODE: DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p>RO#:            P&amp;A CODE: DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p>RO#:            P&amp;A CODE: DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p>RO#:            P&amp;A CODE: DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p>RO#:            P&amp;A CODE: DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p>RO#:            P&amp;A CODE: DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p>RO#:            P&amp;A CODE: DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p>RO#:            P&amp;A CODE: DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p>RO#:            P&amp;A CODE: DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p>RO#:            P&amp;A CODE: DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>

## Scheduled Maintenance: Special Information

### EXCEPTIONS

In addition, there are several exceptions to the Normal Schedule. They are listed below:

#### Normal Vehicle Axle Maintenance

- Rear axles and power take-off (PTO) units containing synthetic lubricant and light duty trucks equipped with Ford-design axles are lubricated for life. These lubricants are not to be checked or changed unless a leak is suspected, service is required or the axle assembly has been submerged in water. The axle and PTO lubricant should be changed anytime the axle and PTO have been submerged in water. Non-synthetic rear axle lubricants should be replaced every 3,000 miles (5,000 km) or 3 months, whichever occurs first, during extended trailer tow operation above 70°F (21°C) ambient and wide open throttle for extended periods above 45 mph (72 km/h). The 3,000 mile (5,000 km) lube change interval may be waived if the axle was filled with 75W140 synthetic gear lubricant meeting Ford specification WSL-M2C192-A, part number F1TZ-19580-B or equivalent. Add four ounces (118 mL) of additive friction modifier C8AZ-19B546-A (EST-M2C118-A) or equivalent for complete refill of Traction-Lok rear axles. The axle lubricant should be changed anytime an axle has been submerged in water.

#### E-450, F-450 and F-550 Axle Maintenance

- Replace rear axle lubricant every 100,000 miles (160,000 km) under normal driving conditions on all F-450 and F-550 commercial applications. For F-450 and F-550 trucks operated at or near maximum Gross Vehicle Weights, the rear axle lubricant should be replaced every 50,000 miles (80,000 km). In addition, this 50,000 mile (80,000 km) schedule should be observed when the vehicles are operated under the Special Operating Conditions, where noted.

#### Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF)

- The DPF may need to be removed for ash cleaning at approximately 120,000 miles (192,000 km) or greater (actual mileage can vary greatly depending upon engine/vehicle operating conditions) and replaced with a new or remanufactured (ash cleaned) part. The filter may need to be replaced at approximately 250,000 miles (400,000 km) depending upon engine/vehicle operating conditions. In both cases the engine control system will set a service light () to inform you to bring the vehicle to the dealer for service. If there are any issues with the oxidation catalyst/DPF system a service light ( or ) will be set by the engine control system to inform you to bring the vehicle into a dealership for service.









**PLEASE READ:**  
Important Information  
Regarding the Operation  
of the Diesel Engine

**6.4L POWER STROKE®**

**DIESEL ENGINE**

# INTRODUCTION TO THE POWER STROKE® ENGINE

Congratulations on selecting the new Super Duty with one of the most advanced pieces of automotive technology – the new 6.4L Power Stroke® diesel engine. The 6.4L Power Stroke® delivers all the horsepower and torque you will need along with new features such as a Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF), a two-stage turbocharger, and an enhanced Exhaust Gas Recirculation (EGR) system to meet strict new emissions standards.

All of this information is located in your vehicle Owner's Guide. Please see your Owner's Guide and Diesel Supplement for further information including important safety information.



# DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER (DPF) AND REGENERATION

The diesel particulate filter (DPF), an inline filter in the exhaust system, reduces carbon emissions by trapping exhaust particles before they reach the tailpipe. The DPF looks similar to a traditional exhaust catalyst, except larger, and is part of the exhaust system under the vehicle. Once the DPF is full of these particles, the engine control module will command the exhaust system to clean the DPF through a process called regeneration.

Regeneration requires the engine computer to raise the exhaust temperature to eliminate the particles. During cleaning, the particles are converted to harmless gasses, and the DPF will then be clean and ready to continue trapping exhaust particles. Similar to any vehicle, Ford recommends that you do not operate the vehicle in a closed garage or other enclosed area during regeneration to avoid exhaust fumes, which may be toxic. The regeneration process operates more efficiently when the vehicle is safely operated at least 30 mph (48 km/h) with a steady pedal for approximately 20 minutes to complete the process.

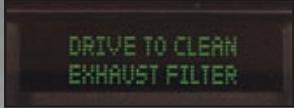
The frequency and duration of regeneration will fluctuate as both are determined by how you drive your vehicle, outside air temperature, and altitude. For most driving, regeneration frequency will vary from 100 - 668 miles (161 - 1075 km) between occurrences and each occurrence will last from 10 - 40 minutes. The duration of regeneration is usually reduced if a constant speed above 30 mph (48 km/h) is maintained.

When the engine control module detects that the DPF is nearly full of particulates and that the vehicle is not being operated in a manner to allow effective automatic cleaning, the message center (located in the instrument cluster) will display several messages guiding the vehicle operator to drive to clean the DPF. If the vehicle is operated in a manner to allow effective automatic cleaning, the message center will display "Cleaning Exhaust Filter", which is the normal regeneration process.

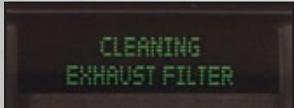
Once the "Drive to Clean Exhaust System" message is displayed, operator attention is required. Conditions such as idling can be

## MESSAGES DISPLAYED WITH EXTENDED IDLE OPERATION

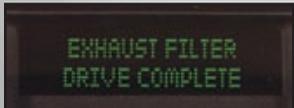
Appendix L



DRIVE TO CLEAN  
EXHAUST FILTER

CLEANING  
EXHAUST FILTER

EXHAUST FILTER  
DRIVE COMPLETE

### DRIVE TO CLEAN EXHAUST FILTER (DIESEL ENGINE ONLY)

Displayed when the engine control module detects the Diesel particulate filter (DPF) is full of particulates and that the vehicle is not being operated in a manner to allow automatic cleaning. The vehicle operator has to drive the vehicle above 30 mph (48 km/h) for at least 20 minutes to clean the DPF. This will continue to be displayed until an adequate drive cycle is completed. This message is NORMAL.

**NOTE:** Power Take-Off (PTO) and/or Stationary Elevated Idle (SEIC) must be disabled in order to initiate Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) cleaning.

### CLEANING EXHAUST FILTER (DIESEL ENGINE ONLY)

Displays continuously when the vehicle has entered the cleaning mode normally or when cleaning the filter after a DRIVE TO CLEAN EXHAUST SYSTEM message was previously displayed. When this message is displayed various engine actions will raise the exhaust temperature in the DPF to clean the exhaust filter. After the exhaust filter is cleaned, the exhaust temperature will fall back to normal levels. This message is NORMAL.

**WARNING:** When the CLEANING EXHAUST FILTER message appears in the message center do not park near flammable materials, vapors and structures until filter cleaning is complete.

### EXHAUST FILTER DRIVE COMPLETE (DIESEL ENGINE ONLY)

Displayed when the vehicle has completed the adequate drive cycle to clean the DPF. This message is NORMAL.

**WARNING:** Do not park, idle, or drive your vehicle in dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, which can start a fire.

tolerated for up to four hours, once this message is displayed. If this message is ignored, your vehicle is being operated in a manner that will continue to fill the DPF. As a result, the DPF may become full of particles. If this occurs, the "reduced engine power" light  will illuminate and engine power will be limited. Your message center will also display "Reduced Engine Power". The engine control module will continue to

attempt to clean the filter. If the filter cannot be cleaned, the "service engine soon" light  will be illuminated and engine power will be further limited. Dealer service will then be required to restore your vehicle to full power operation.

If the DPF needs to be serviced or replaced, the "service engine soon" light  and/or "reduced engine

power” light  will illuminate in the instrument cluster. Take your vehicle to your authorized Ford dealer for service.

If the vehicle is brought to an idle during the regeneration process, the operator may notice an increase in engine idle

speed and engine tone. This is normal and due to the DPF being cleaned. After about five minutes of continuous idle, the regeneration process will be discontinued and there may be a noticeable change in engine sound.

## HIGH ENGINE IDLE CONDITIONS

You may experience several conditions in which the engine idle speed will be elevated above the base operating range. Conditions such as low battery voltage, PTO operation and cold engine warm-up will elevate the engine idle speed.

All of these conditions noted above are NORMAL and do not require the vehicle to be taken to the dealership for diagnostic testing or service.

## OPERATING YOUR POWER STROKE® ENGINE

### ULTRA-LOW SULFUR HIGHWAY DIESEL FUEL (15 ppm Sulfur Maximum)

**Required** for use in all model year 2007 and later highway diesel vehicles and engines

Recommended for use in all diesel vehicles and engines

Ultra-Low Sulfur Diesel Fuel (ULSD) – Your Power Stroke® requires ultra low sulfur diesel fuel (15 ppm maximum). Do not use any other fuels.

Do NOT use Low Sulfur Diesel Fuel (500 ppm maximum) or non-highway diesel fuel (agricultural diesel) higher than 500 ppm.

### LOW SULFUR HIGHWAY DIESEL FUEL (500 ppm Sulfur Maximum)

**WARNING**  
Federal law *prohibits* use in model year 2007 and later highway vehicles and engines.

Its use may damage these vehicles and engines.

These higher sulfur fuels will lead to the malfunction of emissions-related components and significant damage to the engine may occur.

The use of biodiesel is acceptable as long as the rating does not exceed 5% (B5). Any percentage of biodiesel requires you to maintain your vehicle using the Severe Duty maintenance schedule (e.g., oil change every 5,000 miles).

### NON-HIGHWAY DIESEL FUEL (May Exceed 500 ppm Sulfur)

**WARNING**  
Federal law *prohibits* use in highway vehicles or engines.  
Its use may damage these vehicles and engines.

Use the recommended CJ-4 engine oil in your 6.4L Power Stroke® engine. This engine oil has been designed to operate properly with the new emissions standards.

If your vehicle is operated at high speeds while fully loaded, let the engine idle three to five minutes before shutting it off. This will allow the turbochargers to cool sufficiently and prevent the engine from overheating.

A winter grille cover is now available as a Production option for Canadian customers and select cold weather U.S. states. The grille cover is also available at authorized Ford dealers for customers to purchase. The cover can be installed by the customer when heavy snow conditions exist. It must be removed at temperatures above 50°F (10°C) or above 32°F (0°C) when towing a trailer.

Using the engine block heater during cold weather is very important to ensure proper starting of the vehicle and adequate lubrication during start-up. This will prevent cold weather start-up engine damage. A block heater must be used when temperatures are below -10°F (-23°C.) For conditions when the coolant temperature is below -10°F (-23°C), the message center will display a 30 second countdown timer. During this time, the engine will be limited to idle for a period of 30 seconds from engine start before normal operation can be continued. After this time has elapsed, a message “OK to Drive” will be displayed for five seconds. These messages are NORMAL.



# IMPROVE YOUR FUEL ECONOMY

## DRIVE SENSIBLY

Aggressive driving (speeding, rapid acceleration, and braking) wastes fuel. It can lower your fuel mileage by 33 percent at highway speeds and by 5 percent around town. When accelerating, limit boost to 10 psi and try to stay below 2000 rpm for maximum fuel economy. **Fuel Economy Benefit: 5-33%**

## KEEP TIRES PROPERLY INFLATED

You can improve your fuel mileage by around 3.3 percent by keeping your tires inflated to the proper pressure. Under-inflated tires can lower fuel mileage by 0.4 percent for every 1 psi drop in pressure of all four tires. Properly inflated tires are safer and last longer. **Fuel Economy Benefit: Up to 3%**

## USE SPEED CONTROL ON THE HIGHWAY

Using speed control on the highway helps you maintain a constant speed and, in most cases, will save fuel.

## DON'T CARRY MORE THAN YOU NEED

Avoid keeping unnecessary items in your vehicle, especially heavy ones. An extra 100 pounds (45 kg) in your vehicle could reduce your mpg by up to 1 percent. **Fuel Economy Benefit: Up to 1% per 100 lbs (45 kg)**

## OBSERVE THE SPEED LIMIT

Fuel mileage usually decreases rapidly at speeds above 60 mph (96 km/h). In highway driving, more than 50 percent of the energy required to move your vehicle down the road goes to overcoming aerodynamic drag (pushing air out of the way). **Fuel Economy Benefit: 7-23%**

## AVOID EXCESSIVE IDLING (LONGER THAN 3 TO 5 MINUTES)

Idling gets 0 miles per gallon. Every hour of idling consumes as much fuel as 30-50 miles (48 - 80 km) of driving.

## MAKE SURE YOUR VEHICLE IS PROPERLY MAINTAINED

Fixing a vehicle that is noticeably out of tune or has failed an emissions test can improve its fuel mileage by an average of 4 percent. Fixing a serious maintenance problem can improve your mileage by as much as 40 percent. Replacing a clogged air filter can improve your truck's fuel mileage by as much as 10 percent. Not only will replacing a dirty air filter save fuel, it will protect your engine. **Fuel Economy Benefit: 4-40%**

## USE RECOMMENDED GRADE OF MOTOR OIL

You can improve your fuel mileage by 1-2 percent by using the manufacturer's recommended grade of motor oil. For example, using 10W-30 motor oil in an engine designed to use 5W-30 can

lower your fuel mileage by 1-2 percent. Using 5W-30 in an engine designed for 5W-20 can lower your fuel mileage by 1-1.5 percent. Also, look for motor oil that says "Energy Conserving" on the API performance symbol to be sure it contains friction-reducing additives. **Fuel Economy Benefit: 1-2%**

## KEEP TAILGATE IN UP POSITION

Keeping the tailgate in the up position greatly reduces the aerodynamic drag and thus reduces the amount of energy required to move your truck down the road.

## ADD TONNEAU COVER

Adding a tonneau cover further improves the truck's aerodynamic shape and also reduces the amount of energy required to move the vehicle down the road.

# SERVICE MAINTENANCE INTERVALS

## ENGINE OIL, OIL FILTER, FUEL FILTERS AND ENGINE COOLANT

It is important to maintain your vehicle to keep it running in peak condition. Engine oil and filter changes along with fuel filter (two fuel filters on diesel vehicles) and engine coolant inspection/replacement are common maintenance items that can be done to prolong the life of your engine. If you drive your vehicle in severe situations, more frequent service will be required on some items. Please refer to the scheduled maintenance information chapter of your Diesel Supplement for details.

## ENGINE OIL AND FILTER MAINTENANCE INTERVALS

Under normal conditions, the engine oil and filter need to be changed at 10,000 miles (16,093 km) or 6 month intervals (whichever comes first). Under severe conditions, the intervals are sooner; 5,000 miles (8,046 km) or 3 months (whichever comes first). Refer to the scheduled maintenance information chapter of the Diesel Supplement for specific information on normal and severe conditions. Use the same engine oil and filter change intervals when using synthetic engine oil.

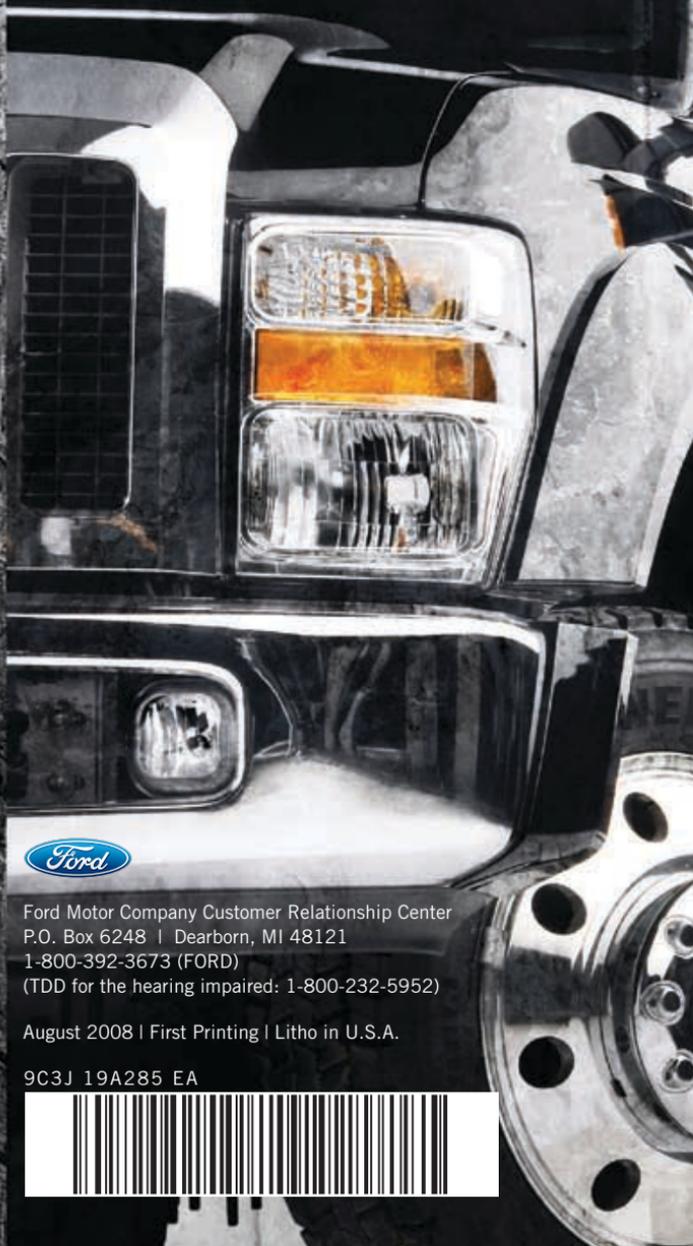
## AIR FILTER

Your vehicle has an air filtration system with a restriction indicator gauge that will alert you when you need to change your filter. The gauge has a viewable indicator located underhood on the air filter assembly which should be inspected every oil change. A "Check Air Filter" message will also appear in the message center when the system restriction reaches its upper limit for proper operation.

Please refer to you Owner's Guide and Diesel Supplement for correct service interval requirements for engine oil and filter, engine-mounted and chassis-mounted fuel filters, air filter restriction gauge inspection, air filter replacement, supplemental coolant additive and coolant replacement intervals.

This Supplement is not intended to replace your vehicle Owner's Guide which contains more detailed information concerning the features of your vehicle, as well as important safety warnings designed to help reduce the risk of injury to you and your occupants. Please read your entire Owner's Guide carefully as you begin learning about your new vehicle and refer to the appropriate chapters when questions arise.

All information contained in this Supplement was accurate at the time of duplication. We reserve the right to change features, operation and/or functionality of any vehicle specification at any time. Your Ford dealer is the best source for the most current information. For detailed operating and safety information, please consult your Owner's Guide.



Ford Motor Company Customer Relationship Center  
P.O. Box 6248 | Dearborn, MI 48121  
1-800-392-3673 (FORD)  
(TDD for the hearing impaired: 1-800-232-5952)

August 2008 | First Printing | Litho in U.S.A.

9C3J 19A285 EA





## Ford Power Stroke® Diesel Operating, Maintenance & Care Tips

Congratulations on the purchase of your Power Stroke® or Ford Diesel Engine ESP contract. Maintained properly, this product will provide many years of strong, trouble-free service so use these maintenance and care tips for your engine. Refer to your Scheduled Maintenance Guide for a complete detailed list of your vehicle's maintenance needs.

Vehicle Service	6.0L Normal	6.0L Special*	6.4L Normal	6.4L Special*
<b>Oil and Filter<sup>1,2</sup></b>	Change every 7,500 miles	Change every 5,000 miles or 200 hours	Change every 10,000 miles	Change every 5,000 miles or 200 hours
<b>Fuel Filter Change (both)<sup>1</sup></b>	Change every 15,000 miles	Change every 10,000 miles or 400 hours	Change every 20,000 miles	Change every 10,000 miles or 400 hours
<b>Coolant check/change<sup>3</sup></b>	Check every 6 months & Initial change 105,000 miles; subsequent changes every 45,000 miles	Check every 15,000 miles or 600 hours & change every 45,000 miles or 1800 hours	Check every 6 months & Initial change 100,000 miles; subsequent changes every 50,000 miles	Check every 20,000 miles or 800 hours & change every 60,000 miles or 2400 hours
<b>Coolant Nitrite strength check<sup>3</sup></b>	Optional check every 15,000 miles or 600 hours	Check every 15,000 miles or 600 hours	Optional 20,000 miles or 800 hours	Check every 20,000 miles or 800 hours

\* *Special = Operating Conditions like Extensive Towing, Long Idle Time, Extended Low Speed Driving, Biodiesel Use, Off Road/Dusty Conditions*

### **<sup>1</sup> Use the Right Filters**

- Ford Motor Company can only attest to the quality and exact size of the filters provided by Motorcraft®. Only Motorcraft® air, fuel, and oil filters were designed specifically for the demands of the Ford Power Stroke® diesel engine. Genuine Motorcraft® filters provide superior filtration and never require adaptors.

### **<sup>2</sup> Use the Right Oil**

- New API CJ-4 engine oil is required for 6.4L engine to meet federal emission standards. Vehicles equipped with the 6.0L engine can benefit from this same high performance oil as well. Operation of the 6.4L diesel engine requires Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel (ULSD) fuel.

### **<sup>3</sup> Take Care of Your Coolant**

- The coolant concentration should be maintained at 50/50 mix of coolant and distilled water. The level of coolant should be maintained at the "COLD FILL" range in the coolant reservoir. If you suspect any coolant system leaks or lack of cooling, pressure test the cooling system. Refer to your Owner Guide for additional information.
- Engine coolant system nitrite strength should be checked and serviced at the mileage or equivalent hour intervals specified by the maintenance schedule. Check coolant nitrite strength using the 3-Way Antifreeze Test Strip kit Rotunda # 328-00001 to determine if additive is required. If the nitrite strength is between 800 ppm & 300 ppm add 32 fl. oz. (946 mL) of Supplemental Coolant Additive Motorcraft VC-8 or equivalent. If nitrite strength is below 300 ppm flush & refill engine coolant (refer to Motorcraft Premium Gold Engine Coolant Change Record) – Do not add Supplemental Coolant Additive if flush & refill is required.

### **Take Care of your Fuel Injection System**

- Diesel fuel quality is critical for reliable engine operation. Motorcraft® Cetane Booster & Performance Improver, PM-22-A (U.S.) / PM-22-B (Canada) can be added to improve fuel economy, starting ability, and reduce engine wear.
- The water separator should be drained monthly (at least) or when the "Water in Fuel Lamp" illuminates.
- Biodiesel fuel must not exceed 5% (B5). To avoid cold weather fuel gelling, add 6 oz. of Motorcraft® Anti-Gel & Performance Improver PM-23-A (U.S.) / PM-23-B (Canada) to every new tank of fuel.

### **Cold Start Performance**

- The glow plug system operates for up to 120 seconds and is completely independent of the "Wait to Start" lamp operation. Always wait until the "Wait to Start" lamp has turned off, before cranking the engine.
- To ensure optimum cold weather starting performance, and improve cabin heating, the 120 volt engine block heater should be used during any cold weather operation. The engine block heater is required when the vehicle is to be started at temperatures below -10F (-23C).

### **Performance Modifications May Impact Your Powertrain**

- Performance modifications may or may not be the root cause of a powertrain failure. If a non-Ford product (e.g. performance modifications, programmers, modified exhaust or air intake systems) fails or causes a Ford part to fail, the cost of the entire repair and any related damage will not be covered by the Ford New Vehicle Limited Warranty or any applicable Extended Service Plan (ESP/ESC) contract coverage.

<b>Table of Contents</b>	
<b>Introduction</b>	<b>4</b>
<b>Instrument Cluster</b>	<b>14</b>
Warning lights and chimes	14
Gauges	21
<b>Entertainment Systems</b>	<b>26</b>
AM/FM stereo	26
AM/FM stereo with CD	28
AM/FM stereo with in-dash six CD	35
Auxiliary input jack	42
USB port	44
Satellite radio information	48
Family entertainment system	51
Navigation system	79
SYNC®	79
<b>Climate Controls</b>	<b>80</b>
Heater only	80
Manual heating and air conditioning	81
Dual automatic temperature control	84
<b>Lights</b>	<b>89</b>
Headlamps	89
Turn signal control	94
Bulb replacement	95
<b>Driver Controls</b>	<b>103</b>
Windshield wiper/washer control	103
Steering wheel adjustment	104
Power windows	108
Mirrors	110
Speed control	116
Upfitter controls	121
Moon roof	122
Message center	127

<b>Table of Contents</b>	
<b>Locks and Security</b>	<b>155</b>
Keys	155
Locks	155
Anti-theft system	168
<b>Seating and Safety Restraints</b>	<b>172</b>
Seating	172
Safety restraints	181
Airbags	193
Child restraints	202
<b>Tires, Wheels and Loading</b>	<b>225</b>
Tire information	227
Tire inflation	230
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)	245
Vehicle loading	256
Trailer towing	262
Trailer brake controller-integrated	267
Recreational towing	274
<b>Driving</b>	<b>275</b>
Starting	275
Brakes	280
Traction Control™	282
Transmission operation	285
Reverse sensing system	292
Reverse camera	294
<b>Roadside Emergencies</b>	<b>315</b>
Getting roadside assistance	315
Hazard flasher control	316
Fuel pump shut-off switch	317
Fuses and relays	318
Changing tires	327
Wheel lug nut torque	342
Jump starting	343
Wrecker towing	348

## Table of Contents

<b>Customer Assistance</b>	<b>350</b>
Reporting safety defects (U.S. only)	356
Reporting safety defects (Canada only)	356
<b>Cleaning</b>	<b>357</b>
<b>Maintenance and Specifications</b>	<b>367</b>
Engine compartment	369
Engine oil	372
Battery	375
Engine coolant	377
Fuel information	383
Air filter(s)	402
Part numbers	404
Maintenance product specifications and capacities	405
Engine data	409
<b>Accessories</b>	<b>412</b>
<b>Index</b>	<b>414</b>

All rights reserved. Reproduction by any means, electronic or mechanical including photocopying, recording or by any information storage and retrieval system or translation in whole or part is not permitted without written authorization from Ford Motor Company. Ford may change the contents without notice and without incurring obligation.

Copyright © 2009 Ford Motor Company

## Introduction

### CONGRATULATIONS

Congratulations on acquiring your new Ford. Please take the time to get well acquainted with your vehicle by reading this handbook. The more you know and understand about your vehicle, the greater the safety and pleasure you will derive from driving it.

For more information on Ford Motor Company and its products visit the following website:

- In the United States: [www.ford.com](http://www.ford.com)
- In Canada: [www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca)
- In Australia: [www.ford.com.au](http://www.ford.com.au)
- In Mexico: [www.ford.com.mx](http://www.ford.com.mx)

Additional owner information is given in separate publications.

This *Owner's Guide* describes every option and model variant available and therefore some of the items covered may not apply to your particular vehicle. Furthermore, due to printing cycles it may describe options before they are generally available.

Remember to pass on this *Owner's Guide* when reselling the vehicle. It is an integral part of the vehicle.



**WARNING: Fuel pump shut-off switch:** In the event of an accident the safety switch will automatically cut off the fuel supply to the engine. The switch can also be activated through sudden vibration (e.g. collision when parking). To reset the switch, refer to the *Fuel pump shut-off switch* in the *Roadside Emergencies* chapter.

## Introduction

### SAFETY AND ENVIRONMENT PROTECTION

#### **Warning symbols in this guide**

How can you reduce the risk of personal injury to yourself or others? In this guide, answers to such questions are contained in comments highlighted by the warning triangle symbol. These comments should be read and observed.

#### **Warning symbols on your vehicle**

When you see this symbol, it is imperative that you consult the relevant section of this guide before touching or attempting adjustment of any kind.



#### **Protecting the environment**

We must all play our part in protecting the environment. Correct vehicle usage and the authorized disposal of waste, cleaning and lubrication materials are significant steps towards this aim. Information in this respect is highlighted in this guide with the tree symbol.



#### **CALIFORNIA Proposition 65 Warning**

 **WARNING:** Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and certain vehicle components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.

## Introduction

### PERCHLORATE MATERIAL

Certain components of this vehicle such as airbag modules, seat belt pretensioners, and button cell batteries may contain Perchlorate Material – Special handling may apply for service or vehicle end of life disposal. See [www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate](http://www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate).

### BREAKING-IN YOUR VEHICLE

Your vehicle does not need an extensive break-in. Try not to drive continuously at the same speed for the first 1,000 miles (1,600 km) of new vehicle operation. Vary your speed frequently in order to give the moving parts a chance to break in.

Drive your new vehicle at least 1,000 miles (1,600 km) before towing a trailer. For more detailed information about towing a trailer, refer to *Trailer towing* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter.

Do not add friction modifier compounds or special break-in oils since these additives may prevent piston ring seating. See *Engine oil* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter for more information on oil usage.

### SPECIAL NOTICES

#### New Vehicle Limited Warranty

For a detailed description of what is covered and what is not covered by your vehicle's New Vehicle Limited Warranty, refer to the *Warranty Guide/Customer Information Guide* that is provided to you along with your *Owner's Guide*.

## Introduction

### **Service Data Recording**

Service data recorders in your vehicle are capable of collecting and storing diagnostic information about your vehicle. This potentially includes information about the performance or status of various systems and modules in the vehicle, such as engine, throttle, steering or brake systems. In order to properly diagnose and service your vehicle, Ford Motor Company, Ford of Canada, and service and repair facilities may access vehicle diagnostic information through a direct connection to your vehicle when diagnosing or servicing your vehicle. For U.S. only (if equipped), if you choose to use the SYNC® Vehicle Health Report, you consent that certain diagnostic information may also be accessed electronically by Ford Motor Company and Ford authorized service facilities, and that the diagnostic information may be used for any purpose. See your SYNC® supplement for more information.

### **Event Data Recording**

Other modules in your vehicle — event data recorders — are capable of collecting and storing data during a crash or near crash event. The recorded information may assist in the investigation of such an event. The modules may record information about both the vehicle and the occupants, potentially including information such as:

- how various systems in your vehicle were operating;
- whether or not the driver and passenger seatbelts were buckled;
- how far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or the brake pedal;
- how fast the vehicle was traveling; and
- where the driver was positioning the steering wheel.

## Introduction

To access this information, special equipment must be directly connected to the recording modules. Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada do not access event data recorder information without obtaining consent, unless pursuant to court order or where required by law enforcement, other government authorities or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada. Please note that once 911 Assist (if equipped) is enabled (set ON), 911 Assist may, through any paired and connected cell phone, disclose to emergency services that the vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or, in certain vehicles, the activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to 911 Assist may also be capable of electronically or verbally disclosing to 911 operators the vehicle location, and/or other details about the vehicle or crash to assist 911 operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not activate the feature. See your SYNC® supplement for more information.

### **Vehicle Modification Data Recording**

Some aftermarket products may cause severe engine and/or transmission damage; refer to the *What is not covered* section in *The new vehicle limited warranty for your vehicle* chapter of your vehicle's *Warranty Guide* for more information. Some vehicles are equipped with Powertrain Control Systems that can detect and store information about vehicle modifications that increase horsepower and torque output; this information cannot be erased and will stay in the system's memory even if the modification is removed. When a dealer or repair facility works on your vehicle, it may be necessary for them to access the information in the Powertrain Control System. This information will likely identify if any unauthorized modifications have been made to the system and may be used to determine if repairs will be covered by warranty.

## Introduction

### Special instructions

For your added safety, your vehicle is fitted with sophisticated electronic controls.



**WARNING:** Please read the section *Airbag Supplemental Restraint System (SRS)* in the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter. Failure to follow the specific warnings and instructions could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** Front seat mounted rear-facing child or infant seats should **NEVER** be placed in front of an active passenger airbag.

### Cell phone use

The use of Mobile Communications Equipment has become increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, drivers must not compromise their own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile Communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits.

Mobile Communication Equipment includes, but is not limited to cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, in-vehicle communications systems, telematics devices and portable two-way radios.



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device that may take their focus off the road. The driver's primary responsibility is the safe operation of their vehicle. Only use cell phones and other devices not essential to the driving task when it is safe to do so.

### Notice to owners of diesel-powered vehicles

Read the *6.0 and 6.4 Liter Power Stroke Direct Injection Turbo Diesel Owner's Guide Supplement* for information regarding correct operation and maintenance of your Diesel-powered light truck.

## Introduction

### Notice to owners of pickup trucks and utility type vehicles



**WARNING:** Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.

Before you drive your vehicle, please read this *Owner's Guide* carefully. Your vehicle is not a passenger car. As with other vehicles of this type, failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury or death.

### Using your vehicle with a snowplow

For more information and guidelines for using your vehicle with a snowplow, refer to the *Driving* chapter.

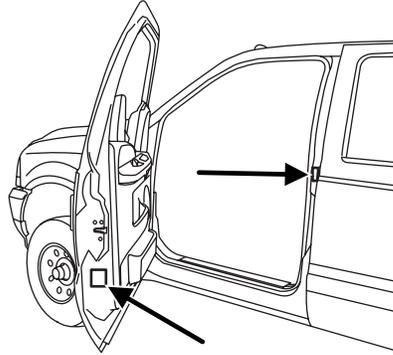
### Using your vehicle as an ambulance

If your light truck is equipped with the Ford Ambulance Preparation Package, it may be utilized as an ambulance. Ford urges ambulance manufacturers to follow the recommendations of the *Ford Incomplete Vehicle Manual*, *Ford Truck Body Builder's Layout Book* and the *Qualified Vehicle Modifiers (QVM) Guidelines* as well as pertinent supplements. For additional information, please contact the Truck Body Builders Advisory Service at 1-877-840-4338.

Use of your Ford light truck as an ambulance, without the Ford Ambulance Preparation Package voids the Ford New Vehicle Limited Warranty and may void the Emissions Warranties. In addition, ambulance usage without the preparation package could cause high underbody temperatures, overpressurized fuel and a risk of spraying fuel which could lead to fires.

## Introduction

If your vehicle is equipped with the Ford Ambulance Preparation Package, it will be indicated on the Safety Compliance Certification Label. The label is located on the driver's side door pillar or on the rear edge of the driver's door. You can determine whether the ambulance manufacturer followed Ford's recommendations by directly contacting that manufacturer. Ford Ambulance Preparation Package is only available on certain Diesel engine equipped vehicles.



### Using your vehicle as a stationary power source (PTO)

Refer to the *Driving* chapter for more information and guidelines for operating a vehicle equipped with an aftermarket power take-off system.

### Export unique (Non-United States/Canada) vehicle specific information

For your particular global region, your vehicle may be equipped with features and options that are different from the features and options that are described in this *Owner's Guide*. A market unique supplement may be supplied that complements this book. By referring to the market unique supplement, if provided, you can properly identify those features, recommendations and specifications that are unique to your vehicle. This *Owner's Guide* is written primarily for the U.S. and Canadian Markets. Features or equipment listed as standard may be different on units built for Export. **Refer to this Owner's Guide for all other required information and warnings.**

## Introduction

These are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.

### Vehicle Symbol Glossary

Safety Alert		See Owner's Guide	
Fasten Safety Belt		Airbag - Front	
Airbag - Side		Child Seat Lower Anchor	
Child Seat Tether Anchor		Brake System	
Anti-Lock Brake System		Parking Brake System	
Brake Fluid - Non-Petroleum Based		Parking Aid System	
Stability Control System		Speed Control	
Master Lighting Switch		Hazard Warning Flasher	
Fog Lamps-Front		Fuse Compartment	
Fuel Pump Reset		Windshield Wash/Wipe	
Windshield Defrost/Demist		Rear Window Defrost/Demist	

## Introduction

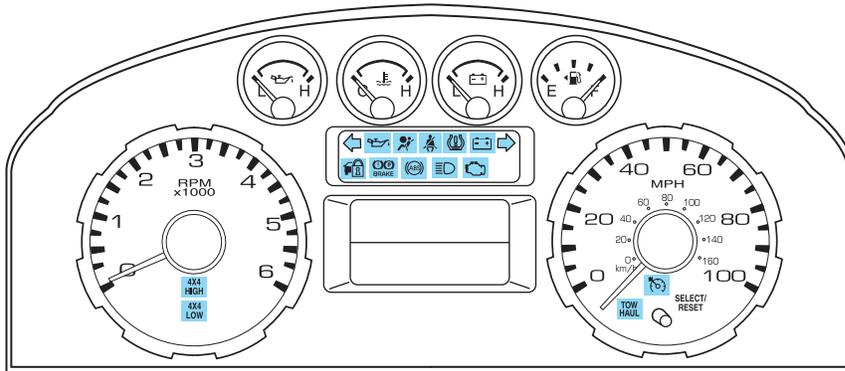
### Vehicle Symbol Glossary

Power Windows Front/Rear		Power Window Lockout	
Child Safety Door Lock/Unlock		Interior Luggage Compartment Release	
Panic Alarm		Engine Oil	
Engine Coolant		Engine Coolant Temperature	
Do Not Open When Hot		Battery	
Avoid Smoking, Flames, or Sparks		Battery Acid	
Explosive Gas		Fan Warning	
Power Steering Fluid		Maintain Correct Fluid Level	
Service Engine Soon		Engine Air Filter	
Passenger Compartment Air Filter		Jack	
Check Fuel Cap		Low Tire Pressure Warning	

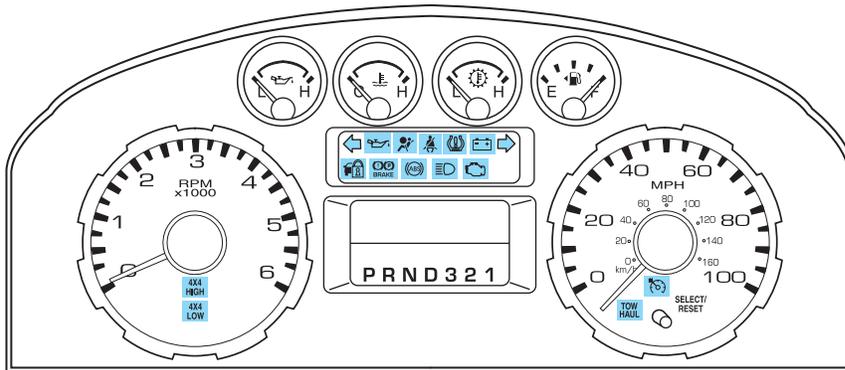
## Instrument Cluster

### WARNING LIGHTS AND CHIMES

Vehicles equipped with a manual transmission

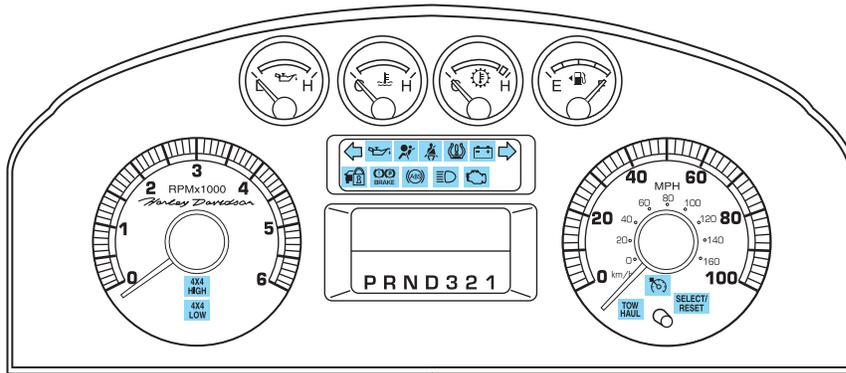


Automatic transmission



## Instrument Cluster

### Harley-Davidson vehicles



Warning lights and gauges can alert you to a vehicle condition that may become serious enough to cause expensive repairs. A warning light may illuminate when a problem exists with one of your vehicle's functions. Many lights will illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure the bulbs work. If any light remains on after starting the vehicle, refer to the respective system warning light description for additional information.

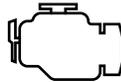
**Note:** Some warning lights are reconfigurable telltale (RTT) indicator lights and will illuminate in the message center display and function the same as the warning light.

**Service engine soon:** The *Service engine soon* indicator light

illuminates when the ignition is first turned to the on position to check

the bulb and to indicate whether the vehicle is ready for Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) testing. Normally, the "Service engine soon" light will stay on until the engine is cranked, then turn itself off if no malfunctions are present. However, if after 15 seconds the "Service engine soon" light blinks eight times, it means that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing. See the *Readiness for Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) testing* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

Solid illumination after the engine is started indicates the On Board Diagnostics System (OBD-II) has detected a malfunction. Refer to *On board diagnostics (OBD-II)* in the *Maintenance and Specifications*



## Instrument Cluster

chapter. If the light is blinking, engine misfire is occurring which could damage your catalytic converter. Drive in a moderate fashion (avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration) and have your vehicle serviced immediately by your authorized dealer.

 **WARNING:** Under engine misfire conditions, excessive exhaust temperatures could damage the catalytic converter, the fuel system, interior floor coverings or other vehicle components, possibly causing a fire.

**Brake system warning light:** To confirm the brake system warning light is functional, it will

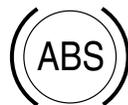
momentarily illuminate when the ignition is turned to the on position

when the engine is not running, or in a position between on and start, or by applying the parking brake when the ignition is turned to the on position. If the brake system warning light does not illuminate at this time, seek service immediately from your authorized dealer. Illumination after releasing the parking brake indicates low brake fluid level and the brake system should be inspected immediately by your servicing authorized dealer.



 **WARNING:** Driving a vehicle with the brake system warning light on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It will take you longer to stop the vehicle. Have the vehicle checked by your authorized dealer immediately. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.

**Anti-lock brake system:** If the ABS light stays illuminated or continues to flash, a malfunction has been detected, have the system serviced immediately by your authorized dealer. Normal braking is still functional unless the brake warning light also is illuminated.



## Instrument Cluster

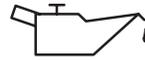
**Airbag readiness:** If this light fails to illuminate when ignition is turned to on, continues to flash or remains on, have the system serviced immediately by your authorized dealer. A chime will sound when there is a malfunction in the indicator light.



**Safety belt:** Reminds you to fasten your safety belt. A Belt-Minder® chime will also sound to remind you to fasten your safety belt. Refer to the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter to activate/deactivate the Belt-Minder® chime feature.



**Engine oil pressure:** Illuminates when the oil pressure falls below the normal range. Refer to *Engine oil* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.



**Low tire pressure warning (if equipped):** Illuminates when your tire pressure is low. If the light remains on at start up or while driving, the tire pressure should be checked. Refer to *Inflating Your Tires* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter. When the ignition is first turned to on, the light will illuminate for three seconds to ensure the bulb is working. If the light does not turn on, have the system inspected by your authorized dealer. For more information on this system, refer to *Understanding Your Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter.



**Charging system:** Illuminates when the battery is not charging properly. If it stays on while the engine is running, there may be a malfunction with the charging system. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. This indicates a problem with the electrical system or a related component.



## Instrument Cluster

### Powertrain malfunction/Reduced power/Electronic throttle control (RTT)

**control (RTT):** Displays when the engine has defaulted to a “limp-home” operation or when a transmission problem has been detected and shifting may be restricted. If the light remains on, have the system serviced immediately by your authorized dealer.



### Traction Control™ (RTT) (if equipped)

**(if equipped):** Displays when the Traction Control™ system is active. If the light remains on, have the system serviced immediately by your authorized dealer. Refer to *Traction Control™* in the *Driving* chapter for more information



**Check fuel cap (RTT):** Displays when the fuel cap may not be properly installed. Continued driving with this light on may cause the Service engine soon warning light to come on. Refer to *Fuel filler cap* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.



### Engine coolant temperature

**(RTT):** Displays when the engine coolant temperature is high. Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible, switch off the engine and let it cool. Refer to *Engine coolant* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.



**WARNING:** Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

**Low fuel (RTT):** Displays when the fuel level in the fuel tank is at or near empty (refer to *Fuel gauge* in this chapter).



## Instrument Cluster

**Door ajar (RTT):** Displays when the ignition is in the on position and any door is open.



**Transmission Tow/Haul Feature (automatic transmission) (if equipped):** The Tow Haul light

remains illuminated as long as the Tow/Haul feature is activated. Refer to the *Driving* chapter for transmission function and operation. If the light remains illuminated and will not cancel using the Tow/Haul switch located on the end of the gear shift lever, have the system serviced immediately or damage to the transmission could occur.

**TOW  
HAUL**

**Four wheel drive low (if equipped):** Illuminates when four-wheel drive low is engaged.

**4x4  
LOW**

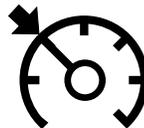
**Four wheel drive high (if equipped):** Illuminates when four-wheel drive high is engaged.

**4x4  
HIGH**

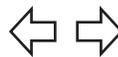
**Anti-theft system:** Flashes when the SecuriLock™ Passive Anti-theft System has been activated.



**Speed control (if equipped):** Illuminates when the speed control is activated. Turns off when the speed control system is deactivated.



**Turn signal:** Illuminates when the left or right turn signal or the hazard lights are turned on. If the indicators stay on or flash faster, check for a burned out bulb.



**High beams:** Illuminates when the high beam headlamps are turned on.



## Instrument Cluster

If your vehicle is equipped with a diesel engine, it has some unique warning lights; refer to *Instrument Cluster* in your *6.0 and 6.4 Liter Power Stroke Direct Injection Turbo Diesel Owner's Guide Supplement* for detailed information on their function.

### Diesel warning lights:

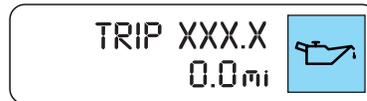
- Glow plug pre-heat



- Water in fuel



- Low oil pressure



**Key-in-ignition warning chime:** Sounds when the key is left in the ignition in the off or accessory position and the driver's door is opened.

**Headlamps on warning chime:** Sounds when the headlamps or parking lamps are on, the ignition is off (the key is not in the ignition) and the driver's door is opened.

**Parking brake on warning chime:** Sounds when the parking brake is set, the engine is running and the vehicle is driven more than 3 mph (5 km). If the warning remains on after the parking brake is off, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

**Turn signal chime:** Sounds when the turn signal lever has been activated to signal a turn and not turned off after the vehicle is driven more than 2 miles (3.2 km).

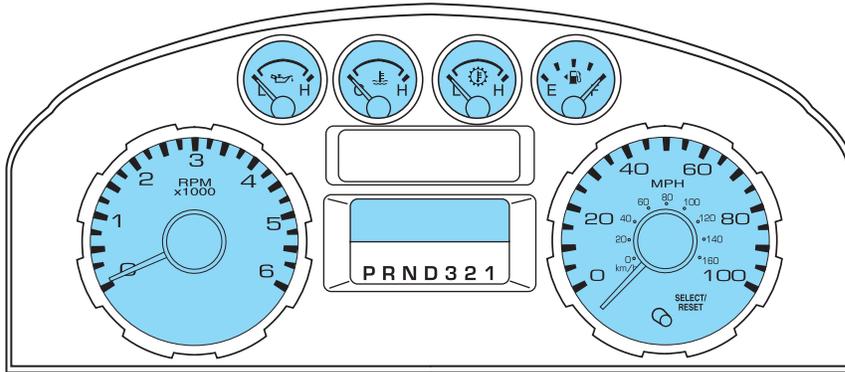
**Message center activation chime:** Sounds when some warning messages appears in the message center display for the first time.

**Overspeed chime (if equipped):** Sounds when the vehicle speed reaches 75 mph (120 km/h) or higher.

**Airbag secondary warning chime:** Sounds to inform the driver, in the event that the airbag readiness warning lamp is inoperable, that there is a fault in the supplemental restraint system

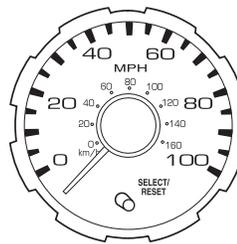
## Instrument Cluster

### GAUGES

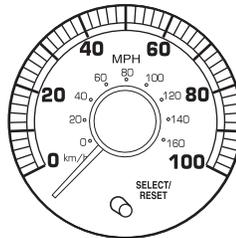


**Speedometer:** Indicates the current vehicle speed.

#### Standard instrument cluster



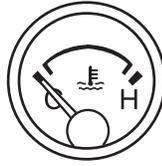
#### Harley-Davidson instrument cluster



## Instrument Cluster

### Engine coolant temperature

**gauge:** Indicates engine coolant temperature. At normal operating temperature, the needle will be in the normal range (between “H” and “C”). **If it enters the red section, the engine is overheating. Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible, switch off the engine and let the engine cool.**



**WARNING:** Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

**Odometer:** Registers the total miles (kilometers) of the vehicle. Refer to *Standard message center* or *Optional message center* in the *Driver Controls* chapter on how to switch the display from Metric to English.

0.0 mi

**Trip odometer:** Registers the miles (kilometers) of individual journeys.

**If equipped with a one button message center (Select/Reset),**

press and release the SELECT/RESET button on the cluster to toggle between odometer and trip odometer display. To reset, press and hold for less than two seconds.

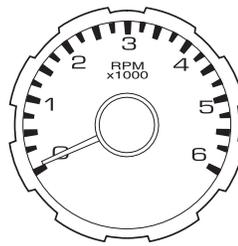
TRIP XXX.X  
0.0 mi

## Instrument Cluster

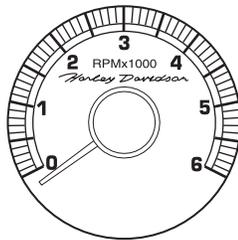
**If equipped with a three button message center**, press and release the message center INFO button until TRIP A or TRIP B appears in the display. Press the RESET button to reset.

**Tachometer:** Indicates the engine speed in revolutions per minute. Driving with your tachometer pointer continuously at the top of the scale may damage the engine.

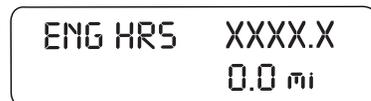
### Standard instrument cluster



### Harley-Davidson instrument cluster



**Engine hour meter (if equipped):** Registers the accumulated time the engine has been running. Press and release the message center INFO button until this is displayed.



## Instrument Cluster

### Engine oil pressure gauge:

Indicates engine oil pressure. The needle should stay in the normal operating range (between “L” and “H”). If the needle falls below the normal range, stop the vehicle, turn off the engine and check the engine oil level. Add oil if needed. If the oil level is correct, have your vehicle checked at your authorized dealer.

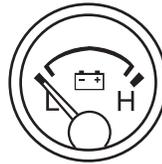


**Fuel gauge:** Indicates approximately how much fuel is left in the fuel tank (when the ignition is in the on position). The fuel gauge may vary slightly when the vehicle is in motion or on a grade. The FUEL icon and arrow indicates which side of the vehicle the fuel filler door is located.



Refer to *Filling the tank* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter for more information.

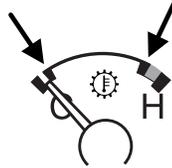
**Battery voltage gauge (manual transmission only):** Indicates the battery voltage when the ignition is in the on position. If the pointer moves and stays outside the normal operating range, have the vehicle's electrical system checked as soon as possible.



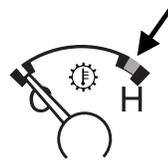
## Instrument Cluster

**Transmission fluid temperature gauge (automatic transmission only):** If the gauge is in the:

**Normal area**– the transmission fluid is within the normal operating temperature (between “H” and “C”).

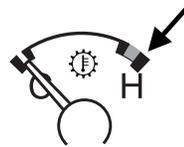


**Yellow area**– the transmission fluid is higher than normal operating temperature. This can be caused by special operating conditions (i.e. snowplowing, towing or off road use). Refer to *Special Operating Conditions* in the *scheduled maintenance information* for instructions. Operating the transmission for extended periods of time with the gauge in the yellow area may cause internal transmission damage.



Altering the severity of the operating conditions is recommended to lower the transmission temperature into the normal range.

**Red area**– the transmission fluid is overheating. Stop the vehicle to allow the temperature to return to normal range.

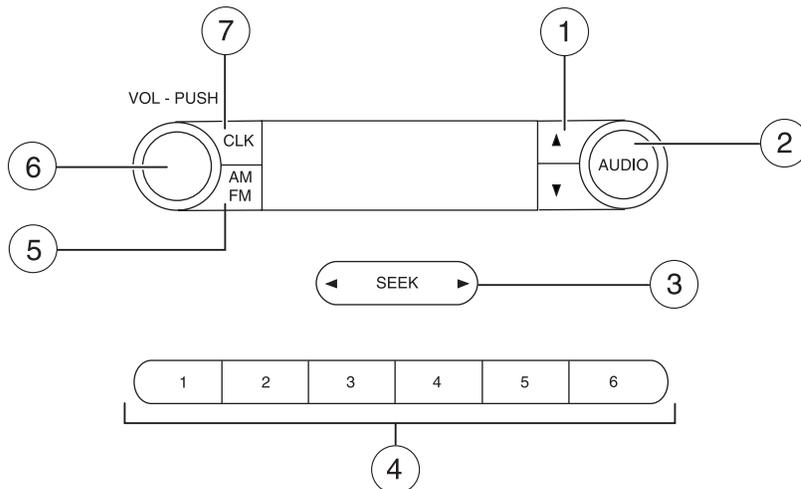


If the gauge is operating in the Yellow or Red area, stop the vehicle and verify the airflow is not restricted such as snow or debris blocking airflow through the grill. If the gauge continues to show high temperatures, see your authorized dealer.

## Entertainment Systems

### AUDIO SYSTEMS

#### AM/FM stereo system (if equipped)



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device that may take their focus off the road. The driver's primary responsibility is the safe operation of their vehicle. Only use cell phones and other devices not essential to the driving task when it is safe to do so.

The AM/FM stereo system does not contain rear speakers; only front driver side and passenger side speakers.

**Accessory delay:** Your vehicle is equipped with accessory delay. With this feature, the window switches and radio may be used for up to ten minutes after the ignition is turned off or until either front door is opened.

1. **▲ / ▼ (Tuner):** Press to manually go up or down the radio frequency. Press and hold for a fast advance through radio frequencies. Also use in AUDIO mode to gain access to various settings.



## Entertainment Systems

2. **AUDIO:** Press AUDIO repeatedly to gain access to the following settings:



**TREB (Treble):** Press AUDIO to reach the treble setting. Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK ▶ .

**BASS (Bass):** Press AUDIO to reach the bass setting. Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK ▶ .

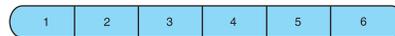
**BAL (Balance):** Press AUDIO to reach the balance setting. Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK ▶ to adjust between the left and right speakers.

**Setting the clock:** Press and hold CLK until the hours start to flash, then use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK ▶ to adjust. To adjust minutes, press CLK again to make the minutes start to flash and use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK ▶ to adjust. Press CLK again to exit the clock setting mode.

3. **SEEK:** Press ◀ SEEK ▶ to access the previous/next strong station.



4. **Memory presets:** To set a station: Select frequency band AM/FM1/FM2; tune to a station, press and hold a preset button until sound returns. You may store up to six stations in each frequency band for a total of 18.



5. **AM/FM:** Press AM/FM to select AM/FM1/FM2 frequency band.



6. **ON/OFF/Volume:** Press VOL - PUSH to turn ON/OFF. Turn VOL - PUSH to increase/decrease volume.

VOL - PUSH

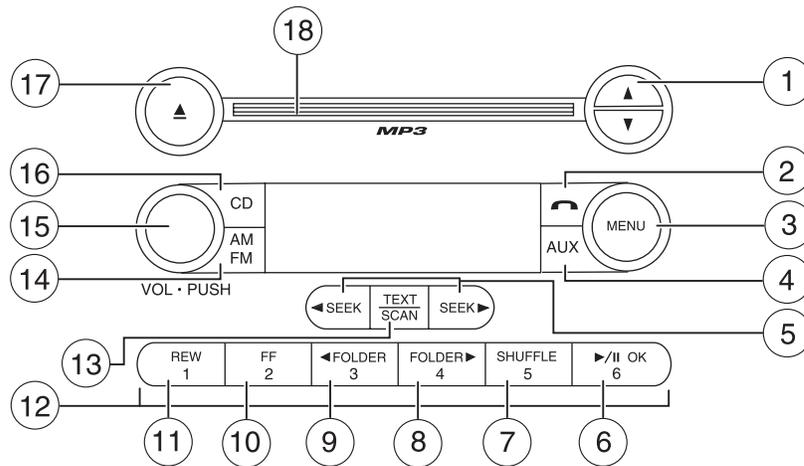


7. **CLK (Clock):** Press CLK to toggle between the clock and radio frequency.



## Entertainment Systems

### AM/FM stereo single CD/satellite compatible sound system (if equipped)



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device that may take their focus off the road. The driver's primary responsibility is the safe operation of their vehicle. Only use cell phones and other devices not essential to the driving task when it is safe to do so.

**Accessory delay:** Your vehicle is equipped with accessory delay which allows you to operate the window switches and the audio for up to ten minutes after the ignition has been turned off or until either front door is opened.

1. ▲ / ▼ : Press ▲ / ▼ to manually go up or down the radio frequency. Press and hold for a fast advance through radio frequencies.



**In satellite radio mode (if equipped),** press ▲ / ▼ to tune to the next/previous channel.

*Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS radio subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.*

## Entertainment Systems

2. **☎ (Phone):** If your vehicle is equipped with SYNC®, press to access SYNC PHONE features. For further information, please refer to supplemental information on SYNC® included with your vehicle. If your vehicle is not equipped with SYNC®, the display will read NO PHONE.



3. **MENU:** Press MENU repeatedly to access to the following settings:



**Setting the clock:** Press MENU until SET HOUR or SET MINUTES is displayed. Use ▲ /▼ /◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to adjust the hours/minutes.

**SATELLITE RADIO MENU (if equipped):** Press MENU when satellite radio mode is active to access. Press OK to enter into the satellite radio menu. Press ▲ /▼ to cycle through the following options:

- **CATEGORY:** Press OK to enter category mode. Press ▲ /▼ to scroll through the list of available SIRIUS channel Categories (Pop, Rock, News, etc.) Press OK when the desired category appears in the display. After a category is selected, press SEEK to search for that specific category of channels only (i.e. ROCK). You may also select CATEGORY ALL to seek all available SIRIUS categories and channels. Press OK to close and return to the main menu.
- **SAVE SONG:** Press OK to save the currently playing song title in the system's memory. (If you try to save something other than a song, CANT SAVE will appear in the display.) When the chosen song is playing on any satellite radio channel, the system will alert you with an audible prompt. Press OK while SONG ALERT is in the display and the system will take you to the channel playing the desired song. You can save up to 20 song titles. If you attempt to save a song when the system is full, the display will read REPLACE SONG? Press OK to access the saved songs and press ▲ /▼ to cycle through the saved songs. When the song appears in the display that you would like to replace, press OK. SONG REPLACED will appear in the display.
- **DELETE SONG:** Press OK to delete a song title from the system's memory. Press ▲ /▼ to cycle through the saved songs. When the song title appears in the display that you would like to delete, press

## Entertainment Systems

OK. The song will appear in the display for confirmation. Press OK again and the display will read SONG DELETED. If you do not want to delete the currently listed song, press ▲ / ▼ to select either RETURN or CANCEL.

**Note:** If there are no songs presently saved, the display will read NO SONGS.

- **DELETE ALL SONGS:** Press OK to delete all songs from the system's memory. The display will read ARE YOU SURE ? Press OK to confirm deletion of all saved songs and the display will read ALL DELETED.  
**Note:** If there are no songs presently saved, the display will read NO SONGS.
- **ENABLE ALERTS / DISABLE ALERTS:** Press OK to enable/disable the satellite alert status which alerts you when your selected songs are playing on a satellite radio channel. (The system default is disabled.) SONG ALERTS ENABLED/DISABLED will appear in the display. The menu listing will display the opposite state. For example, if you have chosen to enable the song alerts, the menu listing will read DISABLE as the alerts are currently on, so your other option is to turn them off.

*Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS radio subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.*

**AUTOSET:** Press MENU until the display reads AUTOSET. Autoset allows you to set the strongest local radio stations without losing your original manually set preset stations for AM/FM1/FM2. Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to turn on/off.

When the six strongest stations are filled, the station stored in preset 1 will begin playing. If there are less than six strong stations, the system will store the last one in the remaining presets.

**BASS:** Press MENU to reach the bass setting. Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to adjust.

**TREB (Treble):** Press MENU to reach the treble setting. Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to adjust.

**BAL (Balance):** Press MENU to reach the balance setting. Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to adjust the audio between the left (L) and right (R) speakers.

**FADE:** Press MENU to reach the fade setting. Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to adjust the audio between the back (B) and front (F) speakers.

## Entertainment Systems

**SPEEDVOL (Speed sensitive volume, if equipped):** Press MENU to reach the SPEEDVOL setting. Radio volume automatically gets louder with increasing vehicle speed to compensate for road and wind noise.

Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to adjust.

The default setting is *off*; increasing your vehicle speed will not change the volume level.

Adjust 1–7: Increasing this setting from 1 (lowest setting) to 7 (highest setting) allows the radio volume to automatically change slightly with vehicle speed to compensate for road and wind noise.

Recommended level is 1–3; SPEED OFF turns the feature off and level 7 is the maximum setting.

**Track/Folder mode:** Available only on MP3 discs in CD mode. In Track mode, pressing ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ will scroll through all tracks on the disc

In Folder mode, pressing ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ will scroll only through tracks within the selected folder.

Press ◀ FOLDER, FOLDER ▶ to access the previous/next folder (if available).

**COMPRESS (Compression):** Available only in CD/MP3 mode. Press MENU until COMPRESS ON/OFF appears in the display.

Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to toggle ON/OFF. When COMPRESS is ON, the system will bring the soft and loud CD passages together for a more consistent listening level.

4. **AUX:** Press repeatedly to cycle through FES/DVD (if equipped), LINE IN (auxiliary audio mode, if equipped) and SAT1, SAT2 and SAT3 modes (satellite radio, if equipped).

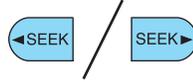


For location and further information on auxiliary audio mode, refer to *Auxiliary input jack* later in this chapter.

*Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS radio subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.*

## Entertainment Systems

5. **SEEK:** In radio mode, press ◀ / ▶ to access the previous/next strong station.



In CD/MP3 mode, press ◀ / ▶ to access the previous/next CD/MP3 track.

In satellite radio mode (if equipped), press ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to seek to the previous/next channel. If a specific category is selected, (Jazz, Rock, News, etc.), press ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to seek to the previous/next channel in the selected category. Press and hold ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to fast seek through the previous /next channels.

In TEXT MODE, press ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to view the previous/additional display text.

In CATEGORY MODE, press ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to select a category.

*Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS radio subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.*

6. ▶ / || **OK (Play/Pause):** This



control is operational in CD/MP3 mode. When a CD/MP3 is playing, press to pause or play the current CD/MP3. The CD/MP3 status will display in the radio display.

**OK:** Use in various menu selections.

If your vehicle is equipped with a Family Entertainment System (FES) please refer to the *Family entertainment DVD system* section later in this chapter

7. **SHUFFLE:** In CD/MP3 mode, press SHUFFLE to engage shuffle mode. SHUFFLE ON will appear in the display. If you wish to engage shuffle mode right away, press SEEK to begin random play. Otherwise, random play will begin when the current track is finished playing. CD SHUF will appear in the display. To disengage, press SHUFFLE again. SHUFFLE OFF will appear in the display.



## Entertainment Systems

**Note:** In CD/MP3 mode, press SHUFFLE to play the tracks in random order. In MP3 folder mode, the system will randomly play all tracks within the current folder.

8. **FOLDER** : In folder mode, press FOLDER  to access next folder on MP3 discs, if available.



9.  **FOLDER**: In folder mode, press  FOLDER to access the previous folder on MP3 discs, if available.



10. **FF (Fast forward)**: Press FF to manually advance in a CD/MP3 track.



11. **REW (Rewind)**: Press REW to manually reverse in a CD/MP3 track.



12. **Memory presets:** To set a station: Select frequency band AM/FM1/FM2; tune to a station, press and hold a preset control until sound returns. You may store up to six stations in each frequency band for a total of 18.



**In satellite radio mode (if equipped),** there are 18 available presets, six each for SAT1, SAT2 and SAT3. To save satellite channels in your memory presets, tune to the desired channel then press and hold a preset control until sound returns.

*Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS radio subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.*

13. **TEXT/SCAN: In radio and CD/MP3 mode,** press and hold for a brief sampling of radio stations or CD tracks. Press again to stop.



**In CD/MP3 mode,** press and release to display track title, artist name, and disc title.

**In satellite radio mode (if equipped),** press and release to enter TEXT MODE and display the current song title. While in TEXT MODE, press again to scroll through the current song title, artist, channel category and the SIRIUS long channel name.

## Entertainment Systems

In **TEXT MODE** sometimes the display requires additional text to be displayed. When the “>” indicator is active, press **SEEK**  to view the additional display text. When the “<” indicator is active, press  **SEEK** to view the previous display text.

In **satellite radio mode (if equipped)**, press and hold to hear a brief sampling of the next channels. Press again to stop. In **CATEGORY MODE**, press **SCAN** to hear a brief sampling of the channels in the selected category. Press again to stop.

*Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS radio subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.*

14. **AM/FM:** Press **AM/FM** to select AM/FM1/FM2 frequency band.



15. **ON/OFF/Volume:** Press **VOL-PUSH** to turn on/off. Turn **VOL-PUSH** to increase/decrease volume.



VOL - PUSH

**Note:**If the volume is set above a certain level and the ignition is turned off, the volume will come back on at a “nominal” listening level when the ignition switch is turned back on.

16. **CD:** Press to enter **CD/MP3** mode. If a CD is already loaded into the system, **CD/MP3** play will begin where it ended last.



17.  **(CD eject):** Press to eject a CD.

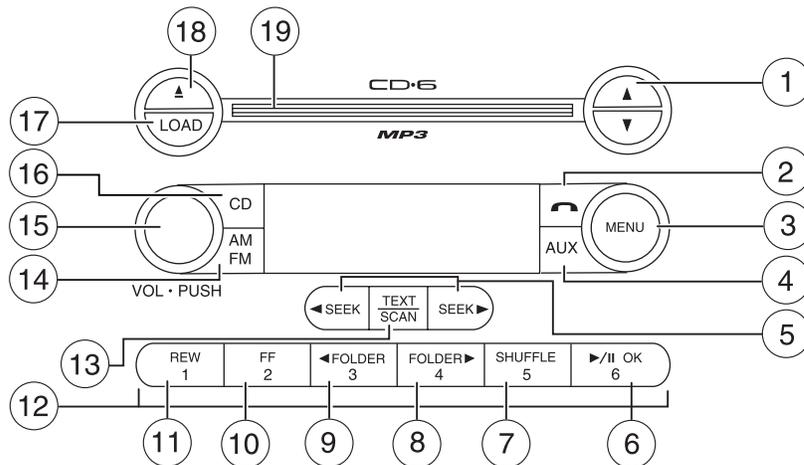


18. **CD slot:** Insert a CD label side up in the CD slot.



## Entertainment Systems

### Premium/Premium plus in-dash six CD/MP3/satellite compatible sound system (if equipped)



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device that may take their focus off the road. The driver's primary responsibility is the safe operation of their vehicle. Only use cell phones and other devices not essential to the driving task when it is safe to do so.

**Accessory delay:** Your vehicle is equipped with accessory delay which allows you to operate the window switches and audio for up to ten minutes after the ignition has turned off or until either front door has opened.

#### 1. ▲ / ▼ (Tune/Disc selector):

**In radio mode,** press to manually go up (▲) or down (▼) the radio frequency. Press and hold for a fast advance through radio frequencies.

**In menu mode,** use to select various settings.

**In CD/MP3 mode,** press to select the desired disc.



## Entertainment Systems

*Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS radio subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.*

2. **Phone**: Press to access

SYNC PHONE mode if equipped with SYNC®. If your vehicle is not equipped with SYNC®, NO PHONE will appear the display.



3. **MENU**: Press repeatedly to access to the following settings:



**Setting the clock:** Press until SELECT HOUR or SELECT MINS is displayed. Press ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK ▶ to adjust the hours/minutes.

**SATELLITE RADIO MENU (if equipped):** Press MENU when satellite radio mode is active to access. Press OK to enter into the satellite radio menu. Press ▲ / ▼ to cycle through the following options:

- **CATEGORY:** Press OK to enter category mode. Press ▲ / ▼ to scroll through the list of available SIRIUS channel Categories (Pop, Rock, News, etc.) Press OK when the desired category appears in the display. After a category is selected, press SEEK to search for that specific category of channels only (i.e. ROCK). You may also select CATEGORY ALL to seek all available SIRIUS categories and channels. Press OK to close and return to the main menu.
- **SAVE SONG:** Press OK to save the currently playing song title in the system's memory. (If you try to save something other than a song, CANT SAVE will appear in the display.) When the chosen song is playing on any satellite radio channel, the system will alert you with an audible prompt. Press OK while SONG ALERT is in the display and the system will take you to the channel playing the desired song. You can save up to 20 song titles. If you attempt to save a song when the system is full, the display will read REPLACE SONG? Press OK to access the saved songs and press ▲ / ▼ to cycle through the saved songs. When the song appears in the display that you would like to replace, press OK. SONG REPLACED will appear in the display.
- **DELETE SONG:** Press OK to delete a song from the system's memory. Press ▲ / ▼ to cycle through the saved songs. When the song appears in the display that you would like to delete, press OK. The song will appear in the display for confirmation. Press OK again

## Entertainment Systems

and the display will read SONG DELETED. If you do not want to delete the currently listed song, press ▲ / ▼ to select either RETURN or CANCEL.

**Note:** If there are no songs presently saved, the display will read NO SONGS.

- **DELETE ALL SONGS:** Press OK to delete all songs from the system's memory. The display will read ARE YOU SURE ? Press OK to confirm deletion of all saved songs and the display will read ALL DELETED.  
**Note:** If there are no songs presently saved, the display will read NO SONGS.
- **ENABLE ALERTS / DISABLE ALERTS:** Press OK to enable/disable the satellite alert status which alerts you when your selected songs are playing on a satellite radio channel. (The system default is disabled.) SONG ALERTS ENABLED/DISABLED will appear in the display. The menu listing will display the opposite state. For example, if you have chosen to enable the song alerts, the menu listing will read DISABLE as the alerts are currently on, so your other option is to turn them off.

*Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS radio subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.*

**AUTOSET:** Press MENU until the display reads AUTOSET. Autoset allows you to set the strongest local radio stations without losing your original manually set preset stations for AM/FM1/FM2. Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to turn on/off.

When the six strongest stations are filled, the station stored in preset 1 will begin playing. If there are less than six strong stations, the system will store the last one in the remaining presets.

**RBDS:** Available only in FM mode. This feature allows you to search RBDS-equipped stations for a certain category of music format: CLASSIC, COUNTRY, INFORM, JAZZ/RB, ROCK, etc.

**To activate,** press MENU repeatedly until RBDS (ON/OFF) appears in the display. Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK ▶ to toggle RBDS ON/OFF. When RBDS is OFF, you will not be able to search for RBDS equipped stations or view the station name or type.

**To search for specific RBDS music categories:** When the desired category appears in the display, press ▲ / ▼ to find the desired type, then press and release ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ or press and hold SCAN to begin the search.

## Entertainment Systems

**To view the station name or type:** When the desired category appears in the display, press TEXT/SCAN to toggle between displaying the station type (COUNTRY, ROCK, etc.) or the station name (WYCD, WXYZ, etc.).

**BASS:** Press MENU to reach the bass setting. Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to adjust.

**TREB (Treble):** Press MENU to reach the treble setting. Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to adjust.

**BAL (Balance):** Press MENU to reach the balance setting. Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to adjust the audio between the left (L) and right (R) speakers.

**FADE:** Press MENU to reach the fade setting. Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to adjust the audio between the back (B) and front (F) speakers.

**ALL SEATS (Occupancy mode)** (Available on Audiophile radios only): Press MENU repeatedly to access. Press ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK ▶ to optimize sound for ALL SEATS, DRIVERS SEAT or REAR SEATS.

**SPEEDVOL (Speed sensitive volume, if equipped):** Press MENU to reach the SPEEDVOL setting. Radio volume automatically gets louder with increasing vehicle speed to compensate for road and wind noise. Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to adjust.

The default setting is *off*; increasing your vehicle speed will not change the volume level.

Adjust 1–7: Increasing this setting from 1 (lowest setting) to 7 (highest setting) allows the radio volume to automatically change slightly with vehicle speed to compensate for road and wind noise.

Recommended level is 1–3; SPEED OFF turns the feature off and level 7 is the maximum setting.

**Track/Folder Mode:** Available only on MP3 discs in CD mode. In Track Mode, pressing ◀ SEEK ▶ will scroll through all tracks on the disc. In Folder mode, pressing ◀ SEEK ▶ will scroll only through tracks within the selected folder. Press ◀ FOLDER, FOLDER ▶ to access the previous/next folder (if available).

## Entertainment Systems

**COMPRESS (Compression):** Available only in CD/MP3 mode. Press MENU until COMPRESS ON/OFF appears in the display.

Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to toggle ON/OFF. When COMPRESS is ON, the system will bring soft and loud CD passages together for a more consistent listening level.

4. **AUX:** Press repeatedly to cycle through FES/DVD (if equipped), SYNC® (if equipped), LINE IN (Auxiliary audio mode, if equipped), SAT1, SAT2 and SAT3 modes (satellite radio, if equipped).

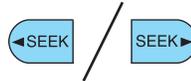


For location and further information on the auxiliary audio mode, refer to *Auxiliary input jack* later in this chapter.

If your vehicle is equipped with a Family Entertainment System (FES) please refer to the *Family entertainment DVD system* section later in this chapter.

*Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS radio subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.*

5. **SEEK: In radio mode,** press ◀ / ▶ to access the previous/next strong station.



**In CD/MP3 mode,** press ◀ / ▶ to access the previous/next CD track.

**In satellite radio mode (if equipped),** press ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to seek to the previous/next channel. If a specific category is selected, (Jazz, Rock, News, etc.), press ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to seek to the previous/next channel in the selected category. Press and hold ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to fast seek through the previous /next channels.

**In TEXT MODE,** press ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to view the previous/additional display text.

**In CATEGORY MODE,** press ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to select a category.

*Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS radio subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.*

6. ▶ / || **OK (Play/Pause):** This control is operational in CD/MP3 mode. When a CD/MP3 is playing, press to pause or play the current CD. The CD status will display in the radio display.



## Entertainment Systems

**OK:** Use in various menu selections.

If your vehicle is equipped with a Family Entertainment System (FES) please refer to the *Family entertainment DVD system* section later in this chapter.

7. **SHUFFLE:** In CD/MP3 mode, press SHUFFLE to engage shuffle mode. SHUFFLE ON will appear in the display. If you wish to engage shuffle mode right away, press SEEK to begin random play. Otherwise, random play will begin when the current track is finished playing. CD SHUF will appear in the display. To disengage, press SHUFFLE again. SHUFFLE OFF will appear in the display.



**Note:** In track mode, all tracks on the *current* disc will shuffle in random order. In MP3 folder mode, the system will randomly play all tracks within the current folder.

8. **FOLDER** ► : In folder mode, press FOLDER ► to access next folder on MP3 discs, if available.



9. ◀ **FOLDER:** In folder mode, press ◀ FOLDER to access the previous folder on MP3 discs, if folders are available.



10. **FF (Fast forward):** Press FF to manually advance in a CD/MP3 track.



11. **REW (Rewind):** Press REW to manually reverse in a CD/MP3 track.



12. **Memory presets:** To set a station: Select frequency band AM/FM1/FM2; tune to a station, press and hold a preset control until sound returns. You may store up to six stations in each frequency band for a total of 18.



**In satellite radio mode (if equipped),** there are 18 available presets, six each for SAT1, SAT2 and SAT3. To save satellite channels in your memory presets, tune to the desired channel then press and hold a preset control until sound returns.

*Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS radio subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.*

## Entertainment Systems

### 13. **TEXT/SCAN: In radio and CD/MP3 mode**, press and hold for



2 seconds to activate mode to hear a brief sampling of radio stations or CD tracks. Press again to stop.

**In CD/MP3 mode**, press and release to display track title, artist name, and disc title and file name (if available).

**In satellite radio mode (if equipped)**, press and release to enter TEXT MODE and display the current song title. While in TEXT MODE, press again to scroll through the current song title, artist, channel category and the SIRIUS long channel name.

In TEXT MODE, sometimes the display requires additional text to be displayed. When the “>” indicator is active, press SEEK ► to view the additional display text. When the “>” indicator is active, press ◀ SEEK to view the previous display text.

**In satellite radio mode (if equipped)**, press and hold to hear a brief sampling of the next channels. Press again to stop.

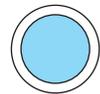
In CATEGORY MODE, press SCAN to hear a brief sampling of channels in the selected category. Press again to stop.

*Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.*

### 14. **AM/FM**: Press to select AM/FM1/FM2 frequency band.



### 15. **ON/OFF/Volume**: Press to turn ON/OFF. Turn to increase/decrease volume.



VOL - PUSH

**Note:** If the volume is set above a certain level and the ignition is turned off, the volume will come back on at a “nominal” listening level when the ignition switch is turned back on.

### 16. **CD**: Press to enter CD/MP3 mode. If a CD is already loaded into the system, CD/MP3 play will begin where it ended last.



### 17. **LOAD**: To load a disc into the system, press LOAD. Select a slot number using memory presets 1–6. When the display reads LOAD CD#, load the desired disc, label side up.



## Entertainment Systems

If you do not choose a slot within five seconds, the system will choose for you. Once loaded, the first track will begin to play.

**To auto load up to 6 discs**, press and hold LOAD until the display reads AUTOLOAD#. Load the desired disc, label side up. The system will prompt you to load discs for the remaining available slots. Insert the discs, one at a time, label side up, when prompted. Once loaded, the disc in the last slot loaded will begin to play.

**Note:** An MP3 disc with folders will show F001 (folder #) T001 (track #) in the display. An MP3 disc without folders will show T001 (track#) in the display. Refer to *MP3 track and folder structure* later in this chapter for further information.

18. **▲ (CD eject):** To eject a disc from the system, press ▲. Select the correct slot number using memory presets 1–6. When ready, the system will eject the disc and the display will read REMOVE CD. If the disc is not removed in 15 seconds, the system will reload the disc.



**To auto eject up to 6 CDs**, press and hold ▲ until the system begins ejecting the current disc. Remove the current disc and the next disc will be ejected. If the current disc is not removed, the system will reload the disc.

19. **CD slot:** Insert a CD label side up.



### Auxiliary input jack (if equipped)



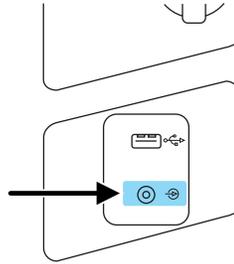
**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device that may take their focus off the road. The driver's primary responsibility is the safe operation of their vehicle. Only use cell phones and other devices not essential to the driving task when it is safe to do so.

## Entertainment Systems

Your vehicle may be equipped with an Auxiliary Input Jack (AIJ). The Auxiliary Input Jack, located on the instrument panel below the power point, provides a way to connect your portable music player to the in-vehicle audio system. This allows the audio from a portable music player to be played through the vehicle speakers with high fidelity.

To achieve optimal performance, please observe the following instructions when attaching your portable music device to the audio system.

If your vehicle is equipped with a navigation system, refer to *Auxiliary input jack* section in the *Audio features* chapter of your *Navigation system* supplement.



### Required equipment:

1. Any portable music player designed to be used with headphones
2. An audio extension cable with stereo male 1/8 in. (3.5 mm) connectors at each end

### To play your portable music player using the auxiliary input jack:

1. Begin with the vehicle parked and the radio turned off.
2. Ensure that the battery in your portable music player is new or fully charged and that the device is turned off.
3. Attach one end of the audio extension cable to the headphone output of your player and the other end of the audio extension cable to the AIJ in your vehicle.
4. Turn the radio on, using either a tuned FM station or a CD loaded into the system. Adjust the volume to a comfortable listening level.
5. Turn the portable music player on and adjust the volume to 1/2 the volume.
6. Press AUX on the vehicle radio repeatedly until LINE, LINE IN or SYNC LINE IN appears in the display.  
You should hear audio from your portable music player although it may be low.
7. Adjust the sound on your portable music player until it reaches the level of the FM station or CD by switching back and forth between the AUX and FM or CD controls.

## Entertainment Systems

### Troubleshooting:

1. Do not connect the audio input jack to a line level output. Line level outputs are intended for connection to a home stereo and are not compatible with the AIJ. The AIJ will only work correctly with devices that have a headphone output with a volume control.
2. Do not set the portable music player's volume level higher than is necessary to match the volume of the CD or FM radio in your audio system as this will cause distortion and will reduce sound quality. Many portable music players have different output levels, so not all players should be set at the same levels. Some players will sound best at full volume and others will need to be set at a lower volume.
3. If the music sounds distorted at lower listening levels, turn the portable music player volume down. If the problems persist, replace or recharge the batteries in the portable music player.
4. The portable music player must be controlled in the same manner when it is used with headphones as the AIJ does not provide control (play, pause, etc.) over the attached portable music player.
5. For safety reasons, connecting or adjusting the settings on your portable music player should not be attempted while the vehicle is moving. Also, the portable music player should be stored in a secure location, such as the center console or the glove box, when the vehicle is in motion. The audio extension cable must be long enough to allow the portable music player to be safely stored while the vehicle is in motion.

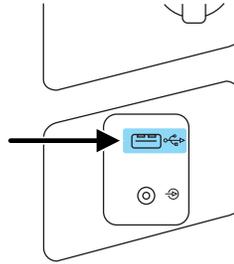
### USB port (if equipped)



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device that may take their focus off the road. The driver's primary responsibility is the safe operation of their vehicle. Only use cell phones and other devices not essential to the driving task when it is safe to do so.

## Entertainment Systems

Your vehicle may be equipped with a USB port located on the instrument panel. This feature allows you to plug in media playing devices, memory sticks, and also to charge devices if they support this feature. For further information on this feature, refer to *Accessing and using your USB port* in the *SYNC* supplement or *Navigation system* supplement.



### GENERAL AUDIO INFORMATION

#### Radio frequencies:

AM and FM frequencies are established by the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and the Canadian Radio and Telecommunications Commission (CRTC). Those frequencies are:

AM: 530, 540–1700, 1710 kHz

FM: 87.7, 87.9–107.7, 107.9 MHz

#### Radio reception factors:

There are three factors that can affect radio reception:

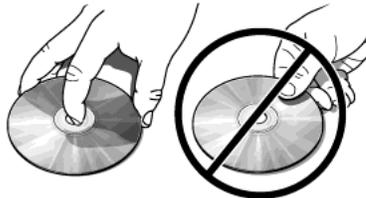
- Distance/strength: The further you travel from an FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.
- Terrain: Hills, mountains, tall buildings, power lines, electric fences, traffic lights and thunderstorms can interfere with your reception.
- Station overload: When you pass a broadcast tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and play while the weak station frequency is displayed.

## Entertainment Systems

### CD/CD player care

Do:

- Handle discs by their edges only. (Never touch the playing surface).
- Inspect discs before playing.
- Clean only with an approved CD cleaner.
- Wipe discs from the center out.

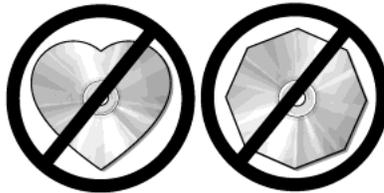


Don't:

- Expose discs to direct sunlight or heat sources for extended periods of time.
- Clean using a circular motion.

**CD units are designed to play commercially pressed 4.75 in (12 cm) audio compact discs only. Due to technical incompatibility, certain recordable and re-recordable compact discs may not function correctly when used in Ford CD players.**

**Do not use any irregular shaped CDs or discs with a scratch protection film attached.**



## Entertainment Systems

**CDs with homemade paper (adhesive) labels should not be inserted into the CD player as the label may peel and cause the CD to become jammed. It is recommended that homemade CDs be identified with permanent felt tip marker rather than adhesive labels. Ballpoint pens may damage CDs. Please contact your authorized dealer for further information.**



### **Audio system warranty and service**

Refer to the *Warranty Guide/Customer Information Guide* for audio system warranty information. If service is necessary, see your dealer or qualified technician.

### **MP3 track and folder structure**

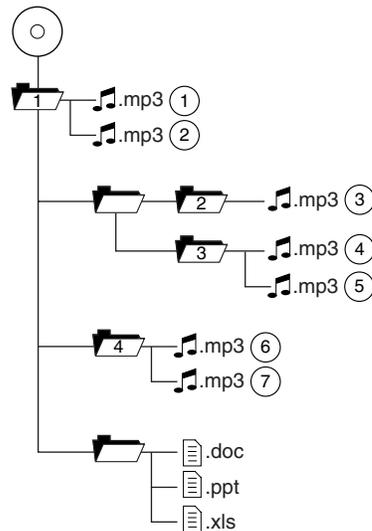
Your MP3 system recognizes MP3 individual tracks and folder structure as follows:

- There are two different modes for MP3 disc playback: MP3 track mode (system default) and MP3 folder mode. For more information on track and folder mode, refer to *Sample MP3 structure* in the following section.
- MP3 track mode ignores any folder structure on the MP3 disc. The player numbers each MP3 track on the disc (noted by the .mp3 file extension) from T001 to a maximum of T255.  
**Note:** The maximum number of playable MP3 files may be less depending on the structure of the CD and exact model of radio present.
- MP3 folder mode represents a folder structure consisting of one level of folders. The CD player numbers all MP3 tracks on the disc (noted by the .mp3 file extension) and all folders containing MP3 files, from F001 (folder) T001 (track) to F253 T255.
- Creating discs with only one level of folders will help with navigation through the disc files.

## Entertainment Systems

### Sample MP3 structure

If you are burning your own MP3 discs, it is important to understand how the system will read the structures you create. While various files may be present, (files with extensions other than mp3), only files with the .mp3 extension will be played. Other files will be ignored by the system. This enables you to use the same MP3 disc for a variety of tasks on your work computer, home computer and your in vehicle system.



In track mode, the system will display and play the structure as if it were only one level deep (all .mp3 files will be played, regardless of being in a specific folder). In folder mode, the system will only play the .mp3 files in the current folder.

### Satellite radio information (if equipped)

**Satellite radio channels:** SIRIUS broadcasts a variety of music, news, sports, weather, traffic and entertainment satellite radio channels. For more information and a complete list of SIRIUS satellite radio channels, visit [www.sirius.com](http://www.sirius.com) in the United States, [www.sirius-canada.ca](http://www.sirius-canada.ca) in Canada, or call SIRIUS at 1-888-539-7474.

**Satellite radio reception factors:** To receive the satellite signal, your vehicle has been equipped with a satellite radio antenna located on the roof of your vehicle. The vehicle roof provides the best location for an unobstructed, open view of the sky, a requirement of a satellite radio system. Like AM/FM, there are several factors that can affect satellite radio reception performance:

- **Antenna obstructions:** For optimal reception performance, keep the antenna clear of snow and ice build-up and keep luggage and other material as far away from the antenna as possible.

## Entertainment Systems

- Terrain: Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with your reception.
- Station overload: When you pass a ground based broadcast repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and result in an audio mute.

Unlike AM/FM audible static, you will hear an audio mute when there is a satellite radio signal interference. Your radio display may display NO SIGNAL to indicate the interference.

**SIRIUS satellite radio service:** SIRIUS Satellite Radio is a subscription based satellite radio service that broadcasts music, sports, news and entertainment programming. A service fee is required in order to receive SIRIUS service. Vehicles that are equipped with a factory installed SIRIUS Satellite Radio system include:

- Hardware and limited subscription term, which begins on the date of sale or lease of the vehicle.
- Use of online media player providing access to all SIRIUS music channels over the internet using any computer connected to the internet (U.S. customers only).

For information on extended subscription terms, contact SIRIUS at 1-888-539-7474.

**Note:** SIRIUS reserves the unrestricted right to change, rearrange, add or delete programming including canceling, moving or adding particular channels, and its prices, at any time, with or without notice to you. Ford Motor Company shall not be responsible for any such programming changes.

**Satellite Radio Electronic Serial Number (ESN):** This 12-digit Satellite Serial Number is needed to activate, modify or track your satellite radio account. You will need this number when communicating with SIRIUS. While in Satellite Radio mode, you can view this number on the radio display by pressing AUX and Preset 1 control simultaneously.

## Entertainment Systems

Radio Display	Condition	Action Required
ACQUIRING	Radio requires more than two seconds to produce audio for the selected channel.	No action required. This message should disappear shortly.
SAT FAULT	Internal module or system failure present.	If this message does not clear within a short period of time, or with an ignition key cycle, your receiver may have a fault. See your authorized dealer for service.
INVALID CHNL	Channel no longer available.	This previously available channel is no longer available. Tune to another channel. If the channel was one of your presets, you may choose another channel for that preset button.
UNSUBSCRIBED	Subscription not available for this channel.	Contact SIRIUS at 1-888-539-7474 to subscribe to the channel or tune to another channel.
NO TEXT	Artist information not available.	Artist information not available at this time on this channel. The system is working properly.
NO TEXT	Song title information not available.	Song title information not available at this time on this channel. The system is working properly.
NO TEXT	Category information not available.	Category information not available at this time on this channel. The system is working properly.

## Entertainment Systems

Radio Display	Condition	Action Required
NO SIGNAL	Loss of signal from the SIRIUS satellite or SIRIUS tower to the vehicle antenna.	You are in a location that is blocking the SIRIUS signal (i.e., tunnel, under an overpass, dense foliage, etc). The system is working properly. When you move into an open area, the signal should return.
UPDATING	Update of channel programming in progress.	No action required. The process may take up to three minutes.
CALL SIRIUS 1-888-539-7474	Satellite service has been deactivated by SIRIUS Satellite Radio.	Call SIRIUS at 1-888-539-7474 to re-activate or resolve subscription issues.

### FAMILY ENTERTAINMENT DVD SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device that may take their focus off the road. The driver's primary responsibility is the safe operation of their vehicle. Only use cell phones and other devices not essential to the driving task when it is safe to do so.

Your vehicle may be equipped with a Family Entertainment System (FES) which allows you to listen to audio CDs, MP3 discs, watch DVDs and to plug in and play a variety of standard video game systems. The DVD player is capable of playing standard DVDs, CDs, MP3s and is compatible with CD-R/W, CD-R and certain CD-ROM media.

Please review this material to become familiar with the FES features and controls as well as the very important safety information.

#### Quick start

Your Family Entertainment System includes a DVD system, two sets of wireless infrared (IR) headphones and a wireless infrared (IR) remote control.

## Entertainment Systems

### To play a DVD in the DVD system:

The DVD system can play DVD-Video, DVD-R, DVD-R/W discs as well as audio CDs and video CDs. To ensure proper disc operation, check the disc for finger prints, scratches and cleanliness. Clean with a soft cloth, wiping from center to edge.

1. Ensure that the vehicle is on or the ignition is in accessory mode.
2. Insert a DVD into the system, label-side up to turn on the system. It will load automatically.
3. Press the power button on the DVD player, then press Play ► to begin to play the disc.



If a DVD is already loaded into the system, press PLAY on the DVD player.

**Note:** If sound can be heard, but no video is present, press VIDEO to select the video source (DVD or aux-inputs).

Press VIDEO to change the source displayed on the screen. Press repeatedly to cycle through: DVD-DISC, DVD-AUX, NON-DVD, OFF.



Press the power button to turn the system off. The indicator light will turn off indicating the system is off.



**Note:** The audio from the DVD system will play over all vehicle speakers and can be adjusted by the radio volume control.

### To play a CD in the DVD system:

The DVD system can play audio CDs, CD-R and CD-R/W, CD-ROM and video CDs. To ensure proper disc operation, check the disc for finger prints and scratches. Clean the disc with a soft cloth, wiping from the center to the edge.

1. Ensure that the vehicle is on or the ignition is in accessory mode.

## Entertainment Systems

2. Insert a CD into the system, label-side up to turn on the DVD system. It will load and automatically begin to play. If there is already a CD in the system, press PLAY on the DVD player.

3. The disc will begin to play and the 'CD Audio Disc' screen will display. From this screen, you can also select from COMPRESSION, SHUFFLE and SCAN features.



### **To play an MP3 disc in the DVD system:**

1. Ensure that the vehicle is on or the ignition is in accessory mode.

2. Insert an MP3 disc into the system, label-side up to turn on the DVD system. It will load and automatically begin to play. If there is already a disc in the system, press PLAY on the DVD player.

3. The disc will begin to play and the 'MP3 Audio Disc' screen will display and allow you to access the COMPRESSION, SHUFFLE, SCAN and FOLDER MODE features.



### **To play an auxiliary source through the DVD system**

The DVD system can be used to connect and play auxiliary electronic devices such as game systems, personal camcorders, video cassette recorders, etc.

1. Ensure that the vehicle is on or the ignition is in accessory mode.

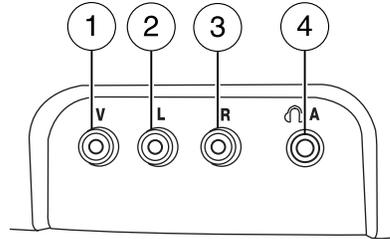
## Entertainment Systems

2. Press the power button to turn the DVD system on. The indicator light next to the power button will illuminate.



3. Connect an auxiliary audio/video source by connecting RCA cords (not included) to the RCA jacks on the left hand side of the system.

- Yellow (1) — video input
- White (2) — left channel audio input
- Red (3) — right channel audio input



4. Press MEDIA on the DVD system to change the media source to AUX.  
 5. Press VIDEO on the DVD system to change the video source to DVD-AUX. If your source is properly plugged in, it will appear on the LCD (Liquid Crystal Display) screen. If your auxiliary source does not have a video signal, or if the DVD system does not detect a video signal from the auxiliary source, the screen will remain black. If the video source is set to DVD-AUX, the display will automatically turn on if a video signal is detected.

### **To listen to audio over the headphones (Dual play mode):**

You may listen to channels A and B over wired or wireless headphones. Refer to *Using the infrared wireless headphones* and *Using wired headphones* for further information.

- Black (4) — wired headphone output (wired headphones not included)

1. Press the headphone/speaker  button on the DVD player or press the 2 and 4 memory presets on the radio at the same time.



A green light will illuminate next to either the A or B Headphone Control Button to indicate which channel is active (able to be controlled).

2. Press MEDIA to change the audio source of the active channel (A or B). The audio source will be shown on the display. You may change the active channel by pressing the A or B headphone control button.

## Entertainment Systems

**Note:** Channel A can access any possible media source (AM, FM1, FM2, SAT (if equipped), CD, DVD, AUX). Channel B can only access DVD and AUX sources.

**Note:** Refer to *Single play/Dual play* for more information.

### Using the infrared (IR) wireless headphones:

1. Press the power control on the earpiece to turn the headphones ON.
2. Select Channel A or B for each set of wireless headphones by using the A/B control on the ear piece.
3. Adjust the headphone volume using the rotary dial on the earpiece.

### Using wired headphones (not included):

 **WARNING:** Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle and do not let children operate the system while unsupervised. If wired headphones or auxiliary systems are used, children may become entangled in the cords and seriously injure themselves.

1. Connect the wired headphones in to the headphone jacks on either side of the DVD system. Each side is labeled  A or  B. Headphones plugged into jack A will listen to Channel A and headphones plugged into jack B will listen to Channel B.
2. Adjust the volume levels using the volume controls on the DVD system.



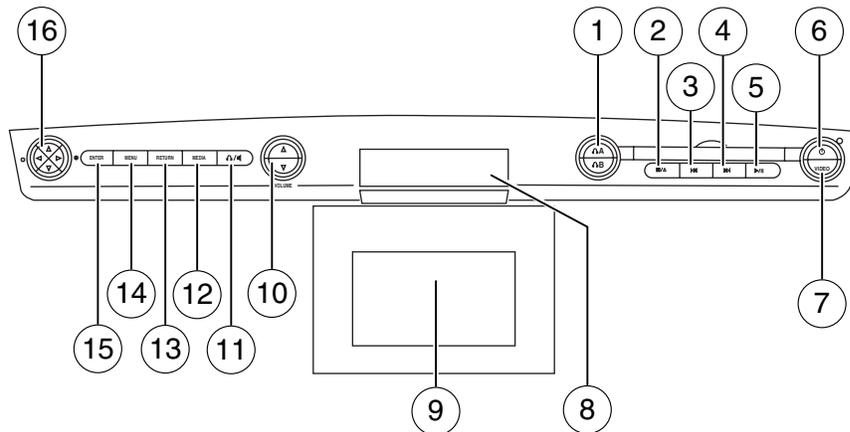
### To adjust display brightness:

To decrease/increase the brightness level on the display screen, press the brightness control on the DVD system. A display will appear at the bottom of the screen indicating the brightness level. The brightness display will only appear when the menu is not displayed.



## Entertainment Systems

### DVD player controls



1. **Headphone control A/B:** Press to select either the A or B headphone source. Then press MEDIA to select the desired playing media for that headset. When a headphone channel has been selected (A or B), selections will affect the source on that channel only.



**Note:** Headphone A can access any possible media (AM, FM1, FM2, SAT (if equipped), CD, DVD, DVD-AUX). Headphone B can only access DVD and DVD-AUX.

For further information, refer to *Single play/Dual play* later in this section.

2. **■ / ▲ (Stop/Eject):** Press once to stop and press a second time to eject a disc from the DVD system.



3. **◀◀ (Reverse):** Press and release for the previous chapter or track. Press and hold to reverse search a DVD, Video CD, or FES CD in DVD/CD mode.



## Entertainment Systems

4. **▶▶ (Fast forward):** Press and release for the next chapter or track. Press and hold to forward search a DVD, Video CD, or FES CD in DVD/CD mode.



5. **▶ / || (Play/Pause):** Press



(Play) to select DVD mode (and to turn the DVD system on if it is off).

If a disc is present, it will resume or begin to play. Press (Pause) while playing a disc to pause a DVD or CD.

6. **On/Off:** Press to turn the DVD system On/Off.



7. **VIDEO:** Press repeatedly to cycle through the following video state options which will be indicated on the bottom right hand corner of the display: DVD DISC, DVD-AUX,



NON-DVD and Off (no indicator). If you select the DVD-AUX video source, the display will turn off if there is no video signal detected. When a video signal is detected on the auxiliary video input, and the display is in the DVD-AUX video mode, the display will automatically turn on.

8. **Infrared (IR) Receiver & Transmitter:** System sensor which reads the signals from the remote control and sends audio signals to the infrared (IR) wireless headphones.

9. **LCD screen:** The eight inch diagonal screen rotates down to view and up into housing to store when not in use. Ensure that the screen is latched into the housing when being stored.

10. **Volume:** When in single play mode, press to increase (▲) or decrease (▼) the volume over all speakers. When in Dual Play, press to increase (▲) or decrease (▼)



the volume for the wired headphones. (Wireless headphone volume is controlled with the rotary dial on the right ear piece.)

## Entertainment Systems

11.  (Headphones/Speakers): Press once for Dual Play (Headphone mode- the rear speakers are muted) and press again for Single Play (same media playing through all speakers). You can also press the 2 and 4 memory preset buttons on the audio system at the same time to perform the same function. For further interaction information, refer to *Single Play/Dual play* under *Operation* later in this section.

12. **MEDIA:** Press repeatedly to select from the various possible playing media sources (AM, FM1, FM2, SAT (if equipped), CD, DVD, DVD-AUX). The media will show in the status display on the top of the screen when in Dual Play mode. When in Single Play mode, the media source will be displayed on the radio.



**Note:** Channel A can access any possible media source (AM, FM1, FM2, SAT (if equipped), CD, DVD, DVD-AUX). Channel B can only access DVD and DVD-AUX sources.

13. **RETURN:** Press to return to the playing media or to resume playback.



14. **MENU:** When playing a DVD, press MENU once to enter the DVD disc menu (if available) and press twice to enter the system set-up menu. From the set-up menu, you may select from Angle, Aspect Ratio, Language, Subtitles, Disc resume, Compression, Restore Defaults and Back. For more detailed information, refer to *Menu mode*.

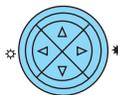


15. **ENTER:** Press to select/confirm the current selection.



16. **Cursor /Brightness controls:**

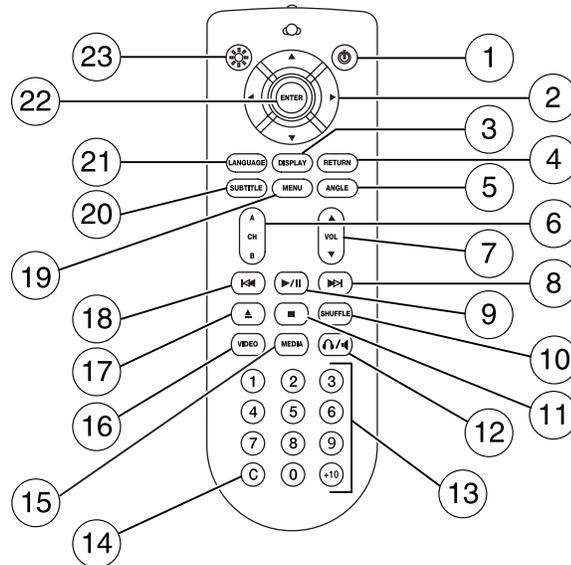
Use the cursor controls to make various selections when in any menu. When not in a menu, and in DVD mode, press  /  to adjust the brightness. A display bar will appear at the bottom of the screen indicating the brightness levels.



## Entertainment Systems

### Remote control

Unless otherwise stated, all operations can be carried out with the remote control. Always point the remote control directly at the player. Ensure that there are no obstructions between the remote and player.



1. **Power control:** Press to turn the FES (Family Entertainment System) ON/OFF.
2. **Cursor controls:** Use in various active menus to advance the cursor up/down/left/right. When not in a Menu, the left and right cursor controls decrease and increase the display brightness.
3. **DISPLAY:** Press to access the on-screen display of the FES functions and adjustments.
4. **RETURN:** Press to return to the previous menu screen.
5. **ANGLE** (DVD dependent): Press to select the angle to view the scene.
6. **Channel A/B:** Press to select either A or B headphones and then use the MEDIA control to select the desired playing media for the headphones.

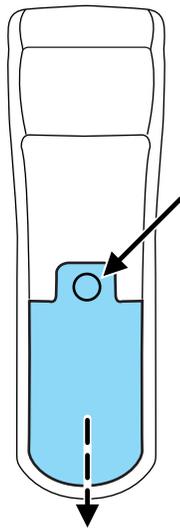
## Entertainment Systems

7. **VOL (Volume):** When in Single Play, press to increase (▲) or decrease (▼) the volume over all speakers. When in Dual Play, press to increase (▲) or decrease (▼) the volume for the wired headphones. (Wireless headphone volume is controlled with the rotary dial on the right ear piece.)
8. **Fast Forward/Next:** In DVD mode, press and hold for a quick advance within the DVD. Press and release to advance to the next chapter. In CD/MP3 mode, press to access the next track.
9. **Play/Pause:** Press to play or pause a DVD.
10. **SHUFFLE:** Press to play all tracks on the current CD/MP3 disc in random order.
11. **STOP:** Press to stop the current DVD or CD/MP3.
12.  **Speaker/Headphone** (Single/Dual Play): Press to toggle between Single Play (same media playing through all speakers) and Dual Play (headphone mode — the rear speakers are muted). You can also press the 2 and 4 memory presets on the audio system at the same time to perform the same function.
13. **Numeric Keypad:** Use the numeric controls to enter in a specific CD/MP3 track or DVD chapter to be played.
14. **C (Cancel):** Press to cancel/clear the numeric input (i.e. chapter number).
15. **MEDIA:** Press to cycle through the possible media sources: AM, FM1, FM2, SAT (if equipped), CD, DVD, LINE IN (if equipped), DVD-AUX.  
Channel B can only access DVD and AUX sources.
16. **VIDEO:** Press to cycle through video states: DVD-DISC, DVD-AUX, NON-DVD, Off.
17. **EJECT:** Press to eject a disc from the FES.
18. **Fast reverse/Previous:** When a DVD is playing, press and hold for a quick reverse within the DVD. Press and release for the previous chapter. Press PLAY to resume normal playback speed and volume. In CD/MP3 mode, press to access the previous track.
19. **MENU:** Press to access the DVD disc menu for selections. Press MENU again when in the DVD disc menu to access the system set-up menu.
20. **SUBTITLE** (DVD dependent): Press to turn the subtitle feature ON or OFF.

## Entertainment Systems

21. **LANGUAGE** (DVD dependent): Press to select the desired language.
22. **ENTER**: Press to select the highlighted menu option.
23. **ILLUMINATION**: Press to illuminate the remote control and backlight all of the buttons.

### **Battery replacement**



Batteries are supplied with the remote control unit. Since all batteries have a limited shelf life, replace them when the unit fails to control the DVD player.

Remove the screw and unlatch the battery cover to access the batteries. The remote control unit uses two AAA batteries which are supplied with the unit.

## Entertainment Systems

### Headphones

#### *Wireless headphones*

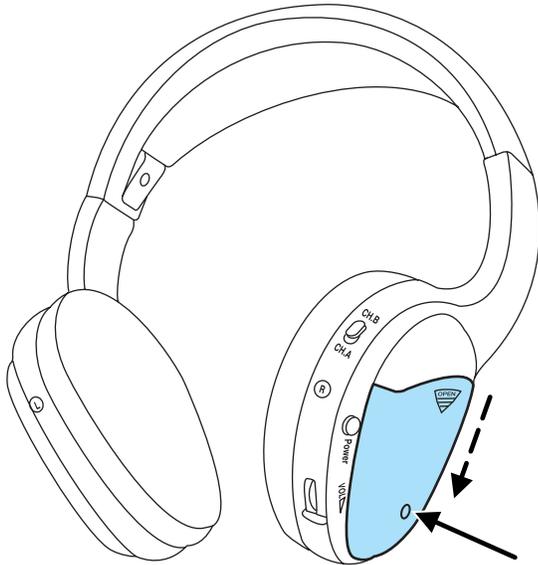
 **WARNING:** The driver should never use the headphones while driving the vehicle. Using headphones may prevent the driver from hearing audible warnings such as horns or emergency sirens, which could result in a crash causing serious injury. Give your full attention to driving and to the road.

Your FES system is equipped with two sets of battery powered, infrared wireless headphones. Two AAA batteries are needed to operate the headphones. (Batteries are included.)

Additional infrared wireless headphones may be purchased for use with the system. Also, wired headphones may be purchased and plugged in where indicated on the left and right hand sides of the system. Refer to *Wired Headphones* following.



## Entertainment Systems



To install the batteries, remove the screw at the bottom of the cover. Then, lightly press down on top and slide the cover off.

When replacing the batteries, use two new batteries (alkaline recommended) and install them with the correct orientation as indicated in the battery housing.

## Entertainment Systems



To operate the headphones:

- Press POWER on the ear piece to turn on the headphones. A red indicator light will illuminate indicating the headphones are ON. Press POWER again to turn the headphones off.
- Adjust the headphones to comfortably fit your head using the headband adjustment.
- Select the desired audio source (Channel A or B) for each set of wireless headphones by using the A/B selection switch on the ear piece.
- Adjust the volume control to the desired listening level.

Ensure that the headphones are turned off when not in use. After approximately one minute of not being in use (no infrared signal is received), the wireless headphones will automatically turn off. They will also turn off after two hours of continuous use as a power save feature. If this happens, simply turn the headphones on again and continue use.

## Entertainment Systems

### Wired headphones

 **WARNING:** Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle and do not let children operate the system while unsupervised. If wired headphones or auxiliary systems are used, children may become entangled in the cords and seriously injure themselves.

 **WARNING:** The driver should never use the headphones while driving the vehicle. Using headphones may prevent the driver from hearing audible warnings such as horns or emergency sirens, which could result in a crash causing serious injury. Give your full attention to driving and to the road.

You may purchase wired headphones for your FES (Family Entertainment System). Plug them into the 3.5 mm headphone jack(s) located on the left and right sides of the system. (Channel A is located on the left side and Channel B is located on the right side.) These headphones will be active when in Dual Play mode.

To listen to the audio on wired headphones (not included), connect the wired headphones into the headphone jacks on the sides of the DVD system. The wired headphone jack for Channel A is located on the left side of the FES and is labeled  A. Headphones plugged into this headphone jack will hear audio from the audio source selected to be the Channel A source. The wired headphone jack for Channel B is located on the right side of the FES and is labeled  B. Headphones plugged into this headphone jack will hear audio from the audio source selected to be the Channel B source.

Adjust the headphone volume using the volume control on the DVD system.



### Operation

#### Single play/Dual play

Your DVD and audio system work together with the infrared headphones and wired headphones (not included) to allow the rear seat passengers to listen to the radio (and other media sources) over the headphones. This enables the front and rear seat passengers to listen to a variety of sources a variety of ways.

## Entertainment Systems

**Single Play:** Single play consists of all occupants in the vehicle listening to the same playing media over the front and rear speakers. When the DVD system is on, and the same source is playing through the front and rear speakers, SINGLE PLAY will appear in the front radio display.

**Dual Play:** Dual play is when the rear seat passengers choose to listen to a different playing media than the front seat passengers. With the DVD and Rear Seat Controls turned ON, the rear seat passengers may choose to listen to the radio, CD, MP3, DVD, or DVD-AUX media sources over headphones while the front speakers play the chosen selection for the front audio system, they may listen to another over the headphones. DUAL PLAY will appear in the radio display.

When both the front seat passengers and the rear seat passengers listen to the same audio source, SHARED MODE will appear on the radio.

**Note:** If the front seat passengers are listening to the radio, the rear seat passengers can also listen to the radio; however, they will be limited to listening to the same radio channel.

Press the  headphone/speaker button on the DVD player or navigation radio touch screen.



The headphone control will now be active and a green light next to the A or B headphone control buttons will illuminate. The system can output two different audio sources over the headphones. These are called Channel A and Channel B. Both Channel A and Channel B can be listened to on the wired headphones (not included) or on the infrared (IR) wireless headphones.

Press the Headphone Control button A to change the audio source for Channel A.



Press MEDIA to change the audio source for Channel A. This information will display on the DVD system screen.



Press the Headphone Control button B to change the audio source for Channel B.



Press MEDIA to change the audio source for Channel B. This information will display on the DVD system screen. Channel B can listen to either the DVD media or the DVD system auxiliary inputs (DVD-AUX).

## Entertainment Systems

### **Operation with an aftermarket audio system (Headphone only mode)**

When the Family Entertainment System (FES) detects that the original radio supplied by Ford Motor Company has been removed from the vehicle, the Family Entertainment System will work in a state referred to as “Headphone Only Mode”.

While operating in Headphone Only Mode, the system will have limited functionality.

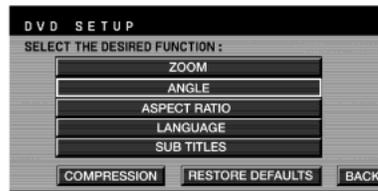
- The system will only output audio to the headphones. It will not be capable of providing audio to the speakers.
- The available sources in FES Headphone Only Mode are DVD-DISC and DVD-AUX, regardless of headphone channel (A or B).
- When a disc is inserted into the FES while in Headphone Only Mode, both headphone channels (A&B) will be connected to FES-DISC.

### **Menu mode**

Press MENU once on the DVD system to access the DVD disc menu if available.

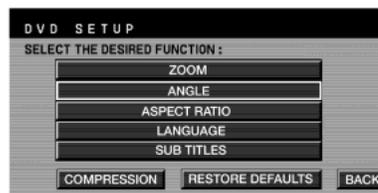
Press MENU twice to access the DVD set-up menu and the following features:

1. ZOOM
2. ANGLE
3. ASPECT RATIO
4. LANGUAGE
5. SUB TITLES



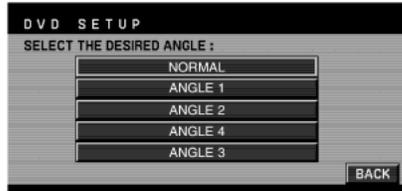
### **Angle mode**

Select ANGLE to select various angles of view for the DVD.



## Entertainment Systems

This is disc dependent — some DVD discs may have more viewing angles to select from. Once you have made your selection, press ENTER to confirm. The system default is Angle 1.

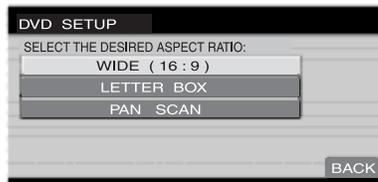


### Aspect ratio

Select ASPECT RATIO to select the viewing size and shape of the video displayed on the LCD screen. This is disc dependent.

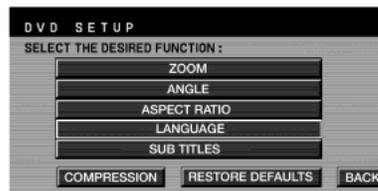


You can select from: WIDE, LETTER BOX or PAN SCAN. Once you have made your selection, press ENTER to confirm. The LCD screen display will immediately change to your selection after the system resumes playback of the DVD. The system default is WIDE (16:9).



### Language

Select LANGUAGE to select the language you would like to use for audio output (English, Spanish, French). This is disc dependent.



## Entertainment Systems

Once you have made your selection, press ENTER to confirm. The system default is English.

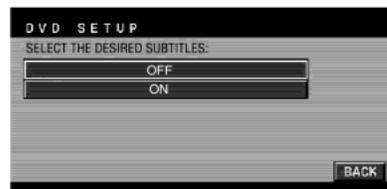


### Subtitles

Select SUBTITLES to turn the subtitle option on or off. The system default is OFF.



Once you have made your selection, press ENTER to confirm. This is disc dependent.



### Audio CDs

To play audio CDs on your DVD system:

1. Ensure that the vehicle is on or the ignition is in accessory mode.
2. Ensure that the DVD system is on.
3. Insert an audio CD into the DVD system, label side up.

4. The track and elapsed time will appear in the status bar. Use the DVD cursor controls on the bezel to highlight which track you would like to play. You can also use the cursor controls to highlight

COMPRESSION, SHUFFLE or

SCAN. Once you have highlighted the desired track or function, press ENTER on the DVD bezel to confirm your selection.



## Entertainment Systems

**COMP (Compression):** Compression brings soft and loud CD passages together for a more consistent listening level when in CD mode. Press to turn the feature on/off.

**SHUFFLE:** Press to hear all tracks on the current CD in random order. Press again to stop.

**SCAN:** Press for a brief sampling of all tracks on the current CD. Press again to stop.

### Playing MP3 discs

To play an MP3 disc on your DVD system:

1. Ensure that the vehicle is on or the ignition is in accessory mode.
2. Ensure that the DVD system is on.
3. Insert the MP3 disc into the DVD system, label side up.

4. The folder, track and elapsed time will appear in the status bar. The screen will list the Artist, Title, Album and File Name.



### COMP (Compression):

Compression brings soft and loud CD/MP3 passages together for a more consistent listening level when in CD mode. Press to turn the feature on/off.

**SHUFFLE:** Press to hear all tracks on the current MP3 folder in random order. Press again to stop.

**SCAN:** Press for a brief sampling of all tracks on the current MP3 folder. Press again to stop.

**FOLDER LIST:** Press access folder mode and to go to the previous/next folder in the MP3 disc.

### MP3 disc quality factors

Several factors can effect disc playback quality:

- Disc capacity — Each disc contains about 650 MB of storage capacity. We do not recommend using high capacity discs containing 700MB of storage.
- Disc type — Some CD-RW discs may operate inconsistently and may cause an error message to appear. We recommend burning MP3 files onto CD-R discs.
- Disc finalization — The disc may be left open for the purpose of adding sessions to it at a later time, but be sure to close each session or the disc will not play.

## Entertainment Systems

- Bit rate — The player supports bit rates from 32–320 kbps, as well as variable bit rate MP3 files, but lower bit rates will have a noticeable effect on sound quality and are recommended only for speech or low fidelity music material. We recommend that you encode MP3 files using a high quality encoder.
- PC configuration — Encoding MP3 files requires intensive use of your computer's resources. Follow the PC configuration recommendations of the encoder software vendor. We recommend that you avoid running other software applications on your PC during MP3 encoding to avoid undesirable noise and distortion.

### ***CD, MP3 and CD player care***

- Handle discs by their edges only. Never touch the playing surface.
- Do not expose discs to direct sunlight or heat sources for extended periods of time.
- Do not insert more than one disc into the slot of the CD player (if equipped).
- Always store discs out of direct sunlight. Excessive heat may damage or warp discs.
- Use care when handling and playing CD-R and CD-RW discs, which are more susceptible to damage from heat, light and stress than are regular CDs.
- Always insert and remove a disc by holding the disc flat, with the playing surface facing down, in order to prevent damage to the disc or the player.
- Never insert any object other than a compact disc (CD) or digital versatile disc (DVD) into the player, as doing so may damage the player and may cause injury to you.
- Do not disassemble the player. The laser used in disc playback is extremely harmful to the eyes.

## Entertainment Systems

The FES DVD system is designed to play commercially pressed 12 cm (4.75 in) audio compact discs and digital versatile discs (DVD), DVD-R and R/W discs only. Due to technical incompatibility, certain recordable and re-recordable compact discs may not function correctly when used in Ford CD and DVD players. Irregular shaped CDs or DVDs, CDs or DVDs with a scratch protection film attached, and CDs with homemade paper (adhesive) labels should not be inserted into the FES DVD system. The label may peel and cause the CD or DVD to become jammed. It is recommended that homemade CDs or DVDs be identified with permanent felt tip marker rather than adhesive labels. Ball point pens may damage CDs or DVDs. Please contact your authorized dealer for further information.

### Playing a DVD

1. Ensure that the vehicle is on or the ignition is in accessory mode.
2. Ensure that the navigation system is on.
3. Insert a DVD label-side up into the system.
4. Use the DVD bezel controls to:

Press to play or pause a DVD.



Press to stop or eject a DVD.



Press and release to go to the previous chapter. Press and hold for a fast reverse search.



Press and release to go to the next chapter. Press and hold for a fast forward search.



Press when not in menu mode to adjust brightness, or when in menu mode to navigate through the menu selections.



Press to adjust volume levels.



## Entertainment Systems

### Slow play

1. With a DVD playing, press pause.



2. Press and hold the reverse or advance button to enter into slow play mode. Once in slow play mode, press and release the reverse or advance button repeatedly to cycle through 1/4 and 1/2. These will display on the status bar on top of the screen as the screens cycle through at this rate.

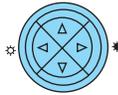


### Frame by frame

1. With a DVD playing, press pause.



2. Press the right cursor button. The DVD will advance one frame. Each press of the right cursor button will advance the DVD video by one frame.



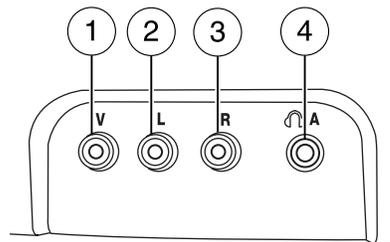
### Headphone/auxiliary jacks

There are wired headphones (not included) and auxiliary jacks on the left and right side of your DVD system. They can be used to plug in wired headphones or to connect and play auxiliary electronic devices such as game systems, personal camcorders, video cassette recorders, etc.

On the left side of the system is the Headphone A input jack. This headphone will listen to the media selected on the Channel A source. When you need to make any adjustments to the media, volume, etc, ensure that the Channel A source is highlighted.

Also located here are the various auxiliary jacks which can be used to plug in a VCR, camcorder, video games, etc. The specific jacks are as follows:

1. Yellow: video input
2. White: left channel audio input

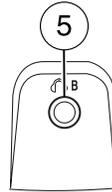


## Entertainment Systems

3. Red: right channel audio input
4. Black: wired headphone jack (not included)

The B headphone jack (5) is located on the right side of the DVD system. Plug in wired headphones (not included) here.

**Note:** The B headphones can only access DVD and AUX modes. They cannot access radio sources.



### Audio displays

Your DVD system interacts closely with the front audio system. Status messages will appear in the radio display showing the DVD status. Some possible radio display messages:

- SINGLE PLAY or DUAL PLAY
- DVD LOAD
- DVD MENU
- DVD STOP

### Audio interaction

You can then also use the front audio controls to advance, reverse, play and pause a DVD. While a DVD is playing you may use the following controls on the front radio:

- **SEEK:** Press to advance to the previous (◀) or next (▶) DVD chapters.
- **▶ II :** Press to play a DVD or to pause the DVD.

When the radio displays “DVD MENU”, press PLAY on the radio (memory preset #6), to play the disc.

### Parental control for the DVD system

Your Family Entertainment System (FES) allows you to have control over the rear seat controls in a few different ways. The DVD system is automatically activated when the vehicle ignition is ON, which allows the rear seat passengers to use the DVD system.

There are three levels of control of the FES buttons. The states are FULL (enabled), LOCAL or



## Entertainment Systems

**LOCKED** (disabled). To change the level of control, press the memory preset controls 3 and 5 simultaneously on the front audio controls. The control level will cycle each time the buttons are pressed simultaneously. The three states are described as:

**FULL** (enabled): The FES has control over the primary (speaker) and secondary (headphone) audio sources.

**LOCAL**: The FES has control over the secondary source (headphones) only. The radio will ignore button presses that affect the primary (speaker) audio source.

**LOCKED** (disabled): The FES buttons are locked and all FES button presses are ignored by the radio and the FES except for load and eject.

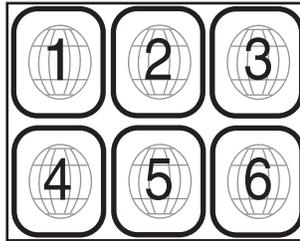
When the DVD system is ON, you can then press the memory preset controls 2 and 4 simultaneously to



toggle between Single Play and Dual Play. In Single Play mode, all speakers listen to the same media. In Dual Play mode, rear seat passengers can use the infrared wireless, or wired (not included) headphones to listen to a different playing media than the front seat passengers.

### General information

**Note:** DVDs are formatted by regions. US and Canada systems can only play region 1 DVDs and Mexico systems can only play region 4 DVDs. Systems sold in vehicles targeted for other parts of the world would have different regions. If a playback problem is encountered, please ensure that you are using a disc designed for your vehicle. The region coding can be found stamped on the disc or on the box, and can say 'region-1' or 'region 4', etc. They may also be marked by a numerical symbol.



**Macrovision:** This product incorporates copyright protection technology that is protected by method claims of certain U.S. patents and other intellectual property rights owned by Macrovision Corporation and other rights owners. Use of this copyright protection technology must be authorized by Macrovision Corporation, and is intended for home and other limited viewing uses only unless otherwise authorized by Macrovision Corporation. Reverse engineering or disassembly is prohibited.

## Entertainment Systems

**MP3:** Supply of this product only conveys a license for private, non-commercial use and does not convey a license nor imply any right to use this product in any commercial (i.e. revenue generating) real time broadcasting (terrestrial, satellite, cable and /or any other media) broadcasting/streaming via internet, intranets and/or other networks or in other electronic content distribution systems, such as pay-audio or audio-on-demand applications. An independent license for such use is required. For details, please visit [http:// www.mp3licensing.com](http://www.mp3licensing.com).

### Safety information



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device that may take their focus off the road. The driver's primary responsibility is the safe operation of their vehicle. Only use cell phones and other devices not essential to the driving task when it is safe to do so.

Read all of the safety and operating instructions before operating the system and retain for future reference.

Do not attempt to service, repair or modify the Family Entertainment System (FES). See your dealer.

Do not insert foreign objects into the DVD compartment.



**WARNING:** Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle and do not let children operate the system while unsupervised. If wired headphones or auxiliary systems are used, children may become entangled in the cords and seriously injure themselves.



**WARNING:** The front glass on the liquid crystal display (LCD) flip-down screen may break when hit with a hard surface. If the glass breaks, do not touch the liquid crystalline material. In case of contact with skin, wash immediately with soap and water.



**WARNING:** The driver should not attempt to operate any function of the DVD system while the vehicle is in motion. Give full attention to driving and to the road. Pull off the road in a safe place before inserting or extracting DVDs from the system. A remote control is included in the system to allow the rear seat occupants to operate the FES functions without distracting the driver.

## Entertainment Systems

**Do not expose the liquid crystal display (LCD) flip-down screen to direct sunlight or intensive ultraviolet rays for extensive periods of time. Ultraviolet rays deteriorate the liquid crystal.**

Be sure to review User Manuals for video games and video game equipment when used as auxiliary inputs for your Family Entertainment System (FES).

Do not operate video games or video equipment if the power cords and/or cables are broken, split or damaged. Carefully place cords and/or cables where they will not be stepped on or interfere with the operation of seats and/or compartments.

Disconnect video games and video equipment power cords and/or cables when not in use.

Avoid touching auxiliary input jacks with your fingers. Do not blow on them or allow them to get wet or dirty.

Do not clean any part of the DVD player with benzene, paint thinner, or any other solvent.

### **Federal Communication Commission (FCC) Compliance**

Changes or modifications not approved by Ford Lincoln-Mercury could void user's authority to operate the equipment. This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference and radio communications.

However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

## Entertainment Systems

### Care and service of the DVD player

#### ***Environmental extremes***

DVD players which are subjected to harsh environmental conditions may be damaged or perform at less than maximum capability. To avoid these outcomes, whenever possible avoid exposing your DVD player to:

- extremely hot or cold temperatures.
- direct sunlight.
- high humidity.
- a dusty environment.
- locations where strong magnetic fields are generated.

#### ***Temperature extremes***

When the vehicle is parked under direct sunlight or in an extremely cold place for a long period of time, wait until the cabin temperature of the vehicle is at normal temperature before operating the system.

#### ***Humidity and moisture condensation***

Moisture in the air will condense in the DVD player under extremely humid conditions or when moving from a cold place to a warm one. Moisture condensation may cause damage to the DVD and/or player. If moisture condensation occurs, do not insert a CD or DVD into the player. If one is already in the player, remove it. Turn the DVD player ON to dry the moisture before inserting a DVD. This could take an hour or more.

#### ***Foreign substances***

Exercise care to prevent dirt and foreign objects from entering the DVD player compartment. Be especially careful not to spill liquids of any kind onto the media controls or into the system. If liquid is accidentally spilled onto the system, immediately turn the system OFF and consult a qualified service technician.

#### ***Cleaning the liquid crystal display (LCD) flip-down screen***

Clean the display screen by applying a small amount of water or any ammonia-based household glass cleaner directly to a soft cloth. Rub the screen gently until the dust, dirt or fingerprints are removed. Do not spray the screen directly with water or glass cleaning solvents. Overspray from these fluids could drip down into the internal electronics of the screen and cause damage. Do not apply excessive pressure while cleaning the screen.

## Entertainment Systems

### ***Cleaning DVD and CD discs***

Inspect all discs for contamination before playing. If necessary, clean discs only with an approved DVD and CD cleaner and wipe from the center out to the edge. Do not use circular motion.

### ***Compatibility with aftermarket audio systems (headphone only mode)***

When the Family Entertainment System (FES) detects that the original radio supplied by Ford Motor Company has been removed from the vehicle, the FES will work in a state referred to as “Headphone Only Mode.” This mode allows the FES to operate as a standalone system, without interface to the radio.

While operating in Headphone Only Mode, the system will have limited functionality.

- The system will only output audio to the headphones. It will not be capable of providing audio to the speakers.
- The available sources in FES Headphone Only Mode are DVD-DISC and DVD-AUX, regardless of headphone channel (A or B).
- When a disc is inserted into the FES while in Headphone Only Mode, both headphone channels (A and B) will be connected to FES-DISC.

### **NAVIGATION SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)**

Your vehicle may be equipped with a navigation system. Refer to the *Navigation system* supplement for further information.

### **SYNC® (IF EQUIPPED)**

Your vehicle may be equipped with SYNC®, a hands-free communications and entertainment system with special phone and media features. For more information, please refer to the *SYNC®* supplement or to the *SYNC®* section in the *Navigation system* supplement (if equipped).

## Climate Controls

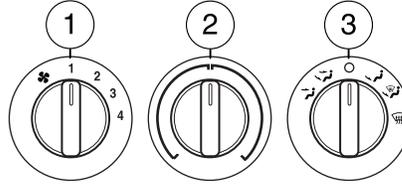
### HEATER ONLY SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

1. **Fan speed adjustment:** Controls the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.

2. **Temperature selection:**

Controls the temperature of the airflow in the vehicle.

3. **Air flow selections:** Controls the direction of the airflow in the vehicle. See the following for a brief description on each control.



: Distributes outside air through the instrument panel vents.

: Distributes outside air through the instrument panel vents and the floor vents.

(OFF): Outside air is shut out and the climate system is turned off.

: Distributes outside air through the floor vents.

: Distributes outside air through the windshield defroster vents and floor vents.

: Distributes outside air through the windshield defroster vents and demister vents. Can be used to clear the windshield of fog and thin ice.

### Operating tips

- To reduce fog build up on the windshield during humid weather, place the air flow selector in the position.
- Do not put objects under the front seats that will interfere with the air flow to the back seats.
- To reduce humidity build-up inside the vehicle, do not drive in the (OFF) position.
- Under normal weather conditions, do not leave the airflow selector in (OFF). This allows the vehicle to breathe using the outside air inlets.
- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.

To aid in side window defogging/demisting in cold weather:

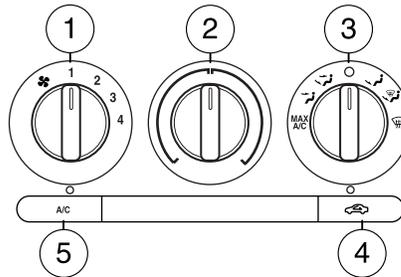
1. Select .
2. Adjust the temperature control to maintain comfort.

## Climate Controls

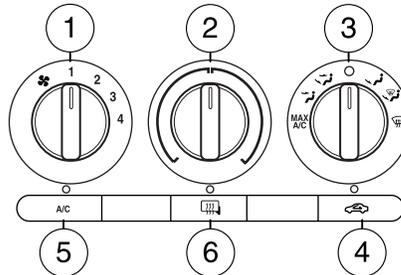
3. Set the fan speed to the highest setting.
  4. Direct the outer instrument panel vents towards the side windows.
- To increase airflow to the outer instrument panel vents, close the vents located in the middle of the instrument panel.

### MANUAL HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEMS (IF EQUIPPED)

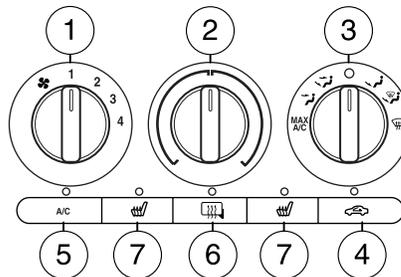
- Manual heating and air conditioning system



- Manual heating and air conditioning system with heated mirrors



- Manual heating and air conditioning system with heated mirrors and heated seats



## Climate Controls

1. **Fan speed adjustment:** Controls the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.

2. **Temperature selection:** Controls the temperature of the airflow in the vehicle.

3. **Air flow selections:** Controls the direction of the airflow in the vehicle. See the following for a brief description on each control.

**MAX A/C:** Distributes recirculated air through the instrument panel vents only to cool the vehicle. This re-cooling of the interior air is more economical and efficient. Recirculated air may also help reduce undesirable odors from entering the vehicle.

 : Distributes air through the instrument panel vents.

 : Distributes air through the instrument panel vents and the floor vents.

**O (OFF):** Outside air is shut out and the fan will not operate.

 : Distributes air through the floor vents.

 : Distributes air through the windshield defroster vents and floor vents.

 : Distributes outside air through the windshield defroster vents. Can be used to clear ice or fog from the windshield.

4.  (**Recirculated air**): Press to activate/deactivate air recirculation in cabin. Recirculated air may reduce the amount of time to cool down the interior of the vehicle and may also help reduce undesired odors from reaching the interior of the vehicle. Recirculation engages automatically with selection of MAX A/C or can be engaged manually in any other airflow selection except defrost. Recirculation may turn off automatically in all airflow selections except MAX A/C.

5. **A/C:** Press to activate/deactivate air conditioning. Use with recirculated air to improve cooling performance and efficiency. Engages automatically in MAX A/C,  and .

6.  (**Heated mirrors**): Press to turn the heated mirrors on and off. The heated mirrors turn off automatically after 10 minutes.

7.  (**Heated seats**): Press to turn the heated seats on and off. The heated seats turn off when the ignition is turned off.

## Climate Controls

### Operating tips

- To reduce fog build up on the windshield during humid weather, place the air flow selector in the  position.
- To reduce humidity build up inside the vehicle, do not drive with the air flow selector in the O (OFF) position.
- Do not put objects under the front seats that will interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.
- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.
- To improve the A/C cool down, drive with the windows slightly open for 2–3 minutes after start up or until the vehicle has been “aired out.”

During extreme high ambient temperatures when idling stationary for extended periods of time in gear, it is recommended to run the A/C in the MAX A/C position, reduce blower fan speed from the highest setting and put the vehicle’s transmission into the PARK gear position (automatic transmission only) to continue to receive cool air from your A/C system.

For maximum cooling performance in MAX A/C mode:

1. Move the temperature control to the coolest setting.
2. Set the fan to the highest speed initially, then adjust in order to maintain comfort.

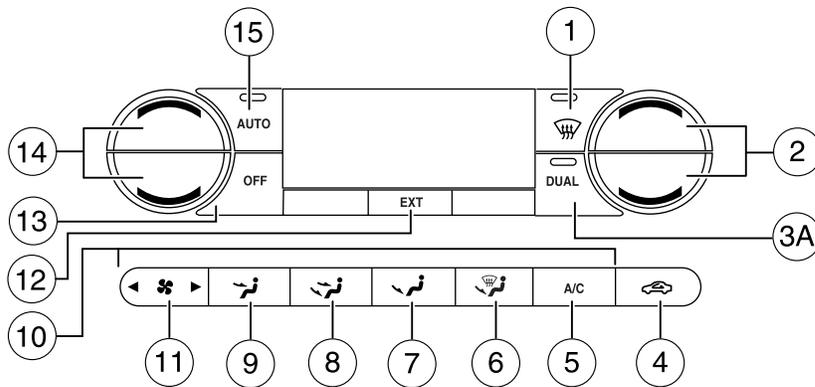
To aid in side window defogging and demisting in cold weather:

1. Select .
2. Select A/C.
3. Set the temperature control to maintain comfort.
4. Set the fan speed to highest setting.
5. Direct the outer instrument panel vents towards the side windows.

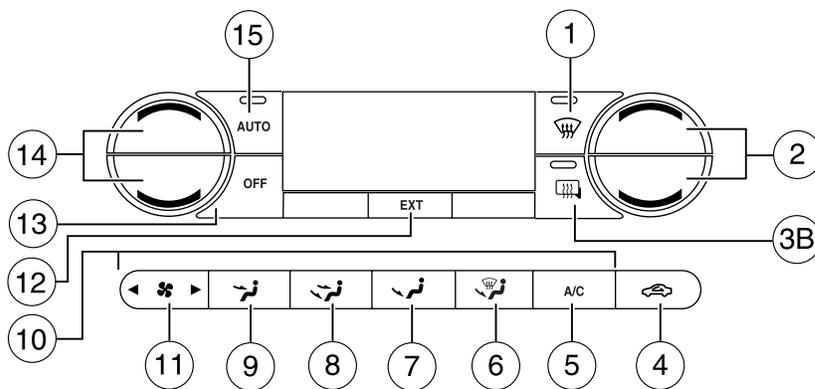
## Climate Controls

### DUAL AUTOMATIC TEMPERATURE CONTROL (DATC) SYSTEMS (IF EQUIPPED)

- DATC

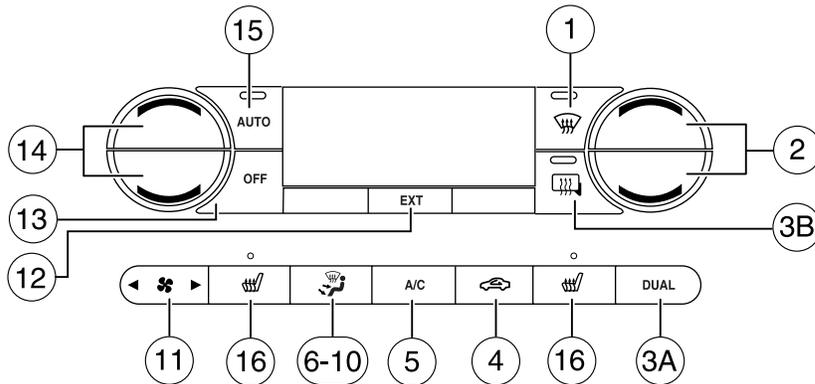


- DATC with heated mirrors



## Climate Controls

- DATC with heated seats and heated mirrors



**Temperature conversion:** To switch between Fahrenheit and Celsius, refer to *Units (English/Metric)* under either *Standard Message Center* or *Optional Message Center* in the *Driver Controls* chapter

In order to achieve maximum cooling performance, press , A/C, , and set the temperature to 60°F (16°C) and the highest blower setting.

1.  **Defrost:** Distributes outside air through the windshield defroster and demister vents. Can be used to clear thin ice or fog from the windshield. To exit  select another mode.

2. **Passenger temperature control:** Press to increase/decrease the passenger side temperature in the vehicle cabin.

3A. **Dual:** (Single/dual electric temperature control): Allows the driver to have full control of the cabin temperature settings (single zone) or allows the passenger to have control of their individual temperature settings (dual zone control). Press to turn on dual zone mode, press again to return to single zone.

3B.  **Heated mirrors:** Press to defrost the outside rear view mirrors. The heated mirrors will turn off after 10 minutes or can be turned off by pressing the button again. Refer to *Power mirrors* in the *Driver Controls* chapter for more information.

## Climate Controls

4.  **Recirculation control:** Press to activate/deactivate air recirculation in cabin. Recirculated air may reduce the amount of time to cool down the interior of the vehicle and may also help reduce undesired odors from reaching the interior of the vehicle. Recirculation can be engaged manually in any other airflow selection except  (defrost). Recirculation may turn off automatically in all airflow selections except MAX A/C.
5. **A/C control:** Press to activate/deactivate air conditioning. Use with recirculated air to improve cooling performance and efficiency. Engages automatically in AUTO,  (defrost) and  (floor/defrost).
6. **Manual override controls:** Press this control to manually select where you want the airflow directed. To return to full automatic control, press AUTO.
7.  : Distributes air through the windshield defroster vents and floor vents.
8.  : Distributes air through the floor vents.
9.  : Distributes air through the instrument panel vents and the floor vents.
10.  : Distributes air through the instrument panel vents.
11.  **Fan speed control:** Press to manually increase or decrease the fan speed. To return to automatic fan operation, press AUTO.
12. **EXT:** Press to display outside temperature. Press again to display cabin temperature settings.
13. **OFF:** Outside air is shut out and the fan will not operate.
14. **Driver temperature control:** Press to increase/decrease the driver side temperature in the vehicle cabin.
15. **AUTO:** To engage automatic temperature control, press AUTO and select the desired temperature using the temperature control. The system will automatically determine fan speed, airflow location, A/C on or off, and outside or recirculated air, to heat or cool the vehicle to reach the desired temperature.
16.  **Heated seat controls:** Press to turn the heated seats on and off. The heated seats turn off when the ignition is turned off.

## Climate Controls

### Operating tips

- To reduce fog build up on the windshield during humid weather, place the air flow selector in the  position.
- To reduce humidity build up inside the vehicle, do not drive with the system OFF, or with recirculated air  engaged and A/C off.
- Do not put objects under the front seats that will interfere with the airflow to the back seats.
- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.
- To improve the A/C cool down, drive with the windows slightly open for 2-3 minutes after start up or until the vehicle has been “aired out”.

During extreme high ambient temperatures when idling stationary for extended periods of time in gear, it is recommended to run the A/C in the MAX A/C position, reduce blower fan speed from the highest setting and put the vehicle's transmission into the PARK gear position (automatic transmission only) to continue to receive cool air from your A/C system.

For maximum cooling performance (MAX A/C):

#### Automatic operation:

1. Press AUTO for full automatic operation.
2. Do not override A/C or  (recirculated air).
3. Set the temperature to 60°F (16°C).

#### Override operation:

1. Select air distribution.
2. Select A/C and  (recirculated air). Use  (recirculated air) with A/C to provide colder airflow.
3. Set the temperature to 60°F (16°C).
4. Set highest fan speed initially, then adjust to maintain comfort.

## Climate Controls

### In (panel) or (panel/floor) modes:

1. Move temperature control to full cold.
2. Select A/C and  (recirculated air). Use recirculated air with A/C to provide colder airflow.
3. Set highest fan speed initially, then adjust to maintain comfort.

To aid in side window defogging/demisting in cold weather:

1. Select .
2. Select A/C.
3. Adjust the temperature control to maintain comfort.
4. Set the fan speed to the highest setting.
5. Direct the outer instrument panel vents towards the side windows.

To increase airflow to the outer instrument panel vents, close the vents located in the middle of the instrument panel.

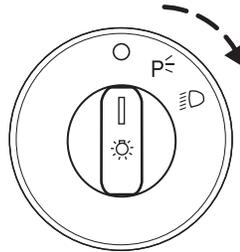
## Lights

### HEADLAMP CONTROL ☀

○ Turns the lamps off.

P≡ Turns on the parking lamps, instrument panel lamps, license plate lamps and tail lamps.

≡D Turns the headlamps on.

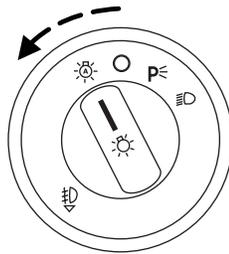


### Autolamp control (if equipped) ☀

The autolamp system provides light sensitive automatic on-off control of the exterior lights normally controlled by the headlamp control.

The autolamp system also keeps the lights on for approximately 20 seconds or on vehicles equipped with a message center, you can select a delay from 0–180 seconds, after the ignition switch is turned to off.

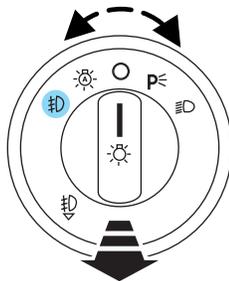
- To turn autolamps on, rotate the control counterclockwise.
- To turn autolamps off, rotate the control clockwise to the off position.



### Fog lamp control (if equipped) ≡D

The headlamp control also operates the fog lamps. The fog lamps can be turned on only when the headlamp control is in the ≡D, ☀, or P≡ position and the high beams are not turned on.

Pull headlamp control towards you to turn fog lamps on. The fog lamp indicator light ≡D will illuminate.



## Lights

### Daytime running lamps (DRL) (if equipped)

Turns the headlamps on with a reduced output.

To activate:

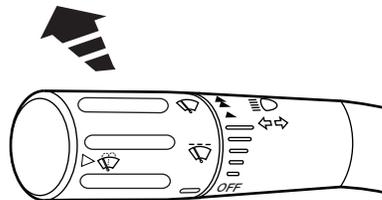
- the ignition must be in the on position,
- the headlamp control is in the off or parking lamp position and
- the parking brake must be disengaged.



**WARNING:** Always remember to turn on your headlamps at dusk or during inclement weather. The Daytime Running Lamp (DRL) system does not activate the tail lamps and generally may not provide adequate lighting during these conditions. Failure to activate your headlamps under these conditions may result in a collision.

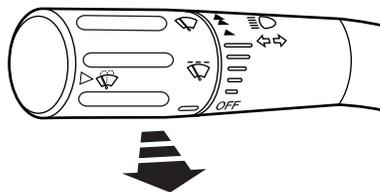
### High beams

Push the lever toward the instrument panel to activate. Pull the lever towards you to deactivate.



### Flash to pass

Pull toward you slightly to activate and release to deactivate.



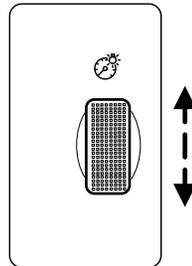
## Lights

### PANEL DIMMER CONTROL

Use to adjust the brightness of the instrument panel and all applicable illuminated switches in the vehicle during headlamp and parklamp operation.

Move the control to the full upright position, past detent, to turn on the interior lamps.

**Note:** If the battery is disconnected, discharged, or a new battery is installed, the dimmer switch requires re-calibration. Rotate the dimmer switch from the full dim position to the full dome/on position to reset. This will ensure that your displays are visible under all lighting conditions



### AIMING THE HEADLAMPS

Your vehicle may be equipped with a sealed beam or aerodynamic headlamp system. Sealed beam headlamps may be aimed in the vertical (up/down) and the horizontal (left/right) directions using the procedures following. The aerodynamic headlamps can only be aimed in the vertical direction (up/down) using the procedures following. The headlamps on your vehicle are properly aimed at the assembly plant and should not normally need adjusting.

#### Vertical and horizontal aim adjustment (sealed beam headlamps)

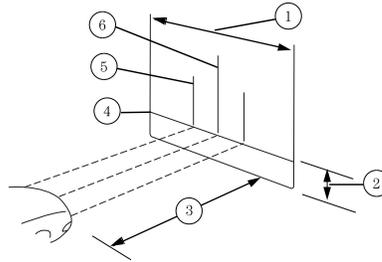
The headlamps on your vehicle are intended to be aimed using mechanical aimers. If mechanical aimers are used and the cross-car sight line is in any way blocked, set the legs of the universal adaptor all to the same setting, such that the cross-car sight line is no longer blocked, per the instructions for the brand of mechanical aimer used. You can also aim the headlamps visually using the procedure below.

## Lights

To adjust the headlamps:

1. Park your vehicle on a level surface about 25 feet (7.6 meters) away from a vertical plain surface (3). Check your headlamp alignment at night or in a dark area so that you can see the headlamp beam pattern.

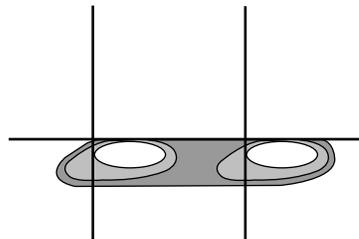
- (1) 8 feet (2.4 meters)
- (2) Center height of lamp to ground
- (3) 25 feet (7.6 meters)
- (4) Horizontal reference line
- (5) Center of headlamps
- (6) Center line of the vehicle



2. The center of the headlamp is marked either on the lens (a circle or cross marker) or on the bulb shield, internal to the lamp (mark or feature). Measure the height from the center of your headlamp to the ground (2) and mark an 8 foot (2.4 meter) long horizontal line on the wall or screen (1) at this height (masking tape works well).

3. Turn on the low beam headlamps and open the hood.

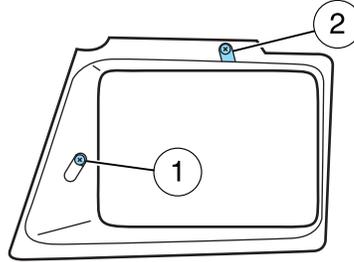
4. Locate the high intensity area of the beam pattern and place the top edge of the intensity zone even with the horizontal reference line (4). If the top edge of the high intensity area is not even with the horizontal line, follow the next step to adjust it.



## Lights

5. Locate the vertical adjuster (2) for each headlamp. Adjust the aim by turning the adjuster control either clockwise (to adjust up) or counterclockwise (to adjust down).

6. In addition to the horizontal line marked in step 2, a pair of vertical lines (5) must be marked at the center line of the headlamps on the wall or screen.



7. On the wall or screen, locate the high intensity area of the beam pattern. The left edge of the high intensity area should be even with the vertical line corresponding to the headlamp under adjustment. If the left edge of the high intensity area is not even with the vertical line, follow the next step to adjust it.

8. Locate the horizontal adjuster (1) for each headlamp. Turn it clockwise or counterclockwise, to place the left edge of the high intensity area even with the vertical line corresponding to the headlamp under adjustment.

### Vertical aim adjustment (aerodynamic headlamps)

The headlamps on your vehicle can only be vertically adjusted. Your vehicle does not require horizontal aim adjustments.

To adjust the headlamps:

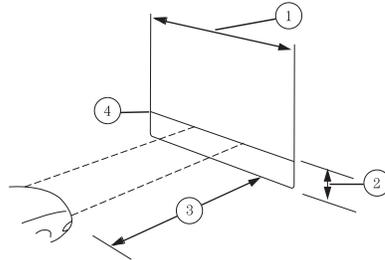
1. Park the vehicle directly in front of a wall or screen on a level surface, approximately 25 feet (7.6 meters) away.

- (1) 8 feet (2.4 meters)
- (2) Center height of lamp to ground
- (3) 25 feet (7.6 meters)

## Lights

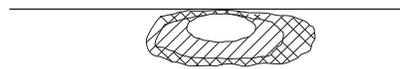
- (4) Horizontal reference line

2. Measure the height from the center of your headlamp (indicated by a 3.0 mm circle on the lens) to the ground and mark an 8 foot (2.4 meter) horizontal reference line on the vertical wall or screen at this height (a piece of masking tape works well).

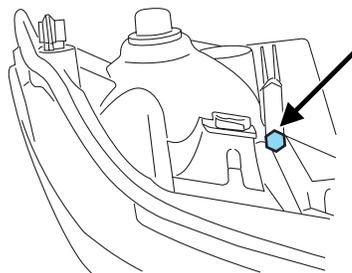


3. Turn on the low beam headlamps to illuminate the wall or screen and open the hood. Cover one of the headlamps so no light from that lamp hits the wall.

4. On the wall or screen you will observe a light pattern with a distinct horizontal edge towards the right. If this edge is not at the horizontal reference line, the beam will need to be adjusted so the edge is at the same height as the horizontal reference line.



5. Locate the vertical adjuster on each headlamp, then use a E5 Torx socket to turn the adjuster either counterclockwise (to adjust down) or clockwise (to adjust up) aligning the upper edge of the light pattern up to the horizontal line.

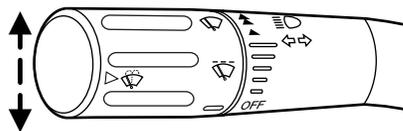


6. Repeat Steps 3–5 for the other headlamp.

7. Close the hood and turn off the lamps.

### TURN SIGNAL CONTROL ⇄

- Push down to activate the left turn signal.
- Push up to activate the right turn signal.

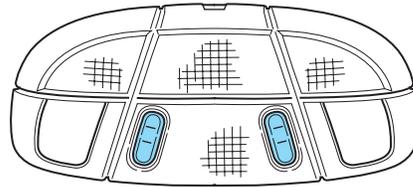


## Lights

### MAP LAMPS (IF EQUIPPED)

The dome lamp turns on when:

- any door is opened,
- the instrument panel dimmer switch is rotated up until the courtesy lamps come on, and
- any of the remote entry controls are pressed and the ignition is off.



### BULB REPLACEMENT

#### Lamp assembly condensation

Exterior lamps are vented to accommodate normal changes in pressure. Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a thin film of mist can form on the interior of the lens. The thin mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation. Clearing time may take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

Examples of acceptable condensation are:

- Presence of thin mist (no streaks, drip marks or droplets)
- Fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens

Examples of unacceptable moisture (usually caused by a lamp water leak) are:

- Water puddle inside the lamp
- Large water droplets, drip marks or streaks present on the interior of the lens

Take your vehicle to dealer for service if any of the above conditions of unacceptable moisture are present.

## Lights

### Replacing exterior bulbs

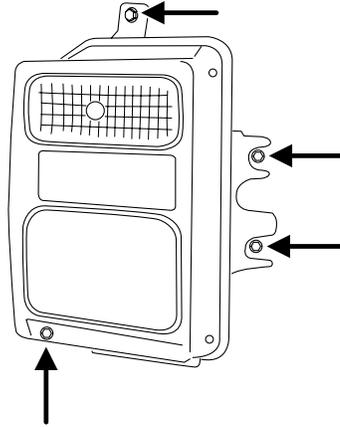
Check the operation of all the bulbs frequently.

Function	Number of bulbs	Trade number
Headlamps (aerodynamic)	2	H13/9008
Headlamps (sealed beam)	2	H6054
Park lamp with aerodynamic headlamp	2	3157A or 3157AK
Park lamp with sealed beam headlamp	2	3157
Sidemarkers	2	194
Tail/stop/turn/sidemarkers (pick-up only)	2	3157
Tail/stop/turn/sidemarkers (chassis cabs only; if equipped)	2	3157
Back-up (pick-ups only)	2	921
Back-up (chassis cabs only)	2	3157
High-mount stoplamp	1	922
Fog lamp	2	9145
License plate lamp	2	194
Cargo lamp	2	906
Mirror turn signal	2	2825
Mirror clearance lamp	2	2825
*Front clearance lamps (2) and front identification lamps (3)	5	194
*Rear fender clearance	4	194
Interior visor lamp (if equipped)	4	194
*Rear identification	3	194
All replacement bulbs are clear in color except where noted.		
To replace all instrument panel lights - see your authorized dealer		
* Dual rear wheels, or if equipped.		

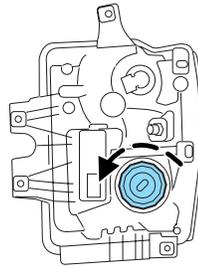
## Lights

### Replacing headlamp bulbs (aerodynamic)

1. Make sure that the headlamps are off and open the hood.
2. Remove the four bolts from the top, side and bottom front of the headlamp assembly.
3. Pull the assembly straight out disengaging two snap clips to fender.
4. Disconnect the electrical connector by squeezing the release tab and pushing the connector forward and then pulling it rearward.



5. Remove the bulb assembly by turning it counterclockwise and pulling it straight out.



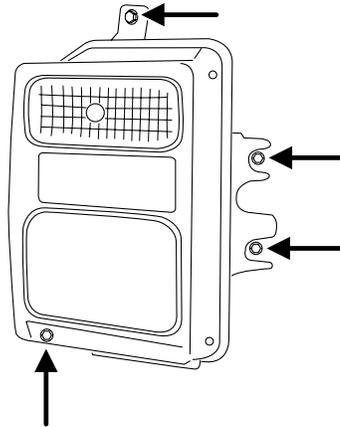
**WARNING:** Handle a halogen headlamp bulb carefully and keep out of children's reach. Grasp the bulb only by its plastic base and do not touch the glass. The oil from your hand could cause the bulb to break the next time the headlamps are operated.

Install the new bulb(s) in reverse order.

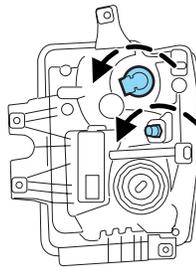
## Lights

### **Replacing park/turn and sidemarker lamp bulbs (aerodynamic)**

1. Make sure that the headlamps are off and open the hood.
2. Remove the four bolts from the top, side and bottom front of the headlamp assembly.
3. Pull the assembly straight out.



4. Remove the bulb assembly, (1) sidemarker or (2) park/turn by turning it counterclockwise and pulling it straight out.
5. Pull the old bulb out from the socket.

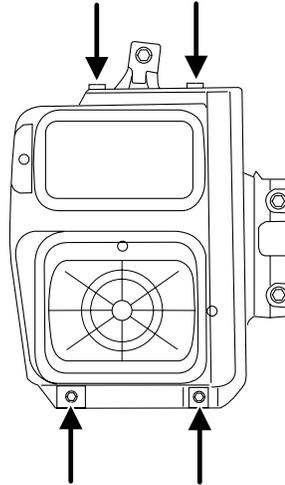


Install the new bulb(s) in reverse order.

## Lights

### **Replacing headlamp bulbs (sealed beam)**

1. Make sure that the headlamps are off and open the hood.
2. Remove the three screws and one bolt from the top and bottom of the park lamp/bezel assembly.
3. Remove the four screws and the headlamp retaining ring from headlamp.
4. Disconnect the electrical connector from the headlamp.



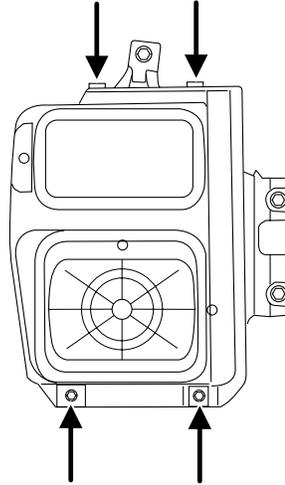
Install the new bulb(s) in reverse order.

### **Replacing park/turn/sidemarkers bulbs (sealed beam)**

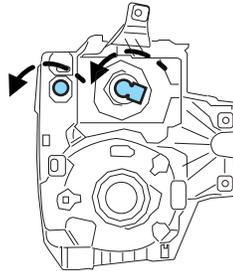
1. Make sure that the headlamps are off and open the hood.

## Lights

- Remove the three screws and one bolt from the top and bottom of the park lamp/bezel assembly.
- Pull the assembly straight out disengaging snap clip.



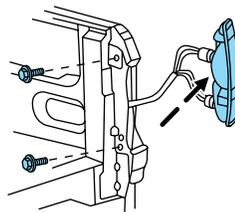
- Remove the bulb assembly, sidemarker or park/turn by turning it counterclockwise. (Top view of assembly shown.)
- Pull the old bulb out from the socket.



Install the new bulb(s) in reverse order.

### **Replacing brake/tail/turn/back-up lamp bulbs - Pick-ups only**

- Make sure the headlamps are off and then open the tailgate to expose the lamp assemblies.
- Remove the two bolts from the tail lamp assembly and carefully pull the lamp assembly from the tailgate pillar by releasing the two retaining tabs.



## Lights

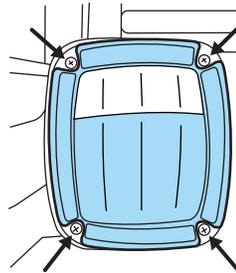
3. Rotate the bulb socket counterclockwise and remove from lamp assembly.

4. Pull the bulb straight out of the socket.

Install the new bulb(s) in reverse order.

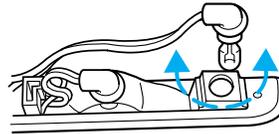
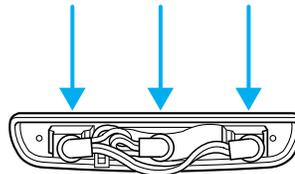
### **Replacing brake/tail/turn/back-up lamp bulbs - Chassis cabs only (if equipped)**

1. Make sure the headlamps are off.
2. Remove the four screws and the lamp lens from lamp assembly.
3. Carefully pull the bulb straight out of the socket and push in the new bulb.



### **Replacing cargo lamp and high-mount brakelamp bulbs**

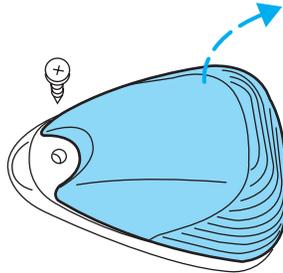
1. Make sure the headlamps are off.
2. Remove the two screws and lamp assembly from vehicle as wiring permits.
3. Remove the bulb socket by rotating counterclockwise.
4. Pull the bulb straight out of the socket.



## Lights

### **Replacing front clearance and identification lamp bulbs**

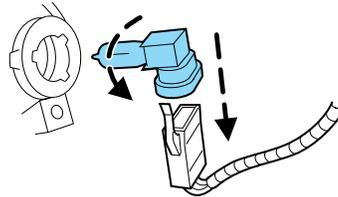
1. Make sure the headlamps are off.
2. Remove the screw and lens from the lamp assembly.
3. Pull the bulb straight out of the socket.



Install the bulb(s) in reverse order.

### **Replacing fog lamp bulbs (if equipped)**

1. Make sure the headlamps are off.
2. Remove the bulb socket from the fog lamp by turning counterclockwise.
3. Disconnect the electrical connector from the fog lamp bulb.

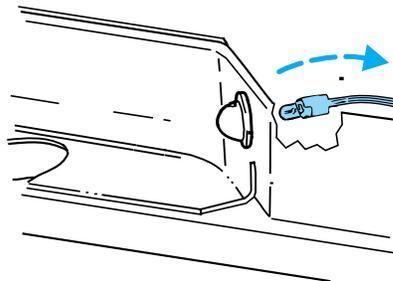


Install the new bulb(s) in reverse order.

### **Replacing license plate lamp bulbs**

The license plate bulbs are located behind the rear bumper. To change the license plate lamp bulbs:

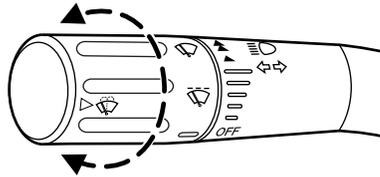
1. Reach behind the rear bumper to locate the bulb.
2. Twist the bulb socket counterclockwise and carefully pull to remove it from the lamp assembly.
3. Pull out the old bulb from the socket and push in the new bulb.
4. Install the bulb socket in lamp assembly by turning it clockwise.



## Driver Controls

### MULTI-FUNCTION LEVER

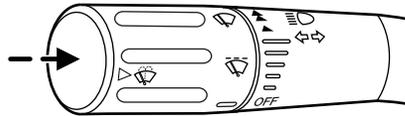
**Windshield wiper:** Rotate the end of the control away from you to increase the speed of the wipers; rotate towards you to decrease the speed of the wipers.



**Speed dependent wipers:** When the wiper control is set on the intermittent settings, the speed of the wipers will automatically adjust with the vehicle speed. The faster your vehicle is travelling the faster the wipers will go.

**Windshield washer:** Push the end of the stalk:

- briefly: causes a single swipe of the wipers without washer fluid.
- a quick push and hold: the wipers will swipe three times with washer fluid.
- a long push and hold: the wipers and washer fluid will be activated for up to ten seconds.



**Courtesy wipe feature:** One extra wipe will occur a few seconds after washing the front window to clear any excess washer fluid remaining on the windshield.

**Note:** Do not operate the washer when the washer reservoir is empty. This may cause the washer pump to overheat. Check the washer fluid level frequently. Do not operate the wipers when the windshield is dry. This may scratch the glass, damage the wiper blades and cause the wiper motor to burn out. Before operating the wiper on a dry windshield, always use the windshield washer. In freezing weather, be sure the wiper blades are not frozen to the windshield before operating the wipers.

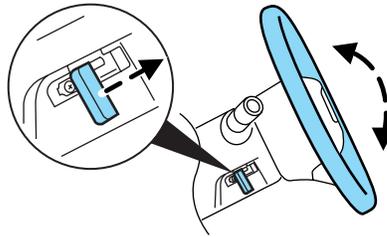
## Driver Controls

### Windshield wiper rainlamp feature (if equipped with Autolamp)

When the windshield wipers are turned on during daylight, and the headlamp control is in the autolamp position, the exterior lamps will turn on after a brief delay and will remain on until the wipers are turned off.

### TILT STEERING WHEEL

1. Pull and hold the steering wheel release control toward you.
2. Move the steering up or down until you find the desired location.
3. Release the steering wheel release control. This will lock the steering wheel in position.

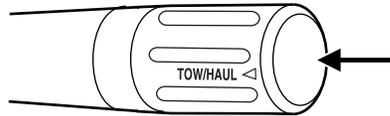


**WARNING:** Never adjust the steering column when the vehicle is moving.

### TRANSMISSION CONTROL

#### Tow/Haul feature (5-speed automatic transmission) (if equipped)

To activate, press the transmission control switch (TCS) located on the gearshift. The TOW/HAUL indicator light will illuminate in the instrument cluster. The transmission will operate in all gears. Press the transmission control switch again to deactivate Tow/Haul mode. When you shut off and re-start your vehicle, the transmission will automatically return to normal mode with Tow/Haul feature deactivated. For more information, refer to the *Driving* chapter.

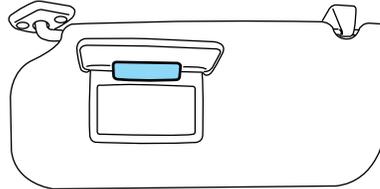


**WARNING:** Do not use the Tow/Haul feature when driving in icy or slippery conditions as the increased engine braking can cause the rear wheels to slide and the vehicle to swing around with the possible loss of vehicle control.

## Driver Controls

### ILLUMINATED VISOR MIRROR (IF EQUIPPED)

Lift the mirror cover to turn on the visor mirror lamp.



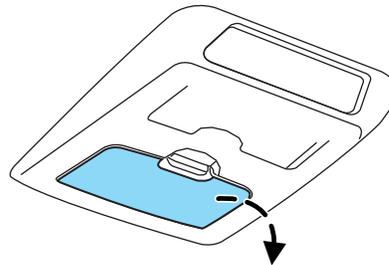
### OVERHEAD CONSOLE (IF EQUIPPED)

The appearance of your vehicle's overhead console will vary according to your option package. If your vehicle is equipped with a moon roof, refer to *Moon roof* later in this chapter for information on its operation.

#### Storage compartment (if equipped)

Press the release on the door to open the storage compartment.

The storage compartment may be used to secure sunglasses or a similar object and the front tab can be used for holding tickets, paper, envelopes, etc. The front bin may be used to store small objects.

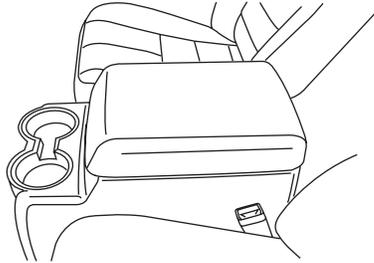


## Driver Controls

### CENTER CONSOLE (IF EQUIPPED)

Your vehicle may be equipped with a variety of console features. These include:

- Utility compartment with cassette/CD holder
- Coin holder
- Pen holder
- Writing surface
- A power point inside the utility compartment and on the rear of the console
- Laptop storage
- Hanging file folder supports
- Rear cupholders (Crew Cab only)



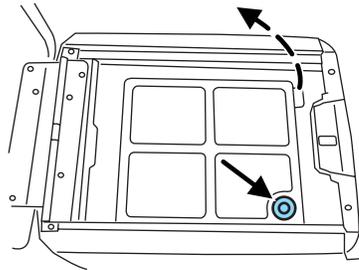
**WARNING:** Use only soft cups in the cupholder. Hard objects can injure you in a collision.

### Center console/under-seat storage-Cabela's Edition (if equipped)

Your vehicle may be equipped with a lockable compartment in the center console and a lockable storage area under the rear seats.

#### Center console storage

Use the vehicle's ignition key to lock/unlock the compartment.

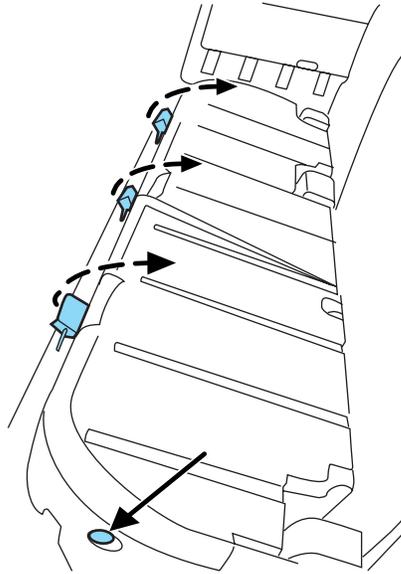


## Driver Controls

### Under-seat storage

Flip the rear seat cushion up to access the rear under-seat storage area. See *Seating* in the *Seating and safety restraints* chapter for more information.

Use the vehicle's ignition key to lock/unlock the compartment. Release the lid latches to open the storage area.



### AUXILIARY POWER POINT (12VDC)

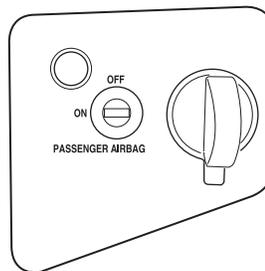
**Power outlets are designed for accessory plugs only. Do not insert any other object in the power outlet for this will damage the outlet and blow the fuse. Do not hang any type of accessory or accessory bracket from the plug. Improper use of the power outlet can cause damage not covered by your warranty.**

The auxiliary power point is located on the instrument panel.

**On SuperCab and Crew Cab models**, another power point is located on the rear of the center console (if equipped).

Do not use the power point for operating the cigarette lighter element (if equipped).

To prevent the fuse from being blown, do not use the power point(s) over the vehicle capacity of 12 VDC/180W. If the power point or cigar lighter socket is not working, a



## Driver Controls

fuse may have blown. Refer to *Fuses and relays* in the *Roadside Emergencies* chapter for information on checking and replacing fuses.

To have full capacity usage of your power point, the engine is required to be running to avoid unintentional discharge of the battery. To prevent the battery from being discharged:

- do not use the power point longer than necessary when the engine is not running,
- do not leave battery chargers, video game adapters, computers and other devices plugged in overnight or when the vehicle is parked for extended periods.

Always keep the power point caps closed when not being used.

### Cigar lighter (if equipped)

Do not plug optional electrical accessories into the cigarette lighter socket.

Do not hold the lighter in with your hand while it is heating, this will damage the lighter element and socket. The lighter will be released from its heating position when it is ready to be used.

**Note:** Improper use of the lighter can cause damage not covered by your warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.

### POWER WINDOWS (IF EQUIPPED)



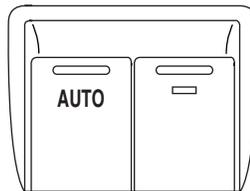
**WARNING:** Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle and do not let children play with the power windows. They may seriously injure themselves.



**WARNING:** When closing the power windows, you should verify they are free of obstructions and ensure that children and/or pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.

Press and pull the window switches to open and close windows.

- Push down (to the first detent) and hold the switch to open.
- Pull up (to the first detent) and hold the switch to close.



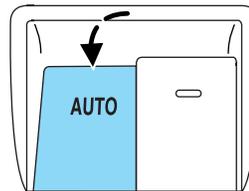
## Driver Controls

**Rear Window Buffeting:** When one or both of the rear windows are open, the vehicle may demonstrate a wind throb or buffeting noise; this noise can be alleviated by:

- Lowering a front window approximately two to three inches or
- Opening a 3rd Row Power Quarter Glass, for vehicles equipped with this option

### One touch down

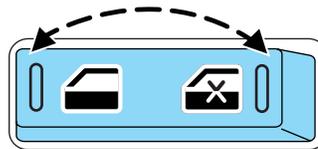
Allows the driver's window to open fully without holding the control down. Push the switch completely down to the second detent and release quickly. The window will open fully. Momentarily press the switch to any position to stop the window operation.



### Window lock (if equipped)

The window lock feature allows only the driver to operate the power windows.

To lock out all the window controls (except for the driver's) press the right side of the control. Press the left side to restore the window controls.



### Power rear slider window (if equipped)



**WARNING:** Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle and do not let children play with the power windows. They may seriously injure themselves.

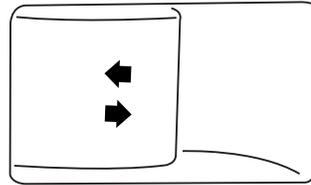


**WARNING:** When closing the power windows, you should verify they are free of obstructions and ensure that children and/or pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.

## Driver Controls

If your vehicle is equipped with a power rear slide window, the switch is located on the instrument panel behind the right-hand side of the steering wheel.

- Press the right side of the control to open the window.
- Pull the right side of the control to close the window.



REAR WINDOW

### Accessory delay

With accessory delay, the window switches may be used for up to 10 minutes after the ignition switch is turned to the off position or until either front door is opened.

### INTERIOR MIRROR

The interior rear view mirror has two pivot points on the support arm which lets you adjust the mirror UP or DOWN and from SIDE to SIDE.

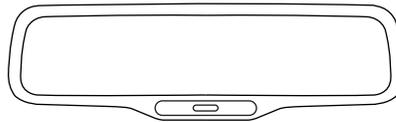


**WARNING:** Do not adjust the mirror while the vehicle is in motion.

### Automatic dimming interior rear view mirror (if equipped)

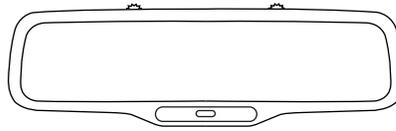
Your vehicle may be equipped with an interior rear view mirror which has an auto-dimming function. The electronic day/night mirror will change from the normal (high reflective) state to the non-glare (darkened) state when bright lights (glare) reach the mirror. When the mirror detects bright light from behind the vehicle, it will automatically adjust (darken) to minimize glare.

#### Without microphone



## Driver Controls

### With microphone



The mirror will automatically return to the normal state whenever the vehicle is placed in R (Reverse) to ensure a bright clear view when backing up.

**Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the interior rear view mirror since this may impair proper mirror performance.**

**Do not clean the housing or glass of any mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.**

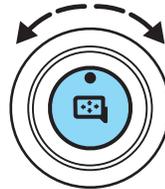
**Note:** If equipped with a Reverse Camera System (RCS), a video image will display in the mirror or the Navigation system (if equipped) when the vehicle is put in (R) Reverse. As you shift into any other gear from R (Reverse), the image will remain for a few seconds and then turn off. Refer to *Reverse Camera System (RCS)* in the *Driving* chapter.

## EXTERIOR MIRRORS

### Power side view mirrors (if equipped)

To adjust your mirrors:

1. Rotate the control clockwise to adjust the right mirror and rotate the control counterclockwise to adjust the left mirror.
2. Move the control in the direction you wish to tilt the mirror.
3. Return to the center position to lock mirrors in place.

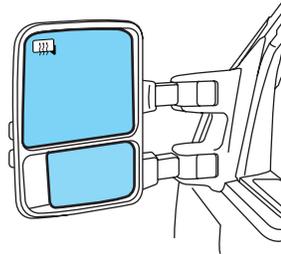


The spotter mirror below the main glass (if equipped) must be adjusted manually.

## Driver Controls

### Heated outside mirrors (if equipped)

The main mirror glass and lower convex spotter mirror are heated to remove ice, mist and fog. To activate the heated mirrors, press the heated mirror control  located on the climate control panel. The heated mirrors will operate for 10 minutes, then automatically shut off (or shut off when the engine is turned off). In cases of extreme ice and cold, the heater control may need pressing again after 10 minutes in order to fully clear the glass.



**Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or attempt to re-adjust the mirror glass if it is frozen in place. These actions could cause damage to the glass and mirrors.**

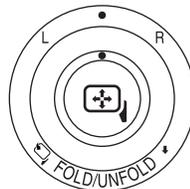
**Do not clean the housing or glass of any mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.**

### Fold-away mirrors

Fold the side mirrors in carefully before driving through a narrow space, like an automatic car wash.

### Powerfold mirrors

If equipped with powerfold mirrors, you can fold the side mirrors simultaneously using the power mirror switch.

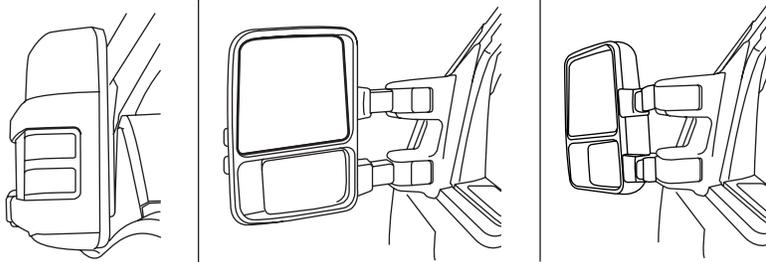


To operate the powerfold mirrors:

1. Rotate the switch to the center/neutral position.
2. Momentarily pull the switch rearward to auto fold in.
3. Momentarily pull the switch rearward again to fold back to design position.

**Note:** When powerfolding the mirrors, it is normal to hear the sound of the motors.

## Driver Controls



Powerfold mirror positions, from left to right: Position 1, Position 2, Position 3

The powerfold mirrors may be folded forward/rearward manually to any of the three positions shown and electrically to positions 1 and 2 only. If a mirror is folded manually forward to position 3, you must manually fold it back to position 1 or 2 in order for the powerfold function to continue functioning. **Note:** Although it is possible to electrically fold the mirror from position 3 to 2, it was not designed for this functionality and may not always work under all conditions.

**Note:** Ten or more switch activations within one minute, or repeated fold/unfolding of the mirrors while holding the switch rearward during the full travel may cause the system to disable the fold/unfold function to protect the motors from overheating. Should this occur, wait approximately 3½ minutes for the system to reset and function to return to normal.

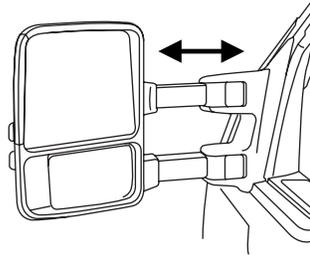
**Note:** The powerfold mirrors are designed to operate while the vehicle is stationary or traveling at moderate speeds. If you attempt to powerfold the mirrors at high speeds, they may not fully fold forward/rearward - slow down and powerfold or manually fold the mirrors in order to complete the fold operation.

**Note:** If the power fold/telescope mirror glass appears loose or vibrates when driving, it is possible that the mirrors have been manually folded or telescoped. To minimize the vibration, ensure that the mirrors are electronically folded and telescoped in/out with the switches on the door trim panel. If the power fold mirrors are out of sync, electronically powerfold the mirrors to re-sync the motors. This will cause a loud "click" and the mirrors will jerk during re-synchronization. This is normal.

## Driver Controls

### Telescoping mirrors (if equipped)

The telescoping feature allows the mirror to extend approximately 2.75 inches (70 mm). This feature is especially useful to the driver when towing a trailer. Mirrors can be manually pulled out or pushed in to the desired telescopic position.



If equipped with power telescoping mirrors, you can simultaneously position both mirrors using the power telescope switch found on the door trim panel.



- To telescope the mirrors outboard, press and hold the left side of the power telescope switch until the mirrors reach their desired position. When the end of travel is reached, it is normal to hear the power telescoping motors running as long as you continue to hold the switch.
- To telescope the mirrors inboard, press and hold the right side of the power telescope switch until the mirrors reach their desired position.

### Memory mirrors (if equipped)

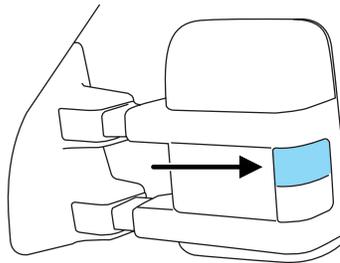
This system allows automatic positioning of the outside rearview mirrors. For more information on this feature, refer to *Memory seats/power mirrors/adjustable pedals* in the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter.

## Driver Controls

### Mirror mounted side turn signal indicator (if equipped)

When the vehicle turn signals are activated, the outer portion of the mirror housing will blink amber.

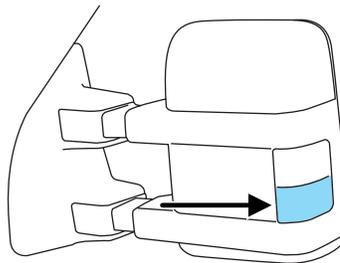
The turn signal feature can be seen by other drivers who may approach from the rear of the vehicle.



### Clearance lamps (if equipped)

Illuminates when the headlamps or parking lamps are switched on.

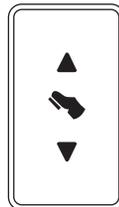
This provides additional visibility of your vehicle to other drivers on the road.



### POWER ADJUSTABLE FOOT PEDALS (IF EQUIPPED)

The accelerator and brake pedal should only be adjusted when the vehicle is stopped and the gearshift lever is in the P (Park) position.

Press and hold the rocker control to adjust accelerator and brake pedal toward you or away from you.



**WARNING:** Never adjust the accelerator and brake pedal with feet on the pedals while the vehicle is moving.

## Driver Controls

The accelerator and brake pedal positions are saved when doing a memory set function and can be recalled along with the vehicle personality features when a memory position is selected through the remote entry transmitter, keyless entry keypad or memory switch on the driver's door (if equipped with memory feature). Refer to *Memory seats/power mirrors/adjustable pedals* in the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter.

### SPEED CONTROL (IF EQUIPPED)

With speed control set, you can maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal.

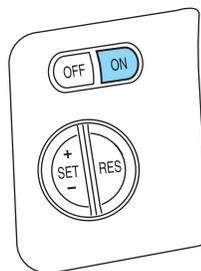


**WARNING:** Do not use the speed control in heavy traffic or on roads that are winding, slippery or unpaved.

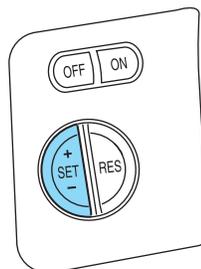
### Setting speed control

The controls for using your speed control are located on the steering wheel for your convenience.

1. Press the ON control and release it.
2. Accelerate to the desired speed.



3. Press the SET + control and release it.
4. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.
5. The indicator light  on the instrument cluster will turn on.



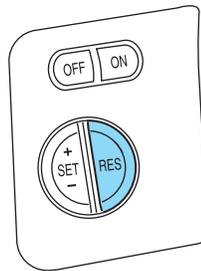
## Driver Controls

### Note:

- Vehicle speed may vary momentarily when driving up and down a steep hill.
- If the vehicle speed increases above the set speed on a downhill, you may want to apply the brakes to reduce the speed.
- If the vehicle speed decreases more than 10 mph (16 km/h) below your set speed on an uphill, your speed control will disengage.

### Resuming a set speed

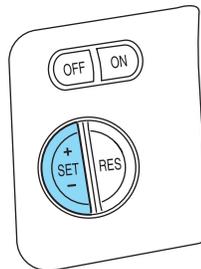
Press the RES (resume) control and release it. This will automatically return the vehicle to the previously set speed.



### Increasing speed while using speed control

There are two ways to set a higher speed:

- Press and hold the SET + control until you get to the desired speed, then release the control. You can also use the SET + control to operate the Tap-Up function. Press and release this control to increase the vehicle set speed in small amounts by 1 mph (1.6 km/h).
- Use the accelerator pedal to get to the desired speed. When the vehicle reaches that speed press and release the SET + control.

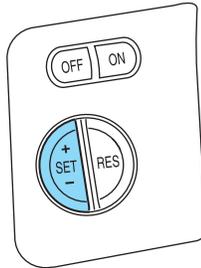


## Driver Controls

### Reducing speed while using speed control

There are two ways to reduce a set speed:

- Press and hold the SET - control until you get to the desired speed, then release the control. You can also use the SET - control to operate the Tap-Down function. Press and release this control to decrease the vehicle set speed in small amounts by 1 mph (1.6 km/h).
- Depress the brake pedal until the desired vehicle speed is reached, press the SET + control.

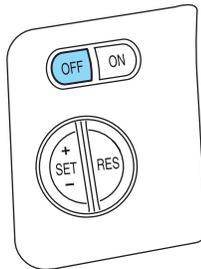


### Turning off speed control

There are two ways to turn off the speed control:

- Depress the brake pedal. This will not erase your vehicle's previously set speed.
- Press the speed control OFF control.

**Note:** When you turn off the speed control or the ignition, your speed control set speed memory is erased.



### STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS (IF EQUIPPED)

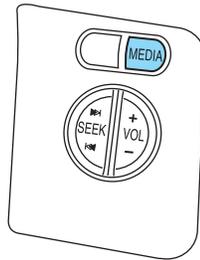
These controls allow you to operate some radio and climate control features.

## Driver Controls

### Audio control features

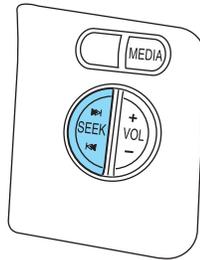
Press MEDIA to select:

- AM, FM1, FM2
- CD (if equipped)
- DVD (if equipped)
- SAT1, SAT2 or SAT3 (Satellite Radio mode, if equipped).
- LINE IN (Auxiliary input jack)



### In AM, FM1, or FM2 mode:

- Press **◀◀ SEEK ▶▶** to select preset stations within the selected radio band or press and hold to select the next/previous radio frequency.



### In Satellite radio mode (if equipped):

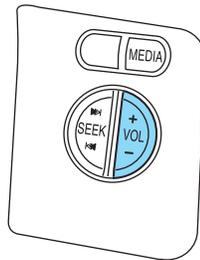
- Press **◀◀ SEEK ▶▶** to advance through preset channels or subscribed channels.

### In CD mode:

- Press **◀◀ SEEK ▶▶** to select the next selection on the CD or press and hold to forward or reverse the CD.

### In any mode:

- Press VOL + or - to adjust volume.



## Driver Controls

### Navigation system hands free control features (if equipped)

Press and hold VOICE briefly until the voice  icon appears on the Navigation display to use the voice command feature.

Press VOICE to complete a voice command.

For further information on the Navigation system, refer to the *Navigation System* supplement.

### SYNC® system hands free control feature (if equipped)

Press VOICE briefly until the voice  icon appears on the display to use the voice command feature. You will hear a tone and LISTENING will appear in the radio display. Press and hold VOICE to exit voice command.

Press  to activate phone mode or answer a phone call. Press and hold  to end call or exit phone mode.

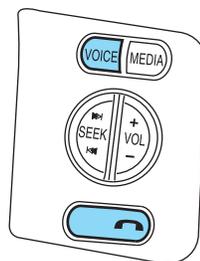
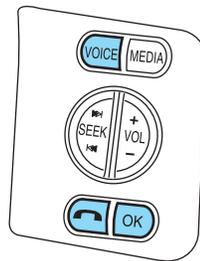
Press   to scroll through various menus and selections. Press OK to confirm your selection.

For further information on the SYNC system, refer to the *SYNC®* supplement.

### Navigation system/SYNC® hands free control features (if equipped)

Press VOICE briefly until the voice  icon appears on the Navigation display to use the voice command feature.

Press  to activate phone mode or answer a phone call. Press and hold  to exit phone mode or end call.

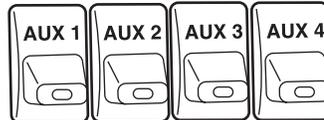


## Driver Controls

For further information on the Navigation system/SYNC system, refer to the *Navigation System* and *SYNC®* supplements.

### UPFITTER CONTROLS (IF EQUIPPED)

Your vehicle may be equipped with the Upfitter option package which will provide four switches, mounted in the center of the instrument panel, labeled AUX 1, AUX 2, AUX 3 and AUX 4. These switches will only operate while the ignition is in the on position, whether the engine is

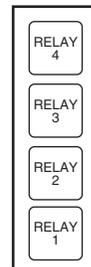


running or not. It is, however, recommended that the engine remain running to maintain battery charge when using the Upfitter switches for extended duration or higher current draws. (This is even more important for vehicles with diesel engines since the glow plugs are also draining battery power when the ignition key is in the on position.)

When switched on by the operator they provide 10 amps, 15 amps or 30 amps of electrical battery power for a variety of personal or commercial uses.

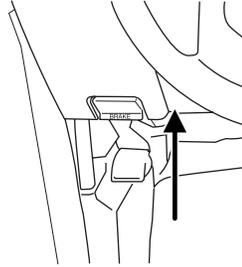
If your vehicle is equipped with this option, there will also be a relay box located on the driver side end of the instrument panel. See your authorized dealer for service.

The relays are coded as shown in the accompanying illustration.



## Driver Controls

There will also be one power lead for each switch found as a blunt-cut and sealed wire located below the instrument panel and to the left of the steering column.



They are coded as follows:

Switch	Circuit number	Wire color	Fuse
AUX 1	CAC05	Yellow	30A
AUX 2	CAC06	Green with Brown Trace	30A
AUX 3	CAC07	Violet with Green Trace	10A
AUX 4	CAC08	Brown	15A

More detailed information about the Upfitter switches can be found in the *Upfitter Switches* bulletin found at [www.fleet.ford.com/truckbbas/non-html/Q117R1.pdf](http://www.fleet.ford.com/truckbbas/non-html/Q117R1.pdf).

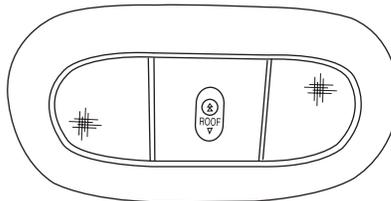
### MOON ROOF (IF EQUIPPED)

The moon roof control is located on the overhead console.



**WARNING:** Do not let children play with the moon roof or leave children unattended in the vehicle. They may seriously hurt themselves.

**Note:** The moon roof will open to the “**comfort**” position first before opening all the way. The “comfort” position helps to alleviate rumbling wind noise which may happen in the vehicle with the roof fully opened.



## Driver Controls

**To open the moon roof:** The moon roof is equipped with a one-touch open feature. Press and release the  control. The moon roof will open to the “comfort” position. Press and release the control again to fully open. To stop the one-touch open feature, press either the  or  control again.

 **WARNING:** When closing the moon roof, you should verify that it is free of obstructions and ensure that children and/or pets are not in the proximity of the moon roof opening.

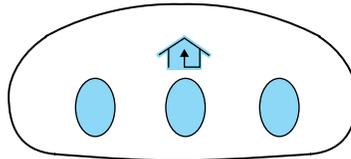
**To close the moon roof:** Press and hold the  control until the glass panel stops at the “comfort” position. Press and hold the control again until the glass stops moving (the moon roof does not go to the comfort position). When fully closed, the rear portion of the glass panel will appear higher than the front portion.

**To vent the moon roof:** Press and hold the  control. **The moon roof must be in the closed position in order to move it into the vent position.** To close, press and hold the  control until the glass panel stops moving.

The moon roof has a built-in sliding shade that can be manually opened or closed when the glass panel is shut. To close the shade, pull it toward the front of the vehicle.

### HOMELINK® WIRELESS CONTROL SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

The HomeLink® Wireless Control System, located on the driver’s visor, provides a convenient way to replace up to three hand-held transmitters with a single built-in device. This feature will learn the radio frequency codes of most transmitters to operate garage doors, entry gate operators, security systems, entry door locks, and home or office lighting.



 **WARNING:** When programming your HomeLink® Wireless Control System to a garage door or gate, be sure that people and objects are out of the way to prevent potential injury or damage.

## Driver Controls

Do not use the HomeLink® Wireless Control System with any garage door opener that lacks safety stop and reverse features as required by U.S. federal safety standards (this includes any garage door opener model manufactured before April 1, 1982). A garage door which cannot detect an object, signaling the door to stop and reverse, does not meet current U.S. federal safety standards. For more information, contact HomeLink® at: **www.homelink.com** or **1-800-355-3515**.

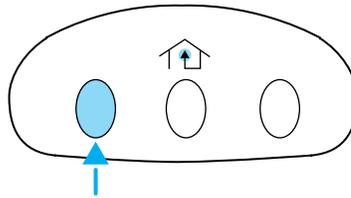
Retain the original transmitter for use in other vehicles as well as for future programming procedures (i.e. new HomeLink® equipped vehicle purchase). It is also suggested that upon the sale of the vehicle, the programmed HomeLink® buttons be erased for security purposes, refer to *Programming* in this section.

### Programming

**Do not program HomeLink® with the vehicle parked in the garage.**

**Note:** Your vehicle may require the ignition switch to be turned to the accessory position for programming and/or operation of the HomeLink®. It is also recommended that a new battery be placed in the hand-held transmitter of the device being programmed to HomeLink® for quicker training and accurate transmission of the radio-frequency signal.

1. Position the end of your hand-held transmitter 1–3 inches (2–8 cm) away from the HomeLink® button you wish to program (located on your visor) while keeping the indicator light in view.



2. Simultaneously press and hold both the chosen HomeLink® and hand-held transmitter buttons until the HomeLink® indicator light changes from a slow to a rapidly blinking light. Now you may release both the HomeLink® and hand-held transmitter buttons.

**Note:** Some entry gates and garage door openers may require you to replace Step 2 with procedures noted in the *Gate Operator and Canadian Programming* in this section for Canadian residents.

3. Firmly **press and hold for five seconds and release** the programmed HomeLink® button up to two separate times to activate the door. If the door does not activate, press and hold the just-trained HomeLink® button and observe the indicator light.

- If the indicator light **stays on constantly, programming is complete** and your device should activate when the HomeLink® button is pressed and released.

## Driver Controls

- If the indicator light blinks **rapidly for two seconds and then turns to a constant light continue with “Programming” Steps 4 through 6** to complete programming of a rolling code equipped device (most commonly a garage door opener).

4. At the garage door opener receiver (motor-head unit) in the garage, locate the “learn” or “smart” button (usually near where the hanging antenna wire is attached to the unit).

5. Firmly press and release the “learn” or “smart” button. (The name and color of the button may vary by manufacturer.)

**Note:** There are 30 seconds in which to initiate Step 6.

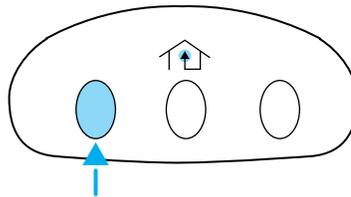
6. Return to the vehicle and firmly **press, hold for two seconds and release** the programmed HomeLink® button. Repeat the **press/hold/release** sequence again and, depending on the brand of the garage door opener (or other rolling code equipped device), repeat this sequence a third time to complete the programming.

HomeLink® should now activate your rolling code equipped device. To program additional HomeLink® buttons begin with Step 1 in this section. For questions or comments, please contact HomeLink® at **www.homelink.com** or **1-800-355-3515**.

### Gate Operator & Canadian Programming

During programming, your hand-held transmitter may automatically stop transmitting — not allowing enough time for HomeLink® to accept the signal from the hand-held transmitter.

After completing Step 1 outlined in the *Programming* section, replace Step 2 with the following:



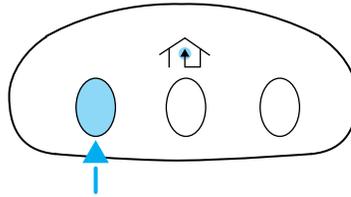
**Note:** If programming a garage door opener or gate operator, it is advised to unplug the device during the “cycling” process to prevent overheating.

- Continue to press and hold the HomeLink® button (note Step 2 in the *Programming* section) while you press and release — **every two seconds** (“cycle”) your hand-held transmitter until the frequency signal has been accepted by the HomeLink®. The indicator light will flash slowly and then rapidly after HomeLink® accepts the radio frequency signal.
- Proceed with Step 3 in the *Programming* section.

## Driver Controls

### Operating the HomeLink® Wireless Control System

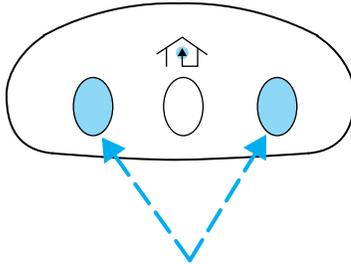
To operate, simply press and release the appropriate HomeLink® button. Activation will now occur for the trained product (garage door, gate operator, security system, entry door lock, or home or office lighting etc.). For convenience, the hand-held transmitter of the device may also be used at any time. In the event that there are still programming difficulties, contact HomeLink® at [www.homelink.com](http://www.homelink.com) or **1-800-355-3515**.



### Erasing HomeLink® buttons

To erase the three programmed buttons (individual buttons cannot be erased):

- Press and hold the two outer HomeLink® buttons until the indicator light begins to flash-after 20 seconds. Release both buttons. Do not hold for longer than 30 seconds.



HomeLink® is now in the train (or learning) mode and can be programmed at any time beginning with Step 1 in the *Programming* section.

### Reprogramming a single HomeLink® button

To program a device to HomeLink® using a HomeLink® button previously trained, follow these steps:

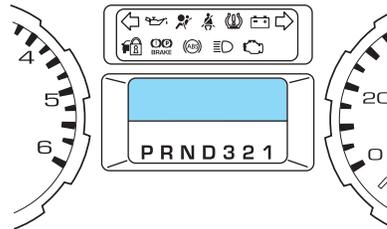
1. Press and hold the desired HomeLink® button. **Do NOT** release the button.
2. The indicator light will begin to flash after 20 seconds. Without releasing the HomeLink® button, follow Step 1 in the *Programming* section.

For questions or comments, contact HomeLink® at [www.homelink.com](http://www.homelink.com) or **1-800-355-3515**.

## Driver Controls

### STANDARD MESSAGE CENTER (IF EQUIPPED)

With the ignition in the on position, the message center, located on your instrument cluster, displays text messages that alert you to possible problems or malfunctions in your vehicle's operating systems. All warning messages will also provide an indicator chime.



For improved message center readability, if your vehicle is equipped with Autolamp control, the message center brightness cannot be adjusted when parking lamps or headlamps are on in bright daytime ambient conditions, refer to *Autolamp control* in the *Lights* chapter. In lower ambient light conditions, the message center brightness can be adjusted using the panel dimmer control when parking lamps or headlamps are on, refer to *Panel dimmer control* in the *Lights* chapter.

### Selectable features

Press and release the SELECT/RESET button, located in the speedometer, to scroll and reset the following functions. Select or reset the function by holding the SELECT/RESET button for more than 2 seconds.

#### Info menu

This menu displays the following items:

- Odometer/Trip Odometer (Trip A and Trip B)
- Engine hour meter (if equipped)
- Distance to Empty
- Average Fuel Economy
- Setup Menu
- System check
- Blank

#### Odometer/Trip odometer

Refer to *Gauges* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter.

#### Engine hour meter (if equipped)

Refer to *Gauges* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter.

## Driver Controls

### **Distance to empty (DTE)**

Selecting this function from the INFO MENU estimates approximately how far you can drive with the fuel remaining in your tank under normal driving conditions.

Remember to turn the ignition off when refueling to allow this feature to correctly detect the added fuel.

The DTE function will display XXX MILES TO E FUEL LEVEL LOW and sound a chime for one second when you have approximately 50 miles (80 km) to empty. If you RESET this warning message, this display and chime will return within 10 minutes.

DTE is calculated using a running average fuel economy, which is based on your recent driving history of 500 miles (800 km). This value is not the same as the average fuel economy display. The running average fuel economy is reinitialized to a factory default value if the battery is disconnected.

XXX MILES TO E  
0.0 mi

### **Average fuel economy (AFE)**

Select this function to display your average fuel economy in miles/gallon or liters/km.

If you calculate your average fuel economy by dividing miles traveled by gallons of fuel used (liters of fuel used by 100 kilometers traveled), your figure may be different than displayed for the following reasons:

- Your vehicle was not perfectly level during fill-up
- Differences in the automatic shut-off points on the fuel pumps at service stations
- Variations in top-off procedure from one fill-up to another
- Rounding of the displayed values to the nearest 0.1 gallon (liter)

1. Drive the vehicle at least 5 miles (8 km) with the speed control system engaged to display a stabilized average.

2. Record the highway fuel economy for future reference.

It is important to press the SELECT/RESET button (press and hold for two seconds in order to reset the function) after setting the speed control to get accurate highway fuel economy readings.

XX.X MPG  
0.0 mi

## Driver Controls

### Setup menu

Press and hold the SELECT/RESET button to get into the SETUP MENU sequence from the INFO MENU for the following displays:

HOLD RESET FOR  
SETUP MENU

- Oil Life
- Units (English/Metric)
- Language
- Reset to English (if in another language) (See Note below)

**Note:** When returning to the SETUP menu and a non-English language has been selected, HOLD RESET FOR ENGLISH will be displayed to change back to English. Press and hold the SELECT/RESET button to change back to English.

HOLD RESET FOR  
ENGLISH

### **Oil Life XXX% HOLD RESET = NEW**

An oil change is required whenever indicated by the message center and according to the recommended maintenance schedule. USE ONLY RECOMMENDED ENGINE OILS.

To reset the oil monitoring system to 100% after each oil change (approximately 7,500 miles [12,000 km] or six months) perform the following:

1. Press and release the SELECT/RESET button to display "OIL LIFE XXX% HOLD RESET = NEW".

OIL LIFE XXX%  
HOLD RESET = NEW

2. Press and hold the SELECT/RESET button for two seconds and release. Oil life is set to 100% and "OIL LIFE SET TO 100%" is displayed.

OIL LIFE SET  
TO 100%

**Note:** To change oil life 100% miles value from 7,500 miles (12,000 km) or six months to another value, proceed to Step 3.

3. Once "OIL LIFE SET TO XXX%" is displayed, release and press the SELECT/RESET button to change the oil life start value. Each release and press will reduce the value by 10%.

## Driver Controls

### **Units (English/Metric)**

1. Select this function from the SETUP MENU for the current units to be displayed.



UNITS  
< ENG > METRIC

2. Press and hold the SELECT/RESET button to change from English to Metric.

3. Press the SELECT/RESET button for the next SETUP MENU item or wait for more than four seconds to return to the INFO MENU.

### **Language**

**Note:** When entering the SETUP MENU and a non-English language has been selected, "PRESS RESET FOR ENGLISH" will be displayed to change back to English.



LANGUAGE =  
ENGLISH

1. Select this function from the SETUP MENU for the current language to be displayed.

2. Press and hold the SELECT/RESET button to select a new language. Selectable languages are English, Spanish and French

3. Press the SELECT/RESET button for the next SETUP MENU item or wait for more than four seconds to return to the INFO MENU.

### **System check**

Press and hold the SELECT/RESET button to select SYSTEM CHECK when HOLD RESET FOR SYSTEM CHECK is displayed in the message center. Selecting this function from the INFO MENU causes the message center to cycle through each of the systems being monitored. For each of the monitored systems, the message center will indicate either an OK message or a warning message for two seconds. Pressing the SELECT/RESET button cycles the message center through each of the systems being monitored.

The sequence of the system check report and how it appears in the message center is as follows:

1. OIL LIFE
2. ENGINE HOURS
3. ENGINE IDLE HOURS (Diesel engine only)
4. CHARGING SYSTEM

130

## Driver Controls

5. AIR FILTER (Diesel engine only)
6. DOOR AJAR
7. BRAKE SYSTEM
8. TBC GAIN = XX.X  
NO TRAILER (if equipped and no trailer connected)
9. TBC GAIN = XX.X  
OUTPUT = /////< (if equipped and trailer connected)
10. XX MILES TO E FUEL LEVEL XXX

### **Oil Life XXX% HOLD RESET = NEW**

An oil change is required whenever indicated by the message center and according to the recommended maintenance schedule. USE ONLY RECOMMENDED ENGINE OILS.

To reset the oil monitoring system to 100% after each oil change (approximately 7,500 miles [12,000 km] or six months) perform the following:

1. Press and release the SETUP control to display “OIL LIFE XXX% HOLD RESET = NEW”.



OIL LIFE XXX%  
HOLD RESET = NEW

2. Press and hold the RESET control for two seconds and release. Oil life is set to 100% and “OIL LIFE SET TO 100%” is displayed.



OIL LIFE SET  
TO 100%

**Note:** To change oil life 100% miles value from 7,500 miles (12,000 km) or six months to another value, proceed to Step 3.

3. Once “OIL LIFE SET TO XXX%” is displayed, release and press the RESET control switch to change the Oil Life Start Value. Each release and press will reduce the value by 10%.

### **System warnings**

System warnings alert you to possible problems or malfunctions in your vehicle's operating systems.

In the event of a multiple warning situation, the message center will cycle the display to show all warnings by displaying each one for four seconds.

## Driver Controls

The message center will display the last selected feature if there are no more warning messages. This allows you to use the full functionality of the message center after you acknowledge the warning by pressing the SELECT/RESET button and clearing the warning message.

Warning messages that have been reset are divided into two categories:

- They will reappear on the display 10 minutes from the reset.
- They will not reappear until an ignition off-on cycle has been completed.

This acts as a reminder that these warning conditions still exist within the vehicle.

Warning display	Status
Park brake engaged	Warning returns after 10 minutes if condition still exists.
Check brake system	
Driver door ajar	Warning returns after the ignition key is turned from off to on.
Passenger door ajar	
Rear left door ajar	
Rear right door ajar	
XXX miles to E fuel level low	
Wiring fault on trailer (if equipped)	
Trailer brake module fault (if equipped)	
Trailer disconnected (if equipped)	
Brake fluid level low	
Low tire pressure (if equipped)	
Tire monitor fault (if equipped)	
Tire sensor fault (if equipped)	

## Driver Controls

Warning display	Status
Check air filter (diesel engine only)	
Drain water separator (diesel engine only)	
Stop safely now (diesel engine only)	
Engine warming please wait xx (diesel engine only)	
OK to drive (diesel engine only)	
Engine turns off in xx (diesel engine only)	
Engine turned off (diesel engine only)	
Drive to clean exhaust filter (diesel engine only)	
Cleaning exhaust filter (diesel engine only)	
Exhaust filter drive complete (diesel engine only)	
Oil life change soon (gas engine only)	
Oil change required (gas engine only)	

**PARK BRAKE ENGAGED** — Displayed when the parking brake is applied (or not fully released).

**CHECK BRAKE SYSTEM** — Displayed when a fault has been detected by the ABS module.

**DRIVER DOOR AJAR** — Displayed when the driver's door is not completely closed.

**PASSENGER DOOR AJAR** — Displayed when the passenger's door is not completely closed.

**REAR LEFT DOOR AJAR** — Displayed when the rear left door is not completely closed.

## Driver Controls

**REAR RIGHT DOOR AJAR** — Displayed when the rear right door is not completely closed.

**XXX MILES TO E FUEL LEVEL LOW** — Displayed as an early reminder of a low fuel condition.

**WIRING FAULT ON TRAILER (if equipped)** — Displayed if there are certain faults in the vehicle wiring and trailer wiring/brake system. Refer to *Trailer towing* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

**TRAILER BRAKE MODULE FAULT (if equipped)** — Displayed and accompanied by a single chime, in response to faults sensed by the TBC. Refer to *Trailer towing* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

**TRAILER DISCONNECTED (if equipped)** — Displayed when a trailer connection becomes disconnected, either intentionally or unintentionally, and has been sensed during a given ignition cycle. Refer to *Trailer towing* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

**BRAKE FLUID LEVEL LOW** — Indicates the brake fluid level is low and the brake system should be inspected immediately. Refer to *Brake fluid* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

**LOW TIRE PRESSURE (if equipped)** — Displayed when one or more tires on your vehicle have low tire pressure. Refer to *Inflating Your Tires* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter.

**TIRE PRESSURE MONITOR FAULT (if equipped)** — Displayed when the Tire Pressure Monitoring System is malfunctioning. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

**TIRE PRESSURE SENSOR FAULT (if equipped)** — Displayed when a tire pressure sensor is malfunctioning, or your spare tire is in use. For more information on how the system operates under these conditions, refer to *Understanding Your Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

**CHECK AIR FILTER (Diesel engine only)** — Refer to *Instrument Cluster* in your *6.0 and 6.4 Liter Power Stroke Direct Injection Turbo Diesel Owner's Guide Supplement*.

## Driver Controls

**DRAIN WATER SEPARATOR (Diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the water separator has reached a predetermined capacity and needs to be drained. Refer to your *6.0 and 6.4 Liter Power Stroke Direct Injection Turbo Diesel Owner's Guide Supplement* for more information.

**STOP SAFELY NOW (Diesel engine only)** — Displays and a chime sounds when the vehicle exhaust system temperature exceeds intended operating range. If this warning occurs, the engine power is reduced and the engine will shutdown when the vehicle speed is below 3 mph (5 km/h). **Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible** and contact your authorized dealer. Depending on the severity of the over-temperature condition, the vehicle may or may not restart after cycling the ignition off. If the vehicle restarts, there may be limited power, or there could be full function. If the exhaust over-temperature condition reoccurs the message center will display, STOP SAFELY NOW, the chime will sound, the engine power will be reduced again and shut down below 3 mph (5km/h).

**ENGINE TURNS OFF IN XX (Diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the vehicle is in the final 30 seconds of a countdown to where the engine will intentionally be turned off by the PCM. The diesel engine shutdown is a (Regulatory) requirement which may be required of a particular diesel vehicle for sale in States requiring this feature.

**ENGINE TURNED OFF (Diesel engine only)** — Displayed after the 30 second countdown.

**ENGINE WARMING PLEASE WAIT XX (Diesel engine only)** — Displayed in extremely cold weather; typically around  $-15^{\circ}\text{F}$  ( $-26^{\circ}\text{C}$ ). The accelerator pedal will not respond to pressing; this is done so the engine oil can be properly circulated to avoid engine damage from lack of lubrication. A timer will begin a countdown from 30 seconds, then OK TO DRIVE will display once the counter has reached 0 (zero) and the accelerator pedal will respond to pressing.

**OK TO DRIVE (Diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the time counter has reached 0 (zero) and the engine is sufficiently warm enough to drive in extremely cold weather (refer to the ENGINE WARMING description mentioned previously).

## Driver Controls

### **DRIVE TO CLEAN EXHAUST FILTER (Diesel engine only)** —

Displayed when the engine control module detects the Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) is full of particulates and that the vehicle is not being operated in a manner to allow automatic cleaning. The vehicle operator has to drive the vehicle above 30 mph (48 km/h) for at least 20 minutes to clean the DPF. This will continue to be displayed until an adequate drive cycle is completed. This message is NORMAL. **Note:**

Power-Take-Off (PTO) and/or Stationary Elevated Idle (SEIC) must be disabled in order to initiate Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) cleaning.

**CLEANING EXHAUST FILTER (Diesel engine only)** — Displays continuously when the vehicle has entered the cleaning mode normally; or when cleaning the filter after a DRIVE TO CLEAN EXHAUST FILTER message was previously displayed. When this message is displayed various engine actions will raise the exhaust temperature in the DPF to clean the exhaust filter. After the exhaust filter is cleaned, the exhaust temperature will fall back to normal levels. This message is NORMAL.



**WARNING:** When the CLEANING EXHAUST FILTER message appears in the message center do not park near flammable materials, vapors and structures until filter cleaning is complete.

### **EXHAUST FILTER DRIVE COMPLETE (Diesel engine only)** —

Displayed when the vehicle has completed the adequate drive cycle to clean the DPF. This message is NORMAL.



**WARNING:** Do not park, idle, or drive your vehicle in dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, which can start a fire.

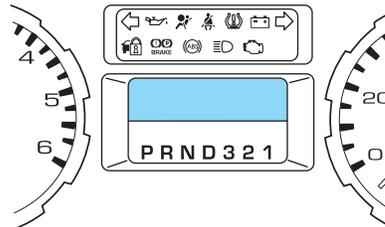
**XX% OIL LIFE CHANGE SOON (Gas engine only)** — Displayed when an oil change will soon be required and shows the percentage of oil life left.

**OIL CHANGE REQUIRED (Gas engine only)** — Displayed when the oil life left reaches 0%, the OIL CHANGE REQUIRED message will be displayed. OIL LIFE OK displays after you have changed the oil.

## Driver Controls

### OPTIONAL MESSAGE CENTER (IF EQUIPPED)

With the ignition in the on position, the message center, located on your instrument cluster, displays important vehicle information **through a constant monitor of vehicle systems.** You may select display features on the message center for a display of status. The system will also notify you of potential vehicle problems with a display of system warnings followed by an indicator chime.

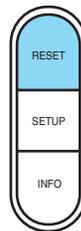


For improved message center readability, if your vehicle is equipped with Autolamp control, the message center brightness cannot be adjusted when parking lamps or headlamps are on in bright daytime ambient conditions, refer to *Autolamp control* in the *Lights* chapter. In lower ambient light conditions, the message center brightness can be adjusted using the panel dimmer control when parking lamps or headlamps are on, refer to *Panel dimmer control* in the *Lights* chapter.

### Selectable features

#### **Reset**

Press this button to select and reset functions shown in the INFO menu and SETUP menu.

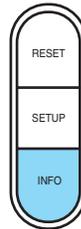


## Driver Controls

### Info menu

This control displays the following items:

- Trip odometer A or B
- Engine hour meter/odometer (if equipped)
- Distance to empty
- Average fuel economy
- Drive timer (elapsed travel timer)
- Blank (odometer and compass, if equipped, off)



### Odometer/Trip odometer

Refer to *Gauges* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter.

### Engine hour meter (if equipped)

Refer to *Gauges* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter.

### Distance to empty (DTE)

Selecting this function from the INFO menu estimates approximately how far you can drive with the fuel remaining in your tank under normal driving conditions.

Remember to turn the ignition off when refueling to allow this feature to correctly detect the added fuel.

The DTE function will display FUEL LEVEL LOW and sound a tone for one second when you have approximately 50 miles (80 km) to empty. If you RESET this warning message, this display and tone will return within 10 minutes.

DTE is calculated using a running average fuel economy, which is based on your recent driving history of 500 miles (800 km). This value is not the same as the average fuel economy display. The running average fuel economy is reinitialized to a factory default value if the battery is disconnected.



## Driver Controls

### **Average fuel economy (AFE)**

Select this function from the INFO menu to display your average fuel economy in miles/gallon or liters/100 km.



XX.X MPG  
0.0 mi

If you calculate your average fuel economy by dividing miles traveled since last fill-up by gallons of fuel used (multiply liters used by 100, then divide by kilometers traveled), your figure may be different than displayed for the following reasons:

- Your vehicle was not perfectly level during fill-up
- Differences in the automatic shut-off points on the fuel pumps at service stations
- Variations in top-off procedure from one fill-up to another
- Rounding of the displayed values to the nearest 0.1 gallon (liter)

1. Drive the vehicle at least 5 miles (8 km) with the speed control system engaged to display a stabilized average.

2. Record the highway fuel economy for future reference.

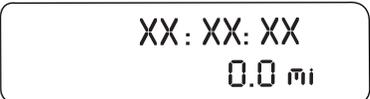
It is important to press the RESET control after setting the speed control to get accurate highway fuel economy readings.

### **Drive timer (Elapsed travel timer)**

Select this function from the INFO menu to display a timer.

To operate the Trip Elapsed Drive Time perform the following:

1. Press and release RESET in order to start the timer.
2. Press and release RESET to pause the timer.
3. Press and hold RESET for two seconds in order to reset the timer.



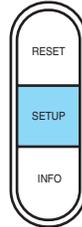
XX:XX:XX  
0.0 mi

## Driver Controls

### Setup menu

Press this control for the following displays:

- System check
- Units (English/Metric)
- Autolamp timer presets (if equipped)
- Autolock On/Off (if equipped)
- Compass display
- Compass zone/calibration adjustment
- Language
- Reset to English (if in another language) (see Note below)



**Note:** When returning to the SETUP menu and a non-English language has been selected, HOLD RESET FOR ENGLISH will be displayed to change back to English. Press and hold the RESET control to change back to English.

HOLD RESET FOR  
ENGLISH

### System check

Selecting this function from the SETUP menu causes the message center to cycle through each of the systems being monitored. For each of the monitored systems, the message center will indicate either an OK message or a warning message for three seconds.

PRESS RESET  
FOR SYS CHECK

Pressing the RESET button cycles the message center through each of the systems being monitored.

The sequence of the system check report and how it appears in the message center is as follows:

1. OIL LIFE (Gas engine only)
2. ENGINE HOURS
3. ENGINE IDLE HOURS (Diesel engine only)
4. CHARGING SYSTEM

## Driver Controls

5. AIR FILTER (Diesel engine only)
6. DOOR AJAR
7. BRAKE SYSTEM
8. TBC GAIN = XX.X  
NO TRAILER (if equipped and no trailer connected)
9. TBC GAIN = XX.X  
OUTPUT = /////  
(if equipped and trailer connected)
10. FUEL LEVEL

### **Oil Life XXX% HOLD RESET = NEW**

An oil change is required whenever indicated by the message center and according to the recommended maintenance schedule. USE ONLY RECOMMENDED ENGINE OILS.

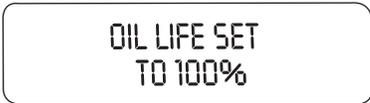
To reset the oil monitoring system to 100% after each oil change (approximately 7,500 miles [12,000 km] or six months) perform the following:

1. Press and release the SETUP control to display “OIL LIFE XXX% HOLD RESET = NEW”.



OIL LIFE XXX%  
HOLD RESET=NEW

2. Press and hold the RESET control for two seconds and release. Oil life is set to 100% and “OIL LIFE SET TO 100%” is displayed.



OIL LIFE SET  
TO 100%

**Note:** To change oil life 100% miles value from 7,500 miles (12,000 km) or six months to another value, proceed to Step 3.

3. Once “OIL LIFE SET TO XXX%” is displayed, release and press the RESET control switch to change the Oil Life Start Value. Each release and press will reduce the value by 10%.

## Driver Controls

### **Units (English/Metric)**

1. Select this function from the SETUP menu for the current units to be displayed.
2. Press the RESET button to change from English to Metric.



UNITS  
< ENG > METRIC

### **Autolamp**

This feature keeps your headlights on for up to three minutes after the ignition is switched off.

1. To disable/enable the autolamp delay feature, select this function from the SETUP menu for the current display mode.
2. Press the RESET control to select the new Autolamp delay values of 0, 10, 20, 30, 60, 90, 120 or 180 seconds.



AUTOLAMP (SEC)  
< 0 > 10 20

### **Autolock**

This feature automatically locks all vehicle doors when the vehicle is shifted into any gear, putting the vehicle in motion.

1. To disable/enable the autolock feature, select this function from the SETUP menu for the current display mode.
2. Press the RESET control to turn the autolock ON or OFF.



AUTOLOCK  
< ON > OFF

### **Compass display (if equipped)**

The compass heading is displayed as one of N, NE, E, SE, S, SW, W and NW in the message center display.

The compass reading may be affected when you drive near large buildings, bridges, power lines and powerful broadcast antenna. Magnetic or metallic objects placed in, on or near the vehicle may also affect compass accuracy.

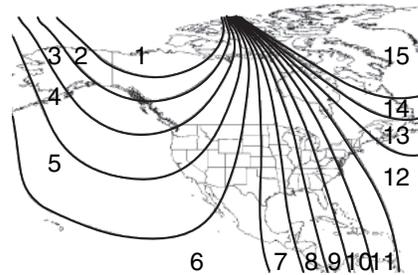
Usually, when something affects the compass readings, the compass will correct itself after a few days of operating your vehicle in normal conditions. If the compass still appears to be inaccurate, a manual calibration may be necessary. Refer to *Compass zone/calibration adjustment*.

## Driver Controls

Most geographic areas (zones) have a magnetic north compass point that varies slightly from the northerly direction on maps. This variation is four degrees between adjacent zones and will become noticeable as the vehicle crosses multiple zones. A correct zone setting will eliminate this error. Refer to *Compass zone/calibration adjustment*.

### Compass zone/calibration adjustment

1. Determine your magnetic zone by referring to the zone map.
2. Turn ignition to the on position.
3. Start the engine.



4. From the SETUP menu, press and release the RESET button until the message center display changes to show the current zone setting (XX).

ZONE <XX>  
RESET = CHANGE

5. Press and release the RESET button repeatedly until the correct zone setting for your geographic location is displayed on the message center. The range of zone values are from 1 to 15 and “wraps” back to 1.
6. To exit the zone setting mode, and to “lock in” your change:
  - press and release the SETUP button or,
  - press INFO button to exit or,
  - wait four seconds and the zone will be “locked in”.

Perform compass calibration in an open area free from steel structures and high voltage lines. For optimum calibration, turn off all electrical accessories (heater/air conditioning, wipers, etc.) and make sure all vehicle doors are shut.

7. Press the RESET button to start the compass calibration function.

RESET FOR  
CALIBRATION

## Driver Controls

8. Slowly drive the vehicle in a circle (less than 3 mph [5 km/h]) until the CIRCLE SLOWLY TO CALIBRATE display changes to CALIBRATION COMPLETED. It will take up to five circles to complete calibration.

CIRCLE SLOWLY  
TO CALIBRATE

9. The compass is now calibrated.

**Note:** If the RESET button is pressed or three minutes has expired, the display will go back to the INFO menu and will show CAL instead of the compass heading until the compass is calibrated.

CALIBRATION  
COMPLETED

### Language

1. Select this function from the SETUP menu for the current language to be displayed.

LANGUAGE =  
ENGLISH

2. Waiting four seconds or pressing the RESET button cycles the message center through each of the language choices. Selectable languages are English, Spanish, or French.

3. Press and hold the RESET button for two seconds to set the language choice.

4. Press the SETUP button to exit.

### System warnings

System warnings alert you to possible problems or malfunctions in your vehicle's operating systems.

In the event of a multiple warning situation, the message center will cycle the display to show all warnings by displaying each one for four seconds.

The message center will display the last selected feature if there are no more warning messages. This allows you to use the full functionality of the message center after you acknowledge the warning by pressing the RESET button and clearing the warning message.

## Driver Controls

Warning messages that have been reset are divided into two categories:

- They will reappear on the display 10 minutes from the reset.
- They will not reappear until an ignition off-on cycle has been completed.

This acts as a reminder that these warning conditions still exist within the vehicle.

Warning display	Status
Park brake engaged	Warning returns after 10 minutes if condition still exists.
Check brake system	
Driver door ajar	Warning returns after the ignition key is turned from off to on.
Passenger door ajar	
Rear left door ajar	
Rear right door ajar	
Fuel level low	
Wiring fault on trailer (if equipped)	
Trailer brake module fault (if equipped)	
Trailer connected (if equipped)	
Trailer disconnected (if equipped)	
Brake fluid level low	
Low tire pressure (if equipped)	
Tire monitor fault (if equipped)	
Tire sensor fault (if equipped)	

## Driver Controls

Warning display	Status
Check air filter (diesel engine only)	
Drain water separator (diesel engine only)	
Stop safely now (diesel engine only)	
Engine warming please wait xx (diesel engine only)	
OK to drive (diesel engine only)	
Engine turns off in xx (diesel engine only)	
Engine turned off (diesel engine only)	
Drive to clean exhaust filter (diesel engine only)	
Cleaning exhaust filter (diesel engine only)	
Exhaust filter drive complete (diesel engine only)	
Oil life change soon (gas engine only)	
Oil change required (gas engine only)	

**PARK BRAKE ENGAGED** — Displayed when the parking brake is applied (or not fully released).

**CHECK BRAKE SYSTEM** — Displayed when a fault has been detected by the ABS module.

**DRIVER DOOR AJAR** — Displayed when the driver's door is not completely closed.

**PASSENGER DOOR AJAR** — Displayed when the passenger's door is not completely closed.

**REAR LEFT DOOR AJAR** — Displayed when the rear left door is not completely closed.

## Driver Controls

**REAR RIGHT DOOR AJAR** — Displayed when the rear right door is not completely closed.

**FUEL LEVEL LOW** — Displayed as an early reminder of a low fuel condition.

**WIRING FAULT ON TRAILER (if equipped)** — Displayed and accompanied by a single chime if there are certain faults in the vehicle wiring and trailer wiring/brake system. Refer to *Trailer towing* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

**TRAILER BRAKE MODULE FAULT (if equipped)** — Displayed and accompanied by a single chime in response to faults sensed by the TBC. Refer to *Trailer towing* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

**TRAILER CONNECTED (if equipped)** — Displayed when a correct trailer connection (a trailer with electric trailer brakes) is sensed during a given ignition cycle. Refer to *Trailer towing* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

**TRAILER DISCONNECTED (if equipped)** — Displayed and accompanied by a single chime when a trailer connection becomes disconnected, either intentionally or unintentionally, and has been sensed during a given ignition cycle. Refer to *Trailer towing* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

**BRAKE FLUID LEVEL LOW** — Indicates the brake fluid level is low and the brake system should be inspected immediately. Refer to *Brake fluid* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

**LOW TIRE PRESSURE (if equipped)** — Displayed when one or more tires on your vehicle have low tire pressure. Refer to *Inflating Your Tires* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter.

**TIRE PRESSURE MONITOR FAULT (if equipped)** — Displayed when the Tire Pressure Monitoring System is malfunctioning. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

**TIRE PRESSURE SENSOR FAULT (if equipped)** — Displayed when a tire pressure sensor is malfunctioning, or your spare tire is in use. For more information on how the system operates under these conditions, refer to *Understanding Your Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

**CHECK AIR FILTER (Diesel engine only)** — Refer to *Instrument Cluster* in your *6.0 and 6.4 Liter Power Stroke Direct Injection Turbo Diesel Owner's Guide Supplement*.

## Driver Controls

**DRAIN WATER SEPARATOR (Diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the water separator has reached a predetermined capacity and needs to be drained. Refer to your *6.0 and 6.4 Liter Power Stroke Direct Injection Turbo Diesel Owner's Guide Supplement* for more information.

**STOP SAFELY NOW (Diesel engine only)** — Displays and a chime sounds when the vehicle exhaust system temperature exceeds intended operating range. If this warning occurs, the engine power is reduced and the engine will shutdown when the vehicle speed is below 3 mph (5 km/h). **Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible** and contact your authorized dealer. Depending on the severity of the over-temperature condition, the vehicle may or may not restart after cycling the ignition off. If the vehicle restarts, there may be limited power, or there could be full function. If the exhaust over-temperature condition reoccurs the message center will display, STOP SAFELY NOW, the chime will sound, the engine power will be reduced again and shut down below 3 mph (5km/h).

**ENGINE WARMING PLEASE WAIT XX (Diesel engine only)** — Displayed in extremely cold weather; typically around  $-15^{\circ}\text{F}$  ( $-26^{\circ}\text{C}$ ). The accelerator pedal will not respond to pressing; this is done so the engine oil can be properly circulated to avoid engine damage from lack of lubrication. A timer will begin a countdown from 30 seconds, then OK TO DRIVE will display once the counter has reached 0 (zero) and the accelerator pedal will respond to pressing.

**OK TO DRIVE (Diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the time counter has reached 0 (zero) and the engine is sufficiently warm enough to drive in extremely cold weather (refer to the ENGINE WARMING description mentioned previously).

**ENGINE TURNS OFF IN XX (Diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the vehicle is in the final 30 seconds of a countdown to where the engine will intentionally be turned off by the PCM. The diesel engine shutdown is a (Regulatory) requirement which may be required of a particular diesel vehicle for sale in States requiring this feature.

**ENGINE TURNED OFF (Diesel engine only)** — Displayed after the 30 second countdown.

## Driver Controls

### **DRIVE TO CLEAN EXHAUST FILTER (Diesel engine only)** —

Displayed when the engine control module detects the Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) is full of particulates and that the vehicle is not being operated in a manner to allow automatic cleaning. The vehicle operator will have to drive the vehicle above 30 mph (48 km/h) for at least 20 minutes to clean the DPF. This message will continue to be displayed until an adequate drive cycle is completed. This message is NORMAL.

**Note:** Power-Take-Off (PTO) and/or Stationary Elevated Idle (SEIC) must be disabled in order to initiate Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) cleaning.

**CLEANING EXHAUST FILTER (Diesel engine only)** — Displays continuously when the vehicle has entered the cleaning mode normally; or when cleaning the filter after a DRIVE TO CLEAN EXHAUST FILTER message was previously displayed. When this message is displayed various engine actions will raise the exhaust temperature in the DPF to clean the exhaust filter. After the exhaust filter is cleaned, the exhaust temperature will fall back to normal levels. This message is NORMAL.



**WARNING:** When the CLEANING EXHAUST FILTER message appears in the message center do not park near flammable materials, vapors and structures until filter cleaning is complete.

### **EXHAUST FILTER DRIVE COMPLETE (Diesel engine only)** —

Displayed when the vehicle has completed the adequate drive cycle to clean the DPF. This message is NORMAL.



**WARNING:** Do not park, idle, or drive your vehicle in dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, which can start a fire.

**XX% OIL LIFE CHANGE SOON (Gas engine only)** — Displayed when an oil change will soon be required and shows the percentage of oil life left.

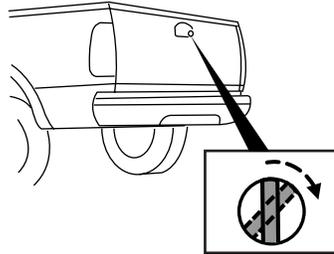
**OIL CHANGE REQUIRED (Gas engine only)** — Displayed when the oil life left reaches 0%, the OIL CHANGE REQUIRED message will be displayed. OIL LIFE OK displays after you have changed the oil.

## Driver Controls

### TAILGATE LOCK (IF EQUIPPED)

Your vehicle may be equipped with a tailgate lock designed to help prevent theft of the tailgate.

- Insert ignition key and turn to the right to engage lock.
- Turn ignition key to the left to unlock.



### Tailgate removal

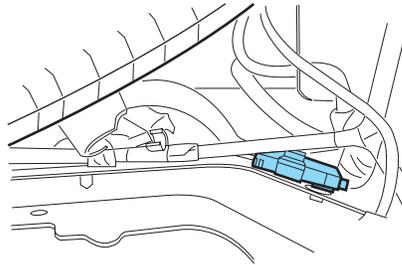
Your tailgate is removable to allow more room for loading.

**Note:** If equipped with a Reverse Camera System (RCS), do steps 1 through 3 before removing the tailgate.

1. Before removal of the tailgate, locate and disconnect the tailgate in-line connector under the pickup box on the passenger side of the vehicle near the spare tire.

2. Install a protective cap (located in the glove box) onto the in-line RCS connector that remains under the pickup box.

3. Partially lower tailgate and carefully feed tailgate harness up through the gap between the pickup box and the bumper. Place the tailgate harness out of the way under the pickup box.



## Driver Controls

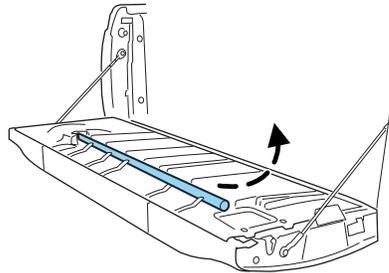
4. Lower the tailgate.
  5. Using a screwdriver, gently pry the spring clip (on each connector) past the head of the support screw. Disconnect cable.
  6. Disconnect the other cable.
  7. Lift tailgate to a 45-degree angle from horizontal.
  8. Lift right side off of its hinge.
  9. Lift tailgate to a 80-degree angle from horizontal.
  10. Remove tailgate from left side hinge by sliding tailgate to the right.
- To install, follow the removal procedures in reverse order.



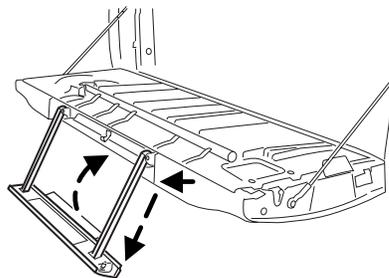
### Tailgate step (if equipped)

Your vehicle may be equipped with a feature that allows easier entry into the truck bed. To open the tailgate step:

1. Flip down the tailgate.
2. Pull the yellow latch lever to the unlock position (🔓) to release the grab handle from its stowed position and raise the handle upright until you feel it latch and see the latch lever in the lock position (🔒). The yellow lever only needs to be used when releasing the grab handle.



3. Rotate the center molding to unlatch the tailgate step and pull it towards you to extend it.
4. Flip open the step panel to widen the step.



**Note:** To reduce risk of falling:

- Operate step only when the vehicle is on level surface.
- Operate step only in areas with sufficient lighting
- Always open flip panel to widen step.

## Driver Controls

- Always use grab handle when stepping up and down.
- Step not intended for bare-footed use.
- Keep step clean from contamination before use (e.g. snow, mud)
- Keep the step load (you + load) below 350 lb (159 kg).
- Never drive with step deployed.

To close the tailgate step:

1. Close the step panel, then lift and fully close the tailgate step into the tailgate.
2. Slide the latch at the bottom of the handle, then lower the handle.

**Note:**

- Fully close and latch the tailgate step before moving the vehicle.
- Never drive with the step or grab handle deployed.
- Replace slip resistance tape (serviceable item) if worn out.
- Replace handle molding (serviceable item) if damaged.
- Do not tow with grab handle or step frame.

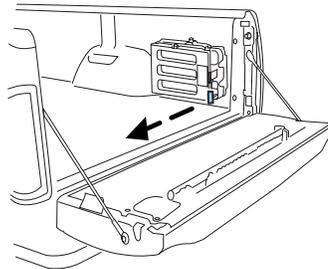
### Bed extender (if equipped)

Your vehicle may be equipped with a cargo management feature in the truck bed.

**Note:** This feature is not intended for off-road usage.

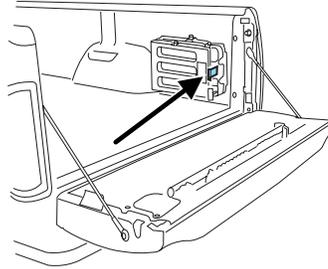
To open the bed extender into tailgate mode:

1. Pull the locking pin toward the center of the vehicle.

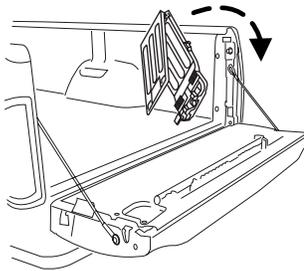


## Driver Controls

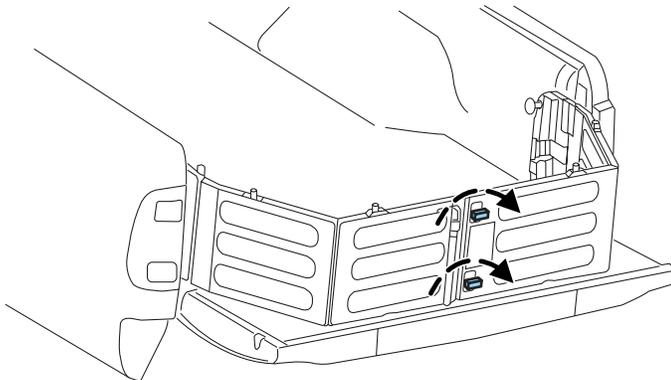
2. Open the latches to release the panels.



3. Rotate the panels toward the tailgate.



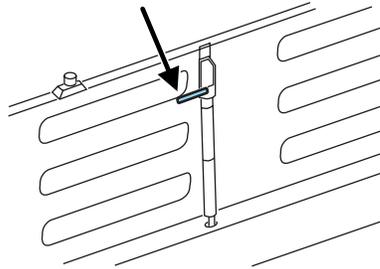
Repeat Steps 1–3 for the other side of the bed extender.



4. Connect the two panels, then rotate both knobs a quarter-turn clockwise to secure the panels.

## Driver Controls

5. Ensure the latch rod is inserted into the tailgate hole and the locking pins on both sides are engaged into their holes in the pick-up box.
6. Reverse steps for storage of the bed extender.

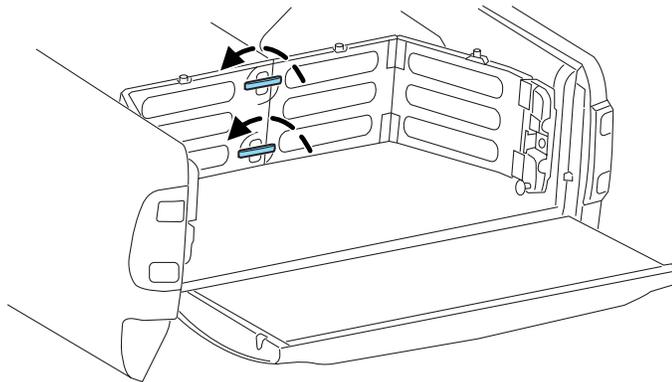


**Note:** When the vehicle is in motion, ensure the locking pins and knobs are fully engaged.

**Note:** Ensure all cargo is secured.

**Note:** When the vehicle is in motion, the tailgate load must not exceed 150 lb (68 kg).

**Note:** The bed extender should always be kept in the grocery mode or stowed position with the tailgate closed when not in use.



To open the bed extender into grocery mode, follow Steps 1–4 by rotating the panels away from the tailgate. Close the tailgate.

## Locks and Security

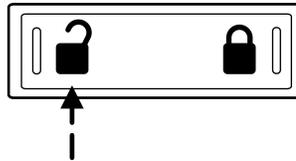
### KEYS

The key operates all locks on your vehicle. You should always carry a second key with you in a safe place in case you require it in an emergency.

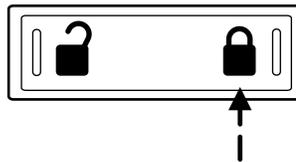
If your vehicle is equipped with the SecuriLock™ Passive Anti-theft system, your keys are electronically coded to your vehicle; using a non-coded key will not permit your vehicle to start. If you lose your dealer supplied keys, replacement keys are available through your authorized dealer.

### POWER DOOR LOCKS (IF EQUIPPED)

Press control to unlock all doors.



Press control to lock all doors.



### Smart locks (if equipped)

This feature prevents you from locking yourself out of the vehicle if your key is still in the ignition.

When you open the driver's door and you lock the vehicle with the power door lock control, all the doors will lock, then the driver's door will automatically unlock reminding you that your key is still in the ignition.

The vehicle can still be locked, with the key in the ignition, using the manual lock button on the door, locking the driver's door with a key, by simultaneously pressing button 7 • 8 and the 9 • 0 controls on the remote entry keypad (if equipped), or using the  button on the remote entry transmitter (if equipped).

## Locks and Security

### Autolock feature (if equipped)

The autolock feature will lock all the doors when:

- all the doors are closed,
- the ignition is in the on position,
- you shift into any gear putting the vehicle in motion, and
- the vehicle attains a speed greater than 12 mph (20 km/h) for greater than two seconds.

The autolock feature repeats when:

- any door is opened then closed while the ignition is in the on position and the vehicle speed is 9 mph (15 km/h) or lower, and
- the vehicle then attains a speed greater than 12 mph (20 km/h) for greater than two seconds.

### Deactivating/activating autolock feature

There are four methods to enable/disable this feature:

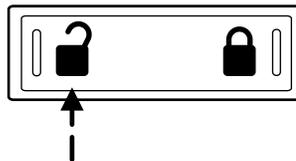
- Through your authorized dealer,
- by using a power door unlock/lock procedure,
- using a keypad procedure (if equipped), or
- or by using the instrument cluster message center (if equipped). Refer to *Optional message center* in the *Driver controls* chapter.

**Note:** The autolock feature can be activated/deactivated independently of the autounlock feature.

### Power door lock switch autolock enable/disable procedure

Before starting, ensure the ignition is in the off position and all vehicle doors are closed. You must complete Steps 1–5 within 30 seconds or the procedure will have to be repeated. If the procedure needs to be repeated, wait a minimum of 30 seconds before beginning again.

1. Place the key in the ignition and turn the ignition to the on position.
2. Press the power door unlock control on the door panel three times.
3. Turn the ignition from the on position to the off position.
4. Press the power door unlock control on the door panel three times.



## Locks and Security

5. Turn the ignition back to the on position. The horn will chirp one time to confirm programming mode has been entered and is active.
6. To enable/disable the autolock feature, press the unlock control, then press the lock control. The horn will chirp once if autolock was deactivated or twice (one short and one long chirp) if autolock was activated.
7. Turn the ignition to the off position. The horn will chirp once to confirm the procedure is complete.

### **Keyless entry keypad autolock enable/disable procedure**

1. Turn the ignition to the off position.
2. Close all the doors.
3. Enter factory-set 5-digit entry code.
4. Press and hold the 3 • 4. While holding the 3 • 4 press the 7 • 8.
5. Release the 7 • 8.
6. Release the 3 • 4.



The user should receive a **horn chirp** to indicate the system has been disabled or a chirp followed by a honk to indicate the system has been enabled.

### **Autounlock feature (if equipped)**

The autounlock feature will unlock all the doors when:

- the ignition is in the on position, all the doors are closed, and the vehicle has been in motion at a speed greater than 12 mph (20 km/h);
- the vehicle has then come to a stop and the ignition is turned to the off ) or accessory position; and
- the driver door is opened within 10 minutes of the ignition being transitioned to the off or accessory position.

**Note:** The doors will not autounlock if the vehicle has been electronically locked before the driver door is opened.

## Locks and Security

### **Deactivating/activating autounlock feature**

There are three methods to enable/disable this feature:

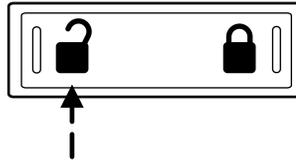
- Through your authorized dealer,
- by using a power door unlock/lock sequence,
- using a keypad procedure (if equipped)

**Note:** The autounlock feature can be activated/deactivated independently of the autolock feature.

### **Power door lock switch autounlock enable/disable procedure**

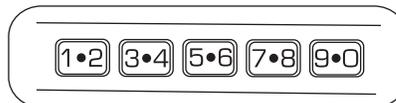
Before starting, ensure the ignition is in the off position and all vehicle doors are closed. You must complete Steps 1–5 within 30 seconds or the procedure will have to be repeated. If the procedure needs to be repeated, wait a minimum of 30 seconds before beginning again.

1. Place the key in the ignition and turn the ignition to the on position.
2. Press the power door unlock control on the door panel three times.
3. Turn the ignition from the on position to the off position.
4. Press the power door unlock control on the door panel three times.
5. Turn the ignition back to the on position. The horn will chirp one time to confirm programming mode has been entered and is active.
6. To enable/disable the autounlock feature, press the lock control, then press the unlock control. The horn will chirp once if autounlock was deactivated or twice (one short and one long chirp) if autounlock was activated.
7. Turn the ignition to the off position. The horn will chirp once to confirm the procedure is complete.



### **Keyless entry keypad autounlock enable/disable procedure**

1. Turn the ignition to the off position.
2. Close all the doors.
3. Enter factory-set 5-digit entry code.



## Locks and Security

4. Press and hold the 3 • 4. While holding the 3 • 4, press and release the 7 • 8. While still holding the 3 • 4, press and release the 7 • 8 a second time.

5. Release the 3 • 4.

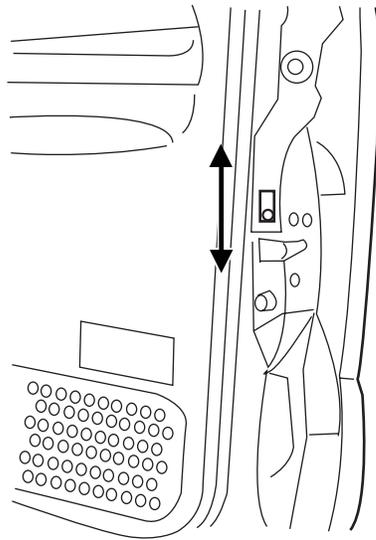
The user should receive a **horn chirp** to indicate the system has been disabled or a chirp followed by a honk to indicate the system has been enabled.

### CHILDPROOF DOOR LOCKS (IF EQUIPPED)

- When these locks are set, the rear doors cannot be opened from the inside.
- The rear doors can be opened from the outside when the doors are unlocked.

The childproof locks are located on rear edge of each rear door and must be set separately for each door. Setting the lock for one door will not automatically set the lock for both doors.

- Move lock control up to engage the childproof lock.
- Move lock control down to disengage the childproof lock.



### REMOTE ENTRY SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC rules and with RS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

**Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.**

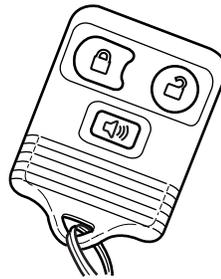
## Locks and Security

The typical operating range for your remote entry transmitter is approximately 33 feet (10 meters). A decrease in operating range could be caused by:

- weather conditions,
- nearby radio towers,
- structures around the vehicle, or
- other vehicles parked next to your vehicle.

Your vehicle is equipped with a remote entry system which allows you to:

- unlock the vehicle doors without a key.
- lock all the vehicle doors without a key.
- activate the personal alarm.



If there are problems with the remote entry system, make sure to take **ALL remote entry transmitters** with you to your authorized dealer in order to aid in troubleshooting the problem.

### Two step door unlocking

1. Press  and release to unlock the driver's door. **Note:** The interior lamps will illuminate (refer to the *Illuminated entry* feature later in this section) if the control on the overhead lamp is **not** set to the **off** position.
2. Press  and release again within three seconds to unlock the passenger doors.

The battery saver feature will turn off the interior lamps 10 minutes after the ignition is turned to the off position.

### One step door unlocking

If the one step door unlocking feature is activated, press  and release once to unlock all of the doors. **Note:** The interior lamps will illuminate (refer to the *Illuminated entry* feature later in this section) if the control on the overhead lamp is **not** set to the **off** position.

## Locks and Security

### **Switching from two step to one step door unlocking**

Your vehicle comes with two step unlocking enabled. Unlocking can be switched between two step and one step door unlocking by pressing and holding both the  and  buttons simultaneously on the remote entry transmitter for approximately four seconds. The hazard lamps will flash twice to indicate that the vehicle has switched to one step unlocking. Repeat the procedure to switch back to two-step unlocking.

### **Locking the doors**

1. Press  and release to lock all the doors. The parking lamps will flash if all the doors are closed and locked.
2. Press  and release again within three seconds to confirm that all the doors are closed and locked. **Note:** The doors will lock again, the horn will chirp once, and the parking lamps will flash once more.

If any of the doors are not properly closed the horn will make two quick chirps and the parklamps will not flash.

### **Car finder**

Press  twice within three seconds. The horn will chirp and the turn lamps will flash. It is recommended that this method be used to locate your vehicle, rather than using the panic alarm.

### **Sounding a panic alarm**

Press  to activate the alarm. Press again or turn the ignition to on to deactivate.

**Note:** The panic alarm will only operate when the ignition is in the off position.

### **Memory seats/adjustable pedals/mirrors (if equipped)**

The remote entry system can also control the memory seat/adjustable pedals/mirrors.

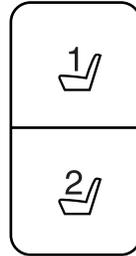
Press  to automatically move the seat, adjustable pedals and mirrors to the desired memory position (the seat position corresponds to the transmitter being used).

## Locks and Security

### Activating the memory feature

To activate this feature:

1. Position the seat, adjustable pedals and mirrors to the position desired.
2. Press and hold either memory 1 button or memory 2 button for five seconds. A tone will be heard after 1½ seconds when the memory store is done, continue to hold until a second tone is heard after five seconds.
3. Within three seconds press the  button on the keyfob.



The keyfob unlock will now recall the memory position.

### Deactivating the memory feature

To deactivate this feature:

1. Press and hold either memory 1 button or memory 2 button for five seconds. A tone will be heard after 1½ seconds when the memory store is done, continue to hold until a second tone is heard after five seconds.
2. Within three seconds press the  button on the keyfob

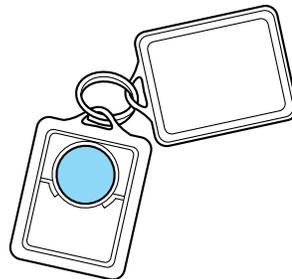
The keyfob unlock will not recall the memory position.

### Replacing the battery

The remote entry transmitter uses one coin type three-volt lithium battery CR2032 or equivalent.

To replace the battery:

1. Twist a thin coin between the two halves of the remote entry transmitter near the key ring. DO NOT TAKE THE RUBBER COVER AND CIRCUIT BOARD OFF THE FRONT HOUSING OF THE REMOTE ENTRY TRANSMITTER.



## Locks and Security

2. Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals on the back surface of the circuit board.

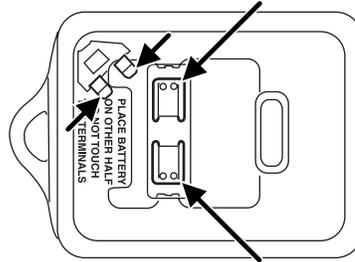
3. Remove the old battery.

**Note:** Please refer to local regulations when disposing of transmitter batteries.

4. Insert the new battery. Refer to the diagram inside the remote entry transmitter for the correct orientation of the battery. Press the battery down to ensure that the battery is fully seated in the battery housing cavity.

5. Snap the two halves back together.

**Note:** Replacement of the battery will **not** cause the remote transmitter to become deprogrammed from your vehicle. The remote transmitter should operate normally after battery replacement.



### Replacing lost remote entry transmitters

If you would like to have your remote entry transmitter reprogrammed because you lost one, or would like to buy additional remote entry transmitters, you can either reprogram them yourself, or take **all remote entry transmitters** to your authorized dealer for reprogramming.

**Note:** If your vehicle is equipped with the memory seats/power mirrors/adjustable pedals feature, you can associate a remote entry transmitter to each memory position using this procedure. The first transmitter that is programmed will recall Driver 1 settings, and the second transmitter that is programmed will recall Driver 2 settings.

### How to program your remote entry transmitters

You must have **all remote keyless entry keypads and remote entry transmitters** (maximum of four) available before beginning this procedure. **Note:** Do not press the brake pedal anytime during this sequencing, as doing so will invalidate the procedure.

## Locks and Security

To reprogram the remote entry transmitters:

1. Ensure the vehicle is electronically unlocked.
2. Put the key in the ignition.
3. Cycle eight times rapidly (within 10 seconds) between the off position and on.

**Note:** The eighth turn must end in the on position. The doors will lock, then unlock, to confirm that the programming mode has been activated.

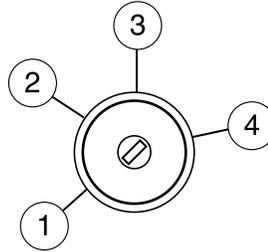
4. Within 20 seconds press any button on the remote entry transmitter.

**Note:** If more than 20 seconds have passed you will need to start the procedure over again. The doors will lock, then unlock, to confirm that this remote entry transmitter has been programmed.

5. Repeat Step 4 to program each additional remote entry transmitter.

6. Turn the ignition to the off position after you have finished programming all of the remote entry transmitters.

**Note:** After 20 seconds, you will automatically exit the programming mode. The doors will lock, then unlock, to confirm that the programming mode has been exited.



### Perimeter lamps illuminated entry

With the Remote Keyless Entry system, the following items will illuminate when the  control on the transmitter is pressed:

- Headlamps
- Parklamps
- Tail lamps

The lamps will automatically turn off:

- if the ignition switch is turned to the on position, or
- the Remote Keyless Entry Transmitter lock control is pressed, or
- the vehicle is locked using the keyless entry keypad (if equipped), or
- after 25 seconds of illumination.

**Note:** On some vehicles, the perimeter lamps illuminated entry feature will not activate in daylight conditions.

## Locks and Security

### **Deactivating/activating perimeter lamps illuminated entry**

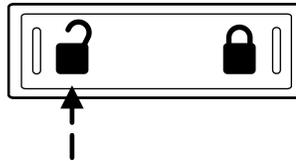
You may enable/disable this feature by having your vehicle serviced by your authorized dealer.

You may also perform the following power door lock sequence to enable/disable the perimeter lamps feature.

**Note:** Before starting, ensure the ignition is in the off position and all vehicle doors are closed.

You must complete Steps 1–5 within 30 seconds or the procedure will have to be repeated. If the procedure needs to be repeated, wait a minimum of 30 seconds before beginning again.

1. Place the key in the ignition and turn the ignition to the on position.
2. Press the power door unlock control on the door panel three times.
3. Turn the ignition from the on position to the off position.
4. Press the power door unlock control on the door panel three times.
5. Turn the ignition back to the on position. The horn will chirp one time to confirm programming mode has been entered and is active.
6. Press the power door unlock control twice within 5 seconds.



**Note:** The horn will chirp once to indicate the perimeter lighting feature has been deactivated. The horn will chirp once and honk once (one short and one long) to indicate the perimeter lighting feature has been activated.

7. Turn the ignition to the off position to exit the procedure.

**Note:** The horn will chirp once to confirm the procedure is complete.

### **Illuminated entry**

The interior lamps illuminate when the remote entry system is used to unlock the door(s).

The illuminated entry system will turn off the interior lights if:

- the ignition switch is turned to the on position, or
- the remote transmitter lock control is pressed, or
- the 7 • 8 and the 9 • 0 controls on the keyless entry keypad are pressed, or
- after 25 seconds of illumination.

## Locks and Security

The dome lamp control (if equipped) must **not** be set to the off position for the illuminated entry system to operate.

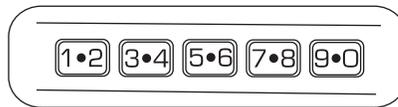
The inside lights will not turn off if:

- they have been turned on with the dimmer control, or
- any door is open.

The battery saver will shut off the interior lamps 30 minutes after the ignition has been turned to the off position, 10 minutes after if the dome lamp is off, and 30 minutes after if the dome lamp switch is left on.

### SECURICODE™ KEYLESS ENTRY SYSTEM

You can use the keyless entry keypad to lock or unlock the doors without using a key.



The keypad can be operated with the factory set 5-digit entry code; this code is located on the owner's wallet card in the glove box, is marked on the computer module, and is available from your authorized dealer. You can also create your own 5-digit personal entry code.

When pressing the controls on the keypad, press the middle of the controls to ensure a good activation.

### Programming a personal entry code and keypad association to memory seats, mirrors and pedals

To create your own personal entry code:

1. Enter the factory set code.
2. Within five seconds press the 1 • 2 on the keypad.
3. Enter your personal 5-digit code. Each number must be entered within five seconds of each other.
4. To associate the entry code with a memory setting, enter a sixth digit to indicate which driver should be set in a memory recalled by the personal entry code:
  - Pressing 1 • 2 recalls Driver 1 settings.
  - Pressing 3 • 4 recalls Driver 2 settings.
  - Pressing other keypad buttons or not pressing a keypad button as a sixth digit does not set a driver and will not recall a memory setting.

**Note:** The factory-set code cannot be associated with a memory setting.

## Locks and Security

5. The doors will again lock then unlock to confirm that your personal keycode has been programmed to the module.

### Tips:

- Do not set a code that uses five of the same number.
- Do not use five numbers in sequential order.
- The factory set code will work even if you have set your own personal code.

### Erasing personal code

1. Enter the factory set 5–digit code.
2. Within five seconds, press the 1 • 2 on the keypad and release.
3. Press and hold the 1 • 2 for two seconds. This must be done within five seconds of completing Step 2.

Your personal code is now erased and only the factory set 5–digit code will work.

### Anti-scan feature

If an incorrect code has been entered seven times (35 consecutive button presses), the keypad will go into an anti-scan mode. This mode disables the keypad for one minute and the keypad lamp will flash during this time.

The anti-scan feature will turn off after:

- one minute of keypad inactivity.
- pressing the  control on the remote entry transmitter.
- the ignition is turned to the on position.

### Unlocking and locking the doors using keyless entry

**To unlock the driver's door**, enter the factory set 5-digit code or your personal code. Each number must be pressed within five seconds of each other. The interior lamps will illuminate after entering a valid keypad entry code.

**To unlock all doors**, press the 3 • 4 control within five seconds.

**To lock all doors**, press the 7 • 8 and the 9 • 0 at the same time. You **do not** need to enter the keypad code first. **Note:** The interior lamps will turn off.

## Locks and Security

### SECURILOCK™ PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

SecuriLock™ passive anti-theft system is an engine immobilization system. This system is designed to help prevent the engine from being started unless a **coded key programmed to your vehicle** is used. The use of the wrong type of coded key may lead to a “no-start” condition.

Your vehicle comes with two coded keys; additional coded keys may be purchased from your authorized dealer. The authorized dealer can program your spare keys to your vehicle or you can program the keys yourself. Refer to *Programming spare keys* for instructions on how to program the coded key.

**Note:** The SecuriLock™ passive anti-theft system is not compatible with non-Ford aftermarket remote start systems. Use of these systems may result in vehicle starting problems and a loss of security protection.

**Note:** Large metallic objects, electronic devices that are used to purchase gasoline or similar items, or a second coded key on the same key chain may cause vehicle starting issues. You need to prevent these objects from touching the coded key while starting the engine. These objects will not cause damage to the coded key, but may cause a momentary issue if they are too close to the key when starting the engine. If a problem occurs, turn the ignition off, remove all objects on the key chain away from the coded key and restart the engine.

**Note: Do not leave a duplicate coded key in the vehicle. Always take your keys and lock all doors when leaving the vehicle.**

#### Anti-theft indicator

The anti-theft indicator is located in the instrument cluster.

Vehicles equipped with the SecuriLock™ Passive Anti-theft system behave as follows:



- When the ignition is in the off position, the indicator will flash once every two seconds for a total of 10 seconds to indicate the SecuriLock™ system is functioning as a theft deterrent.
- When the ignition is in the on position, the indicator will glow for three seconds to indicate a programmed key has been validated and the SecuriLock™ Passive Anti-theft system has enabled the engine.

## Locks and Security

Vehicles without the SecuriLock™ Passive Anti-theft system behave as follows:

- When the ignition is in the off position, the indicator will not flash.
- When the ignition is in the on position, the indicator will glow for three seconds to indicate the engine is enabled.

### Automatic arming

The vehicle is armed immediately after switching the ignition to the off position.

The theft indicator will flash every two seconds to act as a theft deterrent when the vehicle is armed.



### Automatic disarming

Switching the ignition to the on position with a **coded key** disarms the vehicle.

### Replacement keys

If your keys are lost or stolen and you don't have an extra coded key, you will need to have your vehicle towed to an authorized dealer. The key codes need to be erased from your vehicle and new coded keys will need to be programmed.

Replacing coded keys can be very costly. Store an extra programmed key away from the vehicle in a safe place to help prevent any inconveniences. Please visit an authorized dealer to purchase additional spare or replacement keys.

### Programming spare keys

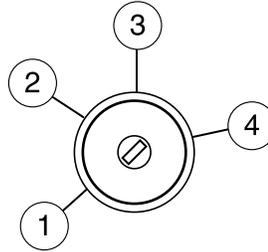
A maximum of eight keys can be coded to your vehicle. Only SecuriLock™ keys can be used. To program a **coded key** yourself, you will need two previously programmed **coded keys** (keys that already operate your vehicle's engine) and the new unprogrammed key(s) readily accessible for timely implementation of each step in the procedure.

If two previously programmed coded keys are not available, you must bring your vehicle to your authorized dealer to have the spare coded key(s) programmed.

Please read and understand the entire procedure before you begin.

## Locks and Security

1. Insert the first previously programmed **coded key** into the ignition and turn the ignition from the 1 (off) position to the 3 (on) position (maintain ignition in the 3 (on) position for at least one second, but no more than 10 seconds).



2. Turn ignition from the 3 (on) position back to the 1 (off) position in order to remove the first **coded key** from the ignition.

3. After three seconds but within 10 seconds of removing the first **coded key**, insert the second previously programmed **coded key** into the ignition and turn the ignition from the 1 (off) position to the 3 (on) position (maintain ignition in the 3 (on) position for at least one second but no more than 10 seconds).

4. Turn the ignition from the 3 (on) position back to the 1 (off) position in order to remove the second **coded key** from the ignition.

5. After three seconds but within 10 seconds of removing the second **coded key**, insert the new unprogrammed key (new key/valet key) into the ignition and turn the ignition from the 1 (off) position to the 3 (on) position (maintain ignition in the 3 (on) position for at least one second, but no more than 10 seconds). This step will program your new key to a coded key.

6. To program additional new unprogrammed key(s), repeat Steps 1 through 5.

If successful, the new coded key(s) will start the vehicle's engine and the theft indicator will illuminate for three seconds and then go out.

If not successful, the new coded key(s) will not start the vehicle's engine and the theft indicator will flash on and off and you may repeat Steps 1 through 5. If failure repeats, bring your vehicle to your authorized dealer to have the new spare key(s) programmed.

## Locks and Security

### PERIMETER ALARM SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

The perimeter anti-theft system will warn you in the event of an unauthorized entry to your vehicle.

If there is any potential perimeter anti-theft problem with your vehicle, ensure **ALL remote entry transmitters** are taken to the authorized dealer to aid in troubleshooting.

#### Arming the system

When armed, this system will respond if unauthorized entry is attempted. When unauthorized entry occurs, the system will flash the park/turn lamps and will sound the horn.

The system is ready to arm whenever the key is removed from the ignition. Either of the following actions will prearm the alarm system:

- Press the  control on the remote entry transmitter.
- Open a door and press the power door lock control to lock all the doors, and then close the door.

#### Disarming the system

You can disarm the system by any of the following actions:

- Unlock the doors by pressing the  control on your remote entry transmitter.
- Unlock the doors with a key. Turn the key full travel (toward the front of the vehicle) to ensure the alarm disarms.
- Turn the ignition to the on position with a programmed coded ignition key.

#### Triggering the anti-theft system

The armed system will be triggered if any door or hood is opened without using the key or the remote entry transmitter.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

### SEATING

**WARNING:** Reclining the seatback can cause an occupant to slide under the seat's safety belt, resulting in severe personal injuries in the event of a collision.

**WARNING:** Do not pile cargo higher than the seatbacks to reduce the risk of injury in a collision or sudden stop.

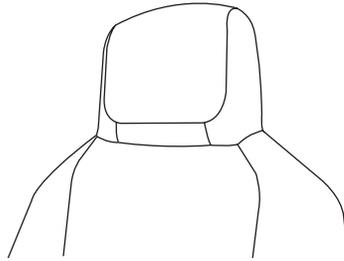
**WARNING:** Before returning the seatback to its original position, make sure that cargo or any objects are not trapped behind the seatback. After returning the seatback to its original position, pull on the seatback to ensure that it has fully latched. An unlatched seat may become dangerous in the event of a sudden stop or collision.

### Non-adjustable head restraints

Your vehicle is equipped with front row outboard non-adjustable head restraints.

**WARNING:** To minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash, the driver and passenger occupants should not sit in and/or operate the vehicle, until the seatback is placed in its proper position. The driver should never adjust the seatback while the vehicle is in motion.

The non-adjustable head restraints consist of a trimmed foam covering over the upper structure of the seatback.

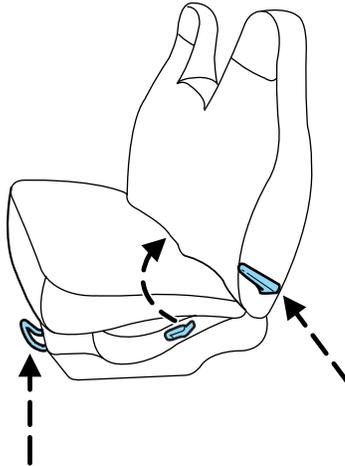


Properly adjust the seatback to an upright driving/riding position, so that the head restraint is positioned as close as possible to the back of your head.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

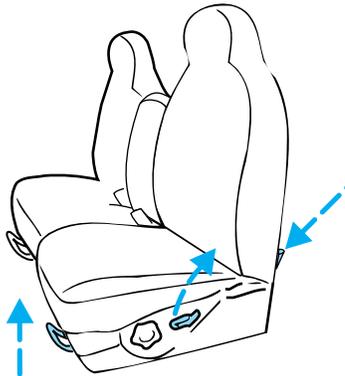
### Full bench seat (if equipped)

- Lift the release bar to move the seat forward or backward. Ensure that the seat is related into place.
- Pull up on the lever located at the bottom of the seatback to quickly fold the seatback forward.
- Pull up on the lever located at the side of the seat cushion to recline the seatback and to return the seat to the upright position.



### 40/20/40 split bench seat (if equipped)

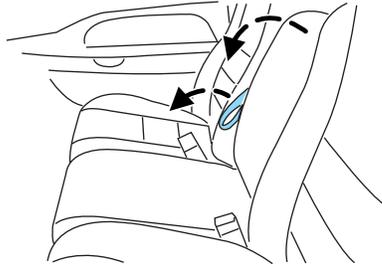
- Lift the track release bar to move the seat forward or backward. Ensure the seat is related into place.
- Pull the handle on the side of the seat up to recline the seat.
- Push down the lever located at the bottom of the seatback to quickly fold the seatback forward.



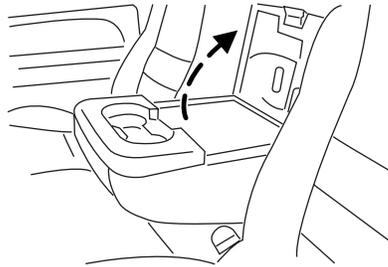
## Seating and Safety Restraints

### 40/20/40 front seat armrest and console (if equipped)

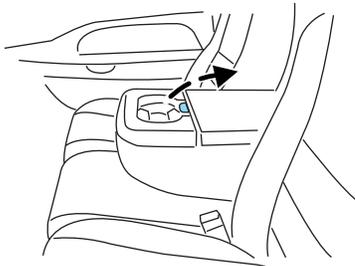
To release the armrest, pull forward on the strap and pull the armrest down.



To gain access to the storage compartment in your armrest, lift the latch to open the lid. The lid cannot be opened in the upright position.



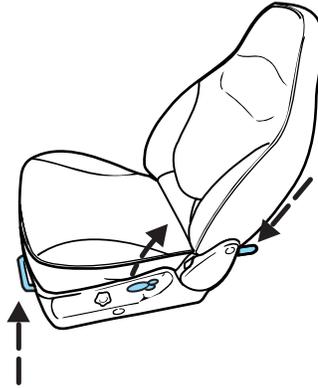
Lift up armrest to return it to a center seatback.



## Seating and Safety Restraints

### Captain's chair (if equipped)

- Lift the bar to move the seat forward or rearward. Make sure that the seat is retracted into place.
- To recline the seatback, pull the release lever handle located on the side of the seat up.
- Push down the lever (if equipped) located at the bottom of the seatback to quickly fold the seatback forward.



### Adjusting the front power seat (if equipped)



**WARNING:** Never adjust the driver's seat or seatback when the vehicle is moving.



**WARNING:** Do not pile cargo higher than the seatbacks to avoid injuring people in a collision or sudden stop.



**WARNING:** Always drive and ride with your seatback upright and the lap belt snug and low across the hips.

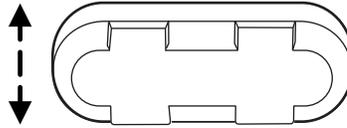


**WARNING:** Reclining the seatback can cause an occupant to slide under the seat's safety belt, resulting in severe personal injuries in the event of a collision.

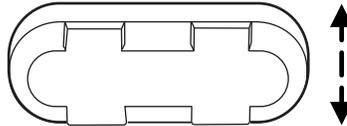
The control is located on the outboard side of the seat cushion.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

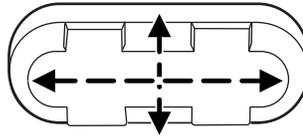
Press front to raise or lower the front portion of the seat cushion.



Press rear to raise or lower the rear portion of the seat cushion.



Press the control to move the seat forward, backward, up or down.

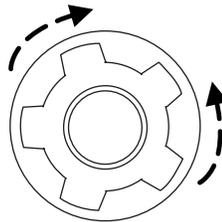


### Using the manual lumbar support

The lumbar support control is located on the outboard side of the seat.

Turn the lumbar support clockwise for more support.

Turn the lumbar support counterclockwise for less support.



## Seating and Safety Restraints

### Heated seats (if equipped)

The heated seat control is located on the climate control panel.

**!** **WARNING:** Persons who are unable to feel pain to the skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion, or other physical conditions, must exercise care when using the seat heater. The seat heater may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket or cushion, because this may cause the seat heater to overheat. Do not puncture the seat with pins, needles, or other pointed objects because this may damage the heating element which may cause the seat heater to overheat. An overheated seat may cause serious personal injury.

**Note:** Do not do the following:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the seat heater if water or any other liquid is spilled on the seat. Allow the seat to dry thoroughly.

To operate the heated seats, do the following (engine must be running):

Push  to activate; push  again to deactivate.

The indicator light on the control will illuminate when activated.

### Memory seats/power mirrors/adjustable pedals (if equipped)

This system allows automatic positioning of the driver seat, power mirrors, and adjustable pedals to two programmable positions.

The memory seat control is located on the driver door.

#### To save memory positions:

1. Place the key in the ignition to move the features to the drive position.
2. Move all the memory features to the desired positions.
3. Press and hold one of the memory buttons for approximately two seconds.
4. A tone will be heard when the memory save is complete.



## Seating and Safety Restraints

### To recall a memory position:

- Press and release either memory 1 button or memory 2 button.

A position can be recalled:

- in any gearshift position if the ignition is **not** in the on position.
- only in P (Park) or N (Neutral) if the ignition is in the on position.

A memory seat position may be programmed at any time.

The memory positions are also recalled when you press your remote entry transmitter  (unlock) control (if the transmitter is programmed to a memory position) or, when you enter a valid personal entry code that is programmed to a memory position.

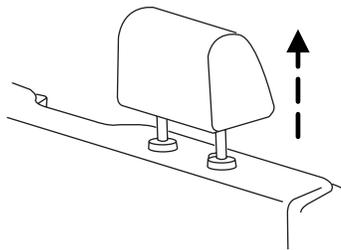
To program the memory feature to a remote entry transmitter and for more information on how to use the keypad, refer to *Remote entry system* in the *Locks and Security* chapter.

## REAR SEATS

### Adjustable head restraints (if equipped)

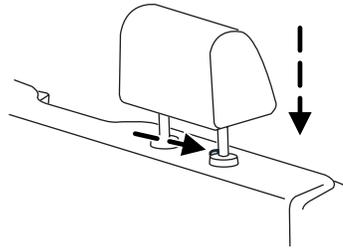
The purpose of these head restraints is to help limit head motion in the event of a rear collision. To properly adjust your head restraints, lift the head restraint so that it is located directly behind your head or as close to that position as possible.

The head restraints can be moved up and down. Lift the head restraint so that it is located directly or as close as possible behind your head.



## Seating and Safety Restraints

Push control to lower head restraint.



**WARNING:** To minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash, the driver and passenger occupants should not sit in and/or operate the vehicle, until the head restraint is placed in its proper position. The driver should never adjust the head restraint while the vehicle is in motion.

### Cabela's seat

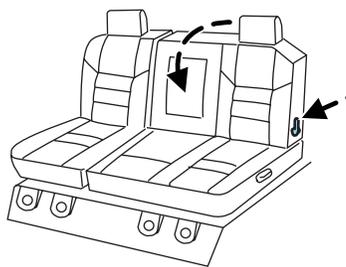
If your vehicle is equipped with a Cabela's seat, you will not have the load floor option. A lockable storage box is located under the rear seat. For more information on the storage box, see *Center console/under-seat storage-Cabela's edition* in the *Driver controls* chapter.

### Rear folding seat system with load floor (if equipped)

The rear seatback has a split 60/40 seat. Each seat cushion can be flipped up into the seatback position.

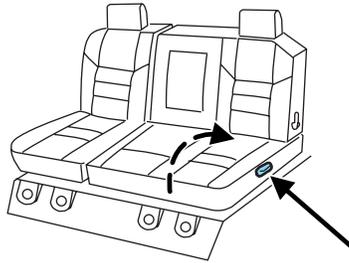
**Note:** The Crew Cab rear 60/40 split bench seatback is **not** intended to support a cargo load in the forward-folded position.

**To fold the seatback down,** pull down the latch lever located on the bottom seatback to fold the seatback forward.



## Seating and Safety Restraints

**To flip the seat cushion up,** pull up on the lever located on the side of the seat cushion to rotate the cushion up until it locks into a vertical storage position, gaining access to the grocery hook located on the underside of the driver-side seat cushion. The maximum load is 25 lb. (11 kg).



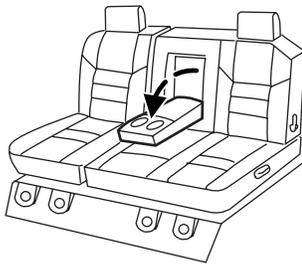
### Returning the seat to seating position

- Pull lever on the side of the seat to release seat cushion from storage position.
- Push seat cushion down until it locks into horizontal position.



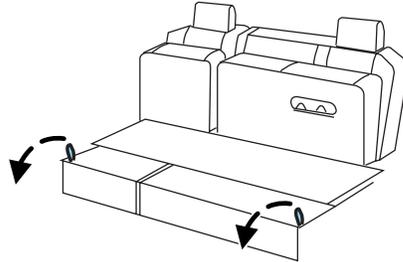
**WARNING:** Before returning the seatback to its original position, make sure that cargo or any objects are not trapped underneath the seatback. After returning the seatback to its original position, pull on the seatback to ensure that it has fully latched. An unlatched seat may become dangerous in the event of a sudden stop or collision.

**To gain access to the cupholders and tray,** pull down on the armrest.



## Seating and Safety Restraints

**To gain access to the 60/40 load floor,** store the cushion in the upright locked position. Pull up on the straps located at the sides of the load floor, and rotate forward until resting on the carpet.



### SAFETY RESTRAINTS

#### Safety restraints precautions



**WARNING:** Always drive and ride with your seatback upright and the lap belt snug and low across the hips.



**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of injury, make sure children sit in a rear seating position where they can be properly restrained.



**WARNING:** Never let a passenger hold a child on his or her lap while the vehicle is moving. The passenger cannot protect the child from injury in a collision.



**WARNING:** All occupants of the vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their safety belts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system (SRS) is provided.



**WARNING:** It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and safety belts. Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a safety belt properly.



**WARNING:** In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a safety belt.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

 **WARNING:** Each seating position in your vehicle has a specific safety belt assembly which is made up of one buckle and one tongue that are designed to be used as a pair. 1) Use the shoulder belt on the outside shoulder only. Never wear the shoulder belt under the arm. 2) Never swing the safety belt around your neck over the inside shoulder. 3) Never use a single belt for more than one person.

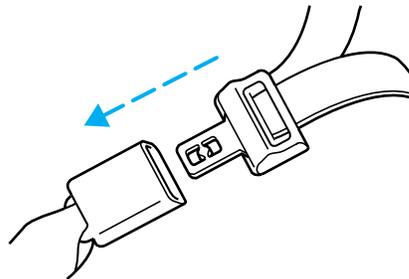
 **WARNING:** When possible, all children 12 years old and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position.

 **WARNING:** Safety belts and seats can become hot in a vehicle that has been closed up in sunny weather; they could burn a small child. Check seat covers and buckles before you place a child anywhere near them.

 **WARNING:** Front and rear seat occupants, including pregnant women, should wear safety belts for optimum protection in an accident.

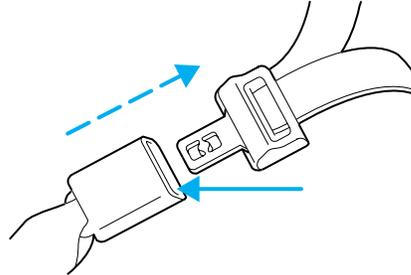
### Combination lap and shoulder belts

1. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from) until you hear a snap and feel it latch. Make sure the tongue is securely fastened in the buckle.



## Seating and Safety Restraints

2. To unfasten, push the release button and remove the tongue from the buckle.



### Vehicle sensitive mode

Combination lap and shoulder belts in normal retractor mode allow free shoulder belt length adjustment to your movements and locking in response to vehicle movement. For example, if the driver brakes suddenly or turns a corner sharply, or the vehicle receives an impact of approximately 5 mph (8 km/h) or more, the combination safety belts will lock to help reduce forward movement of the driver and passengers.

### Belt sensitive mode

Combination lap and shoulder belts can also be made to lock manually by quickly pulling on the shoulder belt.

### Automatic locking mode

#### *When to use the automatic locking mode*

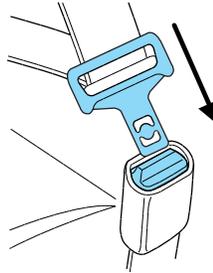
In this mode, the shoulder belt is automatically pre-locked. The belt will still retract to remove any slack in the shoulder belt. The automatic locking mode is not available on the driver safety belt.

This mode should be used **any time** a child safety seat (except a booster) is installed in a passenger front or outboard rear seating position (if equipped). Children 12 years old and under should be properly restrained in the rear seat whenever possible. Refer to *Safety restraints for children* or *Safety seats for children* later in this chapter.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

### **How to use the automatic locking mode**

- Buckle the combination lap and shoulder belt.



- Grasp the shoulder portion and pull downward until the entire belt is pulled out.



- Allow the belt to retract. As the belt retracts, you will hear a clicking sound. This indicates the safety belt is now in the automatic locking mode.

### **How to disengage the automatic locking mode**

Disconnect the combination lap/shoulder belt and allow it to retract completely to disengage the automatic locking mode and activate the vehicle sensitive (emergency) locking mode.



**WARNING:** After any vehicle collision, the front passenger and rear outboard safety belt systems must be checked by an authorized dealer to verify that the “automatic locking retractor” feature for child seats is still functioning properly. In addition, all safety belts should be checked for proper function.

## Seating and Safety Restraints



**WARNING:** BELT AND RETRACTOR ASSEMBLY MUST BE REPLACED if the safety belt assembly “automatic locking retractor” feature or any other safety belt function is not operating properly when checked by an authorized dealer. Failure to replace the belt and retractor assembly could increase the risk of injury in collisions.

### Energy management feature

- This vehicle has a safety belt system with an energy management feature at the front outboard seating positions to help further reduce the risk of injury in the event of a head-on collision.
- The front outboard safety belt systems have a retractor assembly that is designed to pay out webbing in a controlled manner. This feature is designed to help reduce the belt force acting on the occupant’s chest.

### Safety belt pretensioner (if equipped)

Your vehicle is equipped with safety belt retractor pretensioners at the driver and front outboard passenger seating positions.

The driver and front outboard passenger safety belt pretensioners are designed to activate only during certain frontal or near-frontal collisions with sufficient longitudinal deceleration. A safety belt pretensioner is a device which tightens the webbing of the lap and shoulder belts during some collisions in such a way that they fit more snugly against the body.

The driver and front outboard passenger safety belt system (including retractors, buckles and height adjusters) must be replaced if the vehicle is involved in a collision that results in the activation of the safety belt pretensioners. Refer to the *Safety belt maintenance* section in this chapter.



**WARNING:** Failure to replace the safety belt assembly under the above conditions could result in severe personal injuries in the event of a collision.

### Front safety belt height adjustment

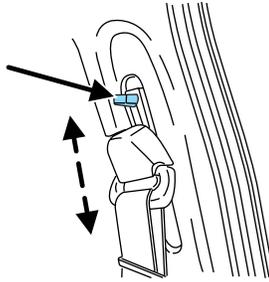
The front outboard seating positions are equipped with safety belt height adjusters.

Adjust the height of the shoulder belt so the belt rests across the middle of your shoulder.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

**WARNING:** Position the safety belt height adjusters so that the belt rests across the middle of your shoulder. Failure to adjust the safety belt properly could reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt and increase the risk of injury in a collision.

To adjust the shoulder belt height, push the button and slide the height adjuster up or down. Release the button and pull down on the height adjuster to make sure it is locked in place.

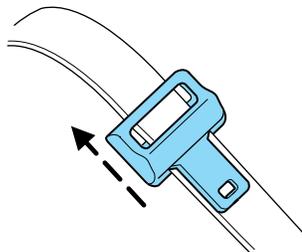


### **Safety belt with cinch tongue (Regular cab center seating position and Super Cab/Crew Cab rear center seating positions)**

The cinch tongue will slide up and down the belt webbing when the belt is stowed or while putting safety belts on. When the lap/shoulder safety belt is buckled, the cinch tongue will allow the lap portion to be shortened, but pinches the webbing to keep the lap portion from getting longer. The cinch tongue is designed to slip during a crash, so always wear the shoulder belt properly and don't allow any slack in either the lap or shoulder portions.

Before you can reach and latch a combination lap and shoulder belt having a cinch tongue into the buckle, you may have to lengthen the lap belt portion of it.

1. To lengthen the lap belt, pull some webbing out of the shoulder belt retractor.
2. While holding the webbing below the tongue, grasp the tip (metal portion) of the tongue so that it is parallel to the webbing and slide the tongue upward.



3. Provide enough lap belt length so that the tongue can reach the buckle.

186

## Seating and Safety Restraints

### ***How to fasten the cinch tongue (Regular cab center seating position and Super Cab/Crew Cab rear center seating positions)***

1. Pull the combination lap and shoulder belt from the retractor so that the shoulder belt portion of the safety belt crosses your shoulder and chest.
2. Be sure the belt is not twisted. If the belt is twisted, remove the twist.
3. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle for your seating position until you hear a snap and feel it latch.
4. Make sure the tongue is securely fastened to the buckle by pulling on the tongue.



**WARNING:** The lap belt should fit snugly and as low as possible around the hips, not across the waist.

While you are fastened in the safety belt, the combination lap/shoulder belt with a cinch tongue adjusts to your movement. However, if you brake hard, turn hard, or if your vehicle receives an impact of 5 mph (8 km/h) or more, the safety belt will become locked and help reduce your forward movement.

### **Lap belts**

#### ***Adjusting the lap belt***



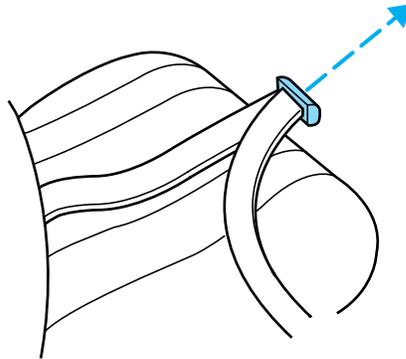
**WARNING:** The lap belt should fit snugly and as low as possible around the hips, not across the waist.

- **1st row center seating position on SuperCab and Crew Cab**

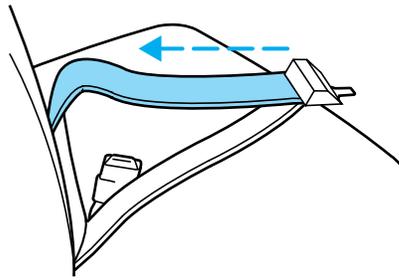
The lap belt does not adjust automatically.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

Insert the tongue into the correct buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from). To lengthen the belt, turn the tongue at a right angle to the belt and pull across your lap until it reaches the buckle. To tighten the belt, pull the loose end of the belt through the tongue until it fits snugly across the hips.



Shorten and fasten the belt when not in use.



### Safety belt warning light and indicator chime

The safety belt warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster and a chime sounds to remind the occupants to fasten their safety belts.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

### Conditions of operation

If...	Then...
The driver's safety belt is not buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the on position...	The safety belt warning light illuminates 1-2 minutes and the warning chime sounds 4-8 seconds.
The driver's safety belt is buckled while the indicator light is illuminated and the warning chime is sounding...	The safety belt warning light and warning chime turn off.
The driver's safety belt is buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the on position...	The safety belt warning light and indicator chime remain off.

### Belt-Minder®

The Belt-Minder® feature is a supplemental warning to the safety belt warning function. This feature provides additional reminders to the driver that the driver's safety belt is unbuckled by intermittently sounding a chime and illuminating the safety belt warning lamp in the instrument cluster.

If...	Then...
The driver's safety belt is not buckled before the vehicle has reached at least 3 mph (5 km/h) and 1-2 minutes have elapsed since the ignition switch has been turned to the on position...	The Belt-Minder® feature is activated - the safety belt warning light illuminates and the warning chime sounds for 6 seconds every 30 seconds, repeating for approximately 5 minutes or until safety belt is buckled.
The driver's safety belt is buckled while the safety belt indicator light is illuminated and the safety belt warning chime is sounding...	The Belt-Minder® feature will not activate.
The driver's safety belt is buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the on position...	The Belt-Minder® feature will not activate.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

The following are reasons most often given for not wearing safety belts (All statistics based on U.S. data):

Reasons given...	Consider...
"Crashes are rare events"	<b>36700 crashes occur every day.</b> The more we drive, the more we are exposed to "rare" events, even for good drivers. <i>1 in 4 of us will be seriously injured in a crash during our lifetime.</i>
"I'm not going far"	<b>3 of 4</b> fatal crashes occur within <b>25 miles (40 km)</b> of home.
"Belts are uncomfortable"	We design our safety belts to enhance comfort. If you are uncomfortable - try different positions for the safety belt upper anchorage and seatback which should be as upright as possible; this can improve comfort.
"I was in a hurry"	<b>Prime time for an accident.</b> Belt-Minder® reminds us to take a few seconds to buckle up.
"Safety belts don't work"	<b>Safety belts</b> , when used properly, <b>reduce risk of death</b> to front seat occupants by <b>45% in cars</b> , and by <b>60% in light trucks</b> .
"Traffic is light"	<b>Nearly 1 of 2 deaths occur in single-vehicle crashes</b> , many when no other vehicles are around.
"Belts wrinkle my clothes"	Possibly, but a serious crash can do much more than wrinkle your clothes, particularly if you are unbelted.
"The people I'm with don't wear belts"	Set the example, teen deaths occur 4 times more often in vehicles with TWO or MORE people. Children and younger brothers/sisters imitate behavior they see.
"I have an airbag"	Airbags offer greater protection when used with safety belts. Frontal airbags are not designed to inflate in rear and side crashes or rollovers.
"I'd rather be thrown clear"	Not a good idea. <b>People</b> who are <b>ejected are 40 times more likely to DIE.</b> Safety belts help prevent ejection, WE CAN'T "PICK OUR CRASH".

## Seating and Safety Restraints



**WARNING:** Do not sit on top of a buckled safety belt or insert a latchplate into the buckle to avoid the Belt-Minder® chime. To do so may adversely affect the performance of the vehicle's air bag system.

### **One-time disable**

Any time the safety belt is buckled and then unbuckled during an ignition on cycle, the Belt-Minder® will be disabled for that ignition cycle only.

### **Deactivating/activating the Belt-Minder® feature (Driver only)**

*Read Steps 1 - 5 thoroughly before proceeding with the deactivation/activation programming procedure.*

The Belt-Minder® feature can be deactivated/activated by performing the following procedure:

Before following the procedure, make sure that the following conditions are met:

- the parking brake is set
- the gearshift is in P (Park) (automatic transmission) or the neutral position (manual transmission)
- the ignition switch is in the off position
- all vehicle doors are closed
- the driver's safety belt is unbuckled
- the parklamps/headlamps are in the off position (If the vehicle is equipped with Autolamps, this will not affect the procedure)



**WARNING:** While the design allows you to deactivate your Belt-Minder®, this system is designed to improve your chances of being safely belted and surviving an accident. We recommend you leave the Belt-Minder® system activated for yourself and others who may use the vehicle. To reduce the risk of injury, do not deactivate/activate the Belt-Minder® feature while driving the vehicle.

### **Belt-Minder® activation and deactivation procedure**

1. Turn the ignition switch to the on position. (DO NOT START THE ENGINE)
2. Wait until the safety belt warning light turns off. (Approximately 1 minute)

## Seating and Safety Restraints

- Step 3 must be completed within 60 seconds after the safety belt warning light turns off.
3. At a moderate speed, buckle then unbuckle the safety belt 9 times, ending with the safety belt in the unbuckled state.
    - After Step 3 is complete, the safety belt warning light will be turned on for 3 seconds.
    - If Step 4 does not occur within 10 seconds at the end of Step 3, Belt-Minder® will automatically exit programming mode without changing its enable status.
  4. Within 7 seconds of the light turning on, at a moderate speed, buckle then unbuckle the safety belt.
    - This will disable the Belt-Minder® feature if it is currently enabled. As confirmation, the safety belt warning light will flash 4 times per second for 3 seconds.
    - This will enable the Belt-Minder® feature if it is currently disabled. As confirmation, the safety belt warning light will flash 4 times per second for 3 seconds, followed by 3 seconds with the light off, then followed by the safety belt warning light flashing 4 times per second for 3 seconds again.
  5. After receiving confirmation, the deactivation/activation procedure is complete.

### Safety belt extension assembly

If the safety belt is too short when fully extended, there is an 8 inch (20 cm) safety belt extension assembly that can be added (part number 611C22). This assembly can be obtained from an authorized dealer.

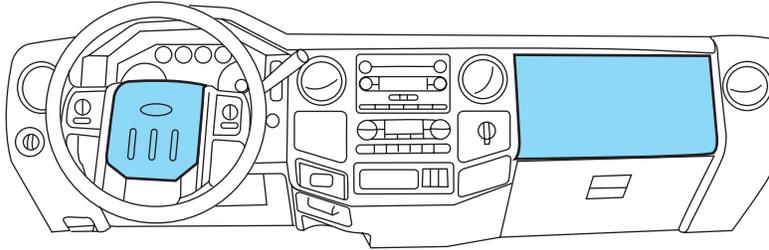
Use only extensions manufactured by the same supplier as the safety belt. Manufacturer identification is located at the end of the webbing on the label. Also, use the safety belt extension only if the safety belt is too short for you when fully extended.



**WARNING:** Do not use extensions to change the fit of the shoulder belt across the torso.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

### AIRBAG SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM (SRS)



#### Important SRS precautions

The SRS is designed to work with the safety belt to help protect the driver and right front passenger from certain upper body injuries. Airbags DO NOT inflate slowly; there is a risk of injury from a deploying airbag.



**WARNING:** All occupants of the vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their safety belts, even when an air bag supplemental restraint system (SRS) is provided.

**WARNING:** When possible, all children 12 years old and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position.

**WARNING:** The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) recommends a minimum distance of at least 10 inches (25 cm) between an occupant's chest and the driver airbag module.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

 **WARNING:** Never place your arm over the airbag module as a deploying airbag can result in serious arm fractures or other injuries.

To properly position yourself away from the airbag:

- Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.
- Recline the seat slightly one or two degrees from the upright position.

 **WARNING:** Do not put anything on or over the airbag module. Placing objects on or over the airbag inflation area may cause those objects to be propelled by the airbag into your face and torso causing serious injury.

 **WARNING:** Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the airbag supplemental restraint systems or its fuses. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

 **WARNING:** The front passenger airbag is not designed to offer protection to an occupant in the center front seating position.

 **WARNING:** Modifying or adding equipment to the front end of the vehicle (including frame, bumper, front end body structure and tow hooks) may affect the performance of the airbag system, increasing the risk of injury. Do not modify the front end of the vehicle.

 **WARNING:** Additional equipment such as snowplow equipment may effect the performance of the airbag sensors increasing the risk of injury. Please refer to the *Body Builders Layout Book* for instructions about the appropriate installation of additional equipment.

 **WARNING:** Removing the blocker beam without installing snow plow attachment hardware may effect airbag deployment in a crash. Do not operate the truck unless either the blocker beam or snow plow attachment hardware is installed on the vehicle.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

### Children and airbags

For additional important safety information, read all information on safety restraints in this guide.

Children must always be properly restrained. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of injury in a collision.



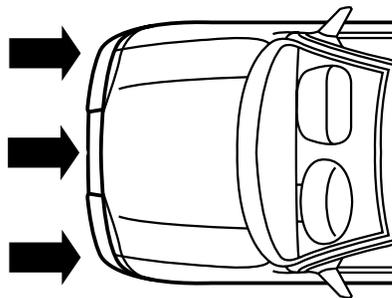
**WARNING:** An infant in a rear-facing seat faces a high risk of serious or fatal injuries from a deploying passenger airbag. Rear facing infant seats should NEVER be placed in the front seats, unless the passenger airbag is turned off. See *Passenger airbag ON/OFF switch*.



**WARNING:** Front seating positions only: If seating two adults and a child, Ford recommends properly restraining the child in the center front seating position, but only if doing so will not interfere with driving the vehicle. This arrangement provides lap and shoulder belt and airbag protection for adult occupants and an attachment method for a child restraint. If the child seat interferes with driving the vehicle and the child restraint is forward-facing, the child may be restrained in the passenger seat. Move the seat as far rearward as possible to minimize the likelihood of interaction with the front passenger airbag. Never place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. Always properly restrain all occupants, including the child in an appropriate child seat or booster.

### How does the airbag supplemental restraint system work?

The airbag SRS is designed to activate when the vehicle sustains sufficient longitudinal deceleration. The fact that the airbags did not inflate in a collision does not mean that something is wrong with the system. Rather, it means the forces were not of the type sufficient to cause activation. Airbags are designed to inflate in frontal and near-frontal collisions, not rollover, side-impact, or rear-impacts.



## Seating and Safety Restraints

The airbags inflate and deflate rapidly upon activation. After airbag deployment, it is normal to notice a smoke-like, powdery residue or smell the burnt propellant. This may consist of cornstarch, talcum powder (to lubricate the bag) or sodium compounds (e.g., baking soda) that result from the combustion process that inflates the airbag. Small amounts of sodium hydroxide may be present which may irritate the skin and eyes, but none of the residue is toxic.



While the system is designed to help reduce serious injuries, it may also cause minor abrasions, swelling or temporary hearing loss. Because airbags must inflate rapidly and with considerable force, there is the risk of death or serious injuries such as fractures, facial and eye injuries or internal injuries, particularly to occupants who are not properly restrained or are otherwise out of position at the time of airbag deployment. Thus, it is extremely important that occupants be properly restrained as far away from the airbag module as possible while maintaining vehicle control.



**WARNING:** Several air bag system components get hot after inflation. Do not touch them after inflation.



**WARNING:** If the air bag has deployed, **the air bag will not function again and must be replaced immediately.** If the air bag is not replaced, the unrepaired area will increase the risk of injury in a collision.

The SRS consists of:

- driver and passenger airbag modules (which include the inflators and airbags),
- one or more impact and safing sensors,
- a readiness light and tone
- and the electrical wiring which connects the components.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

The diagnostic module monitors its own internal circuits and the supplemental airbag electrical system wiring (including the impact sensors), the system wiring, the airbag system readiness light, the airbag back up power and the airbag ignitors.

### Determining if the system is operational

The SRS uses a readiness light in the instrument cluster or a tone to indicate the condition of the system. Refer to *Airbag readiness* section in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter. Routine maintenance of the airbag is not required.

A difficulty with the system is indicated by one or more of the following:

- The readiness light will either flash or stay lit.
- The readiness light will not illuminate immediately after ignition is turned on.
- A series of five beeps will be heard. The tone pattern will repeat periodically until the problem and/or light are repaired.



If any of these things happen, even intermittently, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Unless serviced, the system may not function properly in the event of a collision.

### S.O.S. Post Crash Alert

The S.O.S Post Crash Alert automatically flashes the turn signal lamps and sounds the horn three times at four second intervals in the event of a serious impact that deploys an airbag (front, side, side curtain or Safety Canopy®) or the safety belt pretensioners.

The S.O.S. Post Crash Alert can be turned off when any one of the following actions are taken by the driver or any other person:

- pressing the hazard control button,
- or pressing the panic button on the remote entry transmitter.

The feature will continue to operate until the vehicle runs out of power.

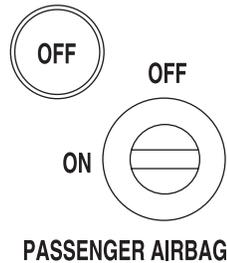
### Disposal of airbags and airbag equipped vehicles

See authorized dealer. Airbags MUST BE disposed of by qualified personnel.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

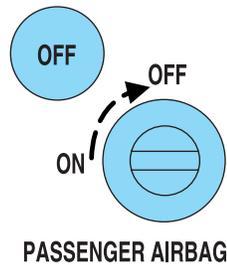
### Passenger airbag ON/OFF switch (if equipped)

**!** **WARNING:** An airbag ON/OFF switch (if equipped) may be installed in this vehicle. Before driving, *always* look at the face of the switch to be sure the switch is in the proper position in accordance with these instructions and warnings. Failure to put the switch in a proper position can increase the risk of serious injury or death in a collision.



### Turning the passenger airbag off

1. Insert the ignition key, turn the switch to OFF position and hold in OFF position while removing the key.
2. When the ignition is turned to the ON position the OFF light illuminates briefly, momentarily shuts off and then turns back on. This indicates that the passenger airbag is deactivated.



**!** **WARNING:** If the light fails to illuminate when the passenger air bag switch is in the OFF position and the ignition switch is in ON, have the passenger air bag switch serviced at your authorized dealer immediately.

**!** **WARNING:** In order to avoid inadvertent activation of the switch, always remove the ignition key from the passenger air bag ON/OFF switch.

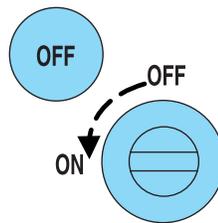
## Seating and Safety Restraints

**WARNING:** An infant in a rear-facing seat faces a high risk of serious or fatal injuries from a deploying passenger airbag. Rear facing infant seats should NEVER be placed in the front seats, unless the passenger airbag is turned off.

### Turning the passenger airbag back on

The passenger airbag remains OFF until you turn it back ON.

1. Insert the ignition key and turn the switch to ON.
2. The OFF light will briefly illuminate when the ignition is turned to On. This indicates that the passenger airbag is operational.



PASSENGER AIRBAG

**WARNING:** If the OFF light is illuminated when the passenger airbag switch is in the ON position and the ignition switch is in ON, have the passenger airbag switch serviced at your authorized dealer immediately.

The passenger side airbag should always be ON (the airbag OFF light should *not* be illuminated) unless the passenger is a person who meets the requirements stated either in Category 1, 2 or 3 of the NHTSA/Transport Canada deactivation criteria which follows.

**WARNING:** The safety belts for the driver and right front passenger seating positions have been specifically designed to function together with the airbags in certain types of crashes. When you turn OFF your airbag, you not only lose the protection of the airbag, you also may reduce the effectiveness of your safety belt system, which was designed to work with the airbag. If you are not a person who meets the requirements stated in the NHTSA/Transport Canada deactivation criteria turning OFF the airbag can increase the risk of serious injury or death in a collision.

## Seating and Safety Restraints



**WARNING:** If your vehicle has rear seats, always transport children who are 12 and younger in the rear seat. Always use safety belts and child restraints properly. DO NOT place a child in a rear facing infant seat in the front seat unless your vehicle is equipped with an airbag ON/OFF switch and the passenger airbag is turned OFF. This is because the back of the infant seat is too close to the inflating airbag and the risk of a fatal injury to the infant when the airbag inflates is substantial.

The vast majority of drivers and passengers are much safer with an airbag than without. To do their job and reduce the risk of life threatening injuries, airbags must open with great force, and this force can pose a potentially deadly risk in some situations, particularly when a front seat occupant is not properly buckled up. The most effective way to reduce the risk of unnecessary airbag injuries without reducing the overall safety of the vehicle is to make sure all occupants are properly restrained in the vehicle, especially in the front seat. This provides the protection of safety belts and permits the airbags to provide the additional protection they were designed to provide. If you choose to deactivate your airbag, you are losing the very significant risk reducing benefits of the airbag and you are also reducing the effectiveness of the safety belts, because safety belts in modern vehicles are designed to work as a safety system with the airbags.

Read all airbag warning labels in the vehicle as well as the other important airbag instructions and warnings in this Owner's Guide.

### ***NHTSA deactivation criteria (excluding Canada)***

- 1. Infant.** An infant (less than 1 year old) must ride in the front seat because:
  - the vehicle has no rear seat;
  - the vehicle has a rear seat too small to accommodate a rear-facing infant seat; or
  - the infant has a medical condition which, according to the infant's physician, makes it necessary for the infant to ride in the front so that the driver can constantly monitor the child's condition.
- 2. Child age 1 to 12.** A child age 1 to 12 must ride in the front seat because:
  - the vehicle has no rear seat;
  - although children ages 1 to 12 ride in the rear seat(s) whenever possible, children ages 1 to 12 sometimes must ride in the front because no space is available in the rear seat(s) of the vehicle; or

200

## Seating and Safety Restraints

- the child has a medical condition which, according to the child's physician, makes it necessary for the child to ride in the front seat so that the driver can constantly monitor the child's condition.
3. **Medical condition.** A passenger has a medical condition which, according to his or her physician:
- causes the passenger airbag to pose a special risk for the passenger; and
  - makes the potential harm from the passenger airbag in a crash greater than the potential harm from turning OFF the airbag and allowing the passenger, even if belted, to hit the dashboard or windshield in a crash.



**WARNING:** This vehicle has special energy management safety belts for the driver and right front passenger. These particular belts are specifically designed to work with airbags to help reduce the risk of injury in a collision. The energy management safety belt is designed to give or release additional belt webbing in some accidents to reduce concentration of force on an occupant's chest and reduce the risk of certain bone fractures and injuries to underlying organs. In a crash, if the airbag is turned OFF, this energy management safety belt might permit the person wearing the belt to move forward enough to incur a serious or fatal injury. The more severe the crash, and the heavier the occupant, the greater the risk is. Be sure the airbag is turned ON for any person who does not qualify under the NHTSA deactivation criteria.

### ***Transport Canada deactivation criteria (Canada Only)***

1. **Infant:** An infant (less than 1 year old) must ride in the front seat because:
  - my vehicle has no rear seat;
  - the rear seat in my vehicle cannot accommodate a rear-facing infant seat; or
  - the infant has a medical condition which, according to the infant's physician, makes it necessary for the infant to ride in the front seat so that the driver can monitor the infant's condition.
2. **Child age 12 or under:** A child age 12 or under must ride in the front seat because:
  - my vehicle has no rear seat;
  - although children age 12 and under ride in the rear seat whenever possible, children age 12 and under have no option but to sometimes ride in the front seat because rear seat space is insufficient; or

## Seating and Safety Restraints

- the child has a medical condition that, according to the child's physician, makes it necessary for the child to ride in the front seat so that the driver can monitor the child's condition.
3. **Medical condition:** A passenger has a medical condition that, according to his or her physician:
- poses a special risk for the passenger if the airbag deploys; and
  - makes the potential harm from the passenger airbag deployment greater than the potential harm from turning OFF the airbag and experiencing a crash without the protection offered by the airbag



**WARNING:** This vehicle has special energy management safety belts for the driver and right front passenger. These particular belts are specifically designed to work with airbags to help reduce the risk of injury in a collision. The energy management safety belt is designed to give or release additional belt webbing in some accidents to reduce concentration of force on an occupant's chest and reduce the risk of certain bone fractures and injuries to underlying organs. In a crash, if the airbag is turned OFF, this energy management safety belt might permit the person wearing the belt to move forward enough to incur a serious or fatal injury. The more severe the crash, and the heavier the occupant, the greater the risk is. Be sure the airbag is turned ON for any person who does not qualify under the NHTSA deactivation criteria.

### SAFETY RESTRAINTS FOR CHILDREN

See the following sections for directions on how to properly use safety restraints for children. Also see *Airbag supplemental restraint system (SRS)* in this chapter for special instructions about using airbags.

#### Important child restraint precautions



**WARNING:** Always make sure your child is secured properly in a device that is appropriate for their height, age and weight. Child safety restraints must be purchased separately from the vehicle. Failure to follow these instructions and guidelines may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.

## Seating and Safety Restraints



**WARNING:** All children are shaped differently. The Recommendations for Safety Restraints are based on probable child height, age and weight thresholds from NHTSA and other safety organizations or are the minimum requirements of law. Ford recommends checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician (CPST) and your pediatrician to make sure your child seat is appropriate for your child, and is compatible with and properly installed in the vehicle. To locate a child seat fitting station and CPST contact the NHTSA toll free at 1-888-327-4236 or on the internet at <http://www.nhtsa.dot.gov>. Failure to properly restrain children in safety seats made especially for their height, age, and weight may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.

Recommendations for Safety Restraints for Children		
	Child size, height, weight, or age	Recommended restraint type
Infants or toddlers	Children weighing 40 lb (18 kg) or less (generally age four or younger)	Use a child safety seat (sometimes called an infant carrier, convertible seat, or toddler seat).
Small children	Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a child safety seat (generally children who are less than 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall, are greater than age four (4) and less than age twelve (12), and between 40 lbs (18 kg) and 80 lbs (36 kg) and upward to 100 lbs (45 kg) if recommended by your child restraint manufacturer)	Use a belt-positioning booster seat.
Larger children	Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a belt-positioning booster seat (generally children who are at least 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall or greater than 80 lb (36 kg) or 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by child restraint manufacturer)	Use a vehicle safety belt having the lap belt snug and low across the hips, shoulder belt centered across the shoulder and chest, and seat-back upright.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

- You are required by law to properly use safety seats for infants and toddlers in the U.S. and Canada.
- Many states and provinces require that small children use approved booster seats until they reach age eight, a height of 4 ft 9 in (1.45 meters) tall, or 80 lb (36 kg). Check your local and state or provincial laws for specific requirements regarding the safety of children in your vehicle.
- When possible, always properly restrain children twelve (12) years of age and under in a rear seating position of your vehicle. Accident statistics suggest that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in a front seating position.

### **Recommendations for attaching child safety restraints for children**

**Note:** This vehicle is not equipped with LATCH lower anchors.

Re-straint Type	Child Weight	Use any attachment method as indicated below by "X"				
		LATCH (lower anchors and top tether anchor)	LATCH (lower anchors only)	Safety belt and top tether anchor	Safety belt and LATCH (lower anchors and top tether anchor)	Safety belt only
Rear facing child seat	Up to 48 lb (21 kg)		X			X
Forward facing child seat	Up to 48 lb (21 kg)	X		X	X	
Forward facing child seat	Over 48 lb (21 kg)			X	X	

## Seating and Safety Restraints



**WARNING:** Air bags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. NEVER place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active air bag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the vehicle seat all the way back. When possible, all children age 12 and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position. If all children cannot be seated and restrained properly in a rear seating position, properly restrain the largest child in the front seat.



**WARNING:** Always carefully follow the instructions and warnings provided by the manufacturer of any child restraint to determine if the restraint device is appropriate for your child's size, height, weight, or age. Follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions and warnings provided for installation and use in conjunction with the instructions and warnings provided by the vehicle manufacturer. A safety seat that is improperly installed or utilized, is inappropriate for your child's height, age, or weight or does not properly fit the child may increase the risk of serious injury or death.



**WARNING:** Never let a passenger hold a child on his or her lap while the vehicle is moving. The passenger cannot protect the child from injury in a collision, which may result in serious injury or death.



**WARNING:** Never use pillows, books, or towels to boost a child. They can slide around and increase the likelihood of injury or death in a collision.



**WARNING:** Always restrain an unoccupied child seat or booster seat. These objects may become projectiles in a collision or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious injury.



**WARNING:** Never place, or allow a child to place, the shoulder belt under a child's arm or behind the back because it reduces the protection for the upper part of the body and may increase the risk of injury or death in a collision.

## Seating and Safety Restraints



**WARNING:** Do not leave children, unreliable adults, or pets unattended in your vehicle.

### Transporting children

Always make sure your child is secured properly in a device that is appropriate for their age, height and weight. All children are shaped differently. The child height, age and weight thresholds provided are recommendations or the minimum requirements of law. The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) provides education and training to ensure that all children ages 0 to 16 are properly restrained in the correct restraint system. Ford recommends checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician (CPST) and your pediatrician to make sure your seat is appropriate for your child and properly installed in the vehicle. To locate a child seat fitting station and CPST contact the NHTSA toll free at **1-888-327-4236** or on the internet at <http://www.nhtsa.dot.gov>.

Follow all the safety restraint and airbag precautions that apply to adult passengers in your vehicle.

If the child is the proper height, age, and weight (as specified by your child safety seat or booster manufacturer), fits the restraint and can be restrained properly, then restrain the child in the child safety seat or with the belt-positioning booster. Remember that child seats and belt-positioning boosters vary and may be designed to fit children of different heights, ages and weights. Children who are too large for child safety seats or belt-positioning boosters (as specified by your child safety seat manufacturer) should always properly wear safety belts.

### SAFETY SEATS FOR CHILDREN

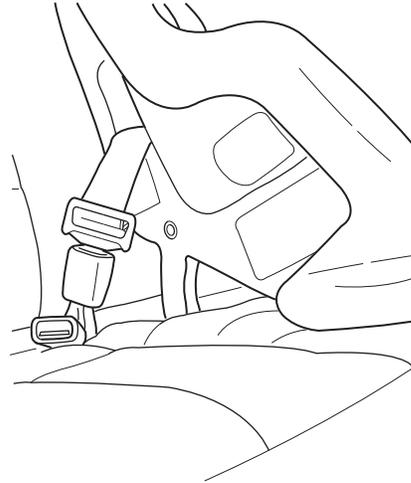
#### Infant and/or toddler seats

Use a safety seat that is recommended for the size and weight of the child.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

When installing a child safety seat:

- Review and follow the information presented in the *Airbag supplemental restraint system (SRS)* section in this chapter.
- Carefully follow all of the manufacturer's instructions included with the safety seat you put in your vehicle. If you do not install and use the safety seat properly, the child may be injured in a sudden stop or collision.



Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. NEVER place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the vehicle seat all the way back.

Children 12 and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position whenever possible. If all children cannot be seated and restrained properly in a rear seating position, properly restrain the largest child in the front seat.

### **Installing child safety seats with automatic locking mode combination lap and shoulder belts (all front and rear outboard passenger seat positions)**

Check to make sure the child seat is properly secured before each use. Children 12 and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position whenever possible. If all children cannot be seated and restrained properly in a rear seating position, properly restrain the largest child in the front seat.

When installing a child safety seat with combination lap/shoulder belts:

- Use the correct safety belt buckle for that seating position.
- Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle until you hear a snap and feel it latch. Make sure the tongue is securely fastened in the buckle.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

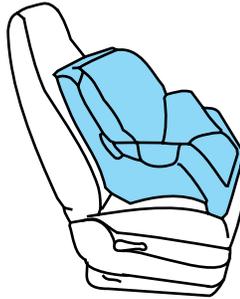
- Keep the buckle release button pointing up and away from the safety seat, with the tongue between the child seat and the release button, to prevent accidental unbuckling.
- Place vehicle seat back in upright position.
- Put the safety belt in the automatic locking mode. Refer to step 5 below.

**!** **WARNING:** Depending on where you secure a child restraint, and depending on the child restraint design, you may block access to certain safety belt buckle assemblies and/or LATCH lower anchors, rendering those features potentially unusable. To avoid risk of injury, occupants should only use seating positions where they are able to be properly restrained.

Perform the following steps when installing the child seat with combination lap/shoulder belts:

**Note:** Although the child seat illustrated is a forward facing child seat, the steps are the same for installing a rear facing child seat.

1. Position the child safety seat in a seat with a combination lap and shoulder belt.

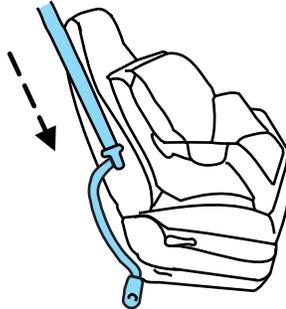


**!** **WARNING:** An airbag can kill or injure a child in a child seat. Child seats should NEVER be placed in the front seats, unless the passenger airbag switch is turned off, See *Passenger airbag on/off switch*.

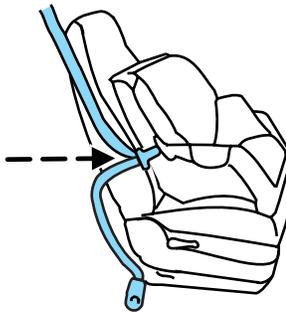
**!** **WARNING:** Rear facing child seats should NEVER be placed in the front seats unless the passenger airbag switch is turned off.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

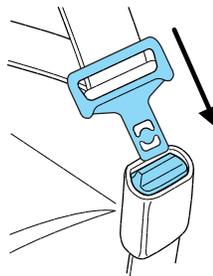
2. Pull down on the shoulder belt and then grasp the shoulder belt and lap belt together.



3. While holding the shoulder and lap belt portions together, route the tongue through the child seat according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions. Be sure the belt webbing is not twisted.

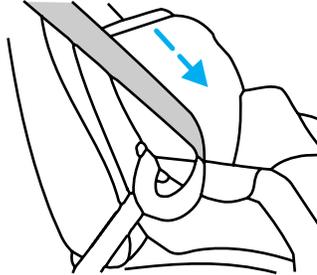


4. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from) for that seating position until you hear and feel the latch engage. Make sure the tongue is latched securely by pulling on it.



## Seating and Safety Restraints

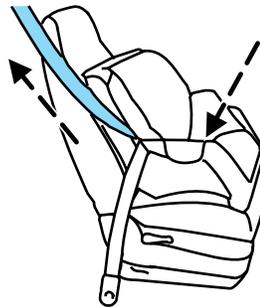
5. To put the retractor in the automatic locking mode, grasp the shoulder portion of the belt and pull downward until all of the belt is pulled out.



6. Allow the belt to retract to remove slack. The belt will click as it retracts to indicate it is in the automatic locking mode.

7. Try to pull the belt out of the retractor to make sure the retractor is in the automatic locking mode (you should not be able to pull more belt out). If the retractor is not locked, unbuckle the belt and repeat Steps 5 and 6.

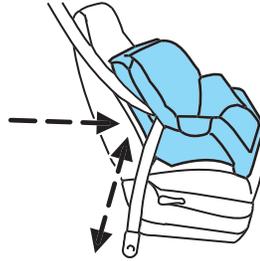
8. Remove remaining slack from the belt. Force the seat down with extra weight, e.g., by pressing down or kneeling on the child restraint while pulling up on the shoulder belt in order to force slack from the belt. This is necessary to remove the remaining slack that will exist once the additional weight of the child is added to the child restraint. It also helps to achieve the proper snugness of the child seat to the vehicle. Sometimes, a slight lean towards the buckle will additionally help to remove remaining slack from the belt.



## Seating and Safety Restraints

9. Attach the tether strap (if the child seat is equipped). Refer to *Attaching child safety seats with tether straps* later in this chapter.

10. Before placing the child in the seat, forcibly move the seat forward and back to make sure the seat is securely held in place. To check this, grab the seat at the belt path and attempt to move it side to side and forward. There should be no more than one inch (2.5 cm) of movement for proper installation.



11. Ford recommends checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician (CPST) to make certain the child restraint is properly installed.

### **Installing child safety seats in cinch tongue combination lap and shoulder belt seating positions (Regular Cab front center and Super/Crew cab rear center positions)**

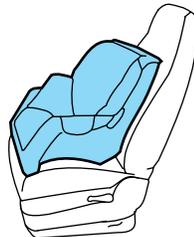
The belt webbing below the tongue is the lap portion of the combination lap/shoulder belt, and the belt webbing above the tongue is the shoulder belt portion of the combination lap/shoulder belt.



**WARNING:** Always use both lap and shoulder safety belt in the Regular Cab center seating position if applicable.

**Note:** Although the child seat illustrated is a forward facing child seat, the steps are the same for installing a rear facing child seat.

1. Position the child safety seat in the center seat.

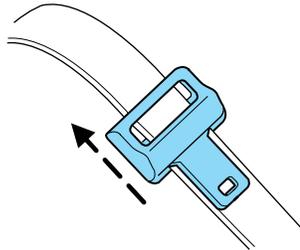


## Seating and Safety Restraints

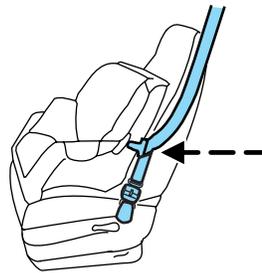
 **WARNING:** Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move seat all the way back.

 **WARNING:** Rear facing child seats should NEVER be placed in front of an active airbag.

2. Slide the tongue up the webbing.

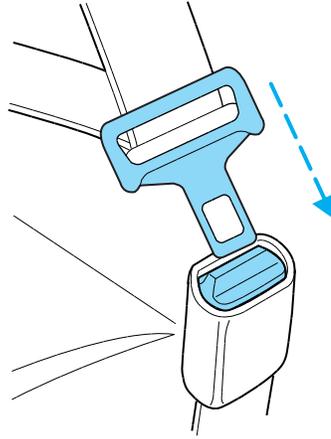


3. While holding both shoulder and lap portions next to the tongue, route the tongue and webbing through the child seat according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions. Be sure that the belt webbing is not twisted.



## Seating and Safety Restraints

4. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle for that seating positions until you hear a snap and feel it latch. Make sure the tongue is securely latched to the buckle by pulling on the tongue.



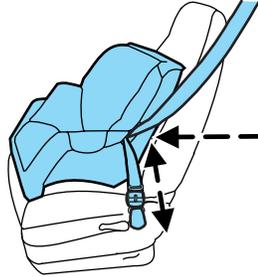
5. Remove remaining slack from the belt. Force the seat down with extra weight, e.g., by pressing down or kneeling on the child restraint while pulling up on the shoulder belt in order to force slack from the belt. This is necessary to remove the remaining slack that will exist once the additional weight of the child is added to the child restraint. It also helps to achieve the proper snugness of the child seat to the vehicle. Sometimes, a slight lean towards the buckle will additionally help to remove remaining slack from the belt.



6. Attach the tether strap (if the child seat is equipped). Refer to *Attaching child safety seats with tether straps* later in this chapter.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

7. Before placing the child in the seat, forcibly move the seat forward and back to make sure the seat is securely held in place. To check this, grab the seat at the belt path and attempt to move it side to side and forward. There should be no more than one inch (2.5 cm) of movement for proper installation.



8. Ford recommends checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician (CPST) to make certain the child restraint is properly installed.

### ***Installing child safety seats in the front row lap belt seating positions (Super Cab and Crew Cab)***



**WARNING:** Installing a child safety seat in the front row lap seating position should be avoided if at all possible.



**WARNING:** Never place a rear-facing child seat in the front center seating position of a vehicle with rear seating positions.



**WARNING:** Front seating positions only: If seating two adults and a child, Ford recommends properly restraining the child in the center front seating position, but only if doing so will not interfere with driving the vehicle. This arrangement provides lap and shoulder belt and airbag protection for adult occupants and an attachment method for a child restraint. If the child seat interferes with driving the vehicle and the child restraint is forward-facing, the child may be restrained in the passenger seat. Move the seat as far rearward as possible to minimize the likelihood of interaction with the front passenger airbag. Never place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. All occupants of the vehicle should always properly wear their safety belts. Ensure the child is properly restrained in an appropriate child seat or with the use of a booster.

1. Lengthen the lap belt. To lengthen the belt, hold the tongue so that its bottom is perpendicular to the direction of webbing while sliding the tongue up the webbing.

214

## Seating and Safety Restraints

2. Place the child safety seat in the center seating position.
3. Route the tongue and webbing through the child seat according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions.
4. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle for the center seating position until you hear a snap and feel it latch. Make sure the tongue is securely fastened to the buckle by pulling on the tongue.
5. Push down on the child seat while pulling on the loose end of the lap belt webbing to tighten the belt.
6. Before placing the child into the child seat, forcibly tilt the child seat from side to side and in forward direction to make sure that the seat is securely held in place. To check this, grab the seat at the belt path and attempt to move it side to side and forward and back. There should be no more than one inch (2.5 cm) of movement for proper installation.
7. Ford recommends checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician (CPST) to make certain the child restraint is properly installed.

**Note:** For Super Cab and Crew Cab there is no top tether anchor for the front center seating position. See *Attaching child safety seats with tether straps* later in this chapter.

### **Attaching child safety seats with LATCH (Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children) attachments**

The LATCH system is composed of three vehicle anchor points: two (2) lower anchors located where the vehicle seat back and seat cushion meet (called the "seat bight") and one (1) top tether anchor located behind that seating position. Your vehicle is **not** equipped with the lower anchor points in the seat bight. For this vehicle use the vehicle safety belt and upper tether to secure a child seat. See *Attaching child safety seats with tether straps* and *Recommendations for attaching safety restraints for children* in this chapter for more information.

### **Attaching child safety seats with tether straps**

Many forward-facing child safety seats include a tether strap which extends from the back of the child safety seat and hooks to an anchoring point called the top tether anchor. Tether straps are available as an accessory for many older safety seats. Contact the manufacturer of your child seat for information about ordering a tether strap, or to obtain a longer tether strap if the tether strap on your safety seat does not reach the appropriate top tether anchor in the vehicle.

The passenger seats of your vehicle may be equipped with built-in tether strap anchors located behind the seats as described below.

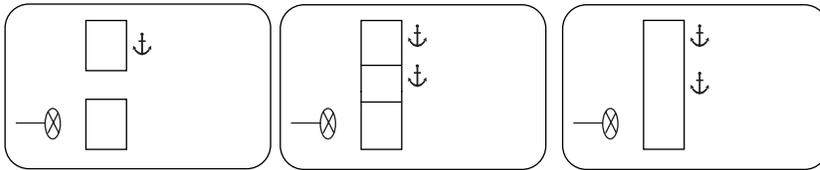
## Seating and Safety Restraints

The tether anchors in your vehicle may be straps on the seatback or an anchor bracket on the rear edge of the seat cushion or an anchor bracket mounted to the body shell on the back panel.

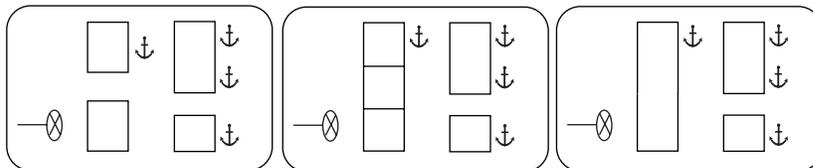
The SuperCab rear seat has three straps behind the top of the seat back that function as both routing loops for the tether straps and anchor loops.

The tether strap anchors in your vehicle are in the following positions (shown from top view):

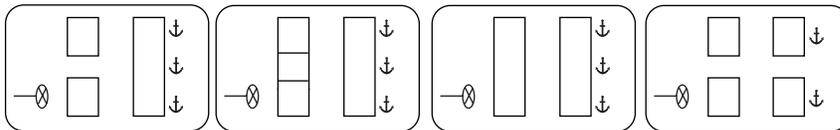
- **F-Series Regular Cab**



- **F-Series SuperCab**



- **F-Series Crew Cab**



Attach the tether strap only to the appropriate tether anchor as shown. The tether strap may not work properly if attached somewhere other than the correct tether anchor.

Once the child safety seat has been installed using the safety belt, you can attach the top tether strap.

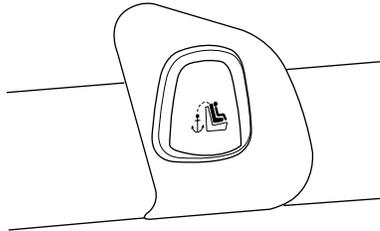
## Seating and Safety Restraints

### Tether strap attachment

1. Route the child safety seat tether strap over the back of the seat.

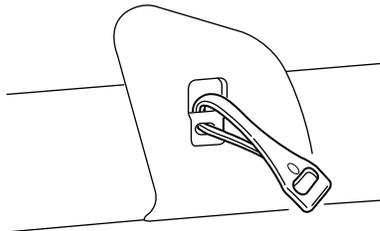
For vehicles with adjustable head restraints, route the tether strap under the head restraint and between the head restraint posts, other wise route the tether strap over the top of the seatback. If the top of the safety seat hits the head restraint, raise the head restraint to let the child seat fit further rearward.

2. Locate the correct anchor for the selected seating position.
3. You may need to pull the seatback forward to access the tether anchors. Make sure the seat is locked in the upright position before installing the child seat. Refer to the *Rear folding seat system with load floor* section in this chapter for information on how to operate the rear seats.
4. Remove tether cover.



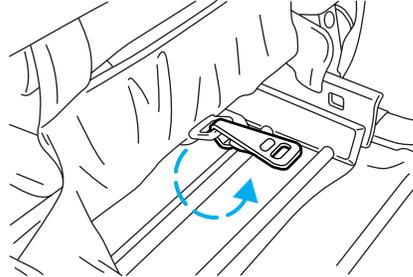
5. Clip the tether strap to the anchor as shown.

- Front seats (Regular Cab)

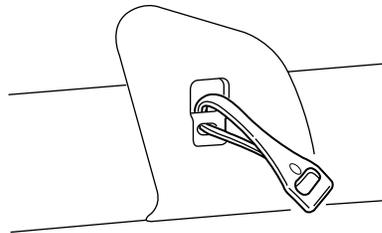


## Seating and Safety Restraints

- Front seat (SuperCab)



- Rear seats (Crew Cab)



If the tether strap is clipped incorrectly, the child safety seat may not be retained properly in the event of a collision.

6. Refer to the *Installing child safety seats with combination lap and shoulder belts* section of this chapter for further instructions to secure the child safety seat.

7. Tighten the child safety seat tether strap according to the manufacturer's instructions.

If the safety seat is not anchored properly, the risk of a child being injured in a collision greatly increases.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

### ***Tether strap attachment (rear SuperCab only)***

There are three loops of webbing just above the back of the rear seat (along the bottom edge of the rear window) in the SuperCab. These loops are to be used as both routing loops and anchor loops for up to three child safety seat tether straps.

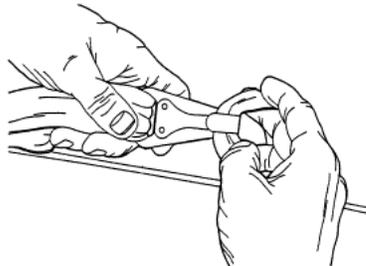
These straps may be secured below the back of the seat with rubber bands. To access, reach below the back of the seat and pull tether loop out of the rubber band securing it.

Many tether straps cannot be tightened if the tether strap is hooked to the loop directly behind the child seat. To provide a tight tether strap:

1. Route the tether strap through the loop directly behind the child seat.

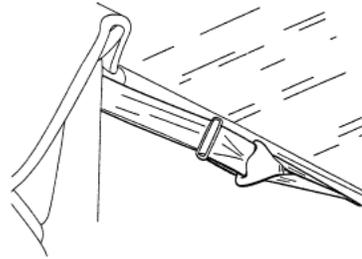


2. Attach the strap hook onto the loop behind an adjacent seating position.



## Seating and Safety Restraints

3. Install the child safety seat tightly using the vehicle belts. Follow the instructions in this chapter.
4. Tighten the tether strap according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions.



A single loop can be used to route and anchor more than one child seat. For example, the center loop can be used as a routing loop for a child safety seat in the center rear seat and as an anchoring loop for child seats installed in the outboard rear seats.

### Child booster seats

The belt-positioning booster (booster seat) is used to improve the fit of the vehicle safety belt. Children outgrow a typical child seat (e.g., convertible or toddler seat) when they weigh about 40 lb (18 kg) and are around four (4) years of age. Consult your child safety seat owner guide for the weight, height, and age limits specific to your child safety seat. Keep your child in the child safety seat if it properly fits the child, remains appropriate for their weight, height and age AND if properly secured to the vehicle.

Although the lap/shoulder belt will provide some protection, children who have outgrown a typical child seat are still too small for lap/shoulder belts to fit properly, and wearing an improperly fitted vehicle safety belt could increase the risk of serious injury in a crash. To improve the fit of both the lap and shoulder belt on children who have outgrown child safety seats, Ford Motor Company recommends use of a belt-positioning booster.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

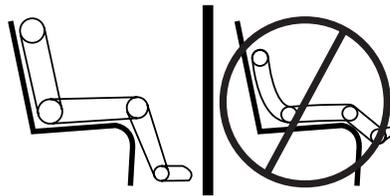
Booster seats position a child so that vehicle lap/shoulder safety belts fit better. They lift the child up so that the lap belt rests low across the hips and the knees bend comfortably at the edge of the cushion, while minimizing slouching. Booster seats may also make the shoulder belt fit better and more comfortably. Try to keep the belt near the middle of the shoulder and across the center of the chest. Moving the child closer (a few centimeters or inches) to the center of the vehicle, but remaining in the same seating position, may help provide a good shoulder belt fit.

### **When children should use booster seats**

Children need to use booster seats from the time they outgrow the toddler seat until they are big enough for the vehicle seat and lap/shoulder belt to fit properly. Generally this is when they reach a height of at least 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall (around age eight to age twelve and between 40 lb (18 kg) and 80 lb (36 kg) or upward to 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by your child restraint manufacturer). Many state and provincial laws require that children use approved booster seats until they reach age eight, a height of 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall, or 80 lb (36 kg).

Booster seats should be used until you can answer YES to ALL of these questions when seated without a booster seat:

- Can the child sit all the way back against the vehicle seat back with knees bent comfortably at the edge of the seat cushion?
- Can the child sit without slouching?
- Does the lap belt rest low across the hips?
- Is the shoulder belt centered on the shoulder and chest?
- Can the child stay seated like this for the whole trip?



## Seating and Safety Restraints

### **Types of booster seats**

There are generally two types of belt-positioning booster seats: backless and high back. Always use booster seats in conjunction with the vehicle lap/shoulder belt.

- **Backless booster seats**

If your backless booster seat has a removable shield, remove the shield. If a vehicle seating position has a low seat back or no head restraint, a backless booster seat may place your child's head (as measured at the tops of the ears) above the top of the seat. In this case, move the backless booster to another seating position with a higher seat back or head restraint and lap/shoulder belts, or consider using a high back booster seat.



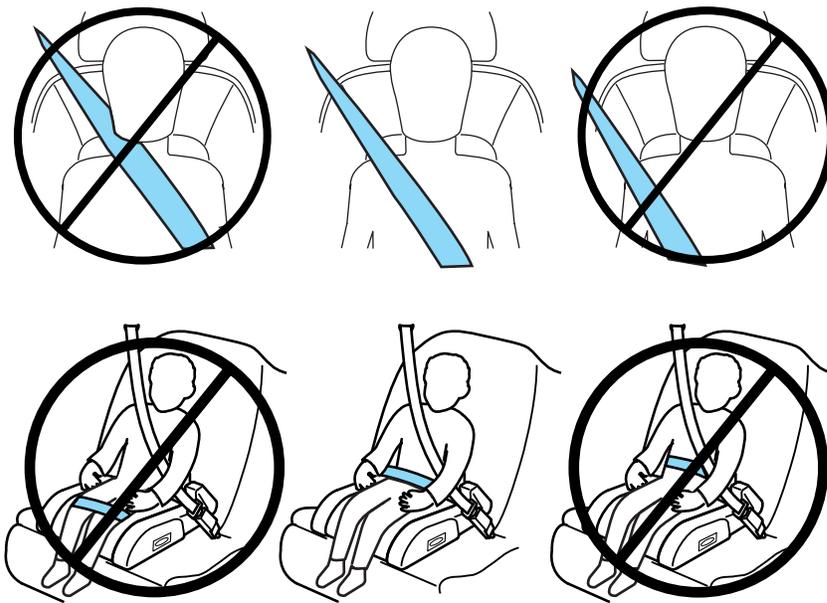
- **High back booster seats**

If, with a backless booster seat, you cannot find a seating position that adequately supports your child's head, a high back booster seat would be a better choice.



## Seating and Safety Restraints

Children and booster seats vary in size and shape. Choose a booster that keeps the lap belt low and snug across the hips, never up across the stomach, and lets you adjust the shoulder belt to cross the chest and rest snugly near the center of the shoulder. The drawings below compare the ideal fit (center) to a shoulder belt uncomfortably close to the neck and a shoulder belt that could slip off the shoulder. The drawings below also show how the lap belt should be low and snug across the child's hips.



If the booster seat slides on the vehicle seat, placing a rubberized mesh sold as shelf or carpet liner under the booster seat may improve this condition. Do not introduce any item thicker than this under the booster seat. Check with the booster seat manufacturer's instructions.

### ***The importance of shoulder belts***

Using a booster without a shoulder belt increases the risk of a child's head hitting a hard surface in a collision. For this reason, you should never use a booster seat with a lap belt only. It is generally best to use a booster seat with lap/shoulder belts in the back seat.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

Move a child to a different seating location if the shoulder belt does not stay positioned on the shoulder during use.

Follow all instructions provided by the manufacturer of the booster seat.



**WARNING:** Never place, or allow a child to place, the shoulder belt under a child's arm or behind the back because it reduces the protection for the upper part of the body and may increase the risk of injury or death in a collision.

### Child restraint and safety belt maintenance

Inspect the vehicle safety belts and child safety seat systems periodically to make sure they work properly and are not damaged. Inspect the vehicle and child seat safety belts to make sure there are no nicks, tears or cuts. Replace if necessary. All vehicle safety belt assemblies, including retractors, buckles, front safety belt buckle assemblies, buckle support assemblies (slide bar-if equipped), shoulder belt height adjusters (if equipped), shoulder belt guide on seatback (if equipped), child safety seat LATCH and tether anchors, and attaching hardware, should be inspected after a collision. Refer to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions for additional inspection and maintenance information specific to the child restraint. Ford Motor Company recommends that all safety belt assemblies in use in vehicles involved in a collision be replaced. However, if the collision was minor and an authorized dealer finds that the belts do not show damage and continue to operate properly, they do not need to be replaced. Safety belt assemblies not in use during a collision should also be inspected and replaced if either damage or improper operation is noted.

For proper care of soiled safety belts, refer to *Interior* in the *Cleaning* chapter.

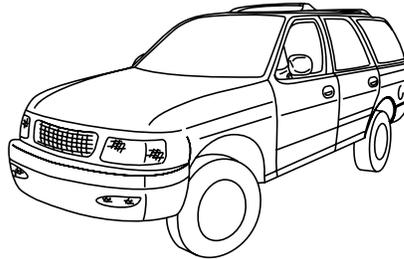


**WARNING:** Failure to inspect and if necessary replace the safety belt assembly or child restraint system under the above conditions could result in severe personal injuries in the event of a collision.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### NOTICE TO UTILITY VEHICLE AND TRUCK OWNERS

Utility vehicles and trucks handle differently than passenger cars in the various driving conditions that are encountered on streets, highways and off-road. Utility vehicles and trucks are not designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions.



**WARNING:** Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles. To reduce the risk of serious injury or death from a rollover or other crash you must:

- Avoid sharp turns and abrupt maneuvers;
- Drive at safe speeds for the conditions;
- Keep tires properly inflated;
- Never overload or improperly load your vehicle; and
- Make sure every passenger is properly restrained.



**WARNING:** In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. All occupants must wear seat belts and children/infants must use appropriate restraints to minimize the risk of injury or ejection.

Study your *Owner's Guide* and any supplements for specific information about equipment features, instructions for safe driving and additional precautions to reduce the risk of an accident or serious injury.

### VEHICLE CHARACTERISTICS

#### 4WD and AWD Systems (if equipped)

A vehicle equipped with AWD or 4WD (when selected) has the ability to use all four wheels to power itself. This increases traction which may enable you to safely drive over terrain and road conditions that a conventional two-wheel drive vehicle cannot.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

Power is supplied to all four wheels through a transfer case or power transfer unit. 4WD vehicles allow you to select different drive modes as necessary. Information on transfer case operation and shifting procedures can be found in the *Driving* chapter. Information on transfer case maintenance can be found in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter. You should become thoroughly familiar with this information before you operate your vehicle.

On some 4WD models, the initial shift from two-wheel drive to 4WD while the vehicle is moving can cause a momentary clunk and ratcheting sound. These sounds are normal as the front drivetrain comes up to speed and is not cause for concern.

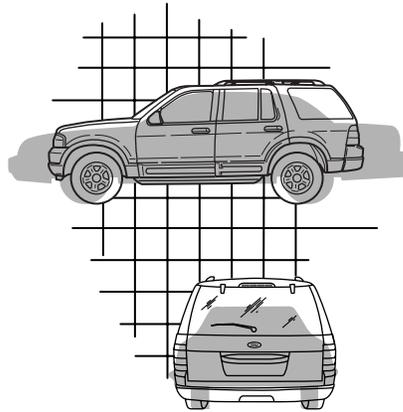


**WARNING:** Do not become overconfident in the ability of 4WD and AWD vehicles. Although a 4WD or AWD vehicle may accelerate better than two-wheel drive vehicle in low traction situations, it won't stop any faster than two-wheel drive vehicles. Always drive at a safe speed.

### How your vehicle differs from other vehicles

SUV and trucks can differ from some other vehicles in a few noticeable ways. Your vehicle may be:

- Higher – to allow higher load carrying capacity and to allow it to travel over rough terrain without getting hung up or damaging underbody components.
- Shorter – to give it the capability to approach inclines and drive over the crest of a hill without getting hung up or damaging underbody components. All other things held equal, a shorter wheelbase may make your vehicle quicker to respond to steering inputs than a vehicle with a longer wheelbase.

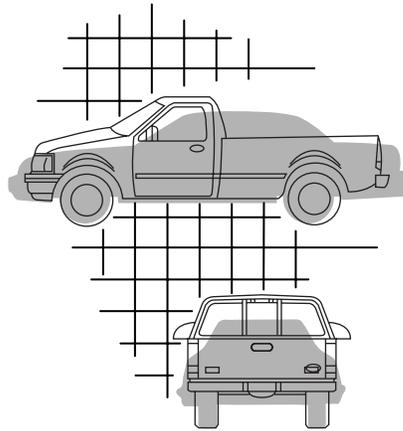


## Tires, Wheels and Loading

- Narrower — to provide greater maneuverability in tight spaces, particularly in off-road use.

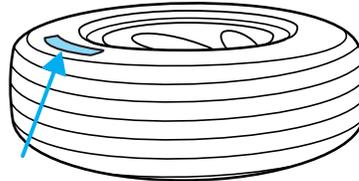
As a result of the above dimensional differences, SUV's and trucks often will have a higher center of gravity and a greater difference in center of gravity between the loaded and unloaded condition.

These differences that make your vehicle so versatile also make it handle differently than an ordinary passenger car.



### INFORMATION ABOUT UNIFORM TIRE QUALITY GRADING

Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic passenger car tires. The Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example:



- **Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A**

These Tire Quality Grades are determined by standards that the United States Department of Transportation has set.

Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic passenger car tires. They do not apply to deep tread, winter-type snow tires, space-saver or temporary use spare tires, light truck or "LT" type tires, tires with nominal rim diameters of 10 to 12 inches or limited production tires as defined in Title 49 Code of Federal Regulations Part 575.104(c)(2).

**U.S. Department of Transportation-Tire quality grades:** The U.S. Department of Transportation requires Ford Motor Company to give you the following information about tire grades exactly as the government has written it.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1½) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices, and differences in road characteristics and climate.

### Traction AA A B C

The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.



**WARNING:** The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics.

### Temperature A B C

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 139. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.



**WARNING:** The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### TIRES

Tires are designed to give many thousands of miles of service, but they must be maintained in order to get the maximum benefit from them.

#### Glossary of tire terminology

- **Tire label:** A label showing the OE (Original Equipment) tire sizes, recommended inflation pressure and the maximum weight the vehicle can carry.
- **Tire Identification Number (TIN):** A number on the sidewall of each tire providing information about the tire brand and manufacturing plant, tire size and date of manufacture. Also referred to as DOT code.
- **Inflation pressure:** A measure of the amount of air in a tire.
- **Standard load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a maximum load at 35 psi [37 psi (2.5 bar) for Metric tires]. Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.
- **Extra load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a heavier maximum load at 41 psi [43 psi (2.9 bar) for Metric tires]. Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.
- **kPa:** Kilopascal, a metric unit of air pressure.
- **PSI:** Pounds per square inch, a standard unit of air pressure.
- **Cold inflation pressure:** The tire pressure when the vehicle has been stationary and out of direct sunlight for an hour or more and prior to the vehicle being driven for 1 mile (1.6 km).
- **Recommended inflation pressure:** The cold inflation pressure found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door.
- **B-pillar:** The structural member at the side of the vehicle behind the front door.
- **Bead area of the tire:** Area of the tire next to the rim.
- **Sidewall of the tire:** Area between the bead area and the tread.
- **Tread area of the tire:** Area of the perimeter of the tire that contacts the road when mounted on the vehicle.
- **Rim:** The metal support (wheel) for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### INFLATING YOUR TIRES

Safe operation of your vehicle requires that your tires are properly inflated. Remember that a tire can lose up to half of its air pressure without appearing flat.

Every day before you drive, check your tires. If one looks lower than the others, use a tire gauge to check pressure of all tires and adjust if required.

At least once a month and before long trips, inspect each tire and check the tire pressure with a tire gauge (including spare, if equipped). Inflate all tires to the inflation pressure recommended by Ford Motor Company.

You are strongly urged to buy a reliable tire pressure gauge, as automatic service station gauges may be inaccurate. Ford recommends the use of a digital or dial-type tire pressure gauge rather than a stick-type tire pressure gauge.

Use the recommended cold inflation pressure for optimum tire performance and wear. Under-inflation or over-inflation may cause uneven treadwear patterns.



**WARNING:** Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failures and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation or "blowout", with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury. Under-inflation increases sidewall flexing and rolling resistance, resulting in heat buildup and internal damage to the tire. It also may result in unnecessary tire stress, irregular wear, loss of vehicle control and accidents. A tire can lose up to half of its air pressure and not appear to be flat!

Always inflate your tires to the Ford recommended inflation pressure even if it is less than the maximum inflation pressure information found on the tire. The Ford recommended tire inflation pressure is found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. Failure to follow the tire pressure recommendations can cause uneven treadwear patterns and adversely affect the way your vehicle handles.

**Note:** Do not reduce tire pressure to change the ride characteristics of the vehicle. If you do not maintain the inflation pressure at the levels specified by Ford, your vehicle may experience a condition known as "shimmy". Shimmy is a severe vibration and oscillation in the steering wheel after the vehicle travels over a bump or dip in the road that does not dampen out by itself. Shimmy may result from significant

230

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

under-inflation of the tires, improper tires (load range, size, or type), or vehicle modifications such as lift-kits. In the event that your vehicle experiences shimmy, you should slowly reduce speed by either lifting off the accelerator pedal or lightly applying the brakes. The shimmy will cease as the vehicle speed decreases.

**Maximum Permissible Inflation Pressure** is the tire manufacturer's maximum permissible pressure and/or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label.

When weather temperature changes occur, tire inflation pressures also change. A 10°F (6°C) temperature drop can cause a corresponding drop of 1 psi (7 kPa) in inflation pressure. Check your tire pressures frequently and adjust them to the proper pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label.

To check the pressure in your tire(s):

1. Make sure the tires are cool, meaning they are not hot from driving even a mile.

If you are checking tire pressure when the tire is hot, (i.e. driven more than 1 mile [1.6 km]), never "bleed" or reduce air pressure. The tires are hot from driving and it is normal for pressures to increase above recommended cold pressures. A hot tire at or below recommended cold inflation pressure could be significantly under-inflated.

**Note:** If you have to drive a distance to get air for your tire(s), check and record the tire pressure first and add the appropriate air pressure when you get to the pump. It is normal for tires to heat up and the air pressure inside to go up as you drive.

2. Remove the cap from the valve on one tire, then firmly press the tire gauge onto the valve and measure the pressure.
3. Add enough air to reach the recommended air pressure.

**Note:** If you overfill the tire, release air by pushing on the metal stem in the center of the valve. Then recheck the pressure with your tire gauge.

4. Replace the valve cap.
5. Repeat this procedure for each tire, including the spare.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

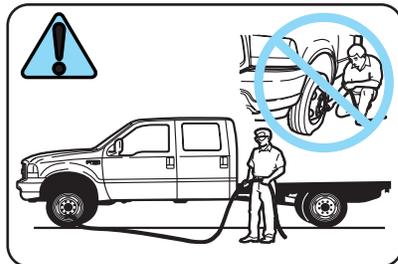
**Note:** Some spare tires operate at a higher inflation pressure than the other tires. For T-type/mini-spare tires (see the *Dissimilar spare tire/wheel information* section for description): Store and maintain at 60 psi (4.15 bar). For Full Size and Dissimilar spare tires (see the *Dissimilar spare tire/wheel information* section for description): Store and maintain at the higher of the front and rear inflation pressure as shown on the Tire Label.

6. Visually inspect the tires to make sure there are no nails or other objects embedded that could poke a hole in the tire and cause an air leak.
7. Check the sidewalls to make sure there are no gouges, cuts or bulges.

### Tire inflation information

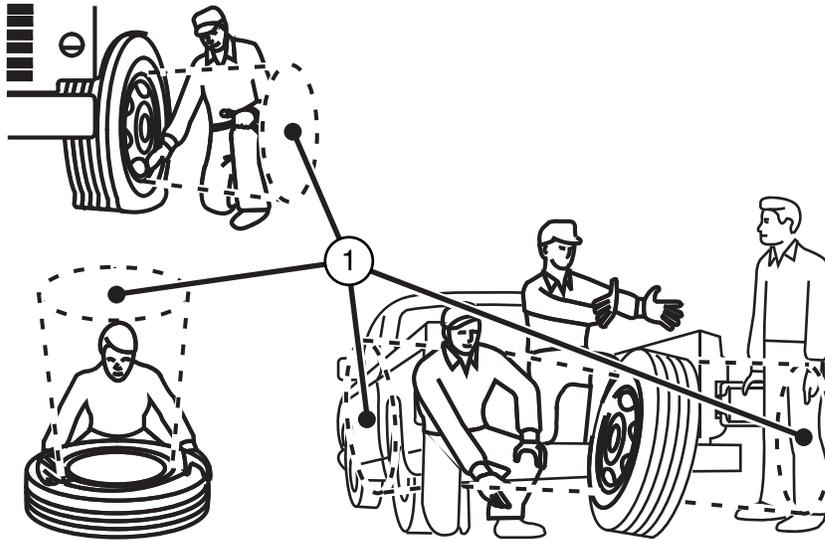
All tires with Steel Carcass Plies (if equipped):

This type of tire utilizes steel cords in the sidewalls. As such, they cannot be treated like normal light truck tires. Tire service, including adjusting tire pressure, must be performed by personnel trained, supervised and equipped according to Federal Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) regulations. For example, during any procedure involving tire inflation, the technician or individual must utilize a remote inflation device, and ensure that all persons are clear of the trajectory area.



**! WARNING:** An inflated tire and rim can be very dangerous if improperly used, serviced or maintained. To reduce the risk of serious injury, never attempt to re-inflate a tire which has been run flat or seriously under-inflated without first removing the tire from the wheel assembly for inspection. Do not attempt to add air to tires or replace tires or wheels without first taking precautions to protect persons and property.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading



**WARNING:** Stay out of the trajectory (1) as indicated in the illustration.

### TIRE CARE

#### Inspecting your tires

Periodically inspect the tire treads for uneven or excessive wear and remove objects such as stones, nails or glass that may be wedged in the tread grooves. Check for holes or cuts that may permit air leakage from the tire and make necessary repairs. Also inspect the tire sidewalls for cracking, cuts, bruises and other signs of damage or excessive wear. If internal damage to the tire is suspected, have the tire demounted and inspected in case it needs to be repaired or replaced. For your safety, tires that are damaged or show signs of excessive wear should not be used because they are more likely to blow out or fail.

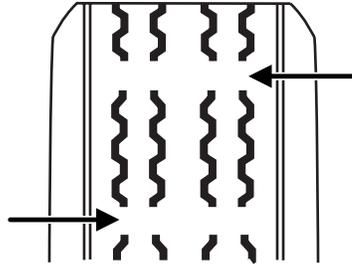
## Tires, Wheels and Loading

Improper or inadequate vehicle maintenance can cause tires to wear abnormally. Inspect all your tires, including the spare, frequently, and replace them if one or more of the following conditions exist:

### Tire wear

When the tread is worn down to 1/16th of an inch (2 mm), tires must be replaced to help prevent your vehicle from skidding and hydroplaning. Built-in treadwear indicators, or “wear bars”, which look like narrow strips of smooth rubber across the tread will appear on the tire when the tread is worn down to 1/16th of an inch (2 mm).

When the tire tread wears down to the same height as these “wear bars”, the tire is worn out and must be replaced.



### Damage

Periodically inspect the tire treads and sidewalls for damage (such as bulges in the tread or sidewalls, cracks in the tread groove and separation in the tread or sidewall). If damage is observed or suspected have the tire inspected by a tire professional. Tires can be damaged during off-road use, so inspection after off-road use is also recommended.



### **WARNING: Age**

Tires degrade over time depending on many factors such as weather, storage conditions, and conditions of use (load, speed, inflation pressure, etc.) the tires experience throughout their lives. In general, tires should be replaced after six years regardless of tread wear. However, heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process and may require tires to be replaced more frequently.

You should replace your spare tire when you replace the road tires or after six years due to aging even if it has not been used.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN)

Both U.S. and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

This begins with the letters "DOT" and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000 the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

### Tire Replacement Requirements

Your vehicle is equipped with tires designed to provide a safe ride and handling capability.



**WARNING:** Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, load index, speed rating and type (such as P-metric versus LT-metric or all-season versus all-terrain) as those originally provided by Ford. The recommended tire and wheel size may be found on either the Safety Compliance Certification Label or the Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or edge of the driver's door. If this information is not found on these labels then you should contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. Additionally the use of non-recommended tires and wheels could cause steering, suspension, axle or transfer case/power transfer unit failure. If you have questions regarding tire replacement, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading



**WARNING:** When mounting replacement tires and wheels, you should not exceed the maximum pressure indicated on the sidewall of the tire to set the beads without additional precautions listed below. If the beads do not seat at the maximum pressure indicated, re-lubricate and try again.

When inflating the tire for mounting pressures up to 20 psi greater than the maximum pressure on the tire sidewall, the following precautions must be taken to protect the person mounting the tire:

1. Make sure that you have the correct tire and wheel size.
2. Lubricate the tire bead and wheel bead seat area again.
3. Stand at a minimum of 12 ft. (3.66 m) away from the tire wheel assembly.
4. Use both eye and ear protection.

For a mounting pressure more than 20 psi greater than the maximum pressure, a Ford Dealer or other tire service professional should do the mounting.

Always inflate steel carcass tires with a remote air fill with the person inflating standing at a minimum of 12 ft. (3.66 m) away from the tire wheel assembly.

**Important:** Remember to replace the wheel valve stems when the road tires are replaced on your vehicle.

It is recommended that the two front tires or two rear tires generally be replaced as a pair.

The tire pressure sensors mounted in the wheels are not designed to be used in aftermarket wheels.

The use of wheels or tires not recommended by Ford Motor Company may affect the operation of your Tire Pressure Monitoring System (if equipped).

If the TPMS indicator is flashing, your TPMS is malfunctioning. Your replacement tire might be incompatible with your TPMS, or some component of the TPMS may be damaged (if equipped).

### Safety practices

Driving habits have a great deal to do with your tire mileage and safety.

- Observe posted speed limits
- Avoid fast starts, stops and turns
- Avoid potholes and objects on the road
- Do not run over curbs or hit the tire against a curb when parking

## Tires, Wheels and Loading



**WARNING:** If your vehicle is stuck in snow, mud, sand, etc., **do not** rapidly spin the tires; spinning the tires can tear the tire and cause an explosion. A tire can explode in as little as three to five seconds.



**WARNING:** Do not spin the wheels at over 35 mph (56 km/h). The tires may fail and injure a passenger or bystander.

### Highway hazards

No matter how carefully you drive there's always the possibility that you may eventually have a flat tire on the highway. Drive slowly to the closest safe area out of traffic. This may further damage the flat tire, but your safety is more important.

If you feel a sudden vibration or ride disturbance while driving, or you suspect your tire or vehicle has been damaged, immediately reduce your speed. Drive with caution until you can safely pull off the road. Stop and inspect the tires for damage. If a tire is under-inflated or damaged, deflate it, remove wheel and replace it with your spare tire and wheel. If you cannot detect a cause, have the vehicle towed to the nearest repair facility or tire dealer to have the vehicle inspected.

### Tire and wheel alignment

A bad jolt from hitting a curb or pothole can cause the front end of your vehicle to become misaligned or cause damage to your tires. If your vehicle seems to pull to one side when you're driving, the wheels may be out of alignment. Have an authorized dealer check the wheel alignment periodically.

Wheel misalignment in the front or the rear can cause uneven and rapid treadwear of your tires and should be corrected by an authorized dealer. Front wheel drive (FWD) vehicles and those with an independent rear suspension (if equipped) may require alignment of all four wheels.

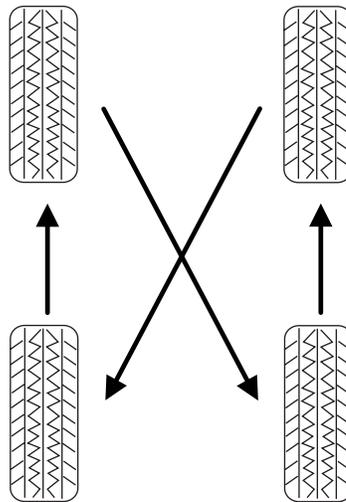
The tires should also be balanced periodically. An unbalanced tire and wheel assembly may result in irregular tire wear.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### Tire rotation

Rotating your tires at the recommended interval (as indicated in the *scheduled maintenance information* that comes with your vehicle) will help your tires wear more evenly, providing better tire performance and longer tire life.

- Rear Wheel Drive (RWD) vehicles/Four Wheel Drive (4WD)/All Wheel Drive (AWD) vehicles (front tires at top of diagram)



Sometimes irregular tire wear can be corrected by rotating the tires.

**Note:** If your tires show uneven wear ask an authorized dealer to check for and correct any wheel misalignment, tire imbalance or mechanical problem involved before tire rotation.

**Note:** Your vehicle may be equipped with a dissimilar spare tire/wheel. A dissimilar spare tire/wheel is defined as a spare tire and/or wheel that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels. If you have a dissimilar spare tire/wheel it is intended for temporary use only and should not be used in a tire rotation.

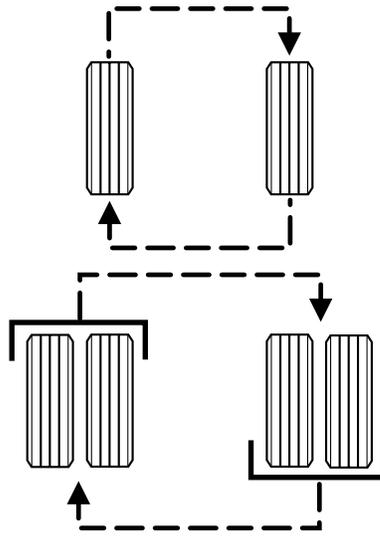
**Note:** After having your tires rotated, inflation pressure must be checked and adjusted to the vehicle requirements.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

**WARNING:** If the tire label shows different tire pressures for the front and rear tires and the vehicle is equipped with TPMS (tire pressure monitoring system), then the settings for the TPMS sensors need to be updated. Always perform the TPMS reset procedure after tire rotation. If the system is not reset, it may not provide a low tire pressure warning when necessary. See the TPMS reset procedure in this chapter.

- DRW – Six tire rotation

If your vehicle is equipped with dual rear wheels it is recommended that the front and rear tires (in pairs) be rotated only side to side. We do not recommend splitting up the dual rear wheels. Rotate them side to side as a set/pair. After tire rotation, inflation pressures must be adjusted for the tires new positions in accordance with vehicle requirements.



Sometimes irregular tire wear can be corrected by rotating the tires.

**Note:** If your tires show uneven wear ask your authorized dealer to check for and correct any wheel misalignment, tire imbalance or mechanical problem involved before tire rotation.

**Note:** Your vehicle may be equipped with a dissimilar spare tire/wheel. A dissimilar spare tire/wheel is defined as a spare tire and/or wheel that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels. If you have a dissimilar spare tire/wheel it is intended for temporary use only and should not be used in a tire rotation.

**Note:** After having your tires rotated, inflation pressure must be checked and adjusted to the vehicle requirements.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### INFORMATION CONTAINED ON THE TIRE SIDEWALL

Both U.S. and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

#### Information on “P” type tires

P215/65R15 95H is an example of a tire size, load index and speed rating. The definitions of these items are listed below. (Note that the tire size, load index and speed rating for your vehicle may be different from this example.)

1. **P:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association (T&RA), that may be used for service on cars, SUVs, minivans and light trucks.

**Note:** If your tire size does not begin with a letter this may mean it is designated by either ETRTO (European Tire and Rim Technical Organization) or JATMA (Japan Tire Manufacturing Association).

2. **215:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

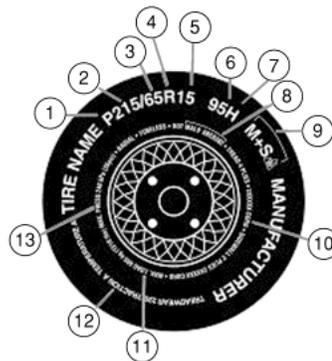
3. **65:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire’s ratio of height to width.

4. **R:** Indicates a “radial” type tire.

5. **15:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

6. **95:** Indicates the tire’s load index. It is an index that relates to how much weight a tire can carry. You may find this information in your *Owner’s Guide*. If not, contact a local tire dealer.

**Note:** You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.



## Tires, Wheels and Loading

7. **H:** Indicates the tire's speed rating. The speed rating denotes the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time under a standard condition of load and inflation pressure. The tires on your vehicle may operate at different conditions for load and inflation pressure. These speed ratings may need to be adjusted for the difference in conditions. The ratings range from 81 mph (130 km/h) to 186 mph (299 km/h). These ratings are listed in the following chart.

**Note:** You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.

Letter rating	Speed rating - mph (km/h)
M	81 mph (130 km/h)
N	87 mph (140 km/h)
Q	99 mph (159 km/h)
R	106 mph (171 km/h)
S	112 mph (180 km/h)
T	118 mph (190 km/h)
U	124 mph (200 km/h)
H	130 mph (210 km/h)
V	149 mph (240 km/h)
W	168 mph (270 km/h)
Y	186 mph (299 km/h)

**Note:** For tires with a maximum speed capability over 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the letters ZR. For those with a maximum speed capability over 186 mph (299 km/h), tire manufacturers always use the letters ZR.

8. **U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN):** This begins with the letters "DOT" and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000 the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

9. **M+S or M/S:** Mud and Snow, or

**AT:** All Terrain, or

**AS:** All Season.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

10. **Tire Ply Composition and Material Used:** Indicates the number of plies or the number of layers of rubber-coated fabric in the tire tread and sidewall. Tire manufacturers also must indicate the ply materials in the tire and the sidewall, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others.

11. **Maximum Load:** Indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire. Refer to the Safety Compliance Certification Label, which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door, for the correct tire pressure for your vehicle.

### 12. Treadwear, Traction and Temperature Grades

- **Treadwear:** The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1½) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.
- **Traction:** The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.
- **Temperature:** The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

13. **Maximum Permissible Inflation Pressure:** Indicates the tire manufacturers' maximum permissible pressure and/or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the vehicle label.

The tire suppliers may have additional markings, notes or warnings such as standard load, radial tubeless, etc.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### Additional information contained on the tire sidewall for “LT” type tires

“LT” type tires have some additional information beyond those of “P” type tires; these differences are described below.

**Note:** Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.

1. **LT:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association (T&RA), that is intended for service on light trucks.

#### 2. Load Range/Load Inflation

**Limits:** Indicates the tire’s load-carrying capabilities and its inflation limits.

3. **Maximum Load Dual lb. (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a dual; defined as four tires on the rear axle (a total of six or more tires on the vehicle).

4. **Maximum Load Single lb. (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a single; defined as two tires (total) on the rear axle.



## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### Information on “T” type tires

“T” type tires have some additional information beyond those of “P” type tires; these differences are described below:

T145/80D16 is an example of a tire size.

**Note:** The temporary tire size for your vehicle may be different from this example. Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.

1. **T:** Indicates a type of tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association (T&RA), that is intended for temporary service on cars, SUVs, minivans and light trucks.

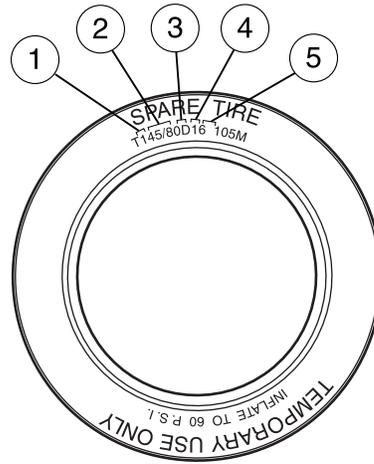
2. **145:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

3. **80:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire’s ratio of height to width. Numbers of 70 or lower indicate a short sidewall.

4. **D:** Indicates a “diagonal” type tire.

**R:** Indicates a “radial” type tire.

5. **16:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.



### Location of the tire label

You will find a Tire Label containing tire inflation pressure by tire size and other important information located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver’s door. Refer to the payload description and graphic in the *Vehicle loading — with and without a trailer* section.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS) (IF EQUIPPED)

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the



vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction indicator after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

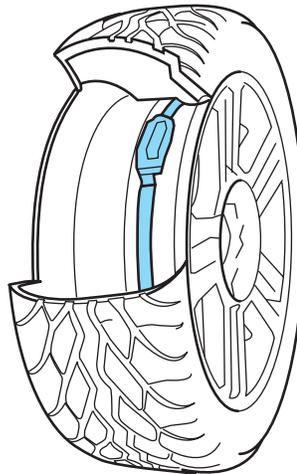
The Tire Pressure Monitoring System complies with part 15 of the FCC rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

**!** **WARNING:** The Tire Pressure Monitoring System is NOT a substitute for manually checking tire pressure. The tire pressure should be checked periodically (at least monthly) using a tire gauge, see *Inflating your tires* in this chapter. Failure to properly maintain your tire pressure could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.

### Changing tires with TPMS

**Each road tire is equipped with a tire pressure sensor fastened to the inside rim of the wheel. The pressure sensor is covered by the tire and is not visible unless the tire is removed. The pressure sensor is located opposite (180 degrees) from the valve stem. Care must be taken when changing the tire to avoid damaging the sensor.** It is recommended that you always have your tires serviced by an authorized dealer.

The tire pressure should be checked periodically (at least monthly) using an accurate tire gauge, refer to *Inflating your tires* in this chapter.



## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### **Understanding your Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)**

The Tire Pressure Monitoring System measures pressure in your four road tires and sends the tire pressure readings to your vehicle. The Low Tire Warning Lamp will turn ON if the tire pressure is significantly low. Once the light is illuminated, your tires are under inflated and need to be inflated to the manufacturer's recommended tire pressure. Even if the light turns ON and a short time later turns OFF, your tire pressure still needs to be checked. Visit [www.checkmytires.org](http://www.checkmytires.org) for additional information.

### ***When your temporary spare tire is installed***

When one of your road tires needs to be replaced with the temporary spare, the TPMS system will continue to identify an issue to remind you that the damaged road wheel/tire needs to be repaired and put back on your vehicle.

To restore the full functionality of the Tire Pressure Monitoring System, have the damaged road wheel/tire repaired and remounted on your vehicle. For additional information, refer to *Changing tires with TPMS* in this section.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### ***When you believe your system is not operating properly***

The main function of the Tire Pressure Monitoring System is to warn you when your tires need air. It can also warn you in the event the system is no longer capable of functioning as intended. Please refer to the following chart for information concerning your Tire Pressure Monitoring System:

<b>Low Tire Pressure Warning Light</b>	<b>Possible cause</b>	<b>Customer Action Required</b>
Solid Warning Light	Tire(s) under-inflated	1. Check your tire pressure to ensure tires are properly inflated; refer to <i>Inflating your tires</i> in this chapter. 2. After inflating your tires to the manufacturer's recommended inflation pressure as shown on the Tire Label (located on the edge of driver's door or the B-Pillar), the vehicle must be driven for at least two minutes over 20 mph (32 km/h) before the light will turn OFF.
	Spare tire in use	Your temporary spare tire is in use. Repair the damaged road wheel/tire and reinstall it on the vehicle to restore system functionality. For a description on how the system functions, refer to <i>When your temporary spare tire is installed</i> in this section.
	TPMS malfunction	If your tires are properly inflated and your spare tire is not in use and the light remains ON, have the system inspected by your authorized dealer.
	Tire rotation without sensor training	On vehicles with different front and rear tire pressures, the TPMS system must be retrained following every tire rotation. Refer to <i>Tire rotation</i> in this chapter.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

Low Tire Pressure Warning Light	Possible cause	Customer Action Required
Flashing Warning Light	Spare tire in use	Your temporary spare tire is in use. Repair the damaged road wheel and re-mount it on the vehicle to restore system functionality. For a description of how the system functions under these conditions, refer to <i>When your temporary spare tire is installed</i> in this section.
	TPMS malfunction	If your tires are properly inflated and your spare tire is not in use and the TPMS warning light still flashes, have the system inspected by your authorized dealer.

### **When inflating your tires**

When putting air into your tires (such as at a gas station or in your garage), the Tire Pressure Monitoring System may not respond immediately to the air added to your tires.

It may take up to two minutes of driving over 20 mph (32 km/h) for the light to turn OFF after you have filled your tires to the recommended inflation pressure.

### **How temperature affects your tire pressure**

The Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) monitors tire pressure in each pneumatic tire. While driving in a normal manner, a typical passenger tire inflation pressure may increase approximately 2 to 4 psi (14 to 28 kPa) from a cold start situation. If the vehicle is stationary over night with the outside temperature significantly lower than the daytime temperature, the tire pressure may decrease approximately 3 psi (20.7 kPa) for a drop of 30° F (16.6°C) in ambient temperature. This lower pressure value may be detected by the TPMS as being significantly lower than the recommended inflation pressure and activate the TPMS warning for low tire pressure. If the low tire pressure warning light is ON, visually check each tire to verify that no tire is flat. (If one or more tires are flat, repair as necessary.) Check air pressure in the road tires. If any tire is under-inflated, carefully drive the vehicle to the nearest location where air can be added to the tires. Inflate all the tires to the recommended inflation pressure.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### TPMS reset procedure (if applicable)

**The TPMS reset tool is ONLY provided for vehicles with different front and rear tire pressures. The TPMS reset procedure needs to be performed after tire rotation only on these vehicles.**



**WARNING:** To determine if your vehicle has different recommended pressures for the front and rear tires, refer to the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. See *Vehicle Loading* in this chapter for more information.

### Overview

To provide the vehicle's load carrying capability, some trucks require different recommended tire pressures in the front tires as compared to the rear tires. The Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) equipped on these vehicles is designed to illuminate the Low Tire Pressure Warning indicator at two different pressures; one for the front tires and one for the rear tires.

Since tires need to be rotated to provide consistent performance and maximum tire life, the Tire Pressure Monitoring System needs to know when the tires are rotated to determine which set of tires are on the front and which are on the rear. With this information, the system can detect and properly warn of low tire pressures.



**WARNING:** Always perform the TPMS reset procedure after tire rotation when recommended pressures are different for the front and rear tires.

### TPMS reset tool

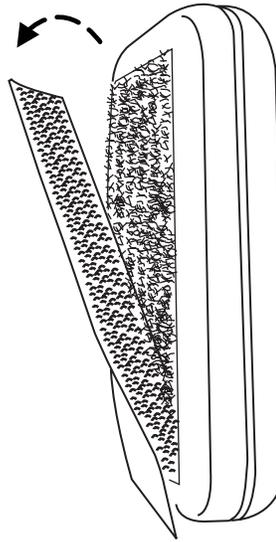
A special TPMS reset tool to reset your TPMS after tire rotation is provided with vehicles that have different front and rear tire pressures. The tool is located with your Owner's Guide materials.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

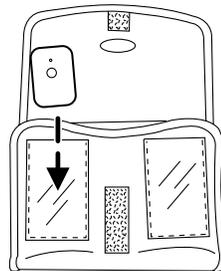
### Storing the TPMS reset tool

You should store the TPMS reset tool in the provided pocket of the owner guide case; however, before storing it, you will need to remove and discard the loose strip of Velcro® (this is the piece of Velcro® with the adhesive protection film on it); you will not need this portion of the Velcro® strip for this vehicle application. The other portion of the Velcro® strip (soft portion) should remain on the TPMS reset tool.

**Note:** Don't discard just the adhesive protector. Remove and discard the whole Velcro® strip (see illustration), this will ensure a good fit of the tool in the pocket of the owner guide.



Store the TPMS reset tool in the pocket of your owner's guide case (as shown) for safe keeping.



When you are ready to use the TPMS reset tool, remove it from the pocket by pushing up on the bottom of the pocket (pushing the tool out) rather than reaching into the pocket and pulling it out.

If you find that the reset tool was not provided when delivered, has been lost or no longer functions (the battery is not replaceable), please contact your authorized dealer to obtain a replacement.

To verify that your TPMS reset tool is working, press and release the button on the center of the TPMS tool. The red light should illuminate

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

and remain on for approximately five (5) seconds. If the light does not illuminate, the tool needs to be replaced.

### TPMS reset tips:

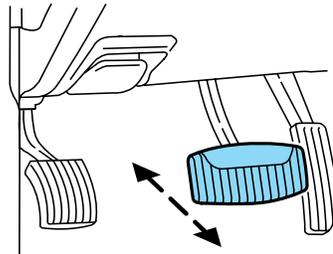
- To reduce the chances of interference from another vehicle, TPMS reset should be performed at least three feet (one meter) away from another Ford Motor Company vehicle undergoing the TPMS reset procedure at the same time.
- Do not wait more than two (2) minutes between resetting each tire sensor or the system will timeout and the entire procedure will have to be repeated on all four wheels.
- A double horn chirp indicates the need to repeat the procedure.

### TPMS reset procedure

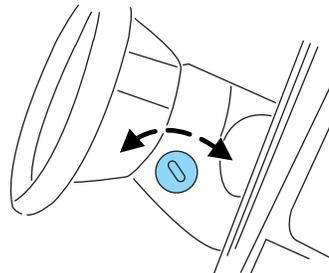
It is recommended that you read the entire procedure before attempting.

**Note:** To enter the reset mode, Steps 1–6 **MUST** be completed within 60 seconds.

1. Place the ignition in the off position and keep the key in the ignition.
2. Press and release the brake pedal.

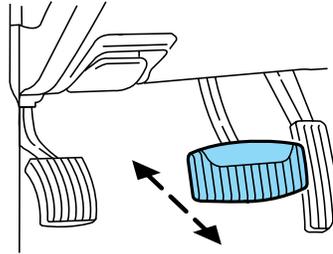


3. Cycle the ignition from off to on three (3) times ending in the on position—**DO NOT** start the engine.

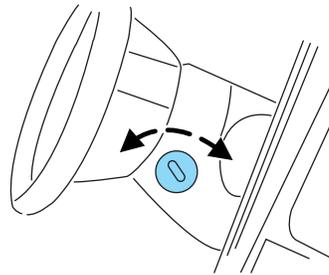


## Tires, Wheels and Loading

4. Press and hold the brake pedal for two (2) seconds, then release.



5. Turn the ignition to off—**DO NOT** remove the key.



6. Cycle the ignition from off to on three (3) times ending in on. **DO NOT** start the engine.

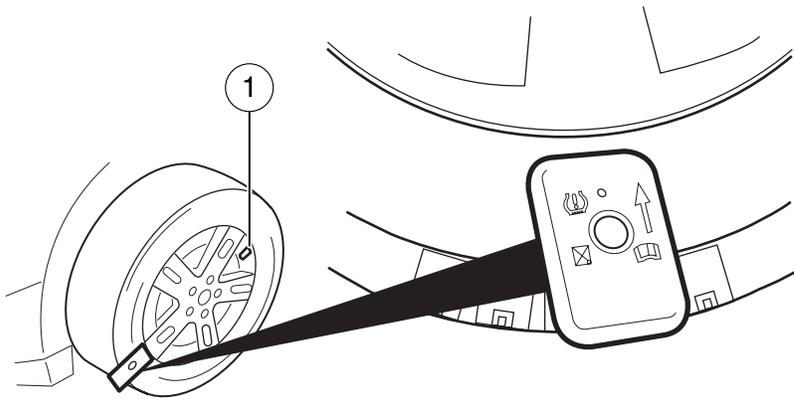
If the reset mode has been entered successfully, the horn will sound once, the TPMS indicator (⚠) will flash and the message center will display **TRAIN LEFT FRONT TIRE**.

If after repeated attempts to enter the reset mode, the horn does not sound, the TPMS indicator (⚠) does not flash and the message center does not display **TRAIN LEFT FRONT TIRE**, seek service from your authorized dealer.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

7. Train the TPMS sensors in the tires using the following TPMS reset sequence starting with the **left front tire** in the following clockwise order:

1. Left front tire (Front driver's side)
2. Right front tire (Front passenger's side)
3. Right rear tire (Rear passenger's side)
4. Left rear tire (Rear driver's side)



8. **Left front tire:** Place the TPMS reset tool against the left front tire where the tire meets the rim, opposite from the valve stem (1) as shown. This is where the sensor is located inside the rim.

**The tool needs to be held against the tire sidewall opposite the valve stem as illustrated with the arrow on the tool pointing towards the rim; do not use the tool with the arrow pointing away from the rim as it may not activate the sensor.**

9. Press and release the green button and hold the tool to the tire sidewall until the horn sounds. The red light on the TPMS reset tool will illuminate while the tool is active. The horn will sound once within 10 seconds to indicate the process was successful.

**Note:**

- If a double horn chirp is heard, repeat the procedure. If a single horn chirp is not heard, move the vehicle to rotate the wheels at least a ¼-turn and repeat the procedure starting with Step 1.
- If a double horn chirp is heard even after the wheels were repositioned, seek service from your authorized dealer.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

10. Perform Steps 8 and 9 on the right front tire, right rear tire and finally the left rear tire. Training is complete after the horn sounds for the last tire trained (left rear tire) and the message center displays: **TRAINING COMPLETE.**

Turn the ignition to off. If two short horn beeps are heard, the reset procedure was unsuccessful and must be repeated.

If after repeating the procedure and two short beeps are heard when the ignition is turned to off, seek assistance from your authorized dealer.

### SNOW TIRES AND CHAINS



**WARNING:** Snow tires must be the same size, load index, speed rating as those originally provided by Ford. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. Additionally, the use of non-recommended tires and wheels could cause steering, suspension, axle or transfer case/power transfer unit failure.

**Note:** Do not use snow chains on vehicles with 20 inch wheels and tires.

The tires on your vehicle have all weather treads to provide traction in rain and snow. However, in some climates, you may need to use snow tires and chains. If you need to use chains, it is recommended that steel wheels (of the same size and specifications) be used, as chains may chip aluminum wheels.

Follow these guidelines when using snow tires and chains:

- Use only SAE Class S chains.
- Install chains securely, verifying that the chains do not touch any wiring, brake lines or fuel lines.
- Drive cautiously. If you hear the chains rub or bang against your vehicle, stop and re-tighten the chains. If this does not work, remove the chains to prevent damage to your vehicle.
- If possible, avoid fully loading your vehicle.
- Remove the tire chains when they are no longer needed. Do not use tire chains on dry roads.
- The suspension insulation and bumpers will help prevent vehicle damage. Do not remove these components from your vehicle when using snow tires and chains.

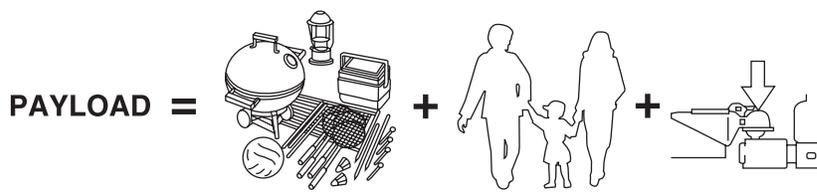
## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### VEHICLE LOADING – WITH AND WITHOUT A TRAILER

This section will guide you in the proper loading of your vehicle and/or trailer, to keep your loaded vehicle weight within its design rating capability, with or without a trailer. Properly loading your vehicle will provide maximum return of vehicle design performance. Before loading your vehicle, familiarize yourself with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight ratings, with or without a trailer, from the vehicle's Tire Label or Safety Compliance Certification Label:

**Base Curb Weight** – is the weight of the vehicle including a full tank of fuel and all standard equipment. It does not include passengers, cargo, or optional equipment.

**Vehicle Curb Weight** – is the weight of your new vehicle when you picked it up from your authorized dealer plus any aftermarket equipment.



**Payload** – is the combined weight of cargo and passengers that the vehicle is carrying. The maximum payload for your vehicle can be found on the Tire Label on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door (vehicles exported outside the US and Canada may not have a Tire Label). Look for **“THE COMBINED WEIGHT OF OCCUPANTS AND CARGO SHOULD NEVER EXCEED XXX kg OR XXX lb.”** for maximum payload. The payload listed on the Tire Label is the maximum payload for the vehicle as built by the assembly plant. If any aftermarket or authorized-dealer installed equipment has been installed on the vehicle, the weight of the equipment must be subtracted from the payload listed on the Tire Label in order to determine the new payload.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

**WARNING:** The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.

**Example only:**



**TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION**

SEATING CAPACITY	TOTAL 5	FRONT 2	REAR 3
------------------	---------	---------	--------

The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed : **XXX kg or XXX lbs.**

TIRE	SIZE	COLD TIRE PRESSURE	SEE OWNERS MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION
FRONT	LT225/75R 16.5E	200 KPA, 29 PSI	
REAR	LT225/75R 16.5E	200 KPA, 29 PSI	
SPARE	T145/80D16 P225/60R17	420 KPA, 60 PSI 200 KPA, 29 PSI	

(XXX) XX-XXXX-XXXX




**TIRE AND LOAD INFORMATION**  
**RENSEIGNEMENTS RELATIFS AUX PNEUS ET À LA CHARGE**

SEATING CAPACITY NOMBRE DE PLACES	TOTAL TOTAL	FRONT AVANT	REAR ARRIERE
	XX	XX	X

The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed . **XXX kg.**  
La charge du véhicule (occupants et bagages) ne doit jamais dépasser' **XXX lbs.**

TIRE PNEUS	SIZE DIMENSIONS	COLD TIRE PRESSURE PRESSION À FROID	SEE OWNERS MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION CONSULTER LE GUIDE DU PROPRIETAIRE POUR DE PLUS AMPLES RENSEIGNEMENTS
FRONT/ AVANT	LT225/75R 16.5E	200 KPA, 29 PSI	
REAR/ ARRIERE	LT225/75R 16.5E	200 KPA, 29 PSI	
SPARE/ PNEU DE SECOURS	T145/80D16 P225/60R17	420 KPA, 60 PSI 200 KPA, 29 PSI	

(XXX) XX-XXXX-XXXX


## Tires, Wheels and Loading

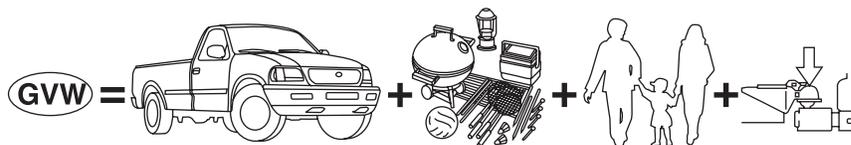


**Cargo Weight** – includes all weight added to the Base Curb Weight, including cargo and optional equipment. When towing, trailer tongue load or king pin weight is also part of cargo weight.

**GAW (Gross Axle Weight)** – is the total weight placed on each axle (front and rear) – including vehicle curb weight and all payload.

**GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating)** – is the maximum allowable weight that can be carried by a single axle (front or rear). **These numbers are shown on the Safety Compliance Certification Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The total load on each axle must never exceed its GAWR.**

**Note:** For trailer towing information refer to *Trailer towing* found in this chapter or the *RV and Trailer Towing Guide* provided by your authorized dealer.



**GVW (Gross Vehicle Weight)** – is the Vehicle Curb Weight + cargo + passengers.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

MFD. BY FORD MOTOR CO.					
DATE: XX/XX	GVWR: XXXXXLB/ XXXXXKG				
FRONT GAWR: XXXXL	REAR GAWR: XXXXLB				
XXXXKG	WITH	XXXXKG	WITH		
XXXX/XXXXXXX	TIRES	XXXX/XXXXXXX	TIRES		
XXXX.XX	RIMS	XXXX.XX	RIMS		
AT XXX kPa/XX	PSI COLD	AT XXX kPa/XX	PSI COLD		
THIS VEHICLE CONFORMS TO ALL APPLICABLE FEDERAL MOTOR VEHICLE SAFETY AND THEFT PREVENTION STANDARDS IN EFFECT ON THE DATE OF MANUFACTURE SHOWN ABOVE.					
VIN: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX	XXXXX		XXXXX		
TYPE: XXX					
					
EXT PNT: XX	RC: XX	DSO:			
WB BRK INT TR TP/PS R AXLE TR SPR XXXXX					
XXX X XX X XX X XX XXX					
XXXXXXXXXXXX XXX XXXX-XXXXXX-XX					

**GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating)** – is the maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle (including all options, equipment, passengers and cargo). **The GVWR is shown on the Safety Compliance Certification Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The GVW must never exceed the GVWR.**

**WARNING:** Exceeding the Safety Compliance Certification Label vehicle weight rating limits could result in substandard vehicle handling or performance, engine, transmission and/or structural damage, serious damage to the vehicle, loss of control and personal injury.



**GCW (Gross Combined Weight)** – is the weight of the loaded vehicle (GVW) plus the weight of the fully loaded trailer.

**GCWR (Gross Combined Weight Rating)** – is the maximum allowable weight of the vehicle and the loaded trailer – including all cargo and passengers – that the vehicle can handle without risking damage. (Important: The towing vehicle's braking system is rated for operation at GVWR, not at GCWR.) Separate functional brakes should be used for

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

safe control of towed vehicles and for trailers where the GCW of the towing vehicle plus the trailer exceed the GVWR of the towing vehicle.

**The GCW must never exceed the GCWR.**

**Maximum Loaded Trailer Weight** – is the highest possible weight of a fully loaded trailer the vehicle can tow. It assumes a vehicle with only mandatory options, no cargo (internal or external), a tongue load of 10–15% (conventional trailer) or king pin weight of 15–25% (fifth wheel trailer), and driver only (150 lb. [68 kg]). **Consult your authorized dealer (or the *RV and Trailer Towing Guide* provided by your authorized dealer) for more detailed information.**

**Tongue Load or Fifth Wheel King Pin Weight** – refers to the amount of the weight that a trailer pushes down on a trailer hitch.

**Examples:** For a 5,000 lb. (2,268 kg) conventional trailer, multiply 5,000 by 0.10 and 0.15 to obtain a proper tongue load range of 500 to 750 lb. (227 to 340 kg). For an 11,500 lb. (5,216 kg) fifth wheel trailer, multiply by 0.15 and 0.25 to obtain a proper king pin load range of 1,725 to 2,875 lb. (782 to 1,304 kg)



**WARNING:** Do not exceed the GVWR or the GAWR specified on the Safety Compliance Certification Label.



**WARNING:** Do not use replacement tires with lower load carrying capacities than the original tires because they may lower the vehicle's GVWR and GAWR limitations. Replacement tires with a higher limit than the original tires do not increase the GVWR and GAWR limitations.



**WARNING:** Exceeding any vehicle weight rating limitation could result in serious damage to the vehicle and/or personal injury.

### Steps for determining the correct load limit:

1. Locate the statement “The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lb.” on your vehicle's placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lb.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the “XXX” amount equals 1,400 lb. and there will be five 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lb. ( $1400 - 750$  ( $5 \times 150$ ) = 650 lb.). In metric units ( $635 - 340$  ( $5 \times 68$ ) = 295 kg.)

5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

The following gives you a few examples on how to calculate the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity:

- Another example for your vehicle with 1,400 lb. (635 kg) of cargo and luggage capacity. You decide to go golfing. Is there enough load capacity to carry you, 4 of your friends and all the golf bags? You and four friends average 220 lb. (99 kg) each and the golf bags weigh approximately 30 lb. (13.5 kg) each. The calculation would be:  $1400 - (5 \times 220) - (5 \times 30) = 1400 - 1100 - 150 = 150$  lb. Yes, you have enough load capacity in your vehicle to transport four friends and your golf bags. In metric units, the calculation would be:  $635 \text{ kg} - (5 \times 99 \text{ kg}) - (5 \times 13.5 \text{ kg}) = 635 - 495 - 67.5 = 72.5$  kg.
- A final example for your vehicle with 1,400 lb. (635 kg) of cargo and luggage capacity. You and one of your friends decide to pick up cement from the local home improvement store to finish that patio you have been planning for the past 2 years. Measuring the inside of the vehicle with the rear seat folded down, you have room for 12-100 lb. (45 kg) bags of cement. Do you have enough load capacity to transport the cement to your home? If you and your friend each weigh 220 lb. (99 kg), the calculation would be:  $1400 - (2 \times 220) - (12 \times 100) = 1400 - 440 - 1200 = -240$  lb. No, you do not have enough cargo capacity to carry that much weight. In metric units, the calculation would be:  $635 \text{ kg} - (2 \times 99 \text{ kg}) - (12 \times 45 \text{ kg}) = 635 - 198 - 540 = -103$  kg. You will need to reduce the load weight by at least 240 lb. (104 kg). If you remove 3-100 lb. (45 kg) cement bags, then the load calculation would be:

$1400 - (2 \times 220) - (9 \times 100) = 1400 - 440 - 900 = 60$  lb. Now you have the load capacity to transport the cement and your friend home. In metric units, the calculation would be:  $635 \text{ kg} - (2 \times 99 \text{ kg}) - (9 \times 45 \text{ kg}) = 635 - 198 - 405 = 32$  kg.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

The above calculations also assume that the loads are positioned in your vehicle in a manner that does not overload the Front or the Rear Gross Axle Weight Rating specified for your vehicle on the Safety Compliance Certification Label found on the edge of the driver's door.

### Special loading instructions for owners of pickup trucks and utility-type vehicles



**WARNING:** For important information regarding safe operation of this type of vehicle, see the *Preparing to drive your vehicle* section in the *Driving* chapter of this *Owner's Guide*.



**WARNING:** Loaded vehicles may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, should be taken when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

Your vehicle can haul more cargo and people than most passenger cars. Depending upon the type and placement of the load, hauling cargo and people may raise the center of gravity of the vehicle.

### TRAILER TOWING

**Note:** The trailer towing charts in this section apply to vehicles equipped with gasoline engines; for vehicles equipped with diesel engines, refer to your *Power Stroke Direct Injection Turbo Diesel Owner's Guide Supplement*.

Your vehicle may tow a Conventional/Class IV trailer or fifth wheel trailer provided the maximum trailer weight is less than or equal to the maximum trailer weight listed for your engine and rear axle ratio on the following charts.

To calculate your maximum trailer weight:

**For pickup trucks:** Take curb weight, hitch hardware and the driver's weight, then subtract them from the GCWR listed for your vehicle series, engine, transmission and drive axle ratio (*refer to the chart/table in the following text*). This calculation will give you the maximum trailer weight possible for your vehicle.

**For chassis cabs and pickup trucks with aftermarket equipment:** Weigh your vehicle at a certified scale and subtract this actual curb weight, hitch hardware, and the driver's weight from the GCWR listed for your vehicle series, engine, transmission and drive axle ratio (*refer to*

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

the chart/table in the following text). This calculation will give you the maximum trailer weight possible for your vehicle.

The weight of all additional cargo and passengers must be subtracted from the maximum trailer weight calculated above.

Further trailer/hitch restrictions and limitations exist depending on the type of trailer and hitch used. These additional maximum trailer weight and tongue load limitations are listed in the chart/table that follows the listing of GCWRs.

Towing a trailer places an additional load on your vehicle's engine, transmission, axle, brakes, tires and suspension. Inspect these components carefully prior to and after any towing operation. Refer to *Transmission fluid temperature gauge* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for the transmission fluid temperature information.

**Note:** Do not exceed the GCWR listed for your vehicle on the following chart/table, or the GVWR, GAWR or tire ratings specified on the Tire Label or Safety Compliance Certification Label.



**WARNING:** Towing trailers beyond the maximum recommended trailer weight which exceeds the limit of the vehicle's GCWR, GVWR, GAWR or tire ratings could result in engine damage, transmission damage, structural damage, loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.

Maximum GCWR - lb. (kg.)			
Engine	Rear axle ratio	Manual transmission	Automatic transmission
<b>F-250 Pick-up</b>			
5.4L	3.73	15000 (6804)	16000 (7257)
	4.10	17000 (7711)	18000 (8165)
6.8L	4.10	20000 (9072)	21000 (9525)
	4.30	22000 (9979)	22500 (10206)
<b>F-350 Single Rear Wheel (SRW) Pick-up</b>			
5.4L	3.73	15000 (6804)	16000 (7257)
	4.10	17000 (7711)	18000 (8165)
6.8L	4.10	20000 (9072)	21000 (9525)
	4.30	22000 (9979)	23000 (10433)

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

Maximum GCWR - lb. (kg.)			
Engine	Rear axle ratio	Manual transmission	Automatic transmission
<b>F-350 Dual Rear Wheel (DRW) Pick-up</b>			
5.4L	4.10	17500 (7938)	18500 (8391)
6.8L	4.10	20500 (9299)	21500 (9752)
	4.30	22500 (10206)	23000 (10433)
<b>F-350 Single Rear Wheel (SRW) Chassis Cab</b>			
5.4L	3.73	15000 (6804)	16000 (7257)
	4.10	17000 (7711)	18000 (8165)
6.8L	4.10	20000 (9072)	21000 (9525)
<b>F-350 Dual Rear Wheel (DRW) Chassis Cab</b>			
5.4L	3.73	15000 (6804)	16500 (7484)
	4.10	17500 (7938)	18500 (8391)
6.8L	4.10	20500 (9299)	21500 (9752)
	4.30	22500 (10206)	23000 (10433)
<b>F-450 Chassis Cab/F-550</b>			
6.8L	4.88/5.38	26000 (11793)	26000 (11793)
Maximum GCWR - lb. (kg.)			
Engine	Rear axle ratio	Manual transmission	Automatic transmission
<b>F-250 Pick-up</b>			
5.4L	3.73	15000 (6804)	16000 (7257)
	4.10	17000 (7711)	18000 (8165)
6.8L	4.10	20000 (9072)	21000 (9525)
	4.30	22000 (9979)	22500 (10206)
<b>F-350 Single Rear Wheel (SRW) Pick-up</b>			
5.4L	3.73	15000 (6804)	16000 (7257)
	4.10	17000 (7711)	18000 (8165)
6.8L	4.10	20000 (9072)	21000 (9525)
	4.30	22000 (9979)	23000 (10433)

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

Maximum GCWR - lb. (kg.)			
Engine	Rear axle ratio	Manual transmission	Automatic transmission
<b>F-350 Dual Rear Wheel (DRW) Pick-up</b>			
5.4L	4.10	17500 (7938)	18500 (8391)
6.8L	4.10	20500 (9299)	21500 (9752)
	4.30	22500 (10206)	23000 (10433)
<b>F-350 Single Rear Wheel (SRW) Chassis Cab</b>			
5.4L	3.73	15000 (6804)	16000 (7257)
	4.10	17000 (7711)	18000 (8165)
6.8L	4.10	20000 (9072)	21000 (9525)
<b>F-350 Dual Rear Wheel (DRW) Chassis Cab</b>			
5.4L	3.73	15000 (6804)	16500 (7484)
	4.10	17500 (7938)	18500 (8391)
6.8L	4.10	20500 (9299)	21500 (9752)
	4.30	22500 (10206)	23000 (10433)
<b>F-450 Chassis Cab/F-550</b>			
6.8L	4.88/5.38	26000 (11793)	26000 (11793)

### Preparing to tow

Use the proper equipment for towing a trailer and make sure it is properly attached to your vehicle. Contact your authorized dealer or a reliable trailer dealer as soon as possible if you require assistance.

### Hitches



**WARNING:** ON PICK-UP TRUCKS, the trailer hitch provided on this vehicle enhances collision protection for the fuel system. DO NOT REMOVE!

Do not mount a ball hitch (sometimes referred to as a trailer ball hitch or trailer ball) to the bumper or use hitches that clamp onto the vehicle's bumper or attach to the axle. You must distribute the load in your trailer so that 10%–15% for conventional towing or 15%–25% fifth-wheel towing of the total weight of the trailer is on the tongue.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### Hitch rating

The standard hitch has two ratings depending on mode of operation:

- **Weight carrying** - requires a draw bar and hitch ball. The draw bar supports all the vertical tongue load of the trailer.
- **Weight distributing** - requires an aftermarket weight distributing system which includes draw bar, hitch ball, spring bars and snap-up brackets. The vertical tongue load of the trailer is distributed between the truck and the trailer by this system.

	Hitch Type	Maximum Gross Trailer Weight — lb. (kg)	Maximum Tongue Weight — lb. (kg)
6.8L DRW Pickup 2.5" ID without adapter (requires 2.5" drawbar)	Weight carrying	8000 (3629)	800 (363)
	Weight distributing	15000 (6804)	1500 (680)
6.8L DRW Pickup 2.5" ID with adapter (requires 2" drawbar)	Weight carrying	6000 (2721)	600 (272)
	Weight distributing	12500 (5670)	1250 (567)
All SRW Pickups and 5.4L DRW Pickups 2" receiver	Weight carrying	6000 (2721)	600 (272)
	Weight distributing	12500 (5670)	1250 (567)

 **WARNING:** Towing trailers beyond the maximum tongue weight exceeds the limit of the towing system and could result in vehicle structural damage, loss of vehicle control and personal injury.

### Weight distributing hitch

When hooking up a trailer using a load equalizing hitch, always use the following procedure:

1. Park the unloaded vehicle on a level surface. With the ignition on and all doors closed, allow the vehicle to stand for several minutes so that it can level.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

2. Measure the height of a reference point on the front and rear bumpers at the center of the vehicle.
3. Attach the trailer to the vehicle and adjust the hitch equalizers so that the front bumper height is within ½ inch (13 mm) of the reference point. After proper adjustment, the rear bumper should be no higher than in Step 2.



**WARNING:** Do not adjust a weight distributing hitch to any position where the rear bumper of the vehicle is higher than it was before attaching the trailer. Doing so will defeat the function of the weight distributing hitch, which may cause unpredictable handling, and could result in serious personal injury.

### Safety chains

Always connect the trailer's safety chains to the frame or hook retainers of the vehicle hitch. To connect the trailer's safety chains, cross the chains under the trailer tongue and allow slack for turning corners.

If you use a rental trailer, follow the instructions that the rental agency gives to you.

**Do not attach safety chains to the bumper.**

### Trailer brakes

Electric brakes and manual, automatic or surge-type trailer brakes are safe if installed properly and adjusted to the manufacturer's specifications. The trailer brakes must meet local and Federal regulations.



**WARNING:** If you own a trailer with a hydraulic brake system, do not connect the trailer's hydraulic brake system directly to your vehicle's brake system. The vehicle's brake system is only designed to carry the appropriate amount of brake fluid for the vehicle alone. Connecting a hydraulic trailer braking system could adversely affect your vehicle's braking performance.

The braking system of the tow vehicle is rated for operation at the GVWR not GCWR.

### ***Integrated trailer brake controller (if equipped)***

Your vehicle may be equipped with a fully integrated electronic Trailer Brake Controller (TBC). When used properly, the TBC helps ensure

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

smooth and effective trailer braking by powering the trailer's electric brakes with a proportional output based on the towing vehicle's brake pressure.

**WARNING:** The Ford TBC has only been verified to be compatible with trailers having electric-actuated drum brakes (one to four axles) and not hydraulic surge or electric-over-hydraulic types. It is the responsibility of the customer to ensure that the trailer brakes are adjusted appropriately, functioning normally and all electric connections are properly made.

The TBC user interface consists of the following:

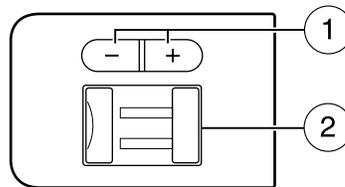
1. **+/- (GAIN adjustment**

**buttons):** Pressing these buttons will adjust the TBC's power output to the trailer brakes (in 0.5 increments). The GAIN setting can be increased to a maximum of

10.0 or decreased to a minimum of 0 (no trailer braking). Pressing and holding a button will raise or lower the setting continuously. The gain setting will display in the message center as follows: TBC GAIN = XX.X.

The trailer brake controller (TBC) is designed to display three items of information in the instrument cluster message center. These are: gain setting, output bar graph, and trailer connectivity status. They will appear as follows in the message center.

- **TBC GAIN = XX.X NO TRAILER:** The instrument cluster message center will display the current gain setting during a given ignition cycle and when adjusting the gain. This message is also displayed during manual activation without a trailer connected or when gain adjustments are made with no trailer connected.
- **TBC GAIN = XX.X OUTPUT = /////:** When the vehicle's brake pedal is pushed, or when the manual control is activated, bar indicators will illuminate in the instrument cluster message center to indicate the amount of power going to the trailer brakes relative to the brake pedal or manual control input. One bar indicates the least amount of output with six bars indicating maximum output.
- **TRAILER CONNECTED:** This message is displayed when a correct trailer wiring connection (a trailer with electric trailer brakes) has been sensed during a given ignition cycle.



## Tires, Wheels and Loading

- **TRAILER DISCONNECTED:** This message is displayed and accompanied by a single chime, when a trailer connection was determined and then a disconnection, either intentionally or unintentionally, has been sensed during a given ignition cycle. It is also displayed if a truck or trailer wiring fault occurs causing the trailer to appear disconnected. This message is also displayed during manual activation without a trailer connected.
2. **Manual control lever:** Slide the control lever to the left to activate power to the trailer's electric brakes independent of the tow vehicle's brakes (see the following *Procedure for adjusting GAIN* section for instructions on proper use of this feature). If the manual control is activated while the brake is also applied, the greater of the two inputs determines the power sent to the trailer brakes.
- **Stop Lamps:** Activating the TBC manual control lever will illuminate both the trailer brake lamps and the tow vehicle brake lamps except the Center High-Mount Stop Lamp (presuming proper trailer electrical connection). Pressing the vehicle brake pedal will also illuminate both trailer and vehicle brake lamps.

### Procedure for adjusting GAIN:

The GAIN setting is used to set the TBC for the specific towing condition and should be changed as towing conditions change. Changes to towing conditions include trailer load, vehicle load, road conditions and weather.

The GAIN should be set to provide the maximum trailer braking assistance while ensuring the trailer wheels do not lock when braking. Locked trailer wheels may lead to trailer instability.

**Note:** This should only be performed in a traffic free environment at speeds of approximately 20–25 mph (30–40 km/h).

1. Make sure the trailer brakes are in good working condition, functioning normally, and properly adjusted. See your trailer dealer if necessary.
2. Hook up the trailer and make the electrical connections according to the trailer manufacturer's instructions.
3. When a trailer with electric brakes is plugged in, the **TRAILER CONNECTED** message will display in the instrument cluster message center.
4. Use the GAIN adjustment (+/-) buttons to increase or decrease the GAIN setting to the desired starting point. A GAIN setting of 6.0 is a good starting point for heavier loads.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

5. In a traffic-free environment, tow the trailer on a dry, level surface at a speed of 20–25 mph (30–40 km/h) and squeeze the manual control lever completely.

6. If the trailer wheels lock-up (indicated by squealing tires), reduce the GAIN setting; if the trailer wheels turn freely, increase the GAIN setting. Repeat Steps 5 and 6 until the GAIN setting is at a point just below trailer wheel lock-up. If towing a heavier trailer, trailer wheel lockup may not be attainable even with the maximum GAIN setting of 10.

### **Explanation of instrument cluster warning messages:**

The TBC interacts with the instrument cluster message center to display the following messages:

**TRAILER BRAKE MODULE FAULT:** This message is displayed and accompanied by a single chime, in response to faults sensed by the TBC. In the event this message is seen, please contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible for diagnosis and repair. The TBC may still function, but performance may be degraded.

**WIRING FAULT ON TRAILER:** This message is displayed when a *Short circuit on the electric brake output wire* has occurred. If the **WIRING FAULT ON TRAILER** message is displayed and accompanied by a single chime, with no trailer connected, the problem is with the vehicle wiring from the TBC to the 7-pin connector in the bumper. If the message is only displayed with a trailer connected, the problem is related to the trailer wiring; consult your trailer dealer for assistance. This can be a short to ground (i.e., chaffed wire) or a short to voltage (i.e., pulled pin on trailer emergency break-away battery) or trailer brakes drawing too much current.

**Note:** Your TBC can be diagnosed by your authorized dealer to determine exactly which trailer fault has occurred; however, if the fault is with the trailer this diagnosis is **not** covered under your Ford warranty.

### **Points to Remember:**

- Remember to adjust gain setting before using the TBC for the first time.
- Readjust GAIN setting on the TBC (according to procedure above) whenever road, weather and trailer or vehicle loading conditions change from those that existed when the gain was initially set.
- The sliding lever on the TBC should be used only for manual activation of trailer brakes to assist with proper adjustment of the GAIN. Misuse, such as application during trailer sway, could cause instability of trailer and/or tow vehicle.

270

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

- Avoid towing in adverse weather conditions. The TBC does not provide anti-lock control of the trailer wheels. Trailer wheels can lock-up on slippery surfaces, resulting in reduced stability of trailer and tow vehicle.
- The TBC interacts with the brake system of the vehicle, including ABS, in order to reduce the likelihood of trailer wheel lockup. Therefore, if these systems are not functioning properly the TBC may not function at full performance.
- When the vehicle is turned off, the TBC Output is disabled and the display is shut down. Reactivation of the ignition from OFF to ON will awaken the TBC module.
- The TBC is only a factory or dealer installed item. Ford is not responsible for warranty or performance of the TBC due to misuse or customer installation.
- **Do not attempt removal of the TBC without consulting the *Workshop Manual*. Damage to the unit may result.**

### Trailer lamps

Trailer lamps are required on most towed vehicles. Make sure all running lights, brake lights, turn signals and hazard lights are working. Contact your authorized dealer or trailer rental agency for proper instructions and equipment for hooking up trailer lamps.

### Driving while you tow

When towing a trailer:

- Do not drive faster than 70 mph (113 km/h) during the first 500 miles (800 km) of trailer towing and don't make full-throttle starts.
- Turn off the speed control. The speed control may shut off automatically when you are towing on long, steep grades.
- Consult your local motor vehicle speed regulations for towing a trailer.
- To eliminate excessive transmission shifting, activate the Tow/Haul feature. This will also assist in transmission cooling. For additional information, refer to *Automatic transmission operation* in the *Driving* chapter.
- Anticipate stops and brake gradually.
- Do not exceed the GCWR rating or transmission damage may occur.
- Your vehicle may be equipped with a temporary or conventional spare tire. If the spare tire is different in size (diameter and/or width), tread

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

type (All-Season or All-Terrain) or is from a different manufacturer other than the road tires on your vehicle, your spare tire is considered “temporary”. Consult information on the spare Tire Label or Safety Compliance Certification Label for limitations when using.

### **Servicing after towing**

If you tow a trailer for long distances, your vehicle will require more frequent service intervals. Refer to your *scheduled maintenance information* for more information.

### **Trailer towing safety tips**

#### **General**

- Ensure that the trailer, safety chains and 7-pin electrical connectors are securely fastened.
- Make sure the truck receiver, draw bar, and coupler are properly connected and adjusted.
- Check rear view and side mirrors for proper visibility especially when towing trailer wider than the truck.
- When towing, operate the vehicle at lower speeds than you would when not towing a trailer. The likelihood of trailer sway is greater at higher speeds.
- If you will be towing a trailer frequently in hot weather, hilly conditions, at GCWR, or any combination of these factors, consider refilling your rear axle with synthetic gear lubricant if not already so equipped. Refer to *Maintenance Product Specifications and Capacities* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter for the proper axle lubricant. Remember that regardless of the rear axle lubricant used, do not tow a trailer for the first 500 miles (800 km) of a new vehicle, and that the first 500 miles of towing be done at no faster than 70 mph (113 km/h) with no full-throttle starts.
- When turning make wide turns to allow trailer tires to properly clear any obstacles.
- Be prepared for trailer sway due to buffeting when larger vehicles pass in either direction.

#### **Loading**

- Keep the center-of-gravity low for best handling.
- Trailer loads should be evenly distributed front to back and left to right.

272

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

- The load distribution within the trailer should be such that 10%–15% of the trailer weight is on the hitch. (15%–25% for fifth-wheel or gooseneck towing.)
- Never exceed truck, trailer, receiver, ball, tongue, tire or coupler loading recommendations.

### **Braking**

- The trailer brakes must be inspected and serviced at intervals specified by the manufacturer. This includes the shoes, drum and trailer brake magnets.
- Electric brakes also require periodic adjustment to keep the shoes properly spaced. If the brakes get hot when driving or if they will not hold, chances are that they need adjustment.
- Anticipate the need to stop; allow much more distance and time to stop than normal.
- Do not apply the trailer brakes for extended periods of time as they can overheat and lose effectiveness.

### **Backing up**

- Practice backing up, particularly if you are a novice. Turn the steering wheel to the right to move the trailer's rear end to the right.
- Sharp steering movements may cause the trailer to jackknife or go out of control.

### **Tires**

- All trailer tires should be of the same size, and construction.
- Select tires that meet the trailer loading requirements.
- Always check tow vehicle and trailer tire pressure before towing.

### **Launching or retrieving a boat**

**Disconnect the wiring to the trailer before backing the trailer into the water. Reconnect the wiring to the trailer after the trailer is removed from the water.**

When backing down a ramp during boat launching or retrieval:

- do not allow the static water level to rise above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.
- do not allow waves to break higher than 6 inches (15 cm) above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

Exceeding these limits may allow water to enter vehicle components:

- causing internal damage to the components.
- affecting driveability, emissions and reliability.

Replace the rear axle lubricant any time the axle has been submerged in water. Rear axle lubricant quantities are not to be checked or changed unless a leak is suspected or repair required.

### RECREATIONAL TOWING

Follow these guidelines if you have a need for recreational (RV) towing. An example of recreational towing would be towing your vehicle behind a motorhome. These guidelines are designed to ensure that your transmission is not damaged.

**Note:** Put your climate control system in recirculated air mode to prevent exhaust fumes from entering the vehicle. Refer to the *Climate controls* chapter for more information.

Transmission	Drivetrain configuration	Requirements for neutral towing
Manual	4x4 with manual-shift transfer case	Transmission in (N) Neutral; Transfer case in (N) (Neutral); Hublocks set to FREE <sup>1</sup>
Automatic		
Manual	4X2 or 4x4 with electronic-shift transfer case	Do not tow your vehicle with any wheels on the ground, as vehicle or transmission damage may occur. It is recommended to tow your vehicle with all four (4) wheels off the ground such as when using a car-hauling trailer. Otherwise, no recreational towing is permitted.
Automatic		

<sup>1</sup>Always make sure that both hub locks are set to the same position.

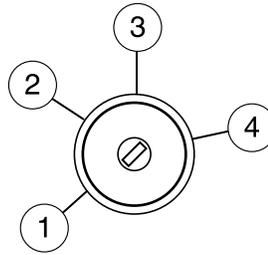
In case of a roadside emergency with a disabled vehicle, see *Wrecker towing* in the *Roadside Emergencies* chapter.

## Driving

### STARTING

#### Positions of the ignition

1. Off— shuts off the engine and all accessories/locks the steering wheel and allows key removal.
2. Accessory— allows the electrical accessories such as the radio to operate while the engine is not running. This position also unlocks the steering wheel.
3. On— all electrical circuits operational. Warning lights illuminated. Key position when driving.
4. Start— cranks the engine. Release the key as soon as the engine starts.



#### Preparing to start your vehicle

Engine starting is controlled by the powertrain control system. This system meets all Canadian interference-causing equipment standard requirements regulating the impulse electrical field strength of radio noise.

When starting a fuel-injected engine, don't press the accelerator before or during starting. Only use the accelerator when you have difficulty starting the engine. For more information on starting the vehicle, refer to *Starting the engine* in this chapter.



**WARNING:** Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.



**WARNING:** Do not park, idle, or drive your vehicle in dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, which can start a fire.



**WARNING:** Do not start your vehicle in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes can be toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine. See *Guarding against exhaust fumes* in this chapter for more instructions.

## Driving



**WARNING:** If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your dealer inspect your vehicle immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

### Important safety precautions

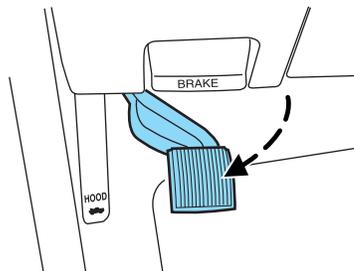
When the engine starts, the idle RPM runs faster to warm the engine. If the engine idle speed does not slow down automatically, have the vehicle checked. If your vehicle is operated in a heavy snow storm or blowing snow conditions, the engine air induction may become partially clogged with snow and/or ice. If this occurs, the engine may experience a significant reduction in power output. At the earliest opportunity, clear all the snow and/or ice away from the air induction inlet. The following starting instructions are for vehicles equipped with a gasoline engine; if your vehicle is equipped with a Diesel engine, refer to *Starting the engine* in your *6.0 and 6.4 Liter Power Stroke Direct Injection Turbo Diesel Owner's Guide Supplement*.

Before starting the vehicle:

1. Make sure all occupants buckle their safety belts. For more information on safety belts and their proper usage, refer to the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter.
2. Make sure the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.

If starting a vehicle with an automatic transmission:

1. Make sure the parking brake is set.

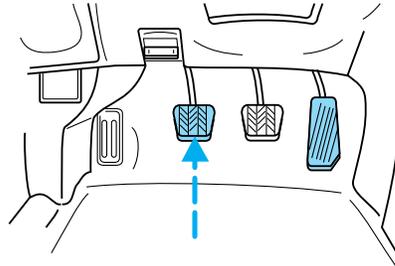


2. Make sure the gearshift is in P (Park).

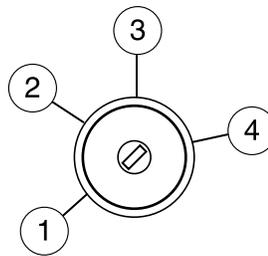
## Driving

If starting a vehicle with a manual transmission:

1. Make sure the parking brake is set.
2. Push the clutch pedal to the floor.



- Turn the key to 3 (on) without turning the key to 4 (start).



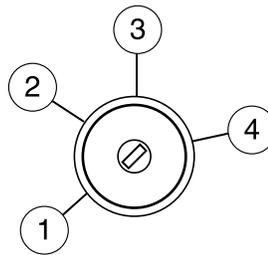
Some warning lights will briefly illuminate. See *Warning lights and chimes* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for more information regarding the warning lights.

### Starting the engine

1. Turn the key to 3 (on) without turning the key to 4 (start). If there is difficulty in turning the key, rotate the steering wheel until the key turns freely. This condition may occur when:

- the front wheels are turned
- a front wheel is against the curb

2. Turn the key to 4 (start), then release the key as soon as the engine begins cranking. Your vehicle has a computer assisted cranking system that assists in starting the engine. After releasing the key from the 4 (start) position, the engine may continue cranking for up to



## Driving

10 seconds or until the vehicle starts.

**Note:** Cranking may be stopped at any time by turning the key to the off position.

3. After idling for a few seconds, release the parking brake, apply the brake, shift into gear and drive.

**Note:** If the engine does not start on the first try, turn the key to the off position, wait 10 seconds and try Step 2 again. If the engine still fails to start, press the accelerator to the floor and try Step 2 again, keeping the accelerator on the floor until the engine begins to accelerate above cranking speeds; this will allow the engine to crank with the fuel shut off in case the engine is flooded with fuel.

### Guarding against exhaust fumes

Carbon monoxide is present in exhaust fumes. Take precautions to avoid its dangerous effects.



**WARNING:** If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your dealer inspect your vehicle immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

### Important ventilating information

If the engine is idling while the vehicle is stopped for a long period of time, open the windows at least one inch (2.5 cm) or adjust the heating or air conditioning to bring in fresh air.

### ENGINE BLOCK HEATER

An engine block heater warms the engine coolant which aids in starting and allows the heater/defroster system to respond quickly. If your vehicle is equipped with this system, your equipment includes a heater element which is installed in your engine block and a wire harness which allows the user to connect the system to a grounded 120 volt a/c electrical source. The block heater system is most effective when outdoor temperatures reach below 0°F (-18°C).



**WARNING:** Failure to follow engine block heater instructions could result in property damage or physical harm.



**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of electrical shock, do not use your heater with ungrounded electrical systems or two-pronged (cheater) adapters.

## Driving

Prior to using the engine block heater, follow these recommendations for proper and safe operation:

- For your safety, use an outdoor extension cord that is product certified by Underwriter's laboratory (UL ) or Canadian Standards Association (CSA). Use only an extension cord that can be used outdoors, in cold temperatures, and is clearly marked "Suitable for Use with Outdoor Appliances." Never use an indoor extension cord outdoors; it could result in an electric shock or fire hazard.
- Use a 16 gauge outdoor extension cord, minimum.
- Use as short an extension cord as possible.
- Do not use multiple extension cords. Instead, use one extension cord which is long enough to reach from the engine block heater cord to the outlet without stretching.
- Make certain that the extension cord is in excellent condition (not patched or spliced). Store your extension cord indoors at temperatures above 32°F (0°C). Outdoor conditions can deteriorate extension cords over a period of time.
- To reduce the risk of electrical shock, do not use your heater with ungrounded electrical systems or two pronged (cheater) adapters. Also ensure that the block heater, especially the cord, is in good condition before use.
- Make sure that when in operation, the extension cord plug /engine block heater cord plug connection is free and clear of water in order to prevent possible shock or fire.
- Be sure that areas where the vehicle is parked are clean and clear of all combustibles such as petroleum products, dust, rags, paper and similar items.
- Be sure that the engine block heater, heater cord and extension cord are solidly connected. A poor connection can cause the cord to become very hot and may result in an electrical shock or fire. Be sure to check for heat anywhere in the electrical hookup once the system has been operating for approximately a half hour.
- Finally, have the engine block heater system checked during your fall tune-up to be sure it's in good working order.

## Driving

### How to Use the Engine Block Heater

Ensure the receptacle terminals are clean and dry prior to use. To clean them, use a dry cloth.

Depending on the type of factory installed equipment, your engine block heater system may consume anywhere between 400 watts or 1000 watts of power per hour. Your factory installed block heater system does not have a thermostat; however, maximum temperature is attained after approximately 3 hours of operation. Block heater operation longer than 3 hours will not improve system performance and will unnecessarily use additional electricity.

Make sure system is unplugged and properly stowed before driving the vehicle. While not in use, make sure the protective cover seals the prongs of the engine block heater cord plug.

### BRAKES

Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake linings may be worn-out and should be inspected by an authorized dealer. If the vehicle has continuous vibration or shudder in the steering wheel while braking, the vehicle should be inspected by an authorized dealer.

Refer to *Brake system warning light* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for information on the brake system warning light.



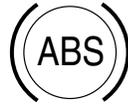
### Four-wheel anti-lock brake system (ABS) (if equipped)

Your vehicle may be equipped with an Anti-lock Braking System (ABS). This system helps you maintain steering control during emergency stops by keeping the brakes from locking. The ABS operates by detecting the onset of wheel lockup during brake application and compensates for this tendency. Noise from the ABS pump motor and brake pedal pulsation may be observed during ABS braking; any pulsation or mechanical noise you may feel or hear is normal. In addition, the ABS performs a self-check after you start the engine and begin to drive away. A brief mechanical noise may be heard during this test. This is normal.

## Driving

### **ABS warning lamp**

The ABS lamp in the instrument cluster momentarily illuminates when the ignition is turned on. If the light does not illuminate during start up, remains on or flashes, the ABS may be disabled and may need to be serviced.



Even when the ABS is disabled, normal braking is still effective. If your BRAKE warning lamp illuminates with the parking brake released, have your brake system serviced immediately by an authorized dealer.

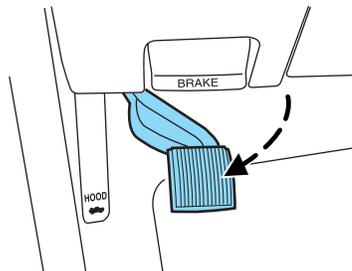


### **Using ABS**

When hard braking is required, apply continuous force on the brake pedal; do not pump the brake pedal since this will reduce the effectiveness of the ABS and will increase your vehicle's stopping distance. The ABS will be activated immediately, allowing you to retain steering control during hard braking and on slippery surfaces. However, the ABS does not decrease stopping distance.

### **Parking brake**

To set the parking brake, press the parking brake pedal down until the pedal stops.

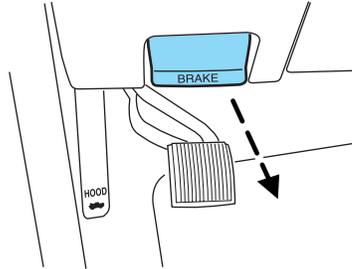


The BRAKE warning lamp in the instrument cluster illuminates and remains illuminated until the parking brake is released.



## Driving

Pull the release lever to release the parking brake. To prevent the pedal from releasing too quickly, place your left foot on the service brake pedal, then slowly pull the release lever until the pedal slowly releases. Make sure that the pedal is fully released. You may want to pull the release lever again to make sure the parking brake is fully released.



**WARNING:** Always set the parking brake fully and make sure that the gearshift is securely latched in P (Park) (automatic transmission) or in 1 (First) (manual transmission).

**Note:** If your vehicle is equipped with a manual transmission, the engine may be required to run while power accessories operate and the parking brake is set. It is recommended that wheel chocks be used during this operation.

If you're parking your vehicle on a grade or with a trailer, press and hold the brake pedal down, then set the parking brake. There may be a little vehicle movement as the parking brake sets to hold the vehicle's weight. This is normal and should be no reason for concern. If needed, press and hold the service brake pedal down, then try reapplying the parking brake. Chock the wheels if required. If the parking brake cannot hold the weight of the vehicle, the parking brake may need to be serviced or the vehicle may be overloaded.

### TRACTION CONTROL™ (IF EQUIPPED)

Your vehicle may be equipped with a Traction Control™ system. This system helps you maintain the stability and steerability of your vehicle, especially on slippery road surfaces such as snow- or ice-covered roads and gravel roads. The system will allow your vehicle to make better use of available traction in these conditions.

During Traction Control™ operation, the traction control light will illuminate and the engine will not “rev-up” when you push further on the accelerator. This is normal system behavior and should be no

reason for concern. Also, if traction control is on when the vehicle is put

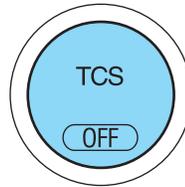


## Driving

into four-wheel drive mode (if equipped), the traction control system will be automatically disabled. Traction control operation will resume when the vehicle is placed back into two-wheel drive mode.

**!** **WARNING:** Aggressive driving in any road conditions can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of severe personal injury or property damage. The occurrence of a Traction Control™ event is an indication that at least some of the tires have exceeded their ability to grip the road; this may lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. If you experience a severe road event, SLOW DOWN.

The Traction Control™ switch, located on the instrument panel to the left of the climate control system, has an indicator light that illuminates when the system is off. The Traction Control™ system will automatically turn on every time the ignition is turned off and on. The Traction Control™ system should normally be left on.



If you should become stuck in snow or ice or on a very slippery road surface, try switching the Traction Control™ system off. This may allow excess wheel spin to “dig” the vehicle out and enable a successful “rocking” maneuver.

If a system fault is detected, the traction control active light will illuminate, the Traction Control™ button will not turn the system on or off and your vehicle should be serviced by an authorized dealer.

### STEERING

To help prevent damage to the power steering system:

- Never hold the steering wheel at its furthest turning points (until it stops) for more than three to five seconds when the engine is running.
- Do not operate the vehicle with a low power steering pump fluid level (below the MIN mark on the reservoir).
- Some noise is normal during operation. If excessive, check for low power steering pump fluid level before seeking service by your dealer.
- Heavy or uneven efforts may be caused by low power steering fluid. Check for low power steering pump fluid level before seeking service by your dealer.

## Driving

- Do not fill the power steering pump reservoir above the MAX mark on the reservoir, as this may result in leaks from the reservoir.

If the power steering system breaks down (or if the engine is turned off), you can steer the vehicle manually, but it takes more effort.

If the steering wanders or pulls, check for:

- an improperly inflated tire
- uneven tire wear
- loose or worn suspension components
- loose or worn steering components
- improper steering alignment

If any steering components are serviced or replaced, install new fasteners (many are coated with thread adhesive or have prevailing torque features which may not be re-used). Never re-use a bolt or nut. Torque fasteners to specifications in *Workshop Manual*.

A high crown in the road or high crosswinds may also make the steering seem to wander/pull.

### LIMITED-SLIP AXLE (IF EQUIPPED)

This axle provides added traction on slippery surfaces, particularly when one wheel is on a poor traction surface. Under normal conditions, the limited-slip axle functions like a standard rear axle. The axle may exhibit a slight noise or vibration in tight turns with low vehicle speed. This is normal behavior and indicates the axle is working.

### PREPARING TO DRIVE



**WARNING:** Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.



**WARNING:** In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt.

Utility vehicles and trucks have larger tires and increased ground clearance, giving the vehicle a higher center of gravity than a passenger car.

## Driving

**!** **WARNING:** Vehicles with a higher center of gravity such as utility vehicles and trucks handle differently than vehicles with a lower center of gravity. Utility vehicles and trucks are **not** designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions. Avoid sharp turns, excessive speed or abrupt maneuvers in these vehicles. Failure to drive cautiously could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

**!** **WARNING:** Loaded vehicles, with a higher center of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Do not overload your vehicle and use extra precautions, such as driving at slower speeds, avoiding abrupt steering changes and allowing for increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle. Over-loading or loading the vehicle improperly can deteriorate handling capability and contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.

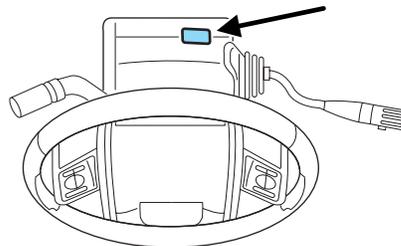
### AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION OPERATION (IF EQUIPPED)

#### Brake-shift interlock

This vehicle is equipped with a brake-shift interlock feature that prevents the gearshift lever from being moved from P (Park) when the ignition is in the 3 (on) position and the brake pedal is not depressed.

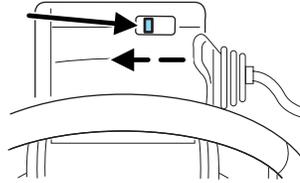
If you cannot move the gearshift lever out of the P (Park) position with the ignition in the 3 (ON) position and the brake pedal depressed:

1. Apply the parking brake. Turn the ignition key to 1 (off), then remove the key. Locate the access cover plate for the brake-shift interlock override. It is located on top of the steering column shroud.



## Driving

2. Apply the brake. Use a tool (or a small screwdriver) to pry out the access cover. Insert the tool into the access hole and slide the white override button towards the left. Move the gear shift lever into N (Neutral) while holding the white override disc towards the left.



3. Start the vehicle.

If it is necessary to use the above procedure to move the gearshift lever, it is possible that a fuse has blown or the vehicle's brakelamps are not operating properly. Refer to *Fuses and relays* in the *Roadside Emergencies* chapter.



**WARNING:** Do not drive your vehicle until you verify that the brakelamps are working.



**WARNING:** Always set the parking brake fully and make sure the gearshift is latched in P (Park). Turn the ignition to the off position and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.



**WARNING:** If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. See your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

## Driving

### Understanding the shift positions of the 5-speed automatic transmission

#### P R N D 3 2 1

This vehicle is equipped with an adaptive Transmission Shift Strategy. Adaptive Shift Strategy offers the optimal transmission operation and shift quality. When the vehicle's battery has been disconnected for any type of service or repair, the transmission will need to relearn the normal shift strategy parameters, much like having to reset your radio stations when your vehicle battery has been disconnected. The Adaptive Transmission Strategy allows the transmission to relearn these operating parameters. This learning process could take several transmission upshifts and downshifts; during this learning process, slightly firmer shifts may occur. After this learning process, normal shift feel and shift scheduling will resume.

#### **P (Park)**

This position locks the transmission and prevents the rear wheels from turning.

To put your vehicle in gear:

- Start the engine
- Depress the brake pedal
- Move the gearshift lever into the desired gear

To put your vehicle in P (Park):

- Come to a complete stop
- Move the gearshift lever and securely latch it in P (Park)



**WARNING:** Always set the parking brake fully and make sure the gearshift is latched in P (Park). Turn the ignition to the off position and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

#### **R (Reverse)**

With the gearshift lever in R (Reverse), the vehicle will move backward. Always come to a complete stop before shifting into and out of R (Reverse).

#### **N (Neutral)**

With the gearshift lever in N (Neutral), the vehicle can be started and is free to roll. Hold the brake pedal down while in this position.

## Driving

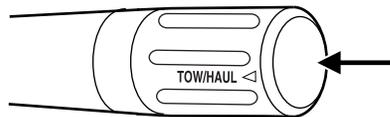
### D (Overdrive) with Tow/Haul OFF

D (Overdrive) with Tow/Haul OFF is the normal driving position for the best fuel economy. The overdrive function allows automatic upshifts and downshifts through gears one through five.

### D (Overdrive) with Tow/Haul ON

The Tow/Haul feature improves transmission operation when towing a trailer or a heavy load. All transmission gear ranges are available when using Tow/Haul.

To activate Tow/Haul, press the button on the end of the gearshift lever.



The TOW HAUL indicator light will illuminate in the instrument cluster.

**TOW  
HAUL**

Tow/Haul delays upshifts to reduce frequency of transmission shifting. Tow/Haul also provides engine braking in all forward gears when the transmission is in the D (Overdrive) position; this engine braking will slow the vehicle and assist the driver in controlling the vehicle when descending a grade. Depending on driving conditions and load conditions, the transmission may downshift, slow the vehicle and control the vehicle speed when descending a hill, without the accelerator pedal being pressed. The amount of downshift braking provided will vary based upon the amount the brake pedal is depressed.

To deactivate the Tow/Haul feature and return to normal driving mode, press the button on the end of the gearshift lever. The TOW HAUL light will no longer be illuminated.

When you shut-off and restart the engine, the transmission will automatically return to normal D (Overdrive) mode (Tow/Haul OFF).



**WARNING:** Do not use the Tow/Haul feature when driving in icy or slippery conditions as the increased engine braking can cause the rear wheels to slide and the vehicle to swing around with the possible loss of vehicle control.

## Driving

### 3 (Third)

Transmission starts and operates in third gear only.

Used for improved traction on slippery roads. Selecting 3 (Third) provides engine braking.

### 2 (Second)

Use 2 (Second) to start-up on slippery roads or to provide additional engine braking on downgrades.

### 1 (First)

- Provides maximum engine braking.
- Allows upshifts by moving gearshift lever.
- The transmission will not downshift into 1 (First) at high speeds; it will downshift to a lower gear and then shift into 1 (First) when the vehicle reaches slower speeds.

### Forced downshifts

- Allowed in D (Overdrive) or D (Drive).
- Depress the accelerator to the floor.
- Allows transmission to select an appropriate gear.

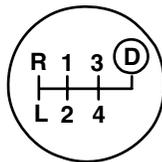
### If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow

If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow, it may be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

**Do not rock the vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature or damage to the transmission may occur.**

**Do not rock the vehicle for more than a minute or damage to the transmission and tires may occur, or the engine may overheat.**

### MANUAL TRANSMISSION OPERATION (IF EQUIPPED)



## Driving

### Using the clutch

Manual transmission vehicles have a starter interlock that prevents cranking the engine unless the clutch pedal is fully depressed.

To start the vehicle:

1. Make sure the parking brake is fully set.
2. Press the clutch pedal to the floor, then put the gearshift lever in the neutral position.
3. Start the engine.
4. Press the brake pedal and move the gearshift lever to the desired gear; 1 (First) or R (Reverse).
5. Release the parking brake, then slowly release the clutch pedal while slowly pressing on the accelerator.

During each shift, the clutch pedal must be fully depressed to the floor. Make sure the floor mat is properly positioned so it doesn't interfere with the full extension of the clutch pedal.

**Failure to fully depress the clutch pedal to the floor may cause increased shift efforts, prematurely wear transmission components or damage the transmission.**

**Do not drive with your foot resting on the clutch pedal or use the clutch pedal to hold your vehicle at a standstill while waiting on a hill. These actions will severely reduce the life of the clutch and could nullify a clutch warranty claim.**

### Recommended shift speeds

Do not overspeed the engine when going downhill or steep grades. If equipped, use the tachometer and do not allow engine speed to exceed the redline area. Operating the engine beyond the recommended speeds can cause severe engine damage.

## Driving

Shift according to the following shift speed charts:

<b>Upshifts when accelerating (recommended for best fuel economy)</b>		
<b>6-speed transmission</b>		
Shift from:	Transfer case position <sup>1</sup> (if equipped)	
	2H or 4H	4L
LO-1	5 mph (8 km/h)	2 mph (3 km/h)
1-2	14 mph (23 km/h)	6 mph (10 km/h)
2-3	22 mph (35 km/h)	9 mph (14 km/h)
3-4	30 mph (48 km/h)	12 mph (19 km/h)
4 - <b>D</b> (Overdrive)	40 mph (64 km/h)	15 mph (24 km/h)
<b>Maximum downshift speeds<sup>1</sup></b>		
<b>6-speed transmission</b>		
Shift from:	Transfer case position (if equipped) <sup>2</sup>	
	2H or 4H	4L
<b>D</b> (Overdrive) - 4	45 mph (72 km/h)	16 mph (26 km/h)
4-3	35 mph (56 km/h)	12 mph (19 km/h)
3-2	20 mph (32 km/h)	8 mph (13 km/h)
2-1	5 mph (8 km/h)	2 mph (3 km/h)
1-LO	Only shift to LO when at a stop.	
<sup>1</sup> Use 2H or 4H for 4WD equipped vehicles.		
<sup>2</sup> Downshift at lower speeds when driving on slippery surfaces.		

### Reverse

1. Make sure that your vehicle is at a complete stop before you shift into R (Reverse). Failure to do so may damage the transmission.
2. Move the gearshift lever into the neutral position and wait at least three seconds before shifting into R (Reverse).

**Note:** The gearshift lever can only be moved into R (Reverse) by moving it from left of 3 (Third) and 4 (Fourth) before shifting into R (Reverse). This is a lockout feature that protects the transmission from accidentally being shifted into R (Reverse) from D (Overdrive).

## Driving

### Parking your vehicle

1. Apply the brake and shift into the neutral position.
2. Fully apply the parking brake, then shift into 1 (First).
3. Turn the ignition off.

 **WARNING:** Do not park your vehicle in Neutral, it may move unexpectedly and injure someone. Use 1 (First) gear and set the parking brake fully.

### REVERSE SENSING SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

The Reverse Sensing System (RSS) sounds a tone to warn the driver of obstacles near the rear bumper when the R (Reverse) is selected and the vehicle is moving at speeds less than 3 mph (5 km/h). The system is not effective at speeds above 3 mph (5 km/h) and may not detect certain angular or moving objects.

 **WARNING:** To help avoid personal injury, please read and understand the limitations of the reverse sensing system as contained in this section. Reverse sensing is only an aid for some (generally large and fixed) objects when moving in reverse on a flat surface at “parking speeds”. Inclement weather may also affect the function of the RSS; this may include reduced performance or a false activation.

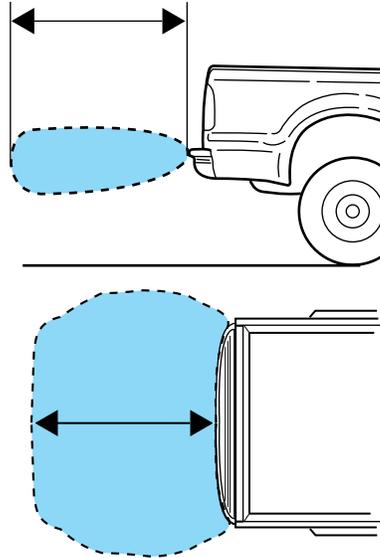
 **WARNING:** To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse and when using the RSS.

 **WARNING:** This system is not designed to prevent contact with small or moving objects. The system is designed to provide a warning to assist the driver in detecting large stationary objects to avoid damaging the vehicle. The system may not detect smaller objects, particularly those close to the ground.

 **WARNING:** Certain add-on devices such as large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks and any device that may block the normal detection zone of the RSS system may create false beeps.

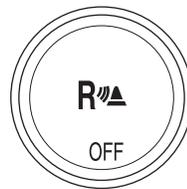
## Driving

The RSS detects obstacles up to 6 feet (2 meters) from the rear bumper with a decreased coverage area at the outer corners of the bumper, (refer to the figures for approximate zone coverage areas). As you move closer to the obstacle, the rate of the tone increases. When the obstacle is less than 10 inches (25.0 cm) away, the tone will sound continuously. If the RSS detects a stationary or receding object further than 10 inches (25.0 cm) from the side of the vehicle, the tone will sound for only three seconds. Once the system detects an object approaching, the tone will sound again.



The RSS may have reduced performance or an increased chance of false detection if the tailgate is not locked and in the upright position. If the tailgate is down, the RSS tone may be heard intermittently or continuously. The tone may also be heard if items in the truck bed protrude rearward outside the bed.

The RSS automatically turns on when the gearshift lever is placed in R (Reverse) and the ignition is on. An RSS control allows the driver to turn the RSS on and off. To turn the RSS off, the ignition must be on, and the gear selector in R (Reverse). An indicator light on the control will illuminate when the system is turned off. If the indicator light illuminates when the RSS is not turned off, it may indicate a failure in the RSS. The RSS will remain off until either the RSS control is pushed again or the ignition switch is recycled.



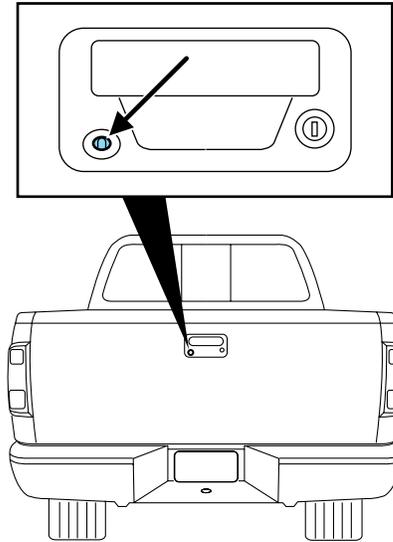
**Keep the RSS sensors (located on the rear bumper/fascia) free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt (do not clean the sensors with sharp objects). If the sensors are covered, it will affect the accuracy of the RSS.**

## Driving

**If your vehicle sustains damage to the rear bumper/fascia, leaving it misaligned or bent, the sensing zone may be altered causing inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alarms.**

### REARVIEW CAMERA SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

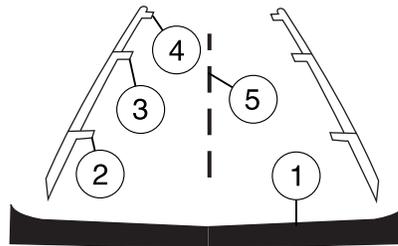
The rearview camera system, located on the tailgate, provides a video image, which appears in the rearview mirror or on the navigation screen (if equipped), of the area behind the vehicle. It adds assistance to the driver while reversing or reverse parking the vehicle.



To use the camera system, place the transmission in R (Reverse); an image will display on the left portion of the rearview mirror or on the navigation screen (if equipped). The area displayed on the screen may vary according to the vehicle orientation and/or road condition.

- (1) Rear bumper
- (2) Red zone
- (3) Yellow zone
- (4) Green zone
- (5) Centerline of vehicle

Always use caution while backing.



## Driving

Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are further away. Objects are getting closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones.

Use the side mirrors and rearview mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of the vehicle.

When shifting out of R (Reverse) and into any other gear, the image will remain on for a few seconds before it shuts off to assist in parking or trailer hookup.

If equipped with the Navigation system, after shifting out of R (Reverse) and into any gear other than P (Park), the image will remain until the vehicle speed reaches 5 mph (8 km/h), only if the rear camera delay feature is on, or until any navigation radio button is depressed.

**Note:** The default setting for the rear camera delay is off. Push the “Settings” button found on the navigation screen (if equipped) to set the rear camera delay feature to on or off.

When towing, the camera system will only see what is being towed behind the vehicle; this might not provide adequate coverage as it usually provides in normal operation and some objects might not be seen.

The camera lens for the camera system is located on the tailgate, near the tailgate handle. Keep the lens clean so the video image remains clear and undistorted. Clean the lens with a soft, lint-free cloth and non-abrasive cleaner.

**Note:** If the camera system image is not clear or seems distorted, it may be covered with water droplets, snow, mud or any other substance. If this occurs, clean the camera lens before using the camera system.



**WARNING:** The camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the rearview mirror and the side mirrors for maximum coverage.



**WARNING:** Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.



**WARNING:** Backup as slow as possible since higher speeds might limit your reaction time to stop the vehicle.

## Driving



**WARNING:** Do not use the camera system with the tailgate open.

If the back end of the vehicle is hit or damaged, then check with your authorized dealer to have your rear video system checked for proper coverage and operation.

### Night time and dark area use

At night time or in dark areas, the camera system relies on the reverse lamp lighting to produce an image. Therefore it is necessary that both reverse lamps are operating in order to get a clear image in the dark. If either of the lamps are not operating, stop using the camera system, at least in the dark, until the lamp(s) are replaced and functioning.

### Servicing

- If the image comes on while the vehicle is not in R (Reverse), have the system inspected by your authorized dealer.
- If the image is not clear, then check if there is anything covering the lens such as dirt, mud, ice, snow, etc. If the image is still not clear after cleaning, have your system inspected by your authorized dealer.

### FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE (4WD) OPERATION (IF EQUIPPED)



**WARNING:** For important information regarding safe operation of this type of vehicle, see **Preparing to drive your vehicle** in this chapter.

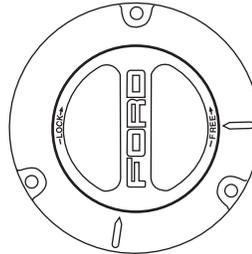
When four-wheel drive (4WD) is engaged, power is supplied to all four wheels through a transfer case. 4WD can be selected when additional driving power is desired.

4WD operation is not recommended on dry pavement. Doing so could result in difficult disengagement of the transfer case, increased tire wear and decreased fuel economy.

## Driving

### Manual Shift On Stop (MSOS) 4x4 system (if equipped)

The 4WD system is engaged or disengaged by rotating the control for both front wheel hub locks from the FREE or LOCK position, then manually engaging or disengaging the transfer case with the floor-mounted shifter. For increased fuel economy in 2WD, rotate both hub locks to the FREE position.



- **For proper operation, make sure that each hub is fully engaged and that both hub locks are set to the same position (both set to LOCK or both set to FREE). To engage LOCK, turn the hub locks completely clockwise; to disengage the hubs (FREE), turn the hub locks completely counterclockwise.**
- Some vehicles may be equipped with wheel ornaments that cover the 4x4 manual hub lock. These ornaments must be removed to access the manual hub locks.

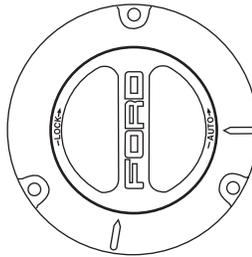
### Electronic Shift On the Fly (ESOF) 4x4 system (if equipped)

If equipped with the electronic shift 4WD System, and the instrument panel control is moved to 4X4 LOW while the vehicle is moving above 5 mph (8 km/h), the system will not engage and no damage will occur to the 4WD system. Before 4X4 LOW can be engaged, the vehicle speed must be below 5 mph (8 km/h) with the transmission in N (Neutral). If your vehicle is equipped with a manual transmission, the clutch pedal also must be depressed. The 4x4 Low indicator will flash continuously until these actions are performed by the user. This vehicle is equipped with a non-synchronous low range gearset which will not allow the transfer case to shift into 4X4 LOW if vehicle speed is above 5 mph (8 km/h). It is recommended that a shift to 4X4 LOW is performed while the vehicle is rolling at a speed below 5 mph (8 km/h).

## Driving

The 4WD system:

- provides 4x4 High engagement and disengagement while the vehicle is moving.
- is operated by a rotary control located on the instrument panel that allows you select 2WD, 4x4 High or 4x4 Low operation.
- uses auto-manual hub locks that can be engaged and disengaged automatically based on the 4x4 mode selected.
- auto-manual hub locks can be manually overridden by rotating the hub lock control from AUTO to LOCK if desired.
- **automatic operation of the hub locks is recommended**, and will increase fuel economy
- **For proper operation, make sure that each hub is fully engaged and that both hub locks are set to the same position (both set to LOCK or both set to AUTO). To engage LOCK, turn the hub locks completely clockwise; to engage AUTO, turn the hub locks completely counterclockwise.**



### 4WD system indicator lights

The 4WD system indicator lights illuminate only under the following conditions. If these lights illuminate when driving in 2WD, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

- **4x4 HIGH** - momentarily illuminates after the engine is started. Illuminates when 4H (4x4 High) is engaged. Flashes when shifting into or out of 4H (4x4 high) (ESOF systems only).
 

<b>4x4 HIGH</b>
---------------------
- **4x4 LOW** - momentarily illuminates when the ignition is turned to the ON position. Illuminates when 4L (4x4 Low) is engaged. Flashes when shifting into or out of 4L (4x4 Low) or if the range shift conditions are not met (ESOF systems only).
 

<b>4x4 LOW</b>
--------------------

## Driving

### Using a Manual Shift On Stop (MSOS) 4x4 system (if equipped)

**Note:** High shift efforts may be encountered when attempting to shift into and out of 4x4 modes. It is recommended to allow the vehicle to roll at a speed below 5 mph (8 km/h) when shifting.

**Note:** Some noise may be heard as the 4x4 system shifts or engages. This is normal. In order to reduce engagement noise, it is recommended that all shifts be performed at speeds below 5 mph (8 km/h).

**2H (2WD)** – For general on-road driving. Sends power to the rear wheels only.

**4H (4x4 High)** – For winter and off-road conditions. Sends power to front and rear wheels. **This mode is not intended for use on dry pavement.**

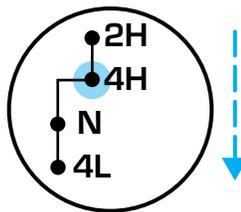
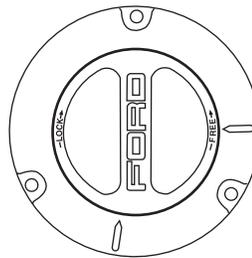
**N (Neutral)** – Only used when towing the vehicle.

**4L (4x4 Low)** – For low-speed off-road applications that require extra power such as steep grades, deep sand or pulling a boat out of the water. Sends power to front and rear wheels. **This mode is not intended for use on dry pavement.**

### Shifting from 2H (2WD) to 4H (4x4 High)

Engage the locking hubs by rotating the hub lock control from FREE to LOCK, then move the transfer case lever from 2H (2WD) to 4H (4x4 High) at a stop or a vehicle speed below 5 mph (8 km/h).

- For proper operation, make sure that both indicator arrows on the hub are aligned, and that both hubs are set to LOCK.
- Do not shift into 4H (4x4 High) with the rear wheels slipping.

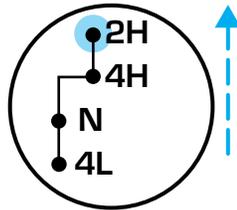


## Driving

### Shifting from 4H (4x4 High) to 2H (2WD)

Move the transfer case lever to 2H (2WD) at a stop or a vehicle speed below 5 mph (8 km/h).

With the vehicle at complete stop, disengage the locking hubs (optional) by rotating the hub lock control from LOCK to FREE.



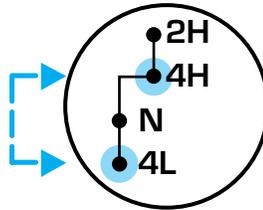
- **For proper operation, make sure that both indicator arrows on the hub are aligned, and that both hubs are set to FREE**

### Shifting from 4H (4x4 High) to 4L (4x4 Low)

1. Bring the vehicle to a stop or a speed below 5 mph (8 km/h).
2. Place the gearshift lever in N (Neutral). If the vehicle is equipped with a manual transmission, also depress the clutch pedal.

3. Move the transfer case shift lever through N (Neutral) directly to 4L (4x4 Low).

4. If the shift lever does not, or only partially moves to the 4L (4x4 Low) position, perform a shift with the transmission in N (Neutral) (or clutch pedal depressed) and the vehicle rolling at a speed below 5 mph (8 km/h). This will ensure the transfer case is fully engaged into 4L (4x4 Low).

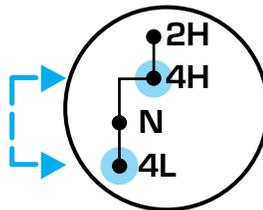


### Shifting from 4L (4x4 Low) to 4H (4x4 High) or 2H (2WD)

1. Bring the vehicle to a stop or a speed below 5 mph (8 km/h).
2. Place the gearshift lever in N (Neutral). If the vehicle is equipped with a manual transmission, also depress the clutch pedal.

3. Move the transfer case shift lever through N (Neutral) directly to 4H (4x4 High) or 2H (2WD).

4. If the transfer case **will not** engage into 4H (4x4 High) or 2H (2WD), perform a shift with the transmission in N (Neutral) (or clutch pedal depressed) and the vehicle rolling at a speed below 5 mph (8 km/h).



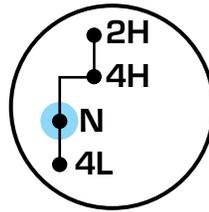
## Driving

5. If shifting to 2H (2WD) with the vehicle at a complete stop, disengage the locking hubs (optional) by rotating the hub lock control from LOCK to FREE.

### **Using the N (Neutral) position**

**The transfer case neutral position overrides the transmission and puts the vehicle in neutral regardless of transmission gearshift lever position. The vehicle can move forward or backwards.**

This position should only be used when towing the vehicle.



**WARNING:** Do not leave the vehicle unattended with the transfer case in the N (Neutral) position. Always set the parking brake fully and turn off the ignition when leaving the vehicle.

### **Using the Electronic Shift On the Fly (ESOF) 4x4 system (if equipped)**

#### **Positions of the electronic shift system**

**Note:** Some noise may be heard as the 4WD system shifts or engages. This is normal.

**2WD** – For general on-road driving. Sends power to the rear wheels only.

**4x4 HIGH** – For winter and off-road conditions. Sends power to front and rear wheels. **This mode is not intended for use on dry pavement.**

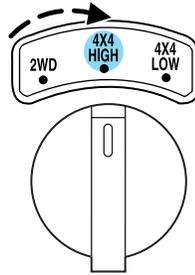
**4x4 LOW** – For low-speed off-road applications that require extra power such as steep grades, deep sand or pulling a boat out of the water. Sends power to front and rear wheels. **This mode is not intended for use on dry pavement.**

## Driving

### Shifting from 2WD to 4x4 HIGH

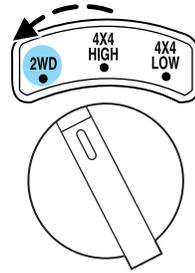
Rotate the 4x4 control to the 4x4 HIGH position at speeds up to 55 mph (88 km/h).

- **The electronic shift 4x4 system is designed to engage 4x4 HIGH when the vehicle is moving. If shifted to 4x4 HIGH while at complete stop, 4x4 may not engage and the 4x4 indicator may flash continuously until the vehicle is allowed to move at a speed above 1 mph (1.6 km/h).**
- **Do not shift into 4x4 HIGH with the rear wheels slipping.**



### Shifting from 4x4 HIGH to 2WD

Rotate the 4x4 control to 2WD at any forward speed. Disengagement of the transfer case and front hubs may be delayed due to torque bind which is caused by driving on dry hard surfaces or performing tight turns while using the 4x4 system.



- You **do not** need to operate the vehicle in R (Reverse) to disengage your front hubs, but it will eliminate any torque bind and allow the system to immediately disengage.

### Shifting from 4x4 HIGH to 4x4 LOW

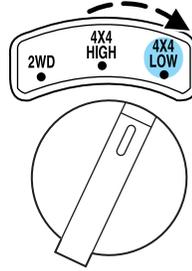
- **If the range shift requirements are not met, the 4x4 Low indicator will flash continuously.**
1. Bring the vehicle to a complete stop.
  2. Place the gearshift in N (Neutral). If the vehicle is equipped with a manual transmission, also depress the clutch pedal.

## Driving

3. Move the 4x4 control to the 4x4 LOW position.

4. Hold the shift conditions until the 4x4 LOW indicator light illuminates.

5. If the 4x4 LOW indicator light flashes continuously for more than 10 seconds, allow the vehicle to move at a speed below 5 mph (8 km/h), then repeat steps 2 through 5 while the vehicle is rolling before reporting any shift concerns to your authorized dealer.



### Shifting from 4x4 LOW to 4x4 HIGH or 2WD

- **If the range shift requirements are not met, the 4x4 Low or 4x4 High indicator will flash continuously, depending on which mode the shift began.**

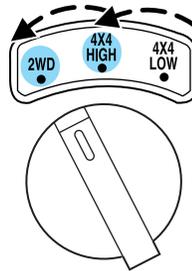
1. Bring the vehicle to a complete stop.

2. Place the gearshift in N (Neutral).

3. Move the 4x4 control to the 4x4 HIGH or 2WD position.

4. Hold the shift conditions until the 4x4 LOW indicator light shuts off.

5. If the 4x4 LOW or 4x4 High indicator light flashes continuously for more than 10 seconds, allow the vehicle to move at a speed below 5 mph (8 km/h), then repeat steps 2 through 5 while the vehicle is rolling before reporting any shift concerns to your authorized dealer.



### Driving off-road with truck and utility vehicles

4WD vehicles are specially equipped for driving on sand, snow, mud and rough terrain and have operating characteristics that are somewhat different from conventional vehicles, both on and off the road.

Your vehicle may be equipped with a long front air dam that may become damaged (due to reduced ground clearance) when taking your vehicle off-road. This air dam can either be removed or a shorter air dam can be purchased from your authorized dealer. In either case, if the air dam is to be removed (or replaced) before going off-road, refer to the *Workshop Manual* for the procedure or have your authorized dealer perform the work for you.

## Driving

### ***How your vehicle differs from other vehicles***

Truck and utility vehicles can differ from some other vehicles. Your vehicle may be higher to allow it to travel over rough terrain without getting hung up or damaging underbody components.

The differences that make your vehicle so versatile also make it handle differently than an ordinary passenger car.

Maintain steering wheel control at all times, especially in rough terrain. Since sudden changes in terrain can result in abrupt steering wheel motion, make sure you grip the steering wheel from the outside. Do not grip the spokes.

Drive cautiously to avoid vehicle damage from concealed objects such as rocks and stumps.

You should either know the terrain or examine maps of the area before driving. Map out your route before driving in the area. To maintain steering and braking control of your vehicle, you must have all four wheels on the ground and they must be rolling, not sliding or spinning.

### ***Basic operating principles***

- Do not use 4WD on dry, hard surfaced roads. Doing so will produce excessive noise, increase tire wear and may damage drive components. 4WD modes are only intended for consistently slippery or loose surfaces.
- Drive slower in strong crosswinds which can affect the normal steering characteristics of your vehicle.
- Be extremely careful when driving on pavement made slippery by loose sand, water, gravel, snow or ice.

### ***If your vehicle goes off the edge of the pavement***

- If your vehicle goes off the edge of the pavement, slow down, but avoid severe brake application, ease the vehicle back onto the pavement only after reducing your speed. Do not turn the steering wheel too sharply while returning to the road surface.
- It may be safer to stay on the apron or shoulder of the road and slow down gradually before returning to the pavement. You may lose control if you do not slow down or if you turn the steering wheel too sharply or abruptly.
- It often may be less risky to strike small objects, such as highway reflectors, with minor damage to your vehicle rather than attempt a sudden return to the pavement which could cause the vehicle to slide

## Driving

sideways out of control or roll over. Remember, your safety and the safety of others should be your primary concern.



**WARNING:** Vehicles with a higher center of gravity such as utility and four-wheel drive vehicles handle differently than vehicles with a lower center of gravity. Utility and four-wheel drive vehicles are **not** designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions. Avoid sharp turns, excessive speed and abrupt maneuvers in these vehicles. Failure to drive cautiously could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

### ***If your vehicle gets stuck***

If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow it may be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts, in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

**Do not rock the vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature or damage to the transmission may occur.**

**Do not rock the vehicle for more than a few minutes or damage to the transmission and tires may occur or the engine may overheat.**



**WARNING:** Do not spin the wheels at over 35 mph (56 km/h). The tires may fail and injure a passenger or bystander.

Refer to *Transmission fluid temperature gauge* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for transmission fluid temperature information.

### ***Emergency maneuvers***

- In an unavoidable emergency situation where a sudden sharp turn must be made, remember to avoid “over-driving” your vehicle, i.e., turn the steering wheel only as rapidly and as far as required to avoid the emergency. Excessive steering will result in less vehicle control, not more. Additionally, smooth variations of the accelerator and/or brake pedal pressure should be utilized if changes in vehicle speed are called for. Avoid abrupt steering, acceleration or braking which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover and/or personal injury. Use all available road surface to return the vehicle to a safe direction of travel.
- In the event of an emergency stop, avoid skidding the tires and do not attempt any sharp steering wheel movements.

## Driving



**WARNING:** Vehicles with a higher center of gravity such as utility and four-wheel drive vehicles handle differently than vehicles with a lower center of gravity. Utility and four-wheel drive vehicles are **not** designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions. Avoid sharp turns, excessive speed and abrupt maneuvers in these vehicles. Failure to drive cautiously could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

- If the vehicle goes from one type of surface to another (i.e., from concrete to gravel) there will be a change in the way the vehicle responds to a maneuver (steering, acceleration or braking). Again, avoid these abrupt inputs.

### Parking

On some 4WD vehicles, when the transfer case is in the N (Neutral) position, the engine and transmission are disconnected from the rest of the driveline. Therefore, the vehicle is free to roll even if the automatic transmission is in P (Park) or the manual transmission is in gear. Do not leave the vehicle unattended with the transfer case in the N (Neutral) position. Always set the parking brake fully and turn off the ignition when leaving the vehicle.



**WARNING:** Always set the parking brake fully and make sure the gearshift is latched in P (Park). Turn the ignition to the off position and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.



**WARNING:** If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. See your authorized dealer.

### 4WD Systems

4WD (when you select a 4WD mode), uses all four wheels to power the vehicle. This increases traction, enabling you to drive over terrain and road conditions that a conventional two-wheel drive vehicle cannot.

Power is supplied to all four wheels through a transfer case. On 4WD vehicles, the transfer case allows you to select 4WD when necessary. Information on transfer case operation and shifting procedures can be found in the *Driving* chapter. Information on transfer case maintenance

## Driving

can be found in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter. You should become thoroughly familiar with this information before you operate your vehicle.

### **Normal characteristics**

On some 4WD models, the initial shift from two-wheel drive to 4x4 while the vehicle is moving can cause some momentary clunk and ratcheting sounds. This is the front drivetrain coming up to speed and the automatic locking hubs engaging and is not cause for concern.

### **Sand**

When driving over sand, try to keep all four wheels on the most solid area of the trail. Avoid reducing the tire pressures but shift to a lower gear and drive steadily through the terrain. Apply the accelerator slowly and avoid spinning the wheels.

Avoid excessive speed because vehicle momentum can work against you and cause the vehicle to become stuck to the point that assistance may be required from another vehicle. Remember, you may be able to back out the way you came if you proceed with caution.

**Note:** If air is released from your tires, the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) indicator light may illuminate (if equipped).

### **Mud and water**

If you must drive through high water, drive slowly. Traction or brake capability may be limited.

When driving through water, determine the depth; avoid water higher than the bottom of the hubs (if possible) and proceed slowly. If the ignition system gets wet, the vehicle may stall.



Once through water, always try the brakes. Wet brakes do not stop the vehicle as effectively as dry brakes. Drying can be improved by moving your vehicle slowly while applying light pressure on the brake pedal.

Be cautious of sudden changes in vehicle speed or direction when you are driving in mud. Even 4WD vehicles can lose traction in slick mud. As when you are driving over sand, apply the accelerator slowly and avoid spinning your wheels. If the vehicle does slide, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of the vehicle.

If the transmission, transfer case or front axle are submerged in water, their fluids should be checked and changed, if necessary.

## Driving

### **Driving through deep water may damage the transmission.**

Refer to *Transmission temperature gauge* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for transmission fluid temperature information.

If the front or rear axle is submerged in water, the axle lubricant should be replaced.

After driving through mud, clean off residue stuck to rotating driveshafts and tires. Excess mud stuck on tires and rotating driveshafts causes an imbalance that could damage drive components.

“Tread Lightly” is an educational program designed to increase public awareness of land-use regulations and responsibilities in our nation's wilderness areas. Ford Motor



Company joins the U.S. Forest Service and the Bureau of Land Management in encouraging you to help preserve our national forest and other public and private lands by “treading lightly.”

### ***Driving on hilly or sloping terrain***

Although natural obstacles may make it necessary to travel diagonally up or down a hill or steep incline, you should always try to drive straight up or straight down. **Avoid driving crosswise or turning on steep slopes or hills.** A danger lies in losing traction, slipping sideways and possibly rolling over. Whenever driving on a hill, determine beforehand the route you will use. Do not drive over the crest of a hill without seeing what conditions are on the other side. Do not drive in reverse over a hill without the aid of an observer.

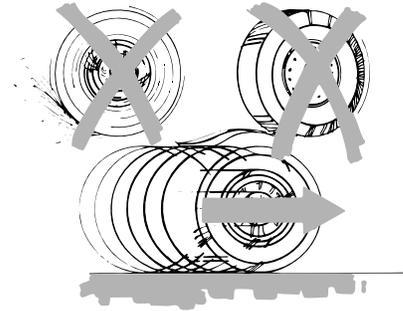
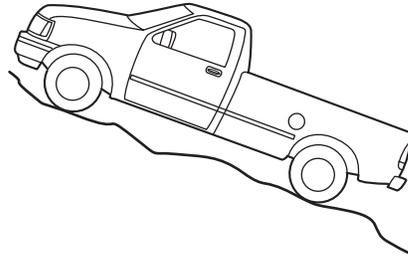
## Driving

When climbing a steep slope or hill, start in a lower gear rather than downshifting to a lower gear from a higher gear once the ascent has started. This reduces strain on the engine and the possibility of stalling.

If you do stall out, do not try to turn around because you might roll over. It is better to back down to a safe location.

Apply just enough power to the wheels to climb the hill. Too much power will cause the tires to slip, spin or lose traction, resulting in loss of vehicle control.

Descend a hill in the same gear you would use to climb up the hill to avoid excessive brake application and brake overheating. Do not descend in neutral; instead, manually shift to a lower gear. Your vehicle has anti-lock brakes, apply the brakes steadily. Do not “pump” the brakes.



### ***Driving on snow and ice***

4WD vehicles have advantages over 2WD vehicles in snow and ice but can skid like any other vehicle.

Should you start to slide while driving on snowy or icy roads, turn the steering wheel in the direction of the slide until you regain control.

Avoid sudden applications of power and quick changes of direction on snow and ice. Apply the accelerator slowly and steadily when starting from a full stop.

Avoid sudden braking as well. Although a 4WD vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in snow and ice, it won't stop any faster, because as in other vehicles, braking occurs at all four wheels. Do not become overconfident as to road conditions.

## Driving

Make sure you allow sufficient distance between you and other vehicles for stopping. Drive slower than usual and consider using one of the lower gears. In emergency stopping situations, avoid locking of the wheels. Use a “squeeze” technique, push on the brake pedal with a steadily increasing force which allows the wheels to brake yet continue to roll so that you may steer in the direction you want to travel. If you lock the wheels, release the brake pedal and repeat the squeeze technique. If your vehicle is equipped with a Four Wheel Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS), apply the brake steadily. Do not “pump” the brakes. Refer to the *Brakes* section of this chapter for additional information on the operation of the anti-lock brake system.

Never drive with chains on the front tires of 4WD vehicles without also putting them on the rear tires. This could cause the rear to slide and swing around during braking.

### **Maintenance and Modifications**

The suspension and steering systems on your vehicle have been designed and tested to provide predictable performance whether loaded or empty and durable load carrying capability. For this reason, Ford Motor Company strongly recommends that you do not make modifications such as adding or removing parts (such as lift kits or stabilizer bars) or by using replacement parts not equivalent to the original factory equipment.

Any modifications to a vehicle that raise the center of gravity can make it more likely the vehicle will roll over as a result of a loss of control. Ford Motor Company recommends that caution be used with any vehicle equipped with a high load or device (such as ladder racks or pickup box cover).

Failure to maintain your vehicle properly may void the warranty, increase your repair cost, reduce vehicle performance and operational capabilities and adversely affect driver and passenger safety. Frequent inspection of vehicle chassis components is recommended if the vehicle is subjected to heavy off-road usage.

## Driving

### VEHICLE USED AS A STATIONARY POWER SOURCE

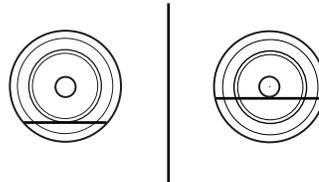
Auxiliary equipment called power take-off, or PTO, is often added to the engine or transmission to operate utility equipment. Examples include a wheel-lift for tow trucks, cranes, tools for construction or tire service, and pumping fluids. PTO applications draw auxiliary horsepower from the powertrain, often while the vehicle is stationary. In this condition, there is limited cooling air flow through the radiator and around the vehicle that normally occurs when a vehicle is moving. The aftermarket PTO system installer, having the most knowledge of the final application, is responsible for determining whether additional chassis heat protection or powertrain cooling is required, and alerting the user to the safe and proper operation.

Ford Super Duty Vehicles are qualified for use as a stationary power source, within limits detailed in the *Ford Truck Body Builders Layout Book*, found at [www.fleet.ford.com/truckbbas](http://www.fleet.ford.com/truckbbas), and through the Ford Truck Body Builders Advisory Service.

Gas engine vehicles are qualified for up to 10 minutes of continuous operation as a stationary power source, due to the potential for the normal venting of fuel vapors. For stationary PTO operation of extended duration (beyond 10 minutes), diesel engine is recommended. Further consult your aftermarket PTO installer, since the duration of operation limit for the aftermarket PTO may be less than the vehicle is capable of.

### DRIVING THROUGH WATER

If driving through deep or standing water is unavoidable, proceed very slowly especially when the depth is not known. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the wheel rims (for cars) or the bottom of the hubs (for trucks).



When driving through water, traction or brake capability may be limited. Also, water may enter your engine's air intake and severely damage your engine or your vehicle may stall. **Driving through deep water where the transmission vent tube is submerged may allow water into the transmission and cause internal transmission damage.**

**Once through the water, always dry the brakes by moving your vehicle slowly while applying light pressure on the brake pedal.**

Wet brakes do not stop the vehicle as quickly as dry brakes.

## Driving

### SNOWPLOWING

Ford recommends that the Super Duty F-Series used for snow removal include the Snow Plow Package Option.

#### Installing the snowplow

Weight limits and guidelines for selecting and installing the snowplow can be found in the *Ford Truck Body Builders Layout Book*, Snowplow section, found at [www.fleet.ford.com/truckbbas](http://www.fleet.ford.com/truckbbas). A typical installation affects the following:

- Certification to government safety laws such as occupant protection and airbag deployment, braking, and lighting. Look for an “Alterer’s Label” on the vehicle from the snowplow installer certifying that the installation meets all applicable Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards (FMVSS).
- The Total Accessory Reserve Capacity (TARC) is shown on the lower right side of the vehicle’s Safety Compliance Certification Label. This applies to Ford-completed vehicles of 10,000 lb. (4,536 kg) GVWR or less. This is the weight of permanently-attached auxiliary equipment, such as snowplow frame-mounting hardware, that can be added to the vehicle and satisfy Ford compliance certification to FMVSS. Exceeding this weight may require the auxiliary equipment installer additional safety certification responsibility. The Front Accessory Reserve Capacity (FARC) is added for customer convenience.
- Rear ballast weight behind the rear axle may be required to prevent exceeding the FGAWR, and provide front-to-rear weight balance for proper braking and steering.
- Front wheel toe may require re-adjustment to prevent premature uneven tire wear. Specifications are found in the Ford *Workshop Manual*.
- Headlight aim may require re-adjustment.
- The tire air pressures recommended for general driving are found on the vehicle’s Safety Certification Label. The maximum cold inflation pressure for the tire and associated load rating is imprinted on the tire sidewall. Tire air pressure may require re-adjustment within these pressure limits to accommodate the additional weight of the snowplow installation.
- Federal and some local regulations require additional exterior lamps for snowplow-equipped vehicles. Consult your authorized dealer for additional information.

312

## Driving

- The snow plow prep package includes a unique powertrain control strategy which is required for diesel engine cooling during highway driving with the snowplow raised.

### Operating the vehicle with the snowplow attached

Do not use your vehicle for snow removal until it has been driven at least 500 miles (800 km).

The attached snowplow blade restricts airflow to the radiator, and may cause the engine to run at a higher temperature: Attention to engine temperature is especially important when outside temperatures are above freezing. Angle the blade to maximize airflow to the radiator and monitor engine temperature to determine whether a left or right angle provides the best performance.

Follow the severe duty schedule in your *scheduled maintenance information* for engine oil and transmission fluid change intervals.

### Snowplowing with your airbag-equipped vehicle

Your vehicle is equipped with a driver and passenger airbag Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) The SRS is designed to activate in certain frontal and offset frontal collisions when the vehicle sustains sufficient longitudinal deceleration.

Careless or high speed driving while plowing snow which results in sufficient vehicle decelerations can deploy the airbag. Such driving also increases the risk of accidents.



**WARNING:** All occupants of the vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their safety belts, even when an air bag supplemental restraint system (SRS) is provided.

Never remove or defeat the “tripping mechanisms” designed into the snow removal equipment by its manufacturer. Doing so may cause damage to the vehicle and the snow removal equipment as well as possible airbag deployment.



**WARNING:** Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the air bag supplemental restraint system (SRS) or its fuses. See your Ford or Lincoln Mercury dealer.

## Driving



**WARNING:** Additional equipment such as snowplow equipment may effect the performance of the airbag sensors increasing the risk of injury. Please refer to the *Body Builders Layout Book* for instructions about the appropriate installation of additional equipment.

### **Transmission operation while plowing**

Operate the vehicle with the automatic transmission gearshift lever in the D (Overdrive) position and Tow/Haul off.

- Shift transfer case to 4x4 LOW (4WD Low) when plowing in small areas at speeds below 5 mph (8 km/h).
- Shift transfer case to 4x4 HIGH (4WD High) when plowing larger areas or light snow at higher speeds. Do not exceed 15 mph (24 km/h).
- Do not shift the transmission from a forward gear to R (Reverse) until the engine is at idle and the wheels are stopped.
- If the vehicle is stuck, shift the transmission in a steady motion between forward and reverse gears. Do not rock the vehicle for more than a few minutes. The transmission and tires may be damaged or the engine can overheat.

**Do not rock the vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature. Do not rock the vehicle for more than a minute. The transmission and tires may be damaged or the engine may overheat.**

Refer to *Transmission temperature gauge* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for transmission fluid temperature information.



**WARNING:** Do not spin the wheels at over 35 mph (55 km/h). The tires may fail and injure a passenger or bystander.

## Roadside Emergencies

### ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE

#### Getting roadside assistance

To fully assist you should you have a vehicle concern, Ford Motor Company offers a complimentary roadside assistance program. This program is separate from the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. The service is available:

- 24-hours, seven days a week
- for the coverage period listed on the Roadside Assistance Card included in your Owner Guide portfolio.

Roadside assistance will cover:

- a flat tire change with a good spare (except vehicles that have been supplied with a tire inflation kit)
- battery jump start
- lock-out assistance (key replacement cost is the customer's responsibility)
- fuel delivery – Independent Service Contractors, if not prohibited by state, local or municipal law shall deliver up to 2.0 gallons (7.5L) of gasoline or 5 gallons (18.9L) of diesel fuel to a disabled vehicle. Fuel delivery service is limited to two no-charge occurrences within a 12-month period.
- winch out – available within 100 feet (30.5 meters) of a paved or county maintained road, no recoveries.
- towing – Ford/Mercury/Lincoln eligible vehicle towed to an authorized dealer within 35 miles (56.3 km) of the disablement location or to the nearest authorized dealer. If a member requests to be towed to an authorized dealer more than 35 miles (56.3 km) from the disablement location, the member shall be responsible for any mileage costs in excess of 35 miles (56.3 km).

Trailers shall be covered up to \$200 if the disabled eligible vehicle requires service at the nearest authorized dealer. If the trailer is disabled, but the towing vehicle is operational, the trailer does not qualify for any roadside services.

#### **Canadian customers refer to your Customer Information Guide for information on:**

- coverage period
- exact fuel amounts

## Roadside Emergencies

- towing of your disabled vehicle
- emergency travel expense reimbursement
- travel planning benefits

In Canada, for uninterrupted Roadside Assistance coverage, you may purchase extended coverage prior to your Basic Warranty's Roadside Assistance expiring. For more information and enrollment, contact 1-877-294-2582 or visit our website at [www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca).

### Using roadside assistance

Complete the roadside assistance identification card and place it in your wallet for quick reference. In the United States, this card is found in the Owner Guide portfolio in the glove compartment. In Canada, the card is found in the *Customer Information Guide* in the glove compartment.

U.S. Ford, Mercury and Lincoln vehicle customers who require Roadside Assistance, call 1-800-241-3673.

Canadian customers who require roadside assistance, call 1-800-665-2006.

If you need to arrange roadside assistance for yourself, Ford Motor Company will reimburse a reasonable amount for towing to the nearest dealership within 35 miles. To obtain reimbursement information, U.S. Ford, Mercury and Lincoln vehicle customers call 1-800-241-3673. Customers will be asked to submit their original receipts.

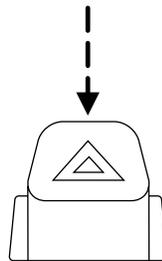
Canadian customers who need to obtain reimbursement information, call 1-800-665-2006.

### HAZARD FLASHER CONTROL

The hazard flasher is located on the steering column, just behind the steering wheel. The hazard flashers will operate when the ignition is in any position or if the key is not in the ignition.

Push in the flasher control and all front and rear direction signals will flash. Press the flasher control again to turn them off. Use it when your vehicle is disabled and is creating a safety hazard for other motorists.

**Note:** With extended use, the flasher may run down your battery.



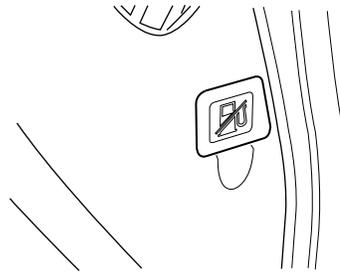
## Roadside Emergencies

### FUEL PUMP SHUT-OFF SWITCH

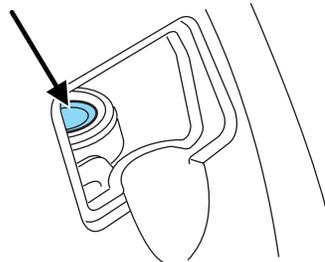
This device stops the electric fuel pump from sending fuel to the engine when your vehicle has had a substantial jolt.

After an accident, if the engine cranks but does not start, this switch may have been activated.

This switch is located on the passenger's side of the instrument panel. Open the front passenger door and remove the small access panel



The switch has a red button on top of it.



To reset the switch:

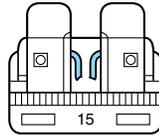
1. Turn the ignition off.
2. Check the fuel system for leaks.
3. If no leaks are apparent, reset the switch by pushing in on the reset button.
4. Turn the ignition on.
5. Wait a few seconds and return the key to off.
6. Make another check for leaks.

## Roadside Emergencies

### FUSES AND RELAYS

#### Fuses

If electrical components in the vehicle are not working, a fuse may have blown. Blown fuses are identified by a broken wire within the fuse. Check the appropriate fuses before replacing any electrical components.



**Note:** Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.

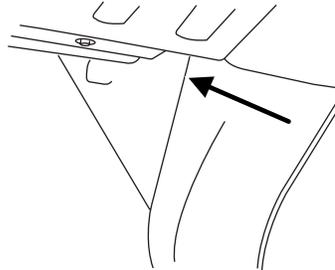
#### Standard fuse amperage rating and color

COLOR					
Fuse rating	Mini fuses	Standard fuses	Maxi fuses	Cartridge maxi fuses	Fuse link cartridge
2A	Grey	Grey	—	—	—
3A	Violet	Violet	—	—	—
4A	Pink	Pink	—	—	—
5A	Tan	Tan	—	—	—
7.5A	Brown	Brown	—	—	—
10A	Red	Red	—	—	—
15A	Blue	Blue	—	—	—
20A	Yellow	Yellow	Yellow	Blue	Blue
25A	Natural	Natural	—	—	—
30A	Green	Green	Green	Pink	Pink
40A	—	—	Orange	Green	Green
50A	—	—	Red	Red	Red
60A	—	—	Blue	—	Yellow
70A	—	—	Tan	—	Brown
80A	—	—	Natural	—	Black

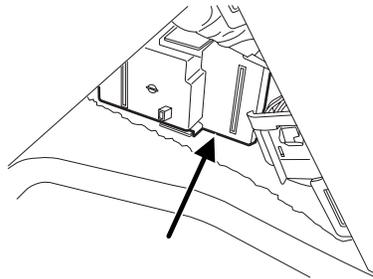
## Roadside Emergencies

### Passenger compartment fuse panel

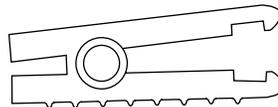
The fuse panel is located in the passenger's footwell. Remove the panel cover to access the fuses.



To remove the fuse panel cover, pull the panel toward you. When the clips of the panel disengage, let the panel fall easily.



To remove a fuse use the fuse puller tool provided on the fuse panel cover.

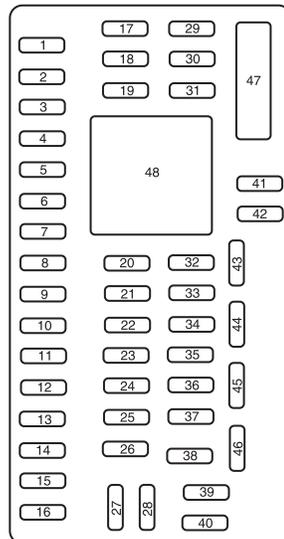


**WARNING:** Always disconnect the battery before servicing high current fuses.

### Always replace the cover to the passenger compartment fuse panel before reconnecting the battery.

If the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, refer to the *Battery* section of the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

## Roadside Emergencies



The fuses are coded as follows.

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Circuits
1	30A	Not used (spare)
2	15A	Not used (spare)
3	15A	Family Entertainment System (FES)
4	30A	Not used (spare)
5	10A	Keypad illumination, Brake-Shift Interlock (BSI), SPBJB
6	20A	Turn signals
7	10A	Left headlamp (Low beam)
8	10A	Right headlamp (Low beam)
9	15A	Interior lighting, Lighted running boards
10	15A	Cargo lamp, Puddle lamp, Switch backlight

## Roadside Emergencies

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Circuits
11	10A	Not used (spare)
12	7.5A	Power mirror switch, Driver power seat (Memory)
13	5A	Not used (spare)
14	10A	Upfitter relay #3 feed
15	10A	Climate control head
16	15A	Upfitter Relay #4 Feed
17	20A	All lock motor feeds
18	20A	Heated seat relay feed
19	25A	Not used (spare)
20	15A	Adjustable pedals, Datalink
21	15A	Fog lamp relay feed, Cornering lamps
22	15A	Park lamp relay feed
23	15A	High beam headlight relay feed
24	20A	Horn relay feed
25	10A	Power telescoping mirror switch Demand lamps - underhood and illuminated visor (battery saver)
26	10A	Cluster
27	20A	Ignition switch feed, Passenger compartment fuses 28, 42, 43, 44, and 45, Engine compartment starter relay coil #57 (Diesel engine), Accessory shutoff control module (if equipped) (Diesel engine), Engine compartment starter relay diode (gasoline engines)
28	5A	Radio
29	5A	Not used (spare)
30	5A	Not used (spare)
31	10A	Not used (spare)
32	10A	Restraints Control Module (RCM), Passenger Airbag Deactivation Indicator

## Roadside Emergencies

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Circuits
33	10A	Trailer tow brake controller, Trailer tow battery charge relay coil
34	5A	Not used (spare)
35	10A	Reverse Sensing System (RSS), 4x4 module, 4x4 solenoid, Traction control switch, Tow/Haul switch (Diesel engine)
36	5A	Passive Anti-Theft System (PATS) transceiver, Cluster control
37	10A	Dual automatic or Manual climate control, PTC control
38	20A	Subwoofer
39	20A	Radio, Navigation radio and amplifier
40	20A	4x4 module, Satellite radio module, SYNC
41	15A	Radio, Electrochromatic rear view mirror, Lock switch illumination
42	10A	Heated seat relay coil, Upfitter switch relay coils, Heated mirror relay coil
43	10A	Fuel tank selector switch, 4x4 module
44	10A	Run customer access feed (PTO)
45	5A	Front wiper logic, Blower motor relay coil
46	7.5A	Not used (spare)
47	30A Circuit Breaker	Power windows, Moon roof, Power Sliding Backlite
48	Relay	Delayed accessory

### Power distribution box

The power distribution box is located in the engine compartment. The power distribution box contains high-current fuses that protect your vehicle's main electrical systems from overloads.



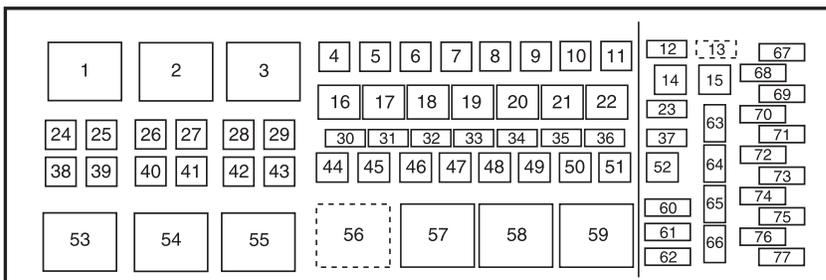
**WARNING:** Always disconnect the battery before servicing high current fuses.

## Roadside Emergencies



**WARNING:** To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the Power Distribution Box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.

If the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, refer to the *Battery* section of the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.



The high-current fuses are coded as follows:

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Circuits
1	Relay	Blower motor/Variable blower control (Dual Zone Climate Control)
2	Relay	Electronic Shift-on-the-Fly (ESOF) Lo-Hi
3	Relay	Heater mirror
4	—	Not used
5	30A*	Trailer Brake Controller (TBC)
6	40A*	ABS module (Pump)
7	30A*	Upfitter auxiliary switch #1
8	30A*	Upfitter auxiliary switch #2
9	40A*	ABS module (Coil)
10	20A*	Cigar lighter
11	20A*	Instrument panel power point
12	15A**	Brake On/Off (BOO) relay feed

## Roadside Emergencies

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Circuits
13	5A**	Brake switch, Brake switch relay coil, SJB module, 4x4 module
14	—	Not used
15	—	Not used
16	Relay	A/C clutch
17	Relay	Wipers
18	Relay	Fuel Pump Driver Module (FPDM), Fuel injectors (Gasoline engines), Diesel Fuel Control Module (DFCM) (Diesel engine)
19	Relay	Back-up lamps, Reverse Sensing System (RSS), Engine compartment fuse 63
20	Relay	Trailer stop/turn (Left)
21	Relay	Trailer stop/turn (Right)
22	Relay	Stop lamps, Center High-Mounted Stop Lamp (CHMSL), TBC, Customer access
23	15A**	Heater mirror, Heated spotted mirror
24	40A*	Blower motor relay
25	—	Not used
26	30A*	ESOF relay lo-hi
27	50A*	Glow Plug Control Module (GPCM) #1 (Diesel engine only)
28	20A*	Heated mirror relay
29	30A*	Passenger power seat
30	10A**	A/C clutch relay
31	15A**	Power fold mirror relay
32	20A**	Fuel pump relay
33	20A**	Back-up lamp relay
34	25A**	Trailer stop/turn relay
35	5A**	ESOF relay coils

## Roadside Emergencies

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Circuits
36	10A**	<b>Gasoline engines:</b> Powertrain Control Module (PCM) keep alive power, Canister vent <b>Diesel engine:</b> Engine Control Module (ECM) keep alive power
37	10A**	Transmission Control Module (TCM) (Diesel engine only)
38	—	Not used
39	50A*	ECM power (Diesel engine)
40	30A*	Starter relay
41	20A*	Power point (Center console - Front)
42	30A*	Trailer park lamp relay
43	20A*	Power point (Center console - Rear)
44	30A*	Trailer battery charge relay
45	30A*	Driver power seat or Memory module
46	40A*	Run/Start relay
47	50A*	GPCM #2 (Diesel engine only)
48	30A*	ESOF relay hi-lo
49	30A*	Wiper motor
50	30A*	PCM relay coil, PCM relay (Gasoline engines only)
51	—	Not used
52	—	Not used
53	Relay	PCM power bus (Fuses 68, 70, 72, 74, 76) (Diesel engine only)
54	Relay	Starter solenoid
55	Relay	Trailer tow park lamps
56	Relay	Trailer tow battery charge
57	Relay	Power Distribution Box (PDB) bus (fuses 67, 69, 71, 73, 75, 77) SJB Run /Start bus (Fuses 29–37, 46)
58	Relay	ESOF hi-lo

## Roadside Emergencies

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Circuits
59	Relay	PCM power bus (Fuses 68, 70, 72, 74, 76) (Gasoline engines only)
60	Diode	One touch start (OTIS)
61	Diode	A/C clutch
62	Diode	Fuel pump
63	15A**	Trailer tow back-up lamps
64	5A**	Mirror marker lamps
65	—	Not used
66	—	Not used
67	—	Not used
68	—	Not used
69	—	Not used
70	10A**	<b>Gasoline engines:</b> A/C clutch relay coil, Refrigerant Containment Switch, Heated PCV <b>Diesel engine:</b> A/C clutch relay coil, Clutch switch, Fuel pump cooler, A/C cycle pressure switch
71	5A**	Fuel pump relay diode, PCM/ECM Run/Start power
72	15A**	<b>Gasoline engines:</b> Ignition coils <b>Diesel engine:</b> Engine TCM
73	2A**	Reverse Camera System (RCS)
74	20A**	<b>Gasoline engines:</b> VPWR: HEGO, CMS, MAFS, EVMV, CMCV, VCT, IMTV <b>Diesel engine:</b> VPWR: Engine loads
75	5A**	Back-up relay coil power
76	20A**	<b>Gasoline engines:</b> VPWR: PCM <b>Diesel engine:</b> VPWR: ECM
77	10A**	ABS module logic

\* Cartridge fuses \*\* Mini fuses

## Roadside Emergencies

### CHANGING A FLAT TIRE

If you get a flat tire while driving:

- do not brake heavily.
- gradually decrease the vehicle's speed.
- hold the steering wheel firmly.
- slowly move to a safe place on the side of the road.

Your vehicle may be equipped with a conventional spare tire that is different in one or more of the following: type, brand, size, speed rating and tread design. If this is the case, this dissimilar spare tire is still rated for your vehicle loads (GAWR and GVWR). Temporary spare tires are not equipped with Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) sensors if the system is present.



**WARNING:** The use of tire sealant may damage your Tire Pressure Monitoring System (if equipped) and should not be used.



**WARNING:** If your vehicle is equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitoring System, refer to *Tire Pressure Monitoring System* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information. If the tire pressure monitor sensor becomes damaged, it will no longer function.

### Dissimilar spare tire/wheel information



**WARNING:** Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.

If you have a dissimilar spare tire/wheel, then it is intended for temporary use only. This means that if you need to use it, you should replace it as soon as possible with a road tire/wheel that is the same size and type as the road tires and wheels that were originally provided by Ford. If the dissimilar spare tire or wheel is damaged, it should be replaced rather than repaired.

A dissimilar spare tire/wheel is defined as a spare tire and/or wheel that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels and can be one of three types:

1. **T-type mini-spare:** This spare tire begins with the letter "T" for tire size and may have "Temporary Use Only" molded in the sidewall

## Roadside Emergencies

2. **Full-size dissimilar spare with label on wheel:** This spare tire has a label on the wheel that states: "THIS TIRE AND WHEEL FOR TEMPORARY USE ONLY"

When driving with one of the dissimilar spare tires listed above, **do not:**

- Exceed 50 mph (80 km/h)
- Load the vehicle beyond maximum vehicle load rating listed on the Safety Compliance Label
- Use snow chains on the end of the vehicle with the dissimilar spare tire
- Use more than one dissimilar spare tire at a time
- Use commercial car washing equipment
- Try to repair the dissimilar spare tire

Use of one of the dissimilar spare tires listed above at any one wheel location can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance
- Comfort and noise
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs
- Winter weather driving capability
- Wet weather driving capability

It is not recommended that the vehicle be operated in 4WD modes with a temporary emergency spare tire. If 4WD operation is necessary, do not operate above speeds of 10 mph (16 km/h) or for distances above 50 miles (80 km).

### 3. **Full-size dissimilar spare without label on wheel**

When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare tire/wheel, **do not:**

- Exceed 70 mph (113 km/h)
- Use more than one dissimilar spare tire/wheel at a time
- Use commercial car washing equipment
- Use snow chains on the end of the vehicle with the dissimilar spare tire/wheel

## Roadside Emergencies

The usage of a full-size dissimilar spare tire/wheel can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance
- Comfort and noise
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs
- Winter weather driving capability
- Wet weather driving capability
- All-Wheel driving capability (if applicable)
- Load leveling adjustment (if applicable)

When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare tire/wheel additional caution should be given to:

- Towing a trailer
- Driving vehicles equipped with a camper body
- Driving vehicles with a load on the cargo rack

Drive cautiously when using a full-size dissimilar spare tire/wheel and seek service as soon as possible.

### Spare tire information

**Note:** If your vehicle is equipped the tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS), the system indicator light will illuminate when the spare is in use. To restore the full functionality of the TPMS system, all road wheels equipped with the tire pressure monitoring sensors must be mounted on the vehicle.

If your vehicle is equipped with TPMS, have a flat tire serviced by an authorized dealer in order to prevent damage to the TPMS sensor; refer to *Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)* in the *Tires, Wheel and Loading* chapter. Replace the spare tire with the road tire as soon as possible.

### T-Type/Mini-Spare Tire Information (Harley Davidson only)

Your vehicle may be equipped with a temporary spare tire. This spare tire is considered “temporary”. Replace the temporary spare with a tire of the same size, speed rating, and load carrying capacity as the other road tires as soon as possible.

When driving with the temporary spare tire **do not:**

- Exceed 50 mph (80 km/h)
- Load the vehicle beyond maximum vehicle load rating listed on the Safety Compliance Label

## Roadside Emergencies

- Tow a trailer
- Use snow chains on the end of the vehicle with the temporary spare tire
- Use more than one temporary spare tire at a time

Use of a temporary spare tire at any one wheel location can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance
- Comfort and noise
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs
- Winter weather driving capability
- Wet weather driving capability

### Stopping and securing the vehicle

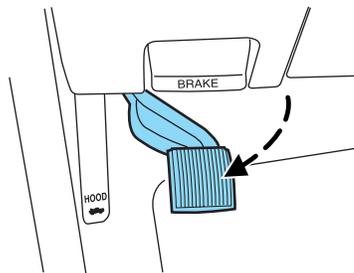


**WARNING:** To help prevent the vehicle from moving when you change a tire, be sure the parking brake is set, then block (in both directions) the wheel that is diagonally opposite to the tire being changed.

Refer to the instruction sheet (located in the glove box) for detailed tire change instructions.

Park on a level surface, activate hazard flashers and set the parking brake.

- Automatic transmission: Place gearshift lever in P (Park).
- Manual transmission: Place gearshift lever in R (Reverse).
- Electronic Shift-On-the-Fly (ESOF) 4x4: Place transfer case in 4x4 HIGH or 4x4 LOW before turning off the engine.
- Manual shift transfer case 4x4: Place transfer case in 4H or 4L.



## Roadside Emergencies

### Location of the spare tire and tools

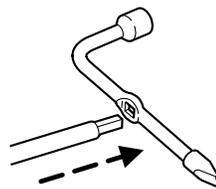
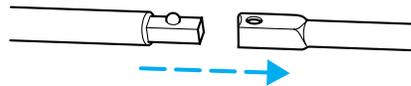
If your vehicle is equipped with a spare tire, jack and associated tools, refer to the following table for their locations:

Tool	Location
Spare tire (pick-up trucks only)	Under the vehicle, just forward of the rear bumper
Jack	Regular cab and Crew Cab: Fastened to floor pan behind rearmost seat on passenger side SuperCab: Under rear bench seat on passenger side
Jack handle, lug wrench, lug wrench extension (only available on Dual Rear Wheel [DRW] vehicles) and wheel chock (only available on Single Rear Wheel [SRW] vehicles equipped with a diesel engine)	Regular cab: Fastened to floor behind driver seat SuperCab: Fastened to floor under rear seat Crew Cab: Fastened to floor behind rear seat at driver side
Key and spare tire lock	In the glove box
Jack instruction sheet	Under the jack tool kit

### Removing the spare tire (with spare tire carrier only)

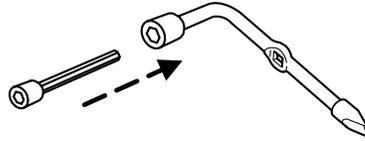
1. The following tools are required to remove the spare tire:

- one handle extension and two typical extensions. To assemble, align button with hole and slide parts together. To disconnect, depress button and pull apart.
- one wheel nut wrench. Slide over square end of jack handle.

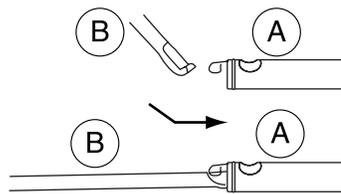


## Roadside Emergencies

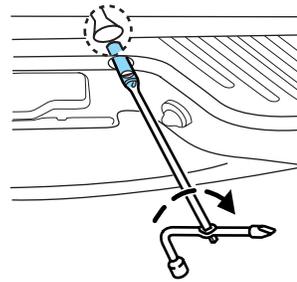
- **Vehicles equipped with dual rear wheels**, insert the lug wrench extension into the lug wrench to reach the lug nuts.



2. Attach the spare tire lock key (A) to the jack handle (B).



3. Fully insert the jack handle (with one extension) through the bumper hole and into the guide tube. The key and lock will engage with a slight push and counterclockwise turn. Some resistance will be felt when turning the jack handle assembly.



4. Turn the handle counterclockwise and lower the spare tire until you can slide the tire rearward and the cable is slack.
5. Remove the retainer through the center of the wheel.

### Tire change procedure



**WARNING:** When one of the rear wheels is off the ground, the transmission alone will not prevent the vehicle from moving or slipping off the jack, even if the transmission is in P (Park) (automatic transmission) or R (Reverse) (manual transmission). To help prevent the vehicle from moving when you change the tire, be sure that the parking brake is set and the diagonally opposite wheel is blocked.

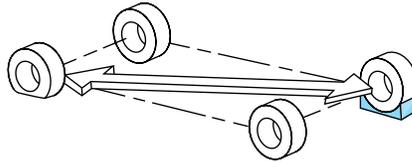
## Roadside Emergencies

**WARNING:** To prevent the vehicle from moving when you change a tire, be sure the parking brake is set, then block (in both directions) the wheel that is diagonally opposite (other side and end of the vehicle) to the tire being changed.

**WARNING:** If the vehicle slips off the jack, you or someone else could be seriously injured.

**WARNING:** Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.

1. Turn engine off and block the wheel that is diagonally opposite of the flat tire using the wheel chock, if equipped. **If the vehicle is a 4x4**, lock the manual hub on the wheel.



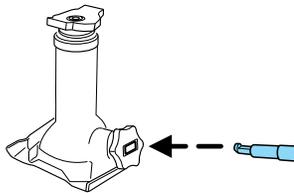
2. Remove the jack, jack handle, lug wrench and spare tire from the stowage locations.

3. Use the tip of the lug wrench to remove any wheel trim.

4. Loosen each wheel lug nut one-half turn counterclockwise but do not remove them until the wheel is raised off the ground.

**The following steps apply to F-250/F-350 Single Rear Wheel (SRW) vehicles only:**

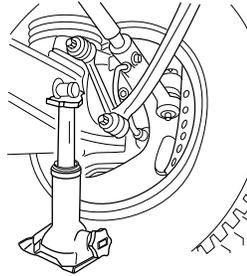
5. Insert the hooked end of the jack handle into the jack and use the handle to slide the jack under the vehicle.



## Roadside Emergencies

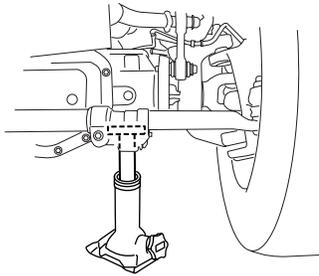
6. Position the jack according to the following guides:

- Front (4x2)



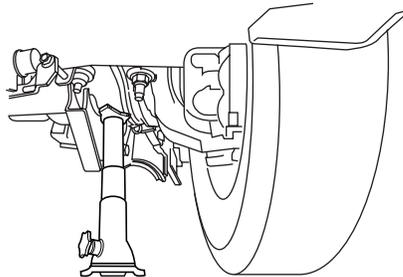
- Front driver side (4x4)

**Note:** Make sure the jack fits onto the flat area on the outboard side of the differential.



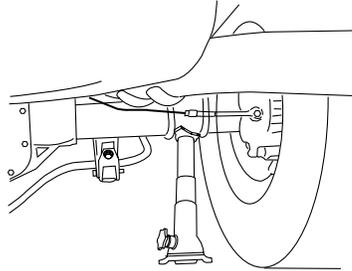
- Front passenger side (4x4)

**Note:** View shown from the rear of the vehicle to clearly identify the jack point. Place the jack directly under the axle.



## Roadside Emergencies

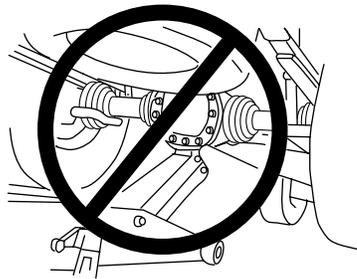
- Rear



**Never use the front or rear differential as a jacking point.**

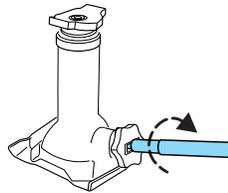


**WARNING:** To lessen the risk of personal injury, do not put any part of your body under the vehicle while changing a tire. Do not start the engine when your vehicle is on the jack. The jack is only meant for changing the tire.



7. Turn the jack handle clockwise until the wheel is completely off the ground and high enough to install the spare tire.

8. Remove the lug nuts with the lug wrench.



9. Replace the flat tire with the spare tire, making sure the valve stem is facing outward for all front wheels and single rear wheel vehicles. If replacing an inboard rear tire on dual rear wheel vehicles, the valve stem must be facing outward. If replacing the outboard wheel, the valve stem must be facing inward. Reinstall the lug nuts until the wheel is snug against the hub. Do not fully tighten the lug nuts until the wheel has been lowered.

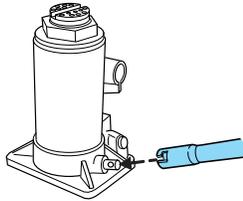
## Roadside Emergencies

10. Lower the wheel by turning the jack handle counterclockwise.

Go to step 19.

**The following steps apply to F-350 Dual Rear Wheel (DRW) and F-450/F-550 vehicles only:**

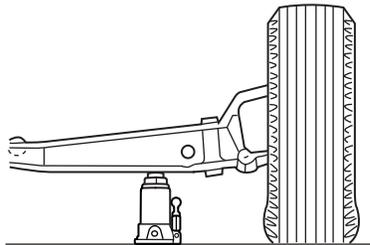
11. Slide the notched end of the jack handle over the release valve and use the handle to slide the jack under the vehicle. Make sure the valve is closed by turning it clockwise.



12. Position the jack according to the following guides:

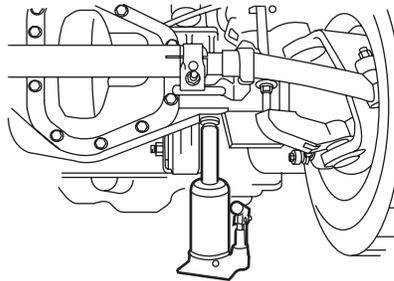
- Front (4x2): F-350 DRW

**Note:** Place jack directly under I-beam.



- Front driver side (4x4): F-350 DRW

**Note:** Make sure the jack fits onto the flat area on the outboard side of the differential housing.

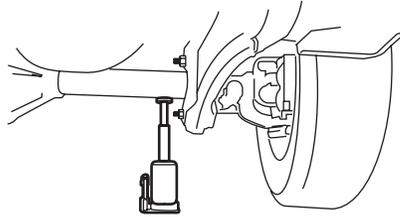


## Roadside Emergencies

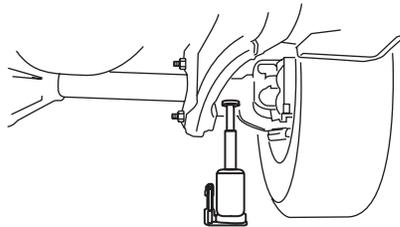
- Front passenger side (4x4): F-350 DRW

**Note:** View shown from the rear of the vehicle to clearly identify the jack point.

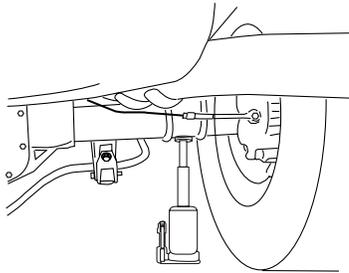
**Note:** Place the jack directly under axle and inboard of the radius arm so that the jack clears the radius arm.



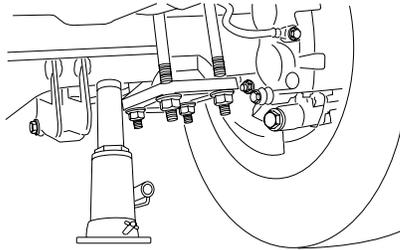
- Front: F-450/F-550



- Rear: F-350 DRW



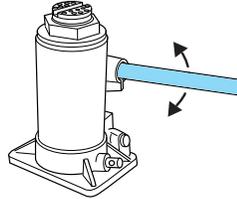
- Rear: F-450/F-550



## Roadside Emergencies

13. Insert the jack handle into the pump linkage.

14. Use an up-and-down motion with the jack handle to raise the wheel completely off the ground.



**Hydraulic jacks are equipped with a pressure release valve that prevents lifting loads which exceed the jack's rated capacity.**

15. Remove the lug nuts with the lug wrench.

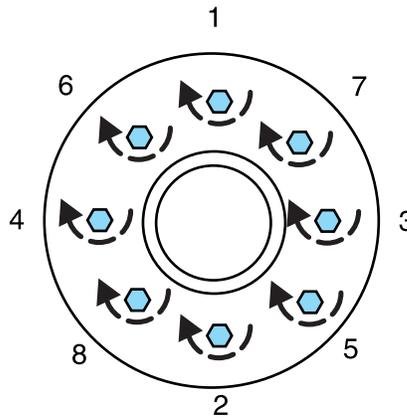
16. Replace the flat tire with the spare tire, making sure the valve stem is facing outward on all front and inboard rear wheels. If replacing the outboard wheel, the valve stem must be facing inward. Reinstall the lug nuts until the wheel is snug against the hub. Do not fully tighten the lug nuts until the wheel has been lowered.

17. Lower the wheel by slowly turning the release valve counterclockwise. Opening the release valve slowly will provide a more controlled rate of descent.

**The following steps apply to all vehicles:**

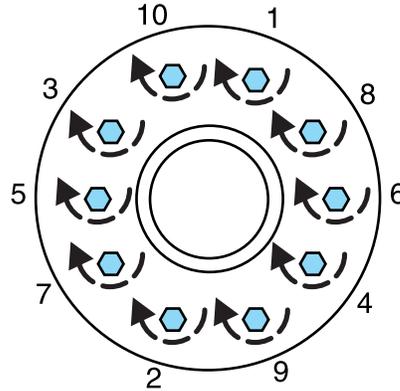
18. Remove the jack and fully tighten the lug nuts in the order shown. Refer to *Wheel lug nut torque specifications* later in this chapter for the proper lug nut torque specification.

**8-lug nut torque sequence**



## Roadside Emergencies

### 10-lug nut torque sequence



19. Stow the flat tire. Refer to *Stowing the flat/spare tire* if the vehicle is equipped with a spare tire carrier.

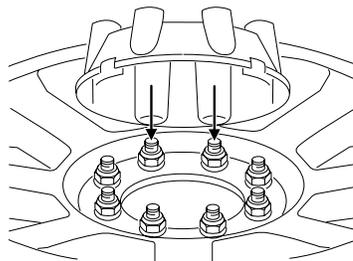
**Note:** Do not stow the Harley-Davidson flat tire and wheel using the spare tire winch mechanism; store the flat in the bed of the truck.

20. Stow the jack, jack handle and lug wrench. Make sure the jack is securely fastened so it does not rattle when driving.

21. Unblock the wheels.

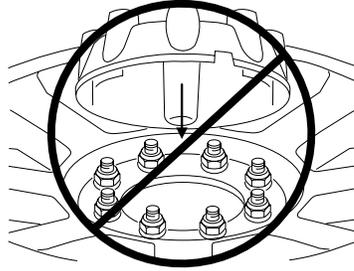
### The following step applies to F-250/F-350 Single Rear Wheel (SRW) vehicles only:

22. When installing the wheel center ornaments, ensure that the ornament retention towers on the back side of the ornament are aligned with the studs/lug nuts. The retention towers are designed to be installed over the studs/nuts and retain to the flange on the lug nut.



## Roadside Emergencies

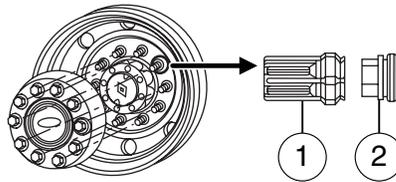
If the ornament retention towers are aligned between the studs/lug nuts, the ornament is improperly installed. This improper installation may appear and sound correct, but will not keep the ornament on the vehicle. Ornaments improperly installed in this manner will fall off or become loose with minimal force or impact.



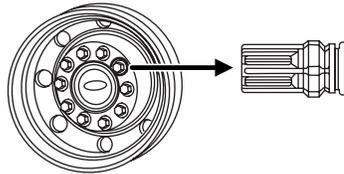
### Installing dual rear wheel ornaments

1. Align the ornament with the lug nuts.

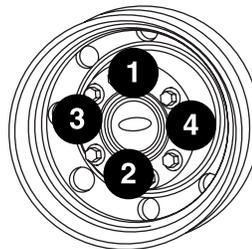
- (1) is the clip and (2) is the flange.



2. Hold the ornament so that all of the retention clips are sitting on the flange of the lug nuts.

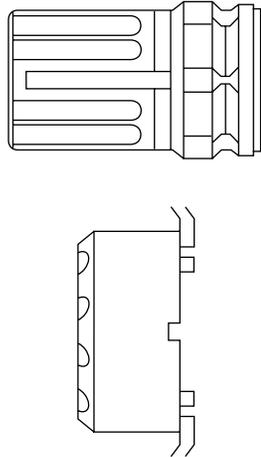


3. Use your hand or rubber mallet to tap the ornament in a star pattern. There should be an even gap between the ornament and the wheel.



## Roadside Emergencies

4. Be sure to install all the clips on the nuts over the flanges so that there is an even gap all around and the retention clips are fully seated.



### Stowing the flat/spare tire

**Note:** Failure to follow spare tire stowage instructions may result in failure of cable or loss of spare tire.

1. Lay the tire on the ground with the valve stem facing in the direction specified on the Tire Changing Instructions located in the glove box.
2. Slide the wheel partially under the vehicle and install the retainer through the wheel center. Pull on the cable to align the components at the end of the cable.
3. Turn the jack handle clockwise until the tire is raised to its stowed position underneath the vehicle. The effort to turn the jack handle increases significantly and the spare tire carrier ratchets or slips when the tire is raised to the maximum tightness. Tighten to the best of your ability, to the point where the ratchet/slip occurs, if possible. The spare tire carrier will not allow you to overtighten. If the spare tire carrier ratchets or slips with little effort, take the vehicle to your authorized dealer for assistance at your earliest convenience.
4. Check that the tire lies flat against the frame and is properly tightened. Try to push or pull, then turn the tire to be sure it will not move. Loosen and retighten, if necessary. Failure to properly stow the spare tire may result in failure of the winch cable and loss of the tire.

## Roadside Emergencies

5. Repeat this tightness check procedure when servicing the spare tire pressure (every six months, per *scheduled maintenance information*), or at any time that the spare tire is disturbed through service of other components.
6. If removed, install the spare tire lock (if equipped) into the bumper drive tube with the spare tire lock key (if equipped) and jack handle.

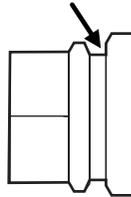
### WHEEL LUG NUT TORQUE SPECIFICATIONS

On vehicles equipped with single rear wheels, retighten the lug nuts to the specified torque at 500 miles (800 km) after any wheel disturbance (tire rotation, changing a flat tire, wheel removal, etc.).

On vehicles equipped with dual rear wheels, retighten the wheel lug nuts to the specified torque at 100 miles (160 km), and again at 500 miles (800 km) of new vehicle operation and after any wheel disturbance (tire rotation, changing a flat tire, wheel removal, etc.).

Bolt size	Wheel lug nut torque*	
	lb.ft.	N•m
M14 x 1.5	165	224
* Torque specifications are for nut and bolt threads free of dirt and rust. Use only Ford recommended replacement fasteners.		

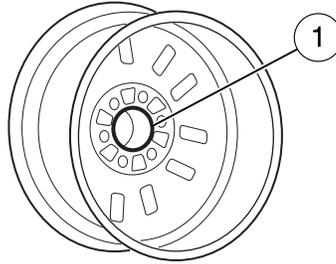
On all two-piece flat wheel nuts, apply one drop of motor oil between the flat washer and the nut.



**WARNING:** When a wheel is installed, always remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Ensure that any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub are secured so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels without correct metal-to-metal contact at the wheel mounting surfaces can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while the vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of control.

## Roadside Emergencies

Inspect the wheel pilot hole prior to installation. If there is visible corrosion in wheel pilot hole, remove loose particles by wiping with clean rag and apply grease. Apply grease only to the wheel pilot hole surface by smearing a “dime” (1 square cm) sized glob of grease around the wheel pilot surface (1) with end of finger. **DO NOT** apply grease to lug nut/stud holes or wheel-to-brake surfaces.



### JUMP STARTING



**WARNING:** The gases around the battery can explode if exposed to flames, sparks, or lit cigarettes. An explosion could result in injury or vehicle damage.



**WARNING:** Batteries contain sulfuric acid which can burn skin, eyes and clothing, if contacted.

**Do not attempt to push-start your automatic transmission vehicle. Automatic transmissions do not have push-start capability. Attempting to push-start a vehicle with an automatic transmission may cause transmission damage.**

### Preparing your vehicle

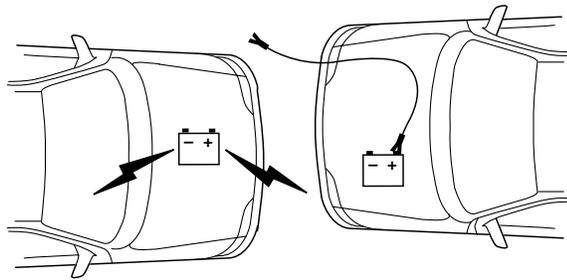
When the battery is disconnected or a new battery is installed, the automatic transmission must relearn its shift strategy. As a result, the transmission may have firm and/or soft shifts. This operation is considered normal and will not affect function or durability of the transmission. Over time, the adaptive learning process will fully update transmission operation.

1. **Use only a 12-volt supply to start your vehicle.**
2. Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle as this could damage the vehicle's electrical system.
3. Park the booster vehicle close to the hood of the disabled vehicle making sure the two vehicles **do not** touch. Set the parking brake on both vehicles and stay clear of the engine cooling fan and other moving parts.

## Roadside Emergencies

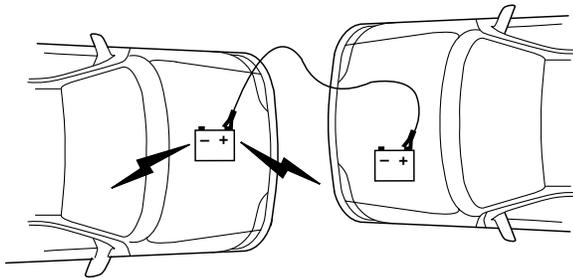
4. Check all battery terminals and remove any excessive corrosion before you attach the battery cables. Ensure that vent caps are tight and level.
5. Turn the heater fan on in both vehicles to protect from any electrical surges. Turn all other accessories off.

### Connecting the jumper cables



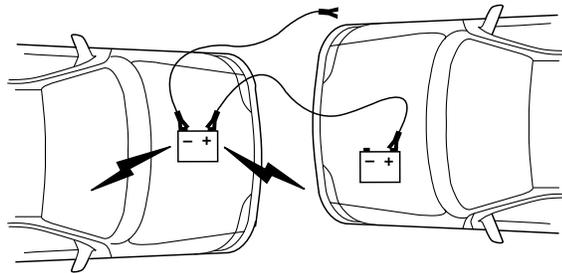
1. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the discharged battery.

**Note:** In the illustrations, *lightning bolts* are used to designate the assisting (boosting) battery.

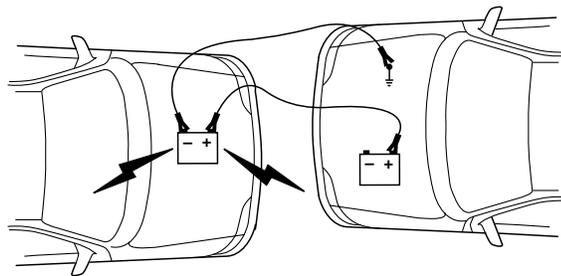


2. Connect the other end of the positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal of the assisting battery.

## Roadside Emergencies



3. Connect the negative (-) cable to the negative (-) terminal of the assisting battery.



4. Make the final connection of the negative (-) cable to an exposed metal part of the stalled vehicle's engine, away from the battery and the carburetor/fuel injection system. **Do not** use fuel lines, engine rocker covers or the intake manifold as *grounding* points.

**⚠ WARNING:** Do not connect the end of the second cable to the negative (-) terminal of the battery to be jumped. A spark may cause an explosion of the gases that surround the battery.

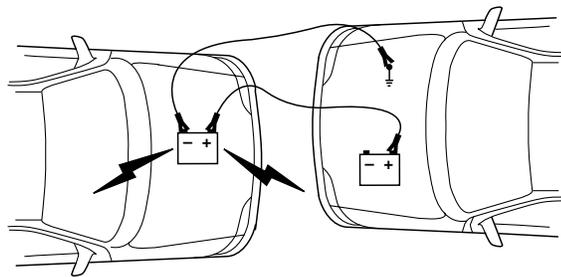
5. Ensure that the cables are clear of fan blades, belts, moving parts of both engines, or any fuel delivery system parts.

## Roadside Emergencies

### Jump starting

1. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and run the engine at moderately increased speed.
2. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.
3. Once the disabled vehicle has been started, run both engines for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

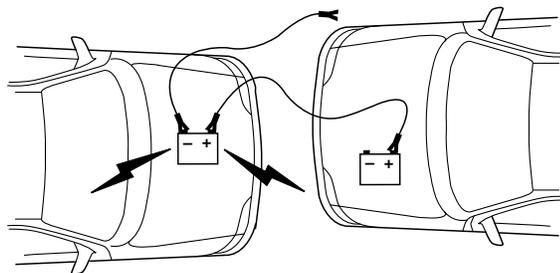
### Removing the jumper cables



**Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.**

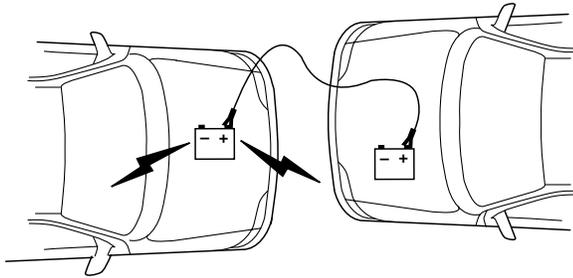
1. Remove the jumper cable from the *ground* metal surface.

**Note:** In the illustrations, *lightning bolts* are used to designate the assisting (boosting) battery.

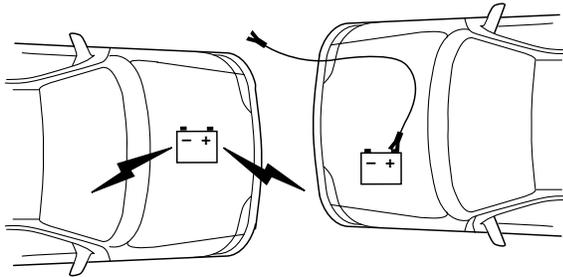


2. Remove the jumper cable on the negative (-) connection of the booster vehicle's battery.

## Roadside Emergencies



3. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle's battery.

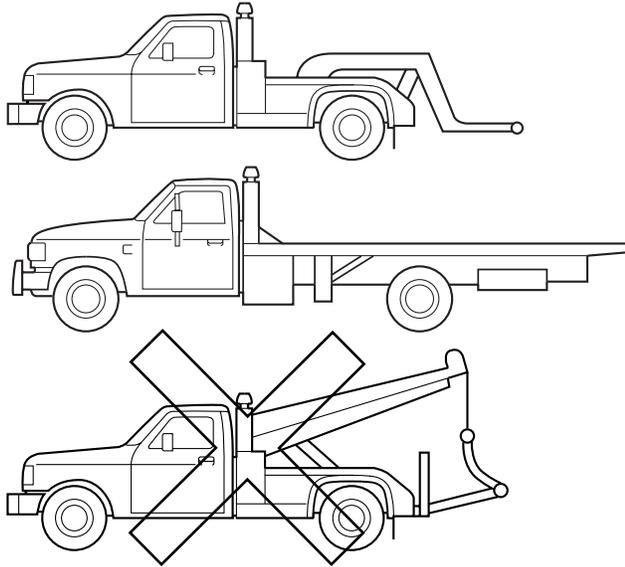


4. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the disabled vehicle's battery.

After the disabled vehicle has been started and the jumper cables removed, allow it to idle for several minutes so the engine computer can *relearn* its idle conditions.

## Roadside Emergencies

### WRECKER TOWING



If you need to have your vehicle towed, contact a professional towing service or, if you are a member of a roadside assistance program, your roadside assistance service provider.

It is recommended that the vehicle be towed with a wheel lift or flatbed equipment. Do not tow with a slingbelt. Ford Motor Company has not approved a slingbelt towing procedure.

On 4x2 vehicles, it is acceptable to tow the vehicle with the front wheels on the ground and the rear wheels off the ground using a wheel lift.

On 4x4 vehicles, it is recommended that your vehicle be towed using flatbed equipment with all the wheels off the ground. However, a wheel lift may be used to lift the rear of the vehicle so long as, depending on vehicle configurations, the following preparations are met:

- On Electronic Shift-On-the-Fly (ESOF) vehicles, the 4x4 control is turned to the 2WD position prior to towing.
- On manual-shift transfer case vehicles, the front wheel hub locks are in the FREE position prior to towing.

## Roadside Emergencies

**Note:** Towing an ESOF 4x4 vehicle with the front wheels on the ground without disengaging the front hubs may cause damage to the automatic transmission.

**Note:** Towing a 4x2 or an ESOF 4x4 vehicle with the rear wheels on the ground for more than 50 miles (80 km) and/or in excess of 35 mph (56 km/h) may cause damage to the automatic transmission.

**Note:** On Dual Rear Wheel (DRW) vehicles, an outer rear wheel must be removed prior to using a wheel lift wrecker.

Ford Motor Company produces a towing manual for all authorized tow truck operators. Have your tow truck operator refer to this manual for proper hook-up and towing procedures for your vehicle.

**If the vehicle is towed by other means or incorrectly, vehicle damage may occur.**

### Emergency towing

In case of a roadside emergency with a disabled vehicle (without access to wheel dollies, car hauling trailer, or flatbed transport vehicle) your vehicle (regardless of transmission powertrain configuration) can be flat towed (all wheels on the ground) under the following conditions:

- Vehicle is facing forward so that it is being towed in a forward direction.
- Place the transmission in N (Neutral). Refer to *Brake shift interlock* in the *Driving* chapter for specific instructions if you cannot move the gear shift lever into N (Neutral).
- Maximum speed is not to exceed 35 mph (56 km/h).
- Maximum distance is 50 miles (80 km).

## Customer Assistance

### GETTING THE SERVICES YOU NEED

Warranty repairs to your vehicle must be performed by an authorized Ford, Lincoln, or Mercury dealer. While any authorized dealer handling your vehicle line will provide warranty service, we recommend you return to your selling authorized dealer who wants to ensure your continued satisfaction.

Please note that certain warranty repairs require special training and/or equipment, so not all authorized dealers are authorized to perform all warranty repairs. This means that, depending on the warranty repair needed, you may have to take your vehicle to another authorized dealer.

A reasonable time must be allowed to perform a repair after taking your vehicle to the authorized dealer. Repairs will be made using Ford or Motorcraft parts, or remanufactured or other parts that are authorized by Ford.

### Away from home

If you are away from home when your vehicle needs service, contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center or use the online resources listed below to find the nearest authorized dealer.

In the United States:

#### Mailing address

Ford Motor Company  
Customer Relationship Center  
P.O. Box 6248  
Dearborn, MI 48121

#### Telephone

1-800-392-3673 (FORD)  
(TDD for the hearing impaired: 1-800-232-5952)

#### Online

Additional information and resources are available online at [www.genuineservice.com](http://www.genuineservice.com).

- U.S. dealer locator by Dealer Name, City/State, or Zip Code
- Owner Guides
- Maintenance Schedules
- Recalls
- Ford Extended Service Plans
- Ford Genuine Accessories
- Service specials and promotions.

350

*2009 F-250/350/450/550 (f23)  
Owners Guide, 3rd Printing  
USA (fus)*

## Customer Assistance

In Canada:

**Mailing address (Ford vehicles)**

Customer Relationship Centre  
Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited  
P.O. Box 2000  
Oakville, Ontario L6J 5E4

**Telephone**

1-800-565-3673 (FORD)

**Online**

[www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca)

**Mailing address (Lincoln vehicles)**

Lincoln Centre  
Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited  
P.O. Box 2000  
Oakville, Ontario L6J 5E4

**Telephone**

1-800-387-9333

**Online**

[www.lincolncanada.com](http://www.lincolncanada.com)

**Additional assistance**

If you have questions or concerns, or are unsatisfied with the service you are receiving, follow these steps:

1. Contact your Sales Representative or Service Advisor at your selling/servicing authorized dealer.
2. If your inquiry or concern remains unresolved, contact the Sales Manager, Service Manager or Customer Relations Manager.
3. If you require assistance or clarification on Ford Motor Company policies, please contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center

In order to help you serve you better, please have the following information available when contacting a Customer Relationship Center:

- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
- Your telephone number (home and business)
- The name of the authorized dealer and city where located
- The vehicle's current odometer reading

In some states, you must directly notify Ford in writing before pursuing remedies under your state's warranty laws. Ford is also allowed a final repair attempt in some states.

## Customer Assistance

In the United States, a warranty dispute must be submitted to the BBB AUTO LINE before taking action under the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, or to the extent allowed by state law, before pursuing replacement or repurchase remedies provided by certain state laws. This dispute handling procedure is not required prior to enforcing state created rights or other rights which are independent of the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act or state replacement or repurchase laws.

### IN CALIFORNIA (U.S. ONLY)

California Civil Code Section 1793.2(d) requires that, if a manufacturer or its representative is unable to repair a motor vehicle to conform to the vehicle's applicable express warranty after a reasonable number of attempts, the manufacturer shall be required to either replace the vehicle with one substantially identical or repurchase the vehicle and reimburse the buyer in an amount equal to the actual price paid or payable by the consumer (less a reasonable allowance for consumer use). The consumer has the right to choose whether to receive a refund or replacement vehicle.

California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b) presumes that the manufacturer has had a reasonable number of attempts to conform the vehicle to its applicable express warranties if, within the first 18 months of ownership of a new vehicle or the first 18,000 miles (29,000 km), whichever occurs first:

1. Two or more repair attempts are made on the same non-conformity likely to cause death or serious bodily injury OR
2. Four or more repair attempts are made on the same nonconformity (a defect or condition that substantially impairs the use, value or safety of the vehicle) OR
3. The vehicle is out of service for repair of nonconformities for a total of more than 30 calendar days (not necessarily all at one time)

In the case of 1 or 2 above, the consumer must also notify the manufacturer of the need for the repair of the nonconformity at the following address:

Ford Motor Company  
16800 Executive Plaza Drive  
Mail Drop 3NE-B  
Dearborn, MI 48126

### THE BETTER BUSINESS BUREAU (BBB) AUTO LINE PROGRAM (U.S. ONLY)

Your satisfaction is important to Ford Motor Company and to your dealer. If a warranty concern has not been resolved using the three-step

352

## Customer Assistance

procedure outlined on the first page of the *Customer Assistance* section, you may be eligible to participate in the BBB AUTO LINE program.

The BBB AUTO LINE program consists of two parts – mediation and arbitration. During mediation, a representative of the BBB will contact both you and Ford Motor Company to explore options for settlement of the claim. If an agreement is not reached during mediation and your claim is eligible, you may participate in the arbitration process. An arbitration hearing will be scheduled so that you can present your case in an informal setting before an impartial person. The arbitrator will consider the testimony provided and make a decision after the hearing.

You are not bound by the decision, but should you choose to accept the BBB AUTO LINE decision, Ford must abide by the accepted decision as well. Disputes submitted to the BBB AUTO LINE program are usually decided within forty days after you file your claim with the BBB.

**BBB AUTO LINE Application:** Using the information provided below, please call or write to request a program application. You will be asked for your name and address, general information about your new vehicle, information about your warranty concerns, and any steps you have already taken to try to resolve them. A Customer Claim Form will be mailed that will need to be completed, signed and returned to the BBB along with proof of ownership. Upon receipt, the BBB will review the claim for eligibility under the Program Summary Guidelines.

**You can get more information by calling BBB AUTO LINE at 1-800-955-5100, or writing to:**

**BBB AUTO LINE  
4200 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 800  
Arlington, Virginia 22203-1833**

BBB AUTO LINE applications can also be requested by calling the Ford Motor Company Customer Relationship Center at 1-800-392-3673.

**Note:** Ford Motor Company reserves the right to change eligibility limitations, modify procedures, or to discontinue this process at any time without notice and without obligation.

### **UTILIZING THE MEDIATION/ARBITRATION PROGRAM (CANADA ONLY)**

For vehicles delivered to authorized Canadian dealers. In those cases where you continue to feel that the efforts by Ford of Canada and the authorized dealer to resolve a factory-related vehicle service concern have been unsatisfactory, Ford of Canada participates in an impartial third party mediation/arbitration program administered by the Canadian Motor Vehicle Arbitration Plan (CAMVAP).

## Customer Assistance

The CAMVAP program is a straight-forward and relatively speedy alternative to resolve a disagreement when all other efforts to produce a settlement have failed. This procedure is without cost to you and is designed to eliminate the need for lengthy and expensive legal proceedings.

In the CAMVAP program, impartial third-party arbitrators conduct hearings at mutually convenient times and places in an informal environment. These impartial arbitrators review the positions of the parties, make decisions and, when appropriate, render awards to resolve disputes. CAMVAP decisions are fast, fair, and final as the arbitrator's award is binding both to you and Ford of Canada.

CAMVAP services are available in all territories and provinces. For more information, without charge or obligation, call your CAMVAP Provincial Administrator directly at 1-800-207-0685.

### FORD EXTENDED SERVICE PLAN

You can get more protection for your new car or light truck by purchasing Ford Extended Service Plan (Ford ESP) coverage. It provides the following:

- Benefits during the warranty period depending on the plan you purchase (such as: reimbursement for rentals; coverage for certain maintenance and wear items).
- Protection against covered repair costs after your Bumper-to-Bumper Warranty expires.

You may purchase Ford ESP from any participating authorized dealer. There are several plans available in various time, distance and deductible combinations which can be tailored to fit your own driving needs. Ford ESP also offers reimbursement benefits for towing and rental coverage.

When you buy Ford ESP, you receive Peace-of-Mind protection throughout the United States and Canada, provided by a network of more than 4,600 participating authorized dealers.

If you did not take advantage of the Ford Extended Service Plan at the time of purchasing your vehicle, you may still be eligible. Since this information is subject to change, please ask your authorized dealer for complete details about Ford Extended Service Plan coverage options, or visit the Ford ESP website at [www.ford-esp.com](http://www.ford-esp.com).

### GETTING ASSISTANCE OUTSIDE THE U.S. AND CANADA

Before exporting your vehicle to a foreign country, contact the appropriate foreign embassy or consulate. These officials can inform you of local vehicle registration regulations and where to find unleaded fuel.

## Customer Assistance

If you cannot find unleaded fuel or can only get fuel with an anti-knock index lower than is recommended for your vehicle, contact a regional office or owner relations/customer relationship office.

The use of leaded fuel in your vehicle without proper conversion may damage the effectiveness of your emission control system and may cause engine knocking or serious engine damage. Ford Motor Company/Ford of Canada is not responsible for any damage caused by use of improper fuel. Using leaded fuel may also result in difficulty importing your vehicle back into the U.S.

If your vehicle must be serviced while you are traveling or living in Central America, the Caribbean, or the Middle East, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer cannot help you, contact:

FORD MOTOR COMPANY  
FORD EXPORT OPERATIONS  
1555 Fairlane Drive  
Fairlane Business Park #3  
Allen Park, Michigan 48101  
U.S.A.  
Telephone: (313) 594-4857  
FAX: (313) 390-0804  
Email: expcac@ford.com

If you are in another foreign country, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer employees cannot help you, they can direct you to the nearest Ford affiliate office.

If you buy your vehicle in North America and then relocate outside of the U.S. or Canada, register your vehicle identification number (VIN) and new address with Ford Motor Company Export Operations.

**Customers in the U.S. should call 1-800-392-3673.**

### ORDERING ADDITIONAL OWNER'S LITERATURE

To order the publications in this portfolio, contact Helm, Incorporated at:

HELM, INCORPORATED  
P.O. Box 07150  
Detroit, Michigan 48207

Or to order a free publication catalog, call toll free: 1-800-782-4356

Monday-Friday 8:00 a.m. - 6:00 p.m. EST

Helm, Incorporated can also be reached by their website:  
[www.helminc.com](http://www.helminc.com).

*(Items in this catalog may be purchased by credit card, check or money order.)*

## Customer Assistance

### Obtaining a French owner's guide

French Owner's Guides can be obtained from your authorized dealer or by writing to:

Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited  
Service Publications CHQ202  
The Canadian Road  
P.O. Box 2000  
Oakville, ON, Canada  
L6J 5E4

### REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (U.S. ONLY)

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety



Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Ford Motor Company.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Ford Motor Company.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to <http://www.safercar.gov>; or write to:

Administrator  
1200 New Jersey Avenue, Southeast  
Washington, D.C. 20590

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from <http://www.safercar.gov>.

### REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (CANADA ONLY)

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform Transport Canada, using their toll-free number: 1-800-333-0510.

## Cleaning

### WASHING THE EXTERIOR

Wash your vehicle regularly with cool or lukewarm water and a neutral pH shampoo, such as Motorcraft Detail Wash (ZC-3-A), which is available from your authorized dealer.

- Never use strong household detergents or soap, such as dish washing or laundry liquid. These products can discolor and spot painted surfaces.
- Never wash a vehicle that is “hot to the touch” or during exposure to strong, direct sunlight.
- Always use a clean sponge or car wash mitt with plenty of water for best results.
- Dry the vehicle with a chamois or soft terry cloth towel in order to eliminate water spotting.
- It is especially important to wash the vehicle regularly during the winter months, as dirt and road salt are difficult to remove and cause damage to the vehicle.
- Immediately remove items such as gasoline, diesel fuel, bird droppings and insect deposits because they can cause damage to the vehicle’s paintwork and trim over time. Use Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover (ZC-42), which is available from your authorized dealer.
- Remove any exterior accessories, such as antennas, before entering a car wash.
- **Suntan lotions and insect repellents can damage any painted surface; if these substances come in contact with your vehicle, wash off as soon as possible.**
- **If your vehicle is equipped with running boards, do not use rubber, plastic and vinyl protectant products on the running board surface, as the area may become slippery.**

### Exterior chrome

- Wash the vehicle first, using cool or lukewarm water and a neutral pH shampoo, such as Motorcraft Detail Wash (ZC-3-A).
- Use Motorcraft Custom Bright Metal Cleaner (ZC-15), available from your authorized dealer. Apply the product as you would a wax to clean bumpers and other chrome parts; allow the cleaner to dry for a few minutes, then wipe off the haze with a clean, dry rag.
- **Never use abrasive materials such as steel wool or plastic pads as they can scratch the chrome surface.**

## Cleaning

- After polishing chrome bumpers, apply a coating of Motorcraft Premium Liquid Wax (ZC-53-A), available from your authorized dealer, or an equivalent quality product to help protect from environmental effects.

### WAXING

- Wash the vehicle first.
- Do not use waxes that contain abrasives; use Motorcraft Premium Liquid Wax (ZC-53-A), which is available from your authorized dealer, or an equivalent quality product.
- Do not allow paint sealant to come in contact with any non-body (low-gloss black) colored trim, such as grained door handles, roof racks, bumpers, side moldings, mirror housings or the windshield cowl area. The paint sealant will “gray” or stain the parts over time.

### PAINT CHIPS

Your authorized dealer has touch-up paint to match your vehicle's color. Take your color code (printed on a sticker in the driver's door jamb) to your authorized dealer to ensure you get the correct color.

- Remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout before repairing paint chips.
- Always read the instructions before using the products.

### ALUMINUM WHEELS AND WHEEL COVERS

Aluminum wheels and wheel covers are coated with a clearcoat paint finish. In order to maintain their shine:

- Clean weekly with Motorcraft Wheel and Tire Cleaner (ZC-37-A), which is available from your authorized dealer. Heavy dirt and brake dust accumulation may require agitation with a sponge. Rinse thoroughly with a strong stream of water.
- Never apply any cleaning chemical to hot or warm wheel rims or covers.
- Some automatic car washes may cause damage to the finish on your wheel rims or covers. Chemical-strength cleaners, or cleaning chemicals, in combination with brush agitation to remove brake dust and dirt, could wear away the clearcoat finish over time.
- Do not use hydrofluoric acid-based or high caustic-based wheel cleaners, steel wool, fuels or strong household detergent.
- To remove tar and grease, use Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover (ZC-42), available from your authorized dealer.

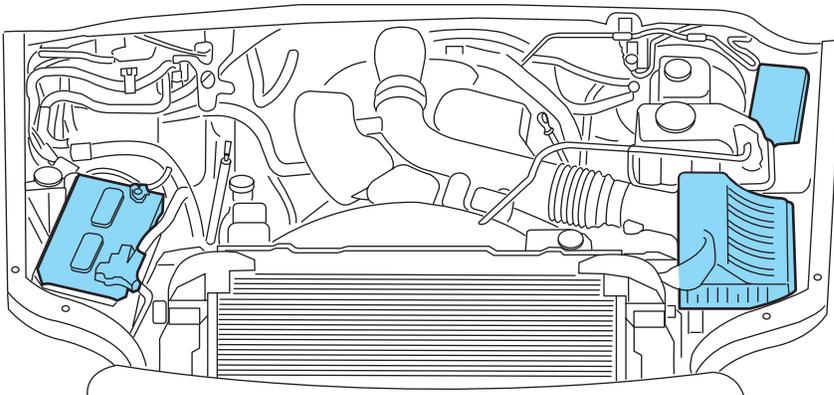
358

## Cleaning

### ENGINE

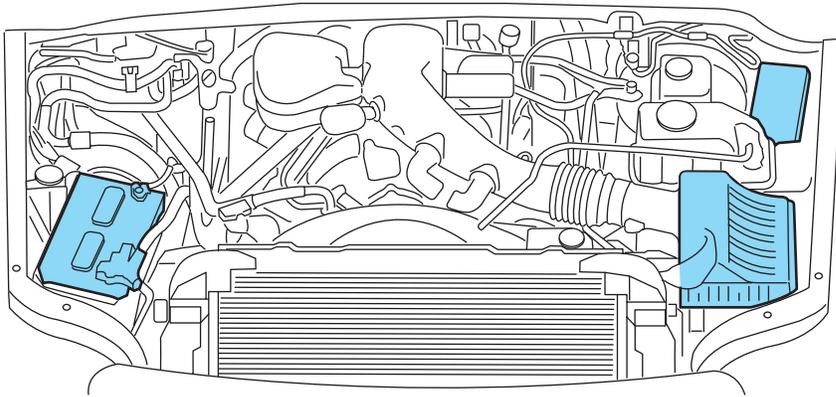
Engines are more efficient when they are clean because grease and dirt buildup keep the engine warmer than normal. When washing:

- Take care when using a power washer to clean the engine. The high-pressure fluid could penetrate the sealed parts and cause damage.
- Do not spray a hot engine with cold water to avoid cracking the engine block or other engine components.
- Spray Motorcraft Engine Shampoo and Degreaser (ZC-20) on all parts that require cleaning and pressure rinse clean.
- Never wash or rinse the engine while it is running; water in the running engine may cause internal damage.
- Cover the highlighted areas to prevent water damage when cleaning the engine.



- **5.4L V8 gasoline engine**

## Cleaning



- **6.8L V10 gasoline engine**

### PLASTIC (NON-PAINTED) EXTERIOR PARTS

Use only approved products to clean plastic parts. These products are available from your authorized dealer.

- For routine cleaning, use Motorcraft Detail Wash (ZC-3-A).
- If tar or grease spots are present, use Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover (ZC-42).
- For plastic headlamp lenses, use Motorcraft Ultra Clear Spray Glass Cleaner (ZC-23).

### WINDOWS AND WIPER BLADES

The windshield, rear and side windows and the wiper blades should be cleaned regularly. If the wipers do not wipe properly, substances on the vehicle's glass or the wiper blades may be the cause. These may include hot wax treatments used by commercial car washes, water repellent coatings, tree sap, or other organic contamination; these contaminants may cause squeaking or chatter noise from the blades, and streaking and smearing of the windshield. To clean these items, follow these tips:

- The windshield, rear windows and side windows may be cleaned with a non-abrasive cleaner such as Motorcraft Ultra-Clear Spray Glass Cleaner (ZC-23), available from your authorized dealer.

## Cleaning

- The wiper blades can be cleaned with isopropyl (rubbing) alcohol or Motorcraft Premium Windshield Washer Concentrate (ZC-32-A), available from your authorized dealer. This washer fluid contains special solution in addition to alcohol which helps to remove the hot wax deposited on the wiper blade and windshield from automated car wash facilities. Be sure to replace wiper blades when they appear worn or do not function properly.
- Do not use abrasives, as they may cause scratches.
- Do not use fuel, kerosene, or paint thinner to clean any parts.

### INSTRUMENT PANEL/INTERIOR TRIM AND CLUSTER LENS (EXCEPT HARLEY-DAVIDSON)

Clean the instrument panel, interior trim areas and cluster lens with a clean and damp, white cotton cloth, then with a clean and dry, white cotton cloth.

- Avoid cleaners or polishes that increase the gloss of the upper portion of the instrument panel. The dull finish in this area helps protect the driver from undesirable windshield reflection.
- Be certain to wash or wipe your hands clean if you have been in contact with certain products such as insect repellent and suntan lotion in order to avoid possible damage to the interior painted surfaces.
- Do not use household or glass cleaners as these may damage the finish of the instrument panel, interior trim and cluster lens.



**WARNING:** Do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents when cleaning the steering wheel or instrument panel to avoid contamination of the airbag system.

If a staining liquid like coffee/juice has been spilled on the instrument panel or on interior trim surfaces, clean as follows:

1. Wipe up spilled liquid using a clean white cotton cloth.
2. Wipe the surface with a damp, clean, white cotton cloth. For more thorough cleaning, use a mild soap and water solution. If the spot cannot be completely cleaned by this method, the area may be cleaned using a commercially available cleaning product designed for automotive interiors.
3. If necessary, apply more soap and water solution or cleaning product to a clean, white, cotton cloth and press the cloth onto the soiled area—allow this to set at room temperature for 30 minutes.

## Cleaning

4. Remove the soaked cloth, and if it is not soiled badly, use this cloth to clean the area by using a rubbing motion for 60 seconds.

5. Following this, wipe area dry with a clean, white, cotton cloth.

### **INSTRUMENT PANEL AND CONSOLE (HARLEY-DAVIDSON ONLY)**

Your vehicle's instrument panel and console are uniquely painted with both high and low gloss paints that require special care. The high gloss area is similar to that of the vehicle's exterior; the low gloss area is designed to help protect the driver from undesirable windshield reflection.

#### **High gloss paint area**

In order to maintain the finish of the instrument panel and console, the high gloss areas should be treated similar to the that of exterior paint or glossy plastic surfaces. When cleaning the high gloss areas:

- **Do not use** paper towels or newspaper.
- **Do not use** silicone or Teflont (PTFE)-based products.

Dust the high gloss areas with a clean, dry cloth, or use Motorcraft Dusting Cloth (ZC-24 or ZC-25) or Motorcraft Dusting Cloth Mitts (ZC-47).

For general cleaning, use mild, soapy water and a soft, damp cloth, then dry with a clean, dry cloth; or Motorcraft Ultra-Clear Spray Glass Cleaner (ZC-23).

For removal of fine scuffs and scratches, use Scotch-Britet Microfiber Cloth or cheese cloth along with Motorcraft Premium Liquid Wax (ZC-53-A), Motorcraft Paint Sealant (ZC-45), or Motorcraft Custom Clear Coat Polish (ZC-8-A). Note: Removal of deep scuffs and scratches should be performed by an authorized dealer or an experienced repair facility.

#### **Low gloss paint area**

The low gloss area of the instrument panel's upper dash should be cleaned with mild, soapy water and a soft, damp cloth, then dried with a clean, dry cloth. When cleaning the low gloss areas:

- **Do not use** paper towels or newspaper.
- **Do not use** silicone or Teflont (PTFE)-based products.
- **Do not use** exterior paint waxes or sealants.

Dust the low gloss areas with a clean, dry cloth, or use Motorcraft Dusting Cloth (ZC-24 or ZC-25) or Motorcraft Dusting Cloth Mitts (ZC-47).

362

## Cleaning

### INTERIOR

For fabric, carpets, cloth seats and safety belts:

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
- Remove light stains and soil with Motorcraft Professional Strength Carpet & Upholstery Cleaner (ZC-54).
- If grease or tar is present on the material, spot-clean the area first with Motorcraft Spot and Stain Remover (ZC-14). In Canada, use Motorcraft Multi-Purpose Cleaner (CXC-101).
- If a ring forms on the fabric after spot cleaning, clean the entire area immediately (but do not oversaturate) or the ring will set.
- Do not use household cleaning products or glass cleaners, which can stain and discolor the fabric and affect the flame retardant abilities of the seat materials.



**WARNING:** Do not use cleaning solvents, bleach or dye on the vehicle's seatbelts, as these actions may weaken the belt webbing.

### LEATHER SEATS (IF EQUIPPED, EXCEPT FOR THE KING RANCH F-250 AND F-350 CREW CAB)

Your leather seating surfaces have a clear, protective coating over the leather.

**For King Ranch F-250 and F-350 Crew Cab leather seats, refer to separate section in this chapter.**

- For routine cleaning, wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth. For more thorough cleaning, wipe the surface with a mild soap and water solution. In Canada, use Motorcraft Vinyl Cleaner (CXC-93). Dry the area with a soft cloth.
- If the leather cannot be completely cleaned using a mild soap and water solution, the leather may be cleaned using a commercially available cleaning product designed for automotive interiors.
- Do not use household cleaning products, alcohol solutions, solvents or cleaners intended for rubber, vinyl and plastics, or oil/petroleum-based leather conditioners. These products may cause premature wearing of the clear, protective coating on the seat.

**Note:** In some instances, color or dye transfer can occur when wet clothing comes in contact with leather upholstery. If this occurs, the leather should be cleaned immediately to avoid permanent staining.

## Cleaning

### LEATHER SEATS FOR THE KING RANCH F-250 AND F-350 CREW CAB ONLY (IF EQUIPPED)

Your vehicle is equipped with seating covered in premium, top-grain leather which is extremely durable, but still requires special care and maintenance in order to ensure longevity and comfort.

Regular cleaning and conditioning will maintain the appearance of the leather. Failure to care for the leather can result in drying out and fading of the material.

**Note:** In some instances, color or dye transfer can occur when wet clothing comes in contact with leather upholstery. If this occurs, the leather should be cleaned immediately to avoid permanent staining.

#### Cleaning

For dirt, use a vacuum cleaner then use a clean, damp cloth or soft brush.

For routine cleaning, wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth. For more thorough cleaning, wipe the surface with a mild soap. If the leather cannot be completely cleaned using a mild soap and water solution, the leather may be cleaned using a commercially available cleaning product “Tanners Preserve Leather Cleaner” and a 3M “Type T” scrubbing pad.

- Clean spills as quickly as possible.
- Test any cleaner or stain remover on an inconspicuous part of the leather as cleaners may darken the leather. For more specific cleaning information, contact the King Ranch Saddle Shop at 1-800-282-KING (5464).
- Do not spill coffee, ketchup, mustard, orange juice or oil-based products on the leather as they may permanently stain the leather.
- Do not use household cleaning products, alcohol solutions, solvents or cleaners intended for rubber, vinyl or plastics.

#### Scratches

Natural Markings - Because the leather in the seat comes from genuine steer hides, there will be evidence of naturally occurring markings, such as small scars. These markings give character to the seating covers and should be considered as proof of a genuine leather product.

In order to lessen the appearance of certain scratches and other wear marks, apply conditioner on the affected area following the same instructions as in the *Conditioning* section.

## Cleaning

### Conditioning

Bottles of King Ranch Leather Conditioner are available at the King Ranch Saddle Shop. Visit the Web site at *www.krsaddleshop.com*, or telephone (in the United States) 1-800-282-KING (5464). If you are unable to obtain King Ranch Leather Conditioner, use another premium leather conditioner.

- Apply your first conditioning treatment within six months of taking delivery of your vehicle. Condition twice yearly in order to replenish lost oils and revitalize the aroma, suppleness and resilience of the leather.
- Clean the surfaces using the steps outlined in the *Cleaning* section.
- Ensure the leather is dry then apply a nickel-sized amount of conditioner to a clean, dry cloth
- Rub the conditioner into leather until it disappears. Allow the conditioner to dry and repeat the process for the entire interior. If a film appears, wipe off film with a dry, clean cloth.

### UNDERBODY

Flush the complete underside of your vehicle frequently. Keep body and door drain holes free from packed dirt.

**Note:** Use care when using a power washer to clean the driveline, especially the driveshaft and interfacing components. The high-pressure fluid could penetrate the sealed parts and cause damage.

### FORD, LINCOLN AND MERCURY CAR CARE PRODUCTS

Your authorized dealer has many quality products available to clean your vehicle and protect its finishes. These quality products have been specifically engineered to fulfill your automotive needs; they are custom designed to complement the style and appearance of your vehicle. Each product is made from high quality materials that meet or exceed rigid specifications. For best results, use the following products or products of equivalent quality:

Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover (ZC-42)

Motorcraft Car Care Kit (ZC-26)

Motorcraft Car Wash (Canada only) (CXC-83)

Motorcraft Custom Bright Metal Cleaner (ZC-15)

Motorcraft Custom Clear Coat Polish (ZC-8-A)

Motorcraft Custom Vinyl Protectant (ZC-40-A)

## Cleaning

Motorcraft Dash and Vinyl Cleaner (ZC-38-A)  
Motorcraft Deluxe Leather and Vinyl Cleaner (U.S. only) (ZC-11-A)  
Motorcraft Detail Wash (ZC-3-A)  
Motorcraft Dusting Cloth (ZC-24)  
Motorcraft Engine Shampoo and Degreaser (U.S. only) (ZC-20)  
Motorcraft Engine Shampoo (Canada only) (CXC-66-A)  
Motorcraft Multi-Purpose Cleaner (Canada only) (CXC-101)  
Motorcraft Premium Car Wash Concentrate (U.S. only) (ZC-17-B)  
Motorcraft Premium Glass Cleaner (Canada only) (CXC-100)  
Motorcraft Premium Liquid Wax (ZC-53-A)  
Motorcraft Professional Strength Carpet & Upholstery Cleaner (ZC-54)  
Motorcraft Spot and Stain Remover (U.S. only) (ZC-14)  
Motorcraft Tire Clean and Shine (ZC-28)  
Motorcraft Triple Clean (U.S. only) (ZC-13)  
Motorcraft Ultra-Clear Spray Glass Cleaner (ZC-23)  
Motorcraft Vinyl Cleaner (Canada only) (CXC-93)  
Motorcraft Vinyl Conditioner (Canada only) (CXC-94)  
Motorcraft Wash and Wax (Canada only) (CXC-95)  
Motorcraft Wheel and Tire Cleaner (ZC-37-A)

## Maintenance and Specifications

### SERVICE RECOMMENDATIONS

To help you service your vehicle, we provide *scheduled maintenance information* which makes tracking routine service easy.

If your vehicle requires professional service, your authorized dealer can provide the necessary parts and service. Check your *Warranty Guide/Customer Information Guide* to find out which parts and services are covered.

Use only recommended fuels, lubricants, fluids and service parts conforming to specifications. Motorcraft parts are designed and built to provide the best performance in your vehicle.

### PRECAUTIONS WHEN SERVICING YOUR VEHICLE

- Do not work on a hot engine.
- Make sure that nothing gets caught in moving parts.
- Do not work on a vehicle with the engine running in an enclosed space, unless you are sure you have enough ventilation.
- Keep all open flames and other burning (cigarettes) material away from the battery and all fuel related parts.

#### Working with the engine off

- Automatic transmission:
  1. Set the parking brake and shift to P (Park).
  2. Turn off the engine and remove the key.
  3. Block the wheels.
- Manual transmission:
  1. Set the parking brake, depress the clutch pedal, place the gearshift in 1 (First), and release the clutch pedal.
  2. Turn off the engine and remove the key.
  3. Block the wheels.

#### Working with the engine on

- Automatic transmission:
  1. Set the parking brake and shift to P (Park).
  2. Block the wheels.
- Manual transmission:
  1. Set the parking brake, depress the clutch pedal, place the gearshift in N (Neutral), and release the clutch pedal.

## Maintenance and Specifications

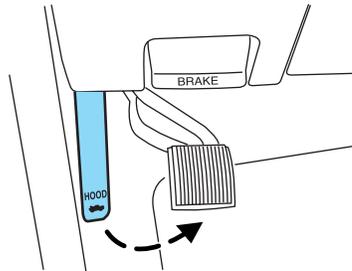
2. Block the wheels.



**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and/or personal burn injuries, do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

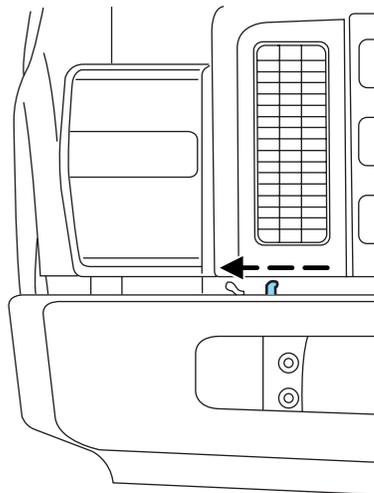
### OPENING THE HOOD

1. Inside the vehicle, pull the hood release handle located under the bottom left corner of the instrument panel.



2. Go to the front of the vehicle and release the auxiliary latch located below the passenger side of the grille, next to the headlamp. Slide the handle to release the auxiliary latch.

3. Lift the hood until the lift cylinders hold it open.



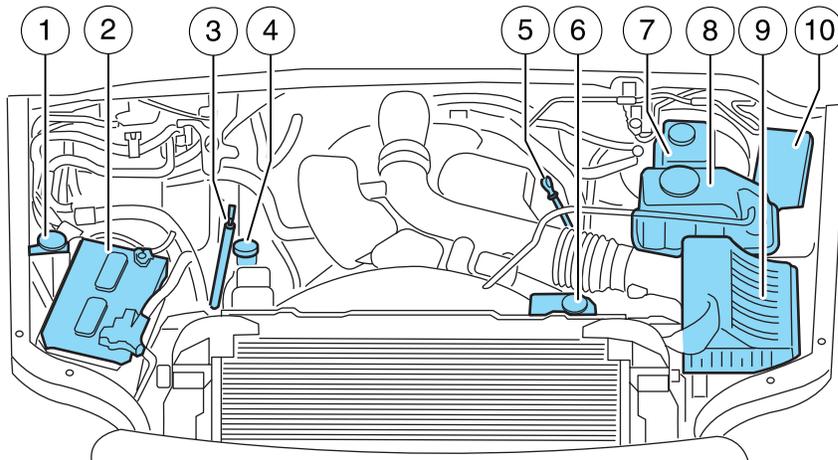
368

## Maintenance and Specifications

### IDENTIFYING COMPONENTS IN THE ENGINE COMPARTMENT

Refer to the *6.0 and 6.4 Liter Power Stroke Direct Injection Turbo Diesel Owner's Guide Supplement* for diesel engine component locations.

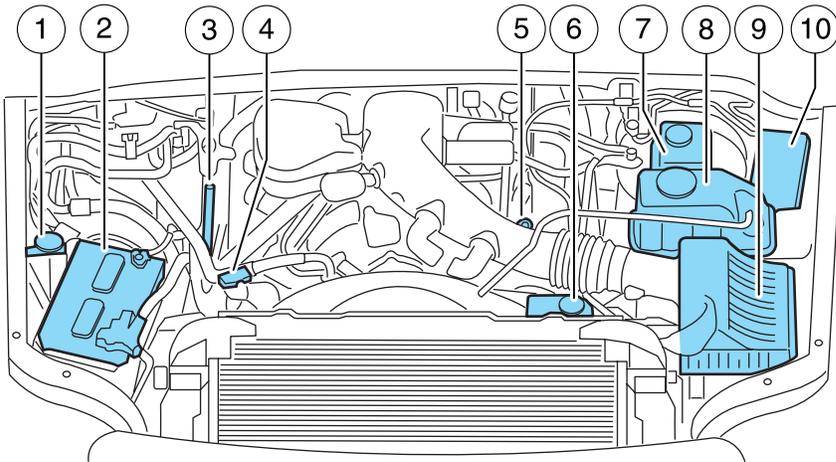
#### 5.4L V8 gasoline engines



1. Windshield washer fluid reservoir
2. Battery
3. Transmission fluid dipstick (automatic transmission)
4. Engine oil filler cap
5. Engine oil dipstick
6. Power steering fluid reservoir
7. Brake fluid reservoir
8. Engine coolant reservoir
9. Air filter assembly
10. Power distribution box

## Maintenance and Specifications

### 6.8L V10 gasoline engine



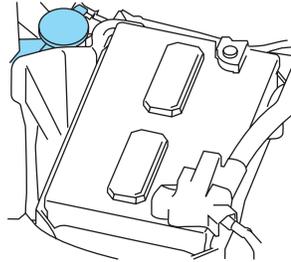
1. Windshield washer fluid reservoir
2. Battery
3. Transmission fluid dipstick (automatic transmission)
4. Engine oil filler cap
5. Engine oil dipstick
6. Power steering fluid reservoir
7. Brake fluid reservoir
8. Engine coolant reservoir
9. Air filter assembly
10. Power distribution box

## Maintenance and Specifications

### WINDSHIELD WASHER FLUID

Add fluid to fill the reservoir if the level is low. In very cold weather, do not fill the reservoir completely.

Only use a washer fluid that meets Ford specification WSB-M8B16-A2. Do not use any special washer fluid such as windshield water repellent type fluid or bug wash. They may cause squeaking, chatter noise, streaking and smearing. Refer to the *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* section in this chapter.



State or local regulations on volatile organic compounds may restrict the use of methanol, a common windshield washer antifreeze additive. Washer fluids containing non-methanol antifreeze agents should be used only if they provide cold weather protection without damaging the vehicle's paint finish, wiper blades or washer system.



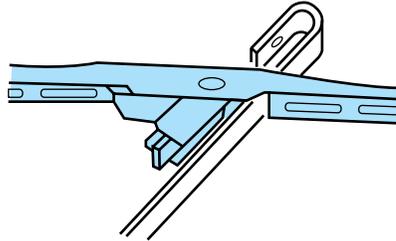
**WARNING:** If you operate your vehicle in temperatures below 40°F (5°C), use washer fluid with antifreeze protection. Failure to use washer fluid with antifreeze protection in cold weather could result in impaired windshield vision and increase the risk of injury or accident.

**Note:** Do not put washer fluid in the engine coolant reservoir. Washer fluid placed in the cooling system may harm engine and cooling system components.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### CHANGING THE WIPER BLADES

1. Pull the wiper arm away from the vehicle. Turn the blade at an angle from the wiper arm. Push the lock tab to release the blade and pull the wiper blade down toward the windshield to remove it from the arm.



2. Attach the new wiper to the wiper arm and press it into place until a click is heard.

Replace wiper blades at least once per year for optimum performance.

Poor wiper quality can be improved by cleaning the wiper blades and the windshield. Refer to *Windows and wiper blades* in the *Cleaning* chapter.

To prolong the life of the wiper blades, it is highly recommended to scrape off the ice on the windshield before turning on the wipers. The layer of ice has many sharp edges and can damage the micro edge of the wiper rubber element.

### ENGINE OIL

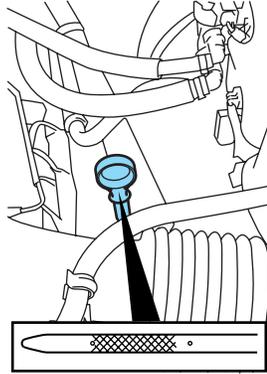
#### Checking the engine oil

Refer to the *scheduled maintenance information* for the appropriate intervals for checking the engine oil.

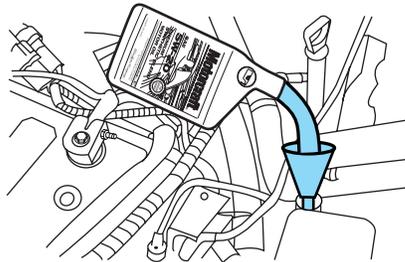
1. Make sure the vehicle is on level ground.
2. Turn the engine off and wait 15 minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan.
3. Set the parking brake and ensure the gearshift is securely latched in P (Park) (automatic transmission) or 1 (First) (manual transmission).
4. Open the hood. Protect yourself from engine heat.
5. Locate and carefully remove the engine oil dipstick.

## Maintenance and Specifications

- 5.4L/6.8L gasoline engines only; for diesel engine information, refer to the *6.0 and 6.4 Liter Direct Injection Turbo Diesel Owner's Guide Supplement*.



6. Wipe the dipstick clean. Insert the dipstick fully, then remove it again.
  - If the oil level is **between the MIN and MAX marks**, the oil level is acceptable. **DO NOT ADD OIL.**
  - If the oil level is below the MIN mark, add enough oil to raise the level within the MIN-MAX range.



- Oil levels above the MAX mark may cause engine damage. Some oil must be removed from the engine by a service technician.
7. Put the dipstick back in and ensure it is fully seated.

### Adding engine oil

1. Check the engine oil. For instructions, refer to *Checking the engine oil* in this chapter.
2. If the engine oil level is not within the normal range, add only certified engine oil of the recommended viscosity. Remove the engine oil filler cap and use a funnel to pour the engine oil into the opening.
3. Recheck the engine oil level. Make sure the oil level is not above the normal operating range on the engine oil level dipstick.

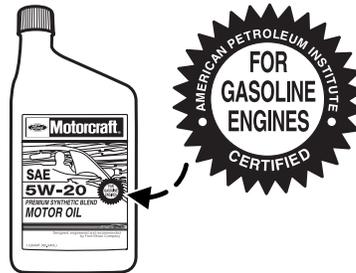
## Maintenance and Specifications

4. Install the dipstick and ensure it is fully seated.
5. Fully install the engine oil filler cap by turning the filler cap clockwise 1/4 of a turn until three clicks are heard or until the cap is fully seated.

**To avoid possible oil loss, DO NOT operate the vehicle with the engine oil level dipstick and/or the engine oil filler cap removed.**

### Engine oil and filter recommendations

Look for this certification trademark.



### Use SAE 5W-20 engine oil

Only use oils “Certified For Gasoline Engines” by the American Petroleum Institute (API). An oil with this trademark symbol conforms to the current engine and emission system protection standards and fuel economy requirements of the International Lubricant Standardization and Approval Committee (ILSAC), comprised of U.S. and Japanese automobile manufacturers.

To protect your engine and engine’s warranty, use Motorcraft SAE 5W-20 or an equivalent SAE 5W-20 oil meeting Ford specification WSS-M2C930-A. **SAE 5W-20 oil provides optimum fuel economy and durability performance meeting all requirements for your vehicle’s engine.** Refer to *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* later in this chapter for more information.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives, cleaners or other engine treatments. They are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that is not covered by Ford warranty.

Change your engine oil and filter according to the appropriate schedule listed in the *scheduled maintenance information*.

Ford production and Motorcraft replacement oil filters are designed for added engine protection and long life. If a replacement oil filter is used that does not meet Ford material and design specifications, start-up engine noises or knock may be experienced.

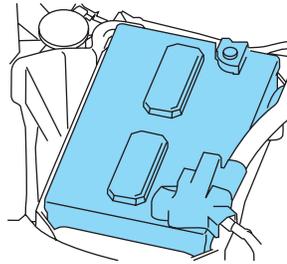
374

## Maintenance and Specifications

It is recommended you use the appropriate Motorcraft oil filter or another with equivalent performance for your engine application.

### BATTERY

 **WARNING:** This vehicle may be equipped with more than one battery, removal of cable from only one battery does not disconnect the vehicle electrical system. Be sure to disconnect cables from all batteries when disconnecting power. Failure to do so may cause serious personal injury or property damage.



Your vehicle is equipped with a Motorcraft maintenance-free battery which normally does not require additional water during its life of service.

**If your battery has a cover/shield, make sure it is reinstalled after the battery has been cleaned or replaced.**

For longer, trouble-free operation, keep the top of the battery clean and dry. Also, make certain the battery cables are always tightly fastened to the battery terminals.

If you see any corrosion on the battery or terminals, remove the cables from the terminals and clean with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.

It is recommended that the negative battery cable terminal be disconnected from the battery if you plan to store your vehicle for an extended period of time. This will minimize the discharge of your battery during storage.

**Note: Electrical or electronic accessories or components added to the vehicle by the dealer or the owner may adversely affect battery performance and durability.**

 **WARNING:** Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide proper ventilation.

## Maintenance and Specifications



**WARNING:** When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and/or damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.



**WARNING:** Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.



**WARNING:** Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. **Wash hands after handling.**

Because your vehicle's engine is also electronically controlled by a computer, some control conditions are maintained by power from the battery. When the battery is disconnected or a new battery is installed, the engine must relearn its idle and fuel trim strategy for optimum driveability and performance. To begin this process:

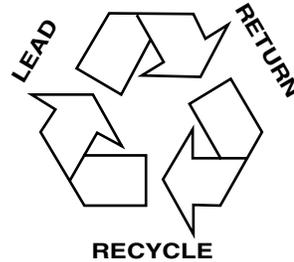
1. With the vehicle at a complete stop, set the parking brake.
2. Put the gearshift in P (Park) (automatic transmission) or the neutral position (manual transmission), turn off all accessories and start the engine.
3. Run the engine until it reaches normal operating temperature.
4. Allow the engine to idle for at least one minute.
5. Turn the A/C on and allow the engine to idle for at least one minute.
6. Drive the vehicle to complete the relearning process.
  - The vehicle may need to be driven 10 miles (16 km) or more to relearn the idle and fuel trim strategy.
  - **If you do not allow the engine to relearn its idle trim, the idle quality of your vehicle may be adversely affected until the idle trim is eventually relearned.**

If the battery has been disconnected or a new battery has been installed, the clock and the preset radio stations must be reset once the battery is reconnected.

376

## Maintenance and Specifications

- Always dispose of automotive batteries in a responsible manner. Follow your local authorized standards for disposal. Call your local authorized recycling center to find out more about recycling automotive batteries.



### ENGINE COOLANT

#### Checking engine coolant

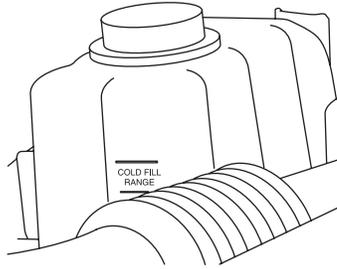
The concentration and level of engine coolant should be checked at the intervals listed in *scheduled maintenance information*. The coolant concentration should be maintained at 50/50 coolant and distilled water, which equates to a freeze point of  $-34^{\circ}\text{F}$  ( $-36^{\circ}\text{C}$ ). Coolant concentration testing is possible with a hydrometer or antifreeze tester. The level of coolant should be maintained at the "FULL COLD" level or within the "COLD FILL RANGE" in the coolant reservoir. If the level falls below, add coolant per the instructions in the *Adding engine coolant* section.

Your vehicle was factory-filled with a 50/50 engine coolant and water concentration. If the concentration of coolant falls below 40% or above 60%, the engine parts could become damaged or not work properly. **A 50/50 mixture of coolant and water provides the following:**

- **Freeze protection down to  $-34^{\circ}\text{F}$  ( $-36^{\circ}\text{C}$ ).**
- **Boiling protection up to  $265^{\circ}\text{F}$  ( $129^{\circ}\text{C}$ ).**
- **Protection against rust and other forms of corrosion.**
- **Proper function of calibrated gauges.**

## Maintenance and Specifications

When the engine is cold, check the level of the engine coolant in the reservoir.



- The engine coolant should be at the “FULL COLD” level or within the “COLD FILL RANGE” as listed on the engine coolant reservoir (depending upon application).
- Refer to *scheduled maintenance information* for service interval schedules.
- Be sure to read and understand *Precautions when servicing your vehicle* in this chapter.

If the engine coolant has not been checked at the recommended interval, the engine coolant reservoir may become low or empty. If the reservoir is low or empty, add engine coolant to the reservoir. Refer to *Adding engine coolant* in this chapter.

**Note:** Automotive fluids are not interchangeable; do not use engine coolant, antifreeze or windshield washer fluid outside of its specified function and vehicle location.

### Adding engine coolant

When adding coolant, make sure it is a 50/50 mixture of engine coolant and distilled water. **When the engine is cool**, add the mixture to the coolant reservoir until the appropriate fill level is obtained.



**WARNING:** Do not add engine coolant when the engine is hot. Steam and scalding liquids released from a hot cooling system can burn you badly. Also, you can be burned if you spill coolant on hot engine parts.



**WARNING:** Do not put engine coolant in the windshield washer fluid container. If sprayed on the windshield, engine coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.

## Maintenance and Specifications

- **Add Motorcraft Premium Gold Engine Coolant or equivalent meeting Ford specification WSS-M97B51-A1.** Refer to *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* in this chapter.

**Note:** Use of Motorcraft Cooling System Stop Leak Pellets or an equivalent product meeting Ford specification WSS-M99B37-B6, may darken the color of Motorcraft Premium Gold Engine Coolant from yellow to golden tan.

- **Do not add/mix an orange-colored, extended life coolant such as Motorcraft Specialty Orange Engine Coolant, meeting Ford specification WSS-M97B44-D, or DEX-COOL® brand with the factory-filled coolant.** Mixing Motorcraft Specialty Orange Engine Coolant or any orange-colored extended life product such as DEX-COOL® brand with your factory filled coolant can result in degraded corrosion protection.
- A large amount of water without engine coolant may be added, in case of emergency, to reach a vehicle service location. In this instance, the cooling system must be drained and refilled with a 50/50 mixture of engine coolant and distilled water as soon as possible. Water alone (without engine coolant) can cause engine damage from corrosion, overheating or freezing.
- **Do not use alcohol, methanol, brine or any engine coolants mixed with alcohol or methanol antifreeze (coolant).** Alcohol and other liquids can cause engine damage from overheating or freezing.
- **Do not add extra inhibitors or additives to the coolant.** These can be harmful and compromise the corrosion protection of the engine coolant.

For vehicles with overflow coolant systems with a non-pressurized cap on the coolant recovery system, add coolant to the coolant recovery reservoir when the engine is cool. Add the proper mixture of coolant and water to the "FULL COLD" level. For all other vehicles which have a coolant degas system with a pressurized cap, or if it is necessary to remove the coolant pressure relief cap on the radiator of a vehicle with an overflow system, follow these steps to add engine coolant.

## Maintenance and Specifications



**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the engine is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system is under pressure; steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when the cap is loosened slightly.

Add the proper mixture of coolant and water to the cooling system by following these steps:

1. Before you begin, turn the engine off and let it cool.
2. When the engine is cool, wrap a thick cloth around the coolant pressure relief cap on the coolant reservoir (a translucent plastic bottle). Slowly turn cap counterclockwise (left) until pressure begins to release.
3. Step back while the pressure releases.
4. When you are sure that all the pressure has been released, use the cloth to turn it counterclockwise and remove the cap.
5. Fill the coolant reservoir slowly with the proper coolant mixture, to within the “COLD FILL RANGE” or the “FULL COLD” level on the reservoir. If you removed the radiator cap in an overflow system, fill the radiator until the coolant is visible and radiator is almost full.
6. Replace the cap. Turn until tightly installed. Cap must be tightly installed to prevent coolant loss.

After any coolant has been added, check the coolant concentration (refer to *Checking engine coolant*). If the concentration is not 50/50 (protection to  $-34^{\circ}\text{F}/-36^{\circ}\text{C}$ ), drain some coolant and adjust the concentration. It may take several drains and additions to obtain a 50/50 coolant concentration.

Whenever coolant has been added, the coolant level in the coolant reservoir should be checked the next few times you drive the vehicle. If necessary, add enough 50/50 concentration of engine coolant and distilled water to bring the liquid level to the proper level.

If you have to add more than 1.0 quart (1.0 liter) of engine coolant per month, have your authorized dealer check the engine cooling system. Your cooling system may have a leak. Operating an engine with a low level of coolant can result in engine overheating and possible engine damage.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### Recycled engine coolant

Ford Motor Company does NOT recommend the use of recycled engine coolant since a Ford-approved recycling process is not yet available.



Used engine coolant should be disposed of in an appropriate manner. Follow your community's regulations and standards for recycling and disposing of automotive fluids.

### Coolant refill capacity

To find out how much fluid your vehicle's cooling system can hold, refer to *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* in this chapter.

**If your vehicle is equipped with a diesel engine**, refer to the *Maintenance Product Specifications and Capacities* section of your *6.0 and 6.4 Liter Power Stroke Direct Injection Turbo Diesel Owner's Guide Supplement*.

Fill your engine coolant reservoir as outlined in *Adding engine coolant* in this section.

### Severe climates

If you drive in extremely cold climates (less than  $-34^{\circ}\text{F}$  [ $-36^{\circ}\text{C}$ ):

- **It may be necessary to increase the coolant concentration above 50%.**
- **NEVER increase the coolant concentration above 60%.**
- **Increased engine coolant concentrations above 60% will decrease the overheat protection characteristics of the engine coolant and may cause engine damage.**
- **Refer to the chart on the coolant container to ensure the coolant concentration in your vehicle will provide adequate freeze protection at the temperatures in which you drive in the winter months.**

If you drive in extremely hot climates:

- **It is still necessary to maintain the coolant concentration above 40%.**
- **NEVER decrease the coolant concentration below 40%.**
- **Decreased engine coolant concentrations below 40% will decrease the corrosion protection characteristics of the engine coolant and may cause engine damage.**
- **Decreased engine coolant concentrations below 40% will decrease the freeze protection characteristics of the engine coolant and may cause engine damage.**

## Maintenance and Specifications

- **Refer to the chart on the coolant container to ensure the coolant concentration in your vehicle will provide adequate protection at the temperatures in which you drive.**

Vehicles driven year-round in non-extreme climates should use a 50/50 mixture of engine coolant and distilled water for optimum cooling system and engine protection.

### **What you should know about fail-safe cooling (if equipped)**

If the engine coolant supply is depleted, this feature allows the vehicle to be driven temporarily before incremental component damage is incurred. The “fail-safe” distance depends on ambient temperatures, vehicle load and terrain.

#### ***How fail-safe cooling works***

If the engine begins to overheat:

- The engine coolant temperature gauge will move to the red (hot) area.
- The message center will indicate the engine is overheating.
- The  indicator will illuminate.

If the engine reaches a preset over-temperature condition, the engine will automatically switch to alternating cylinder operation. Each disabled cylinder acts as an air pump and cools the engine.

When this occurs the vehicle will still operate. However:

- The engine power will be limited.
- The air conditioning system will be disabled.

Continued operation will increase the engine temperature and the engine will completely shut down, causing steering and braking effort to increase.

Once the engine temperature cools, the engine can be re-started. Take your vehicle to a service facility as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### ***When fail-safe mode is activated***

You have limited engine power when in the fail-safe mode, so drive the vehicle with caution. The vehicle will not be able to maintain high-speed operation and the engine will run rough. Remember that the engine is capable of completely shutting down automatically to prevent engine damage; therefore:

1. Pull off the road as soon as safely possible and turn off the engine.
2. Arrange for the vehicle to be taken to a service facility.
3. If this is not possible, wait a short period for the engine to cool.
4. Check the coolant level and replenish if low.



**WARNING:** Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

5. Re-start the engine and take your vehicle to a service facility.

**Driving the vehicle without repairing the engine problem increases the chance of engine damage. Take your vehicle to a service facility as soon as possible.**

### **FUEL FILTER**

For fuel filter replacement, see your authorized dealer. Refer to *scheduled maintenance information* for the appropriate intervals for changing the fuel filter.

**Replace the fuel filter with an authorized Motorcraft part. The customer warranty may be void for any damage to the fuel system if an authorized Motorcraft fuel filter is not used.**

### **WHAT YOU SHOULD KNOW ABOUT AUTOMOTIVE FUELS**

#### **Important safety precautions**



**WARNING:** Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.



**WARNING:** The fuel system may be under pressure. If the fuel filler cap is venting vapor or if you hear a hissing sound, wait until it stops before completely removing the fuel filler cap. Otherwise, fuel may spray out and injure you or others.

## Maintenance and Specifications

 **WARNING:** If you do not use the proper fuel filler cap, excessive vacuum in the fuel tank may damage the fuel system or cause the fuel cap to disengage in a collision, which may result in serious personal injury.

 **WARNING:** Automotive fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.

 **WARNING:** Gasoline may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.

Observe the following guidelines when handling automotive fuel:

- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before refueling your vehicle.
- Always turn off the vehicle before refueling.
- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuel such as gasoline is highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed, call a physician immediately, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be visible for hours.
- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling too much fuel vapor of any kind can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.
- Avoid getting fuel liquid in your eyes. If fuel is splashed in the eyes, remove contact lenses (if worn), flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.
- Fuels can also be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If fuel is splashed on the skin and/or clothing, promptly remove contaminated clothing and wash skin thoroughly with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact with fuel liquid or vapor causes skin irritation.



## Maintenance and Specifications

- Be particularly careful if you are taking “Antabuse” or other forms of disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing gasoline vapors, or skin contact could cause an adverse reaction. In sensitive individuals, serious personal injury or sickness may result. If fuel is splashed on the skin, promptly wash skin thoroughly with soap and water. Consult a physician immediately if you experience an adverse reaction.



**WARNING:** When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the filler neck. Never smoke while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Care should be taken to avoid inhaling excess fumes.



**WARNING:** The flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity, which can cause a fire if fuel is pumped into an ungrounded fuel container.

### Refueling



**WARNING:** Fuel vapor burns violently and a fuel fire can cause severe injuries. To help avoid injuries to you and others:

- Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island;
- Turn off your engine when you are refueling;
- Do not smoke if you are near fuel or refueling your vehicle;
- Keep sparks, flames and smoking materials away from fuel;
- Stay outside your vehicle and do not leave the fuel pump unattended when refueling your vehicle — this is against the law in some places;
- Keep children away from the fuel pump; never let children pump fuel.

Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

- Place approved fuel container on the ground.
- DO NOT fill a fuel container while it is in the vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container while filling.
- DO NOT use a device that would hold the fuel pump handle in the fill position.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### Fuel filler cap

When fueling your vehicle:

1. Turn the engine off.
2. Carefully turn the filler cap counterclockwise until it spins off.
3. Pull to remove the cap from the fuel filler pipe.
4. To install the cap, align the tabs on the cap with the notches on the filler pipe.
5. Turn the filler cap clockwise until it clicks.

If the “Check Fuel Cap” indicator comes on and stays on after you start the engine, the fuel filler cap may not be properly installed. Turn off the engine, remove the fuel filler cap, align the cap properly and reinstall it.

**If you must replace the fuel filler cap, replace it with a fuel filler cap that is designed for your vehicle. The vehicle warranty may be void for any damage to the fuel tank or fuel system if the correct genuine Ford or Motorcraft fuel filler cap is not used.**



**WARNING:** The fuel system may be under pressure. If the fuel filler cap is venting vapor or if you hear a hissing sound, wait until it stops before completely removing the fuel filler cap. Otherwise, fuel may spray out and injure you or others.



**WARNING:** If you do not use the proper fuel filler cap, excessive pressure or vacuum in the fuel tank may damage the fuel system or cause the fuel cap to disengage in a collision, which may result in possible personal injury.

FORD RECOMMENDS BP



## Maintenance and Specifications

### Choosing the right fuel

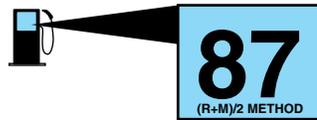
Use only UNLEADED fuel or UNLEADED fuel blended with a maximum of 10% ethanol. Do not use fuel ethanol (E85), diesel, methanol, leaded fuel or any other fuel. The use of leaded fuel is prohibited by law and could damage your vehicle.

Your vehicle was not designed to use fuel or fuel additives with metallic compounds, including manganese-based additives.

**Note:** Use of any fuel other than those recommended may cause powertrain damage, a loss of vehicle performance, and repairs may not be covered under warranty.

### Octane recommendations

Your vehicle is designed to use “Regular” unleaded gasoline with a pump (R+M)/2 octane rating of 87. We do not recommend the use of gasolines labeled as “Regular” in high altitude areas that are sold with octane ratings less than 87.



Do not be concerned if your engine sometimes knocks lightly. However, if it knocks heavily under most driving conditions while you are using fuel with the recommended octane rating, see your authorized dealer to prevent any engine damage.

### Fuel quality

If you are experiencing starting, rough idle or hesitation driveability problems, try a different brand of unleaded gasoline. “Premium” unleaded gasoline is not recommended for vehicles designed to use “Regular” unleaded gasoline because it may cause these problems to become more pronounced. If the problems persist, see your authorized dealer.

Do not add aftermarket fuel additive products to your fuel tank. It should not be necessary to add any aftermarket products to your fuel tank if you continue to use high quality fuel of the recommended octane rating. These products have not been approved for your engine and could cause damage to the fuel system. Repairs to correct the effects of using an aftermarket product in your fuel may not be covered by your warranty.

## Maintenance and Specifications

Many of the world's automakers approved the World-Wide Fuel Charter that recommends gasoline specifications to provide improved performance and emission control system protection for your vehicle. Gasolines that meet the World-Wide Fuel Charter should be used when available. Ask your fuel supplier about gasolines that meet the World-Wide Fuel Charter.

### Cleaner air

Ford endorses the use of reformulated "cleaner-burning" gasolines to improve air quality, per the recommendations in the *Choosing the right fuel* section.

### Running out of fuel

Avoid running out of fuel because this situation may have an adverse effect on powertrain components.

If you have run out of fuel:

- You may need to cycle the ignition from off to on several times after refueling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. On restarting, cranking time will take a few seconds longer than normal.
- Normally, adding 1 gallon (3.8L) of fuel is enough to restart the engine. If the vehicle is out of fuel and on a steep grade, more than 1 gallon (3.8L) may be required.
- The service engine soon  indicator may come on. For more information on the service engine soon  indicator, refer to *Warning lights and chimes* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter.

## ESSENTIALS OF GOOD FUEL ECONOMY

### Measuring techniques

Your best source of information about actual fuel economy is you, the driver. You must gather information as accurately and consistently as possible. Fuel expense, frequency of fill-ups or fuel gauge readings are NOT accurate as a measure of fuel economy. We do not recommend taking fuel economy measurements during the first 1,000 miles (1,600 km) of driving (engine break-in period). You will get a more accurate measurement after 2,000 miles–3,000 miles (3,000 km–5,000 km).

### Filling the tank

The advertised fuel capacity of the fuel tank on your vehicle is equal to the rated refill capacity of the fuel tank as listed in the *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* section of this chapter.

## Maintenance and Specifications

The advertised capacity is the amount of the indicated capacity and the empty reserve combined. Indicated capacity is the difference in the amount of fuel in a full tank and a tank when the fuel gauge indicates empty. Empty reserve is the small amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank after the fuel gauge indicates empty.

**The amount of usable fuel in the empty reserve varies and should not be relied upon to increase driving range. When refueling your vehicle after the fuel gauge indicates empty, you might not be able to refuel the full amount of the advertised capacity of the fuel tank due to the empty reserve still present in the tank.**

For consistent results when filling the fuel tank:

- Turn the engine/ignition switch to the off position prior to refueling, an error in the reading will result if the engine is left running.
- Use the same filling rate setting (low — medium — high) each time the tank is filled.
- Allow no more than two automatic click-offs when filling.
- Always use fuel with the recommended octane rating.
- Use a known quality gasoline, preferably a national brand.
- Use the same side of the same pump and have the vehicle facing the same direction each time you fill up.
- Have the vehicle loading and distribution the same every time.

Your results will be most accurate if your filling method is consistent.

### Calculating fuel economy

1. Fill the fuel tank completely and record the initial odometer reading (in miles or kilometers).
2. Each time you fill the tank, record the amount of fuel added (in gallons or liters).
3. After at least three to five tank fill-ups, fill the fuel tank and record the current odometer reading.
4. Subtract your initial odometer reading from the current odometer reading.
5. Follow one of the simple calculations in order to determine fuel economy:

Calculation 1: **Divide total miles traveled by total gallons used.**

Calculation 2: **Multiply liters used by 100, then divide by total kilometers traveled.**

## Maintenance and Specifications

Keep a record for at least one month and record the type of driving (city or highway). This will provide an accurate estimate of the vehicle's fuel economy under current driving conditions. Additionally, keeping records during summer and winter will show how temperature impacts fuel economy. In general, lower temperatures give lower fuel economy.

### Driving style — good driving and fuel economy habits

Give consideration to the lists that follow and you may be able to change a number of variables and improve your fuel economy.

#### **Habits**

- Smooth, moderate operation can yield up to 10% savings in fuel.
- Steady speeds without stopping will usually give the best fuel economy.
- Idling for long periods of time (greater than one minute) may waste fuel.
- Anticipate stopping; slowing down may eliminate the need to stop.
- Sudden or hard accelerations may reduce fuel economy.
- Slow down gradually.
- Driving at reasonable speeds (traveling at 55 mph [88 km/h] uses 15% less fuel than traveling at 65 mph [105 km/h]).
- Revving the engine before turning it off may reduce fuel economy.
- Using the air conditioner or defroster may reduce fuel economy.
- You may want to turn off the speed control in hilly terrain if unnecessary shifting between the top gears occurs. Unnecessary shifting of this type could result in reduced fuel economy.
- Warming up a vehicle on cold mornings is not required and may reduce fuel economy.
- Resting your foot on the brake pedal while driving may reduce fuel economy.
- Combine errands and minimize stop-and-go driving.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### **Maintenance**

- Keep tires properly inflated and use only recommended size.
- Operating a vehicle with the wheels out of alignment will reduce fuel economy.
- Use recommended engine oil. Refer to *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* in this chapter.
- Perform all regularly scheduled maintenance items. Follow the recommended maintenance schedule and owner maintenance checks found in *scheduled maintenance information*.

### **Conditions**

- Heavily loading a vehicle or towing a trailer may reduce fuel economy at any speed.
- Carrying unnecessary weight may reduce fuel economy (approximately 1 mpg [0.4 km/L] is lost for every 400 lb [180 kg] of weight carried).
- Adding certain accessories to your vehicle (for example bug deflectors, rollbars/light bars, running boards, ski/luggage racks) may reduce fuel economy.
- To maximize the fuel economy, drive with the tonneau cover installed (if equipped).
- Using fuel blended with alcohol may lower fuel economy.
- Fuel economy may decrease with lower temperatures during the first 8–10 miles (12–16 km) of driving.
- Driving on flat terrain offers improved fuel economy as compared to driving on hilly terrain.
- Transmissions give their best fuel economy when operated in the top cruise gear and with steady pressure on the gas pedal.
- Four-wheel-drive operation (if equipped) is less fuel efficient than two-wheel-drive operation.
- Close windows for high speed driving.

### **EPA fuel economy estimates**

Every new vehicle should have a window sticker containing EPA fuel economy estimates. Contact your authorized dealer if the window sticker is not supplied with your vehicle. The EPA fuel economy estimates should be your guide for the fuel economy comparisons with other vehicles. Your fuel economy may vary depending upon the method of operation and conditions.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM

Your vehicle is equipped with various emission control components and a catalytic converter which will enable your vehicle to comply with applicable exhaust emission standards. To make sure that the catalytic converter and other emission control components continue to work properly:

- Use only the specified fuel listed.
- Avoid running out of fuel.
- Do not turn off the ignition while your vehicle is moving, especially at high speeds.
- Have the items listed in *scheduled maintenance information* performed according to the specified schedule.

The scheduled maintenance items listed in *scheduled maintenance information* are essential to the life and performance of your vehicle and to its emissions system.

If other than Ford, Motorcraft or Ford-authorized parts are used for maintenance replacements or for service of components affecting emission control, such non-Ford parts should be equivalent to genuine Ford Motor Company parts in performance and durability.



**WARNING:** Do not park, idle, or drive your vehicle in dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, which can start a fire.

Illumination of the service engine soon  indicator, charging system warning light or the temperature warning light, fluid leaks, strange odors, smoke or loss of engine power could indicate that the emission control system is not working properly.

An improperly operating or damaged exhaust system may allow exhaust to enter the vehicle. Have a damaged or improperly operating exhaust system inspected and repaired immediately.



**WARNING:** Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment.

## Maintenance and Specifications

Do not make any unauthorized changes to your vehicle or engine. By law, vehicle owners and anyone who manufactures, repairs, services, sells, leases, trades vehicles, or supervises a fleet of vehicles are not permitted to intentionally remove an emission control device or prevent it from working. Information about your vehicle's emission system is on the Vehicle Emission Control Information Decal located on or near the engine. This decal also lists engine displacement.

Please consult your *Warranty Guide/Customer Information Guide* for complete emission warranty information.

### On board diagnostics (OBD-II)

Your vehicle is equipped with a computer that monitors the engine's emission control system. This system is commonly known as the On Board Diagnostics System (OBD-II). The OBD-II system protects the environment by ensuring that your vehicle continues to meet government emission standards. The OBD-II system also assists your authorized dealer in properly servicing your vehicle. When the service engine soon  indicator illuminates, the OBD-II system has detected a malfunction. Temporary malfunctions may cause the service engine soon  indicator to illuminate. Examples are:

1. The vehicle has run out of fuel—the engine may misfire or run poorly.
2. Poor fuel quality or water in the fuel—the engine may misfire or run poorly.
3. The fuel cap may not have been securely tightened. See *Fuel filler cap* in this chapter.
4. Driving through deep water—the electrical system may be wet.

These temporary malfunctions can be corrected by filling the fuel tank with good quality fuel, properly tightening the fuel cap or letting the electrical system dry out. After three driving cycles without these or any other temporary malfunctions present, the service engine soon  indicator should stay off the next time the engine is started. A driving cycle consists of a cold engine startup followed by mixed city/highway driving. No additional vehicle service is required.

If the service engine soon  indicator remains on, have your vehicle serviced at the first available opportunity. Although some malfunctions detected by the OBD-II may not have symptoms that are apparent, continued driving with the service engine soon  indicator on can result in increased emissions, lower fuel economy, reduced engine and transmission smoothness, and lead to more costly repairs.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### Readiness for Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) testing

Some state/provincial and local governments may have Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) programs to inspect the emission control equipment on your vehicle. Failure to pass this inspection could prevent you from getting a vehicle registration. Your vehicle may not pass the I/M test if the service engine soon  indicator is on or not working properly (bulb is burned out), or if the OBD-II system has determined that some of the emission control systems have not been properly checked. In this case, the vehicle is considered not ready for I/M testing.

If the service engine soon  indicator is on or the bulb does not work, the vehicle may need to be serviced. Refer to the On board diagnostics (OBD-II) description in this chapter.

If the vehicle's engine or transmission has just been serviced, or the battery has recently run down or been replaced, the OBD-II system may indicate that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing. To determine if the vehicle is ready for I/M testing, turn the ignition key to the on position for 15 seconds without cranking the engine. If the service engine soon  indicator blinks eight times, it means that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing; if the service engine soon  indicator stays on solid, it means that the vehicle is ready for I/M testing.

The OBD-II system is designed to check the emission control system during normal driving. A complete check may take several days. If the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing, the following driving cycle consisting of mixed city and highway driving may be performed:

15 minutes of steady driving on an expressway/highway followed by 20 minutes of stop-and-go driving with at least four 30-second idle periods.

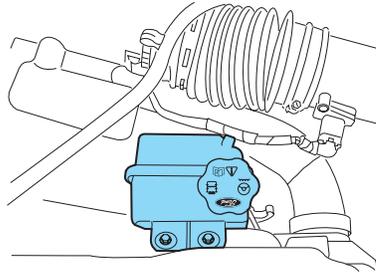
Allow the vehicle to sit for at least eight hours without starting the engine. Then, start the engine and complete the above driving cycle. The engine must warm up to its normal operating temperature. Once started, do not turn off the engine until the above driving cycle is complete. If the vehicle is still not ready for I/M testing, the above driving cycle will have to be repeated.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### POWER STEERING FLUID

Check the power steering fluid. Refer to *scheduled maintenance information*. If adding fluid is necessary, use only MERCON® ATF.

- Gasoline engine shown; diesel engine similar. Refer to *Identifying components in the engine compartment in the 6.0 and 6.4 Liter Power Stroke Direct Injection Turbo Diesel Owner Guide Supplement*.



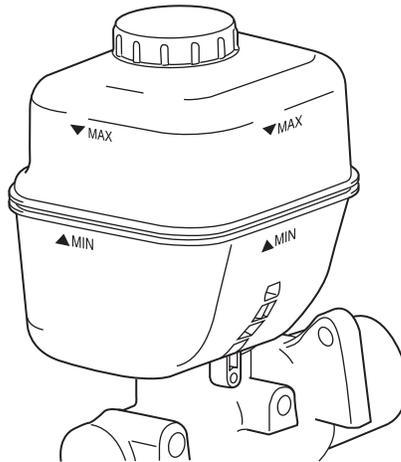
Check the fluid level when it is at ambient temperature, 20°F–80°F (-7°C–25°C):

1. Check the fluid level in the reservoir. It should be between the MIN and MAX range. Do not add fluid if the level is within this range.
2. If the fluid level is low. Add fluid to bring fluid level up to be between the MIN and MAX range.
3. Start the engine.
4. While the engine idles, turn the steering wheel left and right several times.
5. Turn the engine off.
6. Recheck the fluid level in the reservoir. Do not add fluid if the level is between the MIN and MAX range.
7. If the fluid is low, add fluid in small amounts, continuously checking the level until it is between the MIN and MAX range. Refer to *Maintenance Products Specifications and Capacities* in this chapter for the proper fluid type. Be sure to put the cap back on the reservoir.

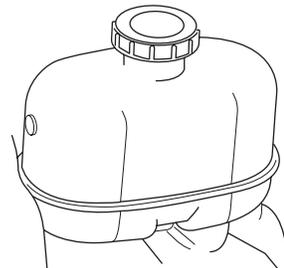
## Maintenance and Specifications

### BRAKE FLUID

- Vacuum boost system



- Hydroboost system



The fluid level will drop slowly as the brakes wear, and will rise when the brake components are replaced. Fluid levels between the “MIN” and “MAX” lines are within the normal operating range; there is no need to add fluid. If the fluid levels are outside of the normal operating range the performance of your brake system could be compromised; seek service from your authorized dealer immediately.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### CLUTCH FLUID (IF EQUIPPED)

Check the fluid level. Refer to *scheduled maintenance information* for the service interval schedules.

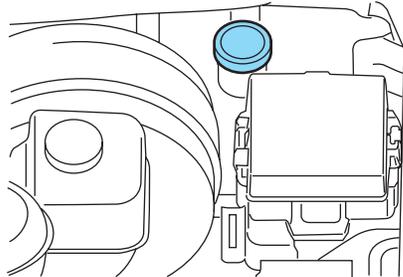
During normal operation, the fluid level in the clutch reservoir should remain constant. If the fluid level drops, refill the fluid level to the step in the reservoir.

Use only a DOT 3 brake fluid designed to meet Ford specifications. Refer to *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* in this chapter.



**WARNING:** Carefully read cautionary information on product label. For MEDICAL EMERGENCY INFORMATION contact a physician or Poison Control Center immediately; on Ford-Motorcraft products call: 1-800-959-3673 (FORD). Failure to follow these instructions may result in personal injury.

1. Clean the reservoir cap before removal to prevent dirt and water from entering the reservoir.
2. Remove cap and rubber diaphragm from reservoir.
3. Add fluid until the level reaches the step in the reservoir.
4. Reinstall rubber diaphragm and cap onto reservoir.



### TRANSMISSION FLUID

#### Checking automatic transmission fluid (if equipped)

Refer to your *scheduled maintenance information* for scheduled intervals for fluid checks and changes. Your transmission does not consume fluid. However, the fluid level should be checked if the transmission is not working properly, i.e., if the transmission slips or shifts slowly or if you notice some sign of fluid leakage.

Automatic transmission fluid expands when warmed. To obtain an accurate fluid check, drive the vehicle until it is at normal operating temperature (approximately 20 miles [30 km]). If your vehicle has been operated for an extended period at high speeds, in city traffic during hot weather or pulling a trailer, the vehicle should be turned off for about 30 minutes to allow fluid to cool before checking.

## Maintenance and Specifications

1. Drive the vehicle 20 miles (30 km) or until it reaches normal operating temperature.
2. Park the vehicle on a level surface and engage the parking brake.
3. With the parking brake engaged and your foot on the brake pedal, start the engine and move the gearshift lever through all of the gear ranges. Allow sufficient time for each gear to engage.
4. Latch the gearshift lever in P (Park) and leave the engine running.
5. Remove the dipstick, wiping it clean with a clean, dry lint free rag. If necessary, refer to *Identifying components in the engine compartment* in this chapter for the location of the dipstick.
6. Install the dipstick making sure it is fully seated in the filler tube.
7. Remove the dipstick and inspect the fluid level. The fluid should be in the designated area for normal operating temperature or ambient temperature.

### Low fluid level

Do not drive the vehicle if the fluid level is at the bottom of the dipstick and the ambient temperature is above 50°F (10°C).

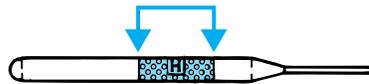


### Correct fluid level

The transmission fluid should be checked at normal operating temperature 150°F-170°F (66°C-77°C) on a level surface. The normal operating temperature can be reached after approximately 20 miles (30 km) of driving.

You can check the fluid without driving if the ambient temperature is above 50°F (10°C). However, if fluid is added at this time, an overfill condition could result when the vehicle reaches normal operating temperature.

The transmission fluid should be in this range if at normal operating temperature (150°F-170°F [66°C-77°C]).



The transmission fluid should be in this range if at ambient temperature (50°F-95°F [10°C-35°C]).

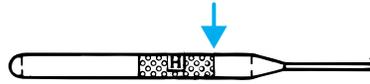


## Maintenance and Specifications

### **High fluid level**

Fluid levels above the safe range may result in transmission failure. An overfill condition of transmission fluid may cause shift and/or engagement concerns and/or possible damage.

High fluid levels can be caused by an overheating condition.



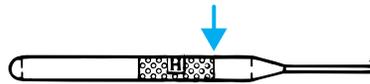
### **Adjusting automatic transmission fluid levels**

Before adding any fluid, make sure the correct type is used. The type of fluid used is normally indicated on the dipstick handle and also in the *Maintenance Product Specifications and Capacities* section in this chapter.

**Use of a non-approved automatic transmission fluid may cause internal transmission component damage.**

If necessary, add fluid in 1/2 pint (250 ml) increments through the filler tube until the level is correct.

If an overfill occurs, excess fluid should be removed by a qualified technician.



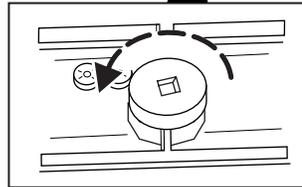
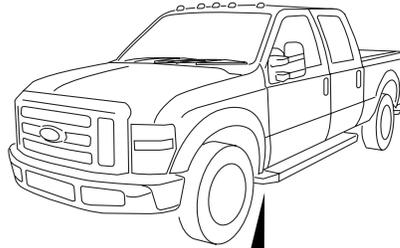
**An overfill condition of transmission fluid may cause shift and/or engagement concerns and/or possible damage.**

Do not use supplemental transmission fluid additives, treatments or cleaning agents. The use of these materials may affect transmission operation and result in damage to internal transmission components.

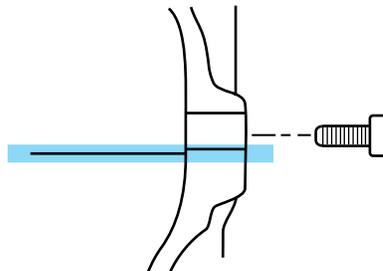
## Maintenance and Specifications

### Checking and adding manual transmission fluid (if equipped)

1. Clean the filler plug.
2. Remove the filler plug and inspect the fluid level.



3. Fluid level should be at the bottom of the opening.
4. Add enough fluid through the filler opening so that the fluid level is at the bottom of the opening.
5. Install and tighten the fill plug securely.

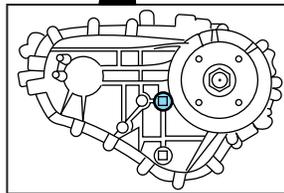
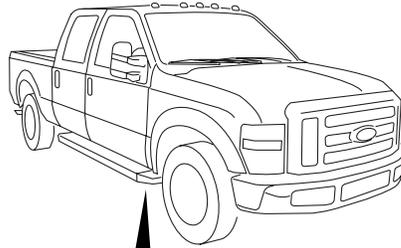


Use only fluid that meets Ford specifications. Refer to *Maintenance Product Specifications and Capacities* in this chapter.

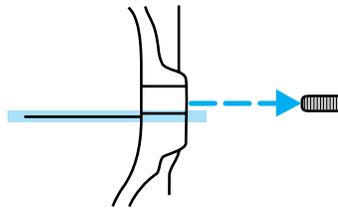
## Maintenance and Specifications

### TRANSFER CASE FLUID (IF EQUIPPED)

1. Clean the filler plug.
2. Remove the filler plug and inspect the fluid level.



3. Add only enough fluid through the filler opening so that the fluid level is at the bottom of the opening.



Use only fluid that meets Ford specifications. Refer to the *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* section in this chapter.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### AIR FILTER

Refer to the *scheduled maintenance information* for the appropriate intervals for changing the air filter element.

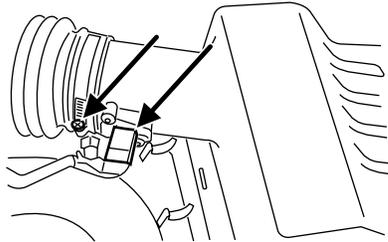
When changing the air filter element, use only the Motorcraft air filter element listed. Refer to *Motorcraft part numbers* in this chapter.

The following procedure is for vehicles equipped with a gasoline engine. If your vehicle is equipped with a diesel engine, refer to the *6.0 and 6.4 Liter Power Stroke Direct Injection Turbo Diesel Owner's Guide Supplement*.

**Note:** Do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

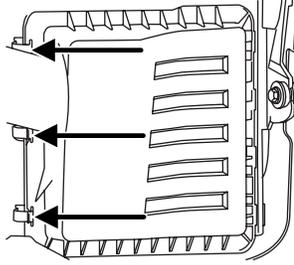
### Changing the air filter element

1. Loosen clamp and disconnect sensor.



## Maintenance and Specifications

2. Release three retainer clamps.

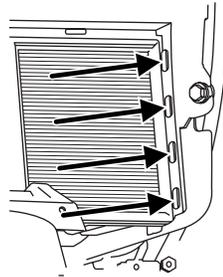


3. Pull air filter cover toward passenger side of vehicle and up to release the tabs. Lift air filter element up and out of housing.

The air filter box needs to be free of any debris before installing a new air filter.

4. Install a new air filter element into the tray assembly.

5. Return air filter cover to original position making sure the four tabs are engaged and secure the three clamps. Tighten clamp on air tube and reconnect sensor.



## Maintenance and Specifications

### MOTORCRAFT PART NUMBERS

Component	5.4L V8/6.8L V10 engines
Air filter element	FA-1883
Fuel filter	FG-1083
Oil filter	FL-820-S
PCV valve	<sup>1</sup>
Battery (Standard)	BXT-65-650
Battery (Optional)	BXT-65-750
Spark plugs-platinum	<sup>2</sup>
Remote Automatic Transmission Filter	<sup>3, 4</sup>

<sup>1</sup>The PCV valve is a critical emission component. It is one of the items listed in the *scheduled maintenance information* and is essential to the life and performance of your vehicle and to its emissions system.

For PCV valve replacement, see your authorized dealer. Refer to the *scheduled maintenance information* for the appropriate intervals for changing the PCV valve.

**Replace the PCV valve with one that meets Ford material and design specifications for your vehicle, such as a Motorcraft or equivalent replacement part. The customer warranty may be void for any damage to the emissions system if such a PCV valve is not used.**

<sup>2</sup>For spark plug replacement, see your authorized dealer. Refer to the *scheduled maintenance information* for the appropriate intervals for changing the spark plugs.

**Replace the spark plugs with ones that meet Ford material and design specifications for your vehicle, such as Motorcraft or equivalent replacement parts. The customer warranty may be void for any damage to the engine if such spark plugs are not used.**

<sup>3</sup>Also available with 6.4L diesel engine and TorqShift transmission. Part number is FT-176.

<sup>4</sup>Also available with 6.4L diesel engine and TorqShift transmission. Part number is FT-175.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### MAINTENANCE PRODUCT SPECIFICATIONS AND CAPACITIES

Item	Capacity	Ford part name	Ford part number / Ford specification
Front axle	5.8 pints (2.8L)	Motorcraft SAE 80W-90 Premium Rear Axle Lubricant	XY-80W-90-QL / WSP-M2C197-A
Spindle bearing	—	High Temperature 4X4 Front Axle and Wheel Bearing Grease	XG-11 / WSS-M1C267-A1
Rear axle - F-250/350 (10.50 inch axle) <sup>1</sup>	6.9 pints (3.3L)	Motorcraft SAE 75W-140 Synthetic Rear Axle Lubricant	XY-75W140-QL / WSL-M2C192-A
Rear axle - F-350 (DANA M80)	8.5 pints (4.0L)	Motorcraft SAE 75W-90 Synthetic Rear Axle Lubricant	XY-75W90-QLS / WSS-M2C918-A
Rear axle - F-450/550 (Dana S110/S130)	14.0 pints (6.6L)	Motorcraft SAE 75W-140 Synthetic Rear Axle Lubricant	XY-75W140-QL / WSL-M2C192-A
Brake fluid (and clutch fluid, if equipped)	Fill to line or step (for clutch) on reservoir	Motorcraft High Performance DOT 3 Motor Vehicle Brake Fluid	PM-1-C / WSS-M6C62-A or WSS-M6C65-A1
Engine coolant (5.4L V8 engine) <sup>2</sup>	25.7 quarts (24.3L)	Motorcraft Premium Gold Engine Coolant (yellow-colored)	VC-7-B / WSS-M97B51-A1

## Maintenance and Specifications

Item	Capacity	Ford part name	Ford part number / Ford specification
Engine coolant (6.8L V10 engine) <sup>2</sup>	26.7 quarts (25.3L)	Motorcraft Premium Gold Engine Coolant (yellow-colored)	VC-7-B / WSS-M97B51-A1
Engine and fuel coolant - diesel engine	Refer to the 6.0 and 6.4 Liter Power Stroke Direct Injection Turbo Diesel Owner's Guide Supplement		
Engine oil (includes filter change) - 5.4L V8 and 6.8L V10 gas engines <sup>6</sup>	7.0 quarts (6.6L)	Motorcraft SAE 5W-20 Premium Synthetic Blend Motor Oil (US) Motorcraft SAE 5W-20 Super Premium Motor Oil (Canada)	XO-5W20-QSP (US) CXO-5W20-LSP12 (Canada) / WSS-M2C930-A and API Certification Mark
Engine oil (includes filter change) - diesel engine	Refer to the 6.0 and 6.4 Liter Power Stroke Direct Injection Turbo Diesel Owner's Guide Supplement		
Fuel tank - Mid-ship tank (optional on Chassis Cab)	19.0 gallons (71.9L)	—	—
Fuel tank - Short box	30.0 gallons (113.4L)	—	—
Fuel tank - Long box	38.0 gallons (143.9L)	—	—
Fuel tank - Aft axle (Chassis cab only)	40.0 gallons (151.4L)	—	—

## Maintenance and Specifications

Item	Capacity	Ford part name	Ford part number / Ford specification
Hinges, latches, striker plates, fuel filler door hinge and seat tracks	—	Multi-Purpose Grease	XG-4 or XL-5 / ESB-MIC93-B
Lock cylinders	—	Motorcraft Penetrating and Lock Lubricant	XL-1 / None
Transmission / parking brake linkages and pivots, brake and clutch pedal shaft (if equipped)	—	Motorcraft Premium Long-Life Grease	XG-1-C or XG-1-K / WSD-MIC27-A
Power steering fluid	Keep fluid level between MIN and MAX on reservoir	MERCON® V Automatic Transmission Fluid	XT-5-QM / MERCON® V
Transfer case fluid	2.0 quarts (1.9L)	Motorcraft Transfer Case Fluid	XL-12 / —
Manual transmission fluid (S6-650) (gas engine)	5.8 quarts (5.5L) <sup>4</sup>	Motorcraft MERCON® V ATF	XT-5-QM/DM / MERCON® V
Manual transmission fluid (M6HDW) - diesel engine	Refer to the 6.0 and 6.4 Liter Power Stroke Direct Injection Turbo Diesel Owner's Guide Supplement		

## Maintenance and Specifications

Item	Capacity	Ford part name	Ford part number / Ford specification
Automatic transmission fluid (5R110) <sup>3</sup>	17.5 quarts (16.6L) <sup>5</sup> (includes remote filter element change)	Motorcraft MERCON <sup>®</sup> LV ATF	XT-10-QLV / MERCON <sup>®</sup> LV
Windshield washer fluid	3.5 quarts (3.3L)	Motorcraft Premium Windshield Washer Concentrate	ZC-32-A / WSB-M8B16-A2

<sup>1</sup>Add 8 oz. (236 ml) of Additive Friction Modifier XL-3 or equivalent meeting Ford Specification EST-M2C118-A for complete refill of limited slip Ford axles. Ford design rear axles contain a synthetic lubricant that does not require changing unless the axle has been submerged in water.

<sup>2</sup>Add the coolant type originally equipped in your vehicle.

<sup>3</sup>Ensure the correct automatic transmission fluid is used. Transmission fluid requirements are indicated on the dipstick blade or the dipstick handle. Check the container to verify the fluid being added is of the correct type. Refer to your *scheduled maintenance information* to determine the correct service interval.

**Automatic transmissions that require MERCON<sup>®</sup> LV should only use MERCON<sup>®</sup> LV fluid. Use of any fluid other than the recommended fluid may cause transmission damage.**

<sup>4</sup>Service refill capacity is determined by filling the transmission to the bottom of the filler hole with the vehicle on a level surface. The 6-speed manual transmission is equipped with an in-tank cooler. Verify the fluid level after operating vehicle to ensure correct fluid level.

<sup>5</sup>Indicates only approximate dry-fill capacity. Some applications may vary based on cooler size and if equipped with an in-tank cooler. The amount of transmission fluid and fluid level should be set by the indication on the dipstick's normal operating range.

<sup>6</sup>Use of synthetic or synthetic blend motor oil is not mandatory. Engine oil need only meet the requirements of Ford specification WSS-M2C930-A and the API Certification mark.

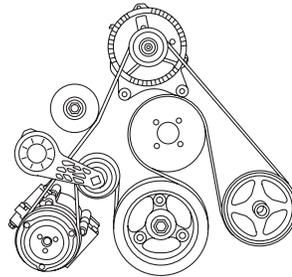
## Maintenance and Specifications

### ENGINE DATA

Engine	5.4L V8 engine	6.8L V10 engine
Cubic inches	330	415
Required fuel	87 octane	87 octane
Firing order	1-3-7-2-6-5-4-8	1-6-5-10-2-7-3-8-4-9
Spark plug gap	1.0–1.1mm (0.039–0.043 inch)	1.0–1.1mm (0.039–0.043 inch)
Ignition system	Coil on plug	Coil on plug
Compression ratio	9.8:1	9.2:1

### Drivebelt routing

5.4L V8/6.8L V10 engines



## Maintenance and Specifications

### IDENTIFYING YOUR VEHICLE

#### Safety Compliance Certification Label

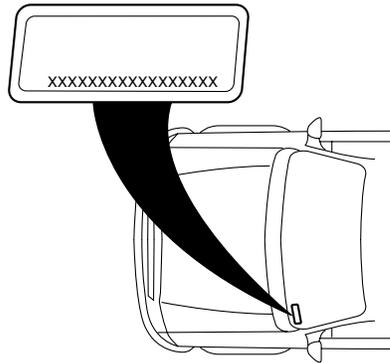
The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration Regulations require that a Safety Compliance Certification Label be affixed to a vehicle and prescribe where the Safety Compliance Certification Label may be located. The Safety Compliance Certification Label is located on the structure by the trailing edge of the driver's door or the edge of the driver's door.



#### Vehicle identification number (VIN)

The vehicle identification number is located on the driver side instrument panel.

Please note that in the graphic, XXXX is representative of your vehicle identification number.





## Accessories

### GENUINE FORD ACCESSORIES FOR YOUR VEHICLE

A wide selection of Genuine Ford Accessories are available for your vehicle through your local Ford or Ford of Canada dealer. These quality accessories have been specifically engineered to fulfill your automotive needs; they are custom designed to complement the style and aerodynamic appearance of your vehicle. In addition, each accessory is made from high quality materials and meets or exceeds Ford's rigorous engineering and safety specifications. Ford Motor Company will repair or replace any properly dealer-installed Genuine Ford Accessories found to be defective in factory-supplied materials or workmanship during the warranty period, as well as any component damaged by the defective accessories. The accessories will be warranted for whichever provides you the greatest benefit:

- 12 months or 12,000 miles (20,000 km) (whichever occurs first), or
- the remainder of your new vehicle limited warranty.

Contact your dealer for details and a copy of the warranty.

The following is a list of several Genuine Ford Accessories. Not all accessories are available for all models. For a complete listing of the accessories that are available for your vehicle, please contact your dealer or visit our online store at: [www.fordaccessories.com](http://www.fordaccessories.com).

#### Exterior style

Bug shields

Chrome exhaust tips

Deflectors

Running boards

Splash guards

Step bars

Tonneau covers

Wheels

#### Interior style

Electrochromic compass/temperature interior mirrors

Floor mats

## Accessories

### Lifestyle

Ash cup / smoker's package

Bedliners and bedmats

Cargo organization and management

Towing mirrors

Trailer hitches, wiring harnesses and accessories

### Peace of mind

Mobile-Ease™ hands-free communication system

Remote start

Vehicle security systems

Wheel locks

### Not all accessories are available for all models.

For maximum vehicle performance, keep the following information in mind when adding accessories or equipment to your vehicle:

- When adding accessories, equipment, passengers and luggage to your vehicle, do not exceed the total weight capacity of the vehicle or of the front or rear axle (GVWR or GAWR as indicated on the Safety Compliance Certification Label). Consult your authorized dealer for specific weight information.
- The Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and Canadian Radio Telecommunications Commission (CRTC) regulate the use of mobile communications systems — such as two-way radios, telephones and theft alarms - that are equipped with radio transmitters. Any such equipment installed in your vehicle should comply with FCC or CRTC regulations and should be installed only by your authorized dealer.
- Mobile communications systems may harm the operation of your vehicle, particularly if they are not properly designed for automotive use.
- To avoid interference with other vehicle functions, such as anti-lock braking systems, amateur radio users who install radios and antennas onto their vehicle should not locate the Amateur Radio Antennas in the area of the driver's side hood.
- Electrical or electronic accessories or components that are added to the vehicle by the authorized dealer or the owner may adversely affect battery performance and durability.

## Index

### A

Accessory delay .....110  
 Air cleaner filter .....402, 404  
 Air conditioning .....84  
 Airbag supplemental restraint  
 system .....193  
   and child safety seats .....195  
   description .....193  
   disposal .....197  
   driver airbag .....195  
   indicator light .....197  
   operation .....195  
   passenger airbag .....195  
   passenger deactivation  
   switch .....198  
 Ambulance packages .....10  
 Antifreeze  
 (see Engine coolant) .....377  
 Anti-lock brake system  
 (see Brakes) .....280–281  
 Anti-theft system .....168, 171  
   arming the system .....169, 171  
   disarming a triggered  
   system .....171  
   triggering .....171  
 Audio system  
 (see Radio) .....26, 28, 35  
 Automatic transmission .....285  
   driving an automatic  
   overdrive .....287  
   fluid, adding .....397  
   fluid, checking .....397  
   fluid, refill capacities .....405  
 Auxiliary Input Jack .....42  
 Auxiliary power point .....107  
 Axle  
   refill capacities .....405

### B

Battery .....375  
   acid, treating emergencies ....375  
   jumping a disabled battery ...343  
   maintenance-free .....375  
   replacement, specifications ...404  
   servicing .....375  
 Belt-Minder® .....189  
 Booster seats .....221  
 Brakes .....280  
   anti-lock .....280–281  
   anti-lock brake system (ABS)  
   warning light .....281  
   fluid, checking and adding ...396  
   fluid, refill capacities .....405  
   parking .....281  
   shift interlock .....285  
   trailer .....267  
 Bulbs .....95

### C

Capacities for refilling fluids ....405  
 Cassette tape player .....26  
 Cell phone use .....9  
 Child safety seats .....206  
   attaching with tether  
   straps .....215  
   in front seat .....207, 211  
   in rear seat .....207, 211, 215  
   LATCH .....215  
 Child safety seats - booster  
 seats .....221  
 Cleaning your vehicle  
   engine compartment .....359  
   instrument panel .....361–362  
   interior .....363  
   plastic parts .....360

## Index

- safety belts .....363
  - washing .....357
  - waxing .....358
  - wheels .....358
  - wiper blades .....360
  - Climate control (see Air conditioning or Heating) .....80, 84
  - Clock adjust
    - 6-CD in dash .....37
    - AM/FM/CD .....30
  - Clutch
    - fluid .....397
    - operation while driving .....290
    - recommended shift speeds ....290
  - Compass, electronic
    - set zone adjustment .....143
  - Console .....106
    - overhead .....105
  - Controls
    - power seat .....175
    - steering column .....118
  - Coolant
    - checking and adding .....377
    - refill capacities .....381, 405
  - Cruise control  
(see Speed control) .....116
  - Customer Assistance .....315
    - Ford accessories for your vehicle .....365
    - Ford Extended Service Plan .....354
    - Getting assistance outside the U.S. and Canada .....354
    - Getting roadside assistance ...315
    - Getting the service you need .....350
    - Ordering additional owner's literature .....355
    - Utilizing the Mediation/Arbitration Program .....353
- D**
- Daytime running lamps  
(see Lamps) .....90
  - Dipstick
    - automatic transmission fluid .....397
    - engine oil .....372
  - Driving under special conditions .....289, 305, 308
    - sand .....307
    - snow and ice .....309
    - through water .....307, 311
  - DVD system .....51
- E**
- Electronic message center .....127, 137
  - Emergencies, roadside
    - jump-starting .....343
  - Emergency Flashers .....316
  - Emission control system .....392
  - Engine .....409
    - cleaning .....359
    - coolant .....377
    - diesel .....9
    - fail-safe cooling .....382
    - idle speed control .....375
    - refill capacities .....405
    - service points .....369–370
    - starting after a collision .....317
  - Engine oil .....372
    - checking and adding .....372
    - dipstick .....372
    - filter, specifications .....374, 404

## Index

- recommendations .....374
- refill capacities .....405
- Event data recording .....7
- Exhaust fumes .....278
- F**
- Fail safe cooling .....382
- Family entertainment system ....51
- Fluid capacities .....405
- Fog lamps .....89
- Four-Wheel Drive vehicles .....296
  - description .....301
  - driving off road .....303
  - electronic shift .....297, 301
  - indicator light .....298
  - lever operated shift .....299
  - manual locking hubs .....297
  - preparing to drive your vehicle .....284
- Fuel .....383
  - calculating fuel economy .....139, 388
  - cap .....386
  - capacity .....405
  - choosing the right fuel .....387
  - comparisons with EPA fuel economy estimates .....391
  - detergent in fuel .....388
  - filling your vehicle with fuel .....383, 386, 388
  - filter, specifications .....383, 404
  - fuel pump shut-off switch ....317
  - improving fuel economy .....388
  - octane rating .....387, 409
  - quality .....387
  - running out of fuel .....388
  - safety information relating to automotive fuels .....383
- Fuel pump shut-off switch .....317
- Fuses .....318–319
- G**
- Gas cap (see Fuel cap) .....386
- Gas mileage (see Fuel economy) .....388
- Gauges .....21
  - transmission fluid temperature gauge .....26
- H**
- Hazard flashers .....316
- Head restraints .....172, 178
- Headlamps .....89
  - aiming .....91, 93
  - autolamp system .....89
  - daytime running lights .....90
  - flash to pass .....90
  - high beam .....90
  - replacing bulbs .....97–99
  - turning on and off .....89
- Heating
  - heater only system .....80
  - heating and air conditioning system .....81, 84
- Homelink wireless control system .....123
- Hood .....368
- I**
- Ignition .....275, 409
- Illuminated visor mirror .....105
- Infant seats (see Safety seats) .....206

## Index

- Inspection/maintenance (I/M)  
testing .....394
- Instrument panel  
  cleaning .....361–362  
  cluster .....14  
  lighting up panel  
  and interior .....91
- J**
- Jump-starting your vehicle .....343
- K**
- Keyless entry system  
  autolock .....156  
  keypad .....166  
  locking and unlocking  
  doors .....167  
  programming entry code .....166
- Keys .....169  
  positions of the ignition .....275
- L**
- Lamps  
  autolamp system .....89  
  daytime running light .....90  
  fog lamps .....89  
  headlamps .....89  
  headlamps, flash to pass .....90  
  instrument panel, dimming .....91  
  interior lamps .....95  
  replacing bulbs .....97–102
- LATCH anchors .....215
- Lights, warning and indicator ....14  
  anti-lock brakes (ABS) .....281
- Limited-slip axle .....284
- Load limits .....256
- Loading instructions .....262
- Locks  
  autolock .....156  
  childproof .....159  
  doors .....155
- Lug nuts .....342
- Lumbar support, seats ....176–177
- M**
- Manual transmission .....289  
  fluid capacities .....405  
  reverse .....291
- Message center .....127, 137  
  english/metric button .....142  
  system check button .....140  
  warning messages .....131, 144
- Mirrors .....110–111  
  automatic dimming rearview  
  mirror .....110  
  fold away .....112, 114  
  side view mirrors (power) ....111  
  signal .....115
- Moon roof .....122
- Motorcraft parts .....383, 404
- N**
- Navigation system .....79
- O**
- Octane rating .....387
- Oil (see Engine oil) .....372
- Overdrive .....104
- P**
- Parking brake .....281
- Parts (see Motorcraft parts) ....404

## Index

- Pedals (see Power adjustable foot pedals) .....115
- Power adjustable foot pedals ...115
- Power distribution box (see Fuses) .....322
- Power door locks .....155
- Power mirrors .....111
- Power point .....107
- Power steering .....283  
 fluid, checking and adding ....395  
 fluid, refill capacity .....405
- Power Windows .....108
- Preparing to drive your vehicle .....284
- R**
- Radio .....26, 28, 35
- Rear seat entertainment system .....51
- Relays .....318
- Remote entry system .....159  
 illuminated entry .....164–165  
 locking/unlocking doors .....155, 160–161  
 replacing the batteries .....162
- Reverse camera .....294
- Reverse sensing system .....292
- Roadside assistance .....315
- S**
- Safety belts (see Safety restraints) .....181–186
- Safety defects, reporting .....356
- Safety restraints .....181–186  
 Belt-Minder® .....189
- extension assembly .....192  
 for adults .....182–186  
 for children .....202  
 lap belt .....187  
 warning light and chime .....188–189
- Safety restraints - LATCH anchors .....215
- Safety seats for children .....206
- Safety Compliance Certification Label .....410
- Satellite Radio Information .....48
- Seats .....172  
 child safety seats .....206  
 cleaning .....364  
 heated .....84  
 memory seat .....161, 177
- SecuriCode keyless entry system .....166
- SecuriLock passive anti-theft system .....168–169
- Servicing your vehicle .....367
- Setting the clock  
 AM/FM/CD .....30  
 AM/FM/In-dash 6 CD .....37
- Snowplowing .....10, 312–313
- Spark plugs, specifications .....404, 409
- Special notice .....11  
 ambulance conversions .....10  
 diesel-powered vehicles .....9  
 four-wheel drive vehicles .....314  
 utility-type vehicles .....10
- Speed control .....116
- Starting your vehicle .....275–277  
 jump starting .....343

## Index

- Steering wheel  
 controls .....118  
 tilting .....104  
 SYNC® .....79
- T**
- Tailgate .....150  
 Temperature control  
 (see Climate control) .....80  
 Tilt steering wheel .....104  
 Tire Pressure Monitoring  
 System (TPMS)  
 Tires, Wheels and Loading ....245  
 Tires .....227–229  
 alignment .....237  
 care .....233  
 changing .....330, 332  
 checking the pressure .....232  
 inflating .....230  
 label .....244  
 replacing .....235  
 rotating .....238  
 safety practices .....236  
 sidewall information .....240  
 snow tires and chains .....255  
 spare tire .....327, 329  
 terminology .....229  
 tire grades .....228  
 treadwear .....228, 234  
 Towing .....262  
 recreational towing .....274  
 Trailer Brake  
 Controller-Integrated .....267  
 trailer towing .....262  
 wrecker .....348  
 Traction control .....282  
 Trailer Brake  
 Controller-Integrated .....267
- Transfer case  
 fluid checking .....401
- Transmission  
 automatic operation .....104, 285  
 brake-shift interlock (BSI) ....285  
 fluid, checking and adding  
 (automatic) .....397  
 fluid, checking and adding  
 (manual) .....400  
 fluid, refill capacities .....405  
 manual operation .....289
- Turn signal .....94
- U**
- Upfitter controls .....121  
 USB port .....44
- V**
- Vehicle Identification Number  
 (VIN) .....410  
 Vehicle loading .....256  
 Ventilating your vehicle .....278
- W**
- Warning lights (see Lights) .....14  
 Washer fluid .....371  
 Water, Driving through .....311  
 Windows  
 power .....108  
 Windshield washer fluid and  
 wipers .....103  
 checking and adding fluid ....371  
 replacing wiper blades .....372  
 Wrecker towing .....348

Ford Cars and Trucks  
*(except Hybrid vehicles,  
F-650/F-750 and LCF)*

**2009** model year

# Warranty Guide





Your satisfaction is our #1 goal. If you have questions or concerns about your vehicle, we suggest you follow these steps:

1. Contact your Sales Representative or Service Advisor at your selling/servicing dealership.
2. If your inquiry or concern remains unresolved, contact the Sales Manager or Service Manager at the dealership.
3. If the inquiry or concern cannot be resolved at the dealership level, please contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center.

In the United States:

**Ford Motor Company**  
**Customer Relationship Center**  
**P.O. Box 6248**  
**Dearborn, MI 48121**  
**1-800-392-3673 (FORD)**  
**(TDD for the hearing impaired:**  
**1-800-232-5952)**  
**[www.customersaskford.com](http://www.customersaskford.com)**

In Canada:

**Customer Relationship Centre**  
**Ford Motor Company**  
**of Canada, Limited**  
**P.O. Box 2000**  
**Oakville, Ontario L6J 5E4**  
**1-800-565-3673 (FORD)**  
**[www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca)**

In Caribbean, Central America, Israel and Sub-Saharan Africa:

**Ford Motor Company**  
**Ford Export Operations**  
**Attention: Owner Relations**  
**1555 Fairlane Drive**  
**Fairlane Business Park #3**  
**Allen Park, MI 48101**  
**Telephone: (313) 594-4857**  
**Fax: (313) 390-0804**  
**E-mail: [expcac@ford.com](mailto:expcac@ford.com)**

In Puerto Rico and Virgin Islands:

**Ford International Business**  
**Development, Inc.**  
**Customer Assistance Center**  
**P.O. Box 11957**  
**Caparra Heights Station**  
**San Juan, PR 00922-1957**  
**Telephone: (787) 782-5959 Ext.233**  
**Fax: (787) 781-8975**  
**E-mail: [prcac@ford.com](mailto:prcac@ford.com)**  
**[www.ford.com.pr](http://www.ford.com.pr)**

In Middle East:

**Ford Middle East**  
**Customer Assistance Center**  
**API World Tower**  
**Sheikh Zayed Road**  
**Dubai, United Arab Emirates**  
**Telephone: 971-4-3326084**  
**Fax: 971-4-3327299**  
**E-Mail: [menacac@ford.com](mailto:menacac@ford.com)**  
**[www.me.ford.com](http://www.me.ford.com)**



# Table of Contents

<b>1. INTRODUCTION</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>2. IMPORTANT INFORMATION YOU SHOULD KNOW</b>	<b>2</b>
<b>If You Need Customer Assistance</b>	<b>2</b>
<b>Know When Your Warranty Begins</b>	<b>2</b>
<b>Check Your Vehicle</b>	<b>2</b>
<b>Maintain Your Vehicle Properly</b>	<b>2</b>
<b>Who Pays For Warranty Repairs?</b>	<b>3</b>
<b>Do Warranties Apply In Other Countries?</b>	<b>4</b>
<b>3. THE NEW VEHICLE LIMITED WARRANTY FOR YOUR 2009-MODEL VEHICLE</b>	<b>5</b>
<b>Limitations And Disclaimers</b>	<b>5</b>
<b>What Is Covered?</b>	<b>8</b>
<b>What Is Not Covered?</b>	<b>12</b>
<b>4. IN ADDITION ...</b>	<b>16</b>
<b>Roadside Service Assistance (United States, Puerto Rico, And U.S. Virgin Islands)</b>	<b>16</b>
<b>5. FEDERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR EMISSIONS WARRANTIES</b>	<b>17</b>
<b>What Is Covered?</b>	<b>20</b>
<b>What Is Not Covered?</b>	<b>21</b>
<b>6. CALIFORNIA REQUIREMENTS FOR EMISSIONS WARRANTIES</b>	<b>22</b>
<b>What Is Covered?</b>	<b>26</b>
<b>What Is Not Covered?</b>	<b>28</b>

<b>7. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION ABOUT YOUR EMISSIONS WARRANTY COVERAGE, UNDER FEDERAL AND CALIFORNIA REQUIREMENTS</b>	<b>29</b>
<b>8. NOISE EMISSIONS WARRANTY</b>	<b>31</b>
<b>9. FORD EXTENDED SERVICE PLAN</b>	<b>32</b>
<b>10. BETTER BUSINESS BUREAU (BBB) AUTO LINE PROGRAM</b>	<b>33</b>
<b>11. STATE WARRANTY ENFORCEMENT LAWS</b>	<b>34</b>
<b>12. IMPORTANT INFORMATION ABOUT AMBULANCE CONVERSIONS</b>	<b>35</b>
<b>13. IMPORTANT INFORMATION ABOUT FORD LIMOUSINE CONVERSIONS</b>	<b>36</b>

EA11-003

Appendix L

# 1. Introduction

**Ford Motor Company** and your selling dealer thank you for selecting one of our quality products. Our commitment to you and your vehicle begins with quality protection and service.

When you need warranty repairs, your selling dealer would like you to return to it for that service, but you may also take your vehicle to another Ford Motor Company dealership authorized for warranty repairs. Certain warranty repairs require special training though, so not all dealers are authorized to perform all warranty repairs. That means that, depending on the warranty repair needed, the vehicle may need to be taken to another dealer. If a particular dealership cannot assist you, then contact the Customer Relationship Center at 1-800-392-3673.

If you own or lease a 2009-model E-350 Livery Van equipped with the Livery Service Package or a 2009-model Crown Victoria Police Interceptor equipped with the Fleet Crown Police Package Option, refer to the Addendum Card that was given to you when you took delivery of your vehicle for further explanation of the amendments to the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. Please ask the vehicle modifier for a copy of the Addendum Card if you wish to review it prior to taking delivery of the vehicle.

This booklet explains in detail the warranty coverages that apply to your 2009-model car or light truck. If you bought a previously owned 2009-model vehicle, you are eligible for any remaining warranty coverages.

Ford Motor Company provides the **Emissions Defect Warranties** and **Emissions Performance Warranties** which cover your emissions control systems, and **Noise Emissions Warranty** which applies only to medium/heavy duty trucks over 10,000 pounds Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (pages 17-31).

## 2. Important information you should know

### IF YOU NEED CUSTOMER ASSISTANCE

Your Ford Motor Company dealer is available to assist you with all your automotive needs. Please follow the procedures outlined on the front page of this booklet.

In addition, if you are an eligible U.S. owner, you may use - at no cost - the services of the BBB AUTO LINE program. For details, see Better Business Bureau (BBB) AUTO LINE program, page 33 or call 1-800-955-5100.

### KNOW WHEN YOUR WARRANTY BEGINS

Your **Warranty Start Date** is the day you take delivery of your new vehicle or the day it is first put into service (for example, as a dealer demonstrator), whichever occurs first.

### CHECK YOUR VEHICLE

We try to check vehicles carefully at the assembly plant and the dealership, and we usually correct any damage to paint, sheet metal, upholstery, or other appearance items. But occasionally something may slip past us, and a customer may find that a vehicle was damaged before he or she took delivery. If you see any damage when you receive your vehicle, notify your dealership within one week.

### MAINTAIN YOUR VEHICLE PROPERLY

Your glove compartment contains an **Owner Guide** and a **Scheduled Maintenance Guide** which indicate the scheduled maintenance required for your vehicle. Proper maintenance guards against major repair expenses resulting from neglect or inadequate maintenance, may help increase the value you receive when you sell or trade your vehicle, and is important in allowing your vehicle to comply with applicable emissions standards.

It is your responsibility to make sure that all of the scheduled maintenance is performed and that the materials used meet Ford engineering specifications. Failure to perform scheduled maintenance as

EA11-003 Appendix L  
specified in the Scheduled Maintenance Guide will invalidate warranty coverage on parts affected by the lack of maintenance. Make sure that receipts for completed maintenance work are retained with the vehicle and confirmation of maintenance work is always entered in your **Scheduled Maintenance Guide**.

Your Ford or Lincoln Mercury dealership, or Ford or Lincoln Mercury Auto Care Service Center, has factory-trained technicians who can perform the required maintenance using genuine Ford parts. The dealership looks forward to meeting your every service need to maximize your satisfaction with your vehicle.

### **WHO PAYS FOR WARRANTY REPAIRS?**

You will not be charged for repairs covered by any applicable warranty during the stated coverage periods, unless specifically stated elsewhere in this guide.

Some states have mandated alternate time coverage periods for parts of your vehicle (e.g. seatbelts).

Some states and/or local governments may require a tax on a portion of warranty repairs. Where applicable law allows, the tax must be paid by you, the owner of the vehicle.

During the Bumper to Bumper Warranty period, dealers may receive instructions to provide no-cost, service-type improvements - not originally included in your Scheduled Maintenance Guide - intended to increase your overall satisfaction with your vehicle.

Sometimes Ford may offer a special adjustment program to pay all or part of the cost of certain repairs beyond the terms of the applicable warranty. Check with your dealer or call 1-800-392-3673 to learn whether any adjustment program is applicable to your vehicle. Please have your vehicle identification number available.

## DO WARRANTIES APPLY IN OTHER COUNTRIES?

EA11-003

Appendix L

The **New Vehicle Limited Warranty** and the **Emissions Warranties** described in this booklet apply to your vehicle if:

- it was originally purchased through the Ford Export Operations Military Sales Program; or
- it was originally sold or leased by Ford Motor Company or one of its dealers in the United States or U.S. Federalized Territories, and it was originally registered/licensed and operated in the United States, U.S. Federalized Territories, or Canada.

If you meet either of these two requirements, you do have warranty coverage when you travel with this vehicle outside the United States, U.S. Federalized Territories, or Canada. In some cases, however, you may have to pay the servicing Ford dealer in a foreign country or U.S. Federalized Territory for a repair that is covered under the U.S. warranty. If this happens, be sure to save the paid repair order or invoice. You should present this document to a U.S. Ford Motor Company dealer for warranty refund consideration. Refer to [www.Ford.com](http://www.Ford.com) for additional customer assistance reference information.

### 3. The New Vehicle Limited Warranty for your 2009-model vehicle

#### **LIMITATIONS AND DISCLAIMERS**

All of the warranties in this booklet are subject to the following limitations and disclaimers:

The warranties in this booklet are the only express warranties applicable to your vehicle. Ford does not assume or authorize anyone to assume for it any other obligation or liability in connection with your vehicle or these warranties. No person, including Ford employees or dealers, may modify or waive any part of these warranties.

Ford and its dealers reserve the right to make changes in or additions to vehicles built or sold by them at any time without incurring any obligation to make the same or similar changes or additions to vehicles previously built or sold.

Ford and its dealers also reserve the right to provide post-warranty repairs, conduct recalls, or extend the warranty coverage period for certain vehicles or vehicle populations, at the sole discretion of Ford. The fact that Ford has provided such measures to a particular vehicle or vehicle population in no way obligates Ford to provide similar accommodations to other owners of similar vehicles.

As a condition of these warranties, you are responsible for properly using, maintaining, and caring for your vehicle as outlined in your Owner Guide and Scheduled Maintenance Guide. Ford recommends that you maintain copies of all maintenance records and receipts for review by Ford.

Ford and your dealer are not responsible for any time, expense, or inconvenience that you lose, any inconvenience you might be caused, the loss of your transportation or use of your vehicle, the cost of rental vehicles, fuel, telephone, travel, meals, or lodging, the loss of personal or commercial property, the loss of revenue, or for any other incidental or consequential damages you may have.

Punitive, exemplary, or multiple damages may not be recovered unless applicable law prohibits their disclaimer.

You may not bring any warranty-related claim as a class representative, a private attorney general, a member of a class of claimants or in any other representative capacity.

Ford shall not be liable for any damages caused by delay in delivery or furnishing of any products and/or services.

You may have some implied warranties. For example, you may have an implied warranty of merchantability (that the car or light truck is reasonably fit for the general purpose for which it was sold) or an implied warranty of fitness for a particular purpose (that the car or light truck is suitable for your special purposes), if a special purpose was specifically disclosed to Ford itself not merely to the dealer before your purchase, and Ford itself not just the dealer told you the vehicle would be suitable for that purpose.

These implied warranties are limited, to the extent allowed by law, to the time period covered by the written warranties, or to the applicable time period provided by state law, whichever period is shorter.

These implied warranties do not apply at all if you use your vehicle for business or commercial purposes. In addition, the implied warranty of fitness for a particular purpose does not apply if your vehicle is used for racing, even if the vehicle is equipped for racing.

The warranties contained in this booklet and all questions regarding their enforceability and interpretation are governed by the law of the state in which you purchased your Ford vehicle. Some states do not allow Ford to limit how long an implied warranty lasts or to exclude or limit incidental or consequential damages, so the limitation and exclusions described above may not apply to you.

**NOTE: This information about the limitation of implied warranties and the exclusion of incidental and consequential damages under the NEW VEHICLE LIMITED WARRANTY also applies to the EMISSIONS WARRANTIES described on pages 17-30.**

Ford participates in the BBB AUTO LINE warranty dispute resolution program. You may contact BBB AUTO LINE by calling 800-955-5100.

You are required to submit your warranty dispute to the BBB AUTO LINE before exercising rights or seeking remedies under the Federal Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, 15 U.S.C. § 2301 et seq. To the extent permitted by the applicable state “Lemon Law”, you are also required to submit your warranty dispute to the BBB AUTO LINE before exercising any rights or seeking remedies under the “Lemon Law”. If you choose to seek remedies that are not created by the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act or the applicable state “Lemon Law,” you are not required to first use BBB AUTO LINE to resolve your dispute – although the program is still available to you.

For more information regarding the BBB AUTO LINE program, see page 33 of this booklet.

## QUICK REFERENCE: WARRANTY COVERAGE

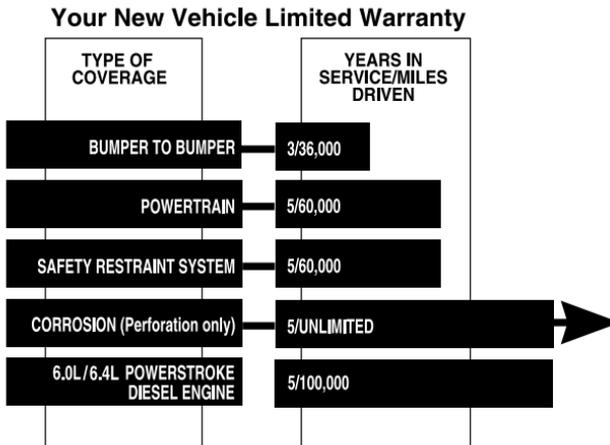
EA11-003

Appendix L

This chart gives a general summary of your warranty coverage provided by Ford Motor Company under the **New Vehicle Limited Warranty**. Please refer to the description of warranty coverage for more specific information.

For each type of coverage, the chart shows two measures:

- years in service
- miles driven



The measure that occurs first determines how long your coverage lasts. For example: Your Bumper to Bumper Coverage lasts for three years - unless you drive more than 36,000 miles before three years elapse. In that case, your coverage ends at 36,000 miles.

For more details on coverage, see:

- ➔ **What is Covered?** (pages 8-12)
- ➔ **What is Not Covered?** (pages 12-15)

### WHAT IS COVERED?

Your NEW VEHICLE LIMITED WARRANTY gives you specific legal rights. You may have other rights that vary from state to state. Under your New Vehicle Limited Warranty if:

- your Ford vehicle is properly operated and maintained, and

- was taken to a Ford dealership for a warranted repair during the warranty period, EA11-003 Appendix L

then authorized Ford Motor Company dealers will, without charge, repair, replace, or adjust all parts on your vehicle that malfunction or fail during normal use during the applicable coverage period due to a manufacturing defect in factory-supplied materials or factory workmanship.

This warranty does not mean that each Ford vehicle is defect free. Defects may be unintentionally introduced into vehicles during the design and manufacturing processes and such defects could result in the need for repairs. For this reason, Ford provides the New Vehicle Limited Warranty in order to remedy any such defects that result in vehicle part malfunction or failure during the warranty period.

The remedy under this written warranty, and any implied warranty, is limited to repair, replacement, or adjustment of defective parts. This exclusive remedy shall not be deemed to have failed its essential purpose so long as Ford, through its authorized dealers, is willing and able to repair, replace, or adjust defective parts in the prescribed manner. Ford's liability, if any, shall in no event exceed the cost of correcting manufacturing defects as herein provided and upon expiration of this warranty, any such liability shall terminate.

Conditions that are not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty are described on pages 12-15. When making warranty repairs on your vehicle, the dealer will use Ford or Motorcraft parts or remanufactured or other parts that are authorized by Ford, at the discretion of Ford or the Ford dealership.

Nothing in this warranty should be construed as requiring defective parts to be replaced with parts of a different type or design than the original part, so long as the vehicle functions properly with the replacement part. Moreover, Ford and its authorized dealers are entitled to a reasonable time and a reasonable number of attempts within which to diagnose and repair any defect covered by this warranty.

In certain instances, Ford may authorize repairs at other than Ford dealer facilities.

Two separate warranties apply to tires on your new vehicle. The New Vehicle Limited Warranty covers tire defects in factory supplied material or workmanship for 100% of labor costs and on a pro rata adjustment basis for parts. (See the reimbursement schedule below).

EA11-003 Appendix L  
For vehicles within the New Vehicle Limited Warranty time in service and mileage coverage period, defective tires will be replaced on a pro rata adjustment basis according to the following mileage-based Reimbursement Schedule:

MILES DRIVEN	PERCENT OF PARTS COVERED BY FORD
1-12,000	100%
12,001-24,000	60%
24,001-36,000	30%

The tire manufacturer also provides you with a separate tire warranty that may extend beyond the New Vehicle Limited Warranty coverage. You will find the manufacturer's tire warranty with the owner literature supplied with your vehicle. You have the option of having a tire warranty repair performed by the tire manufacturer's authorized service center. If you go to a tire service center for a repair covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty, you may be charged a prorated amount for wear or other charges. If so, you should present your paid invoice detailing the nature of the charges to any Ford Motor Company dealership for refund consideration. When making warranty repairs on your vehicle, the dealer will use Ford or Motorcraft parts or remanufactured or other parts that are authorized by Ford. In certain instances, Ford may authorize repairs at other than Ford dealer facilities. Tire replacements under warranty will be made with the same brand and model as originally equipped with the vehicle unless the same brand and model is no longer available, in which case a tire of the same brand, size, load, speed and tread type will be used. In some circumstances, Ford may authorize another brand and/or model to substitute for the original brand and model, even if still available.

Normal tire wear or damage is not reimbursable. See page 15 for details of what is not covered.

**Extended warranty coverage periods are available for certain vehicle parts and conditions. Specifically,**

(1) Your vehicle's Powertrain components are covered for five years or 60,000 miles, whichever occurs first. The extended coverage applies to the **Engine**: all internal lubricated parts, cylinder block, cylinder heads, electrical fuel pump, electronic engine control unit, engine mounts, flywheel, injection pump, manifold (exhaust and intake), manifold bolts, oil pan, oil pump, seals and gaskets, thermostat, thermostat housing, timing chain cover, timing chain (gears or belt), turbocharger/supercharger unit, valve covers, water pump;

**Transmission:** all internal parts, clutch cover, seals and gaskets, torque converter, transfer case (including all internal parts), transmission case, transmission mounts; **Front-Wheel Drive:** axle shafts, bearings (front and rear), center support bearing, drive shafts, final drive housing (including all internal parts), hubs-automatic front locking (four-wheel drive), locking rings (four-wheel drive), seals and gaskets, universal and constant velocity joints; **Rear-Wheel Drive:** axle shafts, bearings (front and rear), center support bearing, drive axle housing (including all internal parts), drive shaft, propeller shafts, retainers, supports, seals and gaskets, universal and constant velocity joints.

(2) Your vehicle's safety belts and air bag Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) are covered for an extended Safety Restraint Coverage Period, which lasts for five years or 60,000 miles, whichever occurs first.

(3) Your vehicle's body sheet metal panels are covered for an extended Corrosion Coverage Period, which lasts for five years, regardless of miles driven. The extended warranty coverage only applies if a body sheet metal panel becomes perforated due to corrosion during normal use due to a manufacturing defect in factory-supplied materials or factory workmanship. For damage caused by airborne material (environmental fallout) where there is no factory-related defect involved and therefore no warranty – our policy is to provide free repair of paint damage due to the airborne material for 12 months or 12,000 miles, whichever occurs first.

(4) Your vehicle's direct injection diesel engine and certain engine components are covered during the 6.0L/6.4L PowerStroke Diesel Engine Coverage Period, which lasts for five years or 100,000 miles, whichever occurs first. The following parts are covered during this extended coverage period: the engine, cylinder block, heads and all internal parts, intake and exhaust manifolds, timing gear, harmonic balancer, valve covers, oil pan and pump, water pump, fuel system (excluding fuel lines, fuel tank and frame mounted fuel conditioning module sometimes referred to as the frame mounted pump/filter/water separator), high pressure lines, gaskets and seals, glow plugs, turbocharger, two-stage turbocharger assembly (6.4L), turbocharger actuator (6.4L), powertrain control module, engine control module (6.4L), high pressure fuel injection pump assembly (6.4L), electronic driver unit, injectors,

EA11-003 Appendix L  
injection pressure sensor, fuel rail pressure sensor (6.4L), high pressure oil regulator, exhaust back pressure regulator and sensor, exhaust pressure sensor (6.4L), manifold pressure sensor (6.4L), intake air temperature sensor (6.4L), crankshaft position sensor (6.4L), camshaft position sensor, accelerator switch.

**NOTE:** Some components may also be covered by the Emissions Warranties. For more information, see pages 17-30.

### **Expedition Limousine Limited Warranty**

If you have purchased or leased a 2009-model Expedition EL (equipped with the 17L Builder's Package) converted into a limousine by a Ford Qualified Vehicle Modifier, your Expedition EL is eligible for the Ford Limousine Limited Warranty coverage for three years or 100,000 miles, whichever occurs first. This coverage begins on the Warranty Start Date and is in addition to the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. Refer to the warranty addendum card that was given to you when you took delivery of your 2009-model Expedition EL Limousine for details of the Ford Limousine Limited Warranty. See page 36 for additional details about the 17L Limousine Builder Package.

### **WHAT IS NOT COVERED UNDER THE NEW VEHICLE LIMITED WARRANTY?**

#### **Damage Caused By:**

- accidents, collision or objects striking the vehicle (including driving through a car wash)
- theft, vandalism, or riot
- fire or explosion
- using contaminated or improper fuel/fluids
- customer-applied chemicals or accidental spills
- driving through water deep enough to cause water to be ingested into the engine
- misuse of the vehicle, such a driving over curbs, overloading, racing or using the vehicle as a permanent stationary power source

## **Damage Caused by Alteration or Modification**

EA11-003

Appendix L

The New Vehicle Limited Warranty does not cover any damage caused by:

- alterations or modifications of the vehicle, including the body, chassis, or components, after the vehicle leaves the control of Ford Motor Company
- tampering with the vehicle, tampering with the emissions systems or with the other parts that affect these systems (for example, but not limited to exhaust and intake systems)
- the installation or use of a non-Ford Motor Company part (other than a certified emissions part) or any part (Ford or non-Ford) designed for off-road use only installed after the vehicle leaves the control of Ford Motor Company, if the installed part fails or causes a Ford part to fail. Examples include, but are not limited to lift kits, oversized tires, roll bars, cellular phones, alarm systems, automatic starting systems and performance-enhancing powertrain components or software and performance “chips”

## **Damage Caused by Use and/or the Environment**

The New Vehicle Limited Warranty does not cover surface rust, deterioration and damage of paint, trim, upholstery, and other appearance items that result from use and/or exposure to the elements. You, as the owner, are responsible for these items. Some examples are:

- dings, dents
- cuts, burns, punctures or tears
- road salt
- tree sap, bird and bee droppings
- windstorm, lightening, hail
- earthquake
- freezing, water or flood
- stone chips, scratches (some examples are on paint and glass)
- windshield stress cracks. However, limited coverage on windshield stress cracks will be provided for the first 12 months in service, regardless of miles driven, even though caused by use and/or exposure to the elements.

The New Vehicle Limited Warranty does not cover: (1) parts and labor needed to maintain the vehicle; and (2) the replacement of parts due to normal wear and tear. You, as the owner, are responsible for these items. See your Scheduled Maintenance Guide. Some examples of maintenance and normal wear are:

- oil changes
- oils, lubricants, other fluids
- oil/air filters
- tire rotation/inflation
- cleaning/polishing
- clutch linings
- Wiper blades
- Wheel alignments and tire balancing
- Brake pad/lining

Where a vehicle has no factory-related defect, and is therefore not entitled to a warranty related repair, replacement or adjustment, it is Ford policy nonetheless to provide certain maintenance items, when necessary, free of charge during a limited period:

- wiper blade replacements will be provided during the first 12 months in service, regardless of miles driven
- wheel alignments and tire balancing (unless required by a warranty repair) will be provided during the first 12 months or 12,000 miles in service, whichever occurs first
- Brake pad/lining replacements will be provided during the first 12 months or 18,000 miles in service, whichever occurs first

### **SYNC Hands-Free Communications and Entertainment System**

If your vehicle is equipped with SYNC, the New Vehicle Limited Warranty does not cover repairs under certain conditions. Some examples include:

- Loss of personal recording media, software or data
- Failure to provide proper installation environment
- Damage caused by:
  - abnormal use such as insertion of foreign objects, fluid spillage
  - unauthorized modification to alter functionality or capability
  - computer or internet viruses, bugs, worms, Trojan Horses, cancelbots
  - installation of unauthorized software, peripherals and attachments
  - unauthorized, unapproved and/or incompatible repairs, upgrades and modification

- the defective function of your cellular phone or digital media device (i.e., inadequate signal reception by the external antenna, viruses or other software problems)

EA11-003

Appendix L

## **Tire Wear or Damage**

The New Vehicle Limited Warranty does not cover normal wear or worn out tires. Tires will not be replaced (unless required by a warranty repair) for wear or damage including:

- tire damage from road hazard such as cuts, snags, bruises, bulges, puncture, and impact breaks
- tire damage due to under or over inflation, tire chain use, racing, spinning (as when stuck in snow or mud), improper mounting or dismounting, or tire repair

## **Other Items or Conditions Not Covered**

The New Vehicle Limited Warranty does not cover:

- vehicles that have had the odometer disconnected, altered, or inoperative for an extended period of time with the result that the actual mileage cannot be determined
- vehicles that have ever been labeled or branded as dismantled, fire, flood, junk, rebuilt, reconstructed, or salvaged; this will void the New Vehicle Limited Warranty
- vehicles that have been determined to be a total loss by an insurance company; this will void the New Vehicle Limited Warranty
- converted Expedition EL Limousines that are not equipped with the Limousine Builder's Package (17L) Option, or if the wheelbase is extended beyond 140 inches, or if the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) exceeds 9,900 pounds. See important information about Expedition EL limousine conversion (page 36).
- any other Ford or Mercury vehicles that are converted to limousines. This will void the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. See important information about conversions (page 36)
- converted ambulances that are not equipped with the Ford Ambulance Prep Package, see important information about ambulance conversions (page 35)

## 4. In addition ...

### **ROADSIDE SERVICE ASSISTANCE (UNITED STATES, PUERTO RICO, AND U.S. VIRGIN ISLANDS)**

Your vehicle is covered by the complimentary Ford Roadside Assistance Program (unless you are driving a daily rental unit). Under this program, Ford will cover:

- Towing to the nearest Ford Motor Company dealership, or towing to your selling dealership if within 35 miles
- Flat tire change (vehicle must have useable spare)
- Fuel delivery (limited to two occurrences in a 12-month period up to 2 gal. gas, 5 gal. diesel)
- Jump starts
- Lock-out assistance (replacement key cost is customer responsibility)
- Winching (vehicle must be within 100 feet of a paved or county-maintained road)

The Roadside Assistance Program is separate from the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. It begins at the warranty start date and lasts for five years or 60,000 miles (whichever occurs first). If you need towing beyond the five years or 60,000 miles (whichever occurs first) period, Ford can arrange roadside assistance and charge your credit card unless the problem is covered by another Ford warranty. Ford will pay the tow charge under the other warranty.

**For emergency roadside assistance, call 1-800-241-3673, 24 hours a day, 365 days a year.**

Ford Rental cars (FRCS) that must be towed because a covered repair has failed during the warranty coverage period, Ford will cover towing to the nearest Ford Motor Company dealership.

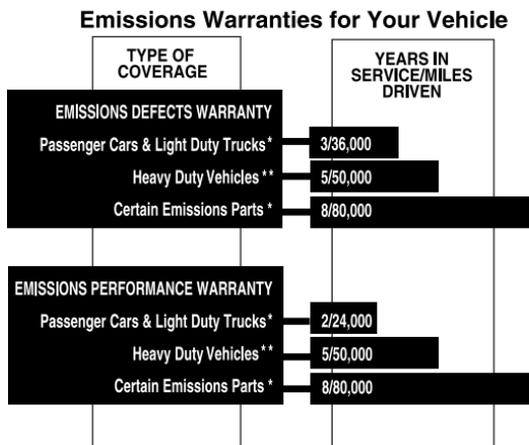
Ford Motor Company reserves the right to modify or discontinue Roadside Assistance at any time. Certain restrictions apply to Roadside Assistance benefits. Call 1-800-241-3673 for further details.

## 5. Federal requirements for emissions warranties

### QUICK REFERENCE: EMISSIONS WARRANTY COVERAGE

This chart shows your warranty coverage under two emissions warranties that Ford Motor Company provides, in compliance with Federal requirements. The warranties are:

- Emissions Defects Warranty
- Emissions Performance Warranty



\* Applies to vehicles up to 8,500 pounds gross vehicle weight rating (GVWR)

\*\* Applies to trucks over 8,500 pounds gross vehicle weight rating (GVWR) up to 19,500 pounds gross vehicle weight rating (GVWR)

For full details on emissions control coverage, see:

- ➔ **Emissions Defect Warranty** (page 18)
- ➔ **Emissions Performance Warranty** (page 19)
- ➔ **What is Covered?** (pages 20-21)
- ➔ **What is Not Covered?** (page 21)

## EMISSIONS DEFECT WARRANTY COVERAGE

EA11-003

Appendix L

During the warranty coverage period, Ford Motor Company warrants that:

- your vehicle or engine is designed, built, and equipped to meet - at the time it is sold - the emissions regulations of the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA).
- your vehicle or engine is free from defects in factory-supplied materials or workmanship that could prevent it from conforming with applicable EPA regulations.
- you will not be charged for diagnosis, repair, replacement, or adjustment of defective emissions-related parts listed under **What is Covered?** on pages 20-21.

The warranty coverage period for:

- Passenger cars, light duty trucks (applies to vehicles up to 8,500 pounds GVWR)
  - 8 years or 80,000 miles (whichever occurs first) for catalytic converters, electronic engine control unit (ECU), transmission control module (TCM), and any other onboard emissions diagnostic module.
  - 3 years or 36,000 miles (whichever occurs first) for all other covered parts.
- Heavy duty vehicles (applies to trucks over 8,500 pounds GVWR up to 19,500 pounds GVWR)
  - 5 years or 50,000 miles (whichever occurs first) for all covered parts.

See WHAT IS COVERED for list of covered parts.

## EMISSIONS PERFORMANCE WARRANTY COVERAGE

EA11-003

Appendix L

Under Emissions Performance Warranty Coverage, Ford Motor Company will repair, replace, or adjust - with no charge for labor, diagnosis, or parts - any emissions control device or system, if you meet all of the following conditions:

- You have maintained and operated your vehicle according to the instructions on proper care in the **Owner Guide**, the **Scheduled Maintenance Guide**, and this booklet.
- Your vehicle fails to conform, during the warranty coverage period, to the applicable national EPA standards, as determined by an EPA approved inspection and maintenance program.
- You are subject to a penalty or sanction under local, state, or federal law because your vehicle has failed to conform to the emissions standards. (A penalty or sanction can include being denied the right to use your vehicle.)
- Your vehicle has not been tampered with, misused, or abused.

The warranty coverage period for:

- Passenger cars, light duty trucks (applies to vehicles up to 8,500 pounds GVWR)
  - 8 years or 80,000 miles (whichever occurs first) for catalytic converter, electronic emission control unit (ECU), transmission control module (TCM), and any other onboard emissions diagnostic module
  - 2 years or 24,000 miles (whichever occurs first) for all other covered parts.
- Heavy duty vehicles (applies to trucks over 8,500 pounds GVWR up to 19,500 pounds GVWR)
  - 5 years or 50,000 miles (whichever occurs first) for all covered parts.

See WHAT IS COVERED for list of covered parts.

Note that the warranty period begins on the **Warranty Start Date** as specified on page 2 of this booklet.

## WHAT IS COVERED?

EA11-003

Appendix L

For your vehicle these parts are covered by both the Emissions Defect Warranty and the Emissions Performance Warranty.

### List of Parts Covered by Emissions Warranties

- Air Flow Sensor
- Air/Fuel Feedback Control System and Sensors
- Air Induction System
- Attitude Compensation System
- Catalytic Converter (including Diesel Particulate Filter and Diesel Oxidation Catalyst)
- Cold Start Enrichment System
- Cold Start Fuel Injector (Flex Fuel Vehicle Only)
- Controls for Deceleration
- Electronic Ignition System
- Exhaust Pipe (Manifold to Catalyst)
- Electronic Engine Control Sensors and Switches
- Electronic Engine Control Unit (ECU)\*
- Evaporative Emission Control System
- Exhaust Gas Recirculation (EGR) System
- Exhaust Heat Control Valve
- Exhaust Manifold
- Exhaust Pipe (Manifold to Catalyst)
- Fuel Filler Cap and Neck Restrictor (non-diesel only)
- Fuel Injection System
- Fuel Injector Supply Manifold
- Fuel Sensor (Flex Fuel Vehicle Only)
- Fuel Tank (non diesel only)
- Fuel Tank Pressure Control Valve (Flex Fuel Vehicle Only)
- Idle Air Bypass Valve
- Ignition Coil and/or Control Module
- Intake Manifold
- Intercooler Assembly - Engine Charger
- Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)/On-Board Diagnostic (OBD) System
- NGV module (Bi-fuel/CNG)
- PCV system and Oil Filler Cap
- Secondary Air Injection System
- Spark Control Components
- Spark Plugs and Ignition Wires
- Supercharger Assembly
- Synchronizer Assembly
- Thermostat
- Throttle Body Assembly (MFI)
- Transmission Control Module (TCM)
- Turbocharger Assembly
- Vacuum Distribution System

\* Includes hardware and emissions related software changes only

## Important Information About List of Parts

EA11-003

Appendix L

Also covered by the two emissions warranties are all emissions-related bulbs, hoses, clamps, brackets, tubes, gaskets, seals, belts, connectors, non-diesel fuel lines, sensors, and wiring harnesses that are used with components on the list of parts, above.

Concerning parts that should be replaced on a certain maintenance schedule: these parts remain under warranty until : (a) the first replacement time that is specified in your **Owner Guide** and the **Scheduled Maintenance Guide**; or (b) the time or mileage limits of the Federal Defect and Performance Warranties (whichever occurs first). Your Ford Motor Company dealer maintains a complete list of parts covered by emissions warranties. For more details about the specific parts covered by the Emissions Defect Warranty, contact your dealer.

### WHAT IS NOT COVERED?

Ford Motor Company may deny you warranty coverage if your vehicle or a part has failed because of abuse, neglect, improper maintenance, unapproved modifications, or any items included in **What Is Not Covered?**, pages 12-15.

If you need more information about getting service under the **Federal Emissions Performance Warranty**, or if you want to report what you believe to be violations of the terms of this warranty, you may contact:

**Manager, Certification and Compliance Division  
(6405J)**

**Warranty Claims**

**Environmental Protection Agency**

**Ariel Rios building**

**1200 Pennsylvania Avenue, N.W.**

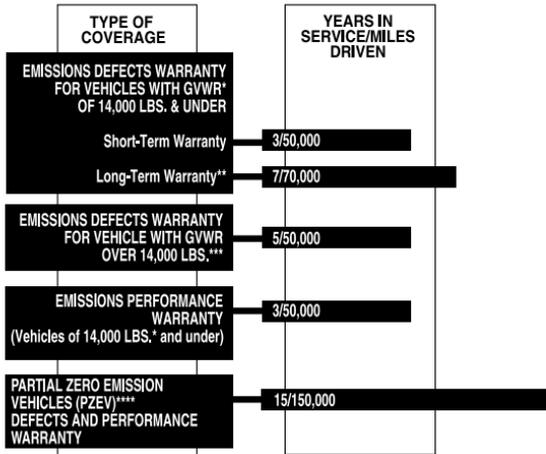
**Washington, D.C. 20460**

## 6. California requirements for emissions warranties

### QUICK REFERENCE: EMISSIONS WARRANTY COVERAGE

This chart shows the emission warranty that Ford Motor Company provides for your vehicle under the emissions control warranty in accordance with the regulations of the California Air Resources Board. This coverage is in addition to Federal Emission warranties (Page 17).

**Emissions Warranties for California Certified Vehicles**



\* Gross Vehicle Weight Rating

\*\* These specific parts were selected on the basis of their estimated replacement cost at the time the California

Air Resources Board certified your vehicle for sale in California (up to 14,000 GVWR).

\*\*\* Diesel engine vehicles over 14,000 pounds GVWR are covered for 5 years or 100,000 miles.

\*\*\*\* Refer to your Vehicle Emission Control Information Label for emissions certification information.

### Vehicles Eligible for California Emission Warranty Coverage

California emission warranty coverage applies if your vehicle meets the following two requirements:

- Your vehicle is registered in California or other states adopting California emission and warranty regulations,\* and
- Your vehicle is certified for sale in California as indicated on the vehicle emission control information label.

- EA11-003 Appendix L
- \* Other states adopting California emissions and warranty regulation:
    - Passenger Car & Light-duty Trucks (up to 8,500 pounds GVWR) - California, Connecticut, Maine, Massachusetts, New Jersey, Oregon, Pennsylvania, Rhode Island, Vermont and Washington (NOTE: New York adopted California emission standards, but not the California Emissions Warranty; the Federal Emissions Control Warranty applies to all non-PZEV vehicles in New York)
    - Medium-Duty Vehicles (over 8,500 pounds GVWR up to 14,000 pounds GVWR) - California, Connecticut, Maine, Massachusetts, Oregon, Rhode Island, Vermont, and Washington
    - Light Heavy-Duty Diesel Engine Vehicles (over 14,000 pounds GVWR up to 19,500 pounds GVWR) - California, Maine, Massachusetts, and Pennsylvania

## **Vehicles Eligible for California PZEV Emission Warranty Coverage**

California Partial Zero Emission Vehicles (PZEV) have extended coverage on all emission related parts. This extended warranty coverage applies if your vehicle is PZEV certified as indicated on the VECI label and is registered in California, Connecticut, Maine, Massachusetts, New Jersey, New York, Rhode Island or Vermont.

For full details about coverage under California requirements for emissions control, see:

- ➔ **Defects Warranties** (pages 23-29)
- ➔ **Performance Warranty** (pages 23-25)
- ➔ **What Is Covered?** (pages 26-28)
- ➔ **What Is Not Covered?** (page 28)

## **EXPLANATION OF CALIFORNIA EMISSIONS WARRANTIES**

### **Your Warranty Rights and Obligations**

The California Air Resources Board and Ford Motor Company are pleased to explain the emission control system warranty on your 2009-model vehicle. In California, new motor vehicles must be designed, built, and equipped to meet the State's stringent anti-smog standards. Ford must warrant the emission control system on your vehicle for the periods of time listed on pages 24-25, provided there has been no abuse, neglect, or improper maintenance of your vehicle.

Your emission control system may include parts such as the carburetor or fuel injection system, the ignition system, catalytic converter, and the engine computer. Also included may be hoses, belts, connectors, and other emissions-related assemblies.

EA11-003

Appendix L

Where a warrantable condition exists, Ford Motor Company will repair your vehicle at no cost to you including diagnosis, parts, and labor.

## **Manufacturer's Warranty Coverage**

### For Vehicles Eligible for California Emission Warranty Coverage

If Gross Vehicle Weight Rating is 14,000 lbs. or less:

For 3 years or 50,000 miles (whichever first occurs):

1. If your vehicle fails a Smog Check inspection, all necessary repairs and adjustments will be made by Ford to ensure that your vehicle passes the inspection. This is your emission control system PERFORMANCE WARRANTY.

2. If any emissions-related part on your vehicle is defective, the part will be repaired or replaced by Ford. This is your short-term emission control system DEFECTS WARRANTY.

For 7 years or 70,000 miles (whichever first occurs):

If an emissions-related part listed on page 27 with coverage for 7 years or 70,000 miles is defective, the part will be repaired or replaced by Ford. This is your long-term emission control system DEFECTS WARRANTY.

If Gross Vehicle Weight rating is over 14,000 lbs.:

For 5 years or 50,000 miles (gasoline powered engines and vehicles) or 5 years or 100,000 miles (diesel powered engines and vehicles) (whichever first occurs):

If an emissions-related part on your vehicle is defective, the part will be repaired or replaced by Ford. This is your emission control system DEFECTS WARRANTY.

For 15 years or 150,000 miles (whichever first occurs):

1. If an emissions-related part on your vehicle is defective, the part will be repaired or replaced by Ford. This is your emissions control system DEFECTS WARRANTY.
2. If your vehicle fails a Smog Check inspection, all necessary repairs and adjustments will be made by Ford to ensure that your vehicle passes the inspection. This is your emission control system PERFORMANCE WARRANTY.

### **Owner's Warranty Responsibilities**

As the vehicle owner, you are responsible for the performance of the required maintenance listed in your owner's manual. Ford Motor Company recommends that you retain all receipts covering maintenance on your vehicle, but Ford cannot deny warranty coverage solely for the lack of receipts or for your failure to ensure the performance of all scheduled maintenance.

You are responsible for presenting your vehicle to a Ford Motor Company dealer as soon as a problem exists. The warranty repairs should be completed in a reasonable amount of time, not to exceed 30 days.

As the vehicle owner, you should also be aware that Ford Motor Company may deny you warranty coverage if your vehicle or a part has failed due to abuse, neglect, improper maintenance, or unapproved modifications.

If you have any questions regarding your warranty rights and responsibilities, or if you want to report what you believe to be violations of the terms of this warranty, you may contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center at 1-800-392-3673 (FORD) or the California Air Resources Board at:

**State of California Air Resources Board  
Mobile Source Operations Division  
P.O. Box 8001  
El Monte, California 91731-2990**

## WHAT IS COVERED?

EA11-003

Appendix L

The parts on the following list are covered by the Defects Warranties.

### List of Parts Covered by Defects Warranties

- Air Flow Sensor
- Air/Fuel Feedback Control System and Sensors
- Air Induction System
- Altitude Compensation System
- Catalytic Converter (including Diesel Particulate Filter and Diesel Oxidation Catalyst)
- Cold Start Enrichment System
- Cold Start Fuel Injector (Flex Fuel Vehicle Only)
- Controls for Deceleration
- Electronic Ignition System
- Exhaust Pipe (Manifold to Catalyst)
- Electronic Engine Control Sensors and Switches
- Electronic Engine Control Unit (ECU)\*
- Evaporative Emission Control System
- Exhaust Gas Recirculation (EGR) System
- Exhaust Heat Control Valve
- Exhaust Manifold
- Exhaust Pipe (Manifold to Catalyst)
- Fuel Filler Cap and Neck Restrictor (non-diesel only)
- Fuel Injection System
- Fuel Injector Supply Manifold
- Fuel Sensor (Flex Fuel Vehicle Only)
- Fuel Tank (non-diesel only)
- Fuel Tank Pressure Control Valve (Flex Fuel Vehicle Only)
- Idle Air Bypass Valve
- Ignition Coil and/or Control Module
- Intake Manifold
- Intercooler Assembly - Engine Charger
- Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)/On-Board Diagnostic (OBD) System
- NGV Module (Bi-fuel/CNG)
- PCV System and Oil Filler Cap
- Secondary Air Injection System
- Spark Control Components
- Spark Plugs and Ignition Wires
- Supercharger Assembly
- Synchronizer Assembly
- Thermostat
- Throttle Body Assembly (MFI)
- Transmission Control Module (TCM)
- Turbocharger Assembly
- Vacuum Distribution System

\* Includes hardware and emissions related software changes only

**COVERAGE FOR 2009-MODEL VEHICLES (GVWR OF 14,000 LBS. OR LESS) UNDER LONG TERM DEFECTS WARRANTY**  
(Coverage for Up to 7 Years/70,000 Miles, Whichever First Occurs)

Focus, Fusion, Milan, Taurus, Taurus X, Sable, Escape (excl. Hybrid), Mariner (excl. Hybrid), Edge, Flex, Ranger, Explorer, Mountaineer, Sport Trac, Crown Victoria, Grand Marquis, Mustang, Econoline, Expedition, F-150, F-Series Super Duty, Motorhome

Part Name	Engine Size											
	2.0L	2.3L	2.5L	3.0L	3.5L	3.7L	4.0L	4.6L	5.4L	6.0L/6.4L	6.8L	
ABS Module (Motorhome only)												X
Cam Timing Assembly	X			X	X			X(14)		X(1)		X
Camshaft Drive Assembly (Left-hand)								X(15)				
Camshaft Drive Assembly (Right-hand)								X(15)				
Camshaft Drive Assembly Kit-Left					X			X	X(3)			X
Catalytic Converter	X	X	X	X	X(17)			X	X			X
Catalyst Inlet Pipe					X(5)							
Charge Air Cooler									X(2)			
Crankshaft Vibration Damper Assembly									X(2)			
Dash Panel & Headlamp Junction Wiring		X	X	X(5)	X			X(18)	X(4)			
Diesel Oxidation Catalyst & Filter												X
EGR Cooler/Assembly				X(5)					X(6)			X
EGR Tube to Manifold Connector				X	X			X	X	X		X
Electronic Engine Control Unit (ECU)	X	X	X	X	X			X	X(16)	X(1)		X
Engine Variable Timing Housing Assembly-Right				X(5)	X			X(14)	X(7)			
Engine Variable Timing Housing Assembly-Left				X(19)				X(14)	X(8)			
EVAP Vapor Storage Canister			X	X					X(6)			
Exhaust Flex Pipe									X(9)	X(10)		X(1)
Exhaust Manifold Gasket				X(5)	X(19)			X(20)	X(10)			X
Exhaust Manifold-Left				X(5)	X(19)							
Exhaust Manifold-Right				X(5)	X(19)							
Flat Exhaust Gasket				X(5)								
Fuel Injection Nozzle & Fuel Injector Control Module									X(11)	X(2)		X
Fuel Injector Fuel Supply Manifold/Kit								X(2)	X	X		X
Fuel Tank	X	X	X	X	X			X	X	X		X
Fuel Tank Sender & Pump Assembly		X(18)						X(14)				
Fuel Tube Assembly												
High Pressure Fuel Pump												
Hydraulic Fluid Pump Cover Kit												
Intake Manifold												
Output Shaft Speed (OSS) Sensor												
Positive Crankcase Ventilation (PCV) Valve												
Powertrain Control Wiring Harness				X(5)	X(21)				X(11)	X(2)		X
Solenoid Body Assembly								X	X(22)	X(12)		X
Supercharger & Throttle Body Spacer								X	X(2)	X(13)		X
Supercharger & Throttle Body Spacer										X(2)		
Transmission Fluid Temperature Sensor												
Transmission Control Module												
Transmission Intermediate Speed Sensor			X(5)	X(5)	X(19)				X(14)			
Turbine Shaft Speed Sensor Assembly			X(18)									
Turbocharger & Turbocharger Control Valve/Downpipe												X

(1) F-Series Duty, Motorhome only; (3) Expedition, F-150, F-Series Duty only; (4) Crown Victoria/Grand Marquis only; (5) Fusion/Milan only; (6) Expedition & Mustang only; (7) Expedition & F-150 only; (8) Focus, Fusion, Milan, Taurus, Taurus X, Sable, Escape (excl. Hybrid), Mariner (excl. Hybrid), Edge, Flex, Ranger, Explorer, Mountaineer, Sport Trac, Crown Victoria, Grand Marquis, Mustang, Econoline, Expedition, F-150, F-Series Super Duty, Motorhome only; (9) F-150, F-Series Super Duty only; (10) F-150, F-Series Super Duty only; (11) Explorer, Mountaineer, Sport Trac, Ranger; (12) Explorer, Mountaineer, Sport Trac, Ranger; (13) Explorer, Mountaineer, Sport Trac, Ranger; (14) Explorer, Mountaineer, Sport Trac, Ranger; (15) Explorer, Mountaineer, Sport Trac, Ranger; (16) Explorer, Mountaineer, Sport Trac, Ranger; (17) Flex, Taurus, Sable, Taurus X; (18) Ranger; (19) Edge; (20) Mustang, F-150, Explorer, Mountaineer, Sport Trac; (21) Flex, Taurus, Sable, Taurus X; (22) Econoline, F-150, Mustang, Explorer, Mountaineer, Sport Trac; (23) Crown Victoria, Grand Marquis, Mustang, Econoline, F-150; (24) Crown Victoria, Grand Marquis, Explorer, Mountaineer, Sport Trac

EA111-003

Appendix L

## Important Information about List of Parts

EA11-003

Appendix L

There may be additional coverage for these parts through the Bumper to Bumper, Powertrain, or Diesel Engine limited warranties. In any case, the warranty with the broadest coverage applies.

Also covered by this warranty are all emissions-related bulbs, hoses, clamps, brackets, tubes, gaskets, seals, belts, connectors, non diesel fuel lines, and wiring harnesses that are used with components on the list of parts above.

Concerning parts that should be replaced on a certain maintenance schedule: these parts remain under warranty until the first required replacement time that is specified in your **Owner Guide** and the **Scheduled Maintenance Guide**.

**NOTE:** If the diagnosis does not reveal a defect, the Defects Warranty does not apply.

Your Ford Motor Company dealer maintains a complete list of covered parts. For more details about the specific parts that are covered by the Defects Warranty, contact your dealer.

### **WHAT IS NOT COVERED?**

Ford Motor Company may deny you warranty coverage if your vehicle or a part has failed because of abuse, neglect, improper maintenance, unapproved modifications, or any items included in **What Is Not Covered?**, pages 12-15.

## **7. Additional information about your emissions warranty coverage, under Federal and California requirements**

Appendix L

### **HOW DO I GET WARRANTY SERVICE?**

To get service under your emissions warranties, take your vehicle to any Ford Motor Company dealer as soon as possible after illumination of the Malfunction Indicator Light or it has failed an EPA-approved test or a California Smog Check inspection. Be sure to show the dealer the document that says your vehicle has failed the test.

Your dealer will determine whether the repair is covered by the warranty. If the dealer has a question about Emissions Performance Warranty coverage, it will forward the question to Ford Motor Company, which must make a final decision within 30 days after you bring your vehicle in for repair. (The decision will be made within a shorter time if state, local, or federal law requires you to have the vehicle repaired more quickly in order to avoid additional penalties.) The deadline for a determination about Emissions Performance Warranty Coverage does not need to be met if you request a delay, agree to a delay in writing, or if the delay is caused by an event for which neither Ford nor your dealer is responsible. If a question about Emissions Performance Warranty coverage is referred to Ford Motor Company, you will be notified by Ford Motor Company in writing if your claim for warranty coverage is denied. The notice will explain the basis for denying your claim. If you fail to receive this notice within a timely manner, as determined above, Ford will perform the warranty repair for you free of charge.

### **HOW DO I HANDLE EMERGENCY REPAIRS?**

If your vehicle needs an emergency warrantable repair and a Ford Motor Company dealer is not available, or if a Ford Motor Company dealer cannot perform warrantable repair(s) within 30 days of you bringing your vehicle to the dealer, repairs may be performed at any service establishment or by you using Ford equivalent replacement parts.

Ford will reimburse you for the cost of these warranty repairs including diagnosis, if you take the part(s) that are replaced and the repair receipt(s) to a Ford Motor Company dealer. The reimbursement shall not exceed Ford's suggested retail price for the warranted parts that are replaced and labor charges based on Ford's recommended time allowance for the warranty repair and the geographically appropriate hourly rate.

## WHAT REPLACEMENT PARTS SHOULD I USE?

EA11-003

Appendix L

Ford Motor Company recommends that you use genuine Ford replacement parts. However, when you are having non-warranty work done on your vehicle, you may choose to use non-Ford parts. If you decide to use non-Ford parts, be sure they are equivalent to Ford parts in performance, quality, and durability. If you use replacement parts that are not equivalent to Ford parts, your vehicle's emissions control systems may not work as effectively, and you may jeopardize your emissions warranty coverage.

For vehicles within the warranty period, Ford will repair at no cost to the owner, under the Federal Emissions Warranty, covered emission failures caused by properly installed Ford parts or non-Ford parts that have been certified by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA). Ford is not responsible for the cost of repairing any emission failures caused by non-Ford parts that have not been certified by the EPA.

**The maintenance, replacement, or repair of emissions control devices or systems can be performed by any automotive repair establishment or individual using Ford replacement parts or EPA certified parts without voiding your federal warranty coverage for future repairs during the warranty period.**

## PROPER MAINTENANCE PRESERVES YOUR WARRANTY

If you do not maintain your vehicle properly, Ford may have the right to deny you warranty coverage.

To have repairs made under this warranty, you may have to show that you have followed Ford's instructions on properly maintaining and using your vehicle. You will find these instructions in your **Owner Guide** and **Scheduled Maintenance Guide**. Be sure to save your service receipts and to keep accurate records of all maintenance work.

## CUSTOMER ASSISTANCE

If you are not satisfied with the handling of a warranty matter, see **Customer Assistance**, on the inside front cover, and **Better Business Bureau (BBB) AUTO LINE program**, page 33.

## 8. Noise emissions warranty

### **NOISE EMISSIONS WARRANTY FOR CERTAIN LIGHT TRUCKS**

Ford Motor Company warrants to the first person who purchases this vehicle for purposes other than resale and to each subsequent purchaser that this vehicle as manufactured by Ford, was designed, built and equipped to conform at the time it left Ford's control with all applicable U.S. EPA Noise Control Regulations.

This warranty covers this vehicle as designed, built and equipped by Ford Motor Company, and is not limited to any particular part, component or system of the vehicle as manufactured by Ford. Defects in design, assembly or in any part, component or system of the vehicle as manufactured by Ford, which, at the time it left Ford's control, caused noise emissions to exceed Federal standards, are covered by this warranty for the life of the vehicle.

### **THE NOISE EMISSIONS WARRANTY OBLIGATIONS DO NOT APPLY TO:**

- loss of time, inconvenience, loss of use of the vehicle, commercial loss or, other consequential damages.
- any vehicle which is not covered by the U.S. EPA Medium and Heavy Trucks Noise Emission Standards (40 C.F.R. Part 205, Subpart B). Among the non-covered vehicles are those lacking a partially or fully enclosed operator's compartment, such as a basic stripped chassis, those having a Gross Vehicle Weight Rating of 10,000 pounds or less, and those sold outside the United States and its territories. To the extent permitted by law, **THIS WARRANTY IS EXPRESSLY INSTEAD** of any express or implied warranty, condition, or guarantee, agreement, or representation, by any person with respect to conformity of this vehicle with the U.S. EPA Noise Control Regulations, including **ANY IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS.**

## 9. Ford Extended Service Plan

### MORE PROTECTION FOR YOUR VEHICLE

You can get additional protection for your new car or light truck by purchasing a Ford Extended Service Plan (Ford ESP). Ford ESP service contracts are backed by Ford Motor Company and they provide:

- additional benefits during the warranty period depending on the plan you purchase (such as: alternative transportation and coverage for certain maintenance and wear items; coverage for certain maintenance and wear items); and
- extended protection after your Bumper to Bumper Warranty expires.

You may purchase Ford ESP from any Ford Motor Company dealer or visit our website at [Ford-ESP.com](http://Ford-ESP.com). There are several Ford ESP plans available in various time, distance and deductible combinations. Each plan is tailored to fit your own driving needs, including reimbursement for towing and rental vehicles.

When you purchase Ford ESP, you receive peace-of-mind protection throughout the United States and Canada, provided by a network of more than 4,600 Ford Motor Company dealers.

This information is subject to change. Ask your dealer for complete details about Ford ESP coverage.

## 10. The Better Business Bureau (BBB) AUTO LINE Program (U.S. Only) Appendix L

Your satisfaction is important to Ford Motor Company and to your dealer. If a warranty concern has not been resolved using the three-step procedure outlined on the first page of the Customer Assistance section, you may be eligible to participate in the BBB AUTO LINE program.

The BBB AUTO LINE program consists of two parts — mediation and arbitration. During mediation, a representative of the BBB will contact both you and Ford Motor Company to explore options for settlement of the claim. If an agreement is not reached during mediation and your claim is eligible, you may participate in the arbitration process. An arbitration hearing will be scheduled so that you can present your case in an informal setting before an impartial person. The arbitrator will consider the testimony provided and make a decision after the hearing.

You are not bound by the decision, but should you choose to accept the BBB AUTO LINE decision, Ford must abide by the accepted decision as well. Disputes submitted to the BBB AUTO LINE program are usually decided within forty days after you file your claim with the BBB.

BBB AUTO LINE Application: Using the information provided below, please call or write to request a program application. You will be asked for your name and address, general information about your new vehicle, information about your warranty concerns, and any steps you have already taken to try to resolve them. A Customer Claim Form will be mailed that will need to be completed, signed, and returned to the BBB along with proof of ownership. Upon request, the BBB will review the claim for eligibility under Program Summary Guidelines.

**You can get more information by calling BBB AUTO LINE at 1-800-955-5100, or writing to:**

**BBB AUTO LINE  
4200 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 800  
Arlington, Virginia 22203-1833**

BBB AUTO LINE applications can also be requested by calling the Ford Motor Company Customer Relationship Center at 1-800-392-3673.

**Note:** Ford Motor Company reserves the right to change eligibility limitations, modify procedures, or to discontinue this process at any time without notice and without obligation.

## 11. State warranty enforcement laws

These state laws - sometimes called lemon laws - allow owners to receive a replacement vehicle or a refund of the purchase price, under certain circumstances. The laws vary from state to state.

To the extent your state law allows, Ford Motor Company requires that you first send us a written notification of any defects or non-conformities that you have experienced with your vehicle. (This will give us the opportunity to make any needed repairs before you pursue the remedies provided by your state's law.)

In all other states where not specifically required by state law, Ford Motor Company requests that you give us the written notice. Send your written notification to:

**Ford Motor Company**  
**Customer Relationship Center**  
**P.O. Box 6248**  
**Dearborn, MI 48126**

## 12. Important information about ambulance conversions

Ford vehicles are suitable for producing ambulances only if equipped with the **Ford Ambulance Prep Package**. In addition, Ford urges ambulance manufacturers to follow the recommendations of the **Ford Incomplete Vehicle Manual** and the **Ford Truck Body Builders Layout Book** (and pertinent supplements).

**Using a Ford vehicle without the Ford Ambulance Prep Package to produce an ambulance could result in elevated underbody temperatures, fuel overpressurization, and the risk of fuel expulsion and fires. Such use also voids the Ford Bumper to Bumper Warranty and may void the Emissions Warranties.**

You may determine whether the vehicle is equipped with the **Ford Ambulance Prep Package** by inspecting the information plate on the driver's rear door pillar.

You may determine whether the ambulance manufacturer has followed Ford's recommendations by contacting the ambulance manufacturer of your vehicle.

## 13. Important information about Ford limousine conversions

Ford Motor Company authorizes only Ford Qualified Vehicle Modifiers (QVM's) to perform Ford Expedition EL conversions. To obtain a list of QVM's, visit our website at [www.fleet.ford.com/limo](http://www.fleet.ford.com/limo) or call 1-800-34-FLEET. Expedition EL is suitable for limousine conversion only if equipped with the proper Ford Limousine Builder's Package. The wheelbase on the Expedition EL with the Limousine Builder's Package (17L) may NOT be extended beyond 140" (258.89 total wheelbase) or in a manner that results in a Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) exceeding 9,900 pounds.

If an Expedition EL Limousine is NOT equipped with the Limousine Builder's Package or it is equipped with the Limousine Builder's Package but it's wheelbase is extended beyond its limitations or if it's GVWR exceeds the weight limitations, then the New Vehicle Limited Warranty is voided, any Ford Extended Service Plan (ESP) contract is voided, applicable Emissions warranties may be voided, and the vehicle modifier may be considered the vehicle "manufacturer" for Emissions Warranty coverage purposes (including responsibilities for emissions, warranty, recall, and in-use compliance).

Any other Ford or Mercury vehicle converted to a limousine will **void** the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

**[www.ownerconnection.com](http://www.ownerconnection.com)**

Designed with Ford owners in mind, this site features updated information on vehicle service, special offers and Ford-sponsored events in your community.



9W7J 19T201 BA



<b>Table of Contents</b>	
<b>Introduction</b>	<b>2</b>
<b>Instrument Cluster</b>	<b>7</b>
<b>Driving</b>	<b>11</b>
<b>Roadside Emergencies</b>	<b>24</b>
<b>Cleaning</b>	<b>30</b>
<b>Maintenance and Specifications</b>	<b>33</b>
<b>Scheduled Maintenance: General Information</b>	<b>61</b>
<b>Scheduled Maintenance: E-Series</b>	<b>67</b>
<b>Scheduled Maintenance: F-Super Duty</b>	<b>84</b>
<b>Scheduled Maintenance: Special Information</b>	<b>101</b>

All rights reserved. Reproduction by any means, electronic or mechanical including photocopying, recording or by any information storage and retrieval system or translation in whole or part is not permitted without written authorization from Ford Motor Company. Ford may change the contents without notice and without incurring obligation.

Copyright © 2009 Ford Motor Company

## Introduction

### CALIFORNIA Proposition 65 Warning



**WARNING:** Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and certain vehicle components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.

### POWER STROKE DIESEL ENGINE

Your new diesel engine will feel, drive and function somewhat differently than a gasoline engine. Therefore it is very important that you read and thoroughly familiarize yourself and others operating the vehicle with this guide. **A special procedure for turning off the diesel engine is in the *Driving* chapter. It is important to read and understand this material in order to maintain the best service life for your engine.**

This guide will acquaint you with the Power Stroke diesel engine. It provides recommendations on engine care and operating procedures. For complete vehicle information, also refer to the *Owner's Guide* included with the vehicle. It also describes equipment and gives specifications for equipment that was in effect when this guide was approved for printing, and should be considered a permanent part of the vehicle.

**Some aftermarket products may cause severe engine/transmission and/or exhaust system damage;** refer to the *warranty information* in the *Customer Information Guide* for more information. **Your vehicle's Powertrain Control Systems can detect and store information about vehicle modifications that increase horsepower and torque output such as whether or not performance-enhancing powertrain components commonly referred to as "performance chips" have been used. This information cannot be erased and will stay in the system's memory even if the modification is removed. The Information can be retrieved by Ford Motor Company, Ford of Canada, and service and repair facilities when servicing your vehicle. This information may be used to determine if repairs will be covered by warranty.**

Ford may discontinue models or change specifications without any notice and without incurring obligations.

2

## Introduction

### Important notice

Ford vehicles are suitable for producing ambulances only if equipped with the Ford ambulance preparation package. In addition, Ford urges ambulance manufacturers to follow the recommendation of the *Ford Incomplete Vehicle Manual*, *Ford Truck Body Builder's Layout Book* (and pertinent supplements) and the *Qualified Vehicle Modifiers Guidelines*. Using a Ford vehicle without the Ford ambulance preparation package to produce an ambulance voids the Ford warranty and could result in elevated underbody temperatures, fuel overpressurization and the risk of fuel expulsion and fires. To determine whether the vehicle is equipped with the Ford ambulance preparation package, inspect the information plate on the driver's side door pillar. Contact the manufacturer of your vehicle to determine whether the ambulance manufacturer's followed Ford's recommendations.



### WARNINGS

Throughout this guide, you will find warnings identified by the symbol . Warnings remind you to be especially careful to reduce the risk of personal injury.

### NEW VEHICLE BREAK-IN

Your vehicle does not need an extensive break-in. Try not to drive continuously at the same speed for the first 1,000 miles (1,600 km) of new vehicle operation. Vary your speed to allow parts to adjust themselves to other parts.

Drive your new vehicle at least 500 miles (800 km) before towing a trailer. Make sure you use the specified engine oil by checking the engine oil specification chart under *Engine oil* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

Do not add friction modifier compounds or special break-in oils during the first few thousand miles (kilometers) of operation, since these additives may prevent piston ring seating. See *Engine oil* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter of this supplement for more information on oil usage.

### DIESEL ENGINE INFORMATION

The Diesel engine fuel system consists of:

- **On E-Series vehicles (6.0L engine)**, a Diesel Fuel Conditioner Module (DFCM) mounted on the driver-side frame rail next to the transmission

## Introduction

- On **F-Super Duty vehicles (6.4L engine)**, a frame-mounted Horizontal Fuel Conditioner Module (HFCM)
- an engine-mounted secondary fuel filter
- a unit injector for each cylinder

The FCM/HFCM acts as a primary fuel filter/water separator which removes both water and impurities from the fuel. The engine mounted filter filters finer impurities from the diesel fuel. The engine-mounted fuel filter and the FCM/HFCM filter should be changed at the recommended service interval. Refer to the *scheduled maintenance information* in this supplement for more information.

### F-Super Duty



### E-Series

**DRAIN WATER  
SEPARATOR**



The FCM/HFCM should be drained at regular intervals or when the WATER IN FUEL light illuminates in the instrument cluster.

The fuel injectors are located in the center of the combustion chambers in the cylinder head between the rocker arm assemblies. The glow plug system and fuel injection system are controlled through the Powertrain Control Module (PCM) and Fuel Injection Control Module (FICM) (6.0L engine only).

Fuel is drawn from the fuel tank by a frame-mounted electric fuel pump. The fuel pump provides pressurized fuel to the engine and is electronically controlled by the fuel pump PCM relay. The fuel pump contains a pressure relief valve for overpressure protection in the event of restricted flow.

### Engine protection mode

Ford diesel engines are equipped with engine protection and emission control systems. These systems monitor critical temperatures and pressures, and modify engine operation accordingly. These features are intended to modify engine performance characteristics. If these modified engine performance characteristics persist for an extended period or the service engine soon  or powertrain malfunction/reduced power/electronic throttle control light  is illuminated, seek service from your authorized dealer.

4

## Introduction

### Lubrication system

Extended oil change intervals can negatively affect engine performance, fuel economy and engine life. Refer to the engine oil specification chart located under *Engine oil specifications* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter of this supplement.

**On E-Series vehicles (6.0L engine)**, it is important to change the engine oil at the recommended service intervals because oil viscosity is important in maintaining the oil pressure required to actuate the fuel injectors.

**On F-Super Duty vehicles (6.4L engine)**, it is important to change the engine oil at the recommended service intervals to maintain oil viscosity with the addition of the diesel particulate filter (DPF).

### Fast start glow plug system

The glow plug system consists of:

- eight glow plugs
- the glow plug control module (GPCM)
- engine oil temperature (EOT) sensor
- barometric pressure (BARO) sensor

The glow plug system is electronically controlled by the PCM. The GPCM energizes the glow plugs immediately after the ignition is placed in the ON position, then determines how long the glow plugs will be on according to the EOT and BARO sensors. The required time for the glow plugs to be energized decreases as the engine oil temperature and barometric pressure increase.



### Engine cooling system

The engine cooling system contains an engine oil cooler and an Exhaust Gas Recirculation (EGR) cooler. The oil cooler's function is to regulate engine oil temperature. The EGR cooler function is to cool exhaust gases before they are circulated back through the engine to reduce emissions. Vehicles with diesel engines typically are used to carry heavy loads and accumulate mileage rapidly. These two factors may cause the additives in the coolant to "wear out" in a shorter time. Refer to the Special Operating Conditions section for more information about coolant additives and coolant change intervals. Operating the engine with insufficient coolant and/or coolant additive can cause severe engine damage.

## Introduction

To determine if a coolant additive recharge is required, check the nitrite strength of the coolant using the coolant nitrate test strip kit (Acustrip 3-way Antifreeze Test Strip). If the nitrite strength is above 800 ppm no action is required. If the nitrite strength is between 800 ppm to 300 ppm add 32 fl. oz. (946 ml) of engine coolant additive, Motorcraft VC-8 or equivalent. If the nitrite strength is below 300 ppm, flush & refill the cooling system.

### **Fuel and turbocharger cooling system (F-Super Duty only)**

The fuel and turbocharger cooling system contains a cooler which is mounted on the turbo interstage U-tube on the left side of the engine. The cooler's function is to regulate engine fuel temperature and cool the electronics that support the turbocharger. You may hear the auxiliary coolant pump running up to 10 minutes after the ignition is turned off in hot weather or if you are towing heavy loads. This is to control the temperature of the turbocharger.

### **Engine governed speed**

The engine governor is controlled by the PCM. The PCM controls fuel input to limit maximum engine speed. It will not, however, prevent engine overspeeding resulting from downshifting at high vehicle speed or by descending steep grades at too high a vehicle speed for the selected transmission gear.

**If your vehicle is equipped with a manual transmission,** refer to *Manual transmission shift speeds* in the *Driving* chapter of your *Owner's Guide* for maximum vehicle shift speeds in various gears. Do not exceed 4,000 rpm. Maximum engine governed speed is 3,700 rpm. Excessive rpm can only be achieved by manually downshifting at too high of a vehicle speed.

**Operating the engine beyond the governed speed can cause severe engine damage.**

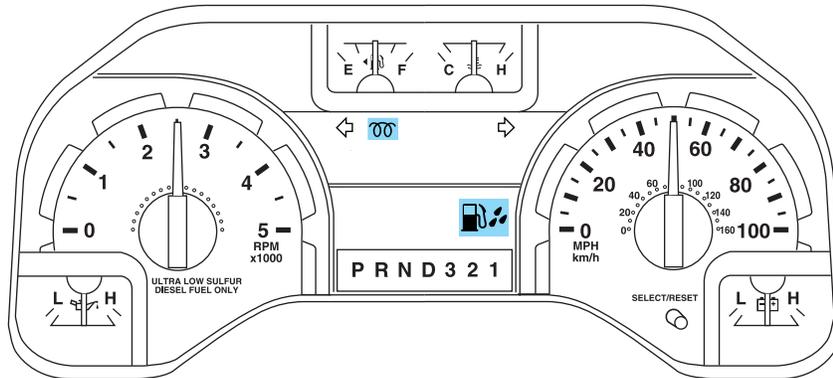
### **Speed control (F-Super Duty)**

If vehicle speed goes outside a predetermined range from the set speed, the RES (Resume) function will not reset vehicle speed. Vehicle speed will need to be reset with the SET +/- button after reaching desired speed using accelerator pedal.

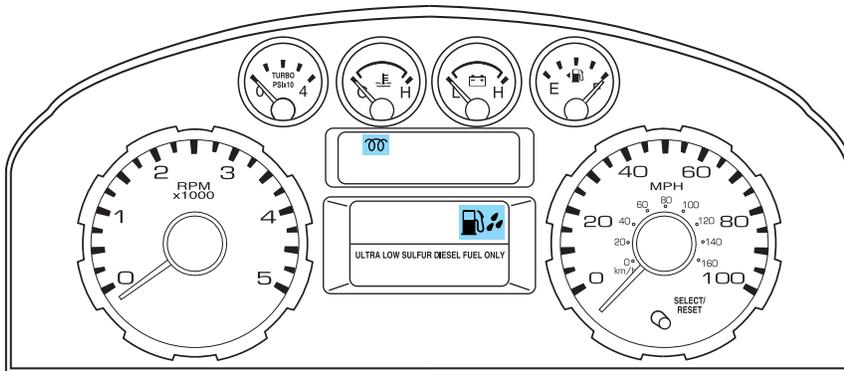
# Instrument Cluster

## WARNING LIGHTS

### E-Series

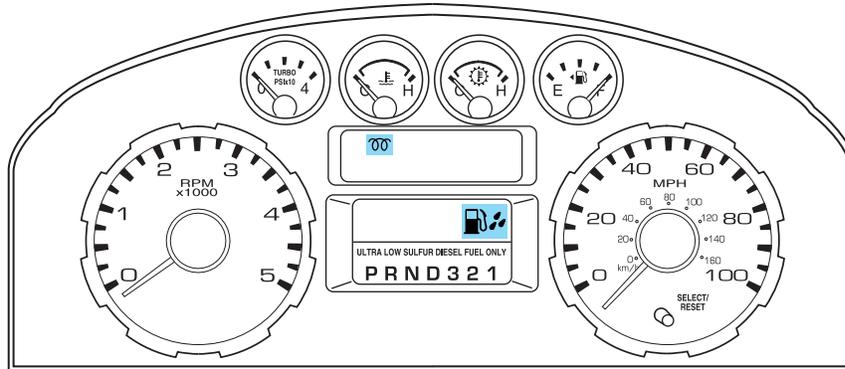


### F-Super Duty w/manual transmission

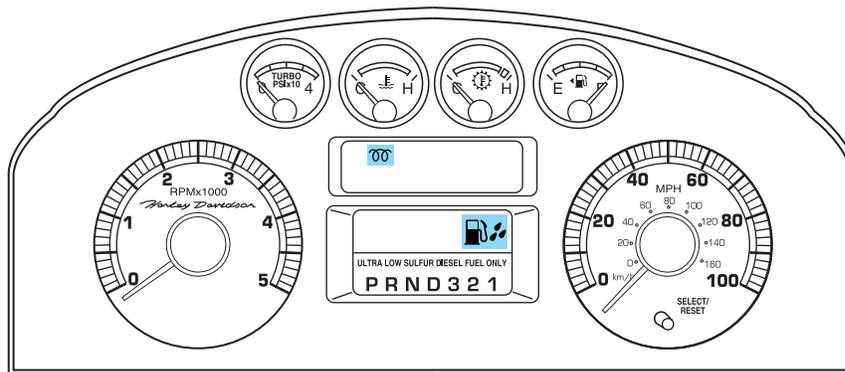


## Instrument Cluster

### F-Super Duty w/automatic transmission



### Harley-Davidson



**Note:** Some warning lights are reconfigurable telltale (RTT) indicator lights and will illuminate in the message center display and function the same as the warning light.

## Instrument Cluster

### Glow plug pre-heat indicator:



With the key in the on position, the  light will illuminate if glow plug heat is necessary as a starting aid. Wait until the light goes off before starting. Refer to *Cold weather starting* in the *Driving* chapter of this supplement. After the engine starts, the light should turn on. The light should always illuminate at least momentarily when the engine is cold and the ignition is turned to on. If it does not illuminate, the glow plug system should be checked and repaired promptly to avoid difficulty in cold starting.

### Water in fuel:

#### F-Super Duty



#### E-Series



During refueling, it is possible for water-contaminated diesel fuel to be pumped into your tank. Your vehicle's fuel system is equipped with a fuel filter/water separator to remove water from the fuel. The water in fuel light will illuminate when the FCM/HFCM has a significant quantity of water in it.

If the light illuminates when the engine is running, stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible, shut off the engine, then drain the FCM/HFCM. Refer to *Draining the FCM/HFCM and changing the fuel filters* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter of this supplement for the drain procedure. Allowing water to stay in the system could result in extensive damage to, or failure of, the fuel injection system.

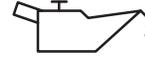


**WARNING:** Do not drain the water separator while the engine is running. Fuel may ignite if the separator is drained while the engine is running or the vehicle is moving.

## Instrument Cluster

### Engine oil pressure:

Illuminates when the oil pressure falls below the normal range. Refer to *Engine oil* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter for more information.



### GAUGES

#### Engine boost gauge (F-Super Duty only):

Indicates the amount of pressure in the engine. Driving with your pointer continuously at the high end of the scale may damage the engine.



## Driving

### STARTING THE ENGINE

Read all starting instructions carefully before you start your vehicle.

For temperatures below 32°F (0°C), the use of the correct grade engine oil is essential for proper operation. Refer to *Engine oil specifications* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter for more information.

Your vehicle may be equipped with a cold weather starting strategy that prevents severe engine damage by assisting in engine lubrication warm-up. In extremely cold ambient temperatures, this strategy activates and prevents the accelerator pedal from being used for 30 seconds after starting the vehicle. By not allowing the accelerator pedal to be used, the engine oil is allowed to properly lubricate the bearings preventing engine damage due to lack of proper lubrication. After the 30 second warm-up period, the accelerator pedal will be operational again as long as the pedal is not being pressed when the 30 second time limit expires. When starting the engine in extremely cold temperatures (-15°F [-26°C]), it is recommended to allow the engine to idle for several minutes before driving the vehicle.

**If your vehicle is equipped with a manual transmission,** make sure the parking brake is fully set before you turn the key. Depress the clutch pedal and place the gearshift in the neutral position. The clutch must be fully depressed in order to operate the starter. Do not press the accelerator during starting.

**If your vehicle is equipped with an automatic transmission,** ensure the gearshift lever is in P (Park) and the parking brake is fully set before you turn the key. Do not press the accelerator during starting.

### Engine-driven cooling fan (fan clutch)

Your vehicle is equipped with an engine driven cooling fan drive (also called a fan clutch). This fan drive changes the fan speed to match the vehicle's changing cooling air flow requirements. Fan speed, fan noise level and fuel consumption all will increase based on the driving conditions that include trailer towing, hill climbing, heavy loads, high speed and high ambient temperature, individually or in combination. The fan drive is designed to provide the minimum fan speed (and resulting fan noise and fuel consumption) required to meet the ever changing vehicle cooling air flow requirements. You will hear the amount of fan noise increasing and decreasing as the engine power requirements and vehicle driving conditions change as you drive. This is to be expected as being normal to the operation of your vehicle. High levels of fan noise might also be heard when your engine is first started, and should normally decrease after driving for a short time.

## Driving

### Cold weather starting

It is recommended that the engine block heater be used for starting when the temperature is -10°F (-23°C) or colder. Refer to *Engine block heater (if equipped)* in the *Driving* chapter of the *Owner's Guide*.

When operating in cold weather, use Motorcraft Cetane improvers or non alcohol-based Cetane improvers from a reputable manufacturer.

Do not crank the engine for more than 10 seconds as starter damage may occur. If the engine fails to start, turn the key to 3 (off) and wait 30 seconds before trying again.



**WARNING:** Do not use starting fluid, such as ether, in the air intake system (see air filter decal). Such fluid could cause immediate explosive damage to the engine and possible personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not add gasoline, gasohol or alcohol to diesel fuel. This practice creates a serious fire hazard and causes engine performance problems.

1. Turn the key to on without turning the key to start. **Do not start the engine** until the glow-plug pre-heat indicator  turns off.
2. When the glow plug pre-heat indicator turns off, turn the key to start, then release the key as soon as the engine starts. The glow plugs will continue to be activated for two minutes after the glow plug pre-heat indicator  has turned off. If the engine is not started before the glow plug activation time ends, the glow plugs will need to be reset by turning the key to off. 
3. After the engine starts, **allow it to idle for about 15 seconds**. This is to protect the engine. Do not increase engine speed until the oil pressure gauge indicates normal pressure.

## Driving

### ENGINE IDLE SHUTDOWN (IF EQUIPPED)

Your vehicle may be equipped with an engine idle shutdown system. This system will automatically shut down your engine when it has been idling in P (Park) or N (Neutral) for five minutes (parking brake set) or 15 minutes (parking brake not set). When the engine idle shutdown process has started:

- A chime will sound and the message center will display **ENGINE TURNS OFF IN XX** 30 seconds prior to shutdown and begins counting down to zero.
- The timer can be reset by changing the position of the accelerator pedal, brake pedal or the park brake within the final 30 seconds.
- When the timer reaches zero, the engine shuts down and the message center will display **ENGINE TURNED OFF**.
- One minute after the engine has shut down, the electrical system will simulate key off, even though the ignition is still in the on position, initiating normal accessory delay period.
- The ignition must be moved to the off position to reset the system before restarting the vehicle.

**Note:** The engine idle shutdown idle timer will not start if:

- The engine is operating in power take-off (PTO) mode.
- The engine coolant temperature is below 60°F (16°C).
- The exhaust emission control device (DPF) is regenerating.

### STOPPING THE ENGINE

Turn the ignition to the OFF position.

**On E-Series vehicles**, to prolong engine life (after extended high speed or maximum GVW operation), it is recommended that a hot engine be idled for 7–10 minutes which will allow the turbocharged engine to cool down.

**On F-Super Duty vehicles**, to prolong engine life (especially after extended high speed, high ambient temperature, or high GVW/GCW operation), it is recommended that a hot engine be idled for 3-5 minutes which will allow the turbocharged engine to cool down.

## Driving

### COLD WEATHER OPERATION

Changing to a lighter grade engine oil also makes starting easier under these conditions. Refer to *Engine oil specifications* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter of this supplement.

Diesel fuel is adjusted seasonally for cold temperatures. Diesel fuel which has not been properly formulated for the ambient conditions may form wax crystals which can clog the fuel filter. At temperatures below 20°F (-7°C), if the engine starts, stalls after a short time, and then will not restart, the fuel filter(s) may be clogged. For best results in cold weather, use a diesel fuel which has been formulated for the ambient conditions. If you have been using biodiesel, you may need to use a fuel with lower biodiesel content, try another brand, or discontinue using biodiesel.

Your vehicle is equipped with either an FCM or HFCM which recirculates fuel from the engine to help prevent fuel filter clogging. Your vehicle is also equipped with a bypass relief valve, located in the fuel tank pick-up boot, which provides fuel flow to the engine if the fuel pickup should become plugged. To allow the bypass valve to function and avoid engine fuel starvation during cold weather operation of 32°F (0°C) or below, it is recommended that the fuel level in your tank should not be allowed to drop below ¼ full. This will help prevent air from entering the fuel system and stalling the engine.

In cold weather below 32°F (0°C), the engine will slowly increase to a higher idle speed if left idling in P (Park). As the engine warms-up, the engine sound level will decrease due to the activation of PCM-controlled sound reduction features.

If your vehicle is operated in a heavy snow storm or blowing snow conditions, the engine air induction may become partially clogged with snow and/or ice. If this occurs, the engine may experience a significant reduction in power output. At the earliest opportunity, clear all the snow and/or ice away from inside the air filter assembly. Take the top off the assembly, leaving the air filter in, and remove any snow or ice.

In order to operate the engine in temperatures of 32°F (0°C) or lower, read the following instructions:

- Make sure that the batteries are of sufficient size and are fully charged. Check other electrical components to make sure they are in optimum condition.
- Use Motorcraft Premium Engine Coolant solution at the concentration recommended to protect the engine against damage from freezing.
- Try to keep the fuel tank full as much as possible at the end of operation to prevent condensation in the fuel system.

## Driving

- Make sure you use proper cold weather engine oil and that it is at its proper level. Also, if necessary, make sure to follow the engine oil and filter change schedule found under the *Special operating conditions* section in the *scheduled maintenance guide* information.
- At temperatures of -10°F (-23°C) or below, it is recommended that you use an engine block heater to improve cold engine starting.
- If operating in arctic temperatures of -20°F (-29°C) or lower, consult your truck dealer for information about special cold weather equipment and precautions.

**Note:** Idling in cold weather will not heat the engine to its normal operating temperature. Long periods of idling in cold weather can cause a buildup of heavy deposits of carbon and rust on valve stems causing them to stick, which in turn, can cause valve train damage.

The following cold weather idling guidelines must be followed:

- Avoid idling the engine for more than 10 minutes at a time.
- Use Motorcraft Cetane improvers or non alcohol-based cetane improvers from a reputable manufacturer.
- Maintain the engine cooling system properly.
- Do not shut the engine down after an extensive idling period (10 minutes or more). Drive the vehicle for several miles with the engine at normal operating temperatures under a moderate load to burn off any accumulated carbon and varnish.
- Consider using an engine block heater.
- For extended idle times use an approved idle speed increase device.

### Winter operating tips for Arctic operation -20°F (-29°C) and below

The following information is provided as a guideline only, and is not intended to be the only source of possible solutions in resolving extreme cold temperature issues.

#### **Starting aids:**

The use of the factory engine block heater (refer to *Engine block heater [if equipped]* in the *Driving* chapter of the *Owner's Guide*) and oil pan heaters (aftermarket) will assist in engine starting, in extreme cold ambient temperatures.



**WARNING:** Do not use starting fluid, such as ether, in the air intake system (see air filter decal). Such fluid could cause immediate explosive damage to the engine and possible personal injury.

## Driving

### **Idle control:**

For periods of extended idle, the throttle should be set at an rpm that is sufficient to keep the engine at normal operating temperatures. This action can reduce the amount of engine damaging deposits.

- The engine contains a unique “Cold Weather - Idle up feature” calibration strategy within the PCM. Under the appropriate conditions, the strategy will automatically elevate the engine idle speed after 130 seconds of idling in cold ambient temperatures. For this feature to be activated, the truck must be in P (Park) (for automatic transmission), in neutral (for manual transmission) with the parking brake applied and engine oil temperature below 158°F (70°C). This strategy raises the rpm to a level that reduces the potential to produce “coking” or “wet stacking”, which is common to all diesel engines when idling for extended periods during cold ambient temperatures.
- Your vehicle may have a factory option for a Stationary Elevated Idle Control (SEIC) through dash-mounted Upfitter switches will allow the operator to elevate the idle rpm for extended idle periods, as well as aftermarket equipment such as PTO operation. This feature must be configured even if ordered from the factory. See your authorized dealer for required upfitting.

### **Operation in snow**

Vehicle operation in heavy snowfall or extreme rain conditions may feed excessive amounts of snow/water into the air intake system. This could plug/soak the air filter with snow and may cause the engine to lose power and possibly shut down.

You may not need to change the air filter and the vehicle may be driven up to 200 miles (320 km) under the following conditions:

- **Snow:** At the earliest opportunity, open the hood and clear all the snow and ice from the air filter housing inlet (do NOT remove the air filter) and reset the air filter restriction gauge.
- **Wet:** The air filter will dry after about 15–30 minutes at highway speeds. At the earliest opportunity, open the hood and reset the air filter restriction gauge.

Refer to *Air filter and restriction gauge* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter of this supplement for more information.

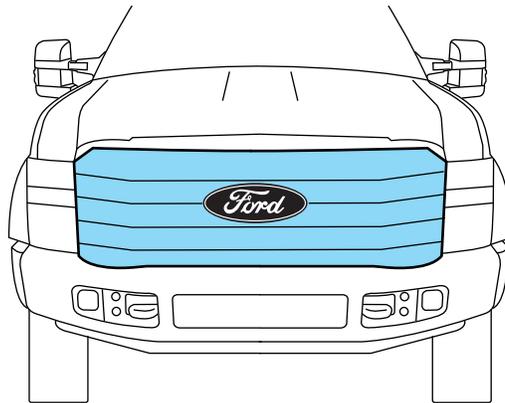
## Driving

### Operation in standing water

Ingestion of water into the diesel engine can result in immediate and severe damage to the engine. If driving through water, slow down to avoid splashing water into the intake. If the engine stalls, and ingestion of water into the engine is suspected, do not try to restart the engine. Consult your dealer for service immediately.

### Winter grille cover (F-Super Duty only) (if equipped)

If your vehicle includes a winter grille cover, it will enhance heater performance and will reduce the amount of time it takes to warm the inside of your vehicle in extremely cold conditions (below 0°F [-18°C]). The winter grille cover installs over the outside of the grille of your vehicle and restricts the air flowing to the engine compartment by covering the radiator grille openings.



### Usage guidelines

The winter grille cover should only be used while operating your vehicle in extremely cold temperatures or in heavy snow for extended periods of time. In these temperatures, the vehicle does not need a large amount of air to properly cool the engine. During periods of operation when more airflow is required to cool the vehicle, the winter grille cover should not be used. The following usage guidelines will allow adequate airflow for proper radiator and air cooler performance.

## Driving

- Do not use the winter grille cover when temperatures are above 50°F (10°C). Use of the cover in these conditions could cause your vehicle to overheat. If this happens while the cover is being used, remove the cover and store properly.
- Do not use the winter grille cover above 32°F (0°C) if towing a trailer. The added power needed to tow a trailer requires the radiator grille to have full airflow under all conditions. Your vehicle may overheat if the cover is used while towing a trailer.
- Do not modify the winter grille cover. The winter grille cover does not block some sections of the front of the vehicle because these openings are needed to provide enough airflow to the radiator and air cooler in extremely cold temperatures.

### **Installation instructions**

The “Installation Instructions” included with your winter grille cover packaging explain how to install and remove your vehicle’s winter grille cover. When installing or removing the winter grille cover, refer to the “Usage guidelines” listed previously. When you first attempt to fit the winter grille cover, it may appear to be undersized. This is due to the nature of the special vinyl, which will stretch during installation to ensure a tight fit. For this reason, the initial installation of the winter grille cover is best performed when the cover is warm.

### **Engine block heater (if equipped)**

Refer to the *Driving* chapter in the *Owner’s Guide*.

### **Rapid Heat supplemental heating system (if equipped)**

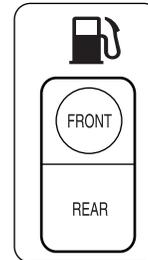
The optional Rapid Heat feature is an electrically powered device that is designed to provide supplemental heat during engine warm up. For maximum effectiveness mid to low blower speed is recommended during initial warm up. When operating in automatic mode (when equipped) the climate control unit will determine the appropriate blower speed for existing conditions.

**Note:** Additional aftermarket electrical loads operated during engine warm up may impact the performance of the Rapid heat supplemental heater.

## Driving

### DUAL FUEL TANK SELECTOR CONTROL (IF EQUIPPED)

If your vehicle is equipped with dual fuel tanks, you will have a selector control, located to the right of the steering wheel, which allows you to draw fuel from either tank. Your fuel gauge will display the amount of fuel in the currently selected tank.



Fuel level indication is delayed for several minutes when the tank selector switch is actuated. Fuel level indication can be obtained immediately by turning off and restarting the engine.

### TRAILER TOWING

Refer to your *Owner's Guide* for full details on towing a trailer.

#### Trailer towing tables - E-Series

Engine	Rear axle ratio	Maximum GCWR - lbs. (kg)	Maximum trailer weight - lbs. (kg)
<b>E-350 Regular Van (9500 GVWR)</b>			
6.0L	3.55	16000 (7257)	9500 (4309)
6.0L	4.10	20000 (9072)	10000 (4536)
<b>E-350 Extended/RV Van (9500 GVWR)</b>			
6.0L	3.55	16000 (7257)	9400 (4264)
6.0L	4.10	20000 (9072)	10000 (4536)
<b>E-350 Regular Wagon (12-passenger) (8950 GVWR)</b>			
6.0L	3.55	16000 (7257)	8900 (4037)
6.0L	4.10	20000 (9072)	10000 (4536)
<b>138" Wheelbase 9900 GVWR E-350 Cutaway with Single Rear Wheels (SRW)</b>			
6.0L	4.10	20000 (9072)	10000 (4536)

## Driving

Engine	Rear axle ratio	Maximum GCWR - lbs. (kg)	Maximum trailer weight - lbs. (kg)
<b>138" Wheelbase 10050 GVWR E-350 Cutaway with Single Rear Wheels (SRW)</b>			
6.0L	4.10	20000 (9072)	10000 (4536)
<b>138" Wheelbase 10000 GVWR E-350 Cutaway with Dual Rear Wheels (DRW)</b>			
6.0L	4.10	20000 (9072)	10000 (4536)
<b>138" Wheelbase 11500 GVWR E-350 Cutaway with Dual Rear Wheels (DRW)</b>			
6.0L	4.10	20000 (9072)	10000 (4536)
<b>158" Wheelbase 10050 GVWR E-350 Cutaway with Single Rear Wheels (SRW)</b>			
6.0L	4.10	20000 (9072)	10000 (4536)
<b>158" Wheelbase 10000 GVWR E-350 Cutaway with Dual Rear Wheels (DRW)</b>			
6.0L	4.10	20000 (9072)	10000 (4536)
<b>158" Wheelbase 11500 GVWR E-350 Cutaway with Dual Rear Wheels (DRW)</b>			
6.0L	4.10	20000 (9072)	10000 (4536)
<b>158" Wheelbase 12500 GVWR E-350 Cutaway with Dual Rear Wheels (DRW)</b>			
6.0L	4.10	20000 (9072)	10000 (4536)
<b>176" Wheelbase 10000 GVWR E-350 Cutaway with Dual Rear Wheels (DRW)</b>			
6.0L	4.10	20000 (9072)	10000 (4536)
<b>176" Wheelbase 12500 GVWR E-350 Cutaway with Dual Rear Wheels (DRW)</b>			
6.0L	4.10	20000 (9072)	10000 (4536)
<b>158" Wheelbase 13990 GVWR E-450 Cutaway with Dual Rear Wheels (DRW)</b>			
6.0L	4.10	20000 (9072)	10000 (4536)

## Driving

Engine	Rear axle ratio	Maximum GCWR - lbs. (kg)	Maximum trailer weight - lbs. (kg)
<b>158" Wheelbase 14500 GVWR E-450 Cutaway with Dual Rear Wheels (DRW)</b>			
6.0L	4.10	20000 (9072)	10000 (4536)
<b>176" Wheelbase 13990 GVWR E-450 Cutaway with Dual Rear Wheels (DRW)</b>			
6.0L	4.10	20000 (9072)	10000 (4536)
<b>176" Wheelbase 14500 GVWR E-450 Cutaway with Dual Rear Wheels (DRW)</b>			
6.0L	4.10	20000 (9072)	10000 (4536)

### Trailer towing tables - F-Super Duty

Maximum GCWR - lb (kg.)			
Engine	Rear axle ratio	Manual transmission	Automatic transmission
<b>F-250/F-350 Single Rear Wheel (SRW) Pick-up</b>			
6.4L	3.31	—	23000 (10433)
6.4L	3.55	23000 (10433)	23000 (10433)
<b>F-350 Single Rear Wheel (SRW) Chassis Cab</b>			
6.4L	3.73	—	23000 (10433)
<b>F-350 Dual Rear Wheel (DRW) Pick-up</b>			
6.4L	3.73/4.10	23500 (10659)	—
6.4L	3.73	—	23500 (10659)
6.4L	4.10	—	26000 (11793)
<b>F-350 Dual Rear Wheel (DRW) Chassis Cab</b>			
6.4L	3.73/4.10	23500 (10659)	23500 (10659)
<b>F-450 Pick-up</b>			
6.4L	4.30	27000 (12247)	33000 (14969)
<b>F-450 Chassis Cab</b>			
6.4L	4.30	26000 (11793)	26000 (11793)
6.4L*	4.30	—	30000 (13608)
6.4L*	4.88	28000 (12701)	—

## Driving

Maximum GCWR - lb (kg.)			
Engine	Rear axle ratio	Manual transmission	Automatic transmission
<b>F-550 Chassis Cab</b>			
6.4L	4.30/4.88	26000 (11793)	26000 (11793)
6.4L*	4.88	28000 (12701)	33000 (14969)
* With high capacity trailer tow package; see rear axle label to identify actual vehicle content.			

### Integrated hitch rating

The standard integrated hitch has two ratings depending on mode of operation:

- **Weight carrying** - requires a draw bar and hitch ball. The draw bar supports all the vertical tongue load of the trailer.
- **Weight distributing** - requires an aftermarket weight distributing system which includes draw bar, hitch ball, spring bars and snap-up brackets. The vertical tongue load of the trailer is distributed between the truck and the trailer by this system.

	Hitch Type	Maximum Gross Trailer Weight - lb (kg)	Maximum Tongue Weight - lb (kg)
F-250/350 DRW Pick-ups 2.5" ID without adapter (requires 2.5" drawbar)	Weight carrying	8000 (3629)	800 (363)
	Weight distributing	15000 (6804)	1500 (680)
F-250/350 DRW Pick-ups 2.5" ID with adapter* (requires 2" drawbar)	Weight carrying	6000 (2721)	600 (272)
	Weight distributing	12500 (5670)	1250 (567)
All SRW Pick-ups 2" receiver	Weight carrying	6000 (2721)	600 (272)
	Weight distributing	12500 (5670)	1250 (567)

## Driving

	Hitch Type	Maximum Gross Trailer Weight - lb (kg)	Maximum Tongue Weight - lb (kg)
F-450 DRW Pick-ups 2.5" ID without adapter (requires 2.5" drawbar)	Weight carrying	8000 (3629)	800 (363)
	Weight distributing	16000 (7258)	1600 (726)
F-450 DRW Pick-ups 2.5" ID with adapter* (requires 2" drawbar)	Weight carrying	6000 (2721)	600 (272)
	Weight distributing	12500 (5670)	1250 (567)

 **WARNING:** Towing trailers beyond the maximum tongue weight exceeds the limit of the towing system and could result in vehicle structural damage, loss of vehicle control and personal injury.

\* Trailer hitch adapter is available from Ford dealers (Part number: 5C3Z-19H282-A).

## Roadside Emergencies

### JUMP STARTING YOUR VEHICLE (E-SERIES ONLY)

**The following procedure is for E-Series vehicles only. F-Super Duty vehicles equipped with the 6.4L diesel engine can be jump started using the same procedure as a gasoline engine; refer to your *Owner's Guide* for the jump starting procedure.**



**WARNING:** The gases around the battery can explode if exposed to flames, sparks, or lit cigarettes. An explosion could result in injury or vehicle damage.



**WARNING:** Batteries contain sulfuric acid which can burn skin, eyes and clothing, if contacted.

**Do not attempt to push-start your vehicle. Automatic transmissions do not have push-start capability; damage to the automatic transmission may result.**

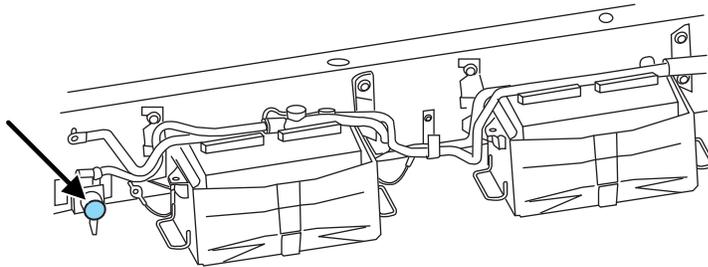
### Preparing your vehicle

When the batteries are disconnected or new batteries are installed, the transmission must relearn its shift strategy. As a result, the transmission may have firm and/or soft shifts. This operation is considered normal and will not affect function or durability of the transmission. Over time, the adaptive learning process will fully update transmission operation.

1. **Use only a 12-volt supply to start your vehicle.**
2. Do not disconnect the batteries of the disabled vehicle as this could damage the vehicle's electrical system.
3. Park the booster vehicle close to the passenger side of the disabled vehicle making sure the two vehicles **do not** touch. Set the parking brake on both vehicles.

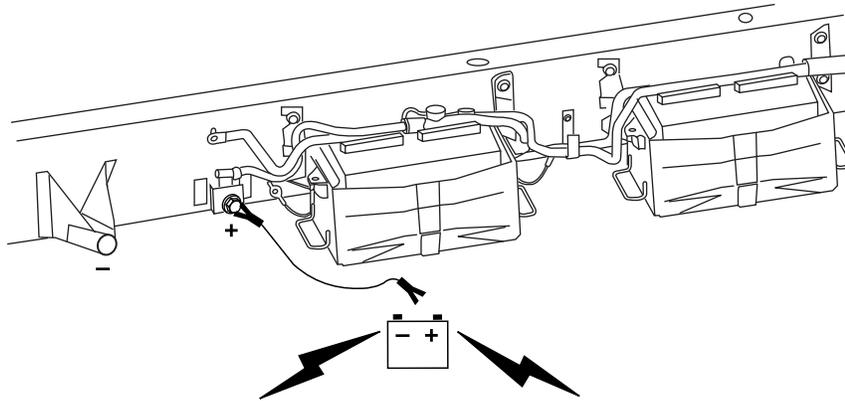
**Note:** This vehicle has two frame-mounted batteries located on the passenger side frame rail, behind the front passenger door. A battery positive (+) jumper stud is located on the frame rail behind the rear most battery box.

## Roadside Emergencies



- Location of positive (+) jumper stud; remove the cap to access the jumper stud.
4. Check the assisting vehicle battery terminals and the positive (+) jumper stud and remove any excessive corrosion before you attach the battery cables. Ensure that accessible vent caps are tight and level.
  5. Turn the heater fan on in both vehicles to protect from any electrical surges. Turn all other accessories off.

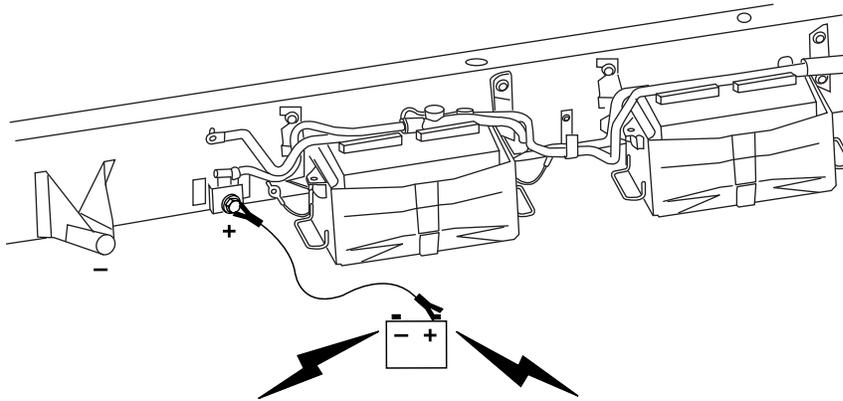
### Connecting the jumper cables



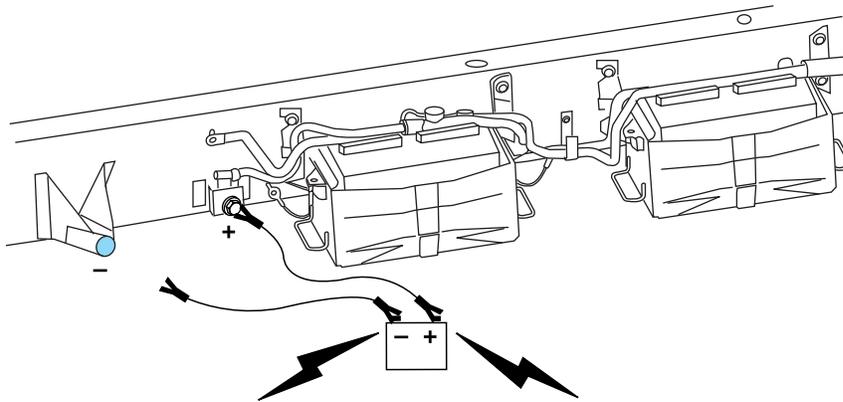
1. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) jumper stud located on the passenger side frame rail of the disabled vehicle.

**Note:** In the illustrations, *lightning bolts* are used to designate the assisting (boosting) battery.

## Roadside Emergencies

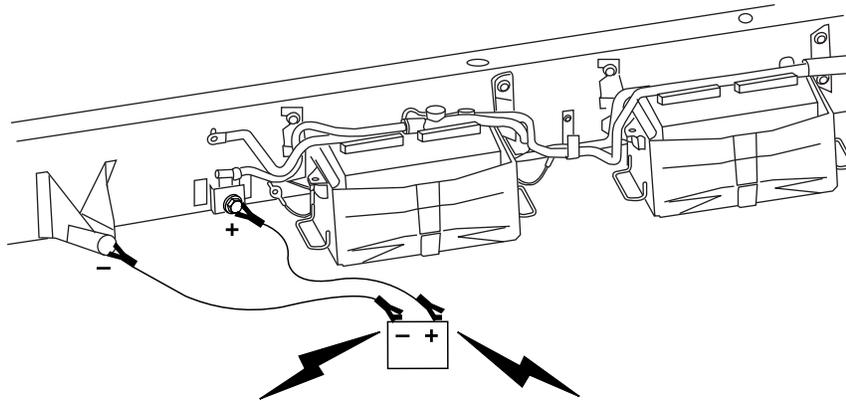


2. Connect the other end of the positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal of the assisting battery.



3. Connect the negative (-) cable to the negative (-) terminal of the assisting battery.

## Roadside Emergencies



4. Make the final connection of the negative (-) cable to an exposed metal part of the disabled vehicle's frame or chassis, away from the batteries. **Do not** use fuel lines, brake lines, exhaust components or the battery trays as *grounding* points.



**WARNING:** Do not connect the end of the second cable to the negative (-) terminal of the battery to be jumped. A spark may cause an explosion of the gases that surround the battery.

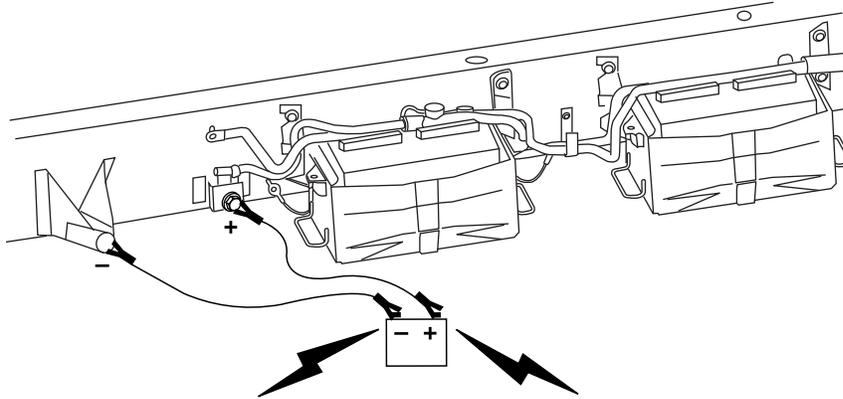
5. Ensure that the cables are clear of moving parts or any fuel delivery system, brake system or exhaust system parts.

### **Jump starting**

1. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and run the engine at moderately increased speed.
2. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.
3. Once the disabled vehicle has been started, run both engines for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

## Roadside Emergencies

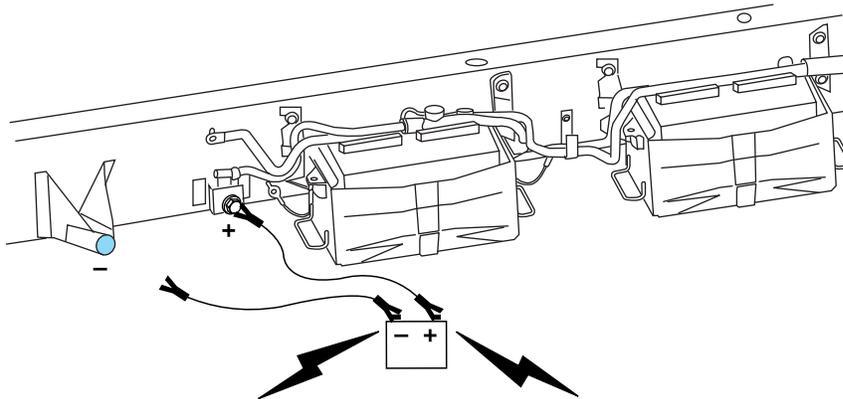
### Removing the jumper cables



**Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.**

1. Remove the jumper cable from the *ground* metal surface.

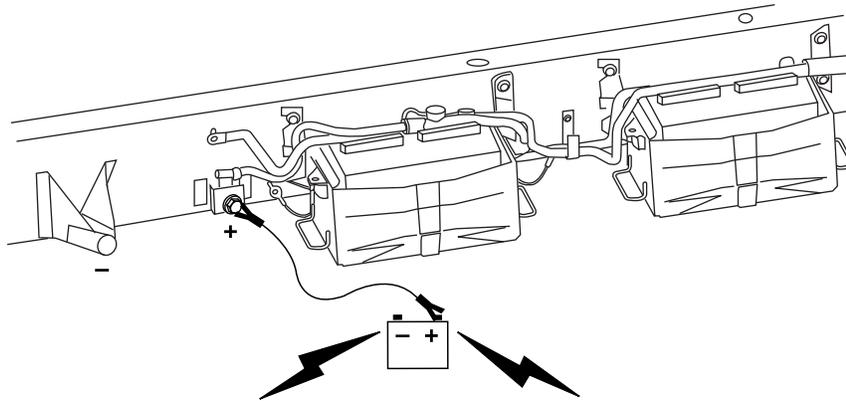
**Note:** In the illustrations, *lightning bolts* are used to designate the assisting (boosting) battery.



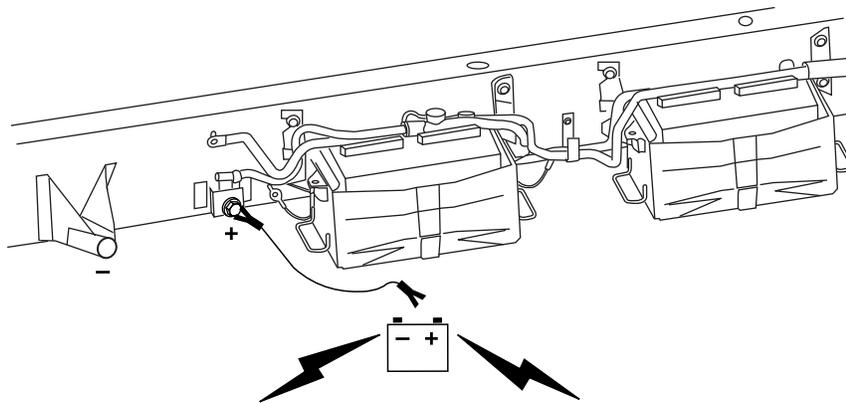
2. Remove the jumper cable on the negative (-) connection of the booster vehicle's battery.

28

## Roadside Emergencies



3. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle's battery.



4. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) jumper stud of the disabled vehicle. Reinstall the cap onto the jumper stud.

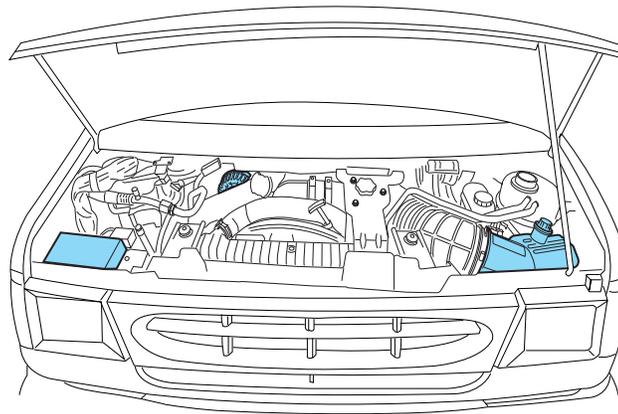
After the disabled vehicle has been started and the jumper cables removed, allow it to idle for several minutes so the engine computer can *relearn* its idle conditions.

## Cleaning

### ENGINE

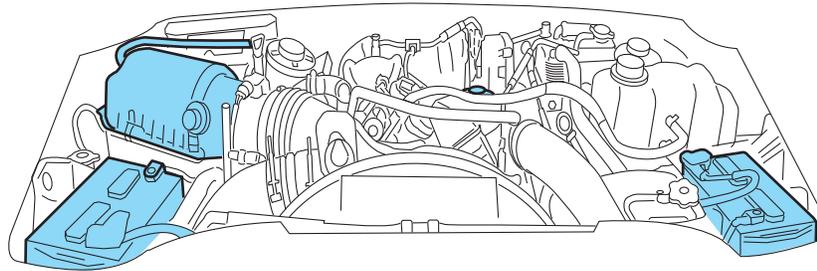
Engines are more efficient when they are clean because grease and dirt buildup keep the engine warmer than normal. When washing:

- Take care when using a power washer to clean the engine. The high-pressure fluid could penetrate the sealed parts and cause damage.
- Do not spray a hot engine with cold water to avoid cracking the engine block or other engine components.
- Spray Motorcraft Engine Shampoo and Degreaser (ZC-20) on all parts that require cleaning and pressure rinse clean.
- Never wash or rinse the engine while it is running; water in the running engine may cause internal damage.
- Cover the highlighted areas to prevent water damage when cleaning the engine.



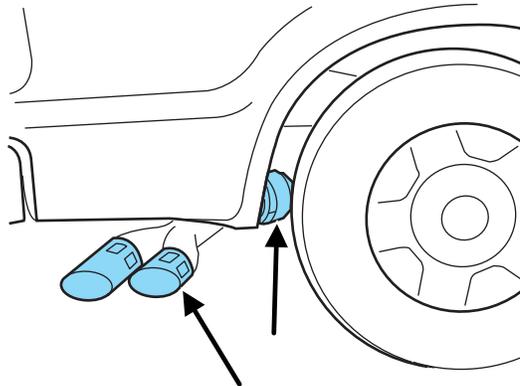
- **E-Series**

## Cleaning



- **F-Super Duty**

### **EXHAUST (F-SUPER DUTY ONLY)**



The visible holes in each leg of the twin tip and the holes under the shield just inboard of the right rear tire(s) are functional. The holes need to be kept clear of mud/debris or foreign material to maintain proper function of the exhaust system. Clean and remove debris or foreign material if present as needed. Spraying with a hose during regular washing of vehicle should help keep holes clean and clear of debris or foreign material.

## Cleaning

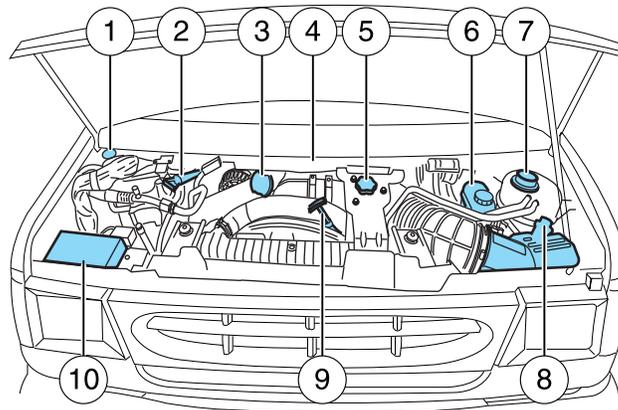
 **WARNING:** Failure to maintain the functional holes, in the tailpipe section of the exhaust, clean and free of debris or foreign material may result in the holes becoming blocked or plugged. Do not modify or remove the tail-pipe section. Blocked or plugged holes or removal/modification of the system could result in elevated exhaust gas temperatures which may result in vehicle/property damage or personal injury

 **WARNING:** The normal operating temperature of the exhaust system is very high. Never work around or attempt to repair any part of the exhaust system until it has cooled. Use special care when working around the diesel oxidation catalytic converter and/or the diesel particulate filter (DPF). The diesel oxidation catalytic converter and/or the DPF heats up to a high temperature after only a short period of engine operation and can stay hot even after the engine is turned off. Failure to follow these instructions may result in personal injury.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### IDENTIFYING COMPONENTS IN THE ENGINE COMPARTMENT

#### E-Series

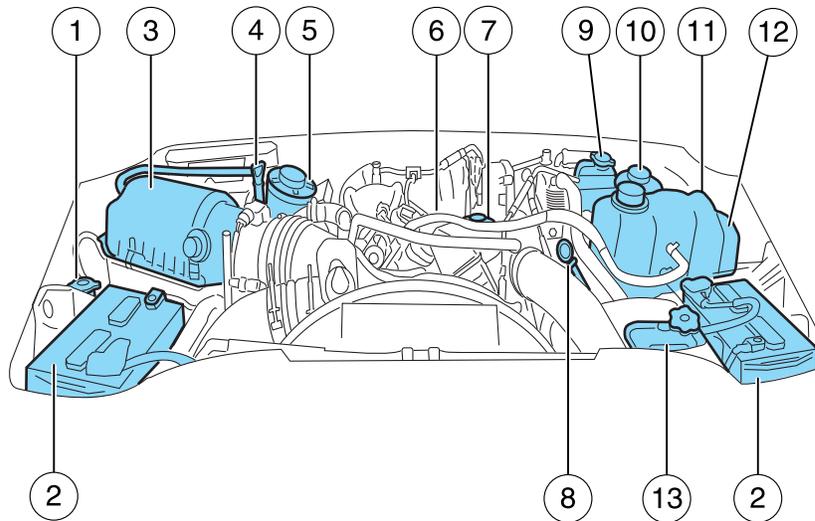


1. Windshield washer fluid reservoir
2. Automatic transmission dipstick
3. Engine oil filler cap
4. Secondary fuel filter assembly (out of view)
5. Power steering fluid reservoir
6. Brake fluid reservoir
7. Engine coolant reservoir
8. Air filter assembly
9. Engine oil dipstick
10. Power distribution box

The Fuel Conditioner Module (FCM) is located on the driver-side of the vehicle next to the transmission case.

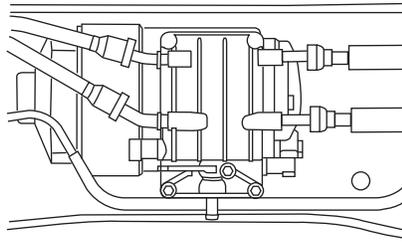
## Maintenance and Specifications

### F-Super Duty



1. Windshield washer fluid reservoir
  2. Batteries
  3. Air filter assembly, restriction gauge and auxiliary tube
  4. Automatic transmission dipstick (if equipped)
  5. Engine oil fill
  6. Engine oil filter
  7. Engine-mounted fuel filter assembly
  8. Engine oil dipstick
  9. Fuel coolant reservoir
  10. Brake fluid reservoir
  11. Power distribution box (behind engine coolant reservoir)
  12. Engine coolant reservoir
  13. Power steering fluid reservoir
- 34

## Maintenance and Specifications



The horizontal fuel conditioner module (HFCM) is located on the frame-rail under the driver-side floorboard near the transmission.

### SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE

The scheduled maintenance services in the *scheduled maintenance information* of this supplement are required because they are considered essential to the life and performance of your vehicle.

Use only recommended fuel, lubricants, fluids and service parts conforming to Ford specifications. Motorcraft parts are designed and built for best performance in your vehicle.

### FUEL REQUIREMENTS - CHOOSING THE RIGHT FUEL: VEHICLES OPERATED WHERE ULTRA LOW SULFUR DIESEL FUEL IS REQUIRED (UNITED STATES/CANADA/PUERTO RICO/U.S. VIRGIN ISLANDS AND OTHER LOCALES)

**Use only Ultra Low Sulfur (15 ppm Sulfur Maximum) number 1-D or 2-D diesel fuel (also known as ULSD) in your 6.4L diesel engine.** The engine and exhaust system were designed to only use this fuel. Look for the **ULTRA-LOW SULFUR HIGHWAY DIESEL FUEL (15 ppm Sulfur Maximum)** label on fuel pumps when purchasing your fuel.

**Using low sulfur diesel fuel (16-500 ppm) or high sulfur diesel fuel (greater than 500 ppm) in a 6.4L diesel engine designed to use only Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel fuel will cause certain emission components to malfunction which may also cause the Service Engine Soon (  ) light to illuminate indicating an emissions-related concern.**

## Maintenance and Specifications

Diesel fuel is adjusted seasonally for cold temperature. For best results at temperatures below 20°F (-7°C), it is recommended to use a diesel fuel which has been seasonally adjusted for the ambient conditions. See *Cold weather operation* in the *Driving* chapter of this supplement.

### **FUEL REQUIREMENTS - CHOOSING THE RIGHT FUEL: VEHICLES OPERATED WHERE ULTRA LOW SULFUR DIESEL FUEL IS NOT REQUIRED**

For a 6.4L engine to operate reliably on low sulfur or high sulfur diesel fuel, the 6.4L engine must be a high sulfur configured engine or a ULSD fuel-configured engine that has been retrofitted for high sulfur diesel fuel use.

**Use only a 6.4L diesel engine that has been configured for use with high sulfur diesel fuel in markets with diesel fuel that has sulfur content greater than 15 ppm. Using low sulfur diesel fuel (16–500 ppm) or high sulfur diesel fuel (greater than 500 ppm) in a 6.4L diesel engine designed to use only Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel fuel increases the likelihood of engine oil dilution with fuel which may lead to major engine damage. Engine damage from using the improper type of fuel is not covered under your warranty.**

Vehicles with 6.4L engines configured for use with high sulfur diesel fuel will only be made available for sale in countries where ULSD fuel is not available or mandated by the government. Vehicles originally sold in a ULSD fuel market that are subsequently exported to non-ULSD fuel markets will need to be retrofitted (at the customer's expense) in order to be reliably operated on non-ULSD fuel.

Vehicles equipped with a 6.0L engine that are operated in a market that does not require ULSD fuel may be operated on higher sulfur fuel without any engine fuel system or emissions-related concerns.

Diesel fuel is adjusted seasonally for cold temperature. For best results at temperatures below 20°F (-7°C), it is recommended to use a diesel fuel which has been seasonally adjusted for the ambient. See *Cold weather operation* in the *Driving* chapter of this supplement.

### **BODIESEL**

Diesel fuel containing no more than 5% biodiesel may be used. To help achieve acceptable engine performance and durability, it is important to only use biodiesel of good quality in your diesel engine. At a minimum, the biodiesel should comply with ASTM D6751 or an equivalent specification.

Use of biodiesel in concentrations greater than 5% may cause damage to your vehicle, including engine and/or exhaust after-treatment hardware

36

## Maintenance and Specifications

(exhaust catalyst and particulate filter) failures. Concentrations greater than 5% can also cause fuel filter restrictions that may result in a lack of power and or damage to components such as fuel tank, fuel lines, fuel pump, fuel sender and fuel injectors fuel pump and fuel injector failures.

Look for a label on the fuel pump to confirm the amount of biodiesel contained in a diesel fuel. Biodiesel content is often indicated with the letter “B” followed by the percent of biodiesel in the fuel. For example, B5 indicates a fuel containing 5% biodiesel. Ask the service station attendant to confirm the biodiesel content of a diesel fuel if you do not see a label on the fuel pump.

Biodiesel should not be stored in the fuel tank for more than three months. If your vehicle will be parked or stored for more than three months, then your vehicle should be drained and filled with a diesel fuel not containing biodiesel.

During cold weather, if you have problems operating on biodiesel, you may need to use a diesel fuel with lower biodiesel content, try another brand, or discontinue the use of biodiesel.

Biodiesel use may affect the recommended oil change intervals. Refer to the *Special operating conditions* section in the *schedule maintenance guide* for more information about oil change intervals and other maintenance when operating on biodiesel.

Biodiesel fuel is a product that has been converted from renewable fuel sources, including vegetable oil, animal fat and cooking oil. Raw or refined vegetable oil, animal fat, cooking oil or recycled greases should **NOT** be used.



**WARNING:** Do not use home heating oil, agricultural fuel or any diesel fuel not intended for highway use. Damage to the fuel injection system, engine and exhaust catalyst can occur if an improper fuel is used. Do not add gasoline, gasohol or alcohol to diesel fuel. This practice creates a serious fire hazard and engine performance problems.

### Fuel quality

It should not be necessary to add any aftermarket additives to your fuel tank if you use a properly formulated diesel fuel that meets the ASTM D 975 industry specification. Aftermarket additives can damage the injector system or engine. Repairs to correct the effects of using an aftermarket product in your fuel may not be covered by your warranty.

## Maintenance and Specifications

**Do not blend used engine oil with diesel fuel under any circumstances.** Blending used oil with the fuel will significantly increase your vehicle's exhaust emissions and reduce engine life due to increased internal wear.

Many of the world's automakers approved the World-wide Fuel Charter that recommends diesel fuel specifications to provide improved performance and emission control system protection for your vehicle. Diesel fuel that meets the World-wide Fuel Charter should be used when available. Ask your fuel supplier about fuel that meets the World-wide Fuel Charter.

### ***Diesel fuel conditioner***

Additives that will improve fuel cetane numbers may be used to verify/enhance fuel quality. Use Motorcraft Cetane Booster & Performance Improver, PM-22-A (U.S.) / PM-22-B (Canada) or equivalent. The customer warranty may be void from using additives that do not meet or exceed Ford specifications.

Do not use alcohol based additives to correct fuel gelling. This may result in damage to the fuel injectors/system. Use Motorcraft Anti-Gel & Performance Improver, PM-23-A (U.S.) / PM-23-B (Canada) or equivalent. The customer warranty may be void from using additives that do not meet or exceed Ford specifications.

**Note:** This ultra-low sulfur formulation is designed to meet the emissions standards for the 6.4L engine and is backward compatible as well (i.e., can be used in Ford 6.9L, 7.3L, and 6.0L diesel engines).

### ***Fueling tips***

If the engine fails to start in 30 seconds, turn the key to the off position and wait 30 seconds before trying again.

Truck stops have pumps and nozzles designed for larger, heavy-duty trucks. When refueling at truck stops: if the nozzle shuts off repeatedly when refueling, wait 5–10 seconds; then use a slower rate of flow (don't depress the nozzle trigger as far).

If air is allowed to enter the fuel system (during fuel filter change or if you run out of fuel) the engine will purge the trapped air as it runs. The engine may run rough and produce white smoke while air is in the system. This is normal and should correct itself in a short time.

An engine that suddenly becomes noisy or operates poorly after a fuel fill could be using substandard fuel (i.e., high water content, low cetane rating or gasoline in the fuel). Diesel fuel should be purchased from a reputable station which sells a large amount of diesel fuel.

## Maintenance and Specifications

Care should be taken whenever diesel fuel is stored. Use only clean, approved containers which will prevent the entry of dirt or water.

Diesel fuel must not be stored in a galvanized container. The fuel will dissolve the zinc in a galvanized container. The zinc will then remain in the solution until it is run through the engine where it will be deposited in the fuel injectors causing expensive-to-repair damage.

### Diesel fuel dispensing nozzle fill rate

This truck is equipped with a fuel fill pipe which is able to accept fuel up to 20 gallons per minute from an 1½" fuel dispensing nozzle. Pumping fuel at greater flow rates may result in premature nozzle shut-off or spitback.

### Fuel filler cap

Your fuel tank filler cap has an indexed design with a 1/4 turn on/off feature.

When fueling your vehicle:

1. Turn the engine off.
2. Carefully turn the filler cap counterclockwise until it spins off.
3. Pull to remove the cap from the fuel filler pipe.
4. To install the cap, align the tabs on the cap with the notches on the filler pipe.
5. Turn the filler cap clockwise 1/4 of a turn until it clicks at least once.

**If you must replace the fuel filler cap, replace it with a fuel filler cap that is designed for your vehicle. The vehicle warranty may be void for any damage to the fuel tank or fuel system if the correct genuine Ford or Motorcraft fuel filler cap is not used.**



**WARNING:** The fuel system may be under pressure. If the fuel filler cap is venting vapor or if you hear a hissing sound, wait until it stops before completely removing the fuel filler cap. Otherwise, fuel may spray out and injure you or others.



**WARNING:** If you do not use the proper fuel filler cap, excessive pressure or vacuum in the fuel tank may damage the fuel system or cause the fuel cap to disengage in a collision, which may result in possible personal injury.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### FUEL FILTER/WATER SEPARATOR

#### Fuel Conditioner Module (FCM - E-Series)

The vehicle is equipped with a Fuel Conditioning Module (FCM) located on the driver-side of the vehicle next to the transmission case.

Water should be drained from the module assembly whenever the warning light comes on. The WATER



IN FUEL light will come on when approximately 0.2 pints (100 ml) of water accumulates in the module. If water level is allowed to exceed this level, the water may be passed through to the engine and may cause FIE (Fuel Injection Equipment) damage.

#### Horizontal Fuel Conditioner Module (HFCM - F-Super Duty)

The vehicle is equipped with a Horizontal Fuel Conditioning Module (HFCM) located on the frame-rail under the driver-side floorboard near the transmission

Water should be drained from the module assembly whenever the warning light comes on. The WATER



IN FUEL light will come on when approximately 0.13–0.16 pints (60–75 ml) of water accumulates in the module. If water level is allowed to exceed this level, the water may be passed through to the engine and may cause FIE (Fuel Injection Equipment) damage.

### DRAINING THE HFCM AND CHANGING THE ENGINE AND VEHICLE FUEL FILTERS

Your vehicle is equipped with two fuel filters; one is mounted on top of the engine. **On F-Super Duty**, the second filter, inside the HFCM, is mounted inside the frame rail under the driver-side floorboard near the transmission. **On E-Series**, the second filter, inside the FCM, is mounted on the driver-side of the vehicle next to the transmission case. **On all vehicles**, both filters should be replaced at the same time. Regular fuel filter changes are an important part of engine maintenance; failing to keep with the scheduled maintenance could lead to engine performance issues and/or fuel injection system damage. Refer to the *Scheduled maintenance guide* chapter of this supplement for more information.

Refer to *Motorcraft part numbers* later in this chapter for the fuel filter replacement part number. This part number includes filters and seals for both the engine-mounted and frame-mounted filters.

40

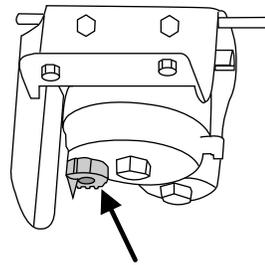
## Maintenance and Specifications

1. Stop the vehicle and **shut off** the engine.

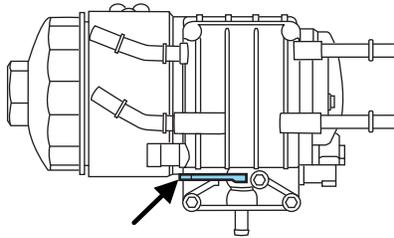
 **WARNING:** The vehicle must be stopped with the engine off when draining the HFCM/FCM. Fuel may ignite if the separator is drained while the engine is running or vehicle is moving.

2. Locate the HFCM and place an appropriate container under the drain port (see illustration).

- **E-Series**



- **F-Super Duty**

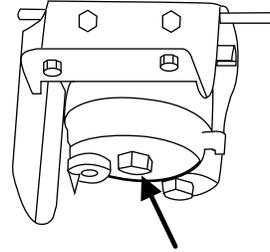


3. Rotate drain lever to the outward position. Allow the HFCM/FCM to drain for approximately 25 seconds or until clean fuel is observed. Rotate the lever towards the housing until it is firmly seated.
4. Verify that the drain valve is closed and latched, then remove the container from under the vehicle.
5. Restart the engine and check WATER IN FUEL indicator light; it should not be illuminated. If it continues to illuminate, have the fuel system checked and repaired.

## Maintenance and Specifications

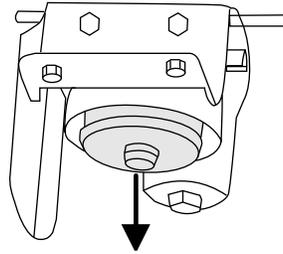
### Removal - FCM filter (E-Series)

1. Remove the fuel filter cap by turning counterclockwise.



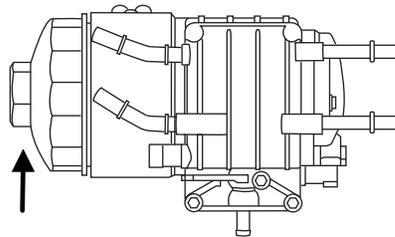
2. Remove and discard the old fuel filter element.

3. Carefully clean the mating surfaces.



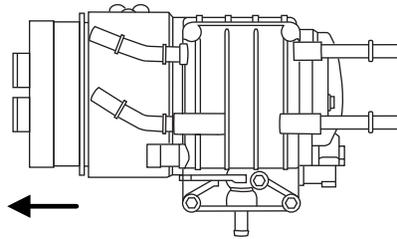
### Removal - HFCM filter

1. Remove the fuel filter cap by turning counterclockwise.



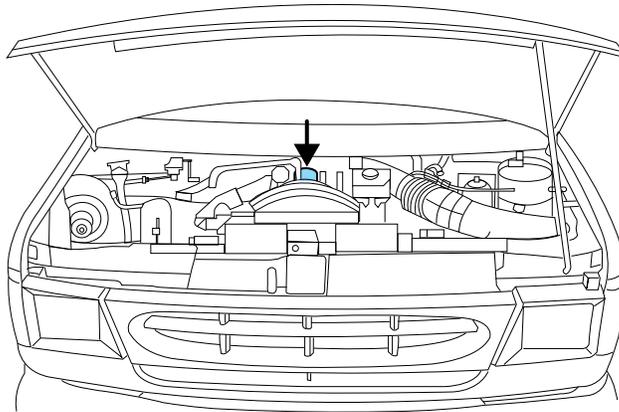
## Maintenance and Specifications

2. Remove and discard the old fuel filter element.
3. Carefully clean the mating surfaces.

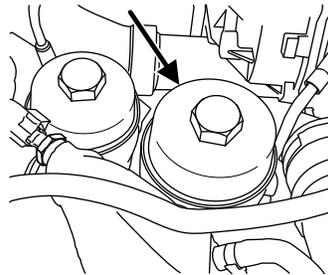


### Removal - Engine-mounted fuel filter

- E-Series



- F-Super Duty



1. Remove the fuel filter cap by turning counterclockwise.

## Maintenance and Specifications

2. Remove and discard the old fuel filter element.
3. Carefully clean the mating surfaces.

### Installation - both

**The engine will not run properly if the fuel filter is not installed in housing.**

1. Install the new fuel filter and cap seal into the fuel filter housing. Refer to *Motorcraft part numbers* later in this chapter for the fuel filter part number.

2. Tighten cap onto fuel filter housing slowly, allowing fuel to soak into the fuel filter element. Tighten cap until it contacts the housing.

Turn the ignition key to on for 30 seconds, then turn it to off. Do this a total of six times in a row to purge any trapped air from the fuel system.

Replace the filter bowl O-ring with new seal (included in filter kit) every time you service the filter.

After filter service, a no start or rough running engine may indicate that air is entering the system through the filter bowl seal or drain. Make sure the drain lever is pointing rearward and stowed against the HFCM case.

**Using a fuel which has more than average impurities may require the fuel filter to be replaced more frequently than the service interval specifies.**

## ENGINE OIL

### Checking the engine oil level

Because it is normal to add some oil between oil changes, check your engine oil level each time you stop for fuel. To check the engine oil level consistently and accurately, the following procedure is recommended:

1. Have engine at normal operating temperature (at least into the NORMAL range on the engine coolant temperature gauge).
2. Park the vehicle on a level surface, then turn off the engine and open the hood.
3. Allow at least **20 minutes** after engine shutdown to ensure that the oil contained in the upper parts of the engine has returned to the oil pan.
4. Protecting yourself from engine heat, pull out the dipstick, wipe it clean and reinsert fully.

44

## Maintenance and Specifications

5. Read oil level on both sides of dipstick and use highest level (reading) for the actual engine oil level.

6. Maintain the oil level between MIN and MAX or the ADD and OPERATING RANGE on the dipstick by adding oil as required. The distance from MIN to MAX or ADD to OPERATING RANGE on the dipstick represents 2.0 quarts (1.9L). Do not overfill. If the oil level exceeds MAX or OPERATING RANGE, oil consumption may result.

### Engine oil specifications

To help achieve acceptable engine performance and durability, it is important that only engine oils of good quality are used in your diesel engine and it is changed at the recommended interval. For normal or severe service, use Motorcraft oil or an equivalent oil conforming to Ford specification WSS-M2C171-E or API service categories CJ-4 or CJ-4/SM. It is important to use these oils because they are compatible with the emission control equipment of your vehicle to meet the more stringent emission standards.

The use of correct oil viscosities for diesel engines is important for satisfactory operation. Determine which oil viscosity best suits the temperature range you expect to encounter for the next service interval from the following SAE viscosity grade chart.



## Maintenance and Specifications

### Changing engine oil and filter

Change your oil and filter according to the *scheduled maintenance information* in this supplement. Change more frequently if your vehicle operation includes extended periods of idling or low-speed operation, driving for a long time in cold temperatures or driving short distances. See the following section *Engine lubrication for severe service operation* for all severe duty restrictions.

Refer to *Motorcraft part numbers* later in this chapter for the engine oil filter part number. This filter protects your engine by filtering harmful, abrasive or sludge particles and particles significantly smaller than most available “will-fit” filters.

To replace the filter,

1. Unscrew the oil filter cap and wait a few seconds for the oil to drain through the built-in drain valve. **Note:** The filter should be changed before reinstalling the oil pan drain plug.
2. Reinstall and tighten the oil filter cap.



**WARNING:** Do not handle a hot oil filter with bare hands.



**WARNING:** Continuous contact with USED motor oil has caused cancer in laboratory mice. Protect your skin by washing with soap and water.

### Engine lubrication for severe service operation

The following severe service operating conditions require unique engine maintenance procedures:

- frequent or extended idling (over 10 minutes per hour of normal driving).
- if vehicle is operated in sustained ambient temperatures below -10°F (-23°C) or above 100°F (38°C)
- frequent low speed operation, consistent heavy traffic less than 25 mph (40 km/h)
- operating in severe dust conditions.
- towing a trailer over 1,000 miles (1,600 km)
- sustained, high speed driving at Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (maximum loaded weight for vehicle operation)

## Maintenance and Specifications

- use of biodiesel, up to and including 5% Biodiesel (B5)
- use of high sulfur diesel fuel

If you are operating your vehicle under any of these conditions, change engine oil and filter every 5,000 miles (8,000 km).

### AIR FILTER RESTRICTION GAUGE AND AIR FILTER REPLACEMENT

#### Air filter restriction gauge:

The restriction gauge, located on the upper housing of the air filter assembly, measures the vacuum inside the air filter. The more the air filter is restricted (dirty, clogged), the higher the vacuum reading

Check the air filter restriction gauge whenever the hood is raised to perform general engine maintenance at least every 7,500 miles (12,000 km). If the vehicle is operated in extremely dusty conditions, check and reset the gauge at least every 500 miles (800 km), or two weeks, whichever comes first.



Change the air filter when the gauge reads near the “change filter” line and the chamber is filled with yellow. Engine performance and fuel economy are adversely affected when the maximum restriction is reached.

**Blowing-out the air filter element with compressed air is not recommended as the compressed air may damage the filter paper.**

**Note:** It is not possible to determine the level of filter clogging by visual appearance alone. A filter which appears to be dirty may actually have several thousand miles (kilometers) of life remaining.

**Always use the underhood air filter restriction gauge to determine when the air filter element needs to be changed. The warning light on the instrument cluster should not be used exclusively for determining when the air filter element needs changing.**

## Maintenance and Specifications

After installation of the new filter element, reset the gauge by pressing the reset button on top of the gauge.

**Note:** Vehicle operation in heavy snowfall or extreme rain conditions may feed excessive amounts of snow/water into the air intake system. This could plug/soak the air filter with snow and may cause the engine to lose power and possibly shut down.



You may not need to change the air filter and the vehicle may be driven up to 200 miles (320 km) under the following conditions:

- **Snow:** At the earliest opportunity, open the hood and clear all the snow and ice from the air filter housing inlet (do NOT remove the air filter) and reset the air filter restriction gauge.
- **Wet:** The air filter will dry after about 15–30 minutes at highway speeds. At the earliest opportunity, open the hood and reset the air filter restriction gauge.

### Air filter replacement:

When replacing the air filter element, use the Motorcraft air filter element listed in *Motorcraft part numbers* later in this chapter.



**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and/or personal burn injuries do not start your engine with the air filter removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

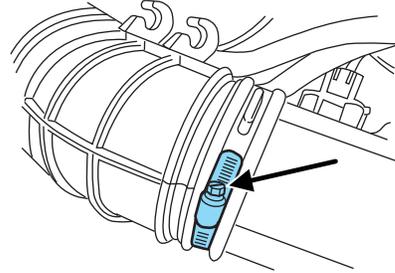
**Failure to use the correct air filter element may result in severe engine damage.**

### • E-series air filter:

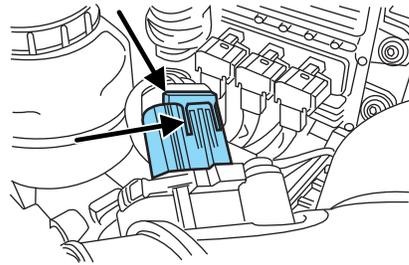
1. Disconnect the hoses from the air filter outlet tube.

## Maintenance and Specifications

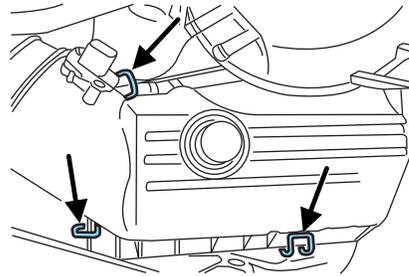
2. Loosen the clamp and disconnect the air filter outlet tube.



3. Disconnect the mass air flow (MAF) sensor electrical connector. (Slide out the red lock, press tab and remove the electrical connector.)



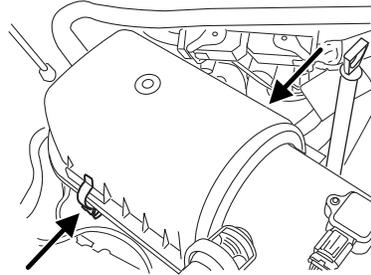
4. Disconnect the three latches and remove the air filter cover.  
5. Remove the air filter.



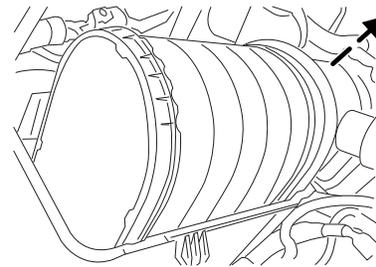
6. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

## Maintenance and Specifications

1. Release the toggle clamps and raise the air filter housing cover. It may be necessary to pull the auxiliary inlet tube away from the air filter to allow the cover to be removed.



2. Pull the top edge of the air filter out and away from the housing to release the air filter seal from the air filter housing, then remove the air filter. **Note:** DO NOT use a tool to pry the air filter from the housing. Failure to follow this instruction may result in damage to the air filter housing, air filter seal and engine.



3. When installing the air filter, first make certain the bottom of the air filter is positioned to the inboard side of the stop feature located in the bottom of the air filter housing, Then compress the air filter seal down and in towards the engine so the air filter is seated into the air filter housing. **Note:** If not installed properly, the air filter housing cover will not properly seat and the toggle clamps may not latch

4. Replace the air filter housing cover, push the auxiliary tube against the air filter and close the toggle clamps.

### **DIESEL EXHAUST SYSTEM: OXIDATION CATALYST/DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER SYSTEM (F-SUPER DUTY ONLY)**

Your vehicle is equipped with a diesel particulate filter (DPF), which is coupled to a diesel oxidation catalyst, that reduces the amount of harmful exhaust emitted from the tailpipe. As soot gathers in the system it begins to restrict the filter. The soot gathered inside the filter needs to be periodically cleaned. The soot can be cleaned in two different ways; passive regeneration and active regeneration. Both methods occur automatically and require no actions from the driver/operator. During either one of these regeneration methods you may notice an increase/change in exhaust noise/tone and increased engine idle speed.

51

## Maintenance and Specifications

At certain times, the message center will display various messages related to the DPF. See *Message center* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for more information.

### Passive regeneration

In passive regeneration, the exhaust constituents / temperature are at an appropriate level where some soot can be reduced or oxidized (burned) thus cleaning the filter. This method occurs naturally as a result of normal engine operating conditions (at varying levels due to drive patterns).

### Active regeneration

If there is not enough passive regeneration naturally occurring due to vehicle drive patterns, the engine control system will initiate an active regeneration. In an active regeneration, the filter is cleaned by raising the exhaust temperature to a point where the soot is burned away. This is accomplished through various engine actions which raise the exhaust temperature in the oxidation catalyst/DPF system to an appropriate high level where the soot is burned off. After the soot is burned off, the exhaust temperature and back-pressure (restriction) fall back to normal levels.

### Filter service/maintenance

Over time a slight amount of ash will build up in the DPF which is not removed during the regeneration process. The DPF may need to be removed for ash cleaning at approximately 120,000 miles (193,000 km) or greater (actual mileage can vary greatly depending upon engine/vehicle operating conditions) and replaced with a new or remanufactured (ash cleaned) part. The filter may need to be replaced at approximately 250,000 miles (400,000 km) depending upon engine/vehicle operating conditions. In both cases the engine control system will set a service light (  ) to inform you to bring the vehicle to the dealer for service.

If there are any issues with the oxidation catalyst/DPF system a service light (  or  ) will be set by the engine control system to inform you to bring the vehicle into a dealership for service.

### Resonator/Tailpipe assembly maintenance

The diesel resonator tail-pipe assembly is a uniquely functioning device that accompanies the Oxidation Catalyst/DPF assembly. The assembly serves multiple functions. First it serves as an acoustic device to

52

## Maintenance and Specifications

attenuate exhaust noise. Second it provides an exit path for the exhaust from the vehicle. It also is designed to help control the temperature of the exhaust during DPF regeneration events. The visible holes in each leg of the twin tip and the holes under the shield just inboard of the right rear tire(s) are functional. The holes need to be kept clear of mud/debris or foreign material to maintain proper function of the exhaust system. Clean and remove debris or foreign material if present as needed. Spraying with a hose during regular washing of vehicle should help keep holes clean and clear of debris or foreign material.

**Note:** Additions of aftermarket devices or modifications to the exhaust system can reduce the effectiveness of the exhaust system as well as cause damage to the exhaust system and/or engine. These actions may also affect the vehicle's warranty. See the *Customer Information Guide* for more information.



**WARNING:** Failure to maintain the functional holes, in the tailpipe section of the exhaust, clean and free of debris or foreign material may result in the holes becoming blocked or plugged. Do not modify or remove the tail-pipe section. Blocked or plugged holes or removal/modification of the system could result in elevated exhaust gas temperatures which may result in vehicle/property damage or personal injury.



**WARNING:** The normal operating temperature of the exhaust system is very high. Never work around or attempt to repair any part of the exhaust system until it has cooled. Use special care when working around the diesel oxidation catalytic converter and/or the diesel particulate filter (DPF). The diesel oxidation catalytic converter and/or the DPF heats up to a high temperature after only a short period of engine operation and can stay hot even after the engine is turned off. Failure to follow these instructions may result in personal injury.

### EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM(S) LAWS

Federal law prohibits vehicle manufacturers, dealers and other persons engaged in the business of repairing, servicing, selling, leasing or trading motor vehicles as well as fleet operations from unknowingly removing or rendering emission control system(s) inoperative. Further, modifications of the emission control system(s) could create liability on the part of the individual owners under the laws of some states. In Canada,

## Maintenance and Specifications

modifications of the emission control system(s) could create liability under applicable Federal or Provincial laws.

Do not remove or alter the original equipment floor covering or insulation between it and the metal floor of the vehicle. The floor covering and insulation protect occupants of the vehicle from the engine and exhaust system heat and noise. On vehicles with no original equipment floor covering insulation, do not carry passengers in a manner that permits prolonged skin contact with the metal floor. Provide adequate insulation.

### **NOISE EMISSIONS WARRANTY, PROHIBITED TAMPERING ACTS AND MAINTENANCE**

On January 1, 1978, Federal regulation became effective governing the noise emission on trucks over 10,000 lbs. (4,536 kg) GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating). The following statements concerning prohibited tampering acts and maintenance, and the noise warranty found in the *Customer Information Guide*, are applicable to complete chassis cabs over 10,000 lbs. (4,536 kg) GVWR.

#### **Tampering with noise control system prohibited**

Federal law prohibits the following acts or the causing thereof: (1) The removal or rendering inoperative by any person other than for purposes of maintenance, repair or replacement of any device or element of design incorporated into any new vehicle for the purpose of noise control prior to its sale or delivery to the ultimate purchaser or while it is in use, or (2) the use of the vehicle after such device or element of design has been removed or rendered inoperative by any person.

Among those acts which the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency may presume to constitute tampering are the acts listed below:

- Removal of hood blanket, fender apron absorbers, fender apron barriers, underbody noise shields or acoustically absorptive material.
- Tampering or rendering inoperative the engine speed governor, so as to allow engine speed to exceed manufacturer's specifications.

The complexity of the diesel engine makes it so the owner is discouraged from attempting to perform maintenance other than the services described in this supplement.

## Maintenance and Specifications

If you experience difficult starting, rough idling, excessive exhaust smoke, a decrease in engine performance or excess fuel consumption, perform the following checks:

- a plugged air inlet system or engine air filter element.
- water in the fuel filter/water separator.
- a clogged fuel filter.
- contaminated fuel.
- air in the fuel system, due to loose connections.
- an open or pinched sensor hose.
- low engine oil level.
- wrong fuel or oil viscosity for climactic conditions.

If these checks do not help you correct the engine performance problem you are experiencing, consult an authorized dealer.

### FUELING



**WARNING:** Do not use starting fluid such as ether or gasoline in the diesel air intake system. Such fluids can cause immediate explosive damage to the engine and possible personal injury.

If you fuel your vehicle at a truck stop, you may notice that the fuel nozzle may shut off every 5–10 seconds. This is due to the flow rates being designed for larger heavy duty trucks. You may have to fuel at a slower rate (don't depress the nozzle trigger fully).

Do not run your diesel vehicle out of fuel as this will allow air to enter the fuel system which will make restarting difficult. The engine is designed to run roughly as the fuel tank nears Empty. This is a warning to the driver to add fuel as soon as possible. Longer engine cranking time may be required once air is in the fuel system. If air enters the fuel system (either through running the fuel tank(s) empty or during a fuel filter change), the engine will self-purge the trapped air once it starts running. The engine may run roughly and produce white smoke while air is in the fuel system; this is normal and should stop after a short time.

### MINOR TROUBLESHOOTING GUIDE

#### Air purge procedure

Turn the key on for 30 seconds, then turn off. Repeat procedure four or five times.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### If the engine won't crank

Turn on the headlights. If the lights are dim, do not go on at all or when the ignition is turned to START the lights become dim or go out, the battery connections may be loose or corroded, or the battery may be discharged. If there is a clicking or stuttering sound coming from the engine compartment when you turn the key to START, this may also indicate a loose or corroded battery connection.

Check the battery connections at the battery posts, cable connection to the engine grounding point and at the starter connection.

If a discharged battery is suspected, have it checked and corrected.



**WARNING:** Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. **Wash hands after handling.**

- **For vehicles with manual transmissions**, the clutch pedal **must** be fully depressed in order for the starter to operate.
- **For vehicles with automatic transmissions**, the gearshift lever must be in P (Park) or N (Neutral) in order for the starter to operate.
- Try operating the starter switch several times. Should the switch be corroded, this operation may clean the contacts or make the switch temporarily operable until you can reach the dealer.
- If all electrical connections are tight and you need assistance to start, refer to *Jump starting* in the *Roadside Emergencies* chapter of your *Owner's Guide* (F-Super Duty) or refer to the *Jump starting* section in the *Roadside Emergencies* chapter of this supplement (E-Series).

### If engine cranks but won't start

Prolonged starter cranking (in excess of 10 seconds) could cause damage to the starter motor.

- Check the fuel gauge. You may be out of fuel. If the gauge shows that there is fuel in the tank, the trouble may be in the electrical system or the fuel system. If equipped with an auxiliary tank, be sure that the tank control switch is set for the tank with fuel and not on an empty tank.
- Leaving the ignition key turned to on for over two minutes without starting may make starting difficult because the glow plugs will cease activation. Reset the system by turning the ignition key to off and then back to on again.

56

## Maintenance and Specifications

### If the engine runs hot

The following could cause the engine to overheat:

- Lack of coolant.
- Dirty cooling system.
- Plugged radiator fins, charge air cooler, A/C condenser and/or oil cooler.
- Malfunctioning fan drive.
- Driving with frozen coolant.
- Sticking thermostat.
- Overloading or pulling heavy trailers during hot weather.
- Grill or radiator air blockage.
- Slipping or missing drive belt.
- Plugged or very dirty air filter.

### If fuses burn out

Burned-out or blown fuses usually indicate an electrical short-circuit, although a fuse may occasionally burn out from vibration. Insert a second fuse. If this fuse immediately burns out and you cannot locate the cause, return your vehicle to your dealer for a circuit check.



**WARNING:** Replacement fuses and circuit breakers must always be the same rating as the original equipment shown. Never replace a fuse or circuit breaker with one of a higher rating. Higher rated fuses or circuit breakers could allow circuit overloading in the event of a circuit malfunction, resulting in severe vehicle damage or personal injury due to fire.

Refer to the *Owner's Guide* for replacement of fuses.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### MOTORCRAFT PART NUMBERS

Item	Ford Part Number
Engine oil filter	FL-2016
Air filter - E-Series*	FA-1804
Air filter - F-Super Duty*	FA-1886
Fuel filter kit - E-Series (2 included - engine and frame rail mounted)	FD-4606
Fuel filter kit - F-Super Duty (2 included - engine and frame rail mounted )	FD-4609
Battery (2 Required)	BXT-65-750
* Always use the authorized Motorcraft air filter listed. <b>Failure to use the correct air filter may result in severe engine damage.</b>	

## Maintenance and Specifications

### MAINTENANCE PRODUCT SPECIFICATIONS AND CAPACITIES

Item	Capacity	Ford part name	Ford part number / Ford specification
Engine coolant - E-Series <sup>3</sup>	27.5 quarts (26.0L) <sup>1</sup>	Motorcraft Premium Engine Coolant	VC-7-B / WSS-M97B51-A1
Engine coolant - F-Super Duty <sup>3</sup>	29.6 quarts (28.0L) <sup>1</sup>	Motorcraft Premium Engine Coolant	VC-7-B / WSS-M97B51-A1
Engine coolant additive	—	Diesel Cooling System Additive	VC-8 / ESN-M99B169-A
Coolant nitrite test strip	—	Acustrip 3-way Antifreeze Test Strip	—
Fuel coolant - F-Super Duty <sup>3</sup>	2.0 quarts (1.9L)	Motorcraft Premium Engine Coolant	VC-7-B / WSS-M97B51-A1
Engine oil (includes filter change)	15.0 quarts (14.2L) <sup>2</sup>	Motorcraft Motor Oil 15W40 Super Duty Motorcraft Motor Oil 10W30 Super Duty	XO-15W40-QSD, XO-10W30-QSD / WSS-M2C171-E
Cetane Booster & Performance Improver	—	Motorcraft Cetane Booster & Performance Improver	PM-22-A
Anti-Gel & Performance Improver	—	Motorcraft Anti-Gel & Performance Improver	PM-23-A
Fuel tank	Refer to <i>Owner's Guide</i>		

## Maintenance and Specifications

Item	Capacity	Ford part name	Ford part number / Ford specification
Manual transmission fluid	5.8 quarts (5.5L)	Full Synthetic Oil	XT-M5-QS / WSS-M2C200-C
Automatic transmission fluid <sup>4</sup>	17.5 quarts (16.6L) <sup>5</sup>	Motorcraft MERCON® LV ATF	XT-10-QLV / MERCON® LV

<sup>1</sup> Includes heater and 5.0 quarts (4.7L) in coolant recovery.

<sup>2</sup> Includes 1 quart (1.0L) in oil filter.

<sup>3</sup> Only use coolant meeting Ford specifications for topping off and coolant changes. Using any other coolant may result in vehicle damage.

<sup>4</sup> Ensure the correct automatic transmission fluid is used. Transmission fluid requirements are indicated on the dipstick blade or the dipstick handle. Check the container to verify the fluid being added is of the correct type. Refer to your scheduled maintenance information to determine the correct service interval.

<sup>5</sup> Indicates only approximate dry-fill capacity. Some applications may vary based on cooler size and if equipped with an in-tank cooler. The amount of transmission fluid and fluid level should be set by the indication on the dipstick's normal operating range.



## Scheduled Maintenance: General Information

Your Ford dealer, or Ford Quality Care Center has factory trained technicians who can perform the required maintenance using genuine Ford parts. They are committed to meeting your service needs and to assuring your continuing satisfaction.

### Protecting your investment

Maintenance is an investment that will pay dividends in the form of improved reliability, durability and resale value. To ensure the proper performance of your vehicle and its emission control systems, it is imperative that scheduled maintenance be completed at the designated intervals.

Your vehicle is very sophisticated and built with multiple complex performance systems. Every manufacturer develops these systems using different specifications and performance features. That's why it's important to rely upon your Ford dealership to properly diagnose and repair your vehicle.

Ford Motor Company has recommended maintenance intervals for various parts and component systems based upon engineering testing. Ford Motor Company relies upon this testing to determine the most appropriate mileage for replacement of oils and fluids to protect your vehicle at the lowest overall cost to you and recommends against maintenance schedules that deviate from the scheduled maintenance information.

Ford strongly recommends the use of genuine Ford replacement parts. Parts other than Ford, Motorcraft or Ford authorized remanufactured parts that are used for maintenance replacement or for the service of components affecting emission control must be equivalent to genuine Ford Motor Company parts in performance and durability. It is the owner's responsibility to determine the equivalency of such parts. Please consult your *Customer Information Guide* for complete warranty information.

Non-Ford approved chemicals or additives are not required for factory recommended maintenance. In fact, Ford Motor Company recommends against the use of such additive products unless specifically recommended by Ford for a particular application.

### Oils, Fluids and Flushing

In many cases, fluid discoloration is a normal operating characteristic of the chemical compound and may not necessarily demonstrate that a fluid needs to be changed. Oils and fluids identified in this guide should be changed at the specified interval or in conjunction with a repair. Flushing

62

## Scheduled Maintenance: General Information

is a viable way to change fluid for many vehicle sub-systems during scheduled maintenance and should only be done using the same fluid required to finish the maintenance procedure, or a Ford approved flushing chemical.

### ***Engine Emissions label***

Emissions information appears on the Engine Emissions label on the engine valve cover. This decal identifies engine displacement and provides certain engine specifications.

Any modification of the emissions control system could create liability under federal law (U.S.) if made prior to sale and registration, under the laws of some states if made thereafter. Further, federal law prohibits vehicle manufacturers, dealers and other persons engaged in the business of repairing, servicing, selling, leasing or trading motor vehicles as well as fleet operations from knowingly removing or rendering an emissions control system inoperative after sale and delivery to an ultimate purchaser. In Canada, modifications of the emissions control system could create liability under applicable federal or provincial laws.

### **Genuine Ford Parts and Service**

When planning your maintenance services, consider your Ford dealership for all your vehicle's needs.

### **Get the most from your service and maintenance visits**

There are a lot of reasons why your Ford dealership is a great way to help keep your vehicle running great.

### ***Convenience***

To make your service visit even more convenient, in many cases, you'll find extended evening hours and Saturday hours. How's that for quality service?

### ***Factory-trained Technicians***

Ford service technicians participate in extensive factory-sponsored training to help them become the experts on the operation of your vehicle. Many participate in Ford-sponsored training to become certified. Ask your dealer about the training and certification their technicians have received.

## Scheduled Maintenance: General Information

### ***Genuine Ford and Motorcraft Replacement Parts***

Ford dealerships stock Ford and Motorcraft branded replacement parts. These parts meet or exceed Ford Motor Company's specifications, and we stand behind them. Maintenance parts installed at your Ford dealership carry a nationwide, 12 months, 12,000 mile (20,000 km) parts and labor limited warranty. Your dealer can give you details.

### ***Value Shopping for Your Vehicle's Maintenance Needs***

Your dealership recognizes the competitive landscape of maintenance and light repair automotive services. With factory-trained technicians, and one-stop service from routine maintenance like oil changes and tire rotations to repairs like brake service, check out the value your Ford dealers can offer.

## **WHICH MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE SHOULD YOU FOLLOW?**

### **Owner Checks and Services**

#### **Refer to Mileage Intervals for Additional Checks and Services**

Certain basic maintenance checks and inspections should be performed by the owner or a service technician at the intervals indicated. Service information and supporting specifications are provided in the *Owner's Guide*.

Any adverse condition should be brought to the attention of your dealer or qualified service technician as soon as possible for the proper service advice. The owner maintenance service checks are generally not covered by warranties so you may be charged for labor, parts or lubricants used.

#### **Maximum oil change interval (E-Series)**

- Normal schedule: 7,500 miles (12,000 km) or 6 months, whichever occurs first.
- Special Operating Conditions: 5,000 miles (8,000 km), 6 months or 200 hours of engine operation, see appropriate schedule.

#### **Maximum oil change interval (F-Super Duty)**

- Normal schedule: 10,000 miles (16,000 km) or 6 months, whichever occurs first.
- Special Operating Conditions: 5,000 miles (8,000 km), 6 months or 200 hours of engine operation, see appropriate schedule.

#### **Maximum fuel filter change interval (E-Series)**

- Normal schedule: 15,000 miles (24,000 km) or 12 months, whichever occurs first.
- Special Operating Conditions: 10,000 miles (16,000 km) or 400 hours of engine operation, see appropriate schedule.

## Scheduled Maintenance: General Information

### Maximum fuel filter change interval (F-Super Duty)

- Normal schedule: 20,000 miles (32,000 km) or 24 months, whichever occurs first.
- Special Operating Conditions: 10,000 miles (16,000 km) or 400 hours of engine operation, see appropriate schedule.

### Motorcraft engine coolant change interval (E-Series)

- 6 years or 105,000 miles (168,000 km) - change Motorcraft engine coolant (whichever comes first)
- After initial change - change Motorcraft engine coolant every 3 years or 45,000 miles (72,000 km)
- Use engine coolant specified in the *Owner Guide* under the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter
- For special operating conditions, see *Special Operating Conditions* at the end of this section

### Motorcraft engine coolant change interval (F-Super Duty)

- 6 years or 100,000 miles (160,000 km) - change Motorcraft engine coolant (whichever comes first)
- After initial change - change Motorcraft engine coolant every 3 years or 50,000 miles (80,000 km)
- Use engine coolant specified in the *Owner Guide* under the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter
- For special operating conditions, see *Special Operating Conditions* at the end of this section

### Check every month

- Check function of all interior and exterior lights
- Check tires for wear and adjust air pressure (including spare tire)
- Check that holes in the tail-pipe of the exhaust system are clear of debris-the holes/slots are functional (F-Super Duty)
- Check engine oil level
- Check windshield washer fluid level
- Check and drain fuel filter/water separator

### Check every six months

- Check lap/shoulder belts and seat latches for wear and function
- Check that externally-mounted spare tire is tight (see *Owner's Guide*)
- Check power steering fluid level
- Check washer spray, wiper operation and clean all wiper blades (replace as necessary)
- Check parking brake for proper operation
- Check and lubricate all hinges, latches and outside locks
- Check and lubricate door rubber weatherstrips
- Check and clean body and door drain holes
- Check safety warning lamps (brake, ABS, air bag, safety belt) for operation
- Check engine cooling system level, coolant strength (anti-freeze & anti-corrosion) and hoses.
- Check fuel cooling system for fluid level and coolant strength (F-Super Duty)
- Check battery connections and clean if necessary
- Check clutch fluid level, if equipped

## Scheduled Maintenance: General Information

### Retightening lug nuts

- On vehicles equipped with single rear wheels, retighten the lug nuts to the specified torque at 500 miles (800 km) after any wheel disturbance (tire rotation, changing a flat tire, wheel removal, etc.).
- On vehicles equipped with dual rear wheels, retighten the wheel lug nuts to the specified torque at 100 miles (160 km), and again at 500 miles (800 km) of new vehicle operation and after any wheel disturbance (tire rotation, changing a flat tire, wheel removal, etc.).
- Refer to *Wheel Lug Nut Torque Specification* in your *Owner's Guide* for the proper lug nut torque specification.

### Multi-point Inspection

In order to keep your vehicle running right, it is important that you have the systems on your vehicle checked regularly. This can help identify any potential issue before there are any problems. Ford Motor Company suggests the following multi-point inspection to be performed at every scheduled maintenance interval as the way to ensure your vehicle keeps running right.

#### Multi-point inspection - recommended at every visit

- Check and top up fluid levels:
  - brake
  - coolant recovery reservoir
  - fuel coolant recovery reservoir (F-Super Duty)
  - manual and automatic transmission
  - power steering
  - window washer
- Inspect tires for wear and check air pressure, including spare.
- Check exhaust system for leaks, damage, loose parts and foreign materials.
- Check that holes in the tail-pipe of the exhaust system are clear of debris; the holes/slots are functional (F-Super Duty)
- Check battery performance.
- Check operation of horn, exterior lamps, turn signals and hazard warning lights.
- Check radiator, coolers and heater and air conditioning hoses.
- Inspect windshield washer spray and wiper operation.
- Check windshield for cracks, chips and pitting.
- Inspect for oil and fluid leaks.
- Inspect air filter.
- Check shocks and struts and other suspension components for leaks and damage.

## Scheduled Maintenance: E-Series

### NORMAL SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE AND LOG

The following section contains the “Normal Schedule.” This schedule is presented at specific mileage intervals with exceptions noted.

#### **Additional information available on the Web**

To learn more about the importance of routine and dealer-performed maintenance on your vehicle, please visit the Ford Customer Service website. You'll also find important warranty information, customer assistance, technical expertise, frequently asked questions and much more. The website location is at: [www.ford.com](http://www.ford.com) in the U.S. or [www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca) in Canada.

Then go to the vehicles and service pick at the web site.

<b>7,500 miles (12,000 km)</b>	
<input type="checkbox"/> Change engine oil and replace oil filter <input type="checkbox"/> Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted) <input type="checkbox"/> Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required <input type="checkbox"/> Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)	<p style="text-align: center;"><b>DEALER VALIDATION:</b></p> <p>RO#: _____ P&amp;A CODE: _____            DATE: _____ MILEAGE: _____</p>

<b>15,000 miles (24,000 km)</b>	
<input type="checkbox"/> Change engine oil and replace oil filter <input type="checkbox"/> Replace engine- and frame-mounted fuel filters <input type="checkbox"/> Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted) <input type="checkbox"/> Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required <input type="checkbox"/> Inspect and lubricate steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie rod ends, driveshaft and U-joints (lubricate if equipped with Zerk fittings) <input type="checkbox"/> Check engine cooling system level, coolant strength (anti-freeze & anti-corrosion) and hoses <input type="checkbox"/> Inspect brake pads, shoes, rotors, drums, brake lines and hoses and parking brake system. <input type="checkbox"/> Inspect exhaust system and heat shields <input type="checkbox"/> Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)	<p style="text-align: center;"><b>DEALER VALIDATION:</b></p> <p>RO#: _____ P&amp;A CODE: _____            DATE: _____ MILEAGE: _____</p>

## Scheduled Maintenance: E-Series

### 22,500 miles (36,000 km)

- Change engine oil and replace oil filter
- Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)
- Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required
- Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)

DEALER VALIDATION:

RO#: P&A CODE:  
DATE: MILEAGE:

### 30,000 miles (48,000 km)

- Change engine oil and replace oil filter
- Replace engine- and frame-mounted fuel filters
- Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)
- Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required.
- Inspect and lubricate steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie rod ends, driveshaft and U-joints (lubricate if equipped with Zerk fittings)
- Check engine cooling system level, coolant strength (anti-freeze & anti-corrosion) and hoses
- Inspect brake pads, shoes, rotors, drums, brake lines and hoses and parking brake system
- Inspect exhaust system and heat shields
- Inspect automatic transmission fluid level
- Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)

DEALER VALIDATION:

RO#: P&A CODE:  
DATE: MILEAGE:

### 37,500 miles (60,000 km)

- Change engine oil and replace oil filter
- Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)
- Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required
- Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)

DEALER VALIDATION:

RO#: P&A CODE:  
DATE: MILEAGE:

## Scheduled Maintenance: E-Series

### 45,000 miles (72,000 km)

- Change engine oil and replace oil filter
- Replace engine- and frame-mounted fuel filters
- Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)
- Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required
- Inspect and lubricate steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie rod ends, driveshaft and U-joints (lubricate if equipped with Zerk fittings)
- Check engine cooling system level, coolant strength (anti-freeze & anti-corrosion) and hoses
- Inspect brake pads, shoes, rotors, drums, brake lines and hoses and parking brake system.
- Inspect exhaust system and heat shields
- Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)

DEALER VALIDATION:

RO#:

P&A CODE:

DATE:

MILEAGE:

### 52,500 miles (84,000 km)

- Change engine oil and replace oil filter
- Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)
- Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required
- Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)

DEALER VALIDATION:

RO#:

P&A CODE:

DATE:

MILEAGE:

## Scheduled Maintenance: E-Series

### 60,000 miles (96,000 km)

- Change engine oil and replace oil filter
- Replace engine- and frame-mounted fuel filters
- Change automatic transmission fluid and filter on all vehicles equipped with the Torqshift transmission. Consult your dealer for particular requirements.
- Replace front wheel bearing grease and grease seals on 4x2 wheel bearings (if non-sealed bearings)
- Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)
- Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required
- Inspect and lubricate steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie rod ends, driveshaft and U-joints (lubricate if equipped with Zerk fittings)
- Check engine cooling system level, coolant strength (anti-freeze & anti-corrosion) and hoses
- Inspect brake pads, shoes, rotors, drums, brake lines and hoses and parking brake system.
- Inspect exhaust system and heat shields
- Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)

DEALER VALIDATION:

RO#:

P&A CODE:

DATE:

MILEAGE:

### 67,500 miles (108,000 km)

- Change engine oil and replace oil filter
- Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)
- Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required
- Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)

DEALER VALIDATION:

RO#:

P&A CODE:

DATE:

MILEAGE:

## Scheduled Maintenance: E-Series

<b>75,000 miles (120,000 km)</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Change engine oil and replace oil filter</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Replace engine- and frame-mounted fuel filters</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Inspect and lubricate steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie rod ends, driveshaft and U-joints (lubricate if equipped with Zerk fittings)</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Check engine cooling system level, coolant strength (anti-freeze &amp; anti-corrosion) and hoses</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Inspect brake pads, shoes, rotors, drums, brake lines and hoses and parking brake system.</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Inspect exhaust system and heat shields</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)</li> </ul>	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px; text-align: center;"> <p><b>DEALER VALIDATION:</b></p>    <p><b>RO#:</b>                      <b>P&amp;A CODE:</b></p> <p><b>DATE:</b>                      <b>MILEAGE:</b></p> </div>

<b>82,500 miles (132,000 km)</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Change engine oil and replace oil filter</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)</li> </ul>	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px; text-align: center;"> <p><b>DEALER VALIDATION:</b></p>    <p><b>RO#:</b>                      <b>P&amp;A CODE:</b></p> <p><b>DATE:</b>                      <b>MILEAGE:</b></p> </div>

## Scheduled Maintenance: E-Series

### 90,000 miles (144,000 km)

- Change engine oil and replace oil filter
- Replace engine- and frame-mounted fuel filters
- Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)
- Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required
- Inspect and lubricate steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie rod ends, driveshaft and U-joints (lubricate if equipped with Zerk fittings)
- Check engine cooling system level, coolant strength (anti-freeze & anti-corrosion) and hoses
- Inspect brake pads, shoes, rotors, drums, brake lines and hoses and parking brake system.
- Inspect exhaust system and heat shields
- Inspect accessory drive belt(s)
- Inspect automatic transmission fluid level
- Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)

DEALER VALIDATION:

RO#:

P&A CODE:

DATE:

MILEAGE:

### 97,500 miles (156,000 km)

- Change engine oil and replace oil filter
- Change rear axle lubricant (E-450 equipped with DANA axles only)
- Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)
- Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required
- Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)

DEALER VALIDATION:

RO#:

P&A CODE:

DATE:

MILEAGE:

## Scheduled Maintenance: E-Series

### 105,000 miles (168,000 km)

- Change engine oil and replace oil filter
- Replace engine- and frame-mounted fuel filters
- Change engine coolant (see Motorcraft Coolant Change Record)
- Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)
- Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required
- Inspect and lubricate steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie rod ends, driveshaft and U-joints (lubricate if equipped with Zerk fittings)
- Check engine cooling system level, coolant strength (anti-freeze & anti-corrosion) and hoses
- Inspect brake pads, shoes, rotors, drums, brake lines and hoses and parking brake system.
- Inspect exhaust system and heat shields
- Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)

DEALER VALIDATION:

RO#:

P&A CODE:

DATE:

MILEAGE:

### 112,500 miles (180,000 km)

- Change engine oil and replace oil filter
- Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)
- Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required
- Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)

DEALER VALIDATION:

RO#:

P&A CODE:

DATE:

MILEAGE:

## Scheduled Maintenance: E-Series

### 120,000 miles (192,000 km)

- Change engine oil and replace oil filter
- Replace engine- and frame-mounted fuel filters
- Change automatic transmission fluid and filter on all vehicles equipped with the Torqshift transmission. Consult your dealer for particular requirements.
- Replace front wheel bearing grease and grease seals on 4x2 wheel bearings (if non-sealed bearings)
- Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)
- Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required
- Inspect and lubricate steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie rod ends, driveshaft and U-joints (lubricate if equipped with Zerk fittings)
- Check engine cooling system level, coolant strength (anti-freeze & anti-corrosion) and hoses
- Inspect brake pads, shoes, rotors, drums, brake lines and hoses and parking brake system
- Inspect exhaust system and heat shields
- Inspect accessory drive belt(s)
- Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)

DEALER VALIDATION:

RO#: P&A CODE:  
DATE: MILEAGE:

### 127,500 miles (204,000 km)

- Change engine oil and replace oil filter
- Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)
- Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required
- Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)

DEALER VALIDATION:

RO#: P&A CODE:  
DATE: MILEAGE:

## Scheduled Maintenance: E-Series

### 135,000 miles (216,000 km)

- Change engine oil and replace oil filter
- Replace engine- and frame-mounted fuel filters
- Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)
- Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required
- Inspect and lubricate steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie rod ends, driveshaft and U-joints (lubricate if equipped with Zerk fittings)
- Check engine cooling system level, coolant strength (anti-freeze & anti-corrosion) and hoses
- Inspect brake pads, shoes, rotors, drums, brake lines and hoses and parking brake system.
- Inspect exhaust system and heat shields
- Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)

DEALER VALIDATION:

RO#:

P&A CODE:

DATE:

MILEAGE:

### 142,500 miles (228,000 km)

- Change engine oil and replace oil filter
- Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)
- Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required
- Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)

DEALER VALIDATION:

RO#:

P&A CODE:

DATE:

MILEAGE:

## Scheduled Maintenance: E-Series

### 150,000 miles (240,000 km)

- Change engine oil and replace oil filter
- Replace engine- and frame-mounted fuel filters
- Replace accessory drive belt(s) (if not replaced in the last 100,000 miles [160,000 km])
- Replace front wheel bearing and wheel bearing grease seals (if non-sealed bearings)
- Change engine coolant (see Motorcraft Coolant Change Record)
- Change rear wheel drive (RWD) axle fluid - DANA axles **not** using synthetic fluid only
- Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)
- Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required
- Inspect and lubricate steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie rod ends, driveshaft and U-joints (lubricate if equipped with Zerk fittings)
- Check engine cooling system level, coolant strength (anti-freeze & anti-corrosion) and hoses
- Inspect brake pads, shoes, rotors, drums, brake lines and hoses and parking brake system.
- Inspect exhaust system and heat shields
- Inspect automatic transmission fluid level
- Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)

#### DEALER VALIDATION:

RO#: P&A CODE:  
DATE: MILEAGE:

## Scheduled Maintenance: E-Series

### SPECIAL OPERATING CONDITIONS

<b>Towing a trailer or using a camper or car-top carrier</b>	
<b>Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km) or 6 months</b>	Change engine oil and replace filter
<b>Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km)</b>	Check air filter restriction gauge (replace air filter as required or when air filter restriction gauge indicates) Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise
<b>Every 10,000 miles (16,000 km) or 400 hours of engine operation (whichever comes first)</b>	Change engine-mounted fuel filter and chassis-mounted (FCM) fuel filter
<b>Every 15,000 miles (24,000 km) or 600 hours of engine operation (whichever comes first)</b>	Check nitrite level for strength (added Supplemental Coolant Additive VC-8, if required.) Refer to <i>Engine cooling system</i> in the <i>Introduction</i> chapter
<b>Every 30,000 miles (48,000 km)</b>	Replace wheel bearing grease and grease seals on 4x2 wheel bearings (if non-sealed bearings)
<b>Every 45,000 miles (72,000 km) or 1800 hours of operation (whichever comes first)</b>	Flush & refill engine coolant (refer to Motorcraft Engine Coolant Change Record) – Do not add Supplemental Coolant Additive

**Note:** When adding supplemental coolant additive, do not exceed the specified maximum of 32 fl. oz. (946 mL). Operating the engine with excessive supplemental coolant additive may cause overheating which could lead to severe permanent engine damage.

## Scheduled Maintenance: E-Series

### Extensive idling and/or low-speed driving for long distances as in heavy commercial use such as delivery, taxi, patrol or livery

<b>Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km), 6 months or 200 hours of engine operation (whichever comes first)</b>	Change engine oil and replace filter
<b>Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km)</b>	Check air filter restriction gauge (replace air filter as required or when air filter restriction gauge indicates) Inspect brake system Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise Inspect and lubricate steering and suspension ball joints
<b>Every 10,000 miles (16,000 km) or 400 hours of engine operation (whichever comes first)</b>	Change engine-mounted fuel filter and chassis-mounted (FCM) fuel filter
<b>Every 15,000 miles (24,000 km) or 600 hours of engine operation (whichever comes first)</b>	Check nitrite level for strength (added Supplemental Coolant Additive VC-8, if required.) Refer to <i>Engine cooling system</i> in the <i>Introduction</i> chapter
<b>Every 30,000 miles (48,000 km)</b>	Replace wheel bearing grease and grease seals on 4x2 wheel bearings (if non-sealed bearings)
<b>Every 45,000 miles (72,000 km) or 1800 hours of operation (whichever comes first)</b>	Flush & refill engine coolant (refer to Motorcraft Engine Coolant Change Record) — Do not add Supplemental Coolant Additive

**Note:** When adding supplemental coolant additive, do not exceed the specified maximum of 32 fl. oz. (946 mL). Operating the engine with excessive supplemental coolant additive may cause overheating which could lead to severe permanent engine damage.

## Scheduled Maintenance: E-Series

### Extensive idling if vehicle is used for stationary operation

<b>Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km), 3 months or 200 hours of engine operation (whichever comes first) if vehicle is used for stationary operation</b>	Change engine oil and replace filter
<b>Every 10,000 miles (16,000 km), 400 hours of engine operation (whichever comes first) if vehicle is used for stationary operation</b>	Change engine-mounted fuel filter and chassis-mounted (FCM) fuel filter
<b>Every 15,000 miles (24,000 km) or 600 hours of engine operation (whichever comes first)</b>	Check nitrite level for strength (added Supplemental Coolant Additive VC-8, if required.) Refer to <i>Engine cooling system</i> in the <i>Introduction</i> chapter
<b>Every 45,000 miles (72,000 km) or 1800 hours of operation (whichever comes first)</b>	Flush & refill engine coolant (refer to Motorcraft Engine Coolant Change Record) — Do not add Supplemental Coolant Additive

**Note:** For vehicles that operate under severe service conditions such as frequent or extended idle (over 10 minutes per hour of normal driving), maintenance requirements need to be adjusted. This needs to be considered when determining vehicle service intervals.

**Note:** When adding supplemental coolant additive, do not exceed the specified maximum of 32 fl. oz. (946 mL). Operating the engine with excessive supplemental coolant additive may cause overheating which could lead to severe permanent engine damage.

## Scheduled Maintenance: E-Series

### Operating in dusty conditions such as unpaved or dusty roads

<b>Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km) or 6 months</b>	Change engine oil and replace filter
<b>Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km)</b>	Check air filter restriction gauge (replace air filter as required or when air filter restriction gauge indicates) Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise Inspect and lubricate steering and suspension ball joints
<b>Every 10,000 miles (16,000 km) or 400 hours of engine operation (whichever comes first)</b>	Change engine-mounted fuel filter and chassis-mounted (FCM) fuel filter
<b>Every 30,000 miles (48,000 km)</b>	Replace wheel bearing grease and grease seals on 4x2 wheel bearings (if non-sealed bearings)

### Off-road operation

<b>Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km) or 6 months</b>	Change engine oil and replace filter
<b>Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km)</b>	Check air filter restriction gauge (replace air filter as required or when air filter restriction gauge indicates) Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise
<b>Every 10,000 miles (16,000 km) or 400 hours of engine operation (whichever comes first)</b>	Change engine-mounted fuel filter and chassis-mounted (FCM) fuel filter
<b>Every 30,000 miles (48,000 miles)</b>	Replace wheel bearing grease and grease seals on 4x2 wheel bearings (if non-sealed bearings)
<b>Every 50,000 miles (80,000 km)</b>	Change rear axle lubricant (E-450 only)
<b>As required</b>	Inspect and lubricate steering and suspension ball joints Inspect and lubricate U-joints

## Scheduled Maintenance: E-Series

### Short trip in cold operating conditions

**Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km) or 6 months** Change engine oil and replace filter

**Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km)** Inspect and lubricate steering and suspension ball joints  
Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise

**Every 10,000 miles (16,000 km) or 400 hours of engine operation (whichever comes first)** Change engine-mounted fuel filter and chassis-mounted (FCM) fuel filter

### Use of Biodiesel, up to and including 5% Biodiesel (B5)

**Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km) or 200 hours of operation (whichever comes first)** Change engine oil and replace filter

**Every 10,000 miles (16,000 km) or 400 hours of operation (whichever comes first)** Replace engine-mounted fuel filter and chassis-mounted (FCM) fuel filter

## Scheduled Maintenance: E-Series

### Special Operating Conditions Log

<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p>RO#:            P&amp;A CODE: DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p>RO#:            P&amp;A CODE: DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p>RO#:            P&amp;A CODE: DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p>RO#:            P&amp;A CODE: DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p>RO#:            P&amp;A CODE: DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p>RO#:            P&amp;A CODE: DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p>RO#:            P&amp;A CODE: DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p>RO#:            P&amp;A CODE: DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p>RO#:            P&amp;A CODE: DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p>RO#:            P&amp;A CODE: DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>

**Scheduled Maintenance: E-Series**

**Special Operating Conditions Log**

<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#:            P&amp;A CODE: DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#:            P&amp;A CODE: DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#:            P&amp;A CODE: DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#:            P&amp;A CODE: DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#:            P&amp;A CODE: DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#:            P&amp;A CODE: DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#:            P&amp;A CODE: DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#:            P&amp;A CODE: DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#:            P&amp;A CODE: DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#:            P&amp;A CODE: DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>

## Scheduled Maintenance: F-Super Duty

### NORMAL SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE AND LOG

The following section contains the “Normal Schedule.” This schedule is presented at specific mileage intervals with exceptions noted.

#### **Additional information available on the Web**

To learn more about the importance of routine and dealer-performed maintenance on your vehicle, please visit the Ford Customer Service website. You'll also find important warranty information, customer assistance, technical expertise, frequently asked questions and much more. The website location is at: [www.ford.com](http://www.ford.com) in the U.S. or [www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca) in Canada.

Then go to the vehicles and service pick at the web site.

5,000 miles (8,000 km)	
<input type="checkbox"/> Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheels for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted) <input type="checkbox"/> Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required <input type="checkbox"/> Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)	<p style="text-align: center;"><b>DEALER VALIDATION:</b></p>   <p><b>RO#:</b>                      <b>P&amp;A CODE:</b>  <b>DATE:</b>                      <b>MILEAGE:</b></p>
10,000 miles (16,000 km)	
<input type="checkbox"/> Change engine oil and replace oil filter <input type="checkbox"/> Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheels for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted) <input type="checkbox"/> Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required <input type="checkbox"/> Lubricate steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie rod ends, drive shaft, 4x4 front axle U-joints and U-joints (lubricate if equipped with Zerk fittings) <input type="checkbox"/> Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)	<p style="text-align: center;"><b>DEALER VALIDATION:</b></p>   <p><b>RO#:</b>                      <b>P&amp;A CODE:</b>  <b>DATE:</b>                      <b>MILEAGE:</b></p>

## Scheduled Maintenance: F-Super Duty

### 20,000 miles (32,000 km)

- Change engine oil and replace oil filter
- Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheels for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)
- Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required
- Replace engine- and frame-mounted fuel filters
- Check engine cooling system level, coolant strength (anti-freeze & anti-corrosion) and hoses
- Inspect brake pads/shoes/rotors/drums, brakes lines & hoses, and parking brake system
- Inspect exhaust system and heat shields
- Inspect and lubricate steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie rod ends, drive shaft, 4x4 front axle U-joints and U-joints
- Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)

DEALER VALIDATION:

RO#:

P&amp;A CODE:

DATE:

MILEAGE:

### 30,000 miles (48,000 km)

- Change engine oil and replace oil filter
- Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheels for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)
- Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required
- Lubricate steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie rod ends, drive shaft, 4x4 front axle U-joints and U-joints (lubricate if equipped with Zerk fittings)
- Inspect automatic transmission fluid level on all vehicles equipped with the Torqshift transmission
- Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)

DEALER VALIDATION:

RO#:

P&amp;A CODE:

DATE:

MILEAGE:

### 40,000 miles (64,000 km)

- Change engine oil and replace oil filter
- Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheels for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)
- Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required
- Replace engine- and frame-mounted fuel filters
- Inspect fuel cooling system level, strength and hoses
- Check engine cooling system level, coolant strength (anti-freeze & anti-corrosion) and hoses
- Inspect brake pads/shoes/rotors/drums, brakes lines & hoses, and parking brake system
- Inspect exhaust system and heat shields
- Inspect and lubricate steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie rod ends, drive shaft, 4x4 front axle U-joints and U-joints
- Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)

DEALER VALIDATION:

RO#:

P&amp;A CODE:

DATE:

MILEAGE:

## Scheduled Maintenance: F-Super Duty

### 50,000 miles (80,000 km)

- Change engine oil and replace oil filter
- Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheels for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)
- Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required
- Change rear axle fluid (DANA axles only. Refer to *Special Operating Conditions* for more information)
- Lubricate steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie rod ends, drive shaft, 4x4 front axle U-joints and U-joints (lubricate if equipped with Zerk fittings)
- Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)

DEALER VALIDATION:

RO#:

P&A CODE:

DATE:

MILEAGE:

### 60,000 miles (96,000 km)

- Change engine oil and replace oil filter
- Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheels for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)
- Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required
- Replace engine- and frame-mounted fuel filters
- Inspect fuel cooling system level, strength and hoses
- Replace main accessory drive belt if equipped with dual alternators
- Check engine cooling system level, coolant strength (anti-freeze & anti-corrosion) and hoses
- Inspect brake pads/shoes/rotors/drums, brakes lines & hoses, and parking brake system
- Replace front wheel bearing grease and grease seals on 4x2 wheel bearings (if non-sealed bearings)
- Inspect exhaust system and heat shields
- Change automatic transmission fluid and filter on all vehicles equipped with the Torqshift transmission. Consult your dealer for particular requirements.
- Inspect and lubricate steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie rod ends, drive shaft, 4x4 front axle U-joints and U-joints
- Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)

DEALER VALIDATION:

RO#:

P&A CODE:

DATE:

MILEAGE:

## Scheduled Maintenance: F-Super Duty

### 70,000 miles (112,000 km)

- Change engine oil and replace oil filter
- Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheels for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)
- Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required
- Lubricate steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie rod ends, drive shaft, 4x4 front axle U-joints and U-joints (lubricate if equipped with Zerk fittings)
- Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)

<b>DEALER VALIDATION:</b>	
<b>RO#:</b>	<b>P&amp;A CODE:</b>
<b>DATE:</b>	<b>MILEAGE:</b>

### 80,000 miles (128,000 km)

- Change engine oil and replace oil filter
- Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheels for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)
- Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required
- Replace engine- and frame-mounted fuel filters
- Inspect fuel cooling system level, strength and hoses
- Check engine cooling system level, coolant strength (anti-freeze & anti-corrosion) and hoses
- Inspect brake pads/shoes/rotors/drums, brakes lines & hoses, and parking brake system
- Inspect exhaust system and heat shields
- Inspect and lubricate steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie rod ends, drive shaft, 4x4 front axle U-joints and U-joints
- Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)

<b>DEALER VALIDATION:</b>	
<b>RO#:</b>	<b>P&amp;A CODE:</b>
<b>DATE:</b>	<b>MILEAGE:</b>

### 90,000 miles (144,000 km)

- Change engine oil and replace oil filter
- Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheels for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)
- Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required
- Lubricate steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie rod ends, drive shaft, 4x4 front axle U-joints and U-joints (lubricate if equipped with Zerk fittings)
- Inspect automatic transmission fluid level on all vehicles equipped with the Torqshift transmission
- Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)

<b>DEALER VALIDATION:</b>	
<b>RO#:</b>	<b>P&amp;A CODE:</b>
<b>DATE:</b>	<b>MILEAGE:</b>

## Scheduled Maintenance: F-Super Duty

### 100,000 miles (160,000 km)

- Change engine oil and replace oil filter
- Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheels for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)
- Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required
- Replace engine- and frame-mounted fuel filters
- Inspect fuel cooling system hoses
- Check engine cooling system level, coolant strength (anti-freeze & anti-corrosion) and hoses
- Inspect brake pads/shoes/rotors/drums, brakes lines & hoses, and parking brake system
- Inspect exhaust system and heat shields
- Inspect accessory drive belt
- Change engine coolant and fuel coolant (refer to *Motorcraft Engine Coolant Change Record*)
- Change manual transmission fluid (refer to *Special Operating Conditions* for more information)
- Change rear axle fluid (DANA axles only. Refer to *Special Operating Conditions* for more information)
- Inspect and lubricate steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie rod ends, drive shaft, 4x4 front axle U-joints and U-joints
- Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)

#### DEALER VALIDATION:

RO#: P&A Code:  
DATE: MILEAGE:

### 110,000 miles (176,000 km)

- Change engine oil and replace oil filter
- Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheels for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)
- Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required
- Lubricate steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie rod ends, drive shaft, 4x4 front axle U-joints and U-joints (lubricate if equipped with zerk fittings)
- Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)

#### DEALER VALIDATION:

RO#: P&A Code:  
DATE: MILEAGE:

## Scheduled Maintenance: F-Super Duty

### 120,000 miles (192,000 km)

- Change engine oil and replace oil filter
- Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheels for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)
- Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required
- Replace engine- and frame-mounted fuel filters
- Inspect fuel cooling system level, strength and hoses
- Replace main accessory drive belt if equipped with dual alternators
- Check engine cooling system level, coolant strength (anti-freeze & anti-corrosion) and hoses
- Inspect brake pads/shoes/rotors/drums, brakes lines & hoses, and parking brake system
- Replace front wheel bearing grease and grease seals on 4x2 wheel bearings (if non-sealed bearings)
- Inspect exhaust system and heat shields
- Inspect accessory drive belt
- Change automatic transmission fluid and filter on all vehicles equipped with the Torqshift transmission. Consult your dealer for particular requirements.
- Inspect and lubricate steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie rod ends, drive shaft, 4x4 front axle U-joints and U-joints
- Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)

**DEALER VALIDATION:**

**RO#:**

**P&A CODE:**

**DATE:**

**MILEAGE:**

### 130,000 miles (208,000 km)

- Change engine oil and replace oil filter
- Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheels for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)
- Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required
- Lubricate steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie rod ends, drive shaft, 4x4 front axle U-joints and U-joints (lubricate if equipped with Zerk fittings)
- Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)

**DEALER VALIDATION:**

**RO#:**

**P&A CODE:**

**DATE:**

**MILEAGE:**

## Scheduled Maintenance: F-Super Duty

### 140,000 miles (224,000 km)

- Change engine oil and replace oil filter
- Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheels for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)
- Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required
- Replace engine- and frame-mounted fuel filters
- Inspect fuel cooling system level, strength and hoses
- Check engine cooling system level, coolant strength (anti-freeze & anti-corrosion) and hoses
- Inspect brake pads/shoes/rotors/drums, brakes lines & hoses, and parking brake system
- Inspect exhaust system and heat shields
- Inspect and lubricate steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie rod ends, drive shaft, 4x4 front axle U-joints and U-joints
- Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)

DEALER VALIDATION:

RO#: P&A CODE:  
DATE: MILEAGE:

### 150,000 miles (240,000 km)

- Change engine oil and replace oil filter
- Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheels for endplay and noise (vehicles with dual rear wheels should only rotate if unusual wear is noted)
- Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as required
- Replace accessory drive belt if not replaced in the last 100,000 miles (160,000 km)
- Change engine coolant and fuel coolant (refer to *Motorcraft Engine Coolant Change Record*)
- Replace front wheel bearing and wheel bearing grease seals on 4x2 vehicles (if non-sealed bearings)
- Inspect exhaust system and heat shields
- Change transfer case fluid (4x4 vehicles) (refer to *Special Operating Conditions* for more information)
- Change front axle lubricant
- Change rear axle fluid (DANA axles only. Refer to *Special Operating Conditions* for more information)
- Lubricate steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie rod ends, drive shaft, 4x4 front axle U-joints and U-joints (if equipped with Zerk fittings)
- Inspect automatic transmission fluid level on all vehicles equipped with the Torqshift transmission
- Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)

DEALER VALIDATION:

RO#: P&A CODE:  
DATE: MILEAGE:

## Scheduled Maintenance: F-Super Duty

### SPECIAL OPERATING CONDITIONS

#### Frequent or extended idling (over 10 minutes per hour of normal driving)

<b>Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km)</b>	Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise
<b>Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km) or 6 months</b>	Inspect and lubricate U-joints
<b>Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km), 3 months or 200 hours of engine operation (whichever comes first)</b>	Change engine oil and replace filter
<b>Every 10,000 miles (16,000 km), 6 months or 400 hours of engine operation (whichever comes first)</b>	Change engine-mounted fuel filter and chassis-mounted (HFCM) fuel filter
<b>Every 20,000 miles (32,000 km) or 800 hours of engine operation (whichever comes first)</b>	Check nitrite level for strength (added Supplemental Coolant Additive VC-8, if required.) Refer to <i>Engine cooling system</i> in the <i>Introduction</i> chapter
<b>Every 60,000 miles (96,000 km) or 2400 hours of engine operation (whichever comes first)</b>	Flush & refill engine coolant (refer to Motorcraft Engine Coolant Change Record) – Do not add Supplemental Coolant Additive

**Note:** For vehicles that operate under severe service conditions such as frequent or extended idle (over 10 minutes per hour of normal driving), maintenance requirements need to be adjusted. This needs to be considered when determining vehicle service intervals.

**Note:** When adding supplemental coolant additive, do not exceed the specified maximum of 32 fl. oz. (946 mL). Operating the engine with excessive supplemental coolant additive may cause overheating which could lead to severe permanent engine damage.

## Scheduled Maintenance: F-Super Duty

**If vehicle is operated in sustained ambient temperatures below -10°F (-23°C) or above 100°F (38°C)**

<b>Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km)</b>	Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise
<b>Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km), 3 months or 200 hours</b>	Change engine oil and replace filter  Inspect and lubricate steering and suspension ball joints and tie rod ends (if equipped with zerk fittings)
<b>Every 10,000 miles (16,000 km), 6 months or 400 hours of engine operation (whichever comes first)</b>	Change engine-mounted fuel filter and chassis-mounted (HFCM) fuel filter
<b>Every 30,000 miles (48,000 km)</b>	Replace wheel bearing grease and grease seals on 4x2 wheel bearings (if non-sealed bearings)
<b>Every 60,000 miles (96,000 km)</b>	Change transfer case fluid (4x4 only)

## Scheduled Maintenance: F-Super Duty

### Frequent low speed operation, consistent heavy traffic less than 25 mph (40 km/h) and/or long rush hour traffic

**Every 5,000 (8,000 km) miles** Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise  
Check air filter restriction gauge (replace air filter as required or when air filter restriction gauge indicates)  
Inspect brake system pads and rotors  
Inspect and lubricate steering and suspension ball joints and tie rod ends (if equipped with zerk fittings)

**Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km), 6 months or 200 hours of engine operation (whichever comes first)** Change engine oil and replace filter

**Every 10,000 miles (16,000 km), 6 months or 400 hours of engine operation (whichever comes first)** Change engine-mounted fuel filter and chassis-mounted (HFCM) fuel filter

**Every 20,000 miles (32,000 km) or 800 hours of engine operation (whichever comes first)** Check nitrite level for strength (added Supplemental Coolant Additive VC-8, if required.) Refer to *Engine cooling system* in the *Introduction* chapter

**Every 60,000 miles (96,000 km)** Change transfer case fluid (4x4 only)

**Every 60,000 miles (96,000 km) or 2400 hours of engine operation (whichever comes first)** Flush & refill engine coolant (refer to Motorcraft Engine Coolant Change Record) – Do not add Supplemental Coolant Additive

**Note:** When adding supplemental coolant additive, do not exceed the specified maximum of 32 fl. oz. (946 mL). Operating the engine with excessive supplemental coolant additive may cause overheating which could lead to severe permanent engine damage.

## Scheduled Maintenance: F-Super Duty

### Frequent low speed operation if vehicle is used for stationary operation

**Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km), 3 months or 200 hours of engine operation (whichever comes first) if vehicle is used for stationary operation** Change engine oil and replace filter

**Every 20,000 miles (32,000 km) or 800 hours of engine operation (whichever comes first)** Check nitrite level for strength (added Supplemental Coolant Additive VC-8, if required.) Refer to *Engine cooling system* in the *Introduction* chapter

**Note:** When adding supplemental coolant additive, do not exceed the specified maximum of 32 fl. oz. (946 mL). Operating the engine with excessive supplemental coolant additive may cause overheating which could lead to severe permanent engine damage.

**Note:** For vehicles that operate under severe service conditions such as frequent or extended idle (over 10 minutes per hour of normal driving), maintenance requirements need to be adjusted. This needs to be considered when determining vehicle service intervals.

### Operating in dusty conditions such as unpaved or dusty roads

**Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km)** Check air filter restriction gauge (replace air filter as required or when air filter restriction gauge indicates)  
Inspect and lubricate steering and suspension ball joints and tie rods (if equipped with zerk fittings)  
Inspect brake system pads and rotors  
Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise

**Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km) or 6 months** Change engine oil and replace filter  
Inspect and lubricate U-joints

**Every 10,000 miles (16,000 km) or 400 hours of engine operation (whichever comes first)** Change engine-mounted fuel filter and chassis-mounted (HFCM) fuel filter

**Every 30,000 miles (48,000 km)** Replace wheel bearing grease and grease seals on 4x2 wheel bearings (if non-sealed bearings)

## Scheduled Maintenance: F-Super Duty

### Off-road operation

<b>Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km)</b>	Check air filter restriction gauge (replace air filter as required or when air filter restriction gauge indicates) Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise Inspect brake system pads and rotors
<b>Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km) or 6 months</b>	Change engine oil and replace filter Inspect and lubricate U-joints
<b>Every 10,000 miles (16,000 km) or 400 hours of engine operation (whichever comes first)</b>	Change engine-mounted fuel filter and chassis-mounted (HFCM) fuel filter
<b>Every 30,000 miles (48,000 km)</b>	Replace wheel bearing grease and grease seals on 4x2 wheel bearings (if non-sealed bearings)
<b>Every 50,000 miles (80,000 km)</b>	Check front axle lubricant (4x4 only) Change rear axle lubricant (if equipped with a Dana rear axle, some F-350s, all 450–550)
<b>Every 50,000 miles (80,000 km)</b>	Change transfer case fluid (4x4 only)
<b>As required</b>	Inspect and lubricate steering and suspension ball joints and tie rod ends (if equipped with zerk fittings) Check that the functional holes in each leg of the twin tip and the holes under the shield just inboard of the right rear tire are kept clean/clear of debris or foreign materials (clean/remove debris as required). Refer to the <i>Cleaning</i> chapter for more information.

## Scheduled Maintenance: F-Super Duty

### Towing a trailer or using a camper or car-top carrier

<b>Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km)</b>	Check air filter restriction gauge (replace air filter as required or when air filter restriction gauge indicates) Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise Inspect brake system pads and rotors
<b>Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km) or 6 months</b>	Change engine oil and replace filter Inspect and lubricate U-joints
<b>Every 10,000 miles (16,000 km) or 400 hours of engine operation (whichever comes first)</b>	Change engine-mounted fuel filter and chassis-mounted (HFCM) fuel filter
<b>Every 20,000 miles (32,000 km) or 800 hours of engine operation (whichever comes first)</b>	Check nitrite level for strength (added Supplemental Coolant Additive VC-8, if required.) Refer to <i>Engine cooling system</i> in the <i>Introduction</i> chapter
<b>Every 30,000 miles (48,000 km)</b>	Replace wheel bearing grease and grease seals on 4x2 wheel bearings (if non-sealed bearings)
<b>Every 60,000 miles (96,000 km)</b>	Change transfer case fluid (4x4 only)
<b>Every 60,000 miles (96,000 km) or 2400 hours of engine operation (whichever comes first)</b>	Flush & refill engine coolant (refer to Motorcraft Engine Coolant Change Record) — Do not add Supplemental Coolant Additive
<b>As required</b>	Change manual transmission fluid

**Note:** When adding supplemental coolant additive, do not exceed the specified maximum of 32 fl. oz. (946 mL). Operating the engine with excessive supplemental coolant additive may cause overheating which could lead to severe permanent engine damage.

## Scheduled Maintenance: F-Super Duty

### Sustained high-speed driving at Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (maximum loaded weight for vehicle operation)

<b>Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km) or 6 months</b>	Change engine oil and replace filter
<b>Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km)</b>	Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise Inspect and lubricate steering and suspension ball joints and tie rod ends (if equipped with zerks fittings) Inspect brake system pads and rotors
<b>Every 10,000 miles (16,000 km) or 400 hours of engine operation (whichever comes first)</b>	Change engine-mounted fuel filter and chassis-mounted (HFCM) fuel filter
<b>Every 20,000 miles (32,000 km) or 800 hours of engine operation (whichever comes first)</b>	Check nitrite level for strength (added Supplemental Coolant Additive VC-8, if required.) Refer to <i>Engine cooling system</i> in the <i>Introduction</i> chapter
<b>Every 30,000 miles (48,000 km)</b>	Replace wheel bearing grease and grease seals on 4x2 wheel bearings (if non-sealed bearings)
<b>Every 50,000 miles (80,000 km)</b>	Change rear axle lubricant (if equipped with a Dana rear axle, some F-350s, all 450–550)
<b>Every 50,000 miles (80,000 km)</b>	Change transfer case fluid (4x4 only)
<b>Every 60,000 miles (96,000 km) or 2400 hours of engine operation (whichever comes first)</b>	Flush & refill engine coolant (refer to Motorcraft Engine Coolant Change Record) – Do not add Supplemental Coolant Additive

**Note:** When adding supplemental coolant additive, do not exceed the specified maximum of 32 fl. oz. (946 mL). Operating the engine with excessive supplemental coolant additive may cause overheating which could lead to severe permanent engine damage.

## Scheduled Maintenance: F-Super Duty

### Use of Biodiesel, up to and including 5% Biodiesel (B5)

**Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km),  
6 months or 200 hours of operation  
(whichever comes first)** Change engine oil and replace filter

**Every 10,000 miles (16,000 km),  
6 months or 400 hours of operation  
(whichever comes first)** Replace engine-mounted fuel filter and chassis-mounted (HFCM) fuel filter

### Use of non-Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel (ULSD) fuel - Vehicles operated where ultra low sulfur diesel fuel is not required/not available

**Every 2,500 miles (4,000 km) or  
3 months (If using high sulfur fuel  
with more than 3000 ppm sulfur)** Change engine oil and replace filter

**Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km) or  
6 months (If using high sulfur fuel  
with less than 3000 ppm sulfur)** Change engine oil and replace filter

**Scheduled Maintenance: F-Super Duty**

**Special Operating Conditions Log**

<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#:            P&amp;A CODE: DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#:            P&amp;A CODE: DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#:            P&amp;A CODE: DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#:            P&amp;A CODE: DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#:            P&amp;A CODE: DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#:            P&amp;A CODE: DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#:            P&amp;A CODE: DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#:            P&amp;A CODE: DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#:            P&amp;A CODE: DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#:            P&amp;A CODE: DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>

## Scheduled Maintenance: F-Super Duty

### Special Operating Conditions Log

<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#:            P&amp;A CODE: DATE:            MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#:            P&amp;A CODE: DATE:            MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#:            P&amp;A CODE: DATE:            MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#:            P&amp;A CODE: DATE:            MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#:            P&amp;A CODE: DATE:            MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#:            P&amp;A CODE: DATE:            MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#:            P&amp;A CODE: DATE:            MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#:            P&amp;A CODE: DATE:            MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#:            P&amp;A CODE: DATE:            MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#:            P&amp;A CODE: DATE:            MILEAGE:</p>

## Scheduled Maintenance: Special Information

### EXCEPTIONS

In addition, there are several exceptions to the Normal Schedule. They are listed below:

#### Normal Vehicle Axle Maintenance

- Rear axles and power take-off (PTO) units containing synthetic lubricant and light duty trucks equipped with Ford-design axles are lubricated for life. These lubricants are not to be checked or changed unless a leak is suspected, service is required or the axle assembly has been submerged in water. The axle and PTO lubricant should be changed anytime the axle and PTO have been submerged in water. Non-synthetic rear axle lubricants should be replaced every 3,000 miles (5,000 km) or 3 months, whichever occurs first, during extended trailer tow operation above 70°F (21°C) ambient and wide open throttle for extended periods above 45 mph (72 km/h). The 3,000 mile (5,000 km) lube change interval may be waived if the axle was filled with 75W140 synthetic gear lubricant meeting Ford specification WSL-M2C192-A, part number FITZ-19580-B or equivalent. Add four ounces (118 mL) of additive friction modifier C8AZ-19B546-A (EST-M2C118-A) or equivalent for complete refill of Traction-Lok rear axles. The axle lubricant should be changed anytime an axle has been submerged in water.

#### E-450, F-450 and F-550 Axle Maintenance

- Replace rear axle lubricant every 100,000 miles (160,000 km) under normal driving conditions on all F-450 and F-550 commercial applications. For F-450 and F-550 trucks operated at or near maximum Gross Vehicle Weights, the rear axle lubricant should be replaced every 50,000 miles (80,000 km). In addition, this 50,000 mile (80,000 km) schedule should be observed when the vehicles are operated under the Special Operating Conditions, where noted.

#### Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF)

- The DPF may need to be removed for ash cleaning at approximately 120,000 miles (192,000 km) or greater (actual mileage can vary greatly depending upon engine/vehicle operating conditions) and replaced with a new or remanufactured (ash cleaned) part. The filter may need to be replaced at approximately 250,000 miles (400,000 km) depending upon engine/vehicle operating conditions. In both cases the engine control system will set a service light (  ) to inform you to bring the vehicle to the dealer for service. If there are any issues with the oxidation catalyst/DPF system a service light (  or  ) will be set by the engine control system to inform you to bring the vehicle into a dealership for service.



## Scheduled Maintenance: Special Information

<p>Current mileage goes here =&gt;          Add 45,000 miles to the current miles + 45,000          Next change due at this mileage =&gt;</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Or</b></p> <p>Today's date goes here =&gt;          Add 3 years + 00 / 00 / 03          Date of next change =&gt;  <b>whichever comes first</b></p>	<p><b>Dealer Stamp</b></p>   <p><b>P &amp; A CODE</b>  <b>R.O.#</b></p>
---	--

<p>Current mileage goes here =&gt;          Add 45,000 miles to the current miles + 45,000          Next change due at this mileage =&gt;</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Or</b></p> <p>Today's date goes here =&gt;          Add 3 years + 00 / 00 / 03          Date of next change =&gt;  <b>whichever comes first</b></p>	<p><b>Dealer Stamp</b></p>   <p><b>P &amp; A CODE</b>  <b>R.O.#</b></p>
---	--

<p>Current mileage goes here =&gt;          Add 45,000 miles to the current miles + 45,000          Next change due at this mileage =&gt;</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Or</b></p> <p>Today's date goes here =&gt;          Add 3 years + 00 / 00 / 03          Date of next change =&gt;  <b>whichever comes first</b></p>	<p><b>Dealer Stamp</b></p>   <p><b>P &amp; A CODE</b>  <b>R.O.#</b></p>
---	--





## Ford Power Stroke® Diesel Operating, Maintenance & Care Tips

Congratulations on the purchase of your Power Stroke® or Ford Diesel Engine ESP contract. Maintained properly, this product will provide many years of strong, trouble-free service so use these maintenance and care tips for your engine. Refer to your Scheduled Maintenance Guide for a complete detailed list of your vehicle's maintenance needs.

Vehicle Service	6.0L Normal	6.0L Special*	6.4L Normal	6.4L Special*
<b>Oil and Filter<sup>1,2</sup></b>	Change every 7,500 miles	Change every 5,000 miles or 200 hours	Change every 10,000 miles	Change every 5,000 miles or 200 hours
<b>Fuel Filter Change (both)<sup>1</sup></b>	Change every 15,000 miles	Change every 10,000 miles or 400 hours	Change every 20,000 miles	Change every 10,000 miles or 400 hours
<b>Coolant check/change<sup>3</sup></b>	Check every 6 months & Initial change 105,000 miles; subsequent changes every 45,000 miles	Check every 15,000 miles or 600 hours & change every 45,000 miles or 1800 hours	Check every 6 months & Initial change 100,000 miles; subsequent changes every 50,000 miles	Check every 20,000 miles or 800 hours & change every 60,000 miles or 2400 hours
<b>Coolant Nitrite strength check<sup>3</sup></b>	Optional check every 15,000 miles or 600 hours	Check every 15,000 miles or 600 hours	Optional 20,000 miles or 800 hours	Check every 20,000 miles or 800 hours

\* *Special = Operating Conditions like Extensive Towing, Long Idle Time, Extended Low Speed Driving, Biodiesel Use, Off Road/Dusty Conditions*

### **<sup>1</sup> Use the Right Filters**

- Ford Motor Company can only attest to the quality and exact size of the filters provided by Motorcraft®. Only Motorcraft® air, fuel, and oil filters were designed specifically for the demands of the Ford Power Stroke® diesel engine. Genuine Motorcraft® filters provide superior filtration and never require adaptors.

### **<sup>2</sup> Use the Right Oil**

- New API CJ-4 engine oil is required for 6.4L engine to meet federal emission standards. Vehicles equipped with the 6.0L engine can benefit from this same high performance oil as well. Operation of the 6.4L diesel engine requires Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel (ULSD) fuel.

### **<sup>3</sup> Take Care of Your Coolant**

- The coolant concentration should be maintained at 50/50 mix of coolant and distilled water. The level of coolant should be maintained at the "COLD FILL" range in the coolant reservoir. If you suspect any coolant system leaks or lack of cooling, pressure test the cooling system. Refer to your Owner Guide for additional information.
- Engine coolant system nitrite strength should be checked and serviced at the mileage or equivalent hour intervals specified by the maintenance schedule. Check coolant nitrite strength using the 3-Way Antifreeze Test Strip kit Rotunda # 328-00001 to determine if additive is required. If the nitrite strength is between 800 ppm & 300 ppm add 32 fl. oz. (946 mL) of Supplemental Coolant Additive Motorcraft VC-8 or equivalent. If nitrite strength is below 300 ppm flush & refill engine coolant (refer to Motorcraft Premium Gold Engine Coolant Change Record) – Do not add Supplemental Coolant Additive if flush & refill is required.

### **Take Care of your Fuel Injection System**

- Diesel fuel quality is critical for reliable engine operation. Motorcraft® Cetane Booster & Performance Improver, PM-22-A (U.S.) / PM-22-B (Canada) can be added to improve fuel economy, starting ability, and reduce engine wear.
- The water separator should be drained monthly (at least) or when the "Water in Fuel Lamp" illuminates.
- Biodiesel fuel must not exceed 5% (B5). To avoid cold weather fuel gelling, add 6 oz. of Motorcraft® Anti-Gel & Performance Improver PM-23-A (U.S.) / PM-23-B (Canada) to every new tank of fuel.

### **Cold Start Performance**

- The glow plug system operates for up to 120 seconds and is completely independent of the "Wait to Start" lamp operation. Always wait until the "Wait to Start" lamp has turned off, before cranking the engine.
- To ensure optimum cold weather starting performance, and improve cabin heating, the 120 volt engine block heater should be used during any cold weather operation. The engine block heater is required when the vehicle is to be started at temperatures below -10F (-23C).

### **Performance Modifications May Impact Your Powertrain**

- Performance modifications may or may not be the root cause of a powertrain failure. If a non-Ford product (e.g. performance modifications, programmers, modified exhaust or air intake systems) fails or causes a Ford part to fail, the cost of the entire repair and any related damage will not be covered by the Ford New Vehicle Limited Warranty or any applicable Extended Service Plan (ESP/ESC) contract coverage.

## Table of Contents

<b>Table of Contents</b>	
<b>Introduction</b>	<b>4</b>
<b>Instrument Cluster</b>	<b>14</b>
Warning lights and chimes	14
Gauges	20
Message center	24
<b>Entertainment Systems</b>	<b>42</b>
AM/FM stereo	42
AM/FM stereo with CD	44
AM/FM stereo with in-dash six CD	51
Auxiliary input jack	58
USB port	60
Satellite radio information	64
Family entertainment system	67
Navigation system	97
SYNC®	97
<b>Climate Controls</b>	<b>98</b>
Heater only	98
Manual heating and air conditioning	99
Dual automatic temperature control	102
<b>Lights</b>	<b>107</b>
Headlamps	107
Turn signal control	112
Bulb replacement	113
<b>Driver Controls</b>	<b>120</b>
Windshield wiper/washer control	120
Steering wheel adjustment	121
Power windows	124
Mirrors	126
Speed control	131
Upfitter controls	137
Moon roof	138

## Table of Contents

### Locks and Security **148**

Keys	148
Locks	148
Anti-theft system	159

### Seating and Safety Restraints **164**

Seating	164
Safety restraints	173
Airbags	185
Child restraints	195

### Tires, Wheels and Loading **217**

Tire information	219
Tire inflation	221
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)	237
Vehicle loading	244
Trailer towing	251
Trailer brake controller-integrated	256
Recreational towing	262

### Driving **264**

Starting	264
Brakes	269
Traction Control™	271
Transmission operation	275
Reverse sensing system	280
Rear-view camera system	282

### Roadside Emergencies **303**

Getting roadside assistance	303
Hazard flasher control	304
Fuel pump shut-off switch	305
Fuses and relays	306
Changing tires	315
Wheel lug nut torque	330
Jump starting	331
Wrecker towing	336

## Table of Contents

<b>Customer Assistance</b>	<b>338</b>
Reporting safety defects (U.S. only)	344
Reporting safety defects (Canada only)	344
<b>Cleaning</b>	<b>345</b>
<b>Maintenance and Specifications</b>	<b>355</b>
Engine compartment	357
Engine oil	360
Battery	363
Engine coolant	365
Fuel information	371
Air filter(s)	389
Part numbers	390
Maintenance product specifications and capacities	391
Engine data	395
<b>Accessories</b>	<b>398</b>
<b>Ford Extended Service Plan</b>	<b>400</b>
<b>Index</b>	<b>403</b>

All rights reserved. Reproduction by any means, electronic or mechanical including photocopying, recording or by any information storage and retrieval system or translation in whole or part is not permitted without written authorization from Ford Motor Company. Ford may change the contents without notice and without incurring obligation.

Copyright © 2009 Ford Motor Company

## Introduction

### CONGRATULATIONS

Congratulations on acquiring your new Ford. Please take the time to get well acquainted with your vehicle by reading this handbook. The more you know and understand about your vehicle, the greater the safety and pleasure you will derive from driving it.

For more information on Ford Motor Company and its products visit the following website:

- In the United States: [www.ford.com](http://www.ford.com)
- In Canada: [www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca)
- In Australia: [www.ford.com.au](http://www.ford.com.au)
- In Mexico: [www.ford.com.mx](http://www.ford.com.mx)

Additional owner information is given in separate publications.

This Owner's Guide describes every option and model variant available and therefore some of the items covered may not apply to your particular vehicle. Furthermore, due to printing cycles it may describe options before they are generally available.

Remember to pass on this Owner's Guide when reselling the vehicle. It is an integral part of the vehicle.



**WARNING: Fuel pump shut-off switch:** In the event of an accident the safety switch will automatically cut off the fuel supply to the engine. The switch can also be activated through sudden vibration (e.g. collision when parking). To reset the switch, refer to the *Fuel pump shut-off switch* in the *Roadside Emergencies* chapter.

## Introduction

### SAFETY AND ENVIRONMENT PROTECTION

#### **Warning symbols in this guide**

How can you reduce the risk of personal injury to yourself or others? In this guide, answers to such questions are contained in comments highlighted by the warning triangle symbol. These comments should be read and observed.

#### **Warning symbols on your vehicle**

When you see this symbol, it is imperative that you consult the relevant section of this guide before touching or attempting adjustment of any kind.



#### **Protecting the environment**

We must all play our part in protecting the environment. Correct vehicle usage and the authorized disposal of waste, cleaning and lubrication materials are significant steps towards this aim. Information in this respect is highlighted in this guide with the tree symbol.



#### **CALIFORNIA Proposition 65 Warning**

 **WARNING:** Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and certain vehicle components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.

## Introduction

### PERCHLORATE MATERIAL

Certain components of this vehicle such as airbag modules, seat belt pretensioners, and button cell batteries may contain Perchlorate Material – Special handling may apply for service or vehicle end of life disposal. See [www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate](http://www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate).

### BREAKING-IN YOUR VEHICLE

Your vehicle does not need an extensive break-in. Try not to drive continuously at the same speed for the first 1,000 miles (1,600 km) of new vehicle operation. Vary your speed frequently in order to give the moving parts a chance to break in.

Drive your new vehicle at least 1,000 miles (1,600 km) before towing a trailer. For more detailed information about towing a trailer, refer to *Trailer towing* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter.

Do not add friction modifier compounds or special break-in oils since these additives may prevent piston ring seating. See *Engine oil* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter for more information on oil usage.

### SPECIAL NOTICES

#### New Vehicle Limited Warranty

For a detailed description of what is covered and what is not covered by your vehicle's New Vehicle Limited Warranty, refer to the *Warranty Guide/Customer Information Guide* that is provided to you along with your Owner's Guide.

#### Special instructions

For your added safety, your vehicle is fitted with sophisticated electronic controls.



**WARNING:** Please read the section *Airbag Supplemental Restraint System (SRS)* in the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter. Failure to follow the specific warnings and instructions could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** Front seat mounted rear-facing child or infant seats should **NEVER** be placed in front of an active passenger airbag.

## Introduction

### Notice to owners of diesel-powered vehicles

Read the *6.0 and 6.4 Liter Power Stroke Direct Injection Turbo Diesel Owner's Guide Supplement* for information regarding correct operation and maintenance of your Diesel-powered light truck.

### Notice to owners of pickup trucks and utility type vehicles



**WARNING:** Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.

Before you drive your vehicle, please read this Owner's Guide carefully. Your vehicle is not a passenger car. As with other vehicles of this type, failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury or death.

### Using your vehicle with a snowplow

For more information and guidelines for using your vehicle with a snowplow, refer to the *Driving* chapter.

### Using your vehicle as an ambulance

If your light truck is equipped with the Ford Ambulance Preparation Package, it may be utilized as an ambulance. Ford urges ambulance manufacturers to follow the recommendations of the *Ford Incomplete Vehicle Manual*, *Ford Truck Body Builder's Layout Book* and the *Qualified Vehicle Modifiers (QVM) Guidelines* as well as pertinent supplements. For additional information, please contact the Truck Body Builders Advisory Service at <http://www.fleet.ford.com/truckbbas/> and then by selecting "Contact Us" or by phone at 1-877-840-4338.

Use of your Ford light truck as an ambulance, without the Ford Ambulance Preparation Package voids the Ford New Vehicle Limited Warranty and may void the Emissions Warranties. In addition, ambulance usage without the preparation package could cause high underbody temperatures, overpressurized fuel and a risk of spraying fuel which could lead to fires.

If your vehicle is equipped with the Ford Ambulance Preparation Package, it will be indicated on the Safety Compliance Certification Label. The label is located on the driver's side door pillar or on the rear edge of the driver's door. You can determine whether the ambulance manufacturer followed Ford's recommendations by directly contacting that manufacturer. Ford Ambulance Preparation Package is only available on certain Diesel engine equipped vehicles.

## Introduction

### Using your vehicle as a stationary power source (PTO)

Refer to the *Driving* chapter for more information and guidelines for operating a vehicle equipped with an aftermarket power take-off system.

## DATA RECORDING

### Service Data Recording

Service data recorders in your vehicle are capable of collecting and storing diagnostic information about your vehicle. This potentially includes information about the performance or status of various systems and modules in the vehicle, such as engine, throttle, steering or brake systems. In order to properly diagnose and service your vehicle, Ford Motor Company, Ford of Canada, and service and repair facilities may access or share among them vehicle diagnostic information received through a direct connection to your vehicle when diagnosing or servicing your vehicle. For U.S. only (if equipped), if you choose to use the SYNC® Vehicle Health Report, you consent that certain diagnostic information may also be accessed electronically by Ford Motor Company and Ford authorized service facilities, and that the diagnostic information may be used for any purpose. See your SYNC® supplement for more information.

### Event Data Recording

**Other modules in your vehicle — event data recorders — are capable of collecting and storing data during a crash or near crash event. The recorded information may assist in the investigation of such an event. The modules may record information about both the vehicle and the occupants, potentially including information such as:**

- how various systems in your vehicle were operating;
- whether or not the driver and passenger seatbelts were buckled;
- how far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or the brake pedal;
- how fast the vehicle was traveling;
- where the driver was positioning the steering wheel; and
- longitude and latitude of vehicle at last location, using GPS technology and advanced vehicle sensors.

## Introduction

To access this information, special equipment must be directly connected to the recording modules. Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada do not access event data recorder information without obtaining consent, unless pursuant to court order or where required by law enforcement, other government authorities or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada. To the extent that any law pertaining to Event Data Recording applies to SYNC® or its features, please note the following: Once 911 Assist (if equipped) is enabled (set ON), 911 Assist may, through any paired and connected cell phone, disclose to emergency services that the vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or, in certain vehicles, the activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to 911 Assist may also be capable of electronically or verbally disclosing to 911 operators the vehicle location, and/or other details about the vehicle or crash to assist 911 operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not activate the feature. See your SYNC® supplement for more information. Additionally, when you connect to Traffic, Directions and Information (if equipped, U.S. only), the service uses GPS technology and advanced vehicle sensors to collect the vehicle's current location, travel direction, and speed ("vehicle travel information") only to help provide you with the directions, traffic reports, or business searches you request. If you do not want Ford or its vendors to receive this information, do not activate the service. Ford Motor Company and the vendors it uses to provide you with this information do not store your vehicle travel information. For more information, see Traffic, Directions and Information, Terms and Conditions. See your SYNC® supplement for more information.

## Introduction

### Vehicle Modification Data Recording

Some aftermarket products may cause severe engine and/or transmission damage; refer to the *What is not covered* section in *The new vehicle limited warranty for your vehicle* chapter of your vehicle's *Warranty Guide* for more information. Some vehicles are equipped with Powertrain Control Systems that can detect and store information about vehicle modifications that, for example, increase horsepower and torque output; this information cannot be erased and will stay in the system's memory even if the modification is removed. When a dealer or repair facility works on your vehicle, it may be necessary for them to access the information in the Powertrain Control System. This information will likely identify if any unauthorized modifications have been made to the system, which may be used to determine if the warranty has been violated and if repairs will be covered by warranty.

### CELL PHONE USE

The use of Mobile Communications Equipment has become increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, drivers must not compromise their own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile Communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits.

Mobile Communication Equipment includes, but is not limited to cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, in-vehicle communications systems, telematics devices and portable two-way radios.



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device that may take their focus off the road. The driver's primary responsibility is the safe operation of their vehicle. Only use cell phones and other devices not essential to the driving task when it is safe to do so.

## Introduction

### **EXPORT UNIQUE (NON-UNITED STATES/CANADA) VEHICLE SPECIFIC INFORMATION**

For your particular global region, your vehicle may be equipped with features and options that are different from the features and options that are described in this Owner's Guide. A market unique supplement may be supplied that complements this book. By referring to the market unique supplement, if provided, you can properly identify those features, recommendations and specifications that are unique to your vehicle. This Owner's Guide is written primarily for the U.S. and Canadian Markets. Features or equipment listed as standard may be different on units built for Export. **Refer to this Owner's Guide for all other required information and warnings.**

## Introduction

These are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.

### Vehicle Symbol Glossary

Safety Alert		See Owner's Guide	
Fasten Safety Belt		Airbag - Front	
Airbag - Side		Child Seat Lower Anchor	
Child Seat Tether Anchor		Brake System	
Anti-Lock Brake System		Parking Brake System	
Brake Fluid - Non-Petroleum Based		Parking Aid System	
Stability Control System		Speed Control	
Master Lighting Switch		Hazard Warning Flasher	
Fog Lamps-Front		Fuse Compartment	
Fuel Pump Reset		Windshield Wash/Wipe	
Windshield Defrost/Demist		Rear Window Defrost/Demist	

## Introduction

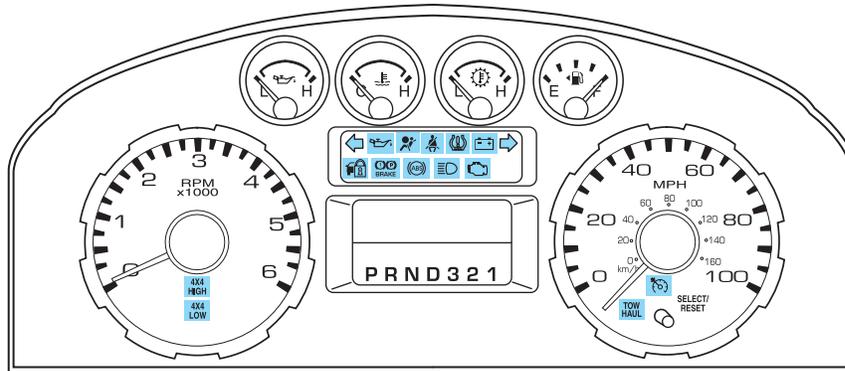
### Vehicle Symbol Glossary

Power Windows Front/Rear		Power Window Lockout	
Child Safety Door Lock/Unlock		Interior Luggage Compartment Release	
Panic Alarm		Engine Oil	
Engine Coolant		Engine Coolant Temperature	
Do Not Open When Hot		Battery	
Avoid Smoking, Flames, or Sparks		Battery Acid	
Explosive Gas		Fan Warning	
Power Steering Fluid		Maintain Correct Fluid Level	
Service Engine Soon		Engine Air Filter	
Passenger Compartment Air Filter		Jack	
Check Fuel Cap		Low Tire Pressure Warning	

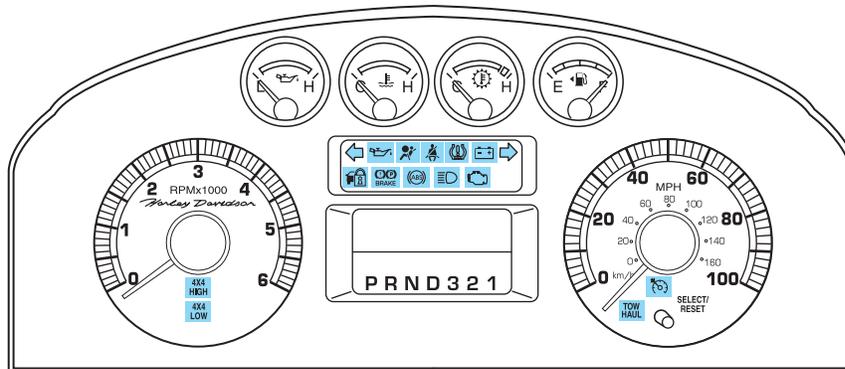
## Instrument Cluster

### WARNING LIGHTS AND CHIMES

Automatic transmission cluster shown, manual similar



### Harley-Davidson vehicles



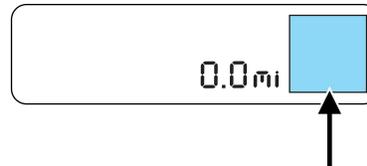
Warning lights and gauges can alert you to a vehicle condition that may become serious enough to cause expensive repairs. A warning light may illuminate when a problem exists with one of your vehicle's functions. Many lights will illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure the

14

## Instrument Cluster

bulbs work. If any light remains on after starting the vehicle, refer to the respective system warning light description for additional information.

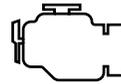
**Note:** Some warning lights are reconfigurable telltale (RTT) indicator lights and will illuminate in the message center. These lights function the same as the other warning lights.



**Service engine soon:** The *Service engine soon* indicator light

illuminates when the ignition is first turned to the on position to check

the bulb and to indicate whether the vehicle is ready for Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) testing. Normally, the “Service engine soon” light will stay on until the engine is cranked, then turn itself off if no malfunctions are present. However, if after 15 seconds the “Service engine soon” light blinks eight times, it means that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing. See the *Readiness for Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) testing* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.



Solid illumination after the engine is started indicates the On Board Diagnostics System (OBD-II) has detected a malfunction. Refer to *On board diagnostics (OBD-II)* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter. If the light is blinking, engine misfire is occurring which could damage your catalytic converter. Drive in a moderate fashion (avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration) and have your vehicle serviced immediately by your authorized dealer.



**WARNING:** Under engine misfire conditions, excessive exhaust temperatures could damage the catalytic converter, the fuel system, interior floor coverings or other vehicle components, possibly causing a fire.

**Brake system warning light:** To confirm the brake system warning light is functional, it will momentarily illuminate when the ignition is turned to the on position

when the engine is not running, or in a position between on and start, or



## Instrument Cluster

by applying the parking brake when the ignition is turned to the on position. If the brake system warning light does not illuminate at this time, seek service immediately from your authorized dealer. Illumination after releasing the parking brake indicates low brake fluid level and the brake system should be inspected immediately by your servicing authorized dealer.

 **WARNING:** Driving a vehicle with the brake system warning light on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It will take you longer to stop the vehicle. Have the vehicle checked by your authorized dealer immediately. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.

**Anti-lock brake system:** If the ABS light stays illuminated or continues to flash, a malfunction has been detected, have the system serviced immediately by your authorized dealer. Normal braking is still functional unless the brake warning light also is illuminated.



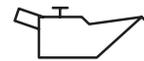
**Airbag readiness:** If this light fails to illuminate when ignition is turned to on, continues to flash or remains on, have the system serviced immediately by your authorized dealer. A chime will sound when there is a malfunction in the indicator light.



**Safety belt:** Reminds you to fasten your safety belt. A Belt-Minder® chime will also sound to remind you to fasten your safety belt. Refer to the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter to activate/deactivate the Belt-Minder® chime feature.



**Engine oil pressure:** Illuminates when the oil pressure falls below the normal range. Refer to *Engine oil* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.



## Instrument Cluster

**Low tire pressure warning (if equipped):** Illuminates when your tire pressure is low. If the light remains on at start up or while driving, the tire pressure should be



checked. Refer to *Inflating your tires* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter. When the ignition is first turned to on, the light will illuminate for three seconds to ensure the bulb is working. If the light does not turn on, have the system inspected by your authorized dealer. For more information on this system, refer to *Understanding your tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS)* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter.

**Charging system:** Illuminates when the battery is not charging properly. If it stays on while the engine is running, there may be a malfunction with the charging system. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. This indicates a problem with the electrical system or a related component.



**Powertrain malfunction/Reduced power/Electronic throttle control (RTT):** Displays when the



engine has defaulted to a “limp-home” operation or when a transmission problem has been detected and shifting may be restricted. If the light remains on, have the system serviced immediately by your authorized dealer.

**Traction control (RTT) (if equipped):** Displays when the traction control system is active. If the light remains on, have the system serviced immediately by your authorized dealer. Refer to *Traction control* in the *Driving* chapter for more information



**Check fuel cap (RTT):** Displays when the fuel cap may not be properly installed. Continued driving with this light on may cause the Service engine soon warning light to come on. Refer to *Fuel filler cap* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.



## Instrument Cluster

### Engine coolant temperature

**(RTT):** Displays when the engine coolant temperature is high. Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible, switch off the engine and let it cool. Refer to *Engine coolant* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.



**WARNING:** Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

**Low fuel (RTT):** Displays when the fuel level in the fuel tank is at or near empty (refer to *Fuel gauge* in this chapter).



**Door ajar (RTT):** Displays when the ignition is in the on position and any door is open.



### Transmission Tow/Haul Feature (automatic transmission) (if equipped):

The Tow Haul light remains illuminated as long as the Tow/Haul feature is activated. Refer to the *Driving* chapter for transmission function and operation. If the light remains illuminated and will not cancel using the Tow/Haul switch located on the end of the gear shift lever, have the system serviced immediately or damage to the transmission could occur.

**TOW  
HAUL**

**Four-wheel drive low (if equipped):** Illuminates when four-wheel drive low is engaged.

**4x4  
LOW**

**Four-wheel drive high (if equipped):** Illuminates when four-wheel drive high is engaged.

**4x4  
HIGH**

## Instrument Cluster

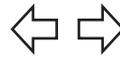
**Anti-theft system:** Flashes when the SecuriLock® passive anti-theft system has been activated.



**Speed control (if equipped):** Illuminates when the speed control is activated. Turns off when the speed control system is deactivated.



**Turn signal:** Illuminates when the left or right turn signal or the hazard lights are turned on. If the indicators stay on or flash faster, check for a burned out bulb.



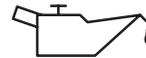
**High beams:** Illuminates when the high beam headlamps are turned on.



If your vehicle is equipped with a diesel engine, it has some unique warning lights; refer to *Instrument Cluster* in your *Power Stroke 6.0 and 6.4 Liter Direct Injection Turbo Diesel Owner's Guide Supplement* for detailed information on their function.

### Diesel warning lights:

- Glow plug pre-heat
- Water in fuel
- Low oil pressure



**Key-in-ignition warning chime:** Sounds when the key is left in the ignition in the off or accessory position and the driver's door is opened.

**Headlamps on warning chime:** Sounds when the headlamps or parking lamps are on, the ignition is off (the key is not in the ignition) and the driver's door is opened.

## Instrument Cluster

**Parking brake on warning chime:** Sounds when the parking brake is set, the engine is running and the vehicle is driven more than 3 mph (5 km/h). If the warning remains on after the parking brake is off, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

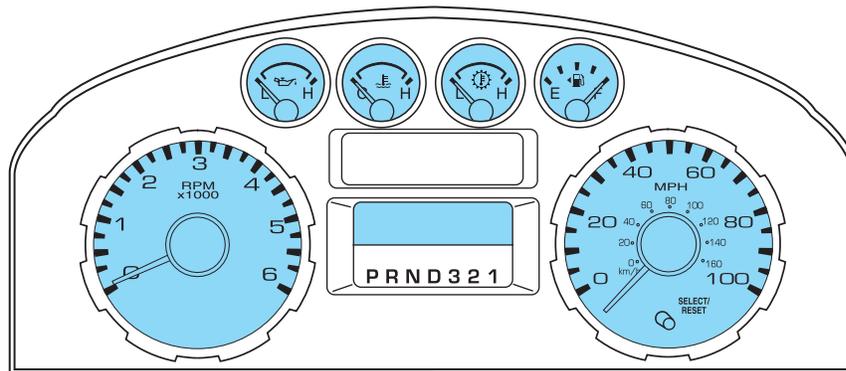
**Turn signal chime:** Sounds when the turn signal lever has been activated to signal a turn and not turned off after the vehicle is driven more than 2 miles (3.2 km).

**Message center activation chime:** Sounds when some warning messages appears in the message center display for the first time.

**Overspeed chime (if equipped):** Sounds when the vehicle speed reaches 75 mph (120 km/h) or higher.

**Airbag secondary warning chime:** Sounds to inform the driver, in the event that the airbag readiness warning lamp is inoperable, that there is a fault in the supplemental restraint system.

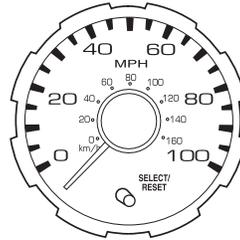
### GAUGES



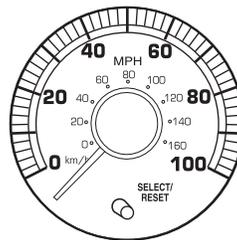
**Speedometer:** Indicates the current vehicle speed.

## Instrument Cluster

### Standard instrument cluster

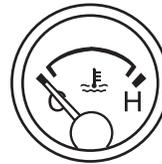


### Harley-Davidson instrument cluster



### Engine coolant temperature gauge

Indicates engine coolant temperature. At normal operating temperature, the needle will be in the normal range (between “H” and “C”). **If it enters the red section, the engine is overheating. Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible, switch off the engine and let the engine cool.**



**WARNING:** Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

**Odometer:** Registers the total miles (kilometers) of the vehicle. Refer to *Standard message center* or *Optional message center* in this chapter on how to switch the display from Metric to English.

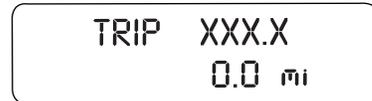


## Instrument Cluster

**Trip odometer:** Registers the miles (kilometers) of individual journeys.

- With standard message center:

Press the SELECT/RESET stem once to switch from the odometer to the trip odometer. Press the stem again to select Trip A and Trip B features. To reset the trip, press and hold the stem until it resets.

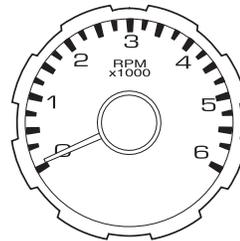


- With optional message center:

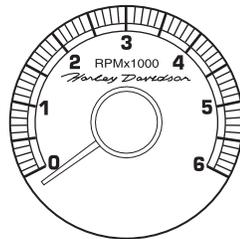
See *TRIP A/B* under *Optional message center* in this chapter.

**Tachometer:** Indicates the engine speed in revolutions per minute. Driving with your tachometer pointer continuously at the top of the scale may damage the engine.

### Standard instrument cluster



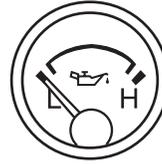
### Harley-Davidson instrument cluster



## Instrument Cluster

### Engine oil pressure gauge:

Indicates engine oil pressure. The needle should stay in the normal operating range (between “L” and “H”). If the needle falls below the normal range, stop the vehicle, turn off the engine and check the engine oil level. Add oil if needed. If the oil level is correct, have your vehicle checked at your authorized dealer.

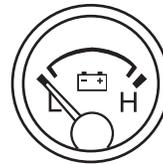


**Fuel gauge:** Indicates approximately how much fuel is left in the fuel tank (when the ignition is in the on position). The fuel gauge may vary slightly when the vehicle is in motion or on a grade. The FUEL icon and arrow indicates which side of the vehicle the fuel filler door is located.



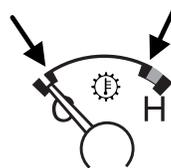
Refer to *Filling the tank* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter for more information.

**Battery voltage gauge (manual transmission only):** Indicates the battery voltage when the ignition is in the on position. If the pointer moves and stays outside the normal operating range, have the vehicle's electrical system checked as soon as possible.



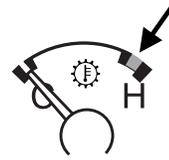
**Transmission fluid temperature gauge (automatic transmission only):** If the gauge is in the:

**Normal area-** the transmission fluid is within the normal operating temperature (between “H” and “C”).



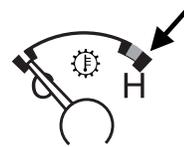
## Instrument Cluster

**Yellow area**– the transmission fluid is higher than normal operating temperature. This can be caused by special operating conditions (i.e. snowplowing, towing or off road use). Refer to *Special operating conditions* in the *scheduled maintenance information* for instructions. Operating the transmission for extended periods of time with the gauge in the yellow area may cause internal transmission damage.



Altering the severity of the operating conditions is recommended to lower the transmission temperature into the normal range.

**Red area**– the transmission fluid is overheating. Stop the vehicle to allow the temperature to return to normal range.



If the gauge is operating in the Yellow or Red area, stop the vehicle and verify the airflow is not restricted such as snow or debris blocking airflow through the grill. If the gauge continues to show high temperatures, see your authorized dealer.

### STANDARD MESSAGE CENTER

Your vehicle's message center is capable of monitoring many vehicle systems and will alert you to potential vehicle problems and various conditions with an informational message followed by a long indicator chime.

The message center display is located in the instrument cluster.

### Selectable features (information menu)

Press and release the SELECT/RESET button, located in the speedometer, to scroll and reset the following functions. Select or reset the function by holding the SELECT/RESET button for more than 2 seconds.

#### TRIP

Registers the distance of individual journeys. Press and release the SELECT/RESET button on the cluster to toggle between odometer and trip odometer display. To reset, press and hold for less than two seconds.

## Instrument Cluster

### **ENG HRS**

Registers the accumulated time the engine has been running.

### **MILES (km) TO E**

This displays an estimate of approximately how far you can drive with the fuel remaining in your tank under normal driving conditions. Remember to turn the ignition off when refueling to allow this feature to correctly detect the added fuel.

This function will display LOW FUEL LEVEL when you have approximately 50 miles (80 km), to empty. Press RESET to clear this warning message. It will return at approximately 25 miles (40 km), 10 miles (16 km) and 0 miles (0 km) to empty.

The distance to empty is calculated using a running average fuel economy, which is based on your recent driving history of 500 miles (800 km). This value is not the same as the average fuel economy display. The running average fuel economy is re-initialized to a factory default value if the battery is disconnected.

### **XX.X MPG (L/100km)**

Average fuel economy displays your average fuel economy in miles/gallon or liters/100 km.

If you calculate your average fuel economy by dividing distance traveled by gallons of fuel used (liters of fuel used by 100 kilometers traveled), your figure may be different than displayed for the following reasons:

- Your vehicle was not perfectly level during fill-up
- Differences in the automatic shut-off points on the fuel pumps at service stations
- Variations in top-off procedure from one fill-up to another
- Rounding of the displayed values to the nearest 0.1 gallon (liter)

1. Drive the vehicle at least 5 miles (8 km) with the speed control system engaged to display a stabilized average.

2. Record the highway fuel economy for future reference.

It is important to press the SELECT/RESET button (press and hold the SELECT/RESET button for two seconds in order to reset the function) after setting the speed control to get accurate highway fuel economy readings.

### **TBC GAIN (if equipped)**

Displays the level of trailer brake gain or if the trailer is not connected.

## Instrument Cluster

### **Setup menu (vehicle customization and vehicle system check)**

#### **HOLD RESET FOR SETUP MENU**

Press and hold the SELECT/RESET button to get into the setup menu sequence for the following displays:

**Note:** When returning to the setup menu and a non-English language has been selected, HOLD RESET FOR ENGLISH will be displayed to change back to English. Press and hold the SELECT/RESET button to change back to English.

#### **OIL LIFE**

This displays the remaining oil life.

An oil change is required whenever indicated by the message center and according to the recommended maintenance schedule. **USE ONLY RECOMMENDED ENGINE OILS.**

To reset the oil monitoring system to 100% after each oil change (approximately 7,500 miles [12,000 km] or 12 months) perform the following:

1. Press and release the setup button to display “OIL LIFE XXX% HOLD RESET = NEW”.
2. Press and hold the SELECT/RESET stem for two seconds and release to reset the oil life to 100%.

**Note:** To change oil life 100% miles value from 7,500 miles (12,000 km) or 12 months to another value, proceed to Step 3.

3. Once “OIL LIFE SET TO XXX%” is displayed, release and press the SELECT/RESET stem to change the Oil Life Start Value. Each release and press will reduce the value by 10%.

**Note:** Oil life start value of 100% equals 7,500 miles (12,000 km) or 12 months. For example, setting oil life start value to 60% sets the oil life start value to 4,500 miles (7,200 km) and 219 days.

#### **UNITS**

Displays the current units English or Metric.

Press and hold the SELECT/RESET button to change from English to Metric.

Press the SELECT/RESET button for the next setup menu item or wait for more than four seconds to return to the info menu.

#### **PARK AID (if equipped)**

This feature sounds a warning tone to warn the driver of obstacles near the rear bumper, and functions only when R (Reverse) gear is selected.

26

## Instrument Cluster

Press and hold the SELECT/RESET stem to turn this feature on or off. (You can also choose to turn this feature on/off when the vehicle is placed in reverse.)

Press the SELECT/RESET stem for the next setup menu item or wait for more than four seconds to return to the info menu.

### **LANGUAGE = ENGLISH / SPANISH / FRENCH**

Allows you to choose which language the message center will display in. Selectable languages are English, Spanish, or French.

**Note:** When entering the setup menu and a non-English language has been selected, "PRESS RESET FOR ENGLISH" will be displayed to change back to English.

Press and hold the SELECT/RESET button to select a new language. Selectable languages are English, Spanish and French

Press and hold the SELECT/RESET button for two seconds to set the language choice.

Press the SELECT/RESET button for the next setup menu item or wait for more than four seconds to return to the info menu.

### **HOLD RESET FOR SYSTEM CHECK**

Press and hold the SELECT/RESET button to select SYSTEM CHECK when HOLD RESET FOR SYSTEM CHECK is displayed in the message center. For each of the monitored systems, the message center will indicate either an OK message or a warning message for two seconds. Pressing the SELECT/RESET button cycles the message center through each of the systems being monitored.

The sequence of the system check report and how it appears in the message center is as follows:

1. XXX% OIL LIFE
2. ENGINE HOURS
3. ENGINE IDLE HOURS (Diesel engine only)
4. CHARGING SYSTEM
5. DOOR AJAR
6. BRAKE SYSTEM
7. XX MILES TO E FUEL LEVEL XXX

### **System warnings**

System warnings alert you to possible problems or malfunctions in your vehicle's operating systems.

## Instrument Cluster

In the event of a multiple warning situation, the message center will cycle the display to show all warnings by displaying each one for four seconds.

The message center will display the last selected feature if there are no more warning messages.

Types of messages and warnings:

- Some messages will appear briefly to inform you of something you may need to take action on or be informed of.
- Some messages will appear once and then again when the vehicle is restarted.
- Some messages will reappear after clearing or being reset if a problem or condition is still present and needs your attention.
- Some messages can be acknowledged and reset by pressing the **SELECT/RESET** button. This allows you to use the full message center functionality by clearing the message.

**PARK BRAKE ENGAGED** — Displayed when the parking brake is applied (or not fully released).

**CHECK BRAKE SYSTEM** — Displayed when a fault has been detected by the ABS module.

**DRIVER DOOR AJAR** — Displayed when the driver's door is not completely closed.

**PASSENGER DOOR AJAR** — Displayed when the passenger's door is not completely closed.

**REAR LEFT DOOR AJAR** — Displayed when the rear left door is not completely closed.

**REAR RIGHT DOOR AJAR** — Displayed when the rear right door is not completely closed.

**XXX MILES TO E FUEL LEVEL LOW** — Displayed as an early reminder of a low fuel condition.

**CHECK PARK AID (if equipped)** — Displayed when the transmission is in R (Reverse) and the reverse sensing system (park aid) is disabled.

**TO STOP ALARM START VEHICLE (if equipped)** — Displayed when the perimeter alarm system is armed and the vehicle is entered using the key on the driver's side door. In order to prevent the perimeter alarm system from triggering, the ignition must be turned to start or on before the 12-second chime expires. See *Perimeter alarm system* in the *Locks and Security* chapter.

28

## Instrument Cluster

**WIRING FAULT ON TRAILER (if equipped)** — Displayed if there are certain faults in the vehicle wiring and trailer wiring/brake system. Refer to *Trailer towing* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

**TRAILER BRAKE MODULE FAULT (if equipped)** — Displayed and accompanied by a single chime, in response to faults sensed by the TBC. Refer to *Trailer towing* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

**TRAILER DISCONNECTED (if equipped)** — Displayed when a trailer connection becomes disconnected, either intentionally or unintentionally, and has been sensed during a given ignition cycle. Refer to *Trailer towing* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

**BRAKE FLUID LEVEL LOW** — Indicates the brake fluid level is low and the brake system should be inspected immediately. Refer to *Brake fluid* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

**LOW TIRE PRESSURE (if equipped)** — Displayed when one or more tires on your vehicle have low tire pressure. Refer to *Inflating your tires* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter.

**TIRE PRESSURE MONITOR FAULT (if equipped)** — Displayed when the Tire Pressure Monitoring System is malfunctioning. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

**TIRE PRESSURE SENSOR FAULT (if equipped)** — Displayed when a tire pressure sensor is malfunctioning, or your spare tire is in use. For more information on how the system operates under these conditions, refer to *Understanding Your Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

**ENGINE WARMING PLEASE WAIT XX (Diesel engine only)** — Displayed in extremely cold weather, typically below  $-15^{\circ}\text{F}$  ( $-26^{\circ}\text{C}$ ), if the engine block heater is not utilized. The engine will not respond to accelerator pedal movement for 30 seconds; this is done so the engine oil can be properly circulated to avoid engine damage from lack of lubrication. A timer will begin a countdown from 30 seconds. Once the counter has reached 0 (zero) seconds, OK TO DRIVE will be displayed and the engine will respond to accelerator pedal movement. Refer to your *Power Stroke 6.0 and 6.4 Liter Direct Injection Turbo Diesel Owner's Guide Supplement* for more information.

## Instrument Cluster

**OK TO DRIVE (Diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the time counter has reached 0 (zero) and the engine is sufficiently warm enough to drive in extremely cold weather (refer to the engine warming please wait message description mentioned previously). Refer to your *Power Stroke 6.0 and 6.4 Liter Direct Injection Turbo Diesel Owner's Guide Supplement* for more information.

**DRAIN WATER SEPARATOR (Diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the water separator has reached a predetermined capacity and needs to be drained. Refer to your *Power Stroke 6.0 and 6.4 Liter Direct Injection Turbo Diesel Owner's Guide Supplement* for more information.

**ENGINE TURNS OFF IN XX (Diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the vehicle is in the final 30 seconds of a countdown to where the engine will intentionally be turned off by the PCM. The diesel engine shutdown is a (regulatory) requirement which may be required of a particular diesel vehicle for sale in states requiring this feature. Refer to your *Power Stroke 6.0 and 6.4 Liter Direct Injection Turbo Diesel Owner's Guide Supplement* for more information.

**ENGINE TURNED OFF (Diesel engine only)** — Displayed after the 30 second countdown. Refer to your *Power Stroke 6.0 and 6.4 Liter Direct Injection Turbo Diesel Owner's Guide Supplement* for more information.

**DRIVE TO CLEAN EXHAUST FILTER (Diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) is full of particles (exhaust soot) and the vehicle is not being operated in a manner to allow normal cleaning. This message will stay on until the exhaust filter cleaning has begun, at which time the CLEANING EXHAUST FILTER message will be displayed. It is recommended the vehicle operator drive the vehicle above 30 mph (48 km/h) until the CLEANING EXHAUST FILTER message turns off. This message is NORMAL. Refer to your *Power Stroke 6.0 and 6.4 Liter Direct Injection Turbo Diesel Owner's Guide Supplement* for more information.

**Note:** If this message is ignored, your vehicle will continue to fill the Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) with particles (exhaust soot). If cleaning is not permitted, the  light will illuminate and engine power may be limited. If the vehicle is still not operated in a manner to allow cleaning, the service engine soon light  will illuminate and engine power will be further limited. Dealer service will then be required to restore your vehicle to full-power operation.

**Note:** Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) regeneration will not initiate at idle or in Power-Take-Off (PTO) mode. When DRIVE TO CLEAN EXHAUST

30

## Instrument Cluster

FILTER is displayed in the message center, PTO and/or Stationary Elevated Idle Control (SEIC) must be disengaged/inactive in order to properly clean the DPF. The vehicle must be driven until the CLEANING EXHAUST FILTER message turns off.

**CLEANING EXHAUST FILTER (Diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the vehicle has entered the cleaning mode. Various engine actions will raise the exhaust temperature in the Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) system to burn off the particles (exhaust soot). After the particles are burned off, the exhaust temperature will fall back to normal levels. This message is NORMAL. Refer to your *Power Stroke 6.0 and 6.4 Liter Direct Injection Turbo Diesel Owner's Guide Supplement* for more information.



**WARNING:** When the CLEANING EXHAUST FILTER message appears in the message center, do not park near flammable materials, vapors or structures until filter cleaning is complete.

**EXHAUST FILTER DRIVE COMPLETE (Diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) has been adequately cleaned after the DRIVE TO CLEAN EXHAUST FILTER followed by CLEANING EXHAUST FILTER messages have been displayed. This message is NORMAL. Refer to your *Power Stroke 6.0 and 6.4 Liter Direct Injection Turbo Diesel Owner's Guide Supplement* for more information.

**STOP SAFELY NOW (Diesel engine only)** — Displayed and a chime sounds when the vehicle exhaust system temperature exceeds intended operating range. If this warning occurs, engine power is reduced and the engine will shut down when the vehicle speed is below 3 mph (5 km/h).

**Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible** and contact your authorized dealer. Depending on the severity of the over-temperature condition, the vehicle may not restart after cycling the ignition off. If the vehicle restarts, there may be limited power. If the exhaust over-temperature condition reoccurs, the message center will display STOP SAFELY NOW, the chime will sound, and engine power will be reduced again and shut down below 3 mph (5 km/h). Refer to your *Power Stroke 6.0 and 6.4 Liter Direct Injection Turbo Diesel Owner's Guide Supplement* for more information.

**ENGINE OIL CHANGE SOON (Gas engine only)** — Displayed when the engine oil life remaining is 5% or less.

**OIL CHANGE REQUIRED (Gas engine only)** — Displayed when the oil life left reaches 0%. OIL LIFE OK displays after you have changed the oil.

## Instrument Cluster

### OPTIONAL MESSAGE CENTER (IF EQUIPPED)

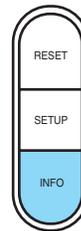
Your vehicle's message center is capable of monitoring many vehicle systems and will alert you to potential vehicle problems and various conditions with an informational message followed by a long indicator chime.

The message center display is located in the instrument cluster.

#### Selectable features

##### **Info (information menu)**

Press the INFO button repeatedly to cycle through the following features:



##### **TRIP A/B**

Registers the distance of individual journeys. Press and release the INFO button until the TRIP A/B appear in the display (this represents the trip mode). Press and hold the RESET button for two seconds to reset.

Refer to *UNITS* later in this section to switch the display from Metric to English.

##### **MILES (km) TO E**

This displays an estimate of approximately how far you can drive with the fuel remaining in your tank under normal driving conditions. Remember to turn the ignition off when refueling to allow this feature to correctly detect the added fuel.

This function will display LOW FUEL LEVEL when you have approximately 50 miles (80 km), to empty. Press RESET to clear this warning message. It will return at approximately 25 miles (40 km), 10 miles (16 km) and 0 miles (0 km) miles to empty.

The distance to empty is calculated using a running average fuel economy, which is based on your recent driving history of 500 miles (800 km). This value is not the same as the average fuel economy display. The running average fuel economy is re-initialized to a factory default value if the battery is disconnected.

32

## Instrument Cluster

### **XX.X MPG (L/100km)**

Average fuel economy displays your average fuel economy in miles/gallon or liters/100 km.

If you calculate your average fuel economy by dividing distance traveled by gallons of fuel used (liters of fuel used by 100 kilometers traveled), your figure may be different than displayed for the following reasons:

- Your vehicle was not perfectly level during fill-up
- Differences in the automatic shut-off points on the fuel pumps at service stations
- Variations in top-off procedure from one fill-up to another
- Rounding of the displayed values to the nearest 0.1 gallon (liter)

1. Drive the vehicle at least 5 miles (8 km) with the speed control system engaged to display a stabilized average.

2. Record the highway fuel economy for future reference.

It is important to press the RESET button (press and hold RESET for two seconds in order to reset the function) after setting the speed control to get accurate highway fuel economy readings.

### **TIMER**

Timer displays the trip elapsed drive time.

To operate, do the following:

1. Press and release RESET in order to start the timer.
2. Press and release RESET to pause the timer.
3. Press and hold RESET until the timer resets.

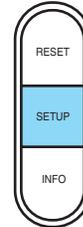
### **TBC GAIN (if equipped)**

Displays the level of trailer brake gain or if the trailer is not connected.

## Instrument Cluster

### **System check and vehicle feature customization**

Press the SETUP button repeatedly to cycle the message center through the following features:



**Note:** When returning to the SETUP menu and a non-English language has been selected, HOLD RESET FOR ENGLISH will be displayed to change back to English. Press and hold the RESET button to change back to English.

### **RESET FOR SYSTEM CHECK**

When this message appears, press the RESET button and the message center will begin to cycle through the following systems and provide a status of the item if needed.

1. OIL LIFE (Gas engine only)
2. ENGINE HOURS
3. CHARGING SYSTEM
4. DOOR AJAR
5. BRAKE SYSTEM
6. FUEL LEVEL

**Note:** Some systems show a message only if a condition is present.

### **OIL LIFE**

This displays the remaining oil life.

An oil change is required whenever indicated by the message center and according to the recommended maintenance schedule. USE ONLY RECOMMENDED ENGINE OILS.

To reset the oil monitoring system to 100% after each oil change (approximately 7,500 miles [12,000 km] or 12 months) perform the following:

1. Press and release the SETUP button to display “OIL LIFE XXX% HOLD RESET = NEW”.

34

## Instrument Cluster

2. Press and hold the RESET button for two seconds and release to reset the oil life to 100%.

**Note:** To change oil life 100% miles value from 7,500 miles (12,000 km) or 12 months to another value, proceed to Step 3.

3. Once “OIL LIFE SET TO XXX%” is displayed, release and press the RESET button to change the Oil Life Start Value. Each release and press will reduce the value by 10%.

**Note:** Oil life start value of 100% equals 7,500 miles (12,000 km) or 12 months. For example, setting oil life start value to 60% sets the oil life start value to 4,500 miles (7,200 km) and 219 days.

### UNITS

Displays the current units English or Metric.

Press the RESET button to change from English to Metric.

### AUTOLAMP (SEC)

This feature keeps your headlights on for up to three minutes after the ignition is switched off.

Press the RESET control to select the new Autolamp delay values of 0, 10, 20, 30, 60, 90, 120 or 180 seconds.

### AUTOLOCK

This feature automatically locks all vehicle doors when the vehicle is shifted into any gear, putting the vehicle in motion.

Press the RESET control to turn autolock on or off.

### AUTOUNLOCK

This feature automatically unlocks all vehicle doors when the driver's door is opened within 10 minutes of the ignition being turned off.

Press RESET to turn it off or on.

### ZONE <XX> RESET = CHANGE

The compass heading is displayed as one of N, NE, E, SE, S, SW, W and NW in the message center display.

The compass reading may be affected when you drive near large buildings, bridges, power lines and powerful broadcast antenna. Magnetic or metallic objects placed in, on or near the vehicle may also affect compass accuracy.

Usually, when something affects the compass readings, the compass will correct itself after a few days of operating your vehicle in normal

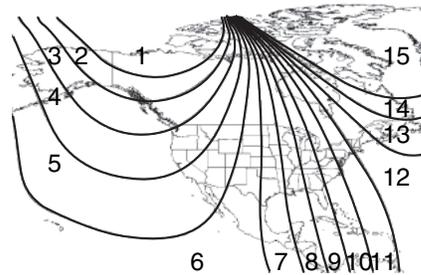
## Instrument Cluster

conditions. If the compass still appears to be inaccurate, a manual calibration may be necessary. Refer to *Compass zone/calibration adjustment*.

Most geographic areas (zones) have a magnetic north compass point that varies slightly from the northerly direction on maps. This variation is four degrees between adjacent zones and will become noticeable as the vehicle crosses multiple zones. A correct zone setting will eliminate this error. Do the following to set the proper zone:

### **Compass zone/calibration adjustment**

1. Determine your magnetic zone by referring to the zone map.
2. Turn ignition to the on position.
3. Start the engine.



4. From the SETUP menu, press and release the RESET button until the message center display changes to show the current zone setting ZONE <XX> RESET = CHANGE.
5. Press and release the RESET button repeatedly until the correct zone setting for your geographic location is displayed on the message center. The range of zone values are from 1 to 15 and “wraps” back to 1.
6. To exit the zone setting mode, and to “lock in” your change:
  - press and release the SETUP button or,
  - press INFO button to exit or,
  - wait four seconds and the zone will be “locked in”.

Perform compass calibration in an open area free from steel structures and high voltage lines. For optimum calibration, turn off all electrical accessories (heater/air conditioning, wipers, etc.) and make sure all vehicle doors are shut.

7. Press the RESET button until the display reads RESET FOR CALIBRATION to start the compass calibration function.
8. Slowly drive the vehicle in a circle (less than 3 mph [5 km/h]) until the CIRCLE SLOWLY TO CALIBRATE display changes to CALIBRATION COMPLETED. It will take up to five circles to complete calibration.

36

## Instrument Cluster

9. The compass is now calibrated.

**Note:** If the RESET button is pressed or three minutes has expired, the display will go back to the INFO menu and will show CAL instead of the compass heading until the compass is calibrated.

### **PARK AID (if equipped)**

This feature sounds a warning tone to warn the driver of obstacles near the rear bumper, and functions only when R (Reverse) gear is selected.

Press and hold the SELECT/RESET stem to turn this feature on or off. (You can also choose to turn this feature on/off when the vehicle is placed in reverse.)

Press the SELECT/RESET stem for the next setup menu item or wait for more than four seconds to return to the info menu.

### **LANGUAGE = ENGLISH / SPANISH / FRENCH**

Allows you to choose which language the message center will display in. Selectable languages are English, Spanish, or French.

Waiting four seconds or pressing the RESET button cycles the message center through each of the language choices.

Press and hold the RESET button for two seconds to set the language choice.

### **System warnings**

System warnings alert you to possible problems or malfunctions in your vehicle's operating systems.

In the event of a multiple warning situation, the message center will cycle the display to show all warnings by displaying each one for four seconds.

The message center will display the last selected feature if there are no more warning messages.

Types of messages and warnings:

- Some messages will appear briefly to inform you of something you may need to take action on or be informed of.
- Some messages will appear once and then again when the vehicle is restarted.
- Some messages will reappear after clearing or being reset if a problem or condition is still present and needs your attention.
- Some messages can be acknowledged and reset by pressing RESET. This allows you to use the full message center functionality by clearing the message.

## Instrument Cluster

**PARK BRAKE ENGAGED** — Displayed when the parking brake is applied (or not fully released).

**CHECK BRAKE SYSTEM** — Displayed when a fault has been detected by the ABS module.

**DRIVER DOOR AJAR** — Displayed when the driver's door is not completely closed.

**PASSENGER DOOR AJAR** — Displayed when the passenger's door is not completely closed.

**REAR LEFT DOOR AJAR** — Displayed when the rear left door is not completely closed.

**REAR RIGHT DOOR AJAR** — Displayed when the rear right door is not completely closed.

**XXX MILES TO E FUEL LEVEL LOW** — Displayed as an early reminder of a low fuel condition.

**CHECK PARK AID (if equipped)** — Displayed when the transmission is in R (Reverse) and the reverse sensing system (park aid) is disabled.

**TO STOP ALARM START VEHICLE (if equipped)** — Displayed when the perimeter alarm system is armed and the vehicle is entered using the key on the driver's side door. In order to prevent the perimeter alarm system from triggering, the ignition must be turned to start or on before the 12-second chime expires. See *Perimeter alarm system* in the *Locks and Security* chapter.

**WIRING FAULT ON TRAILER (if equipped)** — Displayed and accompanied by a single chime if there are certain faults in the vehicle wiring and trailer wiring/brake system. Refer to *Trailer towing* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

**TRAILER BRAKE MODULE FAULT (if equipped)** — Displayed and accompanied by a single chime in response to faults sensed by the TBC. Refer to *Trailer towing* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

**TRAILER CONNECTED (if equipped)** — Displayed when a correct trailer connection (a trailer with electric trailer brakes) is sensed during a given ignition cycle. Refer to *Trailer towing* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

**TRAILER DISCONNECTED (if equipped)** — Displayed and accompanied by a single chime when a trailer connection becomes disconnected, either intentionally or unintentionally, and has been sensed during a given ignition cycle. Refer to *Trailer towing* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

## Instrument Cluster

**BRAKE FLUID LEVEL LOW** — Indicates the brake fluid level is low and the brake system should be inspected immediately. Refer to *Brake fluid* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

**LOW TIRE PRESSURE (if equipped)** — Displayed when one or more tires on your vehicle have low tire pressure. Refer to *Inflating your tires* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter.

**TIRE PRESSURE MONITOR FAULT (if equipped)** — Displayed when the Tire Pressure Monitoring System is malfunctioning. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

**TIRE PRESSURE SENSOR FAULT (if equipped)** — Displayed when a tire pressure sensor is malfunctioning, or your spare tire is in use. For more information on how the system operates under these conditions, refer to *Understanding Your Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

**ENGINE WARMING PLEASE WAIT XX (Diesel engine only)** — Displayed in extremely cold weather, typically below  $-15^{\circ}\text{F}$  ( $-26^{\circ}\text{C}$ ), if the engine block heater is not utilized. The engine will not respond to accelerator pedal movement for 30 seconds; this is done so the engine oil can be properly circulated to avoid engine damage from lack of lubrication. A timer will begin a countdown from 30 seconds. Once the counter has reached 0 (zero) seconds, OK TO DRIVE will be displayed and the engine will respond to accelerator pedal movement. Refer to your *Power Stroke 6.0 and 6.4 Liter Direct Injection Turbo Diesel Owner's Guide Supplement* for more information.

**OK TO DRIVE (Diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the time counter has reached 0 (zero) and the engine is sufficiently warm enough to drive in extremely cold weather (refer to the engine warming please wait message description mentioned previously). Refer to your *Power Stroke 6.0 and 6.4 Liter Direct Injection Turbo Diesel Owner's Guide Supplement* for more information.

**DRAIN WATER SEPARATOR (Diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the water separator has reached a predetermined capacity and needs to be drained. Refer to your *Power Stroke 6.0 and 6.4 Liter Direct Injection Turbo Diesel Owner's Guide Supplement* for more information.

## Instrument Cluster

**ENGINE TURNS OFF IN XX (Diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the vehicle is in the final 30 seconds of a countdown to where the engine will intentionally be turned off by the PCM. The diesel engine shutdown is a (regulatory) requirement which may be required of a particular diesel vehicle for sale in states requiring this feature. Refer to your *Power Stroke 6.0 and 6.4 Liter Direct Injection Turbo Diesel Owner's Guide Supplement* for more information.

**ENGINE TURNED OFF (Diesel engine only)** — Displayed after the 30 second countdown. Refer to your *Power Stroke 6.0 and 6.4 Liter Direct Injection Turbo Diesel Owner's Guide Supplement* for more information.

**DRIVE TO CLEAN EXHAUST FILTER (Diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) is full of particles (exhaust soot) and the vehicle is not being operated in a manner to allow normal cleaning. This message will stay on until the exhaust filter cleaning has begun, at which time the CLEANING EXHAUST FILTER message will be displayed. It is recommended the vehicle operator drive the vehicle above 30 mph (48 km/h) until the CLEANING EXHAUST FILTER message turns off. This message is NORMAL. Refer to your *Power Stroke 6.0 and 6.4 Liter Direct Injection Turbo Diesel Owner's Guide Supplement* for more information.

**Note:** If this message is ignored, your vehicle will continue to fill the Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) with particles (exhaust soot). If cleaning is not permitted, the  light will illuminate and engine power may be limited. If the vehicle is still not operated in a manner to allow cleaning, the service engine soon light  will illuminate and engine power will be further limited. Dealer service will then be required to restore your vehicle to full-power operation.

**Note:** Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) regeneration will not initiate at idle or in Power-Take-Off (PTO) mode. When DRIVE TO CLEAN EXHAUST FILTER is displayed in the message center, PTO and/or Stationary Elevated Idle Control (SEIC) must be disengaged/inactive in order to properly clean the DPF. The vehicle must be driven until the CLEANING EXHAUST FILTER message turns off.

**CLEANING EXHAUST FILTER (Diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the vehicle has entered the cleaning mode. Various engine actions will raise the exhaust temperature in the Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) system to burn off the particles (exhaust soot). After the particles are burned off, the exhaust temperature will fall back to normal levels. This message is NORMAL. Refer to your *Power Stroke 6.0 and 6.4 Liter Direct Injection Turbo Diesel Owner's Guide Supplement* for more information.

40

## Instrument Cluster



**WARNING:** When the CLEANING EXHAUST FILTER message appears in the message center, do not park near flammable materials, vapors or structures until filter cleaning is complete.

**EXHAUST FILTER DRIVE COMPLETE (Diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) has been adequately cleaned after the DRIVE TO CLEAN EXHAUST FILTER followed by CLEANING EXHAUST FILTER messages have been displayed. This message is NORMAL. Refer to your *Power Stroke 6.0 and 6.4 Liter Direct Injection Turbo Diesel Owner's Guide Supplement* for more information.

**STOP SAFELY NOW (Diesel engine only)** — Displayed and a chime sounds when the vehicle exhaust system temperature exceeds intended operating range. If this warning occurs, engine power is reduced and the engine will shut down when the vehicle speed is below 3 mph (5 km/h). **Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible** and contact your authorized dealer. Depending on the severity of the over-temperature condition, the vehicle may not restart after cycling the ignition off. If the vehicle restarts, there may be limited power. If the exhaust over-temperature condition reoccurs, the message center will display STOP SAFELY NOW, the chime will sound, and engine power will be reduced again and shut down below 3 mph (5 km/h). Refer to your *Power Stroke 6.0 and 6.4 Liter Direct Injection Turbo Diesel Owner's Guide Supplement* for more information.

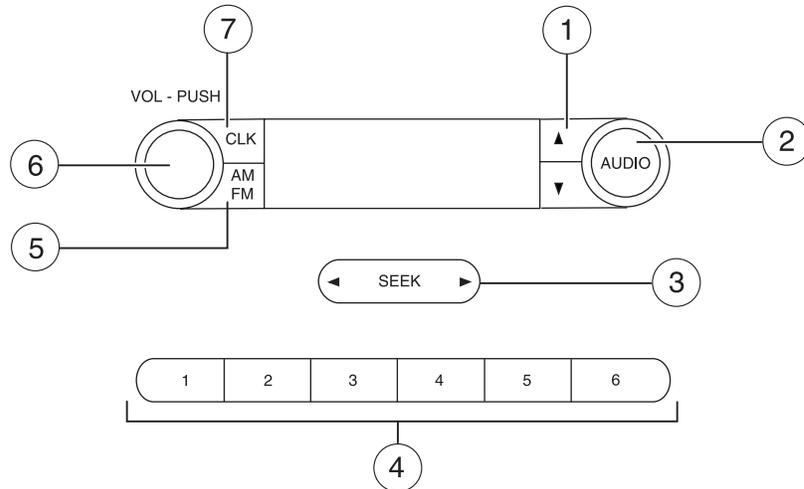
**ENGINE OIL CHANGE SOON (Gas engine only)** — Displayed when the engine oil life remaining is 5% or less.

**OIL CHANGE REQUIRED (Gas engine only)** — Displayed when the oil life left reaches 0%. OIL LIFE OK displays after you have changed the oil.

## Entertainment Systems

### AUDIO SYSTEMS

#### AM/FM stereo system (if equipped)



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device that may take their focus off the road. The driver's primary responsibility is the safe operation of their vehicle. Only use cell phones and other devices not essential to the driving task when it is safe to do so.

The AM/FM stereo system does not contain rear speakers; only front driver side and passenger side speakers.

**Accessory delay:** Your vehicle is equipped with accessory delay. With this feature, the window switches and radio may be used for up to 10 minutes after the ignition is turned off or until either front door is opened.

1. **▲ / ▼ (Tuner):** Press to manually go up or down the radio frequency. Press and hold for a fast advance through radio frequencies. Also use in AUDIO mode to gain access to various settings.



42

## Entertainment Systems

2. **AUDIO:** Press AUDIO repeatedly to gain access to the following settings:



**TREB (Treble):** Press AUDIO to reach the treble setting.

Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK ▶ .

**BASS (Bass):** Press AUDIO to reach the bass setting. Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK ▶ .

**BAL (Balance):** Press AUDIO to reach the balance setting.

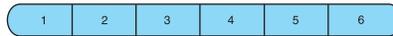
Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK ▶ to adjust between the left and right speakers.

**Setting the clock:** Press and hold CLK until the hours start to flash, then use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK ▶ to adjust. To adjust minutes, press CLK again to make the minutes start to flash and use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK ▶ to adjust. Press CLK again to exit the clock setting mode.

3. **SEEK:** Press ◀ SEEK ▶ to access the previous/next strong station.



4. **Memory presets:** To set a station: Select frequency band AM/FM1/FM2; tune to a station, press and hold a preset button until sound returns. You may store up to six stations in each frequency band for a total of 18.



5. **AM/FM:** Press AM/FM to select AM/FM1/FM2 frequency band.



6. **ON/OFF/Volume:** Press VOL - PUSH to turn ON/OFF. Turn VOL - PUSH to increase/decrease volume.

VOL - PUSH

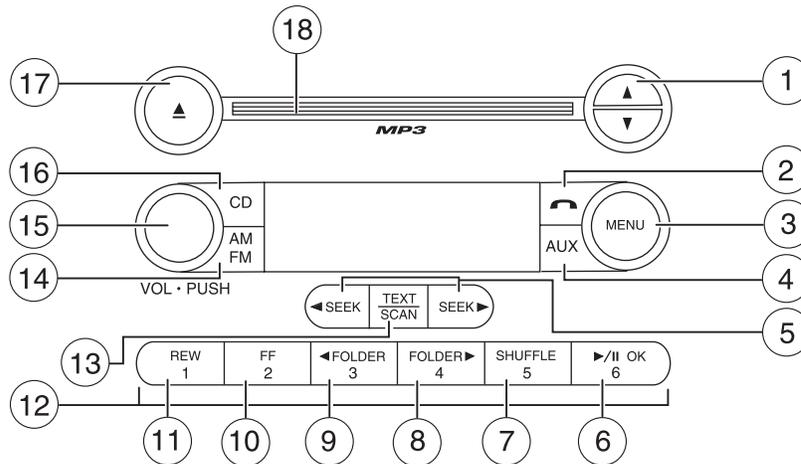


## Entertainment Systems

7. **CLK (Clock):** Press CLK to toggle between the clock and radio frequency.



### AM/FM stereo single CD/satellite-compatible sound system (if equipped)



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device that may take their focus off the road. The driver's primary responsibility is the safe operation of their vehicle. Only use cell phones and other devices not essential to the driving task when it is safe to do so.

**Accessory delay:** Your vehicle is equipped with accessory delay which allows you to operate the window switches and the audio for up to 10 minutes after the ignition has been turned off or until either front door is opened.

1. ▲ / ▼ : Press ▲ / ▼ to manually go up or down the radio frequency. Press and hold for a fast advance through radio frequencies.



44

## Entertainment Systems

**In satellite radio mode (if equipped)**, press ▲ / ▼ to tune to the next/previous channel.

*Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS® radio subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.*

2. **☎ (Phone):** If your vehicle is equipped with SYNC®, press to access SYNC PHONE features. For further information, please refer to your SYNC® supplement. If your vehicle is not equipped with SYNC®, the display will read NO PHONE.



3. **MENU:** Press MENU repeatedly to access to the following settings:



**Setting the clock:** Press MENU until SET HOUR or SET MINUTES is displayed. Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to adjust the hours/minutes.

**SATELLITE RADIO MENU (if equipped):** Press MENU when satellite radio mode is active to access. Press OK to enter into the satellite radio menu. Press ▲ / ▼ to cycle through the following options:

- **CATEGORY:** Press OK to enter category mode. Press ▲ / ▼ to scroll through the list of available SIRIUS® channel Categories (Pop, Rock, News, etc.) Press OK when the desired category appears in the display. After a category is selected, press SEEK to search for that specific category of channels only (i.e. ROCK). You may also select CATEGORY ALL to seek all available SIRIUS® categories and channels. Press OK to close and return to the main menu.
- **SAVE SONG:** Press OK to save the currently playing song title in the system's memory. (If you try to save something other than a song, CANT SAVE will appear in the display.) When the chosen song is playing on any satellite radio channel, the system will alert you with an audible prompt. Press OK while SONG ALERT is in the display and the system will take you to the channel playing the desired song. You can save up to 20 song titles. If you attempt to save a song when the system is full, the display will read REPLACE SONG? Press OK to access the saved songs and press ▲ / ▼ to cycle through the saved songs. When the song appears in the display that you would like to replace, press OK. SONG REPLACED will appear in the display.

## Entertainment Systems

- DELETE SONG:** Press OK to delete a song title from the system's memory. Press ▲ / ▼ to cycle through the saved songs. When the song title appears in the display that you would like to delete, press OK. The song will appear in the display for confirmation. Press OK again and the display will read SONG DELETED. If you do not want to delete the currently listed song, press ▲ / ▼ to select either RETURN or CANCEL.

**Note:** If there are no songs presently saved, the display will read NO SONGS.
- DELETE ALL SONGS:** Press OK to delete all songs from the system's memory. The display will read ARE YOU SURE? Press OK to confirm deletion of all saved songs and the display will read ALL DELETED.

**Note:** If there are no songs presently saved, the display will read NO SONGS.
- ENABLE ALERTS / DISABLE ALERTS:** Press OK to enable/disable the satellite alert status which alerts you when your selected songs are playing on a satellite radio channel. (The system default is disabled.) SONG ALERTS ENABLED/DISABLED will appear in the display. The menu listing will display the opposite state. For example, if you have chosen to enable the song alerts, the menu listing will read DISABLE as the alerts are currently on, so your other option is to turn them off.

*Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS® radio subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.*

**AUTOSET:** Press MENU until the display reads AUTOSET. Autoset allows you to set the strongest local radio stations without losing your original manually set preset stations for AM/FM1/FM2. Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to turn on/off.

When the six strongest stations are filled, the station stored in preset 1 will begin playing. If there are less than six strong stations, the system will store the last one in the remaining presets.

**BASS:** Press MENU to reach the bass setting. Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to adjust.

**TREB (Treble):** Press MENU to reach the treble setting. Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to adjust.

**BAL (Balance):** Press MENU to reach the balance setting. Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to adjust the audio between the left (L) and right (R) speakers.

46

## Entertainment Systems

**FADE:** Press MENU to reach the fade setting. Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to adjust the audio between the back (B) and front (F) speakers.

**SPEEDVOL (Speed sensitive volume, if equipped):** Press MENU to reach the SPEEDVOL setting. Radio volume automatically gets louder with increasing vehicle speed to compensate for road and wind noise. Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to adjust.

The default setting is *off*; increasing your vehicle speed will not change the volume level.

Adjust 1–7: Increasing this setting from 1 (lowest setting) to 7 (highest setting) allows the radio volume to automatically change slightly with vehicle speed to compensate for road and wind noise.

Recommended level is 1–3; SPEED OFF turns the feature off and level 7 is the maximum setting.

**Track/Folder mode:** Available only on MP3 discs in CD mode. In Track mode, pressing ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ will scroll through all tracks on the disc

In Folder mode, pressing ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ will scroll only through tracks within the selected folder.

Press ◀ FOLDER, FOLDER ▶ to access the previous/next folder (if available).

**COMPRESS (Compression):** Available only in CD/MP3 mode. Press MENU until COMPRESS ON/OFF appears in the display.

Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to toggle ON/OFF. When COMPRESS is ON, the system will bring the soft and loud CD passages together for a more consistent listening level.

4. **AUX:** Press repeatedly to cycle through FES/DVD (if equipped), LINE IN (auxiliary audio mode, if equipped) and SAT1, SAT2 and SAT3 modes (satellite radio, if equipped).

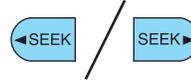


For location and further information on auxiliary audio mode, refer to *Auxiliary input jack* later in this chapter.

*Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS® radio subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.*

## Entertainment Systems

5. **SEEK: In radio mode,** press ◀ / ▶ to access the previous/next strong station.



**In CD/MP3 mode,** press ◀ / ▶ to access the previous/next CD/MP3 track.

**In satellite radio mode (if equipped),** press ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to seek to the previous/next channel. If a specific category is selected, (Jazz, Rock, News, etc.), press ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to seek to the previous/next channel in the selected category. Press and hold ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to fast seek through the previous /next channels. In TEXT MODE, press ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to view the previous/additional display text.

In CATEGORY MODE, press ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to select a category. *Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS® radio subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.*

6. ▶ / || **OK (Play/Pause):** This control is operational in CD/MP3 mode. When a CD/MP3 is playing, press to pause or play the current CD/MP3. The CD/MP3 status will display in the radio display.



**OK:** Use in various menu selections.

If your vehicle is equipped with a Family Entertainment System (FES) please refer to the *Family entertainment DVD system* section later in this chapter.

7. **SHUFFLE:** In CD/MP3 mode, press SHUFFLE to engage shuffle mode. SHUFFLE ON will appear in the display. If you wish to engage shuffle mode right away, press SEEK to begin random play. Otherwise, random play will begin when the current track is finished playing. CD SHUF will appear in the display. To disengage, press SHUFFLE again. SHUFFLE OFF will appear in the display.



**Note:** In CD/MP3 mode, press SHUFFLE to play the tracks in random order. In MP3 folder mode, the system will randomly play all tracks within the current folder.

48

## Entertainment Systems

8. **FOLDER**  : In folder mode, press FOLDER  to access next folder on MP3 discs, if available.



9.  **FOLDER**: In folder mode, press  FOLDER to access the previous folder on MP3 discs, if available.



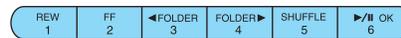
10. **FF (Fast forward)**: Press FF to manually advance in a CD/MP3 track.



11. **REW (Rewind)**: Press REW to manually reverse in a CD/MP3 track.



12. **Memory presets**: To set a station: Select frequency band AM/FM1/FM2; tune to a station, press and hold a preset control until sound returns. You may store up to six stations in each frequency band for a total of 18.



**In satellite radio mode (if equipped)**, there are 18 available presets, six each for SAT1, SAT2 and SAT3. To save satellite channels in your memory presets, tune to the desired channel then press and hold a preset control until sound returns.

*Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS® radio subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.*

13. **TEXT/SCAN: In radio and CD/MP3 mode**, press and hold for a brief sampling of radio stations or CD tracks. Press again to stop.



**In CD/MP3 mode**, press and release to display track title, artist name, and disc title.

**In satellite radio mode (if equipped)**, press and release to enter TEXT MODE and display the current song title. While in TEXT MODE, press again to scroll through the current song title, artist, channel category and the SIRIUS® long channel name.

**In TEXT MODE** sometimes the display requires additional text to be displayed. When the “>” indicator is active, press SEEK  to view the additional display text. When the “<” indicator is active, press  SEEK to view the previous display text.

## Entertainment Systems

**In satellite radio mode (if equipped)**, press and hold to hear a brief sampling of the next channels. Press again to stop. In CATEGORY MODE, press SCAN to hear a brief sampling of the channels in the selected category. Press again to stop.

*Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS® radio subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.*

14. **AM/FM:** Press AM/FM to select AM/FM1/FM2 frequency band.



15. **ON/OFF/Volume:** Press VOL-PUSH to turn on/off. Turn VOL-PUSH to increase/decrease volume.



**Note:** If the volume is set above a certain level and the ignition is turned off, the volume will come back on at a "nominal" listening level when the ignition switch is turned back on.

16. **CD:** Press to enter CD/MP3 mode. If a CD is already loaded into the system, CD/MP3 play will begin where it ended last.



17. **▲ (CD eject):** Press to eject a CD.

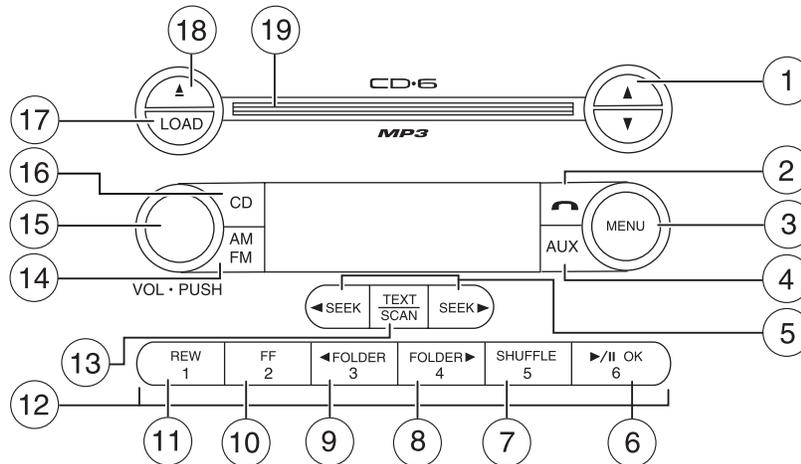


18. **CD slot:** Insert a CD label side up in the CD slot.



## Entertainment Systems

### Premium/Premium plus in-dash six CD/MP3/satellite compatible sound system (if equipped)



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device that may take their focus off the road. The driver's primary responsibility is the safe operation of their vehicle. Only use cell phones and other devices not essential to the driving task when it is safe to do so.

**Accessory delay:** Your vehicle is equipped with accessory delay which allows you to operate the window switches and audio for up to ten minutes after the ignition has turned off or until either front door has opened.

1. ▲ / ▼ **(Tune/Disc selector):**

**In radio mode,** press to manually go up (▲) or down (▼) the radio frequency. Press and hold for a fast advance through radio frequencies.

**In menu mode,** use to select various settings.

**In CD/MP3 mode,** press to select the desired disc.



## Entertainment Systems

*Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS® radio subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.*

2. **PHONE** (Phone): If your vehicle is equipped with SYNC®, press to access SYNC PHONE features. For further information, please refer to supplemental information on SYNC® included with your vehicle. If your vehicle is not equipped with SYNC®, the display will read NO PHONE.



3. **MENU**: Press repeatedly to access to the following settings:



**Setting the clock:** Press until SELECT HOUR or SELECT MINS is displayed. Press ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK ▶ to adjust the hours/minutes.

**SATELLITE RADIO MENU (if equipped):** Press MENU when satellite radio mode is active to access. Press OK to enter into the satellite radio menu. Press ▲ / ▼ to cycle through the following options:

- **CATEGORY:** Press OK to enter category mode. Press ▲ / ▼ to scroll through the list of available SIRIUS® channel Categories (Pop, Rock, News, etc.) Press OK when the desired category appears in the display. After a category is selected, press SEEK to search for that specific category of channels only (i.e. ROCK). You may also select CATEGORY ALL to seek all available SIRIUS® categories and channels. Press OK to close and return to the main menu.
- **SAVE SONG:** Press OK to save the currently playing song title in the system's memory. (If you try to save something other than a song, CANT SAVE will appear in the display.) When the chosen song is playing on any satellite radio channel, the system will alert you with an audible prompt. Press OK while SONG ALERT is in the display and the system will take you to the channel playing the desired song. You can save up to 20 song titles. If you attempt to save a song when the system is full, the display will read REPLACE SONG? Press OK to access the saved songs and press ▲ / ▼ to cycle through the saved songs. When the song appears in the display that you would like to replace, press OK. SONG REPLACED will appear in the display.
- **DELETE SONG:** Press OK to delete a song from the system's memory. Press ▲ / ▼ to cycle through the saved songs. When the

52

## Entertainment Systems

song appears in the display that you would like to delete, press OK. The song will appear in the display for confirmation. Press OK again and the display will read SONG DELETED. If you do not want to delete the currently listed song, press ▲ / ▼ to select either RETURN or CANCEL.

**Note:** If there are no songs presently saved, the display will read NO SONGS.

- **DELETE ALL SONGS:** Press OK to delete all songs from the system's memory. The display will read ARE YOU SURE ? Press OK to confirm deletion of all saved songs and the display will read ALL DELETED.  
**Note:** If there are no songs presently saved, the display will read NO SONGS.
- **ENABLE ALERTS / DISABLE ALERTS:** Press OK to enable/disable the satellite alert status which alerts you when your selected songs are playing on a satellite radio channel. (The system default is disabled.) SONG ALERTS ENABLED/DISABLED will appear in the display. The menu listing will display the opposite state. For example, if you have chosen to enable the song alerts, the menu listing will read DISABLE as the alerts are currently on, so your other option is to turn them off.

*Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS® radio subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.*

**AUTOSET:** Press MENU until the display reads AUTOSET. Autoset allows you to set the strongest local radio stations without losing your original manually set preset stations for AM/FM1/FM2. Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to turn on/off.

When the six strongest stations are filled, the station stored in preset 1 will begin playing. If there are less than six strong stations, the system will store the last one in the remaining presets.

**RBDS:** Available only in FM mode. This feature allows you to search RBDS-equipped stations for a certain category of music format: CLASSIC, COUNTRY, INFORM, JAZZ/RB, ROCK, etc.

**To activate,** press MENU repeatedly until RBDS (ON/OFF) appears in the display. Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK ▶ to toggle RBDS ON/OFF. When RBDS is OFF, you will not be able to search for RBDS equipped stations or view the station name or type.

**To search for specific RBDS music categories:** When the desired category appears in the display, press ▲ / ▼ to find the desired type, then press and release ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ or press and hold SCAN to begin the search.

## Entertainment Systems

**To view the station name or type:** When the desired category appears in the display, press TEXT/SCAN to toggle between displaying the station type (COUNTRY, ROCK, etc.) or the station name (WYCD, WXYZ, etc.).

**BASS:** Press MENU to reach the bass setting. Use ▲ /▼ /◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to adjust.

**TREB (Treble):** Press MENU to reach the treble setting. Use ▲ /▼ /◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to adjust.

**BAL (Balance):** Press MENU to reach the balance setting. Use ▲ /▼ /◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to adjust the audio between the left (L) and right (R) speakers.

**FADE:** Press MENU to reach the fade setting. Use ▲ /▼ /◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to adjust the audio between the back (B) and front (F) speakers.

**ALL SEATS (Occupancy mode)** (Available on Audiophile radios only): Press MENU repeatedly to access. Press ▲ /▼ /◀ SEEK ▶ to optimize sound for ALL SEATS, DRIVERS SEAT or REAR SEATS.

**SPEEDVOL (Speed sensitive volume, if equipped):** Press MENU to reach the SPEEDVOL setting. Radio volume automatically gets louder with increasing vehicle speed to compensate for road and wind noise. Use ▲ /▼ /◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to adjust.

The default setting is *off*; increasing your vehicle speed will not change the volume level.

Adjust 1–7: Increasing this setting from 1 (lowest setting) to 7 (highest setting) allows the radio volume to automatically change slightly with vehicle speed to compensate for road and wind noise.

Recommended level is 1–3; SPEED OFF turns the feature off and level 7 is the maximum setting.

**Track/Folder Mode:** Available only on MP3 discs in CD mode. In Track Mode, pressing ◀ SEEK ▶ will scroll through all tracks on the disc. In Folder mode, pressing ◀ SEEK ▶ will scroll only through tracks within the selected folder. Press ◀ FOLDER, FOLDER ▶ to access the previous/next folder (if available).

54

## Entertainment Systems

**COMPRESS (Compression):** Available only in CD/MP3 mode. Press MENU until COMPRESS ON/OFF appears in the display.

Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to toggle ON/OFF. When COMPRESS is ON, the system will bring soft and loud CD passages together for a more consistent listening level.

4. **AUX:** Press repeatedly to cycle through FES/DVD (if equipped), LINE IN (Auxiliary audio mode, if equipped), SYNC®, SAT1, SAT2 and SAT3 modes (satellite radio if equipped).



For location and further information on the auxiliary audio mode, refer to *Auxiliary input jack* later in this chapter.

If your vehicle is equipped with a Family Entertainment System (FES) please refer to the *Family entertainment DVD system* section later in this chapter.

*Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS® radio subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.*

5. **SEEK: In radio mode,** press ◀ / ▶ to access the previous/next strong station.



**In CD/MP3 mode,** press ◀ / ▶ to access the previous/next CD track.

**In satellite radio mode (if equipped),** press ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to seek to the previous/next channel. If a specific category is selected, (Jazz, Rock, News, etc.), press ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to seek to the previous/next channel in the selected category. Press and hold ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to fast seek through the previous /next channels.

**In TEXT MODE,** press ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to view the previous/additional display text.

**In CATEGORY MODE,** press ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to select a category.

*Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS® radio subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.*

6. ▶ / || **OK (Play/Pause):** This control is operational in CD/MP3 mode. When a CD/MP3 is playing, press to pause or play the current CD. The CD status will display in the radio display.



## Entertainment Systems

**OK:** Use in various menu selections.

If your vehicle is equipped with a Family Entertainment System (FES) please refer to the *Family entertainment DVD system* section later in this chapter.

7. **SHUFFLE:** In CD/MP3 mode, press SHUFFLE to engage shuffle mode. SHUFFLE ON will appear in the display. If you wish to engage shuffle mode right away, press SEEK to begin random play. Otherwise, random play will begin when the current track is finished playing. CD SHUF will appear in the display. To disengage, press SHUFFLE again. SHUFFLE OFF will appear in the display.



**Note:** In track mode, all tracks on the *current* disc will shuffle in random order. In MP3 folder mode, the system will randomly play all tracks within the current folder.

8. **FOLDER** ► : In folder mode, press FOLDER ► to access next folder on MP3 discs, if available.



9. ◀ **FOLDER:** In folder mode, press ◀ FOLDER to access the previous folder on MP3 discs, if folders are available.



10. **FF (Fast forward):** Press FF to manually advance in a CD/MP3 track.



11. **REW (Rewind):** Press REW to manually reverse in a CD/MP3 track.



12. **Memory presets:** To set a station: Select frequency band AM/FM1/FM2; tune to a station, press and hold a preset control until sound returns. You may store up to six stations in each frequency band for a total of 18.



**In satellite radio mode (if equipped),** there are 18 available presets, six each for SAT1, SAT2 and SAT3. To save satellite channels in your memory presets, tune to the desired channel then press and hold a preset control until sound returns.

*Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS® radio subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.*

## Entertainment Systems

### 13. **TEXT/SCAN: In radio and CD/MP3 mode**, press and hold for

2 seconds to activate mode to hear a brief sampling of radio stations or CD tracks. Press again to stop.



**In CD/MP3 mode**, press and release to display track title, artist name, and disc title and file name (if available).

**In satellite radio mode (if equipped)**, press and release to enter TEXT MODE and display the current song title. While in TEXT MODE, press again to scroll through the current song title, artist, channel category and the SIRIUS® long channel name.

In TEXT MODE, sometimes the display requires additional text to be displayed. When the “>” indicator is active, press SEEK ► to view the additional display text. When the “>” indicator is active, press ◀ SEEK to view the previous display text.

**In satellite radio mode (if equipped)**, press and hold to hear a brief sampling of the next channels. Press again to stop.

In CATEGORY MODE, press SCAN to hear a brief sampling of channels in the selected category. Press again to stop.

*Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS® subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.*

### 14. **AM/FM:** Press to select AM/FM1/FM2 frequency band.



### 15. **ON/OFF/Volume:** Press to turn ON/OFF. Turn to increase/decrease volume.



VOL - PUSH

**Note:** If the volume is set above a certain level and the ignition is turned off, the volume will come back on at a “nominal” listening level when the ignition switch is turned back on.

### 16. **CD:** Press to enter CD/MP3 mode. If a CD is already loaded into the system, CD/MP3 play will begin where it ended last.



### 17. **LOAD:** To load a disc into the system, press LOAD. Select a slot number using memory presets 1–6. When the display reads LOAD CD#, load the desired disc, label side up.



## Entertainment Systems

If you do not choose a slot within five seconds, the system will choose for you. Once loaded, the first track will begin to play.

**To auto load up to 6 discs**, press and hold LOAD until the display reads AUTOLOAD#. Load the desired disc, label side up. The system will prompt you to load discs for the remaining available slots. Insert the discs, one at a time, label side up, when prompted. Once loaded, the disc in the last slot loaded will begin to play.

**Note:** An MP3 disc with folders will show F001 (folder #) T001 (track #) in the display. An MP3 disc without folders will show T001 (track#) in the display. Refer to *MP3 track and folder structure* later in this chapter for further information.

18. **▲ (CD eject):** To eject a disc from the system, press ▲. Select the correct slot number using memory presets 1–6. When ready, the system will eject the disc and the display will read REMOVE CD. If the disc is not removed in 15 seconds, the system will reload the disc.



**To auto eject up to 6 CDs**, press and hold ▲ until the system begins ejecting the current disc. Remove the current disc and the next disc will be ejected. If the current disc is not removed, the system will reload the disc.

19. **CD slot:** Insert a CD label side up.



### Auxiliary input jack (if equipped)



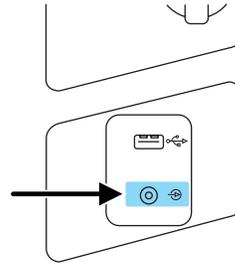
**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device that may take their focus off the road. The driver's primary responsibility is the safe operation of their vehicle. Only use cell phones and other devices not essential to the driving task when it is safe to do so.

## Entertainment Systems

Your vehicle may be equipped with an auxiliary input jack (AIJ). The auxiliary input jack, located on the instrument panel below the power point, provides a way to connect your portable music player to the in-vehicle audio system. This allows the audio from a portable music player to be played through the vehicle speakers with high fidelity.

To achieve optimal performance, please observe the following instructions when attaching your portable music device to the audio system.

If your vehicle is equipped with a navigation system, refer to the *Auxiliary input jack* section in the *Audio Features* chapter of your *Navigation System* supplement.



### Required equipment:

1. Any portable music player designed to be used with headphones
2. An audio extension cable with stereo male 1/8 in. (3.5 mm) connectors at each end

### To play your portable music player using the auxiliary input jack:

1. Begin with the vehicle parked and the radio turned off.
2. Ensure that the battery in your portable music player is new or fully charged and that the device is turned off.
3. Attach one end of the audio extension cable to the headphone output of your player and the other end of the audio extension cable to the AIJ in your vehicle.
4. Turn the radio on, using either a tuned FM station or a CD loaded into the system. Adjust the volume to a comfortable listening level.
5. Turn the portable music player on and adjust the volume to 1/2 the volume.
6. Press AUX on the vehicle radio repeatedly until LINE, LINE IN or SYNC LINE IN appears in the display. You should hear audio from your portable music player although it may be low.
7. Adjust the sound on your portable music player until it reaches the level of the FM station or CD by switching back and forth between the AUX and FM or CD controls.

## Entertainment Systems

### Troubleshooting:

1. Do not connect the audio input jack to a line level output. Line level outputs are intended for connection to a home stereo and are not compatible with the AIJ. The AIJ will only work correctly with devices that have a headphone output with a volume control.
2. Do not set the portable music player's volume level higher than is necessary to match the volume of the CD or FM radio in your audio system as this will cause distortion and will reduce sound quality. Many portable music players have different output levels, so not all players should be set at the same levels. Some players will sound best at full volume and others will need to be set at a lower volume.
3. If the music sounds distorted at lower listening levels, turn the portable music player volume down. If the problems persist, replace or recharge the batteries in the portable music player.
4. The portable music player must be controlled in the same manner when it is used with headphones as the AIJ does not provide control (play, pause, etc.) over the attached portable music player.
5. For safety reasons, connecting or adjusting the settings on your portable music player should not be attempted while the vehicle is moving. Also, the portable music player should be stored in a secure location, such as the center console or the glove box, when the vehicle is in motion. The audio extension cable must be long enough to allow the portable music player to be safely stored while the vehicle is in motion.

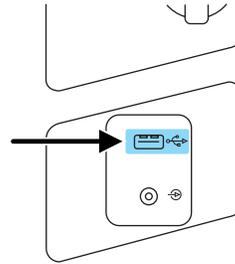
### USB port (if equipped)



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device that may take their focus off the road. The driver's primary responsibility is the safe operation of their vehicle. Only use cell phones and other devices not essential to the driving task when it is safe to do so.

## Entertainment Systems

Your vehicle may be equipped with a USB port located on the instrument panel. This feature allows you to plug in media playing devices, memory sticks, and also to charge devices if they support this feature. For further information on this feature, refer to *Accessing and using your USB port* in the SYNC® supplement or *Navigation System* supplement.



### GENERAL AUDIO INFORMATION

#### Radio frequencies:

AM and FM frequencies are established by the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and the Canadian Radio and Telecommunications Commission (CRTC). Those frequencies are:

AM: 530, 540–1700, 1710 kHz

FM: 87.7, 87.9–107.7, 107.9 MHz

#### Radio reception factors:

There are three factors that can affect radio reception:

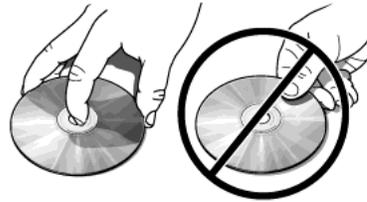
- Distance/strength: The further you travel from an FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.
- Terrain: Hills, mountains, tall buildings, power lines, electric fences, traffic lights and thunderstorms can interfere with your reception.
- Station overload: When you pass a broadcast tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and play while the weak station frequency is displayed.

## Entertainment Systems

### CD/CD player care

Do:

- Handle discs by their edges only. (Never touch the playing surface).
- Inspect discs before playing.
- Clean only with an approved CD cleaner.
- Wipe discs from the center out.

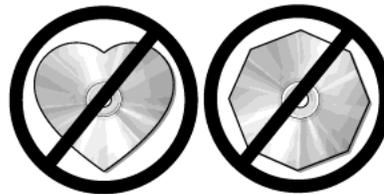


Don't:

- Expose discs to direct sunlight or heat sources for extended periods of time.
- Clean using a circular motion.

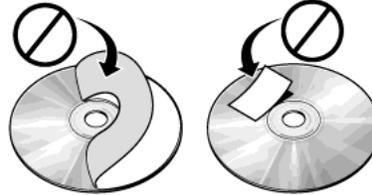
**CD units are designed to play commercially pressed 4.75 in (12 cm) audio compact discs only. Due to technical incompatibility, certain recordable and re-recordable compact discs may not function correctly when used in Ford CD players.**

**Do not use any irregular shaped CDs or discs with a scratch protection film attached.**



## Entertainment Systems

**CDs with homemade paper (adhesive) labels should not be inserted into the CD player as the label may peel and cause the CD to become jammed. It is recommended that homemade CDs be identified with permanent felt tip marker rather than adhesive labels. Ballpoint pens may damage CDs. Please contact your authorized dealer for further information.**



### Audio system warranty and service

Refer to the *Warranty Guide/Customer Information Guide* for audio system warranty information. If service is necessary, see your dealer or qualified technician.

### MP3 track and folder structure

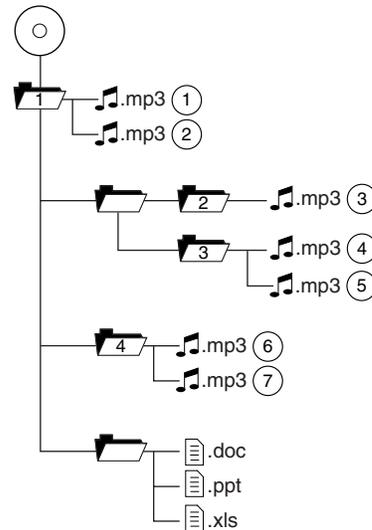
Your MP3 system recognizes MP3 individual tracks and folder structure as follows:

- There are two different modes for MP3 disc playback: MP3 track mode (system default) and MP3 folder mode. For more information on track and folder mode, refer to *Sample MP3 structure* in the following section.
- MP3 track mode ignores any folder structure on the MP3 disc. The player numbers each MP3 track on the disc (noted by the .mp3 file extension) from T001 to a maximum of T255.  
**Note:** The maximum number of playable MP3 files may be less depending on the structure of the CD and exact model of radio present.
- MP3 folder mode represents a folder structure consisting of one level of folders. The CD player numbers all MP3 tracks on the disc (noted by the .mp3 file extension) and all folders containing MP3 files, from F001 (folder) T001 (track) to F253 T255.
- Creating discs with only one level of folders will help with navigation through the disc files.

## Entertainment Systems

### Sample MP3 structure

If you are burning your own MP3 discs, it is important to understand how the system will read the structures you create. While various files may be present, (files with extensions other than mp3), only files with the .mp3 extension will be played. This enables you to use the same MP3 disc for a variety of tasks on your work computer, home computer and your in vehicle system.



In track mode, the system will display and play the structure as if it were only one level deep (all .mp3 files will be played, regardless of being in a specific folder). In folder mode, the system will only play the .mp3 files in the current folder.

### Satellite radio information (if equipped)

**Satellite radio channels:** SIRIUS® broadcasts a variety of music, news, sports, weather, traffic and entertainment satellite radio channels. For more information and a complete list of SIRIUS® satellite radio channels, visit [www.sirius.com](http://www.sirius.com) in the United States, [www.sirius-canada.ca](http://www.sirius-canada.ca) in Canada, or call SIRIUS® at 1-888-539-7474.

**Satellite radio reception factors:** To receive the satellite signal, your vehicle has been equipped with a satellite radio antenna located on the roof of your vehicle. The vehicle roof provides the best location for an unobstructed, open view of the sky, a requirement of a satellite radio system. Like AM/FM, there are several factors that can affect satellite radio reception performance:

- **Antenna obstructions:** For optimal reception performance, keep the antenna clear of snow and ice build-up and keep luggage and other material as far away from the antenna as possible.

## Entertainment Systems

- **Terrain:** Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with your reception.
- **Station overload:** When you pass a ground based broadcast repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and result in an audio mute.

Unlike AM/FM audible static, you will hear an audio mute when there is a satellite radio signal interference. Your radio display may display NO SIGNAL to indicate the interference.

**SIRIUS® satellite radio service:** SIRIUS® satellite radio is a subscription based satellite radio service that broadcasts music, sports, news and entertainment programming. A service fee is required in order to receive SIRIUS® service. Vehicles that are equipped with a factory installed SIRIUS® satellite radio system include hardware and a limited subscription term, which begins on the date of sale or lease of the vehicle.

For information on extended subscription terms, the online media player and other SIRIUS® features, please contact SIRIUS® at 1-888-539-7474.

**Note:** SIRIUS® reserves the unrestricted right to change, rearrange, add or delete programming including canceling, moving or adding particular channels, and its prices, at any time, with or without notice to you. Ford Motor Company shall not be responsible for any such programming changes.

**Satellite radio electronic serial number (ESN):** This 12-digit Satellite Serial Number is needed to activate, modify or track your satellite radio account. You will need this number when communicating with SIRIUS®. While in satellite radio mode, you can view this number on the radio display by pressing the AUX and preset 1 controls simultaneously.

## Entertainment Systems

Radio Display	Condition	Action Required
ACQUIRING	Radio requires more than two seconds to produce audio for the selected channel.	No action required. This message should disappear shortly.
SAT FAULT	Internal module or system failure present.	If this message does not clear within a short period of time, or with an ignition key cycle, your receiver may have a fault. See your authorized dealer for service.
INVALID CHNL	Channel no longer available.	This previously available channel is no longer available. Tune to another channel. If the channel was one of your presets, you may choose another channel for that preset button.
UNSUBSCRIBED	Subscription not available for this channel.	Contact SIRIUS® at 1-888-539-7474 to subscribe to the channel or tune to another channel.
NO TEXT	Artist information not available.	Artist information not available at this time on this channel. The system is working properly.
NO TEXT	Song title information not available.	Song title information not available at this time on this channel. The system is working properly.
NO TEXT	Category information not available.	Category information not available at this time on this channel. The system is working properly.

## Entertainment Systems

Radio Display	Condition	Action Required
NO SIGNAL	Loss of signal from the SIRIUS® satellite or SIRIUS® tower to the vehicle antenna.	You are in a location that is blocking the SIRIUS® signal (i.e., tunnel, under an overpass, dense foliage, etc). The system is working properly. When you move into an open area, the signal should return.
UPDATING	Update of channel programming in progress.	No action required. The process may take up to three minutes.
CALL SIRIUS® 1-888-539-7474	Satellite service has been deactivated by SIRIUS® satellite radio.	Call SIRIUS® at 1-888-539-7474 to re-activate or resolve subscription issues.

### FAMILY ENTERTAINMENT DVD SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device that may take their focus off the road. The driver's primary responsibility is the safe operation of their vehicle. Only use cell phones and other devices not essential to the driving task when it is safe to do so.

Your vehicle may be equipped with a Family Entertainment System (FES) which allows you to listen to audio CDs, MP3 discs, watch DVDs and to plug in and play a variety of standard video game systems. The DVD player is capable of playing standard DVDs, CDs, MP3s and is compatible with CD-R/W, CD-R and certain CD-ROM media.

Please review this material to become familiar with the FES features and controls as well as the very important safety information.

**Note:** Any notations or restrictions on individual DVD system controls are applicable to the overhead controls as well as to duplicate controls found on the remote control.

#### Quick start

Your Family Entertainment System includes a DVD system, two sets of wireless infrared (IR) headphones and a wireless infrared (IR) remote control.

## Entertainment Systems

**Note:** To disable the DVD rear-seat controls:

- If your vehicle is equipped with the navigation system, press the MEDIA or RADIO hard button. Select the 'Rear Zone' tab on the touchscreen. Press the 'disabled' button. (Press the 'enabled' button to turn the rear controls on again.)
- If your vehicle is equipped with an audio system, press the 3 and 5 preset buttons simultaneously. (Press again to enable the controls).

### To play a DVD in the DVD system:

The DVD system can play DVD-Video, DVD-R, DVD-R/W discs as well as audio CDs. To ensure proper disc operation, check the disc for finger prints, scratches and cleanliness. Clean with a soft cloth, wiping from center to edge.

1. Ensure that the vehicle is on or the ignition is in accessory mode.
2. Insert a DVD into the system, label-side up to turn on the system. It will load automatically.
3. Press the power button on the DVD player, then press Play ► to begin to play the disc.



If a DVD is already loaded into the system, press PLAY on the DVD player.

**Note:** If sound can be heard, but no video is present, press VIDEO to select the video source (DVD or aux-inputs).

**Note:** If your vehicle is equipped with a navigation system, when a disc is inserted, the DVD system will automatically switch to dual-play mode; the rear speakers will turn off, and the headphones will turn on. To turn the rear speakers on again, press  on the DVD system bezel.

Press VIDEO to change the source displayed on the screen. Press repeatedly to cycle through: DVD-DISC, DVD-AUX, NON-DVD, OFF.



Press the power button to turn the system off. The indicator light will turn off indicating the system is off.



**Note:** The audio from the DVD system will play over all vehicle speakers and can be adjusted by the radio volume control.

68

## Entertainment Systems

### **To play a CD in the DVD system:**

The DVD system can play audio CDs, CD-R and CD-R/W, CD-ROM and video CDs. To ensure proper disc operation, check the disc for finger prints and scratches. Clean the disc with a soft cloth, wiping from the center to the edge.

1. Ensure that the vehicle is on or the ignition is in accessory mode.

2. Insert a CD into the system, label-side up to turn on the DVD system. It will load and automatically begin to play. If there is already a CD in the system, press PLAY on the DVD player.



3. The disc will begin to play and the 'CD Audio Disc' screen will display. From this screen, you can also select from COMPRESSION, SHUFFLE and SCAN features.

**Note:** If your vehicle is equipped with a navigation system, when a disc is inserted, the DVD system will automatically switch to dual-play mode; the rear speakers will turn off, and the headphones will turn on. To turn the rear speakers on again, press  on the DVD system bezel.



### **To play an MP3 disc in the DVD system:**

1. Ensure that the vehicle is on or the ignition is in accessory mode.

2. Insert an MP3 disc into the system, label-side up to turn on the DVD system. It will load and automatically begin to play. If there is already a disc in the system, press PLAY on the DVD player.



## Entertainment Systems

3. The disc will begin to play and the 'MP3 Audio Disc' screen will display and allow you to access the COMPRESSION, SHUFFLE, SCAN and FOLDER MODE features.



**Note:** If your vehicle is equipped with a navigation system, when a disc is inserted, the DVD system will automatically switch to dual-play mode; the rear speakers will turn off, and the headphones will turn on. To turn the rear speakers on again, press  on the DVD system bezel.

### To play an auxiliary source through the DVD system

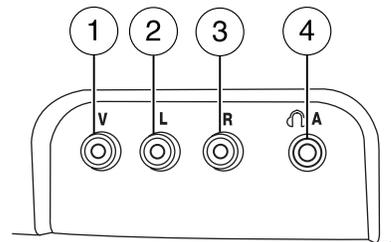
The DVD system can be used to connect and play auxiliary electronic devices such as game systems, personal camcorders, video cassette recorders, etc.

1. Ensure that the vehicle is on or the ignition is in accessory mode.
2. Press the power button to turn the DVD system on. The indicator light next to the power button will illuminate.



3. Connect an auxiliary audio/video source by connecting RCA cords (not included) to the RCA jacks on the left hand side of the system.

- Yellow (1) — video input
- White (2) — left channel audio input
- Red (3) — right channel audio input



4. Press MEDIA on the DVD system to change the media source to AUX.

**Note:** If your vehicle is equipped with a navigation system, the MEDIA button is only active in dual play mode.

## Entertainment Systems

5. Press VIDEO on the DVD system to change the video source to DVD-AUX. If your source is properly plugged in, it will appear on the LCD (Liquid Crystal Display) screen. If your auxiliary source does not have a video signal, or if the DVD system does not detect a video signal from the auxiliary source, the screen will remain black. If the video source is set to DVD-AUX, the display will automatically turn on if a video signal is detected.

### **To listen to audio over the headphones (Dual play mode):**

You may listen to channels A and B over wired or wireless headphones. Refer to *Using the infrared wireless headphones* and *Using wired headphones* for further information.

- Black (4) — wired headphone output (wired headphones not included)

### **You can access dual play mode in any of the following ways:**

- If your vehicle is equipped with a navigation system:
  - a. Ensure that the vehicle ignition is turned on. Inserting a DVD into the system will automatically activate dual play mode.
  - b. Press the RADIO or MEDIA hard button on the navigation system. Select the 'Rear Zone' tab on the touchscreen and select 'On' for the headphones and 'Enabled' for the rear controls. To return to single zone, select 'Off' for the headphones and 'Disabled' for the rear controls.
- If your vehicle is equipped with a radio:
  - a. Press the headphone/speaker (🎧 / 🔊) button on the remote control or DVD system. Press again to return to single play mode.
  - b. Press the 2 and 4 memory presets on the radio at the same time. Press again to return to single play mode.

A green light will illuminate next to either the A or B Headphone Control Button to indicate which channel is active (able to be controlled).

- Press MEDIA to change the audio source of the active channel (A or B). The audio source will be shown on the display. You may change the active channel by pressing the A or B headphone control button.

**Note:** Channel A can access any possible media source (AM, FM1, FM2, SAT (if equipped), CD, DVD, AUX). Channel B can only access DVD and AUX sources.

**Note:** Refer to *Single play/Dual play* for more information.

## Entertainment Systems

### **Using the infrared (IR) wireless headphones:**

1. Press the power control on the earpiece to turn the headphones ON.
2. Select Channel A or B for each set of wireless headphones by using the A/B control on the ear piece.
3. Adjust the headphone volume using the rotary dial on the earpiece.

### **Using wired headphones (not included):**



**WARNING:** Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle and do not let children operate the system while unsupervised. If wired headphones or auxiliary systems are used, children may become entangled in the cords and seriously injure themselves.

1. Connect the wired headphones in to the headphone jacks on either side of the DVD system. Each side is labeled  A or  B. Headphones plugged into jack A will listen to Channel A and headphones plugged into jack B will listen to Channel B.

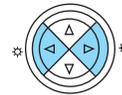
2. Adjust the volume levels using the volume controls on the DVD system.



**Note:** If your vehicle is equipped with a navigation system, volume controls are only active in dual play mode

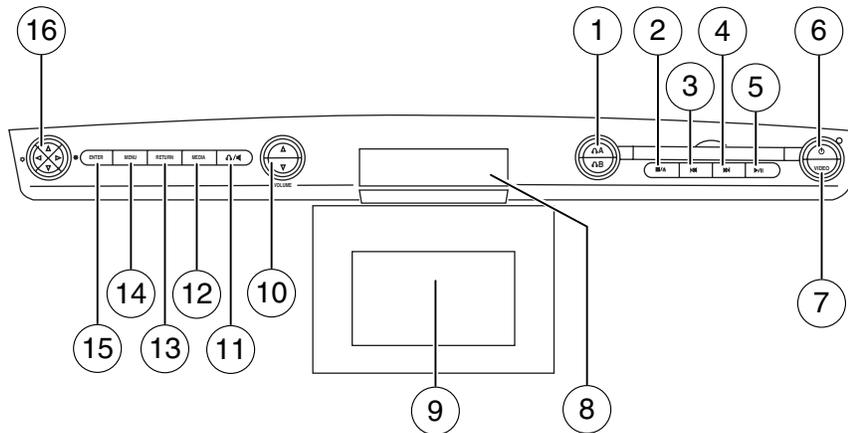
### **To adjust display brightness:**

To decrease/increase the brightness level on the display screen, press the brightness control on the DVD system. A display will appear at the bottom of the screen indicating the brightness level. The brightness display will only appear when the menu is not displayed.



## Entertainment Systems

### DVD player controls



1. **Headphone control A/B:** While in Dual Play mode, press to select either the A or B headphone source. Then press MEDIA to select the desired playing media for that headset. When a headphone channel has been selected (A or B), selections will affect the source on that channel only.



**Note:** Headphone A can access any possible media (AM, FM1, FM2, SAT (if equipped), CD, DVD, DVD-AUX). Headphone B can only access DVD and DVD-AUX.

For further information, refer to *Single play/Dual play* later in this section.

2. **■ / ▲ (Stop/Eject):** Press once to stop and press a second time to eject a disc from the DVD system.



3. **◀◀ (Reverse):** Press and release for the previous chapter or track. Press and hold to reverse search a DVD, Video CD, or FES CD in DVD/CD mode.



## Entertainment Systems

4. **▶▶| (Fast forward):** Press and release for the next chapter or track. Press and hold to forward search a DVD, Video CD, or FES CD in DVD/CD mode. 
5. **▶ / || (Play/Pause):** Press (Play) to select DVD mode (and to turn the DVD system on if it is off). If a disc is present, it will resume or begin to play. Press (Pause) while playing a disc to pause a DVD or CD. 
6. **On/Off:** Press to turn the DVD system On/Off. 
7. **VIDEO:** Press repeatedly to cycle through the following video state options which will be indicated on the bottom right hand corner of the display: DVD DISC, DVD-AUX, NON-DVD and Off (no indicator). If you select the DVD-AUX video source, the display will turn off if there is no video signal detected. When a video signal is detected on the auxiliary video input, and the display is in the DVD-AUX video mode, the display will automatically turn on. 
8. **Infrared (IR) Receiver & Transmitter:** System sensor which reads the signals from the remote control and sends audio signals to the infrared (IR) wireless headphones.
9. **LCD screen:** The eight inch diagonal screen rotates down to view and up into housing to store when not in use. Ensure that the screen is latched into the housing when being stored.
10. **Volume:** If your vehicle is equipped with a navigation system, this function is only available when in dual play mode. For all other vehicles, when in single play mode, press to increase (▲) or decrease (▼) the volume over all speakers. When in Dual Play, press to increase (▲) or decrease (▼) the volume for the wired headphones. (Wireless headphone volume is controlled with the rotary dial on the right ear piece.) 

## Entertainment Systems

11.  (Headphones/Speakers): Press once for Dual Play (Headphone mode- the rear speakers are muted) and press again for Single Play (same media playing through all speakers). You can also press the 2 and 4 memory preset buttons on the audio system at the same time to perform the same function. For further interaction information, refer to *Single Play/Dual play* under *Operation* later in this section.

12. **MEDIA:** Press repeatedly to select from the various possible playing media sources (AM, FM1, FM2, SAT (if equipped), CD, DVD, DVD-AUX). The media will show in the status display on the top of the screen when in Dual Play mode. When in Single Play mode, the media source will be displayed on the radio.



**Note:** Channel A can access any possible media source (AM, FM1, FM2, SAT (if equipped), CD, DVD, DVD-AUX). Channel B can only access DVD and DVD-AUX sources.

**Note:** If your vehicle is equipped with a navigation system, this function is only active in dual play mode.

13. **RETURN:** Press to return to the playing media or to resume playback.



14. **MENU:** When playing a DVD, press MENU once to enter the DVD disc menu (if available) and press twice to enter the system set-up menu. From the set-up menu, you may select from Angle, Aspect Ratio, Language, Subtitles, Disc resume, Compression, Restore Defaults and Back. For more detailed information, refer to *Menu mode*.

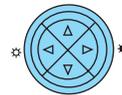


15. **ENTER:** Press to select/confirm the current selection.



16. **Cursor /Brightness controls:**

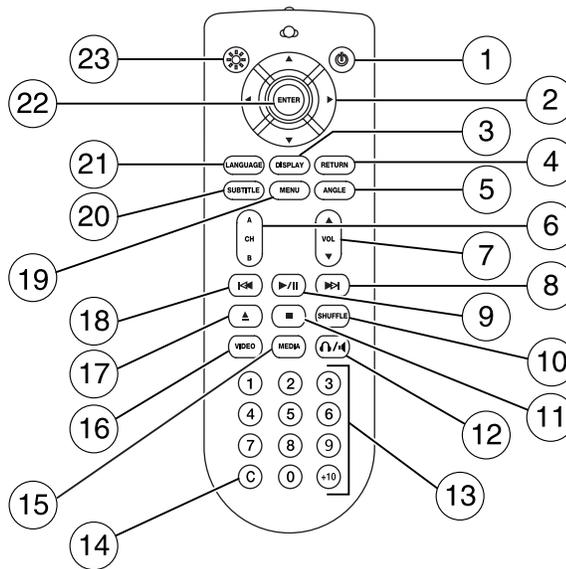
Use the cursor controls to make various selections when in any menu. When not in a menu, and in DVD mode, press ◀ / ▶ to adjust the brightness. A display bar will appear at the bottom of the screen indicating the brightness levels.



## Entertainment Systems

### Remote control

Unless otherwise stated, all operations can be carried out with the remote control. Always point the remote control directly at the player. Ensure that there are no obstructions between the remote and player.



1. **Power control:** Press to turn the FES (Family Entertainment System) ON/OFF.
2. **Cursor controls:** Use in various active menus to advance the cursor up/down/left/right. When not in a Menu, the left and right cursor controls decrease and increase the display brightness.
3. **DISPLAY:** Press to access the on-screen display of the FES functions and adjustments.
4. **RETURN:** Press to return to the previous menu screen.
5. **ANGLE** (DVD dependent): Press to select the angle to view the scene.
6. **Channel A/B:** Press to select either A or B headphones and then use the MEDIA control to select the desired playing media for the headphones.

76

## Entertainment Systems

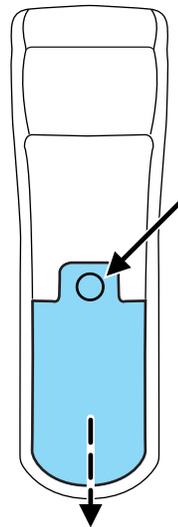
7. **VOL (Volume):** When in Single Play, press to increase (▲) or decrease (▼) the volume over all speakers. When in Dual Play, press to increase (▲) or decrease (▼) the volume for the wired headphones. (Wireless headphone volume is controlled with the rotary dial on the right ear piece.)
8. **Fast Forward/Next:** In DVD mode, press and hold for a quick advance within the DVD. Press and release to advance to the next chapter. In CD/MP3 mode, press to access the next track.
9. **Play/Pause:** Press to play or pause a DVD.
10. **SHUFFLE:** Press to play all tracks on the current CD/MP3 disc in random order.
11. **STOP:** Press to stop the current DVD or CD/MP3.
12. **Speaker/Headphone** (Single/Dual Play): Press to toggle between Single Play (same media playing through all speakers) and Dual Play (headphone mode — the rear speakers are muted). You can also press the 2 and 4 memory presets on the audio system at the same time to perform the same function.
13. **Numeric Keypad:** Use the numeric controls to enter in a specific CD/MP3 track or DVD chapter to be played.
14. **C (Cancel):** Press to cancel/clear the numeric input (i.e. chapter number).
15. **MEDIA:** Press to cycle through the possible media sources: AM, FM1, FM2, SAT (if equipped), CD, DVD, LINE IN (if equipped), DVD-AUX.  
Channel B can only access DVD and AUX sources.
16. **VIDEO:** Press to cycle through video states: DVD-DISC, DVD-AUX, NON-DVD, Off.
17. **EJECT:** Press to eject a disc from the FES.
18. **Fast reverse/Previous:** When a DVD is playing, press and hold for a quick reverse within the DVD. Press and release for the previous chapter. Press PLAY to resume normal playback speed and volume. In CD/MP3 mode, press to access the previous track.
19. **MENU:** Press to access the DVD disc menu for selections. Press MENU again when in the DVD disc menu to access the system set-up menu.
20. **SUBTITLE** (DVD dependent): Press to turn the subtitle feature ON or OFF.

## Entertainment Systems

21. **LANGUAGE** (DVD dependent): Press to select the desired language.
22. **ENTER**: Press to select the highlighted menu option.
23. **ILLUMINATION**: Press to illuminate the remote control and backlight all of the buttons.

### **Battery replacement**

Batteries are supplied with the remote control unit. Since all batteries have a limited shelf life, replace them when the unit fails to control the DVD player.



Remove the screw and unlatch the battery cover to access the batteries. The remote control unit uses two AAA batteries which are supplied with the unit.

## Entertainment Systems

### Headphones

#### *Wireless headphones*

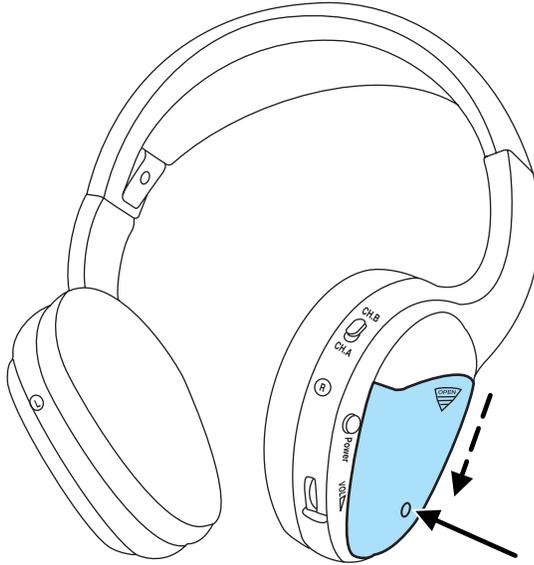
 **WARNING:** The driver should never use the headphones while driving the vehicle. Using headphones may prevent the driver from hearing audible warnings such as horns or emergency sirens, which could result in a crash causing serious injury. Give your full attention to driving and to the road.

Your FES system is equipped with two sets of battery powered, infrared wireless headphones. Two AAA batteries are needed to operate the headphones. (Batteries are included.)

Additional infrared wireless headphones may be purchased for use with the system. Also, wired headphones may be purchased and plugged in where indicated on the left and right hand sides of the system. Refer to *Wired Headphones* following.



## Entertainment Systems



To install the batteries, remove the screw at the bottom of the cover. Then, lightly press down on top and slide the cover off.

When replacing the batteries, use two new batteries (alkaline recommended) and install them with the correct orientation as indicated in the battery housing.

## Entertainment Systems



To operate the headphones:

- Press **POWER** on the ear piece to turn on the headphones. A red indicator light will illuminate indicating the headphones are **ON**. Press **POWER** again to turn the headphones off.
- Adjust the headphones to comfortably fit your head using the headband adjustment.
- Select the desired audio source (Channel A or B) for each set of wireless headphones by using the **A/B** selection switch on the ear piece.
- Adjust the volume control to the desired listening level.

Ensure that the headphones are turned off when not in use. After approximately one minute of not being in use (no infrared signal is received), the wireless headphones will automatically turn off. They will also turn off after two hours of continuous use as a power save feature. If this happens, simply turn the headphones on again and continue use.

## Entertainment Systems

### **Wired headphones**

 **WARNING:** Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle and do not let children operate the system while unsupervised. If wired headphones or auxiliary systems are used, children may become entangled in the cords and seriously injure themselves.

 **WARNING:** The driver should never use the headphones while driving the vehicle. Using headphones may prevent the driver from hearing audible warnings such as horns or emergency sirens, which could result in a crash causing serious injury. Give your full attention to driving and to the road.

You may purchase wired headphones for your FES (Family Entertainment System). Plug them into the 3.5 mm headphone jack(s) located on the left and right sides of the system. (Channel A is located on the left side and Channel B is located on the right side.) These headphones will be active when in Dual Play mode.

To listen to the audio on wired headphones (not included), connect the wired headphones into the headphone jacks on the sides of the DVD system. The wired headphone jack for Channel A is located on the left side of the FES and is labeled  A. Headphones plugged into this headphone jack will hear audio from the audio source selected to be the Channel A source. The wired headphone jack for Channel B is located on the right side of the FES and is labeled  B. Headphones plugged into this headphone jack will hear audio from the audio source selected to be the Channel B source.

Adjust the headphone volume using the volume control on the DVD system.



### **Operation**

#### **Single play/Dual play**

Your DVD and audio system work together with the infrared headphones and wired headphones (not included) to allow the rear seat passengers to listen to the radio (and other media sources) over the headphones. This enables the front and rear seat passengers to listen to a variety of sources a variety of ways.

82

## Entertainment Systems

**Single Play:** Single play consists of all occupants in the vehicle listening to the same playing media over the front and rear speakers. When the DVD system is on, and the same source is playing through the front and rear speakers, SINGLE PLAY will appear in the front radio display.

**Dual Play:** Dual play is when the rear seat passengers choose to listen to a different playing media than the front seat passengers. With the DVD and Rear Seat Controls turned ON, the rear seat passengers may choose to listen to the radio, CD, MP3, DVD, DVD-AUX or SYNC® (if equipped) media sources over headphones while the front speakers play the chosen selection for the front audio system, they may listen to another over the headphones. DUAL PLAY will appear in the radio display.

When both the front seat passengers and the rear seat passengers listen to the same audio source, SHARED MODE will appear on the radio.

**Note:** If the front seat passengers are listening to the radio, the rear seat passengers can also listen to the radio; however, they will be limited to listening to the same radio channel.

### You can access dual play mode in any of the following ways:

- If your vehicle is equipped with a navigation system:
  - a. Ensure that the vehicle ignition is turned on. Inserting a DVD into the system will automatically activate dual play mode.
  - b. Press the RADIO or MEDIA hard button on the navigation system. Select the 'Rear Zone' tab on the touchscreen and select 'On' for the headphones and 'Enabled' for the rear controls. To return to single zone, select 'Off' for the headphones and 'Disabled' for the rear controls.
- If your vehicle is equipped with a radio:
  - a. Press the headphone/speaker (🎧 / 🔊) button on the remote control or DVD system. Press again to return to single play mode.
  - b. Press the 2 and 4 memory presets on the radio at the same time. Press again to return to single play mode.

The headphone control will now be active and a green light next to the A or B headphone control buttons will illuminate. The system can output two different audio sources over the headphones. These are called Channel A and Channel B. Both Channel A and Channel B can be listened to on the wired headphones (not included) or on the infrared (IR) wireless headphones.

## Entertainment Systems

Press the Headphone Control button A to change the audio source for Channel A.



Press MEDIA to change the audio source for Channel A. This information will display on the DVD system screen.



Press the Headphone Control button B to change the audio source for Channel B.



Press MEDIA to change the audio source for Channel B. This information will display on the DVD system screen. Channel B can listen to either the DVD media or the DVD system auxiliary inputs (DVD-AUX).

When in Dual play mode, you can press ◀◀ (Reverse), ▶▶ (Fast forward) or ▶ / || (Play/pause) to access different features in the various modes.

### ***Operation with an aftermarket audio system (Headphone only mode)***

When the Family Entertainment System (FES) detects that the original radio supplied by Ford Motor Company has been removed from the vehicle, the Family Entertainment System will work in a state referred to as "Headphone Only Mode".

While operating in Headphone Only Mode, the system will have limited functionality.

- The system will only output audio to the headphones. It will not be capable of providing audio to the speakers.
- The available sources in FES Headphone Only Mode are DVD-DISC and DVD-AUX, regardless of headphone channel (A or B).
- When a disc is inserted into the FES while in Headphone Only Mode, both headphone channels (A&B) will be connected to FES-DISC.

## Entertainment Systems

### **Menu mode**

Press MENU once on the DVD system to access the DVD disc menu if available.

Press MENU twice to access the DVD set-up menu and the following features:

1. ZOOM
2. ANGLE
3. ASPECT RATIO
4. LANGUAGE
5. SUB TITLES

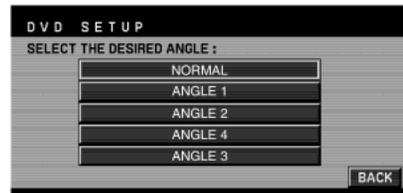


### **Angle mode**

Select ANGLE to select various angles of view for the DVD.



This is disc dependent — some DVD discs may have more viewing angles to select from. Once you have made your selection, press ENTER to confirm. The system default is Angle 1.



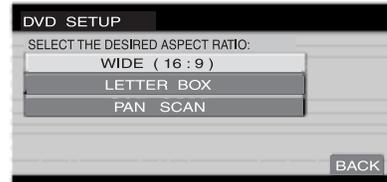
### **Aspect ratio**

Select ASPECT RATIO to select the viewing size and shape of the video displayed on the LCD screen. This is disc dependent.



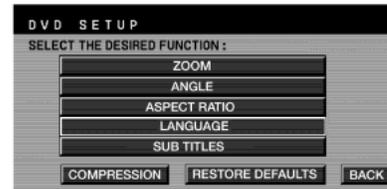
## Entertainment Systems

You can select from: WIDE, LETTER BOX or PAN SCAN. Once you have made your selection, press ENTER to confirm. The LCD screen display will immediately change to your selection after the system resumes playback of the DVD. The system default is WIDE (16:9).



### Language

Select LANGUAGE to select the language you would like to use for audio output (English, Spanish, French). This is disc dependent.

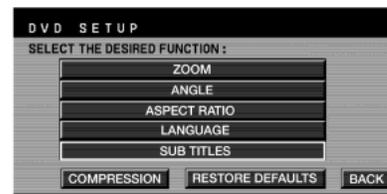


Once you have made your selection, press ENTER to confirm. The system default is English.



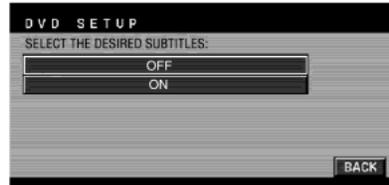
### Subtitles

Select SUBTITLES to turn the subtitle option on or off. The system default is OFF.



## Entertainment Systems

Once you have made your selection, press ENTER to confirm. This is disc dependent.



### Audio CDs

To play audio CDs on your DVD system:

1. Ensure that the vehicle is on or the ignition is in accessory mode.
2. Ensure that the DVD system is on.
3. Insert an audio CD into the DVD system, label side up.

4. The track and elapsed time will appear in the status bar. Use the DVD cursor controls on the bezel to highlight which track you would like to play. You can also use the cursor controls to highlight COMPRESSION, SHUFFLE or SCAN. Once you have highlighted



the desired track or function, press ENTER on the DVD bezel to confirm your selection.

**COMP (Compression):** Compression brings soft and loud CD passages together for a more consistent listening level when in CD mode. Press to turn the feature on/off.

**SHUFFLE:** Press to hear all tracks on the current CD in random order. Press again to stop.

**SCAN:** Press for a brief sampling of all tracks on the current CD. Press again to stop.

### Playing MP3 discs

To play an MP3 disc on your DVD system:

1. Ensure that the vehicle is on or the ignition is in accessory mode.
2. Ensure that the DVD system is on.
3. Insert the MP3 disc into the DVD system, label side up.

## Entertainment Systems

4. The folder, track and elapsed time will appear in the status bar. The screen will list the Artist, Title, Album and File Name.



### **COMP (Compression):**

Compression brings soft and loud CD/MP3 passages together for a more consistent listening level when in CD mode. Press to turn the feature on/off.

**SHUFFLE:** Press to hear all tracks on the current MP3 folder in random order. Press again to stop.

**SCAN:** Press for a brief sampling of all tracks on the current MP3 folder. Press again to stop.

**FOLDER LIST:** Press access folder mode and to go to the previous/next folder in the MP3 disc.

### **MP3 disc quality factors**

Several factors can effect disc playback quality:

- Disc capacity — Each disc contains about 650 MB of storage capacity. We do not recommend using high capacity discs containing 700MB of storage.
- Disc type — Some CD-RW discs may operate inconsistently and may cause an error message to appear. We recommend burning MP3 files onto CD-R discs.
- Disc finalization — The disc may be left open for the purpose of adding sessions to it at a later time, but be sure to close each session or the disc will not play.
- Bit rate — The player supports bit rates from 32–320 kbps, as well as variable bit rate MP3 files, but lower bit rates will have a noticeable effect on sound quality and are recommended only for speech or low fidelity music material. We recommend that you encode MP3 files using a high quality encoder.
- PC configuration — Encoding MP3 files requires intensive use of your computer's resources. Follow the PC configuration recommendations of the encoder software vendor. We recommend that you avoid running other software applications on your PC during MP3 encoding to avoid undesirable noise and distortion.

## Entertainment Systems

### ***CD, MP3 and CD player care***

- Handle discs by their edges only. Never touch the playing surface.
- Do not expose discs to direct sunlight or heat sources for extended periods of time.
- Do not insert more than one disc into the slot of the CD player (if equipped).
- Always store discs out of direct sunlight. Excessive heat may damage or warp discs.
- Use care when handling and playing CD-R and CD-RW discs, which are more susceptible to damage from heat, light and stress than are regular CDs.
- Always insert and remove a disc by holding the disc flat, with the playing surface facing down, in order to prevent damage to the disc or the player.
- Never insert any object other than a compact disc (CD) or digital versatile disc (DVD) into the player, as doing so may damage the player and may cause injury to you.
- Do not disassemble the player. The laser used in disc playback is extremely harmful to the eyes.

**The FES DVD system is designed to play commercially pressed 12 cm (4.75 in) audio compact discs and digital versatile discs (DVD), DVD-R and R/W discs only. Due to technical incompatibility, certain recordable and re-recordable compact discs may not function correctly when used in Ford CD and DVD players. Irregular shaped CDs or DVDs, CDs or DVDs with a scratch protection film attached, and CDs with homemade paper (adhesive) labels should not be inserted into the FES DVD system. The label may peel and cause the CD or DVD to become jammed. It is recommended that homemade CDs or DVDs be identified with permanent felt tip marker rather than adhesive labels. Ball point pens may damage CDs or DVDs. Please contact your authorized dealer for further information.**

### ***Playing a DVD***

1. Ensure that the vehicle is on or the ignition is in accessory mode.
2. Ensure that the navigation system is on.
3. Insert a DVD label-side up into the system.

## Entertainment Systems

4. Use the DVD bezel controls to:

Press to play or pause a DVD.



Press to stop or eject a DVD.



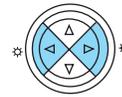
Press and release to go to the previous chapter. Press and hold for a fast reverse search.



Press and release to go to the next chapter. Press and hold for a fast forward search.



Press when not in menu mode to adjust brightness, or when in menu mode to navigate through the menu selections.



Press to adjust volume levels.



### **Slow play**

1. With a DVD playing, press pause.



2. Press and hold the reverse or advance button to enter into slow play mode. Once in slow play mode, press and release the reverse or advance button repeatedly to cycle through 1/4 and 1/2. These will display on the status bar on top of the screen as the screens cycle through at this rate.



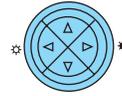
### **Frame by frame**

1. With a DVD playing, press pause.



## Entertainment Systems

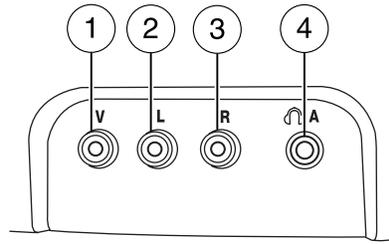
2. Press the right cursor button. The DVD will advance one frame. Each press of the right cursor button will advance the DVD video by one frame.



### Headphone/auxiliary jacks

There are wired headphones (not included) and auxiliary jacks on the left and right side of your DVD system. They can be used to plug in wired headphones or to connect and play auxiliary electronic devices such as game systems, personal camcorders, video cassette recorders, etc.

On the left side of the system is the Headphone A input jack. This headphone will listen to the media selected on the Channel A source. When you need to make any adjustments to the media, volume, etc, ensure that the Channel A source is highlighted.

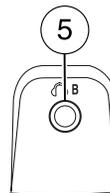


Also located here are the various auxiliary jacks which can be used to plug in a VCR, camcorder, video games, etc. The specific jacks are as follows:

1. Yellow: video input
2. White: left channel audio input
3. Red: right channel audio input
4. Black: wired headphone jack (not included)

The B headphone jack (5) is located on the right side of the DVD system. Plug in wired headphones (not included) here.

**Note:** The B headphones can only access DVD and AUX modes. They cannot access radio sources.



## Entertainment Systems

### Audio displays

Your DVD system interacts closely with the front audio system. Status messages will appear in the radio display showing the DVD status. Some possible radio display messages:

- SINGLE PLAY or DUAL PLAY
- DVD LOAD
- DVD MENU
- DVD STOP

### Audio interaction

You can then also use the front audio controls to advance, reverse, play and pause a DVD. While a DVD is playing you may use the following controls on the front radio:

- **SEEK:** Press to advance to the previous (◀) or next (▶) DVD chapters.
- **▶ ||** : Press to play a DVD or to pause the DVD.

When the radio displays “DVD MENU”, press PLAY on the radio (memory preset #6), to play the disc.

### Parental control for the DVD system

Your Family Entertainment System (FES) allows you to have control over the rear seat controls in a few different ways. The DVD system is automatically activated when the vehicle ignition is ON, which allows the rear seat passengers to use the DVD system.

There are three levels of control of the FES buttons. The states are  FULL (enabled), LOCAL or LOCKED (disabled). To change the level of control, press the memory preset controls 3 and 5 simultaneously on the front audio controls. The control level will cycle each time the buttons are pressed simultaneously. The three states are described as:

**FULL** (enabled): The FES has control over the primary (speaker) and secondary (headphone) audio sources.

**LOCAL:** The FES has control over the secondary source (headphones) only. The radio will ignore button presses that affect the primary (speaker) audio source.

**LOCKED** (disabled): The FES buttons are locked and all FES button presses are ignored by the radio and the FES except for load and eject.

92

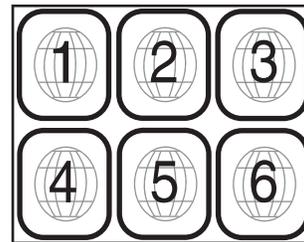
## Entertainment Systems

When the DVD system is ON, you can then press the memory preset controls 2 and 4 simultaneously to toggle between Single Play and Dual Play. In Single Play mode, all speakers listen to the same media. In Dual Play mode, rear seat passengers can use the infrared wireless, or wired (not included) headphones to listen to a different playing media than the front seat passengers.



### General information

**Note:** DVDs are formatted by regions. US and Canada systems can only play region 1 DVDs and Mexico systems can only play region 4 DVDs. Systems sold in vehicles targeted for other parts of the world would have different regions. If a playback problem is encountered, please ensure that you are using a disc designed for your vehicle. The region coding can be found stamped on the disc or on the box, and can say 'region-1' or 'region 4', etc. They may also be marked by a numerical symbol.



**Macrovision:** This product incorporates copyright protection technology that is protected by method claims of certain U.S. patents and other intellectual property rights owned by Macrovision Corporation and other rights owners. Use of this copyright protection technology must be authorized by Macrovision Corporation, and is intended for home and other limited viewing uses only unless otherwise authorized by Macrovision Corporation. Reverse engineering or disassembly is prohibited.

**MP3:** Supply of this product only conveys a license for private, non-commercial use and does not convey a license nor imply any right to use this product in any commercial (i.e. revenue generating) real time broadcasting (terrestrial, satellite, cable and /or any other media) broadcasting/streaming via internet, intranets and/or other networks or in other electronic content distribution systems, such as pay-audio or audio-on-demand applications. An independent license for such use is required. For details, please visit [http:// www.mp3licensing.com](http://www.mp3licensing.com).

## Entertainment Systems

### Safety information

 **WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device that may take their focus off the road. The driver's primary responsibility is the safe operation of their vehicle. Only use cell phones and other devices not essential to the driving task when it is safe to do so.

Read all of the safety and operating instructions before operating the system and retain for future reference.

Do not attempt to service, repair or modify the Family Entertainment System (FES). See your dealer.

Do not insert foreign objects into the DVD compartment.

 **WARNING:** Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle and do not let children operate the system while unsupervised. If wired headphones or auxiliary systems are used, children may become entangled in the cords and seriously injure themselves.

 **WARNING:** The front glass on the liquid crystal display (LCD) flip-down screen may break when hit with a hard surface. If the glass breaks, do not touch the liquid crystalline material. In case of contact with skin, wash immediately with soap and water.

 **WARNING:** The driver should not attempt to operate any function of the DVD system while the vehicle is in motion. Give full attention to driving and to the road. Pull off the road in a safe place before inserting or extracting DVDs from the system. A remote control is included in the system to allow the rear seat occupants to operate the FES functions without distracting the driver.

**Do not expose the liquid crystal display (LCD) flip-down screen to direct sunlight or intensive ultraviolet rays for extensive periods of time. Ultraviolet rays deteriorate the liquid crystal.**

Be sure to review User Manuals for video games and video game equipment when used as auxiliary inputs for your Family Entertainment System (FES).

## Entertainment Systems

Do not operate video games or video equipment if the power cords and/or cables are broken, split or damaged. Carefully place cords and/or cables where they will not be stepped on or interfere with the operation of seats and/or compartments.

Disconnect video games and video equipment power cords and/or cables when not in use.

Avoid touching auxiliary input jacks with your fingers. Do not blow on them or allow them to get wet or dirty.

Do not clean any part of the DVD player with benzene, lacquer thinner, acetone, or any other solvent.

### **Federal Communication Commission (FCC) Compliance**

Changes or modifications not approved by Ford Lincoln-Mercury could void user's authority to operate the equipment. This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference and radio communications.

However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

### **Care and service of the DVD player**

#### ***Environmental extremes***

DVD players which are subjected to harsh environmental conditions may be damaged or perform at less than maximum capability. To avoid these outcomes, whenever possible avoid exposing your DVD player to:

- extremely hot or cold temperatures.
- direct sunlight.
- high humidity.
- a dusty environment.
- locations where strong magnetic fields are generated.

## Entertainment Systems

### ***Temperature extremes***

When the vehicle is parked under direct sunlight or in an extremely cold place for a long period of time, wait until the cabin temperature of the vehicle is at normal temperature before operating the system.

### ***Humidity and moisture condensation***

Moisture in the air will condense in the DVD player under extremely humid conditions or when moving from a cold place to a warm one. Moisture condensation may cause damage to the DVD and/or player. If moisture condensation occurs, do not insert a CD or DVD into the player. If one is already in the player, remove it. Turn the DVD player ON to dry the moisture before inserting a DVD. This could take an hour or more.

### ***Foreign substances***

Exercise care to prevent dirt and foreign objects from entering the DVD player compartment. Be especially careful not to spill liquids of any kind onto the media controls or into the system. If liquid is accidentally spilled onto the system, immediately turn the system OFF and consult a qualified service technician.

### ***Cleaning the liquid crystal display (LCD) flip-down screen***

Clean the display screen by applying a small amount of water or any ammonia-based household glass cleaner directly to a soft cloth. Rub the screen gently until the dust, dirt or fingerprints are removed. Do not spray the screen directly with water or glass cleaning solvents. Overspray from these fluids could drip down into the internal electronics of the screen and cause damage. Do not apply excessive pressure while cleaning the screen.

### ***Cleaning DVD and CD discs***

Inspect all discs for contamination before playing. If necessary, clean discs only with an approved DVD and CD cleaner and wipe from the center out to the edge. Do not use circular motion.

## Entertainment Systems

### ***Compatibility with aftermarket audio systems (headphone only mode)***

When the Family Entertainment System (FES) detects that the original radio supplied by Ford Motor Company has been removed from the vehicle, the FES will work in a state referred to as “Headphone Only Mode.” This mode allows the FES to operate as a standalone system, without interface to the radio.

While operating in Headphone Only Mode, the system will have limited functionality.

- The system will only output audio to the headphones. It will not be capable of providing audio to the speakers.
- The available sources in FES Headphone Only Mode are DVD-DISC and DVD-AUX, regardless of headphone channel (A or B).
- When a disc is inserted into the FES while in Headphone Only Mode, both headphone channels (A and B) will be connected to FES-DISC.

### **NAVIGATION SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)**

Your vehicle may be equipped with a navigation system. Refer to the *Navigation System* supplement for further information.

### **SYNC® (IF EQUIPPED)**

Your vehicle may be equipped with SYNC®, a hands-free communications and entertainment system with special phone and media features. For more information, please refer to the SYNC® supplement or to the SYNC® section in the *Navigation System* supplement (if equipped).

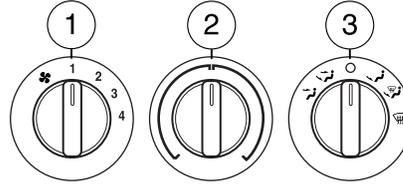
## Climate Controls

### HEATER ONLY SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

1. **Fan speed adjustment:** Controls the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.

2. **Temperature selection:**  
Controls the temperature of the airflow in the vehicle.

3. **Air flow selections:** Controls the direction of the airflow in the vehicle. See the following for a brief description on each control.



 : Distributes outside air through the instrument panel vents.

 : Distributes outside air through the instrument panel vents and the floor vents.

 (OFF): Outside air is shut out and the climate system is turned off.

 : Distributes outside air through the floor vents.

 : Distributes outside air through the windshield defroster vents and floor vents.

 : Distributes outside air through the windshield defroster vents and demister vents. Can be used to clear the windshield of fog and thin ice.

### Operating tips

- To reduce fog build up on the windshield during humid weather, place the air flow selector in the  position.
- Do not put objects under the front seats that will interfere with the air flow to the back seats.
- To reduce humidity build-up inside the vehicle, do not drive in the  (OFF) position.
- Under normal weather conditions, do not leave the airflow selector in  (OFF). This allows the vehicle to breathe using the outside air inlets.
- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.

To aid in side window defogging/demisting in cold weather:

1. Select .
2. Adjust the temperature control to maintain comfort.

98

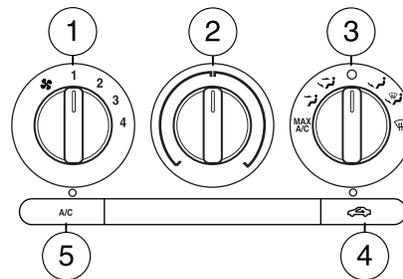
## Climate Controls

3. Set the fan speed to the highest setting.
4. Direct the outer instrument panel vents towards the side windows.

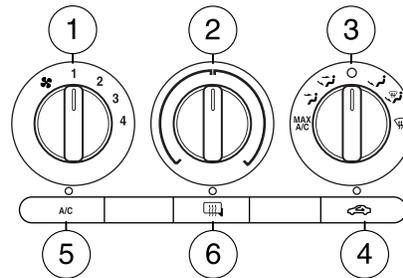
To increase airflow to the outer instrument panel vents, close the vents located in the middle of the instrument panel.

### MANUAL HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEMS (IF EQUIPPED)

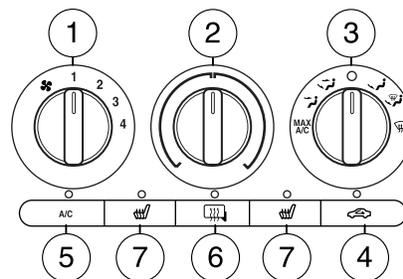
- Manual heating and air conditioning system



- Manual heating and air conditioning system with heated mirrors



- Manual heating and air conditioning system with heated mirrors and heated seats



## Climate Controls

1. **Fan speed adjustment:** Controls the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.
2. **Temperature selection:** Controls the temperature of the airflow in the vehicle.
3. **Air flow selections:** Controls the direction of the airflow in the vehicle. See the following for a brief description on each control.

**MAX A/C:** Distributes recirculated air through the instrument panel vents only to cool the vehicle. This re-cooling of the interior air is more economical and efficient. Recirculated air may also help reduce undesirable odors from entering the vehicle.

 : Distributes air through the instrument panel vents.

 : Distributes air through the instrument panel vents and the floor vents.

**O (OFF):** Outside air is shut out and the fan will not operate.

 : Distributes air through the floor vents.

 : Distributes air through the windshield defroster vents and floor vents.

 : Distributes outside air through the windshield defroster vents. Can be used to clear ice or fog from the windshield.

4.  **(Recirculated air):** Press to activate/deactivate air recirculation in cabin. Recirculated air may reduce the amount of time to cool down the interior of the vehicle and may also help reduce undesired odors from reaching the interior of the vehicle. Recirculation engages automatically with selection of MAX A/C or can be engaged manually in any other airflow selection except defrost. Recirculation may turn off automatically in all airflow selections except MAX A/C.

5. **A/C:** Press to activate/deactivate air conditioning. Use with recirculated air to improve cooling performance and efficiency. Engages automatically in MAX A/C,  and .

6.  **(Heated mirrors):** Press to turn the heated mirrors on and off. The heated mirrors turn off automatically after 10 minutes.

7.  **(Heated seats):** Press to turn the heated seats on and off. The heated seats turn off when the ignition is turned off.

## Climate Controls

### Operating tips

- To reduce fog build up on the windshield during humid weather, place the air flow selector in the  position.
- To reduce humidity build up inside the vehicle, do not drive with the air flow selector in the O (Off) position.
- Do not put objects under the front seats that will interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.
- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.
- To improve the A/C cool down, drive with the windows slightly open for 2–3 minutes after start up or until the vehicle has been “aired out.”

During extreme high ambient temperatures when idling stationary for extended periods of time in gear, it is recommended to run the A/C in the MAX A/C position, reduce blower fan speed from the highest setting and put the vehicle's transmission into the P (PARK) gear position (automatic transmission only) to continue to receive cool air from your A/C system.

For maximum cooling performance in MAX A/C mode:

1. Move the temperature control to the coolest setting.
2. Set the fan to the highest speed initially, then adjust in order to maintain comfort.

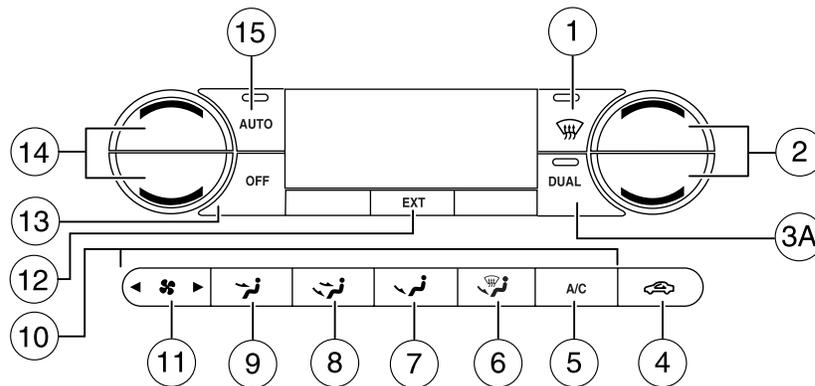
To aid in side window defogging and demisting in cold weather:

1. Select .
2. Select A/C.
3. Set the temperature control to maintain comfort.
4. Set the fan speed to highest setting.
5. Direct the outer instrument panel vents towards the side windows.

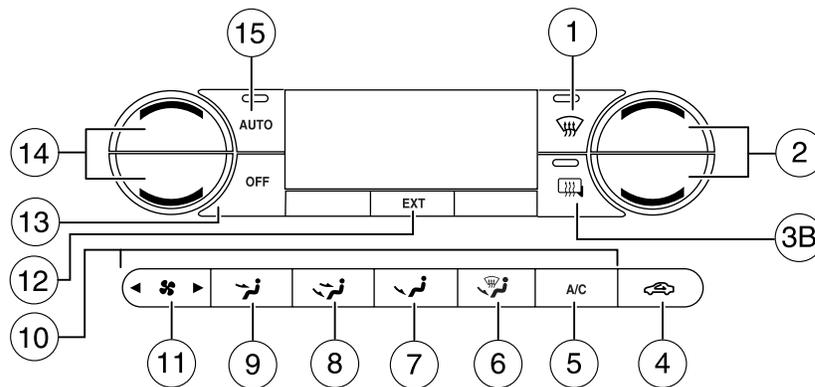
## Climate Controls

### DUAL AUTOMATIC TEMPERATURE CONTROL (DATC) SYSTEMS (IF EQUIPPED)

- DATC

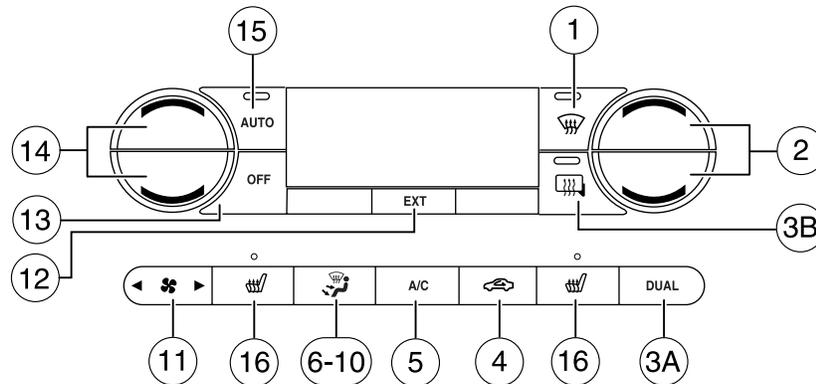


- DATC with heated mirrors



## Climate Controls

- DATC with heated seats and heated mirrors



**Temperature conversion:** To switch between Fahrenheit and Celsius, refer to *Units (English/Metric)* under either *Standard Message Center* or *Optional Message Center* in the *Driver Controls* chapter

In order to achieve maximum cooling performance, press , A/C, , and set the temperature to 60°F (16°C) and the highest blower setting.

1.  **Defrost:** Distributes outside air through the windshield defroster and demister vents. Can be used to clear thin ice or fog from the windshield. To exit  select another mode.

2. **Passenger temperature control:** Press to increase/decrease the passenger side temperature in the vehicle cabin.

3A. **Dual:** (Single/dual electric temperature control): Allows the driver to have full control of the cabin temperature settings (single zone) or allows the passenger to have control of their individual temperature settings (dual zone control). Press to turn on dual zone mode, press again to return to single zone.

3B.  **Heated mirrors:** Press to defrost the outside rear view mirrors. The heated mirrors will turn off after 10 minutes or can be turned off by pressing the button again. Refer to *Power mirrors* in the *Driver Controls* chapter for more information.

## Climate Controls

4.  **Recirculation control:** Press to activate/deactivate air recirculation in cabin. Recirculated air may reduce the amount of time to cool down the interior of the vehicle and may also help reduce undesired odors from reaching the interior of the vehicle. Recirculation can be engaged manually in any other airflow selection except  (defrost). Recirculation may turn off automatically in all airflow selections except MAX A/C.
5. **A/C control:** Press to activate/deactivate air conditioning. Use with recirculated air to improve cooling performance and efficiency. Engages automatically in AUTO,  (defrost) and  (floor/defrost).
6. **Manual override controls:** Press this control to manually select where you want the airflow directed. To return to full automatic control, press AUTO.
7.  : Distributes air through the windshield defroster vents and floor vents.
8.  : Distributes air through the floor vents.
9.  : Distributes air through the instrument panel vents and the floor vents.
10.  : Distributes air through the instrument panel vents.
11.  **Fan speed control:** Press to manually increase or decrease the fan speed. To return to automatic fan operation, press AUTO.
12. **EXT:** Press to display outside temperature. Press again to display cabin temperature settings.
13. **OFF:** Outside air is shut out and the fan will not operate.
14. **Driver temperature control:** Press to increase/decrease the driver side temperature in the vehicle cabin.
15. **AUTO:** To engage automatic temperature control, press AUTO and select the desired temperature using the temperature control. The system will automatically determine fan speed, airflow location, A/C on or off, and outside or recirculated air, to heat or cool the vehicle to reach the desired temperature.
16.  **Heated seat controls:** Press to turn the heated seats on and off. The heated seats turn off when the ignition is turned off.

## Climate Controls

### Operating tips

- To reduce fog build up on the windshield during humid weather, place the air flow selector in the  position.
- To reduce humidity build up inside the vehicle, do not drive with the system off, or with recirculated air  engaged and A/C off.
- Do not put objects under the front seats that will interfere with the airflow to the back seats.
- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.
- To improve the A/C cool down, drive with the windows slightly open for 2-3 minutes after start up or until the vehicle has been “aired out”.

During extreme high ambient temperatures when idling stationary for extended periods of time in gear, it is recommended to run the A/C in the max A/C position, reduce blower fan speed from the highest setting and put the vehicle's transmission into the P (PARK) gear position (automatic transmission only) to continue to receive cool air from your A/C system.

For maximum cooling performance (MAX A/C):

#### Automatic operation:

1. Press AUTO for full automatic operation.
2. Do not override A/C or  (recirculated air).
3. Set the temperature to 60°F (16°C).

#### Override operation:

1. Select air distribution.
2. Select A/C and  (recirculated air). Use  (recirculated air) with A/C to provide colder airflow.
3. Set the temperature to 60°F (16°C).
4. Set highest fan speed initially, then adjust to maintain comfort.

## Climate Controls

### In (panel) or (panel/floor) modes:

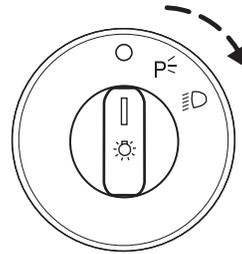
1. Move temperature control to full cold.
  2. Select A/C and  (recirculated air). Use recirculated air with A/C to provide colder airflow.
  3. Set highest fan speed initially, then adjust to maintain comfort.
- To aid in side window defogging/demisting in cold weather:

1. Select .
  2. Select A/C.
  3. Adjust the temperature control to maintain comfort.
  4. Set the fan speed to the highest setting.
  5. Direct the outer instrument panel vents towards the side windows.
- To increase airflow to the outer instrument panel vents, close the vents located in the middle of the instrument panel.

## Lights

### HEADLAMP CONTROL

-  Turns the lamps off.
-  Turns on the parking lamps, instrument panel lamps, license plate lamps and tail lamps.
-  Turns the headlamps on.

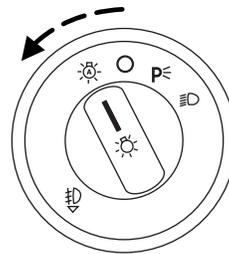


### Autolamp control (if equipped)

The autolamp system provides light sensitive automatic on-off control of the exterior lights normally controlled by the headlamp control.

The autolamp system also keeps the lights on for approximately 20 seconds. On vehicles equipped with a message center, you can select a delay from 0–180 seconds after the ignition switch is turned to off.

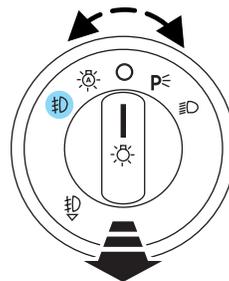
- To turn autolamps on, rotate the control counterclockwise.
- To turn autolamps off, rotate the control clockwise to the off position.



### Fog lamp control (if equipped)

The headlamp control also operates the fog lamps. The fog lamps can be turned on only when the headlamp control is in the , , or  position and the high beams are not turned on.

Pull headlamp control towards you to turn fog lamps on. The fog lamp indicator light  will illuminate.



## Lights

### Daytime running lamps (DRL) (if equipped)

Turns the headlamps on with a reduced output.

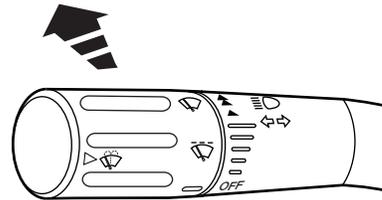
To activate:

- the ignition must be in the on position,
- the headlamp control is in the off or parking lamp position and
- the parking brake must be disengaged.

**!** **WARNING:** Always remember to turn on your headlamps at dusk or during inclement weather. The Daytime Running Lamp (DRL) system does not activate the tail lamps and generally may not provide adequate lighting during these conditions. Failure to activate your headlamps under these conditions may result in a collision.

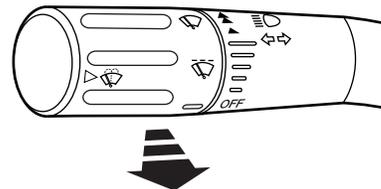
### High beams

Push the lever toward the instrument panel to activate. Pull the lever toward you to deactivate.



### Flash-to-pass

Pull toward you slightly to activate and release to deactivate.



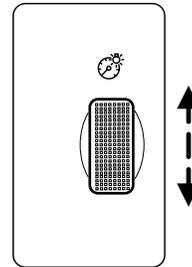
## Lights

### PANEL DIMMER CONTROL

Use to adjust the brightness of the instrument panel and all applicable illuminated switches in the vehicle during headlamp and parklamp operation.

Move the control to the full upright position, past detent, to turn on the interior lamps.

**Note:** If the battery is disconnected, discharged, or a new battery is installed, the dimmer switch requires re-calibration. Rotate the dimmer switch from the full dim position to the full dome/on position to reset. This will ensure that your displays are visible under all lighting conditions



### AIMING THE HEADLAMPS

Your vehicle may be equipped with a sealed beam or aerodynamic headlamp system. Sealed beam headlamps may be aimed in the vertical (up/down) and the horizontal (left/right) directions using the procedures following. The aerodynamic headlamps can only be aimed in the vertical direction (up/down) using the procedures following. The headlamps on your vehicle are properly aimed at the assembly plant and should not normally need adjusting.

#### Vertical and horizontal aim adjustment (sealed beam headlamps)

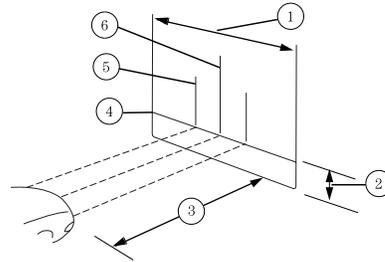
The headlamps on your vehicle are intended to be aimed using mechanical aimers. If mechanical aimers are used and the cross-car sight line is in any way blocked, set the legs of the universal adaptor all to the same setting, such that the cross-car sight line is no longer blocked, per the instructions for the brand of mechanical aimer used. You can also aim the headlamps visually using the procedure below.

## Lights

To adjust the headlamps:

1. Park your vehicle on a level surface about 25 feet (7.6 meters) away from a vertical plain surface (3). Check your headlamp alignment at night or in a dark area so that you can see the headlamp beam pattern.

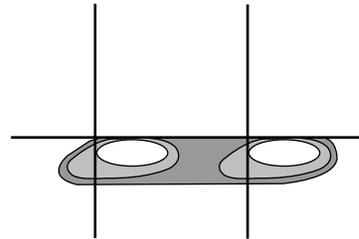
- (1) 8 feet (2.4 meters)
- (2) Center height of lamp to ground
- (3) 25 feet (7.6 meters)
- (4) Horizontal reference line
- (5) Center of headlamps
- (6) Center line of the vehicle



2. The center of the headlamp is marked either on the lens (a circle or cross marker) or on the bulb shield, internal to the lamp (mark or feature). Measure the height from the center of your headlamp to the ground (2) and mark an 8 foot (2.4 meter) long horizontal line on the wall or screen (1) at this height (masking tape works well).

3. Turn on the low beam headlamps and open the hood.

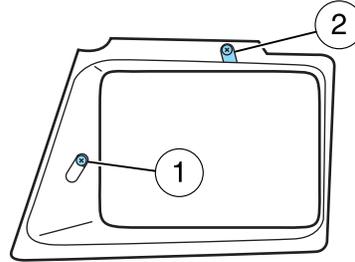
4. Locate the high intensity area of the beam pattern and place the top edge of the intensity zone even with the horizontal reference line (4). If the top edge of the high intensity area is not even with the horizontal line, follow the next step to adjust it.



## Lights

5. Locate the vertical adjuster (2) for each headlamp. Adjust the aim by turning the adjuster control either clockwise (to adjust up) or counterclockwise (to adjust down).

6. In addition to the horizontal line marked in step 2, a pair of vertical lines (5) must be marked at the center line of the headlamps on the wall or screen.



7. On the wall or screen, locate the high intensity area of the beam pattern. The left edge of the high intensity area should be even with the vertical line corresponding to the headlamp under adjustment. If the left edge of the high intensity area is not even with the vertical line, follow the next step to adjust it.

8. Locate the horizontal adjuster (1) for each headlamp. Turn it clockwise or counterclockwise, to place the left edge of the high intensity area even with the vertical line corresponding to the headlamp under adjustment.

### Vertical aim adjustment (aerodynamic headlamps)

The headlamps on your vehicle can only be vertically adjusted. Your vehicle does not require horizontal aim adjustments.

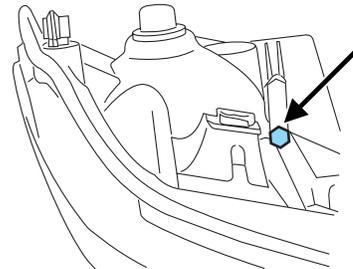
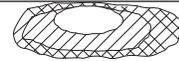
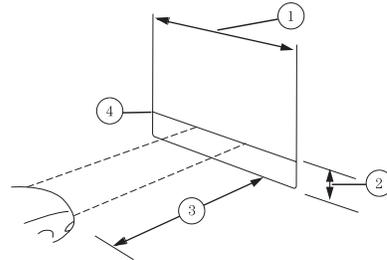
To adjust the headlamps:

1. Park the vehicle directly in front of a wall or screen on a level surface, approximately 25 feet (7.6 meters) away.

- (1) 8 feet (2.4 meters)
- (2) Center height of lamp to ground
- (3) 25 feet (7.6 meters)

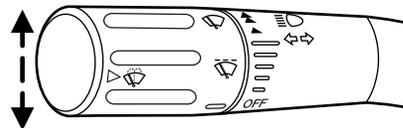
## Lights

- (4) Horizontal reference line
2. Measure the height from the center of your headlamp (indicated by a 3.0 mm circle on the lens) to the ground and mark an 8 foot (2.4 meter) horizontal reference line on the vertical wall or screen at this height (a piece of masking tape works well).
  3. Turn on the low beam headlamps to illuminate the wall or screen and open the hood. Cover one of the headlamps so no light from that lamp hits the wall.
  4. On the wall or screen you will observe a light pattern with a distinct horizontal edge towards the right. If this edge is not at the horizontal reference line, the beam will need to be adjusted so the edge is at the same height as the horizontal reference line.
  5. Locate the vertical adjuster on each headlamp, then use a E5 Torx socket to turn the adjuster either counterclockwise (to adjust down) or clockwise (to adjust up) aligning the upper edge of the light pattern up to the horizontal line.
  6. Repeat Steps 3–5 for the other headlamp.
  7. Close the hood and turn off the lamps.



### TURN SIGNAL CONTROL ⇄

- Push down to activate the left turn signal.
- Push up to activate the right turn signal.

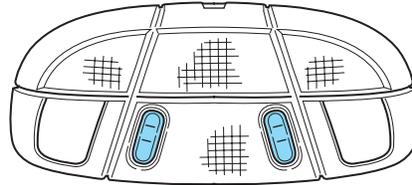


## Lights

### MAP LAMPS (IF EQUIPPED)

The dome lamp turns on when:

- any door is opened,
- the instrument panel dimmer switch is rotated up until the courtesy lamps come on, and
- any of the remote entry controls are pressed and the ignition is off.



### BULB REPLACEMENT

#### Lamp assembly condensation

Exterior lamps are vented to accommodate normal changes in pressure. Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a thin film of mist can form on the interior of the lens. The thin mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation. Clearing time may take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

Examples of acceptable condensation are:

- Presence of thin mist (no streaks, drip marks or droplets)
- Fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens

Examples of unacceptable moisture (usually caused by a lamp water leak) are:

- Water puddle inside the lamp
- Large water droplets, drip marks or streaks present on the interior of the lens

Take your vehicle to dealer for service if any of the above conditions of unacceptable moisture are present.

## Lights

### Replacing exterior bulbs

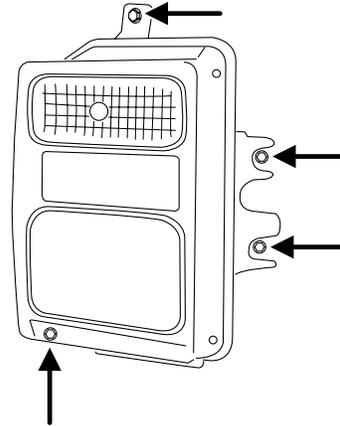
Check the operation of all the bulbs frequently.

Function	Number of bulbs	Trade number
Headlamps (aerodynamic)	2	H13/9008
Headlamps (sealed beam)	2	H6054
Park lamp with aerodynamic headlamp	2	3157A or 3157AK
Park lamp with sealed beam headlamp	2	3157
Sidemarker	2	194
Tail/stop/turn/sidemarker (pick-up only)	2	3157
Tail/stop/turn/sidemarker (chassis cabs only; if equipped)	2	3157
Back-up (pick-ups only)	2	921
Back-up (chassis cabs only)	2	3157
High-mount stoplamp	1	922
Fog lamp	2	9145
License plate lamp	2	194
Cargo lamp	2	906
Mirror turn signal	2	2825
Mirror clearance lamp	2	2825
*Front clearance lamps (2) and front identification lamps (3)	5	194
*Rear fender clearance	4	194
Interior visor lamp (if equipped)	4	194
*Rear identification	3	194
All replacement bulbs are clear in color except where noted.		
To replace all instrument panel lights - see your authorized dealer		
* Dual rear wheels, or if equipped.		

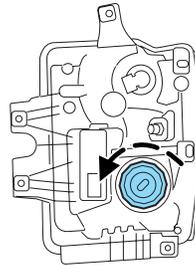
## Lights

### **Replacing headlamp bulbs (aerodynamic)**

1. Make sure that the headlamps are off, then open the hood.
2. Remove the bolts from the headlamp assembly.
3. Pull the assembly straight out disengaging two snap clips from the fender.
4. Disconnect the electrical connector by squeezing the release tab and pushing the connector forward, then pulling it rearward.



5. Remove the bulb assembly by turning it counterclockwise and pulling it straight out.



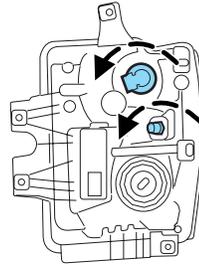
**!** **WARNING:** Handle a halogen headlamp bulb carefully and keep out of children's reach. Grasp the bulb only by its plastic base and do not touch the glass. The oil from your hand could cause the bulb to break the next time the headlamps are operated.

Install the new bulb(s) in reverse order.

## Lights

### **Replacing park/turn and sidemarker lamp bulbs (aerodynamic)**

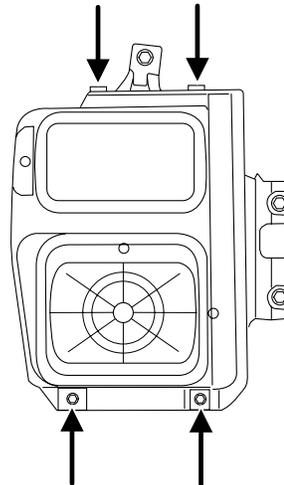
1. Make sure that the headlamps are off, then open the hood.
2. Remove the bolts from the headlamp assembly.
3. Pull the assembly straight out.
4. Remove the bulb assembly, sidemarker or park/turn bulb by turning it counterclockwise and pulling it straight out.
5. Pull the old bulb out from the socket.



Install the new bulb(s) in reverse order.

### **Replacing headlamp bulbs (sealed beam)**

1. Make sure that the headlamps are off, then open the hood.
2. Remove the three screws and one bolt from the top and bottom of the park lamp/bezel assembly.
3. Remove the four screws and the headlamp retaining ring from the headlamp.
4. Disconnect the electrical connector from the headlamp.

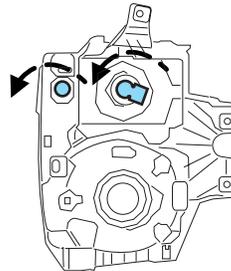


Install the new bulb(s) in reverse order.

## Lights

### **Replacing park/turn/sidemarker bulbs (sealed beam)**

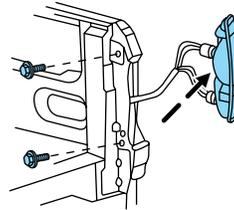
1. Make sure that the headlamps are off, then open the hood.
2. Remove the three screws and one bolt from the top and bottom of the park lamp/bezel assembly.
3. Pull the assembly straight out disengaging the snap clip.
4. Remove the bulb assembly, sidemarker or park/turn by turning it counterclockwise (top view of assembly shown).
5. Pull the old bulb out from the socket.



Install the new bulb(s) in reverse order.

### **Replacing brake/tail/turn/back-up lamp bulbs (pick-ups only)**

1. Make sure the headlamps are off, then open the tailgate to expose the lamp assemblies.
2. Remove the two bolts from the tail lamp assembly and carefully pull the lamp assembly from the tailgate pillar by releasing the two retaining tabs.
3. Rotate the bulb socket counterclockwise and remove from lamp assembly.
4. Pull the bulb straight out of the socket.

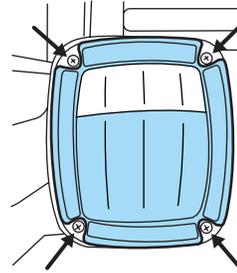


Install the new bulb(s) in reverse order.

## Lights

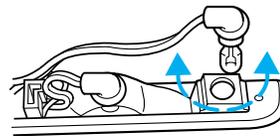
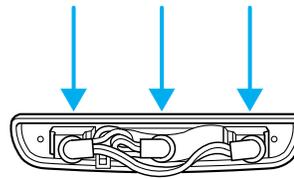
### **Replacing brake/tail/turn/back-up lamp bulbs (chassis cabs only) (if equipped)**

1. Make sure the headlamps are off.
2. Remove the four screws and the lamp lens from lamp assembly.
3. Carefully pull the bulb straight out of the socket and push in the new bulb.



### **Replacing cargo lamp and high-mount brakelamp bulbs**

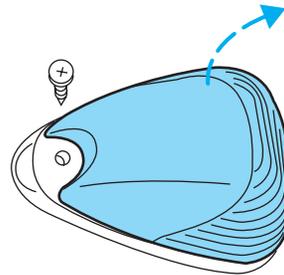
1. Make sure the headlamps are off.
2. Remove the screws and lamp assembly from the vehicle as wiring permits.
3. Remove the bulb socket by rotating it counterclockwise.
4. Pull the bulb straight out of the socket.



## Lights

### **Replacing front clearance and identification lamp bulbs**

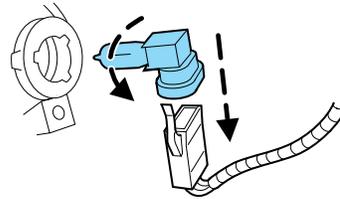
1. Make sure the headlamps are off.
2. Remove the screw and lens from the lamp assembly.
3. Pull the bulb straight out of the socket.



Install the bulb(s) in reverse order.

### **Replacing fog lamp bulbs (if equipped)**

1. Make sure the headlamps are off.
2. Remove the bulb socket from the fog lamp by turning it counterclockwise.
3. Disconnect the electrical connector from the fog lamp bulb.

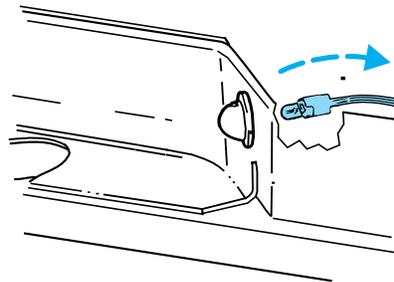


Install the new bulb(s) in reverse order.

### **Replacing license plate lamp bulbs**

The license plate bulbs are located behind the rear bumper. To change the license plate lamp bulbs:

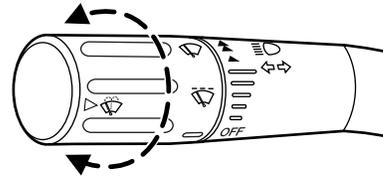
1. Reach behind the rear bumper to locate the bulb.
2. Twist the bulb socket counterclockwise and carefully pull to remove it from the lamp assembly.
3. Pull out the old bulb from the socket and push in the new bulb.
4. Install the bulb socket in lamp assembly by turning it clockwise.



## Driver Controls

### MULTI-FUNCTION LEVER

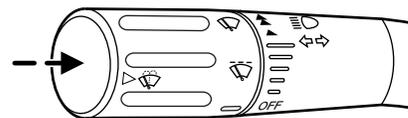
**Windshield wiper:** Rotate the end of the control away from you to increase the speed of the wipers; rotate towards you to decrease the speed of the wipers.



**Speed dependent wipers:** When the wiper control is set on the intermittent settings, the speed of the wipers will automatically adjust with the vehicle speed. The faster your vehicle is travelling the faster the wipers will go.

**Windshield washer:** Press the end of the stalk:

- briefly: causes a single swipe of the wipers without washer fluid.
- a quick press and hold: the wipers will swipe three times with washer fluid.
- a long press and hold: the wipers and washer fluid will be activated for up to 10 seconds.



**Courtesy wipe feature:** One extra wipe will occur a few seconds after washing the front window to clear any excess washer fluid remaining on the windshield.

**Note:** Do not operate the washer when the washer reservoir is empty. This may cause the washer pump to overheat. Check the washer fluid level frequently. Do not operate the wipers when the windshield is dry. This may scratch the glass, damage the wiper blades and cause the wiper motor to burn out. Before operating the wiper on a dry windshield, always use the windshield washer. In freezing weather, be sure the wiper blades are not frozen to the windshield before operating the wipers.

### Windshield wiper rainlamp feature (if equipped with Autolamp)

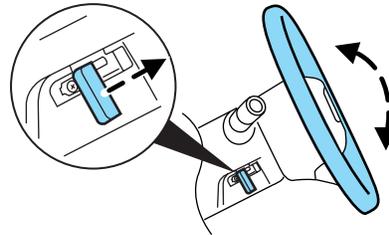
When the windshield wipers are turned on during daylight, and the headlamp control is in the autolamp position, the exterior lamps will turn on after a brief delay and will remain on until the wipers are turned off.

120

## Driver Controls

### TILT STEERING WHEEL

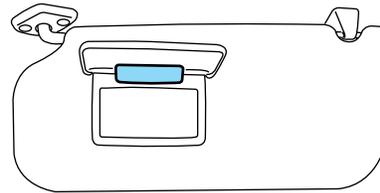
1. Pull and hold the steering wheel release control toward you.
2. Move the steering up or down until you find the desired location.
3. Release the steering wheel release control. This will lock the steering wheel in position.



**WARNING:** Never adjust the steering column when the vehicle is moving.

### ILLUMINATED VISOR MIRROR (IF EQUIPPED)

Lift the mirror cover to turn on the visor mirror lamp.



### OVERHEAD CONSOLE (IF EQUIPPED)

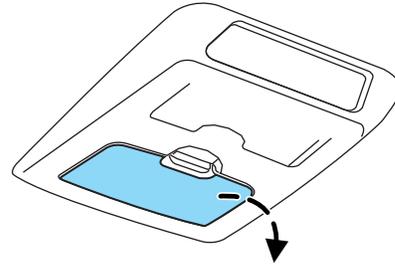
The appearance of your vehicle's overhead console will vary according to your option package. If your vehicle is equipped with a moon roof, refer to *Moon roof* later in this chapter for information on its operation.

## Driver Controls

### Storage compartment (if equipped)

Press the release on the door to open the storage compartment.

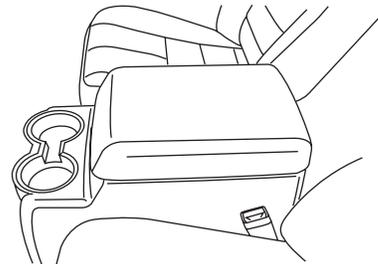
The storage compartment may be used to secure sunglasses or a similar object and the front tab can be used for holding tickets, paper, envelopes, etc. The front bin may be used to store small objects.



### CENTER CONSOLE (IF EQUIPPED)

Your vehicle may be equipped with a variety of console features. These include:

- Utility compartment with cassette/CD holder
- Coin holder
- Pen holder
- Writing surface
- A power point inside the utility compartment and on the rear of the console
- Laptop storage
- Hanging file folder supports
- Rear cupholders (Crew Cab only)



**WARNING:** Use only soft cups in the cupholder. Hard objects can injure you in a collision.

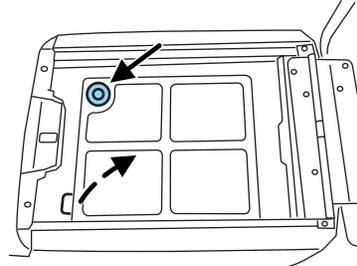
### Center console/under-seat storage – Cabela's Edition (if equipped)

Your vehicle may be equipped with a lockable compartment in the center console and a lockable storage area under the rear seats.

## Driver Controls

### Center console storage

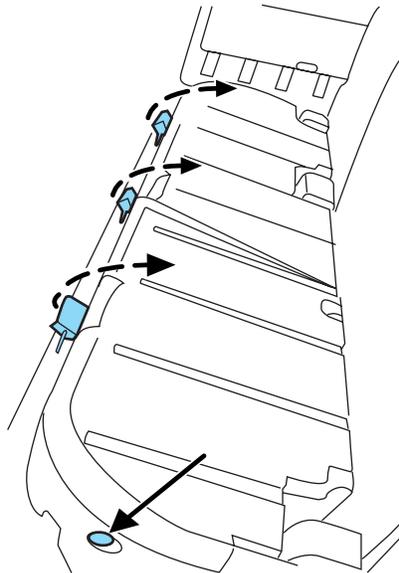
Use the vehicle's ignition key to lock/unlock the compartment.



### Under-seat storage

Flip the rear seat cushion up to access the rear under-seat storage area. See *Seating* in the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter for more information.

Use the vehicle's ignition key to lock/unlock the compartment. Release the lid latches to open the storage area.



### AUXILIARY POWER POINT (12VDC)

**Power outlets are designed for accessory plugs only. Do not insert any other object in the power outlet for this will damage the outlet and blow the fuse. Do not hang any type of accessory or accessory bracket from the plug. Improper use of the power outlet can cause damage not covered by your warranty.**

Auxiliary power points can be found in the following locations:

- On the instrument panel

## Driver Controls

- On the rear of the center console (if equipped) (SuperCab and Crew Cab models)

Do not use the power point for operating the cigarette lighter element (if equipped).

To prevent the fuse from being blown, do not use the power point(s) over the vehicle capacity of 12 VDC/180W. If the power point or cigar lighter socket is not working, a fuse may have blown. Refer to *Fuses and relays* in the *Roadside Emergencies* chapter for information on checking and replacing fuses.

To have full capacity usage of your power point, the engine is required to be running to avoid unintentional discharge of the battery. To prevent the battery from being discharged:

- do not use the power point longer than necessary when the engine is not running,
- do not leave battery chargers, video game adapters, computers and other devices plugged in overnight or when the vehicle is parked for extended periods.

Always keep the power point caps closed when not being used.

### POWER WINDOWS (IF EQUIPPED)



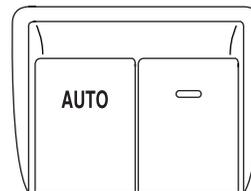
**WARNING:** Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle and do not let children play with the power windows. They may seriously injure themselves.



**WARNING:** When closing the power windows, you should verify they are free of obstructions and ensure that children and/or pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.

Press and pull the window switches to open and close windows.

- Press down (to the first detent) and hold the switch to open.
- Pull up (to the first detent) and hold the switch to close.

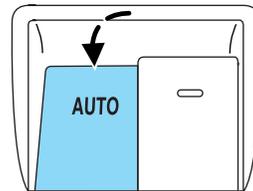


**Rear Window Buffeting:** When one or both of the rear windows are open, the vehicle may demonstrate a wind throb or buffeting noise. This noise can be alleviated by lowering a front window approximately two to three inches.

## Driver Controls

### One-touch down

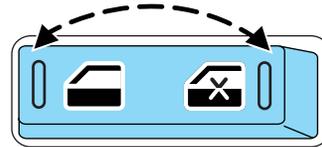
Allows the driver's window to open fully without holding the control down. Press the switch completely down to the second detent and release quickly. The window will open fully. Momentarily press the switch to any position to stop the window operation.



### Window lock (if equipped)

The window lock feature allows only the driver to operate the power windows.

To lock out all the window controls (except for the driver's) press the right side of the control. Press the left side to restore the window controls.



### Power rear slider window (if equipped)



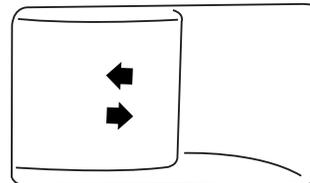
**WARNING:** Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle and do not let children play with the power windows. They may seriously injure themselves.



**WARNING:** When closing the power windows, you should verify they are free of obstructions and ensure that children and/or pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.

If your vehicle is equipped with a power rear slide window, the switch is located on the instrument panel behind the right-hand side of the steering wheel.

- Press the right side of the control to open the window.
- Pull the right side of the control to close the window.



REAR WINDOW

## Driver Controls

### Accessory delay

With accessory delay, the window switches may be used for up to 10 minutes after the ignition switch is turned to the off position or until either front door is opened.

### INTERIOR MIRROR

The interior rear view mirror has two pivot points on the support arm which lets you adjust the mirror up or down and from side to side.



**WARNING:** Do not adjust the mirror while the vehicle is in motion.

### Automatic dimming interior rear view mirror (if equipped)

Your vehicle may be equipped with an interior rear view mirror which has an auto-dimming function. The electronic day/night mirror will change from the normal (high reflective) state to the non-glare (darkened) state when bright lights (glare) reach the mirror. When the mirror detects bright light from behind the vehicle, it will automatically adjust (darken) to minimize glare.

The mirror will automatically return to the normal state whenever the vehicle is placed in R (Reverse) to ensure a bright clear view when backing up.

**Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the interior rear view mirror since this may impair proper mirror performance.**

**Do not clean the housing or glass of any mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.**

**Note:** If equipped with a rearview camera system, a video image will be displayed in the mirror or the navigation system (if equipped) when the vehicle is put in R (Reverse). As you shift into any other gear from R (Reverse), the image will remain for a few seconds and then turn off. Refer to *Rearview camera system* in the *Driving* chapter.

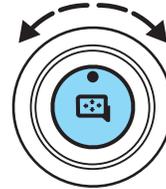
## Driver Controls

### EXTERIOR MIRRORS

#### Power side view mirrors (if equipped)

To adjust your mirrors:

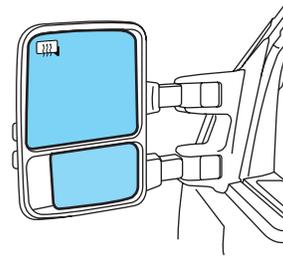
1. Rotate the control clockwise to adjust the right mirror and rotate the control counterclockwise to adjust the left mirror.
2. Move the control in the direction you wish to tilt the mirror.
3. Return to the center position to lock mirrors in place.



The spotter mirror below the main glass (if equipped) must be adjusted manually.

#### Heated outside mirrors (if equipped)

The main mirror glass and lower convex spotter mirror are heated to remove ice, mist and fog. To activate the heated mirrors, press the heated mirror control  located on the climate control panel. The heated mirrors will operate for 10 minutes, then automatically shut off (or shut off when the engine is turned off). In cases of extreme ice and cold, the heater control may need pressing again after 10 minutes in order to fully clear the glass.



**Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or attempt to re-adjust the mirror glass if it is frozen in place. These actions could cause damage to the glass and mirrors.**

**Do not clean the housing or glass of any mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.**

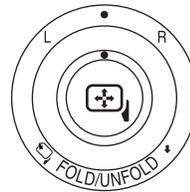
#### Fold-away mirrors

Fold the side mirrors in carefully before driving through a narrow space, like an automatic car wash.

## Driver Controls

### **Powerfold mirrors (if equipped)**

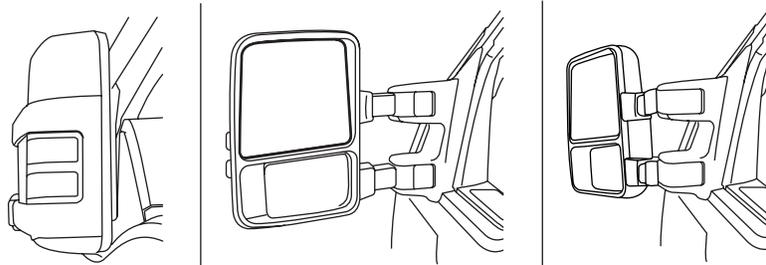
You can fold the side mirrors simultaneously using the power mirror switch.



To operate the powerfold mirrors:

1. Rotate the switch to the center/neutral position.
2. Momentarily pull the switch rearward to auto fold in.
3. Momentarily pull the switch rearward again to fold back to design position.

**Note:** When powerfolding the mirrors, it is normal to hear the sound of the motors.



Powerfold mirror positions, from left to right: Position 1, Position 2, Position 3

The powerfold mirrors may be folded forward/rearward manually to any of the three positions shown and electrically to positions 1 and 2 only. If a mirror is folded manually forward to position 3, you must manually fold it back to position 1 or 2 in order for the powerfold function to continue functioning. **Note:** Although it is possible to electrically fold the mirror from position 3 to 2, it was not designed for this functionality and may not always work under all conditions.

**Note:** Ten or more switch activations within one minute, or repeated fold/unfolding of the mirrors while holding the switch rearward during the full travel may cause the system to disable the fold/unfold function to

128

## Driver Controls

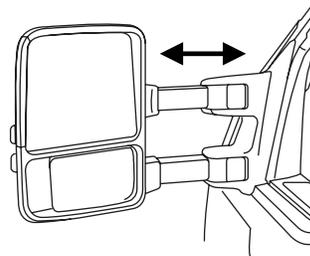
protect the motors from overheating. Should this occur, wait approximately 3½ minutes for the system to reset and function to return to normal.

**Note:** The powerfold mirrors are designed to operate while the vehicle is stationary or traveling at moderate speeds. If you attempt to powerfold the mirrors at high speeds, they may not fully fold forward/rearward - slow down and powerfold or manually fold the mirrors in order to complete the fold operation.

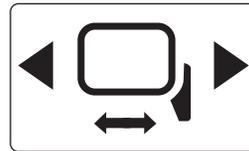
**Note:** If the power fold/telescope mirror glass appears loose or vibrates when driving, it is possible that the mirrors have been manually folded or telescoped. To minimize the vibration, ensure that the mirrors are electronically folded and telescoped in/out with the switches on the door trim panel. If the power fold mirrors are out of sync, electronically powerfold the mirrors to re-sync the motors. This will cause a loud “click” and the mirrors will jerk during re-synchronization. This is normal.

### Telescoping mirrors (if equipped)

The telescoping feature allows the mirror to extend approximately 2.75 inches (70 mm). This feature is especially useful to the driver when towing a trailer. Mirrors can be manually pulled out or pushed in to the desired telescopic position.



If equipped with power telescoping mirrors, you can simultaneously position both mirrors using the power telescope switch found on the door trim panel.



- To telescope the mirrors outboard, press and hold the left side of the power telescope switch until the mirrors reach their desired position. When the end of travel is reached, it is normal to hear the power telescoping motors running as long as you continue to hold the switch.

## Driver Controls

- To telescope the mirrors inboard, press and hold the right side of the power telescope switch until the mirrors reach their desired position.

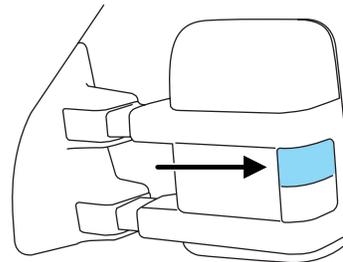
### Memory mirrors (if equipped)

This system allows automatic positioning of the outside rearview mirrors. For more information on this feature, refer to *Memory seats/power mirrors/adjustable pedals* in the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter.

### Mirror-mounted side turn signal indicator (if equipped)

When the vehicle turn signals are activated, the outer portion of the mirror housing will blink amber.

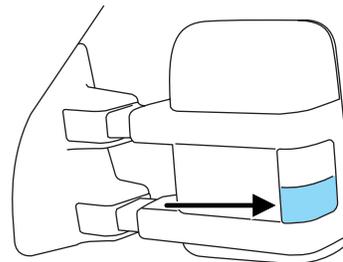
The turn signal feature can be seen by other drivers who may approach from the rear of the vehicle.



### Clearance lamps (if equipped)

Illuminates when the headlamps or parking lamps are switched on.

This provides additional visibility of your vehicle to other drivers on the road.

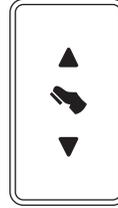


## Driver Controls

### POWER ADJUSTABLE FOOT PEDALS (IF EQUIPPED)

The accelerator and brake pedal should only be adjusted when the vehicle is stopped and the gearshift lever is in the P (Park) position.

Press and hold the rocker control to adjust accelerator and brake pedal toward you or away from you.



**WARNING:** Never adjust the accelerator and brake pedal with feet on the pedals while the vehicle is moving.

The accelerator and brake pedal positions are saved when doing a memory set function and can be recalled along with the vehicle personality features when a memory position is selected through the remote entry transmitter, keyless entry keypad or memory switch on the driver's door (if equipped with memory feature). Refer to *Memory seats/power mirrors/adjustable pedals* in the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter.

### SPEED CONTROL (IF EQUIPPED)

With speed control set, you can maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal.



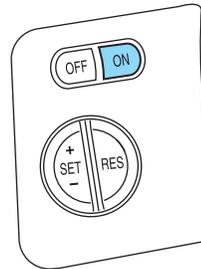
**WARNING:** Do not use the speed control in heavy traffic or on roads that are winding, slippery or unpaved.

## Driver Controls

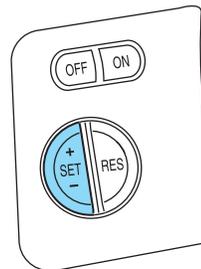
### Setting speed control

The controls for using your speed control are located on the steering wheel for your convenience.

1. Press the ON control and release it.
2. Accelerate to the desired speed.



3. Press the SET + control and release it.
4. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.
5. The indicator light  on the instrument cluster will turn on.



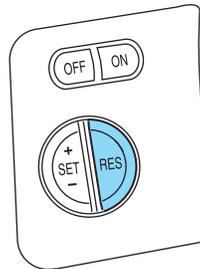
### Note:

- Vehicle speed may vary momentarily when driving up and down a steep hill.
- If the vehicle speed increases above the set speed on a downhill, you may want to apply the brakes to reduce the speed.
- If the vehicle speed decreases more than 10 mph (16 km/h) below your set speed on an uphill, your speed control will disengage.

## Driver Controls

### **Resuming a set speed**

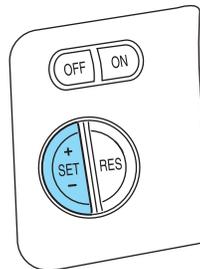
Press the RES (resume) control and release it. This will automatically return the vehicle to the previously set speed.



### **Increasing speed while using speed control**

There are two ways to set a higher speed:

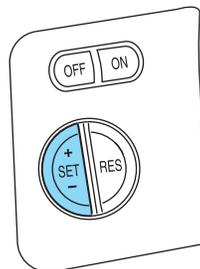
- Press and hold the SET + control until you get to the desired speed, then release the control. You can also use the SET + control to operate the Tap-Up function. Press and release this control to increase the vehicle set speed in small amounts by 1 mph (1.6 km/h).
- Use the accelerator pedal to get to the desired speed. When the vehicle reaches that speed press and release the SET + control.



### **Reducing speed while using speed control**

There are two ways to reduce a set speed:

- Press and hold the SET - control until you get to the desired speed, then release the control. You can also use the SET - control to operate the Tap-Down function. Press and release this control to decrease the vehicle set speed in small amounts by 1 mph (1.6 km/h).
- Depress the brake pedal until the desired vehicle speed is reached, press the SET + control.



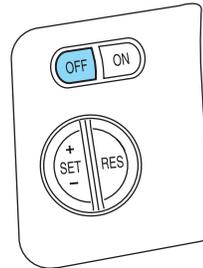
## Driver Controls

### Turning off speed control

There are two ways to turn off the speed control:

- Depress the brake pedal. This will not erase your vehicle's previously set speed.
- Press the speed control OFF control.

**Note:** When you turn off the speed control or the ignition, your speed control set speed memory is erased.



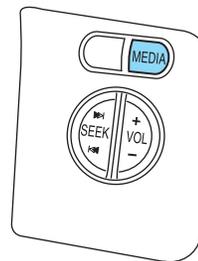
### STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS (IF EQUIPPED)

These controls allow you to operate some radio and climate control features.

#### Audio control features

Press MEDIA to select:

- AM, FM1, FM2
- CD (if equipped)
- DVD (if equipped)
- SAT1, SAT2 or SAT3 (Satellite Radio mode, if equipped).
- LINE IN (Auxiliary input jack)



## Driver Controls

### In AM, FM1, or FM2 mode:

- Press **SEEK** to select preset stations within the selected radio band or press and hold to select the next/previous radio frequency.

### In Satellite radio mode (if equipped):

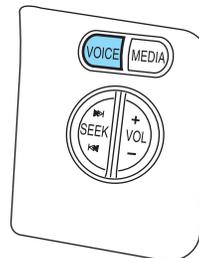
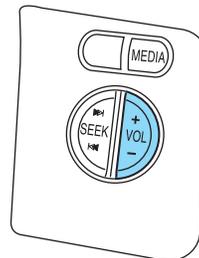
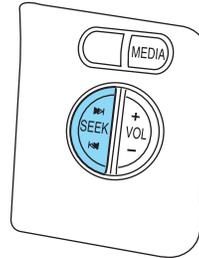
- Press **SEEK** to advance through preset channels or subscribed channels.

### In CD mode:

- Press **SEEK** to select the next selection on the CD or press and hold to forward or reverse the CD.

### In any mode:

- Press **VOL +** or **-** to adjust volume.



### Navigation system hands free control features (if equipped)

Press and hold **VOICE** briefly until the voice icon appears on the navigation display to use the voice command feature.

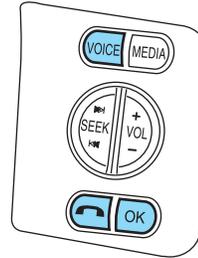
Press **VOICE** to complete a voice command.

For further information on the Navigation system, refer to the *Navigation System* supplement.

## Driver Controls

### SYNC® system hands free control feature (if equipped)

Press VOICE briefly until the voice  icon appears on the display to use the voice command feature. You will hear a tone and LISTENING will appear in the radio display. Press and hold VOICE to exit voice command.



Press  to activate phone mode or answer a phone call. Press and hold  to end call or exit phone mode.

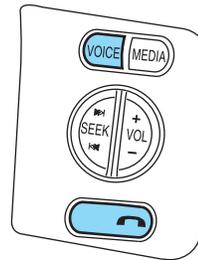
Press   to scroll through various menus and selections. Press OK to confirm your selection.

For further information on the SYNC® system, refer to the SYNC® supplement.

### Navigation system/SYNC® hands free control features (if equipped)

Press VOICE briefly until the voice  icon appears on the navigation display to use the voice command feature.

Press  to activate phone mode or answer a phone call. Press and hold  to exit phone mode or end call.

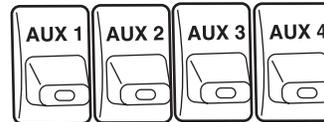


For further information on the Navigation system/SYNC® system, refer to the *Navigation System* and SYNC® supplements.

## Driver Controls

### UPFITTER CONTROLS (IF EQUIPPED)

Your vehicle may be equipped with the Upfitter option package which will provide four switches, mounted in the center of the instrument panel, labeled AUX 1, AUX 2, AUX 3 and AUX 4. These switches will only operate while the ignition is in the on position, whether the engine is

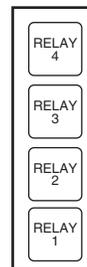


running or not. It is, however, recommended that the engine remain running to maintain battery charge when using the Upfitter switches for extended duration or higher current draws. (This is even more important for vehicles with diesel engines since the glow plugs are also draining battery power when the ignition key is in the on position.)

When switched on by the operator they provide 10 amps, 15 amps or 30 amps of electrical battery power for a variety of personal or commercial uses.

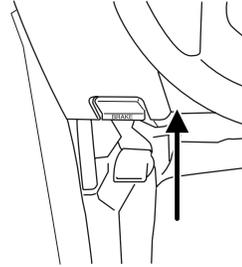
If your vehicle is equipped with this option, there will also be a relay box located on the driver side end of the instrument panel. See your authorized dealer for service.

The relays are coded as shown in the accompanying illustration.



## Driver Controls

There will also be one power lead for each switch found as a blunt-cut and sealed wire located below the instrument panel and to the left of the steering column.



They are coded as follows:

Switch	Circuit number	Wire color	Fuse
AUX 1	CAC05	Yellow	30A
AUX 2	CAC06	Green with Brown Trace	30A
AUX 3	CAC07	Violet with Green Trace	10A
AUX 4	CAC08	Brown	15A

More detailed information about Upfitter switches can be found at <https://www.fleet.ford.com/truckbbas/>.

### MOON ROOF (IF EQUIPPED)

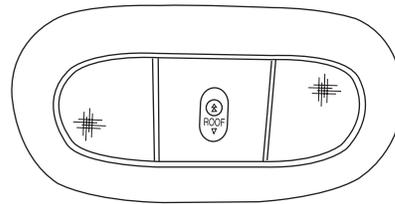
The moon roof control is located on the overhead console.



**WARNING:** Do not let children play with the moon roof or leave children unattended in the vehicle. They may seriously hurt themselves.

**Note:** The moon roof will open to the “comfort” position first before opening all the way. The “comfort” position helps to alleviate rumbling wind noise which may happen in the vehicle with the roof fully opened.

**To open the moon roof:** The moon roof is equipped with a one-touch open feature. Press and release the  control. The moon roof will open to the “comfort” position. Press



138

## Driver Controls

and release the control again to fully open. To stop the one-touch open feature, press either the  $\Delta$  or  $\nabla$  control again.

 **WARNING:** When closing the moon roof, you should verify that it is free of obstructions and ensure that children and/or pets are not in the proximity of the moon roof opening.

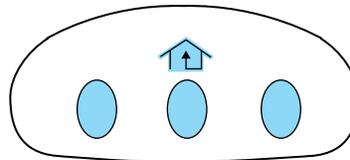
**To close the moon roof:** Press and hold the  $\nabla$  control until the glass panel stops moving. When fully closed, the rear portion of the glass panel will appear higher than the front portion.

**To vent the moon roof:** Press and hold the  $\nabla$  control. **The moon roof must be in the closed position in order to move it into the vent position.** To close, press and hold the  $\Delta$  control until the glass panel stops moving.

The moon roof has a built-in sliding shade that can be manually opened or closed when the glass panel is shut. To close the shade, pull it toward the front of the vehicle.

### HOMELINK® WIRELESS CONTROL SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

The HomeLink® Wireless Control System, located on the driver's visor, provides a convenient way to replace up to three hand-held transmitters with a single built-in device. This feature will learn the radio frequency codes of most transmitters to operate garage doors, entry gate operators, security systems, entry door locks, and home or office lighting.



 **WARNING:** When programming your HomeLink® Wireless Control System to a garage door or gate, be sure that people and objects are out of the way to prevent potential injury or damage.

Do not use the HomeLink® Wireless Control System with any garage door opener that lacks safety stop and reverse features as required by U.S. federal safety standards (this includes any garage door opener model manufactured before April 1, 1982). A garage door which cannot detect an object, signaling the door to stop and reverse, does not meet

139

## Driver Controls

current U.S. federal safety standards. For more information, contact HomeLink® at: **www.homelink.com** or **1-800-355-3515**.

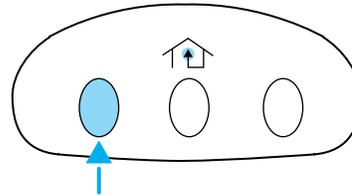
Retain the original transmitter for use in other vehicles as well as for future programming procedures (i.e. new HomeLink® equipped vehicle purchase). It is also suggested that upon the sale of the vehicle, the programmed HomeLink® buttons be erased for security purposes, refer to *Programming* in this section.

### Programming

**Do not program HomeLink® with the vehicle parked in the garage.**

**Note:** Your vehicle may require the ignition switch to be turned to the accessory position for programming and/or operation of the HomeLink®. It is also recommended that a new battery be placed in the hand-held transmitter of the device being programmed to HomeLink® for quicker training and accurate transmission of the radio-frequency signal.

1. Position the end of your hand-held transmitter 1–3 inches (2–8 cm) away from the HomeLink® button you wish to program (located on your visor) while keeping the indicator light in view.



2. Simultaneously press and hold both the chosen HomeLink® and hand-held transmitter buttons until the HomeLink® indicator light changes from a slow to a rapidly blinking light. Now you may release both the HomeLink® and hand-held transmitter buttons.

**Note:** Some entry gates and garage door openers may require you to replace Step 2 with procedures noted in the *Gate Operator and Canadian Programming* in this section for Canadian residents.

3. Firmly **press and hold for five seconds and release** the programmed HomeLink® button up to two separate times to activate the door. If the door does not activate, press and hold the just-trained HomeLink® button and observe the indicator light.

- If the indicator light **stays on constantly, programming is complete** and your device should activate when the HomeLink® button is pressed and released.
- If the indicator light **blinks rapidly for two seconds and then turns to a constant light continue with “Programming” Steps 4 through 6** to complete programming of a rolling code equipped device (most commonly a garage door opener).

140

## Driver Controls

4. At the garage door opener receiver (motor-head unit) in the garage, locate the “learn” or “smart” button (usually near where the hanging antenna wire is attached to the unit).
5. Firmly press and release the “learn” or “smart” button. (The name and color of the button may vary by manufacturer.)

**Note:** There are 30 seconds in which to initiate Step 6.

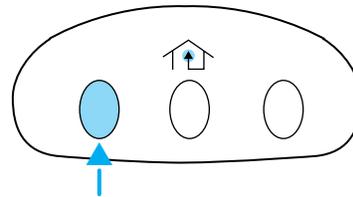
6. Return to the vehicle and firmly **press, hold for two seconds and release** the programmed HomeLink® button. Repeat the **press/hold/release** sequence again and, depending on the brand of the garage door opener (or other rolling code equipped device), repeat this sequence a third time to complete the programming.

HomeLink® should now activate your rolling code equipped device. To program additional HomeLink® buttons begin with Step 1 in this section. For questions or comments, please contact HomeLink® at [www.homelink.com](http://www.homelink.com) or 1-800-355-3515.

### Gate Operator & Canadian Programming

During programming, your hand-held transmitter may automatically stop transmitting — not allowing enough time for HomeLink® to accept the signal from the hand-held transmitter.

After completing Step 1 outlined in the *Programming* section, replace Step 2 with the following:



**Note:** If programming a garage door opener or gate operator, it is advised to unplug the device during the “cycling” process to prevent overheating.

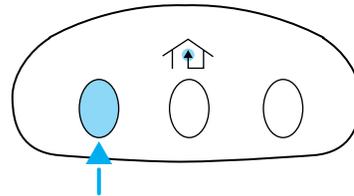
- Continue to press and hold the HomeLink® button (note Step 2 in the *Programming* section) while you press and release — **every two seconds** (“cycle”) your hand-held transmitter until the frequency signal has been accepted by the HomeLink®. The indicator light will flash slowly and then rapidly after HomeLink® accepts the radio frequency signal.
- Proceed with Step 3 in the *Programming* section.

141

## Driver Controls

### Operating the HomeLink® Wireless Control System

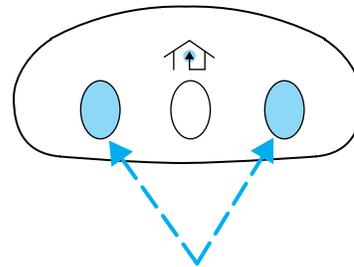
To operate, simply press and release the appropriate HomeLink® button. Activation will now occur for the trained product (garage door, gate operator, security system, entry door lock, or home or office lighting etc.). For convenience, the hand-held transmitter of the device may also be used at any time. In the event that there are still programming difficulties, contact HomeLink® at [www.homelink.com](http://www.homelink.com) or **1-800-355-3515**.



### Erasing HomeLink® buttons

To erase the three programmed buttons (individual buttons cannot be erased):

- Press and hold the two outer HomeLink® buttons until the indicator light begins to flash-after 20 seconds. Release both buttons. Do not hold for longer than 30 seconds.



HomeLink® is now in the train (or learning) mode and can be programmed at any time beginning with Step 1 in the *Programming* section.

### Reprogramming a single HomeLink® button

To program a device to HomeLink® using a HomeLink® button previously trained, follow these steps:

1. Press and hold the desired HomeLink® button. **Do NOT** release the button.
2. The indicator light will begin to flash after 20 seconds. Without releasing the HomeLink® button, follow Step 1 in the *Programming* section.

For questions or comments, contact HomeLink® at [www.homelink.com](http://www.homelink.com) or **1-800-355-3515**.

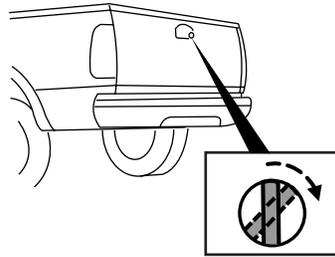
142

## Driver Controls

### TAILGATE LOCK (IF EQUIPPED)

Your vehicle may be equipped with a tailgate lock designed to help prevent theft of the tailgate.

- Insert ignition key and turn to the right to engage lock.
- Turn ignition key to the left to unlock.



### Tailgate removal

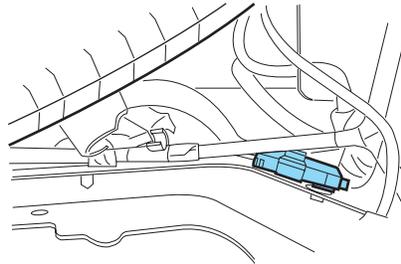
Your tailgate is removable to allow more room for loading.



**WARNING:** Always properly secure cargo to prevent shifting cargo or cargo falling from vehicle, which could result in compromised vehicle stability and serious personal injury to vehicle occupants or others.

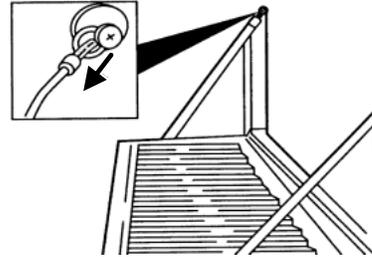
**Note:** If equipped with a rearview camera system, do Steps 1 through 3 before removing the tailgate.

1. Before removal of the tailgate, locate and disconnect the tailgate in-line connector under the pickup box on the passenger side of the vehicle near the spare tire.
2. Install a protective cap (located in the glove box) onto the in-line rearview camera system connector that remains under the pickup box.
3. Partially lower tailgate and carefully feed tailgate harness up through the gap between the pickup box and the bumper. Place the tailgate harness out of the way under the pickup box.



## Driver Controls

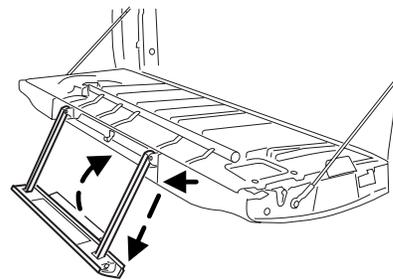
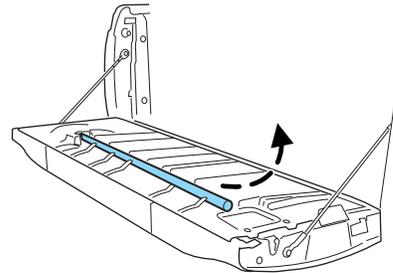
4. Lower the tailgate.
  5. Using a screwdriver, gently pry the spring clip (on each connector) past the head of the support screw. Disconnect cable.
  6. Disconnect the other cable.
  7. Lift tailgate to a 45-degree angle from horizontal.
  8. Lift right side off of its hinge.
  9. Lift tailgate to a 80-degree angle from horizontal.
  10. Remove tailgate from left side hinge by sliding tailgate to the right.
- To install, follow the removal procedures in reverse order.



### Tailgate step (if equipped)

Your vehicle may be equipped with a feature that allows easier entry into the truck bed. To open the tailgate step:

1. Flip down the tailgate.
2. Pull the yellow latch lever to the unlock position (🔓) to release the grab handle from its stowed position and raise the handle upright until you feel it latch and see the latch lever in the lock position (🔒). The yellow lever only needs to be used when releasing the grab handle.
3. Rotate the center molding to unlatch the tailgate step and pull it towards you to extend it.
4. Flip open the step panel to widen the step.



**Note:** To reduce risk of falling:

- Operate step only when the vehicle is on level surface.
- Operate step only in areas with sufficient lighting
- Always open flip panel to widen step.

144

## Driver Controls

- Always use grab handle when stepping up and down.
- Step not intended for bare-footed use.
- Keep step clean from contamination before use (e.g. snow, mud)
- Keep the step load (you + load) below 350 lb (159 kg).
- Never drive with step deployed.

To close the tailgate step:

1. Close the step panel, then lift and fully close the tailgate step into the tailgate.
2. Slide the latch at the bottom of the handle, then lower the handle.

**Note:**

- Fully close and latch the tailgate step before moving the vehicle.
- Never drive with the step or grab handle deployed.
- Replace slip resistance tape (serviceable item) if worn out.
- Replace handle molding (serviceable item) if damaged.
- Do not tow with grab handle or step frame.

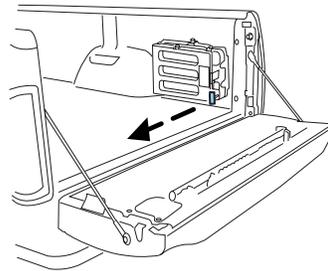
### Bed extender (if equipped)

Your vehicle may be equipped with a cargo management feature in the truck bed.

**Note:** This feature is not intended for off-road usage.

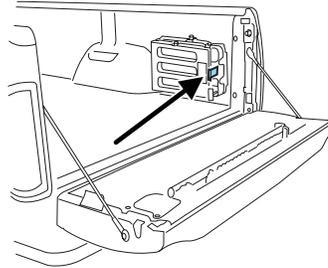
To open the bed extender into tailgate mode:

1. Pull the locking pin toward the center of the vehicle.

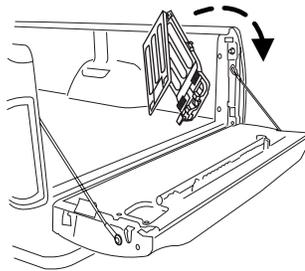


## Driver Controls

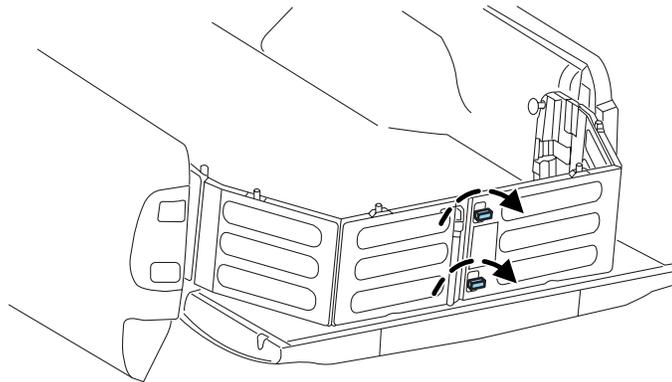
2. Open the latches to release the panels.



3. Rotate the panels toward the tailgate.



Repeat Steps 1–3 for the other side of the bed extender.



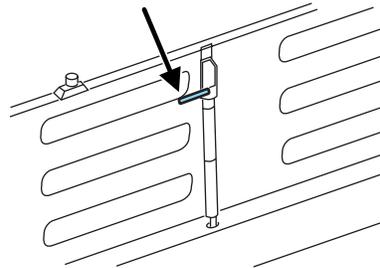
4. Connect the two panels, then rotate both knobs a quarter-turn clockwise to secure the panels.

146

## Driver Controls

5. Ensure the latch rod is inserted into the tailgate hole and the locking pins on both sides are engaged into their holes in the pick-up box.

6. Reverse steps for storage of the bed extender.

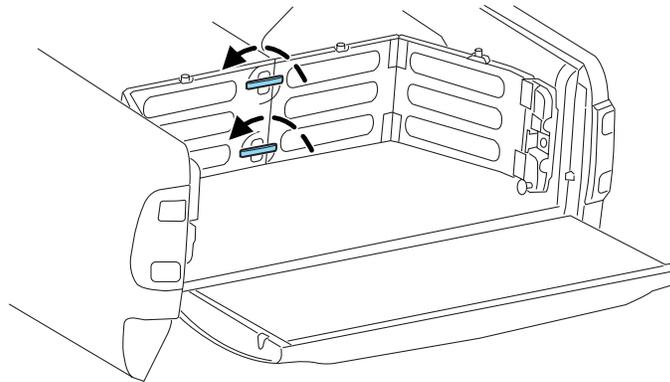


**Note:** When the vehicle is in motion, ensure the locking pins and knobs are fully engaged.

**Note:** Ensure all cargo is secured.

**Note:** When the vehicle is in motion, the tailgate load must not exceed 150 lb (68 kg).

**Note:** The bed extender should always be kept in the grocery mode or stowed position with the tailgate closed when not being used for the purpose of restraining cargo in the tailgate mode.



To open the bed extender into grocery mode, follow Steps 1–4 by rotating the panels away from the tailgate. Close the tailgate.

## Locks and Security

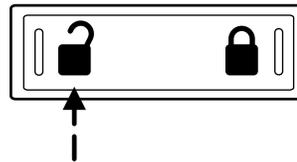
### KEYS

The key operates all locks on your vehicle. You should always carry a second key with you in a safe place in case you require it in an emergency.

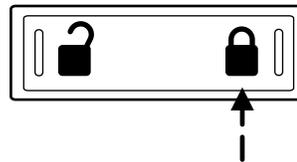
If your vehicle is equipped with the SecuriLock® Passive Anti-theft system, your keys are electronically coded to your vehicle; using a non-coded key will not permit your vehicle to start. If you lose your dealer supplied keys, replacement keys are available through your authorized dealer.

### POWER DOOR LOCKS (IF EQUIPPED)

Press control to unlock all doors.



Press control to lock all doors.



### Smart locks (if equipped)

This feature prevents you from locking yourself out of the vehicle if your key is still in the ignition.

When you open the driver's door and you lock the vehicle with the power door lock control, all the doors will lock, then the driver's door will automatically unlock reminding you that your key is still in the ignition.

The vehicle can still be locked, with the key in the ignition, using the manual lock button on the door, locking the driver's door with a key, by simultaneously pressing button 7 • 8 and the 9 • 0 controls on the remote entry keypad (if equipped), or using the  button on the remote entry transmitter (if equipped).

148

## Locks and Security

### **Autolock feature (if equipped)**

The autolock feature will lock all the doors when:

- all the doors are closed,
- the ignition is in the on position,
- you shift into any gear putting the vehicle in motion, and
- the vehicle attains a speed greater than 12 mph (20 km/h) for greater than two seconds.

The autolock feature repeats when:

- any door is opened then closed while the ignition is in the on position and the vehicle speed is 9 mph (15 km/h) or lower, and
- the vehicle then attains a speed greater than 12 mph (20 km/h) for greater than two seconds.

### **Deactivating/activating autolock feature**

There are four methods to enable/disable this feature:

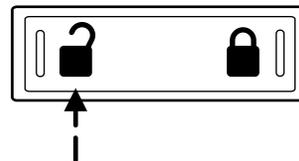
- Through your authorized dealer,
- by using a power door unlock/lock procedure,
- using a keypad procedure (if equipped), or
- or by using the instrument cluster message center (if equipped). Refer to *Message center* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter.

**Note:** The autolock feature can be activated/deactivated independently of the autounlock feature.

### **Power door lock switch autolock enable/disable procedure**

Before starting, ensure the ignition is in the off position and all vehicle doors are closed. You must complete Steps 1–5 within 30 seconds or the procedure will have to be repeated. If the procedure needs to be repeated, wait a minimum of 30 seconds before beginning again.

1. Place the key in the ignition and turn the ignition to the on position.
2. Press the power door unlock control on the door panel three times.
3. Turn the ignition from the on position to the off position.
4. Press the power door unlock control on the door panel three times.

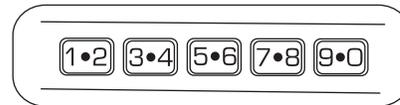


## Locks and Security

5. Turn the ignition back to the on position. The horn will chirp one time to confirm programming mode has been entered and is active.
6. To enable/disable the autolock feature, press the unlock control, then press the lock control. The horn will chirp once if autolock was deactivated or twice (one short and one long chirp) if autolock was activated.
7. Turn the ignition to the off position. The horn will chirp once to confirm the procedure is complete.

### **Keyless entry keypad autolock enable/disable procedure**

1. Turn the ignition to the off position.
2. Close all the doors.
3. Enter factory-set 5-digit entry code.
4. Press and hold the 3 • 4. While holding the 3 • 4 press the 7 • 8.
5. Release the 7 • 8.
6. Release the 3 • 4.



The user should receive a **horn chirp** to indicate the system has been disabled or a chirp followed by a honk to indicate the system has been enabled.

### **Autounlock feature (if equipped)**

The autounlock feature will unlock all the doors when:

- the ignition is in the on position, all the doors are closed, and the vehicle has been in motion at a speed greater than 12 mph (20 km/h);
- the vehicle has then come to a stop and the ignition is turned to the off ) or accessory position; and
- the driver door is opened within 10 minutes of the ignition being transitioned to the off or accessory position.

**Note:** The doors will not autounlock if the vehicle has been electronically locked before the driver door is opened.

### **Deactivating/activating autounlock feature**

There are three methods to enable/disable this feature:

- Through your authorized dealer,
- by using a power door unlock/lock sequence,

150

## Locks and Security

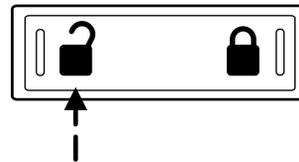
- using a keypad procedure (if equipped)

**Note:** The autounlock feature can be activated/deactivated independently of the autolock feature.

### **Power door lock switch autounlock enable/disable procedure**

Before starting, ensure the ignition is in the off position and all vehicle doors are closed. You must complete Steps 1–5 within 30 seconds or the procedure will have to be repeated. If the procedure needs to be repeated, wait a minimum of 30 seconds before beginning again.

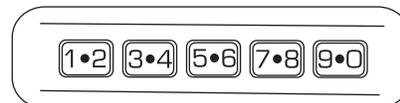
1. Place the key in the ignition and turn the ignition to the on position.
2. Press the power door unlock control on the door panel three times.
3. Turn the ignition from the on position to the off position.



4. Press the power door unlock control on the door panel three times.
5. Turn the ignition back to the on position. The horn will chirp one time to confirm programming mode has been entered and is active.
6. To enable/disable the autounlock feature, press the lock control, then press the unlock control. The horn will chirp once if autounlock was deactivated or twice (one short and one long chirp) if autounlock was activated.
7. Turn the ignition to the off position. The horn will chirp once to confirm the procedure is complete.

### **Keyless entry keypad autounlock enable/disable procedure**

1. Turn the ignition to the off position.
2. Close all the doors.
3. Enter factory-set 5-digit entry code.
4. Press and hold the 3 • 4. While holding the 3 • 4, press and release the 7 • 8. While still holding the 3 • 4, press and release the 7 • 8 a second time.
5. Release the 3 • 4.



The user should receive a **horn chirp** to indicate the system has been disabled or a chirp followed by a honk to indicate the system has been enabled.

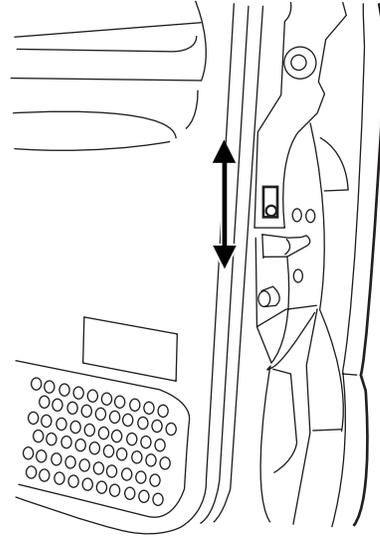
## Locks and Security

### CHILDPROOF DOOR LOCKS (IF EQUIPPED)

- When these locks are set, the rear doors cannot be opened from the inside.
- The rear doors can be opened from the outside when the doors are unlocked.

The childproof locks are located on rear edge of each rear door and must be set separately for each door. Setting the lock for one door will not automatically set the lock for both doors.

- Move lock control up to engage the childproof lock.
- Move lock control down to disengage the childproof lock.



### REMOTE ENTRY SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC rules and with RS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

**Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.**

The typical operating range for your remote entry transmitter is approximately 33 feet (10 meters). A decrease in operating range could be caused by:

- weather conditions,
- nearby radio towers,
- structures around the vehicle, or
- other vehicles parked next to your vehicle.

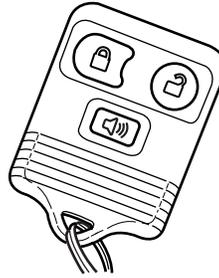
152

## Locks and Security

Your vehicle is equipped with a remote entry system which allows you to:

- unlock the vehicle doors without a key.
- lock all the vehicle doors without a key.
- activate the personal alarm.

If there are problems with the remote entry system, make sure to take **ALL remote entry transmitters** with you to your authorized dealer in order to aid in troubleshooting the problem.



### Two step door unlocking

1. Press  and release to unlock the driver's door. **Note:** The parking lamps and interior lamps will illuminate (refer to the *Illuminated entry* feature later in this section) if the control on the overhead lamp is **not** set to the **off** position.

2. Press  and release again within three seconds to unlock the passenger doors.

The battery saver feature will turn off the lamps 10 minutes after the ignition is turned to the off position.

### One step door unlocking

If the one step door unlocking feature is activated, press  and release once to unlock all of the doors. **Note:** The parking lamps and interior lamps will illuminate (refer to the *Illuminated entry* feature later in this section) if the control on the overhead lamp is **not** set to the **off** position.

### Switching from two step to one step door unlocking

Your vehicle comes with two step unlocking enabled. Unlocking can be switched between two step and one step door unlocking by pressing and holding both the  and  buttons simultaneously on the remote entry transmitter for approximately four seconds. The hazard lamps will flash twice to indicate that the vehicle has switched to one step unlocking. Repeat the procedure to switch back to two-step unlocking.

### Locking the doors

1. Press  and release to lock all the doors. The parking lamps will illuminate if all the doors are closed and locked.

## Locks and Security

2. Press  and release again within three seconds to confirm that all the doors are closed and locked. **Note:** The doors will lock again, the horn will chirp once, and the parking lamps will illuminate once more. If any of the doors are not properly closed the horn will make two quick chirps and the parking lamps will not flash.

### Car finder

Press  twice within three seconds. The horn will chirp and the turn lamps will flash. It is recommended that this method be used to locate your vehicle, rather than using the panic alarm.

### Sounding a panic alarm

Press  to activate the alarm. Press again or turn the ignition to on to deactivate.

**Note:** The panic alarm will only operate when the ignition is in the off position.

### Memory seats/adjustable pedals/mirrors (if equipped)

The remote entry system can also control the memory seat/adjustable pedals/mirrors.

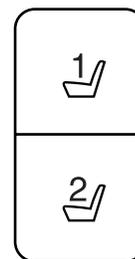
Press  to automatically move the seat, adjustable pedals and mirrors to the desired memory position (the seat position corresponds to the transmitter being used).

### Activating the memory feature

1. Position the seat, adjustable pedals and mirrors to the position desired.
2. Press and hold either memory 1 button or memory 2 button for five seconds. A tone will be heard after 1½ seconds when the memory store is done, continue to hold until a second tone is heard after five seconds.

3. Within three seconds press the  button on the keyfob.

The keyfob unlock will now recall the memory position.



## Locks and Security

### Deactivating the memory feature

To deactivate this feature:

1. Press and hold either memory 1 button or memory 2 button for five seconds. A tone will be heard after 1½ seconds when the memory store is done, continue to hold until a second tone is heard after five seconds.
2. Within three seconds press the  button on the keyfob

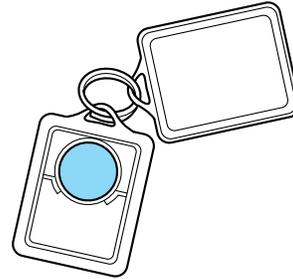
The keyfob unlock will not recall the memory position.

### Replacing the battery

The remote entry transmitter uses one coin type three-volt lithium battery CR2032 or equivalent.

To replace the battery:

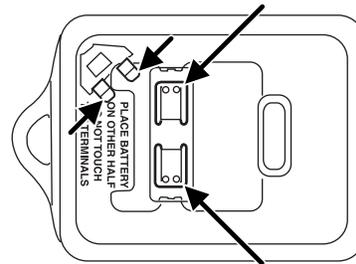
1. Twist a thin coin between the two halves of the remote entry transmitter near the key ring. **DO NOT TAKE THE RUBBER COVER AND CIRCUIT BOARD OFF THE FRONT HOUSING OF THE REMOTE ENTRY TRANSMITTER.**



2. Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals on the back surface of the circuit board.
3. Remove the old battery.

**Note:** Please refer to local regulations when disposing of transmitter batteries.

4. Insert the new battery. Refer to the diagram inside the remote entry transmitter for the correct orientation of the battery. Press the battery down to ensure that the battery is fully seated in the battery housing cavity.



5. Snap the two halves back together.

**Note:** Replacement of the battery will **not** cause the remote transmitter to become deprogrammed from your vehicle. The remote transmitter should operate normally after battery replacement.

## Locks and Security

### Replacing lost remote entry transmitters

If you would like to have your remote entry transmitter reprogrammed because you lost one, or would like to buy additional remote entry transmitters, you can either reprogram them yourself, or take **all remote entry transmitters** to your authorized dealer for reprogramming.

**Note:** If your vehicle is equipped with the memory seats/power mirrors/adjustable pedals feature, you can associate a remote entry transmitter to each memory position using this procedure. The first transmitter that is programmed will recall Driver 1 settings, and the second transmitter that is programmed will recall Driver 2 settings.

### How to program your remote entry transmitters

You must have **all remote keyless entry keypads and remote entry transmitters** (maximum of four) available before beginning this procedure. **Note:** Do not press the brake pedal anytime during this sequencing, as doing so will invalidate the procedure.

To reprogram the remote entry transmitters:

1. Ensure the vehicle is electronically unlocked.
2. Put the key in the ignition.
3. Cycle eight times rapidly (within 10 seconds) between the off position and on.

**Note:** The eighth turn must end in the on position. The doors will lock, then unlock, to confirm that the programming mode has been activated.

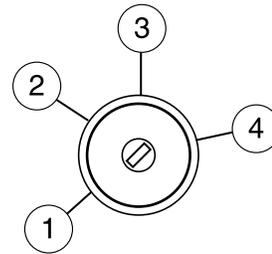
4. Within 20 seconds press any button on the remote entry transmitter.

**Note:** If more than 20 seconds have passed you will need to start the procedure over again. The doors will lock, then unlock, to confirm that this remote entry transmitter has been programmed.

5. Repeat Step 4 to program each additional remote entry transmitter.

6. Turn the ignition to the off position after you have finished programming all of the remote entry transmitters.

**Note:** After 20 seconds, you will automatically exit the programming mode. The doors will lock, then unlock, to confirm that the programming mode has been exited.



## Locks and Security

### Illuminated entry

The interior lamps and parking lamps illuminate when the remote entry system is used to unlock the door(s).

The illuminated entry system will turn off the lights if:

- the ignition switch is turned to the on position, or
- the remote transmitter lock control is pressed, or
- the 7 • 8 and the 9 • 0 controls on the keyless entry keypad are pressed, or
- after 25 seconds of illumination.

The dome lamp control (if equipped) must **not** be set to the off position for the illuminated entry system to operate.

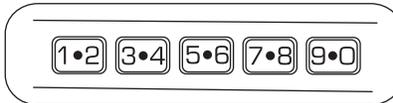
The lights will not turn off if:

- they have been turned on with the dimmer control, or
- any door is open.

The battery saver will shut off the interior lamps 30 minutes after the ignition has been turned to the off position, 10 minutes after if the dome lamp is off, and 30 minutes after if the dome lamp switch is left on.

### SECURICODE™ KEYLESS ENTRY SYSTEM

You can use the keyless entry keypad to lock or unlock the doors without using a key.



The keypad can be operated with the factory set 5-digit entry code; this code is located on the owner's wallet card in the glove box, is marked on the computer module, and is available from your authorized dealer. You can also create your own 5-digit personal entry code.

When pressing the controls on the keypad, press the middle of the controls to ensure a good activation.

### Programming a personal entry code and keypad association to memory seats, mirrors and pedals

To create your own personal entry code:

1. Enter the factory set code.
2. Within five seconds press the 1 • 2 on the keypad.
3. Enter your personal 5-digit code. Each number must be entered within five seconds of each other.

## Locks and Security

4. To associate the entry code with a memory setting, enter a sixth digit to indicate which driver should be set in a memory recalled by the personal entry code:

- Pressing 1 • 2 recalls Driver 1 settings.
- Pressing 3 • 4 recalls Driver 2 settings.
- Pressing other keypad buttons or not pressing a keypad button as a sixth digit does not set a driver and will not recall a memory setting.  
**Note:** The factory-set code cannot be associated with a memory setting.

5. The doors will again lock then unlock to confirm that your personal keycode has been programmed to the module.

### **Tips:**

- Do not set a code that uses five of the same number.
- Do not use five numbers in sequential order.
- The factory set code will work even if you have set your own personal code.

### **Erasing personal code**

1. Enter the factory set 5–digit code.
2. Within five seconds, press the 1 • 2 on the keypad and release.
3. Press and hold the 1 • 2 for two seconds. This must be done within five seconds of completing Step 2.

Your personal code is now erased and only the factory set 5–digit code will work.

### **Anti-scan feature**

If an incorrect code has been entered seven times (35 consecutive button presses), the keypad will go into an anti-scan mode. This mode disables the keypad for one minute and the keypad lamp will flash during this time.

The anti-scan feature will turn off after:

- one minute of keypad inactivity.
- pressing the  control on the remote entry transmitter.
- the ignition is turned to the on position.

## Locks and Security

### Unlocking and locking the doors using keyless entry

**To unlock the driver's door,** enter the factory set 5-digit code or your personal code. Each number must be pressed within five seconds of each other. The interior lamps will illuminate after entering a valid keypad entry code.

**To unlock all doors,** press the 3 • 4 control within five seconds.

**To lock all doors,** press the 7 • 8 and the 9 • 0 at the same time. You **do not** need to enter the keypad code first. **Note:** The interior lamps will turn off.

### SECURILOCK® PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

SecuriLock® passive anti-theft system is an engine immobilization system. This system is designed to help prevent the engine from being started unless a **coded key programmed to your vehicle** is used. The use of the wrong type of coded key may lead to a “no-start” condition.

Your vehicle comes with two coded keys; additional coded keys may be purchased from your authorized dealer. The authorized dealer can program your spare keys to your vehicle or you can program the keys yourself. Refer to *Programming spare keys* for instructions on how to program the coded key.

**Note:** The SecuriLock® passive anti-theft system is not compatible with non-Ford aftermarket remote start systems. Use of these systems may result in vehicle starting problems and a loss of security protection.

**Note:** Large metallic objects, electronic devices that are used to purchase gasoline or similar items, or a second coded key on the same key chain may cause vehicle starting issues. You need to prevent these objects from touching the coded key while starting the engine. These objects will not cause damage to the coded key, but may cause a momentary issue if they are too close to the key when starting the engine. If a problem occurs, turn the ignition off, remove all objects on the key chain away from the coded key and restart the engine.

**Note: Do not leave a duplicate coded key in the vehicle. Always take your keys and lock all doors when leaving the vehicle.**

## Locks and Security

### Anti-theft indicator

The anti-theft indicator is located in the instrument cluster.

Vehicles equipped with the SecuriLock® passive anti-theft system behave as follows:



- When the ignition is in the off position, the indicator will flash once every two seconds for a total of 10 seconds to indicate the SecuriLock® system is functioning as a theft deterrent.
- When the ignition is in the on position, the indicator will glow for three seconds to indicate a programmed key has been validated and the SecuriLock® passive anti-theft system has enabled the engine.

Vehicles without the SecuriLock® passive anti-theft system behave as follows:

- When the ignition is in the off position, the indicator will not flash.
- When the ignition is in the on position, the indicator will glow for three seconds to indicate the engine is enabled.

### Automatic arming

The vehicle is armed immediately after switching the ignition to the off position.

The theft indicator will flash every two seconds to act as a theft deterrent when the vehicle is armed.



### Automatic disarming

Switching the ignition to the on position with a **coded key** disarms the vehicle.

### Replacement keys

If your keys are lost or stolen and you don't have an extra coded key, you will need to have your vehicle towed to an authorized dealer. The key codes need to be erased from your vehicle and new coded keys will need to be programmed.

Replacing coded keys can be very costly. Store an extra programmed key away from the vehicle in a safe place to help prevent any inconveniences. Please visit an authorized dealer to purchase additional spare or replacement keys.

160

## Locks and Security

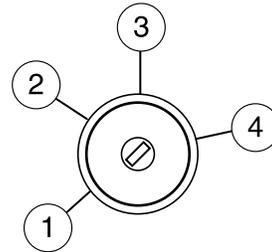
### Programming spare keys

A maximum of eight keys can be coded to your vehicle. Only SecuriLock® keys can be used. To program a **coded key** yourself, you will need two previously programmed **coded keys** (keys that already operate your vehicle's engine) and the new unprogrammed key(s) readily accessible for timely implementation of each step in the procedure.

If two previously programmed coded keys are not available, you must bring your vehicle to your authorized dealer to have the spare coded key(s) programmed.

Please read and understand the entire procedure before you begin.

1. Insert the first previously programmed **coded key** into the ignition and turn the ignition from the 1 (off) position to the 3 (on) position (maintain ignition in the 3 (on) position for at least one second, but no more than 10 seconds).



2. Turn ignition from the 3 (on) position back to the 1 (off) position in order to remove the first **coded key** from the ignition.

3. After three seconds but within 10 seconds of removing the first **coded key**, insert the second previously programmed **coded key** into the ignition and turn the ignition from the 1 (off) position to the 3 (on) position (maintain ignition in the 3 (on) position for at least one second but no more than 10 seconds).

4. Turn the ignition from the 3 (on) position back to the 1 (off) position in order to remove the second **coded key** from the ignition.

5. After three seconds but within 10 seconds of removing the second **coded key**, insert the new unprogrammed key (new key/valet key) into the ignition and turn the ignition from the 1 (off) position to the 3 (on) position (maintain ignition in the 3 (on) position for at least one second, but no more than 10 seconds). This step will program your new key to a coded key.

## Locks and Security

6. To program additional new unprogrammed key(s), repeat Steps 1 through 5.

If successful, the new coded key(s) will start the vehicle's engine and the theft indicator will illuminate for three seconds and then go out.

If not successful, the new coded key(s) will not start the vehicle's engine and the theft indicator will flash on and off and you may repeat Steps 1 through 5. If failure repeats, bring your vehicle to your authorized dealer to have the new spare key(s) programmed.

### PERIMETER ALARM SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

The perimeter anti-theft system will warn you in the event of an unauthorized entry to your vehicle.

If there is any potential perimeter anti-theft problem with your vehicle, ensure **ALL remote entry transmitters** are taken to the authorized dealer to aid in troubleshooting.

### Arming the system

When armed, this system will respond if unauthorized entry is attempted. When unauthorized entry occurs, the system will flash the park/turn lamps and will sound the horn.

The system is ready to arm whenever the key is removed from the ignition. Either of the following actions will prearm the alarm system:

- Press the  control on the remote entry transmitter.
- Open a door and press the power door lock control to lock all the doors, and then close the door.
- Press and hold the 7 • 8 and 9 • 0 controls on the keyless entry pad at the same time to lock the doors (driver's door must be closed).

There is a 20 second countdown when any of the above actions occur before the vehicle becomes armed.

Each door and the hood is armed individually, and if any are open, they must be closed before the open entry point can enter the 20 second countdown.

The turn signal lamps will flash once when all doors and the hood are closed indicating the vehicle is locked and entering the 20 second countdown.

## Locks and Security

### **Disarming the system**

You can disarm the system by any of the following actions:

- Unlock the doors by pressing the  control on your remote entry transmitter.
- Turn the ignition to the on position with a programmed coded ignition key.

### **Triggering the anti-theft system**

The armed system will be triggered if any door or hood is opened without using the key or the remote entry transmitter.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

### SEATING

**!** **WARNING:** Reclining the seatback can cause an occupant to slide under the seat's safety belt, resulting in severe personal injuries in the event of a collision.

**!** **WARNING:** Do not pile cargo higher than the seatbacks to reduce the risk of injury in a collision or sudden stop.

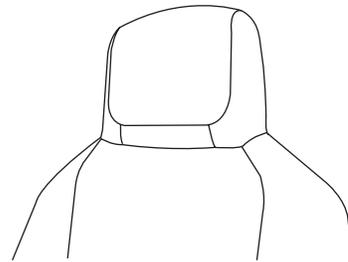
**!** **WARNING:** Before returning the seatback to its original position, make sure that cargo or any objects are not trapped behind the seatback. After returning the seatback to its original position, pull on the seatback to ensure that it has fully latched. An unlatched seat may become dangerous in the event of a sudden stop or collision.

### Non-adjustable head restraints

Your vehicle is equipped with front row outboard non-adjustable head restraints.

**!** **WARNING:** To minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash, the driver and passenger occupants should not sit in and/or operate the vehicle, until the seatback is placed in its proper position. The driver should never adjust the seatback while the vehicle is in motion.

The non-adjustable head restraints consist of a trimmed foam covering over the upper structure of the seatback.



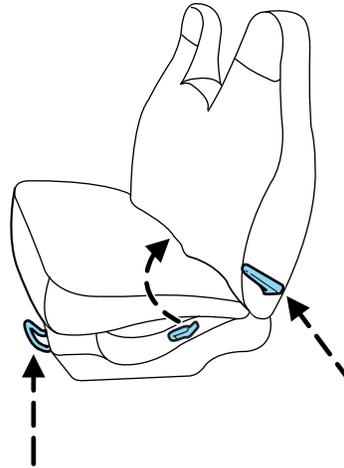
Properly adjust the seatback to an upright driving/riding position, so that the head restraint is positioned as close as possible to the back of your head.

164

## Seating and Safety Restraints

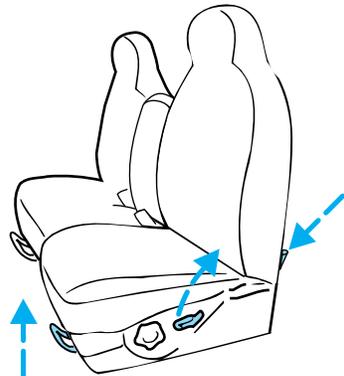
### Full bench seat (if equipped)

- Lift the release bar to move the seat forward or backward. Ensure that the seat is related into place.
- Pull up on the lever located at the bottom of the seatback to quickly fold the seatback forward.
- Pull up on the lever located at the side of the seat cushion to recline the seatback and to return the seat to the upright position.



### 40/20/40 split bench seat (if equipped)

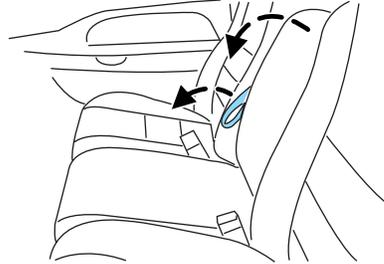
- Lift the track release bar to move the seat forward or backward. Ensure the seat is related into place.
- Pull the handle on the side of the seat up to recline the seat.
- Push down the lever located at the bottom of the seatback to quickly fold the seatback forward.



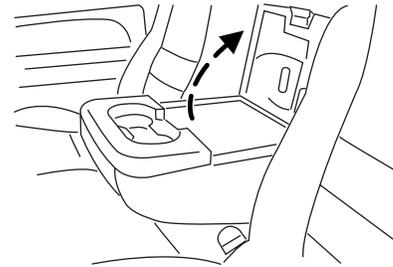
## Seating and Safety Restraints

### 40/20/40 front seat armrest and console (if equipped)

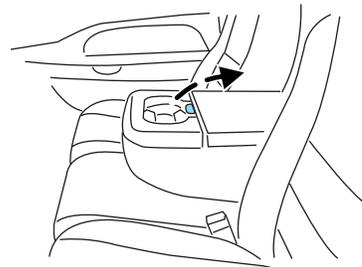
To release the armrest, pull forward on the strap and pull the armrest down.



To gain access to the storage compartment in your armrest, lift the latch to open the lid. The lid cannot be opened in the upright position.



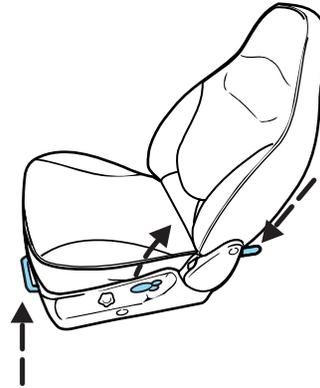
Lift up armrest to return it to a center seatback.



## Seating and Safety Restraints

### Captain's chair (if equipped)

- Lift the bar to move the seat forward or rearward. Make sure that the seat is related into place.
- To recline the seatback, pull the release lever handle located on the side of the seat up.
- Push down the lever (if equipped) located at the bottom of the seatback to quickly fold the seatback forward.



### Adjusting the front power seat (if equipped)



**WARNING:** Never adjust the driver's seat or seatback when the vehicle is moving.



**WARNING:** Do not pile cargo higher than the seatbacks to avoid injuring people in a collision or sudden stop.



**WARNING:** Always drive and ride with your seatback upright and the lap belt snug and low across the hips.

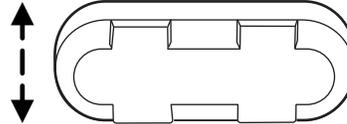


**WARNING:** Reclining the seatback can cause an occupant to slide under the seat's safety belt, resulting in severe personal injuries in the event of a collision.

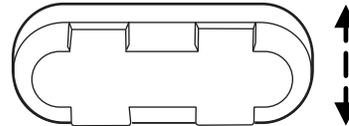
## Seating and Safety Restraints

The control is located on the outboard side of the seat cushion.

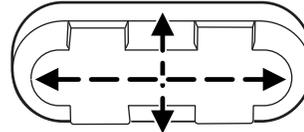
Press front to raise or lower the front portion of the seat cushion.



Press rear to raise or lower the rear portion of the seat cushion.



Press the control to move the seat forward, backward, up or down.

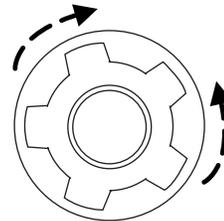


### Using the manual lumbar support

The lumbar support control is located on the outboard side of the seat.

Turn the lumbar support clockwise for more support.

Turn the lumbar support counterclockwise for less support.



## Seating and Safety Restraints

### Heated seats (if equipped)

The heated seat control is located on the climate control panel.



**WARNING:** Persons who are unable to feel pain to the skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion, or other physical conditions, must exercise care when using the seat heater. The seat heater may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket or cushion, because this may cause the seat heater to overheat. Do not puncture the seat with pins, needles, or other pointed objects because this may damage the heating element which may cause the seat heater to overheat. An overheated seat may cause serious personal injury.

**Note:** Do not do the following:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the seat heater if water or any other liquid is spilled on the seat. Allow the seat to dry thoroughly.

To operate the heated seats, do the following (engine must be running):

Press  to activate; push  again to deactivate.

The indicator light on the control will illuminate when activated.

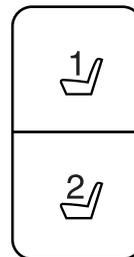
### Memory seats/power mirrors/adjustable pedals (if equipped)

This system allows automatic positioning of the driver seat, power mirrors, and adjustable pedals to two programmable positions.

The memory seat control is located on the driver door.

#### To save memory positions:

1. Place the key in the ignition to move the features to the drive position.
2. Move all the memory features to the desired positions.
3. Press and hold one of the memory buttons for approximately two seconds.
4. A tone will be heard when the memory save is complete.



## Seating and Safety Restraints

### To recall a memory position:

- Press and release either memory 1 button or memory 2 button.

A position can be recalled:

- in any gearshift position if the ignition is **not** in the on position.
- only in P (Park) or N (Neutral) if the ignition is in the on position.

A memory seat position may be programmed at any time.

The memory positions are also recalled when you press your remote entry transmitter  (unlock) control (if the transmitter is programmed to a memory position) or, when you enter a valid personal entry code that is programmed to a memory position.

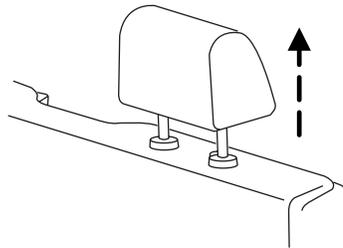
To program the memory feature to a remote entry transmitter and for more information on how to use the keypad, refer to *Remote entry system* in the *Locks and Security* chapter.

### REAR SEATS

#### Adjustable head restraints (if equipped)

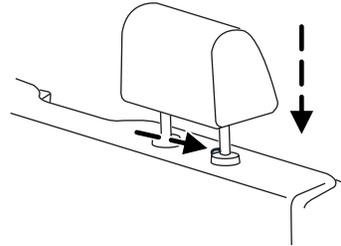
The purpose of these head restraints is to help limit head motion in the event of a rear collision. To properly adjust your head restraints, lift the head restraint so that it is located directly behind your head or as close to that position as possible.

The head restraints can be moved up and down. Lift the head restraint so that it is located directly or as close as possible behind your head.



## Seating and Safety Restraints

Push control to lower head restraint.



**WARNING:** To minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash, the driver and passenger occupants should not sit in and/or operate the vehicle, until the head restraint is placed in its proper position. The driver should never adjust the head restraint while the vehicle is in motion.

### Cabela's® seat

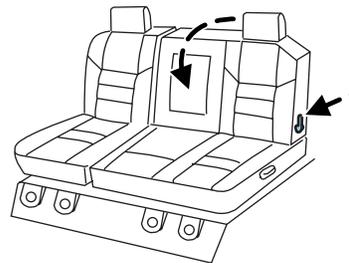
If your vehicle is equipped with a Cabela's seat, you will not have the load floor option. A lockable stowage box is located under the rear seat. For more information on the stowage box, see *Center console/under-seat storage-Cabela's edition* in the *Driver controls* chapter.

### Rear folding seat system with load floor (if equipped)

The rear seatback has a split 60/40 seat. Each seat cushion can be flipped up into the seatback position.

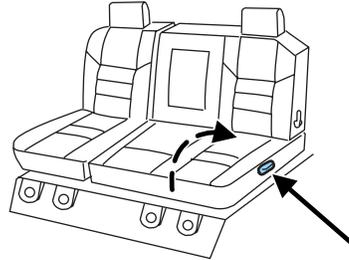
**Note:** The Crew Cab rear 60/40 split bench seatback is **not** intended to support a cargo load in the forward-folded position.

**To fold the seatback down**, pull down the latch lever located on the bottom seatback to fold the seatback forward.



## Seating and Safety Restraints

**To flip the seat cushion up,** pull up on the lever located on the side of the seat cushion to rotate the cushion up until it locks into a vertical storage position, gaining access to the grocery hook located on the underside of the driver-side seat cushion. The maximum load is 25 lb. (11 kg).



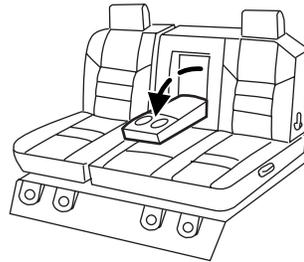
### Returning the seat to seating position

- Pull lever on the side of the seat to release seat cushion from storage position.
- Push seat cushion down until it locks into horizontal position.



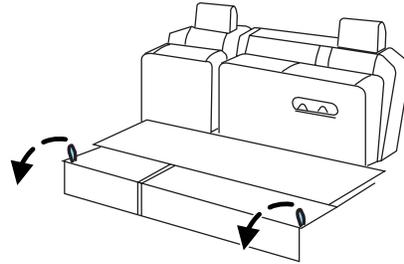
**WARNING:** Before returning the seatback to its original position, make sure that cargo or any objects are not trapped underneath the seatback. After returning the seatback to its original position, pull on the seatback to ensure that it has fully latched. An unlatched seat may become dangerous in the event of a sudden stop or collision.

**To gain access to the cupholders and tray,** pull down on the armrest.



## Seating and Safety Restraints

**To gain access to the 60/40 load floor,** store the cushion in the upright locked position. Pull up on the straps located at the sides of the load floor, and rotate forward until resting on the carpet.



### SAFETY RESTRAINTS

#### Safety restraints precautions



**WARNING:** Always drive and ride with your seatback upright and the lap belt snug and low across the hips.



**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of injury, make sure children sit in a rear seating position where they can be properly restrained.



**WARNING:** Never let a passenger hold a child on his or her lap while the vehicle is moving. The passenger cannot protect the child from injury in a collision.



**WARNING:** All occupants of the vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their safety belts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system (SRS) is provided.



**WARNING:** It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and safety belts. Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a safety belt properly.



**WARNING:** In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a safety belt.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

 **WARNING:** Each seating position in your vehicle has a specific safety belt assembly which is made up of one buckle and one tongue that are designed to be used as a pair. 1) Use the shoulder belt on the outside shoulder only. Never wear the shoulder belt under the arm. 2) Never swing the safety belt around your neck over the inside shoulder. 3) Never use a single belt for more than one person.

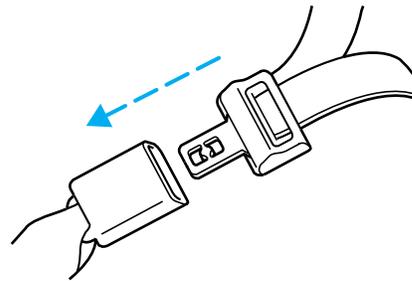
 **WARNING:** When possible, all children 12 years old and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position.

 **WARNING:** Safety belts and seats can become hot in a vehicle that has been closed up in sunny weather; they could burn a small child. Check seat covers and buckles before you place a child anywhere near them.

 **WARNING:** Front and rear seat occupants, including pregnant women, should wear safety belts for optimum protection in an accident.

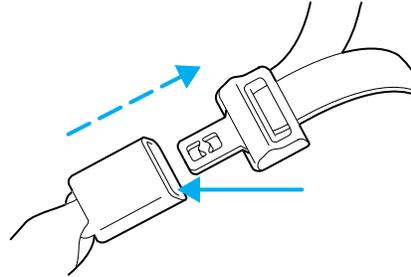
### Combination lap and shoulder belts

1. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from) until you hear a snap and feel it latch. Make sure the tongue is securely fastened in the buckle.



## Seating and Safety Restraints

2. To unfasten, push the release button and remove the tongue from the buckle.



### Vehicle sensitive mode

Combination lap and shoulder belts in normal retractor mode allow free shoulder belt length adjustment to your movements and locking in response to vehicle movement. For example, if the driver brakes suddenly or turns a corner sharply, or the vehicle receives an impact of approximately 5 mph (8 km/h) or more, the combination safety belts will lock to help reduce forward movement of the driver and passengers.

### Belt sensitive mode

Combination lap and shoulder belts can also be made to lock manually by quickly pulling on the shoulder belt.

### Automatic locking mode

#### ***When to use the automatic locking mode***

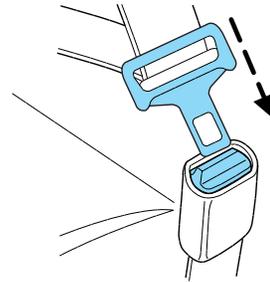
In this mode, the shoulder belt is automatically pre-locked. The belt will still retract to remove any slack in the shoulder belt. The automatic locking mode is not available on the driver safety belt.

This mode should be used **any time** a child safety seat (except a booster) is installed in a passenger front or outboard rear seating position (if equipped). Children 12 years old and under should be properly restrained in the rear seat whenever possible. Refer to *Safety restraints for children* or *Safety seats for children* later in this chapter.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

### **How to use the automatic locking mode**

- Buckle the combination lap and shoulder belt.



- Grasp the shoulder portion and pull downward until the entire belt is pulled out.



- Allow the belt to retract. As the belt retracts, you will hear a clicking sound. This indicates the safety belt is now in the automatic locking mode.

### **How to disengage the automatic locking mode**

Disconnect the combination lap/shoulder belt and allow it to retract completely to disengage the automatic locking mode and activate the vehicle sensitive (emergency) locking mode.



**WARNING:** After any vehicle collision, the front passenger and rear outboard safety belt systems must be checked by an authorized dealer to verify that the “automatic locking retractor” feature for child seats is still functioning properly. In addition, all safety belts should be checked for proper function.

## Seating and Safety Restraints



**WARNING:** BELT AND RETRACTOR ASSEMBLY MUST BE REPLACED if the safety belt assembly “automatic locking retractor” feature or any other safety belt function is not operating properly when checked by an authorized dealer. Failure to replace the belt and retractor assembly could increase the risk of injury in collisions.

### Energy management feature

- This vehicle has a safety belt system with an energy management feature at the front outboard seating positions to help further reduce the risk of injury in the event of a head-on collision.
- The front outboard safety belt systems have a retractor assembly that is designed to pay out webbing in a controlled manner. This feature is designed to help reduce the belt force acting on the occupant’s chest.

### Safety belt pretensioner

Your vehicle is equipped with safety belt retractor pretensioners at the driver and front outboard passenger seating positions.

The driver and front outboard passenger safety belt pretensioners are designed to activate only during certain frontal or near-frontal collisions with sufficient longitudinal deceleration. A safety belt pretensioner is a device which tightens the webbing of the lap and shoulder belts during some collisions in such a way that they fit more snugly against the body.

The driver and front outboard passenger safety belt system (including retractors, buckles and height adjusters) must be replaced if the vehicle is involved in a collision that results in the activation of the safety belt pretensioners. Refer to the *Child restraint and safety belt maintenance* section in this chapter.



**WARNING:** Failure to replace the safety belt assembly under the above conditions could result in severe personal injuries in the event of a collision.

### Front safety belt height adjustment

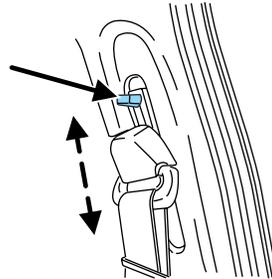
The front outboard seating positions are equipped with safety belt height adjusters.

Adjust the height of the shoulder belt so the belt rests across the middle of your shoulder.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

**⚠ WARNING:** Position the safety belt height adjusters so that the belt rests across the middle of your shoulder. Failure to adjust the safety belt properly could reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt and increase the risk of injury in a collision.

To adjust the shoulder belt height, push the button and slide the height adjuster up or down. Release the button and pull down on the height adjuster to make sure it is locked in place.

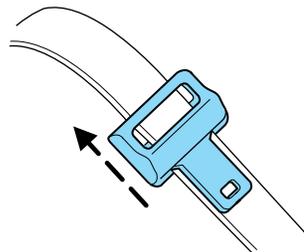


### ***Safety belt with cinch tongue (Regular cab center seating position and Super Cab/Crew Cab rear center seating positions)***

The cinch tongue will slide up and down the belt webbing when the belt is stowed or while putting safety belts on. When the lap/shoulder safety belt is buckled, the cinch tongue will allow the lap portion to be shortened, but pinches the webbing to keep the lap portion from getting longer. The cinch tongue is designed to slip during a crash, so always wear the shoulder belt properly and don't allow any slack in either the lap or shoulder portions.

Before you can reach and latch a combination lap and shoulder belt having a cinch tongue into the buckle, you may have to lengthen the lap belt portion of it.

1. To lengthen the lap belt, pull some webbing out of the shoulder belt retractor.
2. While holding the webbing below the tongue, grasp the tip (metal portion) of the tongue so that it is parallel to the webbing and slide the tongue upward.



3. Provide enough lap belt length so that the tongue can reach the buckle.

178

## Seating and Safety Restraints

### ***How to fasten the cinch tongue (Regular cab center seating position and Super Cab/Crew Cab rear center seating positions)***

1. Pull the combination lap and shoulder belt from the retractor so that the shoulder belt portion of the safety belt crosses your shoulder and chest.
2. Be sure the belt is not twisted. If the belt is twisted, remove the twist.
3. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle for your seating position until you hear a snap and feel it latch.
4. Make sure the tongue is securely fastened to the buckle by pulling on the tongue.



**WARNING:** The lap belt should fit snugly and as low as possible around the hips, not across the waist.

While you are fastened in the safety belt, the combination lap/shoulder belt with a cinch tongue adjusts to your movement. However, if you brake hard, turn hard, or if your vehicle receives an impact of 5 mph (8 km/h) or more, the safety belt will become locked and help reduce your forward movement.

### **Lap belts**

#### ***Adjusting the lap belt***



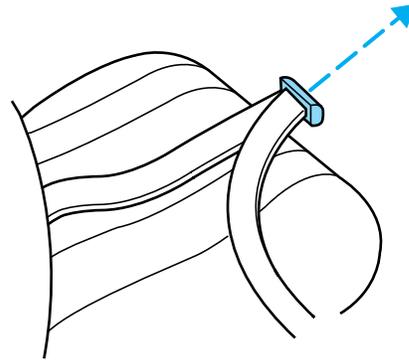
**WARNING:** The lap belt should fit snugly and as low as possible around the hips, not across the waist.

- **1st row center seating position on SuperCab and Crew Cab**

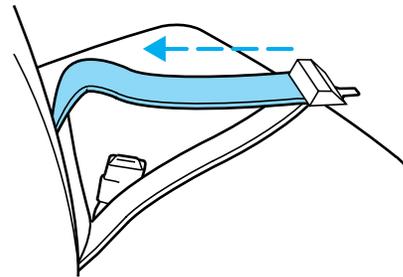
The lap belt does not adjust automatically.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

Insert the tongue into the correct buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from). To lengthen the belt, turn the tongue at a right angle to the belt and pull across your lap until it reaches the buckle. To tighten the belt, pull the loose end of the belt through the tongue until it fits snugly across the hips.



Shorten and fasten the belt when not in use.



### Safety belt warning light and indicator chime

The safety belt warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster and a chime sounds to remind the occupants to fasten their safety belts.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

### **Conditions of operation**

<b>If...</b>	<b>Then...</b>
The driver's safety belt is not buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the on position...	The safety belt warning light illuminates 1-2 minutes and the warning chime sounds 4-8 seconds.
The driver's safety belt is buckled while the indicator light is illuminated and the warning chime is sounding...	The safety belt warning light and warning chime turn off.
The driver's safety belt is buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the on position...	The safety belt warning light and indicator chime remain off.

### **Belt-Minder®**

The Belt-Minder® feature is a supplemental warning to the safety belt warning function. This feature provides additional reminders to the driver that the driver's safety belt is unbuckled by intermittently sounding a chime and illuminating the safety belt warning lamp in the instrument cluster.

<b>If...</b>	<b>Then...</b>
The driver's safety belt is not buckled before the vehicle has reached at least 3 mph (5 km/h) and 1-2 minutes have elapsed since the ignition switch has been turned to the on position...	The Belt-Minder® feature is activated - the safety belt warning light illuminates and the warning chime sounds for six seconds every 30 seconds, repeating for approximately five minutes or until safety belt is buckled.
The driver's safety belt is buckled while the safety belt indicator light is illuminated and the safety belt warning chime is sounding...	The Belt-Minder® feature will not activate.
The driver's safety belt is buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the on position...	The Belt-Minder® feature will not activate.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

The following are reasons most often given for not wearing safety belts  
(All statistics based on U.S. data):

Reasons given...	Consider...
“Crashes are rare events”	<b>36700 crashes occur every day.</b> The more we drive, the more we are exposed to “rare” events, even for good drivers. <i>1 in 4 of us will be seriously injured in a crash during our lifetime.</i>
“I’m not going far”	<b>3 of 4</b> fatal crashes occur within <b>25</b> miles (40 km) of home.
“Belts are uncomfortable”	We design our safety belts to enhance comfort. If you are uncomfortable - try different positions for the safety belt upper anchorage and seatback which should be as upright as possible; this can improve comfort.
“I was in a hurry”	<b>Prime time for an accident.</b> Belt-Minder® reminds us to take a few seconds to buckle up.
“Safety belts don’t work”	<b>Safety belts</b> , when used properly, <b>reduce risk of death</b> to front seat occupants by <b>45% in cars</b> , and by <b>60% in light trucks</b> .
“Traffic is light”	<b>Nearly 1 of 2 deaths occur in single-vehicle crashes</b> , many when no other vehicles are around.
“Belts wrinkle my clothes”	Possibly, but a serious crash can do much more than wrinkle your clothes, particularly if you are unbelted.
“The people I’m with don’t wear belts”	Set the example, teen deaths occur 4 times more often in vehicles with TWO or MORE people. Children and younger brothers/sisters imitate behavior they see.
“I have an airbag”	Airbags offer greater protection when used with safety belts. Frontal airbags are not designed to inflate in rear and side crashes or rollovers.
“I’d rather be thrown clear”	Not a good idea. <b>People</b> who are <b>ejected are 40 times more likely to DIE</b> . Safety belts help prevent ejection, WE CAN’T “PICK OUR CRASH”.

## Seating and Safety Restraints



**WARNING:** Do not sit on top of a buckled safety belt or insert a latchplate into the buckle to avoid the Belt-Minder® chime. To do so may adversely affect the performance of the vehicle's airbag system.

### **One-time disable**

Any time the safety belt is buckled and then unbuckled during an ignition on cycle, the Belt-Minder® will be disabled for that ignition cycle only.

### **Deactivating/activating the Belt-Minder® feature (Driver only)**

The Belt-Minder® feature can be deactivated/activated by performing the following procedure:

Before following the procedure, make sure that the following conditions are met:

- the parking brake is set
- the gearshift is in P (Park)
- the ignition switch is in the off position
- all vehicle doors are closed
- the driver's safety belt is unbuckled
- the parklamps/headlamps are in the off position



**WARNING:** While the design allows you to deactivate your Belt-Minder®, this system is designed to improve your chances of being safely belted and surviving an accident. We recommend you leave the Belt-Minder® system activated for yourself and others who may use the vehicle. To reduce the risk of injury, do not deactivate/activate the Belt-Minder® feature while driving the vehicle.

### **Belt-Minder® activation and deactivation procedure**

1. Turn the ignition switch to the on position. (DO NOT START THE ENGINE)
2. Wait until the safety belt warning light turns off. (approximately one minute)
  - Step 3 must be completed within 60 seconds after the safety belt warning light turns off.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

3. Buckle then unbuckle the safety belt nine times at a moderate speed, ending with the safety belt in the unbuckled state.

- After Step 3 is complete, the safety belt warning light will be turned on for three seconds.
- If Step 4 does not occur within 10 seconds at the end of Step 3, Belt-Minder® will automatically exit programming mode without changing its enable status.

4. Within 7 seconds of the light turning on, at a moderate speed, buckle then unbuckle the safety belt.

- This will disable the Belt-Minder® feature if it is currently enabled. As confirmation, the safety belt warning light will flash four times per second for three seconds.
- This will enable the Belt-Minder® feature if it is currently disabled. As confirmation, the safety belt warning light will flash four times per second for three seconds, followed by three seconds with the light off, then followed by the safety belt warning light flashing four times per second for three seconds again.

5. After receiving confirmation, the deactivation/activation procedure is complete.

### Safety belt extension assembly

If the safety belt is too short when fully extended, there is an 8 inch (20 cm) safety belt extension assembly that can be added (part number 611C22). This assembly can be obtained from an authorized dealer.

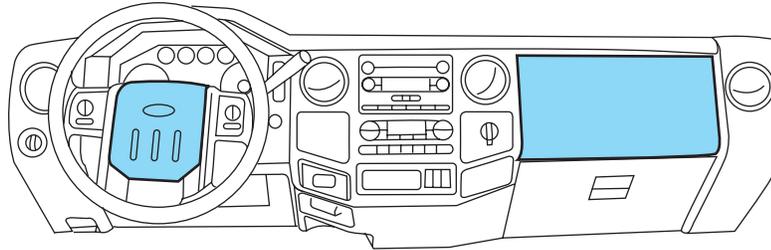
Use only extensions manufactured by the same supplier as the safety belt. Manufacturer identification is located at the end of the webbing on the label. Also, use the safety belt extension only if the safety belt is too short for you when fully extended.



**WARNING:** Do not use extensions to change the fit of the shoulder belt across the torso.

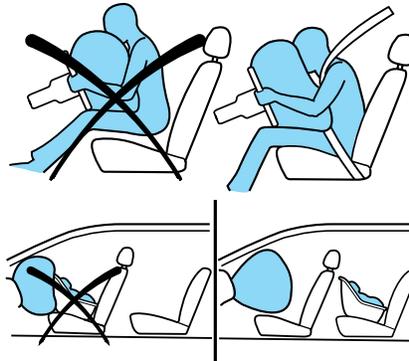
## Seating and Safety Restraints

### AIRBAG SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM (SRS)



#### Important SRS precautions

The SRS is designed to work with the safety belt to help protect the driver and right front passenger from certain upper body injuries. Airbags DO NOT inflate slowly; there is a risk of injury from a deploying airbag.



**!** **WARNING:** All occupants of the vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their safety belts, even when an air bag supplemental restraint system (SRS) is provided.

**!** **WARNING:** When possible, all children 12 years old and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position.

**!** **WARNING:** The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) recommends a minimum distance of at least 10 inches (25 cm) between an occupant's chest and the driver airbag module.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

 **WARNING:** Never place your arm over the airbag module as a deploying airbag can result in serious arm fractures or other injuries.

To properly position yourself away from the airbag:

- Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.
- Recline the seat slightly one or two degrees from the upright position.

 **WARNING:** Do not put anything on or over the airbag module. Placing objects on or over the airbag inflation area may cause those objects to be propelled by the airbag into your face and torso causing serious injury.

 **WARNING:** Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the airbag supplemental restraint systems or its fuses. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

 **WARNING:** The front passenger airbag is not designed to offer protection to an occupant in the center front seating position.

 **WARNING:** Modifying or adding equipment to the front end of the vehicle (including frame, bumper, front end body structure and tow hooks) may affect the performance of the airbag system, increasing the risk of injury. Do not modify the front end of the vehicle.

 **WARNING:** Additional equipment such as snowplow equipment may effect the performance of the airbag sensors increasing the risk of injury. Please refer to the *Body Builders Layout Book* for instructions about the appropriate installation of additional equipment.

### Children and airbags

For additional important safety information, read all information on safety restraints in this guide.

Children must always be properly restrained. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of injury in a collision.

186

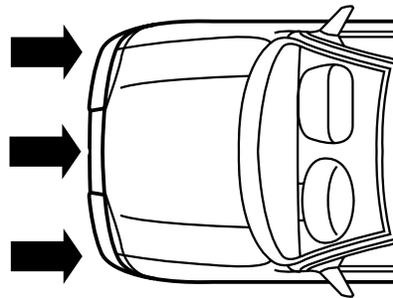
## Seating and Safety Restraints

**!** **WARNING:** An infant in a rear-facing seat faces a high risk of serious or fatal injuries from a deploying passenger airbag. Rear facing infant seats should NEVER be placed in the front seats, unless the passenger airbag is turned off. See *Passenger airbag ON/OFF switch*.

**!** **WARNING:** Front seating positions only: If seating two adults and a child, Ford recommends properly restraining the child in the center front seating position, but only if doing so will not interfere with driving the vehicle. This arrangement provides lap and shoulder belt and airbag protection for adult occupants and an attachment method for a child restraint. If the child seat interferes with driving the vehicle and the child restraint is forward-facing, the child may be restrained in the passenger seat. Move the seat as far rearward as possible to minimize the likelihood of interaction with the front passenger airbag. Never place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. Always properly restrain all occupants, including the child in an appropriate child seat or booster.

### How does the airbag supplemental restraint system work?

The airbag SRS is designed to activate when the vehicle sustains sufficient longitudinal deceleration. The fact that the airbags did not inflate in a collision does not mean that something is wrong with the system. Rather, it means the forces were not of the type sufficient to cause activation. Airbags are designed to inflate in frontal and near-frontal collisions, not rollover, side-impact, or rear-impacts.



## Seating and Safety Restraints

The airbags inflate and deflate rapidly upon activation. After airbag deployment, it is normal to notice a smoke-like, powdery residue or smell the burnt propellant. This may consist of cornstarch, talcum powder (to lubricate the bag) or sodium compounds (e.g., baking soda) that result from the combustion process that inflates the airbag. Small amounts of sodium hydroxide may be present which may irritate the skin and eyes, but none of the residue is toxic.



While the system is designed to help reduce serious injuries, it may also cause minor abrasions, swelling or temporary hearing loss. Because airbags must inflate rapidly and with considerable force, there is the risk of death or serious injuries such as fractures, facial and eye injuries or internal injuries, particularly to occupants who are not properly restrained or are otherwise out of position at the time of airbag deployment. Thus, it is extremely important that occupants be properly restrained as far away from the airbag module as possible while maintaining vehicle control.



**WARNING:** Several air bag system components get hot after inflation. Do not touch them after inflation.



**WARNING:** If the air bag has deployed, **the air bag will not function again and must be replaced immediately.** If the air bag is not replaced, the unrepaired area will increase the risk of injury in a collision.

The SRS consists of:

- driver and passenger airbag modules (which include the inflators and airbags),
- one or more impact and safing sensors,
- a readiness light and tone
- and the electrical wiring which connects the components.

The diagnostic module monitors its own internal circuits and the supplemental airbag electrical system wiring (including the impact

188

## Seating and Safety Restraints

sensors), the system wiring, the airbag system readiness light, the airbag back up power and the airbag ignitors.

### Determining if the system is operational

The SRS uses a readiness light in the instrument cluster or a tone to indicate the condition of the system. Refer to the *Warning lights and chimes* section in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter. Routine maintenance of the airbag is not required.

A difficulty with the system is indicated by one or more of the following:

- The readiness light will either flash or stay lit.
- The readiness light will not illuminate immediately after ignition is turned on.
- A series of five beeps will be heard. The tone pattern will repeat periodically until the problem and/or light are repaired.



If any of these things happen, even intermittently, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Unless serviced, the system may not function properly in the event of a collision.

### SOS Post-Crash Alert System™

The system automatically flashes the turn signal lamps and sounds the horn three times at four second intervals in the event of a serious impact that deploys an airbag (front, side, side curtain or Safety Canopy®) or the safety belt pretensioners.

The system can be turned off when any one of the following actions are taken by the driver or any other person:

- pressing the hazard control button,
- or pressing the panic button on the remote entry transmitter.

The feature will continue to operate until the vehicle runs out of power.

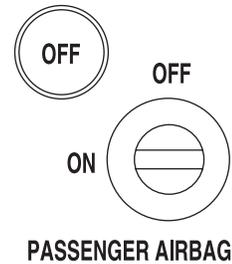
### Disposal of airbags and airbag equipped vehicles

See authorized dealer. Airbags MUST BE disposed of by qualified personnel.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

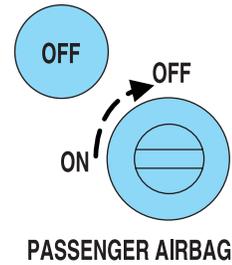
### Passenger airbag ON/OFF switch (if equipped)

**⚠ WARNING:** An airbag ON/OFF switch (if equipped) may be installed in this vehicle. Before driving, *always* look at the face of the switch to be sure the switch is in the proper position in accordance with these instructions and warnings. Failure to put the switch in a proper position can increase the risk of serious injury or death in a collision.



### Turning the passenger airbag off

1. Insert the ignition key, turn the switch to OFF position and hold in OFF position while removing the key.
2. When the ignition is turned to the ON position the OFF light illuminates briefly, momentarily shuts off and then turns back on. This indicates that the passenger airbag is deactivated.



**⚠ WARNING:** If the light fails to illuminate when the passenger air bag switch is in the OFF position and the ignition switch is in ON, have the passenger air bag switch serviced at your authorized dealer immediately.

**⚠ WARNING:** In order to avoid inadvertent activation of the switch, always remove the ignition key from the passenger air bag ON/OFF switch.

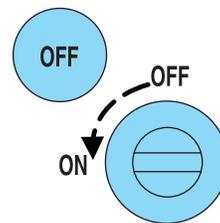
## Seating and Safety Restraints

**!** **WARNING:** An infant in a rear-facing seat faces a high risk of serious or fatal injuries from a deploying passenger airbag. Rear facing infant seats should NEVER be placed in the front seats, unless the passenger airbag is turned off.

### Turning the passenger airbag back on

The passenger airbag remains OFF until you turn it back ON.

1. Insert the ignition key and turn the switch to ON.
2. The OFF light will briefly illuminate when the ignition is turned to On. This indicates that the passenger airbag is operational.



PASSENGER AIRBAG

**!** **WARNING:** If the OFF light is illuminated when the passenger airbag switch is in the ON position and the ignition switch is in ON, have the passenger airbag switch serviced at your authorized dealer immediately.

The passenger side airbag should always be ON (the airbag OFF light should *not* be illuminated) unless the passenger is a person who meets the requirements stated either in Category 1, 2 or 3 of the NHTSA/Transport Canada deactivation criteria which follows.

**!** **WARNING:** The safety belts for the driver and right front passenger seating positions have been specifically designed to function together with the airbags in certain types of crashes. When you turn OFF your airbag, you not only lose the protection of the airbag, you also may reduce the effectiveness of your safety belt system, which was designed to work with the airbag. If you are not a person who meets the requirements stated in the NHTSA/Transport Canada deactivation criteria turning OFF the airbag can increase the risk of serious injury or death in a collision.

## Seating and Safety Restraints



**WARNING:** If your vehicle has rear seats, always transport children who are 12 and younger in the rear seat. Always use safety belts and child restraints properly. DO NOT place a child in a rear facing infant seat in the front seat unless your vehicle is equipped with an airbag ON/OFF switch and the passenger airbag is turned OFF. This is because the back of the infant seat is too close to the inflating airbag and the risk of a fatal injury to the infant when the airbag inflates is substantial.

The vast majority of drivers and passengers are much safer with an airbag than without. To do their job and reduce the risk of life threatening injuries, airbags must open with great force, and this force can pose a potentially deadly risk in some situations, particularly when a front seat occupant is not properly buckled up. The most effective way to reduce the risk of unnecessary airbag injuries without reducing the overall safety of the vehicle is to make sure all occupants are properly restrained in the vehicle, especially in the front seat. This provides the protection of safety belts and permits the airbags to provide the additional protection they were designed to provide. If you choose to deactivate your airbag, you are losing the very significant risk reducing benefits of the airbag and you are also reducing the effectiveness of the safety belts, because safety belts in modern vehicles are designed to work as a safety system with the airbags.

Read all airbag warning labels in the vehicle as well as the other important airbag instructions and warnings in this Owner's Guide.

### ***NHTSA deactivation criteria (excluding Canada)***

1. **Infant.** An infant (less than 1 year old) must ride in the front seat because:
  - the vehicle has no rear seat;
  - the vehicle has a rear seat too small to accommodate a rear-facing infant seat; or
  - the infant has a medical condition which, according to the infant's physician, makes it necessary for the infant to ride in the front so that the driver can constantly monitor the child's condition.
2. **Child age 1 to 12.** A child age 1 to 12 must ride in the front seat because:
  - the vehicle has no rear seat;
  - although children ages 1 to 12 ride in the rear seat(s) whenever possible, children ages 1 to 12 sometimes must ride in the front because no space is available in the rear seat(s) of the vehicle; or

192

## Seating and Safety Restraints

- the child has a medical condition which, according to the child's physician, makes it necessary for the child to ride in the front seat so that the driver can constantly monitor the child's condition.
3. **Medical condition.** A passenger has a medical condition which, according to his or her physician:
- causes the passenger airbag to pose a special risk for the passenger; and
  - makes the potential harm from the passenger airbag in a crash greater than the potential harm from turning OFF the airbag and allowing the passenger, even if belted, to hit the dashboard or windshield in a crash.



**WARNING:** This vehicle has special energy management safety belts for the driver and right front passenger. These particular belts are specifically designed to work with airbags to help reduce the risk of injury in a collision. The energy management safety belt is designed to give or release additional belt webbing in some accidents to reduce concentration of force on an occupant's chest and reduce the risk of certain bone fractures and injuries to underlying organs. In a crash, if the airbag is turned OFF, this energy management safety belt might permit the person wearing the belt to move forward enough to incur a serious or fatal injury. The more severe the crash, and the heavier the occupant, the greater the risk is. Be sure the airbag is turned ON for any person who does not qualify under the NHTSA deactivation criteria.

### ***Transport Canada deactivation criteria (Canada Only)***

1. **Infant:** An infant (less than 1 year old) must ride in the front seat because:
- my vehicle has no rear seat;
  - the rear seat in my vehicle cannot accommodate a rear-facing infant seat; or
  - the infant has a medical condition which, according to the infant's physician, makes it necessary for the infant to ride in the front seat so that the driver can monitor the infant's condition.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

2. **Child age 12 or under:** A child age 12 or under must ride in the front seat because:

- my vehicle has no rear seat;
- although children age 12 and under ride in the rear seat whenever possible, children age 12 and under have no option but to sometimes ride in the front seat because rear seat space is insufficient; or
- the child has a medical condition that, according to the child's physician, makes it necessary for the child to ride in the front seat so that the driver can monitor the child's condition.

3. **Medical condition:** A passenger has a medical condition that, according to his or her physician:

- poses a special risk for the passenger if the airbag deploys; and
- makes the potential harm from the passenger airbag deployment greater than the potential harm from turning OFF the airbag and experiencing a crash without the protection offered by the airbag



**WARNING:** This vehicle has special energy management safety belts for the driver and right front passenger. These particular belts are specifically designed to work with airbags to help reduce the risk of injury in a collision. The energy management safety belt is designed to give or release additional belt webbing in some accidents to reduce concentration of force on an occupant's chest and reduce the risk of certain bone fractures and injuries to underlying organs. In a crash, if the airbag is turned OFF, this energy management safety belt might permit the person wearing the belt to move forward enough to incur a serious or fatal injury. The more severe the crash, and the heavier the occupant, the greater the risk is. Be sure the airbag is turned ON for any person who does not qualify under the NHTSA deactivation criteria.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

### SAFETY RESTRAINTS FOR CHILDREN

See the following sections for directions on how to properly use safety restraints for children. Also see *Airbag supplemental restraint system (SRS)* in this chapter for special instructions about using airbags.

#### Important child restraint precautions



**WARNING:** Always make sure your child is secured properly in a device that is appropriate for their height, age and weight. Child safety restraints must be purchased separately from the vehicle. Failure to follow these instructions and guidelines may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.



**WARNING:** All children are shaped differently. The Recommendations for Safety Restraints are based on probable child height, age and weight thresholds from NHTSA and other safety organizations or are the minimum requirements of law. Ford recommends checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician (CPST) and your pediatrician to make sure your child seat is appropriate for your child, and is compatible with and properly installed in the vehicle. To locate a child seat fitting station and CPST contact the NHTSA toll free at 1-888-327-4236 or on the internet at <http://www.nhtsa.dot.gov>. Failure to properly restrain children in safety seats made especially for their height, age, and weight may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

<b>Recommendations for Safety Restraints for Children</b>		
	<b>Child size, height, weight, or age</b>	<b>Recommended restraint type</b>
Infants or toddlers	Children weighing 40 lb (18 kg) or less (generally age four or younger)	Use a child safety seat (sometimes called an infant carrier, convertible seat, or toddler seat).
Small children	Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a child safety seat (generally children who are less than 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall, are greater than age four (4) and less than age twelve (12), and between 40 lbs (18 kg) and 80 lbs (36 kg) and upward to 100 lbs (45 kg) if recommended by your child restraint manufacturer)	Use a belt-positioning booster seat.
Larger children	Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a belt-positioning booster seat (generally children who are at least 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall or greater than 80 lb (36 kg) or 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by child restraint manufacturer)	Use a vehicle safety belt having the lap belt snug and low across the hips, shoulder belt centered across the shoulder and chest, and seatback upright.

- You are required by law to properly use safety seats for infants and toddlers in the U.S. and Canada.
- Many states and provinces require that small children use approved booster seats until they reach age eight, a height of 4 ft 9 in (1.45 meters) tall, or 80 lb (36 kg). Check your local and state or provincial laws for specific requirements regarding the safety of children in your vehicle.
- When possible, always properly restrain children twelve (12) years of age and under in a rear seating position of your vehicle. Accident statistics suggest that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in a front seating position.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

### **Recommendations for attaching child safety restraints for children**

**Note:** This vehicle is not equipped with LATCH lower anchors.

Restraint Type	Child Weight	Use any attachment method as indicated below by "X"				
		LATCH (lower anchors and top tether anchor)	LATCH (lower anchors only)	Safety belt and top tether anchor	Safety belt and LATCH (lower anchors and top tether anchor)	Safety belt only
Rear facing child seat	Up to 48 lb (21 kg)		X			X
Forward facing child seat	Up to 48 lb (21 kg)	X		X	X	
Forward facing child seat	Over 48 lb (21 kg)			X	X	



**WARNING:** Air bags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. NEVER place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active air bag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the vehicle seat all the way back. When possible, all children age 12 and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position. If all children cannot be seated and restrained properly in a rear seating position, properly restrain the largest child in the front seat.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

 **WARNING:** Always carefully follow the instructions and warnings provided by the manufacturer of any child restraint to determine if the restraint device is appropriate for your child's size, height, weight, or age. Follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions and warnings provided for installation and use in conjunction with the instructions and warnings provided by the vehicle manufacturer. A safety seat that is improperly installed or utilized, is inappropriate for your child's height, age, or weight or does not properly fit the child may increase the risk of serious injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Never let a passenger hold a child on his or her lap while the vehicle is moving. The passenger cannot protect the child from injury in a collision, which may result in serious injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Never use pillows, books, or towels to boost a child. They can slide around and increase the likelihood of injury or death in a collision.

 **WARNING:** Always restrain an unoccupied child seat or booster seat. These objects may become projectiles in a collision or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious injury.

 **WARNING:** Never place, or allow a child to place, the shoulder belt under a child's arm or behind the back because it reduces the protection for the upper part of the body and may increase the risk of injury or death in a collision.

 **WARNING:** Do not leave children, unreliable adults, or pets unattended in your vehicle.

### Transporting children

Always make sure your child is secured properly in a device that is appropriate for their age, height and weight. All children are shaped differently. The child height, age and weight thresholds provided are recommendations or the minimum requirements of law. The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) provides education and

## Seating and Safety Restraints

training to ensure that all children ages 0 to 16 are properly restrained in the correct restraint system. Ford recommends checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician (CPST) and your pediatrician to make sure your seat is appropriate for your child and properly installed in the vehicle. To locate a child seat fitting station and CPST contact the NHTSA toll free at **1-888-327-4236** or on the internet at <http://www.nhtsa.dot.gov>.

Follow all the safety restraint and airbag precautions that apply to adult passengers in your vehicle.

If the child is the proper height, age, and weight (as specified by your child safety seat or booster manufacturer), fits the restraint and can be restrained properly, then restrain the child in the child safety seat or with the belt-positioning booster. Remember that child seats and belt-positioning boosters vary and may be designed to fit children of different heights, ages and weights. Children who are too large for child safety seats or belt-positioning boosters (as specified by your child safety seat manufacturer) should always properly wear safety belts.

### SAFETY SEATS FOR CHILDREN

#### Infant and/or toddler seats

Use a safety seat that is recommended for the size and weight of the child.

When installing a child safety seat:

- Review and follow the information presented in the *Airbag supplemental restraint system (SRS)* section in this chapter.
- Carefully follow all of the manufacturer's instructions included with the safety seat you put in your vehicle. If you do not install and use the safety seat properly, the child may be injured in a sudden stop or collision.



Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. NEVER place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the vehicle seat all the way back.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

Children 12 and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position whenever possible. If all children cannot be seated and restrained properly in a rear seating position, properly restrain the largest child in the front seat.

### **Installing child safety seats with automatic locking mode combination lap and shoulder belts (front passenger and rear outboard seating positions)**

Check to make sure the child seat is properly secured before each use. Children 12 and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position whenever possible. If all children cannot be seated and restrained properly in a rear seating position, properly restrain the largest child in the front seat.

When installing a child safety seat with combination lap/shoulder belts:

- Use the correct safety belt buckle for that seating position.
- Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle until you hear a snap and feel it latch. Make sure the tongue is securely fastened in the buckle.
- Keep the buckle release button pointing up and away from the safety seat, with the tongue between the child seat and the release button, to prevent accidental unbuckling.
- Place vehicle seat back in upright position.
- This vehicle does not require the use of a locking clip.



**WARNING:** Depending on where you secure a child restraint, and depending on the child restraint design, you may block access to certain safety belt buckle assemblies and/or LATCH lower anchors, rendering those features potentially unusable. To avoid risk of injury, occupants should only use seating positions where they are able to be properly restrained.

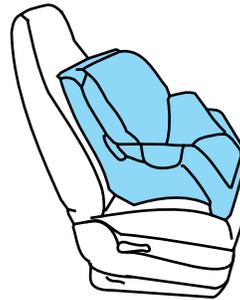
## Seating and Safety Restraints

### Installing the child safety seat

Perform the following steps when installing the child seat in the outboard combination lap/shoulder belts:

**Note:** Although the child seat illustrated is a forward facing child seat, the steps are the same for installing a rear facing child seat.

1. Position the child safety seat in a seat with a combination lap and shoulder belt.

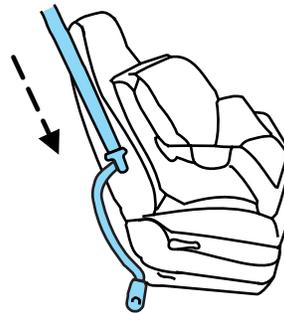


**WARNING:** An airbag can kill or injure a child in a child seat. Child seats should NEVER be placed in the front seats, unless the passenger airbag switch is turned off, See *Passenger airbag on/off switch*.



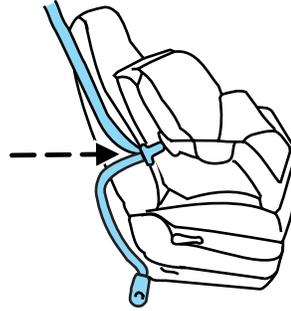
**WARNING:** Rear facing child seats should NEVER be placed in the front seats unless the passenger airbag switch is turned off.

2. Pull down on the shoulder belt and then grasp the shoulder belt and lap belt together.

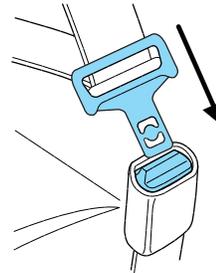


## Seating and Safety Restraints

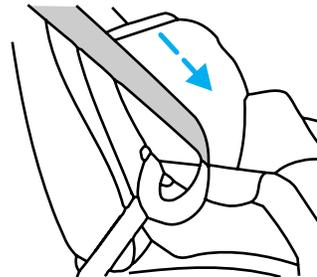
3. While holding the shoulder and lap belt portions together, route the tongue through the child seat according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions. Be sure the belt webbing is not twisted.



4. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from) for that seating position until you hear and feel the latch engage. Make sure the tongue is latched securely by pulling on it.



5. Put the safety belt in the automatic locking mode. To do so, grasp the shoulder portion of the belt and pull downward until all of the belt is pulled out.

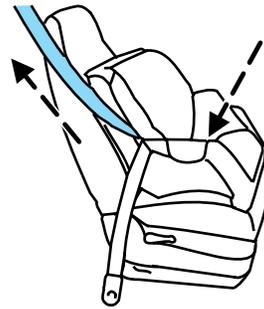


6. Allow the belt to retract to remove slack. The belt will click as it retracts to indicate it is in the automatic locking mode.

7. Try to pull the belt out of the retractor to make sure the retractor is in the automatic locking mode (you should not be able to pull more belt out). If the retractor is not locked, repeat Steps 5 and 6.

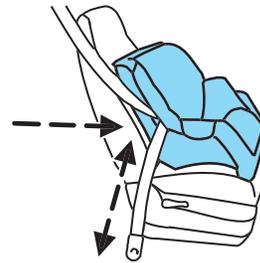
## Seating and Safety Restraints

8. Remove remaining slack from the belt. Force the seat down with extra weight, e.g., by pressing down or kneeling on the child restraint while pulling up on the shoulder belt in order to force slack from the belt. This is necessary to remove the remaining slack that will exist once the additional weight of the child is added to the child restraint. It also helps to achieve the proper snugness of the child seat to the vehicle. Sometimes, a slight lean towards the buckle will additionally help to remove remaining slack from the belt.



9. Attach the tether strap (if the child seat is equipped). Refer to *Attaching child safety seats with tether straps* later in this chapter.

10. Before placing the child in the seat, forcibly move the seat forward and back to make sure the seat is securely held in place. To check this, grab the seat at the belt path and attempt to move it side to side and forward. There should be no more than one inch (2.5 cm) of movement for proper installation.



11. Ford recommends checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician (CPST) to make certain the child restraint is properly installed. In Canada, check with your local St. John Ambulance office for referral to a CPST.

### **Installing child safety seats in cinch tongue combination lap and shoulder belt seating positions (Regular Cab front center and Super/Crew cab rear center positions)**

The belt webbing below the tongue is the lap portion of the combination lap/shoulder belt, and the belt webbing above the tongue is the shoulder belt portion of the combination lap/shoulder belt.

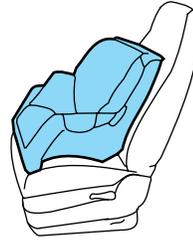


**WARNING:** Always use both lap and shoulder safety belt in the Regular Cab center seating position if applicable.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

**Note:** Although the child seat illustrated is a forward facing child seat, the steps are the same for installing a rear facing child seat.

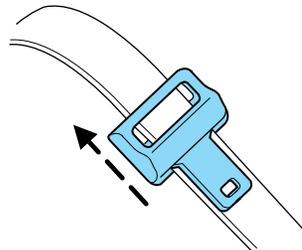
1. Position the child safety seat in the center seat.



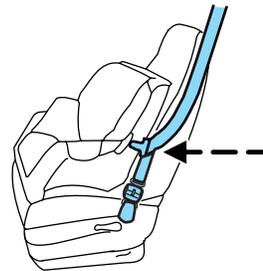
**!** **WARNING:** Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move seat all the way back.

**!** **WARNING:** Rear facing child seats should NEVER be placed in front of an active airbag.

2. Slide the tongue up the webbing.

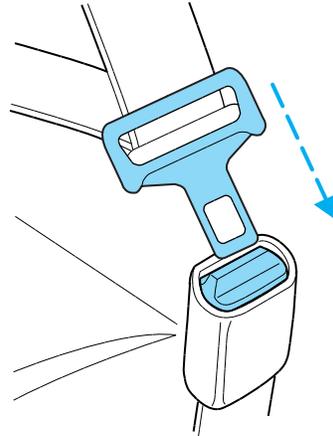


3. While holding both shoulder and lap portions next to the tongue, route the tongue and webbing through the child seat according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions. Be sure that the belt webbing is not twisted.

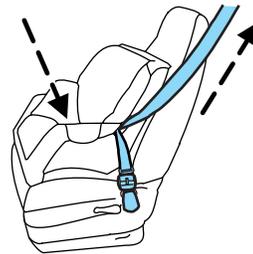


## Seating and Safety Restraints

4. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle for that seating positions until you hear a snap and feel it latch. Make sure the tongue is securely latched to the buckle by pulling on the tongue.



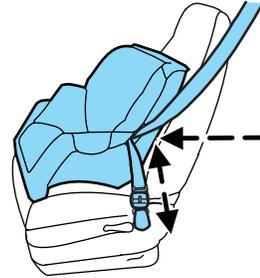
5. Remove remaining slack from the belt. Force the seat down with extra weight, e.g., by pressing down or kneeling on the child restraint while pulling up on the shoulder belt in order to force slack from the belt. This is necessary to remove the remaining slack that will exist once the additional weight of the child is added to the child restraint. It also helps to achieve the proper snugness of the child seat to the vehicle. Sometimes, a slight lean towards the buckle will additionally help to remove remaining slack from the belt.



6. Attach the tether strap (if the child seat is equipped). Refer to *Attaching child safety seats with tether straps* later in this chapter.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

7. Before placing the child in the seat, forcibly move the seat forward and back to make sure the seat is securely held in place. To check this, grab the seat at the belt path and attempt to move it side to side and forward. There should be no more than one inch (2.5 cm) of movement for proper installation.



8. Ford recommends checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician (CPST) to make certain the child restraint is properly installed. In Canada, check with your local St. John Ambulance office for referral to a CPST.

### ***Installing child safety seats in the front row lap belt seating positions (Super Cab and Crew Cab)***



**WARNING:** Installing a child safety seat in the front row lap seating position should be avoided if at all possible.



**WARNING:** Never place a rear-facing child seat in the front center seating position of a vehicle with rear seating positions.



**WARNING:** Front seating positions only: If seating two adults and a child, Ford recommends properly restraining the child in the center front seating position, but only if doing so will not interfere with driving the vehicle. This arrangement provides lap and shoulder belt and airbag protection for adult occupants and an attachment method for a child restraint. If the child seat interferes with driving the vehicle and the child restraint is forward-facing, the child may be restrained in the passenger seat. Move the seat as far rearward as possible to minimize the likelihood of interaction with the front passenger airbag. Never place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. All occupants of the vehicle should always properly wear their safety belts. Ensure the child is properly restrained in an appropriate child seat or with the use of a booster.

1. Lengthen the lap belt. To lengthen the belt, hold the tongue so that its bottom is perpendicular to the direction of webbing while sliding the tongue up the webbing.

206

## Seating and Safety Restraints

2. Place the child safety seat in the center seating position.
3. Route the tongue and webbing through the child seat according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions.
4. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle for the center seating position until you hear a snap and feel it latch. Make sure the tongue is securely fastened to the buckle by pulling on the tongue.
5. Push down on the child seat while pulling on the loose end of the lap belt webbing to tighten the belt.
6. Before placing the child into the child seat, forcibly tilt the child seat from side to side and in forward direction to make sure that the seat is securely held in place. To check this, grab the seat at the belt path and attempt to move it side to side and forward and back. There should be no more than one inch (2.5 cm) of movement for proper installation.
7. Ford recommends checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician (CPST) to make certain the child restraint is properly installed. In Canada, check with your local St. John Ambulance office for referral to a CPST.

**Note:** For Super Cab and Crew Cab there is no top tether anchor for the front center seating position. See *Attaching child safety seats with tether straps* later in this chapter.

### Attaching child safety seats with LATCH (Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children) attachments

The LATCH system is composed of three vehicle anchor points: two (2) lower anchors located where the vehicle seat back and seat cushion meet (called the “seat bight”) and one (1) top tether anchor located behind that seating position. Your vehicle is **not** equipped with the lower anchor points in the seat bight. For this vehicle use the vehicle safety belt and upper tether to secure a child seat. See *Attaching child safety seats with tether straps* and *Recommendations for attaching safety restraints for children* in this chapter for more information.

### Attaching child safety seats with tether straps

Many forward-facing child safety seats include a tether strap which extends from the back of the child safety seat and hooks to an anchoring point called the top tether anchor. Tether straps are available as an accessory for many older safety seats. Contact the manufacturer of your child seat for information about ordering a tether strap, or to obtain a longer tether strap if the tether strap on your safety seat does not reach the appropriate top tether anchor in the vehicle.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

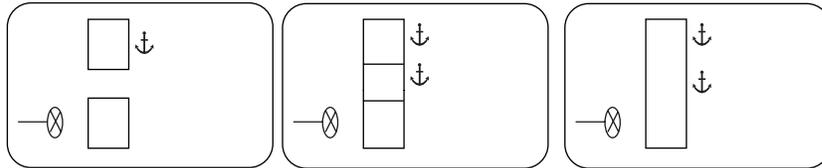
The passenger seats of your vehicle may be equipped with built-in tether strap anchors located behind the seats as described below.

The tether anchors in your vehicle may be straps on the seatback or an anchor bracket on the rear edge of the seat cushion or an anchor bracket mounted to the body shell on the back panel.

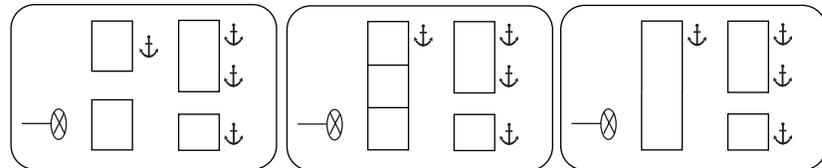
The SuperCab rear seat has three straps behind the top of the seat back that function as both routing loops for the tether straps and anchor loops.

The tether strap anchors in your vehicle are in the following positions (shown from top view):

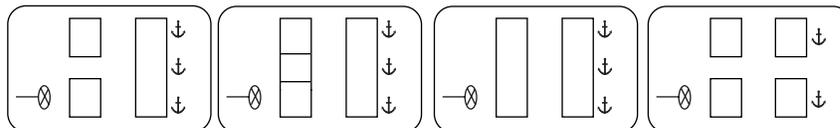
- **F-Series Regular Cab**



- **F-Series SuperCab**



- **F-Series Crew Cab**



Attach the tether strap only to the appropriate tether anchor as shown. The tether strap may not work properly if attached somewhere other than the correct tether anchor.

Once the child safety seat has been installed using the safety belt, you can attach the top tether strap.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

### Tether strap attachment

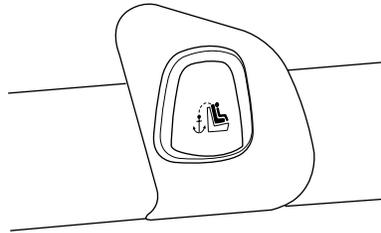
1. Route the child safety seat tether strap over the back of the seat.

For vehicles with adjustable head restraints, route the tether strap under the head restraint and between the head restraint posts, otherwise route the tether strap over the top of the seatback. If the top of the safety seat hits the head restraint, raise the head restraint to let the child seat fit further rearward.

2. Locate the correct anchor for the selected seating position.

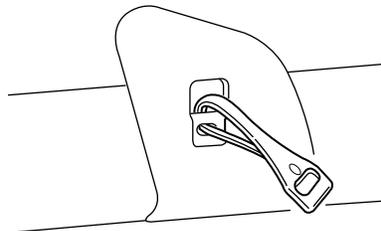
3. You may need to pull the seatback forward to access the tether anchors. Make sure the seat is locked in the upright position before installing the child seat. Refer to the *Rear folding seat system with load floor* section in this chapter for information on how to operate the rear seats.

4. Remove tether cover.



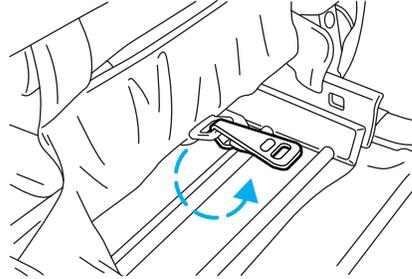
5. Clip the tether strap to the anchor as shown.

- Front seats (Regular Cab)

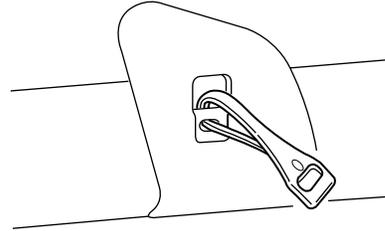


## Seating and Safety Restraints

- Front seat (SuperCab)



- Rear seats (Crew Cab)



If the tether strap is clipped incorrectly, the child safety seat may not be retained properly in the event of a collision.

6. Refer to the *Installing child safety seats with automatic locking mode combination lap and shoulder belts* and *Installing child safety seats in cinch tongue combination lap and shoulder belt seating positions* sections of this chapter for further instructions to secure the child safety seat.

7. Tighten the child safety seat tether strap according to the manufacturer's instructions.

If the safety seat is not anchored properly, the risk of a child being injured in a collision greatly increases.

If your child restraint system is equipped with a tether strap, and the child restraint manufacturer recommends its use, Ford also recommends its use.

### ***Tether strap attachment (rear SuperCab only)***

There are three loops of webbing just above the back of the rear seat (along the bottom edge of the rear window) in the SuperCab. These loops are to be used as both routing loops and anchor loops for up to three child safety seat tether straps.

210

## Seating and Safety Restraints

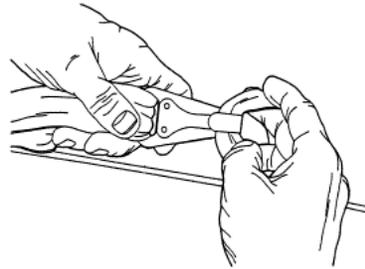
These straps may be secured below the back of the seat with rubber bands. To access, reach below the back of the seat and pull tether loop out of the rubber band securing it.

Many tether straps cannot be tightened if the tether strap is hooked to the loop directly behind the child seat. To provide a tight tether strap:

1. Route the tether strap through the loop directly behind the child seat.

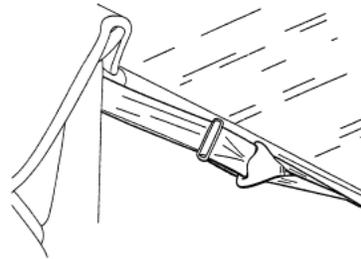


2. Attach the strap hook onto the loop behind an adjacent seating position.



3. Install the child safety seat tightly using the vehicle belts. Follow the instructions in this chapter.

4. Tighten the tether strap according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions.



A single loop can be used to route and anchor more than one child seat. For example, the center loop can be used as a routing loop for a child safety seat in the center rear seat and as an anchoring loop for child seats installed in the outboard rear seats.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

### Child booster seats

The belt-positioning booster (booster seat) is used to improve the fit of the vehicle safety belt. Children outgrow a typical child seat (e.g., convertible or toddler seat) when they weigh about 40 lb (18 kg) and are around four (4) years of age. Consult your child safety seat owner guide for the weight, height, and age limits specific to your child safety seat. Keep your child in the child safety seat if it properly fits the child, remains appropriate for their weight, height and age AND if properly secured to the vehicle.

Although the lap/shoulder belt will provide some protection, children who have outgrown a typical child seat are still too small for lap/shoulder belts to fit properly, and wearing an improperly fitted vehicle safety belt could increase the risk of serious injury in a crash. To improve the fit of both the lap and shoulder belt on children who have outgrown child safety seats, Ford Motor Company recommends use of a belt-positioning booster.

Booster seats position a child so that vehicle lap/shoulder safety belts fit better. They lift the child up so that the lap belt rests low across the hips and the knees bend comfortably at the edge of the cushion, while minimizing slouching. Booster seats may also make the shoulder belt fit better and more comfortably. Try to keep the belt near the middle of the shoulder and across the center of the chest. Moving the child closer (a few centimeters or inches) to the center of the vehicle, but remaining in the same seating position, may help provide a good shoulder belt fit.

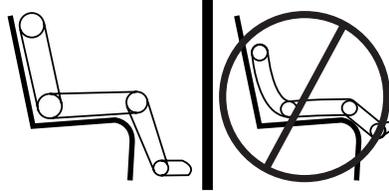
### ***When children should use booster seats***

Children need to use booster seats from the time they outgrow the toddler seat until they are big enough for the vehicle seat and lap/shoulder belt to fit properly. Generally this is when they reach a height of at least 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall (around age eight to age twelve and between 40 lb (18 kg) and 80 lb (36 kg) or upward to 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by your child restraint manufacturer). Many state and provincial laws require that children use approved booster seats until they reach age eight, a height of 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall, or 80 lb (36 kg).

## Seating and Safety Restraints

Booster seats should be used until you can answer YES to ALL of these questions when seated without a booster seat:

- Can the child sit all the way back against the vehicle seat back with knees bent comfortably at the edge of the seat cushion?
- Can the child sit without slouching?



- Does the lap belt rest low across the hips?
- Is the shoulder belt centered on the shoulder and chest?
- Can the child stay seated like this for the whole trip?

### **Types of booster seats**

There are generally two types of belt-positioning booster seats: backless and high back. Always use booster seats in conjunction with the vehicle lap/shoulder belt.

- Backless booster seats

If your backless booster seat has a removable shield, remove the shield. If a vehicle seating position has a low seat back or no head restraint, a backless booster seat may place your child's head (as measured at the tops of the ears) above the top of the seat. In this case, move the backless booster to another seating position with a higher seat back or head restraint and lap/shoulder belts, or consider using a high back booster seat.



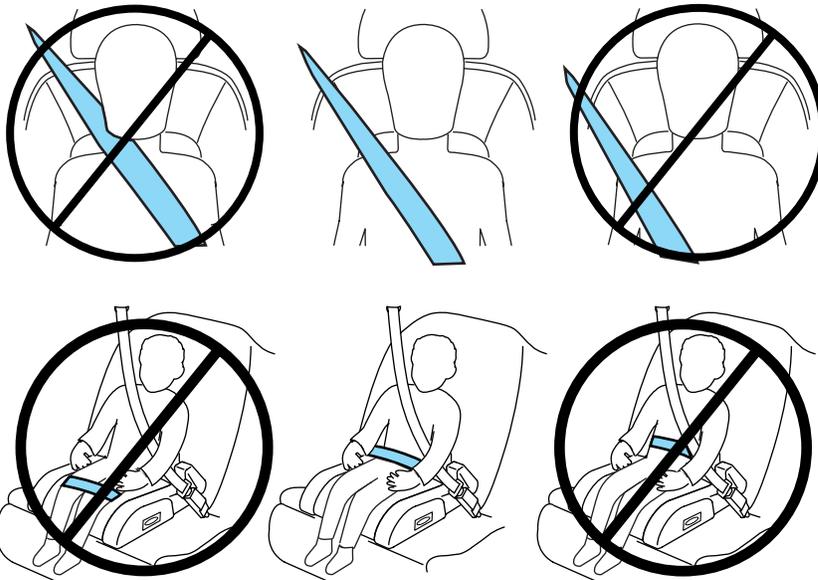
## Seating and Safety Restraints

- High back booster seats

If, with a backless booster seat, you cannot find a seating position that adequately supports your child's head, a high back booster seat would be a better choice.



Children and booster seats vary in size and shape. Choose a booster that keeps the lap belt low and snug across the hips, never up across the stomach, and lets you adjust the shoulder belt to cross the chest and rest snugly near the center of the shoulder. The drawings below compare the ideal fit (center) to a shoulder belt uncomfortably close to the neck and a shoulder belt that could slip off the shoulder. The drawings below also show how the lap belt should be low and snug across the child's hips.



## Seating and Safety Restraints

If the booster seat slides on the vehicle seat, placing a rubberized mesh sold as shelf or carpet liner under the booster seat may improve this condition. Do not introduce any item thicker than this under the booster seat. Check with the booster seat manufacturer's instructions.

### ***The importance of shoulder belts***

Using a booster without a shoulder belt increases the risk of a child's head hitting a hard surface in a collision. For this reason, you should never use a booster seat with a lap belt only. It is generally best to use a booster seat with lap/shoulder belts in the back seat.

Move a child to a different seating location if the shoulder belt does not stay positioned on the shoulder during use.

Follow all instructions provided by the manufacturer of the booster seat.



**WARNING:** Never place, or allow a child to place, the shoulder belt under a child's arm or behind the back because it reduces the protection for the upper part of the body and may increase the risk of injury or death in a collision.

### **Child restraint and safety belt maintenance**

Inspect the vehicle safety belts and child safety seat systems periodically to make sure they work properly and are not damaged. Inspect the vehicle and child seat safety belts to make sure there are no nicks, tears or cuts. Replace if necessary. All vehicle safety belt assemblies, including retractors, buckles, front safety belt buckle assemblies, buckle support assemblies (slide bar-if equipped), shoulder belt height adjusters (if equipped), shoulder belt guide on seatback (if equipped), child safety seat LATCH and tether anchors, and attaching hardware, should be inspected after a collision. Refer to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions for additional inspection and maintenance information specific to the child restraint. Ford Motor Company recommends that all safety belt assemblies in use in vehicles involved in a collision be replaced. However, if the collision was minor and an authorized dealer finds that the belts do not show damage and continue to operate properly, they do not need to be replaced. Safety belt assemblies not in use during a collision should also be inspected and replaced if either damage or improper operation is noted.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

For proper care of soiled safety belts, refer to *Interior* in the *Cleaning* chapter.

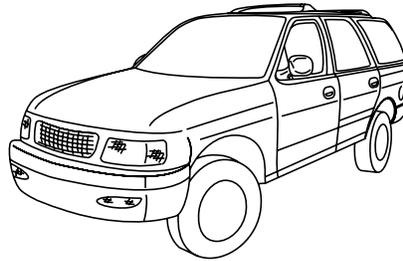


**WARNING:** Failure to inspect and if necessary replace the safety belt assembly or child restraint system under the above conditions could result in severe personal injuries in the event of a collision.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### NOTICE TO UTILITY VEHICLE AND TRUCK OWNERS

Utility vehicles and trucks handle differently than passenger cars in the various driving conditions that are encountered on streets, highways and off-road. Utility vehicles and trucks are not designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions.



**!** **WARNING:** Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles. To reduce the risk of serious injury or death from a rollover or other crash you must:

- Avoid sharp turns and abrupt maneuvers;
- Drive at safe speeds for the conditions;
- Keep tires properly inflated;
- Never overload or improperly load your vehicle; and
- Make sure every passenger is properly restrained.

**!** **WARNING:** In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. All occupants must wear seat belts and children/infants must use appropriate restraints to minimize the risk of injury or ejection.

Study your owner's guide and any supplements for specific information about equipment features, instructions for safe driving and additional precautions to reduce the risk of an accident or serious injury.

### VEHICLE CHARACTERISTICS

#### 4WD and AWD Systems (if equipped)

A vehicle equipped with AWD or 4WD (when selected) has the ability to use all four wheels to power itself. This increases traction which may enable you to safely drive over terrain and road conditions that a conventional two-wheel drive vehicle cannot.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

Power is supplied to all four wheels through a transfer case or power transfer unit. 4WD vehicles allow you to select different drive modes as necessary. Information on transfer case operation and shifting procedures can be found in the *Driving* chapter. Information on transfer case maintenance can be found in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter. You should become thoroughly familiar with this information before you operate your vehicle.

On some 4WD models, the initial shift from two-wheel drive to 4WD while the vehicle is moving can cause a momentary clunk and ratcheting sound. These sounds are normal as the front drivetrain comes up to speed and is not cause for concern.

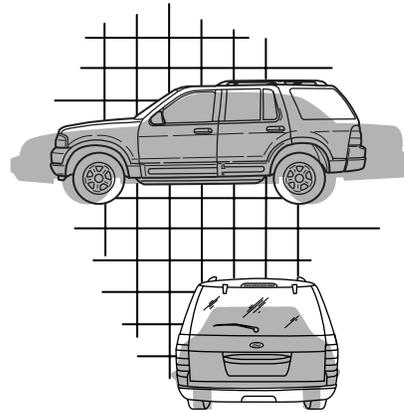


**WARNING:** Do not become overconfident in the ability of 4WD and AWD vehicles. Although a 4WD or AWD vehicle may accelerate better than two-wheel drive vehicle in low traction situations, it won't stop any faster than two-wheel drive vehicles. Always drive at a safe speed.

### How your vehicle differs from other vehicles

SUV and trucks can differ from some other vehicles in a few noticeable ways. Your vehicle may be:

- Higher – to allow higher load carrying capacity and to allow it to travel over rough terrain without getting hung up or damaging underbody components.
- Shorter – to give it the capability to approach inclines and drive over the crest of a hill without getting hung up or damaging underbody components. All other things held equal, a shorter wheelbase may make your vehicle quicker to respond to steering inputs than a vehicle with a longer wheelbase.

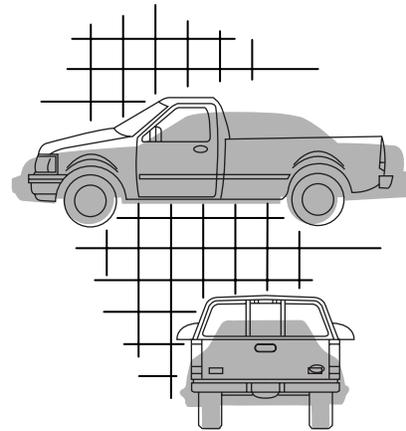


## Tires, Wheels and Loading

- Narrower — to provide greater maneuverability in tight spaces, particularly in off-road use.

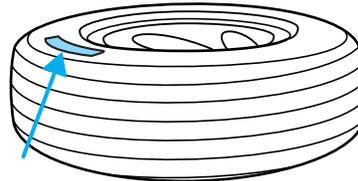
As a result of the above dimensional differences, SUV's and trucks often will have a higher center of gravity and a greater difference in center of gravity between the loaded and unloaded condition.

These differences that make your vehicle so versatile also make it handle differently than an ordinary passenger car.



### INFORMATION ABOUT UNIFORM TIRE QUALITY GRADING

Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic passenger car tires. The Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example:



- **Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A**

These Tire Quality Grades are determined by standards that the United States Department of Transportation has set.

Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic passenger car tires. They do not apply to deep tread, winter-type snow tires, space-saver or temporary use spare tires, light truck or "LT" type tires, tires with nominal rim diameters of 10 to 12 inches or limited production tires as defined in Title 49 Code of Federal Regulations Part 575.104(c)(2).

**U.S. Department of Transportation-Tire quality grades:** The U.S. Department of Transportation requires Ford Motor Company to give you the following information about tire grades exactly as the government has written it.

#### **Treadwear**

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1½) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices, and differences in road characteristics and climate.

### Traction AA A B C

The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.



**WARNING:** The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics.

### Temperature A B C

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 139. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.



**WARNING:** The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

## TIRES

Tires are designed to give many thousands of miles of service, but they must be maintained in order to get the maximum benefit from them.

### Glossary of tire terminology

- **Tire label:** A label showing the OE (Original Equipment) tire sizes, recommended inflation pressure and the maximum weight the vehicle can carry.

220

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

- **Tire Identification Number (TIN):** A number on the sidewall of each tire providing information about the tire brand and manufacturing plant, tire size and date of manufacture. Also referred to as DOT code.
- **Inflation pressure:** A measure of the amount of air in a tire.
- **Standard load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a maximum load at 35 psi [37 psi (2.5 bar) for Metric tires]. Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.
- **Extra load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a heavier maximum load at 41 psi [43 psi (2.9 bar) for Metric tires]. Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.
- **kPa:** Kilopascal, a metric unit of air pressure.
- **PSI:** Pounds per square inch, a standard unit of air pressure.
- **Cold inflation pressure:** The tire pressure when the vehicle has been stationary and out of direct sunlight for an hour or more and prior to the vehicle being driven for 1 mile (1.6 km).
- **Recommended inflation pressure:** The cold inflation pressure found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door.
- **B-pillar:** The structural member at the side of the vehicle behind the front door.
- **Bead area of the tire:** Area of the tire next to the rim.
- **Sidewall of the tire:** Area between the bead area and the tread.
- **Tread area of the tire:** Area of the perimeter of the tire that contacts the road when mounted on the vehicle.
- **Rim:** The metal support (wheel) for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

### INFLATING YOUR TIRES

Safe operation of your vehicle requires that your tires are properly inflated. Remember that a tire can lose up to half of its air pressure without appearing flat.

Every day before you drive, check your tires. If one looks lower than the others, use a tire gauge to check pressure of all tires and adjust if required.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

At least once a month and before long trips, inspect each tire and check the tire pressure with a tire gauge (including spare, if equipped). Inflate all tires to the inflation pressure recommended by Ford Motor Company.

You are strongly urged to buy a reliable tire pressure gauge, as automatic service station gauges may be inaccurate. Ford recommends the use of a digital or dial-type tire pressure gauge rather than a stick-type tire pressure gauge.

Use the recommended cold inflation pressure for optimum tire performance and wear. Under-inflation or over-inflation may cause uneven treadwear patterns.



**WARNING:** Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failures and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation or "blowout", with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury. Under-inflation increases sidewall flexing and rolling resistance, resulting in heat buildup and internal damage to the tire. It also may result in unnecessary tire stress, irregular wear, loss of vehicle control and accidents. A tire can lose up to half of its air pressure and not appear to be flat!

Always inflate your tires to the Ford recommended inflation pressure even if it is less than the maximum inflation pressure information found on the tire. The Ford recommended tire inflation pressure is found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. Failure to follow the tire pressure recommendations can cause uneven treadwear patterns and adversely affect the way your vehicle handles.

**Note:** Do not reduce tire pressure to change the ride characteristics of the vehicle. If you do not maintain the inflation pressure at the levels specified by Ford, your vehicle may experience a condition known as "shimmy". Shimmy is a severe vibration and oscillation in the steering wheel after the vehicle travels over a bump or dip in the road that does not dampen out by itself. Shimmy may result from significant under-inflation of the tires, improper tires (load range, size, or type), or vehicle modifications such as lift-kits. In the event that your vehicle experiences shimmy, you should slowly reduce speed by either lifting off the accelerator pedal or lightly applying the brakes. The shimmy will cease as the vehicle speed decreases.

**Maximum Permissible Inflation Pressure** is the tire manufacturer's maximum permissible pressure and/or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally

222

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

higher than the manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label.

When weather temperature changes occur, tire inflation pressures also change. A 10°F (6°C) temperature drop can cause a corresponding drop of 1 psi (7 kPa) in inflation pressure. Check your tire pressures frequently and adjust them to the proper pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label.

To check the pressure in your tire(s):

1. Make sure the tires are cool, meaning they are not hot from driving even a mile.

If you are checking tire pressure when the tire is hot, (i.e. driven more than 1 mile [1.6 km]), never "bleed" or reduce air pressure. The tires are hot from driving and it is normal for pressures to increase above recommended cold pressures. A hot tire at or below recommended cold inflation pressure could be significantly under-inflated.

**Note:** If you have to drive a distance to get air for your tire(s), check and record the tire pressure first and add the appropriate air pressure when you get to the pump. It is normal for tires to heat up and the air pressure inside to go up as you drive.

2. Remove the cap from the valve on one tire, then firmly press the tire gauge onto the valve and measure the pressure.
3. Add enough air to reach the recommended air pressure.

**Note:** If you overfill the tire, release air by pushing on the metal stem in the center of the valve. Then recheck the pressure with your tire gauge.

4. Replace the valve cap.
5. Repeat this procedure for each tire, including the spare.

**Note:** Some spare tires operate at a higher inflation pressure than the other tires. For T-type/mini-spare tires (see the *Dissimilar spare tire/wheel information* section for description): Store and maintain at 60 psi (4.15 bar). For Full Size and Dissimilar spare tires (see the *Dissimilar spare tire/wheel information* section for description): Store and maintain at the higher of the front and rear inflation pressure as shown on the Tire Label.

6. Visually inspect the tires to make sure there are no nails or other objects embedded that could poke a hole in the tire and cause an air leak.

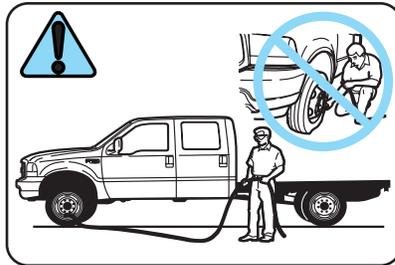
## Tires, Wheels and Loading

7. Check the sidewalls to make sure there are no gouges, cuts or bulges.

### Tire inflation information

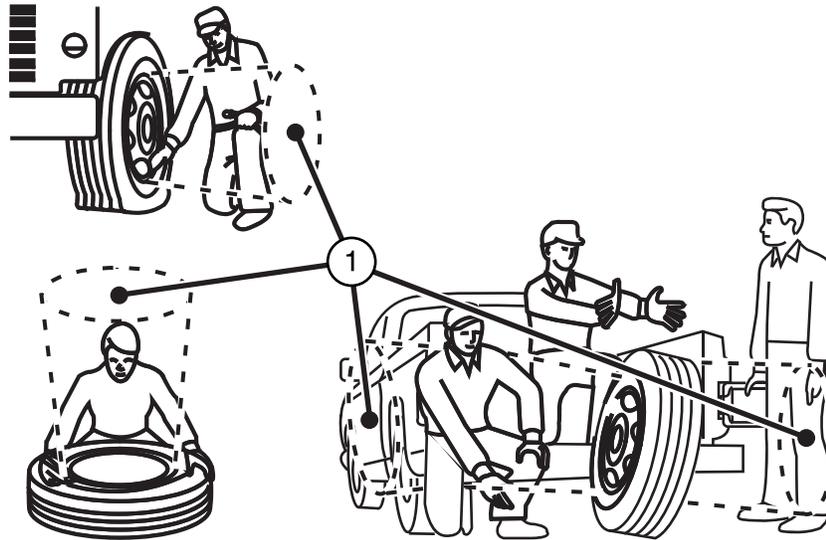
All tires with Steel Carcass Plies (if equipped):

This type of tire utilizes steel cords in the sidewalls. As such, they cannot be treated like normal light truck tires. Tire service, including adjusting tire pressure, must be performed by personnel trained, supervised and equipped according to Federal Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) regulations. For example, during any procedure involving tire inflation, the technician or individual must utilize a remote inflation device, and ensure that all persons are clear of the trajectory area.



**WARNING:** An inflated tire and rim can be very dangerous if improperly used, serviced or maintained. To reduce the risk of serious injury, never attempt to re-inflate a tire which has been run flat or seriously under-inflated without first removing the tire from the wheel assembly for inspection. Do not attempt to add air to tires or replace tires or wheels without first taking precautions to protect persons and property.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading



**WARNING:** Stay out of the trajectory (1) as indicated in the illustration.

### TIRE CARE

#### Inspecting your tires and wheel valve stems

Periodically inspect the tire treads for uneven or excessive wear and remove objects such as stones, nails or glass that may be wedged in the tread grooves. Check the tire and valve stems for holes, cracks, or cuts that may permit air leakage and repair or replace the tire and replace the valve stem. Inspect the tire sidewalls for cracking, cuts, bruises and other signs of damage or excessive wear. If internal damage to the tire is suspected, have the tire demounted and inspected in case it needs to be repaired or replaced. For your safety, tires that are damaged or show signs of excessive wear should not be used because they are more likely to blow out or fail.

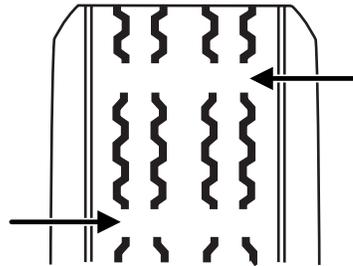
## Tires, Wheels and Loading

Improper or inadequate vehicle maintenance can cause tires to wear abnormally. Inspect all your tires, including the spare, frequently, and replace them if one or more of the following conditions exist:

### Tire wear

When the tread is worn down to 1/16th of an inch (2 mm), tires must be replaced to help prevent your vehicle from skidding and hydroplaning. Built-in treadwear indicators, or “wear bars”, which look like narrow strips of smooth rubber across the tread will appear on the tire when the tread is worn down to 1/16th of an inch (2 mm).

When the tire tread wears down to the same height as these “wear bars”, the tire is worn out and must be replaced.



### Damage

Periodically inspect the tire treads and sidewalls for damage (such as bulges in the tread or sidewalls, cracks in the tread groove and separation in the tread or sidewall). If damage is observed or suspected have the tire inspected by a tire professional. Tires can be damaged during off-road use, so inspection after off-road use is also recommended.



### **WARNING: Age**

Tires degrade over time depending on many factors such as weather, storage conditions, and conditions of use (load, speed, inflation pressure, etc.) the tires experience throughout their lives. In general, tires should be replaced after six years regardless of tread wear. However, heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process and may require tires to be replaced more frequently.

You should replace your spare tire when you replace the road tires or after six years due to aging even if it has not been used.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN)

Both U.S. and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

This begins with the letters “DOT” and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000 the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

### Tire Replacement Requirements

Your vehicle is equipped with tires designed to provide a safe ride and handling capability.



**WARNING:** Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, load index, speed rating and type (such as P-metric versus LT-metric or all-season versus all-terrain) as those originally provided by Ford. The recommended tire and wheel size may be found on either the Safety Compliance Certification Label or the Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or edge of the driver's door. If this information is not found on these labels then you should contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. Additionally the use of non-recommended tires and wheels could cause steering, suspension, axle or transfer case/power transfer unit failure. If you have questions regarding tire replacement, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading



**WARNING:** When mounting replacement tires and wheels, you should not exceed the maximum pressure indicated on the sidewall of the tire to set the beads without additional precautions listed below. If the beads do not seat at the maximum pressure indicated, re-lubricate and try again.

When inflating the tire for mounting pressures up to 20 psi (138 kPa) greater than the maximum pressure on the tire sidewall, the following precautions must be taken to protect the person mounting the tire:

1. Make sure that you have the correct tire and wheel size.
2. Lubricate the tire bead and wheel bead seat area again.
3. Stand at a minimum of 12 ft. (3.66 m) away from the tire wheel assembly.
4. Use both eye and ear protection.

For a mounting pressure more than 20 psi (138 kPa) greater than the maximum pressure, a Ford Dealer or other tire service professional should do the mounting.

Always inflate steel carcass tires with a remote air fill with the person inflating standing at a minimum of 12 ft. (3.66 m) away from the tire wheel assembly.

**Important:** Remember to replace the wheel valve stems when the road tires are replaced on your vehicle.

It is recommended that the two front tires or two rear tires generally be replaced as a pair.

The tire pressure sensors mounted in the wheels are not designed to be used in aftermarket wheels.

The use of wheels or tires not recommended by Ford Motor Company may affect the operation of your Tire Pressure Monitoring System (if equipped).

If the TPMS indicator is flashing, your TPMS is malfunctioning. Your replacement tire might be incompatible with your TPMS, or some component of the TPMS may be damaged (if equipped).

### Safety practices

Driving habits have a great deal to do with your tire mileage and safety.

- Observe posted speed limits
- Avoid fast starts, stops and turns
- Avoid potholes and objects on the road

228

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

- Do not run over curbs or hit the tire against a curb when parking



**WARNING:** If your vehicle is stuck in snow, mud, sand, etc., **do not** rapidly spin the tires; spinning the tires can tear the tire and cause an explosion. A tire can explode in as little as three to five seconds.



**WARNING:** Do not spin the wheels at over 35 mph (56 km/h). The tires may fail and injure a passenger or bystander.

### Highway hazards

No matter how carefully you drive there's always the possibility that you may eventually have a flat tire on the highway. Drive slowly to the closest safe area out of traffic. This may further damage the flat tire, but your safety is more important.

If you feel a sudden vibration or ride disturbance while driving, or you suspect your tire or vehicle has been damaged, immediately reduce your speed. Drive with caution until you can safely pull off the road. Stop and inspect the tires for damage. If a tire is under-inflated or damaged, deflate it, remove wheel and replace it with your spare tire and wheel. If you cannot detect a cause, have the vehicle towed to the nearest repair facility or tire dealer to have the vehicle inspected.

### Tire and wheel alignment

A bad jolt from hitting a curb or pothole can cause the front end of your vehicle to become misaligned or cause damage to your tires. If your vehicle seems to pull to one side when you're driving, the wheels may be out of alignment. Have an authorized dealer check the wheel alignment periodically.

Wheel misalignment in the front or the rear can cause uneven and rapid treadwear of your tires and should be corrected by an authorized dealer. Front wheel drive (FWD) vehicles and those with an independent rear suspension (if equipped) may require alignment of all four wheels.

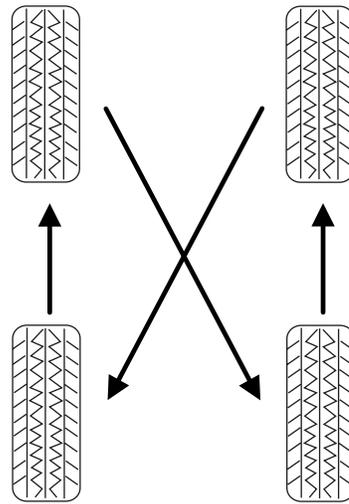
The tires should also be balanced periodically. An unbalanced tire and wheel assembly may result in irregular tire wear.

### Tire rotation

Rotating your tires at the recommended interval (as indicated in the *scheduled maintenance information* that comes with your vehicle) will help your tires wear more evenly, providing better tire performance and longer tire life.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

- Rear Wheel Drive (RWD) vehicles/Four Wheel Drive (4WD)/All Wheel Drive (AWD) vehicles (front tires at top of diagram)



Sometimes irregular tire wear can be corrected by rotating the tires.

**Note:** If your tires show uneven wear ask an authorized dealer to check for and correct any wheel misalignment, tire imbalance or mechanical problem involved before tire rotation.

**Note:** Your vehicle may be equipped with a dissimilar spare tire/wheel. A dissimilar spare tire/wheel is defined as a spare tire and/or wheel that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels. If you have a dissimilar spare tire/wheel it is intended for temporary use only and should not be used in a tire rotation.

**Note:** After having your tires rotated, inflation pressure must be checked and adjusted to the vehicle requirements.

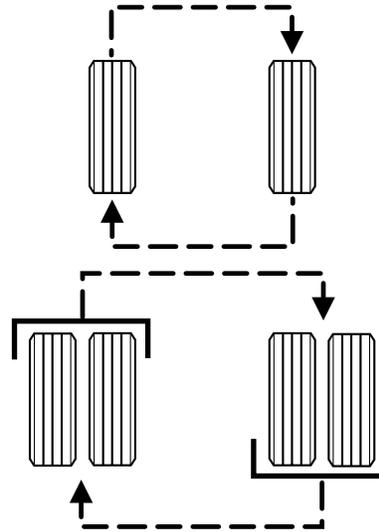


**WARNING:** If the tire label shows different tire pressures for the front and rear tires and the vehicle is equipped with TPMS (tire pressure monitoring system), then the settings for the TPMS sensors need to be updated. Always perform the TPMS reset procedure after tire rotation. If the system is not reset, it may not provide a low tire pressure warning when necessary. See the TPMS reset procedure in this chapter.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

- DRW – Six tire rotation

If your vehicle is equipped with dual rear wheels it is recommended that the front and rear tires (in pairs) be rotated only side to side. We do not recommend splitting up the dual rear wheels. Rotate them side to side as a set/pair. After tire rotation, inflation pressures must be adjusted for the tires new positions in accordance with vehicle requirements.



Sometimes irregular tire wear can be corrected by rotating the tires.

**Note:** If your tires show uneven wear ask your authorized dealer to check for and correct any wheel misalignment, tire imbalance or mechanical problem involved before tire rotation.

**Note:** Your vehicle may be equipped with a dissimilar spare tire/wheel. A dissimilar spare tire/wheel is defined as a spare tire and/or wheel that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels. If you have a dissimilar spare tire/wheel it is intended for temporary use only and should not be used in a tire rotation.

**Note:** After having your tires rotated, inflation pressure must be checked and adjusted to the vehicle requirements.

### INFORMATION CONTAINED ON THE TIRE SIDEWALL

Both U.S. and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### Information on “P” type tires

P215/65R15 95H is an example of a tire size, load index and speed rating. The definitions of these items are listed below. (Note that the tire size, load index and speed rating for your vehicle may be different from this example.)

1. **P:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association (T&RA), that may be used for service on cars, SUVs, minivans and light trucks.

**Note:** If your tire size does not begin with a letter this may mean it is designated by either ETRTO (European Tire and Rim Technical Organization) or JATMA (Japan Tire Manufacturing Association).

2. **215:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

3. **65:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire’s ratio of height to width.

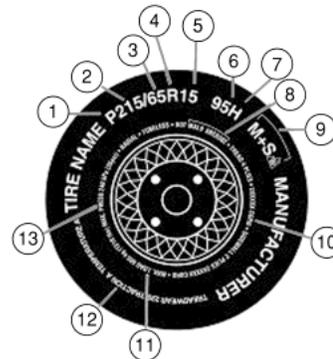
4. **R:** Indicates a “radial” type tire.

5. **15:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

6. **95:** Indicates the tire’s load index. It is an index that relates to how much weight a tire can carry. You may find this information in your Owner’s Guide. If not, contact a local tire dealer.

**Note:** You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.

7. **H:** Indicates the tire’s speed rating. The speed rating denotes the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time under a standard condition of load and inflation pressure. The tires on your vehicle may operate at different conditions for load and inflation pressure. These speed ratings may need to be adjusted for the difference in conditions. The ratings range from 81 mph (130 km/h) to 186 mph (299 km/h). These ratings are listed in the following chart.



232

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

**Note:** You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.

Letter rating	Speed rating - mph (km/h)
M	81 mph (130 km/h)
N	87 mph (140 km/h)
Q	99 mph (159 km/h)
R	106 mph (171 km/h)
S	112 mph (180 km/h)
T	118 mph (190 km/h)
U	124 mph (200 km/h)
H	130 mph (210 km/h)
V	149 mph (240 km/h)
W	168 mph (270 km/h)
Y	186 mph (299 km/h)

**Note:** For tires with a maximum speed capability over 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the letters ZR. For those with a maximum speed capability over 186 mph (299 km/h), tire manufacturers always use the letters ZR.

**8. U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN):** This begins with the letters "DOT" and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000 the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

**9. M+S or M/S:** Mud and Snow, or

**AT:** All Terrain, or

**AS:** All Season.

**10. Tire Ply Composition and Material Used:** Indicates the number of plies or the number of layers of rubber-coated fabric in the tire tread and sidewall. Tire manufacturers also must indicate the ply materials in the tire and the sidewall, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others.

**11. Maximum Load:** Indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire. Refer to the Safety Compliance Certification Label, which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door, for the correct tire pressure for your vehicle.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### 12. Treadwear, Traction and Temperature Grades

- **Treadwear:** The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1½) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.
- **Traction:** The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.
- **Temperature:** The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

13. **Maximum Permissible Inflation Pressure:** Indicates the tire manufacturers' maximum permissible pressure and/or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the vehicle label.

The tire suppliers may have additional markings, notes or warnings such as standard load, radial tubeless, etc.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### Additional information contained on the tire sidewall for “LT” type tires

“LT” type tires have some additional information beyond those of “P” type tires; these differences are described below.

**Note:** Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.

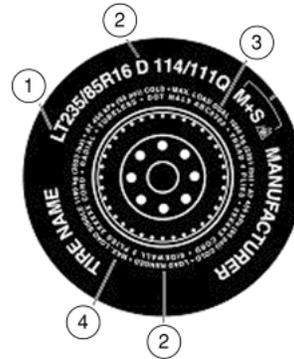
1. **LT:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association (T&RA), that is intended for service on light trucks.

#### 2. Load Range/Load Inflation

**Limits:** Indicates the tire’s load-carrying capabilities and its inflation limits.

3. **Maximum Load Dual lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a dual; defined as four tires on the rear axle (a total of six or more tires on the vehicle).

4. **Maximum Load Single lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a single; defined as two tires (total) on the rear axle.



## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### Information on “T” type tires

“T” type tires have some additional information beyond those of “P” type tires; these differences are described below:

T145/80D16 is an example of a tire size.

**Note:** The temporary tire size for your vehicle may be different from this example. Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.

1. **T:** Indicates a type of tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association (T&RA), that is intended for temporary service on cars, SUVs, minivans and light trucks.

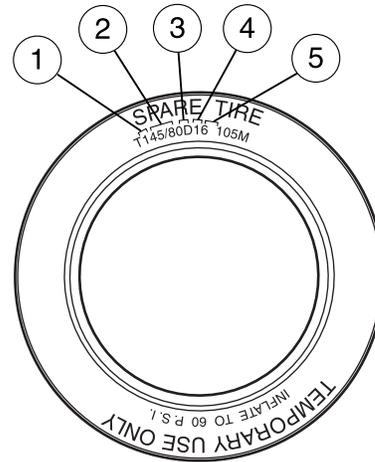
2. **145:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

3. **80:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire’s ratio of height to width. Numbers of 70 or lower indicate a short sidewall.

4. **D:** Indicates a “diagonal” type tire.

**R:** Indicates a “radial” type tire.

5. **16:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.



### Location of the tire label

You will find a Tire Label containing tire inflation pressure by tire size and other important information located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver’s door. Refer to the payload description and graphic in the *Vehicle loading — with and without a trailer* section.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS) (IF EQUIPPED)

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)



As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

The Tire Pressure Monitoring System complies with part 15 of the FCC rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.



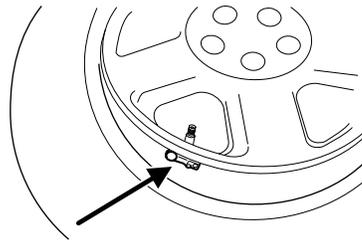
**WARNING:** The Tire Pressure Monitoring System is NOT a substitute for manually checking tire pressure. The tire pressure should be checked periodically (at least monthly) using a tire gauge, see *Inflating your tires* in this chapter. Failure to properly maintain your tire pressure could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.

### Changing tires with TPMS

**Each road tire is equipped with a tire pressure sensor located inside the tire/wheel cavity. The pressure sensor is attached to the valve stem. The pressure sensor is covered by the tire and is not visible unless the tire is removed. Care must be taken when changing the tire to avoid damaging the sensor. It is**

recommended that you always have your tires serviced by an authorized dealer.

The tire pressure should be checked periodically (at least monthly) using an accurate tire gauge, refer to *Inflating your tires* in this chapter.



### Understanding your Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

The Tire Pressure Monitoring System measures pressure in your four road tires and sends the tire pressure readings to your vehicle. The Low Tire Warning Lamp will turn ON if the tire pressure is significantly low. Once the light is illuminated, your tires are under inflated and need to be inflated to the manufacturer's recommended tire pressure. Even if the light turns ON and a short time later turns OFF, your tire pressure still needs to be checked. Visit [www.checkmytires.org](http://www.checkmytires.org) for additional information.

### ***When your temporary spare tire is installed***

When one of your road tires needs to be replaced with the temporary spare, the TPMS system will continue to identify an issue to remind you that the damaged road wheel/tire needs to be repaired and put back on your vehicle.

238

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

To restore the full functionality of the Tire Pressure Monitoring System, have the damaged road wheel/tire repaired and remounted on your vehicle. For additional information, refer to *Changing tires with TPMS* in this section.

### **When you believe your system is not operating properly**

The main function of the Tire Pressure Monitoring System is to warn you when your tires need air. It can also warn you in the event the system is no longer capable of functioning as intended. Please refer to the following chart for information concerning your Tire Pressure Monitoring System:

Low Tire Pressure Warning Light	Possible cause	Customer Action Required
Solid Warning Light	Tire(s) under-inflated	1. Check your tire pressure to ensure tires are properly inflated; refer to <i>Inflating your tires</i> in this chapter. 2. After inflating your tires to the manufacturer's recommended inflation pressure as shown on the Tire Label (located on the edge of driver's door or the B-Pillar), the vehicle must be driven for at least two minutes over 20 mph (32 km/h) before the light will turn OFF.
	Spare tire in use	Your temporary spare tire is in use. Repair the damaged road wheel/tire and reinstall it on the vehicle to restore system functionality. For a description on how the system functions, refer to <i>When your temporary spare tire is installed</i> in this section.
	TPMS malfunction	If your tires are properly inflated and your spare tire is not in use and the light remains ON, have the system inspected by your authorized dealer.
	Tire rotation without sensor training	On vehicles with different front and rear tire pressures, the TPMS system must be retrained following every tire rotation. Refer to <i>Tire rotation</i> in this chapter.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

Low Tire Pressure Warning Light	Possible cause	Customer Action Required
Flashing Warning Light	Spare tire in use	Your temporary spare tire is in use. Repair the damaged road wheel and re-mount it on the vehicle to restore system functionality. For a description of how the system functions under these conditions, refer to <i>When your temporary spare tire is installed</i> in this section.
	TPMS malfunction	If your tires are properly inflated and your spare tire is not in use and the TPMS warning light still flashes, have the system inspected by your authorized dealer.

### **When inflating your tires**

When putting air into your tires (such as at a gas station or in your garage), the Tire Pressure Monitoring System may not respond immediately to the air added to your tires.

It may take up to two minutes of driving over 20 mph (32 km/h) for the light to turn OFF after you have filled your tires to the recommended inflation pressure.

### **How temperature affects your tire pressure**

The Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) monitors tire pressure in each pneumatic tire. While driving in a normal manner, a typical passenger tire inflation pressure may increase approximately 2 to 4 psi (14 to 28 kPa) from a cold start situation. If the vehicle is stationary over night with the outside temperature significantly lower than the daytime temperature, the tire pressure may decrease approximately 3 psi (20.7 kPa) for a drop of 30°F (16.6°C) in ambient temperature. This lower pressure value may be detected by the TPMS as being significantly lower than the recommended inflation pressure and activate the TPMS warning for low tire pressure. If the low tire pressure warning light is ON, visually check each tire to verify that no tire is flat. (If one or more tires are flat, repair as necessary.) Check air pressure in the road tires. If any tire is under-inflated, carefully drive the vehicle to the nearest location where air can be added to the tires. Inflate all the tires to the recommended inflation pressure.

240

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### TPMS reset procedure

**The TPMS reset procedure needs to be performed after each tire rotation on vehicles that require different recommended tire pressures in the front tires as compared to the rear tires.**



**WARNING:** To determine the required pressure(s) for your vehicle – refer to the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. See *Vehicle loading* in this chapter for more information.

### Overview

To provide the vehicle's load carrying capability, some vehicles require different recommended tire pressures in the front tires as compared to the rear tires. The Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) equipped on these vehicles is designed to illuminate the Low Tire Pressure Warning indicator at two different pressures; one for the front tires and one for the rear tires.

Since tires need to be rotated to provide consistent performance and maximum tire life, the Tire Pressure Monitoring System needs to know when the tires are rotated to determine which set of tires are on the front and which are on the rear. With this information, the system can detect and properly warn of low tire pressures.

### TPMS reset tips:

- To reduce the chances of interference from another vehicle, the TPMS reset procedure should be performed at least 3 feet (1 meter) away from another Ford Motor Company vehicle undergoing the TPMS reset procedure at the same time.
- Do not wait more than two (2) minutes between resetting each tire sensor or the system will timeout and the entire procedure will have to be repeated on all four wheels.
- A double horn chirp indicates the need to repeat the procedure.

### Performing the TPMS reset procedure

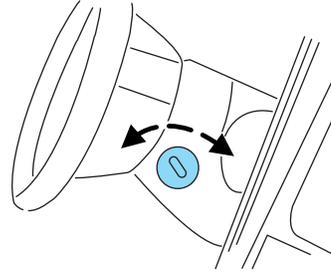
It is recommended that you read the entire procedure before attempting.

1. Drive the vehicle above 20 mph (32 km/h) for at least 2 minutes and then park in a safe location where you can easily get to all four tires and have access to an air pump.
2. Place the ignition in the off position and keep the key in the ignition.

241

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

3. Cycle the ignition to the on position with the engine off.



4. Turn the hazard flashers on then off 3 times. This must be accomplished within ten seconds.



If the reset mode has been entered successfully, the horn will sound once, the TPMS indicator (⚠) will flash and the message center (if equipped) will display **TRAIN LEFT FRONT TIRE**. If this does not occur, please try again starting at Step 2.

If after repeated attempts to enter the reset mode, the horn does not sound, the TPMS indicator (⚠) does not flash and the message center (if equipped) does not display **TRAIN LEFT FRONT TIRE**, seek service from your authorized dealer.

5. Train the TPMS sensors in the tires using the following TPMS reset sequence starting with the **left front tire** in the following clockwise order:

- Left front (Driver's side front tire)
- Right front (Passenger's side front tire)
- Right rear (Passenger's side rear tire)
- Left rear (Driver's side rear tire)

6. Remove the valve cap from the valve stem on the left front tire. Decrease the air pressure until the horn sounds.

**Note:** The single horn chirp confirms that the sensor identification code has been learned by the module for this position. If a double horn is heard, the reset procedure was unsuccessful, and must be repeated.

7. Remove the valve cap from the valve stem on the right front tire. Decrease the air pressure until the horn sounds.

242

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

8. Remove the valve cap from the valve stem on the right rear tire. Decrease the air pressure until the horn sounds.

9. Remove the valve cap from the valve stem on the left rear tire. Decrease the air pressure until the horn sounds.

Training is complete after the horn sounds for the last tire trained (driver's side rear tire), the TPMS tell tale stops flashing, and the message center (if equipped) displays:

### **TRAINING COMPLETE.**

10. Turn the ignition off. If two short horn beeps are heard, the reset procedure was unsuccessful and must be repeated.

If after repeating the procedure and two short beeps are heard when the ignition is turned to off, seek assistance from your authorized dealer.

11. Set all four tires to the recommended air pressure as indicated on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. See *Vehicle loading - with and without a trailer* in this chapter for more information.

### **SNOW TIRES AND CHAINS**



**WARNING:** Snow tires must be the same size, load index, speed rating as those originally provided by Ford. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. Additionally, the use of non-recommended tires and wheels could cause steering, suspension, axle or transfer case/power transfer unit failure.

**Note:** Do not use snow chains on vehicles with 20 inch wheels and tires.

The tires on your vehicle have all weather treads to provide traction in rain and snow. However, in some climates, you may need to use snow tires and chains. If you need to use chains, it is recommended that steel wheels (of the same size and specifications) be used, as chains may chip aluminum wheels.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

Follow these guidelines when using snow tires and chains:

- Use only SAE Class S chains.
- Install chains securely, verifying that the chains do not touch any wiring, brake lines or fuel lines.
- Drive cautiously. If you hear the chains rub or bang against your vehicle, stop and re-tighten the chains. If this does not work, remove the chains to prevent damage to your vehicle.
- If possible, avoid fully loading your vehicle.
- Remove the tire chains when they are no longer needed. Do not use tire chains on dry roads.
- The suspension insulation and bumpers will help prevent vehicle damage. Do not remove these components from your vehicle when using snow tires and chains.

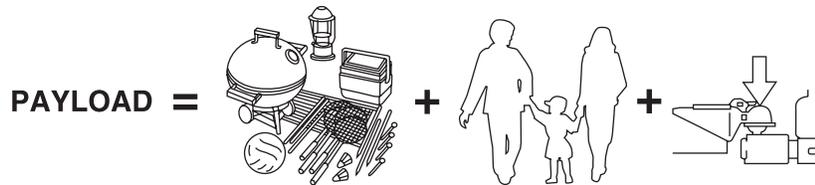
### VEHICLE LOADING – WITH AND WITHOUT A TRAILER

This section will guide you in the proper loading of your vehicle and/or trailer, to keep your loaded vehicle weight within its design rating capability, with or without a trailer. Properly loading your vehicle will provide maximum return of vehicle design performance. Before loading your vehicle, familiarize yourself with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight ratings, with or without a trailer, from the vehicle's Tire Label or Safety Compliance Certification Label:

**Base Curb Weight** – is the weight of the vehicle including a full tank of fuel and all standard equipment. It does not include passengers, cargo, or optional equipment.

**Vehicle Curb Weight** – is the weight of your new vehicle when you picked it up from your authorized dealer plus any aftermarket equipment.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading



**Payload** – is the combined weight of cargo and passengers that the vehicle is carrying. The maximum payload for your vehicle can be found on the Tire Label on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door (vehicles exported outside the US and Canada may not have a Tire Label). Look for **“THE COMBINED WEIGHT OF OCCUPANTS AND CARGO SHOULD NEVER EXCEED XXX kg OR XXX lb.”** for maximum payload. The payload listed on the Tire Label is the maximum payload for the vehicle as built by the assembly plant. If any aftermarket or authorized-dealer installed equipment has been installed on the vehicle, the weight of the equipment must be subtracted from the payload listed on the Tire Label in order to determine the new payload.

**!** **WARNING:** The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

Example only:



### TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION

SEATING CAPACITY	TOTAL 5	FRONT 2	REAR 3
------------------	---------	---------	--------

The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed : **XXX kg or XXX lbs.**

TIRE	SIZE	COLD TIRE PRESSURE	SEE OWNERS MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION
FRONT	LT225/75R 16.5E	200 KPA, 29 PSI	
REAR	LT225/75R 16.5E	200 KPA, 29 PSI	
SPARE	T145/80D16 P225/60R17	420 KPA, 60 PSI 200 KPA, 29 PSI	



### TIRE AND LOAD INFORMATION RENSEIGNEMENTS RELATIFS AUX PNEUS ET À LA CHARGE

SEATING CAPACITY NOMBRE DE PLACES	TOTAL TOTAL	FRONT AVANT	REAR ARRIÈRE
	XX	XX	X

The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed : **XXX kg.**  
La charge du véhicule (occupants et bagages) ne doit jamais dépasser : **XXX lbs.**

TIRE PNEUS	SIZE DIMENSIONS	COLD TIRE PRESSURE PRESSION À FROID	SEE OWNERS MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION  CONSULTER LE GUIDE DU PROPRIÉTAIRE POUR DE PLUS AMPLES RENSEIGNEMENTS
FRONT/ AVANT	LT225/75R 16.5E	200 KPA, 29 PSI	
REAR/ ARRIÈRE	LT225/75R 16.5E	200 KPA, 29 PSI	
SPARE/ PNEU DE SECOURS	T145/80D16 P225/60R17	420 KPA, 60 PSI 200 KPA, 29 PSI	



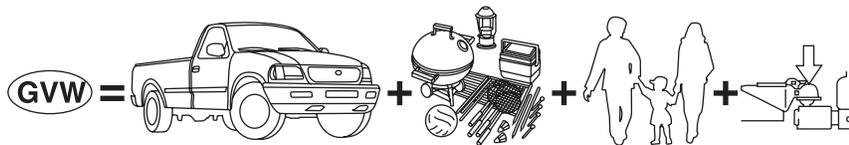
**Cargo Weight** – includes all weight added to the Base Curb Weight, including cargo and optional equipment. When towing, trailer tongue load or king pin weight is also part of cargo weight.

**GAW (Gross Axle Weight)** – is the total weight placed on each axle (front and rear) – including vehicle curb weight and all payload.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

**GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating)** – is the maximum allowable weight that can be carried by a single axle (front or rear). **These numbers are shown on the Safety Compliance Certification Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The total load on each axle must never exceed its GAWR.**

**Note:** For trailer towing information refer to *Trailer towing* found in this chapter or the *RV and Trailer Towing Guide* provided by your authorized dealer.

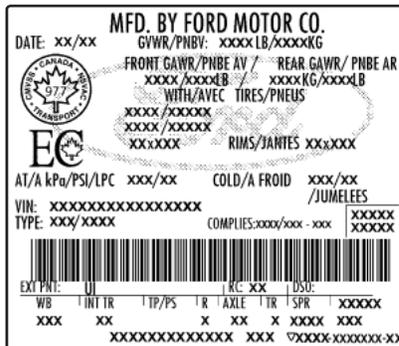
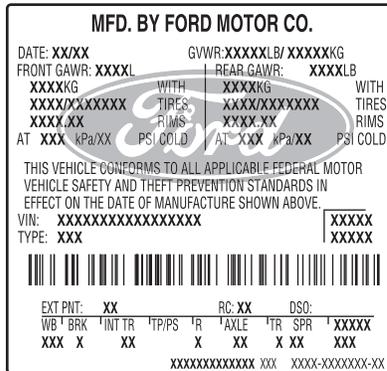


**GVW (Gross Vehicle Weight)** – is the Vehicle Curb Weight + cargo + passengers.

**GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating)** – is the maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle (including all options, equipment, passengers and cargo). **The GVWR is shown on the Safety Compliance Certification Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The GVW must never exceed the GVWR.**

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

- Example only:



**⚠ WARNING:** Exceeding the Safety Compliance Certification Label vehicle weight rating limits could result in substandard vehicle handling or performance, engine, transmission and/or structural damage, serious damage to the vehicle, loss of control and personal injury.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading



**GCW (Gross Combined Weight)** – is the weight of the loaded vehicle (GVW) plus the weight of the fully loaded trailer.

**GCWR (Gross Combined Weight Rating)** – is the maximum allowable weight of the vehicle and the loaded trailer – including all cargo and passengers – that the vehicle can handle without risking damage. (Important: The towing vehicle's braking system is rated for operation at GVWR, not at GCWR.) Separate functional brakes should be used for safe control of towed vehicles and for trailers where the GCW of the towing vehicle plus the trailer exceed the GVWR of the towing vehicle. **The GCW must never exceed the GCWR.**

**Maximum Loaded Trailer Weight** – is the highest possible weight of a fully loaded trailer the vehicle can tow. It assumes a vehicle with only mandatory options, no cargo (internal or external), a tongue load of 10–15% (conventional trailer) or king pin weight of 15–25% (fifth wheel trailer), and driver only (150 lb. [68 kg]). **Consult your authorized dealer (or the *RV and Trailer Towing Guide* provided by your authorized dealer) for more detailed information.**

**Tongue Load or Fifth Wheel King Pin Weight** – refers to the amount of the weight that a trailer pushes down on a trailer hitch.

**Examples:** For a 5,000 lb. (2,268 kg) conventional trailer, multiply 5,000 by 0.10 and 0.15 to obtain a proper tongue load range of 500 to 750 lb. (227 to 340 kg). For an 11,500 lb. (5,216 kg) fifth wheel trailer, multiply by 0.15 and 0.25 to obtain a proper king pin load range of 1,725 to 2,875 lb. (782 to 1,304 kg)



**WARNING:** Do not exceed the GVWR or the GAWR specified on the Safety Compliance Certification Label.



**WARNING:** Do not use replacement tires with lower load carrying capacities than the original tires because they may lower the vehicle's GVWR and GAWR limitations. Replacement tires with a higher limit than the original tires do not increase the GVWR and GAWR limitations.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading



**WARNING:** Exceeding any vehicle weight rating limitation could result in serious damage to the vehicle and/or personal injury.

### Steps for determining the correct load limit:

1. Locate the statement “The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lb.” on your vehicle’s placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lb.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the “XXX” amount equals 1,400 lb. and there will be five 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lb.  $(1400 - 750 (5 \times 150) = 650 \text{ lb.})$ . In metric units  $(635 - 340 (5 \times 68) = 295 \text{ kg.})$
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

The following gives you a few examples on how to calculate the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity:

- Another example for your vehicle with 1,400 lb. (635 kg) of cargo and luggage capacity. You decide to go golfing. Is there enough load capacity to carry you, 4 of your friends and all the golf bags? You and four friends average 220 lb. (99 kg) each and the golf bags weigh approximately 30 lb. (13.5 kg) each. The calculation would be:  $1400 - (5 \times 220) - (5 \times 30) = 1400 - 1100 - 150 = 150 \text{ lb.}$  Yes, you have enough load capacity in your vehicle to transport four friends and your golf bags. In metric units, the calculation would be:  $635 \text{ kg} - (5 \times 99 \text{ kg}) - (5 \times 13.5 \text{ kg}) = 635 - 495 - 67.5 = 72.5 \text{ kg.}$
- A final example for your vehicle with 1,400 lb. (635 kg) of cargo and luggage capacity. You and one of your friends decide to pick up cement from the local home improvement store to finish that patio you have been planning for the past 2 years. Measuring the inside of the vehicle with the rear seat folded down, you have room for 12-100 lb. (45 kg) bags of cement. Do you have enough load capacity

250

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

to transport the cement to your home? If you and your friend each weigh 220 lb. (99 kg), the calculation would be:  $1400 - (2 \times 220) - (12 \times 100) = 1400 - 440 - 1200 = -240$  lb. No, you do not have enough cargo capacity to carry that much weight. In metric units, the calculation would be:  $635 \text{ kg} - (2 \times 99 \text{ kg}) - (12 \times 45 \text{ kg}) = 635 - 198 - 540 = -103$  kg. You will need to reduce the load weight by at least 240 lb. (104 kg). If you remove 3-100 lb. (45 kg) cement bags, then the load calculation would be:

$1400 - (2 \times 220) - (9 \times 100) = 1400 - 440 - 900 = 60$  lb. Now you have the load capacity to transport the cement and your friend home. In metric units, the calculation would be:  $635 \text{ kg} - (2 \times 99 \text{ kg}) - (9 \times 45 \text{ kg}) = 635 - 198 - 405 = 32$  kg.

The above calculations also assume that the loads are positioned in your vehicle in a manner that does not overload the Front or the Rear Gross Axle Weight Rating specified for your vehicle on the Safety Compliance Certification Label found on the edge of the driver's door.

### Special loading instructions for owners of pickup trucks and utility-type vehicles



**WARNING:** For important information regarding safe operation of this type of vehicle, see the *Preparing to drive your vehicle* section in the *Driving* chapter of this Owner's Guide.



**WARNING:** Loaded vehicles may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, should be taken when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

Your vehicle can haul more cargo and people than most passenger cars. Depending upon the type and placement of the load, hauling cargo and people may raise the center of gravity of the vehicle.

### TRAILER TOWING

**Note:** The trailer towing charts in this section apply to vehicles equipped with gasoline engines; for vehicles equipped with diesel engines, refer to your *Power Stroke Direct Injection Turbo Diesel Owner's Guide Supplement*.

Your vehicle may tow a Conventional/Class IV trailer or fifth wheel trailer provided the maximum trailer weight is less than or equal to the maximum trailer weight listed for your engine and rear axle ratio on the following charts.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

To calculate your maximum trailer weight:

**For pickup trucks:** Take curb weight, hitch hardware and the driver's weight, then subtract them from the GCWR listed for your vehicle series, engine, transmission and drive axle ratio (*refer to the chart/table in the following text*). This calculation will give you the maximum trailer weight possible for your vehicle.

**For chassis cabs and pickup trucks with aftermarket equipment:** Weigh your vehicle at a certified scale and subtract this actual curb weight, hitch hardware, and the driver's weight from the GCWR listed for your vehicle series, engine, transmission and drive axle ratio (*refer to the chart/table in the following text*). This calculation will give you the maximum trailer weight possible for your vehicle.

The weight of all additional cargo and passengers must be subtracted from the maximum trailer weight calculated above.

Further trailer/hitch restrictions and limitations exist depending on the type of trailer and hitch used. These additional maximum trailer weight and tongue load limitations are listed in the chart/table that follows the listing of GCWRs.

Towing a trailer places an additional load on your vehicle's engine, transmission, axle, brakes, tires and suspension. Inspect these components carefully prior to and after any towing operation. Refer to *Transmission fluid temperature gauge* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for the transmission fluid temperature information.

**Note:** Do not exceed the GCWR listed for your vehicle on the following chart/table, or the GVWR, GAWR or tire ratings specified on the Tire Label or Safety Compliance Certification Label.



**WARNING:** Towing trailers beyond the maximum recommended trailer weight which exceeds the limit of the vehicle's GCWR, GVWR, GAWR or tire ratings could result in engine damage, transmission damage, structural damage, loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

Maximum GCWR - lb. (kg.)			
Engine	Rear axle ratio	Manual transmission	Automatic transmission
<b>F-250 Pick-up</b>			
5.4L	3.73	15000 (6804)	16000 (7257)
	4.10	17000 (7711)	18000 (8165)
6.8L	4.10	20000 (9072)	21000 (9525)
	4.30	22000 (9979)	22500 (10206)
<b>F-350 Single Rear Wheel (SRW) Pick-up</b>			
5.4L	3.73	15000 (6804)	16000 (7257)
	4.10	17000 (7711)	18000 (8165)
6.8L	4.10	20000 (9072)	21000 (9525)
	4.30	22000 (9979)	23000 (10433)
<b>F-350 Dual Rear Wheel (DRW) Pick-up</b>			
5.4L	4.10	—	18500 (8391)
6.8L	4.10	—	23000 (10433)
<b>F-350 Single Rear Wheel (SRW) Chassis Cab</b>			
5.4L	3.73	—	16000 (7257)
	4.10	—	18000 (8165)
6.8L	4.10	—	21000 (9525)
<b>F-350 Dual Rear Wheel (DRW) Chassis Cab</b>			
5.4L	3.73	15000 (6804)	16500 (7484)
	4.10	17500 (7938)	18500 (8391)
6.8L	4.10	20500 (9299)	21500 (9752)
	4.30	22500 (10206)	23000 (10433)
<b>F-450 Chassis Cab/F-550</b>			
6.8L	4.88/5.38	26000 (11793)	26000 (11793)

### Preparing to tow

Use the proper equipment for towing a trailer and make sure it is properly attached to your vehicle. Contact your authorized dealer or a reliable trailer dealer as soon as possible if you require assistance.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### Hitches



**WARNING:** ON PICK-UP TRUCKS, the trailer hitch provided on this vehicle enhances collision protection for the fuel system. DO NOT REMOVE!

Do not mount a ball hitch (sometimes referred to as a trailer ball hitch or trailer ball) to the bumper or use hitches that clamp onto the vehicle's bumper or attach to the axle. You must distribute the load in your trailer so that 10–15% for conventional towing or 15-25% fifth-wheel towing of the total weight of the trailer is on the tongue.

### Hitch rating

The standard hitch has two ratings depending on mode of operation:

- **Weight carrying** - requires a draw bar and hitch ball. The draw bar supports all the vertical tongue load of the trailer.
- **Weight distributing** - requires an aftermarket weight distributing system which includes draw bar, hitch ball, spring bars and snap-up brackets. The vertical tongue load of the trailer is distributed between the truck and the trailer by this system.

	Hitch Type	Maximum Gross Trailer Weight — lb. (kg)	Maximum Tongue Weight — lb. (kg)
6.8L DRW Pickup 2.5" ID without adapter (requires 2.5" drawbar)	Weight carrying	8000 (3629)	800 (363)
	Weight distributing	15000 (6804)	1500 (680)
6.8L DRW Pickup 2.5" ID with adapter (requires 2" drawbar)	Weight carrying	6000 (2721)	600 (272)
	Weight distributing	12500 (5670)	1250 (567)
All SRW Pickups and 5.4L DRW Pickups 2" receiver	Weight carrying	6000 (2721)	600 (272)
	Weight distributing	12500 (5670)	1250 (567)

## Tires, Wheels and Loading



**WARNING:** Towing trailers beyond the maximum tongue weight exceeds the limit of the towing system and could result in vehicle structural damage, loss of vehicle control and personal injury.

### Weight-distributing hitch

When hooking-up a trailer using a load-equalizing hitch, always use the following procedure:

1. Park the unloaded vehicle on a level surface. With the ignition on and all doors closed, allow the vehicle to stand for several minutes so that it can level.
2. Measure the height of a reference point on the front and rear bumpers at the center of the vehicle.
3. Attach the trailer to the vehicle and adjust the hitch equalizers so that the front bumper height is within  $\frac{1}{2}$ " (13 mm) of the reference point. After proper adjustment, the rear bumper should be no higher than in Step 2.



**WARNING:** Do not adjust a weight-distributing hitch to any position where the rear bumper of the vehicle is higher than it was before attaching the trailer. Doing so will defeat the function of the weight-distributing hitch, which may cause unpredictable handling, and could result in serious personal injury.

### Safety chains

Always connect the trailer's safety chains to the frame or hook retainers of the vehicle hitch. To connect the trailer's safety chains, cross the chains under the trailer tongue and allow slack for turning corners.

If you use a rental trailer, follow the instructions that the rental agency gives to you.

**Do not attach safety chains to the bumper.**

### Trailer brakes

Electric brakes and manual, automatic or surge-type trailer brakes are safe if installed properly and adjusted to the manufacturer's specifications. The trailer brakes must meet local and Federal regulations.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

**WARNING:** If you own a trailer with a hydraulic brake system, do not connect the trailer's hydraulic brake system directly to your vehicle's brake system. The vehicle's brake system is only designed to carry the appropriate amount of brake fluid for the vehicle alone. Connecting a hydraulic trailer braking system could adversely affect your vehicle's braking performance.

The braking system of the tow vehicle is rated for operation at the GVWR not GCWR.

### **Integrated trailer brake controller (if equipped)**

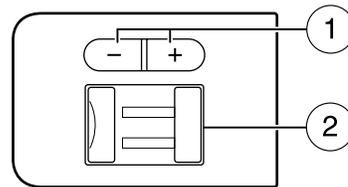
Your vehicle may be equipped with a fully integrated electronic trailer brake controller (TBC). When used properly, the TBC helps ensure smooth and effective trailer braking by powering the trailer's electric brakes with a proportional output based on the towing vehicle's brake pressure.

**WARNING:** The Ford TBC has only been verified to be compatible with trailers having electric-actuated drum brakes (one to four axles) and not hydraulic surge or electric-over-hydraulic types. It is the responsibility of the customer to ensure that the trailer brakes are adjusted appropriately, functioning normally and all electric connections are properly made.

The TBC user interface consists of the following:

1. **+/- (GAIN adjustment buttons):** Pressing these buttons will adjust the TBC's power output to the trailer brakes (in 0.5 increments). The GAIN setting can be increased to a maximum of 10.0 or decreased to a minimum of 0 (no trailer braking). Pressing and holding a button will raise or lower the setting continuously. The gain setting will display in the message center as follows: TBC GAIN = XX.X. The trailer brake controller (TBC) is designed to display three items of information in the instrument cluster message center. These are: gain setting, output bar graph, and trailer connectivity status. They will appear as follows in the message center.

- **TBC GAIN = XX.X NO TRAILER:** The instrument cluster message center will display the current gain setting during a given ignition



## Tires, Wheels and Loading

cycle and when adjusting the gain. This message is also displayed during manual activation without a trailer connected or when gain adjustments are made with no trailer connected.

- **TBC GAIN = XX.X OUTPUT = #####:** When the vehicle's brake pedal is pushed, or when the manual control is activated, bar indicators will illuminate in the instrument cluster message center to indicate the amount of power going to the trailer brakes relative to the brake pedal or manual control input. One bar indicates the least amount of output with six bars indicating maximum output.
  - **TRAILER CONNECTED:** This message is displayed when a correct trailer wiring connection (a trailer with electric trailer brakes) has been sensed during a given ignition cycle.
  - **TRAILER DISCONNECTED:** This message is displayed and accompanied by a single chime, when a trailer connection was determined and then a disconnection, either intentionally or unintentionally, has been sensed during a given ignition cycle. It is also displayed if a truck or trailer wiring fault occurs causing the trailer to appear disconnected. This message is also displayed during manual activation without a trailer connected.
2. **Manual control lever:** Slide the control lever to the left to activate power to the trailer's electric brakes independent of the tow vehicle's brakes (see the following *Procedure for adjusting GAIN* section for instructions on proper use of this feature). If the manual control is activated while the brake is also applied, the greater of the two inputs determines the power sent to the trailer brakes.
- **Stop Lamps:** Activating the TBC manual control lever will illuminate both the trailer brake lamps and the tow vehicle brake lamps except the center high-mount stop lamp (presuming proper trailer electrical connection). Pressing the vehicle brake pedal will also illuminate both trailer and vehicle brake lamps.

### Procedure for adjusting GAIN:

The GAIN setting is used to set the TBC for the specific towing condition and should be changed as towing conditions change. Changes to towing conditions include trailer load, vehicle load, road conditions and weather.

The GAIN should be set to provide the maximum trailer braking assistance while ensuring the trailer wheels do not lock when braking. Locked trailer wheels may lead to trailer instability.

**Note:** This should only be performed in a traffic free environment at speeds of approximately 20–25 mph (30–40 km/h).

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

1. Make sure the trailer brakes are in good working condition, functioning normally, and properly adjusted. See your trailer dealer if necessary.
2. Hook up the trailer and make the electrical connections according to the trailer manufacturer's instructions.
3. When a trailer with electric brakes is plugged in, the **TRAILER CONNECTED** message will display in the instrument cluster message center.
4. Use the GAIN adjustment (+/-) buttons to increase or decrease the GAIN setting to the desired starting point. A GAIN setting of 6.0 is a good starting point for heavier loads.
5. In a traffic-free environment, tow the trailer on a dry, level surface at a speed of 20–25 mph (30–40 km/h) and squeeze the manual control lever completely.
6. If the trailer wheels lock-up (indicated by squealing tires), reduce the GAIN setting; if the trailer wheels turn freely, increase the GAIN setting. Repeat Steps 5 and 6 until the GAIN setting is at a point just below trailer wheel lock-up. If towing a heavier trailer, trailer wheel lockup may not be attainable even with the maximum GAIN setting of 10.

### Explanation of instrument cluster warning messages:

The TBC interacts with the instrument cluster message center to display the following messages:

**TRAILER BRAKE MODULE FAULT:** This message is displayed and accompanied by a single chime, in response to faults sensed by the TBC. In the event this message is seen, please contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible for diagnosis and repair. The TBC may still function, but performance may be degraded.

**WIRING FAULT ON TRAILER:** This message is displayed when a *Short circuit on the electric brake output wire* has occurred. If the **WIRING FAULT ON TRAILER** message is displayed and accompanied by a single chime, with no trailer connected, the problem is with the vehicle wiring from the TBC to the 7-pin connector in the bumper. If the message is only displayed with a trailer connected, the problem is related to the trailer wiring; consult your trailer dealer for assistance. This can be a short to ground (i.e., chaffed wire) or a short to voltage (i.e., pulled pin on trailer emergency break-away battery) or trailer brakes drawing too much current.

**Note:** Your TBC can be diagnosed by your authorized dealer to determine exactly which trailer fault has occurred; however, if the fault is with the trailer this diagnosis is **not** covered under your Ford warranty.

258

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### Points to Remember:

- Remember to adjust gain setting before using the TBC for the first time.
- Readjust GAIN setting on the TBC (according to procedure above) whenever road, weather and trailer or vehicle loading conditions change from those that existed when the gain was initially set.
- The sliding lever on the TBC should be used only for manual activation of trailer brakes to assist with proper adjustment of the GAIN. Misuse, such as application during trailer sway, could cause instability of trailer and/or tow vehicle.
- Avoid towing in adverse weather conditions. The TBC does not provide anti-lock control of the trailer wheels. Trailer wheels can lock-up on slippery surfaces, resulting in reduced stability of trailer and tow vehicle.
- The TBC interacts with the brake system of the vehicle, including ABS, in order to reduce the likelihood of trailer wheel lockup. Therefore, if these systems are not functioning properly the TBC may not function at full performance.
- When the vehicle is turned off, the TBC Output is disabled and the display is shut down. Reactivation of the ignition from OFF to ON will awaken the TBC module.
- The TBC is only a factory or dealer installed item. Ford is not responsible for warranty or performance of the TBC due to misuse or customer installation.
- **Do not attempt removal of the TBC without consulting the *Workshop Manual*. Damage to the unit may result.**

### Trailer lamps

Trailer lamps are required on most towed vehicles. Make sure all running lights, brake lights, turn signals and hazard lights are working. Contact your authorized dealer or trailer rental agency for proper instructions and equipment for hooking-up trailer lamps.

### Driving while you tow

When towing a trailer:

- Do not drive faster than 70 mph (113 km/h) during the first 500 miles (800 km) of trailer towing and don't make full-throttle starts.
- Consult your local motor vehicle speed regulations for towing a trailer.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

- Turn off the speed control. The speed control may shut off automatically when you are towing on long, steep grades.
- To eliminate excessive transmission shifting, activate the Tow/Haul feature. This will also assist in transmission cooling. For additional information, refer to *Automatic transmission operation* in the *Driving* chapter.
- Anticipate stops and brake gradually.
- Do not exceed the GCWR rating or transmission damage may occur.
- Your vehicle may be equipped with a temporary or conventional spare tire. If the spare tire is different in size (diameter and/or width), tread type (All-Season or All-Terrain) or is from a different manufacturer other than the road tires on your vehicle, your spare tire is considered “temporary”. Consult information on the spare Tire Label or Safety Compliance Certification Label for limitations when using.

### **Servicing after towing**

If you tow a trailer for long distances, your vehicle will require more frequent service intervals. Refer to your *scheduled maintenance information* for more information.

### **Trailer towing safety tips**

#### **General**

- Ensure that the trailer, safety chains and 7-pin electrical connectors are securely fastened.
- Make sure the truck receiver, draw bar, and coupler are properly connected and adjusted.
- Check rear view and side mirrors for proper visibility especially when towing trailer wider than the truck.
- When turning make wide turns to allow trailer tires to properly clear any obstacles.
- When towing, operate the vehicle at lower speeds than you would when not towing a trailer. The likelihood of trailer sway is greater at higher speeds.
- Be prepared for trailer sway due to buffeting when larger vehicles pass in either direction.
- If you will be towing a trailer frequently in hot weather, hilly conditions, at GCWR, or any combination of these factors, consider refilling your rear axle with synthetic gear lubricant if not already so

260

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

equipped. Refer to *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter for the proper axle lubricant. Remember that regardless of the rear axle lubricant used, do not tow a trailer for the first 500 miles (800 km) of a new vehicle, and that the first 500 miles (800 km) of towing be done at no faster than 70 mph (113 km/h) with no full-throttle starts.

### **Loading**

- Trailer loads should be evenly distributed front to back and left to right.
- The load distribution within the trailer should be such that 10–15% of the trailer weight is on the hitch (15–25% for fifth-wheel or gooseneck towing).
- Never exceed truck, trailer, receiver, ball, tongue, tire or coupler loading recommendations.
- Keep the center-of-gravity low for best handling.

### **Braking**

- Anticipate the need to stop; allow much more distance and time to stop than normal.
- Do not apply the trailer brakes for extended periods of time as they can overheat and lose effectiveness.
- The trailer brakes must be inspected and serviced at intervals specified by the manufacturer. This includes the shoes, drum and trailer brake magnets.
- Electric brakes also require periodic adjustment to keep the shoes properly spaced. If the brakes get hot when driving or if they will not hold, chances are that they need adjustment.

### **Backing-up**

- Practice backing-up, particularly if you are a novice. Turn the steering wheel to the right to move the trailer's rear end to the right.
- Sharp steering movements may cause the trailer to jackknife or go out of control.

### **Tires**

- Select tires that meet the trailer loading requirements.
- All trailer tires should be of the same size, and construction.
- Always check tow vehicle and trailer tire pressure before towing.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### Launching or retrieving a boat

**Disconnect the wiring to the trailer before backing the trailer into the water. Reconnect the wiring to the trailer after the trailer is removed from the water.**

When backing down a ramp during boat launching or retrieval:

- do not allow the static water level to rise above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.
- do not allow waves to break higher than 6 inches (15 cm) above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.

Exceeding these limits may allow water to enter vehicle components:

- causing internal damage to the components.
- affecting driveability, emissions and reliability.

Replace the rear axle lubricant any time the axle has been submerged in water. Rear axle lubricant quantities are not to be checked or changed unless a leak is suspected or repair required.

### RECREATIONAL TOWING

Follow these guidelines if you have a need for recreational (RV) towing. An example of recreational towing would be towing your vehicle behind a motorhome. These guidelines are designed to ensure that your transmission is not damaged.

**Note:** Put your climate control system in recirculated air mode to prevent exhaust fumes from entering the vehicle. Refer to the *Climate Controls* chapter for more information.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

Transmission	Drivetrain configuration	Requirements for neutral towing
Manual	4x4 with manual-shift transfer case	Transmission in (N) Neutral; Transfer case in (N) (Neutral); Hublocks set to FREE <sup>1</sup>
Automatic		
Manual	4X2 or 4x4 with electronic-shift transfer case	Do not tow your vehicle with any wheels on the ground, as vehicle or transmission damage may occur. It is recommended to tow your vehicle with all four (4) wheels off the ground such as when using a car-hauling trailer. Otherwise, no recreational towing is permitted.
Automatic		

<sup>1</sup>Always make sure that both hub locks are set to the same position.

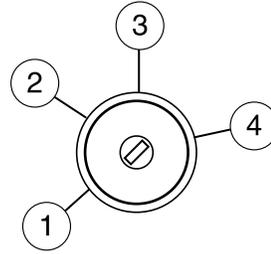
In case of a roadside emergency with a disabled vehicle, see *Wrecker towing* in the *Roadside Emergencies* chapter.

## Driving

### STARTING

#### Positions of the ignition

1. Off— shuts off the engine and all accessories/locks the steering wheel and allows key removal.
2. Accessory— allows the electrical accessories such as the radio to operate while the engine is not running. This position also unlocks the steering wheel.
3. On— all electrical circuits operational. Warning lights illuminated. Key position when driving.
4. Start— cranks the engine. Release the key as soon as the engine starts.



#### Preparing to start your vehicle

Engine starting is controlled by the powertrain control system.

This system meets all Canadian interference-causing equipment standard requirements regulating the impulse electrical field strength of radio noise.

When starting a fuel-injected engine, don't press the accelerator before or during starting. Only use the accelerator when you have difficulty starting the engine. For more information on starting the vehicle, refer to *Starting the engine* in this chapter.



**WARNING:** Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.



**WARNING:** Do not park, idle, or drive your vehicle in dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, which can start a fire.



**WARNING:** Do not start your vehicle in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes can be toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine. See *Guarding against exhaust fumes* in this chapter for more instructions.

## Driving



**WARNING:** If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your dealer inspect your vehicle immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

### **Important safety precautions**

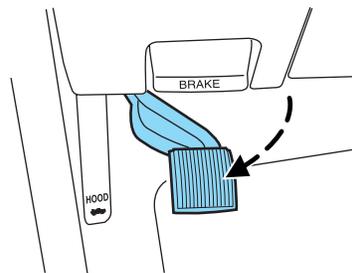
When the engine starts, the idle RPM runs faster to warm the engine. If the engine idle speed does not slow down automatically, have the vehicle checked. If your vehicle is operated in a heavy snow storm or blowing snow conditions, the engine air induction may become partially clogged with snow and/or ice. If this occurs, the engine may experience a significant reduction in power output. At the earliest opportunity, clear all the snow and/or ice away from the air induction inlet. The following starting instructions are for vehicles equipped with a gasoline engine; if your vehicle is equipped with a Diesel engine, refer to *Starting the engine* in your *6.0 and 6.4 Liter Power Stroke Direct Injection Turbo Diesel Owner's Guide Supplement*.

Before starting the vehicle:

1. Make sure all occupants buckle their safety belts. For more information on safety belts and their proper usage, refer to the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter.
2. Make sure the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.

If starting a vehicle with an automatic transmission:

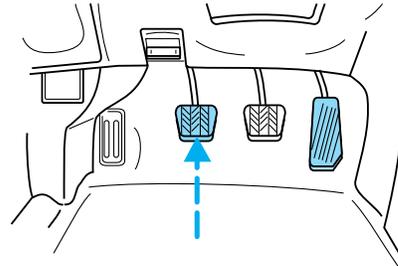
1. Make sure the parking brake is set.
2. Make sure the gearshift is in P (Park).



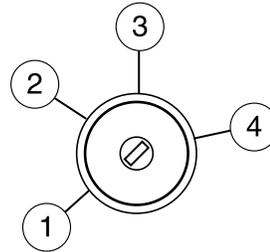
## Driving

If starting a vehicle with a manual transmission:

1. Make sure the parking brake is set.
2. Push the clutch pedal to the floor.



- Turn the key to 3 (on) without turning the key to 4 (start).



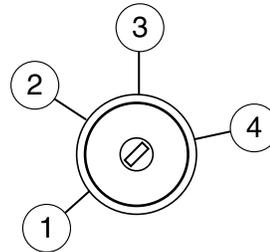
Some warning lights will briefly illuminate. See *Warning lights and chimes* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for more information regarding the warning lights.

### Starting the engine

1. Turn the key to 3 (on) without turning the key to 4 (start). If there is difficulty in turning the key, rotate the steering wheel until the key turns freely. This condition may occur when:

- the front wheels are turned.
- a front wheel is against the curb.

2. Turn the key to 4 (start), then release the key as soon as the engine begins cranking. Your vehicle has a computer assisted cranking system that assists in starting the engine. After releasing the key from the 4 (start) position, the engine may continue cranking for up to 10 seconds or until the vehicle starts.



266

## Driving

**Note:** Cranking may be stopped at any time by turning the key to the off position.

3. After idling for a few seconds, release the parking brake, apply the brake, shift into gear and drive.

**Note:** If the engine does not start on the first try, turn the key to the off position, wait 10 seconds and try Step 2 again. If the engine still fails to start, press the accelerator to the floor and try Step 2 again, keeping the accelerator on the floor until the engine begins to accelerate above cranking speeds; this will allow the engine to crank with the fuel shut off in case the engine is flooded with fuel.

### Guarding against exhaust fumes

Carbon monoxide is present in exhaust fumes. Take precautions to avoid its dangerous effects.



**WARNING:** If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your dealer inspect your vehicle immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

### Important ventilating information

If the engine is idling while the vehicle is stopped for a long period of time, open the windows at least 1 inch (2.5 cm) or adjust the heating or air conditioning to bring in fresh air.

### ENGINE BLOCK HEATER

An engine block heater warms the engine coolant which aids in starting and allows the heater/defroster system to respond quickly. If your vehicle is equipped with this system, your equipment includes a heater element which is installed in your engine block and a wire harness which allows the user to connect the system to a grounded 120 volt A/C electrical source. The block heater system is most effective when outdoor temperatures reach below 0°F (-18°C).



**WARNING:** Failure to follow engine block heater instructions could result in property damage or physical harm.



**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of electrical shock, do not use your heater with ungrounded electrical systems or two-pronged (cheater) adapters.

## Driving

Prior to using the engine block heater, follow these recommendations for proper and safe operation:

- For your safety, use an outdoor extension cord that is product certified by Underwriter's laboratory (UL) or Canadian Standards Association (CSA). Use only an extension cord that can be used outdoors, in cold temperatures, and is clearly marked "Suitable for Use with Outdoor Appliances." Never use an indoor extension cord outdoors; it could result in an electric shock or fire hazard.
- Use a 16 gauge outdoor extension cord, minimum.
- Use as short an extension cord as possible.
- Do not use multiple extension cords. Instead, use one extension cord which is long enough to reach from the engine block heater cord to the outlet without stretching.
- Make certain that the extension cord is in excellent condition (not patched or spliced). Store your extension cord indoors at temperatures above 32°F (0°C). Outdoor conditions can deteriorate extension cords over a period of time.
- To reduce the risk of electrical shock, do not use your heater with ungrounded electrical systems or two pronged (cheater) adapters. Also ensure that the block heater, especially the cord, is in good condition before use.
- Make sure that when in operation, the extension cord plug /engine block heater cord plug connection is free and clear of water in order to prevent possible shock or fire.
- Be sure that areas where the vehicle is parked are clean and clear of all combustibles such as petroleum products, dust, rags, paper and similar items.
- Be sure that the engine block heater, heater cord and extension cord are solidly connected. A poor connection can cause the cord to become very hot and may result in an electrical shock or fire. Be sure to check for heat anywhere in the electrical hookup once the system has been operating for approximately a half hour.
- Finally, have the engine block heater system checked during your fall tune-up to be sure it's in good working order.

## Driving

### How to Use the Engine Block Heater

Ensure the receptacle terminals are clean and dry prior to use. To clean them, use a dry cloth.

Depending on the type of factory installed equipment, your engine block heater system may consume anywhere between 400 watts or 1000 watts of power per hour. Your factory installed block heater system does not have a thermostat; however, maximum temperature is attained after approximately three hours of operation. Block heater operation longer than three hours will not improve system performance and will unnecessarily use additional electricity.

Make sure system is unplugged and properly stowed before driving the vehicle. While not in use, make sure the protective cover seals the prongs of the engine block heater cord plug.

### BRAKES

Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake linings may be worn-out and should be inspected by an authorized dealer. If the vehicle has continuous vibration or shudder in the steering wheel while braking, the vehicle should be inspected by an authorized dealer.

Refer to *Warning lights and chimes* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for information on the brake system warning light.



### Four-wheel anti-lock brake system (ABS) (if equipped)

Your vehicle may be equipped with an anti-lock braking system (ABS). This system helps you maintain steering control during emergency stops by keeping the brakes from locking. The ABS operates by detecting the onset of wheel lockup during brake application and compensates for this tendency. Noise from the ABS pump motor and brake pedal pulsation may be observed during ABS braking; any pulsation or mechanical noise you may feel or hear is normal. In addition, the ABS performs a self-check after you start the engine and begin to drive away. A brief mechanical noise may be heard during this test. This is normal.

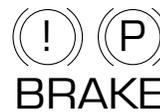
## Driving

### **ABS warning lamp**

The ABS lamp in the instrument cluster momentarily illuminates when the ignition is turned on. If the light does not illuminate during start up, remains on or flashes, the ABS may be disabled and may need to be serviced.



Even when the ABS is disabled, normal braking is still effective. If your BRAKE warning lamp illuminates with the parking brake released, have your brake system serviced immediately by an authorized dealer.

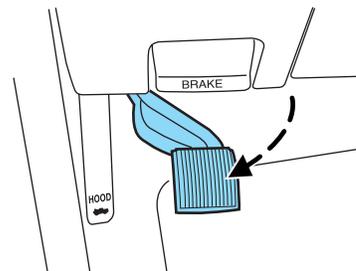


### **Using ABS**

When hard braking is required, apply continuous force on the brake pedal; do not pump the brake pedal since this will reduce the effectiveness of the ABS and will increase your vehicle's stopping distance. The ABS will be activated immediately, allowing you to retain steering control during hard braking and on slippery surfaces. However, the ABS does not decrease stopping distance.

### **Parking brake**

To set the parking brake, press the parking brake pedal down until the pedal stops.

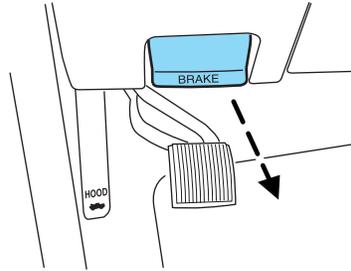


The BRAKE warning lamp in the instrument cluster illuminates and remains illuminated until the parking brake is released.



## Driving

Pull the release lever to release the parking brake. To prevent the pedal from releasing too quickly, place your left foot on the service brake pedal, then slowly pull the release lever until the pedal slowly releases. Make sure that the pedal is fully released. You may want to pull the release lever again to make sure the parking brake is fully released.



**WARNING:** Always set the parking brake fully and make sure that the gearshift is securely latched in P (Park) (automatic transmission) or in 1 (First) (manual transmission).

**Note:** If your vehicle is equipped with a manual transmission, the engine may be required to run while power accessories operate and the parking brake is set. It is recommended that wheel chocks be used during this operation.

If you're parking your vehicle on a grade or with a trailer, press and hold the brake pedal down, then set the parking brake. There may be a little vehicle movement as the parking brake sets to hold the vehicle's weight. This is normal and should be no reason for concern. If needed, press and hold the service brake pedal down, then try reapplying the parking brake. Chock the wheels if required. If the parking brake cannot hold the weight of the vehicle, the parking brake may need to be serviced or the vehicle may be overloaded.

### TRACTION CONTROL (IF EQUIPPED)

This system helps you maintain the stability and steerability of your vehicle, especially on slippery road surfaces such as snow- or ice-covered roads and gravel roads. The system will allow your vehicle to make better use of available traction in these conditions.

During traction control operation, the traction control light will illuminate and the engine will not "rev-up" when you press further on the accelerator. This is normal system behavior and should be no reason for concern. Also, if traction control is on when the vehicle is put into four-wheel drive mode (if equipped), the traction control system will

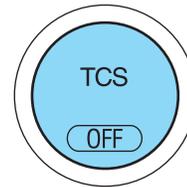


## Driving

be automatically disabled. Traction control operation will resume when the vehicle is placed back into two-wheel drive mode.

**!** **WARNING:** Aggressive driving in any road conditions can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of severe personal injury or property damage. The occurrence of a traction control event is an indication that at least some of the tires have exceeded their ability to grip the road; this may lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. If you experience a severe road event, SLOW DOWN.

The traction control switch, located on the instrument panel to the left of the climate control system, has an indicator light that illuminates when the system is off. The traction control system will automatically turn on every time the ignition is turned off and on. The traction control system should normally be left on.



If you should become stuck in snow or ice or on a very slippery road surface, try switching the traction control system off. This may allow excess wheel spin to “dig” the vehicle out and enable a successful “rocking” maneuver.

If a system fault is detected, the traction control active light will illuminate, the traction control button will not turn the system on or off and your vehicle should be serviced by an authorized dealer.

## STEERING

To help prevent damage to the power steering system:

- Never hold the steering wheel at its furthest turning points (until it stops) for more than three to five seconds when the engine is running.
- Do not operate the vehicle with a low power steering pump fluid level (below the MIN mark on the reservoir).
- Some noise is normal during operation. If excessive, check for low power steering pump fluid level before seeking service by your dealer.
- Heavy or uneven efforts may be caused by low power steering fluid. Check for low power steering pump fluid level before seeking service by your dealer.
- Do not fill the power steering pump reservoir above the MAX mark on the reservoir, as this may result in leaks from the reservoir.

272

## Driving

If the power steering system breaks down (or if the engine is turned off), you can steer the vehicle manually, but it takes more effort.

If the steering wanders or pulls, check for:

- an improperly inflated tire
- uneven tire wear
- loose or worn suspension components
- loose or worn steering components
- improper steering alignment

If any steering components are serviced or replaced, install new fasteners (many are coated with thread adhesive or have prevailing torque features which may not be re-used). Never re-use a bolt or nut. Torque fasteners to specifications in *Workshop Manual*.

A high crown in the road or high crosswinds may also make the steering seem to wander/pull.

### LIMITED-SLIP AXLE (IF EQUIPPED)

This axle provides added traction on slippery surfaces, particularly when one wheel is on a poor traction surface. Under normal conditions, the Limited-slip axle functions like a standard rear axle. The axle may exhibit a slight noise or vibration in tight turns with low vehicle speed. This is normal behavior and indicates the axle is working.

### PREPARING TO DRIVE



**WARNING:** Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.



**WARNING:** In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt.

Utility vehicles and trucks have larger tires and increased ground clearance, giving the vehicle a higher center of gravity than a passenger car.



**WARNING:** Vehicles with a higher center of gravity such as utility vehicles and trucks handle differently than vehicles with a lower center of gravity. Utility vehicles and trucks are **not** designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions. Avoid sharp turns, excessive speed or abrupt maneuvers in these vehicles. Failure to drive cautiously could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

## Driving

**⚠ WARNING:** Loaded vehicles, with a higher center of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Do not overload your vehicle and use extra precautions, such as driving at slower speeds, avoiding abrupt steering changes and allowing for increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle. Over-loading or loading the vehicle improperly can deteriorate handling capability and contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.

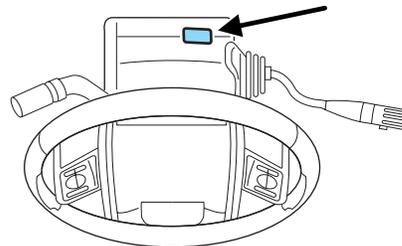
### BRAKE-SHIFT INTERLOCK

This vehicle is equipped with a brake-shift interlock feature that prevents the gearshift lever from being moved from P (Park) when the ignition is in the 3 (on) position and the brake pedal is not pressed.

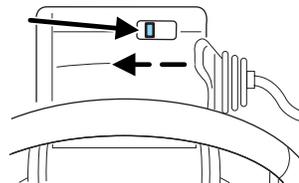
If you cannot move the gearshift lever out of P (Park) with ignition in the on position and the brake pedal pressed, it is possible that a fuse has blown or the vehicle's brakelamps are not operating properly. Refer to *Fuses and relays* in the *Roadside Emergencies* chapter.

If the fuse is not blown and the brakelamps are working properly, the following procedure will allow you to move the gearshift lever from P (Park):

1. Apply the parking brake. Turn the ignition key to 1 (off), then remove the key. Locate the access cover plate for the brake-shift interlock override. It is located on top of the steering column shroud.



2. Apply the brake. Use a tool (or a small screwdriver) to pry out the access cover. Insert the tool into the access hole and slide the white override button towards the left. Move the gear shift lever into N (Neutral) while holding the white override disc towards the left.



3. Start the vehicle.

274

## Driving



**WARNING:** Do not drive your vehicle until you verify that the brakelamps are working.



**WARNING:** Always set the parking brake fully and make sure the gearshift is latched in P (Park). Turn the ignition to the off position and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.



**WARNING:** If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. See your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

### AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION OPERATION (IF EQUIPPED)

#### Understanding the shift positions of the 5-speed automatic transmission (if equipped)

P R N D 3 2 1

This vehicle is equipped with an adaptive transmission shift strategy. Adaptive transmission shift strategy offers the optimal transmission operation and shift quality. When the vehicle's battery has been disconnected for any type of service or repair, the transmission will need to relearn the normal shift strategy parameters, much like having to reset your radio stations when your vehicle battery has been disconnected. The adaptive transmission shift strategy allows the transmission to relearn these operating parameters. This learning process could take several transmission upshifts and downshifts; during this learning process, slightly firmer shifts may occur. After this learning process, normal shift feel and shift scheduling will resume.

#### **P (Park)**

This position locks the transmission and prevents the rear wheels from turning.

To put your vehicle in gear:

- Start the engine
- Press the brake pedal
- Move the gearshift lever into the desired gear

## Driving

To put your vehicle in P (Park):

- Come to a complete stop
- Move the gearshift lever and securely latch it in P (Park)



**WARNING:** Always set the parking brake fully and make sure the gearshift is latched in P (Park). Turn the ignition to the off position and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

### R (Reverse)

With the gearshift lever in R (Reverse), the vehicle will move backward. Always come to a complete stop before shifting into and out of R (Reverse).

### N (Neutral)

With the gearshift lever in N (Neutral), the vehicle can be started and is free to roll. Hold the brake pedal down while in this position.

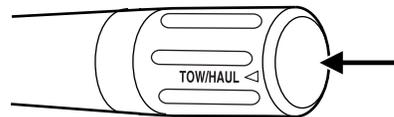
### D (Overdrive) with Tow/Haul Off

D (Overdrive) with tow/haul off is the normal driving position for the best fuel economy. The overdrive function allows automatic upshifts and downshifts through gears one through five.

### D (Overdrive) with Tow/Haul On

The tow/haul feature improves transmission operation when towing a trailer or a heavy load. All transmission gear ranges are available when using tow/haul.

To activate tow/haul, press the button on the end of the gearshift lever.



The TOW HAUL indicator light will illuminate in the instrument cluster.

**TOW  
HAUL**

Tow/haul delays upshifts to reduce frequency of transmission shifting. Tow/haul also provides engine braking in all forward gears when the transmission is in the D (Overdrive) position; this engine braking will slow the vehicle and assist the driver in controlling the vehicle when descending a grade. Depending on driving conditions and load conditions, the transmission may downshift, slow the vehicle and control

276

## Driving

the vehicle speed when descending a hill, without the accelerator pedal being pressed. The amount of downshift braking provided will vary based upon the amount the brake pedal is depressed.

To deactivate the tow/haul feature and return to normal driving mode, press the button on the end of the gearshift lever. The TOW HAUL light will no longer be illuminated.

When you shut-off and restart the engine, the transmission will automatically return to normal D (Overdrive) mode (Tow/Haul OFF).



**WARNING:** Do not use the tow/haul feature when driving in icy or slippery conditions as the increased engine braking can cause the rear wheels to slide and the vehicle to swing around with the possible loss of vehicle control.

### 3 (Third)

Transmission starts and operates in third gear only.

Used for improved traction on slippery roads. Selecting 3 (Third) provides engine braking.

### 2 (Second)

Use 2 (Second) to start-up on slippery roads or to provide additional engine braking on downgrades.

### 1 (First)

- Provides maximum engine braking.
- Allows upshifts by moving gearshift lever.
- The transmission will not downshift into 1 (First) at high speeds; it will downshift to a lower gear and then shift into 1 (First) when the vehicle reaches slower speeds.

### Forced downshifts

- Allowed in D (Overdrive) or D (Drive).
- Press the accelerator to the floor.
- Allows transmission to select an appropriate gear.

### If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow

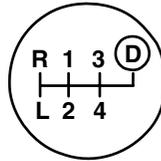
If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow, it may be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

**Do not rock the vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature or damage to the transmission may occur.**

## Driving

**Do not rock the vehicle for more than a minute or damage to the transmission and tires may occur, or the engine may overheat.**

### MANUAL TRANSMISSION OPERATION (IF EQUIPPED)



#### Using the clutch

Manual transmission vehicles have a starter interlock that prevents cranking the engine unless the clutch pedal is fully pressed.

To start the vehicle:

1. Make sure the parking brake is fully set.
2. Press the clutch pedal to the floor, then put the gearshift lever in the neutral position.
3. Start the engine.
4. Press the brake pedal and move the gearshift lever to the desired gear; 1 (First) or R (Reverse).
5. Release the parking brake, then slowly release the clutch pedal while slowly pressing on the accelerator.

During each shift, the clutch pedal must be fully pressed to the floor. Make sure the floor mat is properly positioned so it doesn't interfere with the full extension of the clutch pedal.

**Failure to fully press the clutch pedal to the floor may cause increased shift efforts, prematurely wear transmission components or damage the transmission.**

**Do not drive with your foot resting on the clutch pedal or use the clutch pedal to hold your vehicle at a standstill while waiting on a hill. These actions will severely reduce the life of the clutch and could nullify a clutch warranty claim.**

#### Recommended shift speeds

Do not overspeed the engine when going downhill or steep grades. If equipped, use the tachometer and do not allow engine speed to exceed

278

## Driving

the redline area. Operating the engine beyond the recommended speeds can cause severe engine damage.

Shift according to the following shift speed charts:

<b>Upshifts when accelerating (recommended for best fuel economy)</b>		
<b>6-speed transmission</b>		
Shift from:	Transfer case position <sup>1</sup> (if equipped)	
	2H or 4H	4L
LO-1	5 mph (8 km/h)	2 mph (3 km/h)
1-2	14 mph (23 km/h)	6 mph (10 km/h)
2-3	22 mph (35 km/h)	9 mph (14 km/h)
3-4	30 mph (48 km/h)	12 mph (19 km/h)
4 - <b>D</b> (Overdrive)	40 mph (64 km/h)	15 mph (24 km/h)
<b>Maximum downshift speeds<sup>1</sup></b>		
<b>6-speed transmission</b>		
Shift from:	Transfer case position (if equipped) <sup>2</sup>	
	2H or 4H	4L
<b>D</b> (Overdrive) - 4	45 mph (72 km/h)	16 mph (26 km/h)
4-3	35 mph (56 km/h)	12 mph (19 km/h)
3-2	20 mph (32 km/h)	8 mph (13 km/h)
2-1	5 mph (8 km/h)	2 mph (3 km/h)
1-LO	Only shift to LO when at a stop.	
<sup>1</sup> Use 2H or 4H for 4WD equipped vehicles.		
<sup>2</sup> Downshift at lower speeds when driving on slippery surfaces.		

### Reverse

1. Make sure that your vehicle is at a complete stop before you shift into R (Reverse). Failure to do so may damage the transmission.
2. Move the gearshift lever into the neutral position and wait at least three seconds before shifting into R (Reverse).

**Note:** The gearshift lever can only be moved into R (Reverse) by moving it from left of 3 (Third) and 4 (Fourth) before shifting into R (Reverse). This is a lockout feature that protects the transmission from accidentally being shifted into R (Reverse) from D (Overdrive).

## Driving

### Parking your vehicle

1. Apply the brake and shift into the neutral position.
2. Fully apply the parking brake, then shift into 1 (First).
3. Turn the ignition off.

 **WARNING:** Do not park your vehicle in Neutral, it may move unexpectedly and injure someone. Use 1 (First) gear and set the parking brake fully.

### REVERSE SENSING SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

The reverse sensing system (RSS) sounds a tone to warn the driver of obstacles near the rear bumper when the R (Reverse) is selected and the vehicle is moving at speeds less than 3 mph (5 km/h). The system is not effective at speeds above 3 mph (5 km/h) and may not detect certain angular or moving objects.

 **WARNING:** To help avoid personal injury, please read and understand the limitations of the reverse sensing system as contained in this section. Reverse sensing is only an aid for some (generally large and fixed) objects when moving in reverse on a flat surface at “parking speeds”. Inclement weather may also affect the function of the RSS; this may include reduced performance or a false activation.

 **WARNING:** To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse and when using the RSS.

 **WARNING:** This system is not designed to prevent contact with small or moving objects. The system is designed to provide a warning to assist the driver in detecting large stationary objects to avoid damaging the vehicle. The system may not detect smaller objects, particularly those close to the ground.

 **WARNING:** Certain add-on devices such as large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks and any device that may block the normal detection zone of the RSS system may create false beeps.

## Driving

The RSS detects obstacles up to 6 feet (2 meters) from the rear bumper with a decreased coverage area at the outer corners of the bumper, (refer to the figures for approximate zone coverage areas). As you move closer to the obstacle, the rate of the tone increases. When the obstacle is less than 10 inches (25.0 cm) away, the tone will sound continuously. If the RSS detects a stationary or receding object further than 10 inches (25.0 cm) from the side of the vehicle, the tone will sound for only three seconds. Once the system detects an object approaching, the tone will sound again.

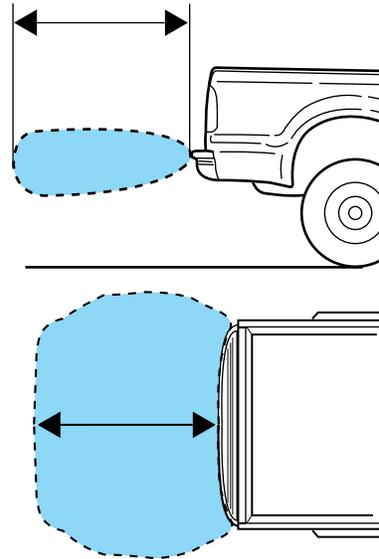
While receiving a warning the radio volume may be reduced to a predetermined level. After the warning goes away, the radio will return to the previous volume.

The RSS may have reduced performance or an increased chance of false detection if the tailgate is not locked and in the upright position. If the tailgate is down, the RSS tone may be heard intermittently or continuously. The tone may also be heard if items in the truck bed protrude rearward outside the bed.

The RSS automatically turns on when the gearshift lever is placed in R (Reverse) and the ignition is on. A control in the message center allows the driver to disable the system, refer to *Message center* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for more information.

**Keep the RSS sensors (located on the rear bumper/fascia) free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt (do not clean the sensors with sharp objects). If the sensors are covered, it will affect the accuracy of the RSS.**

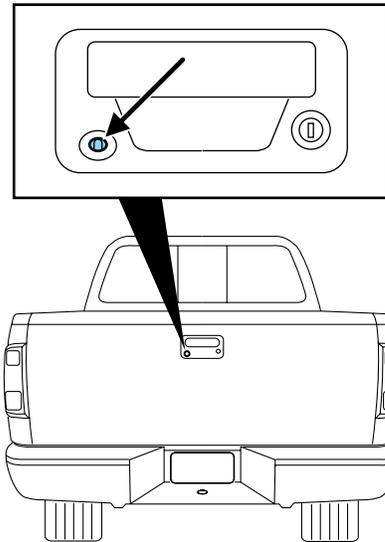
**If your vehicle sustains damage to the rear bumper/fascia, leaving it misaligned or bent, the sensing zone may be altered causing inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alarms.**



## Driving

### REARVIEW CAMERA SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

The rearview camera system, located on the tailgate, provides a video image, which appears in the rearview mirror or on the navigation screen (if equipped), of the area behind the vehicle. It adds assistance to the driver while reversing or reverse parking the vehicle.



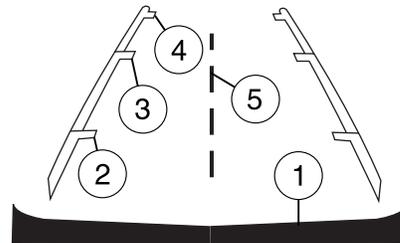
To use the camera system, place the transmission in R (Reverse); an image will display on the left portion of the rearview mirror or on the navigation screen (if equipped). The area displayed on the screen may vary according to the vehicle orientation and/or road condition.

- (1) Rear bumper
- (2) Red zone
- (3) Yellow zone
- (4) Green zone
- (5) Centerline of vehicle

Always use caution while backing.

Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are further away. Objects are getting closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones.

Use the side mirrors and rearview mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of the vehicle.



## Driving

When shifting out of R (Reverse) and into any other gear, the image will remain on for a few seconds before it shuts off to assist in parking or trailer hookup.

If equipped with the navigation system, after shifting out of R (Reverse) and into any gear other than P (Park), the image will remain until the vehicle speed reaches 5 mph (8 km/h), only if the rear camera delay feature is on, or until any navigation radio button is pressed.

**Note:** The default setting for the rear camera delay is off. Press the “Settings” button found on the navigation screen (if equipped) to set the rear camera delay feature to on or off.

When towing, the camera system will only see what is being towed behind the vehicle; this might not provide adequate coverage as it usually provides in normal operation and some objects might not be seen.

The camera lens for the camera is located on the tailgate, near the tailgate handle. Keep the lens clean so the video image remains clear and undistorted. Clean the lens with a soft, lint-free cloth and non-abrasive cleaner.

**Note:** If the camera system image is not clear or seems distorted, it may be covered with water droplets, snow, mud or any other substance. If this occurs, clean the camera lens before using the camera system.



**WARNING:** The camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the rearview mirror and the side mirrors for maximum coverage.



**WARNING:** Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.



**WARNING:** Backup as slow as possible since higher speeds might limit your reaction time to stop the vehicle.



**WARNING:** Do not use the camera system with the tailgate open.

If the back end of the vehicle is hit or damaged, then check with your authorized dealer to have your rear video system checked for proper coverage and operation.

## Driving

### Night time and dark area use

At night time or in dark areas, the camera system relies on the reverse lamp lighting to produce an image. Therefore it is necessary that both reverse lamps are operating in order to get a clear image in the dark. If either of the lamps are not operating, stop using the camera system, at least in the dark, until the lamp(s) are replaced and functioning.

### Servicing

- If the image comes on while the vehicle is not in R (Reverse), have the system inspected by your authorized dealer.
- If the image is not clear, then check if there is anything covering the lens such as dirt, mud, ice, snow, etc. If the image is still not clear after cleaning, have your system inspected by your authorized dealer.

### FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE (4WD) OPERATION (IF EQUIPPED)



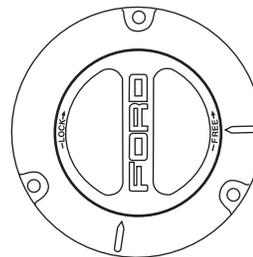
**WARNING:** For important information regarding safe operation of this type of vehicle, see **Preparing to drive your vehicle** in this chapter.

When four-wheel drive (4WD) is engaged, power is supplied to all four wheels through a transfer case. 4WD can be selected when additional driving power is desired.

4WD operation is not recommended on dry pavement. Doing so could result in difficult disengagement of the transfer case, increased tire wear and decreased fuel economy.

### Manual Shift On Stop (MSOS) 4x4 system (if equipped)

The 4WD system is engaged or disengaged by rotating the control for both front wheel hub locks from the FREE or LOCK position, then manually engaging or disengaging the transfer case with the floor-mounted shifter. For increased fuel economy in 2WD, rotate both hub locks to the FREE position.



## Driving

- **For proper operation, make sure that each hub is fully engaged and that both hub locks are set to the same position (both set to LOCK or both set to FREE). To engage LOCK, turn the hub locks completely clockwise; to disengage the hubs (FREE), turn the hub locks completely counterclockwise.**
- **The vehicle should not be driven in 4X4 High or 4X4 Low modes with the hub locks set to FREE as this condition may damage driveline system components.**
- Some vehicles may be equipped with wheel ornaments that cover the 4x4 manual hub lock. These ornaments must be removed to access the manual hub locks.

### **Electronic Shift On the Fly (ESOF) 4x4 system (if equipped)**

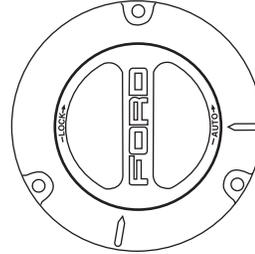
**If equipped with the electronic shift 4WD System, and the instrument panel control is moved to 4X4 LOW while the vehicle is moving above 5 mph (8 km/h), the system will not engage and no damage will occur to the 4WD system. Before 4X4 LOW can be engaged, the vehicle speed must be below 5 mph (8 km/h) with the transmission in N (Neutral). If your vehicle is equipped with a manual transmission, the clutch pedal also must be depressed. The 4x4 Low indicator will flash continuously until these actions are performed by the user. This vehicle is equipped with a non-synchronous low range gearset which will not allow the transfer case to shift into 4X4 LOW if vehicle speed is above 5 mph (8 km/h). It is recommended that a shift to 4X4 LOW is performed while the vehicle is rolling at a speed below 5 mph (8 km/h).**

The 4WD system:

- provides 4x4 High engagement and disengagement while the vehicle is moving.
- is operated by a rotary control located on the instrument panel that allows you select 2WD, 4x4 High or 4x4 Low operation.
- uses auto-manual hub locks that can be engaged and disengaged automatically based on the 4x4 mode selected.

## Driving

- auto-manual hub locks can be manually overridden by rotating the hub lock control from AUTO to LOCK if desired.
- **automatic operation of the hub locks is recommended**, and will increase fuel economy
- **For proper operation, make sure that each hub is fully engaged and that both hub locks are set to the same position (both set to LOCK or both set to AUTO). To engage LOCK, turn the hub locks completely clockwise; to engage AUTO, turn the hub locks completely counterclockwise.**



### 4WD system indicator lights

The 4WD system indicator lights illuminate only under the following conditions. If these lights illuminate when driving in 2WD, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

- **4x4 HIGH** - momentarily illuminates after the engine is started. Illuminates when 4H (4x4 High) is engaged. Flashes when shifting into or out of 4H (4x4 high) (ESOF systems only). **4x4 HIGH**
- **4x4 LOW** - momentarily illuminates when the ignition is turned to the ON position. Illuminates when 4L (4x4 Low) is engaged. Flashes when shifting into or out of 4L (4x4 Low) or if the range shift conditions are not met (ESOF systems only). **4x4 LOW**

### Using a Manual Shift On Stop (MSOS) 4x4 system (if equipped)

**Note: High shift efforts may be encountered when attempting to shift into and out of 4x4 modes. It is recommended to allow the vehicle to roll at a speed below 5 mph (8 km/h) when shifting.**

**Note:** Some noise may be heard as the 4x4 system shifts or engages. This is normal. In order to reduce engagement noise, it is recommended that all shifts be performed at speeds below 5 mph (8 km/h).

**2H (2WD)** – For general on-road driving. Sends power to the rear wheels only.

## Driving

**4H (4x4 High)** – For winter and off-road conditions. Sends power to front and rear wheels. **This mode is not intended for use on dry pavement.**

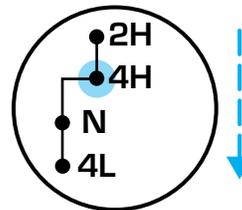
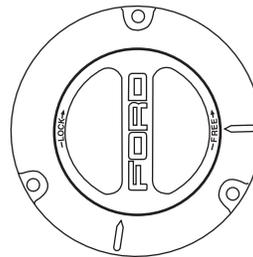
**N (Neutral)** – Only used when towing the vehicle.

**4L (4x4 Low)** – For low-speed off-road applications that require extra power such as steep grades, deep sand or pulling a boat out of the water. Sends power to front and rear wheels. **This mode is not intended for use on dry pavement.**

### Shifting from 2H (2WD) to 4H (4x4 High)

Engage the locking hubs by rotating the hub lock control from FREE to LOCK, then move the transfer case lever from 2H (2WD) to 4H (4x4 High) at a stop or a vehicle speed below 5 mph (8 km/h).

- **For proper operation, make sure that both indicator arrows on the hub are aligned, and that both hubs are set to LOCK.**
- **Do not shift into 4H (4x4 High) with the rear wheels slipping.**

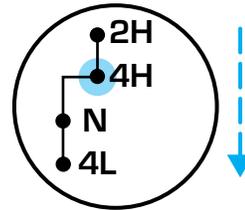
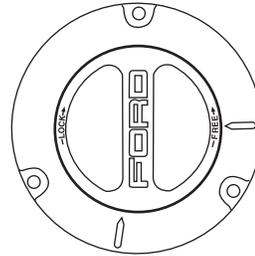


## Driving

### Shifting from 2H (2WD) to 4H (4x4 High)

Engage the locking hubs by rotating the hub lock control from FREE to LOCK, then move the transfer case lever from 2H (2WD) to 4H (4x4 High) at a stop or a vehicle speed below 3 mph (5 km/h).

- **For proper operation, make sure that both indicator arrows on the hub are aligned, and that both hubs are set to LOCK.**
- **Do not shift into 4H (4x4 High) with the rear wheels slipping.**

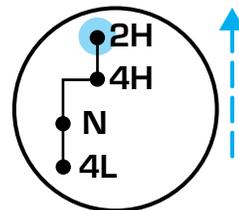


### Shifting from 4H (4x4 High) to 2H (2WD)

Move the transfer case lever to 2H (2WD) at a stop or a vehicle speed below 5 mph (8 km/h).

With the vehicle at complete stop, disengage the locking hubs (optional) by rotating the hub lock control from LOCK to FREE.

- **For proper operation, make sure that both indicator arrows on the hub are aligned, and that both hubs are set to FREE**



### Shifting from 4H (4x4 High) to 4L (4x4 Low)

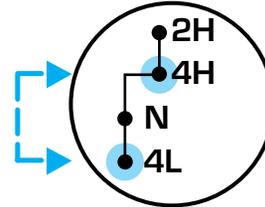
1. Bring the vehicle to a stop or a speed below 5 mph (8 km/h).
2. Place the gearshift lever in N (Neutral). If the vehicle is equipped with a manual transmission, also depress the clutch pedal.

## Driving

3. Move the transfer case shift lever through N (Neutral) directly to 4L (4x4 Low).

4. If the shift lever does not, or only partially moves to the 4L (4x4 Low) position, perform a shift with the transmission in N (Neutral) (or clutch pedal depressed) and the

vehicle rolling at a speed below 5 mph (8 km/h). This will ensure the transfer case is fully engaged into 4L (4x4 Low).



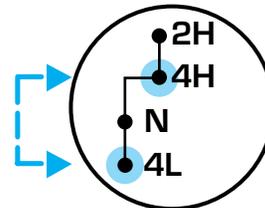
### **Shifting from 4L (4x4 Low) to 4H (4x4 High) or 2H (2WD)**

1. Bring the vehicle to a stop or a speed below 5 mph (8 km/h).

2. Place the gearshift lever in N (Neutral). If the vehicle is equipped with a manual transmission, also depress the clutch pedal.

3. Move the transfer case shift lever through N (Neutral) directly to 4H (4x4 High) or 2H (2WD).

4. If the transfer case **will not** engage into 4H (4x4 High) or 2H (2WD), perform a shift with the transmission in N (Neutral) (or clutch pedal depressed) and the vehicle rolling at a speed below 5 mph (8 km/h).

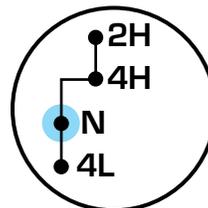


5. If shifting to 2H (2WD) with the vehicle at a complete stop, disengage the locking hubs (optional) by rotating the hub lock control from LOCK to FREE.

### **Using the N (Neutral) position**

**The transfer case neutral position overrides the transmission and puts the vehicle in neutral regardless of transmission gearshift lever position. The vehicle can move forward or backwards.**

This position should only be used when towing the vehicle.



## Driving



**WARNING:** Do not leave the vehicle unattended with the transfer case in the N (Neutral) position. Always set the parking brake fully and turn off the ignition when leaving the vehicle.

### Using the Electronic Shift On the Fly (ESOF) 4x4 system (if equipped)

#### *Positions of the electronic shift system*

**Note:** Some noise may be heard as the 4WD system shifts or engages. This is normal.

**2WD** – For general on-road driving. Sends power to the rear wheels only.

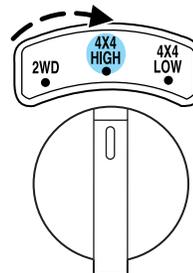
**4x4 HIGH** – For winter and off-road conditions. Sends power to front and rear wheels. **This mode is not intended for use on dry pavement.**

**4x4 LOW** – For low-speed off-road applications that require extra power such as steep grades, deep sand or pulling a boat out of the water. Sends power to front and rear wheels. **This mode is not intended for use on dry pavement.**

#### *Shifting from 2WD to 4x4 HIGH*

Rotate the 4x4 control to the 4x4 HIGH position at speeds up to 55 mph (88 km/h).

- **The electronic shift 4x4 system is designed to engage 4x4 HIGH when the vehicle is moving. If shifted to 4x4 HIGH while at complete stop, 4x4 may not engage and the 4x4 indicator may flash continuously until the vehicle is allowed to move at a speed above 1 mph (1.6 km/h).**
- **Do not shift into 4x4 HIGH with the rear wheels slipping.**

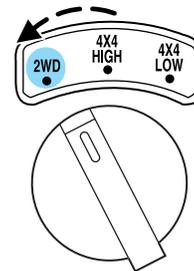


## Driving

### Shifting from 4x4 HIGH to 2WD

Rotate the 4x4 control to 2WD at any forward speed. Disengagement of the transfer case and front hubs may be delayed due to torque bind which is caused by driving on dry hard surfaces or performing tight turns while using the 4x4 system.

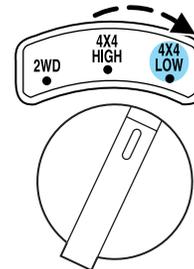
- You **do not** need to operate the vehicle in R (Reverse) to disengage your front hubs, but it will eliminate any torque bind and allow the system to immediately disengage.



### Shifting from 4x4 HIGH to 4x4 LOW

**If the range shift requirements are not met, the 4x4 Low indicator will flash continuously.**

- Bring the vehicle to a complete stop.
- Place the gearshift in N (Neutral). If the vehicle is equipped with a manual transmission, also depress the clutch pedal.
- Move the 4x4 control to the 4x4 LOW position.
- Hold the shift conditions until the 4x4 LOW indicator light illuminates.
- If the 4x4 LOW indicator light flashes continuously for more than 10 seconds, allow the vehicle to move at a speed below 5 mph (8 km/h), then repeat steps 2 through 5 while the vehicle is rolling before reporting any shift concerns to your authorized dealer.



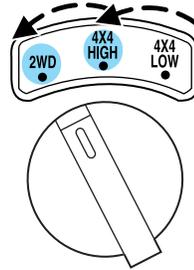
### Shifting from 4x4 LOW to 4x4 HIGH or 2WD

**If the range shift requirements are not met, the 4x4 Low or 4x4 High indicator will flash continuously, depending on which mode the shift began.**

- Bring the vehicle to a complete stop.
- Place the gearshift in N (Neutral).

## Driving

3. Move the 4x4 control to the 4x4 HIGH or 2WD position.
4. Hold the shift conditions until the 4x4 LOW indicator light shuts off.
5. If the 4x4 LOW or 4x4 High indicator light flashes continuously for more than 10 seconds, allow the vehicle to move at a speed below 5 mph (8 km/h), then repeat steps 2 through 5 while the vehicle is rolling before reporting any shift concerns to your authorized dealer.



### Driving off-road with truck and utility vehicles

4WD vehicles are specially equipped for driving on sand, snow, mud and rough terrain and have operating characteristics that are somewhat different from conventional vehicles, both on and off the road.

Your vehicle may be equipped with a long front air dam that may become damaged (due to reduced ground clearance) when taking your vehicle off-road. This air dam can either be removed or a shorter air dam can be purchased from your authorized dealer. In either case, if the air dam is to be removed (or replaced) before going off-road, refer to the *Workshop Manual* for the procedure or have your authorized dealer perform the work for you.

### How your vehicle differs from other vehicles

Truck and utility vehicles can differ from some other vehicles. Your vehicle may be higher to allow it to travel over rough terrain without getting hung up or damaging underbody components.

The differences that make your vehicle so versatile also make it handle differently than an ordinary passenger car.

Maintain steering wheel control at all times, especially in rough terrain. Since sudden changes in terrain can result in abrupt steering wheel motion, make sure you grip the steering wheel from the outside. Do not grip the spokes.

Drive cautiously to avoid vehicle damage from concealed objects such as rocks and stumps.

You should either know the terrain or examine maps of the area before driving. Map out your route before driving in the area. To maintain steering and braking control of your vehicle, you must have all four wheels on the ground and they must be rolling, not sliding or spinning.

292

## Driving

### **Basic operating principles**

- Do not use 4WD on dry, hard surfaced roads. Doing so will produce excessive noise, increase tire wear and may damage drive components. 4WD modes are only intended for consistently slippery or loose surfaces.
- Drive slower in strong crosswinds which can affect the normal steering characteristics of your vehicle.
- Be extremely careful when driving on pavement made slippery by loose sand, water, gravel, snow or ice.

### **If your vehicle goes off the edge of the pavement**

- If your vehicle goes off the edge of the pavement, slow down, but avoid severe brake application, ease the vehicle back onto the pavement only after reducing your speed. Do not turn the steering wheel too sharply while returning to the road surface.
- It may be safer to stay on the apron or shoulder of the road and slow down gradually before returning to the pavement. You may lose control if you do not slow down or if you turn the steering wheel too sharply or abruptly.
- It often may be less risky to strike small objects, such as highway reflectors, with minor damage to your vehicle rather than attempt a sudden return to the pavement which could cause the vehicle to slide sideways out of control or roll over. Remember, your safety and the safety of others should be your primary concern.



**WARNING:** Vehicles with a higher center of gravity such as utility and four-wheel drive vehicles handle differently than vehicles with a lower center of gravity. Utility and four-wheel drive vehicles are **not** designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions. Avoid sharp turns, excessive speed and abrupt maneuvers in these vehicles. Failure to drive cautiously could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

### **If your vehicle gets stuck**

If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow it may be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts, in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

**Do not rock the vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature or damage to the transmission may occur.**

## Driving

**Do not rock the vehicle for more than a few minutes or damage to the transmission and tires may occur or the engine may overheat.**



**WARNING:** Do not spin the wheels at over 35 mph (56 km/h). The tires may fail and injure a passenger or bystander.

Refer to *Transmission fluid temperature gauge* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for transmission fluid temperature information.

### **Emergency maneuvers**

- In an unavoidable emergency situation where a sudden sharp turn must be made, remember to avoid “over-driving” your vehicle, i.e., turn the steering wheel only as rapidly and as far as required to avoid the emergency. Excessive steering will result in less vehicle control, not more. Additionally, smooth variations of the accelerator and/or brake pedal pressure should be utilized if changes in vehicle speed are called for. Avoid abrupt steering, acceleration or braking which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover and/or personal injury. Use all available road surface to return the vehicle to a safe direction of travel.
- In the event of an emergency stop, avoid skidding the tires and do not attempt any sharp steering wheel movements.



**WARNING:** Vehicles with a higher center of gravity such as utility and four-wheel drive vehicles handle differently than vehicles with a lower center of gravity. Utility and four-wheel drive vehicles are **not** designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions. Avoid sharp turns, excessive speed and abrupt maneuvers in these vehicles. Failure to drive cautiously could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

- If the vehicle goes from one type of surface to another (i.e., from concrete to gravel) there will be a change in the way the vehicle responds to a maneuver (steering, acceleration or braking). Again, avoid these abrupt inputs.

### **Parking**

On some 4WD vehicles, when the transfer case is in the N (Neutral) position, the engine and transmission are disconnected from the rest of

294

## Driving

the driveline. Therefore, the vehicle is free to roll even if the automatic transmission is in P (Park) or the manual transmission is in gear. Do not leave the vehicle unattended with the transfer case in the N (Neutral) position. Always set the parking brake fully and turn off the ignition when leaving the vehicle.



**WARNING:** Always set the parking brake fully and make sure the gearshift is latched in P (Park). Turn the ignition to the off position and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.



**WARNING:** If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. See your authorized dealer.

### 4WD Systems

4WD (when you select a 4WD mode), uses all four wheels to power the vehicle. This increases traction, enabling you to drive over terrain and road conditions that a conventional two-wheel drive vehicle cannot.

Power is supplied to all four wheels through a transfer case. On 4WD vehicles, the transfer case allows you to select 4WD when necessary. Information on transfer case operation and shifting procedures can be found in the *Driving* chapter. Information on transfer case maintenance can be found in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter. You should become thoroughly familiar with this information before you operate your vehicle.

### Normal characteristics

On some 4WD models, the initial shift from two-wheel drive to 4x4 while the vehicle is moving can cause some momentary clunk and ratcheting sounds. This is the front drivetrain coming up to speed and the automatic locking hubs engaging and is not cause for concern.

### Sand

When driving over sand, try to keep all four wheels on the most solid area of the trail. Avoid reducing the tire pressures but shift to a lower gear and drive steadily through the terrain. Apply the accelerator slowly and avoid spinning the wheels.

Avoid excessive speed because vehicle momentum can work against you and cause the vehicle to become stuck to the point that assistance may be required from another vehicle. Remember, you may be able to back out the way you came if you proceed with caution.

## Driving

**Note:** If air is released from your tires, the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) indicator light may illuminate (if equipped).

### **Mud and water**

If you must drive through high water, drive slowly. Traction or brake capability may be limited.

When driving through water, determine the depth; avoid water higher than the bottom of the hubs (if possible) and proceed slowly. If the ignition system gets wet, the vehicle may stall.



Once through water, always try the brakes. Wet brakes do not stop the vehicle as effectively as dry brakes. Drying can be improved by moving your vehicle slowly while applying light pressure on the brake pedal.

Be cautious of sudden changes in vehicle speed or direction when you are driving in mud. Even 4WD vehicles can lose traction in slick mud. As when you are driving over sand, apply the accelerator slowly and avoid spinning your wheels. If the vehicle does slide, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of the vehicle.

If the transmission, transfer case or front axle are submerged in water, their fluids should be checked and changed, if necessary.

### **Driving through deep water may damage the transmission.**

Refer to *Transmission temperature gauge* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for transmission fluid temperature information.

If the front or rear axle is submerged in water, the axle lubricant should be replaced.

After driving through mud, clean off residue stuck to rotating driveshafts and tires. Excess mud stuck on tires and rotating driveshafts causes an imbalance that could damage drive components.

“Tread Lightly” is an educational program designed to increase public awareness of land-use regulations and responsibilities in our nations wilderness areas. Ford Motor

Company joins the U.S. Forest Service and the Bureau of Land Management in encouraging you to help preserve our national forest and other public and private lands by “treading lightly.”



## Driving

### ***Driving on hilly or sloping terrain***

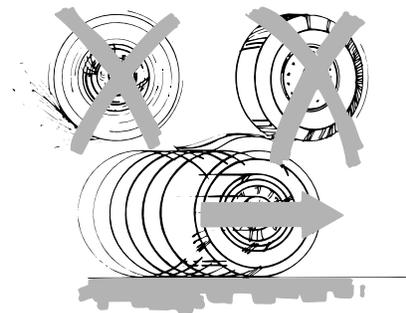
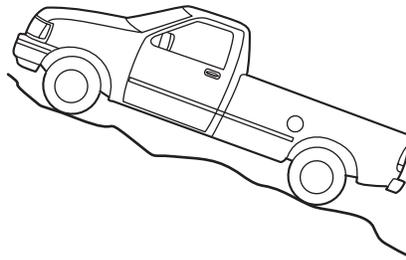
Although natural obstacles may make it necessary to travel diagonally up or down a hill or steep incline, you should always try to drive straight up or straight down. **Avoid driving crosswise or turning on steep slopes or hills.** A danger lies in losing traction, slipping sideways and possibly rolling over. Whenever driving on a hill, determine beforehand the route you will use. Do not drive over the crest of a hill without seeing what conditions are on the other side. Do not drive in reverse over a hill without the aid of an observer.

When climbing a steep slope or hill, start in a lower gear rather than downshifting to a lower gear from a higher gear once the ascent has started. This reduces strain on the engine and the possibility of stalling.

If you do stall out, do not try to turn around because you might roll over. It is better to back down to a safe location.

Apply just enough power to the wheels to climb the hill. Too much power will cause the tires to slip, spin or lose traction, resulting in loss of vehicle control.

Descend a hill in the same gear you would use to climb up the hill to avoid excessive brake application and brake overheating. Do not descend in neutral; instead, manually shift to a lower gear. Your vehicle has anti-lock brakes, apply the brakes steadily. Do not “pump” the brakes.



### ***Driving on snow and ice***

4WD vehicles have advantages over 2WD vehicles in snow and ice but can skid like any other vehicle.

## Driving

Should you start to slide while driving on snowy or icy roads, turn the steering wheel in the direction of the slide until you regain control.

Avoid sudden applications of power and quick changes of direction on snow and ice. Apply the accelerator slowly and steadily when starting from a full stop.

Avoid sudden braking as well. Although a 4WD vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in snow and ice, it won't stop any faster, because as in other vehicles, braking occurs at all four wheels. Do not become overconfident as to road conditions.

Make sure you allow sufficient distance between you and other vehicles for stopping. Drive slower than usual and consider using one of the lower gears. In emergency stopping situations, avoid locking of the wheels. Use a "squeeze" technique, push on the brake pedal with a steadily increasing force which allows the wheels to brake yet continue to roll so that you may steer in the direction you want to travel. If you lock the wheels, release the brake pedal and repeat the squeeze technique. If your vehicle is equipped with a Four Wheel Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS), apply the brake steadily. Do not "pump" the brakes. Refer to the *Brakes* section of this chapter for additional information on the operation of the anti-lock brake system.



**WARNING:** If you are driving in slippery conditions that require tire cables, then it is critical that you drive cautiously. Keep speeds down, allow for longer stopping distances and avoid aggressive steering to reduce the chances of a loss of vehicle control which can lead to serious injury or death. If the rear end of the vehicle slides while cornering, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of the vehicle.

### ***Maintenance and Modifications***

The suspension and steering systems on your vehicle have been designed and tested to provide predictable performance whether loaded or empty and durable load carrying capability. For this reason, Ford Motor Company strongly recommends that you do not make modifications such as adding or removing parts (such as lift kits or stabilizer bars) or by using replacement parts not equivalent to the original factory equipment.

Any modifications to a vehicle that raise the center of gravity can make it more likely the vehicle will roll over as a result of a loss of control. Ford Motor Company recommends that caution be used with any vehicle equipped with a high load or device (such as ladder racks or pickup box cover).

298

## Driving

Failure to maintain your vehicle properly may void the warranty, increase your repair cost, reduce vehicle performance and operational capabilities and adversely affect driver and passenger safety. Frequent inspection of vehicle chassis components is recommended if the vehicle is subjected to heavy off-road usage.

### VEHICLE USED AS A STATIONARY POWER SOURCE

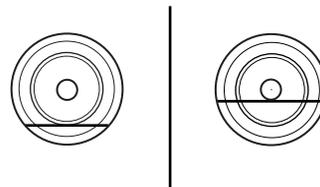
Auxiliary equipment called power take-off, or PTO, is often added to the engine or transmission to operate utility equipment. Examples include a wheel-lift for tow trucks, cranes, tools for construction or tire service, and pumping fluids. PTO applications draw auxiliary horsepower from the powertrain, often while the vehicle is stationary. In this condition, there is limited cooling air flow through the radiator and around the vehicle that normally occurs when a vehicle is moving. The aftermarket PTO system installer, having the most knowledge of the final application, is responsible for determining whether additional chassis heat protection or powertrain cooling is required, and alerting the user to the safe and proper operation.

Ford Super Duty Vehicles are qualified for use as a stationary power source, within limits detailed in the *Ford Truck Body Builders Layout Book*, found at [www.fleet.ford.com/truckbbas](http://www.fleet.ford.com/truckbbas), and through the Ford Truck Body Builders Advisory Service.

Gas engine vehicles are qualified for up to 10 minutes of continuous operation as a stationary power source, due to the potential for the normal venting of fuel vapors. For stationary PTO operation of extended duration (beyond 10 minutes), diesel engine is recommended. Further consult your aftermarket PTO installer, since the duration of operation limit for the aftermarket PTO may be less than the vehicle is capable of.

### DRIVING THROUGH WATER

If driving through deep or standing water is unavoidable, proceed very slowly especially when the depth is not known. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the wheel rims (for cars) or the bottom of the hubs (for trucks).



When driving through water, traction or brake capability may be limited. Also, water may enter your engine's air intake and severely damage your engine or your vehicle may stall. **Driving through deep water where**

## Driving

**the transmission vent tube is submerged may allow water into the transmission and cause internal transmission damage.**

**Once through the water, always dry the brakes by moving your vehicle slowly while applying light pressure on the brake pedal.**

Wet brakes do not stop the vehicle as quickly as dry brakes.

### SNOWPLOWING

Ford recommends that the Super Duty F-Series used for snow removal include the Snow Plow Package Option.

#### Installing the snowplow

Weight limits and guidelines for selecting and installing the snowplow can be found in the *Ford Truck Body Builders Layout Book*, Snowplow section, found at [www.fleet.ford.com/truckbbas](http://www.fleet.ford.com/truckbbas). A typical installation affects the following:

- Certification to government safety laws such as occupant protection and airbag deployment, braking, and lighting. Look for an “Alterer’s Label” on the vehicle from the snowplow installer certifying that the installation meets all applicable Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards (FMVSS).
- The Total Accessory Reserve Capacity (TARC) is shown on the lower right side of the vehicle’s Safety Compliance Certification Label. This applies to Ford-completed vehicles of 10,000 lb. (4,536 kg) GVWR or less. This is the weight of permanently-attached auxiliary equipment, such as snowplow frame-mounting hardware, that can be added to the vehicle and satisfy Ford compliance certification to FMVSS. Exceeding this weight may require the auxiliary equipment installer additional safety certification responsibility. The Front Accessory Reserve Capacity (FARC) is added for customer convenience.
- Rear ballast weight behind the rear axle may be required to prevent exceeding the FGAWR, and provide front-to-rear weight balance for proper braking and steering.
- Front wheel toe may require re-adjustment to prevent premature uneven tire wear. Specifications are found in the *Ford Workshop Manual*.
- Headlight aim may require re-adjustment.
- The tire air pressures recommended for general driving are found on the vehicle’s Safety Certification Label. The maximum cold inflation pressure for the tire and associated load rating is imprinted on the tire

300

## Driving

sidewall. Tire air pressure may require re-adjustment within these pressure limits to accommodate the additional weight of the snowplow installation.

- Federal and some local regulations require additional exterior lamps for snowplow-equipped vehicles. Consult your authorized dealer for additional information.
- The snow plow prep package includes a unique powertrain control strategy which is required for diesel engine cooling during highway driving with the snowplow raised.

### Operating the vehicle with the snowplow attached

Do not use your vehicle for snow removal until it has been driven at least 500 miles (800 km).

The attached snowplow blade restricts airflow to the radiator, and may cause the engine to run at a higher temperature: Attention to engine temperature is especially important when outside temperatures are above freezing. Angle the blade to maximize airflow to the radiator and monitor engine temperature to determine whether a left or right angle provides the best performance.

Follow the severe duty schedule in your *scheduled maintenance information* for engine oil and transmission fluid change intervals.

### Snowplowing with your airbag-equipped vehicle

Your vehicle is equipped with a driver and passenger airbag Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) The SRS is designed to activate in certain frontal and offset frontal collisions when the vehicle sustains sufficient longitudinal deceleration.

Careless or high speed driving while plowing snow which results in sufficient vehicle decelerations can deploy the airbag. Such driving also increases the risk of accidents.



**WARNING:** All occupants of the vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their safety belts, even when an air bag supplemental restraint system (SRS) is provided.

Never remove or defeat the “tripping mechanisms” designed into the snow removal equipment by its manufacturer. Doing so may cause damage to the vehicle and the snow removal equipment as well as possible airbag deployment.

## Driving

 **WARNING:** Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the air bag supplemental restraint system (SRS) or its fuses. See your Ford or Lincoln Mercury dealer.

 **WARNING:** Additional equipment such as snowplow equipment may effect the performance of the airbag sensors increasing the risk of injury. Please refer to the *Body Builders Layout Book* for instructions about the appropriate installation of additional equipment.

### ***Transmission operation while plowing***

Operate the vehicle with the automatic transmission gearshift lever in the D (Overdrive) position and Tow/Haul off.

- Shift transfer case to 4x4 LOW (4WD Low) when plowing in small areas at speeds below 5 mph (8 km/h).
- Shift transfer case to 4x4 HIGH (4WD High) when plowing larger areas or light snow at higher speeds. Do not exceed 15 mph (24 km/h).
- Do not shift the transmission from a forward gear to R (Reverse) until the engine is at idle and the wheels are stopped.
- If the vehicle is stuck, shift the transmission in a steady motion between forward and reverse gears. Do not rock the vehicle for more than a few minutes. The transmission and tires may be damaged or the engine can overheat.

**Do not rock the vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature. Do not rock the vehicle for more than a minute. The transmission and tires may be damaged or the engine may overheat.**

Refer to *Transmission temperature gauge* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for transmission fluid temperature information.

 **WARNING:** Do not spin the wheels at over 35 mph (55 km/h). The tires may fail and injure a passenger or bystander.

## Roadside Emergencies

### ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE

#### Getting roadside assistance

To fully assist you should you have a vehicle concern, Ford Motor Company offers a complimentary roadside assistance program. This program is separate from the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. The service is available:

- 24-hours, seven days a week
- for the coverage period listed on the Roadside Assistance Card included in your Owner Guide portfolio.

Roadside assistance will cover:

- a flat tire change with a good spare (except vehicles that have been supplied with a tire inflation kit)
- battery jump start
- lock-out assistance (key replacement cost is the customer's responsibility)
- fuel delivery – Independent Service Contractors, if not prohibited by state, local or municipal law shall deliver up to 2.0 gallons (7.5L) of gasoline or 5.0 gallons (18.9L) of diesel fuel to a disabled vehicle. Fuel delivery service is limited to two no-charge occurrences within a 12-month period.
- winch out – available within 100 feet (30.5 meters) of a paved or county maintained road, no recoveries.
- towing – Ford/Mercury/Lincoln eligible vehicle towed to an authorized dealer within 35 miles (56 km) of the disablement location or to the nearest authorized dealer. If a member requests to be towed to an authorized dealer more than 35 miles (56 km) from the disablement location, the member shall be responsible for any mileage costs in excess of 35 miles (56 km).

Trailers shall be covered up to \$200 if the disabled eligible vehicle requires service at the nearest authorized dealer. If the trailer is disabled, but the towing vehicle is operational, the trailer does not qualify for any roadside services.

#### **Canadian customers refer to your Customer Information Guide for information on:**

- coverage period
- exact fuel amounts

## Roadside Emergencies

- towing of your disabled vehicle
- emergency travel expense reimbursement
- travel planning benefits

In Canada, for uninterrupted Roadside Assistance coverage, you may purchase extended coverage prior to your Basic Warranty's Roadside Assistance expiring. For more information and enrollment, contact 1-877-294-2582 or visit our website at [www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca).

### Using roadside assistance

Complete the roadside assistance identification card and place it in your wallet for quick reference. In the United States, this card is found in the Owner Guide portfolio in the glove compartment. In Canada, the card is found in the *Customer Information Guide* in the glove compartment.

U.S. Ford, Mercury and Lincoln vehicle customers who require Roadside Assistance, call 1-800-241-3673.

Canadian customers who require roadside assistance, call 1-800-665-2006.

If you need to arrange roadside assistance for yourself, Ford Motor Company will reimburse a reasonable amount for towing to the nearest dealership within 35 miles (56 km). To obtain reimbursement information, U.S. Ford, Mercury and Lincoln vehicle customers call 1-800-241-3673. Customers will be asked to submit their original receipts.

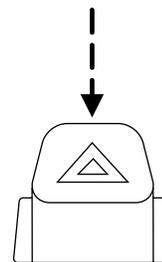
Canadian customers who need to obtain reimbursement information, call 1-800-665-2006.

### HAZARD FLASHER CONTROL

The hazard flasher is located on the steering column, just behind the steering wheel. The hazard flashers will operate when the ignition is in any position or if the key is not in the ignition.

Press in the flasher control and all front and rear direction signals will flash. Press the flasher control again to turn them off. Use it when your vehicle is disabled and is creating a safety hazard for other motorists.

304



## Roadside Emergencies

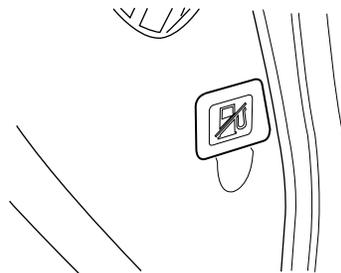
**Note:** With extended use, the flasher may run down your battery.

### FUEL PUMP SHUT-OFF SWITCH

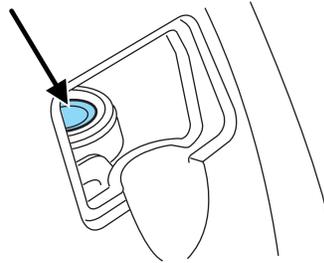
This device stops the electric fuel pump from sending fuel to the engine when your vehicle has had a substantial jolt.

After an accident, if the engine cranks but does not start, this switch may have been activated.

This switch is located on the passenger's side of the instrument panel. Open the front passenger door and remove the small access panel



The switch has a red button on top of it.



To reset the switch:

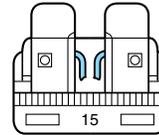
1. Turn the ignition off.
2. Check the fuel system for leaks.
3. If no leaks are apparent, reset the switch by pushing in on the reset button.
4. Turn the ignition on.
5. Wait a few seconds and return the key to off.
6. Make another check for leaks.

## Roadside Emergencies

### FUSES AND RELAYS

#### Fuses

If electrical components in the vehicle are not working, a fuse may have blown. Blown fuses are identified by a broken wire within the fuse. Check the appropriate fuses before replacing any electrical components.



**Note:** Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.

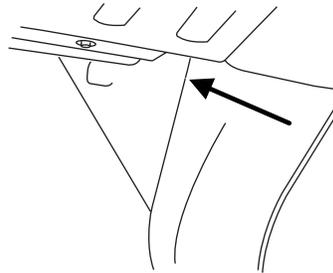
#### Standard fuse amperage rating and color

COLOR					
Fuse rating	Mini fuses	Standard fuses	Maxi fuses	Cartridge maxi fuses	Fuse link cartridge
2A	Grey	Grey	—	—	—
3A	Violet	Violet	—	—	—
4A	Pink	Pink	—	—	—
5A	Tan	Tan	—	—	—
7.5A	Brown	Brown	—	—	—
10A	Red	Red	—	—	—
15A	Blue	Blue	—	—	—
20A	Yellow	Yellow	Yellow	Blue	Blue
25A	Natural	Natural	—	—	—
30A	Green	Green	Green	Pink	Pink
40A	—	—	Orange	Green	Green
50A	—	—	Red	Red	Red
60A	—	—	Blue	Yellow	Yellow
70A	—	—	Tan	—	Brown
80A	—	—	Natural	Black	Black

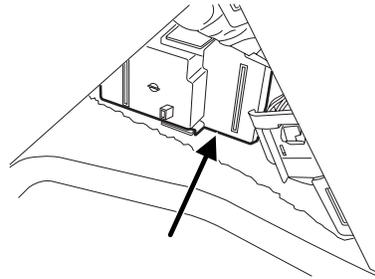
## Roadside Emergencies

### Passenger compartment fuse panel

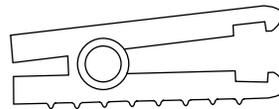
The fuse panel is located in the passenger's footwell. Remove the panel cover to access the fuses.



To remove the fuse panel cover, pull the panel toward you. When the clips of the panel disengage, let the panel fall easily.



To remove a fuse use the fuse puller tool provided on the fuse panel cover.

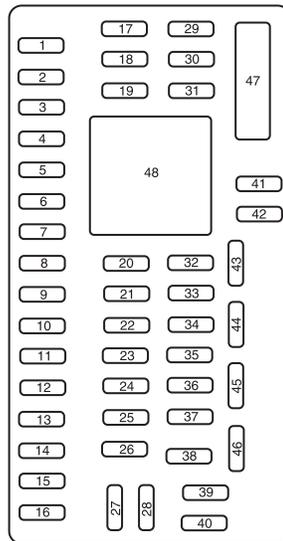


**WARNING:** Always disconnect the battery before servicing high current fuses.

**Always replace the cover to the passenger compartment fuse panel before reconnecting the battery.**

If the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, refer to the *Battery* section of the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

## Roadside Emergencies



The fuses are coded as follows.

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Circuits
1	30A	Not used (spare)
2	15A	Not used (spare)
3	15A	Family entertainment system (FES)
4	30A	Not used (spare)
5	10A	Keypad illumination, Brake-shift interlock (BSI), SPBJB
6	20A	Turn signals
7	10A	Left headlamp (Low beam)
8	10A	Right headlamp (Low beam)
9	15A	Interior lighting, Lighted running boards
10	15A	Cargo lamp, Puddle lamp, Switch backlight

308

## Roadside Emergencies

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Circuits
11	10A	Not used (spare)
12	7.5A	Power mirror switch, Driver power seat (Memory)
13	5A	Not used (spare)
14	10A	Upfitter relay #3 feed
15	10A	Climate control head
16	15A	Upfitter relay #4 Feed
17	20A	All lock motor feeds
18	20A	Heated seat relay feed
19	25A	Not used (spare)
20	15A	Adjustable pedals, Datalink
21	15A	Fog lamp relay feed, Cornering lamps
22	15A	Park lamp relay feed
23	15A	High beam headlight relay feed
24	20A	Horn relay feed
25	10A	Power telescoping mirror switch, Demand lamps - underhood and illuminated visor (battery saver)
26	10A	Cluster
27	20A	Ignition switch feed, Passenger compartment fuses 28, 42, 43, 44, and 45, Engine compartment starter relay coil #57 (Diesel engine), Accessory shutoff control module (if equipped) (Diesel engine), Engine compartment starter relay diode (gasoline engines)
28	5A	Radio
29	5A	Not used (spare)
30	5A	Not used (spare)
31	10A	Not used (spare)

## Roadside Emergencies

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Circuits
32	10A	Restraints control module (RCM), Passenger airbag deactivation indicator
33	10A	Trailer tow brake controller, Trailer tow battery charge relay coil
34	5A	Not used (spare)
35	10A	Reverse sensing system (RSS), 4x4 module, 4x4 solenoid, Traction control switch, Tow/Haul switch (Diesel engine)
36	5A	Passive anti-theft system (PATS) transceiver, Cluster control
37	10A	Climate control, PTC control
38	20A	Subwoofer
39	20A	Radio, Navigation radio and amplifier
40	20A	4x4 module, Satellite radio module, SYNC®, GPS
41	15A	Radio, Auto dimming rear view mirror, Lock switch illumination
42	10A	Heated seat relay coil, Upfitter switch relay coils, Heated mirror relay coil
43	10A	Fuel tank selector switch, 4x4 module
44	10A	Run customer access feed (PTO)
45	5A	Front wiper logic, Blower motor relay coil
46	7.5A	Not used (spare)
47	30A Circuit Breaker	Power windows, Moon roof, Power rear sliding window
48	Relay	Delayed accessory

### Power distribution box

The power distribution box is located in the engine compartment. The power distribution box contains high-current fuses that protect your vehicle's main electrical systems from overloads.

310

## Roadside Emergencies

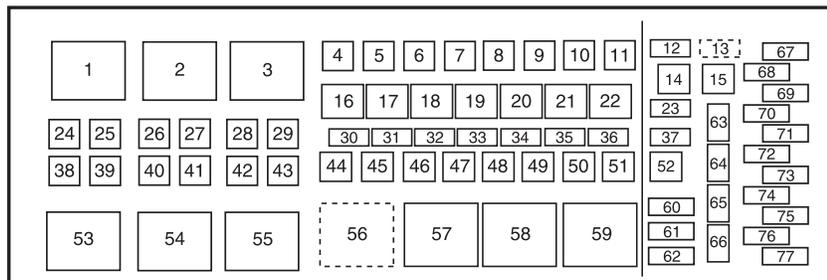


**WARNING:** Always disconnect the battery before servicing high current fuses.



**WARNING:** To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the power distribution box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.

If the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, refer to the *Battery* section of the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.



The high-current fuses are coded as follows:

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Circuits
1	Relay	Blower motor/Variable blower control (Dual zone climate control)
2	Relay	Electronic shift-on-the-fly (ESOF) Lo-Hi
3	Relay	Heater mirror
4	—	Not used
5	30A*	Trailer brake controller (TBC)
6	40A*	Anti-lock brake system (ABS) module (Pump)
7	30A*	Upfitter auxiliary switch #1
8	30A*	Upfitter auxiliary switch #2

## Roadside Emergencies

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Circuits
9	40A*	ABS module (Coil)
10	20A*	Instrument panel power point/cigar lighter
11	20A*	Instrument panel power point
12	15A**	Brake on/off (BOO) relay feed
13	5A**	Brake switch, Brake switch relay coil, SJB module, 4x4 module
14	—	Not used
15	—	Not used
16	Relay	A/C clutch
17	Relay	Wipers
18	Relay	Fuel pump driver module (FPDM), Fuel injectors (Gasoline engines), Diesel fuel control module (DFCM) (Diesel engine)
19	Relay	Back-up lamps, Reverse sensing system (RSS), Engine compartment fuse 63
20	Relay	Trailer stop/turn (Left)
21	Relay	Trailer stop/turn (Right)
22	Relay	Stop lamps, Center high-mounted stop lamp (CHMSL), TBC, Customer access
23	15A**	Heater mirror, Heated spotted mirror
24	40A*	Blower motor relay
25	—	Not used
26	30A*	ESOF relay lo-hi
27	50A*	Glow plug control module (GPCM) #1 (Diesel engine only)
28	20A*	Heated mirror relay
29	30A*	Passenger power seat
30	10A**	A/C clutch relay

## Roadside Emergencies

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Circuits
31	15A**	Power fold mirror relay
32	20A**	Fuel pump relay
33	20A**	Back-up lamp relay
34	25A**	Trailer stop/turn relay
35	5A**	ESOF relay coils
36	10A**	<b>Gasoline engines:</b> Powertrain control module (PCM) keep alive power, Canister vent <b>Diesel engine:</b> Engine control module (ECM) keep alive power
37	10A**	Transmission control module (TCM) (Diesel engine only)
38	—	Not used
39	50A*	ECM power (Diesel engine)
40	30A*	Starter relay
41	20A*	Power point (Center console - front)
42	30A*	Trailer park lamp relay
43	20A*	Power point (Center console - rear)
44	30A*	Trailer battery charge relay
45	30A*	Driver power seat or memory module, Air ride seats
46	40A*	Run/Start relay
47	50A*	GPCM #2 (Diesel engine only)
48	30A*	ESOF relay hi-lo
49	30A*	Wiper motor
50	30A*	PCM relay coil, PCM relay (Gasoline engines only)
51	—	Not used
52	—	Not used
53	Relay	PCM power bus (Fuses 68, 70, 72, 74, 76) (Diesel engine only)
54	Relay	Starter solenoid

## Roadside Emergencies

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Circuits
55	Relay	Trailer tow park lamps
56	Relay	Trailer tow battery charge
57	Relay	Power Distribution Box (PDB) bus (fuses 67, 69, 71, 73, 75, 77) SJB Run /Start bus (Fuses 29–37, 46)
58	Relay	ESOF hi-lo
59	Relay	PCM power bus (Fuses 68, 70, 72, 74, 76) (Gasoline engines only)
60	Diode	One-touch start (OTIS)
61	Diode	A/C clutch
62	Diode	Fuel pump
63	15A**	Trailer tow back-up lamps
64	5A**	Mirror marker lamps
65	—	Not used
66	—	Not used
67	—	Not used
68	—	Not used
69	—	Not used
70	10A**	<b>Gasoline engines:</b> A/C clutch relay coil, Refrigerant containment switch, Heated PCV <b>Diesel engine:</b> A/C clutch relay coil, Clutch switch, Fuel pump cooler, A/C cycle pressure switch
71	5A**	Fuel pump relay diode, PCM/ECM Run/Start power
72	15A**	<b>Gasoline engines:</b> Ignition coils <b>Diesel engine:</b> Engine TCM
73	2A**	Reverse Camera System (RCS)

## Roadside Emergencies

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Circuits
74	20A**	<b>Gasoline engines:</b> Vehicle power (VPWR): Heated exhaust gas oxygen sensor, CMS, Mass air flow sensor, Electronic vapor management valve, CMCV, Variable cam timing, IMTV <b>Diesel engine:</b> VPWR: Engine loads
75	5A**	Back-up relay coil power
76	20A**	<b>Gasoline engines:</b> VPWR: PCM <b>Diesel engine:</b> VPWR: ECM
77	10A**	ABS module logic
* Cartridge fuses ** Mini fuses		

### CHANGING A FLAT TIRE

If you get a flat tire while driving:

- do not brake heavily.
- gradually decrease the vehicle's speed.
- hold the steering wheel firmly.
- slowly move to a safe place on the side of the road.

Your vehicle may be equipped with a conventional spare tire that is different in one or more of the following: type, brand, size, speed rating and tread design. If this is the case, this dissimilar spare tire is still rated for your vehicle loads (GAWR and GVWR). Temporary spare tires are not equipped with Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) sensors if the system is present.



**WARNING:** The use of tire sealant may damage your Tire Pressure Monitoring System (if equipped) and should not be used.



**WARNING:** If your vehicle is equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitoring System, refer to *Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information. If the tire pressure monitor sensor becomes damaged, it will no longer function.

## Roadside Emergencies

### Dissimilar spare tire/wheel information



**WARNING:** Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.

If you have a dissimilar spare tire/wheel, then it is intended for temporary use only. This means that if you need to use it, you should replace it as soon as possible with a road tire/wheel that is the same size and type as the road tires and wheels that were originally provided by Ford. If the dissimilar spare tire or wheel is damaged, it should be replaced rather than repaired.

A dissimilar spare tire/wheel is defined as a spare tire and/or wheel that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels and can be one of three types:

1. **T-type mini-spare:** This spare tire begins with the letter “T” for tire size and may have “Temporary Use Only” molded in the sidewall
2. **Full-size dissimilar spare with label on wheel:** This spare tire has a label on the wheel that states: “THIS TIRE AND WHEEL FOR TEMPORARY USE ONLY”

When driving with one of the dissimilar spare tires listed above, **do not:**

- Exceed 50 mph (80 km/h)
- Load the vehicle beyond maximum vehicle load rating listed on the Safety Compliance Label
- Use snow chains on the end of the vehicle with the dissimilar spare tire
- Use more than one dissimilar spare tire at a time
- Use commercial car washing equipment
- Try to repair the dissimilar spare tire

Use of one of the dissimilar spare tires listed above at any one wheel location can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance
- Comfort and noise
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs
- Winter weather driving capability
- Wet weather driving capability

It is not recommended that the vehicle be operated in 4WD modes with a temporary emergency spare tire. If 4WD operation is necessary, do not operate above speeds of 10 mph (16 km/h) or for distances above 50 miles (80 km).

316

## Roadside Emergencies

### 3. Full-size dissimilar spare without label on wheel

When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare tire/wheel, **do not:**

- Exceed 70 mph (113 km/h)
- Use more than one dissimilar spare tire/wheel at a time
- Use commercial car washing equipment
- Use snow chains on the end of the vehicle with the dissimilar spare tire/wheel

The usage of a full-size dissimilar spare tire/wheel can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance
- Comfort and noise
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs
- Winter weather driving capability
- Wet weather driving capability
- All-Wheel driving capability (if applicable)
- Load leveling adjustment (if applicable)

When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare tire/wheel additional caution should be given to:

- Towing a trailer
- Driving vehicles equipped with a camper body
- Driving vehicles with a load on the cargo rack

Drive cautiously when using a full-size dissimilar spare tire/wheel and seek service as soon as possible.

#### **Spare tire information**

**Note:** If your vehicle is equipped the tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS), the system indicator light will illuminate when the spare is in use. To restore the full functionality of the TPMS system, all road wheels equipped with the tire pressure monitoring sensors must be mounted on the vehicle.

If your vehicle is equipped with TPMS, have a flat tire serviced by an authorized dealer in order to prevent damage to the TPMS sensor; refer to *Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)* in the *Tires, Wheel and Loading* chapter. Replace the spare tire with the road tire as soon as possible.

## Roadside Emergencies

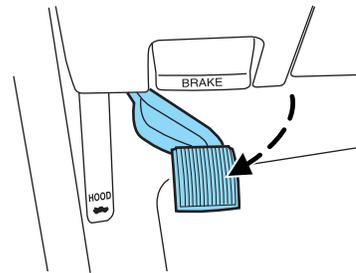
### Stopping and securing the vehicle

**WARNING:** To help prevent the vehicle from moving when you change a tire, be sure the parking brake is set, then block (in both directions) the wheel that is diagonally opposite to the tire being changed.

Refer to the instruction sheet (located in the glove box) for detailed tire change instructions.

Park on a level surface, activate hazard flashers and set the parking brake.

- Automatic transmission: Place gearshift lever in P (Park).
- Manual transmission: Place gearshift lever in R (Reverse).
- Electronic Shift-On-the-Fly (ESOF) 4x4: Place transfer case in 4x4 HIGH or 4x4 LOW before turning off the engine.
- Manual shift transfer case 4x4: Place transfer case in 4H or 4L.



### Location of the spare tire and tools

If your vehicle is equipped with a spare tire, jack and associated tools, refer to the following table for their locations:

Tool	Location
Spare tire (pick-up trucks only)	Under the vehicle, just forward of the rear bumper
Jack	Regular cab and Crew Cab: Fastened to floor pan behind rearmost seat on passenger side SuperCab: Under rear bench seat on passenger side

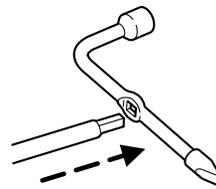
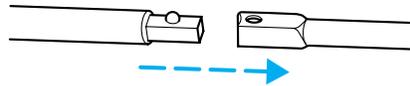
## Roadside Emergencies

Tool	Location
Jack handle, lug wrench, lug wrench extension (only available on Dual Rear Wheel [DRW] vehicles) and wheel chock (only available on Single Rear Wheel [SRW] vehicles equipped with a diesel engine)	Regular cab: Fastened to floor behind driver seat SuperCab: Fastened to floor under rear seat Crew Cab: Fastened to floor behind rear seat at driver side
Key and spare tire lock	In the glove box
Jack instruction sheet	Under the jack tool kit

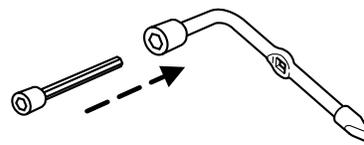
### **Removing the spare tire (with spare tire carrier only)**

1. The following tools are required to remove the spare tire:

- one handle extension and two typical extensions. To assemble, align button with hole and slide parts together. To disconnect, depress button and pull apart.
- one wheel nut wrench. Slide over square end of jack handle.

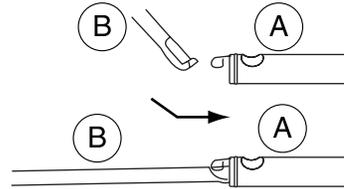


- **Vehicles equipped with dual rear wheels**, insert the lug wrench extension into the lug wrench to reach the lug nuts.

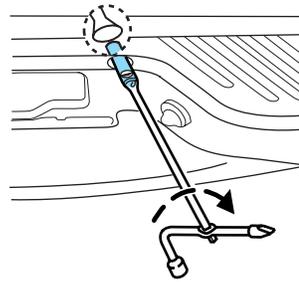


## Roadside Emergencies

2. Attach the spare tire lock key (A) to the jack handle (B).



3. Fully insert the jack handle (with one extension) through the bumper hole and into the guide tube. The key and lock will engage with a slight push and counterclockwise turn. Some resistance will be felt when turning the jack handle assembly.



4. Turn the handle counterclockwise and lower the spare tire until you can slide the tire rearward and the cable is slack.

5. Remove the retainer through the center of the wheel.

### Tire change procedure



**WARNING:** When one of the rear wheels is off the ground, the transmission alone will not prevent the vehicle from moving or slipping off the jack, even if the transmission is in P (Park) (automatic transmission) or R (Reverse) (manual transmission). To help prevent the vehicle from moving when you change the tire, be sure that the parking brake is set and the diagonally opposite wheel is blocked.



**WARNING:** To prevent the vehicle from moving when you change a tire, be sure the parking brake is set, then block (in both directions) the wheel that is diagonally opposite (other side and end of the vehicle) to the tire being changed.



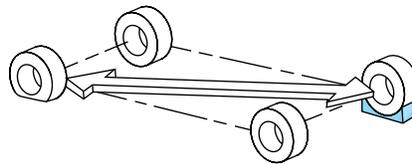
**WARNING:** If the vehicle slips off the jack, you or someone else could be seriously injured.

## Roadside Emergencies

 **WARNING:** Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.

**Note:** Passengers should not remain in the vehicle when the vehicle is being jacked.

1. Turn engine off and block the wheel that is diagonally opposite of the flat tire using the wheel chock, if equipped. **If the vehicle is a 4x4**, lock the manual hub on the wheel.



2. Remove the jack, jack handle, lug wrench and spare tire from the stowage locations.

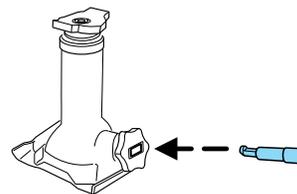
3. Use the tip of the lug wrench to remove any wheel trim.

4. Loosen each wheel lug nut one-half turn counterclockwise but do not remove them until the wheel is raised off the ground.

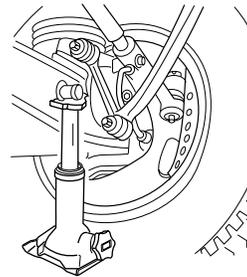
**The following steps apply to F-250/F-350 Single Rear Wheel (SRW) vehicles only:**

5. Insert the hooked end of the jack handle into the jack and use the handle to slide the jack under the vehicle.

6. Position the jack according to the following guides:



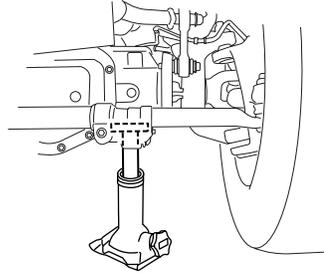
- Front (4x2)



## Roadside Emergencies

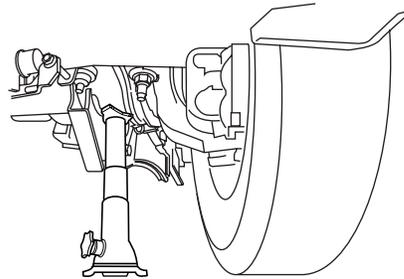
- Front driver side (4x4)

**Note:** Make sure the jack fits onto the flat area on the outboard side of the differential.

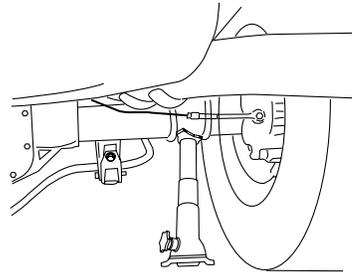


- Front passenger side (4x4)

**Note:** View shown from the rear of the vehicle to clearly identify the jack point. Place the jack directly under the axle.



- Rear

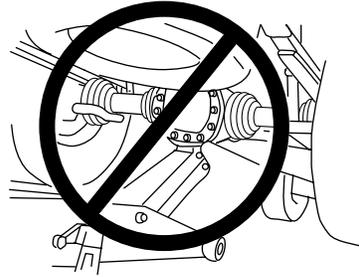


## Roadside Emergencies

**Never use the front or rear differential as a jacking point.**



**WARNING:** To lessen the risk of personal injury, do not put any part of your body under the vehicle while changing a tire. Do not start the engine when your vehicle is on the jack. The jack is only meant for changing the tire.



7. Turn the jack handle clockwise until the wheel is completely off the ground and high enough to install the spare tire.

8. Remove the lug nuts with the lug wrench.

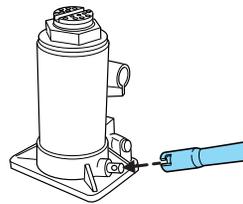
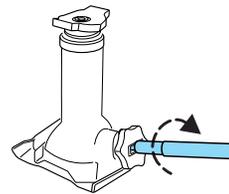
9. Replace the flat tire with the spare tire, making sure the valve stem is facing outward for all front wheels and single rear wheel vehicles. If replacing an inboard rear tire on dual rear wheel vehicles, the valve stem must be facing outward. If replacing the outboard wheel, the valve stem must be facing inward. Reinstall the lug nuts until the wheel is snug against the hub. Do not fully tighten the lug nuts until the wheel has been lowered.

10. Lower the wheel by turning the jack handle counterclockwise.

Go to Step 19.

**The following steps apply to F-350 Dual Rear Wheel (DRW) and F-450/F-550 vehicles only:**

11. Slide the notched end of the jack handle over the release valve and use the handle to slide the jack under the vehicle. Make sure the valve is closed by turning it clockwise.

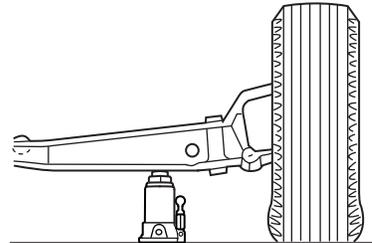


## Roadside Emergencies

12. Position the jack according to the following guides:

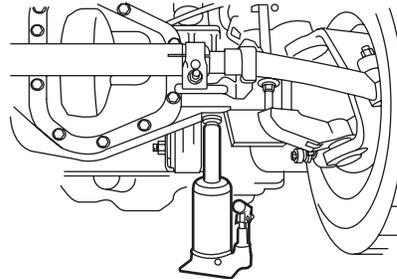
- Front (4x2): F-350 DRW

**Note:** Place jack directly under I-beam.



- Front driver side (4x4): F-350 DRW

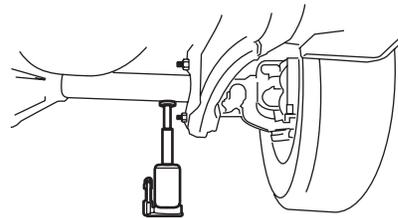
**Note:** Make sure the jack fits onto the flat area on the outboard side of the differential housing.



- Front passenger side (4x4): F-350 DRW

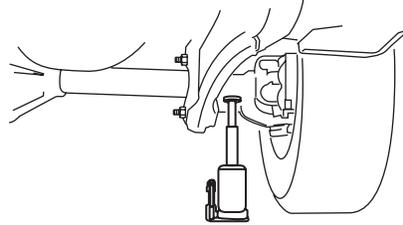
**Note:** View shown from the rear of the vehicle to clearly identify the jack point.

**Note:** Place the jack directly under axle and inboard of the radius arm so that the jack clears the radius arm.

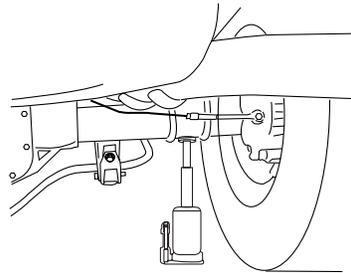


## Roadside Emergencies

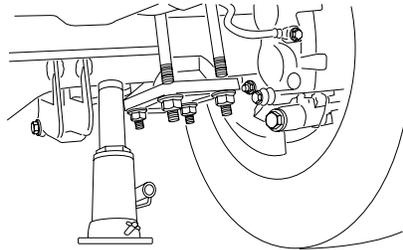
- Front: F-450/F-550



- Rear: F-350 DRW



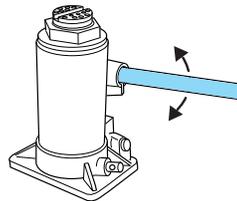
- Rear: F-450/F-550



13. Insert the jack handle into the pump linkage.

14. Use an up-and-down motion with the jack handle to raise the wheel completely off the ground.

**Hydraulic jacks are equipped with a pressure release valve that prevents lifting loads which exceed the jack's rated capacity.**



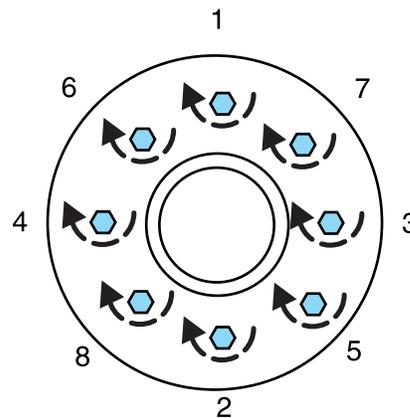
## Roadside Emergencies

15. Remove the lug nuts with the lug wrench.
16. Replace the flat tire with the spare tire, making sure the valve stem is facing outward on all front and inboard rear wheels. If replacing the outboard wheel, the valve stem must be facing inward. Reinstall the lug nuts until the wheel is snug against the hub. Do not fully tighten the lug nuts until the wheel has been lowered.
17. Lower the wheel by slowly turning the release valve counterclockwise. Opening the release valve slowly will provide a more controlled rate of descent.

**The following steps apply to all vehicles:**

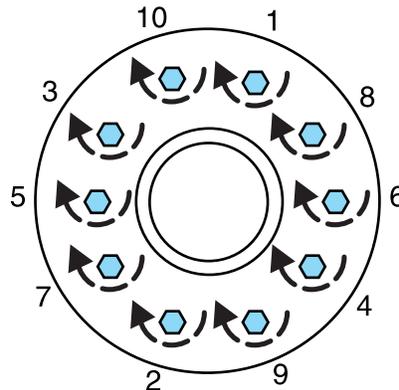
18. Remove the jack and fully tighten the lug nuts in the order shown. Refer to *Wheel lug nut torque specifications* later in this chapter for the proper lug nut torque specification.

**8-lug nut torque sequence**



## Roadside Emergencies

### 10-lug nut torque sequence



19. Stow the flat tire. Refer to *Stowing the flat/spare tire* if the vehicle is equipped with a spare tire carrier.

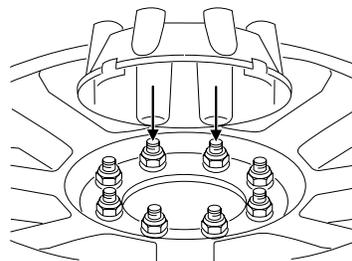
**Note:** Do not stow the Harley-Davidson flat tire and wheel using the spare tire winch mechanism; store the flat in the bed of the truck.

20. Stow the jack, jack handle and lug wrench. Make sure the jack is securely fastened so it does not rattle when driving.

21. Unblock the wheels.

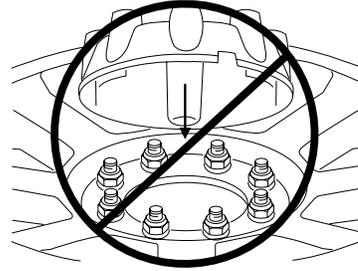
### The following step applies to F-250/F-350 Single Rear Wheel (SRW) vehicles only:

22. When installing the wheel center ornaments, ensure that the ornament retention towers on the back side of the ornament are aligned with the studs/lug nuts. The retention towers are designed to be installed over the studs/nuts and retain to the flange on the lug nut.



## Roadside Emergencies

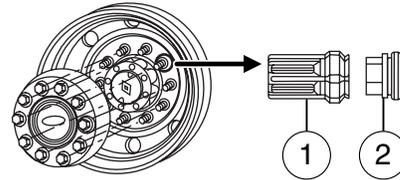
If the ornament retention towers are aligned between the studs/lug nuts, the ornament is improperly installed. This improper installation may appear and sound correct, but will not keep the ornament on the vehicle. Ornaments improperly installed in this manner will fall off or become loose with minimal force or impact.



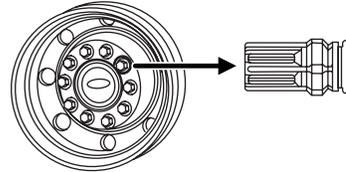
### Installing dual rear wheel ornaments

1. Align the ornament with the lug nuts.

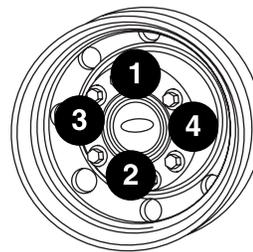
- (1) is the clip and (2) is the flange.



2. Hold the ornament so that all of the retention clips are sitting on the flange of the lug nuts.

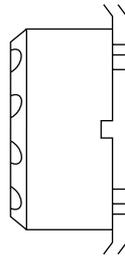
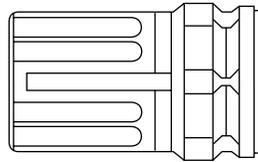


3. Use your hand or rubber mallet to tap the ornament in a star pattern. There should be an even gap between the ornament and the wheel.



## Roadside Emergencies

4. Be sure to install all the clips on the nuts over the flanges so that there is an even gap all around and the retention clips are fully seated.



### **Stowing the flat/spare tire**

**Note:** Failure to follow spare tire stowage instructions may result in failure of cable or loss of spare tire.

1. Lay the tire on the ground with the valve stem facing in the direction specified on the Tire Changing Instructions located in the glove box.
2. Slide the wheel partially under the vehicle and install the retainer through the wheel center. Pull on the cable to align the components at the end of the cable.
3. Turn the jack handle clockwise until the tire is raised to its stowed position underneath the vehicle. The effort to turn the jack handle increases significantly and the spare tire carrier ratchets or slips when the tire is raised to the maximum tightness. Tighten to the best of your ability, to the point where the ratchet/slip occurs, if possible. The spare tire carrier will not allow you to overtighten. If the spare tire carrier ratchets or slips with little effort, take the vehicle to your authorized dealer for assistance at your earliest convenience.
4. Check that the tire lies flat against the frame and is properly tightened. Try to push or pull, then turn the tire to be sure it will not move. Loosen and retighten, if necessary. Failure to properly stow the spare tire may result in failure of the winch cable and loss of the tire.

329

## Roadside Emergencies

5. Repeat this tightness check procedure when servicing the spare tire pressure (every six months, per *scheduled maintenance information*), or at any time that the spare tire is disturbed through service of other components.

6. If removed, install the spare tire lock (if equipped) into the bumper drive tube with the spare tire lock key (if equipped) and jack handle.

### WHEEL LUG NUT TORQUE SPECIFICATIONS

On vehicles equipped with single rear wheels, retighten the lug nuts to the specified torque at 500 miles (800 km) after any wheel disturbance (tire rotation, changing a flat tire, wheel removal, etc.).

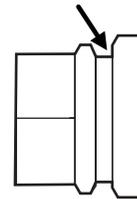
On vehicles equipped with dual rear wheels, retighten the wheel lug nuts to the specified torque at 100 miles (160 km), and again at 500 miles (800 km) of new vehicle operation and after any wheel disturbance (tire rotation, changing a flat tire, wheel removal, etc.).

Bolt size	Wheel lug nut torque*	
	lb.ft.	N•m
M14 x 1.5	165	224

\* Torque specifications are for nut and bolt threads free of dirt and rust. Use only Ford recommended replacement fasteners.

It is important to follow the proper wheel mounting and lug nut torque procedures.

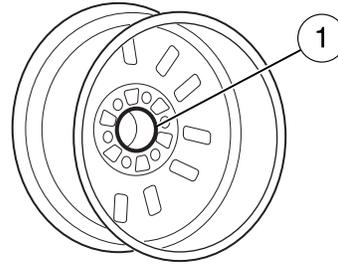
On all two-piece flat wheel nuts, apply one drop of motor oil between the flat washer and the nut.



**WARNING:** When a wheel is installed, always remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Ensure that any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub are secured so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels without correct metal-to-metal contact at the wheel mounting surfaces can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while the vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of control.

## Roadside Emergencies

Inspect the wheel pilot hole prior to installation. If there is visible corrosion in wheel pilot hole, remove loose particles by wiping with clean rag and apply grease. Apply grease only to the wheel pilot hole surface by smearing a “dime” (1 square cm) sized glob of grease around the wheel pilot surface (1) with end of finger. **DO NOT** apply grease to lug nut/stud holes or wheel-to-brake surfaces.



### JUMP STARTING



**WARNING:** The gases around the battery can explode if exposed to flames, sparks, or lit cigarettes. An explosion could result in injury or vehicle damage.



**WARNING:** Batteries contain sulfuric acid which can burn skin, eyes and clothing, if contacted.

**Do not attempt to push-start your automatic transmission vehicle. Automatic transmissions do not have push-start capability. Attempting to push-start a vehicle with an automatic transmission may cause transmission damage.**

### Preparing your vehicle

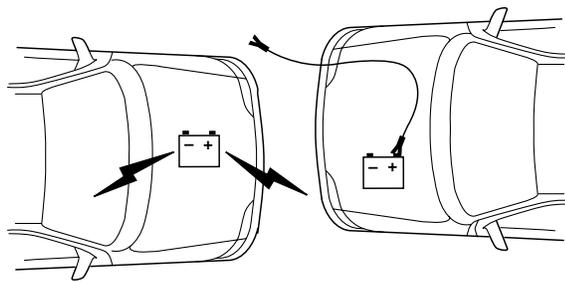
When the battery is disconnected or a new battery is installed, the automatic transmission must relearn its shift strategy. As a result, the transmission may have firm and/or soft shifts. This operation is considered normal and will not affect function or durability of the transmission. Over time, the adaptive learning process will fully update transmission operation.

1. **Use only a 12-volt supply to start your vehicle.**
2. Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle as this could damage the vehicle's electrical system.
3. Park the booster vehicle close to the hood of the disabled vehicle making sure the two vehicles **do not** touch. Set the parking brake on both vehicles and stay clear of the engine cooling fan and other moving parts.

## Roadside Emergencies

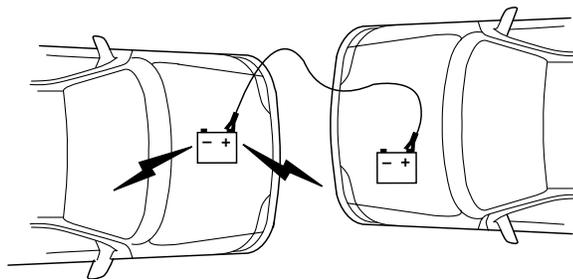
4. Check all battery terminals and remove any excessive corrosion before you attach the battery cables. Ensure that vent caps are tight and level.
5. Turn the heater fan on in both vehicles to protect from any electrical surges. Turn all other accessories off.

### Connecting the jumper cables



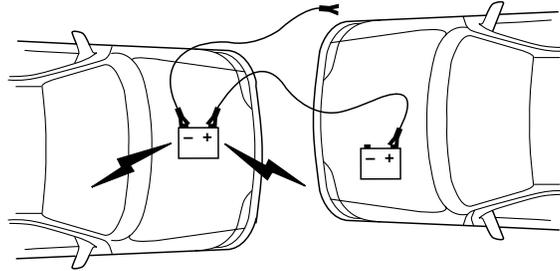
1. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the discharged battery.

**Note:** In the illustrations, *lightning bolts* are used to designate the assisting (boosting) battery.

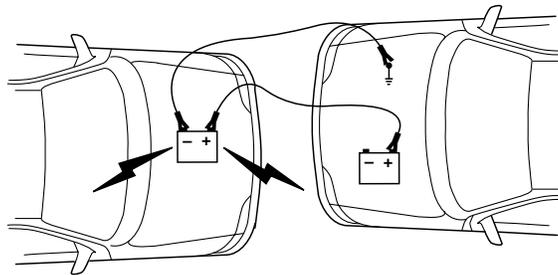


2. Connect the other end of the positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal of the assisting battery.

## Roadside Emergencies



3. Connect the negative (-) cable to the negative (-) terminal of the assisting battery.



4. Make the final connection of the negative (-) cable to an exposed metal part of the stalled vehicle's engine, away from the battery and the carburetor/fuel injection system.

**Note:** Do not attach the negative (-) cable to fuel lines, engine rocker covers, the intake manifold or electrical components as *grounding* points.



**WARNING:** Do not connect the end of the second cable to the negative (-) terminal of the battery to be jumped. A spark may cause an explosion of the gases that surround the battery.

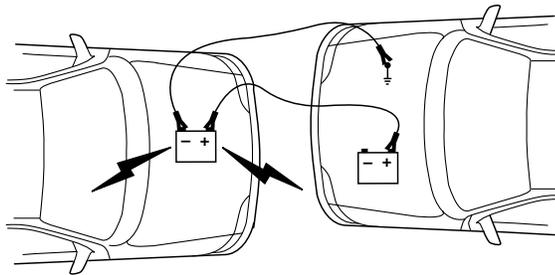
5. Ensure that the cables are clear of fan blades, belts, moving parts of both engines, or any fuel delivery system parts.

## Roadside Emergencies

### Jump starting

1. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and run the engine at moderately increased speed.
2. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.
3. Once the disabled vehicle has been started, run both engines for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

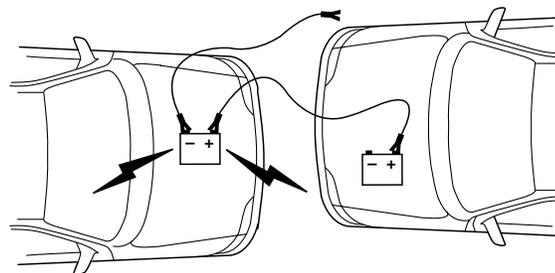
### Removing the jumper cables



### Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.

1. Remove the jumper cable from the *ground* metal surface.

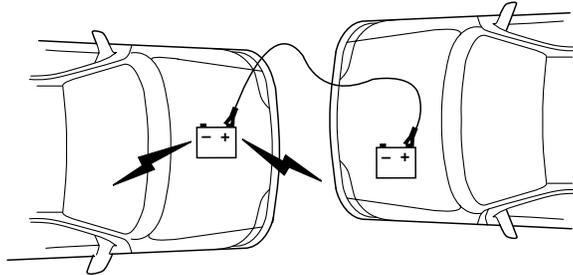
**Note:** In the illustrations, *lightning bolts* are used to designate the assisting (boosting) battery.



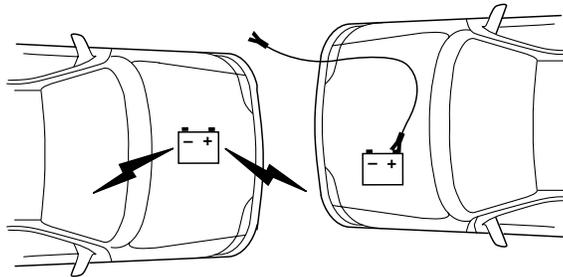
2. Remove the jumper cable on the negative (-) connection of the booster vehicle's battery.

334

## Roadside Emergencies



3. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle's battery.

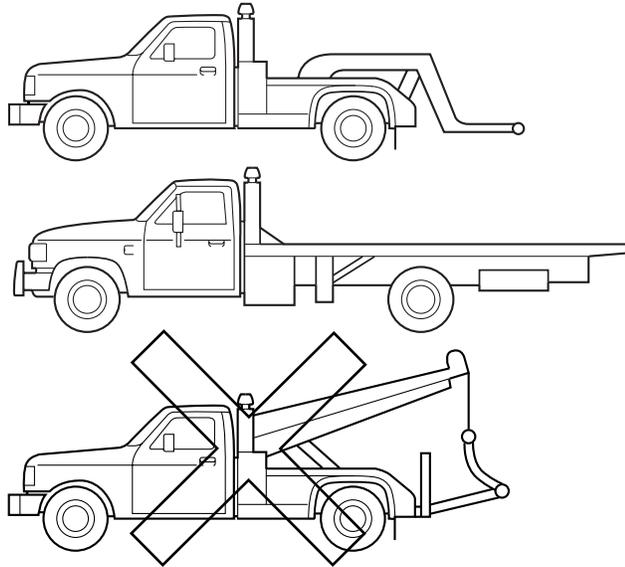


4. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the disabled vehicle's battery.

After the disabled vehicle has been started and the jumper cables removed, allow it to idle for several minutes so the engine computer can *relearn* its idle conditions.

## Roadside Emergencies

### WRECKER TOWING



If you need to have your vehicle towed, contact a professional towing service or, if you are a member of a roadside assistance program, your roadside assistance service provider.

It is recommended that the vehicle be towed with a wheel lift or flatbed equipment. Do not tow with a slingbelt. Ford Motor Company has not approved a slingbelt towing procedure.

On 4x2 vehicles, it is acceptable to tow the vehicle with the front wheels on the ground and the rear wheels off the ground using a wheel lift

On 4x4 vehicles, it is recommended that your vehicle be towed using flatbed equipment with all the wheels off the ground. However, a wheel lift may be used to lift the rear of the vehicle so long as, depending on vehicle configurations, the following preparations are met:

- On Electronic Shift-On-the-Fly (ESOF) vehicles, the 4x4 control is turned to the 2WD position prior to towing.
- On manual-shift transfer case vehicles, the front wheel hub locks are in the FREE position prior to towing.

336

## Roadside Emergencies

**Note:** Towing an ESOF 4x4 vehicle with the front wheels on the ground without disengaging the front hubs may cause damage to the automatic transmission.

**Note:** Towing a 4x2 or an ESOF 4x4 vehicle with the rear wheels on the ground for more than 50 miles (80 km) and/or in excess of 35 mph (56 km/h) may cause damage to the automatic transmission.

**Note:** On Dual Rear Wheel (DRW) vehicles, an outer rear wheel must be removed prior to using a wheel lift wrecker.

Ford Motor Company produces a towing manual for all authorized tow truck operators. Have your tow truck operator refer to this manual for proper hook-up and towing procedures for your vehicle.

**If the vehicle is towed by other means or incorrectly, vehicle damage may occur.**

### Emergency towing

In case of a roadside emergency with a disabled vehicle (without access to wheel dollies, car hauling trailer, or flatbed transport vehicle) your vehicle (regardless of transmission powertrain configuration) can be flat towed (all wheels on the ground) under the following conditions:

- Vehicle is facing forward so that it is being towed in a forward direction.
- Place the transmission in N (Neutral). Refer to *Brake-shift interlock* in the *Driving* chapter for specific instructions if you cannot move the gear shift lever into N (Neutral).
- Maximum speed is not to exceed 35 mph (56 km/h).
- Maximum distance is 50 miles (80 km).

## Customer Assistance

### GETTING THE SERVICES YOU NEED

Warranty repairs to your vehicle must be performed by an authorized Ford, Lincoln, or Mercury dealer. While any authorized dealer handling your vehicle line will provide warranty service, we recommend you return to your selling authorized dealer who wants to ensure your continued satisfaction.

Please note that certain warranty repairs require special training and/or equipment, so not all authorized dealers are authorized to perform all warranty repairs. This means that, depending on the warranty repair needed, you may have to take your vehicle to another authorized dealer.

A reasonable time must be allowed to perform a repair after taking your vehicle to the authorized dealer. Repairs will be made using Ford or Motorcraft® parts, or remanufactured or other parts that are authorized by Ford.

### Away from home

If you are away from home when your vehicle needs service, contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center or use the online resources listed below to find the nearest authorized dealer.

In the United States:

#### Mailing address

Ford Motor Company  
Customer Relationship Center  
P.O. Box 6248  
Dearborn, MI 48121

#### Telephone

1-800-392-3673 (FORD)  
(TDD for the hearing impaired: 1-800-232-5952)

#### Online

Additional information and resources are available online at [www.genuineservice.com](http://www.genuineservice.com).

- U.S. dealer locator by Dealer Name, City/State, or Zip Code
- Owner Guides
- Maintenance Schedules
- Recalls
- Ford Extended Service Plans
- Ford Genuine Accessories

338

## Customer Assistance

- Service specials and promotions.

In Canada:

### **Mailing address (Ford vehicles)**

Customer Relationship Centre  
Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited  
P.O. Box 2000  
Oakville, Ontario L6J 5E4

### **Telephone**

1-800-565-3673 (FORD)

### **Online**

[www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca)

### **Mailing address (Lincoln vehicles)**

Lincoln Centre  
Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited  
P.O. Box 2000  
Oakville, Ontario L6J 5E4

### **Telephone**

1-800-387-9333

### **Online**

[www.lincolncanada.com](http://www.lincolncanada.com)

### **Additional assistance**

If you have questions or concerns, or are unsatisfied with the service you are receiving, follow these steps:

1. Contact your Sales Representative or Service Advisor at your selling/servicing authorized dealer.
2. If your inquiry or concern remains unresolved, contact the Sales Manager, Service Manager or Customer Relations Manager.
3. If you require assistance or clarification on Ford Motor Company policies, please contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center

In order to help you serve you better, please have the following information available when contacting a Customer Relationship Center:

- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
- Your telephone number (home and business)
- The name of the authorized dealer and city where located
- The vehicle's current odometer reading

In some states, you must directly notify Ford in writing before pursuing remedies under your state's warranty laws. Ford is also allowed a final repair attempt in some states.

## Customer Assistance

In the United States, a warranty dispute must be submitted to the BBB AUTO LINE before taking action under the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, or to the extent allowed by state law, before pursuing replacement or repurchase remedies provided by certain state laws. This dispute handling procedure is not required prior to enforcing state created rights or other rights which are independent of the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act or state replacement or repurchase laws.

### IN CALIFORNIA (U.S. ONLY)

California Civil Code Section 1793.2(d) requires that, if a manufacturer or its representative is unable to repair a motor vehicle to conform to the vehicle's applicable express warranty after a reasonable number of attempts, the manufacturer shall be required to either replace the vehicle with one substantially identical or repurchase the vehicle and reimburse the buyer in an amount equal to the actual price paid or payable by the consumer (less a reasonable allowance for consumer use). The consumer has the right to choose whether to receive a refund or replacement vehicle.

California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b) presumes that the manufacturer has had a reasonable number of attempts to conform the vehicle to its applicable express warranties if, within the first 18 months of ownership of a new vehicle or the first 18,000 miles (29,000 km), whichever occurs first:

1. Two or more repair attempts are made on the same non-conformity likely to cause death or serious bodily injury OR
2. Four or more repair attempts are made on the same nonconformity (a defect or condition that substantially impairs the use, value or safety of the vehicle) OR
3. The vehicle is out of service for repair of nonconformities for a total of more than 30 calendar days (not necessarily all at one time)

In the case of 1 or 2 above, the consumer must also notify the manufacturer of the need for the repair of the nonconformity at the following address:

Ford Motor Company  
16800 Executive Plaza Drive  
Mail Drop 3NE-B  
Dearborn, MI 48126

### THE BETTER BUSINESS BUREAU (BBB) AUTO LINE PROGRAM (U.S. ONLY)

Your satisfaction is important to Ford Motor Company and to your dealer. If a warranty concern has not been resolved using the three-step

340

## Customer Assistance

procedure outlined on the first page of the *Customer Assistance* section, you may be eligible to participate in the BBB AUTO LINE program.

The BBB AUTO LINE program consists of two parts – mediation and arbitration. During mediation, a representative of the BBB will contact both you and Ford Motor Company to explore options for settlement of the claim. If an agreement is not reached during mediation and your claim is eligible, you may participate in the arbitration process. An arbitration hearing will be scheduled so that you can present your case in an informal setting before an impartial person. The arbitrator will consider the testimony provided and make a decision after the hearing.

You are not bound by the decision, but should you choose to accept the BBB AUTO LINE decision, Ford must abide by the accepted decision as well. Disputes submitted to the BBB AUTO LINE program are usually decided within forty days after you file your claim with the BBB.

**BBB AUTO LINE Application:** Using the information provided below, please call or write to request a program application. You will be asked for your name and address, general information about your new vehicle, information about your warranty concerns, and any steps you have already taken to try to resolve them. A Customer Claim Form will be mailed that will need to be completed, signed and returned to the BBB along with proof of ownership. Upon receipt, the BBB will review the claim for eligibility under the Program Summary Guidelines.

**You can get more information by calling BBB AUTO LINE at 1-800-955-5100, or writing to:**

**BBB AUTO LINE  
4200 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 800  
Arlington, Virginia 22203-1833**

BBB AUTO LINE applications can also be requested by calling the Ford Motor Company Customer Relationship Center at 1-800-392-3673.

**Note:** Ford Motor Company reserves the right to change eligibility limitations, modify procedures, or to discontinue this process at any time without notice and without obligation.

### **UTILIZING THE MEDIATION/ARBITRATION PROGRAM (CANADA ONLY)**

For vehicles delivered to authorized Canadian dealers. In those cases where you continue to feel that the efforts by Ford of Canada and the authorized dealer to resolve a factory-related vehicle service concern have been unsatisfactory, Ford of Canada participates in an impartial third party mediation/arbitration program administered by the Canadian Motor Vehicle Arbitration Plan (CAMVAP).

## Customer Assistance

The CAMVAP program is a straight-forward and relatively speedy alternative to resolve a disagreement when all other efforts to produce a settlement have failed. This procedure is without cost to you and is designed to eliminate the need for lengthy and expensive legal proceedings.

In the CAMVAP program, impartial third-party arbitrators conduct hearings at mutually convenient times and places in an informal environment. These impartial arbitrators review the positions of the parties, make decisions and, when appropriate, render awards to resolve disputes. CAMVAP decisions are fast, fair, and final as the arbitrator's award is binding both to you and Ford of Canada.

CAMVAP services are available in all territories and provinces. For more information, without charge or obligation, call your CAMVAP Provincial Administrator directly at 1-800-207-0685.

### GETTING ASSISTANCE OUTSIDE THE U.S. AND CANADA

Before exporting your vehicle to a foreign country, contact the appropriate foreign embassy or consulate. These officials can inform you of local vehicle registration regulations and where to find unleaded fuel.

If you cannot find unleaded fuel or can only get fuel with an anti-knock index lower than is recommended for your vehicle, contact a regional office or owner relations/customer relationship office.

The use of leaded fuel in your vehicle without proper conversion may damage the effectiveness of your emission control system and may cause engine knocking or serious engine damage. Ford Motor Company/Ford of Canada is not responsible for any damage caused by use of improper fuel. Using leaded fuel may also result in difficulty importing your vehicle back into the U.S.

If your vehicle must be serviced while you are traveling or living in Central America, the Caribbean, or the Middle East, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer cannot help you, contact:

FORD MOTOR COMPANY  
FORD EXPORT OPERATIONS  
1555 Fairlane Drive  
Fairlane Business Park #3  
Allen Park, Michigan 48101  
U.S.A.  
Telephone: (313) 594-4857  
FAX: (313) 390-0804  
Email: expcac@ford.com  
342

## Customer Assistance

If you are in another foreign country, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer employees cannot help you, they can direct you to the nearest Ford affiliate office.

If you buy your vehicle in North America and then relocate outside of the U.S. or Canada, register your vehicle identification number (VIN) and new address with Ford Motor Company Export Operations.

**Customers in the U.S. should call 1-800-392-3673.**

### ORDERING ADDITIONAL OWNER'S LITERATURE

To order the publications in this portfolio, contact Helm, Incorporated at:

HELM, INCORPORATED  
P.O. Box 07150  
Detroit, Michigan 48207

Or to order a free publication catalog, call toll free: 1-800-782-4356

Monday-Friday 8:00 a.m. - 6:00 p.m. EST

Helm, Incorporated can also be reached by their website:  
[www.helminc.com](http://www.helminc.com).

*(Items in this catalog may be purchased by credit card, check or money order.)*

### Obtaining a French Owner's Guide

French Owner's Guides can be obtained from your authorized dealer or by writing to:

Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited  
Service Publications CHQ202  
The Canadian Road  
P.O. Box 2000  
Oakville, ON, Canada  
L6J 5E4

## Customer Assistance

### REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (U.S. ONLY)

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Ford Motor Company.



If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Ford Motor Company.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to <http://www.safercar.gov>; or write to:

Administrator  
1200 New Jersey Avenue, Southeast  
Washington, D.C. 20590

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from <http://www.safercar.gov>.

### REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (CANADA ONLY)

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform Transport Canada, using their toll-free number: 1-800-333-0510.

## Cleaning

### WASHING THE EXTERIOR

Wash your vehicle regularly with cool or lukewarm water and a neutral pH shampoo, such as Motorcraft® Detail Wash (ZC-3-A), which is available from your authorized dealer.

- Never use strong household detergents or soap, such as dish washing or laundry liquid. These products can discolor and spot painted surfaces.
- Never wash a vehicle that is “hot to the touch” or during exposure to strong, direct sunlight.
- Always use a clean sponge or car wash mitt with plenty of water for best results.
- Dry the vehicle with a chamois or soft terry cloth towel in order to eliminate water spotting.
- It is especially important to wash the vehicle regularly during the winter months, as dirt and road salt are difficult to remove and cause damage to the vehicle.
- Immediately remove items such as gasoline, diesel fuel, bird droppings and insect deposits because they can cause damage to the vehicle’s paintwork and trim over time. Use Motorcraft® Bug and Tar Remover (ZC-42), which is available from your authorized dealer.
- Remove any exterior accessories, such as antennas, before entering a car wash.
- **Suntan lotions and insect repellents can damage any painted surface; if these substances come in contact with your vehicle, wash off as soon as possible.**
- **If your vehicle is equipped with running boards, do not use rubber, plastic and vinyl protectant products on the running board surface, as the area may become slippery.**

### Exterior chrome

- Wash the vehicle first, using cool or lukewarm water and a neutral pH shampoo, such as Motorcraft® Detail Wash (ZC-3-A).
- Use Motorcraft® Custom Bright Metal Cleaner (ZC-15), available from your authorized dealer. Apply the product as you would a wax to clean bumpers and other chrome parts; allow the cleaner to dry for a few minutes, then wipe off the haze with a clean, dry rag.
- **Never use abrasive materials such as steel wool or plastic pads as they can scratch the chrome surface.**

## Cleaning

### WAXING

- Wash the vehicle first.
- Do not use waxes that contain abrasives; use Motorcraft® Premium Liquid Wax (ZC-53-A), which is available from your authorized dealer, or an equivalent quality product.
- Do not allow paint sealant to come in contact with any non-body (low-gloss black) colored trim, such as grained door handles, roof racks, bumpers, side moldings, mirror housings or the windshield cowl area. The paint sealant will “gray” or stain the parts over time.

### PAINT CHIPS

Your authorized dealer has touch-up paint to match your vehicle's color. Take your color code (printed on a sticker in the driver's door jamb) to your authorized dealer to ensure you get the correct color.

- Remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout before repairing paint chips.
- Always read the instructions before using the products.

### ALUMINUM WHEELS AND WHEEL COVERS

Aluminum wheels and wheel covers are coated with a clearcoat paint finish. In order to maintain their shine:

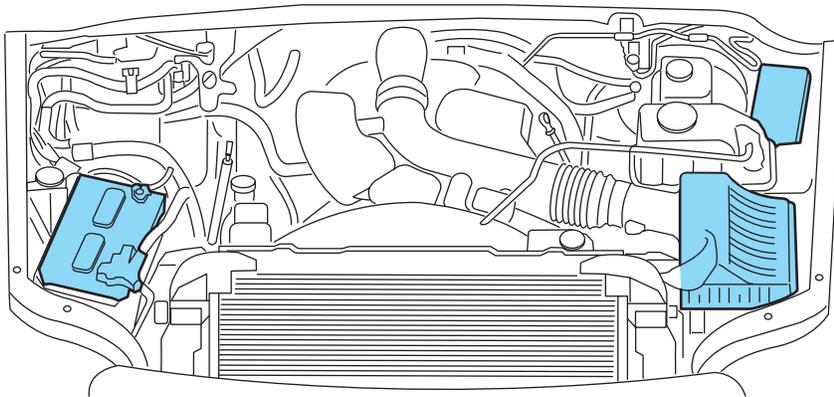
- Clean weekly with Motorcraft® Wheel and Tire Cleaner (ZC-37-A), which is available from your authorized dealer. Heavy dirt and brake dust accumulation may require agitation with a sponge. Rinse thoroughly with a strong stream of water.
- Never apply any cleaning chemical to hot or warm wheel rims or covers.
- Some automatic car washes may cause damage to the finish on your wheel rims or covers. Chemical-strength cleaners, or cleaning chemicals, in combination with brush agitation to remove brake dust and dirt, could wear away the clearcoat finish over time.
- Do not use hydrofluoric acid-based or high caustic-based wheel cleaners, steel wool, fuels or strong household detergent.
- To remove tar and grease, use Motorcraft® Bug and Tar Remover (ZC-42), available from your authorized dealer.

## Cleaning

### ENGINE

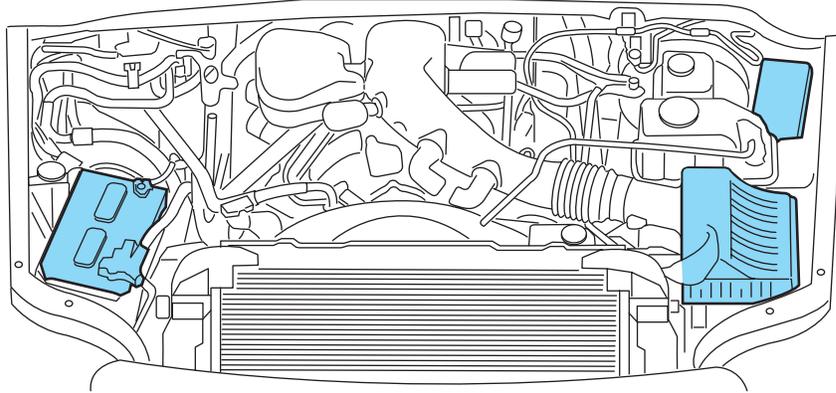
Engines are more efficient when they are clean because grease and dirt buildup keep the engine warmer than normal. When washing:

- Take care when using a power washer to clean the engine. The high-pressure fluid could penetrate the sealed parts and cause damage.
- Do not spray a hot engine with cold water to avoid cracking the engine block or other engine components.
- Spray Motorcraft® Engine Shampoo and Degreaser (ZC-20) on all parts that require cleaning and pressure rinse clean.
- Never wash or rinse the engine while it is running; water in the running engine may cause internal damage.
- Never wash or rinse any ignition coil, spark plug wire or spark plug well, or the area in and around these locations.
- Cover the highlighted areas to prevent water damage when cleaning the engine.



- **5.4L V8 gasoline engine**

## Cleaning



- **6.8L V10 gasoline engine**

### PLASTIC (NON-PAINTED) EXTERIOR PARTS

Use only approved products to clean plastic parts. These products are available from your authorized dealer.

- For routine cleaning, use Motorcraft® Detail Wash (ZC-3-A).
- If tar or grease spots are present, use Motorcraft® Bug and Tar Remover (ZC-42).

### WINDOWS AND WIPER BLADES

The windshield, rear and side windows and the wiper blades should be cleaned regularly. If the wipers do not wipe properly, substances on the vehicle's glass or the wiper blades may be the cause. These may include hot wax treatments used by commercial car washes, water repellent coatings, tree sap, or other organic contamination; these contaminants may cause squeaking or chatter noise from the blades, and streaking and smearing of the windshield. To clean these items, follow these tips:

- The windshield, rear windows and side windows may be cleaned with a non-abrasive cleaner such as Motorcraft® Ultra-Clear Spray Glass Cleaner (ZC-23) in the U.S., or Premium Quality Windshield Washer Fluid [CXC-37-(A, B, D or F)] in Canada, available from your authorized dealer.
- The wiper blades can be cleaned with isopropyl (rubbing) alcohol or Motorcraft® Premium Windshield Washer Concentrate (ZC-32-A),

348

## Cleaning

available from your authorized dealer. This washer fluid contains special solution in addition to alcohol which helps to remove the hot wax deposited on the wiper blade and windshield from automated car wash facilities. Be sure to replace wiper blades when they appear worn or do not function properly.

- Do not use abrasives, as they may cause scratches.
- Do not use fuel, kerosene, or paint thinner to clean any parts.

### **INSTRUMENT PANEL/INTERIOR TRIM AND CLUSTER LENS (EXCEPT HARLEY-DAVIDSON)**

Clean the instrument panel, interior trim areas and cluster lens with a clean and damp, white cotton cloth, then with a clean and dry, white cotton cloth.

- Avoid cleaners or polishes that increase the gloss of the upper portion of the instrument panel. The dull finish in this area helps protect the driver from undesirable windshield reflection.
- Be certain to wash or wipe your hands clean if you have been in contact with certain products such as insect repellent and suntan lotion in order to avoid possible damage to the interior painted surfaces.
- Do not use household or glass cleaners as these may damage the finish of the instrument panel, interior trim and cluster lens.



**WARNING:** Do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents when cleaning the steering wheel or instrument panel to avoid contamination of the airbag system.

If a staining liquid like coffee/juice has been spilled on the instrument panel or on interior trim surfaces, clean as follows:

1. Wipe up spilled liquid using a clean white cotton cloth.
2. Wipe the surface with a damp, clean, white cotton cloth. For more thorough cleaning, use a mild soap and water solution. If the spot cannot be completely cleaned by this method, the area may be cleaned using a commercially available cleaning product designed for automotive interiors.
3. If necessary, apply more soap and water solution or cleaning product to a clean, white, cotton cloth and press the cloth onto the soiled area—allow this to set at room temperature for 30 minutes.
4. Remove the soaked cloth, and if it is not soiled badly, use this cloth to clean the area by using a rubbing motion for 60 seconds.

## Cleaning

5. Following this, wipe area dry with a clean, white, cotton cloth.

### **INSTRUMENT PANEL AND CONSOLE (HARLEY-DAVIDSON ONLY)**

Your vehicle's instrument panel and console are uniquely painted with both high and low gloss paints that require special care. The high gloss area is similar to that of the vehicle's exterior; the low gloss area is designed to help protect the driver from undesirable windshield reflection.

#### **High gloss paint area**

In order to maintain the finish of the instrument panel and console, the high gloss areas should be treated similar to the that of exterior paint or glossy plastic surfaces. When cleaning the high gloss areas:

- **Do not use** paper towels or newspaper.
- **Do not use** silicone or Teflont® (PTFE)-based products.

Dust the high gloss areas with a clean, dry cloth, or use Motorcraft® Dusting Cloth (ZC-24 or ZC-25) or Motorcraft® Dusting Cloth Mitts (ZC-47).

For general cleaning, use mild, soapy water and a soft, damp cloth, then dry with a clean, dry cloth; or Motorcraft® Ultra-Clear Spray Glass Cleaner (ZC-23).

For removal of fine scuffs and scratches, use Scotch-Brite Microfiber Cloth or cheese cloth along with Motorcraft® Premium Liquid Wax (ZC-53-A), Motorcraft® Paint Sealant (ZC-45), or Motorcraft® Custom Clear Coat Polish (ZC-8-A). Note: Removal of deep scuffs and scratches should be performed by an authorized dealer or an experienced repair facility.

#### **Low gloss paint area**

The low gloss area of the instrument panel's upper dash should be cleaned with mild, soapy water and a soft, damp cloth, then dried with a clean, dry cloth. When cleaning the low gloss areas:

- **Do not use** paper towels or newspaper.
- **Do not use** silicone or Teflont® (PTFE)-based products.
- **Do not use** exterior paint waxes or sealants.

Dust the low gloss areas with a clean, dry cloth, or use Motorcraft® Dusting Cloth (ZC-24 or ZC-25) or Motorcraft® Dusting Cloth Mitts (ZC-47).

350

## Cleaning

### INTERIOR

For fabric, carpets, cloth seats and safety belts:

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
- Remove light stains and soil with Motorcraft® Professional Strength Carpet & Upholstery Cleaner (ZC-54).
- If grease or tar is present on the material, spot-clean the area first with Motorcraft® Spot and Stain Remover (ZC-14). In Canada, use Motorcraft® Multi-Purpose Cleaner (CXC-101).
- If a ring forms on the fabric after spot cleaning, clean the entire area immediately (but do not oversaturate) or the ring will set.
- Do not use household cleaning products or glass cleaners, which can stain and discolor the fabric and affect the flame retardant abilities of the seat materials.



**WARNING:** Do not use cleaning solvents, bleach or dye on the vehicle's seatbelts, as these actions may weaken the belt webbing.

### LEATHER SEATS (IF EQUIPPED, EXCEPT FOR THE KING RANCH F-250 AND F-350 CREW CAB)

Your leather seating surfaces have a clear, protective coating over the leather.

**For King Ranch F-250 and F-350 Crew Cab leather seats, refer to separate section in this chapter.**

- For routine cleaning, wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth. For more thorough cleaning, wipe the surface with a mild soap and water solution. In Canada, use Motorcraft® Vinyl Cleaner (CXC-93). Dry the area with a soft cloth.
- If the leather cannot be completely cleaned using a mild soap and water solution, the leather may be cleaned using a commercially available cleaning product designed for automotive interiors.
- Do not use household cleaning products, alcohol solutions, solvents or cleaners intended for rubber, vinyl and plastics, or oil/petroleum-based leather conditioners. These products may cause premature wearing of the clear, protective coating on the seat.

**Note:** In some instances, color or dye transfer can occur when wet clothing comes in contact with leather upholstery. If this occurs, the leather should be cleaned immediately to avoid permanent staining.

## Cleaning

### LEATHER SEATS FOR THE KING RANCH F-250 AND F-350 CREW CAB ONLY (IF EQUIPPED)

Your vehicle is equipped with seating covered in premium, top-grain leather which is extremely durable, but still requires special care and maintenance in order to ensure longevity and comfort.

Regular cleaning and conditioning will maintain the appearance of the leather. Failure to care for the leather can result in drying out and fading of the material.

**Note:** In some instances, color or dye transfer can occur when wet clothing comes in contact with leather upholstery. If this occurs, the leather should be cleaned immediately to avoid permanent staining.

#### Cleaning

For dirt, use a vacuum cleaner then use a clean, damp cloth or soft brush.

For routine cleaning, wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth. For more thorough cleaning, wipe the surface with a mild soap. If the leather cannot be completely cleaned using a mild soap and water solution, the leather may be cleaned using a commercially available cleaning product “Tanners Preserve Leather Cleaner” and a 3M “Type T” scrubbing pad.

- Clean spills as quickly as possible.
- Test any cleaner or stain remover on an inconspicuous part of the leather as cleaners may darken the leather. For more specific cleaning information, contact the King Ranch Saddle Shop at 1-800-282-KING (5464).
- Do not spill coffee, ketchup, mustard, orange juice or oil-based products on the leather as they may permanently stain the leather.
- Do not use household cleaning products, alcohol solutions, solvents or cleaners intended for rubber, vinyl or plastics.

#### Scratches

Natural Markings - Because the leather in the seat comes from genuine steer hides, there will be evidence of naturally occurring markings, such as small scars. These markings give character to the seating covers and should be considered as proof of a genuine leather product.

In order to lessen the appearance of certain scratches and other wear marks, apply conditioner on the affected area following the same instructions as in the *Conditioning* section.

## Cleaning

### Conditioning

Bottles of King Ranch Leather Conditioner are available at the King Ranch Saddle Shop. Visit the Web site at [www.krsaddleshop.com](http://www.krsaddleshop.com), or telephone (in the United States) 1-800-282-KING (5464). If you are unable to obtain King Ranch Leather Conditioner, use another premium leather conditioner.

- Apply your first conditioning treatment within six months of taking delivery of your vehicle. Condition twice yearly in order to replenish lost oils and revitalize the aroma, suppleness and resilience of the leather.
- Clean the surfaces using the steps outlined in the *Cleaning* section.
- Ensure the leather is dry then apply a nickel-sized amount of conditioner to a clean, dry cloth
- Rub the conditioner into leather until it disappears. Allow the conditioner to dry and repeat the process for the entire interior. If a film appears, wipe off film with a dry, clean cloth.

### UNDERBODY

Flush the complete underside of your vehicle frequently. Keep body and door drain holes free from packed dirt.

**Note:** Use care when using a power washer to clean the driveline, especially the driveshaft and interfacing components. The high-pressure fluid could penetrate the sealed parts and cause damage.

### FORD, LINCOLN AND MERCURY CAR CARE PRODUCTS

Your authorized dealer has many quality products available to clean your vehicle and protect its finishes. These quality products have been specifically engineered to fulfill your automotive needs; they are custom designed to complement the style and appearance of your vehicle. Each product is made from high quality materials that meet or exceed rigid specifications. For best results, use the following products or products of equivalent quality:

Motorcraft® Bug and Tar Remover (ZC-42)

Motorcraft® Car Care Kit (ZC-26)

Motorcraft® Custom Bright Metal Cleaner (ZC-15)

Motorcraft® Custom Clear Coat Polish (ZC-8-A)

Motorcraft® Detail Wash (ZC-3-A)

Motorcraft® Dusting Cloth (ZC-24)

## Cleaning

Motorcraft® Engine Shampoo and Degreaser (U.S. only) (ZC-20)  
Motorcraft® Engine Shampoo (Canada only) (CXC-66-A)  
Motorcraft® Multi-Purpose Cleaner (Canada only) (CXC-101)  
Motorcraft® Premium Car Wash Concentrate (U.S. only) (ZC-17-B)  
Motorcraft® Premium Glass Cleaner (Canada only) (CXC-100)  
Motorcraft® Premium Liquid Wax (ZC-53-A)  
Motorcraft® Professional Strength Carpet & Upholstery Cleaner (ZC-54)  
Motorcraft® Spot and Stain Remover (U.S. only) (ZC-14)  
Motorcraft® Tire Clean and Shine (ZC-28)  
Motorcraft® Ultra-Clear Spray Glass Cleaner (ZC-23)  
Motorcraft® Vinyl Cleaner (Canada only) (CXC-93)  
Motorcraft® Vinyl Conditioner (Canada only) (CXC-94)  
Motorcraft® Wheel and Tire Cleaner (ZC-37-A)

## Maintenance and Specifications

### SERVICE RECOMMENDATIONS

To help you service your vehicle, we provide *scheduled maintenance information* which makes tracking routine service easy.

If your vehicle requires professional service, your authorized dealer can provide the necessary parts and service. Check your *Warranty Guide/Customer Information Guide* to find out which parts and services are covered.

Use only recommended fuels, lubricants, fluids and service parts conforming to specifications. Motorcraft® parts are designed and built to provide the best performance in your vehicle.

### PRECAUTIONS WHEN SERVICING YOUR VEHICLE

- Do not work on a hot engine.
- Make sure that nothing gets caught in moving parts.
- Do not work on a vehicle with the engine running in an enclosed space, unless you are sure you have enough ventilation.
- Keep all open flames and other burning material (such as cigarettes) away from the battery and all fuel related parts.

### Working with the engine off

1. For vehicles equipped with an automatic transmission, set the parking brake and shift to P (Park). For vehicles equipped with a manual transmission, set the parking brake, press and hold the clutch pedal, place the gearshift in 1 (First), and release the clutch pedal.
2. Turn off the engine and remove the key.
3. Block the wheels.

### Working with the engine on

1. For vehicles equipped with an automatic transmission, set the parking brake and shift to P (Park). For vehicles equipped with a manual transmission, set the parking brake, press and hold the clutch pedal, place the gearshift in N (Neutral), and release the clutch pedal.
2. Block the wheels.

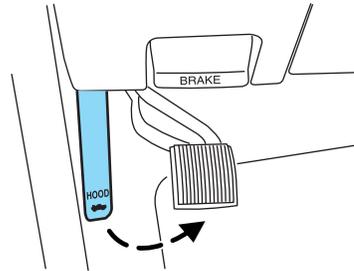


**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and/or personal burn injuries, do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

## Maintenance and Specifications

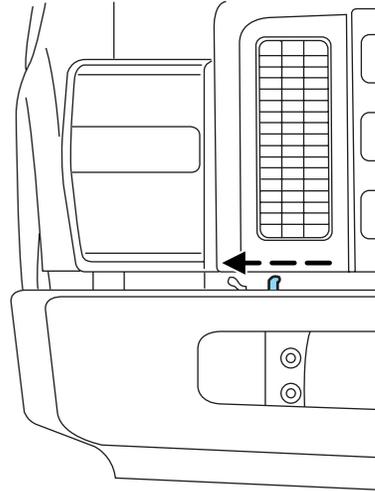
### OPENING THE HOOD

1. Inside the vehicle, pull the hood release handle located under the bottom left corner of the instrument panel.



2. Go to the front of the vehicle and release the auxiliary latch located below the passenger side of the grille, next to the headlamp. Slide the handle to release the auxiliary latch.

3. Lift the hood until the lift cylinders hold it open.

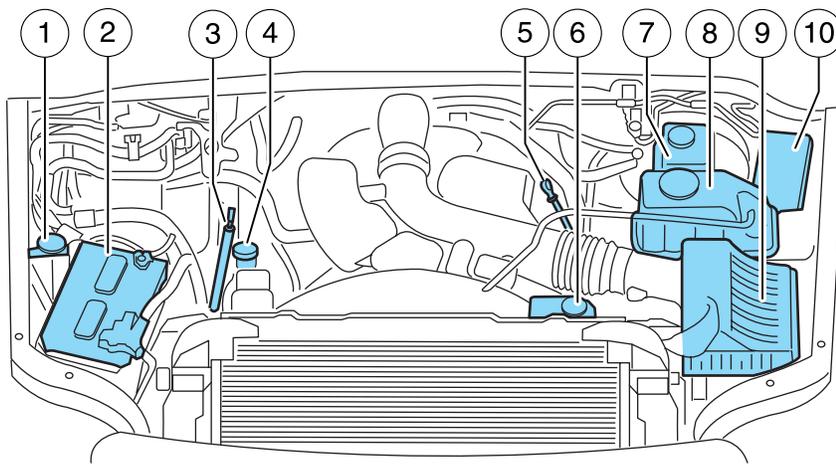


## Maintenance and Specifications

### IDENTIFYING COMPONENTS IN THE ENGINE COMPARTMENT

Refer to the *6.0 and 6.4 Liter Power Stroke Direct Injection Turbo Diesel Owner's Guide Supplement* for diesel engine component locations.

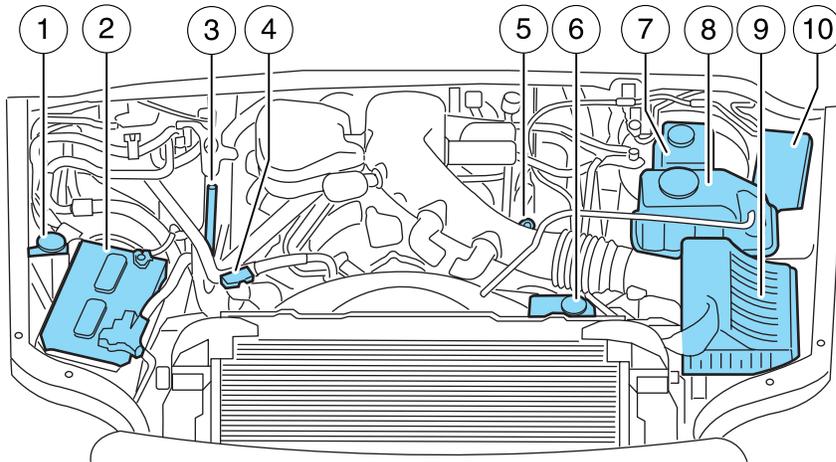
#### 5.4L V8 gasoline engines



1. Windshield washer fluid reservoir
2. Battery
3. Transmission fluid dipstick (automatic transmission)
4. Engine oil filler cap
5. Engine oil dipstick
6. Power steering fluid reservoir
7. Brake fluid reservoir
8. Engine coolant reservoir
9. Air filter assembly
10. Power distribution box

## Maintenance and Specifications

### 6.8L V10 gasoline engine



1. Windshield washer fluid reservoir
2. Battery
3. Automatic transmission fluid dipstick
4. Engine oil filler cap
5. Engine oil dipstick
6. Power steering fluid reservoir
7. Brake fluid reservoir
8. Engine coolant reservoir
9. Air filter assembly
10. Power distribution box

## Maintenance and Specifications

### WINDSHIELD WASHER FLUID

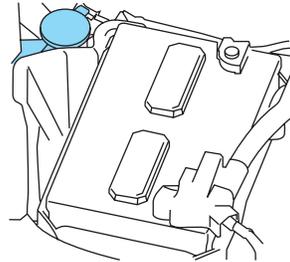
Add fluid to fill the reservoir if the level is low. In very cold weather, do not fill the reservoir completely.

Only use a washer fluid that meets Ford specifications. Do not use any special washer fluid such as windshield water repellent type fluid or bug wash. They may cause squeaking, chatter noise, streaking and smearing. Refer to

*Maintenance product specifications and capacities* in this chapter.

State or local regulations on volatile organic compounds may restrict the use of methanol, a common windshield washer antifreeze additive.

Washer fluids containing non-methanol antifreeze agents should be used only if they provide cold weather protection without damaging the vehicle's paint finish, wiper blades or washer system.

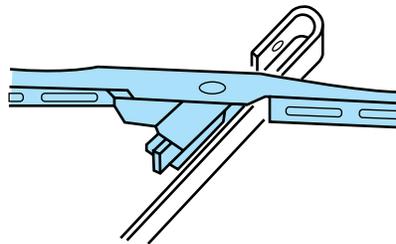


**WARNING:** If you operate your vehicle in temperatures below 40°F (5°C), use washer fluid with antifreeze protection. Failure to use washer fluid with antifreeze protection in cold weather could result in impaired windshield vision and increase the risk of injury or accident.

### CHANGING THE WIPER BLADES

1. Pull the wiper arm away from the vehicle. Turn the blade at an angle from the wiper arm. Press the lock tab to release the blade and pull the wiper blade down toward the windshield to remove it from the arm.

2. Attach the new wiper to the wiper arm and press it into place until a click is heard.



Replace wiper blades at least once per year for optimum performance.

Poor wiper quality can be improved by cleaning the wiper blades and the windshield. Refer to *Windows and wiper blades* in the *Cleaning* chapter.

## Maintenance and Specifications

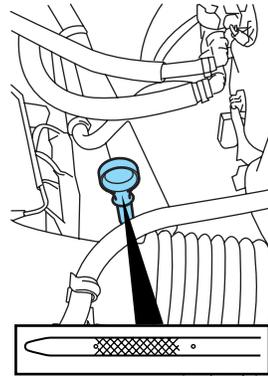
To prolong the life of the wiper blades, it is highly recommended to scrape off the ice on the windshield before turning on the wipers. The layer of ice has many sharp edges and can damage the micro edge of the wiper rubber element.

### ENGINE OIL

#### Checking the engine oil

Refer to the *scheduled maintenance information* for the appropriate intervals for checking the engine oil.

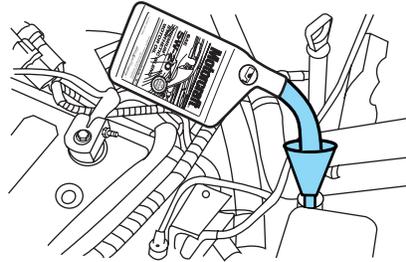
1. Make sure the vehicle is on level ground.
2. Turn the engine off and wait 15 minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan.
3. Set the parking brake and ensure the gearshift is securely latched in P (Park) (automatic transmission) or 1 (First) (manual transmission).
4. Open the hood. Protect yourself from engine heat.
5. Locate and carefully remove the engine oil dipstick.
  - 5.4L/6.8L gasoline engines only; for diesel engine information, refer to the *6.0 and 6.4 Liter Direct Injection Turbo Diesel Owner's Guide Supplement*.



6. Wipe the dipstick clean. Insert the dipstick fully, then remove it again.
  - If the oil level is **between the MIN and MAX marks**, the oil level is acceptable. **DO NOT ADD OIL.**

## Maintenance and Specifications

- If the oil level is below the MIN mark, add enough oil to raise the level within the MIN-MAX range.



- Oil levels above the MAX mark may cause engine damage. Some oil must be removed from the engine by a service technician.
7. Put the dipstick back in and ensure it is fully seated.

### Adding engine oil

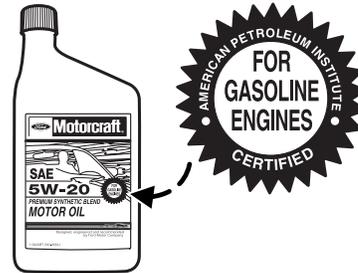
1. Check the engine oil. For instructions, refer to *Checking the engine oil* in this chapter.
2. If the engine oil level is not within the normal range, add only certified engine oil of the recommended viscosity. Remove the engine oil filler cap and use a funnel to pour the engine oil into the opening.
3. Recheck the engine oil level. Make sure the oil level is not above the normal operating range on the engine oil level dipstick.
4. Install the dipstick and ensure it is fully seated.
5. Fully install the engine oil filler cap by turning the filler cap clockwise 1/4 of a turn until three clicks are heard or until the cap is fully seated.

**To avoid possible oil loss, DO NOT operate the vehicle with the engine oil level dipstick and/or the engine oil filler cap removed.**

## Maintenance and Specifications

### Engine oil and filter recommendations

Look for this certification trademark.



### Use SAE 5W-20 engine oil

Only use oils “Certified For Gasoline Engines” by the American Petroleum Institute (API). An oil with this trademark symbol conforms to the current engine and emission system protection standards and fuel economy requirements of the International Lubricant Standardization and Approval Committee (ILSAC), comprised of U.S. and Japanese automobile manufacturers.

To protect your engine and engine’s warranty, use Motorcraft® SAE 5W-20 or an equivalent SAE 5W-20 oil meeting Ford specification WSS-M2C930-A. **SAE 5W-20 oil provides optimum fuel economy and durability performance meeting all requirements for your vehicle’s engine.** Refer to *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* later in this chapter for more information.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives, cleaners or other engine treatments. They are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that is not covered by Ford warranty.

Change your engine oil and filter according to the appropriate schedule listed in the *scheduled maintenance information*.

Ford production and Motorcraft® replacement oil filters are designed for added engine protection and long life. If a replacement oil filter is used that does not meet Ford material and design specifications, start-up engine noises or knock may be experienced.

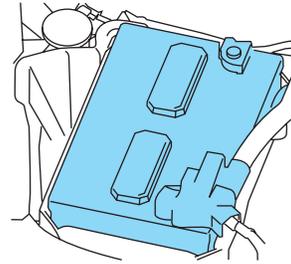
It is recommended you use the appropriate Motorcraft® oil filter or another with equivalent performance for your engine application.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### BATTERY



**WARNING:** This vehicle may be equipped with more than one battery, removal of cable from only one battery does not disconnect the vehicle electrical system. Be sure to disconnect cables from all batteries when disconnecting power. Failure to do so may cause serious personal injury or property damage.



Your vehicle is equipped with a Motorcraft® maintenance-free battery which normally does not require additional water during its life of service.

**If your battery has a cover/shield, make sure it is reinstalled after the battery has been cleaned or replaced.**

For longer, trouble-free operation, keep the top of the battery clean and dry. Also, make certain the battery cables are always tightly fastened to the battery terminals.

If you see any corrosion on the battery or terminals, remove the cables from the terminals and clean with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.

It is recommended that the negative battery cable terminal be disconnected from the battery if you plan to store your vehicle for an extended period of time. This will minimize the discharge of your battery during storage.

**Note: Electrical or electronic accessories or components added to the vehicle by the dealer or the owner may adversely affect battery performance and durability.**



**WARNING:** Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide proper ventilation.

## Maintenance and Specifications

 **WARNING:** When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and/or damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.

 **WARNING:** Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.

 **WARNING:** Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. **Wash hands after handling.**

Because your vehicle's engine is also electronically controlled by a computer, some control conditions are maintained by power from the battery. When the battery is disconnected or a new battery is installed, the engine must relearn its idle and fuel trim strategy for optimum driveability and performance. To begin this process:

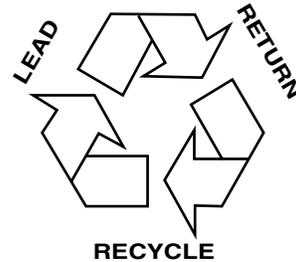
1. With the vehicle at a complete stop, set the parking brake.
2. Put the gearshift in P (Park) (automatic transmission) or the neutral position (manual transmission), turn off all accessories and start the engine.
3. Run the engine until it reaches normal operating temperature.
4. Allow the engine to idle for at least one minute.
5. Turn the A/C on and allow the engine to idle for at least one minute.
6. Drive the vehicle to complete the relearning process.
  - The vehicle may need to be driven 10 miles (16 km) or more to relearn the idle and fuel trim strategy.
  - **If you do not allow the engine to relearn its idle trim, the idle quality of your vehicle may be adversely affected until the idle trim is eventually relearned.**

If the battery has been disconnected or a new battery has been installed, the clock and the preset radio stations must be reset once the battery is reconnected.

364

## Maintenance and Specifications

- Always dispose of automotive batteries in a responsible manner. Follow your local authorized standards for disposal. Call your local authorized recycling center to find out more about recycling automotive batteries.



### ENGINE COOLANT

#### Checking engine coolant

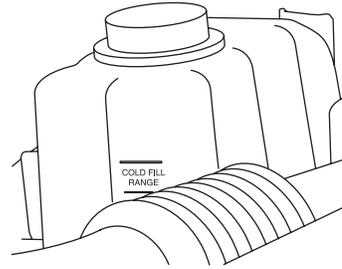
The concentration and level of engine coolant should be checked at the intervals listed in *scheduled maintenance information*. The coolant concentration should be maintained at 50/50 coolant and distilled water, which equates to a freeze point of -34°F (-36°C). Coolant concentration testing is possible with a hydrometer or antifreeze tester. The level of coolant should be maintained at the FULL COLD level or within the COLD FILL RANGE in the coolant reservoir. If the level falls below, add coolant per the instructions in the *Adding engine coolant* section.

Your vehicle was factory-filled with a 50/50 engine coolant and water concentration. If the concentration of coolant falls below 40% or above 60%, the engine parts could become damaged or not work properly. **A 50/50 mixture of coolant and water provides the following:**

- **Freeze protection down to -34°F (-36°C).**
- **Boiling protection up to 265°F (129°C).**
- **Protection against rust and other forms of corrosion.**
- **Proper function of calibrated gauges.**

## Maintenance and Specifications

When the engine is cold, check the level of the engine coolant in the reservoir.



- The engine coolant should be at the FULL COLD level or within the COLD FILL RANGE as listed on the engine coolant reservoir (depending upon application).
- Refer to *scheduled maintenance information* for service interval schedules.

If the engine coolant has not been checked at the recommended interval, the engine coolant reservoir may become low or empty. If the reservoir is low or empty, add engine coolant to the reservoir. Refer to *Adding engine coolant* in this chapter.

**Note:** Automotive fluids are not interchangeable; do not use engine coolant/antifreeze or windshield washer fluid outside of its specified function and vehicle location.

### Adding engine coolant

When adding coolant, make sure it is a 50/50 mixture of engine coolant and distilled water. Add the mixture to the coolant reservoir, **when the engine is cool**, until the appropriate fill level is obtained. If coolant is filled to the COLD FILL RANGE or FULL COLD level when the engine is not cool, the system will remain underfilled.

**WARNING:** Do not add engine coolant when the engine is hot. Steam and scalding liquids released from a hot cooling system can burn you badly. Also, you can be burned if you spill coolant on hot engine parts.

**WARNING:** Do not put engine coolant in the windshield washer fluid container. If sprayed on the windshield, engine coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.

- **DO NOT MIX** different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle. Make sure the correct coolant is used. **DO NOT MIX** recycled coolant

366

## Maintenance and Specifications

and virgin coolant together in the vehicle. Mixing of engine coolants may harm your engine's cooling system. The use of an improper coolant may harm engine and cooling system components and may void the warranty. Refer to *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* in this chapter.

**Note:** Do not use stop leak pellets or cooling system sealants/additives as they can cause damage to the engine cooling and/or heating systems. This damage would not be covered under your vehicle's warranty.

- A large amount of water without engine coolant may be added, in case of emergency, to reach a vehicle service location. In this instance, the cooling system must be drained and refilled with a 50/50 mixture of engine coolant and distilled water as soon as possible. Water alone (without engine coolant) can cause engine damage from corrosion, overheating or freezing.
- **Do not use alcohol, methanol, brine or any engine coolants mixed with alcohol or methanol antifreeze (coolant).** Alcohol and other liquids can cause engine damage from overheating or freezing.
- **Do not add extra inhibitors or additives to the coolant.** These can be harmful and compromise the corrosion protection of the engine coolant.

For vehicles with overflow coolant systems with a non-pressurized cap on the coolant recovery system, add coolant to the coolant recovery reservoir when the engine is cool. Add the proper mixture of coolant and water to the FULL COLD level. For all other vehicles which have a coolant degas system with a pressurized cap, or if it is necessary to remove the coolant pressure relief cap on the radiator of a vehicle with an overflow system, follow these steps to add engine coolant.



**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the engine is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system is under pressure; steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when the cap is loosened slightly.

Add the proper mixture of coolant and water to the cooling system by following these steps:

1. Before you begin, turn the engine off and let it cool.
2. When the engine is cool, wrap a thick cloth around the coolant pressure relief cap on the coolant reservoir (a translucent plastic bottle). Slowly turn cap counterclockwise (left) until pressure begins to release.

367

## Maintenance and Specifications

3. Step back while the pressure releases.
4. When you are sure that all the pressure has been released, use the cloth to turn it counterclockwise and remove the cap.
5. Fill the coolant reservoir slowly with the proper coolant mixture, to within the COLD FILL RANGE or the FULL COLD level on the reservoir. If you removed the radiator cap in an overflow system, fill the radiator until the coolant is visible and radiator is almost full.
6. Replace the cap. Turn until tightly installed. Cap must be tightly installed to prevent coolant loss.

After any coolant has been added, check the coolant concentration (refer to *Checking engine coolant*). If the concentration is not 50/50 (protection to  $-34^{\circ}\text{F}/-36^{\circ}\text{C}$ ), drain some coolant and adjust the concentration. It may take several drains and additions to obtain a 50/50 coolant concentration.

Whenever coolant has been added, the coolant level in the coolant reservoir should be checked the next few times you drive the vehicle. If necessary, add enough 50/50 concentration of engine coolant and distilled water to bring the liquid level to the proper level.

If you have to add more than 1.0 quart (1.0 liter) of engine coolant per month, have your authorized dealer check the engine cooling system. Your cooling system may have a leak. Operating an engine with a low level of coolant can result in engine overheating and possible engine damage.

### Recycled engine coolant

Ford Motor Company does NOT recommend the use of recycled engine coolant since a Ford-approved recycling process is not yet available.



Used engine coolant should be disposed of in an appropriate manner. Follow your community's regulations and standards for recycling and disposing of automotive fluids.

### Coolant refill capacity

To find out how much fluid your vehicle's cooling system can hold, refer to *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* in this chapter.

**If your vehicle is equipped with a diesel engine**, refer to the *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* section of your *6.0 and 6.4 Liter Power Stroke Direct Injection Turbo Diesel Owner's Guide Supplement*.

368

## Maintenance and Specifications

Fill your engine coolant reservoir as outlined in *Adding engine coolant* in this section.

### Severe climates

If you drive in extremely cold climates (less than  $-34^{\circ}\text{F}$  [ $-36^{\circ}\text{C}$ ]):

- **It may be necessary to increase the coolant concentration above 50%.**
- **NEVER increase the coolant concentration above 60%. Increased engine coolant concentrations above 60% will decrease the overheat protection characteristics of the engine coolant and may cause engine damage.**
- **Refer to the chart on the coolant container to ensure the coolant concentration in your vehicle will provide adequate freeze protection at the temperatures in which you drive in the winter months.**

If you drive in extremely hot climates:

- **It is still necessary to maintain the coolant concentration above 40%.**
- **NEVER decrease the coolant concentration below 40%. Decreased engine coolant concentrations below 40% will decrease the corrosion/freeze protection characteristics of the engine coolant and may cause engine damage.**
- **Refer to the chart on the coolant container to ensure the coolant concentration in your vehicle will provide adequate protection at the temperatures in which you drive.**

Vehicles driven year-round in non-extreme climates should use a 50/50 mixture of engine coolant and distilled water for optimum cooling system and engine protection.

### What you should know about fail-safe cooling (if equipped)

If the engine coolant supply is depleted, this feature allows the vehicle to be driven temporarily before incremental component damage is incurred. The “fail-safe” distance depends on ambient temperatures, vehicle load and terrain.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### **How fail-safe cooling works**

If the engine begins to overheat:

- The engine coolant temperature gauge will move to the red (hot) area.
- The message center will indicate the engine is overheating.
- The service engine soon  indicator will illuminate.

If the engine reaches a preset over-temperature condition, the engine will automatically switch to alternating cylinder operation. Each disabled cylinder acts as an air pump and cools the engine.

When this occurs the vehicle will still operate. However:

- The engine power will be limited.
- The air conditioning system will be disabled.

Continued operation will increase the engine temperature and the engine will completely shut down, causing steering and braking effort to increase.

Once the engine temperature cools, the engine can be re-started. Take your vehicle to a service facility as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

### **When fail-safe mode is activated**

You have limited engine power when in the fail-safe mode, so drive the vehicle with caution. The vehicle will not be able to maintain high-speed operation and the engine will run rough. Remember that the engine is capable of completely shutting down automatically to prevent engine damage; therefore:

1. Pull off the road as soon as safely possible and turn off the engine.
2. Arrange for the vehicle to be taken to a service facility.
3. If this is not possible, wait a short period for the engine to cool.
4. Check the coolant level and replenish if low.



**WARNING:** Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

5. Re-start the engine and take your vehicle to a service facility.

**Driving the vehicle without repairing the engine problem increases the chance of engine damage. Take your vehicle to a service facility as soon as possible.**

370

## Maintenance and Specifications

### FUEL FILTER

For fuel filter replacement, see your authorized dealer. Refer to *scheduled maintenance information* for the appropriate intervals for changing the fuel filter.

**Replace the fuel filter with an authorized Motorcraft® part. The customer warranty may be void for any damage to the fuel system if an authorized Motorcraft® fuel filter is not used.**

### WHAT YOU SHOULD KNOW ABOUT AUTOMOTIVE FUELS

#### Important safety precautions



**WARNING:** Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.



**WARNING:** The fuel system may be under pressure. If the fuel filler cap is venting vapor or if you hear a hissing sound, wait until it stops before completely removing the fuel filler cap. Otherwise, fuel may spray out and injure you or others.



**WARNING:** If you do not use the proper fuel filler cap, excessive vacuum in the fuel tank may damage the fuel system or cause the fuel cap to disengage in a collision, which may result in serious personal injury.



**WARNING:** Automotive fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.



**WARNING:** Gasoline may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.

## Maintenance and Specifications

Observe the following guidelines when handling automotive fuel:

- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before refueling your vehicle.
- Always turn off the vehicle before refueling.
- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuel such as gasoline is highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed, call a physician immediately, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be visible for hours.
- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling too much fuel vapor of any kind can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.
- Avoid getting fuel liquid in your eyes. If fuel is splashed in the eyes, remove contact lenses (if worn), flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.
- Fuels can also be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If fuel is splashed on the skin and/or clothing, promptly remove contaminated clothing and wash skin thoroughly with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact with fuel liquid or vapor causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking “Antabuse” or other forms of disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing gasoline vapors, or skin contact could cause an adverse reaction. In sensitive individuals, serious personal injury or sickness may result. If fuel is splashed on the skin, promptly wash skin thoroughly with soap and water. Consult a physician immediately if you experience an adverse reaction.



**!** **WARNING:** When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the filler neck. Never smoke while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Care should be taken to avoid inhaling excess fumes.

**!** **WARNING:** The flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity, which can cause a fire if fuel is pumped into an ungrounded fuel container.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### Refueling



**WARNING:** Fuel vapor burns violently and a fuel fire can cause severe injuries. To help avoid injuries to you and others:

- Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island;
- Turn off your engine when you are refueling;
- Do not smoke if you are near fuel or refueling your vehicle;
- Keep sparks, flames and smoking materials away from fuel;
- Stay outside your vehicle and do not leave the fuel pump unattended when refueling your vehicle — this is against the law in some places;
- Keep children away from the fuel pump; never let children pump fuel.

Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

- Place approved fuel container on the ground.
- DO NOT fill a fuel container while it is in the vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container while filling.
- DO NOT use a device that would hold the fuel pump handle in the fill position.

### Fuel filler cap

When fueling your vehicle:

1. Turn the engine off.
2. Carefully turn the filler cap counterclockwise until it spins off.
3. Pull to remove the cap from the fuel filler pipe.
4. To install the cap, align the tabs on the cap with the notches on the filler pipe.
5. Turn the filler cap clockwise until it clicks.

If the “Check Fuel Cap” indicator comes on and stays on after you start the engine, the fuel filler cap may not be properly installed. Turn off the engine, remove the fuel filler cap, align the cap properly and reinstall it.

## Maintenance and Specifications

**If you must replace the fuel filler cap, replace it with a fuel filler cap that is designed for your vehicle. The vehicle warranty may be void for any damage to the fuel tank or fuel system if the correct genuine Ford or Motorcraft® fuel filler cap is not used.**



**WARNING:** The fuel system may be under pressure. If the fuel filler cap is venting vapor or if you hear a hissing sound, wait until it stops before completely removing the fuel filler cap. Otherwise, fuel may spray out and injure you or others.



**WARNING:** If you do not use the proper fuel filler cap, excessive pressure or vacuum in the fuel tank may damage the fuel system or cause the fuel cap to disengage in a collision, which may result in possible personal injury.

FORD RECOMMENDS BP



### Choosing the right fuel

Use only UNLEADED fuel or UNLEADED fuel blended with a maximum of 10% ethanol. Do not use fuel ethanol (E85), diesel, methanol, leaded fuel or any other fuel. The use of leaded fuel is prohibited by law and could damage your vehicle.

Your vehicle was not designed to use fuel or fuel additives with metallic compounds, including manganese-based additives.

**Note:** Use of any fuel other than those recommended may cause powertrain damage, a loss of vehicle performance, and repairs may not be covered under warranty.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### Octane recommendations

Your vehicle is designed to use “Regular” unleaded gasoline with a pump (R+M)/2 octane rating of 87. Some stations offer fuels posted as “Regular” with an octane rating below 87, particularly in high altitude areas. Fuels with octane levels below 87 are not recommended.



Do not be concerned if your engine sometimes knocks lightly. However, if it knocks heavily under most driving conditions while you are using fuel with the recommended octane rating, see your authorized dealer to prevent any engine damage.

### Fuel quality

If you are experiencing starting, rough idle or hesitation driveability problems, try a different brand of unleaded gasoline. If the problems persist, see your authorized dealer.

Do not add aftermarket fuel additive products to your fuel tank. It should not be necessary to add any aftermarket products to your fuel tank if you continue to use high quality fuel of the recommended octane rating. These products have not been approved for your engine and could cause damage to the fuel system. Repairs to correct the effects of using an aftermarket product in your fuel may not be covered by your warranty.

Many of the world’s automakers approved the World-Wide Fuel Charter that recommends gasoline specifications to provide improved performance and emission control system protection for your vehicle. Gasolines that meet the World-Wide Fuel Charter should be used when available. Ask your fuel supplier about gasolines that meet the World-Wide Fuel Charter.

### Cleaner air

Ford endorses the use of reformulated “cleaner-burning” gasolines to improve air quality, per the recommendations in the *Choosing the right fuel* section.

### Running out of fuel

Avoid running out of fuel because this situation may have an adverse effect on powertrain components.

## Maintenance and Specifications

If you have run out of fuel:

- You may need to cycle the ignition from off to on several times after refueling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. On restarting, cranking time will take a few seconds longer than normal.
- Normally, adding 1 gallon (3.8L) of fuel is enough to restart the engine. If the vehicle is out of fuel and on a steep grade, more than 1 gallon (3.8L) may be required.
- The service engine soon  indicator may come on. For more information on the service engine soon  indicator, refer to *Warning lights and chimes* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter.

### ESSENTIALS OF GOOD FUEL ECONOMY

#### Measuring techniques

Your best source of information about actual fuel economy is you, the driver. You must gather information as accurately and consistently as possible. Fuel expense, frequency of fill-ups or fuel gauge readings are NOT accurate as a measure of fuel economy. We do not recommend taking fuel economy measurements during the first 1,000 miles (1,600 km) of driving (engine break-in period). You will get a more accurate measurement after 2,000 miles–3,000 miles (3,000 km–5,000 km).

#### Filling the tank

The advertised fuel capacity of the fuel tank on your vehicle is equal to the rated refill capacity of the fuel tank as listed in the *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* section of this chapter.

The advertised capacity is the amount of the indicated capacity and the empty reserve combined. Indicated capacity is the difference in the amount of fuel in a full tank and a tank when the fuel gauge indicates empty. Empty reserve is the small amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank after the fuel gauge indicates empty.

**The amount of usable fuel in the empty reserve varies and should not be relied upon to increase driving range. When refueling your vehicle after the fuel gauge indicates empty, you might not be able to refuel the full amount of the advertised capacity of the fuel tank due to the empty reserve still present in the tank.**

For consistent results when filling the fuel tank:

- Turn the engine/ignition switch to the off position prior to refueling, an error in the reading will result if the engine is left running.

376

## Maintenance and Specifications

- Use the same filling rate setting (low — medium — high) each time the tank is filled.
- Allow no more than two automatic click-offs when filling.
- Always use fuel with the recommended octane rating.
- Use a known quality gasoline, preferably a national brand.
- Use the same side of the same pump and have the vehicle facing the same direction each time you fill up.
- Have the vehicle loading and distribution the same every time.

Your results will be most accurate if your filling method is consistent.

### Calculating fuel economy

1. Fill the fuel tank completely and record the initial odometer reading (in miles or kilometers).
2. Each time you fill the tank, record the amount of fuel added (in gallons or liters).
3. After at least three to five tank fill-ups, fill the fuel tank and record the current odometer reading.
4. Subtract your initial odometer reading from the current odometer reading.
5. Follow one of the simple calculations in order to determine fuel economy:

Calculation 1: **Divide total miles traveled by total gallons used.**

Calculation 2: **Multiply liters used by 100, then divide by total kilometers traveled.**

Keep a record for at least one month and record the type of driving (city or highway). This will provide an accurate estimate of the vehicle's fuel economy under current driving conditions. Additionally, keeping records during summer and winter will show how temperature impacts fuel economy. In general, lower temperatures give lower fuel economy.

### Driving style — good driving and fuel economy habits

Give consideration to the lists that follow and you may be able to change a number of variables and improve your fuel economy.

#### **Habits**

- Smooth, moderate operation can yield up to 10% savings in fuel.
- Steady speeds without stopping will usually give the best fuel economy.

## Maintenance and Specifications

- Idling for long periods of time (greater than one minute) may waste fuel.
- Anticipate stopping; slowing down may eliminate the need to stop.
- Sudden or hard accelerations may reduce fuel economy.
- Slow down gradually.
- Driving at reasonable speeds (traveling at 55 mph [88 km/h] uses 15% less fuel than traveling at 65 mph [105 km/h]).
- Revving the engine before turning it off may reduce fuel economy.
- Using the air conditioner or defroster may reduce fuel economy.
- You may want to turn off the speed control in hilly terrain if unnecessary shifting between the top gears occurs. Unnecessary shifting of this type could result in reduced fuel economy.
- Warming up a vehicle on cold mornings is not required and may reduce fuel economy.
- Resting your foot on the brake pedal while driving may reduce fuel economy.
- Combine errands and minimize stop-and-go driving.

### **Maintenance**

- Keep tires properly inflated and use only recommended size.
- Operating a vehicle with the wheels out of alignment will reduce fuel economy.
- Use recommended engine oil. Refer to *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* in this chapter.
- Perform all regularly scheduled maintenance items. Follow the recommended maintenance schedule and owner maintenance checks found in *scheduled maintenance information*.

### **Conditions**

- Heavily loading a vehicle or towing a trailer may reduce fuel economy at any speed.
- Carrying unnecessary weight may reduce fuel economy (approximately 1 mpg [0.4 km/L] is lost for every 400 lb [180 kg] of weight carried).
- Adding certain accessories to your vehicle (for example bug deflectors, rollbars/light bars, running boards, ski/luggage racks) may reduce fuel economy.
- To maximize the fuel economy, drive with the tonneau cover installed (if equipped).

378

## Maintenance and Specifications

- Using fuel blended with alcohol may lower fuel economy.
- Fuel economy may decrease with lower temperatures during the first 8–10 miles (12–16 km) of driving.
- Driving on flat terrain offers improved fuel economy as compared to driving on hilly terrain.
- Transmissions give their best fuel economy when operated in the top cruise gear and with steady pressure on the gas pedal.
- Four-wheel-drive operation (if equipped) is less fuel efficient than two-wheel-drive operation.
- Close windows for high speed driving.

### EPA fuel economy estimates

If applicable, every new vehicle should have a sticker on the window called the Monroney Label which contains EPA fuel economy estimates. Contact your authorized dealer if the Monroney Label is not supplied with your vehicle. The EPA fuel economy estimates should be your guide for the fuel economy comparisons with other vehicles. Your fuel economy may vary depending upon the method of operation and conditions.

### EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM

Your vehicle is equipped with various emission control components and a catalytic converter which will enable your vehicle to comply with applicable exhaust emission standards. To make sure that the catalytic converter and other emission control components continue to work properly:

- Use only the specified fuel listed.
- Avoid running out of fuel.
- Do not turn off the ignition while your vehicle is moving, especially at high speeds.
- Have the items listed in *scheduled maintenance information* performed according to the specified schedule.

The scheduled maintenance items listed in *scheduled maintenance information* are essential to the life and performance of your vehicle and to its emissions system.

If other than Ford, Motorcraft® or Ford-authorized parts are used for maintenance replacements or for service of components affecting emission control, such non-Ford parts should be equivalent to genuine Ford Motor Company parts in performance and durability.

## Maintenance and Specifications

 **WARNING:** Do not park, idle, or drive your vehicle in dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, which can start a fire.

Illumination of the service engine soon  indicator, charging system warning light or the temperature warning light, fluid leaks, strange odors, smoke or loss of engine power could indicate that the emission control system is not working properly.

An improperly operating or damaged exhaust system may allow exhaust to enter the vehicle. Have a damaged or improperly operating exhaust system inspected and repaired immediately.

 **WARNING:** Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment.

Do not make any unauthorized changes to your vehicle or engine. By law, vehicle owners and anyone who manufactures, repairs, services, sells, leases, trades vehicles, or supervises a fleet of vehicles are not permitted to intentionally remove an emission control device or prevent it from working. Information about your vehicle's emission system is on the Vehicle Emission Control Information Decal located on or near the engine. This decal also lists engine displacement.

Please consult your *Warranty Guide/Customer Information Guide* for complete emission warranty information.

### On board diagnostics (OBD-II)

Your vehicle is equipped with a computer that monitors the engine's emission control system. This system is commonly known as the On Board Diagnostics System (OBD-II). The OBD-II system protects the environment by ensuring that your vehicle continues to meet government emission standards. The OBD-II system also assists your authorized dealer in properly servicing your vehicle. When the service engine soon  indicator illuminates, the OBD-II system has detected a malfunction. Temporary malfunctions may cause the service engine soon  indicator to illuminate. Examples are:

1. The vehicle has run out of fuel—the engine may misfire or run poorly.
2. Poor fuel quality or water in the fuel—the engine may misfire or run poorly.

380

## Maintenance and Specifications

3. The fuel cap may not have been securely tightened. See *Fuel filler cap* in this chapter.

4. Driving through deep water—the electrical system may be wet.

These temporary malfunctions can be corrected by filling the fuel tank with good quality fuel, properly tightening the fuel cap or letting the electrical system dry out. After three driving cycles without these or any other temporary malfunctions present, the service engine soon  indicator should stay off the next time the engine is started. A driving cycle consists of a cold engine startup followed by mixed city/highway driving. No additional vehicle service is required.

If the service engine soon  indicator remains on, have your vehicle serviced at the first available opportunity. Although some malfunctions detected by the OBD-II may not have symptoms that are apparent, continued driving with the service engine soon  indicator on can result in increased emissions, lower fuel economy, reduced engine and transmission smoothness, and lead to more costly repairs.

### Readiness for Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) testing

Some state/provincial and local governments may have Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) programs to inspect the emission control equipment on your vehicle. Failure to pass this inspection could prevent you from getting a vehicle registration. Your vehicle may not pass the I/M test if the service engine soon  indicator is on or not working properly (bulb is burned out), or if the OBD-II system has determined that some of the emission control systems have not been properly checked. In this case, the vehicle is considered not ready for I/M testing.

If the service engine soon  indicator is on or the bulb does not work, the vehicle may need to be serviced. Refer to the On board diagnostics (OBD-II) description in this chapter.

If the vehicle's engine or transmission has just been serviced, or the battery has recently run down or been replaced, the OBD-II system may indicate that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing. To determine if the vehicle is ready for I/M testing, turn the ignition key to the on position for 15 seconds without cranking the engine. If the service engine soon  indicator blinks eight times, it means that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing; if the service engine soon  indicator stays on solid, it means that the vehicle is ready for I/M testing.

## Maintenance and Specifications

The OBD-II system is designed to check the emission control system during normal driving. A complete check may take several days. If the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing, the following driving cycle consisting of mixed city and highway driving may be performed:

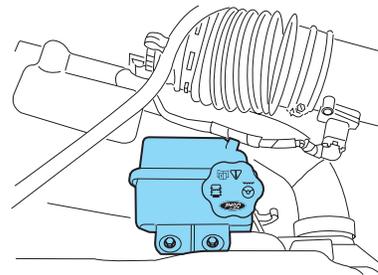
15 minutes of steady driving on an expressway/highway followed by 20 minutes of stop-and-go driving with at least four 30-second idle periods.

Allow the vehicle to sit for at least eight hours without starting the engine. Then, start the engine and complete the above driving cycle. The engine must warm up to its normal operating temperature. Once started, do not turn off the engine until the above driving cycle is complete. If the vehicle is still not ready for I/M testing, the above driving cycle will have to be repeated.

### POWER STEERING FLUID

Check the power steering fluid. Refer to *scheduled maintenance information*. If adding fluid is necessary, use only MERCON® ATF.

- Gasoline engine shown; diesel engine similar. Refer to *Identifying components in the engine compartment in the 6.0 and 6.4 Liter Power Stroke Direct Injection Turbo Diesel Owner Guide Supplement*.



Check the fluid level when it is at ambient temperature, 20°F–80°F (-7°C–25°C):

1. Check the fluid level in the reservoir. It should be between the MIN and MAX range. Do not add fluid if the level is within this range.
2. If the fluid level is low. Add fluid to bring fluid level up to be between the MIN and MAX range.
3. Start the engine.
4. While the engine idles, turn the steering wheel left and right several times.
5. Turn the engine off.
6. Recheck the fluid level in the reservoir. Do not add fluid if the level is between the MIN and MAX range.

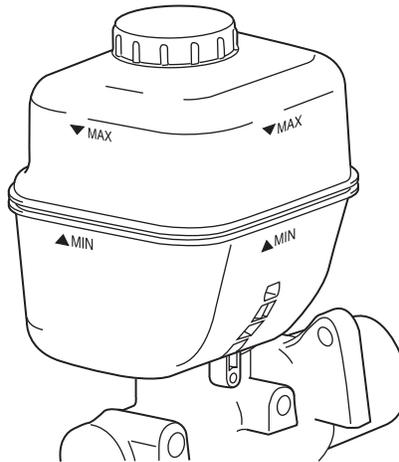
382

## Maintenance and Specifications

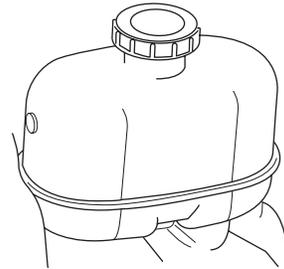
7. If the fluid is low, add fluid in small amounts, continuously checking the level until it is between the MIN and MAX range. Refer to *Maintenance products specifications and capacities* in this chapter for the proper fluid type. Be sure to put the cap back on the reservoir.

### BRAKE FLUID

- Vacuum boost system



- Hydroboost system



The fluid level will drop slowly as the brakes wear, and will rise when the brake components are replaced. Fluid levels between the MIN and MAX lines are within the normal operating range; there is no need to add fluid. If the fluid levels are outside of the normal operating range, the performance of your brake system could be compromised; seek service from your authorized dealer immediately.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### CLUTCH FLUID (IF EQUIPPED)

Check the fluid level. Refer to *scheduled maintenance information* for the service interval schedules.

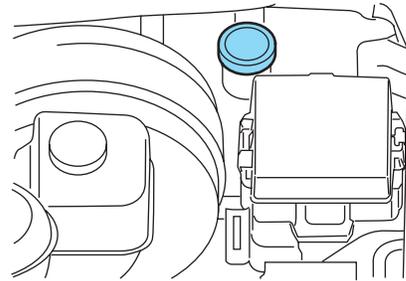
During normal operation, the fluid level in the clutch reservoir should remain constant. If the fluid level drops, refill the fluid level to the step in the reservoir.

Use only a DOT 3 brake fluid designed to meet Ford specifications. Refer to *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* in this chapter.



**WARNING:** Carefully read cautionary information on product label. For MEDICAL EMERGENCY INFORMATION contact a physician or Poison Control Center immediately; on Ford-Motorcraft products call: 1-800-959-3673 (FORD). Failure to follow these instructions may result in personal injury.

1. Clean the reservoir cap before removal to prevent dirt and water from entering the reservoir.
2. Remove cap and rubber diaphragm from reservoir.
3. Add fluid until the level reaches the step in the reservoir.
4. Reinstall rubber diaphragm and cap onto reservoir.



### TRANSMISSION FLUID

#### Checking automatic transmission fluid (if equipped)

Refer to your *scheduled maintenance information* for scheduled intervals for fluid checks and changes. Your transmission does not consume fluid. However, the fluid level should be checked if the transmission is not working properly, i.e., if the transmission slips or shifts slowly or if you notice some sign of fluid leakage.

Automatic transmission fluid expands when warmed. To obtain an accurate fluid check, drive the vehicle until it is at normal operating temperature (approximately 20 miles [30 km]). Verify that the transmission fluid temperature gauge, located on the instrument cluster, is within normal range.

1. Drive the vehicle 20 miles (30 km) or until it reaches normal operating temperature.

## Maintenance and Specifications

2. Park the vehicle on a level surface and engage the parking brake.
3. With the parking brake engaged and your foot on the brake pedal, start the engine and move the gearshift lever through all of the gear ranges. Allow sufficient time for each gear to engage.
4. Latch the gearshift lever in P (Park) and leave the engine running.
5. Remove the dipstick, wiping it clean with a clean, dry lint free rag. If necessary, refer to *Identifying components in the engine compartment* in this chapter for the location of the dipstick.
6. Install the dipstick making sure it is fully seated in the filler tube.
7. Remove the dipstick and inspect the fluid level. The fluid should be in the designated area for normal operating temperature or ambient temperature.

### Low fluid level

Do not drive the vehicle if the fluid level is at the bottom of the dipstick and the ambient temperature is above 50°F (10°C).

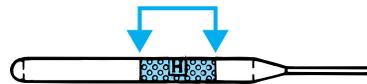


### Correct fluid level

The transmission fluid should be checked at normal operating temperature 150°F-170°F (66°C-77°C) on a level surface. The normal operating temperature can be reached after approximately 20 miles (30 km) of driving.

You can check the fluid without driving if the ambient temperature is above 50°F (10°C). However, if fluid is added at this time, an overfill condition could result when the vehicle reaches normal operating temperature.

The transmission fluid should be in this range if at normal operating temperature (150°F-170°F [66°C-77°C]).



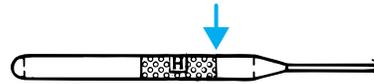
The transmission fluid should be in this range if at ambient temperature (50°F-95°F [10°C-35°C]).



## Maintenance and Specifications

### **High fluid level**

Fluid levels above the safe range may result in transmission failure. An overfill condition of transmission fluid may cause shift and/or engagement concerns and/or possible damage.



High fluid levels can be caused by an overheating condition.

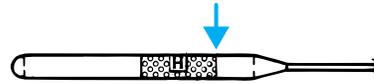
### **Adjusting automatic transmission fluid levels**

Before adding any fluid, make sure the correct type is used. The type of fluid used is normally indicated on the dipstick handle and also in the *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* section in this chapter.

### **Use of a non-approved automatic transmission fluid may cause internal transmission component damage.**

If necessary, add fluid in 1/2 pint (250 ml) increments through the filler tube until the level is correct.

If an overfill occurs, excess fluid should be removed by a qualified technician.



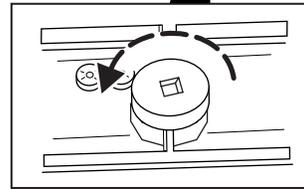
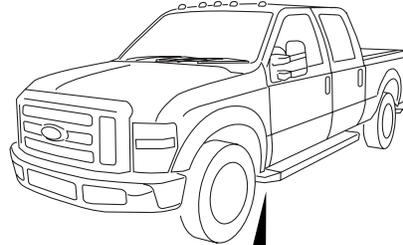
### **An overfill condition of transmission fluid may cause shift and/or engagement concerns and/or possible damage.**

Do not use supplemental transmission fluid additives, treatments or cleaning agents. The use of these materials may affect transmission operation and result in damage to internal transmission components.

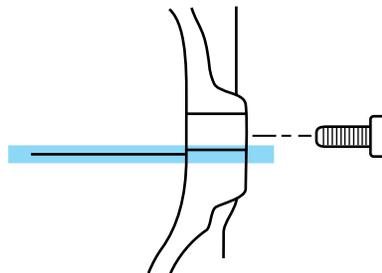
## Maintenance and Specifications

### Checking and adding manual transmission fluid (if equipped)

1. Clean the filler plug.
2. Remove the filler plug and inspect the fluid level.



3. Fluid level should be at the bottom of the opening.
4. Add enough fluid through the filler opening so that the fluid level is at the bottom of the opening.
5. Install and tighten the fill plug securely.

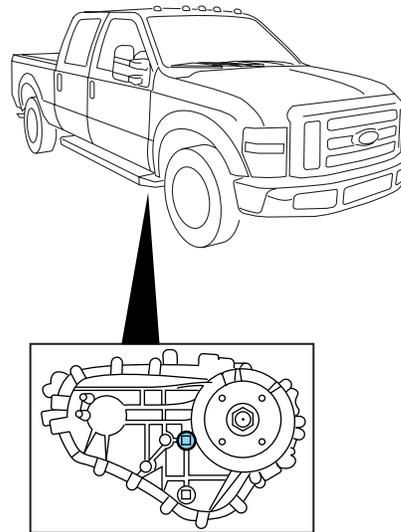


Use only fluid that meets Ford specifications. Refer to *Maintenance Product Specifications and Capacities* in this chapter.

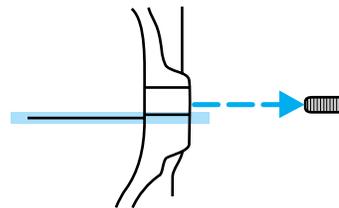
## Maintenance and Specifications

### TRANSFER CASE FLUID (IF EQUIPPED)

1. Clean the filler plug.
2. Remove the filler plug and inspect the fluid level.



3. Add only enough fluid through the filler opening so that the fluid level is at the bottom of the opening.



Use only fluid that meets Ford specifications. Refer to the *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* section in this chapter.

### AIR FILTER

Refer to the *scheduled maintenance information* for the appropriate intervals for changing the air filter element.

When changing the air filter element, use only the Motorcraft® air filter element listed. Refer to *Motorcraft® part numbers* in this chapter.

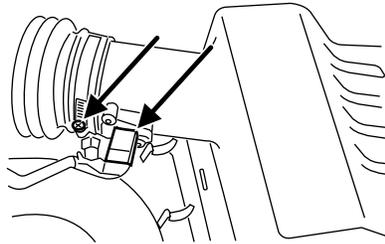
## Maintenance and Specifications

The following procedure is for vehicles equipped with a gasoline engine. If your vehicle is equipped with a diesel engine, refer to the *6.0 and 6.4 Liter Power Stroke Direct Injection Turbo Diesel Owner's Guide Supplement*.

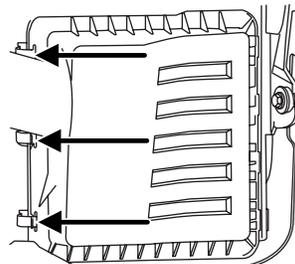
**Note:** Do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

### Changing the air filter element

1. Loosen clamp and disconnect sensor.



2. Release three retainer clamps.



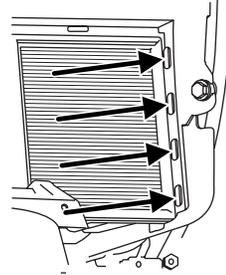
3. Pull air filter cover toward passenger side of vehicle and up to release the tabs. Lift air filter element up and out of housing.

The air filter box needs to be free of any debris before installing a new air filter.

4. Install a new air filter element into the tray assembly.

## Maintenance and Specifications

5. Return air filter cover to original position making sure the four tabs are engaged and secure the three clamps. Tighten clamp on air tube and reconnect sensor.



### MOTORCRAFT PART NUMBERS

Component	5.4L V8/6.8L V10 engines
Air filter element	FA-1883
Fuel filter	FG-1083
Oil filter	FL-820-S
Battery (standard)	BXT-65-650
Battery (optional)	BXT-65-750
Spark plugs-platinum	1
Remote automatic transmission filter	<sup>2, 3</sup>

<sup>1</sup>For spark plug replacement, see your authorized dealer. Refer to the *scheduled maintenance information* for the appropriate intervals for changing the spark plugs.

**Replace the spark plugs with ones that meet Ford material and design specifications for your vehicle, such as Motorcraft® or equivalent replacement parts. The customer warranty may be void for any damage to the engine if such spark plugs are not used.**

<sup>2</sup>Also available with 6.4L diesel engine and TorqShift® transmission. Part number is FT-176.

<sup>3</sup>Also available with 6.4L diesel engine and TorqShift® transmission. Part number is FT-175.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### MAINTENANCE PRODUCT SPECIFICATIONS AND CAPACITIES

Item	Capacity	Ford part name	Ford part number / Ford specification
Front axle	5.8 pints (2.8L)	Motorcraft SAE 80W-90 Premium Rear Axle Lubricant	XY-80W-90-QL / WSP-M2C197-A
Spindle bearing	—	High Temperature 4X4 Front Axle and Wheel Bearing Grease	XG-11 / WSS-M1C267-A1
Rear axle - F-250/350 (10.50 inch axle) <sup>1</sup>	6.9 pints (3.3L)	Motorcraft SAE 75W-140 Synthetic Rear Axle Lubricant	XY-75W140-QL / WSL-M2C192-A
Rear axle - F-350 (DANA M80)	8.5 pints (4.0L)	Motorcraft SAE 75W-90 Synthetic Rear Axle Lubricant	XY-75W90-QLS / WSS-M2C918-A
Rear axle - F-450/550 (Dana S110/S130)	14.0 pints (6.6L)	Motorcraft SAE 75W-140 Synthetic Rear Axle Lubricant	XY-75W140-QL / WSL-M2C192-A
Brake fluid (and clutch fluid, if equipped)	Fill to line or step (for clutch) on reservoir	Motorcraft High Performance DOT 3 Motor Vehicle Brake Fluid	PM-1-C / WSS-M6C62-A or WSS-M6C65-A1
Engine coolant (5.4L V8 engine) <sup>2</sup>	25.7 quarts (24.3L)	Motorcraft Premium Gold Engine Coolant (yellow-colored)	VC-7-B / WSS-M97B51-A1

## Maintenance and Specifications

Item	Capacity	Ford part name	Ford part number / Ford specification
Engine coolant (6.8L V10 engine) <sup>2</sup>	26.7 quarts (25.3L)	Motorcraft Premium Gold Engine Coolant (yellow-colored)	VC-7-B / WSS-M97B51-A1
Engine and fuel coolant - diesel engine	Refer to the 6.0 and 6.4 Liter Power Stroke Direct Injection Turbo Diesel Owner's Guide Supplement		
Engine oil (includes filter change) - 5.4L V8 and 6.8L V10 gas engines <sup>6</sup>	7.0 quarts (6.6L)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Motorcraft SAE 5W-20 Premium Synthetic Blend Motor Oil (US)</li> <li>• Motorcraft SAE 5W-20 Full Synthetic Motor Oil (US)</li> <li>• Motorcraft SAE 5W-20 Super Premium Motor Oil (Canada)</li> <li>• Motorcraft SAE 5W-20 Synthetic Motor Oil (Canada)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• XO-5W20-QSP (US)</li> <li>• XO-5W20-QFS (US)</li> <li>• CXO-5W20-LSP12 (Canada)</li> <li>• CXO-5W-20-LFS12 (Canada) / WSS-M2C930-A and API Certification Mark</li> </ul>
Engine oil (includes filter change) - diesel engine	Refer to the 6.0 and 6.4 Liter Power Stroke Direct Injection Turbo Diesel Owner's Guide Supplement		
Fuel tank - Mid-ship tank (optional on Chassis Cab)	19.0 gallons (71.9L)	—	—

## Maintenance and Specifications

Item	Capacity	Ford part name	Ford part number / Ford specification
Fuel tank - Short box	30.0 gallons (113.4L)	—	—
Fuel tank - Long box	38.0 gallons (143.9L)	—	—
Fuel tank - Aft axle (Chassis cab only)	40.0 gallons (151.4L)	—	—
Hinges, latches, striker plates, fuel filler door hinge and seat tracks	—	Multi-Purpose Grease	XG-4 or XL-5 / ESB-M1C93-B
Lock cylinders	—	Motorcraft Penetrating and Lock Lubricant	XL-1 / None
Transmission / parking brake linkages and pivots, brake and clutch pedal shaft (if equipped)	—	Motorcraft Premium Long-Life Grease	XG-1-C or XG-1-K / WSD-M1C227-A
Power steering fluid	Keep fluid level between MIN and MAX on reservoir	Motorcraft MERCON® V ATF	XT-5-QM / MERCON® V
Transfer case fluid	2.0 quarts (1.9L)	Motorcraft Transfer Case Fluid	XL-12 / —
Manual transmission fluid (S6-650) - gas engine	5.8 quarts (5.5L) <sup>4</sup>	Motorcraft MERCON® V ATF	XT-5-QM/DM / MERCON® V

## Maintenance and Specifications

Item	Capacity	Ford part name	Ford part number / Ford specification
Manual transmission fluid (M6HDW) - diesel engine	Refer to the 6.0 and 6.4 Liter Power Stroke Direct Injection Turbo Diesel Owner's Guide Supplement		
Automatic transmission fluid (5R110) <sup>3</sup>	17.5 quarts (16.6L) <sup>5</sup>	Motorcraft MERCON® LV ATF	XT-10-QLV / MERCON® LV
Windshield washer fluid	3.5 quarts (3.3L)	Motorcraft Premium Windshield Washer Concentrate	ZC-32-A / WSB-M8B16-A2

<sup>1</sup>Add 8 oz. (236 ml) of Additive Friction Modifier XL-3 or equivalent meeting Ford Specification EST-M2C118-A for complete refill of limited slip Ford axles. Ford design rear axles contain a synthetic lubricant that does not require changing unless the axle has been submerged in water.

<sup>2</sup>Add the coolant type originally equipped in your vehicle.

<sup>3</sup>Ensure the correct automatic transmission fluid is used. Transmission fluid requirements are indicated on the dipstick blade or the dipstick handle. Check the container to verify the fluid being added is of the correct type. Refer to your *scheduled maintenance information* to determine the correct service interval.

**Automatic transmissions that require MERCON® LV should only use MERCON® LV fluid. Use of any fluid other than the recommended fluid may cause transmission damage.**

<sup>4</sup>Service refill capacity is determined by filling the transmission to the bottom of the filler hole with the vehicle on a level surface. The 6-speed manual transmission is equipped with an in-tank cooler. Verify the fluid level after operating vehicle to ensure correct fluid level.

<sup>5</sup>Indicates only approximate dry-fill capacity. Some applications may vary based on cooler size and if equipped with an in-tank cooler. The amount of transmission fluid and fluid level should be set by the indication on the dipstick's normal operating range.

<sup>6</sup>Use of synthetic or synthetic blend motor oil is not mandatory. Engine oil need only meet the requirements of Ford specification WSS-M2C930-A and the API Certification mark.

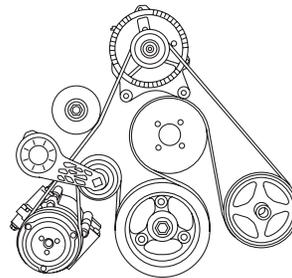
## Maintenance and Specifications

### ENGINE DATA

Engine	5.4L V8 engine	6.8L V10 engine
Cubic inches	330	415
Required fuel	87 octane	87 octane
Firing order	1-3-7-2-6-5-4-8	1-6-5-10-2-7-3-8-4-9
Spark plug gap	1.0–1.1mm (0.039–0.043 inch)	1.0–1.1mm (0.039–0.043 inch)
Ignition system	Coil on plug	Coil on plug
Compression ratio	9.8:1	9.2:1

### Drivebelt routing

5.4L V8/6.8L V10 engines



## IDENTIFYING YOUR VEHICLE

### Safety Compliance Certification Label

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration Regulations require that a Safety Compliance Certification Label be affixed to a vehicle and prescribe where the Safety Compliance Certification Label may be located. The Safety Compliance Certification Label is located on the structure by the trailing edge of the driver's door or the edge of the driver's door.

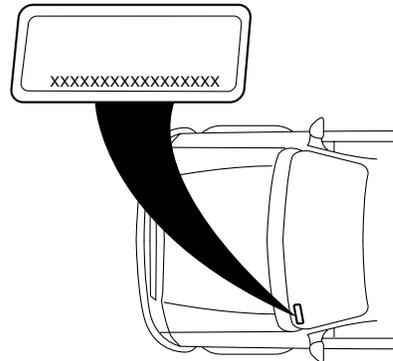
MFD. BY FORD MOTOR CO. IN U.S.A.									
DATE: XXXXX	GVWR: XXXXX LB/ XXXXX KG								
FGAWR: XXXXXX/XXXXXXXX	RGAWR: XXXXXX/XXXXXXXX								
THIS VEHICLE CONFORMS TO ALL APPLICABLE FEDERAL MOTOR VEHICLE SAFETY STANDARDS IN EFFECT ON THE DATE OF MANUFACTURE SHOWN ABOVE.									
VIN: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX	TYPE: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX								
MAXIMUM LOAD=OCCUPANTS + LUGGAGE=XXXKG/XXXLB									
OCCUPANTS: X TOTAL X FR X 2ND X RR OCCUPANTS LUGGAGE									
TIRE: XXXX/XXXXX XXX X XXXKG/XXXLB									
PRESSURE (FR) XXX kPa/ XX PSI COLD									
PRESSURE (RR) XXX kPa/ XX PSI COLD									
TRAILER TOWING - SEE OWNER GUIDE									
EXT PNT: XXXXX XXXXXX   RC: XX   DSO: XXXX   F0000									
BAR	INT	TR	TP/PS	R	AXLE	TR	SPR	T0000	
X	XX	XXX	X	XX	X	XXX			

## Maintenance and Specifications

### Vehicle identification number (VIN)

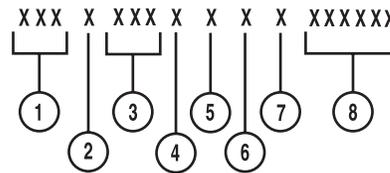
The vehicle identification number is located on the driver side instrument panel.

Please note that in the graphic, XXXX is representative of your vehicle identification number.



The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) contains the following information:

1. World manufacturer identifier
2. Brake system / Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) / Restraint Devices and their location
3. Make, vehicle line, series, body type
4. Engine type
5. Check digit
6. Model year
7. Assembly plant
8. Production sequence number



## Maintenance and Specifications

### TRANSMISSION CODE DESIGNATIONS

You can find a transmission code on the Safety Compliance Certification Label. The following table tells you which transmission each code represents.

MFD. BY FORD MOTOR CO.									
DATE: XXXX	GVWR: XXXXLB/ XXXXXKG								
FRONT GAWR: XXXXL	REAR GAWR: XXXXLB								
XXXXKG	WITH	XXXXKG	WITH						
XXXX/XXXXXX	TIRES	XXXX/XXXXXX	TIRES						
XXXX.XX	RIMS	XXXX.XX	RIMS						
AT XXX kPa/XX	PSI COLD	AT XXX kPa/XX	PSI COLD						
THIS VEHICLE CONFORMS TO ALL APPLICABLE FEDERAL MOTOR VEHICLE SAFETY AND THEFT PREVENTION STANDARDS IN EFFECT ON THE DATE OF MANUFACTURE SHOWN ABOVE.									
VIN: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX									XXXXX
TYPE: XXX									XXXXX
									
EXT PNT: XX	RC: XX		DSD: XXXXX						
WB <sup>1</sup> BRK <sup>1</sup>	INT TR <sup>1</sup>	TP/PS <sup>1</sup>	R <sup>1</sup>	AXLE <sup>1</sup>	TR <sup>1</sup>	SPR <sup>1</sup>	XXXXX		
XXX X	XX	X	XX	X	XX	XX	XXX		
XXXXXXXXXXXXX XX XXXX-XXXXXX-XX									

Code	Description
5	Six-speed manual, Dana (ZF S6-650)
7	Six-speed manual, Dana (Z/F M6HD-W)
T	Five-speed automatic, TorqShift (gas engines)
B	Five-speed automatic, TorqShift (diesel engine)

## Accessories

### GENUINE FORD ACCESSORIES FOR YOUR VEHICLE

A wide selection of Genuine Ford Accessories are available for your vehicle through your local Ford or Ford of Canada dealer. These quality accessories have been specifically engineered to fulfill your automotive needs; they are custom designed to complement the style and aerodynamic appearance of your vehicle. In addition, each accessory is made from high quality materials and meets or exceeds Ford's rigorous engineering and safety specifications. Ford Motor Company will repair or replace any properly dealer-installed Genuine Ford Accessories found to be defective in factory-supplied materials or workmanship during the warranty period, as well as any component damaged by the defective accessories. The accessories will be warranted for whichever provides you the greatest benefit:

- 12 months or 12,000 miles (20,000 km) (whichever occurs first), or
- the remainder of your new vehicle limited warranty.

Contact your dealer for details and a copy of the warranty.

The following is a list of several Genuine Ford Accessories. Not all accessories are available for all models. For a complete listing of the accessories that are available for your vehicle, please contact your dealer or visit our online store at: [www.fordaccessories.com](http://www.fordaccessories.com).

#### Exterior style

Bug shields  
Chrome exhaust tips  
Deflectors  
Running boards  
Splash guards  
Step bars  
Wheels

#### Interior style

Ambient lighting  
Electrochromic compass/temperature interior mirrors  
Floor mats

## Accessories

### Lifestyle

Ash cup / smoker's package  
Bedliners and bedmats  
Cargo organization and management  
Towing mirrors  
Trailer hitches, wiring harnesses and accessories

### Peace of mind

Keyless entry keypad  
Remote start  
Vehicle security systems  
Wheel locks

### **Not all accessories are available for all models.**

For maximum vehicle performance, keep the following information in mind when adding accessories or equipment to your vehicle:

- When adding accessories, equipment, passengers and luggage to your vehicle, do not exceed the total weight capacity of the vehicle or of the front or rear axle (GVWR or GAWR as indicated on the Safety Compliance Certification Label). Consult your authorized dealer for specific weight information.
- The Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and Canadian Radio Telecommunications Commission (CRTC) regulate the use of mobile communications systems — such as two-way radios, telephones and theft alarms - that are equipped with radio transmitters. Any such equipment installed in your vehicle should comply with FCC or CRTC regulations and should be installed only by your authorized dealer.
- Mobile communications systems may harm the operation of your vehicle, particularly if they are not properly designed for automotive use.
- To avoid interference with other vehicle functions, such as anti-lock braking systems, amateur radio users who install radios and antennas onto their vehicle should not locate the Amateur Radio Antennas in the area of the driver's side hood.
- Electrical or electronic accessories or components that are added to the vehicle by the authorized dealer or the owner may adversely affect battery performance and durability.

## Ford Extended Service Plan

### FORD ESP EXTENDED SERVICE PLANS

More than 30 million Ford, Lincoln, and Mercury owners have discovered the powerful protection of Ford ESP. It is the only extended service plan backed by Ford Motor Company, and provides “peace of mind” protection beyond the New Vehicle Limited Warranty coverage.

#### ***Up to 500+ Covered Vehicle Components***

There are four, new-vehicle Extended Service Plans with different levels of coverage. Ask your dealer for details.

**PremiumCare** – Our most comprehensive coverage. With over 500 covered components, this plan is so complete that we generally only discuss what’s not covered!

**ExtraCare** – Covers 113 components, and includes many high-tech items.

**BaseCare** – Covers 84 components.

**PowertrainCare** – Covers 29 critical components.

**Ford ESP is honored by all Ford, Lincoln and Mercury Dealers in the U.S. and Canada** It’s the only extended service plan authorized and backed by Ford Motor Company. That means you get:

- Reliable, quality service anywhere you go.
- **Factory-trained technicians.**
- **Genuine Ford and Motorcraft® Parts.**

#### ***Rental car reimbursement***

**If your vehicle is kept overnight for covered repairs**, you are eligible for rental car coverage, including Bumper-to-Bumper warranty repairs, or manufacturer’s recalls.

#### ***Transferable coverage***

If you sell your vehicle before your Ford ESP coverage expires, you can transfer any remaining coverage to the new owner. Whenever you’re ready to sell your car, prospective buyers may feel better about taking a risk on your used vehicle. Ford ESP may add resale value!

Plus, **exclusive 24/7 roadside assistance**, including:

- Towing, flat-tire change and battery jump starts.
- Out-of-fuel and lock-out assistance.
- Travel expense reimbursement for lodging, meals and rental car.
- Destination assistance for taxi, shuttle, rental car coverage and emergency transportation.

400

## Ford Extended Service Plan

### ***Ford ESP Can Quickly Pay for Itself***

One service bill – the cost of parts and labor – can easily exceed the price of your Ford ESP Service Contract. With Ford ESP, you minimize your risk for unexpected repair bills and rising repair costs.

### ***Avoid the rising cost of properly maintaining your vehicle!***

Ford ESP also offers a Premium Maintenance Plan that covers items that **routinely wear out**.

The coverage is prepaid, so you never have to worry about affording your vehicle maintenance. It covers regular checkups, routine inspections, preventive care and replacement of items that require periodic attention for **normal “wear”**:

- **Wiper blades**
- **Spark plugs**  
(except California)
- **Clutch disc**
- **Brake pads and linings**
- **Shock absorbers**
- **Belts and hoses**

Contact your selling Ford, Lincoln, or Mercury dealership today so they can customize a Ford Extended Service Plan that fits your driving lifestyle and budget.

### ***Interest free finance options available***

Take advantage of our installment payment plan, just a 10% down payment will provide you with an affordable no interest, no-fee payment opportunity.

**Ford Extended Service Plan**



***Get Genuine Peace of Mind with Ford ESP!***

To learn more, complete the information below and mail this to:

**Ford ESP  
P.O. Box 8072  
Royal Oak, MI 48068-9933**

NAME (PLEASE PRINT) \_\_\_\_\_

ADDRESS \_\_\_\_\_ APT.NO. \_\_\_\_\_

CITY \_\_\_\_\_ STATE \_\_\_\_\_ ZIP \_\_\_\_\_

E-MAIL: \_\_\_\_\_

## Index

### A

Accessory delay .....126  
 Air cleaner filter .....388–390  
 Air conditioning .....102  
 Airbag supplemental restraint system .....185  
   and child safety seats .....186  
   description .....185  
   disposal .....189  
   driver airbag .....187  
   indicator light .....189  
   operation .....187  
   passenger airbag .....187  
   passenger deactivation switch .....190  
 Ambulance packages .....7  
 Antifreeze (see Engine coolant) .....365  
 Anti-lock brake system (see Brakes) .....269–270  
 Anti-theft system .....159, 162  
   arming the system .....160, 162  
   disarming a triggered system .....163  
   triggering .....163  
 Audio system (see Radio) .....42, 44, 51  
 Automatic transmission .....275  
   driving an automatic overdrive .....275  
   fluid, adding .....384  
   fluid, checking .....384  
   fluid, refill capacities .....391  
 Auxiliary Input Jack .....58  
 Auxiliary power point .....123  
 Axle  
   refill capacities .....391

### B

Battery .....363  
   acid, treating emergencies .....363  
   jumping a disabled battery .....331  
   maintenance-free .....363  
   replacement, specifications ...390  
   servicing .....363  
 Bed extender .....145  
 Belt-Minder® .....181  
 Booster seats .....212  
 Brakes .....269  
   anti-lock .....269–270  
   anti-lock brake system (ABS) warning light .....270  
   fluid, checking and adding ...383  
   fluid, refill capacities .....391  
   parking .....270  
   shift interlock .....274  
   trailer .....256  
 Bulbs .....113

### C

Capacities for refilling fluids ....391  
 Cassette tape player .....42  
 Cell phone use .....10  
 Child safety seats .....199  
   attaching with tether straps .....207  
   in front seat .....200, 203, 206  
   in rear seat .....200, 203, 206–207  
   LATCH .....207  
 Child safety seats - booster seats .....212  
 Cleaning your vehicle  
   engine compartment .....347  
   instrument panel .....349–350  
   interior .....351

403

## Index

- plastic parts .....348
- safety belts .....351
- washing .....345
- waxing .....346
- wheels .....346
- wiper blades .....348
- Climate control (see Air conditioning or Heating) ....98, 102
- Clock adjust
  - 6-CD in dash .....53
  - AM/FM/CD .....46
- Clutch
  - fluid .....384
  - operation while driving .....278
  - recommended shift speeds ....278
- Compass, electronic
  - set zone adjustment .....36
- Console .....122
  - overhead .....121–122
- Controls
  - power seat .....167
  - steering column .....134
- Coolant
  - checking and adding .....365
  - refill capacities .....368, 391
- Cruise control (see Speed control) .....131
- Customer Assistance .....303
  - Ford accessories for your vehicle .....353
  - Ford Extended Service Plan .....400
  - Getting assistance outside the U.S. and Canada .....342
  - Getting roadside assistance ...303
  - Getting the service you need .....338
  - Ordering additional owner's literature .....343
- Utilizing the Mediation/Arbitration Program .....341
- D**
  - Daytime running lamps (see Lamps) .....108
  - Dipstick
    - automatic transmission fluid .....384
    - engine oil .....360
  - Driving under special conditions .....277, 293, 297
    - sand .....295
    - snow and ice .....297
    - through water .....296, 299
  - DVD system .....67
- E**
  - Electronic message center ...24, 32
  - Emergencies, roadside
    - jump-starting .....331
  - Emergency Flashers .....304
  - Emission control system .....379
  - Engine .....395
    - cleaning .....347
    - coolant .....365
    - diesel .....7
    - fail-safe cooling .....369
    - idle speed control .....363
    - refill capacities .....391
    - service points .....357–358
    - starting after a collision .....305
  - Engine oil .....360
    - checking and adding .....360
    - dipstick .....360
    - filter, specifications .....362, 390
    - recommendations .....362

## Index

- refill capacities .....391
- Event data recording .....8
- Exhaust fumes .....267
- F**
- Fail safe cooling .....369
- Family entertainment system ....67
- Fluid capacities .....391
- Fog lamps .....107
- Four-Wheel Drive vehicles .....284
  - description .....290
  - driving off road .....292
  - electronic shift .....285, 290
  - indicator light .....286
  - lever operated shift .....286
  - manual locking hubs .....284
  - preparing to drive your vehicle .....273
- Fuel .....371
  - calculating fuel economy .....26, 34, 376
  - cap .....373
  - capacity .....391
  - choosing the right fuel .....374
  - comparisons with EPA fuel economy estimates .....379
  - detergent in fuel .....375
  - filling your vehicle with fuel .....371, 373, 376
  - filter, specifications .....371, 390
  - fuel pump shut-off switch .....305
  - improving fuel economy .....376
  - octane rating .....375, 395
  - quality .....375
  - running out of fuel .....375
  - safety information relating to automotive fuels .....371
- Fuel pump shut-off switch .....305
- Fuses .....306–307
- G**
- Gas cap (see Fuel cap) .....373
- Gas mileage (see Fuel economy) .....376
- Gauges .....20
  - transmission fluid temperature gauge .....24
- H**
- Hazard flashers .....304
- Head restraints .....164, 170
- Headlamps .....107
  - aiming .....109, 111
  - autolamp system .....107
  - daytime running lights .....108
  - flash to pass .....108
  - high beam .....108
  - replacing bulbs .....115–117
  - turning on and off .....107
- Heating
  - heater only system .....98
  - heating and air conditioning system .....99, 102
- Homelink wireless control system .....139
- Hood .....356
- I**
- Ignition .....264, 395
- Illuminated visor mirror .....121
- Infant seats (see Safety seats) .....199
- Inspection/maintenance (I/M) testing .....381

405

## Index

- Instrument panel  
 cleaning .....349–350  
 cluster .....14  
 lighting up panel and  
 interior .....109
- J**
- Jump-starting your vehicle .....331
- K**
- Keyless entry system  
 autolock .....149  
 keypad .....157  
 locking and unlocking  
 doors .....159  
 programming entry code .....157
- Keys .....160–161  
 positions of the ignition .....264
- L**
- Lamps  
 autolamp system .....107  
 daytime running light .....108  
 fog lamps .....107  
 headlamps .....107  
 headlamps, flash to pass .....108  
 instrument panel, dimming ...109  
 interior lamps .....113  
 replacing bulbs .....115–119
- LATCH anchors .....207
- Lights, warning and indicator ...14  
 anti-lock brakes (ABS) .....270
- Limited-slip axle .....273
- Load limits .....244
- Loading instructions .....251
- Locks  
 autolock .....149
- 406  
 childproof .....152  
 doors .....148
- Lug nuts .....330
- Lumbar support, seats .....168–169
- M**
- Manual transmission .....278  
 fluid capacities .....391  
 reverse .....279
- Message center .....24, 32  
 english/metric button .....27, 36  
 system check button .....36  
 warning messages .....27, 37
- Mirrors .....126–127  
 automatic dimming rearview  
 mirror .....126  
 fold away .....127, 129–130  
 side view mirrors (power) ....127  
 signal .....130
- Moon roof .....138
- Motorcraft® parts .....371, 390
- N**
- Navigation system .....97
- O**
- Octane rating .....375
- Oil (see Engine oil) .....360
- P**
- Parking brake .....270
- Parts (see Motorcraft®  
 parts) .....390
- Pedals (see Power adjustable  
 foot pedals) .....131

## Index

- Power adjustable foot pedals ...131
- Power distribution box (see Fuses) .....310
- Power door locks .....148
- Power mirrors .....127
- Power point .....123
- Power steering .....272  
   fluid, checking and adding ....382  
   fluid, refill capacity .....391
- Power Windows .....124
- Preparing to drive your vehicle .....273
- R**
- Radio .....42, 44, 51
- Rear seat entertainment system .....67
- Rear-view camera system .....282
- Relays .....306
- Remote entry system .....152  
   illuminated entry .....157  
   locking/unlocking doors .....148, 153  
   replacing the batteries .....155
- Reverse sensing system .....280
- Roadside assistance .....303
- S**
- Safety belts (see Safety restraints) .....173–178
- Safety defects, reporting .....344
- Safety restraints .....173–178  
   Belt-Minder® .....181  
   extension assembly .....184  
   for adults .....174–178  
   for children .....195  
   lap belt .....179  
   warning light and chime .....180–181
- Safety restraints - LATCH anchors .....207
- Safety seats for children .....199
- Safety Compliance Certification Label .....395
- Satellite Radio Information .....64
- Seats .....164  
   child safety seats .....199  
   cleaning .....352  
   heated .....102  
   memory seat .....154, 169
- SecuriCode keyless entry system .....157
- SecuriLock passive anti-theft system .....159, 161
- Servicing your vehicle .....355
- Setting the clock  
   AM/FM/CD .....46  
   AM/FM/In-dash 6 CD .....53
- Snowplowing .....7, 300–301
- SOS Post Crash Alert .....189
- Spark plugs, specifications .....390, 395
- Special notice .....8  
   ambulance conversions .....7  
   diesel-powered vehicles .....7  
   four-wheel drive vehicles .....302  
   utility-type vehicles .....7
- Speed control .....131
- Starting your vehicle .....264–266  
   jump starting .....331
- Steering wheel controls .....134

## Index

- tilting .....121
- SYNC® .....97
- T**
- Tailgate .....143
- Temperature control (see  
Climate control) .....98
- Tilt steering wheel .....121
- Tire Pressure Monitoring  
System (TPMS)  
  Tires, Wheels and Loading ....237
- Tires .....219–220
  - alignment .....229
  - care .....225
  - changing .....318, 320
  - checking the pressure .....224
  - inflating .....221
  - label .....236
  - replacing .....227
  - rotating .....229
  - safety practices .....228
  - sidewall information .....231
  - snow tires and chains .....243
  - spare tire .....316
  - terminology .....220
  - tire grades .....220
  - treadwear .....219, 226
- Towing .....251
  - recreational towing .....262
  - Trailer Brake
    - Controller-Integrated .....256
    - trailer towing .....251
    - wrecker .....336
- Traction control .....271
- Trailer Brake
  - Controller-Integrated .....256
- Transfer case
  - fluid checking .....388
- Transmission
  - automatic operation .....275
  - brake-shift interlock (BSI) ....274
  - fluid, checking and adding  
(automatic) .....384
  - fluid, checking and adding  
(manual) .....387
  - fluid, refill capacities .....391
  - manual operation .....278
- Turn signal .....112
- U**
- Upfitter controls .....137
- USB port .....60
- V**
- Vehicle Identification Number  
(VIN) .....396
- Vehicle loading .....244
- Ventilating your vehicle .....267
- W**
- Warning lights (see Lights) .....14
- Washer fluid .....359
- Water, Driving through .....299
- Windows
  - power .....124
- Windshield washer fluid and  
wipers .....120
  - checking and adding fluid ....359
  - replacing wiper blades .....359
- Wrecker towing .....336

Ford Cars and Trucks  
*(except F-650/750 and Hybrid vehicles)*  
**2010** model year

# Warranty Guide





Your satisfaction is our #1 goal. If you have questions or concerns about your vehicle, we suggest you follow these steps:

1. Contact your Sales Representative or Service Advisor at your selling/servicing dealership.
2. If your inquiry or concern remains unresolved, contact the Sales Manager or Service Manager at the dealership.
3. If the inquiry or concern cannot be resolved at the dealership level, please contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center.

In the United States:

**Ford Motor Company  
Customer Relationship Center  
P.O. Box 6248  
Dearborn, MI 48121  
1-800-392-3673 (FORD)  
(TDD for the hearing impaired:  
1-800-232-5952)  
[www.customersaskford.com](http://www.customersaskford.com)**

In Canada:

**Customer Relationship Centre  
Ford Motor Company  
of Canada, Limited  
P.O. Box 2000  
Oakville, Ontario L6J 5E4  
1-800-565-3673 (FORD)  
[www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca)**

In Caribbean, Central America, Israel and Sub-Saharan Africa:

**Ford Motor Company  
Ford Export Operations  
Attention: Owner Relations  
1555 Fairlane Drive  
Fairlane Business Park #3  
Allen Park, MI 48101  
Telephone: (313) 594-4857  
Fax: (313) 390-0804  
E-mail: [expcac@ford.com](mailto:expcac@ford.com)**

In Puerto Rico and Virgin Islands:

**Ford International Business  
Development, Inc.  
Customer Assistance Center  
P.O. Box 11957  
Caparra Heights Station  
San Juan, PR 00922-1957  
Telephone: (787) 782-5959 Ext.233  
Fax: (787) 781-8975  
[www.ford.com.pr](http://www.ford.com.pr)**

In Middle East:

**Ford Middle East  
Customer Assistance Center  
API World Tower  
Sheikh Zayed Road  
Dubai, United Arab Emirates  
Telephone: 971-4-3326084  
Fax: 971-4-3327299  
[www.me.ford.com](http://www.me.ford.com)**



## Table of Contents

<b>1. INTRODUCTION</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>2. IMPORTANT INFORMATION YOU SHOULD KNOW</b>	<b>2</b>
If You Need Customer Assistance	2
Know When Your Warranty Begins	2
Check Your Vehicle	2
Maintain Your Vehicle Properly	2
Who Pays For Warranty Repairs?	3
Do Warranties Apply In Other Countries?	4
<b>3. THE NEW VEHICLE LIMITED WARRANTY FOR YOUR 2010-MODEL VEHICLE</b>	<b>5</b>
Limitations And Disclaimers	5
What Is Covered?	8
What Is Not Covered?	12
<b>4. IN ADDITION ...</b>	<b>16</b>
Roadside Service Assistance (United States, Puerto Rico, And U.S. Virgin Islands)	16
<b>5. FEDERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR EMISSIONS WARRANTIES</b>	<b>17</b>
What Is Covered?	20
What Is Not Covered?	21
<b>6. CALIFORNIA REQUIREMENTS FOR EMISSIONS WARRANTIES</b>	<b>22</b>
What Is Covered?	26
What Is Not Covered?	29

<b>7. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION ABOUT YOUR EMISSIONS WARRANTY COVERAGE, UNDER FEDERAL AND CALIFORNIA REQUIREMENTS</b>	<b>30</b>
<b>8. NOISE EMISSIONS WARRANTY</b>	<b>32</b>
<b>9. FORD EXTENDED SERVICE PLAN</b>	<b>33</b>
<b>10. BETTER BUSINESS BUREAU (BBB) AUTO LINE PROGRAM</b>	<b>34</b>
<b>11. STATE WARRANTY ENFORCEMENT LAWS</b>	<b>35</b>
<b>12. IMPORTANT INFORMATION ABOUT AMBULANCE CONVERSIONS</b>	<b>35</b>
<b>13. IMPORTANT INFORMATION ABOUT FORD LIMOUSINE CONVERSIONS</b>	<b>36</b>

## 1. Introduction

**Ford Motor Company** and your selling dealer thank you for selecting one of our quality products. Our commitment to you and your vehicle begins with quality protection and service.

When you need warranty repairs, your selling dealer would like you to return to it for that service, but you may also take your vehicle to another Ford Motor Company dealership authorized for warranty repairs. Certain warranty repairs require special training though, so not all dealers are authorized to perform all warranty repairs. That means that, depending on the warranty repair needed, the vehicle may need to be taken to another dealer. If a particular dealership cannot assist you, then contact the Customer Relationship Center at 1-800-392-3673.

If you own or lease a 2010-model E-350 Livery Van equipped with the Livery Service Package or a 2010-model Crown Victoria Police Interceptor equipped with the Fleet Crown Police Package Option, refer to the Addendum Card that was given to you when you took delivery of your vehicle for further explanation of the amendments to the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. Please ask the vehicle modifier for a copy of the Addendum Card if you wish to review it prior to taking delivery of the vehicle.

This booklet explains in detail the warranty coverages that apply to your 2010-model car or light truck. If you bought a previously owned 2010-model vehicle, you are eligible for any remaining warranty coverages.

Ford Motor Company provides the **Emissions Defect Warranties** and **Emissions Performance Warranties** which cover your emissions control systems, and **Noise Emissions Warranty** which applies only to medium/heavy duty trucks over 10,000 pounds Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (pages 17-32).

## 2. Important information you should know

### IF YOU NEED CUSTOMER ASSISTANCE

Your Ford Motor Company dealer is available to assist you with all your automotive needs. Please follow the procedures outlined on the front page of this booklet.

In addition, if you are an eligible U.S. owner, you may use - at no cost - the services of the BBB AUTO LINE program. For details, see Better Business Bureau (BBB) AUTO LINE program, page 34 or call 1-800-955-5100.

### KNOW WHEN YOUR WARRANTY BEGINS

Your **Warranty Start Date** is the day you take delivery of your new vehicle or the day it is first put into service (for example, as a dealer demonstrator), whichever occurs first.

### CHECK YOUR VEHICLE

We try to check vehicles carefully at the assembly plant and the dealership, and we usually correct any damage to paint, sheet metal, upholstery, or other appearance items. But occasionally something may slip past us, and a customer may find that a vehicle was damaged before he or she took delivery. If you see any damage when you receive your vehicle, notify your dealership within one week.

### MAINTAIN YOUR VEHICLE PROPERLY

Your glove compartment contains an **Owner Guide** and a **Scheduled Maintenance Guide** which indicate the scheduled maintenance required for your vehicle. Proper maintenance guards against major repair expenses resulting from neglect or inadequate maintenance, may help increase the value you receive when you sell or trade your vehicle, and is important in allowing your vehicle to comply with applicable emissions standards.

It is your responsibility to make sure that all of the scheduled maintenance is performed and that the materials used meet Ford engineering specifications. Failure to perform scheduled maintenance as

specified in the Scheduled Maintenance Guide will invalidate warranty coverage on parts affected by the lack of maintenance. Make sure that receipts for completed maintenance work are retained with the vehicle and confirmation of maintenance work is always entered in your **Scheduled Maintenance Guide**.

Your Ford or Lincoln Mercury dealership, or Ford or Lincoln Mercury Auto Care Service Center, has factory-trained technicians who can perform the required maintenance using genuine Ford parts. The dealership looks forward to meeting your every service need to maximize your satisfaction with your vehicle.

### **WHO PAYS FOR WARRANTY REPAIRS?**

You will not be charged for repairs covered by any applicable warranty during the stated coverage periods, unless specifically stated elsewhere in this guide.

Some states have mandated alternate time coverage periods for parts of your vehicle (e.g. seatbelts).

Some states and/or local governments may require a tax on a portion of warranty repairs. Where applicable law allows, the tax must be paid by you, the owner of the vehicle.

During the Bumper to Bumper Warranty period, dealers may receive instructions to provide no-cost, service-type improvements - not originally included in your Scheduled Maintenance Guide - intended to increase your overall satisfaction with your vehicle.

Sometimes Ford may offer a special adjustment program to pay all or part of the cost of certain repairs beyond the terms of the applicable warranty. Check with your dealer or call 1-800-392-3673 to learn whether any adjustment program is applicable to your vehicle. Please have your vehicle identification number available.

**DO WARRANTIES APPLY IN OTHER COUNTRIES?**

The **New Vehicle Limited Warranty** and the **Emissions Warranties** described in this booklet apply to your vehicle if:

- it was originally purchased through the Ford Export Operations Military Sales Program; or
- it was originally sold or leased by Ford Motor Company or one of its dealers in the United States or U.S. Federalized Territories, and it was originally registered/licensed and operated in the United States, U.S. Federalized Territories, or Canada.

If you meet either of these two requirements, you do have warranty coverage when you travel with this vehicle outside the United States, U.S. Federalized Territories, or Canada. In some cases, however, you may have to pay the servicing Ford dealer in a foreign country or U.S. Federalized Territory for a repair that is covered under the U.S. warranty. If this happens, be sure to save the paid repair order or invoice. You should present this document to a U.S. Ford Motor Company dealer for warranty refund consideration. Refer to [www.Ford.com](http://www.Ford.com) for additional customer assistance reference information.

### 3. The New Vehicle Limited Warranty for your 2010-model vehicle

#### **LIMITATIONS AND DISCLAIMERS**

All of the warranties in this booklet are subject to the following limitations and disclaimers:

The warranties in this booklet are the only express warranties applicable to your vehicle. Ford does not assume or authorize anyone to assume for it any other obligation or liability in connection with your vehicle or these warranties. No person, including Ford employees or dealers, may modify or waive any part of these warranties.

Ford and its dealers reserve the right to make changes in or additions to vehicles built or sold by them at any time without incurring any obligation to make the same or similar changes or additions to vehicles previously built or sold.

Ford and its dealers also reserve the right to provide post-warranty repairs, conduct recalls, or extend the warranty coverage period for certain vehicles or vehicle populations, at the sole discretion of Ford. The fact that Ford has provided such measures to a particular vehicle or vehicle population in no way obligates Ford to provide similar accommodations to other owners of similar vehicles.

As a condition of these warranties, you are responsible for properly using, maintaining, and caring for your vehicle as outlined in your Owner Guide and Scheduled Maintenance Guide. Ford recommends that you maintain copies of all maintenance records and receipts for review by Ford.

Ford and your dealer are not responsible for any time or income that you lose, any inconvenience you might be caused, the loss of your transportation or use of your vehicle, the cost of rental vehicles, fuel, telephone, travel, meals, or lodging, the loss of personal or commercial property, the loss of revenue, or for any other incidental or consequential damages you may have.

Punitive, exemplary, or multiple damages may not be recovered unless applicable law prohibits their disclaimer.

You may not bring any warranty-related claim as a class representative, a private attorney general, a member of a class of claimants or in any other representative capacity.

Ford shall not be liable for any damages caused by delay in delivery or furnishing of any products and/or services.

You may have some implied warranties. For example, you may have an implied warranty of merchantability (that the car or light truck is reasonably fit for the general purpose for which it was sold) or an implied warranty of fitness for a particular purpose (that the car or light truck is suitable for your special purposes), if a special purpose was specifically disclosed to Ford itself not merely to the dealer before your purchase, and Ford itself not just the dealer told you the vehicle would be suitable for that purpose.

These implied warranties are limited, to the extent allowed by law, to the time period covered by the written warranties, or to the applicable time period provided by state law, whichever period is shorter.

These implied warranties do not apply at all if you use your vehicle for business or commercial purposes. In addition, the implied warranty of fitness for a particular purpose does not apply if your vehicle is used for racing, even if the vehicle is equipped for racing.

The warranties contained in this booklet and all questions regarding their enforceability and interpretation are governed by the law of the state in which you purchased your Ford vehicle. Some states do not allow Ford to limit how long an implied warranty lasts or to exclude or limit incidental or consequential damages, so the limitation and exclusions described above may not apply to you.

**NOTE: This information about the limitation of implied warranties and the exclusion of incidental and consequential damages under the NEW VEHICLE LIMITED WARRANTY also applies to the EMISSIONS WARRANTIES described on pages 17-31.**

Ford participates in the BBB AUTO LINE warranty dispute resolution program. You may contact BBB AUTO LINE by calling 800-955-5100.

You are required to submit your warranty dispute to the BBB AUTO LINE before exercising rights or seeking remedies under the Federal Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, 15 U.S.C. § 2301 et seq. To the extent permitted by the applicable state “Lemon Law”, you are also required to submit your warranty dispute to the BBB AUTO LINE before exercising any rights or seeking remedies under the “Lemon Law”. If you choose to seek remedies that are not created by the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act or the applicable state “Lemon Law,” you are not required to first use BBB AUTO LINE to resolve your dispute – although the program is still available to you.

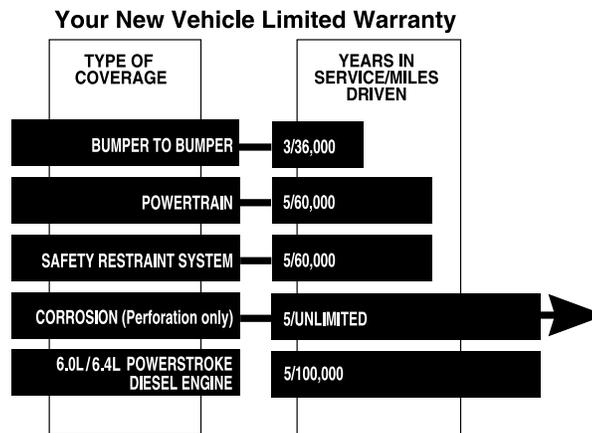
For more information regarding the BBB AUTO LINE program, see page 34 of this booklet.

## QUICK REFERENCE: WARRANTY COVERAGE

This chart gives a general summary of your warranty coverage provided by Ford Motor Company under the **New Vehicle Limited Warranty**. Please refer to the description of warranty coverage for more specific information.

For each type of coverage, the chart shows two measures:

- years in service
- miles driven



The measure that occurs first determines how long your coverage lasts. For example: Your Bumper to Bumper Coverage lasts for three years - unless you drive more than 36,000 miles before three years elapse. In that case, your coverage ends at 36,000 miles.

For more details on coverage, see:

- ➔ **What is Covered?** (pages 8-12)
- ➔ **What is Not Covered?** (pages 12-15)

### WHAT IS COVERED?

Your NEW VEHICLE LIMITED WARRANTY gives you specific legal rights. You may have other rights that vary from state to state. Under your New Vehicle Limited Warranty if:

- your Ford vehicle is properly operated and maintained, and

- was taken to a Ford dealership for a warranted repair during the warranty period,

then authorized Ford Motor Company dealers will, without charge, repair, replace, or adjust all parts on your vehicle that malfunction or fail during normal use during the applicable coverage period due to a manufacturing defect in factory-supplied materials or factory workmanship.

This warranty does not mean that each Ford vehicle is defect free. Defects may be unintentionally introduced into vehicles during the design and manufacturing processes and such defects could result in the need for repairs. For this reason, Ford provides the New Vehicle Limited Warranty in order to remedy any such defects that result in vehicle part malfunction or failure during the warranty period.

The remedy under this written warranty, and any implied warranty, is limited to repair, replacement, or adjustment of defective parts. This exclusive remedy shall not be deemed to have failed its essential purpose so long as Ford, through its authorized dealers, is willing and able to repair, replace, or adjust defective parts in the prescribed manner. Ford's liability, if any, shall in no event exceed the cost of correcting manufacturing defects as herein provided and upon expiration of this warranty, any such liability shall terminate.

Conditions that are not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty are described on pages 12-15. When making warranty repairs on your vehicle, the dealer will use Ford or Motorcraft parts or remanufactured or other parts that are authorized by Ford, at the discretion of Ford or the Ford dealership.

Nothing in this warranty should be construed as requiring defective parts to be replaced with parts of a different type or design than the original part, so long as the vehicle functions properly with the replacement part. Moreover, Ford and its authorized dealers are entitled to a reasonable time and a reasonable number of attempts within which to diagnose and repair any defect covered by this warranty.

In certain instances, Ford may authorize repairs at other than Ford dealer facilities.

Two separate warranties apply to tires on your new vehicle. The New Vehicle Limited Warranty covers tire defects in factory supplied material or workmanship for 100% of labor costs and on a pro rata adjustment basis for parts. (See the reimbursement schedule below).

For vehicles within the New Vehicle Limited Warranty time in service and mileage coverage period, defective tires will be replaced on a pro rata adjustment basis according to the following mileage-based Reimbursement Schedule:

MILES DRIVEN	PERCENT OF PARTS COVERED BY FORD
1-12,000	100%
12,001-24,000	60%
24,001-36,000	30%

The tire manufacturer also provides you with a separate tire warranty that may extend beyond the New Vehicle Limited Warranty coverage. You will find the manufacturer's tire warranty with the owner literature supplied with your vehicle. You have the option of having a tire warranty repair performed by the tire manufacturer's authorized service center. If you go to a tire service center for a repair covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty, you may be charged a prorated amount for wear or other charges. If so, you should present your paid invoice detailing the nature of the charges to any Ford Motor Company dealership for refund consideration. When making warranty repairs on your vehicle, the dealer will use Ford or Motorcraft parts or remanufactured or other parts that are authorized by Ford. In certain instances, Ford may authorize repairs at other than Ford dealer facilities. Tire replacements under warranty will be made with the same brand and model as originally equipped with the vehicle unless the same brand and model is no longer available, in which case a tire of the same brand, size, load, speed and tread type will be used. In some circumstances, Ford may authorize another brand and/or model to substitute for the original brand and model, even if still available.

Normal tire wear or damage is not reimbursable. See page 15 for details of what is not covered.

**Extended warranty coverage periods are available for certain vehicle parts and conditions. Specifically,**

(1) Your vehicle's Powertrain components are covered for five years or 60,000 miles, whichever occurs first. The extended coverage applies to the **Engine:** all internal lubricated parts, cylinder block, cylinder heads, electrical fuel pump, electronic engine control unit, engine mounts, flywheel, injection pump, manifold (exhaust and intake), manifold bolts, oil pan, oil pump, seals and gaskets, thermostat, thermostat housing, timing chain cover, timing chain (gears or belt), turbocharger/supercharger unit, valve covers, water pump;

**Transmission:** all internal parts, clutch cover, seals and gaskets, torque converter, transfer case (including all internal parts), transmission case, transmission mounts; **Front-Wheel Drive:** axle shafts, bearings (front and rear), center support bearing, drive shafts, final drive housing (including all internal parts), hubs-automatic front locking (four-wheel drive), locking rings (four-wheel drive), seals and gaskets, universal and constant velocity joints; **Rear-Wheel Drive:** axle shafts, bearings (front and rear), center support bearing, drive axle housing (including all internal parts), drive shaft, propeller shafts, retainers, supports, seals and gaskets, universal and constant velocity joints.

(2) Your vehicle's safety belts and air bag Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) are covered for an extended Safety Restraint Coverage Period, which lasts for five years or 60,000 miles, whichever occurs first.

(3) Your vehicle's body sheet metal panels are covered for an extended Corrosion Coverage Period, which lasts for five years, regardless of miles driven. The extended warranty coverage only applies if a body sheet metal panel becomes perforated due to corrosion during normal use due to a manufacturing defect in factory-supplied materials or factory workmanship. For damage caused by airborne material (environmental fallout) where there is no factory-related defect involved and therefore no warranty – our policy is to provide free repair of paint damage due to the airborne material for 12 months or 12,000 miles, whichever occurs first.

(4) Your vehicle's direct injection diesel engine and certain engine components are covered during the 6.0L/6.4L PowerStroke Diesel Engine Coverage Period, which lasts for five years or 100,000 miles, whichever occurs first. The following parts are covered during this extended coverage period: the engine, cylinder block, heads and all internal parts, intake and exhaust manifolds, timing gear, harmonic balancer, valve covers, oil pan and pump, water pump, fuel system (excluding fuel lines, fuel tank and frame mounted fuel conditioning module sometimes referred to as the frame mounted pump/filter/water separator), high pressure lines, gaskets and seals, glow plugs, turbocharger, two-stage turbocharger assembly (6.4L), turbocharger actuator (6.4L), powertrain control module, engine control module (6.4L), high pressure fuel injection pump assembly (6.4L), electronic driver unit, injectors,

injection pressure sensor, fuel rail pressure sensor (6.4L), high pressure oil regulator, exhaust back pressure regulator and sensor, exhaust pressure sensor (6.4L), manifold pressure sensor (6.4L), intake air temperature sensor (6.4L), crankshaft position sensor (6.4L), camshaft position sensor, accelerator switch.

**NOTE:** Some components may also be covered by the Emissions Warranties. For more information, see pages 17-31.

### **Expedition Limousine Limited Warranty**

If you have purchased or leased a 2010-model Expedition EL (equipped with the 17L Builder's Package) converted into a limousine by a Ford Qualified Vehicle Modifier, your Expedition EL is eligible for the Ford Limousine Limited Warranty coverage for three years or 100,000 miles, whichever occurs first. This coverage begins on the Warranty Start Date and is in addition to the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. Refer to the warranty addendum card that was given to you when you took delivery of your 2010-model Expedition EL Limousine for details of the Ford Limousine Limited Warranty. See page 36 for additional details about the 17L Limousine Builder Package.

### **WHAT IS NOT COVERED UNDER THE NEW VEHICLE LIMITED WARRANTY?**

#### **Damage Caused By:**

- accidents, collision or objects striking the vehicle (including driving through a car wash)
- theft, vandalism, or riot
- fire or explosion
- using contaminated or improper fuel/fluids
- customer-applied chemicals or accidental spills
- driving through water deep enough to cause water to be ingested into the engine
- misuse of the vehicle, such as driving over curbs, overloading, racing or using the vehicle as a permanent stationary power source

**Damage Caused by Alteration or Modification**

The New Vehicle Limited Warranty does not cover any damage caused by:

- alterations or modifications of the vehicle, including the body, chassis, or components, after the vehicle leaves the control of Ford Motor Company
- tampering with the vehicle, tampering with the emissions systems or with the other parts that affect these systems (for example, but not limited to exhaust and intake systems)
- the installation or use of a non-Ford Motor Company part (other than a certified emissions part) or any part (Ford or non-Ford) designed for off-road use only installed after the vehicle leaves the control of Ford Motor Company, if the installed part fails or causes a Ford part to fail. Examples include, but are not limited to lift kits, oversized tires, roll bars, cellular phones, alarm systems, automatic starting systems and performance-enhancing powertrain components or software and performance “chips”

**Damage Caused by Use and/or the Environment**

The New Vehicle Limited Warranty does not cover surface rust, deterioration and damage of paint, trim, upholstery, and other appearance items that result from use and/or exposure to the elements. You, as the owner, are responsible for these items. Some examples are:

- dings, dents
- cuts, burns, punctures or tears
- road salt
- tree sap, bird and bee droppings
- windstorm, lightening, hail
- earthquake
- freezing, water or flood
- stone chips, scratches (some examples are on paint and glass)
- windshield stress cracks. However, limited coverage on windshield stress cracks will be provided for the first 12 months in service, regardless of miles driven, even though caused by use and/or exposure to the elements.

### **Maintenance/Wear**

The New Vehicle Limited Warranty does not cover: (1) parts and labor needed to maintain the vehicle; and (2) the replacement of parts due to normal wear and tear. You, as the owner, are responsible for these items. See your Scheduled Maintenance Guide. Some examples of maintenance and normal wear are:

- oil changes
- oils, lubricants, other fluids
- oil/air filters
- tire rotation/inflation
- cleaning/polishing
- clutch linings
- Wiper blades
- Wheel alignments and tire balancing
- Brake pad/lining

Where a vehicle has no factory-related defect, and is therefore not entitled to a warranty related repair, replacement or adjustment, it is Ford policy nonetheless to provide certain maintenance items, when necessary, free of charge during a limited period:

- wiper blade replacements will be provided during the first 12 months in service, regardless of miles driven
- wheel alignments and tire balancing (unless required by a warranty repair) will be provided during the first 12 months or 12,000 miles in service, whichever occurs first
- Brake pad/lining replacements will be provided during the first 12 months or 18,000 miles in service, whichever occurs first

### **SYNC Hands-Free Communications and Entertainment System**

If your vehicle is equipped with SYNC, the New Vehicle Limited Warranty does not cover repairs under certain conditions. Some examples include:

- Loss of personal recording media, software or data
- Failure to provide proper installation environment
- Damage caused by:
  - abnormal use such as insertion of foreign objects, fluid spillage
  - unauthorized modification to alter functionality or capability
  - computer or internet viruses, bugs, worms, Trojan Horses, cancelbots
  - installation of unauthorized software, peripherals and attachments
  - unauthorized, unapproved and/or incompatible repairs, upgrades and modification

- the defective function of your cellular phone or digital media device (i.e., inadequate signal reception by the external antenna, viruses or other software problems)

### **Tire Wear or Damage**

The New Vehicle Limited Warranty does not cover normal wear or worn out tires. Tires will not be replaced (unless required by a warranty repair) for wear or damage including:

- tire damage from road hazard such as cuts, snags, bruises, bulges, puncture, and impact breaks
- tire damage due to under or over inflation, tire chain use, racing, spinning (as when stuck in snow or mud), improper mounting or dismounting, or tire repair

### **Other Items or Conditions Not Covered**

The New Vehicle Limited Warranty does not cover:

- vehicles that have had the odometer disconnected, altered, or inoperative for an extended period of time with the result that the actual mileage cannot be determined
- vehicles that have ever been labeled or branded as dismantled, fire, flood, junk, rebuilt, reconstructed, or salvaged; this will void the New Vehicle Limited Warranty
- vehicles that have been determined to be a total loss by an insurance company; this will void the New Vehicle Limited Warranty
- converted Expedition EL Limousines that are not equipped with the Limousine Builder's Package (17L) Option, or if the wheelbase is extended beyond 140 inches, or if the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) exceeds 9,900 pounds. See important information about Expedition EL limousine conversion (page 36).
- any other Ford or Mercury vehicles that are converted to limousines. This will void the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. See important information about conversions (page 36)
- converted ambulances that are not equipped with the Ford Ambulance Prep Package, see important information about ambulance conversions (page 35)

## 4. In addition ...

### **ROADSIDE SERVICE ASSISTANCE (UNITED STATES, PUERTO RICO, AND U.S. VIRGIN ISLANDS)**

Your vehicle is covered by the complimentary Ford Roadside Assistance Program (unless you are driving a daily rental unit). Under this program, Ford will cover:

- Towing to the nearest Ford Motor Company dealership, or towing to your selling dealership if within 35 miles
- Flat tire change (vehicle must have useable spare)
- Fuel delivery (limited to two occurrences in a 12-month period up to 2 gal. gas, 5 gal. diesel)
- Jump starts
- Lock-out assistance (replacement key cost is customer responsibility)
- Winching (vehicle must be within 100 feet of a paved or county-maintained road)

The Roadside Assistance Program is separate from the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. It begins at the warranty start date and lasts for five years or 60,000 miles (whichever occurs first). If you need towing beyond the five years or 60,000 miles (whichever occurs first) period, Ford can arrange roadside assistance and charge your credit card unless the problem is covered by another Ford warranty. Ford will pay the tow charge under the other warranty.

**For emergency roadside assistance, call 1-800-241-3673, 24 hours a day, 365 days a year.**

Ford Rental cars (FRCS) that must be towed because a covered repair has failed during the warranty coverage period, Ford will cover towing to the nearest Ford Motor Company dealership.

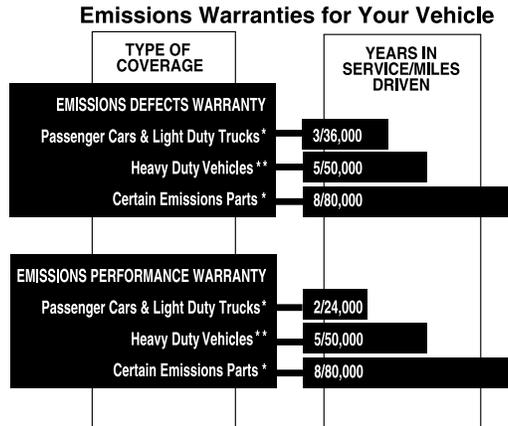
Ford Motor Company reserves the right to modify or discontinue Roadside Assistance at any time. Certain restrictions apply to Roadside Assistance benefits. Call 1-800-241-3673 for further details.

## 5. Federal requirements for emissions warranties

### QUICK REFERENCE: EMISSIONS WARRANTY COVERAGE

This chart shows your warranty coverage under two emissions warranties that Ford Motor Company provides, in compliance with Federal requirements. The warranties are:

- Emissions Defects Warranty
- Emissions Performance Warranty



\* Applies to vehicles up to 8,500 pounds gross vehicle weight rating (GVWR)

\*\* Applies to trucks over 8,500 pounds gross vehicle weight rating (GVWR) up to 19,500 pounds gross vehicle weight rating (GVWR)

For full details on emissions control coverage, see:

- ➔ **Emissions Defect Warranty** (page 18)
- ➔ **Emissions Performance Warranty** (page 19)
- ➔ **What is Covered?** (pages 20-21)
- ➔ **What is Not Covered?** (page 21)

## **EMISSIONS DEFECT WARRANTY COVERAGE**

During the warranty coverage period, Ford Motor Company warrants that:

- your vehicle or engine is designed, built, and equipped to meet - at the time it is sold - the emissions regulations of the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA).
- your vehicle or engine is free from emission-related defects in factory-supplied materials or workmanship, which are defects that could prevent the vehicle or engine from conforming with applicable EPA regulations.
- you will not be charged for diagnosis, repair, replacement, or adjustment of parts containing an emissions-related defect. Applicable parts are listed under **What is Covered?** on pages 20-21.

The warranty coverage period for:

- Passenger cars, light duty trucks (applies to vehicles up to 8,500 pounds GVWR)
  - 8 years or 80,000 miles (whichever occurs first) for catalytic converters, electronic engine control unit (ECU), transmission control module (TCM), and any other onboard emissions diagnostic module.
  - 3 years or 36,000 miles (whichever occurs first) for all other covered parts.
- Heavy duty vehicles (applies to trucks over 8,500 pounds GVWR up to 19,500 pounds GVWR)
  - 5 years or 50,000 miles (whichever occurs first) for all covered parts.

See WHAT IS COVERED for list of covered parts.

## EMISSIONS PERFORMANCE WARRANTY COVERAGE

Under Emissions Performance Warranty Coverage, Ford Motor Company will repair, replace, or adjust - with no charge for labor, diagnosis, or parts - any emissions control device or system, if you meet all of the following conditions:

- You have maintained and operated your vehicle according to the instructions on proper care in the **Owner Guide**, the **Scheduled Maintenance Guide**, and this booklet.
- Your vehicle fails to conform, during the warranty coverage period, to the applicable national EPA standards, as determined by an EPA approved inspection and maintenance program.
- You are subject to a penalty or sanction under local, state, or federal law because your vehicle has failed to conform to the emissions standards. (A penalty or sanction can include being denied the right to use your vehicle.)
- Your vehicle has not been tampered with, misused, or abused.

The warranty coverage period for:

- Passenger cars, light duty trucks (applies to vehicles up to 8,500 pounds GVWR)
  - 8 years or 80,000 miles (whichever occurs first) for catalytic converter, electronic emission control unit (ECU), transmission control module (TCM), and any other onboard emissions diagnostic module
  - 2 years or 24,000 miles (whichever occurs first) for all other covered parts.
- Heavy duty vehicles (applies to trucks over 8,500 pounds GVWR up to 19,500 pounds GVWR)
  - 5 years or 50,000 miles (whichever occurs first) for all covered parts.

See WHAT IS COVERED for list of covered parts.

Note that the warranty period begins on the **Warranty Start Date** as specified on page 2 of this booklet.

## WHAT IS COVERED?

For your vehicle if these parts contain an emissions-related defect, they are covered by both the Emissions Defect Warranty and the Emissions Performance Warranty.

- Air Flow Sensor
- Air/Fuel Feedback Control System and Sensors
- Air Induction System
- Catalytic Converter (including Diesel Particulate Filter and Diesel Oxidation Catalyst)
- Cold Start Enrichment System
- Controls for Deceleration
- Electronic Ignition System
- Exhaust Pipe (Manifold to Catalyst)
- Electronic Engine Control Sensors and Switches
- Electronic Engine Control Unit (ECU)\*
- Evaporative Emission Control System
- Exhaust Gas Recirculation (EGR) System
- Exhaust Heat Control Valve
- Exhaust Manifold
- Exhaust Pipe (Manifold to Catalyst)
- Fuel Filler Cap and Neck Restrictor (non-diesel only)
- Fuel Injection System
- Fuel Injector Supply Manifold
- Fuel Tank (non diesel only)
- Fuel Tank Pressure Control Valve (Flex Fuel Vehicle Only)
- Idle Air Bypass Valve
- Ignition Coil and/or Control Module
- Intake Manifold
- Intercooler Assembly - Engine Charger
- Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)/On-Board Diagnostic (OBD) System
- PCV system and Oil Filler Cap
- Secondary Air Injection System
- Spark Control Components
- Spark Plugs and Ignition Wires
- Supercharger Assembly
- Synchronizer Assembly
- Thermostat
- Throttle Body Assembly (MFI)
- Transmission Control Module (TCM)
- Turbocharger Assembly
- Vacuum Distribution System

\* Includes hardware and emissions related software changes only

### **Important Information About List of Parts**

Also covered by the two emissions warranties are all emissions-related bulbs, hoses, clamps, brackets, tubes, gaskets, seals, belts, connectors, non-diesel fuel lines, sensors, and wiring harnesses that are used with components on the list of parts, above.

Concerning parts that should be replaced on a certain maintenance schedule: these parts remain under warranty until : (a) the first replacement time that is specified in your **Owner Guide** and the **Scheduled Maintenance Guide**; or (b) the time or mileage limits of the Federal Defect and Performance Warranties (whichever occurs first). Your Ford Motor Company dealer maintains a complete list of parts covered by emissions warranties. For more details about the specific parts covered by the Emissions Defect Warranty, contact your dealer.

### **WHAT IS NOT COVERED?**

Ford Motor Company may deny you emissions warranty coverage if your vehicle or a part does not contain an emissions-related defect or has failed because of abuse, neglect, improper maintenance, unapproved modifications, or any items included in **What Is Not Covered?**, pages 12-15.

If you need more information about getting service under the **Federal Emissions Performance Warranty**, or if you want to report what you believe to be violations of the terms of this warranty, you may contact:

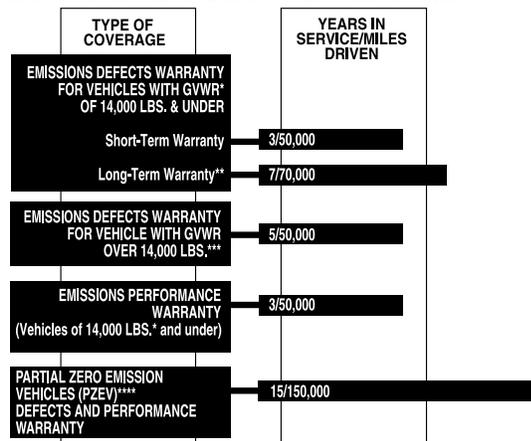
**Manager, Certification and Compliance Division  
(6405J)  
Warranty Claims  
Environmental Protection Agency  
Ariel Rios building  
1200 Pennsylvania Avenue, N.W.  
Washington, D.C. 20460**

## 6. California requirements for emissions warranties

### QUICK REFERENCE: EMISSIONS WARRANTY COVERAGE

This chart shows the emission warranty that Ford Motor Company provides for your vehicle under the emissions control warranty in accordance with the regulations of the California Air Resources Board. This coverage is in addition to Federal Emission warranties (Page 17).

**Emissions Warranties for California Certified Vehicles**



\* Gross Vehicle Weight Rating

\*\* These specific parts were selected on the basis of their estimated replacement cost at the time the California Air Resources Board certified your vehicle for sale in California (up to 14,000 GVWR).

\*\*\* Diesel engine vehicles over 14,000 pounds GVWR are covered for 5 years or 100,000 miles.

\*\*\*\* Refer to your Vehicle Emission Control Information Label for emissions certification information.

### Vehicles Eligible for California Emission Warranty Coverage

California emission warranty coverage applies if your vehicle meets the following two requirements:

- Your vehicle is registered in California or other states adopting California emission and warranty regulations,\* and
- Your vehicle is certified for sale in California as indicated on the vehicle emission control information label.

- \* Other states adopting California emissions and warranty regulation:
- Passenger Car & Light-duty Trucks (up to 8,500 pounds GVWR) - California, Connecticut, Maine, Massachusetts, New Jersey, Oregon, Pennsylvania, Rhode Island, Vermont and Washington (NOTE: New York adopted California emission standards, but not the California Emissions Warranty; the Federal Emissions Control Warranty applies to all non-PZEV vehicles in New York)
  - Medium-Duty Vehicles (over 8,500 pounds GVWR up to 14,000 pounds GVWR) - California, Connecticut, Maine, Massachusetts, Oregon, Rhode Island, and Vermont; and Washington only for Econolines that are MDPV certified as indicated on the VECI label
  - Light Heavy-Duty Diesel Engine Vehicles (over 14,000 pounds GVWR up to 19,500 pounds GVWR) - California, Maine, and Pennsylvania

### **Vehicles Eligible for California PZEV Emission Warranty Coverage**

California Partial Zero Emission Vehicles (PZEV) have extended coverage on all emission related parts. This extended warranty coverage applies if your vehicle is PZEV certified as indicated on the VECI label and is registered in California, Connecticut, Maine, Massachusetts, New Jersey, New York, Rhode Island or Vermont.

For full details about coverage under California requirements for emissions control, see:

- ➔ **Defects Warranties** (pages 23-30)
- ➔ **Performance Warranty** (pages 23-25)
- ➔ **What Is Covered?** (pages 26-29)
- ➔ **What Is Not Covered?** (page 29)

### **EXPLANATION OF CALIFORNIA EMISSIONS WARRANTIES**

#### **Your Warranty Rights and Obligations**

The California Air Resources Board and Ford Motor Company are pleased to explain the emission control system warranty on your 2010-model vehicle. In California, new motor vehicles must be designed, built, and equipped to meet the State's stringent anti-smog standards. Ford must warrant the emission control system on your vehicle for the periods of time listed on pages 24-25, provided there has been no abuse, neglect, or improper maintenance of your vehicle.

Your emission control system may include parts such as the carburetor or fuel injection system, the ignition system, catalytic converter, and the engine computer. Also included may be hoses, belts, connectors, and other emissions-related assemblies.

Where a warrantable condition exists, Ford Motor Company will repair your vehicle at no cost to you including diagnosis, parts, and labor.

### **Manufacturer's Warranty Coverage**

#### For Vehicles Eligible for California Emission Warranty Coverage

If Gross Vehicle Weight Rating is 14,000 lbs. or less:

For 3 years or 50,000 miles (whichever first occurs):

1. If your vehicle fails a Smog Check inspection, all necessary repairs and adjustments will be made by Ford to ensure that your vehicle passes the inspection. This is your emission control system PERFORMANCE WARRANTY.

2. If any emissions-related part on your vehicle is defective, the part will be repaired or replaced by Ford. This is your short-term emission control system DEFECTS WARRANTY.

For 7 years or 70,000 miles (whichever first occurs):

If an emissions-related part listed on page 27 with coverage for 7 years or 70,000 miles is defective, the part will be repaired or replaced by Ford. This is your long-term emission control system DEFECTS WARRANTY.

If Gross Vehicle Weight rating is over 14,000 lbs.:

For 5 years or 50,000 miles (gasoline powered engines and vehicles) or 5 years or 100,000 miles (diesel powered engines and vehicles) (whichever first occurs):

If an emissions-related part on your vehicle is defective, the part will be repaired or replaced by Ford. This is your emission control system DEFECTS WARRANTY.

For Vehicles Eligible for California PZEV Emission Warranty Coverage

For 15 years or 150,000 miles (whichever first occurs):

1. If an emissions-related part on your vehicle is defective, the part will be repaired or replaced by Ford. This is your emissions control system DEFECTS WARRANTY.
2. If your vehicle fails a Smog Check inspection, all necessary repairs and adjustments will be made by Ford to ensure that your vehicle passes the inspection. This is your emission control system PERFORMANCE WARRANTY.

**Owner's Warranty Responsibilities**

As the vehicle owner, you are responsible for the performance of the required maintenance listed in your owner's manual. Ford Motor Company recommends that you retain all receipts covering maintenance on your vehicle, but Ford cannot deny warranty coverage solely for the lack of receipts or for your failure to ensure the performance of all scheduled maintenance.

You are responsible for presenting your vehicle to a Ford Motor Company dealer as soon as a problem exists. The warranty repairs should be completed in a reasonable amount of time, not to exceed 30 days.

As the vehicle owner, you should also be aware that Ford Motor Company may deny you warranty coverage if your vehicle or a part has failed due to abuse, neglect, improper maintenance, or unapproved modifications.

If you have any questions regarding your warranty rights and responsibilities, or if you want to report what you believe to be violations of the terms of this warranty, you may contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center at 1-800-392-3673 (FORD) or the California Air Resources Board at:

**State of California Air Resources Board  
Mobile Source Operations Division  
P.O. Box 8001  
El Monte, California 91731-2990**

## WHAT IS COVERED?

If the parts on the following list contains a defect that affects emissions, they are covered by the Defects Warranties.

- Air Flow Sensor
  - Air/Fuel Feedback Control System and Sensors
  - Air Induction System
  - Catalytic Converter (including Diesel Particulate Filter and Diesel Oxidation Catalyst)
  - Cold Start Enrichment System
  - Controls for Deceleration
  - Electronic Ignition System
  - Exhaust Pipe (Manifold to Catalyst)
  - Electronic Engine Control Sensors and Switches
  - Electronic Engine Control Unit (ECU)\*
  - Evaporative Emission Control System
  - Exhaust Gas Recirculation (EGR) System
  - Exhaust Heat Control Valve
  - Exhaust Manifold
  - Exhaust Pipe (Manifold to Catalyst)
  - Fuel Filler Cap and Neck Restrictor (non-diesel only)
  - Fuel Injection System
  - Fuel Injector Supply Manifold
  - Fuel Tank (non-diesel only)
  - Fuel Tank Pressure Control Valve (Flex Fuel Vehicle Only)
  - Idle Air Bypass Valve
  - Ignition Coil and/or Control Module
  - Intake Manifold
  - Intercooler Assembly - Engine Charger
  - Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)/On-Board Diagnostic (OBD) System
  - PCV System and Oil Filler Cap
  - Secondary Air Injection System
  - Spark Control Components
  - Spark Plugs and Ignition Wires
  - Supercharger Assembly
  - Synchronizer Assembly
  - Thermostat
  - Throttle Body Assembly (MFI)
  - Transmission Control Module (TCM)
  - Turbocharger Assembly
  - Vacuum Distribution System
- \* Includes hardware and emissions related software changes only

**COVERAGE FOR 2010 MODEL VEHICLES (GVWR OF 14,000 LBS. OR LESS) UNDER  
LONG TERM DEFECTS WARRANTY**

(Coverage for up to 7 years/70,000 miles, whichever first occurs)  
Crown Victoria, Grand Marquis, Focus, Fusion (Non-Hybrid), Milan (Non-Hybrid), Mustang,  
Taurus, Ranger, Escape (Non-Hybrid), Mariner (Non-Hybrid), Transit Connect, Flex, Edge,  
Explorer, Mountaineer, Explorer Sport Trac, F150, Expedition, E-Series, F-Superduty

Part Name	Engine Size											
	2.0L	2.3L	2.5L	3.0L	3.5L	4.0L	4.6L	5.4L	6.0L	6.2L	6.4L	6.8L
ABS Module							X(3)	X(3)	X			
Catalytic Converter	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Catalyst Inlet Pipe				X	X							
Diesel Particulate Filter											X	
Supercharger								X				
Timing Chain Tensioner Arm					X							
Cam Timing Assembly				X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X
Variable Camshaft Timing Kit					X		X(4)					
Variable Camshaft Timing Housing (Right-Hand)					X		X(5)	X(6)				
Variable Camshaft Timing Housing (Left-Hand)				X(19)	X		X(7)	X(6)				
Variable Camshaft Timing Solenoid				X(19)								
Camshaft Drive Assembly (Left-Hand)						X						
Camshaft Drive Assembly (Right-Hand)						X						
Crankshaft Pulley Assembly								X				
Positive Crankcase Ventilation (PCV) Valve							X(8)	X(8)				X(8)
Turbocharger									X		X	X
Turbocharger Control Valve									X			
Turbocharger Outlet Gasket											X	X
Charge Air Cooler								X	X		X	X
Transmission Valve/Control Assembly					X(1)							
Transmission Turbine Shaft Speed Sensor		X(9)				X(9)						
Transmission Intermediate Speed Sensor		X(9)				X(9)						
Transmission Output Shaft Speed Sensor		X(9)			X(1)	X(9)						
Transmission Solenoid			X			X	X					
Transmission Control Module					X							
Fuel Tank	X	X	X	X	X	X(10)	X(11)	X(12)		X		X
Fuel Filler Pipe			X(13)	X(13)		X(13)	X(13)					
Fuel Injector Fuel Supply Manifold Kit											X	
Fuel Delivery Module		X				X(9)	X(15)	X(6)				X(16)
Intake Manifold			X(17)			X(4)	X	X	X	X	X	X(18)
Exhaust Manifold (Right-Hand)				X(19)	X		X(20)	X(21)		X	X	X
Exhaust Manifold (Left-Hand)					X		X(22)	X(23)		X		X(16)
Exhaust Manifold Gasket				X(19)			X(24)	X(23)		X	X	

Part Name	Engine Size											
	2.0L	2.3L	2.5L	3.0L	3.5L	4.0L	4.6L	5.4L	6.0L	6.2L	6.4L	6.8L
Exhaust Gasket				X(19)								
EGR Cooler									X		X	
EGR Tube to Manifold Connector				X(19)			X(24)	X(25)				
Emission Vacuum Connector					X(14)							
Fuel Injector									X		X	
High Pressure Fuel Pump									X		X	
Throttle Body Spacer								X(4)				
Fuel Vapor Storage Canister						X(5)	X(5)	X(26)				
Fuel Injector Fuel Supply Manifold				X(17)	X(14)		X(15)	X(23)				X
Hydraulic Fluid Pump Cover Kit									X			
Fuel Injector Wiring Harness					X(14)			X(16)				X
Powertrain Control Wiring Harness			X	X	X(27)	X(28)	X(29)	X		X	X	X
Fuel Injector Control Module									X			
Powertrain Engine Control Unit (ECU)	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Main Body Wiring Harness (2)						X(4)	X(4)	X(4)				
Dash Panel & Headlight Junction Wiring Assembly (2)	X	X	X	X	X	X(4)	X(30)	X(4)				
Backup Lamp Wiring Harness								X(16)				X(16)

(1)Fusion W/AW-6spdTrans only

(2)for Service Engine Soon/Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) illumination only

(3)E-Series and F150 only

(4)Mustang only

(5)Explorer, Mountaineer, and Sport Trac only

(6)Expedition and F-Superduty only

(7)Explorer, Mountaineer, Sport Trac, and F150 only

(8)3 Valve Engines only

(9)Ranger only

(10)Explorer, Mountaineer, Sport Trac, and Ranger only

(11)Crown Victoria, Grand Marquis, Explorer, Mountaineer, Sport Trac, F150, and E-Series only

(12)F150, E-Series, Expedition, and F-Superduty only

(13)Easy Fuel™ capless fuel-filler system only

(14)Taurus and Flex only

(15)Crown Victoria and Grand Marquis only

(16)F-Superduty only

(17)Escape and Mariner only

(18)E-Series only

(19)Fusion and Milan only

(20)Mustang, Sport Trac, and F150 only

(21)Mustang, Expedition, F150, and F-Superduty only

(22)Mustang and F150 only

(23)Mustang and Expedition only

(24)F150 only

(25)Mustang, Expedition, and F150 only

(26)E-Series and F-Superduty only

(27)Taurus, Flex, Fusion, and Milan only

(28)Mustang and Sport Trac only

(29)Mustang, Explorer, Mountaineer, E-Series, F150 only

(30)Crown Victoria, Grand Marquis, and Mustang only

**Important Information about List of Parts**

There may be additional coverage for these parts through the Bumper to Bumper, Powertrain, or Diesel Engine limited warranties. In any case, the warranty with the broadest coverage applies.

Also covered by this warranty are all emissions-related bulbs, hoses, clamps, brackets, tubes, gaskets, seals, belts, connectors, non diesel fuel lines, and wiring harnesses that are used with components on the list of parts above.

Concerning parts that should be replaced on a certain maintenance schedule: these parts remain under warranty until the first required replacement time that is specified in your **Owner Guide** and the **Scheduled Maintenance Guide**.

**NOTE:** If the diagnosis does not reveal a defect, the Defects Warranty does not apply.

Your Ford Motor Company dealer maintains a complete list of covered parts. For more details about the specific parts that are covered by the Defects Warranty, contact your dealer.

**WHAT IS NOT COVERED?**

Ford Motor Company may deny you emissions warranty coverage if your vehicle or a part does not contain a defect that affects emissions or has failed because of abuse, neglect, improper maintenance, unapproved modifications, or any items included in **What Is Not Covered?**, pages 12-15.

## **7. Additional information about your emissions warranty coverage, under Federal and California requirements**

### **HOW DO I GET WARRANTY SERVICE?**

To get service under your emissions warranties, take your vehicle to any Ford Motor Company dealer as soon as possible after illumination of the Malfunction Indicator Light or it has failed an EPA-approved test or a California Smog Check inspection. Be sure to show the dealer the document that says your vehicle has failed the test.

Your dealer will determine whether the repair is covered by the warranty. If the dealer has a question about Emissions Performance Warranty coverage, it will forward the question to Ford Motor Company, which must make a final decision within 30 days after you bring your vehicle in for repair. (The decision will be made within a shorter time if state, local, or federal law requires you to have the vehicle repaired more quickly in order to avoid additional penalties.) The deadline for a determination about Emissions Performance Warranty Coverage does not need to be met if you request a delay, agree to a delay in writing, or if the delay is caused by an event for which neither Ford nor your dealer is responsible. If a question about Emissions Performance Warranty coverage is referred to Ford Motor Company, you will be notified by Ford Motor Company in writing if your claim for warranty coverage is denied. The notice will explain the basis for denying your claim. If you fail to receive this notice within a timely manner, as determined above, Ford will perform the warranty repair for you free of charge.

### **HOW DO I HANDLE EMERGENCY REPAIRS?**

If your vehicle needs an emergency warrantable repair and a Ford Motor Company dealer is not available, or if a Ford Motor Company dealer cannot perform warrantable repair(s) within 30 days of you bringing your vehicle to the dealer, repairs may be performed at any service establishment or by you using Ford equivalent replacement parts.

Ford will reimburse you for the cost of these warranty repairs including diagnosis, if you take the part(s) that are replaced and the repair receipt(s) to a Ford Motor Company dealer. The reimbursement shall not exceed Ford's suggested retail price for the warranted parts that are replaced and labor charges based on Ford's recommended time allowance for the warranty repair and the geographically appropriate hourly rate.

### **WHAT REPLACEMENT PARTS SHOULD I USE?**

Ford Motor Company recommends that you use genuine Ford replacement parts. However, when you are having non-warranty work done on your vehicle, you may choose to use non-Ford parts. If you decide to use non-Ford parts, be sure they are equivalent to Ford parts in performance, quality, and durability. If you use replacement parts that are not equivalent to Ford parts, your vehicle's emissions control systems may not work as effectively, and you may jeopardize your emissions warranty coverage.

For vehicles within the warranty period, Ford will repair at no cost to the owner, under the Federal Emissions Warranty, covered emission failures caused by properly installed Ford parts or non-Ford parts that have been certified by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA). Ford is not responsible for the cost of repairing any emission failures caused by non-Ford parts that have not been certified by the EPA.

**The maintenance, replacement, or repair of emissions control devices or systems can be performed by any automotive repair establishment or individual using Ford replacement parts or EPA certified parts without voiding your federal warranty coverage for future repairs during the warranty period.**

### **PROPER MAINTENANCE PRESERVES YOUR WARRANTY**

If you do not maintain your vehicle properly, Ford may have the right to deny you warranty coverage.

To have repairs made under this warranty, you may have to show that you have followed Ford's instructions on properly maintaining and using your vehicle. You will find these instructions in your **Owner Guide** and **Scheduled Maintenance Guide**. Be sure to save your service receipts and to keep accurate records of all maintenance work.

### **CUSTOMER ASSISTANCE**

If you are not satisfied with the handling of a warranty matter, see **Customer Assistance**, on the inside front cover, and **Better Business Bureau (BBB) AUTO LINE program**, page 34.

## 8. Noise emissions warranty

### **NOISE EMISSIONS WARRANTY FOR CERTAIN LIGHT TRUCKS**

Ford Motor Company warrants to the first person who purchases this vehicle for purposes other than resale and to each subsequent purchaser that this vehicle as manufactured by Ford, was designed, built and equipped to conform at the time it left Ford's control with all applicable U.S. EPA Noise Control Regulations.

This warranty covers this vehicle as designed, built and equipped by Ford Motor Company, and is not limited to any particular part, component or system of the vehicle as manufactured by Ford. Defects in design, assembly or in any part, component or system of the vehicle as manufactured by Ford, which, at the time it left Ford's control, caused noise emissions to exceed Federal standards, are covered by this warranty for the life of the vehicle.

### **THE NOISE EMISSIONS WARRANTY OBLIGATIONS DO NOT APPLY TO:**

- loss of time, inconvenience, loss of use of the vehicle, commercial loss or, other consequential damages.
- any vehicle which is not covered by the U.S. EPA Medium and Heavy Trucks Noise Emission Standards (40 C.F.R. Part 205, Subpart B). Among the non-covered vehicles are those lacking a partially or fully enclosed operator's compartment, such as a basic stripped chassis, those having a Gross Vehicle Weight Rating of 10,000 pounds or less, and those sold outside the United States and its territories. To the extent permitted by law, THIS WARRANTY IS EXPRESSLY INSTEAD of any express or implied warranty, condition, or guarantee, agreement, or representation, by any person with respect to conformity of this vehicle with the U.S. EPA Noise Control Regulations, including ANY IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS.

## 9. Ford Extended Service Plan

### **MORE PROTECTION FOR YOUR VEHICLE**

You can get additional protection for your new car or light truck by purchasing a Ford Extended Service Plan (Ford ESP). Ford ESP service contracts are backed by Ford Motor Company and they provide:

- additional benefits during the warranty period depending on the plan you purchase (such as: alternative transportation and coverage for certain maintenance and wear items; coverage for certain maintenance and wear items); and
- extended protection after your Bumper to Bumper Warranty expires.

You may purchase Ford ESP from any Ford Motor Company dealer or visit our website at [Ford-ESP.com](http://Ford-ESP.com). There are several Ford ESP plans available in various time, distance and deductible combinations. Each plan is tailored to fit your own driving needs, including reimbursement for towing and rental vehicles.

When you purchase Ford ESP, you receive peace-of-mind protection throughout the United States and Canada, provided by a network of more than 4,600 Ford Motor Company dealers.

This information is subject to change. Ask your dealer for complete details about Ford ESP coverage.

## 10. The Better Business Bureau (BBB) AUTO LINE Program (U.S. Only)

Your satisfaction is important to Ford Motor Company and to your dealer. If a warranty concern has not been resolved using the three-step procedure outlined on the first page of the Customer Assistance section, you may be eligible to participate in the BBB AUTO LINE program.

The BBB AUTO LINE program consists of two parts — mediation and arbitration. During mediation, a representative of the BBB will contact both you and Ford Motor Company to explore options for settlement of the claim. If an agreement is not reached during mediation and your claim is eligible, you may participate in the arbitration process. An arbitration hearing will be scheduled so that you can present your case in an informal setting before an impartial person. The arbitrator will consider the testimony provided and make a decision after the hearing.

You are not bound by the decision, but should you choose to accept the BBB AUTO LINE decision, Ford must abide by the accepted decision as well. Disputes submitted to the BBB AUTO LINE program are usually decided within forty days after you file your claim with the BBB.

BBB AUTO LINE Application: Using the information provided below, please call or write to request a program application. You will be asked for your name and address, general information about your new vehicle, information about your warranty concerns, and any steps you have already taken to try to resolve them. A Customer Claim Form will be mailed that will need to be completed, signed, and returned to the BBB along with proof of ownership. Upon request, the BBB will review the claim for eligibility under Program Summary Guidelines.

**You can get more information by calling BBB AUTO LINE at 1-800-955-5100, or writing to:**

**BBB AUTO LINE  
4200 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 800  
Arlington, Virginia 22203-1833**

BBB AUTO LINE applications can also be requested by calling the Ford Motor Company Customer Relationship Center at 1-800-392-3673.

**Note:** Ford Motor Company reserves the right to change eligibility limitations, modify procedures, or to discontinue this process at any time without notice and without obligation.

## 11. State warranty enforcement laws

These state laws - sometimes called lemon laws - allow owners to receive a replacement vehicle or a refund of the purchase price, under certain circumstances. The laws vary from state to state.

To the extent your state law allows, Ford Motor Company requires that you first send us a written notification of any defects or non-conformities that you have experienced with your vehicle. (This will give us the opportunity to make any needed repairs before you pursue the remedies provided by your state's law.)

In all other states where not specifically required by state law, Ford Motor Company requests that you give us the written notice. Send your written notification to:

**Ford Motor Company  
Customer Relationship Center  
P.O. Box 6248  
Dearborn, MI 48126**

## 12. Important information about ambulance conversions

Ford vehicles are suitable for producing ambulances only if equipped with the **Ford Ambulance Prep Package**. In addition, Ford urges ambulance manufacturers to follow the recommendations of the **Ford Incomplete Vehicle Manual** and the **Ford Truck Body Builders Layout Book** (and pertinent supplements).

**Using a Ford vehicle without the Ford Ambulance Prep Package to produce an ambulance could result in elevated underbody temperatures, fuel overpressurization, and the risk of fuel expulsion and fires. Such use also voids the Ford Bumper to Bumper Warranty and may void the Emissions Warranties.**

You may determine whether the vehicle is equipped with the **Ford Ambulance Prep Package** by inspecting the information plate on the driver's rear door pillar.

You may determine whether the ambulance manufacturer has followed Ford's recommendations by contacting the ambulance manufacturer of your vehicle.

### 13. Important information about Ford limousine conversions

Ford Motor Company authorizes only Ford Qualified Vehicle Modifiers (QVM's) to perform Ford Expedition EL conversions. To obtain a list of QVM's, visit our website at [www.fleet.ford.com/limo](http://www.fleet.ford.com/limo) or call 1-800-34-FLEET. Expedition EL is suitable for limousine conversion only if equipped with the proper Ford Limousine Builder's Package. The wheelbase on the Expedition EL with the Limousine Builder's Package (17L) may NOT be extended beyond 140" (258.89 total wheelbase) or in a manner that results in a Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) exceeding 9,900 pounds.

If an Expedition EL Limousine is NOT equipped with the Limousine Builder's Package or it is equipped with the Limousine Builder's Package but its wheelbase is extended beyond its limitations or if its GVWR exceeds the weight limitations, then the New Vehicle Limited Warranty is voided, any Ford Extended Service Plan (ESP) contract is voided, applicable Emissions warranties may be voided, and the vehicle modifier may be considered the vehicle "manufacturer" for Emissions Warranty coverage purposes (including responsibilities for emissions, warranty, recall, and in-use compliance).

Any other Ford or Mercury vehicle converted to a limousine will **void** the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

**[www.ownerconnection.com](http://www.ownerconnection.com)**

Designed with Ford owners in mind, this site features updated information on vehicle service, special offers and Ford-sponsored events in your community.



AW7J 19T201 DA



<b>Table of Contents</b>	
<b>Introduction</b>	<b>2</b>
<b>Instrument Cluster</b>	<b>6</b>
<b>Driving</b>	<b>8</b>
<b>Roadside Emergencies</b>	<b>16</b>
<b>Cleaning</b>	<b>18</b>
<b>Maintenance and Specifications</b>	<b>20</b>
<b>Scheduled Maintenance Guide</b>	<b>69</b>
<b>Index</b>	<b>94</b>

All rights reserved. Reproduction by any means, electronic or mechanical including photocopying, recording or by any information storage and retrieval system or translation in whole or part is not permitted without written authorization from Ford Motor Company. Ford may change the contents without notice and without incurring obligation.

Copyright © 2010 Ford Motor Company

1

## Introduction

### POWER STROKE DIESEL ENGINE

Your new diesel engine will feel, drive and function somewhat differently than a gasoline engine. Therefore it is very important that you read and thoroughly familiarize yourself and others operating the vehicle with this guide. **A special procedure for turning off the diesel engine is in the *Driving* chapter. It is important to read and understand this material in order to maintain the best service life for your engine.**

This guide will acquaint you with the Power Stroke diesel engine. It provides recommendations on engine care and operating procedures. For complete vehicle information, also refer to the *Owner's Guide* included with the vehicle. It also describes equipment and gives specifications for equipment that was in effect when this guide was approved for printing, and should be considered a permanent part of the vehicle.

**Some aftermarket products may cause severe engine/transmission and/or exhaust system damage; refer to the *Warranty Guide* for more information. Your vehicle's powertrain control systems can detect and store information about vehicle modifications that increase horsepower and torque output such as whether or not performance-enhancing powertrain components commonly referred to as "performance chips" have been used. This information cannot be erased and will stay in the system's memory even if the modification is removed. The information can be retrieved by Ford Motor Company, Ford of Canada, and service and repair facilities when servicing your vehicle. This information may be used to determine if repairs will be covered by warranty.**

Ford may discontinue models or change specifications without any notice and without incurring obligations.

### Important notice

Ford vehicles are suitable for producing ambulances only if equipped with the Ford ambulance preparation package. In addition, Ford urges ambulance manufacturers to follow the recommendation of the *Ford Incomplete Vehicle Manual*, *Ford Truck Body Builder's Layout Book* (and pertinent supplements) and the *Qualified Vehicle Modifiers Guidelines*. Using a Ford vehicle without the Ford ambulance preparation package to produce an ambulance voids the Ford warranty and could result in elevated underbody temperatures, fuel overpressurization and the risk of fuel expulsion and fires. To determine whether the vehicle is equipped with the Ford ambulance preparation package, inspect the information plate on the driver's side door pillar. Contact the manufacturer of your vehicle to determine whether the ambulance manufacturer's followed Ford's recommendations.

2

## Introduction



### WARNINGS

Throughout this guide, you will find warnings identified by the symbol . Warnings remind you to be especially careful to reduce the risk of personal injury.

### NEW VEHICLE BREAK-IN

Your vehicle does not need an extensive break-in. Try not to drive continuously at the same speed for the first 1,000 miles (1,600 km) of new vehicle operation. Vary your speed to allow parts to adjust themselves to other parts.

Drive your new vehicle at least 500 miles (800 km) before towing a trailer. Make sure you use the specified engine oil by checking the engine oil specification chart under *Engine oil* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

Do not add friction modifier compounds or special break-in oils during the first few thousand miles (kilometers) of operation, since these additives may prevent piston ring seating. See *Engine oil* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter of this supplement for more information on oil usage.

### DIESEL ENGINE INFORMATION

The diesel engine fuel system is a pressurized two-stage filtration system and consists of:

- a frame-mounted diesel fuel conditioner module (DFCM) / primary filter with an electric fuel pump and water drain,
- an engine-mounted secondary fuel filter,
- a fuel injector for each cylinder (8 total),
- a high-pressure fuel pump,
- a high-pressure fuel rail for each cylinder bank (2 total) and
- numerous high-pressure pipes from the high-pressure pump to the rails, and rails to the injectors.

The DFCM acts as a primary fuel filter/water separator which removes both water and impurities from the fuel. The engine mounted filter filters finer impurities from the diesel fuel. The engine-mounted fuel filter and the DFCM filter should be changed at the recommended service interval or when indicated by the message center **LOW FUEL PRESSURE** message. Refer to the *scheduled maintenance information* in this supplement for more information.

## Introduction

The DFCM should be drained at regular intervals or when indicated by the message center message and water in fuel indicator light. See *Fuel filter/water separator* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

The fuel injection system is controlled through the powertrain control module (PCM).

Fuel is drawn from the fuel tank by a frame-mounted electric fuel pump located inside the DFCM and provides pressurized fuel to the engine. The fuel pump contains a pressure relief valve for overpressure protection in the event of restricted flow.

### Engine protection mode

Ford diesel engines are equipped with engine protection and emission control systems. These systems monitor critical temperatures and pressures, and modify engine operation accordingly. These features are intended to modify engine performance characteristics. If these modified engine performance characteristics persist for an extended period or the service engine soon  or powertrain malfunction/reduced power/electronic throttle control light  is illuminated, seek service from your authorized dealer.

### Lubrication system

It is important to change the engine oil at the recommended service intervals to maintain oil viscosity. Extending the oil and filter change interval beyond the recommended interval can negatively affect engine performance, fuel economy and engine life. Refer to *Engine oil* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

### Fast start glow plug system

The diesel engine glow system consists of:

- eight glow plugs (one per cylinder)
- the glow plug control module (GPCM)
- engine coolant temperature (ECT) sensor
- barometric pressure (BARO) sensor
- environmental temperature sensor

## Introduction

The glow plug system is electronically controlled by the PCM and GPCM. The GPCM energizes the glow plugs immediately after the ignition is turned on and kept on as determined by the GPCM using the ECT, BARO and environmental temperature sensor. The required time for the glow plugs to be energized decreases as the coolant temperature, barometric pressure and environmental temperature increase.



### Engine and secondary cooling system

The cooling system contains an engine cooling loop to cool the engine and a secondary cooling loop to cool the transmission, exhaust gas recirculation (EGR), charge air and fuel. The coolant serves three primary purposes: to provide heat transfer, freeze point protection, and corrosion protection using additives.

Vehicles with diesel engines typically are used to carry heavy loads and accumulate mileage rapidly. These two factors may cause the additives in the coolant to “wear out” in a shorter time. Refer to the *Special operating conditions* section for more information about coolant additives and coolant change intervals. Operating the engine with insufficient coolant and/or coolant additive can cause severe engine damage.

### Selective catalytic reduction (SCR) system

Your vehicle is equipped with a selective catalytic reduction (SCR) system to help reduce emission levels of oxides of nitrogen from the exhaust of the diesel engine. This system relies on the use of diesel exhaust fluid (DEF) which must be replenished at certain intervals. Failure to maintain proper DEF levels or if the DEF becomes contaminated will result in vehicle speed limitations and/or result in the vehicle entering an idle-only mode. See *Selective catalytic reduction (SCR) system* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter for more information.

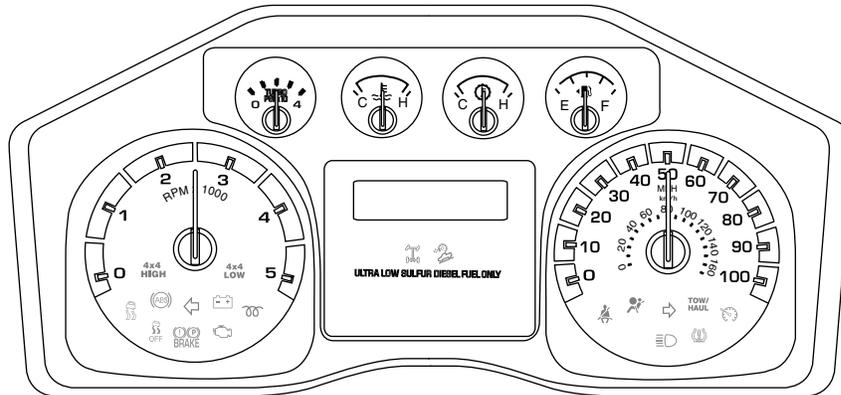
### Speed control (if equipped)

If vehicle speed goes outside a predetermined range from the set speed, the RES (Resume) function will not reset vehicle speed. Vehicle speed will need to be reset with the SET +/- button after reaching desired speed using accelerator pedal.

## Instrument Cluster

### WARNING LIGHTS

Base cluster with standard measure shown; metric and optional similar



**Note:** Some warning lights are reconfigurable telltale (RTT) indicator lights and will illuminate in the message center display and function the same as the other warning lights.

### Glow plug pre-heat indicator:



With the key in the on position, this light will illuminate if glow plug heat is necessary as a starting aid. Wait until the light goes off before starting. Refer to *Cold weather starting* in the *Driving* chapter of this supplement. After the engine starts, the light should turn off. The light should always illuminate at least momentarily when the engine is cold and the ignition is turned to on.

## Instrument Cluster

### Water in fuel:

During refueling, it is possible for water-contaminated diesel fuel to be pumped into your tank. Your vehicle's fuel system is equipped with a fuel filter/water separator to remove water from the fuel. The water in fuel light will illuminate when the DFCM has a significant quantity of water in it.



If the light illuminates when the engine is running, stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible, shut off the engine, then drain the DFCM. Refer to *Fuel filter/water separator* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter of this supplement for the drain procedure. Allowing water to stay in the system could result in extensive damage to, or failure of, the fuel injection system.

**Note:** Air will enter into the fuel system if the DFCM is drained while the system is running. The engine will not operate properly if air enters the system.



**WARNING:** Do not drain the DFCM while the engine is running. Fuel may ignite if the separator is drained while the engine is running or the vehicle is moving.

### Low/contaminated diesel exhaust fluid:

With the key in the on position, this light will illuminate if the exhaust fluid is contaminated and/or low. See *Diesel exhaust fluid* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter for more information.



## GAUGES

### Engine boost gauge:

Indicates the amount of manifold air pressure in the engine.



## Driving

### STARTING THE ENGINE

Read all starting instructions carefully before you start your vehicle.

For temperatures below 32°F (0°C), the use of the correct grade engine oil is essential for proper operation. Refer to *Engine oil specifications* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter for more information.

Your vehicle may be equipped with a cold weather starting strategy that prevents severe engine damage by assisting in engine lubrication warm-up. In extremely cold ambient temperatures, this strategy activates and prevents the accelerator pedal from being used for 30 seconds after starting the vehicle. By not allowing the accelerator pedal to be used, the engine oil is allowed to properly lubricate the bearings preventing engine damage due to lack of proper lubrication. After the 30 second warm-up period, the accelerator pedal will be operational again as long as the pedal is not being pressed when the 30 second time limit expires. When starting the engine in extremely cold temperatures (-15°F [-26°C]), it is recommended to allow the engine to idle for several minutes before driving the vehicle.

Ensure the gearshift lever is in P (Park) and the parking brake is fully set before you turn the key. Do not press the accelerator during starting.

### Engine-driven cooling fan (fan clutch)

Your vehicle is equipped with an engine driven cooling fan drive (also called a fan clutch). This fan drive changes the fan speed to match the vehicle's changing cooling air flow requirements. Fan speed, fan noise level and fuel consumption all will increase based on the driving conditions that include trailer towing, hill climbing, heavy loads, high speed and high ambient temperature, individually or in combination.

The fan drive is designed to provide the minimum fan speed (and resulting minimum fan noise and fuel consumption) required to meet the ever changing vehicle cooling air flow requirements. You will hear the amount of fan noise increasing and decreasing as the engine power requirements and vehicle driving conditions change as you drive. This is to be expected as being normal to the operation of your vehicle. High levels of fan noise might also be heard when your engine is first started, and should normally decrease after driving for a short time.

## Driving

### If the vehicle's speed is limited or the vehicle has entered an idle-only mode

If the vehicle's speed is limited or in an idle-only mode, the SCR system may be limiting the vehicle's functions due to low or contaminated diesel exhaust fluid (DEF). Check the DEF. See *Selective catalytic reduction (SCR) system* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter for more information.

### Cold weather starting

It is recommended that the engine block heater be used for starting when the temperature is -10°F (-23°C) or colder. Refer to *Engine block heater (if equipped)* in the *Driving* chapter of the *Owner's Guide*.

When operating in cold weather, use Motorcraft® cetane improvers or non alcohol-based cetane improvers from a reputable manufacturer.

Do not crank the engine for more than 10 seconds as starter damage may occur. If the engine fails to start, turn the key to 3 (off) and wait 30 seconds before trying again.



**WARNING:** Do not use starting fluid, such as ether, in the air intake system (see air filter decal). Such fluid could cause immediate explosive damage to the engine and possible personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not add gasoline, gasohol or alcohol to diesel fuel. This practice creates a serious fire hazard and causes engine performance problems.

1. Turn the key to on without turning the key to start. **Do not start the engine** until the glow-plug pre-heat indicator  turns off.
2. When the glow plug pre-heat indicator turns off, turn the key to start, then release the key as soon as the engine starts. The glow plugs  may remain on for a period of time after engine start. If the engine is not started before the glow plug activation time ends, the glow plugs will need to be reset by turning the key to off.
3. After the engine starts, **allow it to idle for about 15 seconds**. This is to protect the engine. Do not increase engine speed until the oil pressure gauge indicates normal pressure.

## Driving

### ENGINE IDLE SHUTDOWN (IF EQUIPPED)

Your vehicle may be equipped with an engine idle shutdown system. This system will automatically shut down your engine when it has been idling in P (Park) or N (Neutral) for five minutes (parking brake set) or 15 minutes (parking brake not set). When the engine idle shutdown process has started:

- A chime will sound and the message center will display **ENGINE TURNS OFF IN 30** (seconds) and start counting down.
- The 5 or 15 minute timer can be restarted by changing the position of the accelerator pedal, brake pedal or the park brake within the final 30 seconds.
- When the timer reaches zero, the engine shuts down and the message center will display **ENGINE TURNED OFF**.
- One minute after the engine has shut down, the electrical system will simulate key off, even though the ignition is still in the on position, initiating normal accessory delay period.
- The ignition must be moved to the off position to reset the system before restarting the vehicle.

**Note:** The engine idle shutdown idle timer will not start if:

- The engine is operating in power take-off (PTO) mode.
- The engine coolant temperature is below 60°F (16°C).
- The exhaust emission control device (DPF) is regenerating.

### STOPPING THE ENGINE

Turn the ignition to the off position.

To prolong engine life (especially after extended high speed, high ambient temperature, or high GVW/GCW operation), it is recommended that a hot engine be idled for 3-5 minutes which will allow the turbocharged engine to cool down.

### COLD WEATHER OPERATION

Changing to a lighter grade engine oil also makes starting easier under these conditions. Refer to *Engine oil specifications* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter of this supplement.

Diesel fuel is adjusted seasonally for cold temperatures. Diesel fuel which has not been properly formulated for the ambient conditions may form wax crystals which can clog the fuel filters. At temperatures below 20°F (-7°C), if the engine starts, stalls after a short time, and then will not

10

## Driving

restart, the fuel filter(s) may be clogged. For best results in cold weather, use a diesel fuel which has been formulated for the ambient conditions. If you have been using biodiesel, you may need to use a fuel with lower biodiesel content, try another brand, or discontinue using biodiesel.

Your vehicle is equipped with a diesel fuel conditioner module (DFCM) which recirculates fuel from the engine to help prevent fuel filter clogging. Your vehicle is also equipped with a bypass relief valve, located in the fuel tank pick-up boot, which provides fuel flow to the engine if the fuel pickup should become plugged. To allow the bypass valve to function and avoid engine fuel starvation during cold weather operation of 32°F (0°C) or below, it is recommended that the fuel level in your tank should not be allowed to drop below ¼ full. This will help prevent air from entering the fuel system and stalling the engine.

Your vehicle is equipped with a an SCR system which uses diesel exhaust fluid (DEF) to operate properly. DEF must be replenished at certain intervals. When filling the vehicle's DEF tank in cold weather, special care must be taken to prevent damage to the DEF tank. For proper cold weather fill procedure, see *Selective Catalytic Reduction (SCR) System* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

In cold weather below 32°F (0°C), the engine will slowly increase to a higher idle speed if left idling in P (Park). As the engine warms-up, the engine sound level will decrease due to the activation of PCM-controlled sound reduction features.

If your vehicle is operated in a heavy snow storm or blowing snow conditions, the engine air induction may become partially clogged with snow and/or ice. If this occurs, the engine may experience a significant reduction in power output. At the earliest opportunity, clear all the snow and/or ice away from inside the air filter assembly. Remove the air cleaner cover and the pleated paper filter, leaving the foam filter in and remove any snow or ice. Ensure the foam filter is installed correctly in place. Remove any debris, snow and/or ice on the foam filter by brushing the surface with soft brush. Do not use water, solvents, or a hard brush for cleaning the foam filter.

In order to operate the engine in temperatures of 32°F (0°C) or lower, read the following instructions:

- Make sure that the batteries are of sufficient size and are fully charged. Check other electrical components to make sure they are in optimum condition.
- Use the proper coolant solution at the concentration recommended to protect the engine against damage from freezing.

## Driving

- Try to keep the fuel tank full as much as possible at the end of operation to prevent condensation in the fuel system.
- Make sure you use proper cold weather engine oil and that it is at its proper level. Also, if necessary, make sure to follow the engine oil and filter change schedule found under the *Special operating conditions* section listed in the *scheduled maintenance information*.
- At temperatures of -10°F (-23°C) or below, it is recommended that you use an engine block heater to improve cold engine starting.
- If operating in arctic temperatures of -20°F (-29°C) or lower, consult your truck dealer for information about special cold weather equipment and precautions.

**Note:** Idling in cold weather will not heat the engine to its normal operating temperature. Long periods of idling, especially in cold weather, can cause a buildup of deposits which can cause engine damage.

The following cold weather idling guidelines are recommended:

- Use Motorcraft® cetane improvers or non alcohol-based cetane improvers from a reputable manufacturer.
- Maintain the engine cooling system properly.
- Avoid shutting the engine down after an extensive idling period. Drive the vehicle for several miles with the engine at normal operating temperatures under a moderate load.
- Consider using an engine block heater.
- For extended idle times use an approved idle speed increase device.

### Winter operating tips for Arctic operation -20°F (-29°C) and below

The following information is provided as a guideline only, and is not intended to be the only source of possible solutions in resolving extreme cold temperature issues.

#### **Starting aids:**

The use of the factory engine block heater (if equipped) (refer to *Engine block heater* in the *Driving* chapter of the *Owner's Guide*) will assist in engine starting in extreme cold ambient temperatures.



**WARNING:** Do not use starting fluid, such as ether, in the air intake system (see air filter decal). Such fluid could cause immediate explosive damage to the engine and possible personal injury.

## Driving

### **Idle control:**

- Your vehicle may have a factory option for a stationary elevated idle control (SEIC) through dash-mounted upfitter switches will allow the operator to elevate the idle rpm for extended idle periods, as well as aftermarket equipment such as PTO operation. This feature must be configured even if ordered from the factory. See your authorized dealer for required upfitting.

### **Operation in snow and rain**

Vehicle operation in heavy snowfall or extreme rain conditions may feed excessive amounts of snow/water into the air intake system. This could plug/soak the air filter with snow and may cause the engine to lose power and possibly shut down.

The following actions are recommended after operating the vehicle up to 200 miles (320 km) in snowfall or extreme rain:

- **Snow:** At the earliest opportunity, open the hood and clear all the snow and ice from the air filter housing inlet (do not remove the foam filter) and reset the air filter restriction gauge.

**Note:** Removal of the foam filter degrades vehicle performance during snow and hot weather conditions.

- **Extreme rain:** The air filter will dry after about 15–30 minutes at highway speeds. At the earliest opportunity, open the hood and reset the air filter restriction gauge.

Refer to *Air filter and restriction gauge* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter of this supplement for more information.

### **Operation in standing water**

Ingestion of water into the diesel engine can result in immediate and severe damage to the engine. If driving through water, slow down to avoid splashing water into the intake. If the engine stalls, and ingestion of water into the engine is suspected, do not try to restart the engine. Consult your dealer for service immediately.

### **Engine block heater (if equipped)**

Refer to the *Driving* chapter in the *Owner's Guide*.

## Driving

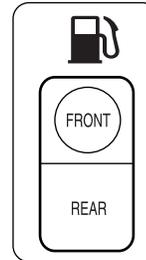
### Rapid heat supplemental heating system (if equipped)

The optional rapid heat feature is an electrically powered device that is designed to provide supplemental heat during engine warm up. For maximum effectiveness mid to low blower speed is recommended during initial warm up. When operating in automatic mode (when equipped) the climate control unit will determine the appropriate blower speed for existing conditions.

**Note:** Additional aftermarket electrical loads operated during engine warm up may impact the performance of the rapid heat supplemental heater.

### DUAL FUEL TANK SELECTOR CONTROL (IF EQUIPPED)

If your vehicle is equipped with dual fuel tanks, you will have a selector control, located to the right of the steering wheel, which allows you to draw fuel from either tank. Your fuel gauge and the DTE (distance to empty) will display the amount of fuel in the currently selected tank.



### ENGINE-EXHAUST BRAKING

This feature increases engine braking at higher engine speeds to provide better grade descent control with less brake and transmission wear and tear.

This feature is integrated with the tow/haul mode feature. When tow/haul mode is switched on, the engine-exhaust braking feature will also be active. For more information on tow/haul, see *Automatic transmission operation* in the *Owner Guide*.

## Driving

### TRAILER TOWING

Refer to your *Owner's Guide* for full details on towing a trailer.

#### Trailer towing tables

Vehicle type	Rear axle ratio	Maximum GCWR - lb (kg)
F-250/F-350 Single Rear Wheel (SRW)	3.31/3.55/3.73	23500 (10659)
F-350 Dual Rear Wheel (DRW) Chassis Cab	3.73/4.10	24500 (11113)
F-350 Dual Rear Wheel (DRW) Pick-up	3.73	30000 (13608)
F-450 Chassis Cab	4.10	26000 (11793)
	4.30	30000 (13608)*
F-450 Pick-up	4.30	33000 (14969)
F-550 (17500/18000 lb GVWR)	4.10/4.88	26000 (11793)
F-550 (19000/19500 lb GVWR)	4.30/4.88	35000 (15875)*
* Requires optional GCWR package		

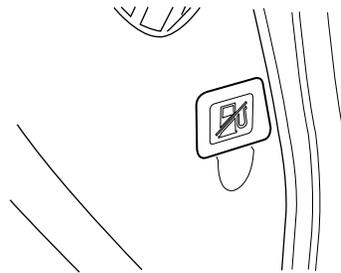
## Roadside Emergencies

### FUEL PUMP SHUT-OFF SWITCH

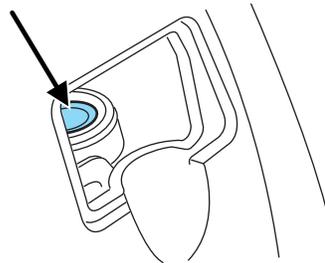
This device stops the electric fuel pump from sending fuel to the engine when your vehicle has had a substantial jolt.

After an accident, if the engine cranks but does not start, this switch may have been activated.

This switch is located on the passenger's side of the instrument panel. Open the front passenger door and remove the small access panel



The switch has a red button on top of it.



To reset the switch:

1. Turn the ignition off.
2. Check the fuel system for leaks.
3. If no leaks are apparent, reset the switch by pushing in on the reset button.
4. Turn the ignition on.
5. Wait a few seconds and return the key to off.
6. Make another check for leaks.

## Roadside Emergencies

### **JUMP STARTING YOUR VEHICLE**

The 6.7 diesel engine can be jump started using the same procedure as a gasoline engine. Use the primary battery (battery located on the passenger side) for any jump starting procedure and refer to your *Owner's Guide* for the proper method of jump starting.

### **RUNNING OUT OF DEF (DIESEL EXHAUST FLUID)**

If your vehicle runs out of DEF, it will enter into a speed limited mode and can also enter into an idle-only mode. Normal vehicle operation will not resume until DEF is refilled. See the *Selective Catalytic Reduction (SCR) System* section in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter for more information.

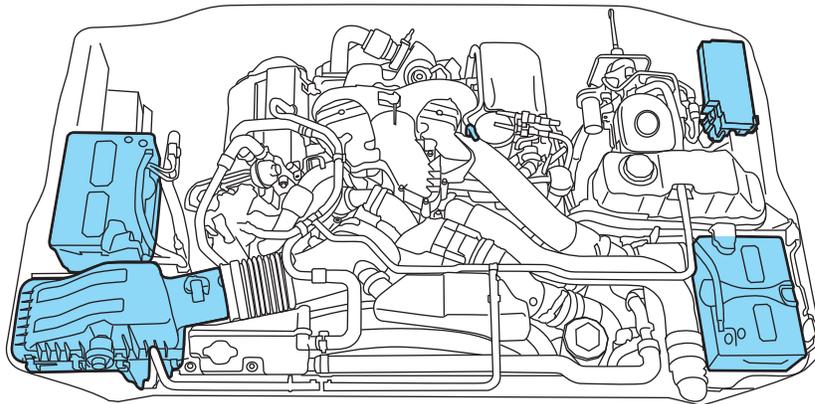
Contact roadside assistance for help in finding a retailer that sells DEF. See the *Customer Assistance* chapter in the *Owner's Guide* for more information.

## Cleaning

### ENGINE

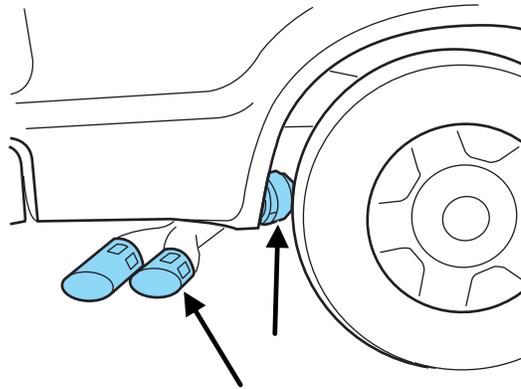
Engines are more efficient when they are clean because grease and dirt buildup keep the engine warmer than normal. When washing:

- Take care when using a power washer to clean the engine. The high-pressure fluid could penetrate the sealed parts and cause damage.
- Do not spray a hot engine with cold water to avoid cracking the engine block or other engine components.
- Spray Motorcraft® Engine Shampoo and Degreaser (ZC-20) on all parts that require cleaning and pressure rinse clean.
- Never wash or rinse the engine while it is running; water in the running engine may cause internal damage.
- Cover the highlighted areas to prevent water damage when cleaning the engine.



## Cleaning

### EXHAUST



The visible holes in each leg of the twin tip and the holes under the shield just inboard of the right rear tire(s) are functional. The holes need to be kept clear of mud/debris or foreign material to maintain proper function of the exhaust system. Clean and remove debris or foreign material if present as needed. Spraying with a hose during regular washing of vehicle should help keep holes clean and clear of debris or foreign material.

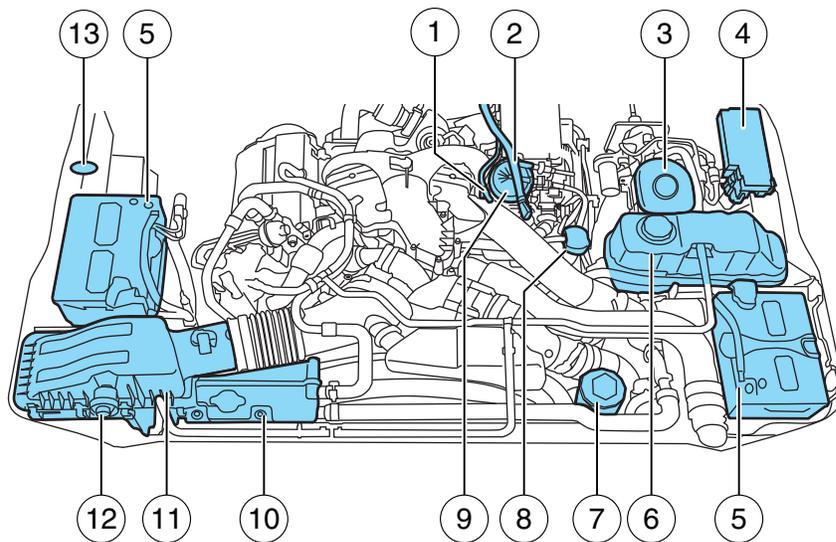
**!** **WARNING:** Failure to maintain the functional holes, in the tailpipe section of the exhaust, clean and free of debris or foreign material may result in the holes becoming blocked or plugged. Do not modify or remove the tail-pipe section. Blocked or plugged holes or removal/modification of the system could result in elevated exhaust gas temperatures which may result in vehicle/property damage or personal injury

**!** **WARNING:** The normal operating temperature of the exhaust system is very high. Never work around or attempt to repair any part of the exhaust system until it has cooled. Use special care when working around the diesel oxidation catalytic converter and/or the diesel particulate filter (DPF). The diesel oxidation catalytic converter and/or the DPF heats up to a high temperature after only a short period of engine operation and can stay hot even after the engine is turned off. Failure to follow these instructions may result in personal injury.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### IDENTIFYING COMPONENTS IN THE ENGINE COMPARTMENT

#### F-Super Duty



1. Engine oil dipstick
  2. Automatic transmission dipstick
  3. Brake fluid reservoir
  4. Power distribution box
  5. Batteries
  6. Engine cooling system coolant reservoir (primary high-temperature cooling system)
  7. Power steering fluid reservoir
  8. Engine oil fill
  9. Engine-mounted fuel filter assembly
  10. Secondary cooling system coolant reservoir
  11. Air filter assembly
  12. Air filter restriction gauge
  13. Windshield washer fluid reservoir
- 20

## Maintenance and Specifications

### SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE

The scheduled maintenance services in the *scheduled maintenance information* of this supplement are required because they are considered essential to the life and performance of your vehicle.

Use only recommended fuel, lubricants, fluids and service parts conforming to Ford specifications. Motorcraft® parts are designed and built for best performance in your vehicle.

### FUEL REQUIREMENTS - CHOOSING THE RIGHT FUEL: VEHICLES OPERATED WHERE ULTRA LOW SULFUR DIESEL FUEL IS REQUIRED (UNITED STATES/CANADA/PUERTO RICO/U.S. VIRGIN ISLANDS AND OTHER LOCALES)

**Use only Ultra Low Sulfur (15 ppm Sulfur Maximum) number 1-D or 2-D diesel fuel (also known as ULSD) in your 6.7L diesel engine.** The engine and exhaust system were designed to only use this fuel. Look for the **ULTRA-LOW SULFUR HIGHWAY DIESEL FUEL (15 ppm Sulfur Maximum)** label on fuel pumps when purchasing your fuel.

**Using low sulfur diesel fuel (16-500 ppm) or high sulfur diesel fuel (greater than 500 ppm) in a diesel engine designed to use only Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel fuel will cause certain emission components to malfunction which may also cause the service engine soon  light to illuminate indicating an emissions-related concern.**

Diesel fuel is adjusted seasonally for cold temperature. For best results at temperatures below 20°F (-7°C), it is recommended to use a diesel fuel which has been seasonally adjusted for the ambient conditions. See *Cold weather operation* in the *Driving* chapter of this supplement.

### FUEL REQUIREMENTS - CHOOSING THE RIGHT FUEL: VEHICLES OPERATED WHERE ULTRA LOW SULFUR DIESEL FUEL IS NOT REQUIRED

For the engine to operate reliably on low sulfur or high sulfur diesel fuel, the engine must be a high sulfur configured engine or a ULSD fuel-configured engine that has been retrofitted for high sulfur diesel fuel use.

## Maintenance and Specifications

**Use only a diesel engine that has been configured for use with high sulfur diesel fuel in markets with diesel fuel that has sulfur content greater than 15 ppm. Using low sulfur diesel fuel (16–500 ppm) or high sulfur diesel fuel (greater than 500 ppm) in a diesel engine designed to use only Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel fuel may result in damage to engine emission control devices and the aftertreatment system, potentially rendering the vehicle inoperable. Engine damage from using the improper type of fuel is not covered under your warranty.**

Vehicles with engines configured for use with high sulfur diesel fuel will only be made available for sale in countries where ULSD fuel is generally not available or mandated by the government. Vehicles originally sold in a ULSD fuel market that are subsequently exported to non-ULSD fuel markets will need to be retrofitted (at the customer's expense) in order to be reliably operated on non-ULSD fuel.

Diesel fuel is adjusted seasonally for cold temperature. For best results at temperatures below 20°F (-7°C), it is recommended to use a diesel fuel which has been seasonally adjusted for the ambient temperature. See *Cold weather operation* in the *Driving* chapter of this supplement.

### BIODIESEL

This vehicle may be operated on diesel fuels containing up to 20% biodiesel, also known as B20.

To help achieve acceptable engine performance and durability when using biodiesel in your vehicle:

- Confirm the biodiesel content of the fuel to be B20 (20% biodiesel) or less
- Only use biodiesel fuel of good quality that complies with industry standards
- Follow the recommended service maintenance intervals section in the *Schedule Maintenance* chapter.
- Do not store biodiesel fuel in the fuel tank for more than 1 month
- Consider changing brands or reducing biodiesel content if you have cold temperature fuel gelling issues or a frequent **LOW FUEL PRESSURE** message appearing.
- Do not use raw oils, fats or waste cooking greases

## Maintenance and Specifications

Use of biodiesel in concentrations greater than 20% may cause damage to your vehicle, including engine and/or exhaust after-treatment hardware (exhaust catalyst and particulate filter) failures. Concentrations greater than 20% can also cause fuel filter restrictions that may result in a lack of power and / or damage to fuel system components, including fuel pump and fuel injector failures.

5W-40 or 15W-40 oil is recommended for fuels with greater than 5% biodiesel (B5). Refer to the *Special operating conditions* section under the *Schedule Maintenance* chapter for more information about oil change intervals and other maintenance when operating on biodiesel.

Look for a label on the fuel pump to confirm the amount of biodiesel contained in a diesel fuel. Biodiesel content is often indicated with the letter “B” followed by the percent of biodiesel in the fuel. For example, B20 indicates a fuel containing 20% biodiesel. Ask the service station attendant to confirm the biodiesel content of a diesel fuel if you do not see a label on the fuel pump.

Biodiesel fuels degrade more easily than diesel fuels not containing biodiesel and should not be stored in the fuel tank for more than 1 month. If your vehicle will be parked or stored for more than 1 month, then your vehicle fuel tank should be emptied of biodiesel fuel, filled with a pure petroleum-based diesel fuel, and run for a minimum of 30 minutes.

**Note:** Degraded or oxidized biodiesel can damage fuel system seals and plastics and corrode steel parts.

During cold weather, if you have problems operating on biodiesel, you may need to use a diesel fuel with lower biodiesel content, try another brand, or discontinue the use of biodiesel.

Biodiesel fuel is a product that has been converted from renewable fuel sources, including vegetable oil, animal fat and cooking oil. Raw or refined vegetable oil, animal fat, cooking oil or recycled greases should **NOT** be used.



**WARNING:** Do not use home heating oil, agricultural fuel or any diesel fuel not intended for highway use. Damage to the fuel injection system, engine and exhaust catalyst can occur if an improper fuel is used. Do not add gasoline, gasohol or alcohol to diesel fuel. This practice creates a serious fire hazard and engine performance problems.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### Fuel quality

It should not be necessary to add any aftermarket additives to your fuel tank if you use a properly formulated diesel fuel that meets either the ASTM D975 diesel or the ASTM D7467 B6-B20 biodiesel industry specifications. Outside of North America, use fuels meeting EN590 or equivalent local market standard. Aftermarket additives can damage the injector system or engine. Repairs to correct the effects of using an aftermarket product in your fuel may not be covered by your warranty.

Many of the world's automakers approved the World-wide Fuel Charter that recommends diesel fuel specifications to provide improved performance and emission control system protection for your vehicle. Diesel fuel that meets the World-wide Fuel Charter should be used when available. Ask your fuel supplier about fuel that meets the World-wide Fuel Charter.

**Do not blend used engine oil with diesel fuel under any circumstances.** Blending used oil with the fuel will significantly increase your vehicle's exhaust emissions and reduce engine life due to increased internal wear.

### Diesel fuel conditioner

Additives that will improve fuel cetane numbers may be used to verify/enhance fuel quality. Use Motorcraft® or an equivalent cetane booster & performance improver as listed in the *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* section in this chapter. The customer warranty may be void from using additives that do not meet or exceed Ford specifications.

Do not use alcohol based additives to correct fuel gelling. This may result in damage to the fuel injectors/system. Use Motorcraft® or an equivalent anti-gel & performance improver as listed in the *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* section in this chapter. The customer warranty may be void from using additives that do not meet or exceed Ford specifications.

**Note:** These ultra-low sulfur formulations are designed to meet the emissions standards for the 6.7L engine and is backward compatible as well (i.e., can be used in Ford 7.3L, 6.9L, 6.4L and 6.0L diesel engines in Ford vehicles).

### Fueling tips

Truck stops have pumps and nozzles designed for larger, heavy-duty trucks. When refueling at truck stops: if the nozzle shuts off repeatedly when refueling, wait 5–10 seconds; then use a slower rate of flow (don't depress the nozzle trigger as far).

24

## Maintenance and Specifications

If air is allowed to enter the fuel system (during fuel filter change or if you run out of fuel) the engine will purge the trapped air as it runs. To purge the air sooner: prior to engine start, prime system by turning the key to on for 30 seconds then to off. Repeat this several times. The engine may run rough and produce white smoke while air is in the system. This is normal and should correct itself in a short time.

An engine that suddenly becomes noisy or operates poorly after a fuel fill could be using substandard fuel (i.e., high water content, low cetane rating or gasoline in the fuel). Diesel fuel should be purchased from a reputable station which sells a large amount of diesel fuel.

Care should be taken whenever diesel fuel is stored. Use only clean, approved containers which will prevent the entry of dirt or water.

Diesel fuel must not be stored in a galvanized container. The fuel will dissolve the zinc in a galvanized container. The zinc will then remain in the solution until it is run through the engine where it will be deposited in the fuel injectors causing expensive-to-repair damage.

### Diesel fuel dispensing nozzle fill rate

This truck is equipped with a fuel fill pipe which is able to accept fuel up to 20 gallons per minute from a 1½ fuel dispensing nozzle. Pumping fuel at greater flow rates may result in premature nozzle shut-off or spitback.

### Fuel filler cap

Your fuel tank filler cap has an indexed design with a 1/4 turn on/off feature.

When fueling your vehicle:

1. Turn the engine off.
2. Carefully turn the filler cap counterclockwise until it spins off.
3. Pull to remove the cap from the fuel filler pipe.
4. To install the cap, align the tabs on the cap with the notches on the filler pipe.
5. Turn the filler cap clockwise 1/4 of a turn until it clicks at least once.

**If you must replace the fuel filler cap, replace it with a fuel filler cap that is designed for your vehicle. The vehicle warranty may be void for any damage to the fuel tank or fuel system if the correct genuine Ford or Motorcraft® fuel filler cap is not used.**

## Maintenance and Specifications

 **WARNING:** The fuel system may be under pressure. If the fuel filler cap is venting vapor or if you hear a hissing sound, wait until it stops before completely removing the fuel filler cap. Otherwise, fuel may spray out and injure you or others.

 **WARNING:** If you do not use the proper fuel filler cap, excessive pressure or vacuum in the fuel tank may damage the fuel system or cause the fuel cap to disengage in a collision, which may result in possible personal injury.

### Selective Catalytic Reduction (SCR) System

Your vehicle is equipped with a selective catalytic reduction (SCR) system to help reduce emission levels of oxides of nitrogen from the exhaust of the diesel engine. The system automatically injects diesel exhaust fluid (DEF) into the exhaust system to enable proper SCR function.

#### ***Importance of maintaining the DEF level***

In order for the SCR system to operate properly, the DEF level must be maintained. Generally, the DEF tank should be filled during the oil change service interval. See the *scheduled maintenance information* in this supplement for more information. However, certain conditions or driving styles, such as trailer towing or fast rates of acceleration, will require the refilling of the DEF tank more often.

The engine control unit will monitor the amount of fluid available in the DEF tank. Running a system check in the message center will indicate whether the DEF level is ok or if it is less than 1/2 full. A message will automatically be displayed in the message center when the DEF level is low and needs to be refilled. When you see this message you should refill your tank. See *Message center* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter of your *Owner's Guide* for message center functions. For instructions on refilling your DEF tank, see *Filling the DEF tank* later in this section.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### **DEF warning messages and vehicle operations**

 **WARNING:** Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) must be refilled when low or replaced when contaminated or the vehicle speed will be speed limited to 55 mph (89 km/h) and then 50 mph (80 km/h). In these conditions, drive with caution and refill DEF immediately. If the DEF becomes empty or contaminated fluid is not replaced, the vehicle will become limited to idle speed only once stopped. In these conditions, be cautious where you stop the vehicle because you may not be able to drive long distances and will not be able to maintain highway speeds until DEF is refilled or replaced.

Your vehicle's message center will display a series of messages regarding the amount of DEF available. A systems check will display messages indicating the amount of DEF available (OK or under ½ full) or will produce a warning message that displays the mileage (kilometers) remaining as the fluid in the DEF tank nears empty. For more information on warning messages, see the *Message center* section in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter of your *Owner's Guide*.

As the DEF level nears empty, the DEF warning symbol will be displayed and chimes will sound with the messages starting at 300 miles (483 km) remaining before DEF is depleted. The warning symbol and messages will continue until the DEF tank is refilled.



Continued driving without refilling will result in the following actions as required by the California Air Resources Board (CARB) and /or U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA):

- Within a certain number of miles (kilometers) to empty, speed will be limited upon vehicle restart. Prior to this occurring a message will appear in the message center.
- Further vehicle operation without refilling your DEF tank will cause the engine to enter an idle-only condition. This will only occur upon vehicle refueling and will be indicated by a message in the message center indicating required actions to resume normal operation. It is required to add a minimum of 0.5 gallons (1.9L) of DEF to the tank to exit the idle-only condition, but the vehicle will still be in the speed limiting mode until the tank is refilled.

## Maintenance and Specifications

For either vehicle speed limiting or idle-only condition, normal vehicle operation will resume when the DEF tank is refilled.

**Note:** When filling the DEF tank from empty, there may be a short delay before detecting the increased level of DEF. This must occur before full power is returned.

## Maintenance and Specifications

Low DEF Warnings and Actions — Instrument Cluster Messages (Optional message center messages shown, base message center messages similar)			
Distance/DEF Level or Action	Cluster Message	Customer Requested Actions	Vehicle Actions
Full Tank	Exhaust Fluid Level OK	Drive normally	None
Below ½ Tank	Exhaust Fluid Under ½ Full	Drive normally	None
800 Miles (1287 km)	Exhaust Fluid Range 800 miles (1287 km)	Refill exhaust fluid	None
300 Miles (483 km)	Exhaust Fluid Range 300 miles (483 km)	Refill exhaust fluid	None
99 Miles (159 km)	In 99 Miles (159 km) Speed Limited to 55 MPH (89 km/h) Exhaust Fluid Empty	Refill exhaust fluid	None
0 Miles (0 km)	Speed Limited to 55 MPH (89 km/h) Max Upon Restart Exhaust Fluid Empty	Refill exhaust fluid	None

## Maintenance and Specifications

Low DEF Warnings and Actions — Instrument Cluster Messages (Optional message center messages shown, base message center messages similar)			
Distance/DEF Level or Action	Cluster Message	Customer Requested Actions	Vehicle Actions
Restart	Speed Limited To 55 MPH (89 km/h) Exhaust Fluid empty	Refill exhaust fluid	Speed is limited to 55 MPH. (89 km/h)
In 200 Miles (322 km) after vehicle reaches 0 mile (0 km) DEF range	Speed Limited to 50 MPH (80 km/h) Exhaust Fluid Empty	Refill exhaust fluid	On vehicle restart, speed is limited to 50 MPH (80 km/h). (No action taken until vehicle is refueled)
Restart	Speed Limited To 50 MPH (80 km/h) Exhaust Fluid Empty	Refill exhaust fluid	
In 300 Miles (483 km) after vehicle reaches 0 mile (0 km) DEF range	Engine Idled Upon Refuel Exhaust Fluid Empty	Refill exhaust fluid	None
Diesel Tank Fill	Engine Idled-See Owner's Manual Exhaust Fluid Empty	Refill exhaust fluid	Engine limited to idle ONLY (No action taken until vehicle is refueled)

## Maintenance and Specifications

### Filling the DEF tank

Your vehicle is equipped with a DEF tank with a blue-capped filler port located next to the diesel fuel fill inlet. The tank can be filled using a nozzle at a DEF filling station (similar to fuel fill) or using a DEF bottle with a spout. Motorcraft® DEF bottles are recommended as they are designed to be spill proof and will stop the flow of DEF when the tank is full. Other aftermarket bottles can be used, but they should have a seal on the spout and an internal vent tube to achieve best fill performance and prevent overfilling. Overfilling your DEF tank can cause damage to the tank. For DEF capacity, see *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* in this chapter.

**Note:** Do not put DEF in the fuel tank. This can cause engine damage not covered by your vehicle's warranty.

**Note:** Immediately wipe away any DEF that has spilled on painted surfaces with water and a damp cloth to prevent damage to the paint. You can purchase DEF at your authorized dealer, most highway truck stops or you can contact roadside assistance for help in finding a retailer that sells DEF. See the *Customer Assistance* chapter in the *Owner's Guide* for more information. In addition, there is a government website locator for DEF at the following web address that can be used to find the nearest location to purchase DEF: <http://www.afdc.energy.gov/afdc/locator/def>.

Use only DEF certified by the American Petroleum Institute (API) such as Motorcraft® DEF or equivalent meeting Ford specification WSS-M99C130-A and/or ISO 22241. Look for API certification trademark shown here.



Repairs resulting from the use of non-certified DEF products may not be covered by your vehicle's warranty.

Maintaining the purity of DEF is important to avoid malfunctions in the SCR system.

If DEF is removed from the tank for repair work, etc., the same DEF must not be used to refill the tank as its purity is no longer guaranteed.



**WARNING:** Make sure that DEF does not come into contact with eyes, skin or clothing. Should DEF contact your eyes, flush them with plenty of water and contact a physician. Clean affected skin with soap and water. If DEF is swallowed, drink plenty of water and contact a physician immediately.

## Maintenance and Specifications

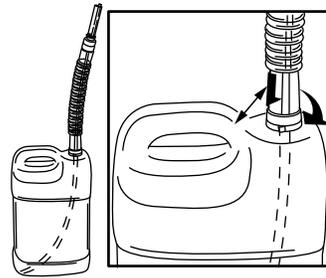
**⚠ WARNING:** Refill DEF in a well-ventilated area. When opening the cap on the DEF tank or bottle containing DEF, ammonia vapors may escape. The vapors can be irritating to skin, eyes and mucous membranes. Inhaling ammonia vapors can cause burning to the eyes, throat and nose and cause coughing and watery eyes.

To fill the DEF tank, see your authorized dealer or do the following (before filling the DEF tank in cold climates, see *Filling the DEF tank in cold climates* later in this section):

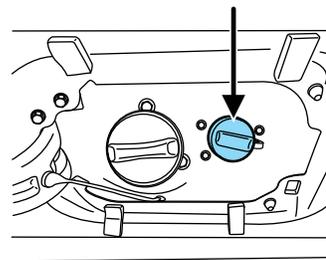
- **DEF bottle fill with spout:**

The following procedure applies to Motorcraft® DEF or similar DEF bottles; for other brands or bottle types, refer to the instructions on the bottle label.

1. Remove the cap from the DEF container. Remove the spout from the bottle and insert the straw end into the bottle. Ensure that the arrow above the nut is aligned with the bottle handle and the small tube end extends into the far corner of the bottle. Twist the spout nut on the container until it is tight.

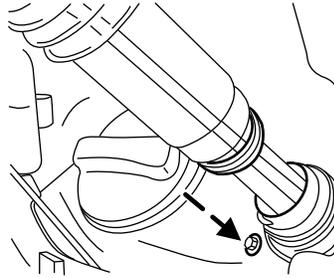


2. Open the DEF filler port on the vehicle by turning the blue cap counterclockwise.

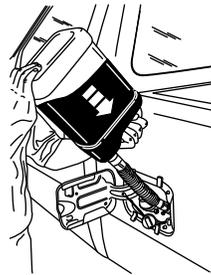


## Maintenance and Specifications

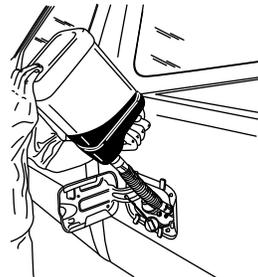
3. Lift and hold the DEF container, without tipping, and insert the spout into the DEF filler port until the small black seal on the spout is completely seated into the DEF filler port.



4A. While filling, the fluid level in the bottle will continually drop.

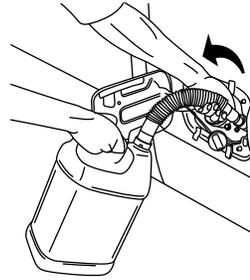


4B. When the DEF tank is full, the fluid level in the bottle will stop dropping, indicating the fluid has stopped flowing.



## Maintenance and Specifications

5. Once the level in the DEF bottle has stopped dropping, return the container to the vertical position slightly below the DEF filler port and let any DEF drain out of the spout. **DO NOT** try to continue to add DEF to the tank by shaking or repositioning the container to induce flow. This may cause spilling and overflow the tank. Overflowing the DEF tank can cause damage to the tank.



6. Once the spout has drained, remove the spout from the DEF filler port and install the blue cap on the DEF filler port.

7. Remove the spout from the DEF container and install the cap back on the bottle.

8. If the container is empty, discard the empty container and spout, or recycle if possible. If there is some DEF left in the container, retain it and the spout for later use. Store the spout to ensure it is kept clean.

9. Wipe away any DEF that has spilled on painted surfaces with water and a damp cloth.

- **DEF filling station nozzle fill:**

Filling the DEF tank using a nozzle is similar to a normal fuel fill. The nozzle will shut off automatically when the tank is full. Do not continue to fill the tank as this may cause spilling and overflow the tank which can cause damage.

**Note:** Some filling station nozzles may prevent filling of your DEF tank due to a magnetic mechanism in the nozzle. This is not a problem with your vehicle. To refill your tank either locate another filling station or use a bottle to refill the tank.

### ***Filling the DEF tank in cold climates***

DEF will freeze below 12°F (-11°C); however, your vehicle is equipped with an automatic preheating system which allows the DEF system to operate below 12°F (-11°C). When the vehicle is not in operation for an extended period of time with temperatures at or below 12°F (-11°C), the DEF tank could freeze. If the tank is **OVERFILLED** and freezes, it could be damaged, therefore **DO NOT OVERFILL**.

## Maintenance and Specifications

To prevent overfilling of the DEF tank when filling with a bottle, Ford recommends using Motorcraft® DEF. Additionally, if the message center indicates **EXHAUST FLUID UNDER 1/2 FULL**, you should only add a MAXIMUM of 2 gallons (6.7L) of DEF to the tank to prevent freeze damage due to overfilling. If the message center indicates **EXHAUST FLUID LEVEL OK**, do not add DEF.

### **Contaminated DEF**

SCR systems are sensitive to contamination of the DEF. USE ONLY API or ISO 22241 CERTIFIED DIESEL EXHAUST FLUID. If the system becomes contaminated, the DEF light will illuminate and contaminated exhaust fluid messages will appear in the message center.



Continued driving without replacing DEF will result in the following actions as required by the California Air Resources Board (CARB) and /or U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA):

- Within a certain number of miles (kilometers) to empty, speed will be limited upon restart. Prior to this occurring a message will appear in the message center.
- Further vehicle operation without replacing contaminated DEF will cause the engine to enter an idle-only condition. This will only occur upon vehicle refueling and will be indicated by a message in the message center indicating required actions to resume normal operation.

For either vehicle speed limiting or idle-only condition, normal vehicle operation will resume when the contaminated system is repaired. **To service a contaminated SCR system, see your authorized dealer. DEF guidelines and information**

- Use only DEF that carries the trademark: American Petroleum Institute (API) certified DEF or ISO 22241.
- Do not put DEF in the diesel fuel tank.
- Do not overfill the DEF tank.
- Do not re-use the DEF container or nozzle once it is emptied.
- Avoid spilling DEF on painted surfaces, carpeting or plastic components. Immediately wipe away any DEF that has spilled with a damp cloth and water. If it has already crystallized, use warm water and a sponge.

## Maintenance and Specifications

- Store DEF out of direct sunlight and in temperatures between 23°F (-5°C) — 68°F (20°C).
- DEF will freeze below 12°F (-11°C).
- Do not store DEF bottle in vehicle. If it leaks it could cause damage to interior components or release an ammonia odor inside the vehicle.
- DEF is non-flammable, non-toxic, colorless and water-soluble liquid.
- Do not dilute DEF with water or any other liquid.
- An ammonia odor may be smelled when the cap is removed or during refill. Refill DEF in a well ventilated area.

### Typical Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) Usage

The charts below illustrate *approximate* DEF usage for the given distances traveled under various driving conditions and when using the PTO. Your usage may vary depending on: driving style, trailer towing, loaded vehicle weight, weather, idle time, PTO usage, etc.

Pick-up (3.31 axle ratio)			
Driving style	Trailer towing / aggressive or city driving	Normal driving	Steady highway driving
DEF usage	4100 miles (6598 km) – 7100 miles (11426 km)	7100 miles (11426 km) – 9600 miles (15450 km)	9600 miles (15450 km) – 10000 miles (16093 km) +
Pick-up (3.55 axle ratio)			
Driving style	Trailer towing / aggressive or city driving	Normal driving	Steady highway driving
DEF usage	2800 miles (4506 km) – 5800 miles (9334 km)	5800 miles (9334 km) – 8100 miles (13036 km)	8100 miles (13036 km) – 9700 miles (15611 km)

## Maintenance and Specifications

Pick-up (3.73 axle ratio)			
Driving style	Trailer towing / aggressive or city driving	Normal driving	Steady highway driving
DEF usage	2050 miles (3299 km) – 5050 miles (8127 km)	5050 miles (8127 km) – 7300 miles (11748 km)	7300 miles (11748 km) – 8900 miles (14323 km)
Pick-up (4.30 axle ratio)			
Driving style	Trailer towing / aggressive or city driving	Normal driving	Steady highway driving
DEF usage	1100 miles (1770 km) – 4100 miles (6598 km)	4100 miles (6598 km) – 6300 miles (10139 km)	6300 miles (10139 km) – 7900 miles (12714 km)
Chassis cab (non-PTO)			
Driving style	Trailer towing / aggressive or city driving	Normal driving	Steady highway driving
DEF usage	1700 miles (2736 km) – 4700 miles (7564 km)	4700 miles (7564 km) – 7800 miles (12553 km)	7800 miles (12553 km) – 9300 miles (14967 km)
Chassis cab (with PTO)			
PTO usage	< - - - Cont. PTO usage — Min. PTO usage - - - >		
DEF usage	0 miles (0 km) — 7800 miles (12553 km)		

### FUEL FILTER/WATER SEPARATOR

#### Diesel Fuel Conditioner Module (DFCM)

The vehicle is equipped with a diesel fuel conditioning module (DFCM) located on the frame-rail under the driver-side floorboard near the transmission

## Maintenance and Specifications

Water should be drained from the module assembly whenever the warning light comes on and the message center directs you to drain the water separator. This will occur when approximately 0.32 pints (150 ml) of water accumulates in the module. If water level is allowed to exceed this level, the water may be passed through to the engine and may cause fuel injection equipment damage.



### Draining the DFCM

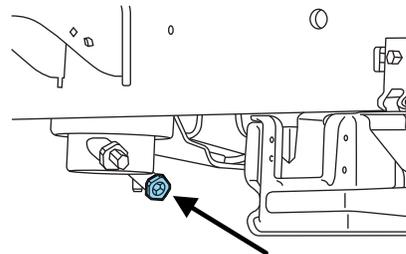
1. Stop the vehicle and **shut off** the engine.

**WARNING:** The vehicle must be stopped with the engine off when draining the DFCM. Fuel may ignite if the separator is drained while the engine is running or vehicle is moving.

**Note:** Air will enter into the fuel system if the DFCM is drained while the system is running. The engine will not operate properly if air enters the system.

2. Locate the DFCM and place an appropriate container under the drain port (see illustration).

3. Rotate the drain counterclockwise until the O-ring is visible. Allow the DFCM to drain for approximately 25 seconds or until clean fuel is observed. Rotate the drain clockwise to tighten it.



4. Make sure that the drain valve is fully tightened, then remove the container from under the vehicle.

**Note:** A loose drain valve can allow air to enter the fuel system and cause drivetrain issues. The engine will not operate properly. be sure that the drain valve is fully tightened.

5. Restart the engine. The **WATER IN FUEL DRAIN FILTER** or **WATER IN FUEL DRAIN FILTER SEE MANUAL** message and light should not be illuminated. If they continues to illuminate, have the fuel system checked and repaired.

38

## Maintenance and Specifications

### LOW FUEL PRESSURE MESSAGE

The engine is equipped with a low fuel pressure detection system. If the message center displays: **LOW FUEL PRESSURE** the following explains why and what to do:

- Cold start or cold operation (below 32°F (0°C): If this message appears during a cold start or during cold operation up to 10 minutes after the initial cold start, monitor the message center. If it disappears and does not re-appear after the engine has fully warmed up, the low fuel pressure message is most likely caused by waxed or gelled fuel.

Do not use alcohol based additives to correct fuel gelling. This may result in damage to the fuel injectors/systems. Use an anti-gel additive as listed in *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* section in this chapter. The customer warranty may be void from using additives that do not meet or exceed Ford specifications.

If the low fuel pressure message persistently appears after re-fueling during the cold start and cold operation conditions defined previously and then disappear when the engine has fully warmed up, consider different fuel sources.

- Low fuel operation: If the message appears when the vehicle is warm and during low fuel tank level operation, i.e. the tank level is at or very near empty, refuel the vehicle and operate the vehicle. If the message reappears after fueling, see below. If the message does not come back, the low fuel pressure condition was due to low fuel levels in the fuel tank.
- Normal operation: If the message appears during normal operation when the vehicle / engine is fully warm, and fuel level is not low, the fuel filters must be changed regardless of the maintenance schedule interval.
- If replacement of the fuel filter does not remedy the low fuel pressure message during normal operation as defined above, take the vehicle to your authorized dealer.

### CHANGING THE ENGINE-MOUNTED AND DFCM FUEL FILTERS

Your vehicle is equipped with two fuel filters; one is mounted on top of the driver's side of the engine and the second filter, inside the DFCM, is mounted on the frame rail under the driver-side floorboard near the transmission. Both filters should be replaced at the same time. Regular fuel filter changes are an important part of engine maintenance; failing to keep with the scheduled maintenance could lead to engine performance issues and/or fuel injection system damage. Refer to the *scheduled maintenance information* of this supplement for more information.

## Maintenance and Specifications

Refer to *Motorcraft part numbers* later in this chapter for the fuel filter replacement part number. This part number includes filters and seals for both the engine-mounted and frame-mounted filters.

### Removal - DFCM filter

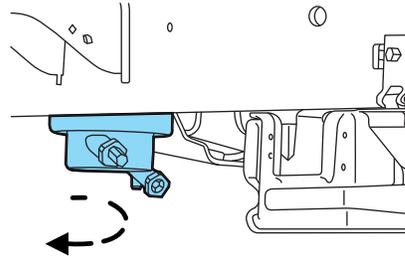
The DFCM filter is located in the lower portion of the DFCM housing.

1. Drain the DFCM. See *Fuel filter/water separator* earlier in this chapter.

To install the new DFCM filter, see *Installation – DFCM filter* later in this section.

2. Remove the lower portion of the DFCM housing (filter bowl) by turning it counterclockwise using a 32 mm socket.

**Note:** Depending on the amount seal swelling, removal of the filter bowl may be noisy and require some effort. Replace the seal prior to reinstalling the filter/bowl to improve assembly.



3. Remove and discard the old fuel filter element.

4. Carefully clean the mating surfaces using a lint-free rag.

### Installation – DFCM filter

1. Install the new filter into the filter bowl tabs and replace the seal on the DFCM header (top portion of DFCM). Refer to *Motorcraft part numbers* later in this chapter for the fuel filter kit part number.

2. Reinstall the lower portion of the housing by slowly turning it clockwise onto DFCM housing, allowing fuel to soak into the fuel filter element. Tighten the lower housing until it contacts the mechanical stop.

**Note:** The engine will not run properly if the DFCM fuel filter is not installed in the housing.

The system will need to be purged of air after removal/changing of the filter. See *Purging air from the fuel system after DFCM and engine mounted fuel filter replacement* following.

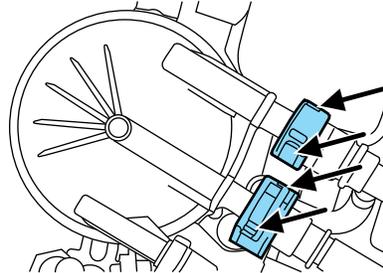
## Maintenance and Specifications

### Removal - Engine-mounted fuel filter

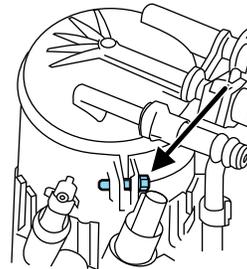
The engine-mounted fuel filter is a plastic disposable cartridge. To remove it, do the following:

1. Disconnect both fuel lines by squeezing the connector tabs and pulling the lines straight off.

**Note:** Although the fuel system is not fully pressurized when the vehicle is off, some residual pressure may remain in the fuel system since it can take some time for the pressure to completely bleed off. Therefore, it is recommended to place a shop rag below the filter connectors to absorb the small amount of fuel that will drain.



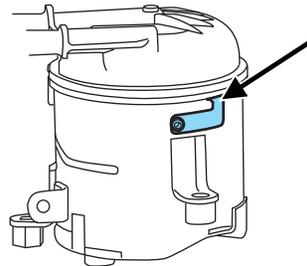
2. Loosen the bracket bolt.



3. Rotate the filter counterclockwise until it unlocks from the bracket.
4. Pull the filter straight out from the bracket and discard the filter.

### Installation – Engine-mounted fuel filter

1. Install the new filter into the filter bracket. The filter has two locking tabs: one on the bottom and one on the side approximately 180° from the bracket bolt. Line this tab up with the slot and the bottom will follow. Turn the filter clockwise to lock it in place.



2. Tighten the bracket bolt until the filter is snug in the bracket.

## Maintenance and Specifications

3. Reconnect both fuel lines.

**Using a fuel which has more than average impurities may require the fuel filter to be replaced more frequently than the service interval specifies.**

The system will need to be purged of air after removal/changing of the filter. See *Purging air from the fuel system after DFCM and engine-mounted fuel filter replacement* following.

### **Purging air from the fuel system after DFCM and engine mounted fuel filter replacement**

Turn the ignition key to on for 30 seconds, then turn it to off. Do this a total of six times in a row to purge any trapped air from the fuel system.

After filter service, a no start or rough running engine may indicate that air is entering the system through the filter bowl seal or drain. Make sure the drain is tight.

## **ENGINE OIL**

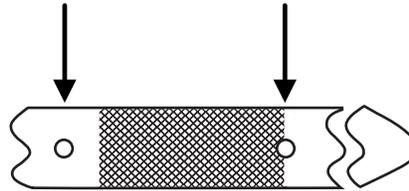
### **Checking the engine oil level**

Because it is normal to add some oil between oil changes, check your engine oil level each time you stop for fuel. To check the engine oil level consistently and accurately, the following procedure is recommended:

1. Have engine at normal operating temperature (at least into the NORMAL range on the engine coolant temperature gauge).
2. Park the vehicle on a level surface, then turn off the engine and open the hood.
3. Allow at least **20 minutes** after engine shutdown to ensure that the oil contained in the upper parts of the engine has returned to the oil pan.
4. Protecting yourself from engine heat, pull out the dipstick, wipe it clean and reinsert fully.
5. Read oil level on both sides of dipstick and use highest level (reading) for the actual engine oil level.

## Maintenance and Specifications

6. it is best to maintain the oil level within the crosshatch area on the dipstick by adding oil as required. The lower hole is the minimum oil level and the upper hole is the maximum oil level. Do not overfill. The distance from the lower hole (oil minimum) to the upper crosshatch area on the dipstick represents 1.0 quart (.95L).

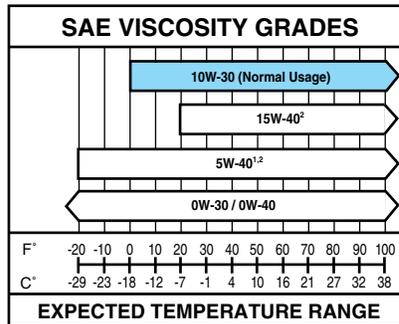


### Engine oil specifications

To help achieve acceptable engine performance and durability, it is important that only engine oils of good quality are used in your diesel engine and it is changed at the recommended interval. For normal or severe service, use Motorcraft® oil or an equivalent oil conforming to Ford specifications as listed in the *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* section in this chapter or API service categories CJ-4 or CJ-4/SM. It is important to use these oils because they are compatible with the emission control equipment of your vehicle to meet the more stringent emission standards.

The use of correct oil viscosities for diesel engines is important for satisfactory operation. Determine which oil viscosity best suits the temperature range you expect to encounter for the next service interval from the following SAE viscosity grade chart.

## Maintenance and Specifications



<sup>1</sup>For severe duty usage, use SAE 5W-40 API CJ-4.

<sup>2</sup>For biodiesel (grades B6-B20) usage, use SAE 5W-40 or SAE 15W-40 API CJ-4.

An engine block heater is recommended at temperatures below  $-10^{\circ}\text{F}$  ( $-23^{\circ}\text{C}$ ).

A symbol has been developed by the American Petroleum Institute (API) to help you select the proper engine oil. It will be included on the oil container you purchase. The top section of the symbol shows the oil

performance by the API designation. This should match the owner guide recommendation. The center section will show the SAE viscosity grade



### Changing the engine oil and oil filter

Your vehicle is equipped with an Intelligent Oil Life Monitor™ that calculates the proper oil change service interval. When the message center indicates: **OIL CHANGE REQUIRED**, change the engine oil and oil filter. See the *Message center* section of the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for more information.

Refer to *Motorcraft part numbers* later in this chapter for the engine oil filter part number. This filter protects your engine by filtering harmful, abrasive or sludge particles and particles significantly smaller than most available “will-fit” filters.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### To change the engine oil and oil filter:

1. Unscrew the oil filter and oil pan drain plug and wait for the oil to drain.

**Note:** The oil pan drain plug only requires 1/4 turn to removal/install. A 3/8 inch socket drive may be used to assist with removal/installation, but be careful not to over-tighten the plug during installation.

2. Replace the filter.

3. Reinstall the oil pan drain plug.

4. Refill the engine with new oil. For the proper capacity, see *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* in this chapter.

5. Reset the Intelligent Oil Life Monitor™. See *Message center* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for more information.



**WARNING:** Do not handle a hot oil filter with bare hands.



**WARNING:** Continuous contact with used motor oil has caused cancer in laboratory mice. Protect your skin by washing with soap and water.

### Engine lubrication for severe service operation

The following conditions define severe operation for which engine operation with SAE 5W-40 API CJ-4 is recommended. Oil and oil filter change intervals will be determined by the Intelligent Oil Life Monitor™ as noted previously.

- frequent or extended idling (over 10 minutes per hour of normal driving)
- low-speed operation/stationary use
- if vehicle is operated in sustained ambient temperatures below -10°F (-23°C) or above 100°F (38°C)
- frequent low-speed operation, consistent heavy traffic less than 25 mph (40 km/h)
- operating in severe dust conditions
- operating the vehicle off road
- towing a trailer over 1,000 miles (1,600 km)
- sustained, high-speed driving at Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (maximum loaded weight for vehicle operation)

## Maintenance and Specifications

- use of fuels with sulfur content other than ultra-low sulfur diesel (ULSD)
- use of high-sulfur diesel fuel

### ENGINE AND SECONDARY COOLING SYSTEM COOLANT

#### Checking engine coolant

The concentration (freeze point protection), additive strength (corrosion inhibitor), and level of coolant should be checked at the mileage intervals listed in the *scheduled maintenance information*. The coolant concentration should be maintained at 50/50 coolant and water, which equates to a freeze point of -36°C (-34°F). Coolant concentration testing is possible with a hydrometer or antifreeze tester (such as the Rotunda Battery and Antifreeze Tester, 0014-R1060). The level of coolant should be maintained within the COLD FILL RANGE in the coolant reservoirs. If the level falls below, add coolant per the instructions in the *Adding coolant* section.

Your vehicle was factory-filled with a 50/50 coolant and water concentration. If the concentration of coolant falls below 40% or above 60%, the engine parts could become damaged or not work properly. **A 50/50 mixture of coolant and water provides the following:**

- **freeze protection down to -36°C (-34°F).**
- **boiling protection up to 129°C (265°F).**
- **protection against rust and other forms of corrosion.**
- **an accurate temperature readout from the engine coolant gauge.**

When the engine is cold, check the level of coolant in the reservoirs. See *Identifying components in the engine compartment* for the location of the engine and secondary cooling system reservoirs.

- The coolant should be within the COLD FILL RANGE in the coolant reservoirs.
- Refer to the *scheduled maintenance information* for service interval schedules.
- Be sure to read and understand *Precautions when servicing your vehicle* in your *Owner's Guide*.

If the coolant has not been checked at the recommended interval, the engine or secondary coolant reservoir may become low or empty. If either reservoir is low or empty, add coolant to the reservoir(s). Refer to *Engine and secondary cooling system refill procedure* in this chapter.

46

## Maintenance and Specifications

**Note:** Automotive fluids are not interchangeable; do not use engine coolant or windshield washer fluid outside of its specified function and vehicle location.

### Adding coolant

When adding coolant, make sure it is a 50/50 mixture of coolant and distilled water. Add the mixture to the coolant reservoir(s), **when the engine is cool**, until the appropriate fill level is obtained.

If you have to add more than 1.0 quart (1.0 liter) of coolant per month, have your dealer check the cooling system. Your cooling system may have a leak. Operating an engine with a low level of coolant can result in engine overheating and possible engine damage.

**Note:** If coolant is added to bring the level within the COLD FILL RANGE when the engine is not cold, the system will remain underfilled.



**WARNING:** Do not add coolant when the engine is hot. Steam and scalding liquids released from a hot cooling system can burn you badly. Also, you can be burned if you spill coolant on hot engine parts.



**WARNING:** Do not put coolant in the windshield washer fluid container. If sprayed on the windshield, coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.

- **Do not mix coolants. Add the coolant type originally equipped in your vehicle.** Refer to *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* in this chapter for the proper coolant type.

**Note:** Do not use stop leak pellets or cooling system sealants/additives as they can cause damage to the engine cooling and/or heating systems. This damage would not be covered under your vehicle's warranty.

- A large amount of water without engine coolant may be added to the engine cooling system only, in case of emergency, to reach a vehicle service location. Avoid this procedure if delivery to the service location requires heavy engine loads. In this instance, the cooling system(s) must be drained, chemically cleaned with Motorcraft® Engine Cooling System Iron Cleaner, and refilled with a 50/50 mixture of coolant and distilled water as soon as possible. Water alone (without coolant) can cause damage from corrosion, overheating or freezing. **DO NOT** use this method for the secondary cooling system. The secondary cooling system operates close to ambient temperature, and is susceptible to freezing in any subfreezing environment, in the absence of coolant.

## Maintenance and Specifications

- **Do not use alcohol, methanol or brine or any engine coolants mixed with alcohol or methanol antifreeze (coolant).** Alcohol and other liquids can cause engine damage from overheating or freezing.
- **Do not mix with recycled coolant unless from a Ford-approved recycling process (see *Use of recycled engine coolant* section).**



**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the engine is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system(s) are under pressure; steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when the cap is loosened slightly.

Add the proper mixture of coolant and distilled water to the cooling system(s) by following these steps:

1. Before you remove the cap, turn the engine off and let it cool.
2. When the engine is cool, wrap a thick cloth around the cap. Slowly turn cap counterclockwise until pressure begins to release.
3. Step back while the pressure releases.
4. When you are sure that all the pressure has been released, use the cloth to turn it counterclockwise and remove the cap.

### Engine and secondary cooling system refill procedure

The following procedure should be used when refilling the engine or secondary cooling systems after it has been drained or become extremely low.

1. Remove the pressure relief cap from the engine or secondary coolant reservoir as previously outlined.
2. Slowly add a 50/50 mixture of coolant and distilled water to the coolant reservoir until the coolant level is within the COLD FILL RANGE as listed on the reservoir.
3. Reinstall the pressure relief cap.
4. Start and run the engine at 2,000 rpm for 2 minutes.
5. Shut engine off, and remove the pressure relief cap as previously outlined.
6. If required, add a 50/50 mixture of coolant and distilled water to the coolant reservoir until the coolant level is within the COLD FILL RANGE as listed on the reservoir.

48

## Maintenance and Specifications

7. Engine cooling system: Repeat Step 3 until the coolant level has stabilized (is no longer dropping after each step) AND the upper radiator hose at the radiator is warm to the touch (indicating that the engine thermostat is open and coolant is flowing through the radiator).

Secondary cooling system: Repeat Step 3 until the coolant level has stabilized (is no longer dropping after each step) AND the lower passenger side of the secondary radiator is warm to the touch (indicating secondary thermostat is open and coolant is flowing through the entire system).

8. Reinstall the pressure relief cap. Shut the engine off and let it cool.

9. Check the coolant level in the reservoir before you drive your vehicle the next few times (with the engine cool).

10. If necessary, add a 50/50 mixture of coolant and distilled water to the coolant reservoir until the coolant level is within the COLD FILL RANGE as listed on the reservoir. After any coolant has been added, check the coolant concentration. See *Engine and secondary cooling system coolant* earlier. If the concentration is not 50/50 (protection to  $-34^{\circ}\text{F}/-36^{\circ}\text{C}$ ), drain some coolant and adjust the concentration. It may take several drains and additions to obtain a 50/50 coolant concentration.

Whenever coolant has been added, the coolant level in the coolant reservoir should be checked the next few times you drive the vehicle. If necessary, add enough 50/50 concentration of coolant and distilled water to bring the liquid level to the proper level.

### **Coolant refill capacity**

To find out how much fluid your vehicle's cooling system can hold, refer to *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* in this chapter.

### **Coolant additives**

At specific mileage intervals of 15,000 miles (24,000 km), as listed in the *scheduled maintenance information* chapter, the coolant additive should be checked. The optional message center, if equipped, will also display the message **CHECK COOLANT ADDITIVE** at this time. The purpose of checking is to verify the correct concentration (freeze point protection) and additive strength (corrosion inhibitor) levels of the coolant for maximum engine performance and protection. Three products are available for ensuring the life and health of the coolant: two test kits and a coolant inhibitor additive:

- Rotunda 328-00007 (Matthew's Water CoolCheck) – Evaluates water quality (hardness, chloride, and pH) for 50/50 mixture of coolant and

## Maintenance and Specifications

distilled water. Use distilled water. If distilled water is unavailable, water meeting the requirements of Rotunda 328-00007, is sufficient for vehicle use. Using water that fails to meet the requirements can lead to coolant passage scaling and degrade the engine's durability and performance.

- Rotunda 328-00008 (Antifreeze Coolant ELC Contamination Kit) – Evaluates the coolant concentration (freeze point protection) and additive strength (corrosion inhibitor) for overall coolant health. Note that the first step is to verify that the vehicle's coolant concentration is in the window of 40 – 60%. If the concentration falls outside of that window, the evaluation of the corrosion inhibitor strength will not be valid. If the report results in a pass the cooling system does not show excessive contamination. No action is required. If the report results as insufficient, the corrosion inhibitor (additive) strength of the coolant is too low. Add entire contents of one bottle of Motorcraft® Specialty Orange Engine Coolant Revitalizer to the coolant reservoir. The coolant can be recharged with this additive up to two times before the coolant must be changed-out. When exchanging the full coolant volume, the system must be flushed and refilled with distilled water and coolant concentrate (Motorcraft® Specialty Orange Engine Coolant).
- Motorcraft® Specialty Orange Engine Coolant Revitalizer – Additive to boost the corrosion inhibitor level based upon the test results of the Antifreeze Coolant ELC Contamination Kit. The revitalizer may be added two times over the life of the coolant. If additional dosages are required, the cooling system must be flushed and refilled with distilled water and coolant concentrate (Motorcraft® Specialty Orange Coolant).

Refer to *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* in this chapter for the proper coolant and additive specifications.

### Coolant change

At specific mileage intervals, as listed in the *scheduled maintenance information*, the coolant should be changed. The optional message center, if equipped, will also display the message **COOLANT CHANGE REQUIRED** at this time.

Refer to *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* in this chapter for the proper coolant.

50

## Maintenance and Specifications

### AIR FILTER RESTRICTION GAUGE AND AIR FILTER REPLACEMENT

#### Air filter restriction gauge:

The restriction gauge, located on the upper housing of the air filter assembly, measures the vacuum inside the air filter. The more the air filter is restricted (dirty, clogged), the higher the vacuum reading

Check the air filter restriction gauge whenever the hood is raised to perform general engine maintenance at least every 7,500 miles (12,000 km). If the vehicle is operated in extremely dusty conditions, check and reset the gauge at least every 500 miles (800 km), or two weeks, whichever comes first.

Change the air filter when the gauge reads near the “change filter” line and the chamber is filled with yellow. Engine performance and fuel economy are adversely affected when the maximum restriction is reached.

**Blowing-out the air filter element with compressed air is not recommended as the compressed air may damage the filter paper.**

**Note:** It is not possible to determine the level of filter clogging by visual appearance alone. A filter which appears to be dirty may actually have several thousand miles (kilometers) of life remaining.

**Use the underhood air filter restriction gauge to determine when the air filter element needs to be changed.**



## Maintenance and Specifications

After installation of the new filter element, reset the gauge by pressing the reset button on top of the gauge.

**Note:** Vehicle operation in heavy snowfall or extreme rain conditions may feed excessive amounts of snow/water into the air intake system. This could plug/soak the air filter with snow and may cause the engine to lose power and possibly shut down.

The following actions are recommend after operating the vehicle up to 200 miles (320 km) in heavy snowfall or extreme rain:

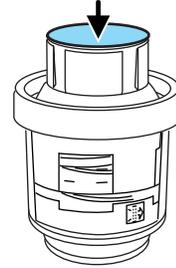
- **Snow:** At the earliest opportunity, open the hood and clear all the snow and ice from the air filter housing inlet (do NOT remove the foam filter) and reset the air filter restriction gauge.
- **Extreme rain:** The air filter will dry after about 15–30 minutes at highway speeds. At the earliest opportunity, open the hood and reset the air filter restriction gauge.

### Air filter replacement:

When replacing the air filter element, use the Motorcraft® air filter element listed in *Motorcraft part numbers* later in this chapter.



**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and/or personal burn injuries do not start your engine with the air filter removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

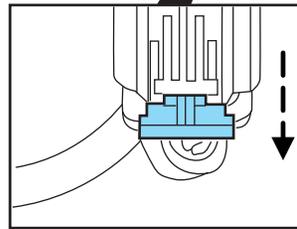
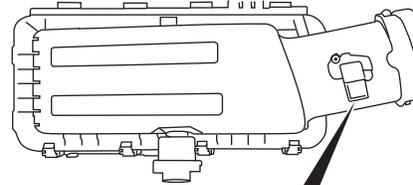


## Maintenance and Specifications

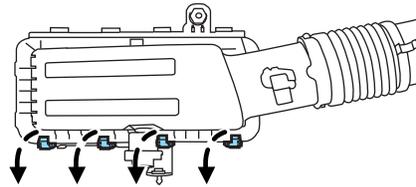
**Failure to use the correct air filter element may result in severe engine damage.**

1. Locate the mass air flow sensor electrical connector on the air inlet tube. This connector will need to be unplugged.

Unlock the locking clip on the connector, then squeeze and pull the connector off of the air inlet tube.



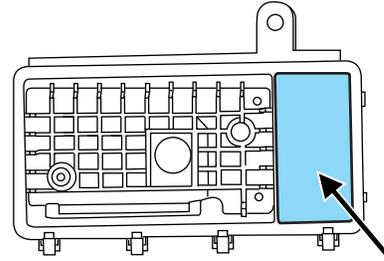
2. Release the four clamps that secure the cover to the air filter housing. Push the air filter cover forward (away from you) and up slightly to release it.



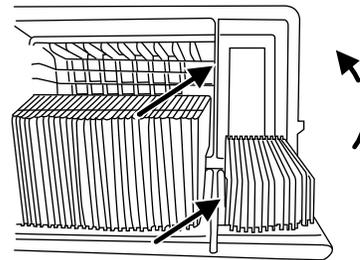
3. Remove the air filter element from the air filter housing.

## Maintenance and Specifications

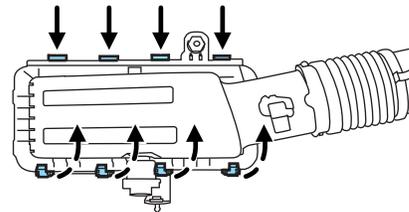
4. Remove and install a new foam filter if needed according to the service interval indicated in the *scheduled maintenance information* in this guide. If the foam filter is not being replaced, be sure the existing foam filter is in place.



5. Install a new air filter element. be sure that the groove seal on the pleated paper filter traps both sides of the vertical partition of the air box.



6. Replace the air filter housing cover and secure the clamps. Be careful not to crimp the filter element edges between the air filter housing and cover and ensure that the tabs on the edge are properly aligned into the slots.



7. Reconnect the mass air flow sensor electrical connector to the inlet tube. Make sure the locking tab on the connector is in the “locked” position.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### **DIESEL EXHAUST SYSTEM: OXIDATION CATALYST/DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER SYSTEM**

Your vehicle is equipped with a diesel particulate filter (DPF). The DPF is an inline filter in the exhaust system which reduces carbon emissions by trapping exhaust particles before they reach the tailpipe. The DPF looks similar to a traditional exhaust catalyst, except larger, and is part of the exhaust system under the vehicle. The DPF is coupled to a diesel oxidation catalyst, that reduces the amount of harmful exhaust emitted from the tailpipe. As soot gathers in the system it begins to restrict the filter. The soot gathered inside the filter needs to be periodically cleaned. The soot can be cleaned in two different ways; passive regeneration and active regeneration. Both methods occur automatically and require no actions from the driver/operator. During either one of these regeneration methods you may notice an increase/change in exhaust noise/tone. At certain times, the message center will display various messages related to the DPF. See *Message center* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter in the *Owner Guide* for more information.

#### **Passive regeneration**

In passive regeneration, the exhaust constituents / temperature are at an appropriate level where some soot can be reduced or oxidized (burned) thus cleaning the filter. This method occurs naturally as a result of normal engine operating conditions (at varying levels due to drive patterns).

#### **Active regeneration**

Once the DPF is full of exhaust particles, the engine control module will command the exhaust system to clean the DPF through a process called active regeneration. Active regeneration requires the engine computer to raise the exhaust temperature to eliminate the particles. During cleaning, the particles are converted to harmless gasses, and the DPF will then be clean and ready to continue trapping exhaust particles.

The regeneration process operates more efficiently when the vehicle is safely operated at least 30 mph (48 km/h) with a steady pedal for approximately 20 minutes to complete the process. The frequency and duration of regeneration will fluctuate as both are determined by how you drive your vehicle, outside air temperature, and altitude. For most driving, regeneration frequency will vary from 100 - 500 miles (161 - 805 km) between occurrences and each occurrence will last from 9 - 20 minutes. The duration of regeneration is usually reduced if a constant speed above 30 mph (48 km/h) is maintained.

## Maintenance and Specifications

When the engine control module detects that the DPF is nearly full of particulates and that the vehicle is not being operated in a manner to allow effective automatic cleaning, the message center will display **DRIVE TO CLEAN EXHAUST FILTER** guiding the vehicle operator to drive in order to clean the DPF. If the vehicle is operated in a manner to allow effective automatic cleaning, the message center will display **CLEANING EXHAUST FILTER**, which is the normal regeneration process. See *Message center* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter of the *Owner Guide* for more information.

If the operator is not able to drive in manner that allows effective automatic cleaning (active regeneration) or the operator instead wishes to perform regeneration of the DPF (cleaning) while at idle (stationary), then OCR (operator commanded regeneration) will need to be performed. See *Operator commanded regeneration (OCR)* following.

**Note:** Do not disregard the **DRIVE TO CLEAN EXHAUST FILTER** maintenance message for extended periods of time. Failure to perform active or operator commanded regeneration (OCR) (if equipped) when instructed may result in a clogged DPF. If your DPF fills beyond what can be safely regenerated, active regeneration and OCR will be disabled. This could cause irreversible damage to the DPF, requiring service and possible replacement that may not be covered by your warranty.

### Operator commanded regeneration (OCR) (if equipped)

If your vehicle is operated with significant stationary operation, passive and active regeneration may not sufficiently clean the DPF system. OCR allows you to manually start regeneration of the diesel particulate filter (DPF) at idle (while stationary) to clean the DPF. If you are not sure whether your vehicle is equipped with this feature, contact your authorized dealer.

### When to perform OCR

Use the OCR feature when the **DRIVE TO CLEAN EXHAUST FILTER** message appears in the message center and:

- the operator is not able to drive in manner that allows effective automatic cleaning (active regeneration),
- or the operator instead wishes to manually start regeneration (cleaning) of the DPF while the vehicle is idle (stationary).

56

## Maintenance and Specifications

### OCR precautions and safe exhaust position



**WARNING:** Failure to comply with the following instructions for operator commanded regeneration (OCR) may result in fire, serious injury, death and/or property damage.

Before you start OCR, observe/do the following:

- Place the vehicle in P (Park) with the parking brake set on stable, level ground.
- The vehicle must not be parked in a structure.
- The vehicle must be away from any obstructions within 10 - 15 feet of vehicle,
- and must be away from materials that can easily combust or melt such as: paper, leaves, petroleum products, fuels, plastics and other dry organic material, such as grass.
- Make sure there is a minimum of 1/8 tank of fuel.
- Make sure all fluids are at proper levels.

Make sure that the louvers (holes) located at the tip of the exhaust are also clear of any obstructions as they are used to introduce fresh air into the tailpipe to cool the exhaust gas as it leaves. See *Exhaust* under the *Cleaning* chapter for more information.

### How to start operator commanded regeneration (OCR)



**WARNING:** Stay clear of exhaust tip during regeneration. You or others can be burned.

**Note:** OCR will not be allowed to operate if the service engine soon light  is illuminated

**Note:** During the use of OCR, you may observe a light amount of white smoke. This is normal.

1. Start with the vehicle engine fully warmed.
2. Press the Info button on the steering wheel until the message center reads **EXHAUST FILTER XXX% FULL**.
3. If the DPF needs cleaning and the vehicle is warmed up, a message requesting permission to initiate filter cleaning is displayed **EXH XXX% FULL CLEAN Y/N**. Answering yes to this prompt and then following prompts will initiate OCR. Be sure to understand each prompt. If you are not sure what is being asked by each prompt, contact your authorized dealer.

## Maintenance and Specifications

4. Once OCR starts, the engine's rpm will rise to approximately 2,000 - 2,400 rpm and the cooling fan will increase speed; you will hear a change in audible sound due to the fan and engine speed increase.

It is not necessary to open the hood on the engine compartment. Once OCR is complete, the engine rpm and fan will return to normal idling. The exhaust system will remain very hot for several minutes even after regeneration is complete. Do not reposition the vehicle over materials that could burn until the exhaust system has had sufficient time to cool. Depending on the amount of soot collected by the DPF, ambient temperature, and altitude, OCR may last from 10 to 25 minutes.

**Note:** During stationary PTO operation, OCR will change the engine speed to 2,000 or 2,400 rpm (depending on vehicle application), therefore it is recommended you exit PTO mode before starting OCR. During mobile PTO use, OCR is not necessary; regeneration will function normally.

### ***How to interrupt/cancel OCR***

If OCR needs to be cancelled, pressing the brake, accelerator, or shutting off the vehicle will stop OCR. Depending on the amount of time OCR was allowed to operate, soot may not have had sufficient time to be eliminated, but the exhaust system and exhaust gas may still be hot. If the vehicle is shut off during OCR, you will notice turbo flutter. This is a normal consequence caused by shutting off a diesel engine during boosted operation and is considered normal.

### **Filter service/maintenance**

Over time a slight amount of ash will build up in the DPF which is not removed during the regeneration process. The DPF may need to be removed for ash cleaning at approximately 120,000 miles (193,000 km) or greater (actual mileage can vary greatly depending upon engine/vehicle operating conditions) and replaced with a new or remanufactured (ash cleaned) part. The filter may need to be replaced at approximately 250,000 miles (400,000 km) depending upon engine/vehicle operating conditions. In both cases the engine control system will set a service light  to inform you to bring the vehicle to the dealer for service.

If there are any issues with the oxidation catalyst/DPF system a service light  or  will be set by the engine control system to inform you to bring the vehicle into your authorized dealer for service.

### ***Resonator/Tailpipe assembly maintenance***

The diesel resonator tail-pipe assembly is a uniquely functioning device that accompanies the Oxidation Catalyst/DPF assembly. The assembly

58

## Maintenance and Specifications

serves multiple functions. First it serves as an acoustic device to attenuate exhaust noise. Second it provides an exit path for the exhaust from the vehicle. It also is designed to help control the temperature of the exhaust during DPF regeneration events. The visible holes in each leg of the twin tip and the holes under the shield just inboard of the right rear tire(s) are functional. The holes need to be kept clear of mud/debris or foreign material to maintain proper function of the exhaust system. Clean and remove debris or foreign material if present as needed. Spraying with a hose during regular washing of vehicle should help keep holes clean and clear of debris or foreign material.

**Note:** Additions of aftermarket devices or modifications to the exhaust system can reduce the effectiveness of the exhaust system as well as cause damage to the exhaust system and/or engine. These actions may also affect the vehicle's warranty. See the *Warranty Guide* for more information.



**WARNING:** Failure to maintain the functional holes, in the tailpipe section of the exhaust, clean and free of debris or foreign material may result in the holes becoming blocked or plugged. Do not modify or remove the tail-pipe section. Blocked or plugged holes or removal/modification of the system could result in elevated exhaust gas temperatures which may result in vehicle/property damage or personal injury.



**WARNING:** The normal operating temperature of the exhaust system is very high. Never work around or attempt to repair any part of the exhaust system until it has cooled. Use special care when working around the diesel oxidation catalytic converter and/or the diesel particulate filter (DPF). The diesel oxidation catalytic converter and/or the DPF heats up to a high temperature after only a short period of engine operation and can stay hot even after the engine is turned off. Failure to follow these instructions may result in personal injury.

### EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM(S) LAWS

In the U.S. federal law and certain state laws prohibit removing or rendering inoperative emission control system(s). Similar federal or provincial laws may apply in Canada. Ford recommends against any vehicle modification without determining applicable law.

## Maintenance and Specifications



**WARNING:** Do not remove or alter the original equipment floor covering or insulation between it and the metal floor of the vehicle. The floor covering and insulation protect occupants of the vehicle from the engine and exhaust system heat and noise. On vehicles with no original equipment floor covering insulation, do not carry passengers in a manner that permits prolonged skin contact with the metal floor. Provide adequate insulation. Failure to follow these instructions may result in fire or personal injury.

Tampering with emissions control systems (including related sensors and the diesel exhaust fluid (DEF) injection system) can result in reduced engine power and the illumination of the service engine soon light .

### NOISE EMISSIONS WARRANTY, PROHIBITED TAMPERING ACTS AND MAINTENANCE

On January 1, 1978, Federal regulation became effective governing the noise emission on trucks over 10,000 lbs. (4,536 kg) GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating). The following statements concerning prohibited tampering acts and maintenance, and the noise warranty found in the *Warranty Guide*, are applicable to complete chassis cabs over 10,000 lbs. (4,536 kg) GVWR.

#### Tampering with noise control system prohibited

Federal law prohibits the following acts or the causing thereof: (1) The removal or rendering inoperative by any person other than for purposes of maintenance, repair or replacement of any device or element of design incorporated into any new vehicle for the purpose of noise control prior to its sale or delivery to the ultimate purchaser or while it is in use, or (2) the use of the vehicle after such device or element of design has been removed or rendered inoperative by any person.

Among those acts which the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency may presume to constitute tampering are the acts listed below:

- Removal of hood blanket, fender apron absorbers, fender apron barriers, underbody noise shields or acoustically absorptive material.
- Tampering or rendering inoperative the engine speed governor, so as to allow engine speed to exceed manufacturer's specifications.

The complexity of the diesel engine makes it so the owner is discouraged from attempting to perform maintenance other than the services described in this supplement.

60

## Maintenance and Specifications

If you experience difficult starting, rough idling, excessive exhaust smoke, a decrease in engine performance or excess fuel consumption, perform the following checks:

- a plugged or disconnected air inlet system or engine air filter element.
- water in the fuel filter/water separator.
- a clogged fuel filter.
- contaminated fuel.
- air in the fuel system, due to loose connections.
- an open or pinched sensor hose.
- check engine oil level.
- wrong fuel or oil viscosity for climactic conditions.

If these checks do not help you correct the engine performance problem you are experiencing, consult an authorized dealer.

### FUELING



**WARNING:** Do not use starting fluid such as ether or gasoline in the diesel air intake system. Such fluids can cause immediate explosive damage to the engine and possible personal injury.

If you fuel your vehicle at a truck stop, you may notice that the fuel nozzle may shut off every 5–10 seconds. This is due to the flow rates being designed for larger heavy duty trucks. You may have to fuel at a slower rate (don't depress the nozzle trigger fully).

Do not run your diesel vehicle out of fuel as this will allow air to enter the fuel system which will make restarting difficult. Longer engine cranking time may be required once air is in the fuel system. If air enters the fuel system (either through running the fuel tank(s) empty or during a fuel filter change), the engine will self-purge the trapped air once it starts running. The engine may run roughly and produce white smoke while air is in the fuel system; this is normal and should stop after a short time.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### MINOR TROUBLESHOOTING GUIDE

#### Air purge procedure

Turn the key on for 30 seconds, then turn off. Repeat the procedure six times.

#### If the engine won't crank

Turn on the headlights. If the lights are dim, do not go on at all or when the ignition is turned to START the lights become dim or go out, the battery connections may be loose or corroded, or the battery may be discharged. If there is a clicking or stuttering sound coming from the engine compartment when you turn the key to START, this may also indicate a loose or corroded battery connection.

Check the battery connections at the battery posts, cable connection to the engine grounding point and at the starter connection.

If a discharged battery is suspected, have it checked and corrected.



**WARNING:** Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. **Wash hands after handling.**

- The gearshift lever must be in P (Park) or N (Neutral) in order for the starter to operate.
- Try operating the starter switch several times. Should the switch be corroded, this operation may clean the contacts or make the switch temporarily operable until you can reach the dealer.
- If all electrical connections are tight and you need assistance to start, refer to *Jump starting* in the *Roadside Emergencies* chapter of your *Owner's Guide*.

#### If engine cranks but won't start

Prolonged starter cranking (in excess of 10 seconds) could cause damage to the starter motor.

- Check the fuel gauge. You may be out of fuel. If the gauge shows that there is fuel in the tank, the trouble may be in the electrical system or the fuel system. If equipped with an auxiliary tank, be sure that the tank control switch is set for the tank with fuel and not on an empty tank.
- Leaving the ignition key turned to on for over two minutes without starting may make starting difficult because the glow plugs will cease activation. Reset the system by turning the ignition key to off and then back to on again.

62

## Maintenance and Specifications

### If the engine runs hot

The following could cause the engine to overheat:

- Lack of coolant.
- Dirty cooling system.
- Plugged radiator fins, A/C condenser and/or oil cooler.
- Malfunctioning fan drive.
- Driving with frozen coolant.
- Sticking thermostat.
- Overloading or pulling heavy trailers during hot weather.
- Grill or radiator air blockage.
- Slipping or missing drive belt.
- Plugged or very dirty air filter.

### If fuses burn out

Burned-out or blown fuses usually indicate an electrical short-circuit, although a fuse may occasionally burn out from vibration. Insert a second fuse. If this fuse immediately burns out and you cannot locate the cause, return your vehicle to your dealer for a circuit check.



**WARNING:** Replacement fuses and circuit breakers must always be the same rating as the original equipment shown. Never replace a fuse or circuit breaker with one of a higher rating. Higher rated fuses or circuit breakers could allow circuit overloading in the event of a circuit malfunction, resulting in severe vehicle damage or personal injury due to fire.

Refer to the *Owner's Guide* for replacement of fuses.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### Selective catalytic reduction (SCR) system speed limit and Idle-only modes

If the vehicle's speed is limited or in an idle-only mode, the SCR system may be limiting the vehicle's functions due to low or contaminated diesel exhaust fluid (DEF). Check the DEF. See *Selective catalytic reduction (SCR) system* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter for more information.

### MOTORCRAFT® PART NUMBERS

Item	Ford Part Number
Engine oil filter	FL-2051
Foam pre-filter	FA-1907
* Air filter	FA-1902
Fuel filter kit (2 included - engine and frame rail mounted )	FD-4615
Battery (2 Required)	BXT-65-750
* Always use the authorized Motorcraft® air filter or an equivalent replacement part. <b>Failure to use the correct air filter may result in severe engine damage.</b>	

## Maintenance and Specifications

### MAINTENANCE PRODUCT SPECIFICATIONS AND CAPACITIES

Item	Capacity	Ford part name	Ford part number / Ford specification or specification
Engine coolant (primary high-temperature cooling system loop)*	29.4 quarts (27.8L)	Motorcraft® Specialty Orange Engine Coolant with bittering agent (US) / Motorcraft® Specialty Orange Engine Coolant (Canada)	VC-3-B (US) CVC-3-B (Canada) / WSS-M97B44-D
Engine coolant additive	48.0 oz. (1.4L) per addition if required	Motorcraft® Specialty Orange Engine Coolant Revitalizer	VC-12 / —
Engine cooling system cleaner	1 quart (946 mL)	Motorcraft® Coolant System Iron Cleaner	VC-9 / —
Secondary cooling system cleaner	22.0 oz. (651 mL)	Motorcraft® Premium Cooling System Flush	VC-1 / —
Secondary cooling system*	11.7 quarts (11.1L)	Motorcraft® Specialty Orange Engine Coolant with bittering agent (US) / Motorcraft® Specialty Orange Engine Coolant (Canada)	VC-3-B (US) CVC-3-B (Canada) / WSS-M97B44-D

## Maintenance and Specifications

Item	Capacity	Ford part name	Ford part number / Ford specification or specification
Engine oil (includes filter change)	13.0 quarts (12.4L)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Motorcraft® Motor Oil 10W30 Super Duty</li> <li>• Motorcraft® Motor Oil 15W40 Super Duty</li> <li>• Motorcraft® Motor Oil 5W40 Super Duty</li> <li>• Motorcraft® Motor Oil 0W30 Super Duty</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• XO-10W30-QSD / WSS-M2C171-E</li> <li>• XO-15W40-QSD / WSS-M2C171-E</li> <li>• XO-5W40-5QSD / WSS-M2C171-E</li> <li>• CXO-0W30-LAS12 / WSS-M2C171-D</li> </ul>
Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) — Pick-up	5 gallons (18.9L)	Motorcraft® Diesel Exhaust Fluid	PM-27-G / WSS-M99C130-A
Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) — Chassis Cab	6 gallons (22.7L)		
Cetane Booster & Performance Improver	—	Motorcraft® Cetane Booster & Performance Improver	PM-22-A (US) PM-22-B (Canada) / —
Anti-Gel & Performance Improver	—	Motorcraft® Anti-Gel & Performance Improver	PM-23-A (US) PM-23-B (Canada) / —
Fuel tank — Pick up regular cab long box and all short box	26 gallons (98.4L)	—	—

## Maintenance and Specifications

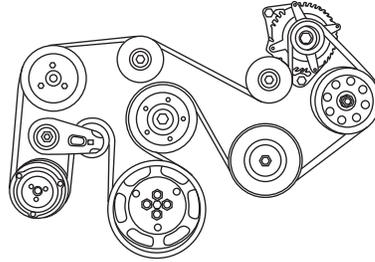
Item	Capacity	Ford part name	Ford part number / Ford specification or specification
Fuel tank — Pick Up long box (except regular cab)	37.5 gallons (142.0L)	—	—
Fuel tank — Chassis cab (midship)	28 gallons (106.0L)	—	—
Fuel tank — Chassis cab (aft of axle)	40 gallons (151.4L)	—	—
Fuel tank — Dual tanks	40 gallon (151.4L) and 28 gallon (106.0L)	—	—
Automatic transmission fluid	Refer to <i>Owner's Guide</i>		

\* Use only the recommended coolant for topping off and coolant changes. Using any other coolant may result in vehicle damage.

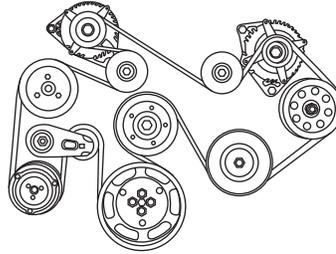
## Maintenance and Specifications

### ENGINE DRIVEBELT ROUTING

Single Alternator



Dual Alternator



## Scheduled Maintenance Guide

### GENERAL MAINTENANCE INFORMATION

#### Why maintain your vehicle?

This guide describes the scheduled maintenance required for your vehicle. Carefully following this schedule helps protect against major repair expenses resulting from neglect or inadequate maintenance and may also help to increase the value of your vehicle when you sell or trade it.

It is your responsibility to see that all scheduled maintenance is performed and that the materials used meet Ford engineering specifications. Failure to perform scheduled maintenance in this guide will invalidate warranty coverage on parts affected by the lack of maintenance. Be sure receipts for completed maintenance are kept with the vehicle and confirmation of the work performed is always recorded in this guide.

Your Ford dealer has factory-trained technicians who can perform the required maintenance using genuine Ford parts. They are committed to meeting your service needs and to assuring your continuing satisfaction.

#### Protecting your investment

Maintenance is an investment that will pay dividends in the form of improved reliability, durability and resale value. To ensure the proper performance of your vehicle and its emission control systems, it is imperative that scheduled maintenance be completed at the designated intervals.

For your convenience, your vehicle is equipped with a message center which determines the proper oil change service interval. You should perform the engine oil change as indicated by the message center. The message center will display ENGINE OIL CHANGE SOON or OIL CHANGE REQUIRED to indicate when an oil change is needed. The engine oil change service needs to be completed within two weeks or 500 miles (800 km) after the OIL CHANGE REQUIRED message is displayed. Your oil change service interval can be up to one year or 10,000 miles (16,000 km) depending on operating conditions. Reset your Intelligent Oil Life Monitor™ after each engine oil and filter change; refer to the *Instrument Cluster* chapter of the *Owner's Guide*.

If your message center is prematurely reset or becomes inoperative, you should perform the oil change interval at six months, 5,000 miles (8,000 km) or 200 engine hours from your last oil change.

Your vehicle is very sophisticated and built with multiple complex performance systems. Every manufacturer develops these systems using

## Scheduled Maintenance Guide

different specifications and performance features. That's why it's important to rely upon your Ford dealership to properly diagnose and repair your vehicle.

Ford Motor Company has recommended maintenance intervals for various parts and component systems based upon engineering testing. Ford Motor Company relies upon this testing to determine the most appropriate mileage for replacement of oils and fluids to protect your vehicle at the lowest overall cost to you and recommends against maintenance schedules that deviate from the scheduled maintenance information.

Ford strongly recommends the use of genuine Ford replacement parts. Parts other than Ford, Motorcraft® or Ford-authorized remanufactured parts that are used for maintenance replacement or for the service of components affecting emission control must be equivalent to genuine Ford Motor Company parts in performance and durability. It is the owner's responsibility to determine the equivalency of such parts. Please consult your *Warranty Guide* for complete warranty information.

Non Ford-approved chemicals or additives are not required for factory recommended maintenance. In fact, Ford Motor Company recommends against the use of such additive products unless specifically recommended by Ford for a particular application.

### ***Oils, fluids and flushing***

In many cases, fluid discoloration is a normal operating characteristic of the chemical compound and may not necessarily demonstrate that a fluid needs to be changed. Oils and fluids identified in this guide should be changed at the specified interval or in conjunction with a repair. Flushing is a viable way to change fluid for many vehicle sub-systems during scheduled maintenance and should only be done using the same fluid required to finish the maintenance procedure, or a Ford-approved flushing chemical.

### **Genuine Ford parts and service**

When planning your maintenance services, consider your dealership for all your vehicle's needs.

There are a lot of reasons why your dealership is a great way to help keep your vehicle running great.

### ***Convenience***

To make your service visit even more convenient, in many cases, you'll find extended evening hours and Saturday hours. How's that for quality service?

70

## Scheduled Maintenance Guide

### **Factory-trained technicians**

Service technicians participate in extensive factory-sponsored training to help them become the experts on the operation of your vehicle. Many participate in Ford-sponsored training to become certified. Ask your dealer about the training and certification their technicians have received.

### **Genuine Ford and Motorcraft® replacement parts**

Dealerships stock Ford and Motorcraft® branded replacement parts. These parts meet or exceed Ford Motor Company's specifications, and we stand behind them. Maintenance parts installed at your dealership carry a nationwide, 12 month/12,000 mile (20,000 km) parts and labor limited warranty. Your dealer can give you details.

### **Value shopping for your vehicle's maintenance needs**

Your dealership recognizes the competitive landscape of maintenance and light repair automotive services. With factory-trained technicians, and one-stop service from routine maintenance like oil changes and tire rotations to repairs like brake service, check out the value your dealers can offer.

### **Owner checks and services**

Certain basic maintenance checks and inspections should be performed by the owner or a service technician at the intervals indicated. Service information and supporting specifications are provided in the *Owner's Guide*.

Any adverse condition should be brought to the attention of your dealer or qualified service technician as soon as possible for the proper service advice. The owner maintenance service checks are generally not covered by warranties so you may be charged for labor, parts or fluids used.

#### **Maximum oil change interval**

- Normal schedule: As indicated by the message center (can be up to one year or 10,000 miles [16,000 km])
- Special operating conditions: Consult specific operating condition recommendations

#### **Maximum fuel filter change interval**

- Normal schedule: 22,500 miles (36,000 km) or as indicated by the message center (whichever comes first)
- Special operating conditions: 15,000 miles (24,000 km) or 600 engine hours; see appropriate schedule

## Scheduled Maintenance Guide

### Coolant change interval

- Initial change — 6 years or 105,000 miles (168,000 km) (whichever comes first), or as indicated from the coolant tests for concentration (freeze-point) or additive strength (corrosion inhibitor)
- After initial change — every 3 years or 45,000 miles (72,000 km), or as indicated from the coolant tests for concentration (freeze-point) or additive strength (corrosion inhibitor)
- Use coolant specified in the *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* table in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter
- Special operating conditions: See *Special operating conditions* later in this chapter

### Check every month

- Engine air filter restriction gauge
- Engine oil level
- Fuel filter/water separator; drain if necessary
- Function of all interior and exterior lights
- Holes/Slots in the tail pipe of the exhaust system to make sure they are clear of debris and functional
- Tires for wear and adjust air pressure (including spare tire)
- Windshield washer fluid level

### Check every six months

- All hinges, latches and outside locks; lubricate if necessary
- Battery connections; clean if necessary
- Body and door drain holes; clean if necessary
- Door rubber weatherstrips for wear; lubricate if necessary
- Engine and secondary cooling system concentration (freeze-point protection), additive strength (corrosion inhibitor), coolant level and hoses
- Externally-mounted spare tire for tightness (see *Owner's Guide*)
- Lap/Shoulder belts and seat latches for wear and function
- Parking brake for proper operation
- Power steering fluid level
- Safety warning lamps (brake, ABS, airbag, safety belt) for operation
- Washer spray, wiper operation and clean all wiper blades (replace as necessary)

### Retightening lug nuts

- On vehicles with single rear wheels, retighten the lug nuts to the specified torque at 500 miles (800 km) after any wheel disturbance (tire rotation, changing a flat tire, wheel removal, etc)
- On vehicles with dual rear wheels, retighten the wheel lug nuts to the specified torque at 100 miles (160 km), and again at 500 miles (800 km) of new vehicle operation and after any wheel disturbance (tire rotation, changing a flat tire, wheel removal, etc)
- Refer to *Wheel lug nut torque specifications* in your *Owner's Guide* for the proper lug nut torque specification

## Scheduled Maintenance Guide

### Multi-point inspection

In order to keep your vehicle running right, it is important that you have the systems on your vehicle checked regularly. This can help identify any potential issue before there are any problems. Ford Motor Company suggests the following multi-point inspection to be performed at every scheduled maintenance interval as the way to ensure your vehicle keeps running right.

#### Multi-point inspection - recommended at every visit

- Battery performance
- Engine air filter
- Exhaust system for leaks, damage, loose parts and foreign materials
- Fluid levels (top-up if necessary): brake, engine coolant reservoir, secondary low-temperature cooling system reservoir, automatic transmission, power steering, window washer
- For oil and fluid leaks
- Holes/Slots in the tail-pipe of the exhaust system to make sure they are clear of debris (the holes/slots are functional)
- Operation of horn, exterior lamps, turn signals and hazard warning lights
- Radiators, coolers and heater and air conditioning hoses
- Shocks and struts and other suspension components for leaks and damage
- Tires for wear and check air pressure, including spare
- Windshield for cracks, chips and pitting
- Windshield washer spray and wiper operation

### NORMAL SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE AND LOG

For your convenience, your vehicle is equipped with a message center which calculates the proper oil change service interval. You should perform the engine oil change as indicated by the message center. The message center will display ENGINE OIL CHANGE SOON or OIL CHANGE REQUIRED to indicate when an oil change is needed. The engine oil change service needs to be completed within two weeks or 500 miles (800 km) after the OIL CHANGE REQUIRED message is displayed. Your oil change service interval can be up to one year or 10,000 miles (16,000 km). Reset your Intelligent Oil Life Monitor™ after each engine oil and filter change; refer to the *Instrument Cluster* chapter of the *Owner's Guide*.

If your message center is prematurely reset or becomes inoperative, you should perform the oil change interval at six months, 5,000 miles (8,000 km) or 200 engine hours from your last oil change.

## Scheduled Maintenance Guide

### Intelligent Oil Life Monitor™

Your diesel engine is equipped with an Intelligent Oil Life Monitor™ that determines the proper engine oil change service interval based on vehicle use. The following table is intended to provide examples of vehicle use and its impact on engine oil change interval; it is provided as a guideline only. Actual engine oil change intervals will depend on several factors and will generally decrease with severity of use.

When to expect the OIL CHANGE REQUIRED message			
Miles (km)	Engine hours	Fuel type	Vehicle use and examples
7500-10000 (12000-16000)	300-400	-ULSD -Biodiesel	<b>Normal</b>
			-No, or moderate, load/towing -Flat to moderately hilly roads -No extended idling
5000-7499 (8000-11999)	200-299	-ULSD -Biodiesel	<b>Severe</b>
			-Moderate to heavy load/towing -Mountainous or off-road conditions -Extended idling -Extended hot or cold operation
2500-4999 (4000-7999)	100-199	-ULSD -Biodiesel -High sulfur diesel fuel*	<b>Extreme</b>
			-Maximum load/towing -Extreme hot or cold operation
ULSD = Ultra low sulfur diesel fuel *Use the appropriate special operating condition for maintenance information when using high sulfur diesel fuels, operating your vehicle off-road or in dusty conditions (such as unpaved roads).			

## Scheduled Maintenance Guide

Oil Change Service Interval*	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
Change engine oil and filter	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Refill diesel exhaust fluid tank	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Rotate tires, inspect tire wear and measure tread depth; dual rear wheels should only be rotated if unusual wear is observed	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as necessary	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Inspect wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Inspect and lubricate steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie rod ends, driveshaft, front axle U-joints (4WD vehicles)	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Inspect automatic transmission fluid level	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Inspect brake pads, shoes, rotors, drums, brake linings, hoses and parking brake	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Inspect exhaust system and heat shields	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
*Oil change service intervals should be completed as indicated by the message center										
Reset your Intelligent Oil Life Monitor™ after each engine oil and filter change; refer to the <i>Instrument Cluster</i> chapter of the <i>Owner's Guide</i>										

## Scheduled Maintenance Guide

Oil Change Service Interval*	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
Change engine oil and filter	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Refill diesel exhaust fluid tank	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Rotate tires, inspect tire wear and measure tread depth; dual rear wheels should only be rotated if unusual wear is observed	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as necessary	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Inspect wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Inspect and lubricate steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie rod ends, driveshaft, front axle U-joints (4WD vehicles)	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Inspect automatic transmission fluid level	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Inspect brake pads, shoes, rotors, drums, brake linings, hoses and parking brake	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Inspect exhaust system and heat shields	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
*Oil change service intervals should be completed as indicated by the message center										
Reset your Intelligent Oil Life Monitor™ after each engine oil and filter change; refer to the <i>Instrument Cluster</i> chapter of the <i>Owner's Guide</i>										

## Scheduled Maintenance Guide

Perform the services noted in the following table at the specified time/mileage (km) period either within 3,000 miles (4,800 km) of the OIL CHANGE REQUIRED message appearing in the message center or when the time/mileage (km) reading indicates service is due.

**Example #1:** The OIL CHANGE REQUIRED message comes on at 19,751 miles (31,786 km); perform the 22,500 mile (36,000 km) fuel filter replacement.

**Example #2:** The OIL CHANGE REQUIRED message has **not** come on but the odometer reads 22,500 miles (36,000 km); perform the fuel filter replacement. (i.e., Intelligent Oil Life Monitor™ was reset at 15,000 miles [24,000 km].)

Every 15,000 miles (24,000 km), 600 engine hours or as indicated by the message center	Inspect engine and secondary cooling system concentration (freeze-point protection), additive strength (corrosion inhibitor), coolant level and hoses
Every 22,500 miles (36,000 km) or as indicated by the message center	Replace engine- and frame-mounted fuel filters
Every 30,000 miles (48,000 km)	Replace climate-controlled seat filter (if equipped)
At 45,000 miles (72,000 km)	Replace air inlet foam filter <sup>1</sup>
Every 60,000 miles (96,000 km)	Replace front wheel bearing grease/grease seal if non-sealed bearings are used (2WD vehicles)
At 90,000 miles (144,000 km)	Inspect accessory drive belt(s) <sup>2</sup>
At 100,000 miles (160,000 km)	Change rear axle fluid (Dana axles only; refer to <i>Special operating conditions</i> ) <sup>3</sup>
At 105,000 miles (168,000 km) or 72 months	Change engine coolant and secondary coolant <sup>4</sup>

## Scheduled Maintenance Guide

Every 150,000 miles (240,000 km)	Change automatic transmission fluid and filter on 6-speed TorqShift® transmission
	Change front axle fluid (4WD vehicles)
	Change transfer case fluid (4WD vehicles)
	Replace accessory drive belt(s) if not replaced in the last 100,000 miles (160,000 km)
	Replace front wheel bearings and seals if non-sealed bearings are used (2WD vehicles)
<sup>1</sup> Replace filter again at 97,500 miles (156,000 km) and 150,000 miles (240,000 km)	
<sup>2</sup> Initial inspection at 90,000 miles (144,000 km), then every 15,000 miles (24,000 km) thereafter until replacement at 150,000 miles (240,000 km)	
<sup>3</sup> Initial replacement at 100,000 miles (160,000 km), then again at 150,000 miles (240,000 km)	
<sup>4</sup> Initial replacement at 105,000 miles (168,000 km) or 72 months or as indicated from coolant tests for concentration (freeze-point) or additive strength (corrosion inhibitor); every 45,000 miles (72,000 km) or 36 months thereafter or as indicated from coolant tests for concentration (freeze-point) or additive strength (corrosion inhibitor)	

## Scheduled Maintenance Guide

**Maintenance schedule log**

<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                  MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                  MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                  MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                  MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                  MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                  MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                  MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                  MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                  MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                  MILEAGE:</p>

## Scheduled Maintenance Guide

<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>

## Scheduled Maintenance Guide

<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>

## Scheduled Maintenance Guide

### SPECIAL OPERATING CONDITIONS

If you operate your vehicle **primarily** in one of the conditions listed below, you will need to have some items serviced more frequently. If you only **occasionally** operate your vehicle under any of these conditions, you don't need to perform the additional maintenance. For specific recommendations, see your dealership service advisor or technician.

#### Frequent/extended idling (over 10 minutes per hour of normal driving) or frequent low speed operation if vehicle is used for stationary operation

<b>As required</b>	– Change engine oil and filter as indicated by message center and perform services listed in the scheduled maintenance chart
<b>Every 15,000 miles (24,000 km), 6 months, 600 engine hours or as indicated by message center</b>	– Replace engine- and frame-mounted fuel filters
<b>Every 15,000 miles (24,000 km) or 800 engine hours</b>	– Inspect concentration (freeze-point protection) and additive strength (corrosion inhibitor); add engine coolant additive, if required
<b>Every 60,000 miles (96,000 km) or 2,400 engine hours</b>	– Flush and refill engine coolant; do not add engine coolant additive

Perform the services noted in the preceding table at the specified time/mileage (km) period either within 3,000 miles (4,800 km) of the OIL CHANGE REQUIRED message appearing in the message center or when the time/mileage (km) reading indicates service is due.

**Example #1:** The OIL CHANGE REQUIRED message comes on at 19,751 miles (31,786 km); perform the 22,500 mile (36,000 km) fuel filter replacement.

**Example #2:** The OIL CHANGE REQUIRED message has **not** come on but the odometer reads 22,500 miles (36,000 km); perform the fuel filter replacement. (i.e., Intelligent Oil Life Monitor™ was reset at 15,000 miles [24,000 km].)

**Note:** Vehicles operating under these severe service conditions need to have their maintenance requirements adjusted. This needs to be considered when determining vehicle service intervals.

**Note:** When adding coolant additive, do not exceed the specified maximum of 48 fl. oz. (1.4L). Operating the engine with excessive coolant additive may cause overheating which could lead to severe permanent engine damage.

82

## Scheduled Maintenance Guide

**Note:** After initial coolant flush and fill at 60,000 miles (96,000 km) or 2,400 engine hours, flush and fill every 45,000 miles (72,000 km) or 1,800 engine hours thereafter.

### Frequent low speed operation, consistent heavy traffic less than 25 mph (40 km/h) and/or long rush hour traffic

<b>As required</b>	– Change engine oil and filter as indicated by message center and perform services listed in the scheduled maintenance chart
<b>Every 15,000 miles (24,000 km), 6 months, 600 engine hours or as indicated by message center</b>	– Replace engine- and frame-mounted fuel filters
<b>Every 15,000 miles (24,000 km) or 800 engine hours</b>	– Inspect concentration (freeze-point protection) and additive strength (corrosion inhibitor); add engine coolant additive, if required
<b>Every 60,000 miles (96,000 km)</b>	– Change transfer case fluid (4WD vehicles)
<b>Every 60,000 miles (96,000 km) or 2,400 engine hours</b>	– Flush and refill engine coolant; do not add engine coolant additive

Perform the services noted in the preceding table at the specified time/mileage (km) period either within 3,000 miles (4,800 km) of the OIL CHANGE REQUIRED message appearing in the message center or when the time/mileage (km) reading indicates service is due.

**Example #1:** The OIL CHANGE REQUIRED message comes on at 19,751 miles (31,786 km); perform the 22,500 mile (36,000 km) fuel filter replacement.

**Example #2:** The OIL CHANGE REQUIRED message has **not** come on but the odometer reads 22,500 miles (36,000 km); perform the fuel filter replacement. (i.e., Intelligent Oil Life Monitor™ was reset at 15,000 miles [24,000 km].)

**Note:** When adding coolant additive, do not exceed the specified maximum of 48 fl. oz. (1.4L). Operating the engine with excessive coolant additive may cause overheating which could lead to severe permanent engine damage.

**Note:** After initial coolant flush and fill at 60,000 miles (96,000 km) or 2,400 engine hours, flush and fill every 45,000 miles (72,000 km) or 1,800 engine hours thereafter.

## Scheduled Maintenance Guide

### Sustained high-speed driving at Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (maximum loaded weight for vehicle operation)

<b>As required</b>	– Change engine oil and filter as indicated by message center and perform services listed in the scheduled maintenance chart
<b>Every 15,000 miles (24,000 km), 6 months, 600 engine hours or as indicated by message center</b>	– Replace engine- and frame-mounted fuel filters
<b>Every 15,000 miles (24,000 km) or 800 engine hours</b>	– Inspect concentration (freeze-point protection) and additive strength (corrosion inhibitor); add engine coolant additive, if required
<b>Every 30,000 miles (48,000 km)</b>	– Replace wheel bearing grease and grease seals if non-sealed bearings are used (2WD vehicles)
<b>Every 50,000 miles (80,000 km)</b>	– Change rear axle fluid (if equipped with a Dana rear axle; some F-350s, all F-450/550s) – Change transfer case fluid (4WD vehicles)
<b>Every 60,000 miles (96,000 km) or 2,400 engine hours</b>	– Flush and refill engine coolant; do not add engine coolant additive

Perform the services noted in the preceding table at the specified time/mileage (km) period either within 3,000 miles (4,800 km) of the OIL CHANGE REQUIRED message appearing in the message center or when the time/mileage (km) reading indicates service is due.

**Example #1:** The OIL CHANGE REQUIRED message comes on at 19,751 miles (31,786 km); perform the 22,500 mile (36,000 km) fuel filter replacement.

**Example #2:** The OIL CHANGE REQUIRED message has **not** come on but the odometer reads 22,500 miles (36,000 km); perform the fuel filter replacement. (i.e., Intelligent Oil Life Monitor™ was reset at 15,000 miles [24,000 km].)

**Note:** When adding coolant additive, do not exceed the specified maximum of 48 fl. oz. (1.4L). Operating the engine with excessive coolant additive may cause overheating which could lead to severe permanent engine damage.

**Note:** After initial coolant flush and fill at 60,000 miles (96,000 km) or 2,400 engine hours, flush and fill every 45,000 miles (72,000 km) or 1,800 engine hours thereafter.

## Scheduled Maintenance Guide

### Operating in sustained ambient temperatures below -10°F (-23°C) or above 100°F (38°C)

<b>As required</b>	– Change engine oil and filter as indicated by message center and perform services listed in the scheduled maintenance chart
<b>Every 15,000 miles (24,000 km), 6 months, 600 engine hours or as indicated by message center</b>	– Replace engine- and frame-mounted fuel filters
<b>Every 30,000 miles (48,000 km)</b>	– Replace wheel bearing grease/grease seals if non-sealed bearings are used (2WD vehicles)
<b>Every 60,000 miles (96,000 km)</b>	– Change transfer case fluid (4WD vehicles)

Perform the services noted in the preceding table at the specified time/mileage (km) period either within 3,000 miles (4,800 km) of the OIL CHANGE REQUIRED message appearing in the message center or when the time/mileage (km) reading indicates service is due.

**Example #1:** The OIL CHANGE REQUIRED message comes on at 19,751 miles (31,786 km); perform the 22,500 mile (36,000 km) fuel filter replacement.

**Example #2:** The OIL CHANGE REQUIRED message has **not** come on but the odometer reads 22,500 miles (36,000 km); perform the fuel filter replacement. (i.e., Intelligent Oil Life Monitor™ was reset at 15,000 miles [24,000 km].)

## Scheduled Maintenance Guide

### Towing a trailer or using a camper or car-top carrier

<b>As required</b>	– Change engine oil and filter as indicated by message center and perform services listed in the scheduled maintenance chart
<b>Every 15,000 miles (24,000 km), 6 months, 600 engine hours or as indicated by message center</b>	– Replace engine- and frame-mounted fuel filters
<b>Every 15,000 miles (24,000 km) or 800 engine hours</b>	– Inspect concentration (freeze-point protection) and additive strength (corrosion inhibitor); add engine coolant additive, if required
<b>Every 30,000 miles (48,000 km)</b>	– Replace wheel bearing grease and grease seals if non-sealed bearings are used (2WD vehicles)
<b>Every 60,000 miles (96,000 km)</b>	– Change transfer case fluid (4WD vehicles)
<b>Every 60,000 miles (96,000 km) or 2,400 engine hours</b>	– Flush and refill engine coolant; do not add engine coolant additive

Perform the services noted in the preceding table at the specified time/mileage (km) period either within 3,000 miles (4,800 km) of the OIL CHANGE REQUIRED message appearing in the message center or when the time/mileage (km) reading indicates service is due.

**Example #1:** The OIL CHANGE REQUIRED message comes on at 19,751 miles (31,786 km); perform the 22,500 mile (36,000 km) fuel filter replacement.

**Example #2:** The OIL CHANGE REQUIRED message has **not** come on but the odometer reads 22,500 miles (36,000 km); perform the fuel filter replacement. (i.e., Intelligent Oil Life Monitor™ was reset at 15,000 miles [24,000 km].)

**Note:** When adding coolant additive, do not exceed the specified maximum of 48 fl. oz. (1.4L). Operating the engine with excessive coolant additive may cause overheating which could lead to severe permanent engine damage.

**Note:** After initial coolant flush and fill at 60,000 miles (96,000 km) or 2,400 engine hours, flush and fill every 45,000 miles (72,000 km) or 1,800 engine hours thereafter.

## Scheduled Maintenance Guide

### Off-road operation

<b>As required</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Inspect steering and suspension ball joints and tie rods; lubricate if equipped with grease fittings</li> <li>– Inspect functional holes in each leg of the twin tip and the holes under the shield just inboard of the right rear tire to make sure they are kept clean/clear of debris or foreign materials. Refer to the <i>Cleaning</i> chapter for more information</li> </ul>
<b>Every 7,500 miles (12,000 km)</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Inspect air filter restriction gauge; replace filter as indicated by gauge</li> <li>– Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise; dual rear wheels should only be rotated if unusual wear is observed</li> <li>– Inspect brake system pads and rotors</li> </ul>
<b>Every 7,500 miles (12,000 km) or 300 engine hours</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Change engine oil and filter</li> <li>– Inspect and lubricate U-joints</li> </ul>
<b>Every 15,000 miles (24,000 km), 6 months, 600 engine hours or as indicated by message center</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Replace engine- and frame-mounted fuel filters</li> </ul>
<b>Every 30,000 miles (48,000 km)</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Replace wheel bearing grease/grease seals if non-sealed bearings are used (2WD vehicles)</li> </ul>
<b>Every 50,000 miles (80,000 km)</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Change rear axle fluid (if equipped with a Dana rear axle; some F-350s, all F-450/550s)</li> <li>– Change transfer case fluid (4WD vehicles)</li> <li>– Inspect front axle fluid (4WD vehicles)</li> </ul>

Reset your Intelligent Oil Life Monitor™ after each engine oil and filter change; refer to the *Instrument Cluster* chapter of the *Owner's Guide*.

## Scheduled Maintenance Guide

### Operating in dusty conditions (i.e. unpaved or dusty roads)

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <b>Every 7,500 miles (12,000 km)</b>  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise; dual rear wheels should only be rotated if unusual wear is observed</li> <li>– Inspect steering and suspension ball joints and tie rods; lubricate if equipped with grease fittings</li> <li>– Inspect air filter restriction gauge; replace filter as indicated by gauge</li> <li>– Inspect brake system pads and rotors</li> </ul> |
| <b>Every 7,500 miles (12,000 km),<br/>6 months or 300 engine hours</b>                                      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Change engine oil and filter</li> <li>– Inspect and lubricate U-joints</li> </ul>   |
| <b>Every 15,000 miles (24,000 km),<br/>6 months, 600 engine hours or as<br/>indicated by message center</b> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Replace engine- and frame-mounted fuel filters</li> </ul>   |
| <b>Every 30,000 miles (48,000 km)</b>   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Replace wheel bearing grease/grease seals if non-sealed bearings are used (2WD vehicles)</li> </ul>   |

Reset your Intelligent Oil Life Monitor™ after each engine oil and filter change; refer to the *Instrument Cluster* chapter of the *Owner's Guide*.

### Use of Biodiesel, up to and including 20% Biodiesel (B20)

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <b>As required</b>  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Change engine oil and filter as indicated by message center and perform services listed in the scheduled maintenance chart</li> </ul> |
| <b>Every 15,000 miles (24,000 km),<br/>6 months, 600 engine hours or as<br/>indicated by message center</b> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Replace engine- and frame-mounted fuel filters</li> </ul>   |

## Scheduled Maintenance Guide

### Use of non-Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel (ULSD) fuel - vehicles operated where ULSD fuel isn't required/available

**Every 2,500 miles (4,000 km) or 3 months (if using high sulfur fuel with more than 500 ppm sulfur)** – Change engine oil and filter

**Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km) or 6 months (if using high sulfur fuel with less than 500 ppm sulfur)** – Change engine oil and filter

Reset your Intelligent Oil Life Monitor™ after each engine oil and filter change; refer to the *Instrument Cluster* chapter of the *Owner's Guide*.

## Scheduled Maintenance Guide

### Special operating condition log

<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:          MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:          MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:          MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:          MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:          MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:          MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:          MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:          MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:          MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:          MILEAGE:</p>

## Scheduled Maintenance Guide

<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>

## Scheduled Maintenance Guide

### EXCEPTIONS

In addition, there are several exceptions to the Normal Schedule. They are listed below:

#### Normal vehicle axle maintenance

- Rear axles and power take-off (PTO) units containing synthetic fluid and light duty trucks equipped with Ford-design axles are lubricated for life. These fluids are not to be checked or changed unless a leak is suspected, service is required or the axle assembly has been submerged in water. The axle and PTO fluids should be changed anytime the axle and PTO have been submerged in water. Non-synthetic rear axle fluids should be changed every 3,000 miles (4,800 km) or three months, whichever comes first, during extended trailer tow operation above 70°F (21°C) ambient and wide open throttle for extended periods above 45 mph (72 km/h). The 3,000 mile (4,800 km) fluid change interval may be waived if the axle was filled with 75W140 synthetic gear fluid meeting Ford specification WSL-M2C192-A, part number F1TZ-19580-B or equivalent. Add four ounces (118 mL) of additive friction modifier C8AZ-19B546-A (EST-M2C118-A) or equivalent for complete refill of Traction-Lok rear axles. The axle fluid should be changed anytime an axle has been submerged in water.

#### F-450 and F-550 axle maintenance

- Change rear axle fluid every 100,000 miles (160,000 km) under normal driving conditions on all commercial applications. For trucks operated at or near maximum Gross Vehicle Weights, the rear axle fluid should be changed every 50,000 miles (80,000 km). In addition, this 50,000 mile (80,000 km) schedule should be observed when the vehicles are operated under the Special Operating Conditions, where noted.

#### Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF)

- The DPF may need to be removed for ash cleaning at approximately 120,000 miles (192,000 km) or greater (actual mileage can vary greatly depending upon engine/vehicle operating conditions) and replaced with a new or remanufactured (ash cleaned) part. The filter may need to be replaced at approximately 250,000 miles (400,000 km) depending upon engine/vehicle operating conditions. In both cases the engine control system will set a service light (  ) to inform you to bring the vehicle to the dealer for service. If there are any issues with the oxidation catalyst/DPF system a service light (  or  ) will be set by the engine control system to inform you to bring the vehicle into a dealership for service.

### ENGINE COOLANT CHANGE RECORD

#### Engine coolant

- Initial change — 6 years or 105,000 miles (168,000 km) (whichever comes first), or as indicated from the coolant tests for concentration (freeze-point) or additive strength (corrosion inhibitor)
- After initial change — every 3 years or 45,000 miles (72,000 km), or as indicated from the coolant tests for concentration (freeze-point) or additive strength (corrosion inhibitor)

## Scheduled Maintenance Guide

### Engine coolant change log

<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE: DATE: HOURS: MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE: DATE: HOURS: MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE: DATE: HOURS: MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE: DATE: HOURS: MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE: DATE: HOURS: MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE: DATE: HOURS: MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE: DATE: HOURS: MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE: DATE: HOURS: MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE: DATE: HOURS: MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE: DATE: HOURS: MILEAGE:</p>

## Index

### A

Additive  
coolant .....65  
Air cleaner filter .....51, 64  
Air filter restriction gauge .....51

### B

Battery .....64  
auxiliary battery .....64  
jumping a disabled battery .....17  
Break-in period .....3

### C

Cleaning your vehicle  
engine compartment .....18–19  
Coolant .....5, 65  
refill capacities .....65  
Coolant additive .....65  
Cooler .....5

### D

Diesel exhaust fluid (DEF) .....26  
Diesel Particulate Filter  
(DPF) .....55–56, 58

### E

Emergencies, roadside  
jump-starting .....17  
Emission control  
system .....55–56, 58–59  
Engine .....20  
cleaning .....18–19  
coolant .....65  
diesel .....2–3

94

refill capacities .....65  
service points .....20  
starting after a collision .....16

Engine fan .....8

Engine oil .....4, 42, 44, 65  
filter, specifications .....64  
refill capacities .....65  
specifications .....43, 65

Exhaust Fluid .....26

### F

Fan, Engine Cooling .....8

Filter  
fuel .....39

Fuel .....14, 21  
cap .....25  
capacity .....65  
dual tank selector switch .....14  
filling your vehicle with fuel .....25  
filter, specifications .....39, 64  
fuel pump shut-off switch .....16

Fuel pump shut-off switch .....16

Fuel separator .....38–39

### G

Gas cap (see Fuel cap) .....25

Gauges .....7

### I

Intelligent Oil Life Monitor .....44

### J

Jump-starting your vehicle .....17

### L

Lights, warning and indicator .....6

## Index

### S

Selective Catalytic Reduction (SCR) System .....	26
Special notice .....	2
ambulance conversions .....	2
diesel-powered vehicles .....	2
Speed control .....	5
Starting your vehicle .....	4, 8, 62

jump starting .....	17
---------------------	----

### T

Towing	
trailer towing .....	15
Transmission	
lubricant specifications .....	65

This Quick Reference Guide is not intended to replace your vehicle Owner's Guide which contains more detailed information concerning the features of your vehicle, as well as important safety warnings designed to help reduce the risk of injury to you and your occupants. Please read your entire Owner's Guide carefully as you begin learning about your new vehicle and refer to the appropriate chapters when questions arise.

All information contained in this Quick Reference Guide was accurate at the time of duplication. We reserve the right to change features, operation and/or functionality of any vehicle specification at any time. Your Ford dealer is the best source for the most current information. For detailed operating and safety information, please consult your Owner's Guide.

Ford Motor Company Customer Relationship Center  
P.O. Box 6248 | Dearborn, MI 48121  
1-800-392-3673 (FORD)  
(TDD for the hearing impaired: 1-800-232-5952)  
www.fordowner.com  
www.ford.ca



October 2010  
Second Printing  
Quick Reference Guide  
Super Duty  
Litho in U.S.A.



BC3J 19G217 CA

## CONVENIENCE

### HEATED OUTSIDE MIRRORS (IF EQUIPPED)

To activate, press on the climate control panel.

### SECURICODE™ KEYLESS ENTRY SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

This system allows you to lock or unlock the doors without a key. Ensure that you have your 5-digit factory code, located on your owner's wallet card in the glove box.

- To unlock the driver's door, enter your 5-digit factory code.
- To unlock all doors, enter your 5-digit factory code and, within five seconds, press 3-4.

### INTEGRATED KEYHEAD TRANSMITTER (IKT) REMOTE ENTRY ICONS

- Press once to lock all doors. Press again to confirm all doors are closed.
- Press once to unlock the driver's door. Press again within three seconds to unlock all doors.
- Press to activate the panic alarm. Press again or turn the ignition on to deactivate.
- Car finder: Press twice within three seconds to locate your vehicle. The horn will chirp and the turn lamps will flash.

### REMOTE START (IF EQUIPPED)

If your IKT has the icon, you have remote start, which allows you to start the engine from outside the vehicle. To use, press on your IKT to lock all the doors. Press twice. (If you have a diesel engine, there will be a few second delay before the engine starts.) When you are ready to leave, insert the key into the ignition and turn to the on position before driving. To turn the engine off after using remote start, press once. Refer to the Locks and Security chapter in your Owner's Guide for more information on the Remote Start feature.

### UNIVERSAL GARAGE DOOR OPENER (IF EQUIPPED)

Your vehicle may be equipped with a universal transmitter located on the driver's visor. This system has two primary features – a garage door opener and a platform for remote activation of devices in your home. This system's garage door opener function replaces the common hand-held garage door opener with a three button transmitter. For more information, refer to the Driver Controls chapter of your Owner's Guide.

### NAVIGATION SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

Your touch screen navigation system allows you to record CDs, listen to SIRIUS® satellite radio or HD Radio broadcasts, play DVDs and access SIRIUS® Travel Link™ in addition to navigating the vehicle. For more information, refer to your Navigation System Supplement.

### SYNC® (IF EQUIPPED)

Your SYNC® system has unique phone and media features which allow you to make and receive hands-free calls as well as play your media selections by artist, album, genre or similar music. You can receive Vehicle Health Reports and set up and use 911 Assist™ which can call emergency services if you have an accident. SYNC® also offers Traffic, Directions and Information which, if activated, can provide turn-by-turn directions, access to traffic reports, sports scores and business searches. To learn more about SYNC® and to set up your profile which will allow you to use Vehicle Health Reports and the Traffic, Directions and Information feature, please visit [www.SyncMyRide.com](http://www.SyncMyRide.com) and see your SYNC® Supplement.



### SIRIUS® SATELLITE RADIO (IF EQUIPPED)

Your vehicle may be equipped with satellite radio. SIRIUS® satellite radio broadcasts music, sports, news and entertainment programming. For more information and a complete list of SIRIUS® satellite radio channels, visit [www.sirius.com](http://www.sirius.com) in the United States, [www.sirius-canada.ca](http://www.sirius-canada.ca) in Canada, or call SIRIUS® at 1-888-539-7474. Satellite radio is only available with a valid SIRIUS® radio subscription.

## FUEL FACTS

### DIESEL/BIODIESEL

If your vehicle has a green colored fuel cap, you have a diesel vehicle which is compatible with diesel fuel and also biodiesel B20 or less.

Biodiesel is a renewable fuel derived from vegetable oils and/or animal fats. Your diesel engine can operate on diesel fuels containing up to 20% biodiesel, or B20. (Use only biodiesel that meets ASTM D975 diesel or the ASTM D7467 B6-B20 biodiesel industry specifications.)

Ensure that you purchase biodiesel from a reputable source. Do not store biodiesel fuel in the fuel tank for more than one month.

### DIESEL EXHAUST FLUID (DEF)

The emissions system uses Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) which MUST be replenished at regular intervals. Failure to do so could cause vehicle speed limitations and/or result in the vehicle entering an idle-only mode.

Your message center will alert you when you begin to get low on DEF. The first alert will appear in the message center when you have approximately 800 miles left to empty. Certain conditions such as driving styles, trailer towing or fast acceleration will require filling the tank more often.

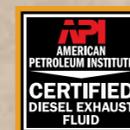
The DEF tank has a blue capped filler port and is next to your diesel fuel inlet. This tank can be filled using a nozzle at a DEF filling station or using a DEF bottle with a spout. Motorcraft® DEF bottles are recommended as they are designed to be spill proof and will



stop the flow of DEF when the tank is full.

Ensure that you do NOT put DEF in the fuel tank as this can cause engine

damage which is not covered by your vehicle's warranty. Immediately wipe away any DEF that has spilled on painted surfaces with water and a damp cloth to prevent damage to the paint.



Use only DEF certified by the American Petroleum Institute (API) such as Motorcraft® DEF or equivalent. Look for the API certification trademark.

For more information on this system, refer to Selective Catalytic Reduction (SCR) System in your Diesel Supplement.

### FUEL FILTER

Your Ford truck includes a LOW FUEL PRESSURE monitor to let you know that the engine is not receiving the fuel it needs. Driving with low fuel pressure can damage injection equipment and void your warranty. Check or switch your fuel source if you are replacing filters more often than the recommended interval.

### FLEX FUEL VEHICLE (FFV, IF EQUIPPED)

If your vehicle has a yellow colored fuel cap, you have a flex fuel vehicle. Use only unleaded fuel or ethanol fuel (E85).

### DRAINING THE WATER SEPARATOR

Your vehicle is equipped with a state of the art diesel fuel delivery system. It includes a Diesel Fuel Conditioning Module (DFCM) and engine mounted fine filter. The DFCM includes a filter, electronic fuel pump and water separator/drain mounted on the frame just below the cab driver side. Drain the DFCM (with engine off) during oil changes or as soon as possible when the WATER IN FUEL message is displayed. Ignoring the Water In Fuel message can cause the accumulated water to be passed to the engine resulting in fuel system damage.

### COOLANT

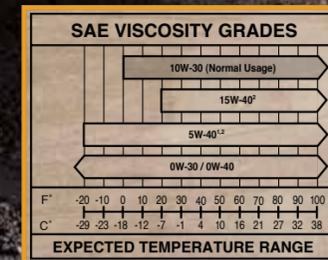
Your Super Duty uses Motorcraft® Specialty Orange Engine Coolant (orange-colored). **DO NOT** use glycol coolant as it is not compatible with your vehicle. **DO NOT MIX** different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle. **DO NOT MIX** recycled coolant and new (unused) coolant together in the vehicle as the mixing of engine coolants may harm your engine's cooling system. The use of an improper coolant may harm engine and cooling system components and may void the warranty. Ensure that **ONLY** the correct coolant is used.

### TIRE PRESSURE

The recommended specifications are on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label located on the on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. As an added safety feature, your vehicle may be equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure warning light when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Refer to the Tires, Wheels and Loading chapter in your Owner's Guide for more information.

### ENGINE OIL SPECIFICATIONS

Quality engine oils help achieve good engine performance and durability. For normal or severe service, use Motorcraft® oil or an equivalent oil conforming to Ford Specifications as listed in the *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* in your *Diesel Supplement* or API service categories CJ-4 or CJ-4/SM. To determine which oil viscosity best suits your needs, use the SAE viscosity grade chart.



- For severe duty usage, use SAE 5W-40 API CJ-4.
- For biodiesel (grades B5-B20) usage, use SAE 5W-40 or SAE 15W-40 API CJ-4.

# SUPER DUTY



## 2011

## QUICK REFERENCE GUIDE

**MESSAGE CENTER**

The message center monitors many vehicle systems and alerts you to potential vehicle problems and conditions. Your message center also allows you to program and configure certain features without taking your hands off the wheel. Use the steering wheel controls to scroll, make selections and adjustments which will appear in the message center display in the instrument cluster. If equipped with an LCD screen, your main menu selections are: Gauge Mode, Trip A/B, Fuel Economy, Truck Apps, Settings and Information.

**TURN SIGNAL OPERATION**

- To operate the left turn signal, push the lever down until it stops and release.
- To operate the right turn signal, push the lever up until it stops and release.
- To indicate a lane change, push the lever up/down to the first stop position and release. The turn signals will flash three times and stop.

**ADVANCETRAC® WITH RSC® STABILITY ENHANCEMENT SYSTEM**

Helps you maintain stability and steerability of your vehicle during a variety of road conditions. Roll Stability Control™ (RSC®) helps to avoid a vehicle roll-over. If your vehicle becomes stuck, try turning off the AdvanceTrac® system (by pressing the control) to allow wheel spin and help increase momentum to help dig the vehicle out.

**ELECTRONIC LOCKING DIFFERENTIAL (ELD, IF EQUIPPED)**

The ELD is a device housed in the rear axle which allows both rear wheels to turn at the same speed. You can engage or disengage the ELD on the fly. When the axle is disengaged, it will function like a standard rear wheel axle. When it is engaged, the rear wheels will rotate at the same speed when turning, thereby being helpful on slippery and/or off road surfaces, particularly when one wheel is on a poor traction surface.

For vehicles with an electronic shift 4WD system, pull the knob on the 4WD control toward you. The indicator light will display in the instrument cluster indicating the system is engaged.

For 2WD vehicles and vehicles equipped with a manual shift 4WD system, turn the 4WD control to ON. The indicator light will appear in the instrument cluster indicating the system is engaged.

Use extreme caution when using any device or feature that may take your attention off the road. Ford recommends against the use of any hand-held device while driving and that you comply with all applicable laws. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of the vehicle.

**SELECTSHIFT AUTOMATIC™ TRANSMISSION (SST)**

Your vehicle is equipped with a SST gearshift lever which allows you to change gears without a clutch. Put the gearshift into M (manual) and press + to upshift and - to downshift.

To lock gears, put the gearshift lever into D (Overdrive). Press - to lock out the gears. Only the available gears will be displayed. Press + to unlock the gears.

**TOW/HAUL SWITCH**

To eliminate excessive transmission shifting, activate the Tow/Haul feature. This feature also provides engine exhaust braking in all forward gears when the transmission is in D (Overdrive).

The engine exhaust braking will help slow the vehicle and assist the driver in controlling the vehicle when descending a grade. (Exhaust braking available on diesel only.)

**ELECTRONIC SHIFT ON THE FLY SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)**

This system allows you shift on the fly and select from the following modes:

- 2H (2WD)- Use for general on-road driving.
- 4H (4x4 High)- Use for extra traction. This mode is NOT intended for use on dry pavement.
- 4L (4x4 Low)- Uses extra gearing to provide maximum power to all four wheels at reduced speeds.

**HILL DESCENT CONTROL (IF EQUIPPED)**

This allows you to maintain vehicle speed while descending steep grades in a variety of road conditions. To enable, press the hill descent button. A light in the cluster will illuminate and a chime will sound. To increase descent speed, press the accelerator until the desired speed is reached. To decrease speed, press the brake until the desired speed is reached. Hill Descent Control can maintain vehicle speeds on downhill grades and can be engaged between 2 mph (3 km/h) to 12 mph (20 km/h). **Note:** Hill descent control requires a cooling down interval after sustained use. The amount of time that the feature can remain active before cooling varies with conditions. The system will provide a warning in the message center and a chime will sound when the system is about to disengage for cooling. At this time, manually apply the brakes as needed to maintain descent speed.

**UPFITTER CONTROLS (IF EQUIPPED)**

The Upfitter package provides four switches which can be customized to perform additional functions. They provide 8 amps, 12 amps or 20 amps of electrical battery power.

**POWER ADJUSTABLE FOOT PEDALS (IF EQUIPPED)**

Press the control to move the pedals closer or farther away from you. The pedals should only be adjusted when the vehicle is stopped and in P (Park).

**STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS**

Use the arrow controls to scroll through the message center menus and use OK to make selections. Use SET +/-, RSM and OFF to set and adjust the speed. Use the steering wheel controls on the right side to adjust volume, media selections and access voice commands (if equipped).

**SAFETY****REARVIEW CAMERA (IF EQUIPPED)**

This system provides a visual display of the area behind the vehicle. The display automatically appears on the navigation screen (if equipped) or in the rear view mirror when the vehicle is in Reverse (R) and uses colors (green, yellow and red) to alert you of your proximity to objects. **Note:** Visibility aids do not replace the need to watch where the vehicle is moving.

**REVERSE SENSING SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)**

The reverse sensing system may warn you if there is an object behind the vehicle that may be too low for you to see. A warning tone will sound which increases in frequency as the object gets closer and then will sound continuously when the object is less than 10 inches away. The system is active when the vehicle is in R (Reverse) and traveling less than 3 mph (5 km/h). **Note:** Visibility aids do not replace the need to watch where the vehicle is moving.

**ENGINE ONLY TRACTION CONTROL (ALL DUAL REAR WHEEL VEHICLES)**

This system helps you maintain stability and steerability of your vehicle, especially on slippery road surfaces such as snow, ice or gravel. During traction control operation, the traction control light will illuminate.

**ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE**

Your new Ford Super Duty comes with the assurance and support of 24-hour emergency roadside assistance. Roadside assistance includes such services as: lockout assistance, limited fuel delivery, battery jump starts, changing a flat tire, towing, and winch out. To receive roadside assistance in the United States, call 1 (800) 241-3673. In Canada, call 1 (800) 665-2006.

**TRAILER SWAY (IF EQUIPPED)**

Trailer sway uses the vehicle's AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system to detect and help reduce trailer sway by applying brake force at individual wheels and, if necessary, reducing engine power. This feature defaults to on. To turn off, refer to the Message Center section in the Instrument Cluster chapter of your Owner's Guide.

**SIDE AIRBAGS AND SAFETY CANOPY SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)**

Your vehicle may be equipped with side airbags and a safety canopy system which help protect you in the event of a crash.

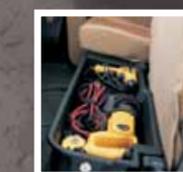
**FUNCTION****CENTER CONSOLE (IF EQUIPPED)**

- One 12V power point inside the storage compartment and one on the rear of the console
- 110V/150W AC power point outlet on the rear of the console

**TAILGATE STEP (IF EQUIPPED)**

Your vehicle may be equipped with a tailgate step that allows easy entry into the truck bed. To use, open the tailgate. Pull the yellow latch lever to the unlock position to release the grab handle from its stowed position and raise the handle upright until you feel it latch and see the latch lever in the lock position. (The yellow lever only needs to be used when releasing the grab handle.) Rotate the center molding to unlatch the tailgate. Flip open the panel to widen the step. Always use the grab handle when stepping up or down on the tailgate step. Keep the step load (you + load) below 350 lb. (159 kg).

To close the tailgate step, fold the step panel, then lift and fully slide the tailgate step into the tailgate. Slide the latch at the bottom of the handle, then lower the handle. Never drive with the step deployed. Ensure that you fully close and latch the tailgate step before moving the vehicle.

**UNDER SEAT LOCKING STORAGE (IF EQUIPPED)**

The under seat storage compartment in the second row has a programmable lock which provides a safe place to store items. Use your ignition key to program the lock.

There is also an auxiliary power point within the compartment which you can use to power or charge your electronic devices.

**MYKEY™ (IF EQUIPPED)**

Allows you to program certain driving restrictions in order to promote good driving habits. When MyKey™ is programmed, the following features are adjusted:

- Belt-Minder® will sound continuously and the audio will be muted until the safety belt is buckled
- Audible and visual low fuel warnings
- Audio volume is limited
- Vehicle speed is limited
- Audible and visual speed warnings at preselected speeds
- AdvanceTrac® cannot be programmed off



## Ford 6.7L Power Stroke® Diesel Operating, Maintenance & Care Tips

Vehicle Service	6.7L Normal	6.7L Special*
<b>Oil and Filter<sup>1,2</sup></b>	Oil change service intervals should be completed as indicated by the instrument cluster message center	Oil change service intervals should be completed as indicated by the instrument cluster message center
<b>Fuel Filter Change (both)<sup>1</sup></b>	Change every 3 <sup>rd</sup> oil change or every 22,500 miles (36,000 km) or as indicated by the message center which ever comes first	Change every 15,000 miles (24,000 km) or 600 engine hours or as indicated by the message center which ever comes first
<b>Coolant Check/Change<sup>3</sup></b>	Initial change at 105,000 miles or 72 months; subsequent changes every 45,000 miles	Initial change 60,000 miles or 2400 hours of engine operation; subsequent changes every 45,000 miles or 1800 hours
<b>Coolant Strength Check<sup>3</sup></b>	Check every 15,000 miles or 600 hours	Check every 15,000 miles or 600 hours

\* *Special = Operating Conditions like Extensive Towing, Long Idle Time, Extended Low Speed Driving.*

*For Off Road/Dusty Conditions oil change intervals should be every 7,500 miles (12,000 km) or 300 hours of engine operation.*

### **1 Use the Right Filters**

- Ford Motor Company can only attest to the quality and exact size of the filters provided by Motorcraft®. Only Motorcraft® air, fuel, and oil filters were designed specifically for the demands of the Ford Power Stroke® diesel engine. Genuine Motorcraft® filters provide superior filtration and never require adaptors.

### **2 Use the Right Oil & Diesel Fuel**

- API CJ-4 engine oil is required for 6.7L engine to meet federal emission standards. Operation of the 6.7L diesel engine requires Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel (ULSD) fuel.

### **2 Use the Right Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF)**

- Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) is required to meet 2010 calendar year exhaust emissions. Operation of the 6.7L diesel engine requires DEF. The DEF tank should be refilled at every oil change to avoid running out. DEF usage will increase when operating under Special Operating Conditions. If the DEF is empty the vehicle will automatically have a reduction in performance or de-rate of the engine until the DEF tank is refilled. Refill DEF tank with Motorcraft DEF or equivalent.

### **3 Take Care of Your Coolant**

- The coolant concentration should be maintained at 50/50 mix of Motorcraft® Specialty Orange Engine Coolant VC-3-B (U.S.) / CVC-3-B (Can.) or specification number WSS-M97B44-D and distilled water. The level of coolant should be maintained at the "COLD FILL" range in the coolant reservoir. If you suspect any coolant system leaks or lack of cooling, pressure test the cooling system. Refer to your Owner Guide for additional information.
- Engine coolant system strength (carboxylates) should be checked and serviced at the mileage or equivalent hour intervals specified by the vehicle's message center and maintenance schedule. Check coolant strength using the Rotunda Antifreeze Test Strip kit to determine if additive is required (Rotunda Antifreeze Coolant ELC Contamination Kit# 328-00008). If the carboxylate strength is too low add one bottle of Motorcraft® Specialty Orange Engine Coolant Revitalizer , VC-12 or equivalent. The coolant can be recharged with this additive up to two times before the cooling system must be flushed and refilled – Do not add Supplemental Coolant Additive if flush & refill is required.

### **Take Care of your Fuel Injection System**

- Diesel fuel quality is critical for reliable engine operation. Motorcraft® Cetane Booster & Performance Improver, PM-22-A (U.S.) / PM-22-B (Canada) can be added to improve fuel economy, starting ability, and reduce engine wear.
- The water separator should be drained monthly or when the "Water in Fuel Lamp" illuminates.
- Biodiesel fuel must not exceed 20% (B20). To avoid cold weather fuel gelling, add 6 oz. of Motorcraft® Anti-Gel & Performance Improver PM-23-A (U.S.) / PM-23-B (Canada) to every new tank of fuel.

### **Cold Start Performance**

- The glow plug system operates for up to 120 seconds and is completely independent of the "Wait to Start" lamp operation. Always wait until the "Wait to Start" lamp has turned off, before cranking the engine.
- To ensure optimum cold weather starting performance, and improve cabin heating, the 120 volt engine block heater should be used during any cold weather operation. The engine block heater is required when the vehicle is to be started at temperatures below -10F (-23C).

### **Performance Modifications May Impact Your Powertrain**

- Performance modifications may or may not be the root cause of a powertrain failure. If a non-Ford product (e.g. performance modifications, programmers, modified exhaust or air intake systems) fails or causes a Ford part to fail, the cost of the entire repair and any related damage will not be covered by the Ford New Vehicle Limited Warranty or any applicable Extended Service Plan (ESP/ESC) contract coverage.

**Signing below indicates that the customer has read and understands the information above:**

\_\_\_\_\_  
Customer Name

\_\_\_\_\_  
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

\_\_\_\_\_  
Customer Signature

\_\_\_\_\_  
Dealership Representative

## Table of Contents

<b>Table of Contents</b>	
<b>Introduction</b>	<b>5</b>
<b>Instrument Cluster</b>	<b>14</b>
Warning lights and chimes	14
Gauges	21
Message center	22
<b>Entertainment Systems</b>	<b>59</b>
AM/FM stereo	59
AM/FM stereo with CD	61
Auxiliary input jack	68
USB port	70
Satellite radio information	73
Navigation system	76
SYNC®	76
<b>Climate Controls</b>	<b>77</b>
Manual heating and air conditioning	77
Dual electronic automatic temperature control	80
Rear window defroster	84
<b>Lights</b>	<b>86</b>
Headlamps	86
Turn signal control	90
Bulb replacement	91
<b>Driver Controls</b>	<b>97</b>
Windshield wiper/washer control	97
Steering wheel adjustment	98
Power windows	102
Mirrors	103
Speed control	109
Upfitter controls	112

## Table of Contents

<b>Locks and Security</b>	<b>127</b>
Keys	127
Locks	135
Anti-theft system	147
<b>Seating and Safety Restraints</b>	<b>151</b>
Seating	151
Safety restraints	166
Airbags	178
Child restraints	192
<b>Tires, Wheels and Loading</b>	<b>214</b>
Tire information	216
Tire inflation	219
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)	234
Vehicle loading	242
Trailer towing	249
Trailer brake controller-integrated	254
Recreational towing	261
<b>Driving</b>	<b>262</b>
Starting	262
Brakes	268
Traction Control™	270
AdvanceTrac®	271
Hill descent control	277
Transmission operation	284
Reverse sensing system	292
Rear-view camera system	294

## Table of Contents

<b>Roadside Emergencies</b>	<b>314</b>
Getting roadside assistance	314
Hazard flasher control	315
Fuel pump shut-off	316
Fuses and relays	316
Changing tires	326
Wheel lug nut torque	342
Jump starting	343
Wrecker towing	347
<b>Customer Assistance</b>	<b>349</b>
Reporting safety defects (U.S. only)	356
Reporting safety defects (Canada only)	356
<b>Cleaning</b>	<b>357</b>
<b>Maintenance and Specifications</b>	<b>366</b>
Engine compartment	367
Engine oil	371
Battery	373
Engine coolant	375
Fuel information	382
Air filter(s)	401
Part numbers	406
Maintenance product specifications and capacities	407
Engine data	411
<b>Accessories</b>	<b>415</b>
<b>Ford Extended Service Plan</b>	<b>418</b>

**Table of Contents**

<b>Scheduled Maintenance</b>	<b>422</b>
Normal scheduled maintenance and log	428
<b>Index</b>	<b>443</b>

All rights reserved. Reproduction by any means, electronic or mechanical including photocopying, recording or by any information storage and retrieval system or translation in whole or part is not permitted without written authorization from Ford Motor Company. Ford may change the contents without notice and without incurring obligation.

Copyright © 2011 Ford Motor Company

## Introduction

### CONGRATULATIONS

Congratulations on acquiring your new Ford. Please take the time to get well acquainted with your vehicle by reading this handbook. The more you know and understand about your vehicle, the greater the safety and pleasure you will derive from driving it.

For more information on Ford Motor Company and its products visit the following website:

- In the United States: [www.ford.com](http://www.ford.com)
- In Canada: [www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca)
- In Australia: [www.ford.com.au](http://www.ford.com.au)
- In Mexico: [www.ford.com.mx](http://www.ford.com.mx)

Additional owner information is given in separate publications.

This Owner's Guide describes every option and model variant available and therefore some of the items covered may not apply to your particular vehicle. Furthermore, due to printing cycles it may describe options before they are generally available.

Remember to pass on this Owner's Guide when reselling the vehicle. It is an integral part of the vehicle.



**WARNING: Fuel pump shut-off:** In the event of an accident this feature will automatically cut off the fuel supply to the engine. It can also be activated through sudden vibration (e.g. collision when parking). To restart your vehicle, refer to *Fuel pump shut-off* in the *Roadside Emergencies* chapter.

### SAFETY AND ENVIRONMENT PROTECTION



#### Warning symbols in this guide

How can you reduce the risk of personal injury to yourself or others? In this guide, answers to such questions are contained in comments highlighted by the warning triangle symbol. These comments should be read and observed.

## Introduction



### Warning symbols on your vehicle

When you see this symbol, it is imperative that you consult the relevant section of this guide before touching or attempting adjustment of any kind.



### Protecting the environment

We must all play our part in protecting the environment. Correct vehicle usage and the authorized disposal of waste, cleaning and lubrication materials are significant steps towards this aim. Information in this respect is highlighted in this guide with the tree symbol.



### CALIFORNIA Proposition 65 Warning



**WARNING:** Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and certain vehicle components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.

### PERCHLORATE MATERIAL

Certain components of this vehicle such as airbag modules, seat belt pretensioners, and button cell batteries may contain Perchlorate Material – Special handling may apply for service or vehicle end of life disposal. See [www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate](http://www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate).

### BREAKING-IN YOUR VEHICLE

Your vehicle does not need an extensive break-in. Try not to drive continuously at the same speed for the first 1,000 miles (1,600 km) of new vehicle operation. Vary your speed frequently in order to give the moving parts a chance to break in.

Drive your new vehicle at least 1,000 miles (1,600 km) before towing a trailer. For more detailed information about towing a trailer, refer to *Trailer towing* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter.

6

## Introduction

Do not add friction modifier compounds or special break-in oils since these additives may prevent piston ring seating. See *Engine oil* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter for more information on oil usage.

### SPECIAL NOTICES

#### New Vehicle Limited Warranty

For a detailed description of what is covered and what is not covered by your vehicle's New Vehicle Limited Warranty, refer to the *Warranty Guide* that is provided to you along with your Owner's Guide.

#### Special instructions

For your added safety, your vehicle is fitted with sophisticated electronic controls.



**WARNING:** Please read the section *Airbag Supplemental Restraint System (SRS)* in the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter. Failure to follow the specific warnings and instructions could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** Front seat mounted rear-facing child or infant seats should **NEVER** be placed in front of an active passenger airbag.

#### Notice to owners of diesel-powered vehicles

Read the diesel supplement for information regarding correct operation and maintenance of your Diesel-powered light truck.

#### Notice to owners of pickup trucks and utility type vehicles



**WARNING:** Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.

Before you drive your vehicle, please read this Owner's Guide carefully. Your vehicle is not a passenger car. As with other vehicles of this type, failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury or death.

#### Using your vehicle with a snowplow

For more information and guidelines for using your vehicle with a snowplow, refer to the *Driving* chapter.

## Introduction

### Using your vehicle as an ambulance

If your light truck is equipped with the Ford Ambulance Preparation Package, it may be utilized as an ambulance. Ford urges ambulance manufacturers to follow the recommendations of the *Ford Incomplete Vehicle Manual*, *Ford Truck Body Builder's Layout Book* and the *Qualified Vehicle Modifiers (QVM) Guidelines* as well as pertinent supplements. For additional information, please contact the Truck Body Builders Advisory Service at <http://www.fleet.ford.com/truckbbas/> and then by selecting "Contact Us" or by phone at 1-877-840-4338.

Use of your Ford light truck as an ambulance, without the Ford Ambulance Preparation Package voids the Ford New Vehicle Limited Warranty and may void the Emissions Warranties. In addition, ambulance usage without the preparation package could cause high underbody temperatures, overpressurized fuel and a risk of spraying fuel which could lead to fires.

If your vehicle is equipped with the Ford Ambulance Preparation Package, it will be indicated on the Safety Compliance Certification Label. The label is located on the driver's side door pillar or on the rear edge of the driver's door. You can determine whether the ambulance manufacturer followed Ford's recommendations by directly contacting that manufacturer. Ford Ambulance Preparation Package is only available on certain Diesel engine equipped vehicles.

### Using your vehicle as a stationary power source (PTO)

Refer to the *Driving* chapter for more information and guidelines for operating a vehicle equipped with an aftermarket power take-off system.

## DATA RECORDING

### Service Data Recording

Service data recorders in your vehicle are capable of collecting and storing diagnostic information about your vehicle. This potentially includes information about the performance or status of various systems and modules in the vehicle, such as engine, throttle, steering or brake systems. In order to properly diagnose and service your vehicle, Ford Motor Company, Ford of Canada, and service and repair facilities may access or share among them vehicle diagnostic information received through a direct connection to your vehicle when diagnosing or servicing your vehicle. For U.S. only (if equipped), if you choose to use the SYNC® Vehicle Health Report, you consent that certain diagnostic information may also be accessed electronically by Ford Motor Company and Ford authorized service facilities, and that the diagnostic information may be used for any purpose. See your SYNC® supplement for more information.

8

## Introduction

### Event Data Recording

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle; this data will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating;
- Whether or not the driver and passenger seatbelts were buckled/fastened;
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or the brake pedal; and
- How fast the vehicle was travelling; and
- Where the driver was positioning the steering wheel.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

**Note:** EDR data is recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data or information (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) is recorded (see limitations regarding 911 Assist and Traffic, directions and Information privacy below). However, parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have such special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR. Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada do not access event data recorder information without obtaining consent, unless pursuant to court order or where required by law enforcement, other government authorities or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada.

## Introduction

**Note: Including to the extent that any law pertaining to Event Data Recorders applies to SYNC® or its features, please note the following: Once 911 Assist (if equipped) is enabled (set ON), 911 Assist may, through any paired and connected cell phone, disclose to emergency services that the vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or, in certain vehicles, the activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to 911 Assist may also be capable of being used to electronically or verbally provide to 911 operators the vehicle location (such as latitude and longitude), and/or other details about the vehicle or crash or personal information about the occupants to assist 911 operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not activate the 911 Assist feature. See your SYNC® supplement for more information.**

**Additionally, when you connect to Traffic, Directions and Information (if equipped, U.S. only) the service uses GPS technology and advanced vehicle sensors to collect the vehicle's current location, travel direction, and speed ("vehicle travel information") only to help provide you with the directions, traffic reports, or business searches your request. If you do not want Ford or its vendors to receive this information, do not activate the service. Ford Motor Company and the vendors it uses to provide you with this information do not store your vehicle travel information. For more information, see Traffic, Directions and Information, Terms and Conditions. See your SYNC® supplement for more information.**

### Vehicle Modification Data Recording

Some aftermarket products may cause severe engine and/or transmission damage; refer to the *What is not covered* section in *The new vehicle limited warranty for your vehicle* chapter of your vehicle's *Warranty Guide* for more information. Some vehicles are equipped with Powertrain Control Systems that can detect and store information about vehicle modifications that, for example, increase horsepower and torque output; this information cannot be erased and will stay in the system's memory even if the modification is removed. When a dealer or repair facility works on your vehicle, it may be necessary for them to access the information in the Powertrain Control System. This information will likely identify if any unauthorized modifications have been made to the system, which may be used to determine if the warranty has been violated and if repairs will be covered by warranty.

10

## Introduction

### CELL PHONE USE

The use of Mobile Communications Equipment has become increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, drivers must not compromise their own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile Communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits.

Mobile Communication Equipment includes, but is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, text messaging devices and portable two-way radios.



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that you use extreme caution when using any device or feature that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle.

We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving and that you comply with all applicable laws.

### EXPORT UNIQUE (NON-UNITED STATES/CANADA) VEHICLE SPECIFIC INFORMATION

For your particular global region, your vehicle may be equipped with features and options that are different from the features and options that are described in this Owner's Guide. A market unique supplement may be supplied that complements this book. By referring to the market unique supplement, if provided, you can properly identify those features, recommendations and specifications that are unique to your vehicle. This Owner's Guide is written primarily for the U.S. and Canadian Markets. Features or equipment listed as standard may be different on units built for Export. **Refer to this Owner's Guide for all other required information and warnings.**

## Introduction

These are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.

### Vehicle Symbol Glossary

Safety Alert		See Owner's Guide	
Fasten Safety Belt		Airbag - Front	
Airbag - Side		Child Seat Lower Anchor	
Child Seat Tether Anchor		Brake System	
Anti-Lock Brake System		Parking Brake System	
Brake Fluid - Non-Petroleum Based		Parking Aid System	
Stability Control System		Speed Control	
Master Lighting Switch		Hazard Warning Flasher	
Fog Lamps-Front		Fuse Compartment	
Fuel Pump Reset		Windshield Wash/Wipe	
Windshield Defrost/Demist		Rear Window Defrost/Demist	

## Introduction

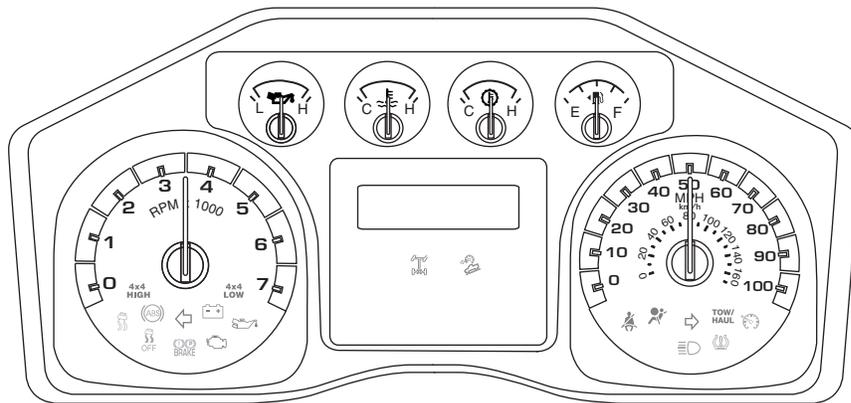
### Vehicle Symbol Glossary

Power Windows Front/Rear		Power Window Lockout	
Child Safety Door Lock/Unlock		Interior Luggage Compartment Release	
Panic Alarm		Engine Oil	
Engine Coolant		Engine Coolant Temperature	
Do Not Open When Hot		Battery	
Avoid Smoking, Flames, or Sparks		Battery Acid	
Explosive Gas		Fan Warning	
Power Steering Fluid		Maintain Correct Fluid Level	
Service Engine Soon		Engine Air Filter	
Passenger Compartment Air Filter		Jack	
Check Fuel Cap		Low Tire Pressure Warning	

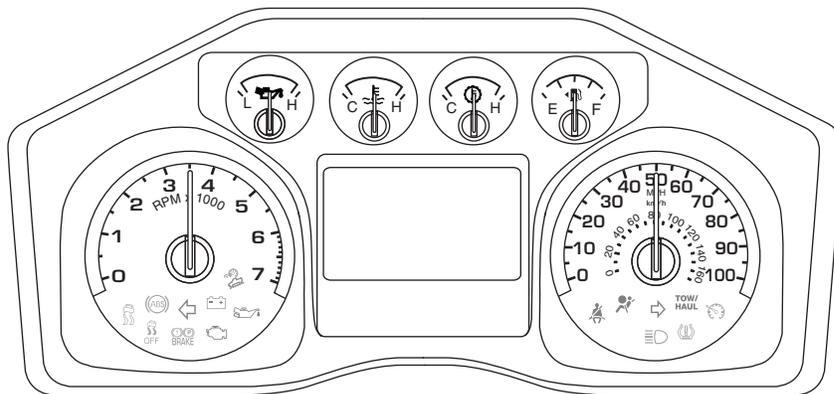
## Instrument Cluster

### WARNING LIGHTS AND CHIMES

**Base instrument cluster with standard measure shown; metric similar**



**Optional instrument cluster with standard measure shown; metric similar**



Warning lights and gauges can alert you to a vehicle condition that may become serious enough to cause expensive repairs. A warning light may illuminate when a problem exists with one of your vehicle's functions. Many lights will illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure the

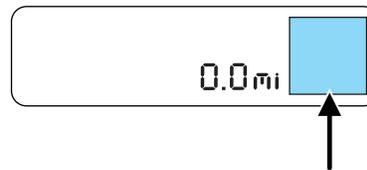
14

## Instrument Cluster

bulb works. If any light remains on after starting the vehicle, refer to the respective system warning light for additional information.

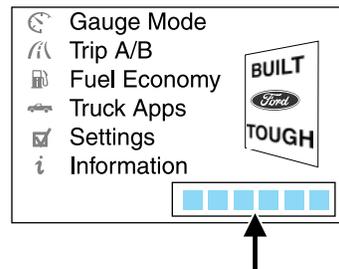
### Standard message center

**Note:** Some warning lights are reconfigurable telltale (RTT) indicator lights and will illuminate in the message center. These lights function the same as the other warning lights.



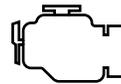
### Optional message center

**Note:** Some warning lights are reconfigurable telltale (RTT) indicator lights and will illuminate in the message center. These lights function the same as the other warning lights. The first three positions will only display one warning telltale at a time; the last three positions can cycle between different warning telltales.



### Service engine soon:

The service engine soon indicator  illuminates when the ignition is first turned to the on position to check the bulb and to indicate whether the vehicle is ready for Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) testing. Normally, the service engine soon indicator will stay on until the engine is cranked, then turn itself off if no malfunctions are present. However, if after 15 seconds the service engine soon indicator blinks eight times, it means that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing. See the *Readiness for Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) testing* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.



Solid illumination after the engine is started indicates the on-board diagnostics system (OBD-II) has detected a malfunction. Refer to *On-board diagnostics (OBD-II)* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter. If the light is blinking, engine misfire is occurring which could damage your catalytic converter. Drive in a moderate fashion (avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration) and have your vehicle serviced immediately by your authorized dealer.

## Instrument Cluster

 **WARNING:** Under engine misfire conditions, excessive exhaust temperatures could damage the catalytic converter, the fuel system, interior floor coverings or other vehicle components, possibly causing a fire.

**Check fuel cap:** Displays when the fuel cap may not be properly installed. Continued driving with this light on may cause the Service engine soon warning indicator to come on. Refer to *Fuel filler cap* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.



**Low fuel (RTT):** Displays when the fuel level in the fuel tank is at or near empty (refer to *Fuel gauge* in this chapter).



**Powertrain malfunction/Reduced power/Electronic throttle control (RTT):**

Displays when the engine has defaulted to a “limp-home” operation or when a transmission problem has been detected and shifting may be restricted. If the light remains on, have the system serviced immediately by your authorized dealer.



**Brake system warning light:** To confirm the brake system warning light is functional, it will momentarily illuminate when the ignition is turned to the on position when the engine is not running, or in a position between on and start, or by applying the parking brake when the ignition is turned to the on position.



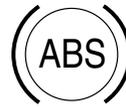
If the brake system warning light does not illuminate at this time, seek service immediately from your authorized dealer. Illumination after releasing the parking brake indicates low brake fluid level and the brake system should be inspected immediately by your authorized dealer.

## Instrument Cluster



**WARNING:** Driving a vehicle with the brake system warning light on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It will take you longer to stop the vehicle. Have the vehicle checked by your authorized dealer. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.

**Anti-lock brake system:** If the ABS light stays illuminated or continues to flash, a malfunction has been detected, have the system serviced immediately by your authorized dealer. Normal braking is still functional unless the brake warning light also is illuminated.



**Airbag readiness:** If this light fails to illuminate when the ignition is turned to on, continues to flash or remains on, have the system serviced immediately by your authorized dealer. A chime will sound if there is a malfunction in the indicator light.



**Safety belt:** Reminds you to fasten your safety belt. A Belt-Minder® chime will also sound to remind you to fasten your safety belt. Refer to the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter to activate/deactivate the Belt-Minder® chime feature.



**Charging system:** Illuminates when the battery is not charging properly. If it stays on while the engine is running, there may be a malfunction with the charging system. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. This indicates a problem with the electrical system or a related component.



**Engine oil pressure (RTT and static warning light):** Displays when the oil pressure falls below the normal range. Refer to *Engine oil* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.



## Instrument Cluster

**Door ajar (RTT):** Displays when the ignition is in the on position and any door is not completely closed.



**Engine coolant temperature (RTT):** Illuminates when the engine coolant temperature is high. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible, switch off the engine and let cool. Refer to *Engine coolant* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.



**WARNING:** Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

**Low tire pressure warning (if equipped):** Illuminates when your tire pressure is low. If the light remains on at start up or while driving, the tire pressure should be checked. Refer to *Inflating your tires* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter. When the ignition is first turned to on, the light will illuminate for three seconds to ensure the bulb is working. If the light does not turn on, have the system inspected by your authorized dealer. For more information on this system, refer to *Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS)* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter.



**Hill descent (if equipped):** Displays when using the hill descent mode. Refer to the *Driving* chapter for transmission function and operation.



**Transmission Tow/Haul Feature (if equipped):** Displays when the Tow/Haul feature has been activated. Refer to the *Driving* chapter for transmission function and operation. If the light flashes steadily, have the system serviced immediately, damage to the transmission could occur.

**TOW  
HAUL**

## Instrument Cluster

**AdvanceTrac®/Traction control (if equipped):**

Displays when the AdvanceTrac®/Traction control is active. If the light remains on, have the system serviced immediately, refer to the *Driving* chapter for more information.



**AdvanceTrac®/Traction control off light (if equipped):** Illuminates when AdvanceTrac®/Traction control has been disabled by the driver. Refer to the *Driving* chapter for more information.



**4X2 (RTT) (if equipped):**

Displays momentarily when two-wheel drive high is selected. If the light fails to display when the ignition is turned on, or remains on, have the system serviced immediately by your authorized dealer.

4x2

**Four wheel drive low (RTT and static) (if equipped):**

Displays when four-wheel drive low is engaged. If the light fails to display when the ignition is turned on, or remains on, have the system serviced immediately by your authorized dealer.

4x4  
LOW

**Four wheel drive high (RTT and static) (if equipped):**

Displays when four-wheel drive high is engaged. If the light fails to display when the ignition is turned on, or remains on, have the system serviced immediately by your authorized dealer.

4x4  
HIGH

**Electronic locking differential (RTT and static) (if equipped):**

Displays when using the electronic locking differential.



**Speed control (if equipped):** The speed control system indicator light changes color to indicate what mode the system is in:



## Instrument Cluster

- **On (amber light):** Illuminates when the speed control system is turned on. Turns off when the speed control system is engaged or turned off.
- **Engaged (green light):** Illuminates when the speed control system is engaged. Turns off when the speed control system is disengaged.

**Turn signal:** Illuminates when the left or right turn signal or the hazard lights are turned on. If the indicators stay on or flash faster, check for a burned out bulb.



**High beams:** Illuminates when the high-beam headlamps are turned on.



**Diesel warning lights:** If your vehicle is equipped with a diesel engine, it has some unique warning lights; refer to *Instrument Cluster* in your diesel supplement for detailed information on their function.

- Glow plug pre-heat



- Water in fuel



- Diesel exhaust fluid



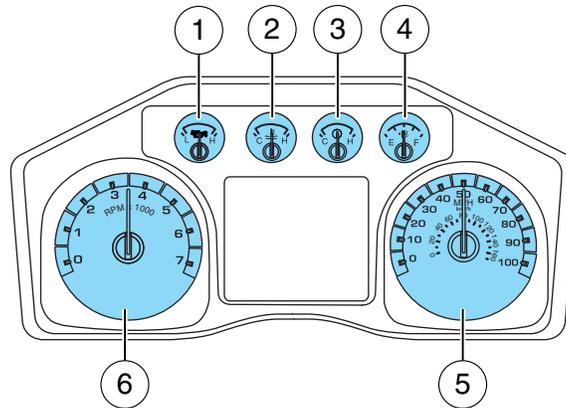
**Key-in-ignition warning chime:** Sounds when the key is left in the ignition in the off or accessory position and the driver's door is opened.

**Headlamps on warning chime:** Sounds when the headlamps or parking lamps are on, the ignition is off (the key is not in the ignition) and the driver's door is opened.

## Instrument Cluster

### GAUGES

Base cluster with automatic transmission shown. Metric similar.



1. **Engine oil pressure gauge:** Indicates engine oil pressure. The needle should stay in the normal operating range (between L and H). If the needle falls below the normal range, stop the vehicle, turn off the engine and check the engine oil level. Add oil if needed. If the oil level is correct, have your vehicle checked at your authorized dealer.
2. **Engine coolant temperature gauge:** Indicates engine coolant temperature. At normal operating temperature, the needle will be in the normal range (between H and C). **If it enters the red section, the engine is overheating. Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible, switch off the engine and let the engine cool.**



**WARNING:** Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

3. **Transmission fluid temperature gauge:** If the gauge is in the:
  - Normal area** The transmission fluid is within the normal operating temperature (between H and C).
  - Yellow area** The transmission fluid is higher than normal operating temperature. This can be caused by special operation conditions (i.e. snowplowing, towing or off road use). Refer to *Special operating conditions* in the *scheduled maintenance information* for instructions. Operating the transmission for extended periods of time with the gauge in the yellow area may cause internal transmission damage.

## Instrument Cluster

Altering the severity of the driving conditions is recommended to lower the transmission temperature into the normal range.

**Red area** The transmission fluid is overheating. Stop the vehicle to allow the temperature to return to normal range.

If the gauge is operating in the yellow or red area, stop the vehicle and verify the airflow is not restricted such as snow or debris blocking airflow through the grill. If the gauge continues to show high temperatures, see your authorized dealer.

4. **Fuel gauge:** Indicates approximately how much fuel is left in the fuel tank (when the ignition is in the on position). The fuel gauge may vary slightly when the vehicle is in motion or on a grade. The fuel icon and arrow indicates which side of the vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

Refer to *Filling the tank* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter for more information.

5. **Speedometer:** Indicates the current vehicle speed.

6. **Tachometer:** Indicates the engine speed in revolutions per minute. Driving with your tachometer pointer continuously at the top of the scale may damage the engine.

**Odometer and trip odometer:** The odometer is displayed on the lower line in the message center and registers the total accumulated distance the vehicle has traveled. For trip odometer, refer to *Standard message center* or *Optional message center* in this chapter.

### STANDARD MESSAGE CENTER

Your vehicle's message center is capable of monitoring many vehicle systems and will alert you to potential vehicle problems and various conditions with an informational message followed by a long indicator chime.

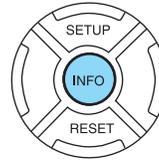
The message center display is located in the instrument cluster and the controls are located on the steering wheel.

## Instrument Cluster

### Selectable features

#### **Info (information menu)**

Press the INFO button repeatedly to cycle through the following features:



#### **TRIP A/B**

Registers the distance of individual journeys. Press and release the INFO button until the TRIP A/B appear in the display (this represents the trip mode). Press and hold the RESET button for two seconds to reset.

Refer to *UNITS* later in this section to switch the display from metric to English.

#### **XXX° (outside air temperature) (if equipped)**

This displays the outside temperature.

Refer to *UNITS* later in this section to switch the display from Metric to English.

#### **MYKEY MILES (km) (if programmed)**

For more information, refer to *MyKey*® in the *Locks and Security* chapter.

#### **XXX MILES (km) TO E**

This displays an estimate of approximately how far you can drive with the fuel remaining in your tank under normal driving conditions. Remember to turn the ignition off when refueling to allow this feature to correctly detect the added fuel.

The low fuel indicator will illuminate when the fuel level is at approximately 1/16 of the tank.

DTE is calculated using a running average fuel economy, which is based on your recent driving history of 500 miles (800 km). This value is not the same as the average fuel economy display. The running average fuel economy is re-initialized to a factory default value if the battery is disconnected.

#### **XX.X AVG MPG (L/100km)**

Average fuel economy displays your average fuel economy in miles/gallon or liters/100 km.

## Instrument Cluster

If you calculate your average fuel economy by dividing distance traveled by gallons of fuel used (liters of fuel used by 100 kilometers traveled), your figure may be different than displayed for the following reasons:

- Your vehicle was not perfectly level during fill-up
- Differences in the automatic shut-off points on the fuel pumps at service stations
- Variations in top-off procedure from one fill-up to another
- Rounding of the displayed values to the nearest 0.1 gallon (liter)

1. Drive the vehicle at least 5 miles (8 km) with the speed control system engaged to display a stabilized average.

2. Record the highway fuel economy for future reference.

It is important to press the RESET button (press and hold RESET for two seconds in order to reset the function) after setting the speed control to get accurate highway fuel economy readings.

### MPG (L/km) ↑ ↓

This displays instantaneous fuel economy as a bar graph ranging from ↓ poor economy to ↑ excellent economy.

Your vehicle must be moving to calculate instantaneous fuel economy. When your vehicle is not moving, this function shows ↓, one or no bars illuminated. Instantaneous fuel economy cannot be reset.

### TIMER

Timer displays the trip elapsed drive time.

To operate, do the following:

1. Press and release RESET in order to start the timer.
2. Press and release RESET to pause the timer.
3. Press and hold RESET until the timer resets.

### TBC GAIN (if equipped)

Displays the level of trailer brake gain or if the trailer is not connected.

### EXHAUST FILTER (diesel only)

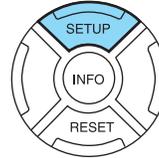
Refer to *Diesel exhaust system: oxidation catalyst/diesel particulate filter system* in your diesel supplement for more information.

24

## Instrument Cluster

### **System check and vehicle feature customization**

Press the SETUP button repeatedly to cycle the message center through the following features:



**Note:** When returning to the SETUP menu and a non-English language has been selected, HOLD RESET FOR ENGLISH will be displayed to change back to English. Press and hold the RESET button to change back to English.

### **RESET FOR SYSTEM CHECK**

When this message appears, press the RESET button and the message center will begin to cycle through the following systems and provide a status of the item if needed.

1. OIL LIFE
2. EXHAUST FLUID LEVEL (Diesel only)
3. ENGINE HOURS
4. ENGINE IDLE HOURS
5. CHARGING SYSTEM
6. DOOR
7. BRAKE SYSTEM
8. TBC GAIN = XX.X (if equipped)
9. FUEL LEVEL
10. MYKEY DISTANCE (if MyKey® is programmed)
11. MYKEY(S) PROGRAMMED
12. ADMIN KEYS PROGRAMMED

**Note:** Some systems show a message only if a condition is present.

### **OIL LIFE**

This displays the remaining oil life.

An oil change is required whenever indicated by the message center and according to the recommended maintenance schedule.

To reset the oil monitoring system to 100% after each oil change, perform the following:

## Instrument Cluster

1. Press and release the SETUP button to display “OIL LIFE XXX% HOLD RESET = NEW”.
2. Press and hold the RESET button for two seconds and release to reset the oil life to 100%.

**Note:** To change oil life 100% value (if equipped with this feature) to another value, proceed to Step 3.

3. Once “OIL LIFE SET TO XXX%” is displayed, release and press the RESET button to change the oil life start value. Each release and press will reduce the value by 10%.

### UNITS

Displays the current units English or Metric.

Press the RESET button to change from English to Metric.

### AUTOLAMP (SEC)

This feature keeps your headlights on for up to three minutes after the ignition is switched off.

Press the RESET control to select the new autolamp delay values of 0, 10, 20, 30, 60, 90, 120 or 180 seconds.

### AUTOLOCK

This feature automatically locks all vehicle doors when the vehicle is shifted into any gear, putting the vehicle in motion.

Press the RESET control to turn autolock on or off.

### AUTOUNLOCK

This feature automatically unlocks all vehicle doors when the driver's door is opened within 10 minutes of the ignition being turned off.

Press RESET to turn it off or on.

### COURTESY WIPE

One extra wipe will occur a few seconds after washing the front window to clear any excess washer fluid remaining on the windshield.

Press RESET to turn this feature on or off.

### CREATE MYKEY / MYKEY SETUP/ CLEAR MYKEY

For more information refer to *MyKey*® in the *Locks and Security* chapter.

### RESET FOR ZONE SETTING

This feature changes the compass zone setting.

26

## Instrument Cluster

Most geographic areas (zones) have a magnetic north compass point that varies slightly from the northerly direction on maps. This variation is four degrees between adjacent zones and will become noticeable as the vehicle crosses multiple zones. A correct zone setting will eliminate this error.

Refer to *Compass zone/calibration adjustment*.

### **ZONE <XX> RESET = CHANGE**

The compass heading is displayed as one of N, NE, E, SE, S, SW, W and NW in the message center display.

Refer to *Compass zone/calibration adjustment*.

### **RESET FOR CALIBRATION**

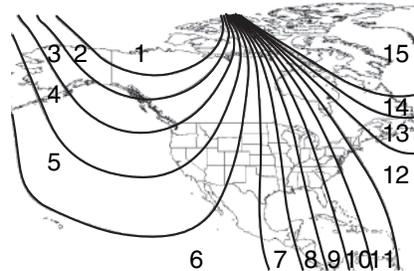
This feature calibrates the compass.

The compass reading may be affected when you drive near large buildings, bridges, power lines and powerful broadcast antenna. Magnetic or metallic objects placed in, on or near the vehicle may also affect compass accuracy. Usually, when something affects the compass readings, the compass will correct itself after a few days of operating your vehicle in normal conditions. If the compass still appears to be inaccurate, a manual calibration may be necessary.

Refer to *Compass zone/calibration adjustment*.

### **Compass zone/calibration adjustment**

1. Determine your magnetic zone by referring to the zone map.
2. Turn ignition to the on position.
3. Start the engine.



4. From the SETUP menu, press and release the RESET button until the message center display changes to show the current zone setting ZONE <XX> RESET = CHANGE.
5. Press and release the RESET button repeatedly until the correct zone setting for your geographic location is displayed on the message center. The range of zone values are from 1 to 15 and “wraps” back to 1.

## Instrument Cluster

6. To exit the zone setting mode, and to “lock in” your change:
- press and release the SETUP button or,
  - press INFO button to exit or,
  - wait four seconds and the zone will be “locked in”.

Perform compass calibration in an open area free from steel structures and high voltage lines. For optimum calibration, turn off all electrical accessories (heater/air conditioning, wipers, etc.) and make sure all vehicle doors are shut.

7. Press the RESET button until the display reads RESET FOR CALIBRATION to start the compass calibration function.

8. Slowly drive the vehicle in a circle (less than 3 mph [5 km/h]) until the CIRCLE SLOWLY TO CALIBRATE display changes to CALIBRATION COMPLETED. It will take up to five circles to complete calibration.

9. The compass is now calibrated.

**Note:** If the RESET button is pressed or three minutes has expired, the display will go back to the INFO menu and will show CAL instead of the compass heading until the compass is calibrated.

### **RESET FOR REMOTE START (if equipped)**

Press RESET to enable remote start on or off and choose the remote start duration time (5, 10, 15 minutes) and other options.

### **REAR PARK AID (if equipped)**

This feature sounds a warning tone to warn the driver of obstacles near the rear bumper, and functions only when R (Reverse) gear is selected.

Press RESET to turn this feature on or off. You can also choose to turn this feature on/off when the vehicle is placed in reverse.

### **TBC MODE (if equipped)**

Allows you to choose the trailer brake mode.

Press RESET to choose:

- ELECTRIC
- EOH (electric over hydraulic)

### **TRAILER SWAY (if equipped)**

This feature uses the electronic stability control to mitigate trailer sway,

Press RESET to turn it off or on.

### **LANGUAGE = ENGLISH / SPANISH / FRENCH**

Allows you to choose which language the message center will display in. Selectable languages are English, Spanish, or French.

28

## Instrument Cluster

Waiting four seconds or pressing the RESET button cycles the message center through each of the language choices.

Press and hold the RESET button for two seconds to set the language choice.

### **System warnings**

System warnings alert you to possible problems or malfunctions in your vehicle's operating systems.

In the event of a multiple warning situation, the message center will cycle the display to show all warnings by displaying each one for four seconds.

The message center will display the last selected feature if there are no more warning messages.

Types of messages and warnings:

- Some messages will appear briefly to inform you of something you may need to take action on or be informed of.
- Some messages will appear once and then again when the vehicle is restarted.
- Some messages will reappear after clearing or being reset if a problem or condition is still present and needs your attention.
- Some messages can be acknowledged and reset by pressing RESET. This allows you to use the full message center functionality by clearing the message.

**PARK BRAKE ENGAGED** — Displayed when the parking brake is applied (or not fully released).

**CHECK BRAKE SYSTEM** — Displayed when a fault has been detected by the ABS module.

**CHECK CHARGING SYSTEM**— Displayed when the electrical system is not maintaining proper voltage. If you are operating electrical accessories when the engine is idling at a low speed, turn off as many of the electrical loads as soon as possible. If the warning stays on or comes on when the engine is operating at normal speeds, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

**DRIVER DOOR AJAR** — Displayed when the driver's door is not completely closed.

**PASSENGER DOOR AJAR** — Displayed when the passenger's door is not completely closed.

**REAR LEFT DOOR AJAR** — Displayed when the rear left door is not completely closed.

## Instrument Cluster

**REAR RIGHT DOOR AJAR** — Displayed when the rear right door is not completely closed.

**CHECK FUEL CAP** — Displayed when the fuel cap may not be properly closed. Refer to *What you should know about automotive fuels* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

**PARK BRAKE ENGAGED** — Displayed when the parking brake is set, the engine is running and the vehicle is driven more than 3 mph (5 km/h). If the warning stays on after the parking brake is released, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

**CHECK BRAKE SYSTEM** — Displayed when a fault has been detected by the ABS module.

**BRAKE FLUID LEVEL LOW** — Indicates the brake fluid level is low and the brake system should be inspected immediately. Refer to *Brake fluid* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

**FUEL LEVEL LOW** — Displayed as a reminder of a low fuel condition.

**CHECK PARK AID (if equipped)** — Displayed when the transmission is in R (Reverse) and the reverse sensing system (park aid) is disabled. Refer to *Rear park aid* in this section to enable.

**TIRE PRESSURE SENSOR FAULT (if equipped)** — Displayed when a tire pressure sensor is malfunctioning, or your spare tire is in use. For more information on how the system operates under these conditions, refer to *Understanding Your Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

**LOW TIRE PRESSURE (if equipped)** — Displayed when one or more tires on your vehicle have low tire pressure. Refer to *Inflating your tires* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter.

**TIRE PRESSURE MONITOR FAULT (if equipped)** — Displayed when the tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) is functioning. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

**TRAIN LEFT FRONT TIRE (if equipped)** — Displayed when training the TPMS. Refer to *TPMS reset procedure* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

**TRAIN RIGHT FRONT TIRE (if equipped)** — Displayed when training the TPMS. Refer to *TPMS reset procedure* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

30

## Instrument Cluster

**TRAIN RIGHT REAR TIRE (if equipped)** — Displayed when training the TPMS. Refer to *TPMS reset procedure* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

**TRAIN LEFT REAR TIRE (if equipped)** — Displayed when training the TPMS. Refer to *TPMS reset procedure* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

**TIRES NOT TRAINED – REPEAT (if equipped)** — Displayed when an error occurs while training the TPMS. Refer to *TPMS reset procedure* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

**TRAINING COMPLETE (if equipped)** — Displayed when training of the TPMS is complete. Refer to *TPMS reset procedure* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

**TRACTION CONTROL OFF (if equipped)** — Displayed when the traction control has been disabled by the driver. Refer to the *Driving* chapter for more information.

**INTKEY COULD NOT PROGRAM** — Displayed when an attempt is made to program a fifth integrated key to the remote keyless entry system. For more information on integrated key, refer to the *Locks and Security* chapter.

**KEY COULD NOT PROGRAM** — Displayed when an attempt is made to program a spare key using two existing MyKeys. Refer to *MyKey®* in the *Locks and Security* chapter for more information.

**VEHICLE SPEED 80 MPH MAX** — Displayed when a MyKey® is in use and the Admin has enabled the MyKey speed limit and the vehicle speed is 80 mph (130 km/h). Refer to *MyKey®* in the *Locks and Security* chapter for more information.

**SPEED LIMITED TO 80 MPH** — Displayed when starting the vehicle and MyKey® is in use and the MyKey speed limit is on. Refer to *MyKey®* in the *Locks and Security* chapter for more information.

**CHECK SPEED DRIVE SAFELY** — Displayed when a MyKey® is in use and the optional setting is on and the vehicle exceeds a preselected speed. Refer to *MyKey®* in the *Locks and Security* chapter for more information.

**VEHICLE NEAR TOP SPEED** — Displayed when a MyKey® is in use and the MyKey speed limit is on and the vehicle speed is approaching 80 mph (130 km/h). Refer to *MyKey®* in the *Locks and Security* chapter for more information.

**TOP SPEED MYKEY SETTING** — Displayed when a MyKey® is in use and the MyKey speed limit is on and the vehicle speed is 80 mph (130 km/h). Refer to *MyKey®* in the *Locks and Security* chapter for more information.

## Instrument Cluster

**BUCKLE UP TO UNMUTE AUDIO** — Displayed when a MyKey® is in use and Belt-Minder® is activated. Refer to *MyKey®* in the *Locks and Security* chapter for more information.

**ADVTRAC ON MYKEY SETTING (if equipped)** — Displayed when a MyKey® is in use when trying to disable the ESC system and the optional setting is on. Refer to *MyKey®* in the *Locks and Security* chapter for more information.

**SERVICE ADVANCETRAC (if equipped)** — Displayed when the AdvanceTrac® system has detected a condition that requires service. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

**TO STOP ALARM START VEHICLE (if equipped)** — Displayed when the perimeter alarm system is armed and the vehicle is entered using the key on the driver's side door. In order to prevent the perimeter alarm system from triggering, the ignition must be turned to start or on before the 12 second chime expires. See *Perimeter alarm system* in the *Locks and Security* chapter.

**SECURITY SYSTEM FAULT** — Displayed when the security system has detected a fault. See your authorized dealer for service.

**WIRING FAULT ON TRAILER (if equipped)** — Displayed and accompanied by a single chime if there are certain faults in the vehicle wiring and trailer wiring/brake system. Refer to *Trailer towing* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

**TRAILER BRAKE MODULE FAULT (if equipped)** — Displayed and accompanied by a single chime in response to faults sensed by the TBC. Refer to *Trailer towing* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

**TRAILER CONNECTED (if equipped)** — Displayed when a correct trailer connection (a trailer with electric trailer brakes) is sensed during a given ignition cycle. Refer to *Trailer towing* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

**TRAILER BRAKE GAIN = XX.X (if equipped)** — Displays the current gain setting for the trailer brake. Refer to *Trailer towing* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

**TBC GAIN = XX.X NO TRAILER (if equipped)** — Displays the current gain setting for the trailer brake when a trailer is not connected. Refer to *Trailer towing* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

**TRAILER DISCONNECTED (if equipped)** — Displayed and accompanied by a single chime when a trailer connection becomes

32

## Instrument Cluster

disconnected, either intentionally or unintentionally, and has been sensed during a given ignition cycle. Refer to *Trailer towing* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

**TRAILER SWAY REDUCE SPEED (if equipped)** — Displayed when the trailer sway control has detected trailer sway. For more information, refer to the *Driving* chapter for more information.

**CHECK PARK AID (if equipped)** — Displayed when the transmission is in R (Reverse) and the reverse sensing system (park aid) is disabled.

**TRANSPORT MODE CONTACT DEALER (if equipped)** — Displayed when the vehicle is set to transport mode. The transport mode is used to disable certain vehicle functions to prevent battery discharge when the vehicle is in the transport/inventory phase and is not driven long enough to maintain the battery's charge. This mode can be disabled by doing the following: Turn the ignition on, without starting the engine. Press and release the brake pedal fully five times and press the hazard button four times (on, off, on, off) within 10 seconds.

**CHECK LOCKING DIFFERENTIAL (if equipped)** — Displayed when an electronic locking differential (ELD) system fault is present. For more information, refer to *Electronic locking differential (ELD)* in the *Driving* chapter.

**CHECK 4X4 (if equipped)** — Displayed when a 4X4 system fault is present. For more information, refer to *Four-wheel drive (4WD) operation* in the *Driving* chapter.

**4X4 SHIFT IN PROGRESS** — Displayed when the 4X4 system is making a shift. For further information, refer to *Four-wheel drive (4WD) operation* in the *Driving* chapter.

**FOR 4X4 LOW SLOW TO 3 MPH (if equipped)** — Displayed when 4X4 LOW is selected while the vehicle is moving. For more information, refer to *Four-wheel drive (4WD) operation* in the *Driving* chapter.

**FOR 4X4 LOW APPLY BRAKE (if equipped)** — Displayed when trying to select 4X4 LOW. For more information, refer to *Four-wheel drive (4WD) operation* in the *Driving* chapter.

**FOR 4X4 LOW SHIFT TO N (if equipped)** — Displayed when 4X4 LOW is selected and the vehicle is stopped. For more information, refer to *Four-wheel drive (4WD) operation* in the *Driving* chapter.

**TO EXIT 4X4 LOW SLOW TO 3 MPH (if equipped)** — Displayed when 2WD is selected while the vehicle is operating in 4X4 LOW. For more information, refer to *Four-wheel drive (4WD) operation* in the *Driving* chapter.

## Instrument Cluster

**TO EXIT 4X4 LOW SHIFT TO N (if equipped)** — Displayed when 2WD is selected while the vehicle has been stopped in 4X4 LOW. For more information, refer to *Four-wheel drive (4WD) operation* in the *Driving* chapter.

**TO EXIT 4X4 LOW APPLY BRAKE (if equipped)** — Displayed when 2WD is selected from 4X4 LOW mode. For more information, refer to *Four-wheel drive (4WD) operation* in the *Driving* chapter.

**SHIFT DELAYED PULL FORWARD (if equipped)** — May display when shifting to or from 4X4 LOW. For more information, refer to *Four-wheel drive (4WD) operation* in the *Driving* chapter.

**HILL DESCENT CONTROL READY (if equipped)** — Displayed when the hill descent control switch is turned on.

**HILL DESCENT CONTROL FAULT (if equipped)** — Displayed when a hill descent system fault is present.

**HILL CNTRL OFF SYSTEM COOLING (if equipped)** — Displayed when the hill descent system is cooling due to overuse.

**HILL DESCENT CONTROL OFF (if equipped)** — Displayed when the hill descent system is deactivated.

**FOR HILL CNTRL 20 MPH OR LESS (if equipped)** — Displayed when the vehicle speed requirement for hill control mode entry has not been met.

**DRIVER RESUME CONTROL (if equipped)** — Displayed when the hill control and off-road mode require the driver to resume control.

**FOR HILL CNTRL SELECT GEAR (if equipped)** — Displayed when the driver is requested to select a transmission gear to enable operation of the hill mode and off-road mode.

**ENGINE WARMING PLEASE WAIT XX (diesel engine only)** — Displayed in extremely cold weather, typically below  $-15^{\circ}\text{F}$  ( $-26^{\circ}\text{C}$ ), if the engine block heater is not utilized. The engine will not respond to accelerator pedal movement for 30 seconds; this is done so the engine oil can be properly circulated to avoid engine damage from lack of lubrication. A timer will begin a countdown from 30 seconds. Once the counter has reached 0 seconds, OK TO DRIVE will be displayed and the engine will respond to accelerator pedal movement. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

## Instrument Cluster

**OK TO DRIVE (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the time counter has reached 0 (zero) and the engine is sufficiently warm enough to drive in extremely cold weather (refer to the engine warming please wait message description mentioned previously). Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**WATER IN FUEL DRAIN FILTER (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the water separator has reached a predetermined capacity and needs to be drained. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**ENGINE TURNS OFF IN XX (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the vehicle is in the final 30 seconds of a countdown to where the engine will intentionally be turned off by the PCM. The diesel engine shutdown is a (regulatory) requirement which may be required of a particular diesel vehicle for sale in states requiring this feature. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**ENGINE TURNED OFF (diesel engine only)** — Displayed after the 30 second countdown. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**DRIVE TO CLEAN EXHAUST FILTER (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) is full of particles (exhaust soot) and the vehicle is not being operated in a manner to allow normal cleaning. This message will stay on until the exhaust filter cleaning has begun, at which time the CLEANING EXHAUST FILTER message will be displayed. It is recommended the vehicle operator drive the vehicle above 30 mph (48 km/h) until the CLEANING EXHAUST FILTER message turns off. This message is NORMAL. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**Note:** If this message is ignored, your vehicle will continue to fill the Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) with particles (exhaust soot). If cleaning is not permitted, the  light will illuminate and engine power may be limited. If the vehicle is still not operated in a manner to allow cleaning, the service engine soon light  will illuminate and engine power will be further limited. Dealer service will then be required to restore your vehicle to full-power operation.

**Note:** Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) regeneration will not initiate at idle or in Power Take Off (PTO) mode. When DRIVE TO CLEAN EXHAUST FILTER is displayed in the message center, PTO and/or Stationary Elevated Idle Control (SEIC) must be disengaged/inactive in order to properly clean the DPF. The vehicle must be driven until the CLEANING EXHAUST FILTER message turns off.

## Instrument Cluster

**CLEANING EXHAUST FILTER (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the vehicle has entered the cleaning mode. Various engine actions will raise the exhaust temperature in the Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) system to burn off the particles (exhaust soot). After the particles are burned off, the exhaust temperature will fall back to normal levels. This message is NORMAL. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.



**WARNING:** When the CLEANING EXHAUST FILTER message appears in the message center, do not park near flammable materials, vapors or structures until filter cleaning is complete.

**EXHAUST FILTER DRIVE COMPLETE (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) has been adequately cleaned after the DRIVE TO CLEAN EXHAUST FILTER followed by CLEANING EXHAUST FILTER messages have been displayed. This message is NORMAL. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**STOP SAFELY NOW (diesel engine only)** — Displayed and a chime sounds when the vehicle exhaust system temperature exceeds intended operating range. If this warning occurs, engine power is reduced and the engine will shut down when the vehicle speed is below 3 mph (5 km/h). **Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible** and contact your authorized dealer. Depending on the severity of the over-temperature condition, the vehicle may not restart after cycling the ignition off. If the vehicle restarts, there may be limited power. If the exhaust over-temperature condition reoccurs, the message center will display STOP SAFELY NOW, the chime will sound, and engine power will be reduced again and shut down below 3 mph (5 km/h). Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**REDUCED ENGINE POWER (diesel engine only)** — Displayed approximately two hours after the DRIVE TO CLEAN EXHAUST SYSTEM message has displayed and the vehicle operator has not driven the vehicle above 30 mph (48 km/h) for at least 20 minutes to clean the DPF. At this point the vehicle must be serviced by an authorized dealer. This message is normal. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**EXHAUST FLUID RANGE XXX MI (diesel engine only)** — Displays the distance you can travel before depleting the remaining diesel exhaust fluid. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

## Instrument Cluster

**SPEED LIMITED XXMPH IN XX MI EXHAUST FLUID EMPTY (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the diesel exhaust fluid is nearing empty. The vehicle's top speed will become limited in the displayed distance. The diesel exhaust fluid must be replenished to resume normal operation of the vehicle. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**XX MPH MAX UPON RESTART EXHAUST FLUID EMPTY (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the remaining diesel exhaust fluid level is depleted. Speed will be limited upon restart. The diesel exhaust fluid must be replenished to resume normal operation of the vehicle. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**SPEED LIMITED TO XX MPH EXHAUST FLUID EMPTY (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the diesel exhaust fluid is empty. The diesel exhaust fluid must be replenished to resume normal operation of the vehicle. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**ENGINE IDLED UPON REFUEL EXHAUST FLUID EMPTY (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the diesel exhaust fluid is empty. The vehicle will enter into an idle-only mode upon refueling. The diesel exhaust fluid must be replenished to resume normal operation of the vehicle. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**ENGINE IDLED SEE MANUAL EXHAUST FLUID EMPTY (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the diesel exhaust fluid is empty. The vehicle will enter into an idle-only mode. The diesel exhaust fluid must be replenished to resume normal operation of the vehicle. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**ENGINE IDLED SEE MANUAL (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when a problem exists with the SCR system. The vehicle will enter into an idle-only mode. The diesel exhaust fluid must be replenished to resume normal operation of the vehicle. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**SPEED LIMITED XXMPH IN XX MI CONTAMINATED EXHAUST FLUID (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the diesel exhaust fluid becomes contaminated. Speed will be limited in the displayed distance. The diesel exhaust fluid must be replaced to resume normal operation of the vehicle. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**XX MPH MAX UPON RESTART CONTAMINATED EXHAUST FLUID (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the diesel exhaust fluid is contaminated. Speed will be limited upon restart. The diesel exhaust fluid must be replaced to resume normal operation of the vehicle. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

## Instrument Cluster

**SPEED LIMITED TO XX MPH CONTAMINATED EXHAUST FLUID (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the diesel exhaust fluid is contaminated. The diesel exhaust fluid must be replaced to resume normal operation of the vehicle and prevent a limited speed range. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**ENGINE IDLED UPON REFUEL CONTAMINATED EXHAUST FLUID (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the diesel exhaust fluid is contaminated. The vehicle will enter into an idle-only mode upon refueling the vehicle. The diesel exhaust fluid must be replaced to resume normal operation of the vehicle. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**ENGINE IDLED SEE MANUAL CONTAMINATED EXHAUST FLUID (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the diesel exhaust fluid is contaminated. The vehicle will enter into an idle-only mode. The diesel exhaust fluid must be replaced to resume normal operation of the vehicle. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**ENGINE OIL DILUTED (diesel engine only)** — Displays once the engine oil has become diluted and needs to be changed. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**ENGINE OIL CHANGE SOON** — Displayed when the engine oil life remaining is 5% to 1%. Refer to the *scheduled maintenance information* for more information.

**OIL CHANGE REQUIRED** — Displayed when the oil life left reaches 0%. Refer to the *scheduled maintenance information* for more information.

**LOW FUEL PRESSURE SEE MANUAL (diesel engine only)** — If this message appears during a cold start or during cold operation 32°F (0°C) up to 10 minutes after the initial cold start; monitor the message center and if it disappears and does not re-appear after the engine has fully warmed up, the low fuel pressure message is most likely caused by waxed or gelled fuel. To prevent this, use an anti-gel additive. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information. The customer warranty may be void from using additives that do not meet or exceed Ford specifications. If the low fuel pressure message persistently appears after re-fueling during the cold start and cold operation conditions defined previously and then disappear when the engine has fully warmed up, consider different fuel sources.

## Instrument Cluster

- **Low Fuel Operation:** If the message appears when the vehicle is warm and during low fuel tank level operation, i.e. the tank level is at or very near empty, refuel the vehicle and operate the vehicle. If the message reappears after fueling, see below. If the message does not come back, the low fuel pressure condition was due to low fuel levels in the fuel tank.
- **Normal Operation:** If the message appears during normal operation when the vehicle / engine is fully warm, and fuel level is not low, the fuel filters must be changed regardless of the maintenance schedule interval. If replacement of the fuel filter does not remedy the low fuel pressure message during normal operation as defined above, please take the vehicle to your authorized dealer.

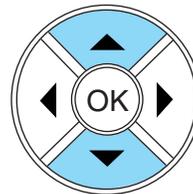
### OPTIONAL MESSAGE CENTER (IF EQUIPPED)

Your vehicle's message center is capable of monitoring many vehicle systems and will alert you to potential vehicle problems and various conditions with a informational messages and/or warnings.

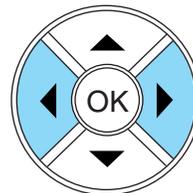
The message center is also used to program/configure the different features of your vehicle.

The message center display is located in the instrument cluster. Use the steering wheel mounted buttons to navigate through the message center.

Press the up/down buttons to move up/down through the message center choices.

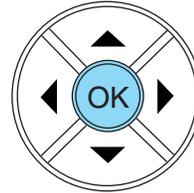


Press the left/right buttons to move left/right through the message center choices.



## Instrument Cluster

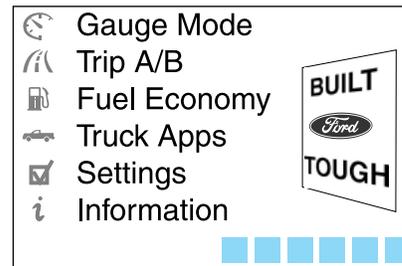
Press the OK button to select highlighted options and confirm choices/messages.



### Main menu

From the main menu screen you can choose the following:

- Gauge Mode
- Trip A/B
- Fuel Economy
- Truck Apps (if equipped)
- Settings
- Information



Scroll up/down to highlight one of the options, then press the right arrow key or OK to enter into that menu option.

### Gauge Mode

**Gauge Detail:** In this mode, the following options are available in different graphical formats:

- Engine oil temperature (diesel only)
- Transmission temperature
- Compass (see compass following for compass options)
- Blank screen

**Compass:** The compass orientation can be changed between fixed north or rotating north. To change the modes, press OK when the compass display is shown. Use the right arrow to choose the mode. Press and hold OK to set the mode.

## Instrument Cluster

### **Trip A/B**

In this mode, Trip A or B registers the following:

- Trip Time — shows the elapsed trip time. This timer will stop when the vehicle is turned off and will restart when the vehicle is restarted.
- Trip Distance — shows the accumulated trip distance.
- Fuel Used — shows the amount of fuel used for a given trip.
- Average MPG (L/100km) — shows the average distance traveled per unit of fuel used for a given trip.
- Odometer — shows the vehicle's total accumulated distance. This value cannot be reset.

Press the right arrow key to reach Trip B. Press the left arrow to go back to Trip A.

Press OK to pause the Trip A or B screen/press again to un-pause.

Press and hold OK to reset the currently displayed trip information.

### **Fuel Economy**

In this mode, fuel economy information is displayed as follows:

- Instant MPG (L/100km) — shows instantaneous fuel usage.
- Miles (kilometers) to empty — shows the approximate distance the vehicle can travel before running out of fuel.
- Average MPG (L/100km) — shows the average fuel usage based on time. See Fuel Hist. following to change the time interval. Press and hold OK to reset this value.

If you calculate your average fuel economy by dividing miles traveled by gallons of fuel used (liters of fuel used by 100 kilometers traveled), your figure may be different than displayed for the following reasons:

- Your vehicle was not perfectly level during fill-up.
- Differences in the automatic shut-off points on the fuel pumps at service stations.
- Variations in top-off procedure from one fill-up to another.
- Rounding of the displayed values to the nearest 0.1 gallon (liter).

To determine your average highway fuel economy, do the following:

1. Drive the vehicle at least 5 miles (8 km) with the speed control system engaged to display a stabilized average.
2. Record the highway fuel economy for future reference.

## Instrument Cluster

It is important to press RESET in order to reset the function after setting the speed control to get accurate highway fuel economy readings.

For more information refer to *Essentials of good fuel economy* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

**Fuel Hist.:** Press the right arrow key (when in the Fuel Econ. menu) to reach Fuel Hist. Fuel history shows fuel usage (AVG MPG or L/100km) as a bar graph based on time. The duration time can be changed as follows:

Duration— Press the right arrow key (when in the Fuel Hist. menu) to reach the following duration choices.

- 5 Minutes
- 10 Minutes
- 30 Minutes
- Last 5 Resets

Use the up/down arrows keys to highlight one of the choices; press and hold OK to set your choice.

The graph is updated each minute with the fuel economy that was achieved during the prior 5, 10, 30 minutes or last 5 resets of driving.

### **Truck Apps (if equipped)**

In this mode, off-road and trailer towing application options are available.

<b>Off Road*</b>
Pitch and bank angle (in degrees). Displays the pitch angle (front to rear) and bank angle (side to side) of the road surface.
Steering angle (in degrees). Displays the steering angle of the front wheels after the vehicle has been driven for a period of time.
Differential lock/unlock. Displays the state (locked or unlocked) of the electronic locking differential.
Energy flow. Displays the operating mode of the transfer case: 4X2, 4X4 Low or 4X4 High.

\* If equipped—your vehicle may be equipped with some or all of these options.

When “Press OK for info” is displayed, pressing OK will give you information on the following options if equipped (**Note:** Information is only available when traveling less than 3 mph [5 km/h]):

- ELD (electronic locking differential)

## Instrument Cluster

- Hill Descent Control
- 4X4 System
- Traction Control

**Trailer:** Press the right arrow key (when in the Off Road menu) to reach the Trailer menu (vehicle must be equipped with factory installed trailer brake controller). The following information is displayed:

- Active trailer name or default trailer.
- Accumulated trailer distance.
- Trailer gain and output.
- Trailer disconnected

When “Press OK for options” is displayed, pressing OK will open the trailer options menus:

<b>Trailer</b>	
Change Active Trailer	When this is highlighted, press the right arrow key to change the currently selected trailer. Use the up and down arrows to select a trailer and press the OK button to choose the highlighted trailer.
	Adding a new trailer– Use the up/down arrows to highlight “New Trailer” from the Change Active Trailer menu and press the right arrow key to enter the New Trailer input screen. Use the up/down arrow keys to choose alpha, numeric and symbol characters and then press the right arrow to move the character space over. Continue adding characters as needed. Press the left arrow to go back and change a previously selected character. When finished with the new trailer name, press OK to accept the new trailer name.
Connection Checklist (if equipped)	Press the right arrow button when this is highlighted to show the trailer connection types: Conventional, Fifth Wheel and Gooseneck. Use the up/down arrows to highlight one of these choices and press OK to display the connection checklist. Follow the on-screen instructions to go through the connections list.

## Instrument Cluster

<b>Trailer</b>	
Delete Trailer	Press the right arrow button when this is highlighted to show currently stored trailers. Use the up/down arrows to highlight the trailer you want to delete and press OK to delete. Follow the on-screen prompts to exit or confirm delete.
Information Screen	Press the right arrow button when this is highlighted to display information on the following vehicle features: Tow Haul mode, Trailer Brake Controller.
Rename Trailer	Press the right arrow button when this is highlighted to display saved or default trailers. Use the up/down buttons to highlight a trailer and press OK to select it. Use the up/down arrow buttons to change the characters as needed. When done, press OK to accept the change.
Reset Trailer Mileage / Kilometers (if equipped)	Press the right arrow button when this is highlighted to display accumulated distance on a given trailer within the list of trailer(s). Use the up/down buttons to select a trailer, then press and hold OK to reset the trailer mileage (kilometers).

### **Settings**

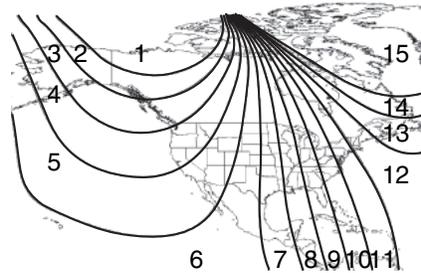
In this mode, you can configure different driver setting choices. Press the right arrow key (when in the Settings menu) to reach the Driver Assist menu:

<b>Driver Assist</b>	
Rear Park Aid	On/Off
Camera Delay (Rear View Camera)	On/Off
Trailer Brake Mode	Electric or Elect. Over Hydraulic
Trailer Sway Control	On/Off

## Instrument Cluster

Vehicle	
Autolamp Delay	Off or XXX seconds
Compass	Zone Setting (1–15) See the diagram below to determine your magnetic zone.

Determine which magnetic zone you are in for your geographic location by referring to the zone map.



Vehicle (cont'd)		
Compass (cont'd)	Calibration (When choosing Calibration, follow the on-screen directions to calibrate the compass)	
DTE Calculation (distance to empty)	Normal History Used	
	Towing History Used	
Locks	Autolock,	On/Off
	Autounlock	On/Off
	Unlocking	One Stage or Two Stage
Maintenance	Coolant (if equipped)	Hold OK if coolant maintenance performed
	Fuel Filter (diesel only)	Hold OK if Fuel Filter Changed
Menu Control	Standard: with standard set, pressing the up/down arrows from a lower level menu will escape to the main menu. Memory On: with memory on set, pressing the up/down arrows will navigate to the previous lower level menu.	

## Instrument Cluster

<b>Vehicle (cont'd)</b>		
Oil Life Reset (gas engine only)	Set to XXX% (Press and hold OK to set).	
Remote Start	Duration	5, 10 or 15 minutes, Off
	System	Enable/Disable
Wipers	Courtesy Wipe	On/Off
<b>MyKey</b>		
Create MyKey	Hold OK to create MyKey	
*AdvanceTrac	Always on or Selectable	
*MAX Speed	80 MPH (120 km/h) or Off	
*Speed Warning	45, 55 or 65 MPH (75, 90 or 105 km/h), Off	
*Volume Limiter	On/Off	
*Clear MyKeys	Hold OK to Clear MyKeys	
*Only displays if MyKey is programmed.		
<b>Language</b>		
English, Español, Français		
<b>Units</b>		
Units	English or Metric	
<b>System Reset</b>		
Hold OK to Reset System to Factory Default		

### Information

In this mode, you can view different vehicle system information and perform a system check.

When “Press OK for info” is displayed, pressing OK will give you information on the currently selected/displayed options. Information is only available when traveling less than 3 mph (5 km/h).

<b>MyKey</b>
Admin Keys (Number of admin keys)
MyKeys (Number of MyKeys programmed)
MyKey Miles (km) (Distance traveled using a programmed MyKey)

## Instrument Cluster

System Check	
Oil Life	
Engine Hours	
Engine Idle Hours	
Doors	
Exhaust Fluid Level (diesel only)	
Brakes	
Trailer Brake	Gain and Output (when trailer is connected)
Ctrl.	No trailer (when no trailer is connected)
Trailer Sway	
Park Aid	Check Rear Park Aid
Fuel Level (distance to empty)	

Some items will only display during a system check if a problem has been detected. If an issue exists on one of the monitored systems, the message center will display the number of warnings that need immediate attention in red and the number of informational warnings will be listed in amber. Use the up/down arrow buttons to scroll through the list; press the right arrow button to display specific information on the highlighted warning.

### **Compass/transmission indicator displays**

The compass heading will display in the upper right corner of the message center; the transmission gear indicator displays in the right side of the message center when using the SelectShift Automatic™ transmission feature. These displays will not be shown in all screen modes. For example: when programming certain vehicle features or in certain information menus.

### **System warnings and status messages**

System warnings alert you to possible problems or malfunctions in your vehicle's operating systems.

In the event of a multiple warning situation, the message center will cycle the display to show all warnings by displaying each one for four seconds.

The message center will display the last selected feature if there are no more warning messages.

Types of messages and warnings:

- Some messages will appear briefly to inform you of something you may need to take action on or be informed of.

## Instrument Cluster

- Some messages will appear once and then again when the vehicle is restarted.
- Some messages will reappear after clearing or being reset if a problem or condition is still present and needs your attention.
- Some messages can be acknowledged and reset by pressing OK. This allows you to use the full message center functionality by clearing the message.

**DOOR AJAR** — Displayed when the door is not completely closed.

**DRIVER DOOR AJAR** — Displayed when the driver door is not completely closed.

**LEFT REAR DOOR AJAR** — Displayed when the rear left door is not completely closed.

**PASSENGER DOOR AJAR** — Displayed when the passenger door is not completely closed.

**RIGHT REAR DOOR AJAR** — Displayed when the rear right door is not completely closed.

**CHECK FUEL CAP** — Displayed when the fuel cap may not be properly closed. Refer to *What you should know about automotive fuels* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

**FUEL LEVEL LOW** — Displayed as a reminder of a low fuel condition.

**BRAKE FLUID LEVEL LOW** — Indicates the brake fluid level is low and the brake system should be inspected immediately. Refer to *Brake fluid* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

**CHECK BRAKE SYSTEM** — Displayed when the brake system needs servicing. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

**PARK BRAKE ENGAGED** — Displayed when the parking brake is set, the engine is running and the vehicle is driven more than 3 mph (5 km/h). If the warning stays on after the parking brake is released, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

**ADVANCETRAC OFF (if equipped)** — Displayed when the AdvanceTrac® system has been disabled by the driver.

**SERVICE ADVANCETRAC (if equipped)** — Displayed when the AdvanceTrac® system has detected a condition that requires service. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

**TRANSPORT MODE CONTACT DEALER (if equipped)** — Displayed when the vehicle is set to transport mode. The transport mode

48

## Instrument Cluster

is used to disable certain vehicle functions to prevent battery discharge when the vehicle is in the transport/inventory phase and is not driven long enough to maintain the battery's charge. This mode can be disabled by doing the following: Turn the ignition on, without starting the engine. Press and release the brake pedal fully five times and press the hazard button four times (on, off, on, off) within 10 seconds.

**CHECK COOLANT ADDITIVE (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the coolant additive needs to be checked. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**POWER REDUCED TO LOWER ENGINE TEMP** — Displayed when the engine temperature gauge needle moves to H. You may notice reduced engine power. Refer to *Engine coolant* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter for more information.

**CLEANING EXHAUST FILTER (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the vehicle has entered the cleaning mode. Various engine actions will raise the exhaust temperature in the Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) system to burn off the particles (exhaust soot). After the particles are burned off, the exhaust temperature will fall back to normal levels. This message is NORMAL. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.



**WARNING:** When the CLEANING EXHAUST FILTER message appears in the message center, do not park near flammable materials, vapors or structures until filter cleaning is complete.

**DRIVE TO CLEAN EXHAUST SYSTEM (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) is full of particles (exhaust soot) and the vehicle is not being operated in a manner to allow normal cleaning. This message will stay on until the exhaust filter cleaning has begun, at which time the CLEANING EXHAUST FILTER message will be displayed. It is recommended the vehicle operator drive the vehicle above 30 mph (48 km/h) until the CLEANING EXHAUST FILTER message turns off. This message is NORMAL. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**Note:** If this message is ignored, your vehicle will continue to fill the Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) with particles (exhaust soot). If cleaning is not permitted, the  light will illuminate and engine power may be limited. If the vehicle is still not operated in a manner to allow cleaning, the service engine soon light  will illuminate and engine power will be further limited. Dealer service will then be required to restore your vehicle to full-power operation.

## Instrument Cluster

**STOP SAFELY NOW (diesel engine only)** — Displayed and a chime sounds when the vehicle exhaust system temperature exceeds intended operating range. If this warning occurs, engine power is reduced and the engine will shut down when the vehicle speed is below 3 mph (5 km/h).

**Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible** and contact your authorized dealer. Depending on the severity of the over-temperature condition, the vehicle may not restart after cycling the ignition off. If the vehicle restarts, there may be limited power. If the exhaust over-temperature condition reoccurs, the message center will display STOP SAFELY NOW, the chime will sound, and engine power will be reduced again and shut down below 3 mph (5 km/h). Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**ENGINE OIL DILUTED (diesel engine only)** — Displays once the engine oil has become diluted and needs to be changed. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**ENGINE OIL CHANGE SOON** — Displayed when the engine oil life remaining is 5% to 1%.

**OIL CHANGE REQUIRED** — Displayed when the oil life left reaches 0%.

**ENGINE TURNS OFF IN 1 SECOND (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the vehicle is in the final second of a countdown to where the engine will intentionally be turned off by the PCM. The diesel engine shutdown is a (regulatory) requirement which may be required of a particular diesel vehicle for sale in states requiring this feature. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**ENGINE TURNS OFF IN XX SECONDS (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the vehicle is in the final 30 seconds of a countdown to where the engine will intentionally be turned off by the PCM. The diesel engine shutdown is a (regulatory) requirement which may be required of a particular diesel vehicle for sale in states requiring this feature. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**ENGINE TURNED OFF (diesel engine only)** — Displayed after the 30 second countdown. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**ENGINE WARMING PLEASE WAIT (diesel engine only)** — Displayed in extremely cold weather, typically below  $-15^{\circ}\text{F}$  ( $-26^{\circ}\text{C}$ ), if the engine block heater is not utilized. The engine will not respond to accelerator pedal movement for 30 seconds; this is done so the engine oil can be properly circulated to avoid engine damage from lack of lubrication. A timer will begin a countdown from 30 seconds. Once the

50

## Instrument Cluster

counter has reached 0 seconds, OK TO DRIVE will be displayed and the engine will respond to accelerator pedal movement. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**EXHAUST FILTER DRIVE COMPLETE (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) has been adequately cleaned after the DRIVE TO CLEAN EXHAUST FILTER followed by CLEANING EXHAUST FILTER messages have been displayed. This message is NORMAL. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**FUEL FILTER CHANGE REQUIRED (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when a fuel filter change is required. Refer to the *scheduled maintenance information* for more information.

**IN XX MILES, SPEED LIMITED TO XX MPH EXHAUST FLUID EMPTY (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the diesel exhaust fluid is nearing empty. The vehicle's top speed will become limited in the displayed distance. The diesel exhaust fluid must be replenished to resume normal operation of the vehicle. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**SPEED LIMITED TO XX MPH UPON RESTART EXHAUST FLUID EMPTY (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the remaining diesel exhaust fluid level is depleted. Speed will be limited upon restart. The diesel exhaust fluid must be replenished to resume normal operation of the vehicle. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**SPEED LIMITED TO XX MPH EXHAUST FLUID EMPTY (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the diesel exhaust fluid is empty. The diesel exhaust fluid must be replenished to resume normal operation of the vehicle. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**ENGINE IDLED UPON REFUEL EXHAUST FLUID EMPTY (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the diesel exhaust fluid is empty. The vehicle will enter into an idle-only mode. The diesel exhaust fluid must be replenished to resume normal operation of the vehicle. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**ENGINE IDLED - SEE OWNER'S MANUAL EXHAUST FLUID EMPTY (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when a problem exists with the SCR system. The vehicle will enter into an idle-only mode. If the exhaust fluid is empty, it must be replenished to resume normal operation of the vehicle. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

## Instrument Cluster

**SPEED LIMITED TO XX MPH CONTAMINATED EXHAUST FLUID (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the diesel exhaust fluid is contaminated. The diesel exhaust fluid must be replaced to resume normal operation of the vehicle and prevent a limited speed range. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**IN XX MILES, SPEED LIMITED TO XX MPH CONTAMINATED EXHAUST FLUID (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the diesel exhaust fluid becomes contaminated. Speed will be limited when reaching the displayed distance. The diesel exhaust fluid must be replaced to resume normal operation of the vehicle. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**SPEED LIMITED TO XX MPH UPON RESTART CONTAMINATED EXHAUST FLUID (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the diesel exhaust fluid is contaminated. Speed will be limited upon restart. The diesel exhaust fluid must be replaced to resume normal operation of the vehicle. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**ENGINE IDLED UPON REFUEL CONTAMINATED EXHAUST FLUID (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the diesel exhaust fluid is contaminated. The vehicle will enter into an idle-only mode. The diesel exhaust fluid must be replaced to resume normal operation of the vehicle. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**LOW FUEL PRESSURE (diesel engine only)** — If this message appears during a cold start or during cold operation 32°F (0°C) up to 10 minutes after the initial cold start; monitor the message center and if it disappears and does not re-appear after the engine has fully warmed up, the low fuel pressure message is most likely caused by waxed or gelled fuel. To prevent this, use an anti-gel additive. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information. The customer warranty may be void from using additives that do not meet or exceed Ford specifications. If the low fuel pressure message persistently appears after re-fueling during the cold start and cold operation conditions defined previously and then disappear when the engine has fully warmed up, consider different fuel sources.

- Low Fuel Operation: If the message appears when the vehicle is warm and during low fuel tank level operation, i.e. the tank level is at or very near empty, refuel the vehicle and operate the vehicle. If the message reappears after fueling, see below. If the message does not come back, the low fuel pressure condition was due to low fuel levels in the fuel tank.

## Instrument Cluster

- **Normal Operation:** If the message appears during normal operation when the vehicle / engine is fully warm, and fuel level is not low, the fuel filters must be changed regardless of the maintenance schedule interval. If replacement of the fuel filter does not remedy the low fuel pressure message during normal operation as defined above, please take the vehicle to your authorized dealer.

**REDUCED ENGINE POWER (diesel engine only)** — Displayed approximately two hours after the DRIVE TO CLEAN EXHAUST SYSTEM message has displayed and the vehicle operator has not driven the vehicle above 30 mph (48 km/h) for at least 20 minutes to clean the DPF. At this point the vehicle must be serviced by an authorized dealer. This message is normal. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**WATER IN FUEL DRAIN FILTER SEE MANUAL (if equipped)** — Displayed when the water separator has reached a predetermined capacity and needs to be drained. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**LOW TIRE PRESSURE** — Displayed when one or more tires on your vehicle have low tire pressure. Refer to *Inflating Your Tires* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter.

**TIRE PRESSURE MONITOR FAULT** — Displayed when the Tire Pressure Monitoring System is malfunctioning. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, have the system inspected by your authorized dealer.

**TIRE PRESSURE SENSOR FAULT** — Displayed when a tire pressure sensor is malfunctioning, or your spare tire is in use. For more information on how the system operates under these conditions, refer to *Understanding Your Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

**TIRES NOT TRAINED - REPEAT** — Displayed when an error occurs while training the TPMS. Refer to *TPMS reset procedure* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

**TRAIN INNER LEFT REAR TIRE** — Displayed when training the TPMS. Refer to *TPMS reset procedure* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

**TRAIN INNER RIGHT REAR TIRE** — Displayed when training the TPMS. Refer to *TPMS reset procedure* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

## Instrument Cluster

**TRAIN LEFT FRONT TIRE** — Displayed when training the TPMS system. Refer to *TPMS reset procedure* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

**TRAIN LEFT REAR TIRE** — Displayed when training the TPMS system. Refer to *TPMS reset procedure* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

**TRAIN RIGHT FRONT TIRE** — Displayed when training the TPMS system. Refer to *TPMS reset procedure* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

**TRAIN RIGHT REAR TIRE** — Displayed when training the TPMS system. Refer to *TPMS reset procedure* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

**TRAIN SPARE TIRE (if equipped)** — Displayed when training the TPMS. Refer to *TPMS reset procedure* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

**TRAINING COMPLETE** — Displayed when training of the TPMS system is complete. Refer to *TPMS reset procedure* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

**POWER STEERING ASSIST FAULT** — The power steering system has disabled power steering assist due to a system error; service is required.

**SERVICE POWER STEERING** — The power steering system has detected a condition that requires service.

**SERVICE POWER STEERING NOW** — The power steering system has detected a condition that requires service immediately.

**BUCKLE UP TO UNMUTE AUDIO** — Displayed when a MyKey® is in use and Belt-Minder® is activated. Refer to *MyKey®* in the *Locks and Security* chapter for more information.

**TRACTION CONTROL OFF (if equipped)** — Displayed when the traction control has been disabled by the driver. Refer to the *Driving* chapter for more information.

**CHECK 4X4 (if equipped)** — Displayed when a 4X4 system fault is present. For more information, refer to *Four-wheel drive (4WD) operation* in the *Driving* chapter.

**4X4 SHIFT IN PROGRESS (if equipped)** — Displayed when the 4X4 system is making a shift. For further information, refer to *Four-wheel drive (4WD) operation* in the *Driving* chapter.

**FOR 4X4 LOW APPLY BRAKE (if equipped)** — Displayed when trying to select 4X4 LOW. For more information, refer to *Four-wheel drive (4WD) operation* in the *Driving* chapter.

54

## Instrument Cluster

**FOR 4X4 LOW SHIFT TO N (if equipped)** — Displayed when 4X4 LOW is selected and the vehicle is stopped. For more information, refer to *Four-wheel drive (4WD) operation* in the *Driving* chapter.

**FOR 4X4 LOW SLOW TO 3 MPH (if equipped)** — Displayed when 4X4 LOW is selected while the vehicle is moving. For more information, refer to *Four-wheel drive (4WD) operation* in the *Driving* chapter.

**TO EXIT 4X4 LOW APPLY BRAKE (if equipped)** — Displayed when 2WD is selected from 4X4 LOW mode. For more information, refer to *Four-wheel drive (4WD) operation* in the *Driving* chapter.

**TO EXIT 4X4 LOW SHIFT TO N (if equipped)** — Displayed when 2WD is selected while the vehicle has been stopped in 4X4 LOW. For more information, refer to *Four-wheel drive (4WD) operation* in the *Driving* chapter.

**TO EXIT 4X4 LOW SLOW TO 3 MPH (if equipped)** — Displayed when 2WD is selected while the vehicle is operating in 4X4 LOW. For more information, refer to *Four-wheel drive (4WD) operation* in the *Driving* chapter.

**FOR HILL DESCENT REDUCE SPEED (if equipped)** — Displayed when the vehicle speed requirement for off-road mode entry has not been met.

**FOR HILL DESCENT SELECT GEAR (if equipped)** — Displayed when the driver is able to select a transmission gear for hill descent mode.

**HILL DESCENT - DRIVER RESUME CONTROL (if equipped)** — Displayed when hill descent control mode is deactivated and the driver must resume control.

**HILL DESCENT CONTROL FAULT (if equipped)** — Displayed when a hill descent system fault is present.

**HILL DESCENT CONTROL OFF (if equipped)** — Displayed when hill descent control mode becomes inactive.

**HILL DESCENT CONTROL OFF SYSTEM COOLING (if equipped)** — Displayed when the hill descent system is cooling due to overuse.

**HILL DESCENT CONTROL READY (if equipped)** — Displayed when the hill descent control switch is turned on.

**REDUCE ACCELERATOR TO PREVENT WHEEL SLIP (if equipped)** — Displayed when the vehicle senses that torque to the drive wheels has overcome the available traction.

**SHIFT DELAYED PULL FORWARD (if equipped)** — May display when shifting to or from 4X4 LOW. For more information, refer to *Four-wheel drive (4WD) operation* in the *Driving* chapter.

## Instrument Cluster

**SLOW VEHICLE TO XX KM/H FOR ELD (if equipped)** — Displayed when the vehicle speed requirement for the electronic locking differential mode has not been met.

**SLOW VEHICLE TO XX MPH FOR ELD (if equipped)** — Displayed when the vehicle speed requirement for the electronic locking differential mode has not been met.

**CHECK LOCKING DIFFERENTIAL (if equipped)** — Displayed when an electronic locking differential (ELD) system fault is present. For more information, refer to *Electronic locking differential (ELD)* in the *Driving* chapter.

**CHECK SPEED DRIVE SAFELY** — Displayed when a MyKey® is in use and the optional setting is on and the vehicle exceeds a preselected speed. Refer to *MyKey®* in the *Locks and Security* chapter for more information.

**COULD NOT PROGRAM INTEGRATED KEY** — Displayed when an attempt is made to program a fifth integrated key to the remote keyless entry system. For more information on integrated key, refer to the *Locks and Security* chapter.

**ESC ALWAYS ON - MYKEY SETTING** — Displayed when a MyKey® is in use and the ESC cannot be deactivated. Refer to *MyKey®* in the *Locks and Security* chapter for more information.

**MYKEY ACTIVE DRIVE SAFELY** — Displayed when a MyKey® is in use. Refer to *MyKey®* in the *Locks and Security* chapter for more information.

**MYKEY COULD NOT PROGRAM** — Displayed when an attempt is made to program a spare key using two existing MyKeys. Refer to *MyKey®* in the *Locks and Security* chapter for more information.

**SECURITY SYSTEM FAULT (if equipped)** — Displayed when the security system has detected a fault. See your authorized dealer for service.

**SPEED LIMITED TO 130 KM/H** — Displayed when starting the vehicle and MyKey® is in use and the MyKey speed limit is on. Refer to *MyKey®* in the *Locks and Security* chapter for more information.

**SPEED LIMITED TO 80 MPH** — Displayed when starting the vehicle and MyKey® is in use and the MyKey speed limit is on. Refer to *MyKey®* in the *Locks and Security* chapter for more information.

## Instrument Cluster

**VEHICLE AT TOP SPEED - MYKEY SETTING** — Displayed when a MyKey® is in use and the MyKey speed limit is on and the vehicle speed is 80 mph (130 km/h). Refer to *MyKey®* in the *Locks and Security* chapter for more information.

**VEHICLE NEAR TOP SPEED** — Displayed when a MyKey® is in use and the MyKey speed limit is on and the vehicle speed is approaching 80 mph (130 km/h). Refer to *MyKey®* in the *Locks and Security* chapter for more information.

**CHECK REAR PARK AID (if equipped)** — Displayed when the transmission is in R (Reverse) and the park aid is disabled.

**REAR PARK AID OFF (if equipped)** — Displayed when the rear park aid is disabled by the driver.

**REAR PARK AID ON (if equipped)** — Displayed when the rear park aid is enabled.

**TO STOP ALARM, START VEHICLE (if equipped)** — Displayed when the perimeter alarm system is armed and the vehicle is entered using the key on the driver's side door. In order to prevent the perimeter alarm system from triggering, the ignition must be turned to start or on before the 12 second chime expires. See *Perimeter alarm system* in the *Locks and security* chapter.

**TRAILER BRAKE GAIN: XX.X [OUTPUT] (if equipped)** — Displays the current gain setting for the trailer brake. Refer to *Trailer towing* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

**TRAILER BRAKE GAIN: XX.X NO TRAILER (if equipped)** — Displays the current gain setting for the trailer brake when a trailer is not connected. Refer to *Trailer towing* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

**TRAILER BRAKE MODULE FAULT (if equipped)** — Displayed and accompanied by a single chime, in response to faults sensed by the TBC. Refer to *Trailer towing* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

**TRAILER CONNECTED (if equipped)** — Displayed when a correct trailer connection (a trailer with electric trailer brakes) is sensed during a given ignition cycle. Refer to *Trailer towing* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

**TRAILER DISCONNECTED (if equipped)** — Displayed when a trailer connection becomes disconnected, either intentionally or unintentionally, and has been sensed during a given ignition cycle. Refer to *Trailer towing* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

## Instrument Cluster

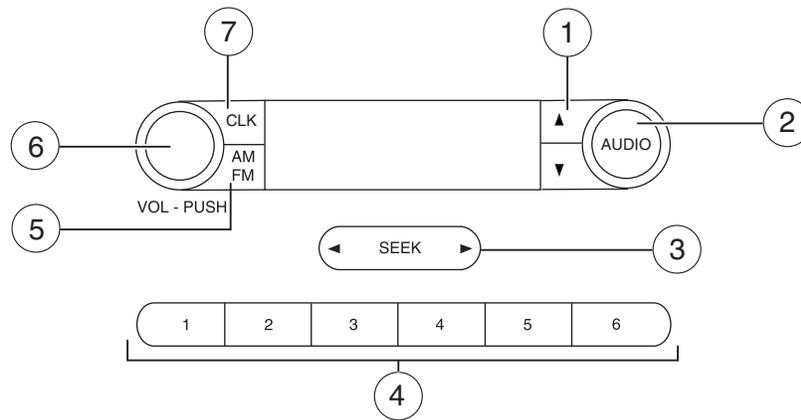
**TRAILER SWAY REDUCE SPEED (if equipped)** — Displayed when the trailer sway control has detected trailer sway. For more information, refer to the *Driving* chapter for more information.

**WIRING FAULT ON TRAILER (if equipped)** — Displayed if there are certain faults in the vehicle wiring and trailer wiring/brake system. Refer to *Trailer towing* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

## Entertainment Systems

### AUDIO SYSTEMS

#### AM/FM stereo system (if equipped)



**!** **WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device or feature that may take their focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of the vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving, encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible and that you become aware of applicable state and local laws that may affect use of electronic devices while driving.

The AM/FM stereo system does not contain rear speakers; only front driver side and passenger side speakers.

**Accessory delay:** Your vehicle is equipped with accessory delay. With this feature, the window switches and radio may be used for up to 10 minutes after the ignition is turned off or until either front door is opened.

## Entertainment Systems

1. **▲ / ▼ (Tuner):** Press to manually go up or down the radio frequency. Press and hold for a fast advance through radio frequencies. Also use in AUDIO mode to gain access to various settings.



2. **AUDIO:** Press AUDIO repeatedly to access the following settings:



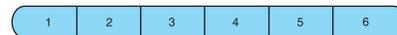
- **TREB (Treble):** Press AUDIO to reach the treble setting. Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK ▶ .
- **BASS (Bass):** Press AUDIO to reach the bass setting. Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK ▶
- **BAL (Balance):** Press AUDIO to reach the balance setting. Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK ▶ to adjust between the left and right speakers.
- **Setting the clock:** Press and hold CLK until the hours start to flash, then use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK ▶ to adjust. To adjust minutes, press CLK again to make the minutes start to flash and use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK ▶ to adjust. Press CLK again to exit the clock setting mode.

**Note:** If your vehicle is equipped with a navigation system, refer to *Setting the clock* in your *Navigation supplement*.

3. **SEEK:** Press ◀ SEEK ▶ to access the previous/next strong station.



4. **Memory presets:** To set a station: Select frequency band AM/FM1/FM2; tune to a station, press and hold a preset button until sound returns. You may store up to six stations in each frequency band for a total of 18.



5. **AM/FM:** Press AM/FM to select AM/FM1/FM2 frequency band.



60

## Entertainment Systems

6. **ON/OFF/Volume:** Press VOL - PUSH to turn ON/OFF. Turn VOL - PUSH to increase/decrease volume.

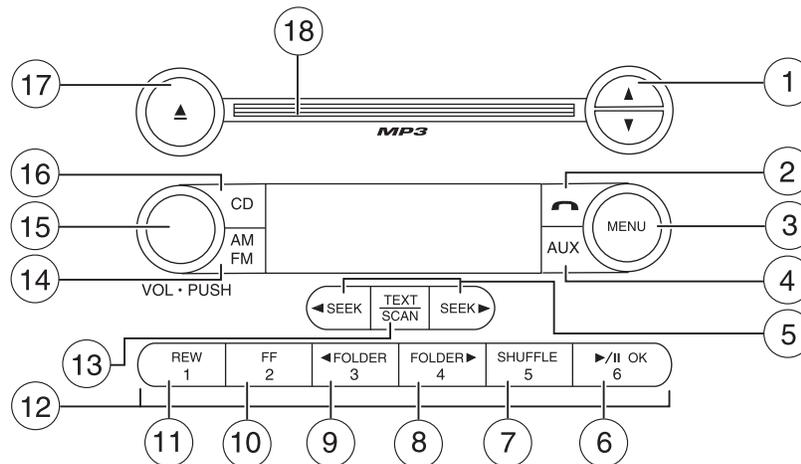
VOL - PUSH



7. **CLK (Clock):** Press CLK to toggle between the clock and radio frequency.



**AM/FM stereo single CD/satellite-compatible sound system (if equipped)**



**⚠ WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device or feature that may take their focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of the vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving, encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible and that you become aware of applicable state and local laws that may affect use of electronic devices while driving.

## Entertainment Systems

**Accessory delay:** Your vehicle is equipped with accessory delay which allows you to operate the window switches and the audio for up to 10 minutes after the ignition has been turned off or until either front door is opened.

1. ▲ / ▼ : Press ▲ / ▼ to manually go up or down the radio frequency. Press and hold for a fast advance through radio frequencies.



**In satellite radio mode (if equipped),** press ▲ / ▼ to tune to the next/previous channel.

*Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS® radio subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.*

2. ☎ (Phone): If your vehicle is equipped with SYNC®, press to access SYNC PHONE features. For further information, please refer to your SYNC® supplement. If your vehicle is not equipped with SYNC®, the display will read NO PHONE.



3. MENU: Press MENU repeatedly to access to the following settings:



**Setting the clock:** Press MENU until SET HOUR or SET MINUTES is displayed. Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to adjust the hours/minutes.

**Note:** If your vehicle is equipped with a navigation system, refer to *Setting the clock* in your *Navigation supplement*.

**SATELLITE RADIO MENU (if equipped):** Press MENU when satellite radio mode is active to access. Press OK to enter into the satellite radio menu. Press ▲ / ▼ to cycle through the following options:

- **CATEGORY:** Press OK to enter category mode. Press ▲ / ▼ to scroll through the list of available SIRIUS® channel Categories (Pop, Rock, News, etc.) Press OK when the desired category appears in the display. After a category is selected, press SEEK to search for that specific category of channels only (i.e. ROCK). You may also select CATEGORY ALL to seek all available SIRIUS® categories and channels. Press OK to close and return to the main menu.

## Entertainment Systems

- **SAVE SONG:** Press OK to save the currently playing song title in the system's memory. (If you try to save something other than a song, CANT SAVE will appear in the display.) When the chosen song is playing on any satellite radio channel, the system will alert you with an audible prompt. Press OK while SONG ALERT is in the display and the system will take you to the channel playing the desired song. You can save up to 20 song titles. If you attempt to save a song when the system is full, the display will read REPLACE SONG? Press OK to access the saved songs and press ▲ / ▼ to cycle through the saved songs. When the song appears in the display that you would like to replace, press OK. SONG REPLACED will appear in the display.
- **DELETE SONG:** Press OK to delete a song title from the system's memory. Press ▲ / ▼ to cycle through the saved songs. When the song title appears in the display that you would like to delete, press OK. The song will appear in the display for confirmation. Press OK again and the display will read SONG DELETED. If you do not want to delete the currently listed song, press ▲ / ▼ to select either RETURN or CANCEL.  
**Note:** If there are no songs presently saved, the display will read NO SONGS.
- **DELETE ALL SONGS:** Press OK to delete all songs from the system's memory. The display will read ARE YOU SURE? Press OK to confirm deletion of all saved songs and the display will read ALL DELETED.  
**Note:** If there are no songs presently saved, the display will read NO SONGS.
- **ENABLE ALERTS / DISABLE ALERTS:** Press OK to enable/disable the satellite alert status which alerts you when your selected songs are playing on a satellite radio channel. (The system default is disabled.) SONG ALERTS ENABLED/DISABLED will appear in the display. The menu listing will display the opposite state. For example, if you have chosen to enable the song alerts, the menu listing will read DISABLE as the alerts are currently on, so your other option is to turn them off.

*Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS® radio subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.*

**AUTOSET:** Press MENU until the display reads AUTOSET. Autoset allows you to set the strongest local radio stations without losing your original manually set preset stations for AM/FM1/FM2. Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to turn on/off.

## Entertainment Systems

When the six strongest stations are filled, the station stored in preset 1 will begin playing. If there are less than six strong stations, the system will store the last one in the remaining presets.

**BASS:** Press MENU to reach the bass setting. Use ▲ /▼ /◀ SEEK, SEEK ► to adjust.

**TREB (Treble):** Press MENU to reach the treble setting. Use ▲ /▼ /◀ SEEK, SEEK ► to adjust.

**L . . R (Balance):** Press MENU to reach the balance setting. Use ▲ /▼ /◀ SEEK, SEEK ► to adjust the audio between the left (L) and right (R) speakers.

**B . . F (Fade):** Press MENU to reach the fade setting. Use ▲ /▼ /◀ SEEK, SEEK ► to adjust the audio between the back (B) and front (F) speakers.

**SPEEDVOL (Speed sensitive volume, if equipped):** Press MENU to reach the SPEEDVOL setting. Radio volume automatically gets louder with increasing vehicle speed to compensate for road and wind noise. Use ▲ /▼ /◀ SEEK, SEEK ► to adjust.

The default setting is *off*; increasing your vehicle speed will not change the volume level.

Adjust 1–7: Increasing this setting from 1 (lowest setting) to 7 (highest setting) allows the radio volume to automatically change slightly with vehicle speed to compensate for road and wind noise.

Recommended level is 1–3; SPEED OFF turns the feature off and level 7 is the maximum setting.

**Track/Folder mode:** Available only on MP3 discs in CD mode. In Track mode, pressing ◀ SEEK, SEEK ► will scroll through all tracks on the disc

In Folder mode, pressing ◀ SEEK, SEEK ► will scroll only through tracks within the selected folder.

Press ◀ FOLDER, FOLDER ► to access the previous/next folder (if available).

**COMPRESS (Compression):** Available only in CD/MP3 mode. Press MENU until COMPRESS ON/OFF appears in the display.

64

## Entertainment Systems

Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to toggle ON/OFF. When COMPRESS is ON, the system will bring the soft and loud CD passages together for a more consistent listening level.

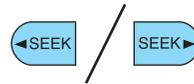
4. **AUX:** Press repeatedly to cycle through LINE IN (auxiliary audio mode, if equipped) and SAT1, SAT2 and SAT3 modes (satellite radio, if equipped).



For location and further information on auxiliary audio mode, refer to *Auxiliary input jack* later in this chapter.

*Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS® radio subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.*

5. **SEEK: In radio mode,** press ◀ / ▶ to access the previous/next strong station.



**In CD/MP3 mode,** press ◀ / ▶ to access the previous/next CD/MP3 track.

**In satellite radio mode (if equipped),** press ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to seek to the previous/next channel. If a specific category is selected, (Jazz, Rock, News, etc.), press ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to seek to the previous/next channel in the selected category. Press and hold ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to fast seek through the previous /next channels.

In TEXT MODE, press ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to view the previous/additional display text.

In CATEGORY MODE, press ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to select a category.

*Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS® radio subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.*

6. ▶ / || **OK (Play/Pause):** This



control is operational in CD/MP3 mode. When a CD/MP3 is playing, press to pause or play the current CD/MP3. The CD/MP3 status will display in the radio display.

**OK:** Use in various menu selections.

If your vehicle is equipped with a Family Entertainment System (FES) please refer to the *Family entertainment DVD system* section later in this chapter.

## Entertainment Systems

7. **SHUFFLE:** In CD/MP3 mode, press SHUFFLE to engage shuffle mode. SHUFFLE ON will appear in the display. If you wish to engage shuffle mode right away, press SEEK to begin random play. Otherwise, random play will begin when the current track is finished playing. CD SHUF will appear in the display. To disengage, press SHUFFLE again. SHUFFLE OFF will appear in the display.



**Note:** In CD/MP3 mode, press SHUFFLE to play the tracks in random order. In MP3 folder mode, the system will randomly play all tracks within the current folder.

8. **FOLDER**  : In folder mode, press FOLDER  to access next folder on MP3 discs, if available.



9.  **FOLDER:** In folder mode, press  FOLDER to access the previous folder on MP3 discs, if available.



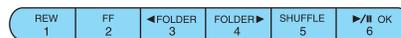
10. **FF (Fast forward):** Press FF to manually advance in a CD/MP3 track.



11. **REW (Rewind):** Press REW to manually reverse in a CD/MP3 track.



12. **Memory presets:** To set a station: Select frequency band AM/FM1/FM2; tune to a station, press and hold a preset control until sound returns. You may store up to six stations in each frequency band for a total of 18.



**In satellite radio mode (if equipped),** there are 18 available presets, six each for SAT1, SAT2 and SAT3. To save satellite channels in your memory presets, tune to the desired channel then press and hold a preset control until sound returns.

*Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS® radio subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.*

## Entertainment Systems

13. **TEXT/SCAN: In radio and CD/MP3 mode**, press and hold for a brief sampling of radio stations or CD tracks. Press again to stop.



**In CD/MP3 mode**, press and release to display track title, artist name, and disc title.

**In satellite radio mode (if equipped)**, press and release to enter TEXT MODE and display the current song title. While in TEXT MODE, press again to scroll through the current song title, artist, channel category and the SIRIUS® long channel name.

**In TEXT MODE** sometimes the display requires additional text to be displayed. When the “>” indicator is active, press SEEK ► to view the additional display text. When the “<” indicator is active, press ◀ SEEK to view the previous display text.

**In satellite radio mode (if equipped)**, press and hold to hear a brief sampling of the next channels. Press again to stop. In CATEGORY MODE, press SCAN to hear a brief sampling of the channels in the selected category. Press again to stop.

*Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS® radio subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.*

14. **AM/FM:** Press AM/FM to select AM/FM1/FM2 frequency band.



15. **ON/OFF/Volume:** Press VOL-PUSH to turn on/off. Turn VOL-PUSH to increase/decrease volume.



**Note:** If the volume is set above a certain level and the ignition is turned off, the volume will come back on at a “nominal” listening level when the ignition switch is turned back on.

16. **CD:** Press to enter CD/MP3 mode. If a CD is already loaded into the system, CD/MP3 play will begin where it ended last.



17. **▲ (CD eject):** Press to eject a CD.



## Entertainment Systems

18. **CD slot:** Insert a CD label side up in the CD slot.



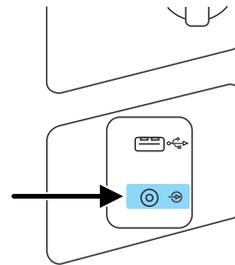
### Auxiliary input jack (if equipped)

**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device or feature that may take their focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of the vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving, encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible and that you become aware of applicable state and local laws that may affect use of electronic devices while driving.

Your vehicle may be equipped with an auxiliary input jack (AIJ). The auxiliary input jack, located on the instrument panel below the power point, provides a way to connect your portable music player to the in-vehicle audio system. This allows the audio from a portable music player to be played through the vehicle speakers with high fidelity.

To achieve optimal performance, please observe the following instructions when attaching your portable music device to the audio system.

If your vehicle is equipped with a navigation system, refer to the *Auxiliary input jack* section in the *Audio Features* chapter of your *Navigation System* supplement.



#### Required equipment:

1. Any portable music player designed to be used with headphones
2. An audio extension cable with stereo male 1/8 in. (3.5 mm) connectors at each end

#### To play your portable music player using the auxiliary input jack:

1. Begin with the vehicle parked and the radio turned off.
2. Ensure that the battery in your portable music player is new or fully charged and that the device is turned off.

68

## Entertainment Systems

3. Attach one end of the audio extension cable to the headphone output of your player and the other end of the audio extension cable to the AIJ in your vehicle.
4. Turn the radio on, using either a tuned FM station or a CD loaded into the system. Adjust the volume to a comfortable listening level.
5. Turn the portable music player on and adjust the volume to 1/2 the volume.
6. Press AUX on the vehicle radio repeatedly until LINE, LINE IN or SYNC LINE IN appears in the display.  
You should hear audio from your portable music player although it may be low.
7. Adjust the sound on your portable music player until it reaches the level of the FM station or CD by switching back and forth between the AUX and FM or CD controls.

### **Troubleshooting:**

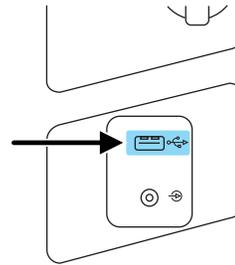
1. Do not connect the audio input jack to a line level output. Line level outputs are intended for connection to a home stereo and are not compatible with the AIJ. The AIJ will only work correctly with devices that have a headphone output with a volume control.
2. Do not set the portable music player's volume level higher than is necessary to match the volume of the CD or FM radio in your audio system as this will cause distortion and will reduce sound quality. Many portable music players have different output levels, so not all players should be set at the same levels. Some players will sound best at full volume and others will need to be set at a lower volume.
3. If the music sounds distorted at lower listening levels, turn the portable music player volume down. If the problems persist, replace or recharge the batteries in the portable music player.
4. The portable music player must be controlled in the same manner when it is used with headphones as the AIJ does not provide control (play, pause, etc.) over the attached portable music player.
5. For safety reasons, connecting or adjusting the settings on your portable music player should not be attempted while the vehicle is moving. Also, the portable music player should be stored in a secure location, such as the center console or the glove box, when the vehicle is in motion. The audio extension cable must be long enough to allow the portable music player to be safely stored while the vehicle is in motion.

## Entertainment Systems

### USB port (if equipped)

**⚠ WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device that may take their focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of the vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving, encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible and that you become aware of applicable state and local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Your vehicle may be equipped with a USB port located on the instrument panel. This feature allows you to plug in media playing devices, memory sticks, and also to charge devices if they support this feature. For further information on this feature, refer to *Accessing and using your USB port* in the SYNC® supplement or *Navigation System* supplement.



### GENERAL AUDIO INFORMATION

#### Radio frequencies:

AM and FM frequencies are established by the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and the Canadian Radio and Telecommunications Commission (CRTC). Those frequencies are:

AM: 530, 540–1700, 1710 kHz

FM: 87.7, 87.9–107.7, 107.9 MHz

#### Radio reception factors:

There are three factors that can affect radio reception:

- Distance/strength: The further you travel from an FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.
- Terrain: Hills, mountains, tall buildings, power lines, electric fences, traffic lights and thunderstorms can interfere with your reception.
- Station overload: When you pass a broadcast tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and play while the weak station frequency is displayed.

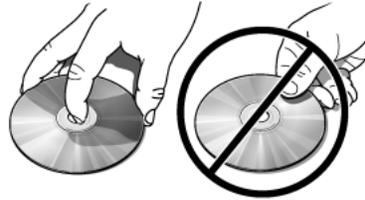
70

## Entertainment Systems

### CD/CD player care

Do:

- Handle discs by their edges only. (Never touch the playing surface).
- Inspect discs before playing.
- Clean only with an approved CD cleaner.
- Wipe discs from the center out.

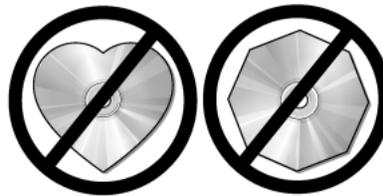


Don't:

- Expose discs to direct sunlight or heat sources for extended periods of time.
- Clean using a circular motion.

**CD units are designed to play commercially pressed 4.75 in (12 cm) audio compact discs only. Due to technical incompatibility, certain recordable and re-recordable compact discs may not function correctly when used in Ford CD players.**

**Do not use any irregular shaped CDs or discs with a scratch protection film attached.**



## Entertainment Systems

**CDs with homemade paper (adhesive) labels should not be inserted into the CD player as the label may peel and cause the CD to become jammed. It is recommended that homemade CDs be identified with permanent felt tip marker rather than adhesive labels. Ballpoint pens may damage CDs. Please contact your authorized dealer for further information.**



### Audio system warranty and service

Refer to the *Warranty Guide/Customer Information Guide* for audio system warranty information. If service is necessary, see your dealer or qualified technician.

### MP3 track and folder structure

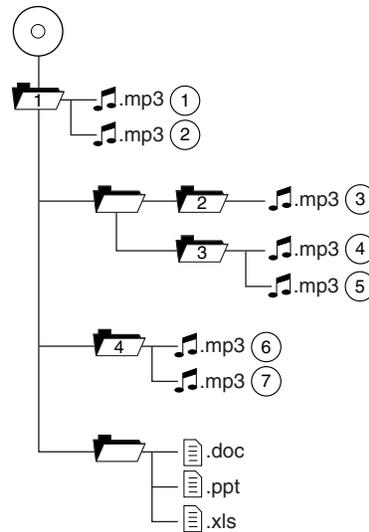
Your MP3 system recognizes MP3 individual tracks and folder structure as follows:

- There are two different modes for MP3 disc playback: MP3 track mode (system default) and MP3 folder mode. For more information on track and folder mode, refer to *Sample MP3 structure* in the following section.
- MP3 track mode ignores any folder structure on the MP3 disc. The player numbers each MP3 track on the disc (noted by the .mp3 file extension) from T001 to a maximum of T255.  
**Note:** The maximum number of playable MP3 files may be less depending on the structure of the CD and exact model of radio present.
- MP3 folder mode represents a folder structure consisting of one level of folders. The CD player numbers all MP3 tracks on the disc (noted by the .mp3 file extension) and all folders containing MP3 files, from F001 (folder) T001 (track) to F253 T255.
- Creating discs with only one level of folders will help with navigation through the disc files.

## Entertainment Systems

### Sample MP3 structure

If you are burning your own MP3 discs, it is important to understand how the system will read the structures you create. While various files may be present, (files with extensions other than mp3), only files with the .mp3 extension will be played. Other files will be ignored by the system. This enables you to use the same MP3 disc for a variety of tasks on your work computer, home computer and your in vehicle system.



In track mode, the system will display and play the structure as if it were only one level deep (all .mp3 files will be played, regardless of being in a specific folder). In folder mode, the system will only play the .mp3 files in the current folder.

### Satellite radio information (if equipped)

**Satellite radio channels:** SIRIUS® broadcasts a variety of music, news, sports, weather, traffic and entertainment satellite radio channels. For more information and a complete list of SIRIUS® satellite radio channels, visit [www.sirius.com](http://www.sirius.com) in the United States, [www.siriuscanada.ca](http://www.siriuscanada.ca) in Canada, or call SIRIUS® at 1-888-539-7474.

**Satellite radio reception factors:** To receive the satellite signal, your vehicle has been equipped with a satellite radio antenna located on the roof of your vehicle. The vehicle roof provides the best location for an unobstructed, open view of the sky, a requirement of a satellite radio system. Like AM/FM, there are several factors that can affect satellite radio reception performance:

- **Antenna obstructions:** For optimal reception performance, keep the antenna clear of snow and ice build-up and keep luggage and other material as far away from the antenna as possible.

## Entertainment Systems

- Terrain: Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with your reception.
- Station overload: When you pass a ground based broadcast repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and result in an audio mute.

Unlike AM/FM audible static, you will hear an audio mute when there is a satellite radio signal interference. Your radio display may display NO SIGNAL to indicate the interference.

**SIRIUS® satellite radio service:** SIRIUS® satellite radio is a subscription based satellite radio service that broadcasts music, sports, news and entertainment programming. A service fee is required in order to receive SIRIUS® service. Vehicles that are equipped with a factory installed SIRIUS® satellite radio system include hardware and a limited subscription term, which begins on the date of sale or lease of the vehicle.

For information on extended subscription terms, the online media player and other SIRIUS® features, please contact SIRIUS® at 1-888-539-7474.

**Note:** SIRIUS® reserves the unrestricted right to change, rearrange, add or delete programming including canceling, moving or adding particular channels, and its prices, at any time, with or without notice to you. Ford Motor Company shall not be responsible for any such programming changes.

**Satellite radio electronic serial number (ESN):** This 12-digit Satellite Serial Number is needed to activate, modify or track your satellite radio account. You will need this number when communicating with SIRIUS®. While in satellite radio mode, you can view this number on the radio display by pressing the AUX and preset 1 controls simultaneously.

## Entertainment Systems

Radio Display	Condition	Action Required
ACQUIRING	Radio requires more than two seconds to produce audio for the selected channel.	No action required. This message should disappear shortly.
SAT FAULT	Internal module or system failure present.	If this message does not clear within a short period of time, or with an ignition key cycle, your receiver may have a fault. See your authorized dealer for service.
INVALID CHNL	Channel no longer available.	This previously available channel is no longer available. Tune to another channel. If the channel was one of your presets, you may choose another channel for that preset button.
UNSUBSCRIBED	Subscription not available for this channel.	Contact SIRIUS® at 1-888-539-7474 to subscribe to the channel or tune to another channel.
NO TEXT	Artist information not available.	Artist information not available at this time on this channel. The system is working properly.
NO TEXT	Song title information not available.	Song title information not available at this time on this channel. The system is working properly.

## Entertainment Systems

Radio Display	Condition	Action Required
NO TEXT	Category information not available.	Category information not available at this time on this channel. The system is working properly.
NO SIGNAL	Loss of signal from the SIRIUS® satellite or SIRIUS® tower to the vehicle antenna.	You are in a location that is blocking the SIRIUS® signal (i.e., tunnel, under an overpass, dense foliage, etc). The system is working properly. When you move into an open area, the signal should return.
UPDATING	Update of channel programming in progress.	No action required. The process may take up to three minutes.
CALL SIRIUS® 1-888-539-7474	Satellite service has been deactivated by SIRIUS® satellite radio.	Call SIRIUS® at 1-888-539-7474 to re-activate or resolve subscription issues.

### NAVIGATION SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

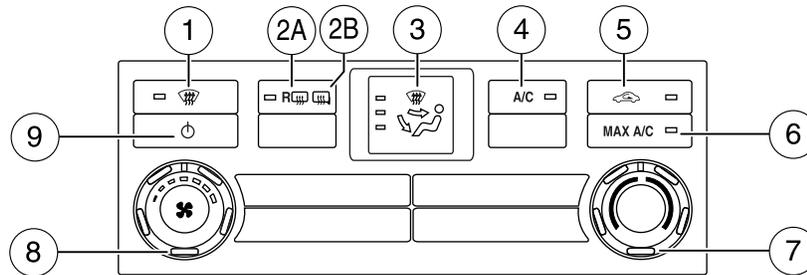
Your vehicle may be equipped with a navigation system. Refer to the *Navigation System* supplement for further information.

### SYNC® (IF EQUIPPED)

Your vehicle may be equipped with SYNC®, a hands-free communications and entertainment system with special phone and media features. For more information, please refer to the *SYNC®* supplement or to the *SYNC®* section in the *Navigation System* supplement (if equipped).

## Climate Controls

### SINGLE ZONE CLIMATE CONTROL



1.  **Defrost:** Distributes outside air through the windshield defroster vents and de-mister vents. Can be used to clear the windshield of fog and thin ice. The system will automatically provide outside air to reduce window fogging. Press this button again to return to the previous air flow selection.
2. A.  **Rear defroster (if equipped):** Press to activate/deactivate the rear window defroster. Refer to *Rear window defroster* later in this chapter for more information. If your vehicle is equipped with both rear defroster and heated mirrors, the same button will activate both.
2. B.  **Heated mirrors (if equipped):** Press to activate/deactivate. This feature will remove ice and snow from the side view mirrors.
3.  **Multifunction control:** Press repeatedly to cycle through the settings to choose:
  -  : Distributes air through the windshield defroster vents, de-mister vents, floor vents and rear seat floor vents. The system will automatically provide outside air to reduce window fogging.
  -  : Distributes air through the instrument panel vents.
  -  : Distributes air through the instrument panel vents, floor vents, rear seat floor vents and de-mister vents.
  -  : Distributes air through the floor vents and rear seat floor vents.
4. **A/C (if equipped):** Press to activate/deactivate air conditioning. Use with recirculated air to improve cooling performance and efficiency. A/C engages automatically in MAX A/C,  (defrost) and  (floor/defrost).

## Climate Controls

5.  **Recirculated air (if equipped):** Press to activate/deactivate air recirculation in the vehicle. Recirculated air may reduce the amount of time needed to cool down the interior of the vehicle and may also help reduce undesired odors from reaching the interior of the vehicle. Recirculated air engages automatically when MAX A/C is selected or can be engaged manually in any airflow mode except  (defrost). When the ignition switch is turned off and back on, the climate system will return to the recirculated air mode only if the A/C button LED is illuminated and the air distribution selection is either  (panel) or  (panel/floor).
6. **MAX A/C (if equipped):** Distributes recirculated air through the instrument panel vents to cool the vehicle. This re-cooling of the interior air is more economical and efficient than normal A/C mode. Recirculated air may also help reduce undesirable odors from entering the vehicle. Press the MAX A/C button again for normal A/C operation.
7. **Temperature control:** Controls the temperature of the airflow in the vehicle.
8.  **Fan speed adjustment:** Controls the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.
9.  **Power:** Press to activate/deactivate the climate control system. When the system is off, outside air is prevented from entering the vehicle.

### Operating tips

- To reduce fog build-up on the windshield during humid weather, select  (defrost) or  (floor/defrost). Temperature and/or fan speed can also be increased to improve clearing.
- To reduce humidity build-up inside the vehicle: do not drive with the system off or with recirculated air engaged and A/C off.
- Do not put objects under the front seats that will interfere with the airflow to the back seats.
- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.
- To improve the A/C cool down, drive with the windows slightly open for 2-3 minutes after start up or until the vehicle has been “aired out.”
- A small amount of air may be felt from the floor vent regardless of the air distribution setting that is selected.

78

## Climate Controls

If you are driving during extreme high ambient temperatures and idling for extended periods of time in gear, it is recommended to run the A/C in the MAX A/C position, adjust the blower fan speed to the lowest setting and put the vehicle's transmission into the P (Park) position to continue to receive cool air from your A/C system.

### For maximum cooling performance (MAX A/C):

- Select MAX A/C.

 (Panel) and  (panel/floor) modes:

- Move the temperature control to the coolest setting.
- Select A/C and  (recirculated air). Use recirculated air with A/C to provide colder airflow.
- Set the fan to the highest speed initially, then adjust to maintain comfort.

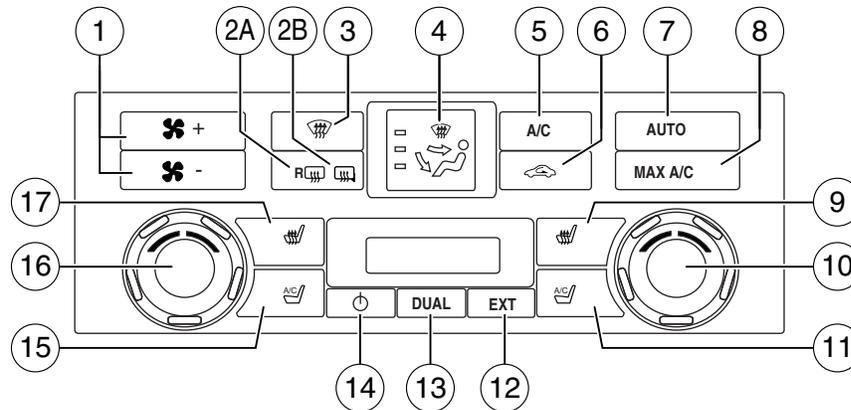
To aid in side window defogging/demisting in cold weather:

1. Select  (panel/floor).
2. Select A/C.
3. Adjust the temperature control to maintain comfort.
4. Set the fan speed to the highest setting.
5. Direct the outer instrument panel vents towards the side windows.

To increase airflow to the outer instrument panel vents, close the vents located in the middle of the instrument panel.

## Climate Controls

### DUAL ZONE AUTOMATIC TEMPERATURE CONTROL (IF EQUIPPED)



*Temperature conversion:* To switch between Fahrenheit and Celsius, refer to *Optional or Standard message center* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter.

1. **Fan speed control:** Press to decrease/increase the fan speed.
2. A. **Rear defroster (if equipped):** Press to activate/deactivate the rear window defroster. Refer to *Rear window defroster* later in this chapter for more information. If your vehicle is equipped with both rear defroster and heated mirrors, the same button will activate both.
2. B. **Heated mirrors (if equipped):** Press to activate/deactivate. This feature will remove ice and snow from the side view mirrors.
3. **Defrost:** Distributes outside air through the windshield defroster vents and de-mister vents. Can be used to clear the windshield of fog and thin ice. The system will automatically provide outside air to reduce window fogging. Press this button again to return to the previous air flow selection.

## Climate Controls

4.  **Manual control:** Allows you to manually select where airflow is directed. To return to full automatic control, press AUTO. When choosing to control airflow manually, press repeatedly to toggle through the settings to choose:
-  : Distributes air through the windshield defroster vents, de-mister vents, floor vents and rear seat floor vents. The system will automatically provide outside air to reduce window fogging.
  -  : Distributes air through the instrument panel vents.
  -  : Distributes air through the instrument panel vents, floor vents, rear seat floor vents and de-mister vents.
  -  : Distributes air through the floor vents and rear seat floor vents.
5. **A/C:** Press to activate/deactivate air conditioning. Use with recirculated air to improve cooling performance and efficiency. A/C engages automatically in MAX A/C,  (defrost) and  (floor/defrost).
6.  **Recirculated air:** Press to activate/deactivate air recirculation in the vehicle. Recirculated air may reduce the amount of time needed to cool down the interior of the vehicle and may also help reduce undesired odors from reaching the interior of the vehicle. Recirculated air engages automatically when MAX A/C is selected or can be engaged manually in any airflow mode except  (defrost). When the ignition switch is turned off and back on, the climate system will return to the recirculated air mode only if the A/C button LED is illuminated and the air distribution selection is either  (panel) or  (panel/floor).
7. **AUTO:** Press to engage automatic temperature control. Select the desired temperature using the temperature control. The system will automatically determine fan speed, airflow location, A/C on or off, and outside or recirculated air, to heat or cool the vehicle to reach the desired temperature.
8. **MAX A/C:** Distributes recirculated air through the instrument panel vents to cool the vehicle. This re-cooling of the interior air is more economical and efficient than normal A/C mode. Recirculated air may also help reduce undesirable odors from entering the vehicle. Press the MAX A/C button again for normal A/C operation.
9.  **Passenger heated seat (if equipped):** Press to control the passenger heated seat. Refer to *Heated and cooled seats* in the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter for more information.

## Climate Controls

10. **Passenger temperature:** Turn to increase/decrease the air temperature on the passenger side of the vehicle. The recommended initial setting is between 72°F (22°C) and 75°F (24°C), then adjust for comfort. The passenger side temperature setting will appear in the upper right corner of the display.
11.  **Passenger cooled seat (if equipped):** Press to control the passenger cooled seat. Refer to *Heated and cooled seats* in the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter for more information.
12. **EXT:** Press to display the exterior temperature. Press again to display cabin temperature settings. To switch between Fahrenheit and Celsius, refer to *Message center* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter.
13. **DUAL:** Press to engage/disengage separate passenger side temperature control.
14.  **Power:** Press to activate/deactivate the climate control system. When the system is off, outside air is prevented from entering the vehicle.
15.  **Driver cooled seat (if equipped):** Press to control the driver cooled seat. Refer to *Heated and cooled seats* in the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter for more information.
16. **Driver temperature:** Turn to increase/decrease the air temperature on the driver side of the vehicle. The control also adjusts the passenger side temperature when PASS TEMP is disengaged. The recommended initial setting is between 72°F (22°C) and 75°F (24°C), then adjust for comfort. The driver side temperature setting will appear in the upper left corner of the display.
17.  **Driver heated seat (if equipped):** Press to control the driver heated seat. Refer to *Heated and cooled seats* in the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter for more information.

### Operating tips

- To reduce fog build-up on the windshield during humid weather, select  (defrost)  (floor/defrost).
- To reduce humidity build-up inside the vehicle, do not drive with the system off, or with  (recirculated air) engaged and A/C off.
- Do not put objects under the front seats that will interfere with the airflow to the back seats.
- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.

82

## Climate Controls

- To improve the A/C cool down, drive with the windows slightly open for 2-3 minutes after start up or until the vehicle has been “aired out”.
- A small amount of air may be felt from the floor vent regardless of the air distribution setting that is selected.

During extreme high ambient temperatures when idling stationary for extended periods of time in gear, it is recommended to run the A/C in the max A/C position, reduce blower fan speed from the highest setting and put the vehicle’s transmission into the P (Park) gear position (automatic transmission only) to continue to receive cool air from your A/C system.

### For maximum cooling performance:

- Automatic operation:
  1. Press AUTO for full automatic operation.
  2. Do not override A/C or  (recirculated air).
  3. Set the temperature to 60°F (16°C).
- Manual operation:
  1. Select MAX A/C.
  2. Select  (recirculated air). Use  (recirculated air) with A/C to provide colder airflow.
  3. Set the temperature to 60°F (16°C).
  4. Set highest fan speed initially, then adjust to maintain comfort.

To aid in side window defogging/demisting in cold weather:

1. Select  (panel/floor).
2. Select A/C.
3. Adjust the temperature control to maintain comfort.
4. Set the fan speed to the highest setting.
5. Direct the outer instrument panel vents towards the side windows.

To increase airflow to the outer instrument panel vents, close the vents located in the middle of the instrument panel.

## Climate Controls

### REAR WINDOW DEFROSTER (IF EQUIPPED)

The rear defroster control is located on the climate control panel and works to defrost your rear window from fog and thin ice. If equipped, it also operates the heated mirror to remove snow and thin ice from the side mirrors.

Ensure that the ignition is on. Press to turn the defroster on/off. The indicator light will illuminate when activated. For vehicles with a sliding rear window– the defroster will be disabled when the window is opened.

**Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean the inside of the rear window or to remove decals from the inside of the rear window. This may cause damage to the heated grid lines and will not be covered by your warranty.**

### REMOTE START CLIMATE OPERATION (IF EQUIPPED)

The climate control system will condition the cabin temperature during remote start based on the outside temperature. Engine idle may increase to help with adjusting the cabin temperature.

**Note:** No climate control adjustments will be recognized during remote start operation. Once the ignition is cycled to the on position, the climate control system will return to the previous settings (last ignition-on cycle) and adjustments can be made normally. If the previous setting was off, the climate control system will turn off.

### Manual climate control

For hot weather conditions:

- The climate control system will be set to MAX A/C.

For cold weather conditions:

- The climate control system will be set to provide maximum heating in  (floor/defrost) mode.
- Rear defrost/heated mirrors (if equipped) will be activated.

For moderate weather conditions:

- The interior cabin will be heated, cooled or off, based upon the previous operating state (last ignition-on cycle).
- Rear defrost/heated mirrors (if equipped) will be deactivated.

## Climate Controls

### **Automatic climate control**

For hot weather conditions:

- The interior cabin will be cooled to 72°F (22°C).
- The cooled seats (if equipped) will be set to high.

For cold weather conditions:

- The interior cabin will be heated to 72°F (22°C).
- The heated seats (if equipped) will be set to high.
- Rear defrost/heated mirrors (if equipped) will be activated.

For moderate weather conditions:

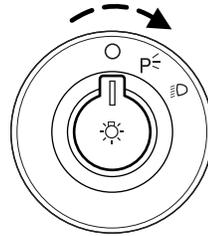
- The interior cabin will be heated, cooled, or off, based upon the previous operating state (last ignition-on cycle).
- Heated/cooled seats (if equipped) will be deactivated.
- Rear defrost/heated mirrors (if equipped) will be deactivated.

## Lights

### HEADLAMP CONTROL

Rotate the headlamp control clockwise to the first position  to turn on the parking lamps.

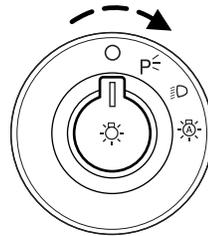
Rotate clockwise to the second position  to also turn on the headlamps.



### Autolamp control (if equipped)

The autolamp system provides light sensitive automatic on-off control of the exterior lights normally controlled by the headlamp control.

- To turn autolamps on, rotate the control to .
- To turn autolamps off, rotate the control from the autolamp position.



**Note:** If the vehicle is equipped with autolamps, it will have the *headlamps on with windshield wipers feature*. If the windshield wipers are turned on, the exterior lamps will turn on with the headlamp control in the autolamp position.

The autolamp system also keeps the lights on for a predetermined amount of time after the ignition switch is turned to off. You can change the amount of time the lamps stay on by using the programming procedure that follows:

#### Autolamps - Programmable exit delay

Programmable exit delay allows the length of the autolamp exit delay to be changed.

To program the auto lamp exit time delay:

1. Start with the ignition in the off position and the headlamp control in the autolamp position.
2. Turn the headlamp control to off.
3. Turn the ignition switch to on and then back to off.

86

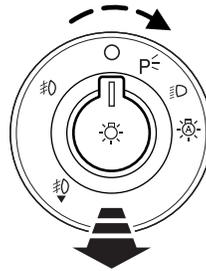
## Lights

4. Turn the headlamp control to the autolamp position. The headlamps will turn on.
5. Wait the desired amount of time for the exit delay you want (up to three minutes), then turn the headlamps off.

### Fog lamp control (if equipped)

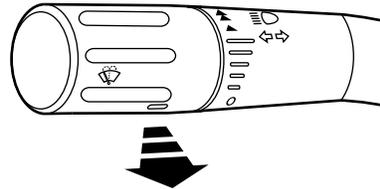
The headlamp control also operates the fog lamps. The fog lamps can be turned on only when the headlamp control is in the ,  or  position and the high beams are not turned on.

Pull headlamp control towards you to turn fog lamps on. The fog lamp indicator light  will illuminate.



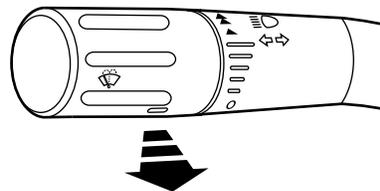
### High beams

Pull the lever fully past the detent to activate. Pull the lever fully again to deactivate.



### Flash-to-pass

Pull toward you slightly to activate and release to deactivate.



## Lights

### Daytime running lamps (DRL) (if equipped)

Turns the headlamps on with a reduced output.

To activate:

- the ignition must be in the on position,
- the headlamp control is in the off or parking lamp position and
- the parking brake must be disengaged.

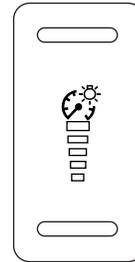


**WARNING:** Always remember to turn on your headlamps at dusk or during inclement weather. The Daytime Running Lamp (DRL) system does not activate the tail lamps and generally may not provide adequate lighting during these conditions. Failure to activate your headlamps under these conditions may result in a collision.

### PANEL DIMMER CONTROL

Use to adjust the brightness of the instrument panel and all applicable lit components in the vehicle during headlamp and parking lamp operation.

- Tap the top or bottom of the control to brighten/dim all interior lit components incrementally, or
- Press and hold at the first position the top or bottom of the control until the desired lighting level is reached.
- Press and hold the top of the control to the full on position to activate the “dome on” feature. This will turn on the interior courtesy lights. The lights will remain on until the bottom of the control is pressed.



### AIMING THE HEADLAMPS

Your vehicle is equipped with an aerodynamic headlamp system. The aerodynamic headlamps can only be aimed in the vertical direction (up/down) using the procedure following. The headlamps on your vehicle are properly aimed at the assembly plant and should not normally need adjustment.

## Lights

### Vertical aim adjustment

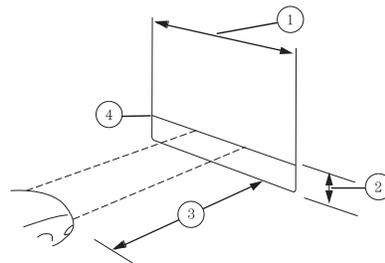
The headlamps on your vehicle can only be vertically adjusted. Your vehicle does not require horizontal aim adjustments.

To adjust the headlamps:

1. Park the vehicle directly in front of a wall or screen on a level surface, approximately 25 feet (7.6 meters) away.

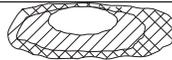
- (1) 8 feet (2.4 meters)
- (2) Center height of lamp to ground
- (3) 25 feet (7.6 meters)
- (4) Horizontal reference line

2. Measure the height from the center of your headlamp (indicated by a 3.0 mm circle on the lens) to the ground and mark an 8 foot (2.4 meter) horizontal reference line on the vertical wall or screen at this height (a piece of masking tape works well).

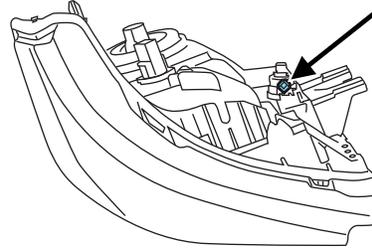


3. Turn on the low beam headlamps to illuminate the wall or screen and open the hood. Cover one of the headlamps so no light from that lamp hits the wall.

4. On the wall or screen you will observe a light pattern with a distinct horizontal edge towards the right. If this edge is not at the horizontal reference line, the beam will need to be adjusted so the edge is at the same height as the horizontal reference line.



5. Locate the vertical adjuster on each headlamp, then use a #2 Philips head to turn the adjuster either counterclockwise (to adjust down) or clockwise (to adjust up) aligning the upper edge of the light pattern up to the horizontal line.



6. Repeat Steps 3–5 for the other headlamp.

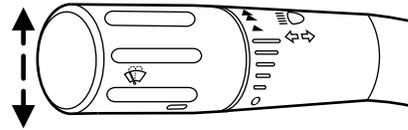
7. Close the hood and turn off the lamps.

## Lights

### TURN SIGNAL CONTROL

The turn signal lever does not mechanically lock in the upward or downward position when activated. The turn signal control activation and cancellation is electronic.

- To operate the left turn signal, push the lever down until it stops and release.
- To operate the right turn signal, push the lever up until it stops and release.
- To manually cancel turn signal operation, push the lever again in either direction.



### Lane change

To indicate a left or right lane change:

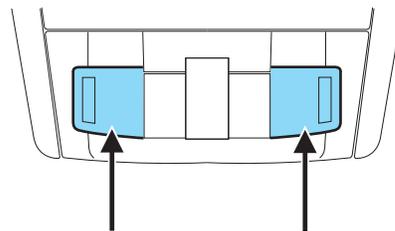
- Push the lever up/down to the first stop position and release. The turn signals will flash three times and stop.
- Push the lever up/down to the first stop position and hold. The turn signals will flash for as long as the lever is held in this position.

### INTERIOR LAMPS

#### Front map lamps (if equipped)

The map lamps are located on the overhead console. Press the controls on either side of each map lamp to turn on the lamps. The map lamps also light when:

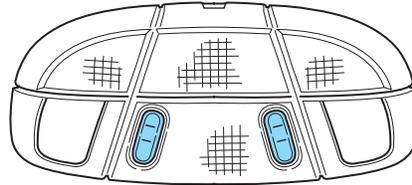
- any door is opened,
- the instrument panel dimmer switch is rotated up until the courtesy lamps come on, and
- any of the remote entry controls are pressed and the ignition is off.



## Lights

### Rear dome/map lamps

Your vehicle may have map lamps within the rear dome lamp. Press the switches on either side of the dome lamp to turn the lamps on.



## BULB REPLACEMENT

### Lamp assembly condensation

Exterior lamps are vented to accommodate normal changes in pressure. Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a thin film of mist can form on the interior of the lens. The thin mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation. Clearing time may take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

Examples of acceptable condensation are:

- Presence of thin mist (no streaks, drip marks or droplets)
- Fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens

Examples of unacceptable moisture (usually caused by a lamp water leak) are:

- Water puddle inside the lamp
- Large water droplets, drip marks or streaks present on the interior of the lens

Take your vehicle to a dealer for service if any of the above conditions of unacceptable moisture are present.

## Lights

### Replacing exterior bulbs

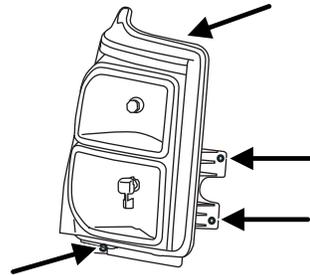
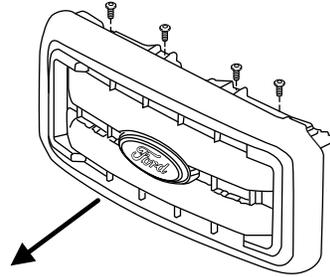
Check the operation of all the bulbs frequently.

Function	Number of bulbs	Trade number
Headlamps	2	H13/9008
Park/Turn lamp	2	3157NA
Sidemarkers	2	W5W
Tail/stop/turn/sidemarkers (pick-up only)	2	3157
Tail/stop/turn/sidemarkers (chassis cabs only; if equipped)	2	3157
Back-up (pick-ups only)	2	921
Back-up (chassis cabs only)	2	3157
High-mount stoplamp	1	922
Fog lamp	2	9145
License plate lamp	2	194
Cargo lamp	2	906
Map lamp	2	12V6W
Dome/reading lamps	3	578
Interior visor lamp (if equipped)	4	194
Mirror turn signal	2	2825
Mirror clearance lamp	2	2825
*Front clearance lamps (2) and front identification lamps (3)	5	194
*Rear fender clearance	4	LED**
*Rear identification	3	193**
To replace all instrument panel lights - see your authorized dealer		
* Dual rear wheels, or if equipped.		
** See your authorized dealer to replace the lamp assembly.		

## Lights

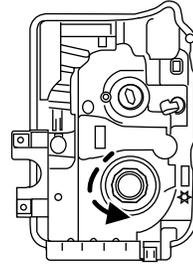
### **Replacing headlamps, park lamps, turn lamps**

1. Make sure that the exterior lamps are off, then open the hood.
2. Using masking tape or a marker, make an alignment mark between one of the grille brackets and the vehicle radiator support to ensure correct grille alignment during re-assembly. Do not scratch the black coating from the radiator support.
3. Remove the two grille to headlamp assembly push pins and the four bolts attaching the top of the grille to the radiator support.
4. Pull the top of the grille forward to gain access to the lower grille spring clips.
5. Depress the spring clips through the lower inner grille access openings using a flat head screwdriver.
6. Pull the grill straight out to remove.
7. Remove the four bolts from the headlamp assembly.
8. Pull the assembly straight out disengaging one snap clip from the fender.
9. Disconnect the electrical connector by squeezing the release tab and pushing the connector forward, then pulling it rearward.

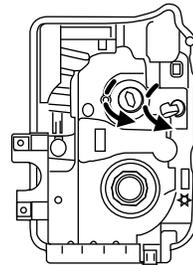


## Lights

10. For the headlamp bulb, remove the bulb by turning it counterclockwise and pulling it straight out.



11. For the park or turn lamp bulb, remove the bulb by turning it counterclockwise and pulling it straight out.

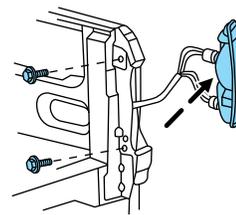


**WARNING:** Handle a halogen headlamp bulb carefully and keep out of children's reach. Grasp the bulb only by its plastic base and do not touch the glass. The oil from your hand could cause the bulb to break the next time the headlamps are operated.

Install the new bulb(s) in reverse order.

### **Replacing brake/tail/turn/back-up lamp bulbs (pick-ups only)**

1. Make sure the headlamps are off, then open the tailgate to expose the lamp assemblies.
2. Remove the two bolts from the tail lamp assembly and carefully pull the lamp assembly from the tailgate pillar by releasing the two retaining tabs.
3. Rotate the bulb socket counterclockwise and remove from lamp assembly.
4. Pull the bulb straight out of the socket.



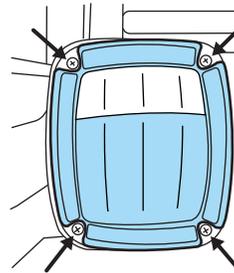
94

## Lights

Install the new bulb(s) in reverse order.

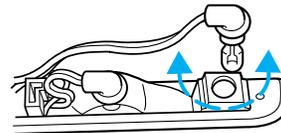
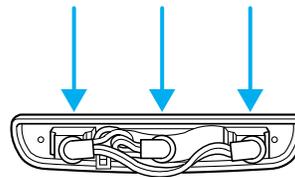
### **Replacing brake/tail/turn/back-up lamp bulbs (chassis cabs only) (if equipped)**

1. Make sure the headlamps are off.
2. Remove the four screws and the lamp lens from lamp assembly.
3. Carefully pull the bulb straight out of the socket and push in the new bulb.



### **Replacing cargo lamp and high-mount brakelamp bulbs**

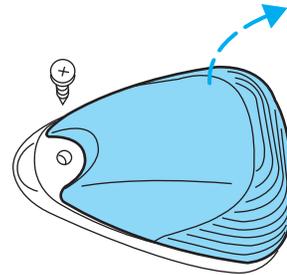
1. Make sure the headlamps are off.
2. Remove the screws and lamp assembly from the vehicle as wiring permits.
3. Remove the bulb socket by rotating it counterclockwise.
4. Pull the bulb straight out of the socket.



## Lights

### **Replacing front clearance and identification lamp bulbs**

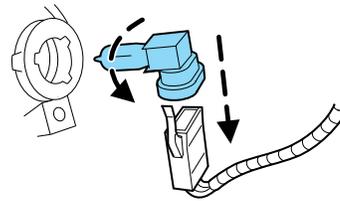
1. Make sure the headlamps are off.
2. Remove the screw and lens from the lamp assembly.
3. Pull the bulb straight out of the socket.



Install the bulb(s) in reverse order.

### **Replacing fog lamp bulbs (if equipped)**

1. Make sure the headlamps are off.
2. Remove the bulb socket from the fog lamp by turning it counterclockwise.
3. Disconnect the electrical connector from the fog lamp bulb.

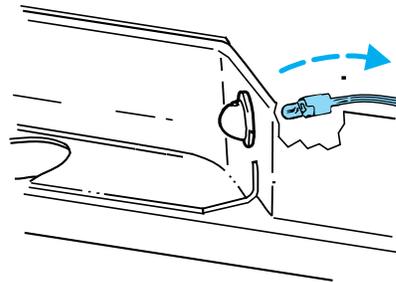


Install the new bulb(s) in reverse order.

### **Replacing license plate lamp bulbs**

The license plate bulbs are located behind the rear bumper. To change the license plate lamp bulbs:

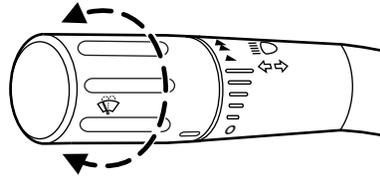
1. Reach behind the rear bumper to locate the bulb.
2. Twist the bulb socket counterclockwise and carefully pull to remove it from the lamp assembly.
3. Pull out the old bulb from the socket and push in the new bulb.
4. Install the bulb socket in lamp assembly by turning it clockwise.



## Driver Controls

### MULTI-FUNCTION LEVER

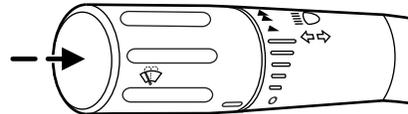
**Windshield wiper:** Rotate the end of the control away from you to increase the speed of the wipers; rotate towards you to decrease the speed of the wipers.



**Speed dependent wipers:** When the wiper control is set on the intermittent settings, the speed of the wipers will automatically adjust with the vehicle speed. The faster your vehicle is travelling the faster the wipers will go.

**Windshield washer:** Press the end of the stalk:

- briefly: causes a single swipe of the wipers without washer fluid.
- a quick press and hold: the wipers will swipe three times with washer fluid.
- a long press and hold: the wipers and washer fluid will be activated for up to 10 seconds.



**Courtesy wipe feature:** One extra wipe will occur a few seconds after washing the front window to clear any excess washer fluid remaining on the windshield.

**Note:** Do not operate the washer when the washer reservoir is empty. This may cause the washer pump to overheat. Check the washer fluid level frequently. Do not operate the wipers when the windshield is dry. This may scratch the glass, damage the wiper blades and cause the wiper motor to burn out. Before operating the wiper on a dry windshield, always use the windshield washer. In freezing weather, be sure the wiper blades are not frozen to the windshield before operating the wipers.

### Windshield wiper rainlamp feature (if equipped with autolamp)

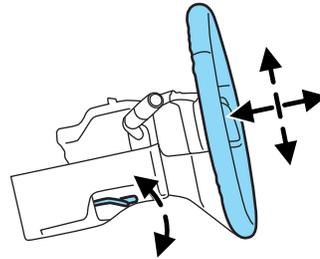
When the windshield wipers are turned on during daylight, and the headlamp control is in the autolamp position, the exterior lamps will turn on after a brief delay and will remain on until the wipers are turned off.

## Driver Controls

### TILT/TELESCOPE STEERING WHEEL

To adjust the steering wheel:

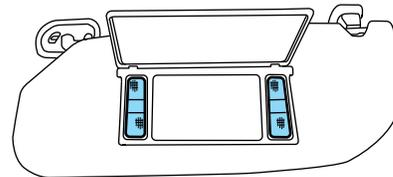
1. Pull the lever down to unlock the steering column.
2. While the lever is in the down position, move the steering wheel up or down and in or out until you find the desired position.
3. While holding the steering wheel in place, pull the lever up to its original position to lock the steering column.



**WARNING:** Never adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is moving.

### ILLUMINATED VISOR MIRROR (IF EQUIPPED)

Lift the mirror cover to turn on the visor mirror lamp.



### OVERHEAD CONSOLE (IF EQUIPPED)

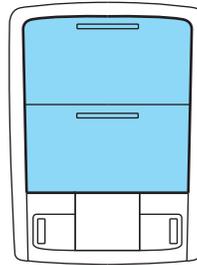
The appearance of your vehicle's overhead console will vary according to your option package.

## Driver Controls

### Storage compartment (if equipped)

Press the release tab on the rear edge of the bin door to open the storage compartment. The door will open to the full open position.

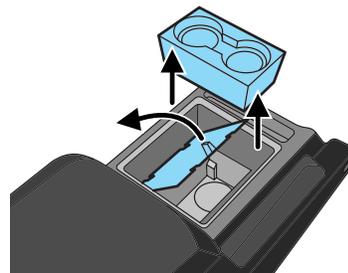
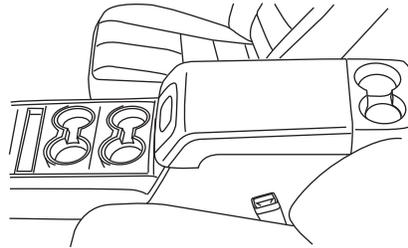
The storage compartment may be used to secure sunglasses or a similar object.



### CENTER CONSOLE (IF EQUIPPED)

Your vehicle may be equipped with a variety of console features. These include:

- Locking storage compartment with hanging file folder supports
- Storage for laptop computer, binder or book between the hanging file folder support and the passenger side of the console bin
- One 12V power point inside the storage compartment and one on the rear of the console
- 110V AC power point outlet on the rear of the console
- Rear cupholders
- Removable cupholders
- Hidden storage compartment (false bottom in storage area under cupholders) that can also be used to hold very large cups



## Driver Controls



**WARNING:** Use only soft cups in the cupholder. Hard objects can injure you in a collision.

### AUXILIARY POWER POINT (12V DC)

**Power outlets are designed for accessory plugs only. Do not insert any other object in the power outlet for this will damage the outlet and blow the fuse. Do not hang any type of accessory or accessory bracket from the plug. Improper use of the power outlet can cause damage not covered by your warranty.**

Auxiliary power points can be found in the following locations:

- On the instrument panel (two locations)
- Inside the center console storage compartment (if equipped)
- On the rear of the center console (if equipped)
- Inside the 20-percent front seat console (if equipped)
- Inside the rear under seat storage compartment (if equipped)

Do not use the power point for operating the cigarette lighter element (if equipped).

**Note:** Do not plug optional electrical accessories into the cigarette lighter socket (if equipped). Improper use of the lighter can cause damage not covered by your warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.

To prevent the fuse from being blown, do not use the power point(s) over the vehicle capacity of 12V DC/180W. If the power point or cigar lighter socket is not working, a fuse may have blown. Refer to *Fuses and relays* in the *Roadside Emergencies* chapter for information on checking and replacing fuses.

To have full capacity usage of your power point, the engine is required to be running to avoid unintentional discharge of the battery. To prevent the battery from being discharged:

- do not use the power point longer than necessary when the engine is not running,
- do not leave battery chargers, video game adapters, computers and other devices plugged in overnight or when the vehicle is parked for extended periods.

Always keep the power point caps closed when not being used.

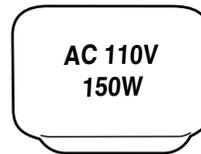
### Power point (110V AC) (if equipped)

The 110V AC power point outlet is used for powering electrical devices that require up to 150W. Exceeding the 150W limit will cause the power point to cut off the power temporarily to provide overload protection.

100

## Driver Controls

**Note:** The 110V AC power point is equipped with a cap which provides protection from inserting objects into the socket. The cap should always be in a closed position whenever the power point outlet is not in use.



The 110V AC power point is located on the back of the center console.

The power outlet is not designed for the following electric appliances; they may not work properly:

- Cathode ray tube type televisions
- Motor loads, such as vacuum cleaners, electric saws and other electric power tools, compressor-driven refrigerators, etc.
- Measuring devices, which process precise data, such as medical equipment, measuring equipment, etc.
- Other appliances requiring an extremely stable power supply: microcomputer-controlled electric blankets, touch sensor lamps, etc.



**WARNING:** Do not keep electrical devices plugged in the power point whenever the device is not in use. Do not use any extension cord with the 110V AC power point, since it will defeat the safety protection design provided by the cap and twist tab. Doing so may cause the power point to overload due to powering multiple devices that can reach beyond the 150W load limit and could result in fire or serious injury.

The power point can switch to a fault mode when it is overloaded, overheated, or shorted. For overloading and shorting conditions, unplug your device and turn the ignition key off then on. For an overheating condition, let the system cool off, then turn the ignition key off then on. The 110V AC power point can provide power whenever the vehicle ignition is in the on position and the power point green indicator light located in the top left corner is turned on. Refer to the indicator light code below for the power point status.

### Indicator light codes

Green light is on — Power point is ready to supply power

Green light is off — Power point power supply is off. Ignition is not in the on position

## Driver Controls

Green light is blinking — Power point is in fault mode

**Note:** The 110V AC power point will turn off after 13 minutes if the ignition is in the on position without the engine running. Keep the engine running or cycle the ignition before the 13 minute time-out to keep the inverter on.

### POWER WINDOWS (IF EQUIPPED)



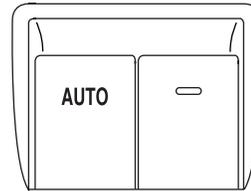
**WARNING:** Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle and do not let children play with the power windows. They may seriously injure themselves.



**WARNING:** When closing the power windows, you should verify they are free of obstructions and ensure that children and/or pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.

Press and pull the window switches to open and close windows.

- Press down (to the first detent) and hold the switch to open.
- Pull up (to the first detent) and hold the switch to close.



**Rear Window Buffeting:** When one or both of the rear windows are open, the vehicle may demonstrate a wind throb or buffeting noise. This noise can be alleviated by lowering a front window approximately 2–3 in. (5–8 cm).

### One-touch down

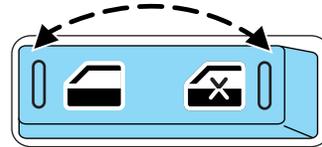
Allows the driver's window to open fully without holding the control down. Press the switch completely down to the second detent and release quickly. The window will open fully. Momentarily press the switch to any position to stop the window operation.

## Driver Controls

### Window lock (if equipped)

The window lock feature allows only the driver to operate the power windows.

To lock out all the window controls (except for the driver's) press the right side of the control. Press the left side to restore the window controls.

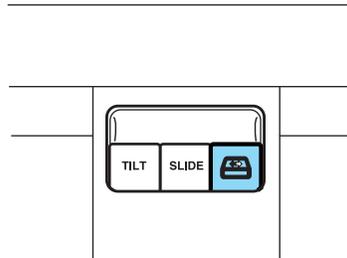


### Power sliding back window (if equipped)

The control is located on the overhead console.

Press and hold the  control to open the window all the way to the full open position.

Pull and hold the  control to close the window.



**WARNING:** When operating the power sliding back window you must ensure all rear seat occupants and/or cargo are not in the proximity of the back window.



**WARNING:** Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle and do not let children play with the power sliding back window. They may seriously injure themselves.

### Accessory delay

With accessory delay, the window switches may be used for up to 10 minutes after the ignition switch is turned to the off position or until either front door is opened.

### INTERIOR MIRROR

The interior rear view mirror has two pivot points on the support arm which lets you adjust the mirror up or down and from side to side.

## Driver Controls



**WARNING:** Do not adjust the mirror while the vehicle is in motion.

### Automatic dimming interior rear view mirror (if equipped)

The interior rear view mirror has an auto-dimming function. The electronic day/night mirror will change from the normal (high reflective) state to the non-glare (darkened) state when bright lights (glare) reach the mirror. When the mirror detects bright light from behind the vehicle, it will automatically adjust (darken) to minimize glare.

The mirror will automatically return to the normal state whenever the vehicle is placed in R (Reverse) to ensure a bright clear view when backing up.

**Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the interior rear view mirror since this may impair proper mirror performance.**

**Note:** A rear center passenger and/or raised rear center headrest (if equipped) may also block the light from reaching the sensor.

**Do not clean the housing or glass of any mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.**

**Note:** If equipped with a rearview camera system, a video image will display in the mirror or the navigation system display (if equipped) when the vehicle is put in R (Reverse). As you shift into any other gear from R (Reverse), the image will remain for a few seconds and then turn off. Refer to *Rearview camera system* in the *Driving* chapter.

## EXTERIOR MIRRORS

### Power side view mirrors (if equipped)

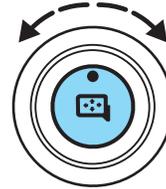


**WARNING:** Do not adjust the mirror while the vehicle is in motion.

## Driver Controls

To adjust your mirrors:

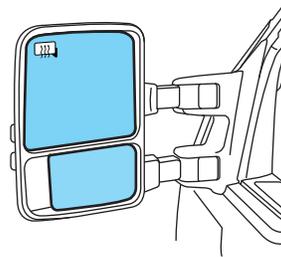
1. Rotate the control clockwise to adjust the right mirror and rotate the control counterclockwise to adjust the left mirror.
2. Move the control in the direction you wish to tilt the mirror.
3. Return to the center position to lock mirrors in place.



The spotter mirror below the main glass (if equipped) must be adjusted manually.

### Heated outside mirrors (if equipped)

The main mirror glass and lower convex spotter mirror are heated to remove ice, mist and fog. To activate the heated mirrors, press the heated mirror control  located on the climate control panel.



**Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or attempt to re-adjust the mirror glass if it is frozen in place.**

**These actions could cause damage to the glass and mirrors.**

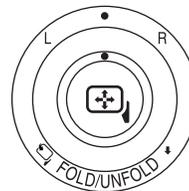
**Do not clean the housing or glass of any mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.**

### Fold-away mirrors

Fold the side mirrors in carefully before driving through a narrow space, like an automatic car wash.

### Powerfold mirrors (if equipped)

You can fold the side mirrors simultaneously using the power mirror switch.

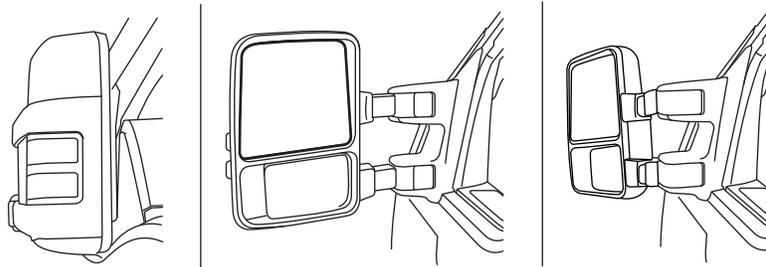


## Driver Controls

To operate the powerfold mirrors:

1. Rotate the switch to the center/neutral position.
2. Momentarily pull the switch rearward to auto fold in.
3. Momentarily pull the switch rearward again to fold back to design position.

**Note:** When powerfolding the mirrors, it is normal to hear the sound of the motors.



Powerfold mirror positions, from left to right: Position 1, Position 2, Position 3

The powerfold mirrors may be folded forward/rearward manually to any of the three positions shown and electrically to positions 1 and 2 only. If a mirror is folded manually forward to position 3, you must manually fold it back to position 1 or 2 in order for the powerfold function to continue functioning. **Note:** Although it is possible to electrically fold the mirror from position 3 to 2, it was not designed for this functionality and may not always work under all conditions.

**Note:** Ten or more switch activations within one minute, or repeated fold/unfolding of the mirrors while holding the switch rearward during the full travel may cause the system to disable the fold/unfold function to protect the motors from overheating. Should this occur, wait approximately 3½ minutes for the system to reset and function to return to normal.

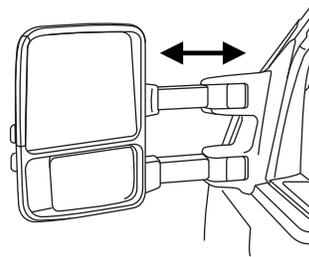
**Note:** The powerfold mirrors are designed to operate while the vehicle is stationary or traveling at moderate speeds. If you attempt to powerfold the mirrors at high speeds, they may not fully fold forward/rearward - slow down and powerfold or manually fold the mirrors in order to complete the fold operation.

## Driver Controls

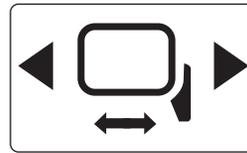
**Note:** If the power fold/telescope mirror glass appears loose or vibrates when driving, it is possible that the mirrors have been manually folded or telescoped. To minimize the vibration, ensure that the mirrors are electronically folded and telescoped in/out with the switches on the door trim panel. If the power fold mirrors are out of sync, electronically powerfold the mirrors to re-sync the motors. This will cause a loud “click” and the mirrors will jerk during re-synchronization. This is normal.

### Telescoping mirrors (if equipped)

The telescoping feature allows the mirror to extend approximately 2.75 inches (70 mm). This feature is especially useful to the driver when towing a trailer. Mirrors can be manually pulled out or pushed in to the desired telescopic position.



If equipped with PowerScope™ power telescoping mirrors, you can simultaneously position both mirrors using the power telescope switch found on the door trim panel.



- To telescope the mirrors outboard, press and hold the left side of the power telescope switch until the mirrors reach their desired position. When the end of travel is reached, it is normal to hear the power telescoping motors running as long as you continue to hold the switch.
- To telescope the mirrors inboard, press and hold the right side of the power telescope switch until the mirrors reach their desired position.

### Memory mirrors (if equipped)

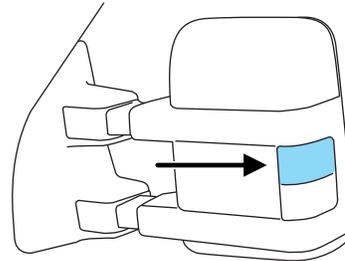
This system allows automatic positioning of the outside rearview mirrors. For more information on this feature, refer to *Memory seats/power mirrors/adjustable pedals* in the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter.

## Driver Controls

### Mirror-mounted side turn signal indicator (if equipped)

When the vehicle turn signals are activated, the outer portion of the mirror housing will blink amber.

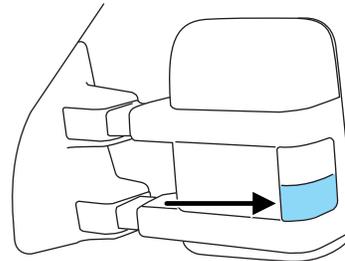
The turn signal feature can be seen by other drivers who may approach from the rear of the vehicle.



### Clearance lamps (if equipped)

Illuminates when the headlamps or parking lamps are switched on.

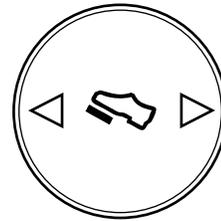
This provides additional visibility of your vehicle to other drivers on the road.



### POWER ADJUSTABLE FOOT PEDALS (IF EQUIPPED)

The accelerator and brake pedal should only be adjusted when the vehicle is stopped and the gearshift lever is in the P (Park) position.

The control is located on the left side of the steering column. Press and hold the rear of the control to move the pedals toward you. Press and hold the front of the control to move the pedals away from you.



**WARNING:** Never adjust the accelerator and brake pedal with feet on the pedals while the vehicle is moving.

## Driver Controls

The accelerator and brake pedal positions are saved when doing a memory set function and can be recalled along with the vehicle personality features when a memory position is selected. Refer to *Memory seats/power mirrors/adjustable pedals* in the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter.

### SPEED CONTROL (IF EQUIPPED)

With speed control set, you can maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal.



**WARNING:** Do not use the speed control in heavy traffic or on roads that are winding, slippery or unpaved.

### Using speed control

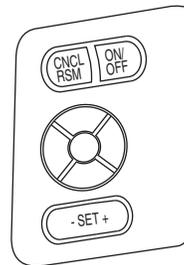
The speed controls are located on the steering wheel.

#### **CNCL (Cancel)/RSM (Resume):**

Press to cancel or resume a set speed.

**ON/OFF:** Press to turn the system on or off.

– **SET +:** Press to set a speed or to decrease or increase a set speed.



The speed control system uses two  indicator lights in the instrument cluster:

- an amber indicator light which illuminates when the system is on, and
- a green indicator light which illuminates when the system is engaged.

### **Setting speed control**

To set speed control:

1. Press and release ON.
2. Accelerate to the desired speed.
3. Press and release SET +.
4. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.
5. The green indicator light  on the instrument cluster will turn on.

## Driver Controls

**Note:**

- Vehicle speed may vary momentarily when driving up and down a steep hill.
- If the vehicle speed increases above the set speed on a downhill, you may want to apply the brakes to reduce the speed.
- If the vehicle speed decreases more than 10 mph (16 km/h) below your set speed on an uphill, your speed control will disengage.

***Disengaging a set speed***

To disengage speed control, tap the brake pedal or press and release CNCL.

Disengaging the speed control will not erase the previous set speed.

***Resuming a set speed***

Press and release RSM. This will automatically return the vehicle to the previously set speed.

***Increasing speed while using speed control***

To increase the set speed:

- Press and hold SET + until you get to the desired speed, then release. You can also use SET + to operate the tap-up function. Press and release SET + to increase the vehicle set speed in 1 mph (1.6 km/h) increments.
- Use the accelerator pedal to get to the desired speed then press and release SET +.

***Reducing speed while using speed control***

To reduce a set speed:

- Press and hold SET – until you get to the desired speed, then release. You can also use SET – to operate the tap-down function. Press and release SET – to decrease the vehicle set speed in 1 mph (1.6 km/h) increments.
- Press the brake pedal until the desired vehicle speed is reached then press and release SET +.

***Turning off speed control***

To turn off the speed control, press OFF or turn off the ignition.

**Note:** When you turn off the speed control or the ignition, your speed control set speed memory is erased.

110

## Driver Controls

### STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS (IF EQUIPPED)

#### Audio control features

**MEDIA:** Press repeatedly to scroll through available audio modes.

**◀◀ SEEK ▶▶:** Press to select the previous/next radio station preset or CD track (if equipped). Press and hold to select the previous/next radio station frequency or to reverse/forward a CD.

**+ VOL – (Volume):** Press to increase or decrease the volume.

#### Navigation system hands free control features (if equipped)

Press and hold VOICE briefly until the voice  icon appears on the navigation display to use the voice command feature.

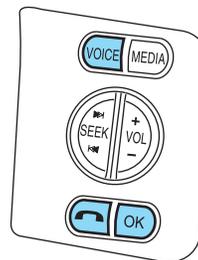
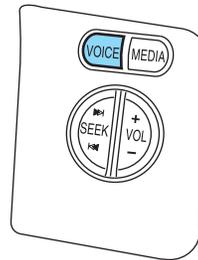
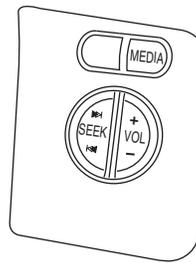
Press VOICE to complete a voice command.

For further information on the Navigation system, refer to the *Navigation System* supplement.

#### SYNC® system hands free control feature (if equipped)

Press VOICE briefly until the voice  icon appears on the display to use the voice command feature. You will hear a tone and LISTENING will appear in the radio display. Press and hold VOICE to exit voice command.

Press  to activate phone mode or answer a phone call. Press and hold  to end call or exit phone mode.



## Driver Controls

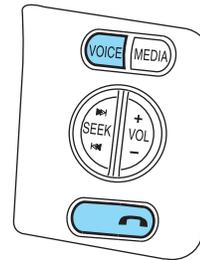
Press   to scroll through various menus and selections. Press OK to confirm your selection.

For further information on the SYNC® system, refer to the *SYNC®* supplement.

### Navigation system/SYNC® hands free control features (if equipped)

Press VOICE briefly until the voice  icon appears on the navigation display to use the voice command feature.

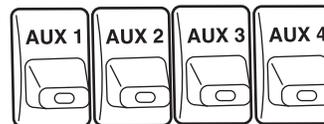
Press  to activate phone mode or answer a phone call. Press and hold  to exit phone mode or end call.



For further information on the Navigation system/SYNC® system, refer to the *Navigation System* and *SYNC®* supplements.

### UPFITTER CONTROLS (IF EQUIPPED)

Your vehicle may be equipped with the Upfitter option package which will provide four switches, mounted in the center of the instrument panel, labeled AUX 1, AUX 2, AUX 3 and AUX 4. These switches will only operate while the ignition is in the on position, whether the engine is



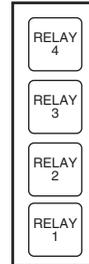
running or not. It is, however, recommended that the engine remain running to maintain battery charge when using the Upfitter switches for extended duration or higher current draws. (This is even more important for vehicles with diesel engines since the glow plugs are also draining battery power when the ignition key is in the on position.)

When switched on by the operator they provide 8 amps, 12 amps or 20 amps of electrical battery power for a variety of personal or commercial uses.

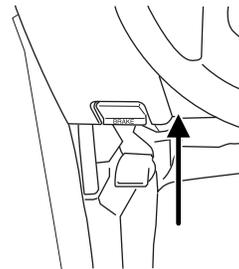
If your vehicle is equipped with this option, there will also be a relay box located on the driver side end of the instrument panel. See your authorized dealer for service.

## Driver Controls

The relays are coded as shown in the accompanying illustration.



There will also be one power lead for each switch found as a blunt-cut and sealed wire located below the instrument panel and to the left of the steering column.



They are coded as follows:

Switch	Circuit number	Wire color	Fuse
AUX 1	CAC05	Yellow	25A
AUX 2	CAC06	Green with Brown Trace	25A
AUX 3	CAC07	Violet with Green Trace	10A
AUX 4	CAC08	Brown	15A

More detailed information about Upfitter switches can be found at <https://www.fleet.ford.com/truckbbas/>.

### MOON ROOF (IF EQUIPPED)

The moon roof control is located on the overhead console.



**WARNING:** Do not let children play with the moon roof or leave children unattended in the vehicle. They may seriously hurt themselves.

## Driver Controls

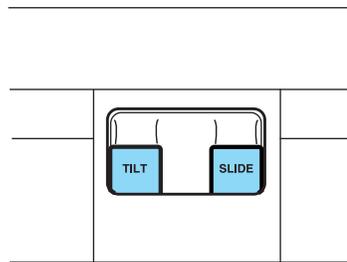


**WARNING:** When closing the moon roof, you should verify that it is free of obstructions and ensure that children and/or pets are not in the proximity of the moon roof opening.

The moon roof is equipped with an automatic, one-touch, express opening and closing feature. To stop motion at any time during the one-touch operation, press the control a second time.

**To open the moon roof:** Press and release the SLIDE control, the moon roof will open automatically. Press the switch again to stop the moon roof.

**To close the moon roof:** Pull and release the SLIDE control, the moon roof will close automatically. Press the switch again to stop the moon roof.



**Bounce-back:** When an obstacle has been detected in the moon roof opening as the moon roof is closing, the moon roof will automatically open and stop at a prescribed position.

**Bounce-back override:** To override bounce-back function, pull and hold the SLIDE switch within two seconds of a bounce-back event. The closing force will begin to increase each time the moon roof is closed for the first three closing cycles, with bounce-back active. For example: Bounce-back can be used to overcome the resistance of ice on the moon roof or seals

**To vent the moon roof:** Press and release the TILT control, the moon roof will move to the vent position automatically from any moon roof position. Press the switch again to stop the moon roof. Pull and hold the TILT control to close the moon roof.

The moon roof has a built-in sliding shade that can be manually opened or closed when the glass panel is shut. To close the shade, pull it toward the front of the vehicle.

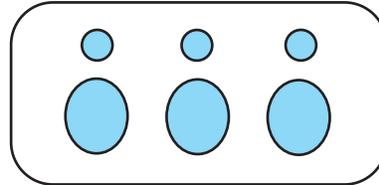
### UNIVERSAL GARAGE DOOR OPENER (IF EQUIPPED)

Your vehicle may be equipped with a universal garage door opener which can be used to replace the common hand-held transmitter.

## Driver Controls

### Car2U® Home Automation System (if equipped)

The Car2U® Home Automation System is a universal transmitter located in the driver's visor that includes two primary features – a garage door opener and a platform for remote activation of devices within the home. The Car2U® system's garage door opener function replaces the common hand-held garage door opener with a three-button transmitter that is integrated into the interior of your vehicle. After being programmed for garage doors, the Car2U® system transmitter can be programmed to operate security devices and home lighting systems.



**WARNING:** Make sure that people and objects are clear of the garage door or security device you are programming. Do not program the Car2U® system with the vehicle in the garage.

Do not use the Car2U® system with any garage door opener that lacks safety stop and reverse features as required by U.S. Federal Safety Standards (this includes any garage door opener manufactured before April 1, 1982).

Be sure to keep the original remote control transmitter for use in other vehicles as well as for future Car2U® system programming. It is also recommended that upon the sale or lease termination of the vehicle, the programmed Car2U® system buttons should be erased for security reasons. Refer to *Erasing the Car2U® Home Automation System buttons* later in this section.

Read the instructions completely before attempting to program the Car2U® system. Because of the steps involved, it may be helpful to have another person assist you in programming the transmitter.

Additional Car2U® system information can be found on-line at [www.learcar2U.com](http://www.learcar2U.com) or by calling the toll-free Car2U® system help line at 1-866-572-2728.

#### **Types of garage door openers (rolling code and fixed code)**

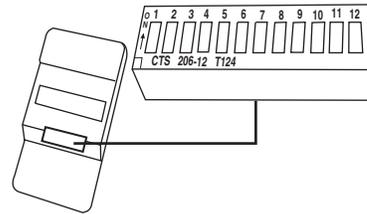
The Car2U® Home Automation System may be programmed to operate rolling code and fixed code garage door openers.

- Rolling code garage door openers were produced after 1996 and are code protected. Rolling code means the coded signal is changed every time your remote control garage door opener is used.

## Driver Controls

- Fixed code garage door openers were produced prior to 1996. Fixed code uses the same coded signal every time. It is manually programmed by setting DIP switches for a unique personal code.

If you do not know if your garage door opener is a rolling code or fixed code device, open your garage door opener's remote control battery cover. If a panel of DIP switches is present your garage door opener is a fixed code device. If not, your garage door opener is a rolling code device.



**Note:** Programming the Car2U® system to a community gate will require a unique set of instructions depending on the gate system model. Contact the Car2U® help line at 1-866-572-2728 to program your Car2U® system.

**Note:** Accidentally entering the program mode may override previously programmed buttons. This can happen by pressing and releasing the outer two buttons, or all three buttons, simultaneously. If this happens, do not press any button until the module times out after approximately 2.5 seconds and resets to normal mode. When time-out occurs, all three LEDs will flash rapidly for a few seconds then turn off. Any settings should remain as previously set.

### ***Rolling code programming***

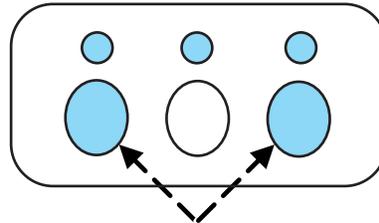
**Note:** Programming the rolling code garage door opener involves time-sensitive actions. Read the entire procedure prior to beginning so you will know which actions are time-sensitive. If you do not follow the time-sensitive actions, the device will time out and you will have to repeat the procedure.

**Note:** Do not program the Car2U® system with the vehicle in the garage.

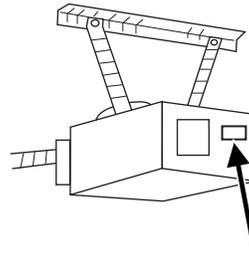
Make sure that your key is on and engine off while programming the transmitter.

## Driver Controls

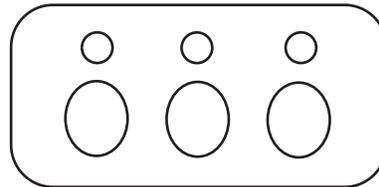
1. Firmly press the two outer Car2U® system buttons for 1–2 seconds, then release.



2. Go to the garage to locate the garage door opener motor and its “learn” button. You may need a ladder to reach the unit and you may need to remove the unit’s cover or light lens to locate the “learn” button. Press the “learn” button, after which you will have 10–30 seconds to return to your vehicle and complete the following steps. If you cannot locate the “learn” button, refer to the Owner’s Guide of your garage door opener or call the toll-free Car2U® system help line at 1-866-57Car2U (1-866-572-2728).



3. Return to your vehicle. Press and hold the Car2U® system button you would like to use to control the garage door. You may need to hold the button from 5–20 seconds, during which time the selected button indicator light will blink slowly. Immediately (within 1 second) release the button once the garage door moves. When the button is released, the indicator light will begin to blink rapidly until programming is complete.



4. Press and release the button again. The garage door should move, confirming that programming is successful. If your garage door does not operate, repeat the previous steps in this section.

## Driver Controls

After successful programming, you will be able to operate your Car2U® system by pressing the button you programmed to activate the opener. The indicator light above the selected button will turn on to confirm that the Car2U® system is responding to the button command.

To program another rolling code device such as an additional garage door opener, a security device or home lighting, repeat Steps 1 through 4 substituting a different function button in Step 3 than what you used for the garage door opener. For example, you could assign the left-most button to the garage door, the center button to a security device, and the right-most button to another garage door opener.

**Note:** The Car2U® system allows for three devices to be programmed. If you need to change or replace any of the three devices after it has been initially programmed, it is necessary to erase the current settings using the *Erasing the Car2U® Home Automation System buttons* procedure and then programming all of the devices being used.

### Fixed code programming

**Note:** Do not program the Car2U® system with the vehicle in the garage.

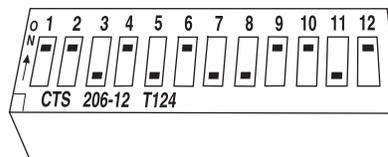
Make sure that your key is on and engine off while programming the transmitter.

1. To program units with fixed code DIP switches, you will need the garage door hand-held transmitter, paper and a pen or pencil.
2. Open the battery cover and record the switch settings from left to right for all 8 to 12 switches. Use the figure below:

When a switch is in the up, on, or + position, circle “L.”

When a switch is in the middle, neutral, or 0 position, circle “M.”

When a switch is in the down, off, or – position, circle “R.”

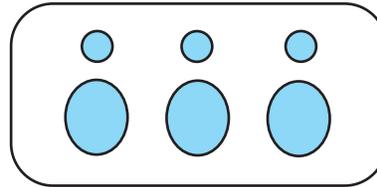


## Driver Controls

Switch position	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
Up, on or +	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L
Middle, neutral or 0	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M
Down, off or -	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R

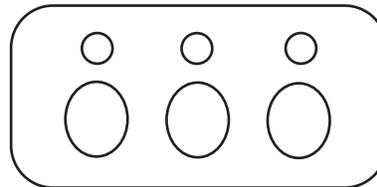
L=left; M=middle; R=right

3. To input these positions into the Car2U® system, simultaneously press all three Car2U® system buttons for a few seconds and then release to put the device into programming mode. The indicator lights will blink slowly. Within 2.5 minutes enter your corresponding DIP switch settings from left to right into your Car2U® system by pressing and releasing the buttons corresponding to the settings you circled.



4. After inputting switch settings, simultaneously press and release all three Car2U® system buttons. The indicator lights will turn on.

5. Press and hold the Car2U® system button you would like to use to control the garage door. Immediately (within 1 second) release the button once the garage door moves. During this time the selected button indicator light will blink slowly. Do not release the button until you see the garage door move. Most garage doors open quickly. You may need to hold the button from 5–55 seconds before observing movement of the garage door.



6. The indicator light will (begin to) blink rapidly until programming is complete. If your garage door opener does not operate following these steps, repeat Steps 2 through 6. Otherwise, call the toll-free Car2U® help line at 1-866-57Car2U (1-866-572-2728).

## Driver Controls

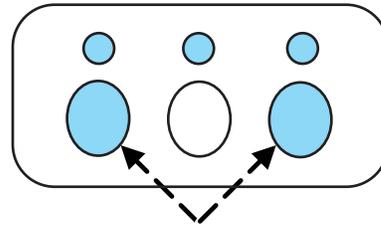
After successful programming, you will be able to operate your Car2U® system by pressing the button you programmed to activate the opener. The indicator light above the selected button will turn on to confirm that the Car2U® system is responding to the button command.

### **Erasing the Car2U® Home Automation System buttons**

**Note:** The system allows for three devices to be programmed. If you need to change or replace any of the three devices after it has been initially programmed, it will be necessary to erase the current settings using the procedure below and then reprogramming all of the devices being used.

To erase programming on the Car2U® system (individual buttons cannot be erased), use the following procedure:

1. Firmly press the two outside Car2U® system buttons simultaneously for approximately 20 seconds until the indicator lights begin to blink rapidly. The indicator lights are located directly above the buttons.
2. Once the indicator lights begin to blink, release your fingers from the buttons. The codes for all buttons are erased.



If you sell your vehicle equipped with the Car2U® system, it is recommended that you erase the programming for security reasons.

### **FCC and RSS-210 Industry Canada Compliance**

The Car2U® system complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received including interference that may cause undesired operation.

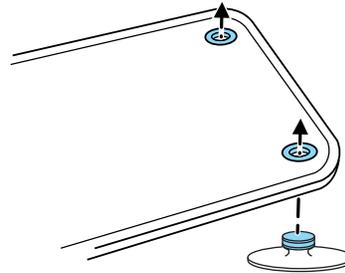
Changes and modifications to the Car2U® system transmitter by other than an authorized service facility could void authorization to use the equipment.

## Driver Controls

### POSITIVE RETENTION FLOOR MAT (IF EQUIPPED)

**WARNING:** Do not install additional floor mats on top of the factory installed floor mats as they may interfere with the accelerator or the brake pedals.

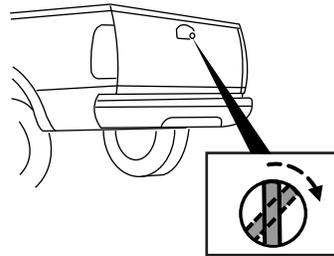
Position the floor mat so that the eyelets are over the retention posts and press down to lock in. Make sure that the mat does not interfere with the operation of the accelerator or the brake pedal. To remove the floor mat, reverse the installation procedure.



### TAILGATE LOCK (IF EQUIPPED)

Your vehicle may be equipped with a tailgate lock designed to help prevent theft of the tailgate.

- Insert ignition key and turn to the right to engage lock.
- Turn ignition key to the left to unlock.



### Tailgate removal

Your tailgate is removable to allow more room for loading.

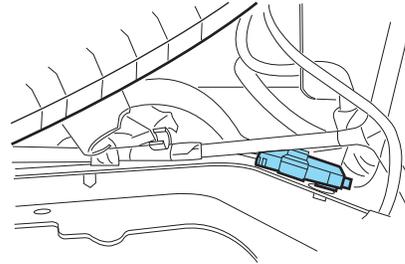
**WARNING:** Always properly secure cargo to prevent shifting cargo or cargo falling from vehicle, which could result in compromised vehicle stability and serious personal injury to vehicle occupants or others.

**Note:** If equipped with a rearview camera system, do Steps 1 through 3 before removing the tailgate.

## Driver Controls

1. Before removal of the tailgate, locate and disconnect the tailgate in-line connector under the pickup box on the passenger side of the vehicle near the spare tire.

2. Install a protective cap (tethered to the wire assembly) onto the in-line rearview camera system connector that remains under the pickup box.



3. Partially lower tailgate and carefully feed tailgate harness up through the gap between the pickup box and the bumper. Place the tailgate harness out of the way under the pickup box.

4. Lower the tailgate.

5. Using a screwdriver, gently pry the spring clip (on each connector) past the head of the support screw. Disconnect cable.



6. Disconnect the other cable.

7. Lift tailgate to a 45-degree angle from horizontal.

8. Lift right side off of its hinge.

9. Lift tailgate to a 80-degree angle from horizontal.

10. Remove tailgate from left side hinge by sliding tailgate to the right.

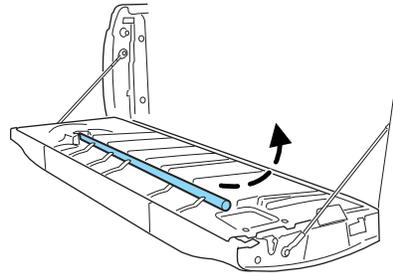
To install, follow the removal procedures in reverse order.

## Driver Controls

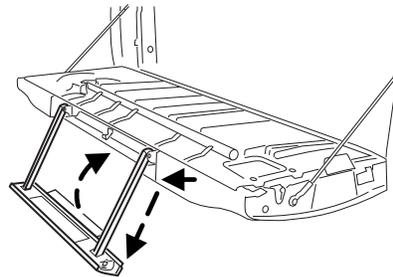
### Tailgate step (if equipped)

Your vehicle may be equipped with a feature that allows easier entry into the truck bed. To open the tailgate step:

1. Flip down the tailgate.
2. Pull the yellow latch lever to the unlock position (🔓) to release the grab handle from its stowed position and raise the handle upright until you feel it latch and see the latch lever in the lock position (🔒). The yellow lever only needs to be used when releasing the grab handle.



3. Rotate the center molding to unlatch the tailgate step and pull it towards you to extend it.
4. Flip open the step panel to widen the step.



**Note:** To reduce risk of falling:

- Operate step only when the vehicle is on level surface.
- Operate step only in areas with sufficient lighting
- Always open flip panel to widen step.
- Always use grab handle when stepping up and down.
- Step not intended for bare-footed use.
- Keep step clean from contamination before use (e.g. snow, mud)
- Keep the step load (you + load) below 350 lb (159 kg).
- Never drive with step deployed.

To close the tailgate step:

1. Close the step panel, then lift and fully close the tailgate step into the tailgate.
2. Slide the latch at the bottom of the handle, then lower the handle.

## Driver Controls

**Note:**

- Fully close and latch the tailgate step before moving the vehicle.
- Never drive with the step or grab handle deployed.
- Replace slip resistance tape (serviceable item) if worn out.
- Replace handle molding (serviceable item) if damaged.
- Do not tow with grab handle or step frame.

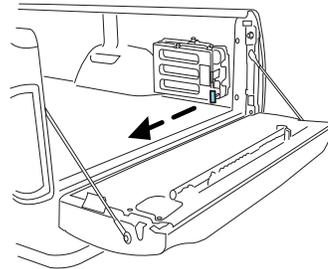
**Bed extender (if equipped)**

Your vehicle may be equipped with a cargo management feature in the truck bed.

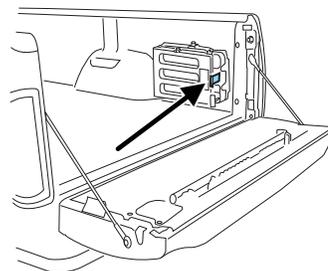
**Note:** This feature is not intended for off-road usage.

To open the bed extender into tailgate mode:

1. Pull the locking pin toward the center of the vehicle.

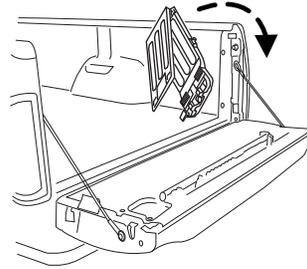


2. Open the latches to release the panels.

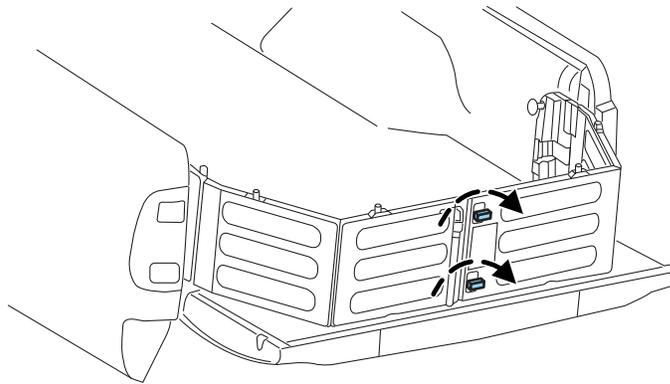


## Driver Controls

3. Rotate the panels toward the tailgate.



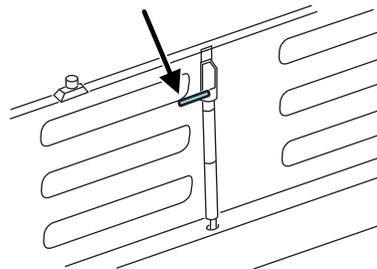
Repeat Steps 1–3 for the other side of the bed extender.



4. Connect the two panels, then rotate both knobs a quarter-turn clockwise to secure the panels.

5. Ensure the latch rod is inserted into the tailgate hole and the locking pins on both sides are engaged into their holes in the pick-up box.

6. Reverse steps for storage of the bed extender.



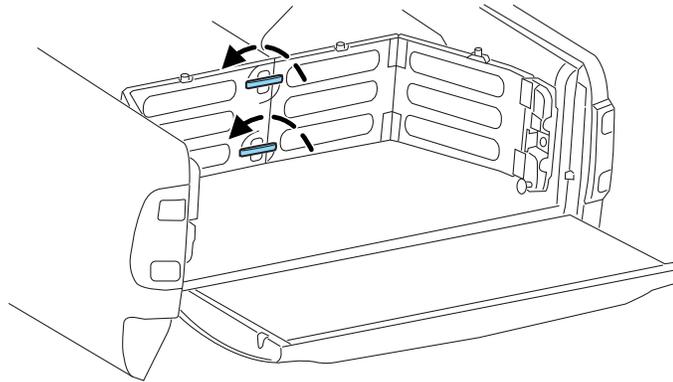
## Driver Controls

**Note:** When the vehicle is in motion, ensure the locking pins and knobs are fully engaged.

**Note:** Ensure all cargo is secured.

**Note:** When the vehicle is in motion, the tailgate load must not exceed 150 lb (68 kg).

**Note:** The bed extender should always be kept in the grocery mode or stowed position with the tailgate closed when not being used for the purpose of restraining cargo in the tailgate mode.

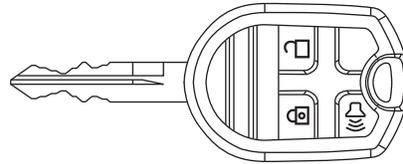


To open the bed extender into grocery mode, follow Steps 1–4 by rotating the panels away from the tailgate. Close the tailgate.

## Locks and Security

### KEYS

Your vehicle may be equipped with two integrated keyhead transmitters (IKTs). The key blade functions as a programmed key which starts the vehicle and unlocks/locks all the doors. The transmitter portion functions as the remote entry transmitter.



Your IKTs are programmed to your vehicle; using a non-programmed key will not permit your vehicle to start. If you lose one or both of your original programmed IKTs, replacement IKTs are available through your authorized dealer. Standard SecuriLock® keys without remote entry transmitter functionality can also be purchased from your authorized dealer if desired.

Always carry a spare key with you in case of an emergency.

For more information regarding programming replacement IKTs, refer to the *SecuriLock® passive anti-theft system* section later in this chapter.

**Note:** Your vehicle's IKTs were issued with a security tag that provides important vehicle key cut information. It is recommended that you keep the tag in a safe place for future reference.



### MYKEY® (IF EQUIPPED)

The MyKey® feature allows you to program a restricted driving mode to promote good driving habits. All but one of the keys programmed to the vehicle can be activated as a MyKey®. The key will remain restricted until MyKey® is cleared. Any remaining keys are referred to as an “administrator key” or admin key. The admin key can be used to create a MyKey®, program optional MyKey® settings, and clear the MyKey® feature. When the MyKey® feature is enabled the user can use the system check in the message center to see how many MyKeys™ and admin keys are programmed to the vehicle, and how many total miles have been driven with the MyKey® active.

#### MyKey® restricted features

**Standard settings – These settings cannot be changed**

## Locks and Security

- The audio system will be muted whenever Belt-Minder® is activated until the safety belts are buckled. Refer to the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter for a detailed description of Belt-Minder® operation.
- Low fuel warnings are displayed in the message center followed by a chime when the vehicle has only 1/8 tank of fuel.
- If equipped, any of the following: parking aid, Blind Spot Information System (BLIS™) with cross traffic alert and forward collision warning systems cannot be turned off.

### Optional settings – These settings can be changed

- Vehicle speed is limited to 80 mph (130 km/h). Visual warnings are displayed followed by a chime when the vehicle speed has reached 80 mph (130 km/h).
- Visual warnings are displayed followed by a chime when a preselected vehicle speed of 45, 55 or 65 mph (75, 90, or 105 km/h) is exceeded.
- The maximum volume of the audio system is limited to 45%. MYKEY VOLUME LIMITED will be displayed in the radio or navigation screen (if equipped) when attempting to exceed the limited volume.
- The AdvanceTrac® system cannot be turned off. When this optional setting is on, the MyKey® user will not be able to deactivate the system. **Note:** It may be beneficial to deactivate the AdvanceTrac® system if the vehicle is stuck in snow, mud, or sand.

### Create a MyKey®

To program MyKey® on one of the keys programmed to the vehicle, insert the key that you want to make a MyKey® into the ignition. (For vehicles equipped with push button start, put the intelligent access key in the backup slot with the buttons facing out of the slot; see the *Driving* chapter for the location of the backup slot.) Turn the ignition on. Use the message center buttons to do the following:

For standard message center:

1. Press SETUP until PRESS RESET TO CREATE MYKEY is displayed.
2. Press and release the RESET button. HOLD RESET TO CONFIRM MYKEY will be displayed.
3. Press and hold the RESET button for two seconds until MARK THIS AS RESTRICTED is displayed.
4. Wait until KEY RESTRICTED AT NEXT START is displayed.

## Locks and Security

For optional message center:

1. At the main menu screen select SETTING then MYKEY by pressing OK or the right arrow key.
2. Press OK to select CREATE MYKEY.
3. Hold OK as prompted until you see MARK THIS KEY AS RESTRICTED.

MyKey® is successfully programmed. Make sure you label it so you can distinguish it from the admin keys. **Note:** To program the optional settings go to Step 2 in the *Programming MyKey® optional settings* section. If your vehicle is equipped with remote start, see the *Using MyKey® with remote start systems* section.

**Note:** The MyKey® can be cleared within the same key cycle that it was created, otherwise a standard key (administrator key) is required to clear the MyKey® programming. To clear all MyKeys® go to Step 2 in the *Clear MyKey®* section.

### Programming MyKey® optional settings

To program the optional settings, use the message center buttons to do the following:

For standard message center:

1. Press SETUP until RESET FOR MYKEY SETTINGS is displayed.
2. Press and release the RESET button to display MyKey® setup menus. The first menu shown is:

MYKEY MAX MPH <80 MPH> OFF

3. If you don't want to change the maximum speed setting, press the SETUP button to display the next menu. The remaining menus appear as follows with the default settings shown:

MYKEY MPH TONES 45 55 65 <OFF>  
 MYKEY VOLUME LIMIT <ON> OFF  
 MYKEY ADVTRAC CTRL ON <OFF>.

4. On any of the menus press RESET to highlight your choice with the <...>.
5. Press SETUP to enter your choice. The next optional setting will be displayed.
6. Repeat Steps 4 and 5 until you are done changing the optional settings.

## Locks and Security

For optional message center:

1. At the main menu screen select **SETTING** then **MYKEY** by pressing **OK** or the right arrow key.
2. Use the up and down arrows to get to any of the optional features.
3. Press the right arrow key to bring up the settings available for each feature.
4. Press **OK** or the right arrow key to make your choice.

### **Clear MyKey®**

To reset all MyKeys® as admin keys do the following:

For standard message center:

1. Turn the vehicle on using the admin key.
2. Press **SETUP** until **PRESS RESET TO CLEAR MYKEY** is displayed.
3. Press and release the **RESET** button. **HOLD RESET TO CONFIRM CLEAR** is displayed.
4. Press and hold the **RESET** button for two seconds until **ALL MYKEYS CLEARED** is displayed.

For optional message center:

1. At the main menu screen select **SETTING** then **MYKEY** by pressing **OK** or the right arrow key.
2. Press the down arrow key to get to **CLEAR MYKEYS**.
3. Hold **OK** until you see **ALL MYKEYS CLEARED**.

### **Check MyKey® system status**

The vehicle system check will provide the status of the following MyKey® parameters:

- **MYKEY MILES** — This odometer only tracks distance when a MyKey® is used. If mileage does not accumulate as expected, then the MyKey® is not being used by the intended user. The only way to reset this odometer to zero is by clearing MyKey®. If this odometer is lower than the last time you checked, then the MyKey® system has been recently cleared.
- **# MYKEY(S) PROGRAMMED** — Indicates how many MyKeys® are programmed to the vehicle. Can be used to detect deletion of a MyKey®.
- **# ADMIN KEYS PROGRAMMED** — Indicates how many admin keys are programmed to the vehicle. Can be used to detect if an additional spare key has been programmed to the vehicle

130

## Locks and Security

Refer to *Message center* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for MyKey® system warnings displays.

### Using MyKey® with remote start systems

MyKey® is not compatible with non Ford-approved aftermarket remote start systems. If you choose to install a remote start system please see your authorized dealer for a Ford approved remote start system.

The following information MAY help customers who choose to use a non Ford-approved remote start system. The actions proved below do not make MyKey® compatible with non Ford-approved remote start system, but it MAY help you to retain some MyKey® functions.

### Vehicles equipped with traditional keys

When using a non Ford-approved remote start system, the default settings may recognize the remote start system as an additional admin key with its associated privileges. This makes it NOT compatible with MyKey®. The following action may help you to retain some MyKey® functions:

1. Restart the engine when you insert a key into the ignition cylinder.
2. In addition to the key that you have already programmed as a MyKey®, owners of vehicles equipped with traditional keys may want to program the non Ford-approved remote start system as a MyKey® if the remote start fob is used by the MyKey® driver.

To program a non Ford-approved remote start system as MyKey®, do the following:

1. Enter the vehicle and close all doors.
2. Remote start the vehicle using a remote start fob.
3. Follow steps 1-4 in the *Create a MyKey®* section.

### Vehicles equipped with intelligent access key (push button start)

- It is not possible to program any remote start system as MyKey® on vehicles equipped with an intelligent access key (push button start). Therefore, you should treat the remote start fob as you would any other admin key. When the vehicle is started using remote start, the system will stall the engine when you either enter the vehicle or shift the vehicle into gear. Prior to the engine stall, the vehicle will have administrative privileges. When you restart the engine, the vehicle will identify the user as an admin or MyKey® drive depending on the settings of the actual key used to start the vehicle.

## Locks and Security

**Note:** For all vehicles, the number of MYKEY(S) PROGRAMMED or ADMIN KEYS PROGRAMMED that is displayed in the MyKey® system status menus will include the non Ford-approved remote start system as an additional key in the total count. See the *Check MyKey® system status* section.

**Note:** For all vehicles with a non Ford-approved remote start installed, it is possible to program all “real” keys as MyKeys®, in which case, you will need to use your remote start system to reset all MyKeys® as admin keys by doing the following:

1. Enter the vehicle, close all doors.
2. Remote start the vehicle using your remote start fob.
3. Follow steps 1-4 in the *Clear MyKey®* section.

### Using MyKey® with remote start systems

MyKey® is not compatible with non Ford-approved aftermarket remote start systems. If you choose to install a remote start system please see your authorized dealer for a Ford-approved remote start system.

When using a Ford-approved remote start system, the default settings will recognize the remote start system as an additional admin key with its associated privileges. Owners of vehicles equipped with traditional keys should program the remote start system as a MyKey® in addition to the key that they have already programmed as a MyKey®. To program the remote start system as MyKey®, do the following:

1. Enter the vehicle and close all doors.
2. Remote start the vehicle using a remote start fob.
3. Follow Steps 1-4 in the *Create a MyKey®* section.

**Note:** For all vehicles, the number of MYKEY(S) PROGRAMMED or ADMIN KEYS PROGRAMMED that is displayed in the MyKey® system status menus will include the remote start system as an additional key in the total count. See the *Check MyKey® system status* section.

**Note:** For all vehicles with remote start installed, it is possible to program all “real” keys as MyKeys®, in which case, you will need to use your remote start system to reset all MyKeys® as admin keys by doing the following:

1. Enter the vehicle, close all doors.
2. Remote start the vehicle using your remote start fob.
3. Follow Steps 1-4 in the *Clear MyKey®* section.

## Locks and Security

### Troubleshooting

Condition	Potential Causes
Can't create a MyKey®	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Key in the ignition is already a MyKey®.</li> <li>• Key in the ignition is the last remaining admin key (there always has to be at least one admin key).</li> <li>• SecuriLock® passive anti-theft system is disabled or in unlimited mode.</li> <li>• Vehicle has been started using a non Ford-approved remote start system that is programmed as MyKey®. Refer to <i>Using MyKey® with remote start systems</i> section.</li> </ul>
Cannot program the MyKey® optional settings	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Key in the ignition is a MyKey®.</li> <li>• No MyKeys® are programmed to the vehicle. Refer to <i>Create a MyKey®</i> section.</li> <li>• Vehicle has been started using a non Ford-approved remote start system that is programmed as MyKey®. Refer to <i>Using MyKey® with remote start systems</i> section.</li> </ul>
Cannot clear MyKey®	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Key in the ignition is a MyKey® .</li> <li>• No MyKeys® are programmed to the vehicle. Refer to <i>Create a MyKey®</i> section.</li> <li>• Vehicle has been started using a non Ford-approved remote start system that is programmed as MyKey®. Refer to <i>Using MyKey® with remote start systems</i> section.</li> </ul>
Lost the only admin key	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Purchase a new key from your authorized dealer.</li> </ul>

## Locks and Security

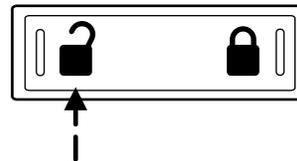
Condition	Potential Causes
Lost any key	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For programming spare keys, refer to the <i>Programming spare keys</i> section in this chapter.</li> </ul>
I accidentally programmed all keys as MyKeys®	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Vehicle has a non Ford-approved remote start system that is recognized as an admin key. Refer to the <i>Using MyKey® with remote start systems</i> section to reset all MyKeys® as admin keys.</li> </ul>
No MyKey® function with (if equipped) intelligent access key with push button start	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• An admin intelligent access key is present at a push-and-start vehicle.</li> <li>• No MyKeys® are programmed to the vehicle. Refer to <i>Create a MyKey®</i> section.</li> <li>• Vehicle has been started using a non Ford-approved remote start system (as an admin key) then a MyKey® is inserted without restarting the engine.</li> </ul>
MyKey® programmed total includes one additional key	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Unknown key has been programmed to the vehicle as a MyKey®.</li> <li>• Vehicle is equipped with a non Ford-approved remote start system. Refer to <i>Using MyKey® with remote start systems</i> section.</li> </ul>
Admin keys programmed total includes one additional key	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Unknown key has been programmed to the vehicle as admin key.</li> <li>• Vehicle is equipped with a non Ford-approved remote start system. Refer to <i>Using MyKey® with remote start systems</i> section.</li> </ul>

## Locks and Security

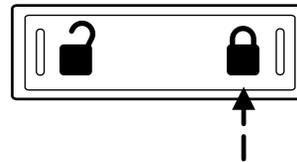
Condition	Potential Causes
MyKey® distance does not accumulate	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• MyKey® is not being used by the intended user.</li> <li>• MyKey® system has been recently cleared.</li> <li>• Vehicles has been started using a non Ford-approved remote start system (as an admin key) then a MyKey® is inserted without recycling the MyKey® in ignition.</li> </ul>

### POWER DOOR LOCKS (IF EQUIPPED)

Press control to unlock all doors.



Press control to lock all doors.



### Smart locks (if equipped)

This feature prevents you from locking yourself out of the vehicle if your key is still in the ignition.

When you open the driver's door and you lock the vehicle with the power door lock control, all the doors will lock, then the driver's door will automatically unlock reminding you that your key is still in the ignition.

## Locks and Security

The vehicle can still be locked, with the key in the ignition, using the manual lock button on the door, locking the driver's door with a key, by simultaneously pressing button 7 • 8 and the 9 • 0 controls on the remote entry keypad (if equipped), or using the  button on the remote entry transmitter (if equipped).

### **Autolock feature (if equipped)**

The autolock feature will lock all the doors when:

- all the doors are closed,
- the ignition is in the on position,
- you shift into any gear putting the vehicle in motion, and
- the vehicle attains a speed greater than 12 mph (20 km/h) for greater than two seconds.

The autolock feature repeats when:

- any door is opened then closed while the ignition is in the on position and the vehicle speed is 9 mph (15 km/h) or lower, and
- the vehicle then attains a speed greater than 12 mph (20 km/h) for greater than two seconds.

### **Deactivating/activating autolock feature**

There are four methods to enable/disable this feature:

- Through your authorized dealer,
- by using a power door unlock/lock procedure,
- using a keypad procedure (if equipped), or
- or by using the instrument cluster message center (if equipped). Refer to *Message center* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter.

**Note:** The autolock feature can be activated/deactivated independently of the autounlock feature.

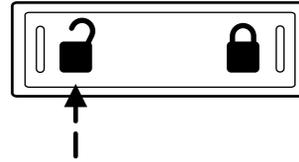
### **Power door lock switch autolock enable/disable procedure**

Before starting, ensure the ignition is in the off position and all vehicle doors are closed. You must complete Steps 1–5 within 30 seconds or the procedure will have to be repeated. If the procedure needs to be repeated, wait a minimum of 30 seconds before beginning again.

136

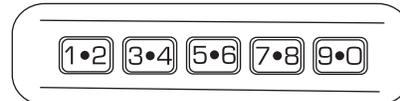
## Locks and Security

1. Place the key in the ignition and turn the ignition to the on position.
2. Press the power door unlock control on the door panel three times.
3. Turn the ignition from the on position to the off position.
4. Press the power door unlock control on the door panel three times.
5. Turn the ignition back to the on position. The horn will chirp one time to confirm programming mode has been entered and is active.
6. To enable/disable the autolock feature, press the unlock control, then press the lock control. The horn will chirp once if autolock was deactivated or twice (one short and one long chirp) if autolock was activated.
7. Turn the ignition to the off position. The horn will chirp once to confirm the procedure is complete.



### **Keyless entry keypad autolock enable/disable procedure**

1. Turn the ignition to the off position.
2. Close all the doors.
3. Enter factory-set 5-digit entry code.
4. Press and hold the 3 • 4. While holding the 3 • 4 press the 7 • 8.
5. Release the 7 • 8.
6. Release the 3 • 4.



The user should receive a **horn chirp** to indicate the system has been disabled or a chirp followed by a honk to indicate the system has been enabled.

### **Autounlock feature (if equipped)**

The autounlock feature will unlock all the doors when:

- the ignition is in the on position, all the doors are closed, and the vehicle has been in motion at a speed greater than 12 mph (20 km/h);
- the vehicle has then come to a stop and the ignition is turned to the off ) or accessory position; and
- the driver door is opened within 10 minutes of the ignition being transitioned to the off or accessory position.

## Locks and Security

**Note:** The doors will not autounlock if the vehicle has been electronically locked before the driver door is opened.

### **Deactivating/activating autounlock feature**

There are three methods to enable/disable this feature:

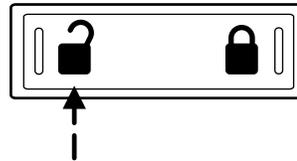
- Through your authorized dealer,
- by using a power door unlock/lock sequence,
- using a keypad procedure (if equipped)
- or by using the instrument cluster message center (if equipped). Refer to *Optional message center* in the *Driver controls* chapter.

**Note:** The autounlock feature can be activated/deactivated independently of the autolock feature.

### **Power door lock switch autounlock enable/disable procedure**

Before starting, ensure the ignition is in the off position and all vehicle doors are closed. You must complete Steps 1–5 within 30 seconds or the procedure will have to be repeated. If the procedure needs to be repeated, wait a minimum of 30 seconds before beginning again.

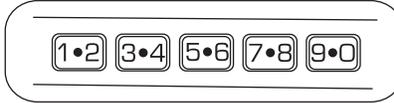
1. Place the key in the ignition and turn the ignition to the on position.
2. Press the power door unlock control on the door panel three times.
3. Turn the ignition from the on position to the off position.
4. Press the power door unlock control on the door panel three times.
5. Turn the ignition back to the on position. The horn will chirp one time to confirm programming mode has been entered and is active.
6. To enable/disable the autounlock feature, press the lock control, then press the unlock control. The horn will chirp once if autounlock was deactivated or twice (one short and one long chirp) if autounlock was activated.
7. Turn the ignition to the off position. The horn will chirp once to confirm the procedure is complete.



## Locks and Security

### **Keyless entry keypad autounlock enable/disable procedure**

1. Turn the ignition to the off position.
2. Close all the doors.
3. Enter factory-set 5-digit entry code.
4. Press and hold the 3 • 4. While holding the 3 • 4, press and release the 7 • 8. While still holding the 3 • 4, press and release the 7 • 8 a second time.
5. Release the 3 • 4.



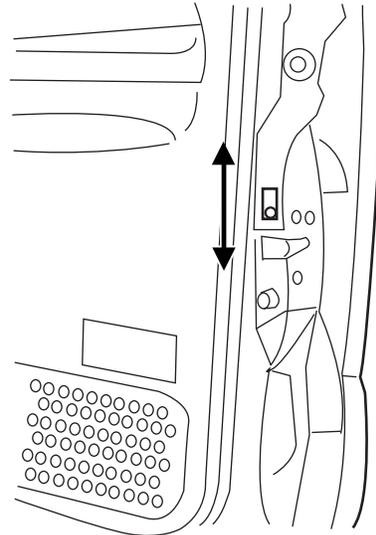
The user should receive a **horn chirp** to indicate the system has been disabled or a chirp followed by a honk to indicate the system has been enabled.

### **CHILDPROOF DOOR LOCKS (IF EQUIPPED)**

- When these locks are set, the rear doors cannot be opened from the inside.
- The rear doors can be opened from the outside when the childproof door locks are set, but the doors are unlocked.

The childproof locks are located on the rear edge of each rear door and must be set separately for each door. Setting the lock for one door will not automatically set the lock for both doors.

- Move lock control up to engage the childproof lock.
- Move lock control down to disengage the childproof lock.



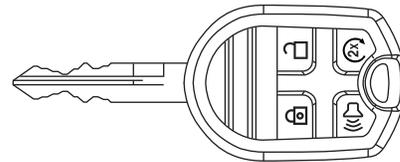
## Locks and Security

### REMOTE ENTRY SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

The integrated keyhead transmitter (IKT) complies with part 15 of the FCC rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

**Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.**

There are two possible types of IKTs: vehicles with the remote start feature will have the IKT shown. Vehicle's without remote start will not have the remote start button (2x) .



The typical operating range for your IKT is approximately 33 feet (10 meters). A decrease in operating range could be caused by:

- weather conditions,
- nearby radio towers,
- structures around the vehicle, or
- other vehicles parked next to your vehicle.

The IKT allows you to:

- remotely unlock the vehicle doors.
- remotely lock all the vehicle doors.
- remotely start the engine (if equipped with remote start).
- activate the personal alarm.
- operate the illuminated entry feature.

The remote entry lock/unlock feature operates in any ignition position except while the key is held in the start position. The panic feature operates with the key in the off position.

If there are problems with the remote entry system, make sure to take **ALL integrated keyhead transmitters** with you to the authorized dealer in order to aid in troubleshooting the problem.

140

## Locks and Security

### Two step door unlocking

1. Press  and release to unlock the driver's door. **Note:** The parking lamps and interior lamps will illuminate (refer to the *Illuminated entry* feature later in this section) if the control on the overhead lamp is **not** set to the **off** position.
2. Press  and release again within three seconds to unlock the passenger doors.

The battery saver feature will turn off the lamps 10 minutes after the ignition is turned to the off position.

### One step door unlocking

If the one step door unlocking feature is activated, press  and release once to unlock all of the doors. **Note:** The parking lamps and interior lamps will illuminate (refer to the *Illuminated entry* feature later in this section) if the control on the overhead lamp is **not** set to the **off** position.

### Switching from two step to one step door unlocking

Your vehicle comes with two step unlocking enabled. Unlocking can be switched between two step and one step door unlocking by pressing and holding both the  and  buttons simultaneously on the remote entry transmitter for approximately four seconds. The hazard lamps will flash twice to indicate that the vehicle has switched to one step unlocking. Repeat the procedure to switch back to two-step unlocking.

### Locking the doors

1. Press  and release to lock all the doors. The parking lamps will illuminate if all the doors are closed and locked.
2. Press  and release again within three seconds to confirm that all the doors are closed and locked. **Note:** The doors will lock again, the horn will chirp once, and the parking lamps will illuminate once more. If any of the doors are not properly closed the horn will make two quick chirps and the parking lamps will not flash.

### Car finder

Press  twice within three seconds. The horn will chirp and the turn lamps will flash. It is recommended that this method be used to locate your vehicle, rather than using the panic alarm.

### Sounding a panic alarm

Press  to activate the alarm. Press again or turn the ignition to on to deactivate.

## Locks and Security

**Note:** The panic alarm will only operate when the ignition is off.

### Memory feature (seat, mirrors and adjustable pedals)

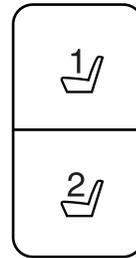
The integrated keyhead transmitter (IKT) allows you to recall the memory seat/power mirrors/adjustable pedals feature.

Press  to automatically move the driver seat, power mirrors and adjustable pedals to the desired memory position. (The seat position corresponds to the transmitter being used).

### Programming memory feature to transmitter

To activate this feature:

1. Move the driver seat, power mirrors, and adjustable pedals to the desired positions using the associated controls.
2. Press and hold control button 1 for five seconds. A tone will be heard after two seconds confirming memory position has been set. Continue to hold until a second tone is heard after five seconds.
3. Within three seconds press .
4. Wait 10 seconds, then press .
5. Repeat this procedure for memory 2 and another transmitter if desired.



### Deprogramming memory feature from transmitter

To deactivate this feature:

1. Press and hold either the 1 or 2 control on the driver's door for five seconds. A tone will be heard after 1½ seconds when the memory store is done, continue to hold until a second tone is heard after five seconds.
2. Within three seconds press .
3. Repeat this procedure for another transmitter if desired.

### Replacing the battery

The integrated keyhead transmitter (IKT) or intelligent access key (IA key) uses one coin type three-volt lithium battery CR2032 or equivalent.

## Locks and Security

### Integrated keyhead transmitter (IKT)

To replace the battery:

1. Twist a thin coin in the slot near the key ring to remove the battery cover (1).

**Note:** Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals on the back surface of the circuit board.

2. Carefully peel up the rubber gasket (2) from the transmitter if it does not come off with battery cover.

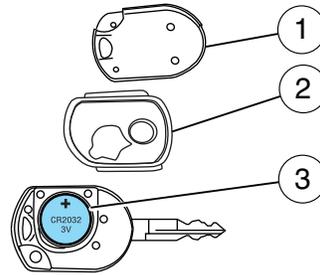
3. Remove the old battery (3).

**Note:** Please refer to local regulations when disposing of transmitter batteries.

4. Insert the new battery. Refer to the instructions inside the IKT for the correct orientation of the battery. Press the battery down to ensure that the battery is fully seated in the battery housing cavity.

5. Snap the battery cover back onto the key.

**Note:** Replacement of the battery will **not** cause the IKT or IA key to become de-programmed from your vehicle. They should operate normally after battery replacement.



### Replacing lost Integrated Keyhead Transmitters (IKTs)

If you would like to have your Integrated Keyhead Transmitters reprogrammed because you lost one, or would like to buy additional IKTs, you can either reprogram them yourself, or take **all IKTs** to your authorized dealer for reprogramming.

#### **How to reprogram your Integrated Keyhead Transmitters (IKTs)**

To program a new Integrated Keyhead Transmitter yourself, refer to *Programming spare keys* in the *SecuriLock® passive anti-theft system* section of this chapter. **Note:** At least two IKTs are required to perform this procedure yourself.

### Illuminated entry

The interior lamps and parking lamps illuminate when the remote entry system is used to unlock the door(s).

## Locks and Security

The illuminated entry system will turn off the lights if:

- the ignition switch is turned to the on position, or
- the remote transmitter lock control is pressed, or
- the 7 • 8 and the 9 • 0 controls on the keyless entry keypad are pressed, or
- after 25 seconds of illumination.

The dome lamp control (if equipped) must **not** be set to the off position for the illuminated entry system to operate.

The lights will not turn off if:

- they have been turned on with the dimmer control, or
- any door is open.

The battery saver will shut off the interior lamps 30 minutes after the ignition has been turned to the off position, 10 minutes after if the dome lamp is off, and 30 minutes after if the dome lamp switch is left on.

### Remote start (if equipped)

Your vehicle may be equipped with the remote start feature which allows you to start the engine from outside the vehicle. If your integrated keyhead transmitter (IKT) has a  icon, you have remote start. The remote start feature has an extended operating range which allows you to remote start your vehicle from a farther distance from your vehicle. All the buttons have this increased range performance capability when equipped with remote start.

Many states and provinces have restrictions for the use of remote start. Check your local and state or provincial laws for specific requirements regarding remote start systems.

**Note:** Do not use remote start if your vehicle is low on fuel.



**WARNING:** To avoid exhaust fumes, do not use remote start if your vehicle is parked indoors or areas that are not well ventilated.

The remote start system will not work if:

- The ignition is in the on position.
- The alarm system is triggered.
- The feature has been disabled.
- The hood is not closed.

144

## Locks and Security

- Two remote vehicle starts have already been attempted within the last hour.
- The vehicle is not in P (Park).

### Starting the engine with remote start

To start the engine using remote start:

**Note:** Each button press must be done within 3 seconds of each other. If this sequence is not followed the vehicle will not remote start and the horn will not chirp.

1. Press  on the IKT to lock all the doors.
2. Press  two times. The exterior lamps will flash twice.

**Note:** On diesel engines there will be a 3 second delay before the engine starts.

If for some reason, the system fails to start, the horn will chirp twice.

3. Insert the key in the ignition and turn to the on position before driving.

The power windows will be inhibited during the remote start and the radio will not turn on.

The parking lamps will remain on and the engine will run for 5, 10, or 15 minutes, depending on how you programmed the system. To select the duration of the remote start system refer to *Message center* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter.

### Extending the engine run time

To keep the engine running for another remote start duration, repeat Steps 1 and 2 with the engine still running. If you programmed the duration to last 10 minutes, the second 10 minutes will begin immediately so that, for example, if the vehicle had been running from the first remote start for five minutes, the engine will continue to run for a total of 15 minutes. You can only extend the remote start once.

If the vehicle is remote started then remote stopped, wait at least five seconds before remote starting a second time.

The ignition switch must be turned to the on position and then back to the off position or allow one hour to pass before using remote start again.

### Turning the engine off after using remote start

- Press  one time. The parking lamps will turn off.

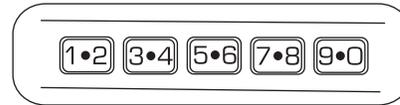
You may have to be closer to the vehicle than when starting due to ground reflection and the added noise of the running engine.

## Locks and Security

You can disable or enable the remote start system through the message center. Refer to *Message center* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter.

### SECURICODE™ KEYLESS ENTRY SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

You can use the keyless entry keypad to lock or unlock the doors without using a key.



The keypad can be operated with the factory set 5-digit entry code; this code is located on the owner's wallet card in the glove box, is marked on the computer module, and is available from your authorized dealer. You can also create your own 5-digit personal entry code.

When pressing the controls on the keypad, press the middle of the controls to ensure a good activation.

### Programming a personal entry code and keypad association to memory feature

To create your own personal entry code:

1. Enter the factory set code.
2. Within five seconds press the 1 • 2 on the keypad.
3. Enter your personal 5-digit code. Each number must be entered within five seconds of each other.
4. To associate the entry code with a memory setting, enter a sixth digit to indicate which driver should be set in a memory recalled by the personal entry code:
  - Pressing 1 • 2 recalls Driver 1 settings.
  - Pressing 3 • 4 recalls Driver 2 settings.
  - Pressing other keypad buttons or not pressing a keypad button as a sixth digit does not set a driver and will not recall a memory setting.

**Note:** The factory-set code cannot be associated with a memory setting.
5. The doors will again lock then unlock to confirm that your personal entry code has been programmed to the module.

#### Tips:

- Do not set a code that uses five of the same number.
- Do not use five numbers in sequential order.
- The factory set code will work even if you have set your own personal code.

146

## Locks and Security

### Erasing personal code

1. Enter the factory set 5–digit code.
2. Within five seconds, press the 1 • 2 on the keypad and release.
3. Press and hold the 1 • 2 for two seconds. This must be done within five seconds of completing Step 2.

Your personal code is now erased and only the factory set 5–digit code will work.

### Anti-scan feature

If an incorrect code has been entered seven times (35 consecutive button presses), the keypad will go into an anti-scan mode. This mode disables the keypad for one minute and the keypad lamp will flash during this time.

The anti-scan feature will turn off after:

- one minute of keypad inactivity.
- pressing the  control on the remote entry transmitter.
- the ignition is turned to the on position.

### Unlocking and locking the doors using keyless entry

**To unlock the driver's door**, enter the factory set 5-digit code or your personal code. Each number must be pressed within five seconds of each other. The interior lamps will illuminate after entering a valid keypad entry code.

**To unlock all doors**, press the 3 • 4 control within five seconds.

**To lock all doors**, press the 7 • 8 and the 9 • 0 at the same time. You **do not** need to enter the keypad code first. **Note:** The interior lamps will turn off.

### SECURILOCK® PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

SecuriLock® passive anti-theft system is an engine immobilization system. This system is designed to help prevent the engine from being started unless a **coded key programmed to your vehicle** is used. The use of the wrong type of coded key may lead to a “no-start” condition. The message center will display: **STARTING SYSTEM FAULT**.

Your vehicle comes with two coded keys; additional coded keys may be purchased from your authorized dealer. The authorized dealer can program your spare keys to your vehicle or you can program the keys yourself. Refer to *Programming spare keys* for instructions on how to program the coded key.

## Locks and Security

**Note:** The SecuriLock® passive anti-theft system is not compatible with non-Ford aftermarket remote start systems. Use of these systems may result in vehicle starting problems and a loss of security protection.

**Note:** Large metallic objects, electronic devices that are used to purchase gasoline or similar items, or a second coded key on the same key chain may cause vehicle starting issues. You need to prevent these objects from touching the coded key while starting the engine. These objects will not cause damage to the coded key, but may cause a momentary issue if they are too close to the key when starting the engine. If a problem occurs, turn the ignition off, remove all objects on the key chain away from the coded key and restart the engine.

**Note: Do not leave a duplicate coded key in the vehicle. Always take your keys and lock all doors when leaving the vehicle.**

### Automatic arming

The vehicle is armed immediately after turning the ignition off.

### Automatic disarming

Switching the ignition on with a **coded key** disarms the vehicle.

### Replacement keys

If your keys are lost or stolen and you don't have an extra coded key, you will need to have your vehicle towed to an authorized dealer. The key codes need to be erased from your vehicle and new coded keys will need to be programmed.

Replacing coded keys can be very costly. Store an extra programmed key away from the vehicle in a safe place to help prevent any inconveniences. Please visit an authorized dealer to purchase additional spare or replacement keys.

### Programming spare keys

A maximum of eight keys can be coded to your vehicle. Only SecuriLock® keys can be used. To program a **coded key** yourself, you will need two previously programmed **coded keys** (keys that already operate your vehicle's engine) and the new unprogrammed key(s) readily accessible for timely implementation of each step in the procedure.

If two previously programmed coded keys are not available, you must bring your vehicle to your authorized dealer to have the spare coded key(s) programmed.

Please read and understand the entire procedure before you begin.

148

## Locks and Security

1. Insert the first previously programmed **coded key** into the ignition and turn the ignition from the 1 (off) position to the 3 (on) position (maintain ignition in the 3 (on) position for at least one second, but no more than 10 seconds).

2. Turn ignition from the 3 (on) position back to the 1 (off) position in order to remove the first **coded key** from the ignition.

3. After three seconds but within 10 seconds of removing the first **coded key**, insert the second previously programmed **coded key** into the ignition and turn the ignition from the 1 (off) position to the 3 (on) position (maintain ignition in the 3 (on) position for at least one second but no more than 10 seconds).

4. Turn the ignition from the 3 (on) position back to the 1 (off) position in order to remove the second **coded key** from the ignition.

5. After three seconds but within 10 seconds of removing the second **coded key**, insert the new unprogrammed key (new key/valet key) into the ignition and turn the ignition from the 1 (off) position to the 3 (on) position (maintain ignition in the 3 (on) position for at least one second, but no more than 10 seconds). This step will program your new key to a coded key.

6. To program additional new unprogrammed key(s), repeat Steps 1 through 5.

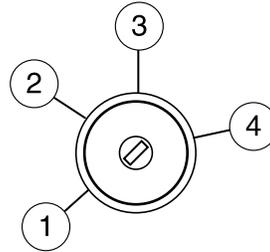
If successful, the new coded key(s) will start the vehicle's engine.

If not successful, the new coded key(s) will not start the vehicle's engine and you may repeat Steps 1 through 5. If failure repeats, bring your vehicle to your authorized dealer to have the new spare key(s) programmed.

### PERIMETER ALARM SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

The perimeter anti-theft system will warn you in the event of an unauthorized entry to your vehicle.

If there is any potential perimeter anti-theft problem with your vehicle, ensure **ALL remote entry transmitters** are taken to the authorized dealer to aid in troubleshooting.



## Locks and Security

### Arming the system

When armed, this system will respond if unauthorized entry is attempted. When unauthorized entry occurs, the system will flash the park/turn lamps and will sound the horn.

The system is ready to arm whenever the key is removed from the ignition. Either of the following actions will prearm the alarm system:

- Press the  control on the remote entry transmitter.
- Open a door and press the power door lock control to lock all the doors, and then close the door.
- Press and hold the 7 • 8 and 9 • 0 controls on the keyless entry pad at the same time to lock the doors (driver's door must be closed).

There is a 20 second countdown when any of the above actions occur before the vehicle becomes armed.

Each door and the hood is armed individually, and if any are open, they must be closed before the open entry point can enter the 20 second countdown.

The turn signal lamps will flash once when all doors and the hood are closed indicating the vehicle is locked and entering the 20 second countdown.

### Disarming the system

You can disarm the system by any of the following actions:

- Unlock the doors by pressing the  control on your remote entry transmitter.
- Turn the ignition to the on position with a programmed coded ignition key.
- Unlock the doors by using your keyless entry pad.
- If using a key in the driver's door to unlock the vehicle, a chime will sound when you open the door and you will have 12 seconds to disarm the alarm system using any of the actions above, otherwise the alarm will trigger.

Pressing the power door unlock control within the 20 second prearmed mode will return the vehicle to a disarmed state.

### Triggering the anti-theft system

The armed system will be triggered if any door or hood is opened without using the key or the remote entry transmitter.

150

## Seating and Safety Restraints

### FRONT SEATS

 **WARNING:** Reclining the seatback can cause an occupant to slide under the seat's safety belt, resulting in severe personal injuries in the event of a collision.

 **WARNING:** Do not pile cargo higher than the seatbacks to reduce the risk of injury in a collision or sudden stop.

 **WARNING:** Before returning the seatback to its original position, make sure that cargo or any objects are not trapped behind the seatback. After returning the seatback to its original position, pull on the seatback to ensure that it has fully latched. An unlatched seat may become dangerous in the event of a sudden stop or collision.

 **WARNING:** Never adjust the driver's seat or seatback when the vehicle is moving.

 **WARNING:** Always drive and ride with your seatback upright and the lap belt snug and low across the hips.

### Adjustable head restraints

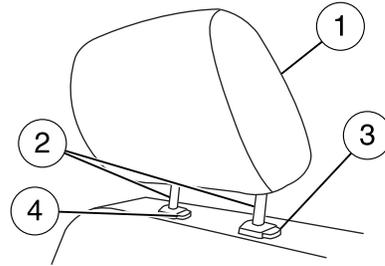
Your vehicle is equipped with front row outboard head restraints that are vertically adjustable.

 **WARNING:** To minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash, the driver and passenger occupants should not sit in and/or operate the vehicle, until the head restraint is placed in its proper position. The driver should never adjust the head restraint while the vehicle is in motion.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

The adjustable head restraints consist of :

- a trimmed energy absorbing foam and structure (1),
- two steel stems (2),
- a guide sleeve adjust/release button (3),
- and a guide sleeve unlock/remove button (4).



To adjust the head restraint, do the following:

1. Adjust the seatback to an upright driving/riding position.
2. Raise the head restraint by pulling up on the head restraint.
3. Lower the head restraint by pressing and holding the guide sleeve adjust/release button (3) and pushing down on the head restraint.

Properly adjust the head restraint so that the top of the head restraint is even with the top of your head and positioned as close as possible to the back of your head. For occupants of extremely tall stature, adjust the head restraint to its full up position.



**WARNING:** The adjustable head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied.

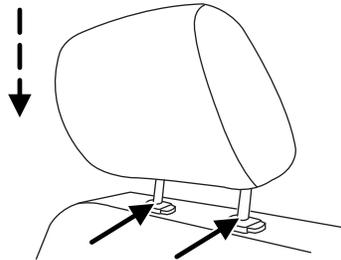
To remove the adjustable head restraint, do the following:

1. Pull up the head restraint until it reaches the highest adjustment position.
2. Simultaneously press and hold both the adjust/release button (3) and the unlock/remove button (4), then pull up on the head restraint.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

To reinstall the adjustable head restraint, do the following:

1. Insert the two stems (2) into the guide sleeve collars.
2. Push the head restraint down until it locks.



Properly adjust the head restraint so that the top of the head restraint is even with the top of your head and positioned as close as possible to the back of your head. For occupants of extremely tall stature, adjust the head restraint to its full up position.



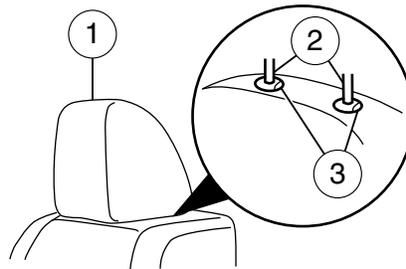
**WARNING:** To minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash, head restraints must be installed properly.

### **Front row center non-adjustable head restraint (if equipped)**

Vehicle's equipped with a front center seat will have head restraints that are non-adjustable.

The non-adjustable head restraints consist of:

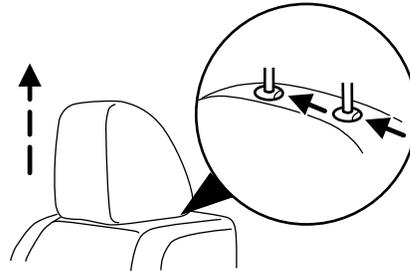
- a trimmed energy absorbing foam and structure (1),
- two steel stems (2),
- and two guide sleeve unlock/remove buttons (3).



## Seating and Safety Restraints

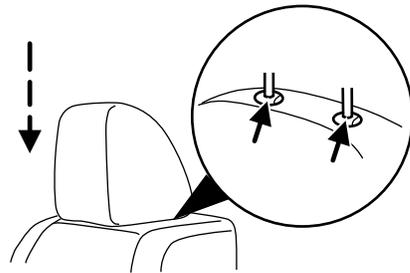
To remove the non-adjustable head restraint, do the following:

Simultaneously press and hold both unlock/remove buttons, then pull up on the head restraint.



To reinstall the non-adjustable head restraint, do the following:

1. Insert the two stems into the guide sleeve collars.
2. Push the head restraint down until it locks.



**WARNING:** The non-adjustable head restraint is a safety device. It should be installed whenever the seat is occupied.

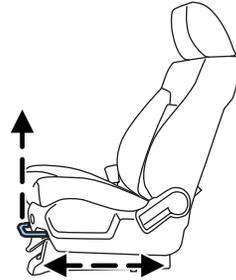


**WARNING:** To minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash, head restraints must be installed properly.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

### Front seat

- Lift the track release bar to move the seat forward or rearward. Make sure that the seat is relocked into place.

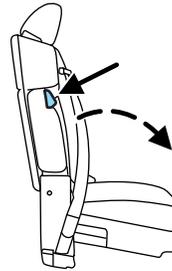


- Pull the release lever handle located on the side of the seat up to move the seatback forward or backward.



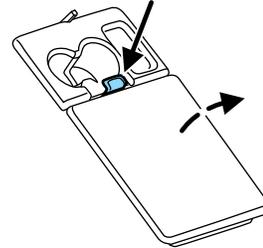
### 20 percent front seat armrest and console (if equipped)

To release the armrest and gain access to the cupholders and seatback storage bin, press the button on the right-hand side of the seat and pull the seatback down.



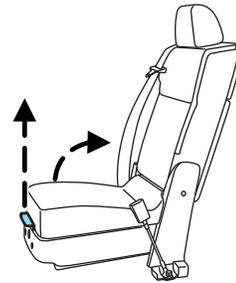
## Seating and Safety Restraints

Pull up on the tab to open the storage bin.

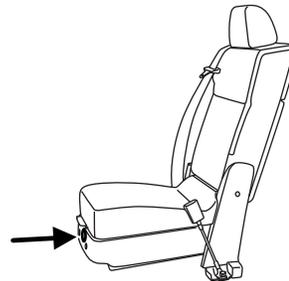


Lift up on the seatback to return it to the upright position.

To gain access to the under-seat storage compartment (if equipped) in your seat cushion, lift the latch to open the lid. The lid cannot be opened when the armrest is down.



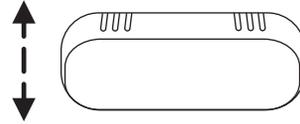
The under-seat storage compartment (if equipped) has a programmable lock. Use the ignition key to program the lock to the compartment. Electronics may be powered or charged using the under-seat storage compartment auxiliary power point. Refer to *Auxiliary power point (12VDC)* in the *Drive Controls* chapter.



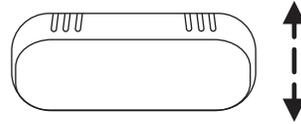
## Seating and Safety Restraints

### Adjusting the front power seat (if equipped)

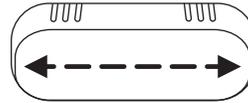
Move the front of the control up or down to tilt the seat cushion.



Move the rear of the control up or down to raise or lower the seat cushion.

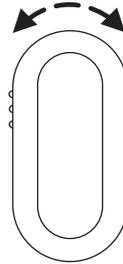


Move the control in the directions shown to move the seat forward or backward.



### Power recline (if equipped)

Press the control to recline the seatback forward or rearward.



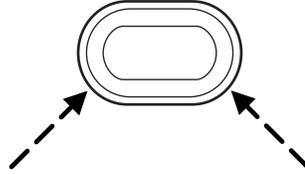
## Seating and Safety Restraints

### Using the power lumbar support (if equipped)

The power lumbar control is located on the outboard side of the seat.

Press one side of the control to adjust firmness.

Press the other side of the control to adjust softness.

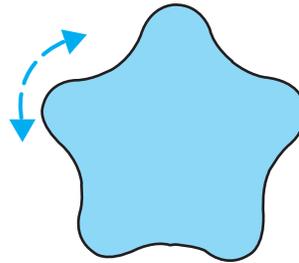


### Using the manual lumbar support (if equipped)

The lumbar support control is located on the outboard side of the seat.

Turn the lumbar support forward toward the front of the vehicle for more support.

Turn the lumbar support backward toward the rear of the vehicle for less support.



### Heated and cooled seats (if equipped)

The controls for the climate controlled seats are located on the climate control system.

#### Heated seats



**WARNING:** Persons who are unable to feel pain to the skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion, or other physical conditions, must exercise care when using the seat heater. The seat heater may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket or cushion, because this may cause the seat heater to overheat. Do not puncture the seat with pins, needles, or other pointed objects because this may damage the heating element which may cause the seat heater to overheat. An overheated seat may cause serious personal injury.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

**Note:** Do not do the following:

- Place heavy objects on the seat
- Operate the seat heater if water or any other liquid is spilled on the seat. Allow the seat to dry thoroughly.

The heated seats will only function when the engine is running.

To operate the heated seats:

Press the heated seat button/symbol to cycle through the various heat settings and off. Warmer settings are indicated by more indicator lights.



### Cooled seats

The cooled seats will only function when the engine is running.

To operate the cooled seats:

Press the cooled seat button/symbol to cycle through the various cooling settings and off. Cooler settings are indicated by more indicator lights.

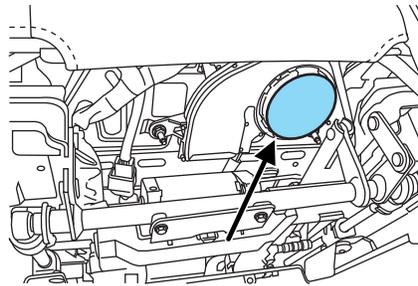


If the engine falls below 350 rpm while the cooled seats are on, the feature will turn itself off and will need to be reactivated.

### **Climate controlled seats air filter replacement (if equipped)**

The heated and cooled seat system includes air filters that must be replaced periodically. Refer to *Scheduled maintenance information*.

- There is a filter located under each front seat.

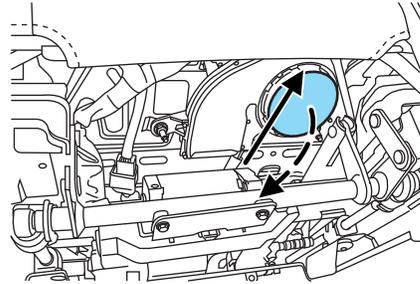


- The filter can be accessed from the 2nd row foot-well area. Move the front seats all the way to the full front and full up positions to ease access.

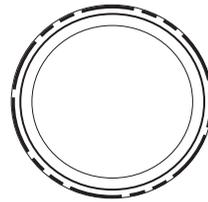
## Seating and Safety Restraints

To remove an air filter:

1. Turn the vehicle off.
2. Push up on the outside rigid edge of the filter until the tabs are released, then rotate the air filter toward the front of the vehicle.

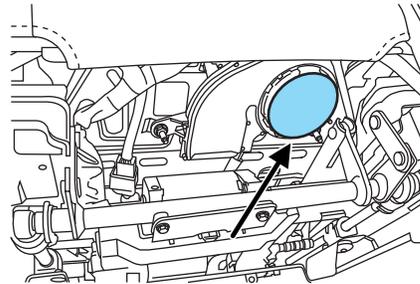


3. Remove filter.



To install a filter:

1. First, position the filter in its housing making sure that the far forward end is all the way up in the housing.
2. Push in on the center of the outside edge of the filter and rotate up into the housing until it clips into position.



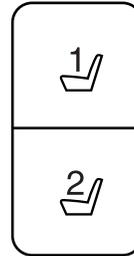
## Seating and Safety Restraints

### Memory seats/power mirrors/adjustable pedals (if equipped)

This system allows automatic positioning of the driver seat, power mirrors, and adjustable pedals to two programmable positions.

The memory control is located on the driver's door.

- To program position 1, move the memory features to the desired positions using the associated controls. Press and hold button 1 for at least two seconds. A chime will sound confirming that a memory position has been set.



- To program position 2, repeat the previous procedure using button 2. A memory position may be programmed at any time.

To program the memory feature to a remote entry transmitter, refer to *Remote entry system* in the *Locks and Security* chapter.

A programmed memory position can be recalled:

- in any gearshift position if the ignition is **not** on.
- only in P (Park) or N (Neutral) if the ignition is on.

The memory positions are also recalled when you press your remote entry transmitter  (unlock) control (if the transmitter is programmed to a memory position) or, when you enter a valid personal entry code that is programmed to a memory position. The mirrors will move to the programmed position and the seat will move to the easy entry position. The seat will move to the final position when the key is in the ignition (if easy entry feature is enabled).

### Easy-access/easy-out feature (if equipped)

The easy entry feature can be turned off or on through the vehicle message center. Refer to *Message center* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter.

The easy entry feature automatically moves the driver's seat 2 inches (5 cm) forward when:

- the transmission is in P (Park)
  - the key is inserted into the ignition cylinder
- (If the seat is located less than 2 inches [5 cm] from the front of the seat track, the seat will travel up to ¼ inch (6 mm) to the front of the seat track).

## Seating and Safety Restraints

The easy out feature automatically moves the driver's seat 2 inches (5 cm) backward when:

- the transmission is in P (Park)
- the key is removed from the ignition cylinder

(If the seat is located less than 2 inches (5 cm) from the rear of the seat track, the seat will travel up to ¼ inch (6 mm) to the rear of the seat track).

If the memory setting is programmed through the remote transmitter, upon unlocking the door via remote entry system, the seat position will travel to the desired memory setting less 2 inches (5 cm). Once entering the vehicle and inserting the key in the ignition while in P (Park), the easy entry feature will move the seat an additional 2 inches (5 cm) to the desired memory location. See *Locks and Security* for activating the memory seat feature through the remote entry system.

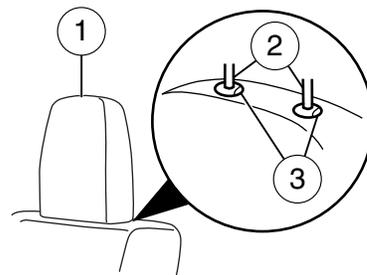
### REAR SEATS

#### Non-adjustable second-row head restraints

Your vehicle is equipped with second row head restraints that are non-adjustable.

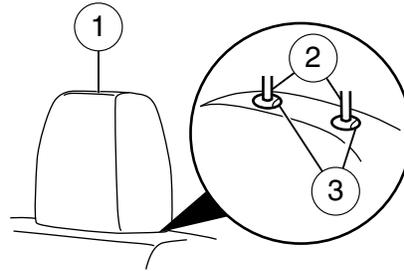
**⚠ WARNING:** To minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash, the driver and passenger occupants should not sit in and/or operate the vehicle, until the head restraint is placed in its proper position. The driver should never adjust the head restraint while the vehicle is in motion.

Outboard head restraints (Crew Cab)



## Seating and Safety Restraints

Center head restraint (Crew Cab)



The non-adjustable second row head restraints consist of :

- a trimmed energy absorbing foam and structure (1),
- two steel stems (2),
- and two guide sleeve unlock/remove buttons (3).

Removal of the second-row non-adjustable head restraints is the same as the front row center head restraint. Refer to *Front-row center non-adjustable head restraint* in this chapter.



**WARNING:** The non-adjustable head restraint is a safety device. It should be installed whenever the seat is occupied.

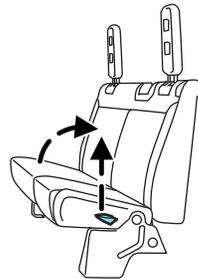


**WARNING:** To minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash, head restraints must be installed properly.

**Note:** The SuperCab has rear outboard head restraints that are not removable and are bolted to the back wall.

### Folding up the rear seats (SuperCab)

1. Pull control to release seat cushion.
2. Rotate seat cushion up until it locks into vertical storage position.



## Seating and Safety Restraints

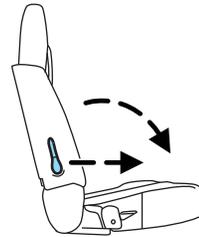
### *Returning the seat to seating position*

 **WARNING:** Make sure that cargo or any objects are not trapped underneath the seat cushion before returning the seat cushion to its original position, and that the seat cushion locks into place. Failure to do so may prevent the seat from operating properly in the event of a crash, which could increase the risk of serious injury.

1. Pull control on the side of the seat to release seat cushion from storage position.
2. Push seat cushion down until it locks into horizontal position.

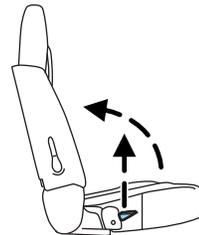
### **Folding the rear seatback (Crew Cab)**

1. Pull forward on the control to fold down the seatback.
2. Pull down on the handle and lift up on the seatback to return it to the original position.



### **Folding up the rear seat cushion**

1. Pull control to release seat cushion.
2. Rotate seat cushion up until it locks into vertical storage position.



### *Returning the seat to the seating position*

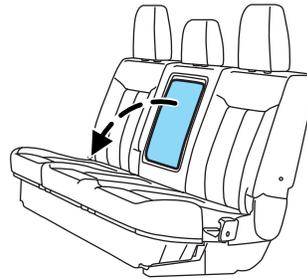
 **WARNING:** Make sure that cargo or any objects are not trapped underneath the seat cushion before returning the seat cushion to its original position, and that the seat cushion locks into place. Failure to do so may prevent the seat from operating properly in the event of a crash, which could increase the risk of serious injury.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

1. Pull control on the side of the seat to release seat cushion from storage position.
2. Push seat cushion down until it locks into horizontal position.

### **Rear center armrest (if equipped)**

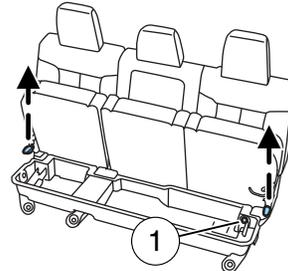
To use the armrest simply rotate it forward from the seatback.



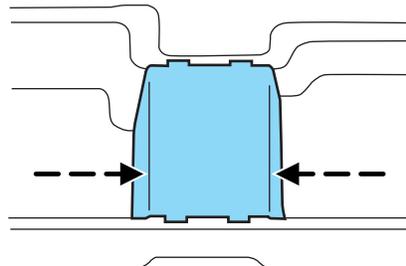
### **Rear under seat storage (if equipped) (Crew Cab)**

The rear seat has storage space located under the seat cushion.

Lift up the lever and flip up the seat cushion to access the storage space and the power point (1).

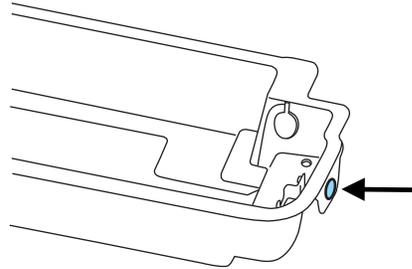


To remove the storage space divider, squeeze the sides and lift it from the storage tub.



## Seating and Safety Restraints

Use your vehicle key to lock the storage space.



### SAFETY RESTRAINTS

#### Safety restraints precautions



**WARNING:** Always drive and ride with your seatback upright and the lap belt snug and low across the hips.



**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of injury, make sure children sit in a rear seating position where they can be properly restrained.



**WARNING:** Never let a passenger hold a child on his or her lap while the vehicle is moving. The passenger cannot protect the child from injury in a collision.



**WARNING:** All occupants of the vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their safety belts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system (SRS) is provided.



**WARNING:** It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and safety belts. Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a safety belt properly.



**WARNING:** In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a safety belt.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

 **WARNING:** Each seating position in your vehicle has a specific safety belt assembly which is made up of one buckle and one tongue that are designed to be used as a pair. 1) Use the shoulder belt on the outside shoulder only. Never wear the shoulder belt under the arm. 2) Never swing the safety belt around your neck over the inside shoulder. 3) Never use a single belt for more than one person.

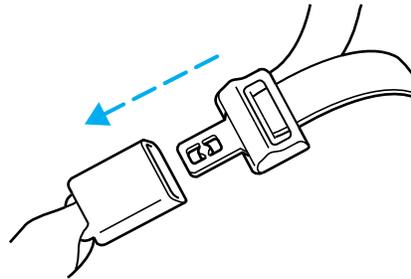
 **WARNING:** When possible, all children 12 years old and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position.

 **WARNING:** Safety belts and seats can become hot in a vehicle that has been closed up in sunny weather; they could burn a small child. Check seat covers and buckles before you place a child anywhere near them.

 **WARNING:** Front and rear seat occupants, including pregnant women, should wear safety belts for optimum protection in an accident.

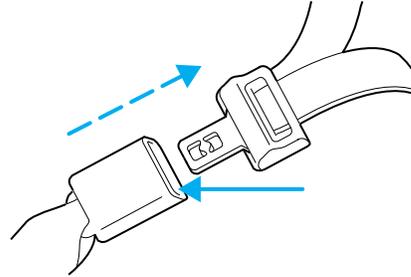
### Combination lap and shoulder belts

1. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from) until you hear a snap and feel it latch. Make sure the tongue is securely fastened in the buckle.



## Seating and Safety Restraints

- To unfasten, push the release button and remove the tongue from the buckle.

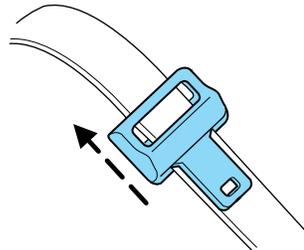


### **Safety belt with cinch tongue (front and rear center seat only)**

The cinch tongue will slide up and down the belt webbing when the belt is stowed or while putting safety belts on. When the lap/shoulder safety belt is buckled, the cinch tongue will allow the lap portion to be shortened, but pinches the webbing to keep the lap portion from getting longer. The cinch tongue is designed to slip during a crash, so always wear the shoulder belt properly and don't allow any slack in either the lap or shoulder portions.

Before you can reach and latch a combination lap and shoulder belt having a cinch tongue into the buckle, you may have to lengthen the lap belt portion of it.

- To lengthen the lap belt, pull some webbing out of the shoulder belt retractor.
- While holding the webbing below the tongue, grasp the tip (metal portion) of the tongue so that it is parallel to the webbing and slide the tongue upward.



- Provide enough lap belt length so that the tongue can reach the buckle.

### **How to fasten the cinch tongue**

- Pull the combination lap and shoulder belt from the retractor so that the shoulder belt portion of the safety belt crosses your shoulder and chest.
- Be sure the belt is not twisted. If the belt is twisted, remove the twist.

168

## Seating and Safety Restraints

3. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle for your seating position until you hear a snap and feel it latch.

4. Make sure the tongue is securely fastened to the buckle by pulling on the tongue.



**WARNING:** The lap belt should fit snugly and as low as possible around the hips, not across the waist.



**WARNING:** Front and rear seat occupants, including pregnant women, should wear safety belts for optimum protection in an accident.



**WARNING:** Each seating position in your vehicle has a specific safety belt assembly which is made up of one buckle and one tongue that are designed to be used as a pair. 1) Use the shoulder belt on the outside shoulder only. Never wear the shoulder belt under the arm. 2) Never swing the safety belt around your neck over the inside shoulder. 3) Never use a single belt for more than one person.

While you are fastened in the safety belt, the combination lap/shoulder belt with a cinch tongue adjusts to your movement. However, if you brake hard, turn hard, or if your vehicle receives an impact of 5 mph (8 km/h) or more, the safety belt will become locked and help reduce your forward movement.

### ***Restraint of pregnant women***



**WARNING:** Always ride and drive with your seatback upright and the safety belt properly fastened. The lap portion of the safety belt should fit snug and be positioned low across the hips. The shoulder portion of the safety belt should be positioned across the chest. Pregnant women should also follow this practice. See figure below.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

Pregnant women should always wear their safety belt. The lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned low across the hips below the belly and worn as tight as comfort will allow. The shoulder belt should be positioned to cross the middle of the shoulder and the center of the chest.



### Vehicle sensitive mode

Combination lap and shoulder belts in normal retractor mode allow free shoulder belt length adjustment to your movements and locking in response to vehicle movement. For example, if the driver brakes suddenly or turns a corner sharply, or the vehicle receives an impact of approximately 5 mph (8 km/h) or more, the combination safety belts will lock to help reduce forward movement of the driver and passengers.

### Belt sensitive mode

Combination lap and shoulder belts can also be made to lock manually by quickly pulling on the shoulder belt.

### Automatic locking mode

#### *When to use the automatic locking mode*

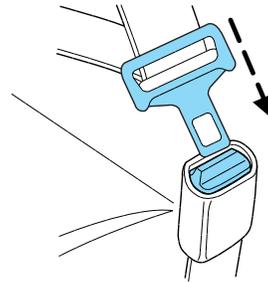
In this mode, the shoulder belt is automatically pre-locked. The belt will still retract to remove any slack in the shoulder belt. The automatic locking mode is not available on the driver safety belt.

This mode should be used **any time** a child safety seat (except a booster) is installed in a passenger front or outboard rear seating position (if equipped). Children 12 years old and under should be properly restrained in the rear seat whenever possible. Refer to *Safety restraints for children* or *Safety seats for children* later in this chapter.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

### **How to use the automatic locking mode**

- Buckle the combination lap and shoulder belt.



- Grasp the shoulder portion and pull downward until the entire belt is pulled out.



- Allow the belt to retract. As the belt retracts, you will hear a clicking sound. This indicates the safety belt is now in the automatic locking mode.

### **How to disengage the automatic locking mode**

Disconnect the combination lap/shoulder belt and allow it to retract completely to disengage the automatic locking mode and activate the vehicle sensitive (emergency) locking mode.



**WARNING:** After any vehicle collision, the front passenger and rear outboard safety belt systems must be checked by an authorized dealer to verify that the “automatic locking retractor” feature for child seats is still functioning properly. In addition, all safety belts should be checked for proper function.

## Seating and Safety Restraints



**WARNING:** BELT AND RETRACTOR ASSEMBLY MUST BE REPLACED if the safety belt assembly “automatic locking retractor” feature or any other safety belt function is not operating properly when checked by an authorized dealer. Failure to replace the belt and retractor assembly could increase the risk of injury in collisions.

### Energy management feature

- This vehicle has a safety belt system with an energy management feature at the front outboard seating positions to help further reduce the risk of injury in the event of a head-on collision.
- The front outboard safety belt systems have a retractor assembly that is designed to pay out webbing in a controlled manner. This feature is designed to help reduce the belt force acting on the occupant’s chest.

### Safety belt pretensioner

The safety belt pretensioners at the front outboard seating positions are designed to tighten the safety belts firmly against the occupant’s body during frontal collisions, and in side collisions and rollovers. This helps increase the effectiveness of the safety belts. In frontal collisions, the safety belt pretensioners can be activated alone or, if the collision is of sufficient severity, together with the front airbags.

The driver and front outboard passenger safety belt system (including retractors, buckles and height adjusters) must be replaced if the vehicle is involved in a collision that results in the activation of the safety belt pretensioners. Refer to the *Child restraint and safety belt maintenance* section in this chapter.



**WARNING:** Failure to replace the safety belt assembly under the above conditions could result in severe personal injuries in the event of a collision.

### Safety belt extension assembly

If the safety belt is too short when fully extended, there is an 8 inch (20 cm) safety belt extension assembly that can be added (part number 611C22). This assembly can be obtained from an authorized dealer.

Use only extensions manufactured by the same supplier as the safety belt. Manufacturer identification is located at the end of the webbing on the label. Also, use the safety belt extension only if the safety belt is too short for you when fully extended.

172

## Seating and Safety Restraints

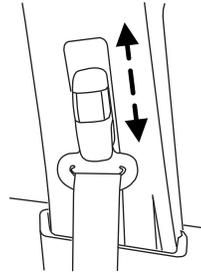


**WARNING:** Do not use extensions to change the fit of the shoulder belt across the torso.

### Front safety belt height adjustment

Your vehicle has safety belt height adjustments at the front outboard seating positions. Adjust the height of the shoulder belt so the belt rests across the middle of your shoulder.

To adjust the shoulder belt height, pull on the center button and slide the height adjuster down. Release the button and pull down on the height adjuster to make sure it is locked in place. To adjust the belt upward, slide the adjuster up and then pull down on the height adjuster to make sure it is locked in place.



**WARNING:** Position the safety belt height adjusters so that the belt rests across the middle of your shoulder. Failure to adjust the safety belt properly could reduce the effectiveness of the safety belt and increase the risk of injury in a collision.

### Safety belt warning light and indicator chime

The safety belt warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster and a chime sounds to remind the occupants to fasten their safety belts.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

### Conditions of operation

If...	Then...
The driver's safety belt is not buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the on position...	The safety belt warning light illuminates 1-2 minutes and the warning chime sounds 4-8 seconds.
The driver's safety belt is buckled while the indicator light is illuminated and the warning chime is sounding...	The safety belt warning light and warning chime turn off.
The driver's safety belt is buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the on position...	The safety belt warning light and indicator chime remain off.

### Belt-Minder®

The Belt-Minder® feature is a supplemental warning to the safety belt warning function. This feature provides additional reminders to the driver that the driver's safety belt is unbuckled by intermittently sounding a chime and illuminating the safety belt warning lamp in the instrument cluster.

If...	Then...
The driver's safety belt is not buckled before the vehicle has reached at least 3 mph (5 km/h) and 1-2 minutes have elapsed since the ignition switch has been turned to the on position...	The Belt-Minder® feature is activated - the safety belt warning light illuminates and the warning chime sounds for six seconds every 30 seconds, repeating for approximately five minutes or until safety belt is buckled.
The driver's safety belt is buckled while the safety belt indicator light is illuminated and the safety belt warning chime is sounding...	The Belt-Minder® feature will not activate.
The driver's safety belt is buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the on position...	The Belt-Minder® feature will not activate.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

The following are reasons most often given for not wearing safety belts  
(All statistics based on U.S. data):

Reasons given...	Consider...
“Crashes are rare events”	<b>36700 crashes occur every day.</b> The more we drive, the more we are exposed to “rare” events, even for good drivers. <i>1 in 4 of us will be seriously injured in a crash during our lifetime.</i>
“I’m not going far”	<b>3 of 4</b> fatal crashes occur within <b>25</b> miles (40 km) of home.
“Belts are uncomfortable”	We design our safety belts to enhance comfort. If you are uncomfortable - try different positions for the safety belt upper anchorage and seatback which should be as upright as possible; this can improve comfort.
“I was in a hurry”	<b>Prime time for an accident.</b> Belt-Minder® reminds us to take a few seconds to buckle up.
“Safety belts don’t work”	<b>Safety belts</b> , when used properly, <b>reduce risk of death</b> to front seat occupants by <b>45% in cars</b> , and by <b>60% in light trucks</b> .
“Traffic is light”	<b>Nearly 1 of 2 deaths occur in single-vehicle crashes</b> , many when no other vehicles are around.
“Belts wrinkle my clothes”	Possibly, but a serious crash can do much more than wrinkle your clothes, particularly if you are unbelted.
“The people I’m with don’t wear belts”	Set the example, teen deaths occur 4 times more often in vehicles with TWO or MORE people. Children and younger brothers/sisters imitate behavior they see.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

Reasons given...	Consider...
“I have an airbag”	Airbags offer greater protection when used with safety belts. Frontal airbags are not designed to inflate in rear and side crashes or rollovers.
“I’d rather be thrown clear”	Not a good idea. <b>People</b> who are <b>ejected are 40 times more likely to DIE</b> . Safety belts help prevent ejection, WE CAN’T “PICK OUR CRASH”.



**WARNING:** Do not sit on top of a buckled safety belt or insert a latchplate into the buckle to avoid the Belt-Minder® chime. To do so may adversely affect the performance of the vehicle’s airbag system.

### **Deactivating/activating the Belt-Minder® feature (Driver only)**

**Note:** If you are using MyKey®, the Belt-Minder® cannot be disabled. Also, if the Belt-Minder® has been previously disabled, it will be re-enabled during the use of MyKey®. Refer to *MyKey®* in the *Locks and Security* chapter.

The Belt-Minder® feature can be deactivated/activated by performing the following procedure:

Before following the procedure, make sure that the following conditions are met:

- the parking brake is set
- the gearshift is in P (Park)
- the ignition switch is in the off position
- all vehicle doors are closed
- the driver’s safety belt is unbuckled
- the parklamps/headlamps are in the off position



**WARNING:** While the design allows you to deactivate your Belt-Minder®, this system is designed to improve your chances of being safely belted and surviving an accident. We recommend you leave the Belt-Minder® system activated for yourself and others who may use the vehicle. To reduce the risk of injury, do not deactivate/activate the Belt-Minder® feature while driving the vehicle.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

### **Belt-Minder® activation and deactivation procedure**

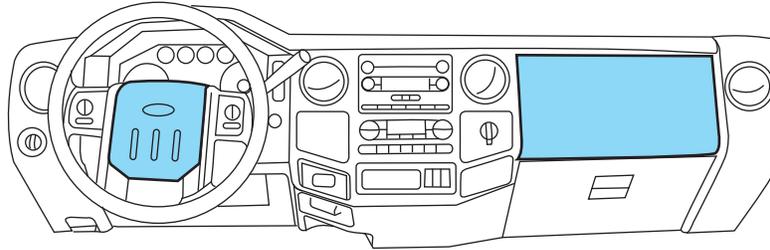
*Read Steps 1 - 5 thoroughly before proceeding with the deactivation/activation programming procedure.*

1. Turn the ignition switch to the on position. (DO NOT START THE ENGINE)
2. Wait until the safety belt warning light turns off. (approximately one minute)
  - Step 3 must be completed within 30 seconds after the safety belt warning light turns off.
3. Buckle then unbuckle the safety belt three times at a moderate speed, ending with the safety belt in the unbuckled state.
  - After Step 3 is complete, the safety belt warning light will be turned on for three seconds.
  - If Step 4 does not occur within 10 seconds at the end of Step 3, Belt-Minder® will automatically exit programming mode without changing its enable status.
4. Within seven seconds of the light turning on, buckle then unbuckle the safety belt.
  - This will disable the Belt-Minder® feature if it is currently enabled. As confirmation, the safety belt warning light will flash four times per second for three seconds.
  - This will enable the Belt-Minder® feature if it is currently disabled. As confirmation, the safety belt warning light will flash four times per second for three seconds, followed by three seconds with the light off, then followed by the safety belt warning light flashing four times per second for three seconds again.

After receiving confirmation, the deactivation/activation procedure is complete.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

### AIRBAG SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM (SRS)



#### Important SRS precautions

The SRS is designed to work with the safety belt to help protect the driver and right front passenger from certain upper body injuries. Airbags DO NOT inflate slowly; there is a risk of injury from a deploying airbag.



**WARNING:** All occupants of the vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their safety belts, even when an air bag supplemental restraint system (SRS) is provided.

**WARNING:** When possible, all children 12 years old and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position.

**WARNING:** The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) recommends a minimum distance of at least 10 inches (25 cm) between an occupant's chest and the driver airbag module.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

 **WARNING:** Never place your arm over the airbag module as a deploying airbag can result in serious arm fractures or other injuries.

To properly position yourself away from the airbag:

- Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.
- Recline the seat slightly one or two degrees from the upright position.

 **WARNING:** Do not put anything on or over the airbag module. Placing objects on or over the airbag inflation area may cause those objects to be propelled by the airbag into your face and torso causing serious injury.

 **WARNING:** Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the airbag supplemental restraint systems or its fuses. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

 **WARNING:** The front passenger airbag is not designed to offer protection to an occupant in the center front seating position.

 **WARNING:** Modifying or adding equipment to the front end of the vehicle (including frame, bumper, front end body structure and tow hooks) may affect the performance of the airbag system, increasing the risk of injury. Do not modify the front end of the vehicle.

 **WARNING:** Additional equipment such as snowplow equipment may effect the performance of the airbag sensors increasing the risk of injury. Please refer to the *Body Builders Layout Book* for instructions about the appropriate installation of additional equipment.

### Children and airbags

For additional important safety information, read all information on safety restraints in this guide.

Children must always be properly restrained. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of injury in a collision.

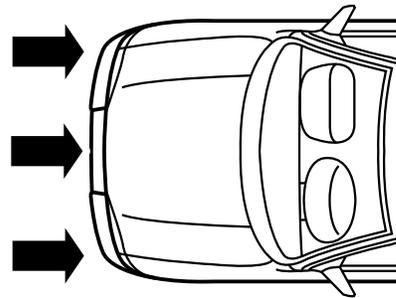
## Seating and Safety Restraints

**!** **WARNING:** An infant in a rear-facing seat faces a high risk of serious or fatal injuries from a deploying passenger airbag. Rear facing infant seats should NEVER be placed in the front seats, unless the passenger airbag is turned off. See *Passenger airbag ON/OFF switch*.

**!** **WARNING:** Front seating positions only: If seating two adults and a child, Ford recommends properly restraining the child in the center front seating position, but only if doing so will not interfere with driving the vehicle. This arrangement provides lap and shoulder belt and airbag protection for adult occupants and an attachment method for a child restraint. If the child seat interferes with driving the vehicle and the child restraint is forward-facing, the child may be restrained in the passenger seat. Move the seat as far rearward as possible to minimize the likelihood of interaction with the front passenger airbag. Never place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. Always properly restrain all occupants, including the child in an appropriate child seat or booster.

### How does the airbag supplemental restraint system work?

The airbag SRS is designed to activate when the vehicle sustains sufficient longitudinal deceleration. The fact that the airbags did not inflate in a collision does not mean that something is wrong with the system. Rather, it means the forces were not of the type sufficient to cause activation. Airbags are designed to inflate in frontal and near-frontal collisions, not rollover, side-impact, or rear-impacts.



## Seating and Safety Restraints

The airbags inflate and deflate rapidly upon activation. After airbag deployment, it is normal to notice a smoke-like, powdery residue or smell the burnt propellant. This may consist of cornstarch, talcum powder (to lubricate the bag) or sodium compounds (e.g., baking soda) that result from the combustion process that inflates the airbag. Small amounts of sodium hydroxide may be present which may irritate the skin and eyes, but none of the residue is toxic.



While the system is designed to help reduce serious injuries, it may also cause minor abrasions, swelling or temporary hearing loss. Because airbags must inflate rapidly and with considerable force, there is the risk of death or serious injuries such as fractures, facial and eye injuries or internal injuries, particularly to occupants who are not properly restrained or are otherwise out of position at the time of airbag deployment. Thus, it is extremely important that occupants be properly restrained as far away from the airbag module as possible while maintaining vehicle control.



**WARNING:** Several air bag system components get hot after inflation. Do not touch them after inflation.



**WARNING:** If the air bag has deployed, **the air bag will not function again and must be replaced immediately.** If the air bag is not replaced, the unrepaired area will increase the risk of injury in a collision.

The SRS consists of:

- driver and passenger airbag modules (which include the inflators and airbags),
- seat-mounted side airbags (if equipped) . Refer to *Seat-mounted side airbag system* later in this chapter
- Safety Canopy® System (if equipped). Refer to *Safety Canopy® System* later in this chapter.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

- one or more impact and safing sensors,
- a readiness light and tone
- and the electrical wiring which connects the components.

The diagnostic module monitors its own internal circuits and the supplemental airbag electrical system wiring (including the impact sensors), the system wiring, the airbag system readiness light, the airbag backup power and the airbag ignitors.

### Seat-mounted side airbag system (if equipped)

 **WARNING:** Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover on the side of the seatbacks of the front seats or in front seat areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a collision.

 **WARNING:** Do not use accessory seat covers. The use of accessory seat covers may prevent the deployment of the side airbags and increase the risk of injury in an accident.

 **WARNING:** Do not lean your head on the door. The side airbag could injure you as it deploys from the side of the seatback.

 **WARNING:** Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the airbag SRS, its fuses or the seat cover on a seat containing an airbag. See an authorized dealer.

 **WARNING:** All occupants of the vehicle should always wear their safety belts even when an airbag SRS is provided.

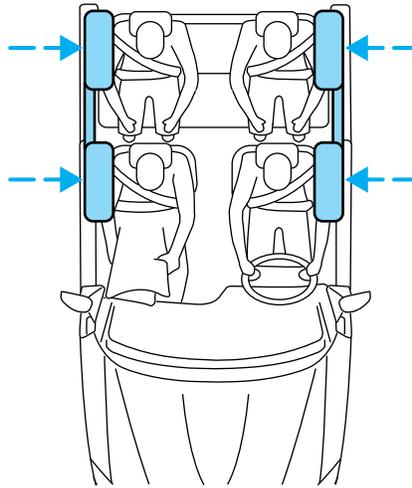
## Seating and Safety Restraints

### ***How does the side airbag system work?***

The design and development of the side airbag system included recommended testing procedures that were developed by a group of automotive safety experts known as the Side Airbag Technical Working Group. These recommended testing procedures help reduce the risk of injuries related to the deployment of side airbags.

The side airbag system consists of the following:

- An inflatable bag (airbag) with a gas generator concealed behind the outboard bolster of the driver and front passenger seatbacks.
- A special seat cover designed to allow airbag deployment.
- The same warning light, electronic control and diagnostic unit as used for the front airbags.
- Crash sensors located on the front doors.
- One crash sensor located on each side of the c-pillar (Crew cab and SuperCab only).



Side airbags, in combination with safety belts, can help reduce the risk of severe injuries in the event of a significant side impact collision.

The side airbags are fitted on the outboard side of the seatbacks of the front seats. In certain lateral collisions, the airbag on the side affected by the collision will be inflated. The airbag was designed to inflate between the door panel and occupant to further enhance the protection provided occupants in side impact collisions.

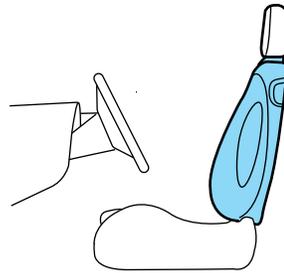
The airbag SRS is designed to activate when the vehicle sustains lateral deceleration sufficient to cause the sensors to close an electrical circuit that initiates airbag inflation.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

The fact that the airbags did not inflate in a collision does not mean that something is wrong with the system. Rather, it means the forces were not of the type sufficient to cause activation. Side airbags are designed to inflate in side-impact collisions, not roll-over, rear-impact, frontal or near-frontal collisions, unless the collision causes sufficient lateral deceleration.

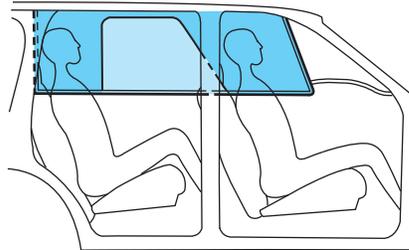
**!** **WARNING:** Several airbag system components get hot after inflation. Do not touch them after inflation.

**!** **WARNING:** If the side airbag has deployed, **the airbag will not function again. The side airbag system (including the seat) must be inspected and serviced by an authorized dealer.** If the airbag is not replaced, the unrepaired area will increase the risk of injury in a collision.



### Safety Canopy® System (if equipped)

**!** **WARNING:** Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying Safety Canopy®. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a collision.



**!** **WARNING:** Do not lean your head on the door. The Safety Canopy® could injure you as it deploys from the headliner.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

**WARNING:** Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the Safety Canopy® System, its fuses, the A, B, or C pillar trim, or the headliner on a vehicle containing a Safety Canopy®. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

**WARNING:** All occupants of the vehicle including the driver should always wear their safety belts even when an airbag SRS and Safety Canopy® System is provided.

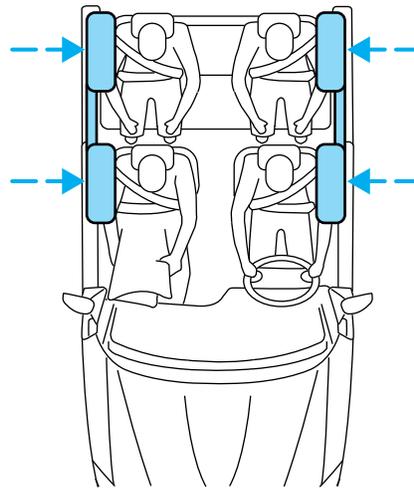
**WARNING:** To reduce risk of injury, do not obstruct or place objects in the deployment path of the inflatable Safety Canopy®.

### How does the Safety Canopy® System work?

The design and development of the Safety Canopy system included recommended testing procedures that were developed by a group of automotive safety experts known as the Side Airbag Technical Working Group. These recommended testing procedures help reduce the risk of injuries related to the deployment of side airbags (including the Safety Canopy).

The Safety Canopy system consists of the following:

- An inflatable curtain with a gas generator concealed behind the headliner between the A and C pillar.
- A headliner designed to flex open above the side doors to allow Safety Canopy deployment.
- The same warning light, electronic control and diagnostic unit as used for the front airbags.



## Seating and Safety Restraints

- Two crash sensors located on the C-pillar (one on each side) (SuperCab and Crew Cab only).
- Crash sensors located on the front doors.
- Rollover sensor in the restraints control module (RCM).

The Safety Canopy system, in combination with safety belts, can help reduce the risk of severe injuries in the event of a significant side impact collision or rollover event.

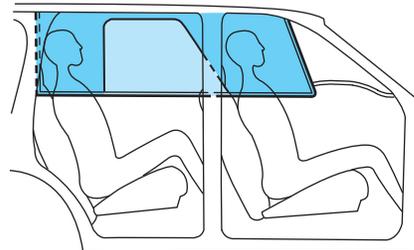
Children 12 years old and under should always be properly restrained in the second row seats. The Safety Canopy will not interfere with children restrained using a properly installed child or booster seat because it is designed to inflate downward from the headliner above the doors along the side window opening.

The Safety Canopy system is designed to activate when the vehicle sustains lateral deceleration sufficient to cause the RCM to initiate Safety Canopy inflation or when a certain likelihood of a rollover event is detected by the rollover sensor.

The Safety Canopy is mounted to roof side-rail sheet metal, behind the headliner, above each row of seats. The Safety Canopy is designed to inflate between the side window area and occupants to further enhance protection provided in side impact collisions and rollover events.

The fact that the Safety Canopy did not activate in a collision does not mean that something is wrong with the system. Rather, it means the forces were not of the type sufficient to cause activation. The Safety Canopy is designed to inflate in certain side impact collisions or rollover events, not in rear impact, frontal or near-frontal collisions, unless the collision causes sufficient lateral deceleration or rollover likelihood.

 **WARNING:** Several Safety Canopy system components get hot after inflation. Do not touch them after inflation.



## Seating and Safety Restraints



**WARNING:** If the Safety Canopy system has deployed, the Safety Canopy will not function again unless replaced. The Safety Canopy system (including the A, B, C, and D pillar trim and headliner) must be inspected and serviced by an authorized dealer. If the Safety Canopy is not replaced, it will not function again, which will increase the risk of injury in a future collision.

### Determining if the system is operational

The SRS uses a readiness light in the instrument cluster or a tone to indicate the condition of the system. Refer to *Warning lights and chimes* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter. Routine maintenance of the side airbag is not required.

A difficulty with the system is indicated by one or more of the following:

- The readiness light (same light as for front airbag system) will either flash or stay lit.
- The readiness light will not illuminate immediately after ignition is turned on.
- A series of five beeps will be heard. The tone pattern will repeat periodically until the problem and/or light are repaired.

If any of these things happen, even intermittently, have the SRS serviced at your authorized dealer immediately. Unless serviced, the system may not function properly in the event of a collision.

### SOS Post-Crash Alert System™

The system automatically flashes the turn signal lamps and sounds the horn three times at four second intervals in the event of a serious impact that deploys an airbag (front, side, side curtain [if equipped] or Safety Canopy® [if equipped]) or the safety belt pretensioners.

The system can be turned off when any one of the following actions are taken by the driver or any other person:

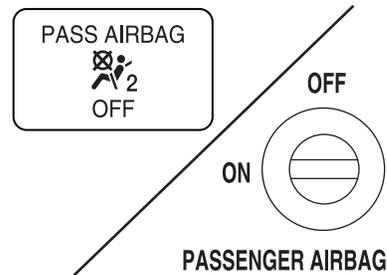
- pressing the hazard control button,
- or pressing the panic button on the remote entry transmitter.

The feature will continue to operate until the vehicle runs out of power.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

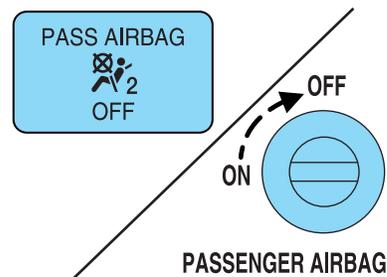
### Passenger airbag ON/OFF switch (if equipped)

**WARNING:** An airbag ON/OFF switch may be installed in this vehicle. Before driving, *always* look at the face of the switch to be sure the switch is in the proper position in accordance with these instructions and warnings. Failure to put the switch in a proper position can increase the risk of serious injury or death in a collision.



### Turning the passenger airbag off

1. Insert the ignition key, turn the switch to OFF position and hold in the OFF position while removing the key.
2. When the ignition is turned to the on position the “pass airbag off” light illuminates briefly, momentarily shuts off and then turns back on. This indicates that the passenger airbag is deactivated.



**WARNING:** If the light fails to illuminate when the passenger air bag switch is in the OFF position and the ignition switch is in on, have the passenger air bag switch serviced at your authorized dealer immediately.

**WARNING:** In order to avoid inadvertent activation of the switch, always remove the ignition key from the passenger air bag ON/OFF switch.

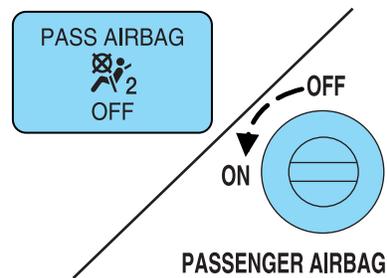
## Seating and Safety Restraints

**!** **WARNING:** An infant in a rear-facing seat faces a high risk of serious or fatal injuries from a deploying passenger airbag. Rear facing infant seats should NEVER be placed in the front seats, unless the passenger airbag is turned off.

### Turning the passenger airbag back on

The passenger airbag remains off until you turn it back on.

1. Insert the ignition key and turn the switch to ON.
2. The “pass airbag off” light will briefly illuminate when the ignition is turned to on. This indicates that the passenger airbag is operational.



**!** **WARNING:** If the “pass airbag off” light is illuminated when the passenger airbag switch is in the ON position and the ignition switch is in on, have the passenger airbag switch serviced at your authorized dealer immediately.

The passenger side airbag should always be ON (the “pass airbag off” light should *not* be illuminated) unless the passenger is a person who meets the requirements stated either in Category 1, 2 or 3 of the NHTSA/Transport Canada deactivation criteria which follows.

**!** **WARNING:** The safety belts for the driver and right front passenger seating positions have been specifically designed to function together with the airbags in certain types of crashes. When you turn OFF your airbag, you not only lose the protection of the airbag, you also may reduce the effectiveness of your safety belt system, which was designed to work with the airbag. If you are not a person who meets the requirements stated in the NHTSA/Transport Canada deactivation criteria turning OFF the airbag can increase the risk of serious injury or death in a collision.

## Seating and Safety Restraints



**WARNING:** If your vehicle has rear seats, always transport children who are 12 and younger in the rear seat. Always use safety belts and child restraints properly. DO NOT place a child in a rear facing infant seat in the front seat unless your vehicle is equipped with an airbag ON/OFF switch and the passenger airbag is turned OFF. This is because the back of the infant seat is too close to the inflating airbag and the risk of a fatal injury to the infant when the airbag inflates is substantial.

The vast majority of drivers and passengers are much safer with an airbag than without. To do their job and reduce the risk of life threatening injuries, airbags must open with great force, and this force can pose a potentially deadly risk in some situations, particularly when a front seat occupant is not properly buckled up. The most effective way to reduce the risk of unnecessary airbag injuries without reducing the overall safety of the vehicle is to make sure all occupants are properly restrained in the vehicle, especially in the front seat. This provides the protection of safety belts and permits the airbags to provide the additional protection they were designed to provide. If you choose to deactivate your airbag, you are losing the very significant risk reducing benefits of the airbag and you are also reducing the effectiveness of the safety belts, because safety belts in modern vehicles are designed to work as a safety system with the airbags.

Read all airbag warning labels in the vehicle as well as the other important airbag instructions and warnings in this Owner's Guide.

### ***NHTSA deactivation criteria (excluding Canada)***

1. **Infant.** An infant (less than 1 year old) must ride in the front seat because:
  - the vehicle has no rear seat;
  - the vehicle has a rear seat too small to accommodate a rear-facing infant seat; or
  - the infant has a medical condition which, according to the infant's physician, makes it necessary for the infant to ride in the front so that the driver can constantly monitor the child's condition.
2. **Child age 1 to 12.** A child age 1 to 12 must ride in the front seat because:
  - the vehicle has no rear seat;
  - although children ages 1 to 12 ride in the rear seat(s) whenever possible, children ages 1 to 12 sometimes must ride in the front because no space is available in the rear seat(s) of the vehicle; or

190

## Seating and Safety Restraints

- the child has a medical condition which, according to the child's physician, makes it necessary for the child to ride in the front seat so that the driver can constantly monitor the child's condition.
3. **Medical condition.** A passenger has a medical condition which, according to his or her physician:
- causes the passenger airbag to pose a special risk for the passenger; and
  - makes the potential harm from the passenger airbag in a crash greater than the potential harm from turning OFF the airbag and allowing the passenger, even if belted, to hit the dashboard or windshield in a crash.



**WARNING:** This vehicle has special energy management safety belts for the driver and right front passenger. These particular belts are specifically designed to work with airbags to help reduce the risk of injury in a collision. The energy management safety belt is designed to give or release additional belt webbing in some accidents to reduce concentration of force on an occupant's chest and reduce the risk of certain bone fractures and injuries to underlying organs. In a crash, if the airbag is turned OFF, this energy management safety belt might permit the person wearing the belt to move forward enough to incur a serious or fatal injury. The more severe the crash, and the heavier the occupant, the greater the risk is. Be sure the airbag is turned ON for any person who does not qualify under the NHTSA deactivation criteria.

### **Transport Canada deactivation criteria (Canada Only)**

1. **Infant:** An infant (less than 1 year old) must ride in the front seat because:
  - my vehicle has no rear seat;
  - the rear seat in my vehicle cannot accommodate a rear-facing infant seat; or
  - the infant has a medical condition which, according to the infant's physician, makes it necessary for the infant to ride in the front seat so that the driver can monitor the infant's condition.
2. **Child age 12 or under:** A child age 12 or under must ride in the front seat because:
  - my vehicle has no rear seat;
  - although children age 12 and under ride in the rear seat whenever possible, children age 12 and under have no option but to sometimes ride in the front seat because rear seat space is insufficient; or

## Seating and Safety Restraints

- the child has a medical condition that, according to the child's physician, makes it necessary for the child to ride in the front seat so that the driver can monitor the child's condition.
3. **Medical condition:** A passenger has a medical condition that, according to his or her physician:
- poses a special risk for the passenger if the airbag deploys; and
  - makes the potential harm from the passenger airbag deployment greater than the potential harm from turning OFF the airbag and experiencing a crash without the protection offered by the airbag



**WARNING:** This vehicle has special energy management safety belts for the driver and right front passenger. These particular belts are specifically designed to work with airbags to help reduce the risk of injury in a collision. The energy management safety belt is designed to give or release additional belt webbing in some accidents to reduce concentration of force on an occupant's chest and reduce the risk of certain bone fractures and injuries to underlying organs. In a crash, if the airbag is turned OFF, this energy management safety belt might permit the person wearing the belt to move forward enough to incur a serious or fatal injury. The more severe the crash, and the heavier the occupant, the greater the risk is. Be sure the airbag is turned ON for any person who does not qualify under the NHTSA deactivation criteria.

### Disposal of airbags and airbag equipped vehicles

See authorized dealer. Airbags MUST BE disposed of by qualified personnel.

### SAFETY RESTRAINTS FOR CHILDREN

See the following sections for directions on how to properly use safety restraints for children. Also see *Airbag supplemental restraint system (SRS)* in this chapter for special instructions about using airbags.

### Important child restraint precautions



**WARNING:** Always make sure your child is secured properly in a device that is appropriate for their height, age and weight. Child safety restraints must be purchased separately from the vehicle. Failure to follow these instructions and guidelines may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.

## Seating and Safety Restraints



**WARNING:** All children are shaped differently. The Recommendations for Safety Restraints are based on probable child height, age and weight thresholds from NHTSA and other safety organizations or are the minimum requirements of law. Ford recommends checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician (CPST) and consult your pediatrician to make sure your child seat is appropriate for your child, and is compatible with and properly installed in the vehicle. To locate a child seat fitting station and CPST contact the NHTSA toll free at 1-888-327-4236 or on the internet at <http://www.nhtsa.dot.gov>. In Canada, check with your local St. John Ambulance office for referral to a CPST or for further information, contact your provincial ministry of transportation, your local St. John Ambulance office at <http://www.sfa.ca>, or Transport Canada at 1-800-333-0371 (<http://www.tc.gc.ca>). Failure to properly restrain children in safety seats made especially for their height, age, and weight may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.

Recommendations for Safety Restraints for Children		
	Child size, height, weight, or age	Recommended restraint type
Infants or toddlers	Children weighing 40 lb (18 kg) or less (generally age four or younger)	Use a child safety seat (sometimes called an infant carrier, convertible seat, or toddler seat).
Small children	Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a child safety seat (generally children who are less than 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall, are greater than age four (4) and less than age twelve (12), and between 40 lb (18 kg) and 80 lb (36 kg) and upward to 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by your child restraint manufacturer)	Use a belt-positioning booster seat.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

<b>Recommendations for Safety Restraints for Children</b>		
	<b>Child size, height, weight, or age</b>	<b>Recommended restraint type</b>
Larger children	Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a belt-positioning booster seat (generally children who are at least 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall or greater than 80 lb (36 kg) or 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by child restraint manufacturer)	Use a vehicle safety belt having the lap belt snug and low across the hips, shoulder belt centered across the shoulder and chest, and seatback upright.

- You are required by law to properly use safety seats for infants and toddlers in the U.S. and Canada.
- Many states and provinces require that small children use approved booster seats until they reach age eight, a height of 4 ft 9 in. (1.45 meters) tall, or 80 lb (36 kg). Check your local and state or provincial laws for specific requirements regarding the safety of children in your vehicle.
- When possible, always properly restrain children twelve (12) years of age and under in a rear seating position of your vehicle. Accident statistics suggest that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in a front seating position.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

### **Recommendations for attaching child safety restraints for children**

Restraint Type	Child Weight	Use any attachment method as indicated below by "X"				
		LATCH (lower anchors and top tether anchor)	LATCH (lower anchors only)	Safety belt and top tether anchor	Safety belt and LATCH (lower anchors and top tether anchor)	Safety belt only
Rear facing child seat	Up to 48 lb (21 kg)		X			X
Forward facing child seat	Up to 48 lb (21 kg)	X		X	X	
Forward facing child seat	Over 48 lb (21 kg)			X	X	



**WARNING:** Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. NEVER place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the vehicle seat all the way back. When possible, all children age 12 and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position. If all children cannot be seated and restrained properly in a rear seating position, properly restrain the largest child in the front seat.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

 **WARNING:** Always carefully follow the instructions and warnings provided by the manufacturer of any child restraint to determine if the restraint device is appropriate for your child's size, height, weight, or age. Follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions and warnings provided for installation and use in conjunction with the instructions and warnings provided by the vehicle manufacturer. A safety seat that is improperly installed or utilized, is inappropriate for your child's height, age, or weight or does not properly fit the child may increase the risk of serious injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Never let a passenger hold a child on his or her lap while the vehicle is moving. The passenger cannot protect the child from injury in a collision, which may result in serious injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Never use pillows, books, or towels to boost a child. They can slide around and increase the likelihood of injury or death in a collision.

 **WARNING:** Always restrain an unoccupied child seat or booster seat. These objects may become projectiles in a collision or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious injury.

 **WARNING:** Never place, or allow a child to place, the shoulder belt under a child's arm or behind the back because it reduces the protection for the upper part of the body and may increase the risk of injury or death in a collision.

 **WARNING:** Do not leave children, unreliable adults, or pets unattended in your vehicle.

### Transporting children

Always make sure your child is secured properly in a device that is appropriate for their age, height and weight. All children are shaped differently. The child height, age and weight thresholds provided are recommendations or the minimum requirements of law. The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) provides education and

## Seating and Safety Restraints

training to ensure that all children ages 0 to 16 are properly restrained in the correct restraint system. Ford recommends checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician (CPST) and your pediatrician to make sure your seat is appropriate for your child and properly installed in the vehicle. To locate a child seat fitting station and CPST contact the NHTSA toll free at **1-888-327-4236** or on the internet at <http://www.nhtsa.dot.gov>. In Canada, check with your local St. John Ambulance office for referral to a CPST or for further information, contact your provincial ministry of transportation, your local St. John Ambulance office at <http://www.sfa.ca>, or Transport Canada at 1-800-333-0371 (<http://www.tc.gc.ca>).

Follow all the safety restraint and airbag precautions that apply to adult passengers in your vehicle.

If the child is the proper height, age, and weight (as specified by your child safety seat or booster manufacturer), fits the restraint and can be restrained properly, then restrain the child in the child safety seat or with the belt-positioning booster. Remember that child seats and belt-positioning boosters vary and may be designed to fit children of different heights, ages and weights. Children who are too large for child safety seats or belt-positioning boosters (as specified by your child safety seat manufacturer) should always properly wear safety belts.

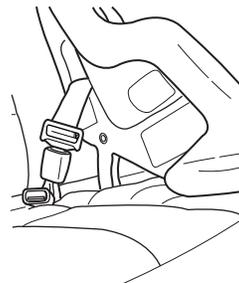
### SAFETY SEATS FOR CHILDREN

#### Infant and/or toddler seats

Use a safety seat that is recommended for the size and weight of the child.

When installing a child safety seat:

- Review and follow the information presented in the *Airbag supplemental restraint system (SRS)* section in this chapter.
- Carefully follow all of the manufacturer's instructions included with the safety seat you put in your vehicle. If you do not install and use the safety seat properly, the child may be injured in a sudden stop or collision.



## Seating and Safety Restraints

Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. NEVER place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the vehicle seat all the way back.

Children 12 and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position whenever possible. If all children cannot be seated and restrained properly in a rear seating position, properly restrain the largest child in the front seat.

### Installing child safety seats with automatic locking mode combination lap and shoulder belts (front passenger and rear outboard seating positions)

Check to make sure the child seat is properly secured before each use. Children 12 and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position whenever possible. If all children cannot be seated and restrained properly in a rear seating position, properly restrain the largest child in the front seat.

When installing a child safety seat with combination lap/shoulder belts:

- Use the correct safety belt buckle for that seating position.
- Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle until you hear a snap and feel it latch. Make sure the tongue is securely fastened in the buckle.
- Keep the buckle release button pointing up and away from the safety seat, with the tongue between the child seat and the release button, to prevent accidental unbuckling.
- Place vehicle seat back in upright position.
- This vehicle does not require the use of a locking clip.



**WARNING:** Depending on where you secure a child restraint, and depending on the child restraint design, you may block access to certain safety belt buckle assemblies and/or LATCH lower anchors, rendering those features potentially unusable. To avoid risk of injury, occupants should only use seating positions where they are able to be properly restrained.

### Installing the child safety seat

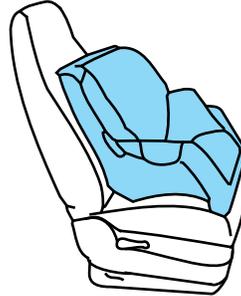
Perform the following steps when installing the child seat in the outboard combination lap/shoulder belts:

**Note:** Although the child seat illustrated is a forward facing child seat, the steps are the same for installing a rear facing child seat.

198

## Seating and Safety Restraints

1. Position the child safety seat in a seat with a combination lap and shoulder belt.

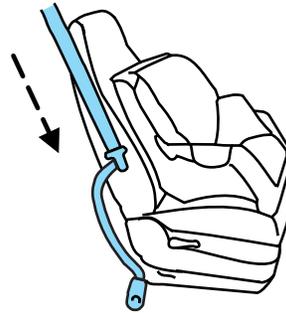


**WARNING:** An airbag can kill or injure a child in a child seat. Child seats should NEVER be placed in the front seats, unless the passenger airbag switch is turned off, See *Passenger airbag on/off switch*.



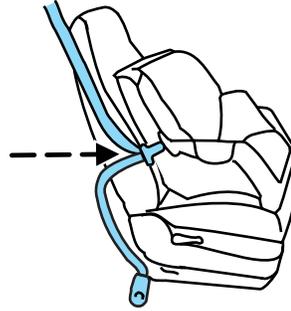
**WARNING:** Rear facing child seats should NEVER be placed in the front seats unless the passenger airbag switch is turned off.

2. Pull down on the shoulder belt and then grasp the shoulder belt and lap belt together.

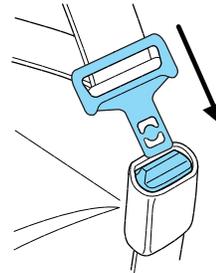


## Seating and Safety Restraints

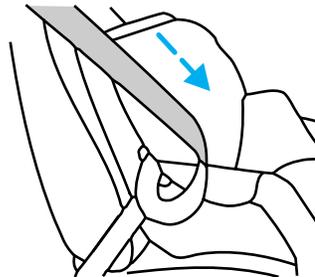
3. While holding the shoulder and lap belt portions together, route the tongue through the child seat according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions. Be sure the belt webbing is not twisted.



4. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from) for that seating position until you hear and feel the latch engage. Make sure the tongue is latched securely by pulling on it.



5. Put the safety belt in the automatic locking mode. To do so, grasp the shoulder portion of the belt and pull downward until all of the belt is pulled out.

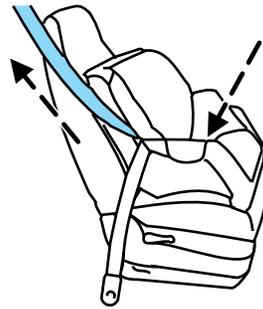


6. Allow the belt to retract to remove slack. The belt will click as it retracts to indicate it is in the automatic locking mode.

7. Try to pull the belt out of the retractor to make sure the retractor is in the automatic locking mode (you should not be able to pull more belt out). If the retractor is not locked, repeat Steps 5 and 6.

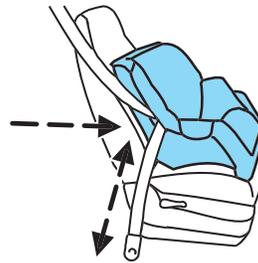
## Seating and Safety Restraints

8. Remove remaining slack from the belt. Force the seat down with extra weight, e.g., by pressing down or kneeling on the child restraint while pulling up on the shoulder belt in order to force slack from the belt. This is necessary to remove the remaining slack that will exist once the additional weight of the child is added to the child restraint. It also helps to achieve the proper snugness of the child seat to the vehicle. Sometimes, a slight lean towards the buckle will additionally help to remove remaining slack from the belt.



9. Attach the tether strap (if the child seat is equipped). Refer to *Attaching child safety seats with tether straps* later in this chapter.

10. Before placing the child in the seat, forcibly move the seat forward and back to make sure the seat is securely held in place. To check this, grab the seat at the belt path and attempt to move it side to side and forward. There should be no more than 1 inch (2.5 cm) of movement for proper installation.



11. Ford recommends checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician (CPST) to make certain the child restraint is properly installed. In Canada, check with your local St. John Ambulance office for referral to a CPST.

### **Installing child safety seats in cinch tongue combination lap and shoulder belt seating positions (All front center and Super/Crew cab rear center positions)**

The belt webbing below the tongue is the lap portion of the combination lap/shoulder belt, and the belt webbing above the tongue is the shoulder belt portion of the combination lap/shoulder belt.

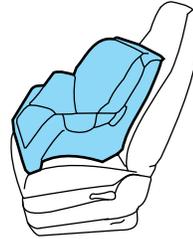


**WARNING:** Always use both lap and shoulder safety belt in the Regular Cab center seating position if applicable.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

**Note:** Although the child seat illustrated is a forward facing child seat, the steps are the same for installing a rear facing child seat.

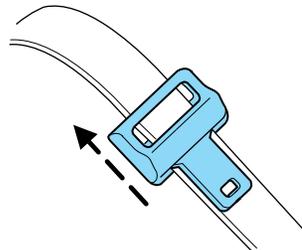
1. Position the child safety seat in the center seat.



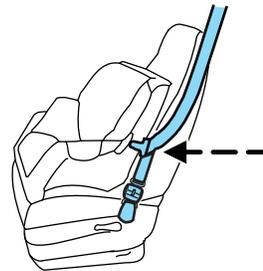
**WARNING:** Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move seat all the way back.

**WARNING:** Rear facing child seats should NEVER be placed in front of an active airbag.

2. Slide the tongue up the webbing.

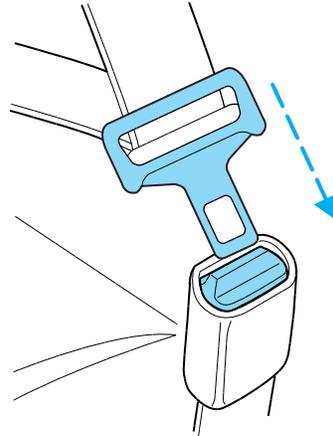


3. While holding both shoulder and lap portions next to the tongue, route the tongue and webbing through the child seat according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions. Be sure that the belt webbing is not twisted.

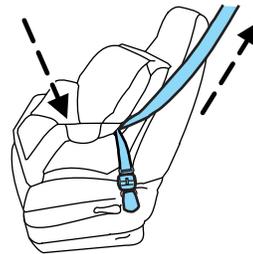


## Seating and Safety Restraints

4. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle for that seating positions until you hear a snap and feel it latch. Make sure the tongue is securely latched to the buckle by pulling on the tongue.



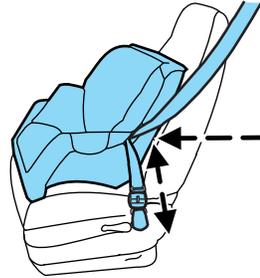
5. Remove remaining slack from the belt. Force the seat down with extra weight, e.g., by pressing down or kneeling on the child restraint while pulling up on the shoulder belt in order to force slack from the belt. This is necessary to remove the remaining slack that will exist once the additional weight of the child is added to the child restraint. It also helps to achieve the proper snugness of the child seat to the vehicle. Sometimes, a slight lean towards the buckle will additionally help to remove remaining slack from the belt.



6. Attach the tether strap (if the child seat is equipped). Refer to *Attaching child safety seats with tether straps* later in this chapter.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

7. Before placing the child in the seat, forcibly move the seat forward and back to make sure the seat is securely held in place. To check this, grab the seat at the belt path and attempt to move it side to side and forward. There should be no more than 1 inch (2.5 cm) of movement for proper installation.



8. Ford recommends checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician (CPST) to make certain the child restraint is properly installed. In Canada, check with your local St. John Ambulance office for referral to a CPST.

### Attaching child safety seats with LATCH (Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children) attachments

The LATCH system is composed of three vehicle anchor points: two (2) lower anchors located where the vehicle seat back and seat cushion meet (called the “seat bight”) and one (1) top tether anchor located behind that seating position. Your vehicle is **not** equipped with the lower anchor points in the seat bight. For this vehicle use the vehicle safety belt and upper tether to secure a child seat. See *Attaching child safety seats with tether straps* and *Recommendations for attaching safety restraints for children* in this chapter for more information.

### Attaching child safety seats with tether straps

Many forward-facing child safety seats include a tether strap which extends from the back of the child safety seat and hooks to an anchoring point called the top tether anchor. Tether straps are available as an accessory for many older safety seats. Contact the manufacturer of your child seat for information about ordering a tether strap, or to obtain a longer tether strap if the tether strap on your safety seat does not reach the appropriate top tether anchor in the vehicle.

The passenger seats of your vehicle may be equipped with built-in tether strap anchors located behind the seats as described below.

The tether anchors in your vehicle may be straps on the seatback or an anchor bracket mounted to the body shell on the back panel.

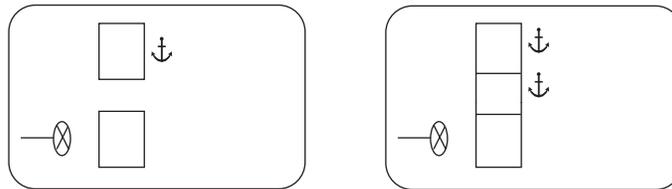
The SuperCab rear seat has three straps behind the top of the seat back that function as both routing loops for the tether straps and anchor loops.

204

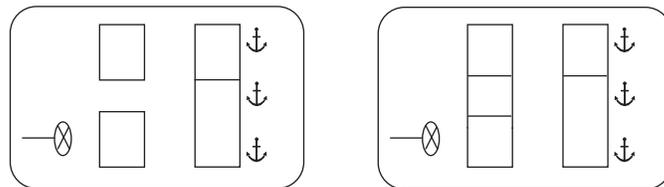
## Seating and Safety Restraints

The tether strap anchors in your vehicle are in the following positions (shown from top view):

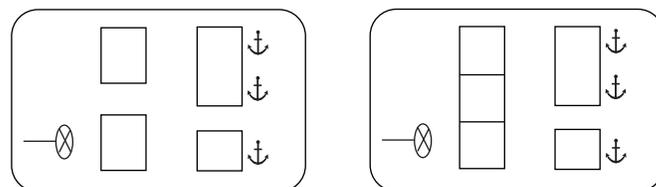
- **F-Series Regular Cab**



- **F-Series SuperCab**



- **F-Series Crew Cab**



Attach the tether strap only to the appropriate tether anchor as shown. The tether strap may not work properly if attached somewhere other than the correct tether anchor.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

Once the child safety seat has been installed using the safety belt, you can attach the top tether strap.

### Tether strap attachment

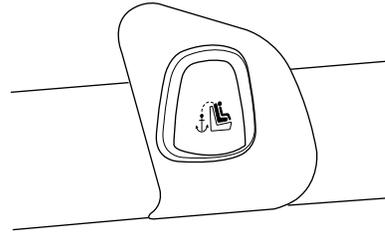
1. Route the child safety seat tether strap over the back of the seat.

For vehicles with adjustable head restraints, route the tether strap under the head restraint and between the head restraint posts, other wise route the tether strap over the top of the seatback. If the top of the safety seat hits the head restraint, raise the head restraint to let the child seat fit further rearward.

2. Locate the correct anchor for the selected seating position.

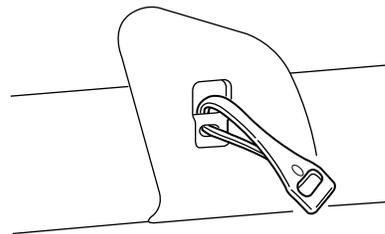
3. You may need to pull the seatback forward to access the tether anchors. Make sure the seat is locked in the upright position before installing the child seat. Refer to the *Rear folding seat system with load floor* section in this chapter for information on how to operate the rear seats.

4. Remove tether cover.



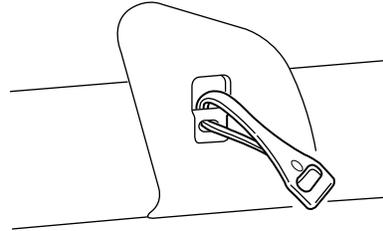
5. Clip the tether strap to the anchor as shown.

- Front seats (Regular Cab)



## Seating and Safety Restraints

- Rear seats (Crew Cab)



If the tether strap is clipped incorrectly, the child safety seat may not be retained properly in the event of a collision.

6. Refer to the *Installing child safety seats with automatic locking mode combination lap and shoulder belts* and *Installing child safety seats in cinch tongue combination lap and shoulder belt seating positions* sections of this chapter for further instructions to secure the child safety seat.

7. Tighten the child safety seat tether strap according to the manufacturer's instructions.

If the safety seat is not anchored properly, the risk of a child being injured in a collision greatly increases.

If your child restraint system is equipped with a tether strap, and the child restraint manufacturer recommends its use, Ford also recommends its use.

### ***Tether strap attachment (rear SuperCab only)***

There are three loops of webbing just above the back of the rear seat (along the bottom edge of the rear window) in the SuperCab. These loops are to be used as both routing loops and anchor loops for up to three child safety seat tether straps.

These straps may be secured below the back of the seat with rubber bands. To access, reach below the back of the seat and pull tether loop out of the rubber band securing it.

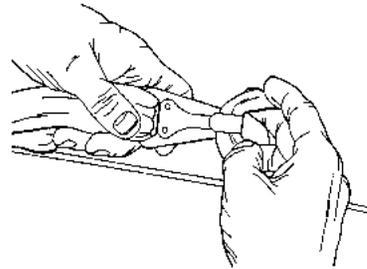
## Seating and Safety Restraints

Many tether straps cannot be tightened if the tether strap is hooked to the loop directly behind the child seat. To provide a tight tether strap:

1. Route the tether strap through the loop directly behind the child seat.

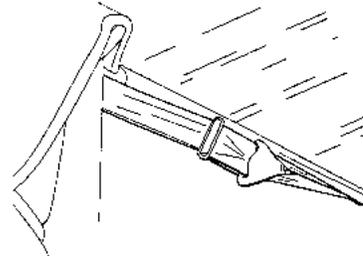


2. Attach the strap hook onto the loop behind an adjacent seating position.



3. Install the child safety seat tightly using the vehicle belts. Follow the instructions in this chapter.

4. Tighten the tether strap according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions.



A single loop can be used to route and anchor more than one child seat. For example, the center loop can be used as a routing loop for a child safety seat in the center rear seat and as an anchoring loop for child seats installed in the outboard rear seats.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

### Child booster seats

The belt-positioning booster (booster seat) is used to improve the fit of the vehicle safety belt. Children outgrow a typical child seat (e.g., convertible or toddler seat) when they weigh about 40 lb (18 kg) and are around four (4) years of age. Consult your child safety seat owner guide for the weight, height, and age limits specific to your child safety seat. Keep your child in the child safety seat if it properly fits the child, remains appropriate for their weight, height and age AND if properly secured to the vehicle.

Although the lap/shoulder belt will provide some protection, children who have outgrown a typical child seat are still too small for lap/shoulder belts to fit properly, and wearing an improperly fitted vehicle safety belt could increase the risk of serious injury in a crash. To improve the fit of both the lap and shoulder belt on children who have outgrown child safety seats, Ford Motor Company recommends use of a belt-positioning booster.

Booster seats position a child so that vehicle lap/shoulder safety belts fit better. They lift the child up so that the lap belt rests low across the hips and the knees bend comfortably at the edge of the cushion, while minimizing slouching. Booster seats may also make the shoulder belt fit better and more comfortably. Try to keep the belt near the middle of the shoulder and across the center of the chest. Moving the child closer (a few centimeters or inches) to the center of the vehicle, but remaining in the same seating position, may help provide a good shoulder belt fit.

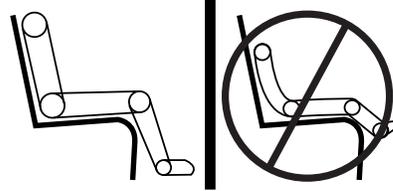
### **When children should use booster seats**

Children need to use booster seats from the time they outgrow the toddler seat until they are big enough for the vehicle seat and lap/shoulder belt to fit properly. Generally this is when they reach a height of at least 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall (around age eight to age twelve and between 40 lb (18 kg) and 80 lb (36 kg) or upward to 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by your child restraint manufacturer). Many state and provincial laws require that children use approved booster seats until they reach age eight, a height of 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall, or 80 lb (36 kg).

## Seating and Safety Restraints

Booster seats should be used until you can answer YES to ALL of these questions when seated without a booster seat:

- Can the child sit all the way back against the vehicle seat back with knees bent comfortably at the edge of the seat cushion?
- Can the child sit without slouching?



- Does the lap belt rest low across the hips?
- Is the shoulder belt centered on the shoulder and chest?
- Can the child stay seated like this for the whole trip?

### **Types of booster seats**

There are generally two types of belt-positioning booster seats: backless and high back. Always use booster seats in conjunction with the vehicle lap/shoulder belt.

- Backless booster seats

If your backless booster seat has a removable shield, remove the shield. If a vehicle seating position has a low seat back or no head restraint, a backless booster seat may place your child's head (as measured at the tops of the ears) above the top of the seat. In this case, move the backless booster to another seating position with a higher seat back or head restraint and lap/shoulder belts, or consider using a high back booster seat.



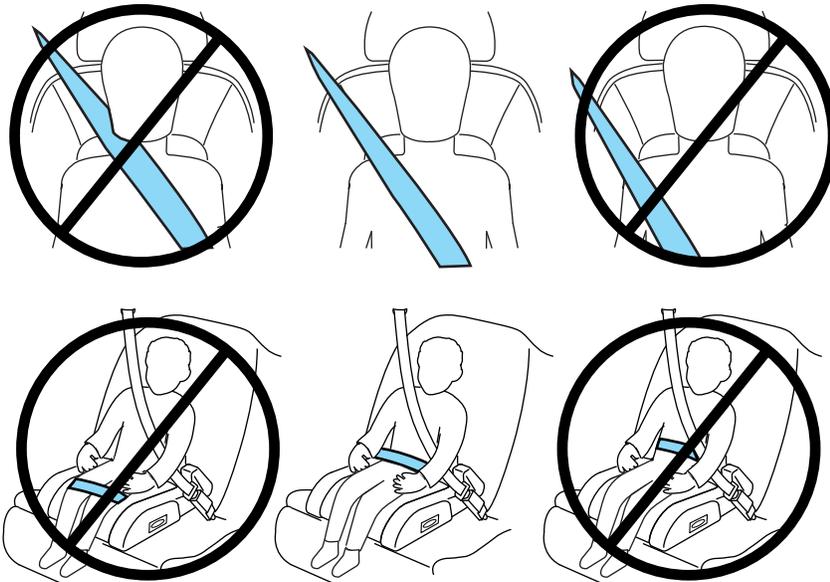
## Seating and Safety Restraints

- High back booster seats

If, with a backless booster seat, you cannot find a seating position that adequately supports your child's head, a high back booster seat would be a better choice.



Children and booster seats vary in size and shape. Choose a booster that keeps the lap belt low and snug across the hips, never up across the stomach, and lets you adjust the shoulder belt to cross the chest and rest snugly near the center of the shoulder. The drawings below compare the ideal fit (center) to a shoulder belt uncomfortably close to the neck and a shoulder belt that could slip off the shoulder. The drawings below also show how the lap belt should be low and snug across the child's hips.



## Seating and Safety Restraints

If the booster seat slides on the vehicle seat, placing a rubberized mesh sold as shelf or carpet liner under the booster seat may improve this condition. Do not introduce any item thicker than this under the booster seat. Check with the booster seat manufacturer's instructions.

### ***The importance of shoulder belts***

Using a booster without a shoulder belt increases the risk of a child's head hitting a hard surface in a collision. For this reason, you should never use a booster seat with a lap belt only. It is generally best to use a booster seat with lap/shoulder belts in the back seat.

Move a child to a different seating location if the shoulder belt does not stay positioned on the shoulder during use.

Follow all instructions provided by the manufacturer of the booster seat.



**WARNING:** Never place, or allow a child to place, the shoulder belt under a child's arm or behind the back because it reduces the protection for the upper part of the body and may increase the risk of injury or death in a collision.

### **Child restraint and safety belt maintenance**

Inspect the vehicle safety belts and child safety seat systems periodically to make sure they work properly and are not damaged. Inspect the vehicle and child seat safety belts to make sure there are no nicks, tears or cuts. Replace if necessary. All vehicle safety belt assemblies, including retractors, buckles, front safety belt buckle assemblies, buckle support assemblies (slide bar-if equipped), shoulder belt height adjusters (if equipped), shoulder belt guide on seatback (if equipped), child safety seat LATCH and tether anchors, and attaching hardware, should be inspected after a collision. Refer to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions for additional inspection and maintenance information specific to the child restraint. Ford Motor Company recommends that all safety belt assemblies in use in vehicles involved in a collision be replaced. However, if the collision was minor and an authorized dealer finds that the belts do not show damage and continue to operate properly, they do not need to be replaced. Safety belt assemblies not in use during a collision should also be inspected and replaced if either damage or improper operation is noted.

For proper care of soiled safety belts, refer to *Interior* in the *Cleaning* chapter.

212

## Seating and Safety Restraints

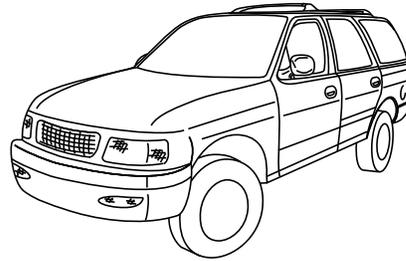


**WARNING:** Failure to inspect and if necessary replace the safety belt assembly or child restraint system under the above conditions could result in severe personal injuries in the event of a collision.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### NOTICE TO UTILITY VEHICLE AND TRUCK OWNERS

Utility vehicles and trucks handle differently than passenger cars in the various driving conditions that are encountered on streets, highways and off-road. Utility vehicles and trucks are not designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions.



**WARNING:** Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles. To reduce the risk of serious injury or death from a rollover or other crash you must:

- Avoid sharp turns and abrupt maneuvers;
- Drive at safe speeds for the conditions;
- Keep tires properly inflated;
- Never overload or improperly load your vehicle; and
- Make sure every passenger is properly restrained.



**WARNING:** In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. All occupants must wear seat belts and children/infants must use appropriate restraints to minimize the risk of injury or ejection.

Study your owner's guide and any supplements for specific information about equipment features, instructions for safe driving and additional precautions to reduce the risk of an accident or serious injury.

### VEHICLE CHARACTERISTICS

#### Four-wheel drive (4WD) system (if equipped)

A vehicle equipped with 4WD (when selected) has the ability to use all four wheels to power itself. This increases traction which may enable you to safely drive over terrain and road conditions that a conventional two-wheel drive vehicle cannot.

214

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

Power is supplied to all four wheels through a transfer case or power transfer unit. 4WD vehicles allow you to select different drive modes as necessary. Information on transfer case operation and shifting procedures can be found in the *Driving* chapter. Information on transfer case maintenance can be found in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter. You should become thoroughly familiar with this information before you operate your vehicle.

On some 4WD models, the initial shift from two-wheel drive to 4WD while the vehicle is moving can cause a momentary clunk and ratcheting sound. These sounds are normal as the front drivetrain comes up to speed and is not cause for concern.

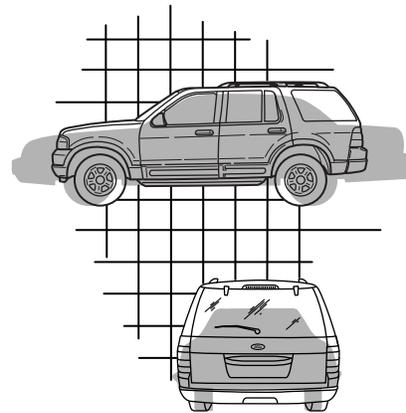


**WARNING:** Do not become overconfident in the ability of 4WD vehicles. Although a 4WD vehicle may accelerate better than two-wheel drive vehicle in low traction situations, it won't stop any faster than two-wheel drive vehicles. Always drive at a safe speed.

### How your vehicle differs from other vehicles

SUVs and trucks can differ from some other vehicles in a few noticeable ways. Your vehicle may be:

- Higher – to allow higher load carrying capacity and to allow it to travel over rough terrain without getting hung up or damaging underbody components.
- Shorter – to give it the capability to approach inclines and drive over the crest of a hill without getting hung up or damaging underbody components. All other things held equal, a shorter wheelbase may make your vehicle quicker to respond to steering inputs than a vehicle with a longer wheelbase.

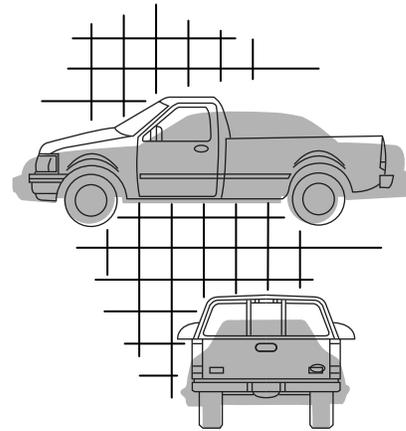


## Tires, Wheels and Loading

- Narrower – to provide greater maneuverability in tight spaces, particularly in off-road use.

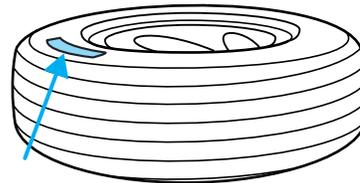
As a result of the above dimensional differences, SUVs and trucks often will have a higher center of gravity and a greater difference in center of gravity between the loaded and unloaded condition.

These differences that make your vehicle so versatile also make it handle differently than an ordinary passenger car.



### INFORMATION ABOUT UNIFORM TIRE QUALITY GRADING

Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic passenger car tires. The Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example:



- **Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A**

These Tire Quality Grades are determined by standards that the United States Department of Transportation has set.

Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic passenger car tires. They do not apply to deep tread, winter-type snow tires, space-saver or temporary use spare tires, light truck or "LT" type tires, tires with nominal rim diameters of 10 to 12 inches or limited production tires as defined in Title 49 Code of Federal Regulations Part 575.104(c)(2).

**U.S. Department of Transportation-Tire quality grades:** The U.S. Department of Transportation requires Ford Motor Company to give you the following information about tire grades exactly as the government has written it.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1½) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices, and differences in road characteristics and climate.

### Traction AA A B C

The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.



**WARNING:** The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics.

### Temperature A B C

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 139. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.



**WARNING:** The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### TIRES

Tires are designed to give many thousands of miles of service, but they must be maintained in order to get the maximum benefit from them.

#### Glossary of tire terminology

- **Tire label:** A label showing the OE (Original Equipment) tire sizes, recommended inflation pressure and the maximum weight the vehicle can carry.
- **Tire Identification Number (TIN):** A number on the sidewall of each tire providing information about the tire brand and manufacturing plant, tire size and date of manufacture. Also referred to as DOT code.
- **Inflation pressure:** A measure of the amount of air in a tire.
- **Standard load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a maximum load at 35 psi [37 psi (2.5 bar) for Metric tires]. Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.
- **Extra load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a heavier maximum load at 41 psi [43 psi (2.9 bar) for Metric tires]. Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.
- **kPa:** Kilopascal, a metric unit of air pressure.
- **PSI:** Pounds per square inch, a standard unit of air pressure.
- **Cold inflation pressure:** The tire pressure when the vehicle has been stationary and out of direct sunlight for an hour or more and prior to the vehicle being driven for 1 mile (1.6 km).
- **Recommended inflation pressure:** The cold inflation pressure found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door.
- **B-pillar:** The structural member at the side of the vehicle behind the front door.
- **Bead area of the tire:** Area of the tire next to the rim.
- **Sidewall of the tire:** Area between the bead area and the tread.
- **Tread area of the tire:** Area of the perimeter of the tire that contacts the road when mounted on the vehicle.
- **Rim:** The metal support (wheel) for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

218

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### INFLATING YOUR TIRES

Safe operation of your vehicle requires that your tires are properly inflated. Remember that a tire can lose up to half of its air pressure without appearing flat.

Every day before you drive, check your tires. If one looks lower than the others, use a tire gauge to check pressure of all tires and adjust if required.

At least once a month and before long trips, inspect each tire and check the tire pressure with a tire gauge (including spare, if equipped). Inflate all tires to the inflation pressure recommended by Ford Motor Company.

You are strongly urged to buy a reliable tire pressure gauge, as automatic service station gauges may be inaccurate. Ford recommends the use of a digital or dial-type tire pressure gauge rather than a stick-type tire pressure gauge.

Use the recommended cold inflation pressure for optimum tire performance and wear. Under-inflation or over-inflation may cause uneven treadwear patterns.



**WARNING:** Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failures and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation or “blowout”, with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury. Under-inflation increases sidewall flexing and rolling resistance, resulting in heat buildup and internal damage to the tire. It also may result in unnecessary tire stress, irregular wear, loss of vehicle control and accidents. A tire can lose up to half of its air pressure and not appear to be flat!

Always inflate your tires to the Ford recommended inflation pressure even if it is less than the maximum inflation pressure information found on the tire. The Ford recommended tire inflation pressure is found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. Failure to follow the tire pressure recommendations can cause uneven treadwear patterns and adversely affect the way your vehicle handles.

**Note:** Do not reduce tire pressure to change the ride characteristics of the vehicle. If you do not maintain the inflation pressure at the levels specified by Ford, your vehicle may experience a condition known as “shimmy”. Shimmy is a severe vibration and oscillation in the steering wheel after the vehicle travels over a bump or dip in the road that does not dampen out by itself. Shimmy may result from significant

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

under-inflation of the tires, improper tires (load range, size, or type), or vehicle modifications such as lift-kits. In the event that your vehicle experiences shimmy, you should slowly reduce speed by either lifting off the accelerator pedal or lightly applying the brakes. The shimmy will cease as the vehicle speed decreases.

**Maximum Permissible Inflation Pressure** is the tire manufacturer's maximum permissible pressure and/or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label.

When weather temperature changes occur, tire inflation pressures also change. A 10°F (6°C) temperature drop can cause a corresponding drop of 1 psi (7 kPa) in inflation pressure. Check your tire pressures frequently and adjust them to the proper pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label.

To check the pressure in your tire(s):

1. Make sure the tires are cool, meaning they are not hot from driving even a mile.

If you are checking tire pressure when the tire is hot, (i.e. driven more than 1 mile [1.6 km]), never "bleed" or reduce air pressure. The tires are hot from driving and it is normal for pressures to increase above recommended cold pressures. A hot tire at or below recommended cold inflation pressure could be significantly under-inflated.

**Note:** If you have to drive a distance to get air for your tire(s), check and record the tire pressure first and add the appropriate air pressure when you get to the pump. It is normal for tires to heat up and the air pressure inside to go up as you drive.

2. Remove the cap from the valve on one tire, then firmly press the tire gauge onto the valve and measure the pressure.
3. Add enough air to reach the recommended air pressure.

**Note:** If you overfill the tire, release air by pushing on the metal stem in the center of the valve. Then recheck the pressure with your tire gauge.

4. Replace the valve cap.
5. Repeat this procedure for each tire, including the spare.

220

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

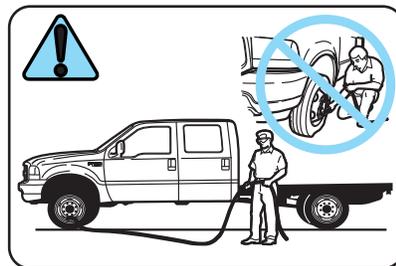
**Note:** Some spare tires operate at a higher inflation pressure than the other tires. For T-type/mini-spare tires (see the *Dissimilar spare tire/wheel information* section for description): Store and maintain at 60 psi (4.15 bar). For full-size and dissimilar spare tires (see the *Dissimilar spare tire/wheel information* section for description): Store and maintain at the higher of the front and rear inflation pressure as shown on the Tire Label.

6. Visually inspect the tires to make sure there are no nails or other objects embedded that could poke a hole in the tire and cause an air leak.
7. Check the sidewalls to make sure there are no gouges, cuts or bulges.

### Tire inflation information

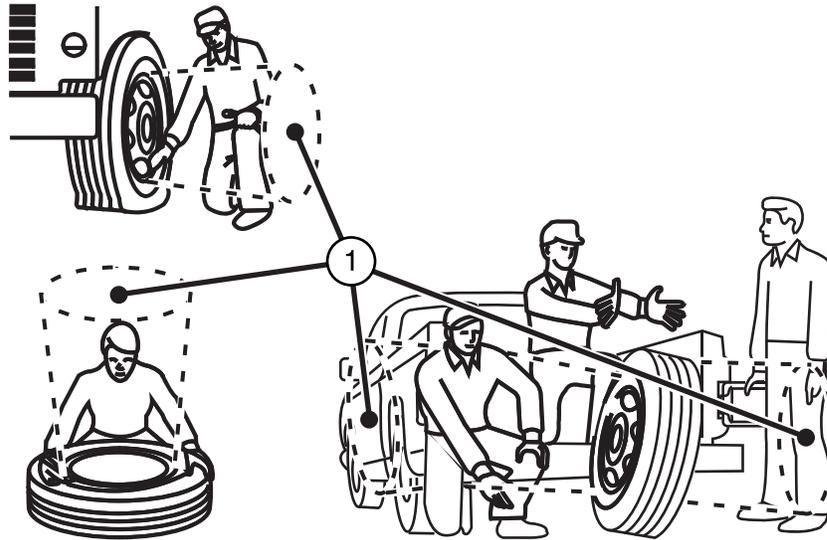
All tires with Steel Carcass Plies (if equipped):

This type of tire utilizes steel cords in the sidewalls. As such, they cannot be treated like normal light truck tires. Tire service, including adjusting tire pressure, must be performed by personnel trained, supervised and equipped according to Federal Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) regulations. For example, during any procedure involving tire inflation, the technician or individual must utilize a remote inflation device, and ensure that all persons are clear of the trajectory area.



**WARNING:** An inflated tire and rim can be very dangerous if improperly used, serviced or maintained. To reduce the risk of serious injury, never attempt to re-inflate a tire which has been run flat or seriously under-inflated without first removing the tire from the wheel assembly for inspection. Do not attempt to add air to tires or replace tires or wheels without first taking precautions to protect persons and property.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading



**WARNING:** Stay out of the trajectory (1) as indicated in the illustration.

### TIRE CARE

#### Inspecting your tires and wheel valve stems

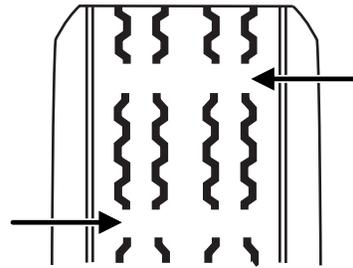
Periodically inspect the tire treads for uneven or excessive wear and remove objects such as stones, nails or glass that may be wedged in the tread grooves. Check the tire and valve stems for holes, cracks, or cuts that may permit air leakage and repair or replace the tire and replace the valve stem. Inspect the tire sidewalls for cracking, cuts, bruises and other signs of damage or excessive wear. If internal damage to the tire is suspected, have the tire demounted and inspected in case it needs to be repaired or replaced. For your safety, tires that are damaged or show signs of excessive wear should not be used because they are more likely to blow out or fail.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

Improper or inadequate vehicle maintenance can cause tires to wear abnormally. Inspect all your tires, including the spare, frequently, and replace them if one or more of the following conditions exist:

### Tire wear

When the tread is worn down to 1/16th of an inch (2 mm), tires must be replaced to help prevent your vehicle from skidding and hydroplaning. Built-in treadwear indicators, or “wear bars”, which look like narrow strips of smooth rubber across the tread will appear on the tire when the tread is worn down to 1/16th of an inch (2 mm). When the tire tread wears down to the same height as these “wear bars”, the tire is worn out and must be replaced.



### Damage

Periodically inspect the tire treads and sidewalls for damage (such as bulges in the tread or sidewalls, cracks in the tread groove and separation in the tread or sidewall). If damage is observed or suspected have the tire inspected by a tire professional. Tires can be damaged during off-road use, so inspection after off-road use is also recommended.



#### **WARNING: Age**

Tires degrade over time depending on many factors such as weather, storage conditions, and conditions of use (load, speed, inflation pressure, etc.) the tires experience throughout their lives. In general, tires should be replaced after six years regardless of tread wear. However, heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process and may require tires to be replaced more frequently.

You should replace your spare tire when you replace the road tires or after six years due to aging even if it has not been used.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN)

Both U.S. and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

This begins with the letters "DOT" and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000 the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

### Tire replacement requirements

Your vehicle is equipped with tires designed to provide a safe ride and handling capability.



**WARNING:** Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, load index, speed rating and type (such as P-metric versus LT-metric or all-season versus all-terrain) as those originally provided by Ford. The recommended tire and wheel size may be found on either the Safety Compliance Certification Label or the Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or edge of the driver's door. If this information is not found on these labels then you should contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. Additionally the use of non-recommended tires and wheels could cause steering, suspension, axle or transfer case/power transfer unit failure. If you have questions regarding tire replacement, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading



**WARNING:** When mounting replacement tires and wheels, you should not exceed the maximum pressure indicated on the sidewall of the tire to set the beads without additional precautions listed below. If the beads do not seat at the maximum pressure indicated, re-lubricate and try again.

When inflating the tire for mounting pressures up to 20 psi (138 kPa) greater than the maximum pressure on the tire sidewall, the following precautions must be taken to protect the person mounting the tire:

1. Make sure that you have the correct tire and wheel size.
2. Lubricate the tire bead and wheel bead seat area again.
3. Stand at a minimum of 12 ft (3.66 m) away from the tire wheel assembly.
4. Use both eye and ear protection.

For a mounting pressure more than 20 psi (138 kPa) greater than the maximum pressure, an authorized dealer or other tire service professional should do the mounting.

Always inflate steel carcass tires with a remote air fill with the person inflating standing at a minimum of 12 ft (3.66 m) away from the tire wheel assembly.

**Important:** Remember to replace the wheel valve stems when the road tires are replaced on your vehicle.

It is recommended that the two front tires or two rear tires generally be replaced as a pair.

The tire pressure sensors mounted in the wheels are not designed to be used in aftermarket wheels.

The use of wheels or tires not recommended by Ford Motor Company may affect the operation of your tire pressure monitoring system.

If the TPMS indicator is flashing, your TPMS is malfunctioning. Your replacement tire might be incompatible with your TPMS, or some component of the TPMS may be damaged.

### Safety practices

Driving habits have a great deal to do with your tire mileage and safety.

- Observe posted speed limits
- Avoid fast starts, stops and turns
- Avoid potholes and objects on the road

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

- Do not run over curbs or hit the tire against a curb when parking



**WARNING:** If your vehicle is stuck in snow, mud, sand, etc., **do not** rapidly spin the tires; spinning the tires can tear the tire and cause an explosion. A tire can explode in as little as three to five seconds.



**WARNING:** Do not spin the wheels at over 35 mph (56 km/h). The tires may fail and injure a passenger or bystander.

### Highway hazards

No matter how carefully you drive there's always the possibility that you may eventually have a flat tire on the highway. Drive slowly to the closest safe area out of traffic. This may further damage the flat tire, but your safety is more important.

If you feel a sudden vibration or ride disturbance while driving, or you suspect your tire or vehicle has been damaged, immediately reduce your speed. Drive with caution until you can safely pull off the road. Stop and inspect the tires for damage. If a tire is under-inflated or damaged, deflate it, remove wheel and replace it with your spare tire and wheel. If you cannot detect a cause, have the vehicle towed to the nearest repair facility or tire dealer to have the vehicle inspected.

### Tire and wheel alignment

A bad jolt from hitting a curb or pothole can cause the front end of your vehicle to become misaligned or cause damage to your tires. If your vehicle seems to pull to one side when you're driving, the wheels may be out of alignment. Have an authorized dealer check the wheel alignment periodically.

Wheel misalignment in the front or the rear can cause uneven and rapid treadwear of your tires and should be corrected by an authorized dealer. Front-wheel drive (FWD) vehicles and those with an independent rear suspension (if equipped) may require alignment of all four wheels.

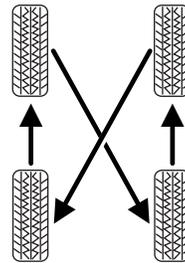
The tires should also be balanced periodically. An unbalanced tire and wheel assembly may result in irregular tire wear.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### Tire rotation

Rotating your tires at the recommended interval (as indicated in the *Scheduled Maintenance* chapter) will help your tires wear more evenly, providing better tire performance and longer tire life.

- Rear-wheel drive (RWD) vehicles/Four-wheel drive (4WD) vehicles (front tires at top of diagram)



Sometimes irregular tire wear can be corrected by rotating the tires.

**Note:** If your tires show uneven wear ask an authorized dealer to check for and correct any wheel misalignment, tire imbalance or mechanical problem involved before tire rotation.

**Note:** Your vehicle may be equipped with a dissimilar spare tire/wheel. A dissimilar spare tire/wheel is defined as a spare tire and/or wheel that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels. If you have a dissimilar spare tire/wheel it is intended for temporary use only and should not be used in a tire rotation.

**Note:** After having your tires rotated, inflation pressure must be checked and adjusted to the vehicle requirements.

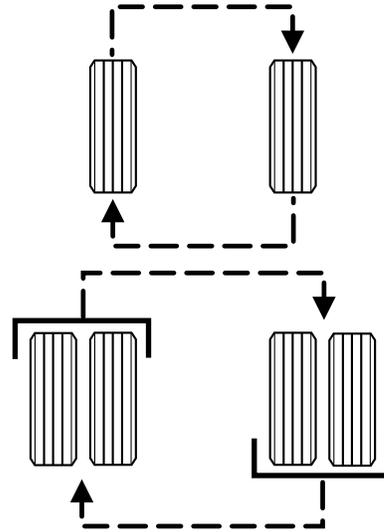


**WARNING:** If the tire label shows different tire pressures for the front and rear tires and the vehicle is equipped with TPMS (tire pressure monitoring system), then the settings for the TPMS sensors need to be updated. Always perform the TPMS reset procedure after tire rotation. If the system is not reset, it may not provide a low tire pressure warning when necessary. See the TPMS reset procedure in this chapter.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

- Dual rear wheel (DRW) vehicles – Six tire rotation

If your vehicle is equipped with dual rear wheels it is recommended that the front and rear tires (in pairs) be rotated only side to side. We do not recommend splitting up the dual rear wheels. Rotate them side to side as a set/pair. After tire rotation, inflation pressures must be adjusted for the tires new positions in accordance with vehicle requirements.



Sometimes irregular tire wear can be corrected by rotating the tires.

**Note:** If your tires show uneven wear ask your authorized dealer to check for and correct any wheel misalignment, tire imbalance or mechanical problem involved before tire rotation.

**Note:** Your vehicle may be equipped with a dissimilar spare tire/wheel. A dissimilar spare tire/wheel is defined as a spare tire and/or wheel that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels. If you have a dissimilar spare tire/wheel it is intended for temporary use only and should not be used in a tire rotation.

**Note:** After having your tires rotated, inflation pressure must be checked and adjusted to the vehicle requirements.

### INFORMATION CONTAINED ON THE TIRE SIDEWALL

Both U.S. and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

228

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### Information on “P” type tires

P215/65R15 95H is an example of a tire size, load index and speed rating. The definitions of these items are listed below. (Note that the tire size, load index and speed rating for your vehicle may be different from this example.)

1. **P:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association (T&RA), that may be used for service on cars, SUVs, minivans and light trucks.

**Note:** If your tire size does not begin with a letter this may mean it is designated by either ETRTO (European Tire and Rim Technical Organization) or JATMA (Japan Tire Manufacturing Association).

2. **215:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

3. **65:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire’s ratio of height to width.

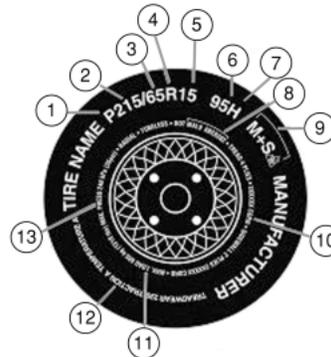
4. **R:** Indicates a “radial” type tire.

5. **15:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

6. **95:** Indicates the tire’s load index. It is an index that relates to how much weight a tire can carry. You may find this information in your owner’s guide. If not, contact a local tire dealer.

**Note:** You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.

7. **H:** Indicates the tire’s speed rating. The speed rating denotes the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time under a standard condition of load and inflation pressure. The tires on your vehicle may operate at different conditions for load and inflation pressure. These speed ratings may need to be adjusted for the difference in conditions. The ratings range from 81 mph (130 km/h) to 186 mph (299 km/h). These ratings are listed in the following chart.



## Tires, Wheels and Loading

**Note:** You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.

Letter rating	Speed rating - mph (km/h)
M	81 mph (130 km/h)
N	87 mph (140 km/h)
Q	99 mph (159 km/h)
R	106 mph (171 km/h)
S	112 mph (180 km/h)
T	118 mph (190 km/h)
U	124 mph (200 km/h)
H	130 mph (210 km/h)
V	149 mph (240 km/h)
W	168 mph (270 km/h)
Y	186 mph (299 km/h)

**Note:** For tires with a maximum speed capability over 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the letters ZR. For those with a maximum speed capability over 186 mph (299 km/h), tire manufacturers always use the letters ZR.

8. **U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN):** This begins with the letters "DOT" and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000 the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

9. **M+S or M/S:** Mud and Snow, or

**AT:** All Terrain, or

**AS:** All Season.

10. **Tire Ply Composition and Material Used:** Indicates the number of plies or the number of layers of rubber-coated fabric in the tire tread and sidewall. Tire manufacturers also must indicate the ply materials in the tire and the sidewall, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others.

11. **Maximum Load:** Indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire. Refer to the Safety Compliance Certification Label, which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door, for the correct tire pressure for your vehicle.

230

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### 12. Treadwear, Traction and Temperature Grades

- **Treadwear:** The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1½) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.
- **Traction:** The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.
- **Temperature:** The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

13. **Maximum Permissible Inflation Pressure:** Indicates the tire manufacturers' maximum permissible pressure and/or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the vehicle label.

The tire suppliers may have additional markings, notes or warnings such as standard load, radial tubeless, etc.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### Additional information contained on the tire sidewall for “LT” type tires

“LT” type tires have some additional information beyond those of “P” type tires; these differences are described below.

**Note:** Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.

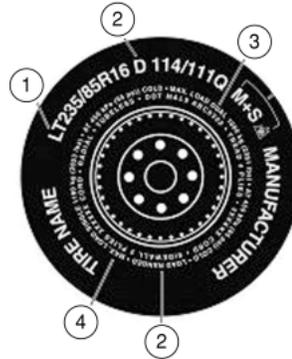
1. **LT:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association (T&RA), that is intended for service on light trucks.

#### 2. Load Range/Load Inflation

**Limits:** Indicates the tire’s load-carrying capabilities and its inflation limits.

3. **Maximum Load Dual lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a dual; defined as four tires on the rear axle (a total of six or more tires on the vehicle).

4. **Maximum Load Single lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a single; defined as two tires (total) on the rear axle.



## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### Information on “T” type tires

“T” type tires have some additional information beyond those of “P” type tires; these differences are described below:

T145/80D16 is an example of a tire size.

**Note:** The temporary tire size for your vehicle may be different from this example. Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.

1. **T:** Indicates a type of tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association (T&RA), that is intended for temporary service on cars, SUVs, minivans and light trucks.

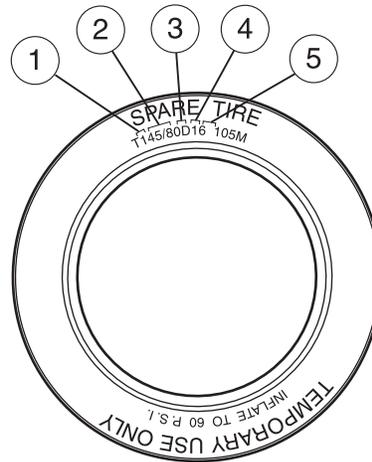
2. **145:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

3. **80:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire’s ratio of height to width. Numbers of 70 or lower indicate a short sidewall.

4. **D:** Indicates a “diagonal” type tire.

**R:** Indicates a “radial” type tire.

5. **16:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.



### Location of the tire label

You will find a Tire Label containing tire inflation pressure by tire size and other important information located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver’s door. Refer to the payload description and graphic in the *Vehicle loading – with and without a trailer* section.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS) (IF EQUIPPED)

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)



As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

The tire pressure monitoring system complies with part 15 of the FCC rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

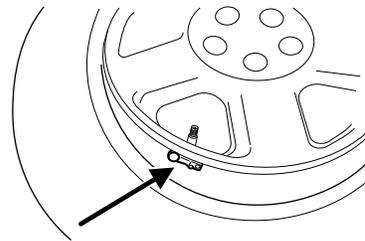


**WARNING:** The tire pressure monitoring system is NOT a substitute for manually checking tire pressure. The tire pressure should be checked periodically (at least monthly) using a tire gauge, see *Inflating your tires* in this chapter. Failure to properly maintain your tire pressure could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.

### Changing tires with a TPMS

**Each road tire is equipped with a tire pressure sensor located inside the tire/wheel cavity. The pressure sensor is attached to the valve stem. The pressure sensor is covered by the tire and is not visible unless the tire is removed. Care must be taken when changing the tire to avoid damaging the sensor.** It is

recommended that you always have your tires serviced by an authorized dealer.



The tire pressure should be checked periodically (at least monthly) using an accurate tire gauge, refer to *Inflating your tires* in this chapter.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### **Understanding your tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS)**

The tire pressure monitoring system measures pressure in your four road tires and sends the tire pressure readings to your vehicle. The low tire pressure warning light will turn on if the tire pressure is significantly low. Once the light is illuminated, your tires are under-inflated and need to be inflated to the manufacturer's recommended tire pressure. Even if the light turns on and a short time later turns off, your tire pressure still needs to be checked. Visit [www.checkmytires.org](http://www.checkmytires.org) for additional information.

### ***When your temporary spare tire is installed***

When one of your road tires needs to be replaced with the temporary spare, the TPMS will continue to identify an issue to remind you that the damaged road wheel/tire needs to be repaired and put back on your vehicle.

To restore the full functionality of the tire pressure monitoring system, have the damaged road wheel/tire repaired and remounted on your vehicle. For additional information, refer to *Changing tires with a TPMS* in this section.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### ***When you believe your system is not operating properly***

The main function of the tire pressure monitoring system is to warn you when your tires need air. It can also warn you in the event the system is no longer capable of functioning as intended. Please refer to the following chart for information concerning your tire pressure monitoring system:

<b>Low tire pressure warning light</b>	<b>Possible cause</b>	<b>Customer action required</b>
Solid warning light	Tire(s) under-inflated	1. Check your tire pressure to ensure tires are properly inflated; refer to <i>Inflating your tires</i> in this chapter. 2. After inflating your tires to the manufacturer's recommended inflation pressure as shown on the Tire Label (located on the edge of driver's door or the B-Pillar), the vehicle must be driven for at least two minutes over 20 mph (32 km/h) before the light will turn off.
	Spare tire in use	Your temporary spare tire is in use. Repair the damaged road wheel/tire and reinstall it on the vehicle to restore system functionality. For a description on how the system functions, refer to <i>When your temporary spare tire is installed</i> in this section.
	TPMS malfunction	If your tires are properly inflated and your spare tire is not in use and the light remains on, have the system inspected by your authorized dealer.
	Tire rotation without sensor training	On vehicles with different front and rear tire pressures, the TPMS system must be retrained following every tire rotation. Refer to <i>Tire rotation</i> in this chapter.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

Low tire pressure warning light	Possible cause	Customer action required
Flashing warning light	Spare tire in use	Your temporary spare tire is in use. Repair the damaged road wheel and re-mount it on the vehicle to restore system functionality. For a description of how the system functions under these conditions, refer to <i>When your temporary spare tire is installed</i> in this section.
	TPMS malfunction	If your tires are properly inflated and your spare tire is not in use and the TPMS warning light still flashes, have the system inspected by your authorized dealer.

### **When inflating your tires**

When putting air into your tires (such as at a gas station or in your garage), the tire pressure monitoring system may not respond immediately to the air added to your tires.

It may take up to two minutes of driving over 20 mph (32 km/h) for the light to turn off after you have filled your tires to the recommended inflation pressure.

### **How temperature affects your tire pressure**

The tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) monitors tire pressure in each pneumatic tire. While driving in a normal manner, a typical passenger tire inflation pressure may increase approximately 2 to 4 psi (14 to 28 kPa) from a cold start situation. If the vehicle is stationary overnight with the outside temperature significantly lower than the daytime temperature, the tire pressure may decrease approximately 3 psi (21 kPa) for a drop of 30°F (17°C) in ambient temperature. This lower pressure value may be detected by the TPMS as being significantly lower than the recommended inflation pressure and activate the TPMS warning light for low tire pressure. If the low tire pressure warning light is on, visually check each tire to verify that no tire is flat. (If one or more tires are flat, repair as necessary.) Check air pressure in the road tires. If any tire is under-inflated, carefully drive the vehicle to the nearest location where air can be added to the tires. Inflate all the tires to the recommended inflation pressure.

238

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### TPMS reset procedure

**The TPMS reset procedure needs to be performed after each tire rotation on vehicles that require different recommended tire pressures in the front tires as compared to the rear tires.**



**WARNING:** To determine the required pressure(s) for your vehicle, refer to the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. See *Vehicle loading - with and without a trailer* in this chapter for more information.

### Overview

To provide the vehicle's load carrying capability, some vehicles require different recommended tire pressures in the front tires as compared to the rear tires. The tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) equipped on these vehicles is designed to illuminate the low tire pressure warning light at two different pressures; one for the front tires and one for the rear tires.

Since tires need to be rotated to provide consistent performance and maximum tire life, the tire pressure monitoring system needs to know when the tires are rotated to determine which set of tires are on the front and which are on the rear. With this information, the system can detect and properly warn of low tire pressures.

### TPMS reset tips:

- To reduce the chances of interference from another vehicle, the TPMS reset procedure should be performed at least three feet (one meter) away from another Ford Motor Company vehicle undergoing the TPMS reset procedure at the same time.
- Do not wait more than two minutes between resetting each tire sensor or the system will time-out and the entire procedure will have to be repeated on all four wheels.
- A double horn chirp indicates the need to repeat the procedure.

### Performing the TPMS reset procedure

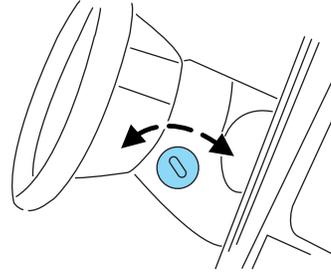
It is recommended that you read the entire procedure before attempting.

1. Drive the vehicle above 20 mph (32 km/h) for at least two minutes and then park in a safe location where you can easily get to all four tires and have access to an air pump.
2. Place the ignition in the off position and keep the key in the ignition.

239

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

3. Cycle the ignition to the on position with the engine off.



4. Turn the hazard flashers on then off three times. This must be accomplished within 10 seconds.



If the reset mode has been entered successfully, the horn will sound once, the TPMS indicator (⚠) will flash and the message center (if equipped) will display **TRAIN LEFT FRONT TIRE**. If this does not occur, please try again starting at Step 2.

If after repeated attempts to enter the reset mode, the horn does not sound, the TPMS indicator (⚠) does not flash and the message center (if equipped) does not display **TRAIN LEFT FRONT TIRE**, seek service from your authorized dealer.

5. Train the TPMS sensors in the tires using the following TPMS reset sequence starting with the **left front tire** in the following clockwise order:

- Left front (Driver's side front tire)
- Right front (Passenger's side front tire)
- Right rear (Passenger's side rear tire)
- Left rear (Driver's side rear tire)

6. Remove the valve cap from the valve stem on the left front tire; decrease the air pressure until the horn sounds.

**Note:** The single horn chirp confirms that the sensor identification code has been learned by the module for this position. If a double horn is heard, the reset procedure was unsuccessful, and must be repeated.

7. Remove the valve cap from the valve stem on the right front tire; decrease the air pressure until the horn sounds.

240

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

8. Remove the valve cap from the valve stem on the right rear tire; decrease the air pressure until the horn sounds.

9. Remove the valve cap from the valve stem on the left rear tire; decrease the air pressure until the horn sounds.

Training is complete after the horn sounds for the last tire trained (driver's side rear tire), the TPMS indicator stops flashing, and the message center (if equipped) displays:

### **TRAINING COMPLETE.**

10. Turn the ignition off. If two short horn beeps are heard, the reset procedure was unsuccessful and must be repeated.

If after repeating the procedure and two short beeps are heard when the ignition is turned to off, seek assistance from your authorized dealer.

11. Set all four tires to the recommended air pressure as indicated on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. See *Vehicle loading - with and without a trailer* in this chapter for more information.

### **SNOW TIRES AND CHAINS**



**WARNING:** Snow tires must be the same size, load index, speed rating as those originally provided by Ford. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. Additionally, the use of non-recommended tires and wheels could cause steering, suspension, axle or transfer case/power transfer unit failure.

**Note:** Do not use snow chains on vehicles with 20 inch wheels and tires.

The tires on your vehicle have all-weather treads to provide traction in rain and snow. However, in some climates, you may need to use snow tires and chains. If you need to use chains, it is recommended that steel wheels (of the same size and specifications) be used, as chains may chip aluminum wheels.

**Note:** The suspension insulation and bumpers will help prevent vehicle damage. Do not remove these components from your vehicle when using snow tires and chains.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

Follow these guidelines when using snow tires and chains:

- If possible, avoid fully loading your vehicle.
- Use only SAE Class S chains.
- Install chains securely, verifying that the chains do not touch any wiring, brake lines or fuel lines.
- Drive cautiously. If you hear the chains rub or bang against your vehicle, stop and retighten the chains. If this does not work, remove the chains to prevent damage to your vehicle.
- Remove the tire chains when they are no longer needed. Do not use tire chains on dry roads.

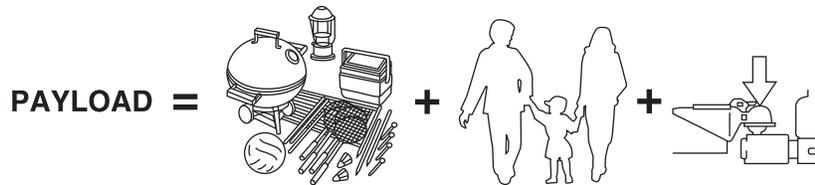
### VEHICLE LOADING – WITH AND WITHOUT A TRAILER

This section will guide you in the proper loading of your vehicle and/or trailer, to keep your loaded vehicle weight within its design rating capability, with or without a trailer. Properly loading your vehicle will provide maximum return of vehicle design performance. Before loading your vehicle, familiarize yourself with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight ratings, with or without a trailer, from the vehicle's Tire Label or Safety Compliance Certification Label:

**Base Curb Weight** – is the weight of the vehicle including a full tank of fuel and all standard equipment. It does not include passengers, cargo, or optional equipment.

**Vehicle Curb Weight** – is the weight of your new vehicle when you picked it up from your authorized dealer plus any aftermarket equipment.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading



**Payload** – is the combined weight of cargo and passengers that the vehicle is carrying. The maximum payload for your vehicle can be found on the Tire Label on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door (vehicles exported outside the US and Canada may not have a Tire Label). Look for **“THE COMBINED WEIGHT OF OCCUPANTS AND CARGO SHOULD NEVER EXCEED XXX kg OR XXX lb.”** for maximum payload. The payload listed on the Tire Label is the maximum payload for the vehicle as built by the assembly plant. If any aftermarket or authorized-dealer installed equipment has been installed on the vehicle, the weight of the equipment must be subtracted from the payload listed on the Tire Label in order to determine the new payload.

**!** **WARNING:** The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

Example only:



### TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION

SEATING CAPACITY	TOTAL 5	FRONT 2	REAR 3
------------------	---------	---------	--------

The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed : **XXX kg or XXX lbs.**

TIRE	SIZE	COLD TIRE PRESSURE	SEE OWNERS MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION
FRONT	LT225/75R 16.5E	200 KPA, 29 PSI	SEE OWNERS MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION
REAR	LT225/75R 16.5E	200 KPA, 29 PSI	
SPARE	T145/80D16 P225/60R17	420 KPA, 60 PSI 200 KPA, 29 PSI	

(XXX) XX-XXXX-XXXX




### TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION RENSEIGNEMENTS SUR LES PNEUS ET LE CHARGEMENT

SEATING CAPACITY NOMBRE DE PLACES	TOTAL 5	FRONT AVANT 2	REAR ARRIÈRE 3
--------------------------------------	---------	------------------	-------------------

The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed 492 kg or 1085 lbs.  
Le poids total des occupants et du chargement ne doit jamais dépasser 492 kg ou 1085 lbs.

TIRE PNEU	SIZE DIMENSIONS	COLD TIRE PRESSURE PRESSION DES PNEUS A FROID	SEE OWNER'S MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION
FRONT AVANT	P235/70R16	240 KPA, 35 PSI	VOIR LE MANUEL DE L'USAGER POUR PLUS DE RENSEIGNEMENTS
REAR ARRIÈRE	P235/70R16	240 KPA, 35 PSI	
SPARE DE SECOURS	T145/90R17	415 KPA, 60 PSI	

(XXX) XX-XXXX-XXXX



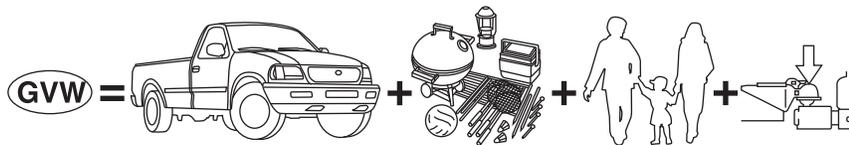

**Cargo Weight** – includes all weight added to the Base Curb Weight, including cargo and optional equipment. When towing, trailer tongue load or king pin weight is also part of cargo weight.

**GAW (Gross Axle Weight)** – is the total weight placed on each axle (front and rear) – including vehicle curb weight and all payload.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

**GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating)** – is the maximum allowable weight that can be carried by a single axle (front or rear). **These numbers are shown on the Safety Compliance Certification Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The total load on each axle must never exceed its GAWR.**

**Note:** For trailer towing information refer to *Trailer towing* found in this chapter or the *RV and Trailer Towing Guide* provided by your authorized dealer.

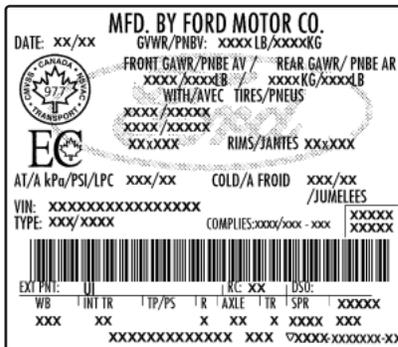
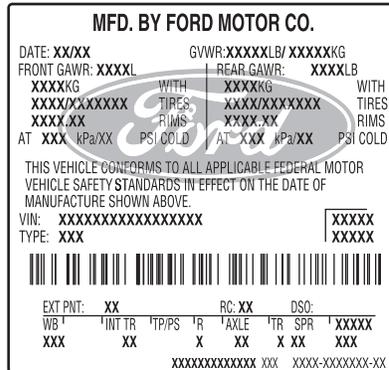


**GVW (Gross Vehicle Weight)** – is the Vehicle Curb Weight + cargo + passengers.

**GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating)** – is the maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle (including all options, equipment, passengers and cargo). **The GVWR is shown on the Safety Compliance Certification Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The GVW must never exceed the GVWR.**

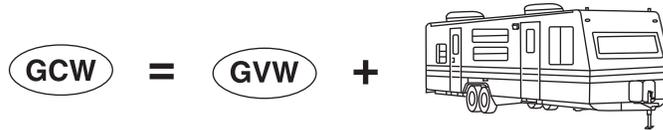
## Tires, Wheels and Loading

- Example only:



**⚠ WARNING:** Exceeding the Safety Compliance Certification Label vehicle weight rating limits could result in substandard vehicle handling or performance, engine, transmission and/or structural damage, serious damage to the vehicle, loss of control and personal injury.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading



**GCW (Gross Combined Weight)** – is the weight of the loaded vehicle (GVW) plus the weight of the fully loaded trailer.

**GCWR (Gross Combined Weight Rating)** – is the maximum allowable weight of the vehicle and the loaded trailer – including all cargo and passengers – that the vehicle can handle without risking damage. (Important: The towing vehicle's braking system is rated for operation at GVWR, not at GCWR.) Separate functional brakes should be used for safe control of towed vehicles and for trailers where the GCW of the towing vehicle plus the trailer exceed the GVWR of the towing vehicle. **The GCW must never exceed the GCWR.**

**Maximum Loaded Trailer Weight** – is the highest possible weight of a fully loaded trailer the vehicle can tow. It assumes a vehicle with only mandatory options, no cargo (internal or external), a tongue load of 10–15% (conventional trailer) or king pin weight of 15–25% (fifth wheel trailer), and driver only (150 lb. [68 kg]). **Consult your authorized dealer (or the *RV and Trailer Towing Guide* provided by your authorized dealer) for more detailed information.**

**Tongue Load or Fifth Wheel King Pin Weight** – refers to the amount of the weight that a trailer pushes down on a trailer hitch.

**Examples:** For a 5,000 lb. (2,268 kg) conventional trailer, multiply 5,000 by 0.10 and 0.15 to obtain a proper tongue load range of 500 to 750 lb. (227 to 340 kg). For an 11,500 lb. (5,216 kg) fifth wheel trailer, multiply by 0.15 and 0.25 to obtain a proper king pin load range of 1,725 to 2,875 lb. (782 to 1,304 kg)



**WARNING:** Do not exceed the GVWR or the GAWR specified on the Safety Compliance Certification Label.



**WARNING:** Do not use replacement tires with lower load carrying capacities than the original tires because they may lower the vehicle's GVWR and GAWR limitations. Replacement tires with a higher limit than the original tires do not increase the GVWR and GAWR limitations.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading



**WARNING:** Exceeding any vehicle weight rating limitation could result in serious damage to the vehicle and/or personal injury.

### Steps for determining the correct load limit:

1. Locate the statement “The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lb.” on your vehicle’s placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lb.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the “XXX” amount equals 1,400 lb. and there will be five 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lb. ( $1400 - 750 (5 \times 150) = 650$  lb.). In metric units ( $635 - 340 (5 \times 68) = 295$  kg.)
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

The following gives you a few examples on how to calculate the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity:

- Another example for your vehicle with 1,400 lb. (635 kg) of cargo and luggage capacity. You decide to go golfing. Is there enough load capacity to carry you, 4 of your friends and all the golf bags? You and four friends average 220 lb. (99 kg) each and the golf bags weigh approximately 30 lb. (13.5 kg) each. The calculation would be:  $1400 - (5 \times 220) - (5 \times 30) = 1400 - 1100 - 150 = 150$  lb. Yes, you have enough load capacity in your vehicle to transport four friends and your golf bags. In metric units, the calculation would be:  $635 \text{ kg} - (5 \times 99 \text{ kg}) - (5 \times 13.5 \text{ kg}) = 635 - 495 - 67.5 = 72.5$  kg.
- A final example for your vehicle with 1,400 lb. (635 kg) of cargo and luggage capacity. You and one of your friends decide to pick up cement from the local home improvement store to finish that patio you have been planning for the past 2 years. Measuring the inside of the vehicle with the rear seat folded down, you have room for 12-100 lb. (45 kg) bags of cement. Do you have enough load capacity

248

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

to transport the cement to your home? If you and your friend each weigh 220 lb. (99 kg), the calculation would be:  $1400 - (2 \times 220) - (12 \times 100) = 1400 - 440 - 1200 = -240$  lb. No, you do not have enough cargo capacity to carry that much weight. In metric units, the calculation would be:  $635 \text{ kg} - (2 \times 99 \text{ kg}) - (12 \times 45 \text{ kg}) = 635 - 198 - 540 = -103$  kg. You will need to reduce the load weight by at least 240 lb. (104 kg). If you remove 3-100 lb. (45 kg) cement bags, then the load calculation would be:

$1400 - (2 \times 220) - (9 \times 100) = 1400 - 440 - 900 = 60$  lb. Now you have the load capacity to transport the cement and your friend home. In metric units, the calculation would be:  $635 \text{ kg} - (2 \times 99 \text{ kg}) - (9 \times 45 \text{ kg}) = 635 - 198 - 405 = 32$  kg.

The above calculations also assume that the loads are positioned in your vehicle in a manner that does not overload the Front or the Rear Gross Axle Weight Rating specified for your vehicle on the Safety Compliance Certification Label found on the edge of the driver's door.

### Special loading instructions for owners of pick-up trucks and utility-type vehicles



**WARNING:** For important information regarding safe operation of this type of vehicle, see the *Preparing to drive your vehicle* section in the *Driving* chapter of this owner's guide.



**WARNING:** Loaded vehicles may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, should be taken when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

Your vehicle can haul more cargo and people than most passenger cars. Depending upon the type and placement of the load, hauling cargo and people may raise the center of gravity of the vehicle.

### TRAILER TOWING

**Note:** The trailer towing chart in this section applies to vehicles equipped with a gasoline engine; for vehicles equipped with a diesel engine, refer to your diesel supplement.

Your vehicle may tow a Conventional/Class IV trailer or fifth-wheel trailer provided the maximum trailer weight is less than or equal to the maximum trailer weight for your engine and rear axle ratio.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

Towing a trailer places an additional load on your vehicle's engine, transmission, axle, brakes, tires and suspension. Inspect these components carefully prior to and after any towing operation. Refer to *Transmission fluid temperature gauge* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for the transmission fluid temperature information.

To find the maximum trailer weight allowed for your vehicle, consult your authorized dealer (or the *RV and Trailer Towing Guide* provided by your authorized dealer).

### To calculate your maximum trailer weight on your own:

1. **Pick-up trucks:** Take curb weight, hitch hardware and the driver's weight, then subtract them from the GCWR listed for your vehicle series and drive axle ratio listed on the following table.
2. **Chassis cabs and pick-up trucks with aftermarket equipment:** Weigh your vehicle at a certified scale and subtract this actual curb weight, hitch hardware and the driver's weight from the GCWR listed for your vehicle series and drive axle ratio listed on the following table.

The weight of all additional cargo and passengers must be subtracted from the maximum trailer weight calculated above.

Further trailer/hitch restrictions and limitations exist depending on the type of trailer and hitch used. This information follows the table listing the maximum GCWRs.

For load specification terms found on the label and instructions on calculating your vehicle's load, refer to *Vehicle loading - with and without a trailer* in this chapter when figuring the total weight of your vehicle.

**Note:** Do not exceed the tire ratings specified on the Tire Label or Safety Compliance Certification Label.



**WARNING:** Do not exceed the GVWR or the GAWR specified on the certification label.



**WARNING:** Towing trailers beyond the maximum recommended gross trailer weight exceeds the limit of the vehicle and could result in engine damage, transmission damage, structural damage, loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

Vehicle type	Rear axle ratio	Maximum GCWR - lb (kg)
F-250/F-350 Single Rear Wheel (SRW)	3.73	19000 (8617)
	4.30	22000 (9977)
F-350 Dual Rear Wheel (DRW)	3.73	19500 (8844)
	4.30	22500 (10204)
F-450/550	4.88	26000 (11791)

### Preparing to tow

Use the proper equipment for towing a trailer and make sure it is properly attached to your vehicle. Contact your authorized dealer or a reliable trailer dealer as soon as possible if you require assistance.

### Hitches



**WARNING:** ON PICK-UP TRUCKS, the trailer hitch provided on this vehicle enhances collision protection for the fuel system. DO NOT REMOVE!

Do not mount a ball hitch (sometimes referred to as a trailer ball hitch or trailer ball) to the bumper or use a hitch that clamps onto the vehicle's bumper or attaches to the axle. You must distribute the load in your trailer so that 10–15% for conventional towing or 15–25% for fifth-wheel towing of the total weight of the trailer is on the tongue.

### Hitch ratings

The standard hitch has two ratings depending on mode of operation:

- **Weight-carrying** - requires a draw bar and hitch ball. The draw bar supports all the vertical tongue load of the trailer.
- **Weight-distributing** - requires an aftermarket weight-distributing system which includes draw bar, hitch ball, spring bars and snap-up brackets. The vertical tongue load of the trailer is distributed between the truck and the trailer by this system.

To determine which trailer hitch your vehicle is equipped with, refer to the trailer hitch label located on trailer hitch cross tube. Once you determine which trailer hitch you have consult your authorized dealer, the *RV and Trailer Towing Guide* provided by your dealer or online at [https://www.fleet.ford.com/showroom/rv\\_trailer\\_towing/default.asp](https://www.fleet.ford.com/showroom/rv_trailer_towing/default.asp).

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

 **WARNING:** The hitch rating listed on the trailer hitch label are maximum possible trailer ratings for that hitch but may not be what your vehicle is capable of towing. To find the maximum trailer weight allowed for your specific vehicle, consult your authorized dealer (or the *RV and Trailer Towing Guide* provided by your authorized dealer).

 **WARNING:** Towing trailers beyond the maximum tongue weight exceeds the limit of the towing system and could result in vehicle structural damage, loss of vehicle control and personal injury.

### ***Weight-distributing hitch***

When hooking-up a trailer using a weight-distributing hitch, always use the following procedure:

1. Park the vehicle (without the trailer) on a level surface.
2. Measure the height of the top of the front wheel opening on the fender, this is H1.
3. Attach the trailer to the vehicle without the weight distributing bars connected.
4. Measure the height of the top of the front wheel opening on the fender a second time, this is H2.
5. Install and adjust the tension in the weight distributing bars so that the height of the front fender is approximately halfway between H1 and H2.
6. Check that the trailer is level. If not level, adjust the ball height accordingly and repeat Steps 3–6.

 **WARNING:** Do not adjust a weight-distributing hitch to any position where the rear bumper of the vehicle is higher than it was before attaching the trailer. Doing so will defeat the function of the weight-distributing hitch, which may cause unpredictable handling, and could result in serious personal injury.

### ***Fifth-wheel trailer hitch (if equipped)***

To find the maximum trailer weight allowed for your vehicle, consult your authorized dealer (or the *RV and Trailer Towing Guide* provided by your authorized dealer).

252

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### Fifth-wheel and gooseneck towing

Your vehicle may be equipped with a fifth-wheel prep package. This package enables your vehicle to accept certain fifth-wheel trailer hitches and gooseneck ball hitches. The fifth-wheel trailer hitch is attached to the four mounting pads in the pick-up bed; an optional 7-pin connector provided in the bed as well. Alternatively, if a gooseneck ball hitch is used, the ball is attached to the tube in the center of the bed.

Shorter pick-up boxes (e.g. 6' 6" F-250/350) provide less clearance between the cab and fifth-wheel/gooseneck trailer compared to "long box" pick-ups. When selecting a trailer and tow vehicle, it's critical that this combination provide clearance between the cab and tow vehicle for turns up to and including 90 degrees. Failure to follow this recommendation could result in the trailer contacting the cab of the tow vehicle during tight turns that are typical during low-speed parking and turning maneuvers. This contact could result in damage to the trailer and tow vehicle.



**WARNING:** The mounting pads in the bed are specifically designed for certain fifth-wheel trailer hitches and gooseneck ball hitches. Do not use these mounting pads for other purposes. Doing so could result in vehicle structural damage, loss of vehicle control, and personal injury. Contact your authorized dealer to purchase gooseneck and fifth-wheel hitches that are compatible with your vehicle.



**WARNING:** Towing trailers beyond the maximum limit of the towing system could result in vehicle structural damage, loss of vehicle control and personal injury.

### Fifth-wheel and gooseneck hitch ratings



**WARNING:** The hitch rating listed on the trailer hitch label is the maximum possible trailer rating. To find the maximum trailer weight allowed for your specific vehicle, consult your authorized dealer or the *RV and Trailer Towing Guide* provided by your authorized dealer.

### Safety chains

Always connect the trailer's safety chains to the frame or hook retainers of the vehicle hitch. To connect the trailer's safety chains, cross the chains under the trailer tongue and allow slack for turning corners.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

If you use a rental trailer, follow the instructions that the rental agency gives to you.

**Do not attach safety chains to the bumper.**

### Trailer brakes

Electric brakes and manual, automatic or surge-type trailer brakes are safe if installed properly and adjusted to the manufacturer's specifications. The trailer brakes must meet local and Federal regulations.



**WARNING:** If you own a trailer with a hydraulic brake system, do not connect the trailer's hydraulic brake system directly to your vehicle's brake system. The vehicle's brake system is only designed to carry the appropriate amount of brake fluid for the vehicle alone. Connecting a hydraulic trailer braking system could adversely affect your vehicle's braking performance, which could result in loss of vehicle control, crash or serious injury.

The braking system of the tow vehicle is rated for operation at the GVWR not GCWR.

### ***Integrated trailer brake controller (if equipped)***

Your vehicle may be equipped with a fully integrated electronic trailer brake controller (TBC). When used properly, the TBC helps ensure smooth and effective trailer braking by powering the trailer's electric brakes with a proportional output based on the towing vehicle's brake pressure.

The Ford TBC has been tested to be compatible with several major brands of electric-over-hydraulic trailer brakes; contact your authorized dealer for information on which brands can be used.



**WARNING:** The Ford TBC has been verified to be compatible with trailers having electric-actuated drum brakes (one to four axles) and some electric-over-hydraulic types, but not hydraulic surge types. It is the responsibility of the customer to ensure that the trailer brakes are adjusted appropriately, functioning normally and all electric connections are properly made. Failure to do so may result in loss of vehicle control, crash or serious injury.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

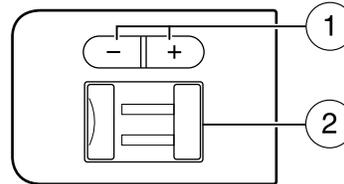
The TBC user interface consists of the following:

### 1. +/- (GAIN adjustment

**buttons):** Pressing these buttons adjusts the TBC's power output to the trailer brakes (in 0.5 increments). The GAIN setting can be increased to a maximum of

10.0 or decreased to a minimum of 0 (no trailer braking). Pressing and holding a button raises or lowers the setting continuously. The gain setting displays in the message center as follows: TBC GAIN = XX.X.

The trailer brake controller (TBC) is designed to display three items of information in the instrument cluster message center. These are: gain setting, output bar graph, and trailer connectivity status. They appear in the message center as follows:



- **TBC GAIN = XX.X NO TRAILER:** The instrument cluster message center displays the current gain setting during a given ignition cycle and when adjusting the gain. This message is also displayed during manual activation without a trailer connected or when gain adjustments are made with no trailer connected.
- **TBC GAIN = XX.X OUTPUT = /////:** When the vehicle's brake pedal is pushed, or when the manual control is activated, bar indicators illuminate in the instrument cluster message center to indicate the amount of power going to the trailer brakes relative to the brake pedal or manual control input. One bar indicates the least amount of output with six bars indicating maximum output.
- **TRAILER CONNECTED:** This message is displayed when a correct trailer wiring connection (a trailer with electric trailer brakes) has been sensed during a given ignition cycle.
- **TRAILER DISCONNECTED:** This message is displayed and accompanied by a single chime, when a trailer connection was determined and then a disconnection, either intentionally or unintentionally, has been sensed during a given ignition cycle. It is also displayed if a truck or trailer wiring fault occurs causing the trailer to appear disconnected. This message is also displayed during manual activation without a trailer connected.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

2. **Manual control lever:** Slide the control lever to the left to activate power to the trailer's electric brakes independent of the tow vehicle's brakes (see the following *Procedure for adjusting GAIN* section for instructions on proper use of this feature). If the manual control is activated while the brake is also applied, the greater of the two inputs determines the power sent to the trailer brakes.

- **Stop lamps:** Activating the TBC manual control lever illuminates both the trailer brake lamps and the tow vehicle brake lamps except the center high-mount stop lamp (presuming proper trailer electrical connection). Pressing the vehicle brake pedal also illuminates both trailer and vehicle brake lamps.

### Procedure for adjusting GAIN:

The GAIN setting is used to set the TBC for the specific towing condition and should be changed as towing conditions change. Changes to towing conditions include trailer load, vehicle load, road conditions and weather.

The GAIN should be set to provide the maximum trailer braking assistance while ensuring the trailer wheels do not lock when braking; locked trailer wheels may lead to trailer instability.

**Note:** This should only be performed in a traffic-free environment at speeds of approximately 20–25 mph (30–40 km/h).

1. Make sure the trailer brakes are in good working condition, functioning normally and properly adjusted. See your trailer dealer if necessary.
2. Hook up the trailer and make the electrical connections according to the trailer manufacturer's instructions.
3. When a trailer with electric brakes is plugged in, the **TRAILER CONNECTED** message displays in the instrument cluster message center.
4. Use the GAIN adjustment (+/-) buttons to increase or decrease the GAIN setting to the desired starting point. A GAIN setting of 6.0 is a good starting point for heavier loads.
5. In a traffic-free environment, tow the trailer on a dry, level surface at a speed of 20–25 mph (30–40 km/h) and squeeze the manual control lever completely.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

6. If the trailer wheels lock up (indicated by squealing tires), reduce the GAIN setting; if the trailer wheels turn freely, increase the GAIN setting. Repeat Steps 5 and 6 until the GAIN setting is at a point just below trailer wheel lock-up. If towing a heavier trailer, trailer wheel lock-up may not be attainable even with the maximum GAIN setting of 10.

### Explanation of instrument cluster warning messages:

The TBC interacts with the instrument cluster message center to display the following messages:

**TRAILER BRAKE MODULE FAULT:** This message is displayed and accompanied by a single chime, in response to faults sensed by the TBC. In the event this message is seen, please contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible for diagnosis and repair. The TBC may still function, but performance may be degraded.

**WIRING FAULT ON TRAILER:** This message is displayed when a *Short circuit on the electric brake output wire* has occurred. If the **WIRING FAULT ON TRAILER** message is displayed and accompanied by a single chime, with no trailer connected, the problem is with the vehicle wiring from the TBC to the 7-pin connector at the bumper. If the message is only displayed with a trailer connected, the problem is related to the trailer wiring; consult your trailer dealer for assistance. This can be a short to ground (i.e., chaffed wire) or a short to voltage (i.e., pulled pin on trailer emergency break-away battery) or trailer brakes drawing too much current.

**Note:** Your TBC can be diagnosed by your authorized dealer to determine exactly which trailer fault has occurred; however, if the fault is with the trailer this diagnosis is **not** covered under your Ford warranty.

### Points to Remember:

- Remember to adjust gain setting before using the TBC for the first time.
- Readjust gain setting on the TBC (according to procedure above) whenever road, weather and trailer or vehicle loading conditions change from those that existed when the gain was initially set.
- The sliding lever on the TBC should be used only for manual activation of trailer brakes to assist with proper adjustment of the GAIN. Misuse, such as application during trailer sway, could cause instability of trailer and/or tow vehicle.
- Avoid towing in adverse weather conditions. The TBC does not provide anti-lock control of the trailer wheels. Trailer wheels can lock up on slippery surfaces, resulting in reduced stability of trailer and tow vehicle.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

- The TBC is equipped with a feature which reduces output at vehicle speeds below 11 mph (18 km/h) so trailer and vehicle braking is not jerky or harsh. This feature is only available when applying the brakes using the vehicle's brake pedal, not the TBC.
- The TBC interacts with the brake system of the vehicle, including ABS, in order to reduce the likelihood of trailer wheel lock-up; therefore, if these systems are not functioning properly, the TBC may not function at full performance.
- Your vehicle's brake system and the trailer brake system work independently of each other; changing the GAIN setting on the TBC does not affect the operation of your vehicle's brakes whether a trailer is attached or not.
- When the vehicle is turned off, the TBC output is disabled and the display is shut down; turning the ignition from off to on awakens the TBC module.
- The TBC is only a factory- or dealer-installed item; Ford is not responsible for warranty or performance of the TBC due to misuse or customer installation.
- **Do not attempt removal of the TBC without consulting the Workshop Manual; damage to the unit may result.**

### Trailer lamps

Trailer lamps are required on most towed vehicles. Make sure all running lights, brake lights, turn signals and hazard lights are working. Contact your authorized dealer or trailer rental agency for proper instructions and equipment for hooking-up trailer lamps.

### Driving while you tow

When towing a trailer:

- Consult your local motor vehicle laws for towing a trailer.
- Do not drive faster than 70 mph (113 km/h) during the first 500 miles (800 km) of trailer towing and don't make full-throttle starts.
- Turn off the speed control. The speed control may shut off automatically when you are towing on long, steep grades.
- Activate the tow/haul feature to eliminate excessive transmission shifting and assist in transmission cooling. For additional information, refer to *Automatic transmission operation* in the *Driving* chapter.
- Allow more distance for stopping with a trailer attached; anticipate stops and brake gradually.

258

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

Your vehicle may be equipped with a temporary or conventional spare tire. If the spare tire is different in size (diameter and/or width), tread type (All-Season or All-Terrain) or is from a different manufacturer other than the road tires on your vehicle, your spare tire is considered “temporary”. Consult information on the Tire Label or Safety Compliance Certification Label for limitations when using.

### Trailer towing safety tips

#### General

- Ensure that the trailer, safety chains and 7-pin electrical connectors are securely fastened.
- Make sure the truck receiver, draw bar and coupler are properly connected and adjusted.
- Check rear view and side mirrors for proper visibility especially when towing a trailer wider than the truck.
- When turning, make wide turns to allow trailer tires to properly clear any obstacles.
- Operate the vehicle at lower speeds than you would when not towing a trailer; the likelihood of trailer sway is greater at higher speeds.
- Be prepared for trailer sway due to buffeting when larger vehicles pass in either direction.
- If you will be towing a trailer frequently in hot weather, hilly conditions, at GCWR, or any combination of these factors, consider refilling your rear axle with synthetic gear lubricant if not already so equipped. Refer to *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter for the proper axle lubricant. Remember that regardless of the rear axle lubricant used, do not tow a trailer for the first 500 miles (800 km) of a new vehicle, and that the first 500 miles (800 km) of towing be done at no faster than 70 mph (113 km/h) with no full-throttle starts.

#### Loading

- Trailer loads should be evenly distributed front-to-back and left-to-right.
- Never exceed truck, trailer, receiver, ball, tongue, tire or coupler loading recommendations.
- Keep the center of gravity low for best handling.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### **Braking**

- Anticipate stops; allow more distance and time to stop than normal.
- Do not apply the trailer brakes for extended periods of time as they can overheat and lose effectiveness.
- The trailer brakes (including the shoes, drum and trailer brake magnets) must be inspected and serviced at intervals specified by the manufacturer.
- Electric brakes also require periodic adjustment to keep the shoes properly spaced. If the brakes get hot when driving or if they will not hold, chances are that they need adjustment.

### **Backing-up**

- Practice backing-up, particularly if you are a novice. Turn the steering wheel to the right to move the trailer's rear end to the right.
- Sharp steering movements may cause the trailer to jackknife or go out of control.

### **Tires**

- Select tires that meet the trailer loading requirements.
- All trailer tires should be of the same size, and construction.
- Always check tow vehicle and trailer tire pressure before towing.

### **Launching or retrieving a boat**

**Disconnect the wiring to the trailer before backing the trailer into the water. Reconnect the wiring to the trailer after the trailer is removed from the water.**

When backing down a ramp during boat launching or retrieval:

- Do not allow the static water level to rise above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.
- Do not allow waves to break higher than 6 in (15 cm) above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.

Exceeding these limits may allow water to enter vehicle components:

- Causing internal damage to the components.
- Affecting driveability, emissions and reliability.

Replace the rear axle lubricant any time the axle has been submerged in water. Rear axle lubricant quantities are not to be checked or changed unless a leak is suspected or repair required.

260

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### RECREATIONAL TOWING

Follow these guidelines if you have a need for recreational (RV) towing. An example of recreational towing would be towing your vehicle behind a motor home.

**Note:** Put your climate control system in recirculated air mode to prevent exhaust fumes from entering the vehicle. Refer to the *Climate Controls* chapter for more information.

In case of a roadside emergency with a disabled vehicle, see *Wrecker towing* in the *Roadside Emergencies* chapter.

These guidelines are designed to ensure that your transmission is not damaged after the vehicle is hooked-up to the RV or tow dolly.

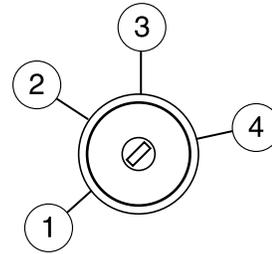
Drivetrain configuration	Requirements for neutral towing
4x4 with manual-shift transfer case	Transmission in N (Neutral); transfer case in N (Neutral); hublocks set to FREE*
4x2 or 4x4 with electronic-shift transfer case	Do not tow your vehicle with any wheels on the ground, as vehicle or transmission damage may occur. It is recommended to tow your vehicle with all four (4) wheels off the ground such as when using a car-hauling trailer. Otherwise, no recreational towing is permitted.
*Always make sure that both hub locks are set to the same position.	

## Driving

### STARTING

#### Positions of the ignition

1. Off— shuts off the engine and all accessories/locks the steering wheel and allows key removal. **Note:** In order to switch off the engine while the vehicle is in motion, shift to neutral and use the brakes to bring the vehicle to a safe stop. After the vehicle has stopped, turn the engine off and shift into park. Then, turn the key to the accessory or off position.



2. Accessory— allows the electrical accessories such as the radio to operate while the engine is not running. This position also unlocks the steering wheel.

3. On— all electrical circuits operational. Warning lights illuminated. Key position when driving.

4. Start— cranks the engine. Release the key as soon as the engine begins cranking.

#### Preparing to start your vehicle

Engine starting is controlled by the powertrain control system.

This system meets all Canadian interference-causing equipment standard requirements regulating the impulse electrical field strength of radio noise.

When starting a fuel-injected engine, don't press the accelerator before or during starting. Only use the accelerator when you have difficulty starting the engine. For more information on starting the vehicle, refer to *Starting the engine* in this chapter.



**WARNING:** Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.



**WARNING:** Do not park, idle, or drive your vehicle in dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, which can start a fire.

## Driving

**!** **WARNING:** Do not start your vehicle in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes can be toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine. See *Guarding against exhaust fumes* in this chapter for more instructions.

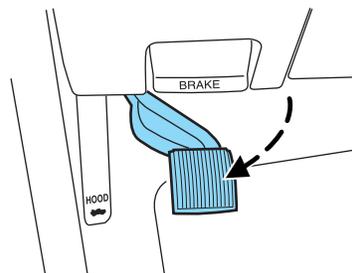
**!** **WARNING:** If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your dealer inspect your vehicle immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

### Important safety precautions

When the engine starts, the idle RPM runs faster to warm the engine. If the engine idle speed does not slow down automatically, have the vehicle checked. If your vehicle is operated in a heavy snow storm or blowing snow conditions, the engine air induction may become partially clogged with snow and/or ice. If this occurs, the engine may experience a significant reduction in power output. At the earliest opportunity, clear all the snow and/or ice away from the air induction inlet. The following starting instructions are for vehicles equipped with a gasoline engine; if your vehicle is equipped with a diesel engine, refer to *Starting the engine* in your diesel supplement.

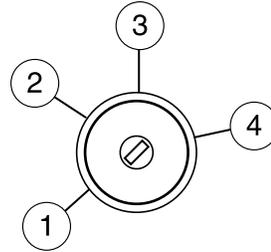
Before starting the vehicle:

1. Make sure all occupants buckle their safety belts. For more information on safety belts and their proper usage, refer to the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter.
2. Make sure the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
  - Make sure the parking brake is set.
  - Make sure the gearshift is in P (Park).



## Driving

3. Turn the key to 3 (on) without turning the key to 4 (start).



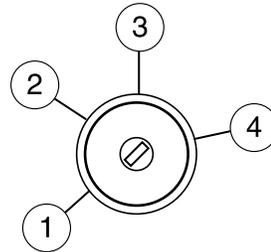
Some warning lights will briefly illuminate. See *Warning lights and chimes* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for more information regarding the warning lights.

### Starting the engine

1. Turn the key to 3 (on) without turning the key to 4 (start). If there is difficulty in turning the key, rotate the steering wheel until the key turns freely. This condition may occur when:

- the front wheels are turned.
- a front wheel is against the curb.

2. Turn the key to 4 (start), then release the key as soon as the engine begins cranking. Your vehicle has a computer assisted cranking system that assists in starting the engine. After releasing the key from the 4 (start) position, the engine may continue cranking for up to 10 seconds or until the vehicle starts.



**Note:** Cranking may be stopped at any time by turning the key to the off position.

3. After idling for a few seconds, release the parking brake, apply the brake, shift into gear and drive.

**Note:** If the engine does not start on the first try, turn the key to the off position, wait 10 seconds and try Step 2 again. If the engine still fails to start, press the accelerator to the floor and try Step 2 again, keeping the accelerator on the floor until the engine begins to accelerate above cranking speeds; this will allow the engine to crank with the fuel shut off in case the engine is flooded with fuel.

264

## Driving

Your vehicle may have remote start capability. Refer to *Remote entry system* in the *Locks and Security* chapter.

### **Cold weather starting (flexible fuel vehicles only)**

The starting characteristics of all grades of E<sub>85</sub> ethanol make it unsuitable for use when ambient temperatures fall below 0°F (-18°C). Consult your fuel distributor for the availability of winter grade ethanol. As the outside temperature approaches freezing, ethanol fuel distributors should supply winter grade ethanol (same as with unleaded gasoline). If summer grade ethanol is used in cold weather conditions, 0°F to 32°F (-18°C to 0°C), you may experience increased cranking times, rough idle or hesitation until the engine has warmed up.

You may experience a decrease in peak performance when the engine is cold when operating on E<sub>85</sub> ethanol.

Do not crank the engine for more than 10 seconds at a time as starter damage may occur. If the engine fails to start, turn the key to off and wait 30 seconds before trying again.

Do not use starting fluid such as ether in the air intake system. Such fluid could cause immediate explosive damage to the engine and possible personal injury.

If you should experience cold weather starting problems on E<sub>85</sub> ethanol, and neither an alternative brand of E<sub>85</sub> ethanol nor an engine block heater is available, the addition of unleaded gasoline to your tank will improve cold starting performance. Your vehicle is designed to operate on E<sub>85</sub> ethanol alone, unleaded gasoline alone, or any mixture of the two.

See *Choosing the right fuel* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter for more information on ethanol.

### **If the engine fails to start using the preceding instructions (flexible fuel vehicles only)**

1. Press and hold down the accelerator 1/3 to 1/2 way to floor, then crank the engine.
2. When the engine starts, release the key, then gradually release the accelerator pedal as the engine speeds up. If the engine still fails to start, repeat Step 1.

### **Guarding against exhaust fumes**

Carbon monoxide is present in exhaust fumes. Take precautions to avoid its dangerous effects.

## Driving



**WARNING:** If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your dealer inspect your vehicle immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

### Important ventilating information

If the engine is idling while the vehicle is stopped for a long period of time, open the windows at least 1 inch (2.5 cm) or adjust the heating or air conditioning to bring in fresh air.

### ENGINE BLOCK HEATER (IF EQUIPPED)

An engine block heater warms the engine coolant which aids in starting and allows the heater/defroster system to respond quickly. If your vehicle is equipped with this system, your equipment includes a heater element which is installed in your engine block and a wire harness which allows the user to connect the system to a grounded 120 volt A/C electrical source. The block heater system is most effective when outdoor temperatures reach below 0°F (-18°C).

For flexible fuel vehicles, if operating with E85 ethanol, an engine block heater must be used if ambient temperature is below 0°F (-18°C).

See *Cold weather starting* earlier in this chapter for more information on starting with ethanol.



**WARNING:** Failure to follow engine block heater instructions could result in property damage or physical injury.



**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of electrical shock, do not use your heater with ungrounded electrical systems or two-pronged (cheater) adapters.

Prior to using the engine block heater, follow these recommendations for proper and safe operation:

- For your safety, use an outdoor extension cord that is product certified by Underwriter's Laboratory (UL) or Canadian Standards Association (CSA). Use only an extension cord that can be used outdoors, in cold temperatures, and is clearly marked "Suitable for Use with Outdoor Appliances." Never use an indoor extension cord outdoors; it could result in an electric shock or fire hazard.
- Use a 16 gauge outdoor extension cord, minimum.

266

## Driving

- Use as short an extension cord as possible.
- Do not use multiple extension cords. Instead, use one extension cord which is long enough to reach from the engine block heater cord to the outlet without stretching.
- Make certain that the extension cord is in excellent condition (not patched or spliced). Store your extension cord indoors at temperatures above 32°F (0°C). Outdoor conditions can deteriorate extension cords over a period of time.
- To reduce the risk of electrical shock, do not use your heater with ungrounded electrical systems or two pronged (cheater) adapters. Also ensure that the block heater, especially the cord, is in good condition before use.
- Make sure that when in operation, the extension cord plug /engine block heater cord plug connection is free and clear of water in order to prevent possible shock or fire.
- Be sure that areas where the vehicle is parked are clean and clear of all combustibles such as petroleum products, dust, rags, paper and similar items.
- Be sure that the engine block heater, heater cord and extension cord are solidly connected. A poor connection can cause the cord to become very hot and may result in an electrical shock or fire. Be sure to check for heat anywhere in the electrical hookup once the system has been operating for approximately a half hour.
- Finally, have the engine block heater system checked during your fall tune-up to be sure it's in good working order.

### **How to use the engine block heater**

Ensure the receptacle terminals are clean and dry prior to use. To clean them, use a dry cloth.

Depending on the type of factory installed equipment, your engine block heater system may consume anywhere between 400 watts or 1000 watts of power per hour. Your factory installed block heater system does not have a thermostat; however, maximum temperature is attained after approximately three hours of operation. Block heater operation longer than three hours will not improve system performance and will unnecessarily use additional electricity.

Make sure system is unplugged and properly stowed before driving the vehicle. While not in use, make sure the protective cover seals the prongs of the engine block heater cord plug.

## Driving

### BRAKES

Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake linings may be worn-out and should be inspected by an authorized dealer. If the vehicle has continuous vibration or shudder in the steering wheel while braking, the vehicle should be inspected by an authorized dealer.

Refer to *Warning lights and chimes* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for information on the brake system warning light.



### Four-wheel anti-lock brake system (ABS)

Your vehicle is equipped with an anti-lock braking system (ABS). This system helps you maintain steering control during emergency stops by keeping the brakes from locking. Noise from the ABS pump motor and brake pedal pulsation may be observed during ABS braking and the brake pedal may suddenly travel a little farther as soon as ABS braking is done and normal brake operation resumes. These are normal characteristics of the ABS and should be no reason for concern.

### Using ABS

When hard braking is required, apply continuous force on the brake pedal. Do not pump the brake pedal since this will reduce the effectiveness of the ABS and will increase your vehicle's stopping distance. The ABS will be activated immediately, allowing you to retain steering control during hard braking and on slippery surfaces. However, the ABS does not decrease stopping distance.

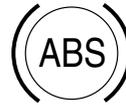
### Brake assist

The brake assist system provides full braking force during panic braking situations. It detects a rapid application of the brake pedal and uses the ABS system to achieve maximum braking pressure. Once a panic brake application is detected, the system will remain activated as long as the brake pedal is pressed or ABS is engaged. The system is deactivated by either releasing the brake pedal or coming to a complete stop. When the system activates, noise from the ABS pump motor and brake pedal pulsation may be observed; this is normal.

## Driving

### **ABS warning lamp**

The ABS lamp in the instrument cluster momentarily illuminates when the ignition is turned on. If the light does not illuminate during start up, remains on or flashes, the ABS may be disabled and may need to be serviced.

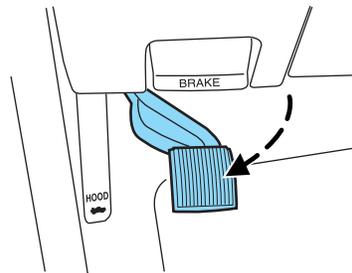


Even when the ABS is disabled, normal braking is still effective. If your BRAKE warning lamp illuminates with the parking brake released, have your brake system serviced immediately by an authorized dealer.



### **Parking brake**

To set the parking brake, press the parking brake pedal down until the pedal stops.

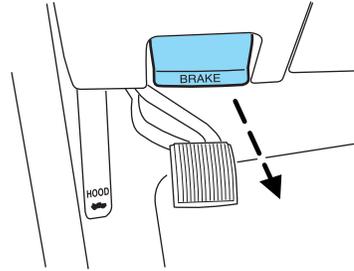


The BRAKE warning lamp in the instrument cluster illuminates and remains illuminated until the parking brake is released.



## Driving

Pull the release lever to release the parking brake. To prevent the pedal from releasing too quickly, place your left foot on the service brake pedal, then slowly pull the release lever until the pedal slowly releases. Make sure that the pedal is fully released. You may want to pull the release lever again to make sure the parking brake is fully released.



**WARNING:** Always set the parking brake fully and make sure that the gearshift is securely latched in P (Park).

If you're parking your vehicle on a grade or with a trailer, press and hold the brake pedal down, then set the parking brake. There may be a little vehicle movement as the parking brake sets to hold the vehicle's weight. This is normal and should be no reason for concern. If needed, press and hold the service brake pedal down, then try reapplying the parking brake. Chock the wheels if required. If the parking brake cannot hold the weight of the vehicle, the parking brake may need to be serviced or the vehicle may be overloaded.

### ENGINE ONLY TRACTION CONTROL (ALL DUAL REAR WHEEL (DRW) VEHICLES)

This system helps you maintain the stability and steerability of your vehicle, especially on slippery road surfaces such as snow- or ice-covered roads and gravel roads. The system will allow your vehicle to make better use of available traction in these conditions.

During traction control operation, the traction control light will illuminate and the engine will not "rev-up" when you press further on the accelerator. This is normal system behavior and should be no



reason for concern. Also, if traction control is on when the vehicle is put into four-wheel drive mode (if equipped), the traction control system will be automatically disabled. Traction control operation will resume when the vehicle is placed back into two-wheel drive mode.

270

## Driving



**WARNING:** Aggressive driving in any road conditions can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of severe personal injury or property damage. The occurrence of a traction control event is an indication that at least some of the tires have exceeded their ability to grip the road; this may lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. If you experience a severe road event, SLOW DOWN.

The traction control switch, located on the instrument panel to the right of the climate control system, has an indicator light that illuminates when the system is off. The traction control system will automatically turn on every time the ignition is turned off and on. The traction control system should normally be left on.

## TCS OFF

If you should become stuck in snow or ice or on a very slippery road surface, try switching the traction control system off. This may allow excess wheel spin to “dig” the vehicle out and enable a successful “rocking” maneuver.

If a system fault is detected, the traction control active light will illuminate, the traction control button will not turn the system on or off and your vehicle should be serviced by an authorized dealer.

### **ADVANCETRAC® WITH ROLL STABILITY CONTROL™ (RSC®) STABILITY ENHANCEMENT SYSTEM (ALL SINGLE REAR WHEEL (SRW) VEHICLES)**

The AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system provides the following stability enhancement features for certain driving situations:

- Traction control system (TCS), which functions to help avoid drive-wheel spin and loss of traction.
- Electronic stability control (ESC), which functions to help avoid skids or lateral slides.
- Roll Stability Control™ (RSC®), which functions to help avoid a vehicle roll-over.

## Driving

 **WARNING:** Vehicle modifications involving braking system, aftermarket roof racks, suspension, steering system, tire construction and/or wheel/tire size may change the handling characteristics of the vehicle and may adversely affect the performance of the AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system. In addition, installing any stereo loudspeakers may interfere with and adversely affect the AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system. Install any aftermarket stereo loudspeaker as far as possible from the front center console, the tunnel, and the front seats in order to minimize the risk of interfering with the AdvanceTrac® with RSC® sensors. Reducing the effectiveness of the AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

 **WARNING:** Remember that even advanced technology cannot defy the laws of physics. It's always possible to lose control of a vehicle due to inappropriate driver input for the conditions. Aggressive driving on any road condition can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of personal injury or property damage. Activation of the AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system is an indication that at least some of the tires have exceeded their ability to grip the road; this could reduce the operator's ability to control the vehicle, potentially resulting in a loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. If your AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system activates, SLOW DOWN.

 **WARNING:** If a failure has been detected within the AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system, the stability control light will illuminate steadily. Verify that the AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system is not manually disabled. Press the stability control button located on the instrument panel to the right of the climate control system. If the stability control light still illuminates steadily, have the system serviced by an authorized dealer immediately. Operating your vehicle with AdvanceTrac® with RSC® disabled could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system automatically enables each time the engine is started. All features of the AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system (TCS, ESC, and RSC®) are active and monitor the vehicle from start-up. However, the system will only intervene if the driving situation requires it.

272

## Driving

The AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system includes a stability control button located on the instrument panel to the right of the climate control system, a stability control light and a stability control off light in the instrument cluster. Both



lights will illuminate temporarily during start-up as part of a normal system self-check. The stability control light may illuminate (flash) during certain driving situations which cause the AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system to operate. If the stability control light and stability control off light illuminate steadily, have the system serviced by an authorized dealer immediately. The message center will also indicate a failure with the AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system.

**Note:** If the system cannot be turned off, refer to *MyKey®* in the *Locks and Security* chapter for more information.

When AdvanceTrac® with RSC® performs a normal system self-check, some drivers may notice a slight movement of the brake, and/or a rumble, grunting, or grinding noise after startup and when driving off.

When an event occurs that activates AdvanceTrac® with RSC® you may experience the following:

- A slight deceleration of the vehicle
- The stability control light will flash.
- A vibration in the pedal when your foot is on the brake pedal
- If the driving condition is severe and your foot is not on the brake, the brake pedal may move as the systems applies higher brake forces. You may also hear a whoosh of air from under the instrument panel during this severe condition.
- The brake pedal may feel stiffer than usual.

### **Traction control system (TCS)**

Traction control is a driver aid feature that helps your vehicle maintain traction of the wheels, typically when driving on slippery and/or hilly road surfaces, by detecting and controlling wheel spin.

Excessive wheel spin is controlled in two ways, which may work separately or in tandem: engine traction control and brake traction control. Engine traction control works to limit drive-wheel spin by momentarily reducing engine power. Brake traction control works to limit wheel spin by momentarily applying the brakes to the wheel that is slipping. Traction control is most active at low speeds.

## Driving

During TCS events the stability control light in the instrument cluster will flash.

If the TCS is activated excessively in a short period of time, the braking portion of the system may become temporarily disabled to allow the brakes to cool down. In this situation, TCS will use only engine power reduction to help control the wheels from over-spinning. When the brakes have cooled down, the system will regain all features. Anti-lock braking, RSC®, and ESC are not affected by this condition and will continue to function during the cool-down period.

The engine traction control and brake traction control system may be deactivated in certain situations. See the *Switching off AdvanceTrac® with RSC®* section following.

### Electronic stability control (ESC)

Electronic stability control (ESC) may enhance your vehicle's directional stability during adverse maneuvers, for example when cornering severely or avoiding objects in the roadway. ESC operates by applying brakes to one or more of the wheels individually and, if necessary, reducing engine power if the system detects that the vehicle is about to skid or slide laterally.

During ESC events, the stability control light in the instrument cluster will flash.

Certain adverse driving maneuvers may activate the ESC system, which include but are not limited to:

- Taking a turn too fast
- Maneuvering quickly to avoid an accident, pedestrian or obstacle
- Driving over a patch of ice or other slippery surfaces
- Changing lanes on a snow-rutted road
- Entering a snow-free road from a snow-covered side street, or vice versa
- Entering a paved road from a gravel road, or vice versa
- Cornering while towing a heavily loaded trailer (refer to *Trailer towing* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter).

The ESC system may be deactivated in certain situations. See the *Switching off AdvanceTrac® with RSC®* section following.

## Driving

### **Roll Stability Control™ (RSC®)**

Roll Stability Control™ (RSC®) may help to maintain roll stability of the vehicle during adverse maneuvers. RSC® operates by detecting the vehicle's roll motion and the rate at which it changes and by applying the brakes to one or more wheels individually.

During an event that activates the Roll Stability Control™ (RSC®) the stability control light in the instrument cluster will flash.

Certain adverse driving maneuvers may activate the Roll Stability Control™ system, which include:

- Emergency lane-change
- Taking a turn too fast
- Quick maneuvering to avoid an accident, pedestrian or obstacle

The Roll Stability Control™ system may be deactivated in certain situations. See the *Switching off AdvanceTrac® with RSC®* section following.

### **Switching off AdvanceTrac® with RSC®**

If the vehicle is stuck in snow, mud or sand, and seems to lose engine power, switching off certain features of the AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system may be beneficial because the wheels are allowed to spin. This will restore full engine power and will enhance momentum through the obstacle. To switch off the AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system, press the stability control button located on the instrument panel to the right of the climate control system. Full features of the AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system can be restored by pressing the button again or by turning off and restarting the engine.

If you switch off the AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system, the stability control off light will illuminate steadily. Pressing the stability control button again will turn off the stability control off light.

In R (Reverse), ABS and the engine traction control and brake traction control features will continue to function; however, ESC and RSC® are disabled.

## Driving

AdvanceTrac® with RSC® Features				
Button functions	Stability control light 	RSC®	ESC	TCS
Default at start-up	Illuminated during bulb check	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled
Button pressed momentarily	Illuminated solid	Enabled	Enabled <sup>1</sup>	Disabled
Button pressed and held for more than 5 seconds at vehicle speed under 35 mph (56 km/h)	Flashes then illuminated solid <sup>2</sup>	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled
Vehicle speed exceeds 35 mph (56 km/h) after button is pressed and held for more than 5 seconds	Illuminated solid	Enabled	Enabled <sup>1</sup>	Disabled
Button pressed again after deactivation	Not illuminated	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled
Transfer case switched to 4WD Low Locked <sup>3,4</sup>	Illuminated	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled

<sup>1</sup>TCS is enabled but with higher entry thresholds compared to full system.

<sup>2</sup>Lamp light starts blinking for 4 seconds after entering press and hold state.

<sup>3</sup>Control switch is not pressed. Stability control off light turned on when 4WD low locked transfer case mode selected.

<sup>4</sup>If the button is pressed in 2WD or 4WD high, any change in the transfer case mode will return the AdvanceTrac® to fully enabled.

276

## Driving

### Trailer sway control

Your vehicle may be equipped with trailer sway control. When properly equipped, trailer sway control will use the vehicle's AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system to detect and help reduce trailer sway by applying brake force at individual wheels and, if necessary, by reducing engine power.



**WARNING:** Trailer sway control does not prevent a trailer from swaying, it mitigates the sway from increasing once it has occurred. If you are experiencing trailer sway it is likely that the trailer is improperly loaded for the correct tongue weight or the speed of the vehicle and trailer is too high. Pull the vehicle-trailer over to a safe location to check the trailer weight distribution and tongue load and reduce speed to a safe level while towing. If trailer sway is experienced, SLOW DOWN.

During trailer sway control events the stability control light in the instrument cluster will flash momentarily. The message center will also display **TRAILER SWAY REDUCE SPEED**. In some cases when trailer sway is detected, the vehicle speed is too high and may be above a speed at which trailer sway will not grow continuously. This may cause the system to activate multiple times, causing a gradual reduction in speed.

### Disabling trailer sway control

Trailer sway control can be disabled during any key cycle. See trailer sway control under the *Message center* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter. Note that regardless of chosen enable state, trailer sway control will be re-enabled at each new key cycle.



**WARNING:** Turning off trailer sway control increases the risk of loss of vehicle control, serious injury, or death. Ford does not recommend disabling this feature except in situations where speed reduction may be detrimental (e.g., hill climbing), the driver has significant trailer towing experience, and can control trailer sway and maintain safe operation.

### HILL DESCENT CONTROL (IF EQUIPPED)

Hill descent control allows the driver to set and maintain vehicle speed while descending steep grades in various surface conditions.

## Driving

**!** **WARNING:** Hill descent control cannot control descent in all surface conditions and circumstances, such as ice or extremely steep grades. Hill descent control is a driver assist system and cannot substitute for good judgment by the driver. Failure to do so may result in loss of vehicle control, crash or serious injury.

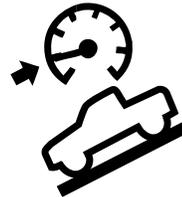
Hill descent control can maintain vehicle speeds on downhill grades between 2 mph (3 km/h) and 12 mph (20 km/h). Above 20 mph (32 km/h), the system remains armed, but descent speed cannot be set or maintained.

**!** **WARNING:** Hill descent control does not provide hill hold at zero mph (0 km/h). When stopped, the parking brake must be applied and/or the vehicle must be placed in P (Park) or it may roll away.

Hill descent control requires a cooling down interval after a period of sustained use. The amount of time that the feature can remain active before cooling varies with conditions. The system will provide a warning in the message center and a chime will sound when the system is about to disengage for cooling. At this time, manually apply the brakes as needed to maintain descent speed.

### Enabling hill descent control and setting the descent speed

1. Press and release the hill descent button located on the instrument panel. A light in the cluster will illuminate and chime will sound when this feature is activated.



2. To increase descent speed, press the accelerator pedal until the desired speed is reached. To decrease descent speed, press the brake pedal until the desired speed is reached.

Whether accelerating or decelerating, once the desired descent speed is reached, remove your feet from the pedals and the chosen vehicle speed will be maintained.

**Note:** Noise from the ABS pump motor may be observed during hill descent control operation. This is a normal characteristic of the ABS and should be no reason for concern.

278

## Driving

### Hill descent modes

- At speeds below 20 mph (32 km/h): When the HDC switch is pressed and HDC is active, the HDC telltale will flash.
- At speeds below 20 mph (32 km/h): When the HDC switch is pressed and conditions are not correct for hill descent activation, the HDC system will be enabled, the light in the cluster will be on solid and HILL DESCENT CONTROL READY will be displayed in the message center.
- At speeds above 20 mph (32 km/h): When the HDC switch is pressed, the HDC system will be enabled, the light in the cluster will not be illuminated and FOR HILL CNTRL, 20 MPH OR LESS will be displayed in the message center.

Refer to *Message center* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for hill descent control messages.

### STEERING

To help prevent damage to the power steering system:

- Never hold the steering wheel at its furthest turning points (until it stops) for more than three to five seconds when the engine is running.
- Do not operate the vehicle with a low power steering pump fluid level (below the MIN mark on the reservoir).
- Some noise is normal during operation. If excessive, check for low power steering pump fluid level before seeking service by your dealer.
- Heavy or uneven efforts may be caused by low power steering fluid. Check for low power steering pump fluid level before seeking service by your dealer.
- Do not fill the power steering pump reservoir above the MAX mark on the reservoir, as this may result in leaks from the reservoir.

If the power steering system breaks down (or if the engine is turned off), you can steer the vehicle manually, but it takes more effort.

If the steering wanders or pulls, check for:

- an improperly inflated tire
- uneven tire wear
- loose or worn suspension components
- loose or worn steering components
- improper steering alignment

## Driving

If any steering components are serviced or replaced, install new fasteners (many are coated with thread adhesive or have prevailing torque features which may not be re-used). Never re-use a bolt or nut. Torque fasteners to specifications in *Workshop Manual*.

A high crown in the road or high crosswinds may also make the steering seem to wander/pull.

### ELECTRONIC LOCKING DIFFERENTIAL (ELD) (IF EQUIPPED)

The electronic locking differential (ELD) is a device housed in the rear axle which allows both rear wheels to turn at the same speed. It provides added traction on slippery and/or off road surfaces, particularly when one wheel is on a poor traction surface. The ELD may be locked or unlocked by the vehicle operator and can be engaged or disengaged on the fly. When the axle is unlocked it will function like a standard rear axle. When the axle is locked it will not allow the rear wheels to rotate at different speeds when turning. It is not recommended for use on good traction surfaces such as dry pavement. Doing so may result in abnormal driving behavior and noise while cornering and excessive tire wear.

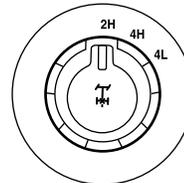
The ELD is affected by the following conditions of your vehicle:

- On 2WD vehicles and 4WD vehicles in 2H (4X2) or 4H (4X4 High), the ELD will not engage if the vehicle speed is above 25 mph (40 km/h).
- On 2WD vehicles and 4WD vehicles in 2H (4X2) or 4H (4X4 High), the ELD will automatically disengage at speeds above 25 mph (40 km/h) and will automatically reengage at speeds below 19 mph (30 km/h).
- On 4WD vehicles in 4L (4X4 Low), the ELD can be engaged at any speed and will not automatically disengage.

### Activating the electronic locking differential (ELD)

#### For vehicles equipped with an electronic shift 4WD system:

Pull the knob on the 4WD control toward you. The  indicator light will display in the instrument cluster.

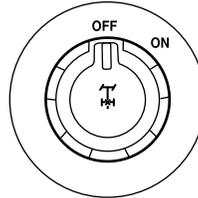


280

## Driving

### For 2WD vehicles and vehicles equipped with a manual shift 4WD system:

Turn the control to ON. The  indicator light will display in the instrument cluster.



Once the  light is displayed in the instrument cluster, both rear wheel axle shafts will be locked together providing added traction.

If the  indicator light in the instrument cluster turns off, one of the following has occurred:

- The vehicle speed is too high.
- The left and right rear wheel speed difference is too high during an engagement attempt.
- The system has malfunctioned and will be accompanied by the CHECK LOCKING DIFFERENTIAL message in the message center. See your authorized Ford dealer for assistance.

**Note:** The ELD may have difficulty disengaging either by operator command or automatically if the driveline is under torque. If driving conditions allow, releasing the accelerator pedal or turning the steering wheel in the opposite direction may assist in disengagement.

**Note:** The ELD is designed for off-road use only and is not intended for use on dry pavement.

### PREPARING TO DRIVE



**WARNING:** Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.



**WARNING:** In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt.

Utility vehicles and trucks have larger tires and increased ground clearance, giving the vehicle a higher center of gravity than a passenger car.

## Driving

 **WARNING:** Vehicles with a higher center of gravity such as utility vehicles and trucks handle differently than vehicles with a lower center of gravity. Utility vehicles and trucks are **not** designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions. Avoid sharp turns, excessive speed or abrupt maneuvers in these vehicles. Failure to drive cautiously could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

 **WARNING:** Loaded vehicles, with a higher center of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Do not overload your vehicle and use extra precautions, such as driving at slower speeds, avoiding abrupt steering changes and allowing for increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle. Over-loading or loading the vehicle improperly can deteriorate handling capability and contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.

### BRAKE-SHIFT INTERLOCK

This vehicle is equipped with a brake-shift interlock feature that prevents the gearshift lever from being moved from P (Park) when the ignition is in the 3 (on) position and the brake pedal is not pressed.

If you cannot move the gearshift lever out of P (Park) with ignition in the on position and the brake pedal pressed, it is possible that a fuse has blown or the vehicle's brake lamps are not operating properly. Refer to *Fuses and relays* in the *Roadside Emergencies* chapter.

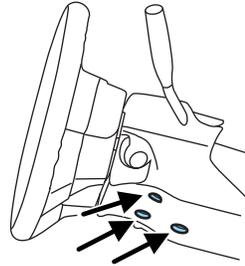
If the fuse is not blown and the brake lamps are working properly, the following procedure will allow you to move the gearshift lever from P (Park):

1. Apply the parking brake. Turn the ignition key to 1 (off), then remove the key.
2. Move the steering column to the full down and full rearward position (toward the driver's seat).
3. Remove the gearshift lever boot.
4. Place fingers into hole where the gearshift lever boot was removed from and pull top half of shroud up and forward to separate it from the lower half of the shroud. There is a hinge at the forward edge of the top shroud. Roll the top half of the shroud upward on the hinge point to clear the hazard flasher button, then pull straight rearward toward the driver's seat to remove.

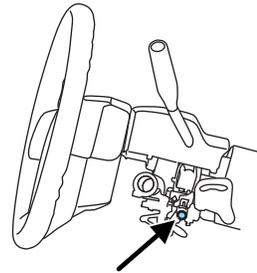
282

## Driving

5. Remove the top half of the shroud.
6. Remove the three fasteners under the column that secure the lower shroud half to the column.



7. Pull the lock lever into the full unlocked position and remove the lower shroud cover by pulling the lever handle through the slot in the cover.



8. Apply the brake and move the gearshift lever into N (Neutral).
  9. Start the vehicle.
- Perform Steps 4 through 8 in reverse order, making sure to engage the hinge pivots between the upper and lower halves of the shroud. Keep slight pressure in the forward direction as the halves are rotated together.



**WARNING:** Do not drive your vehicle until you verify that the brake lamps are working.



**WARNING:** Always set the parking brake fully and make sure the gearshift is latched in P (Park). Turn the ignition to the off position and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.



**WARNING:** If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. See your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

## Driving

### AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION OPERATION

#### Understanding the shift positions of the 5-speed automatic transmission (if equipped)

P R N D 3 2 1

This vehicle is equipped with an adaptive transmission shift strategy. Adaptive transmission shift strategy offers the optimal transmission operation and shift quality. When the vehicle's battery has been disconnected for any type of service or repair, the transmission will need to relearn the normal shift strategy parameters, much like having to reset your radio stations when your vehicle battery has been disconnected. The adaptive transmission shift strategy allows the transmission to relearn these operating parameters. This learning process could take several transmission upshifts and downshifts; during this learning process, slightly firmer shifts may occur. After this learning process, normal shift feel and shift scheduling will resume.

#### **P (Park)**

This position locks the transmission and prevents the rear wheels from turning.

To put your vehicle in gear:

- Start the engine
- Press the brake pedal
- Move the gearshift lever into the desired gear

To put your vehicle in P (Park):

- Come to a complete stop
- Move the gearshift lever and securely latch it in P (Park)



**WARNING:** Always set the parking brake fully and make sure the gearshift is latched in P (Park). Turn the ignition to the off position and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

#### **R (Reverse)**

With the gearshift lever in R (Reverse), the vehicle will move backward. Always come to a complete stop before shifting into and out of R (Reverse).

284

## Driving

### N (Neutral)

With the gearshift lever in N (Neutral), the vehicle can be started and is free to roll. Hold the brake pedal down while in this position.

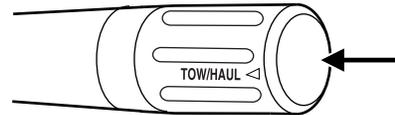
### D (Overdrive) with Tow/Haul Off

D (Overdrive) with tow/haul off is the normal driving position for the best fuel economy. The overdrive function allows automatic upshifts and downshifts through gears one through five.

### D (Overdrive) with Tow/Haul On

The tow/haul feature improves transmission operation when towing a trailer or a heavy load. All transmission gear ranges are available when using tow/haul.

To activate tow/haul, press the button on the end of the gearshift lever.



The TOW HAUL indicator light will illuminate in the instrument cluster.

**TOW  
HAUL**

Tow/haul delays upshifts to reduce frequency of transmission shifting. Tow/haul also provides engine braking in all forward gears when the transmission is in the D (Overdrive) position; this engine braking will slow the vehicle and assist the driver in controlling the vehicle when descending a grade. Depending on driving conditions and load conditions, the transmission may downshift, slow the vehicle and control the vehicle speed when descending a hill, without the accelerator pedal being pressed. The amount of downshift braking provided will vary based upon the amount the brake pedal is depressed.

To deactivate the tow/haul feature and return to normal driving mode, press the button on the end of the gearshift lever. The TOW HAUL light will no longer be illuminated.

When you shut-off and restart the engine, the transmission will automatically return to normal D (Overdrive) mode (Tow/Haul OFF).



**WARNING:** Do not use the tow/haul feature when driving in icy or slippery conditions as the increased engine braking can cause the rear wheels to slide and the vehicle to swing around with the possible loss of vehicle control.

## Driving

### 3 (Third)

Transmission starts and operates in third gear only.

Used for improved traction on slippery roads. Selecting 3 (Third) provides engine braking.

### 2 (Second)

Use 2 (Second) to start-up on slippery roads or to provide additional engine braking on downgrades.

### 1 (First)

- Provides maximum engine braking.
- Allows upshifts by moving gearshift lever.
- The transmission will not downshift into 1 (First) at high speeds; it will downshift to a lower gear and then shift into 1 (First) when the vehicle reaches slower speeds.

### Forced downshifts

- Allowed in D (Overdrive) or D (Drive).
- Press the accelerator to the floor.
- Allows transmission to select an appropriate gear.

### Understanding the shift positions of the 6-speed automatic transmission (if equipped)



This vehicle is equipped with an adaptive transmission shift strategy. Adaptive transmission shift strategy offers the optimal transmission operation and shift quality. When the vehicle's battery has been disconnected for any type of service or repair, the transmission will need to relearn the normal shift strategy parameters, much like having to reset your radio stations when your vehicle battery has been disconnected. The adaptive transmission shift strategy allows the transmission to relearn these operating parameters. This learning process could take several transmission upshifts and downshifts; during this learning process, slightly firmer shifts may occur. After this learning process, normal shift feel and shift scheduling will resume.

286

## Driving

### **P (Park)**

This position locks the transmission and prevents the rear wheels from turning.

To put your vehicle in gear:

1. Start the engine
2. Press the brake pedal
3. Move the gearshift lever into the desired gear

To put your vehicle in P (Park):

1. Come to a complete stop
2. Move the gearshift lever and securely latch it in P (Park)



**WARNING:** Always set the parking brake fully and make sure the gearshift is latched in P (Park). Turn the ignition to the off position and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

### **R (Reverse)**

With the gearshift lever in R (Reverse), the vehicle will move backward. Always come to a complete stop before shifting into and out of R (Reverse).

### **N (Neutral)**

With the gearshift lever in N (Neutral), the vehicle can be started and is free to roll. Hold the brake pedal down while in this position.

### **D (Overdrive) with Tow/Haul Off**

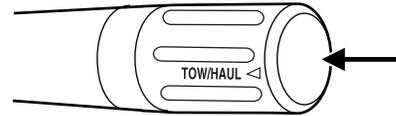
D (Overdrive) with tow/haul off is the normal driving position for the best fuel economy. The overdrive function allows automatic upshifts and downshifts through gears one through six.

### **D (Overdrive) with Tow/Haul On**

The tow/haul feature improves transmission operation when towing a trailer or a heavy load. All transmission gear ranges are available when using tow/haul.

## Driving

To activate tow/haul, press the button on the end of the gearshift lever.



The TOW HAUL indicator light will illuminate in the instrument cluster.

**TOW  
HAUL**

Tow/haul delays upshifts to reduce frequency of transmission shifting. Tow/haul also provides engine braking in all forward gears when the transmission is in the D (Overdrive) position; this engine braking will slow the vehicle and assist the driver in controlling the vehicle when descending a grade. Depending on driving conditions and load conditions, the transmission may downshift, slow the vehicle and control the vehicle speed when descending a hill, without the brake pedal being pressed. The amount of downshift braking provided will vary based upon the amount the brake pedal is pressed.

Tow/haul may be automatically activated (without pressing the tow/haul button). This provides engine braking to assist the vehicles braking system when going downhill and repetitive braking is sensed. Once the tow/haul mode has been automatically activated it will not automatically deactivate.

To deactivate the tow/haul feature and return to normal driving mode, press the button on the end of the gearshift lever. The tow/haul light will no longer be illuminated.

Tow/haul will also deactivate when the vehicle is powered down for a few minutes.



**WARNING:** Do not use the tow/haul feature when driving in icy or slippery conditions as the increased engine braking can cause the rear wheels to slide and the vehicle to swing around with the possible loss of vehicle control.

### **M (Manual) without Overdrive**

With the gearshift lever in M (Manual), the driver can change gears up or down as desired. This is called SelectShift Automatic™ transmission (SST) mode. By moving the gearshift lever from drive position D (Overdrive) to M (Manual) you now have control of selecting the gear you desire using buttons on the shift lever.

288

## Driving

To return to normal D (Overdrive) position, move the shift lever back from M to D.

- The transmission will operate in gears one through six.

### 2 (Second)

Use 2 (Second) to start-up on slippery roads or to provide additional engine braking on downgrades.

### 1 (First)

- Provides maximum engine braking.
- Allows upshifts by moving gearshift lever.
- The transmission will not downshift into 1 (First) at high speeds; it will downshift to a lower gear and then shift into 1 (First) when the vehicle reaches slower speeds.

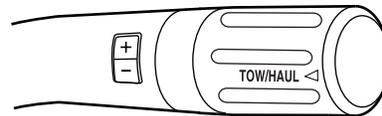
### Forced downshifts

- Allowed in D (Overdrive).
- Press the accelerator to the floor.
- Allows transmission to select an appropriate gear.

### ***Understanding your SelectShift Automatic™ transmission (SST) gearshift lever***

This vehicle is equipped with a SelectShift Automatic™ transmission (SST) gearshift lever. The SST is an automatic transmission with the ability for the driver to change gears up or down (without a clutch) as desired.

Use the buttons on the shifter to lock or unlock gears and manually select gears. Press the + button to upshift or the – button to downshift.



With the gearshift lever in D (Drive), press the – button to active SST. The available and selected gears will be indicated on the instrument cluster.



## Driving

All available gears will be displayed with the current gear indicated. Press the – button again to lock out gears beginning with the highest gear. Example: press the – button twice to lock out 6th and 5th gears. Only the available gears will be displayed and the transmission will automatically shift between the available gears. Press the + button to unlock gears.

By moving the gearshift lever from the D (Drive) position to the M (Manual) position you may now manually select the gear you desire. Only the current gear will be displayed. Press the + button or the – button to upshift or downshift. If the – button is pressed at a vehicle speed that would cause an engine overspeed, the requested gear will flash then disappear and the transmission will remain in the current gear.

### Recommended shift speeds

Upshift according to the following chart:

Upshifts when accelerating (recommended for best fuel economy)		
Shift from:	Gasoline engines	Diesel engines
1 – 2	15 mph (24 km/h)	12 mph (19 km/h)
2 – 3	25 mph (40 km/h)	19 mph (31 km/h)
3 – 4	40 mph (64 km/h)	26 mph (42 km/h)
4 – 5	45 mph (72 km/h)	34 mph (55 km/h)
5 – 6	50 mph (80 km/h)	46 mph (74 km/h)

In order to prevent the engine from running at too low an RPM, which may cause it to stall, the SST will still automatically make some downshifts if it has determined that you have not downshifted in time. Although the SST will make some downshifts for you, it will still allow you to downshift at any time as long as the SST determines that the engine will not be damaged from over-revving.

The SST will not automatically upshift, even if the engine is approaching the RPM limit. It must be shifted manually by pressing the + button.

**Engine damage may occur if excessive engine revving is held without shifting.**

## Driving

### Hill start assist (HSA)

The hill start assist feature makes it easier to pull away when the vehicle is on a slope without the need to use the parking brake. When the hill start assist feature is active, the vehicle will remain stationary on the slope for up to two seconds after you release the brake pedal. During this time, you have time to move your foot from the brake to the accelerator pedal and pull away. The brakes are released automatically once the engine has developed sufficient drive to prevent the vehicle from rolling down the slope. This is an advantage when pulling away on a slope; for example from a car park ramp, traffic lights or when reversing uphill into a parking space.



**WARNING:** The hill start assist feature does not replace the parking brake. When you leave the vehicle, always apply the parking brake and select first or reverse gear.

### Using hill start assist

The hill start assist feature is activated automatically when the vehicle is stopped on a slope greater than five degrees. The hill start assist feature operates with the vehicle facing downhill if reverse gear is selected. The hill start assist feature will not operate if the parking brake is activated.



**WARNING:** You must remain in the vehicle once you have activated the hill start assist feature.

### Activating hill start assist

1. Press the brake pedal to bring the vehicle to a complete standstill. Keep the brake pedal pressed.
2. If the sensors detect that the vehicle is on a slope, the hill start assist feature will be activated automatically.
3. When you remove your foot from the brake pedal, the vehicle will remain on the slope without rolling away for approximately up to two seconds. This hold time will automatically be extended if you are in the process of driving off.
4. Drive off in the normal manner. The brakes will be released automatically.



**WARNING:** If the engine is revved excessively, or if a malfunction is detected when the hill start assist feature is active, the hill start assist feature will be deactivated.

## Driving

### If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow

If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow, it may be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

**Do not rock the vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature or damage to the transmission may occur.**

**Do not rock the vehicle for more than a minute or damage to the transmission and tires may occur, or the engine may overheat.**

### REVERSE SENSING SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

The reverse sensing system (RSS) sounds a tone to warn the driver of obstacles near the rear bumper when the R (Reverse) is selected and the vehicle is moving at speeds less than 3 mph (5 km/h). The system is not effective at speeds above 3 mph (5 km/h) and may not detect certain angular or moving objects.



**WARNING:** To help avoid personal injury, please read and understand the limitations of the reverse sensing system as contained in this section. Reverse sensing is only an aid for some (generally large and fixed) objects when moving in reverse on a flat surface at “parking speeds”. Inclement weather may also affect the function of the RSS; this may include reduced performance or a false activation.



**WARNING:** To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse and when using the RSS.



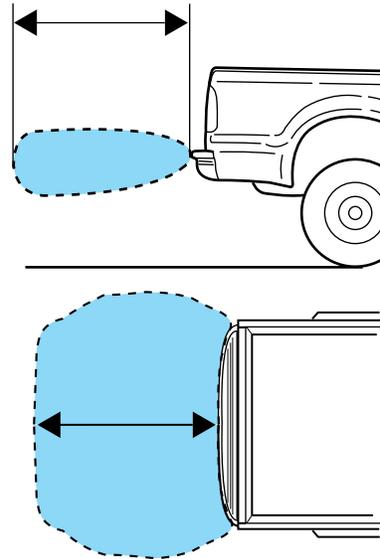
**WARNING:** This system is not designed to prevent contact with small or moving objects. The system is designed to provide a warning to assist the driver in detecting large stationary objects to avoid damaging the vehicle. The system may not detect smaller objects, particularly those close to the ground.



**WARNING:** Certain add-on devices such as large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks and any device that may block the normal detection zone of the RSS system may create false beeps.

## Driving

The RSS detects obstacles up to 6 feet (2 meters) from the rear bumper with a decreased coverage area at the outer corners of the bumper, (refer to the figures for approximate zone coverage areas). As you move closer to the obstacle, the rate of the tone increases. When the obstacle is less than 10 inches (25.0 cm) away, the tone will sound continuously. If the RSS detects a stationary or receding object further than 10 inches (25.0 cm) from the side of the vehicle, the tone will sound for only three seconds. Once the system detects an object approaching, the tone will sound again.



While receiving a warning the radio volume may be reduced to a predetermined level. After the warning goes away, the radio will return to the previous volume.

The RSS may have reduced performance or an increased chance of false detection if the tailgate is not locked and in the upright position. If the tailgate is down, the RSS tone may be heard intermittently or continuously. The tone may also be heard if items in the truck bed protrude rearward outside the bed.

The RSS automatically turns on when the gearshift lever is placed in R (Reverse) and the ignition is on. A control in the message center allows the driver to disable the system. Refer to *Message center* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for more information.

**Note:** If the system cannot be turned off, refer to *MyKey™ restricted features* in the *Locks and Security* chapter for more information.

**Note:** If your vehicle is equipped with a fully integrated electronic trailer brake controller (TBC) and a trailer with electric trailer brakes is connected to your vehicle, the RSS will be disabled. When the vehicle is shifted into reverse, the message center display will remain in the Rear Park Aid Off selection. For more information on the TBC, refer to the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter.

**Keep the RSS sensors (located on the rear bumper/fascia) free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt (do not clean the**

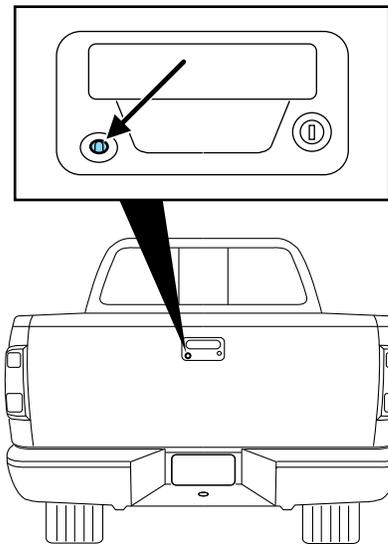
## Driving

sensors with sharp objects). If the sensors are covered, it will affect the accuracy of the RSS.

If your vehicle sustains damage to the rear bumper/fascia, leaving it misaligned or bent, the sensing zone may be altered causing inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alarms.

### REARVIEW CAMERA SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

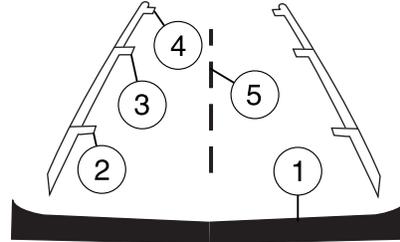
The rearview camera system, located on the tailgate, provides a video image, which appears in the rearview mirror or on the navigation screen (if equipped), of the area behind the vehicle. It adds assistance to the driver while reversing or reverse parking the vehicle.



To use the camera system, place the transmission in R (Reverse); an image will display on the left portion of the rearview mirror or on the navigation screen (if equipped). The area displayed on the screen may vary according to the vehicle orientation and/or road condition.

## Driving

- (1) Rear bumper
- (2) Red zone
- (3) Yellow zone
- (4) Green zone
- (5) Centerline of vehicle



Always use caution while backing.

Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are further away. Objects are getting closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones.

Use the side mirrors and rearview mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of the vehicle.

### **Image delay if displayed through the rearview mirror:**

When shifting out of R (Reverse) and into any other gear, the image in the rearview mirror will remain on for a few seconds before it shuts off to assist in parking or trailer hookup.

### **Image delay if displayed through the navigation screen:**

After shifting out of R (Reverse) and into any gear other than P (Park), the image in the navigation screen will remain until the vehicle speed reaches 5 mph (8 km/h), only if the rear camera delay feature is on, or until any navigation radio button is pressed.

**Note:** The default setting for the rear camera delay is off. Press the “Settings” button found on the navigation screen (if equipped) to set the rear camera delay feature to on or off.

When towing, the camera system will only see what is being towed behind the vehicle; this might not provide adequate coverage as it usually provides in normal operation and some objects might not be seen.

The camera lens for the camera is located on the tailgate. Keep the lens clean so the video image remains clear and undistorted. Clean the lens with a soft, lint-free cloth and non-abrasive cleaner.

**Note:** If the camera system image is not clear or seems distorted, it may be covered with water droplets, snow, mud or any other substance. If this occurs, clean the camera lens before using the camera system.

## Driving

 **WARNING:** The camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the rear view mirror and the side mirrors for maximum coverage.

 **WARNING:** Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.

 **WARNING:** Back up as slow as possible since higher speeds might limit your reaction time to stop the vehicle.

 **WARNING:** Do not use the camera system with the tailgate open.

If the back end of the vehicle is hit or damaged, then check with your authorized dealer to have your rearview camera system checked for proper coverage and operation.

### Night time and dark area use

At night time or in dark areas, the camera system relies on the reverse lamp lighting to produce an image. Therefore it is necessary that both reverse lamps are operating in order to get a clear image in the dark. If either of the lamps are not operating, stop using the camera system, at least in the dark, until the lamp(s) are replaced and functioning.

### Servicing

- If the image comes on while the vehicle is not in R (Reverse), have the system inspected by your authorized dealer.
- If the image is not clear, then check if there is anything covering the lens such as dirt, mud, ice, snow, etc. If the image is still not clear after cleaning, have your system inspected by your authorized dealer.

### FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE (4WD) OPERATION (IF EQUIPPED)

 **WARNING:** For important information regarding safe operation of this type of vehicle, see **Preparing to drive your vehicle** in this chapter.

When four-wheel drive (4WD) is engaged, power is supplied to all four wheels through a transfer case. 4WD can be selected when additional driving power is desired.

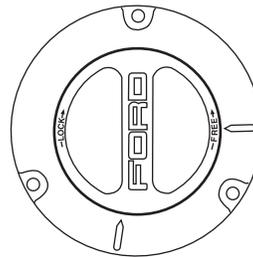
296

## Driving

4WD operation is not recommended on dry pavement. Doing so could result in difficult disengagement of the transfer case, increased tire wear and decreased fuel economy.

### Manual Shift On Stop (MSOS) 4x4 system (if equipped)

The 4WD system is engaged or disengaged by rotating the control for both front wheel hub locks from the FREE or LOCK position, then manually engaging or disengaging the transfer case with the floor-mounted shifter. For increased fuel economy in 2WD, rotate both hub locks to the FREE position.



- **For proper operation, make sure that each hub is fully engaged and that both hub locks are set to the same position (both set to LOCK or both set to FREE). To engage LOCK, turn the hub locks completely clockwise; to disengage the hubs (FREE), turn the hub locks completely counterclockwise.**
- **The vehicle should not be driven in 4X4 High or 4X4 Low modes with the hub locks set to FREE as this condition may damage driveline system components.**
- Some vehicles may be equipped with wheel ornaments that cover the 4x4 manual hub lock. These ornaments must be removed to access the manual hub locks.

### Electronic Shift On the Fly (ESOF) 4x4 system (if equipped)

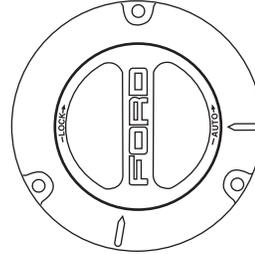
**If equipped with the electronic shift 4WD system, and 4X4 Low is selected while the vehicle is moving above 3 mph (5 km/h), the 4WD system will not perform a shift. This is normal and should be no reason for concern.** Refer to Shifting to/from 4L (4X4 Low) for proper system operation.

The ESOF 4WD system:

- provides 4x4 High engagement and disengagement while the vehicle is moving.
- is operated by a rotary control located on the instrument panel that allows you select 4x2, 4x4 High or 4x4 Low operation.
- uses auto-manual hub locks that can be engaged and disengaged automatically based on the 4x4 mode selected.

## Driving

- auto-manual hub locks can be manually overridden by rotating the hub lock control from AUTO to LOCK if desired.
- **automatic operation of the hub locks is recommended**, and will increase fuel economy
- **For proper operation, make sure that each hub is fully engaged and that both hub locks are set to the same position (both set to LOCK or both set to AUTO). To engage LOCK, turn the hub locks completely clockwise; to engage AUTO, turn the hub locks completely counterclockwise.**



### 4WD system indicator lights

The indicator lights illuminate in the message center in the reconfigurable telltale (RTT) under the following conditions. Refer to *Warning lights and chimes* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter.

- **4X2** - Momentarily illuminates when 2H is selected on electronic shift 4WD systems only. **4x2**
- **4X4 HIGH** - Illuminates when 4H (4x4 High) is engaged. **4x4 HIGH**
- **4X4 LOW** - Illuminates when 4L (4x4 Low) is engaged. **4x4 LOW**
- **CHECK 4X4** - Displays when a 4x4 system fault is present

### Using a Manual Shift On Stop (MSOS) 4x4 system (if equipped)

**Note:** High shift efforts may be encountered when attempting to shift into and out of 4x4 modes. It is recommended to allow the vehicle to roll at a speed below 3 mph (5 km/h) when shifting between modes.

**Note:** Some noise may be heard as the 4x4 system shifts or engages. This is normal. In order to reduce engagement noise, it is recommended that all shifts be performed at speeds below 3 mph (5 km/h).

298

## Driving

**2H (2WD)** – For general on-road driving. Sends power to the rear wheels only should be used for street and highway driving. Provides optimal smoothness and fuel economy at high speeds.

**4H (4x4 High)** – Used for extra traction such as in snow or icy roads or in off road situations. **This mode is not intended for use on dry pavement.**

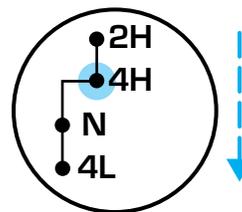
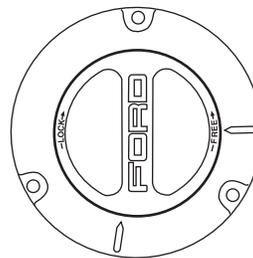
**N (Neutral)** – Only used when towing the vehicle. No power to front or rear wheels.

**4L (4x4 Low)** – Uses extra gearing to provide maximum power to all four wheels at reduced speeds. Intended only for off road applications such as deep sand, steep grades or pulling heavy objects.

### Shifting from 2H (2WD) to 4H (4x4 High)

Engage the locking hubs by rotating the hub lock control from FREE to LOCK, then move the transfer case lever from 2H (2WD) to 4H (4x4 High) at a stop or a vehicle speed below 3 mph (5 km/h).

- **For proper operation, make sure that both indicator arrows on the hub are aligned, and that both hubs are set to LOCK.**
- **Do not shift into 4H (4x4 High) with the rear wheels slipping.**
- **The vehicle should not be driven in 4X4 High with the hub locks disengaged as this condition may damage driveline system components.**

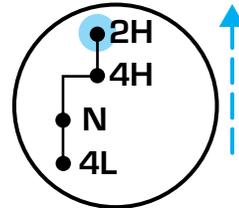


## Driving

### **Shifting from 4H (4x4 High) to 2H (2WD)**

Move the transfer case lever to 2H (2WD) at a stop or a vehicle speed below 3 mph (5 km/h).

With the vehicle at complete stop, disengage the locking hubs (optional) by rotating the hub lock control from LOCK to FREE.

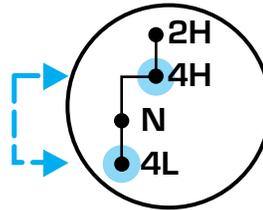


- **For proper operation, make sure that both indicator arrows on the hub are aligned, and that both hubs are set to FREE.**

### **Shifting from 2H (2WD) or 4H (4x4 High) to 4L (4x4 Low)**

1. Bring the vehicle to a stop or a speed below 3 mph (5 km/h).
2. Place the transmission in N (Neutral).
3. Move the transfer case shift lever through N (Neutral) directly to 4L (4x4 Low).

4. If the shift lever does not, or only partially moves to the 4L (4x4 Low) position, perform a shift with the transmission in N (Neutral) and the vehicle rolling at a speed below 3 mph (5 km/h). This will ensure the transfer case is fully engaged into 4L (4x4 Low).



**Note:** The vehicle should not be driven in 4X4 High with the hub locks disengaged as this condition may damage driveline system components.

### **Shifting from 4L (4x4 Low) to 4H (4x4 High) or 2H (2WD)**

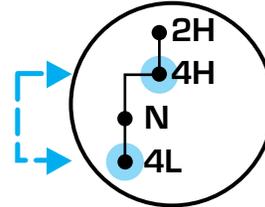
1. Bring the vehicle to a stop or a speed below 3 mph (5 km/h).
2. Place the gearshift lever in N (Neutral).

## Driving

3. Move the transfer case shift lever through N (Neutral) directly to 4H (4x4 High) or 2H (2WD).

4. If the transfer case **will not** engage into 4H (4x4 High) or 2H (2WD), perform a shift with the transmission in N (Neutral) and the vehicle rolling at a speed below 3 mph (5 km/h).

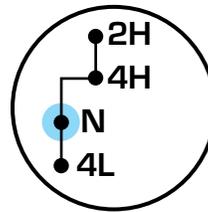
5. If shifting to 2H (2WD) with the vehicle at a complete stop, disengage the locking hubs (optional) by rotating the hub lock control from LOCK to FREE.



### Using the N (Neutral) position

**The transfer case neutral position overrides the transmission and puts the vehicle in neutral regardless of transmission gearshift lever position. The vehicle can move forward or backwards.**

This position should only be used when towing the vehicle.

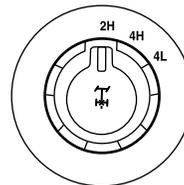


**WARNING:** Do not leave the vehicle unattended with the transfer case in the N (Neutral) position. Always set the parking brake fully and turn off the ignition when leaving the vehicle.

### Using the electronic shift 4WD system (if equipped)

**2H (2WD)** - For general on-road driving. Sends power to the rear wheels only and should be used for street and highway driving. Provides optimal smoothness and fuel economy at high speeds.

**4H (4X4 High)** - Used for extra traction such as in snow or icy roads or in off road situations. **This mode is not intended for use on dry pavement.**



## Driving

**4L (4X4 Low)** - Uses extra gearing to provide maximum power to all four wheels at reduced speeds. Intended only for off-road applications such as deep sand, steep grades or pulling heavy objects. 4L (4X4 low) will not engage while the vehicle is moving above 3 mph (5 km/h); this is normal and should be no reason for concern. Refer to *Shifting to/from 4L (4X4 low)* for proper operation.

### **Shifting between 2H (4X2) and 4H (4X4 high)**

Move the 4WD control between 2H (4X2) and 4H (4X4 high) at any forward speed. The message center will display **4X4 SHIFT IN PROGRESS** during the system shift. “4X4 HIGH” will display in the message center if 4H is selected and “4X2” will momentarily display in the message center if 2H is selected.

If **SHIFT DELAYED PULL FORWARD** is displayed in the message center during the mode shift, transfer case gear tooth blockage is present. To alleviate this condition, place the transmission in a forward gear and move the vehicle forward approximately 5 feet (2 meters) to allow the transfer case to complete the mode shift.

**Note:** Momentarily releasing the accelerator pedal while performing a shift will improve engagement/disengagement times.

**Note:** Do not perform this operation if the rear wheels are slipping.

**Note:** Some noise may be heard as the system shifts or engages; this is normal.

**Note:** 4X4 high mode is not intended for use on dry pavement.

### **Shifting to/from 4L (4X4 low)**

1. Bring the vehicle to a speed of 3 mph (5 km/h) or less.
2. Place the transmission in N (Neutral).
3. Move the 4WD control to the desired position.

The message center will display **4X4 SHIFT IN PROGRESS** during the shift. The message center will then display the system mode selected. If any of the above shift conditions are not met, the shift will not occur and the message center will display information guiding the driver through the proper shifting procedures.

If **SHIFT DELAYED PULL FORWARD** is displayed in the message center, transfer case gear tooth blockage is present. To alleviate this condition, place the transmission in a forward gear, move the vehicle forward approximately 5 feet (1.5 m), and shift the transmission back to neutral to allow the transfer case to complete the range shift.

302

## Driving

**Note:** Some noise may be heard as the system shifts or engages; this is normal.

**Note:** 4x4 low mode is not intended for use on dry pavement.

### **Driving off-road with truck and utility vehicles**

4WD vehicles are specially equipped for driving on sand, snow, mud and rough terrain and have operating characteristics that are somewhat different from conventional vehicles, both on and off the road.

Your vehicle may be equipped with a long front air dam that may become damaged (due to reduced ground clearance) when taking your vehicle off-road. This air dam can either be removed or a shorter air dam can be purchased from your authorized dealer. In either case, if the air dam is to be removed (or replaced) before going off-road, refer to the *Workshop Manual* for the procedure or have your authorized dealer perform the work for you.

### **How your vehicle differs from other vehicles**

Truck and utility vehicles can differ from some other vehicles. Your vehicle may be higher to allow it to travel over rough terrain without getting hung up or damaging underbody components.

The differences that make your vehicle so versatile also make it handle differently than an ordinary passenger car.

Maintain steering wheel control at all times, especially in rough terrain. Since sudden changes in terrain can result in abrupt steering wheel motion, make sure you grip the steering wheel from the outside. Do not grip the spokes.

Drive cautiously to avoid vehicle damage from concealed objects such as rocks and stumps.

You should either know the terrain or examine maps of the area before driving. Map out your route before driving in the area. To maintain steering and braking control of your vehicle, you must have all four wheels on the ground and they must be rolling, not sliding or spinning.

### **Basic operating principles**

- Do not use 4WD on dry, hard surfaced roads. Doing so will produce excessive noise, increase tire wear and may damage drive components. 4WD modes are only intended for consistently slippery or loose surfaces.
- Drive slower in strong crosswinds which can affect the normal steering characteristics of your vehicle.

## Driving

- Be extremely careful when driving on pavement made slippery by loose sand, water, gravel, snow or ice.

### ***If your vehicle goes off the edge of the pavement***

- If your vehicle goes off the edge of the pavement, slow down, but avoid severe brake application, ease the vehicle back onto the pavement only after reducing your speed. Do not turn the steering wheel too sharply while returning to the road surface.
- It may be safer to stay on the apron or shoulder of the road and slow down gradually before returning to the pavement. You may lose control if you do not slow down or if you turn the steering wheel too sharply or abruptly.
- It often may be less risky to strike small objects, such as highway reflectors, with minor damage to your vehicle rather than attempt a sudden return to the pavement which could cause the vehicle to slide sideways out of control or roll over. Remember, your safety and the safety of others should be your primary concern.



**WARNING:** Vehicles with a higher center of gravity such as utility and four-wheel drive vehicles handle differently than vehicles with a lower center of gravity. Utility and four-wheel drive vehicles are **not** designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions. Avoid sharp turns, excessive speed and abrupt maneuvers in these vehicles. Failure to drive cautiously could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

### ***If your vehicle gets stuck***

If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow it may be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts, in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

**Do not rock the vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature or damage to the transmission may occur.**

**Do not rock the vehicle for more than a few minutes or damage to the transmission and tires may occur or the engine may overheat.**



**WARNING:** Do not spin the wheels at over 35 mph (56 km/h). The tires may fail and injure a passenger or bystander.

## Driving

Refer to *Gauges* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for transmission fluid temperature information.

### **Emergency maneuvers**

- In an unavoidable emergency situation where a sudden sharp turn must be made, remember to avoid “over-driving” your vehicle, i.e., turn the steering wheel only as rapidly and as far as required to avoid the emergency. Excessive steering will result in less vehicle control, not more. Additionally, smooth variations of the accelerator and/or brake pedal pressure should be utilized if changes in vehicle speed are called for. Avoid abrupt steering, acceleration or braking which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover and/or personal injury. Use all available road surface to return the vehicle to a safe direction of travel.
- In the event of an emergency stop, avoid skidding the tires and do not attempt any sharp steering wheel movements.



**WARNING:** Vehicles with a higher center of gravity such as utility and four-wheel drive vehicles handle differently than vehicles with a lower center of gravity. Utility and four-wheel drive vehicles are **not** designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions. Avoid sharp turns, excessive speed and abrupt maneuvers in these vehicles. Failure to drive cautiously could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

- If the vehicle goes from one type of surface to another (i.e., from concrete to gravel) there will be a change in the way the vehicle responds to a maneuver (steering, acceleration or braking). Again, avoid these abrupt inputs.

### **Parking**

On some 4WD vehicles, when the transfer case is in the N (Neutral) position, the engine and transmission are disconnected from the rest of the driveline. Therefore, the vehicle is free to roll even if the automatic transmission is in P (Park). Do not leave the vehicle unattended with the transfer case in the N (Neutral) position. Always set the parking brake fully and turn off the ignition when leaving the vehicle.

## Driving

 **WARNING:** Always set the parking brake fully and make sure the gearshift is latched in P (Park). Turn the ignition to the off position and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

 **WARNING:** If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. See your authorized dealer.

### **4WD systems**

4WD (when you select a 4WD mode), uses all four wheels to power the vehicle. This increases traction, enabling you to drive over terrain and road conditions that a conventional two-wheel drive vehicle cannot.

Power is supplied to all four wheels through a transfer case. On 4WD vehicles, the transfer case allows you to select 4WD when necessary. Information on transfer case operation and shifting procedures can be found in the *Driving* chapter. Information on transfer case maintenance can be found in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter. You should become thoroughly familiar with this information before you operate your vehicle.

### **Normal characteristics**

On some 4WD models, the initial shift from two-wheel drive to 4x4 while the vehicle is moving can cause some momentary clunk and ratcheting sounds. This is the front drivetrain coming up to speed and the automatic locking hubs engaging and is not cause for concern.

### **Sand**

When driving over sand, try to keep all four wheels on the most solid area of the trail. Avoid reducing the tire pressures but shift to a lower gear and drive steadily through the terrain. Apply the accelerator slowly and avoid spinning the wheels.

Avoid excessive speed because vehicle momentum can work against you and cause the vehicle to become stuck to the point that assistance may be required from another vehicle. Remember, you may be able to back out the way you came if you proceed with caution.

**Note:** If air is released from your tires, the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) indicator light may illuminate (if equipped).

306

## Driving

### **Mud and water**

If you must drive through high water, drive slowly. Traction or brake capability may be limited.

When driving through water, determine the depth; avoid water higher than the bottom of the hubs (if possible) and proceed slowly. If the ignition system gets wet, the vehicle may stall.



Once through water, always try the brakes. Wet brakes do not stop the vehicle as effectively as dry brakes. Drying can be improved by moving your vehicle slowly while applying light pressure on the brake pedal.

Be cautious of sudden changes in vehicle speed or direction when you are driving in mud. Even 4WD vehicles can lose traction in slick mud. As when you are driving over sand, apply the accelerator slowly and avoid spinning your wheels. If the vehicle does slide, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of the vehicle.

If the transmission, transfer case or front axle are submerged in water, their fluids should be checked and changed, if necessary.

### **Driving through deep water may damage the transmission.**

Refer to *Transmission temperature gauge* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for transmission fluid temperature information.

If the front or rear axle is submerged in water, the axle lubricant should be replaced.

After driving through mud, clean off residue stuck to rotating driveshafts and tires. Excess mud stuck on tires and rotating driveshafts causes an imbalance that could damage drive components.

“Tread Lightly” is an educational program designed to increase public awareness of land-use regulations and responsibilities in our nations wilderness areas. Ford Motor

Company joins the U.S. Forest Service and the Bureau of Land Management in encouraging you to help preserve our national forest and other public and private lands by “treading lightly.”



## Driving

### ***Driving on hilly or sloping terrain***

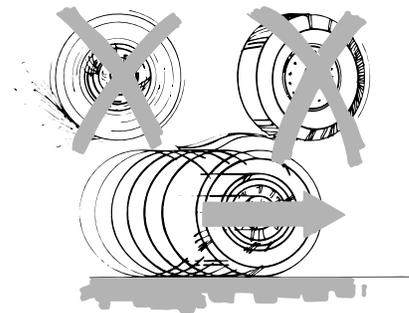
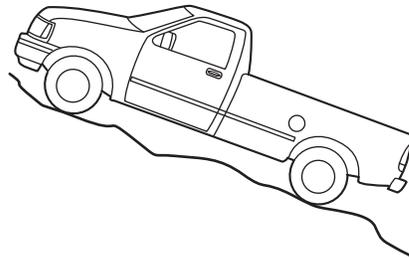
Although natural obstacles may make it necessary to travel diagonally up or down a hill or steep incline, you should always try to drive straight up or straight down. **Avoid driving crosswise or turning on steep slopes or hills.** A danger lies in losing traction, slipping sideways and possibly rolling over. Whenever driving on a hill, determine beforehand the route you will use. Do not drive over the crest of a hill without seeing what conditions are on the other side. Do not drive in reverse over a hill without the aid of an observer.

When climbing a steep slope or hill, start in a lower gear rather than downshifting to a lower gear from a higher gear once the ascent has started. This reduces strain on the engine and the possibility of stalling.

If you do stall out, do not try to turn around because you might roll over. It is better to back down to a safe location.

Apply just enough power to the wheels to climb the hill. Too much power will cause the tires to slip, spin or lose traction, resulting in loss of vehicle control.

Descend a hill in the same gear you would use to climb up the hill to avoid excessive brake application and brake overheating. Do not descend in neutral; instead, manually shift to a lower gear. Your vehicle has anti-lock brakes, apply the brakes steadily. Do not “pump” the brakes.



### ***Driving on snow and ice***

4WD vehicles have advantages over 2WD vehicles in snow and ice but can skid like any other vehicle.

308

## Driving

Should you start to slide while driving on snowy or icy roads, turn the steering wheel in the direction of the slide until you regain control.

Avoid sudden applications of power and quick changes of direction on snow and ice. Apply the accelerator slowly and steadily when starting from a full stop.

Avoid sudden braking as well. Although a 4WD vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in snow and ice, it won't stop any faster, because as in other vehicles, braking occurs at all four wheels. Do not become overconfident as to road conditions.

Make sure you allow sufficient distance between you and other vehicles for stopping. Drive slower than usual and consider using one of the lower gears. In emergency stopping situations, avoid locking of the wheels. Use a "squeeze" technique, push on the brake pedal with a steadily increasing force which allows the wheels to brake yet continue to roll so that you may steer in the direction you want to travel. If you lock the wheels, release the brake pedal and repeat the squeeze technique. If your vehicle is equipped with a Four Wheel Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS), apply the brake steadily. Do not "pump" the brakes. Refer to the *Brakes* section of this chapter for additional information on the operation of the anti-lock brake system.



**WARNING:** If you are driving in slippery conditions that require tire cables, then it is critical that you drive cautiously. Keep speeds down, allow for longer stopping distances and avoid aggressive steering to reduce the chances of a loss of vehicle control which can lead to serious injury or death. If the rear end of the vehicle slides while cornering, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of the vehicle.

### **Maintenance and modifications**

The suspension and steering systems on your vehicle have been designed and tested to provide predictable performance whether loaded or empty and durable load carrying capability. For this reason, Ford Motor Company strongly recommends that you do not make modifications such as adding or removing parts (such as lift kits or stabilizer bars) or by using replacement parts not equivalent to the original factory equipment.

Any modifications to a vehicle that raise the center of gravity can make it more likely the vehicle will roll over as a result of a loss of control. Ford Motor Company recommends that caution be used with any vehicle equipped with a high load or device (such as ladder racks or pickup box cover).

## Driving

Failure to maintain your vehicle properly may void the warranty, increase your repair cost, reduce vehicle performance and operational capabilities and adversely affect driver and passenger safety. Frequent inspection of vehicle chassis components is recommended if the vehicle is subjected to heavy off-road usage.

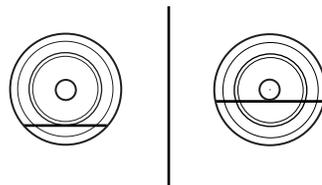
### VEHICLE USED AS A STATIONARY POWER SOURCE

Auxiliary equipment called power take-off, or PTO, is often added to the engine or transmission to operate utility equipment. Examples include a wheel-lift for tow trucks, cranes, tools for construction or tire service, and pumping fluids. PTO applications draw auxiliary horsepower from the powertrain, often while the vehicle is stationary. In this condition, there is limited cooling air flow through the radiator and around the vehicle that normally occurs when a vehicle is moving. The aftermarket PTO system installer, having the most knowledge of the final application, is responsible for determining whether additional chassis heat protection or powertrain cooling is required, and alerting the user to the safe and proper operation.

Ford Super Duty Vehicles are qualified for use as a stationary or mobile power source, within limits detailed in the *Ford Truck Body Builders Layout Book*, found at [www.fleet.ford.com/truckbbas](http://www.fleet.ford.com/truckbbas), and through the Ford Truck Body Builders Advisory Service.

### DRIVING THROUGH WATER

If driving through deep or standing water is unavoidable, proceed very slowly especially when the depth is not known. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the wheel rims (for cars) or the bottom of the hubs (for trucks).



When driving through water, traction or brake capability may be limited. Also, water may enter your engine's air intake and severely damage your engine or your vehicle may stall. **Driving through deep water where the transmission vent tube is submerged may allow water into the transmission and cause internal transmission damage.**

**Once through the water, always dry the brakes by moving your vehicle slowly while applying light pressure on the brake pedal.**

Wet brakes do not stop the vehicle as quickly as dry brakes.

310

## Driving

### SNOWPLOWING

Ford recommends that the Super Duty F-Series used for snow removal include the Snow Plow Package Option.

#### Installing the snowplow

Weight limits and guidelines for selecting and installing the snowplow can be found in the *Ford Truck Body Builders Layout Book*, Snowplow section, found at [www.fleet.ford.com/truckbbas](http://www.fleet.ford.com/truckbbas). A typical installation affects the following:

- Certification to government safety laws such as occupant protection and airbag deployment, braking, and lighting. Look for an “Alterer’s Label” on the vehicle from the snowplow installer certifying that the installation meets all applicable Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards (FMVSS).
- The Total Accessory Reserve Capacity (TARC) is shown on the lower right side of the vehicle’s Safety Compliance Certification Label. This applies to Ford-completed vehicles of 10,000 lb. (4,536 kg) GVWR or less. This is the weight of permanently-attached auxiliary equipment, such as snowplow frame-mounting hardware, that can be added to the vehicle and satisfy Ford compliance certification to FMVSS. Exceeding this weight may require the auxiliary equipment installer additional safety certification responsibility. The Front Accessory Reserve Capacity (FARC) is added for customer convenience.
- Rear ballast weight behind the rear axle may be required to prevent exceeding the FGAWR, and provide front-to-rear weight balance for proper braking and steering.
- Front wheel toe may require re-adjustment to prevent premature uneven tire wear. Specifications are found in the *Ford Workshop Manual*.
- Headlight aim may require re-adjustment.
- The tire air pressures recommended for general driving are found on the vehicle’s Safety Certification Label. The maximum cold inflation pressure for the tire and associated load rating is imprinted on the tire sidewall. Tire air pressure may require re-adjustment within these pressure limits to accommodate the additional weight of the snowplow installation.
- Federal and some local regulations require additional exterior lamps for snowplow-equipped vehicles. Consult your authorized dealer for additional information.

## Driving

### Operating the vehicle with the snowplow attached

Do not use your vehicle for snow removal until it has been driven at least 500 miles (800 km).

The attached snowplow blade restricts airflow to the radiator, and may cause the engine to run at a higher temperature: Attention to engine temperature is especially important when outside temperatures are above freezing. Angle the blade to maximize airflow to the radiator and monitor engine temperature to determine whether a left or right angle provides the best performance.

Follow the severe duty schedule in your *scheduled maintenance information* for engine oil and transmission fluid change intervals.

### Snowplowing with your airbag-equipped vehicle

Your vehicle is equipped with a driver and passenger airbag Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) The SRS is designed to activate in certain frontal and offset frontal collisions when the vehicle sustains sufficient longitudinal deceleration.

Careless or high speed driving while plowing snow which results in sufficient vehicle decelerations can deploy the airbag. Such driving also increases the risk of accidents.



**WARNING:** All occupants of the vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their safety belts, even when an air bag supplemental restraint system (SRS) is provided.

Never remove or defeat the “tripping mechanisms” designed into the snow removal equipment by its manufacturer. Doing so may cause damage to the vehicle and the snow removal equipment as well as possible airbag deployment.



**WARNING:** Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the air bag supplemental restraint system (SRS) or its fuses. See your Ford or Lincoln Mercury dealer.



**WARNING:** Additional equipment such as snowplow equipment may effect the performance of the airbag sensors increasing the risk of injury. Please refer to the *Body Builders Layout Book* for instructions about the appropriate installation of additional equipment.

## Driving

### **Transmission operation while plowing**

Operate the vehicle with the automatic transmission gearshift lever in the D (Overdrive) position and tow/haul off.

- Shift transfer case to 4L (4x4 Low) when plowing in small areas at speeds below 5 mph (8 km/h).
- Shift transfer case to 4H (4x4 High) when plowing larger areas or light snow at higher speeds. Do not exceed 15 mph (24 km/h).
- Do not shift the transmission from a forward gear to R (Reverse) until the engine is at idle and the wheels are stopped.
- If the vehicle is stuck, shift the transmission in a steady motion between forward and reverse gears. Do not rock the vehicle for more than a few minutes. The transmission and tires may be damaged or the engine can overheat.

**Do not rock the vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature. Do not rock the vehicle for more than a minute. The transmission and tires may be damaged or the engine may overheat.**

Refer to *Gauges* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for transmission fluid temperature information.



**WARNING:** Do not spin the wheels at over 35 mph (55 km/h). The tires may fail and injure a passenger or bystander.

## Roadside Emergencies

### ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE

#### Vehicles sold in the U.S. : Getting roadside assistance

To fully assist you should you have a vehicle concern, Ford Motor Company offers a complimentary roadside assistance program. This program is separate from the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. The service is available:

- 24-hours, seven days a week
- for the coverage period listed on the Roadside Assistance Card included in your Owner Guide portfolio.

Roadside assistance will cover:

- a flat tire change with a good spare (except vehicles that have been supplied with a tire inflation kit)
- battery jump start
- lock-out assistance (key replacement cost is the customer's responsibility)
- fuel delivery – Independent Service Contractors, if not prohibited by state, local or municipal law shall deliver up to 2.0 gallons (7.5L) of gasoline or 5.0 gallons (18.9L) of diesel fuel to a disabled vehicle. Fuel delivery service is limited to two no-charge occurrences within a 12-month period.
- winch out – available within 100 feet (30.5 meters) of a paved or county maintained road, no recoveries.
- towing – Ford and Lincoln eligible vehicles towed to an authorized dealer within 35 miles (56 km) of the disablement location or to the nearest authorized dealer. If a member requests to be towed to an authorized dealer more than 35 miles (56 km) from the disablement location, the member shall be responsible for any mileage costs in excess of 35 miles (56 km).

Trailers shall be covered up to \$200 if the disabled eligible vehicle requires service at the nearest authorized dealer. If the trailer is disabled, but the towing vehicle is operational, the trailer does not qualify for any roadside services.

#### Vehicles sold in the U.S. : Using roadside assistance

Complete the roadside assistance identification card and place it in your wallet for quick reference. In the United States, this card is found in the Owner Guide portfolio in the glove compartment. In Canada, the card is found in the *Warranty Guide* in the glove compartment.

314

## Roadside Emergencies

U.S. Ford vehicle customers who require Roadside Assistance, call 1-800-241-3673.

If you need to arrange roadside assistance for yourself, Ford Motor Company will reimburse a reasonable amount for towing to the nearest dealership within 35 miles (56 km). To obtain reimbursement information, U.S. Ford vehicle customers call 1-800-241-3673. Customers will be asked to submit their original receipts.

### Vehicles sold in Canada : Getting roadside assistance

Canadian customers who require roadside assistance, call 1-800-665-2006.

### Vehicles sold in Canada : Using roadside assistance

Complete the roadside assistance identification card and place it in your wallet for quick reference. In Canada, the card is found in the Warranty Guide in the glove box.

Canadian Roadside coverage and benefits may differ from the U.S. coverage. Please refer to your Warranty Guide or visit our website at [www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca) for information on Canadian services and benefits.

Canadian customers who need to obtain roadside information, call 1-800-665-2006 or visit our website at [www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca).

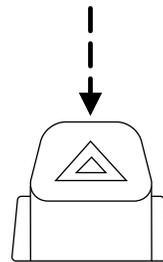
### HAZARD FLASHER CONTROL

The hazard flasher is located on the steering column, just behind the steering wheel. The hazard flashers will operate when the ignition is in any position or if the key is not in the ignition.

- Press the flasher control and all front and rear direction signals will flash.
- Press the flasher control again to turn them off.

Use it when your vehicle is disabled and is creating a safety hazard for other motorists.

**Note:** With extended use, the flasher may run down your battery.



## Roadside Emergencies

### FUEL PUMP SHUT-OFF

In the event of a moderate to severe collision, this vehicle is equipped with a fuel pump shut-off feature that stops the flow of fuel to the engine. Not every impact will cause a shut-off.

Should your vehicle shut off after a collision due to this feature, you may restart your vehicle by doing the following:

1. Turn the ignition switch to the off position.
2. Turn the ignition switch to the on position.

In some instances the vehicle may not restart the first time you try to restart and may take one additional attempt.

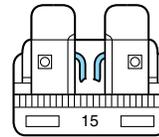


**WARNING:** Failure to inspect and if necessary repair fuel leaks after a collision may increase the risk of fire and serious injury. Ford Motor Company recommends that the fuel system be inspected by an authorized dealer after any collision.

### FUSES AND RELAYS

#### Fuses

If electrical components in the vehicle are not working, a fuse may have blown. Blown fuses are identified by a broken wire within the fuse. Check the appropriate fuses before replacing any electrical components.



**Note:** Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.

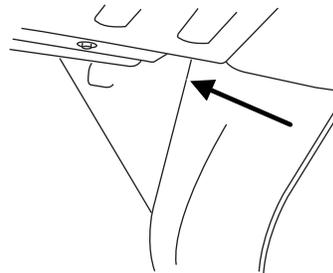
## Roadside Emergencies

### Standard fuse amperage rating and color

COLOR					
Fuse rating	Mini fuses	Standard fuses	Maxi fuses	Cartridge maxi fuses	Fuse link cartridge
2A	Grey	Grey	—	—	—
3A	Violet	Violet	—	—	—
4A	Pink	Pink	—	—	—
5A	Tan	Tan	—	—	—
7.5A	Brown	Brown	—	—	—
10A	Red	Red	—	—	—
15A	Blue	Blue	—	—	—
20A	Yellow	Yellow	Yellow	Blue	Blue
25A	Natural	Natural	—	Natural	Natural
30A	Green	Green	Green	Pink	Pink
40A	—	—	Orange	Green	Green
50A	—	—	Red	Red	Red
60A	—	—	Blue	Yellow	Yellow
70A	—	—	Tan	—	Brown
80A	—	—	Natural	Black	Black

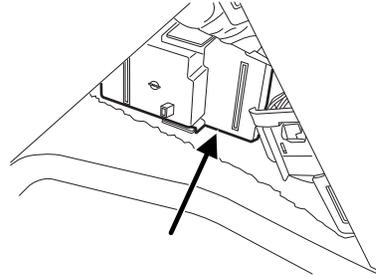
### Passenger compartment fuse panel

The fuse panel is located in the passenger's footwell. Remove the panel cover to access the fuses.

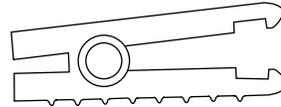


## Roadside Emergencies

To remove the fuse panel cover, pull the panel toward you. When the clips of the panel disengage, let the panel fall easily.



To remove a fuse use the fuse puller tool provided on the fuse panel cover.

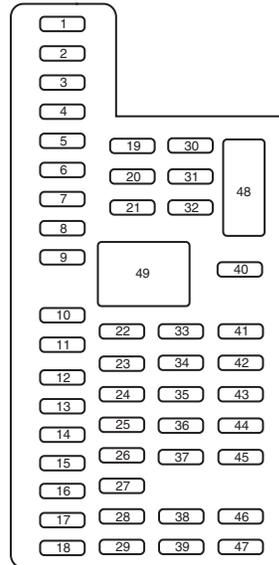


**WARNING:** Always disconnect the battery before servicing high current fuses.

**Always replace the cover to the passenger compartment fuse panel before reconnecting the battery.**

If the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, refer to the *Battery* section of the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

## Roadside Emergencies



The fuses are coded as follows.

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Circuits
1	30A	Not used (spare)
2	15A	Upfitter relay #4
3	30A	Not used (spare)
4	10A	Telescoping mirror switch, Interior lights, Hood lamp
5	20A	Moon roof
6	5A	Driver seat module
7	7.5A	Driver seat switch, Driver lumbar motor
8	10A	Power mirror switch
9	10A	Upfitter relay #3
10	10A	Run/accessory relay, Customer access feed

## Roadside Emergencies

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Circuits
11	10A	Instrument cluster
12	15A	Interior lighting, Lighted running board lamps
13	15A	Right turn signals and brake lamps, Right trailer tow (TT) stop turn relay
14	15A	Left turn signals and brake lamps, Left TT stop turn relay
15	15A	High-mounted stop lamps, Backup lamps, TT backup relay
16	10A	Right low beam headlamp
17	10A	Left low beam headlamp
18	10A	Keypad illumination, Passive anti-theft indicator (PATS), Powertrain control module (PCM), Brake shift interlock
19	20A	Subwoofer
20	20A	Power door locks
21	10A	Brake on/off switch
22	20A	Horn
23	15A	Not used (spare)
24	15A	Steering wheel control module, Diagnostic connector, Satellite radio module, Power fold mirror relay, Remote keyless entry
25	15A	Not used (spare)
26	5A	Steering wheel control module
27	20A	Amplifier
28	15A	Ignition switch
29	20A	SYNC®, GPS module, Radio faceplate

## Roadside Emergencies

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Circuits
30	15A	Parking lamp relay, TT parking lamp relay
31	5A	Trailer brake controller (brake signal), Customer access
32	15A	Moon roof, Auto dimming mirrors, Power inverter, Driver and passenger door lock switch illumination
33	10A	Restraint control module
34	10A	Not used (spare)
35	5A	Select shift switch, Reverse park aid module, Trailer brake control module
36	10A	Fuel tank select switch
37	10A	PTC heater
38	10A	Radio faceplate
39	15A	High beam headlamps
40	10A	Parking lamps (in mirrors), Roof marker lamps
41	7.5A	Passenger airbag deactivation indicator
42	5A	Not used (spare)
43	10A	Wiper relay
44	10A	Upfitter switches
45	5A	Not used (spare)
46	10A	Climate control
47	15A	Fog lamps, Fog lamp indicator (in switch)
48	30A Circuit Breaker	Power windows switch, Power rear sliding window switch
49	Relay	Delayed accessory

## Roadside Emergencies

### Power distribution box

The power distribution box is located in the engine compartment. The power distribution box contains high-current fuses that protect your vehicle's main electrical systems from overloads.

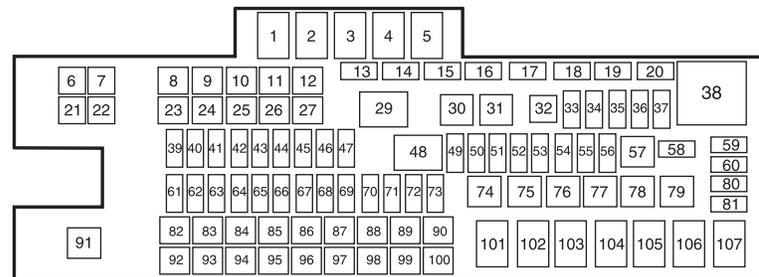


**WARNING:** Always disconnect the battery before servicing high current fuses.



**WARNING:** To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the power distribution box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.

If the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, refer to the *Battery* section of the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.



The high-current fuses are coded as follows:

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Circuits
1	Relay	Blower motor
2	—	Not used
3	Relay	Urea heaters (diesel engine)
4	—	Not used
5	Relay	Rear window defroster
6	—	Not used
7	50A*	Rear window defroster
8	30A*	Passenger seat
9	30A*	Driver seat

## Roadside Emergencies

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Circuits
10	—	Not used
11	—	Not used
12	—	Not used
13	—	Not used
14	—	Not used
15	Diode	Fuel pump (diesel engine)
16	—	Not used
17	15A**	Heated mirror
18	—	Not used
19	—	Not used
20	—	Not used
21	—	Not used
22	30A*	Trailer tow electric brake
23	40A*	Blower motor
24	—	Not used
25	30A*	Wipers
26	30A*	Trailer tow park lamps
27	25A*	Urea heaters (diesel engine)
28	—	Buss bar
29	Relay	Trailer tow park lamps
30	Relay	A/C clutch
31	Relay	Wipers
32	—	Not used
33	15A**	Vehicle power (VPWR) 1
34	15A**	VPWR 2 (diesel engine)
	20A**	VPWR 2 (gas engine)
35	10A**	VPWR 3
36	15A**	VPWR 4 (diesel engine)
	20A**	VPWR 4 (gas engine)
37	10A**	VPWR 5 (diesel engine)

## Roadside Emergencies

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Circuits
38	Relay	Powertrain control module (PCM) (diesel engine), Electronic control module (ECM) (gas engine)
39	10A**	4x4 hub lock
40	15A**	4x4 electronic lock
41	—	Not used
42	—	Not used
43	—	Not used
44	—	Not used
45	10A**	Run/start relay coil
46	10A**	Transmission control module (TCM) keep-alive power (diesel engine)
47	10A**	A/C clutch feed
48	Relay	Run/start
49	10A**	Rearview camera system
50	10A**	Blower motor relay coil
51	—	Not used
52	10A**	PCM/ECM/TCM run/start
53	10A**	4x4 module
54	10A**	Anti-lock brake system (ABS) run/start
55	10A**	Rear window defroster coil, Battery charge coil
56	20A**	Passenger compartment fuse panel run/start feed
57	Relay	Fuel pump
58	—	Not used
59	—	Not used
60	—	Not used
61	—	Not used

## Roadside Emergencies

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Circuits
62	—	Not used
63	—	Not used
64	—	Not used
65	—	Not used
66	20A**	Fuel pump
67	—	Not used
68	10A**	Fuel pump relay coil
69	—	Not used
70	10A**	Trailer tow backup lamp
71	10A**	Cannister vent (gas engine)
72	10A**	PCM/ECM relay coil feed keep-alive power
73	—	Not used
74	Relay	Trailer tow left-hand stop/turn
75	Relay	Trailer tow right-hand stop/turn
76	Relay	Backup lamp
77	—	Not used
78	—	Not used
79	—	Not used
80	—	Not used
81	—	Not used
82	20A*	Auxiliary power point #2
83	20A*	Auxiliary power point #1
84	30A*	4x4 shift motor
85	30A*	Heated/cooled seats
86	25A*	ABS coil feed
87	20A*	Auxiliary power point #5
88	—	Not used
89	40A*	Starter motor
90	25A*	Trailer tow battery charge
91	—	Not used

## Roadside Emergencies

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Circuits
92	20A*	Auxiliary power point #4
93	20A*	Auxiliary power point #3
94	25A*	Upfitter #1
95	25A*	Upfitter #2
96	50A*	ABS pump
97	40A*	Invertor
98	—	Not used
99	—	Not used
100	25A*	Trailer tow turn signals
101	Relay	Starter
102	Relay	Trailer tow battery charge
103	—	Not used
104	—	Not used
105	—	Not used
106	—	Not used
107	—	Not used

\* Cartridge fuses \*\* Mini fuses

### CHANGING THE TIRES

If you get a flat tire while driving, do not apply the brake heavily. Instead, gradually decrease your speed. Hold the steering wheel firmly and slowly move to a safe place on the side of the road.

**Note:** If your vehicle is equipped with the tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS), the indicator light will illuminate when the spare tire is in use. To restore the full functionality of the monitoring system, all road wheels equipped with tire pressure monitoring sensors must be mounted on the vehicle.

If your vehicle is equipped with TPMS, have a flat serviced by an authorized dealer in order to prevent damage to the TPMS sensors, refer to *Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS)* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter. Replace the spare tire with a road tire as soon as possible. During repairing or replacing of the flat tire, have the authorized dealer inspect the TPMS sensor for damage.

326

## Roadside Emergencies



**WARNING:** The use of tire sealants may damage your tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) and should not be used. However, if you must use a sealant, the TPMS sensor and valve stem on the wheel must be replaced by an authorized Ford dealer.



**WARNING:** Refer to *Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS)* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for important information. If the tire pressure monitor sensor becomes damaged, it will no longer function.

### Dissimilar spare tire/wheel information



**WARNING:** Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.

If you have a dissimilar spare tire/wheel, then it is intended for temporary use only. This means that if you need to use it, you should replace it as soon as possible with a road tire/wheel that is the same size and type as the road tires and wheels that were originally provided by Ford. If the dissimilar spare tire or wheel is damaged, it should be replaced rather than repaired.

A dissimilar spare tire/wheel is defined as a spare tire and/or wheel that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels and can be one of three types:

1. **T-type mini-spare:** This spare tire begins with the letter “T” for tire size and may have “Temporary Use Only” molded in the sidewall
2. **Full-size dissimilar spare with label on wheel:** This spare tire has a label on the wheel that states: “THIS TIRE AND WHEEL FOR TEMPORARY USE ONLY”

When driving with one of the dissimilar spare tires listed above, **do not:**

- Exceed 50 mph (80 km/h)
- Load the vehicle beyond maximum vehicle load rating listed on the Safety Compliance Label
- Use snow chains on the end of the vehicle with the dissimilar spare tire
- Use more than one dissimilar spare tire at a time
- Use commercial car washing equipment

## Roadside Emergencies

- Try to repair the dissimilar spare tire

Use of one of the dissimilar spare tires listed above at any one wheel location can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance
- Comfort and noise
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs
- Winter weather driving capability
- Wet weather driving capability

It is not recommended that the vehicle be operated in 4WD modes with a temporary emergency spare tire. If 4WD operation is necessary, do not operate above speeds of 10 mph (16 km/h) or for distances above 50 miles (80 km).

### 3. Full-size dissimilar spare without label on wheel

When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare tire/wheel, **do not:**

- Exceed 70 mph (113 km/h)
- Use more than one dissimilar spare tire/wheel at a time
- Use commercial car washing equipment
- Use snow chains on the end of the vehicle with the dissimilar spare tire/wheel

The usage of a full-size dissimilar spare tire/wheel can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance
- Comfort and noise
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs
- Winter weather driving capability
- Wet weather driving capability
- All-Wheel driving capability (if applicable)
- Load leveling adjustment (if applicable)

When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare tire/wheel additional caution should be given to:

- Towing a trailer
- Driving vehicles equipped with a camper body
- Driving vehicles with a load on the cargo rack

328

## Roadside Emergencies

Drive cautiously when using a full-size dissimilar spare tire/wheel and seek service as soon as possible.

### Spare tire information

**Note:** If your vehicle is equipped the tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS), the system indicator light will illuminate when the spare is in use. To restore the full functionality of the TPMS system, all road wheels equipped with the tire pressure monitoring sensors must be mounted on the vehicle.

If your vehicle is equipped with TPMS, have a flat tire serviced by an authorized dealer in order to prevent damage to the TPMS sensor; refer to *Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)* in the *Tires, Wheel and Loading* chapter. Replace the spare tire with the road tire as soon as possible.

### Stopping and securing the vehicle

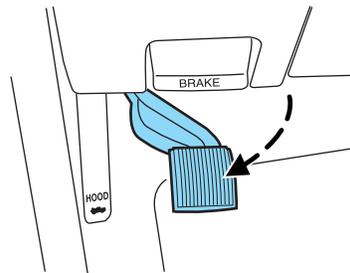


**WARNING:** To help prevent the vehicle from moving when you change a tire, be sure the parking brake is set, then block (in both directions) the wheel that is diagonally opposite to the tire being changed.

Refer to the instruction sheet (located under the jack tool kit) for detailed tire change instructions.

Park on a level surface, activate hazard flashers and set the parking brake.

- Automatic transmission: Place gearshift lever in P (Park).
- Manual or electronic shift 4x4: Place transfer case in 4H or 4L.



## Roadside Emergencies

### Location of the spare tire and tools

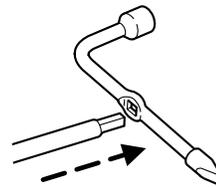
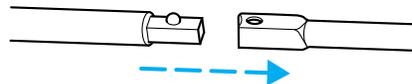
If your vehicle is equipped with a spare tire, jack and associated tools, refer to the following table for their locations:

Tool	Location
Spare tire (pick-up trucks only)	Under the vehicle, just forward of the rear bumper
Jack	Regular cab and Crew Cab: Fastened to floor pan behind rearmost seat on passenger side SuperCab: Under rear bench seat on passenger side
Jack handle, lug wrench, lug wrench extension (only available on Dual Rear Wheel [DRW] vehicles) and wheel chock (only available on Single Rear Wheel [SRW] vehicles equipped with a diesel engine)	Regular cab: Fastened to floor behind driver seat SuperCab: Fastened to floor under rear seat Crew Cab: Fastened to floor behind rear seat at driver side
Key and spare tire lock	In the glove box
Jack instruction sheet	Under the jack tool kit

### Removing the spare tire (with spare tire carrier only)

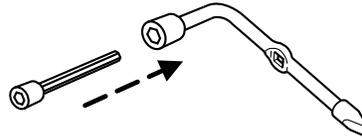
1. The following tools are required to remove the spare tire:

- one handle extension and two typical extensions. To assemble, align button with hole and slide parts together. To disconnect, depress button and pull apart.
- one wheel nut wrench. Slide over square end of jack handle.

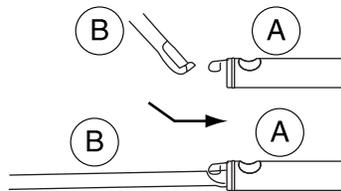


## Roadside Emergencies

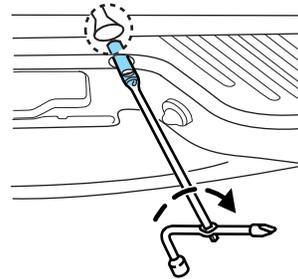
- **Vehicles equipped with dual rear wheels**, insert the lug wrench extension into the lug wrench to reach the lug nuts.



2. Attach the spare tire lock key (A) to the jack handle (B).



3. Fully insert the jack handle (with one extension) through the bumper hole and into the guide tube. The key and lock will engage with a slight push and counterclockwise turn. Some resistance will be felt when turning the jack handle assembly.

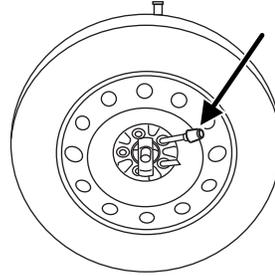


4. Turn the handle counterclockwise and lower the spare tire until you can slide the tire rearward and the cable is slack.
5. Remove the retainer through the center of the wheel.

## Roadside Emergencies

### If equipped with a tether, perform the following additional steps:

6. Lift the spare tire on end to access the tether attachment.
7. Use the lug wrench to remove the lug nut from the spare tire tether.
8. If not replacing the spare or flat tire to the underbody storage area, raise the wheel retainer up into the installed position.
9. Use the attached fastener strap (on the spare tire tether) to attach the tether end to the winch retainer prior to raising to the installed position.



### Tire change procedure



**WARNING:** When one of the rear wheels is off the ground, the transmission alone will not prevent the vehicle from moving or slipping off the jack, even if the transmission is in P (Park).



**WARNING:** To prevent the vehicle from moving when you change a tire, be sure the parking brake is set, then block (in both directions) the wheel that is diagonally opposite (other side and end of the vehicle) to the tire being changed.



**WARNING:** If the vehicle slips off the jack, you or someone else could be seriously injured.

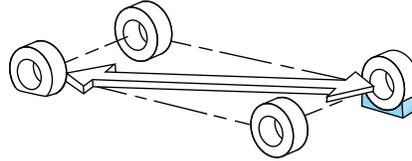


**WARNING:** Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.

**Note:** Passengers should not remain in the vehicle when the vehicle is being jacked.

## Roadside Emergencies

1. Turn engine off and block the wheel that is diagonally opposite of the flat tire using the wheel chock, if equipped. **If the vehicle is a 4x4**, lock the manual hub on the wheel.



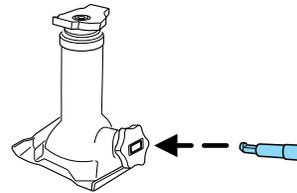
2. Remove the jack, jack handle, lug wrench and spare tire from the stowage locations.

3. Use the tip of the lug wrench to remove any wheel trim.

4. Loosen each wheel lug nut one-half turn counterclockwise but do not remove them until the wheel is raised off the ground.

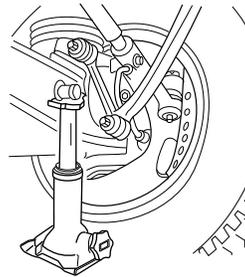
**The following steps apply to F-250/F-350 Single Rear Wheel (SRW) vehicles only:**

5. Insert the hooked end of the jack handle into the jack and use the handle to slide the jack under the vehicle.



6. Position the jack according to the following guides:

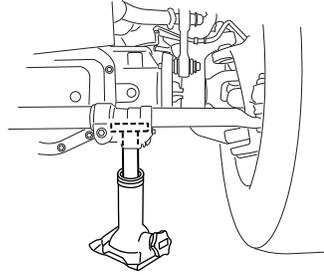
- Front (4x2)



## Roadside Emergencies

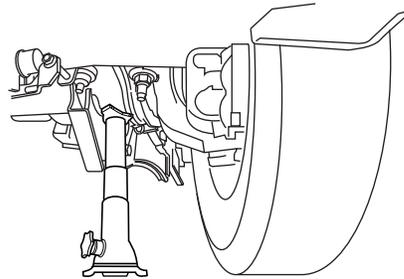
- Front driver side (4x4)

**Note:** Make sure the jack fits onto the flat area on the outboard side of the differential.

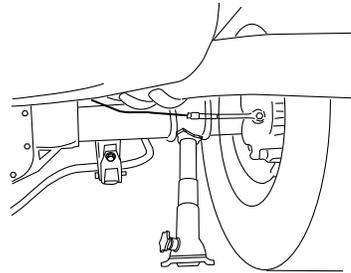


- Front passenger side (4x4)

**Note:** View shown from the rear of the vehicle to clearly identify the jack point. Place the jack directly under the axle.



- Rear

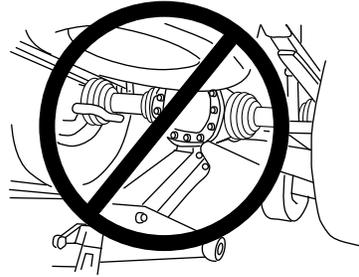


## Roadside Emergencies

**Never use the front or rear differential as a jacking point.**



**WARNING:** To lessen the risk of personal injury, do not put any part of your body under the vehicle while changing a tire. Do not start the engine when your vehicle is on the jack. The jack is only meant for changing the tire.



7. Turn the jack handle clockwise until the wheel is completely off the ground and high enough to install the spare tire.

8. Remove the lug nuts with the lug wrench.

9. Replace the flat tire with the spare tire, making sure the valve stem is facing outward for all front wheels and single rear wheel vehicles. If replacing an inboard rear tire on dual rear wheel vehicles, the valve stem must be facing outward. If replacing the outboard wheel, the valve stem must be facing inward. Reinstall the lug nuts until the wheel is snug against the hub. Do not fully tighten the lug nuts until the wheel has been lowered.

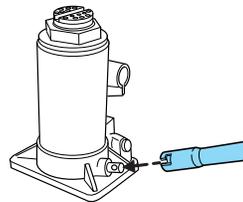
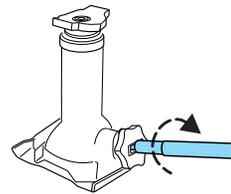
10. Lower the wheel by turning the jack handle counterclockwise.

Go to Step 19.

**The following steps apply to F-350 Dual Rear Wheel (DRW) and F-450/F-550 vehicles only:**

11. Slide the notched end of the jack handle over the release valve and use the handle to slide the jack under the vehicle. Make sure the valve is closed by turning it clockwise.

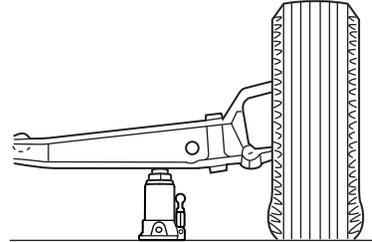
12. Position the jack according to the following guides:



## Roadside Emergencies

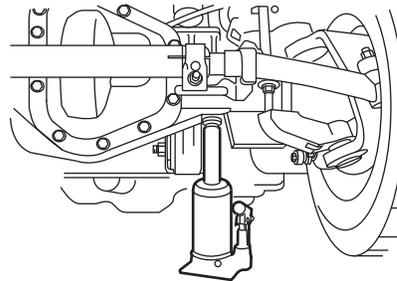
- Front (4x2): F-350 DRW

**Note:** Place jack directly under I-beam.



- Front driver side (4x4): F-350 DRW

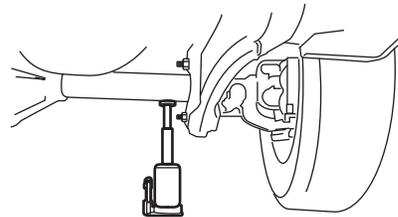
**Note:** Make sure the jack fits onto the flat area on the outboard side of the differential housing.



- Front passenger side (4x4): F-350 DRW

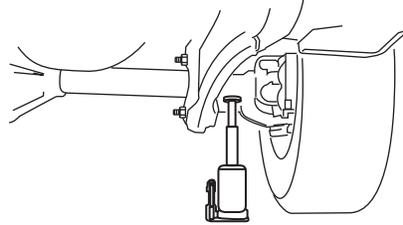
**Note:** View shown from the rear of the vehicle to clearly identify the jack point.

**Note:** Place the jack directly under axle and inboard of the radius arm so that the jack clears the radius arm.

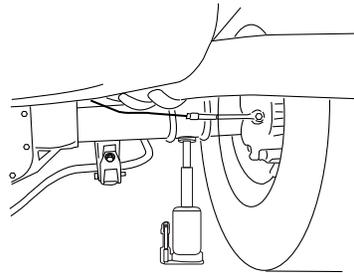


## Roadside Emergencies

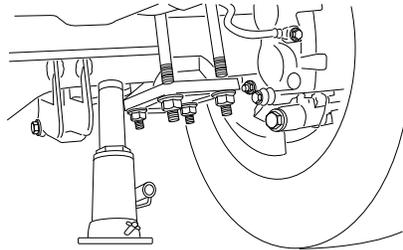
- Front: F-450/F-550



- Rear: F-350 DRW



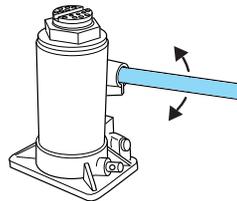
- Rear: F-450/F-550



13. Insert the jack handle into the pump linkage.

14. Use an up-and-down motion with the jack handle to raise the wheel completely off the ground.

**Hydraulic jacks are equipped with a pressure release valve that prevents lifting loads which exceed the jack's rated capacity.**



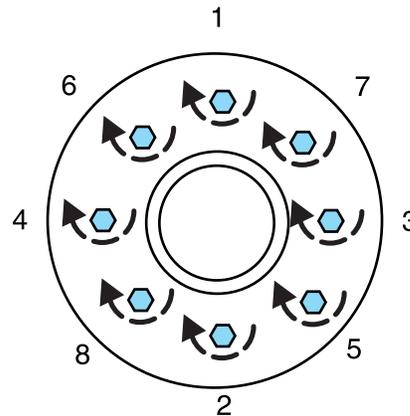
## Roadside Emergencies

15. Remove the lug nuts with the lug wrench.
16. Replace the flat tire with the spare tire, making sure the valve stem is facing outward on all front and inboard rear wheels. If replacing the outboard wheel, the valve stem must be facing inward. Reinstall the lug nuts until the wheel is snug against the hub. Do not fully tighten the lug nuts until the wheel has been lowered.
17. Lower the wheel by slowly turning the release valve counterclockwise. Opening the release valve slowly will provide a more controlled rate of descent.

### The following steps apply to all vehicles:

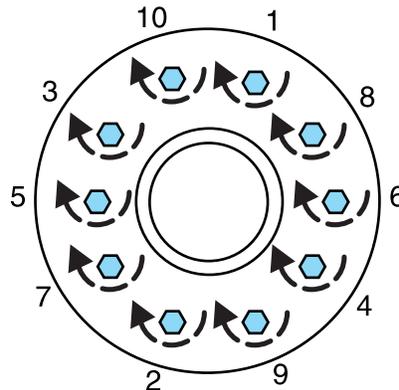
18. Remove the jack and fully tighten the lug nuts in the order shown. Refer to *Wheel lug nut torque specifications* later in this chapter for the proper lug nut torque specification.

### 8-lug nut torque sequence



## Roadside Emergencies

### 10-lug nut torque sequence



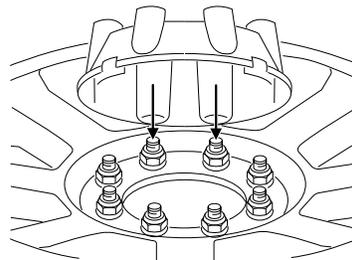
19. Stow the flat tire. Refer to *Stowing the flat/spare tire* if the vehicle is equipped with a spare tire carrier.

20. Stow the jack, jack handle and lug wrench. Make sure the jack is securely fastened so it does not rattle when driving.

21. Unblock the wheels.

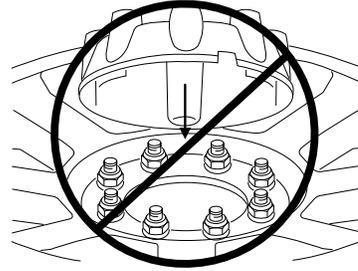
### The following step applies to F-250/F-350 Single Rear Wheel (SRW) vehicles only:

22. When installing the wheel center ornaments, ensure that the ornament retention towers on the back side of the ornament are aligned with the studs/lug nuts. The retention towers are designed to be installed over the studs/nuts and retain to the flange on the lug nut.



## Roadside Emergencies

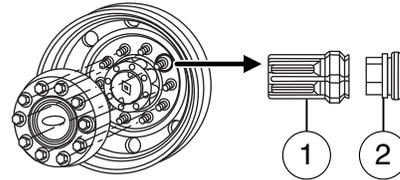
If the ornament retention towers are aligned between the studs/lug nuts, the ornament is improperly installed. This improper installation may appear and sound correct, but will not keep the ornament on the vehicle. Ornaments improperly installed in this manner will fall off or become loose with minimal force or impact.



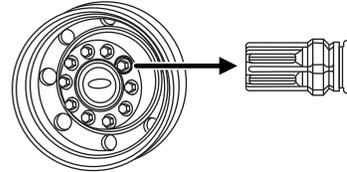
### Installing dual rear wheel ornaments

1. Align the ornament with the lug nuts.

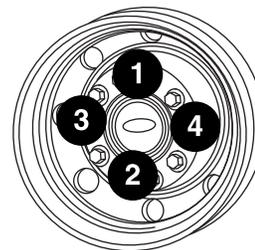
- (1) is the clip and (2) is the flange.



2. Hold the ornament so that all of the retention clips are sitting on the flange of the lug nuts.

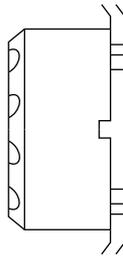
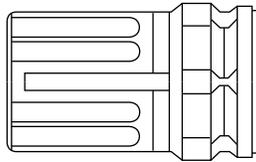


3. Use your hand or rubber mallet to tap the ornament in a star pattern. There should be an even gap between the ornament and the wheel.



## Roadside Emergencies

4. Be sure to install all the clips on the nuts over the flanges so that there is an even gap all around and the retention clips are fully seated.

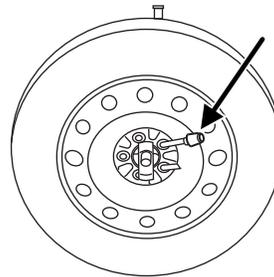


### Stowing the flat/spare tire

**Note:** Failure to follow spare tire stowage instructions may result in failure of cable or loss of spare tire.

**If you are stowing a tire that requires reattaching it to the vehicle with a tether, perform these steps first, then proceed with the steps following.**

1. Place the tire on end with the valve stem facing toward the front of the vehicle.
2. Place the tether into the bolt holes in the wheel and attach the lug nut using the lug winch.



3. Lay the tire on the ground with the valve stem facing in the direction specified on the tire changing instructions located with the jack and tools.

## Roadside Emergencies

4. Slide the wheel partially under the vehicle and install the retainer through the wheel center. Pull on the cable to align the components at the end of the cable.
5. Turn the jack handle clockwise until the tire is raised to its stowed position underneath the vehicle. The effort to turn the jack handle increases significantly and the spare tire carrier ratchets or slips when the tire is raised to the maximum tightness. Tighten to the best of your ability, to the point where the ratchet/slip occurs, if possible. The spare tire carrier will not allow you to overtighten. If the spare tire carrier ratchets or slips with little effort, take the vehicle to your authorized dealer for assistance at your earliest convenience.
6. Check that the tire lies flat against the frame and is properly tightened. Try to push or pull, then turn the tire to be sure it will not move. Loosen and retighten, if necessary. Failure to properly stow the spare tire may result in failure of the winch cable and loss of the tire.
7. Repeat this tightness check procedure when servicing the spare tire pressure (every six months, per *scheduled maintenance information*), or at any time that the spare tire is disturbed through service of other components.
8. If removed, install the spare tire lock (if equipped) into the bumper drive tube with the spare tire lock key (if equipped) and jack handle.

### WHEEL LUG NUT TORQUE SPECIFICATIONS

On vehicles equipped with single rear wheels, retighten the lug nuts to the specified torque at 500 miles (800 km) after any wheel disturbance (tire rotation, changing a flat tire, wheel removal, etc.).

On vehicles equipped with dual rear wheels, retighten the wheel lug nuts to the specified torque at 100 miles (160 km), and again at 500 miles (800 km) of new vehicle operation and after any wheel disturbance (tire rotation, changing a flat tire, wheel removal, etc.).

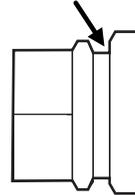
Bolt size	Wheel lug nut torque*	
	ft-lb	N•m
M14 x 1.5	165	224
* Torque specifications are for nut and bolt threads free of dirt and rust. Use only Ford recommended replacement fasteners.		

It is important to follow the proper wheel mounting and lug nut torque procedures.

342

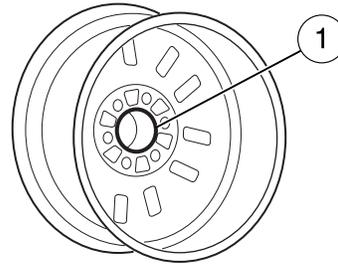
## Roadside Emergencies

On all two-piece flat wheel nuts, apply one drop of motor oil between the flat washer and the nut.



**!** **WARNING:** When a wheel is installed, always remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Ensure that any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub are secured so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels without correct metal-to-metal contact at the wheel mounting surfaces can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while the vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of control.

Inspect the wheel pilot hole prior to installation. If there is visible corrosion in wheel pilot hole, remove loose particles by wiping with clean rag and apply grease. Apply grease only to the wheel pilot hole surface by smearing a “dime” (1 square cm) sized glob of grease around the wheel pilot surface (1) with end of finger. DO NOT apply grease to lug nut/stud holes or wheel-to-brake surfaces.



### JUMP STARTING

**!** **WARNING:** The gases around the battery can explode if exposed to flames, sparks, or lit cigarettes. An explosion could result in injury or vehicle damage.

**!** **WARNING:** Batteries contain sulfuric acid which can burn skin, eyes and clothing, if contacted.

## Roadside Emergencies

**Do not attempt to push-start your automatic transmission vehicle. Automatic transmissions do not have push-start capability. Attempting to push-start a vehicle with an automatic transmission may cause transmission damage.**

### Preparing your vehicle

When the battery is disconnected or a new battery is installed, the automatic transmission must relearn its shift strategy. As a result, the transmission may have firm and/or soft shifts. This operation is considered normal and will not affect function or durability of the transmission. Over time, the adaptive learning process will fully update transmission operation.

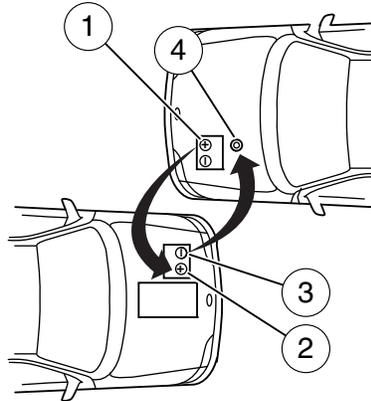
1. **Use only a 12-volt supply to start your vehicle.**
2. Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle as this could damage the vehicle's electrical system.
3. Park the booster vehicle close to the hood of the disabled vehicle making sure the two vehicles **do not** touch. Set the parking brake on both vehicles and stay clear of the engine cooling fan and other moving parts.
4. Check all battery terminals and remove any excessive corrosion before you attach the battery cables. Ensure that vent caps are tight and level.
5. Turn the heater fan on in both vehicles to protect from any electrical surges. Turn all other accessories off.

### Connecting the jumper cables

**Note:** In the illustration, the vehicle on the bottom is used to designate the assisting (boosting) battery.

## Roadside Emergencies

1. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the discharged battery.
2. Connect the other end of the positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal of the assisting battery.
3. Connect the negative (-) cable to the negative (-) terminal of the assisting battery.
4. Make the final connection of the negative (-) cable to an exposed metal part of the stalled vehicle's engine, away from the battery and the carburetor/fuel injection system.



**Note:** Do not attach the negative (-) cable to fuel lines, engine rocker covers, the intake manifold or electrical components as grounding points.



**WARNING:** Do not connect the end of the second cable to the negative (-) terminal of the battery to be jumped. A spark may cause an explosion of the gases that surround the battery.

Ensure that the cables are clear of fan blades, belts, moving parts of both engines, or any fuel delivery system parts.

### Jump starting

1. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and run the engine at moderately increased speed.
2. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.
3. Once the disabled vehicle has been started, run both engines for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

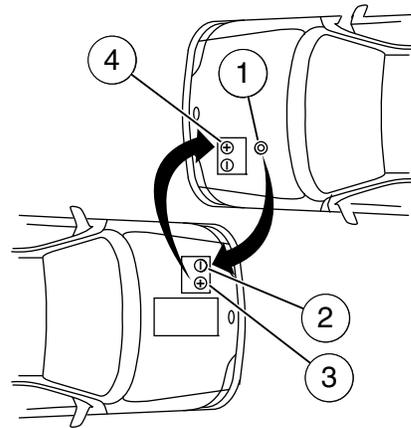
## Roadside Emergencies

### Removing the jumper cables

Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.

**Note:** In the illustration, the vehicle on the bottom is used to designate the assisting (boosting) battery.

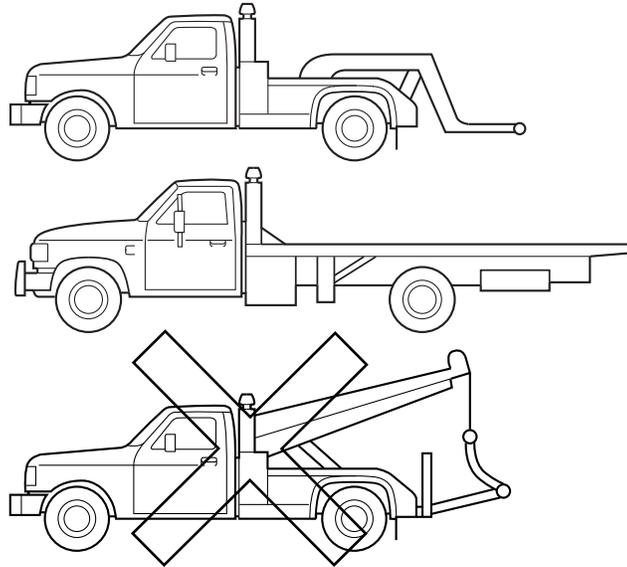
1. Remove the jumper cable from the ground metal surface.
2. Remove the jumper cable on the negative (-) terminal of the booster vehicle's battery.
3. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle's battery.
4. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the disabled vehicle's battery.



After the disabled vehicle has been started and the jumper cables removed, allow it to idle for several minutes so the engine computer can relearn its idle conditions.

## Roadside Emergencies

### WRECKER TOWING



If you need to have your vehicle towed, contact a professional towing service or, if you are a member of a roadside assistance program, your roadside assistance service provider.

It is recommended that the vehicle be towed with a wheel lift or flatbed equipment. Do not tow with a slingshot. Ford Motor Company has not approved a slingshot towing procedure.

On 4x2 vehicles, it is acceptable to tow the vehicle with the front wheels on the ground and the rear wheels off the ground using a wheel lift

On 4x4 vehicles, it is recommended that your vehicle be towed using flatbed equipment with all the wheels off the ground. However, a wheel lift may be used to lift the rear of the vehicle so long as, depending on vehicle configurations, the following preparations are met:

- On Electronic Shift-On-the-Fly (ESOF) vehicles, the 4x4 control is turned to the 2WD position prior to towing.
- On manual-shift transfer case vehicles, the front wheel hub locks are in the FREE position prior to towing.

## Roadside Emergencies

**Note:** Towing an ESOF 4x4 vehicle with the front wheels on the ground without disengaging the front hubs may cause damage to the automatic transmission.

**Note:** Towing a 4x2 or an ESOF 4x4 vehicle with the rear wheels on the ground for more than 50 miles (80 km) and/or in excess of 35 mph (56 km/h) may cause damage to the automatic transmission.

**Note:** On Dual Rear Wheel (DRW) vehicles, an outer rear wheel must be removed prior to using a wheel lift wrecker.

Ford Motor Company produces a towing manual for all authorized tow truck operators. Have your tow truck operator refer to this manual for proper hook-up and towing procedures for your vehicle.

**If the vehicle is towed by other means or incorrectly, vehicle damage may occur.**

### Emergency towing

In case of a roadside emergency with a disabled vehicle (without access to wheel dollies, car hauling trailer, or flatbed transport vehicle) your vehicle (regardless of transmission powertrain configuration) can be flat towed (all wheels on the ground) under the following conditions:

- Vehicle is facing forward so that it is being towed in a forward direction.
- Place the transmission in N (Neutral). Refer to *Brake-shift interlock* in the *Driving* chapter for specific instructions if you cannot move the gear shift lever into N (Neutral).
- Maximum speed is not to exceed 35 mph (56 km/h).
- Maximum distance is 50 miles (80 km).

## Customer Assistance

### GETTING THE SERVICES YOU NEED

Warranty repairs to your vehicle must be performed by an authorized dealer. While any authorized dealer handling your vehicle line will provide warranty service, we recommend you return to your selling authorized dealer who wants to ensure your continued satisfaction.

Please note that certain warranty repairs require special training and/or equipment, so not all authorized dealers are authorized to perform all warranty repairs. This means that, depending on the warranty repair needed, you may have to take your vehicle to another authorized dealer.

A reasonable time must be allowed to perform a repair after taking your vehicle to the authorized dealer. Repairs will be made using Ford or Motorcraft® parts, or remanufactured or other parts that are authorized by Ford.

### Away from home

If you are away from home when your vehicle needs service, contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center or use the online resources listed below to find the nearest authorized dealer.

In the United States:

#### Mailing address

Ford Motor Company  
Customer Relationship Center  
P.O. Box 6248  
Dearborn, MI 48121

#### Telephone

1-800-392-3673 (FORD)  
(TDD for the hearing impaired: 1-800-232-5952)

#### Online

Additional information and resources are available online at [www.genuineservice.com](http://www.genuineservice.com).

These are some of the items that can be found online:

- U.S. dealer locator by Dealer Name, City/State, or Zip Code
- Owner Guides
- Maintenance Schedules
- Recalls
- Ford Extended Service Plans
- Ford Genuine Accessories

## Customer Assistance

- Service specials and promotions.

In Canada:

### **Mailing address (Ford vehicles)**

Customer Relationship Centre  
Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited  
P.O. Box 2000  
Oakville, Ontario L6J 5E4

### **Telephone**

1-800-565-3673 (FORD)

### **Online**

[www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca)

### **Mailing address (Lincoln vehicles)**

Lincoln Centre  
Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited  
P.O. Box 2000  
Oakville, Ontario L6J 5E4

### **Telephone**

1-800-387-9333

### **Online**

[www.lincolncanada.com](http://www.lincolncanada.com)

### **Additional assistance**

If you have questions or concerns, or are unsatisfied with the service you are receiving, follow these steps:

1. Contact your Sales Representative or Service Advisor at your selling/servicing authorized dealer.
2. If your inquiry or concern remains unresolved, contact the Sales Manager, Service Manager or Customer Relations Manager.
3. If you require assistance or clarification on Ford Motor Company policies, please contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center

In order to help you serve you better, please have the following information available when contacting a Customer Relationship Center:

- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
- Your telephone number (home and business)
- The name of the authorized dealer and city where located
- The vehicle's current odometer reading

In some states, you must directly notify Ford in writing before pursuing remedies under your state's warranty laws. Ford is also allowed a final repair attempt in some states.

350

## Customer Assistance

In the United States, a warranty dispute must be submitted to the BBB AUTO LINE before taking action under the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, or to the extent allowed by state law, before pursuing replacement or repurchase remedies provided by certain state laws. This dispute handling procedure is not required prior to enforcing state created rights or other rights which are independent of the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act or state replacement or repurchase laws.

### IN CALIFORNIA (U.S. ONLY)

California Civil Code Section 1793.2(d) requires that, if a manufacturer or its representative is unable to repair a motor vehicle to conform to the vehicle's applicable express warranty after a reasonable number of attempts, the manufacturer shall be required to either replace the vehicle with one substantially identical or repurchase the vehicle and reimburse the buyer in an amount equal to the actual price paid or payable by the consumer (less a reasonable allowance for consumer use). The consumer has the right to choose whether to receive a refund or replacement vehicle.

California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b) presumes that the manufacturer has had a reasonable number of attempts to conform the vehicle to its applicable express warranties if, within the first 18 months of ownership of a new vehicle or the first 18,000 miles (29,000 km), whichever occurs first:

1. Two or more repair attempts are made on the same non-conformity likely to cause death or serious bodily injury OR
2. Four or more repair attempts are made on the same nonconformity (a defect or condition that substantially impairs the use, value or safety of the vehicle) OR
3. The vehicle is out of service for repair of nonconformities for a total of more than 30 calendar days (not necessarily all at one time)

In the case of 1 or 2 above, the consumer must also notify the manufacturer of the need for the repair of the nonconformity at the following address:

Ford Motor Company  
16800 Executive Plaza Drive  
Mail Drop 3NE-B  
Dearborn, MI 48126

## Customer Assistance

You are required to submit your warranty dispute to BBB AUTO LINE before asserting in court any rights or remedies conferred by California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b). You are also required to use BBB AUTO LINE before exercising rights or seeking remedies created by the Federal Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, 15 U.S.C. sec. 2301 et seq. If you choose to seek redress by pursuing rights and remedies not created by California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b) or the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, resort to BBB AUTO LINE is not required by those statutes.

### **THE BETTER BUSINESS BUREAU (BBB) AUTO LINE PROGRAM (U.S. ONLY)**

Your satisfaction is important to Ford Motor Company and to your dealer. If a warranty concern has not been resolved using the three-step procedure outlined earlier in this chapter in the *Getting the services you need* section, you may be eligible to participate in the BBB AUTO LINE program.

The BBB AUTO LINE program consists of two parts – mediation and arbitration. During mediation, a representative of the BBB will contact both you and Ford Motor Company to explore options for settlement of the claim. If an agreement is not reached during mediation or you do not want to participate in mediation, and if your claim is eligible, you may participate in the arbitration process. An arbitration hearing will be scheduled so that you can present your case in an informal setting before an impartial person. The arbitrator will consider the testimony provided and make a decision after the hearing.

Disputes submitted to the BBB AUTO LINE program are usually decided within forty days after you file your claim with the BBB. You are not bound by the decision, and may reject the decision and proceed to court where all findings of the BBB Auto Line dispute, and decision, are admissible in the court action. Should you choose to accept the BBB AUTO LINE decision, Ford is then bound by the decision, and must comply with the decision within 30 days of receipt of your acceptance letter.

BBB AUTO LINE Application: Using the information provided below, please call or write to request a program application. You will be asked for your name and address, general information about your new vehicle, information about your warranty concerns, and any steps you have already taken to try to resolve them. A Customer Claim Form will be mailed that will need to be completed, signed and returned to the BBB along with proof of ownership. Upon receipt, the BBB will review the claim for eligibility under the Program Summary Guidelines.

352

## Customer Assistance

**You can get more information by calling BBB AUTO LINE at 1-800-955-5100, or writing to:**

**BBB AUTO LINE  
4200 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 800  
Arlington, Virginia 22203-1833**

BBB AUTO LINE applications can also be requested by calling the Ford Motor Company Customer Relationship Center at 1-800-392-3673.

**Note:** Ford Motor Company reserves the right to change eligibility limitations, modify procedures, or to discontinue this process at any time without notice and without obligation.

### **UTILIZING THE MEDIATION/ARBITRATION PROGRAM (CANADA ONLY)**

For vehicles delivered to authorized Canadian dealers. In those cases where you continue to feel that the efforts by Ford of Canada and the authorized dealer to resolve a factory-related vehicle service concern have been unsatisfactory, Ford of Canada participates in an impartial third party mediation/arbitration program administered by the Canadian Motor Vehicle Arbitration Plan (CAMVAP).

The CAMVAP program is a straight forward and relatively speedy alternative to resolve a disagreement when all other efforts to produce a settlement have failed. This procedure is without cost to you and is designed to eliminate the need for lengthy and expensive legal proceedings.

In the CAMVAP program, impartial third-party arbitrators conduct hearings at mutually convenient times and places in an informal environment. These impartial arbitrators review the positions of the parties, make decisions and, when appropriate, render awards to resolve disputes. CAMVAP decisions are fast, fair, and final as the arbitrator's award is binding on both you and Ford of Canada.

CAMVAP services are available in all Canadian territories and provinces. For more information, without charge or obligation, call your CAMVAP Provincial Administrator directly at 1-800-207-0685 or visit [www.camvap.ca](http://www.camvap.ca).

### **GETTING ASSISTANCE OUTSIDE THE U.S. AND CANADA**

Before exporting your vehicle to a foreign country, contact the appropriate foreign embassy or consulate. These officials can inform you of local vehicle registration regulations and where to find unleaded fuel.

If you cannot find unleaded fuel or can only get fuel with an anti-knock index lower than is recommended for your vehicle, contact a regional office or owner relations/customer relationship office.

## Customer Assistance

The use of leaded fuel in your vehicle without proper conversion may damage the effectiveness of your emission control system and may cause engine knocking or serious engine damage. Ford Motor Company/Ford of Canada is not responsible for any damage caused by use of improper fuel. Using leaded fuel may also result in difficulty importing your vehicle back into the U.S.

If your vehicle must be serviced while you are traveling or living in Asia-Pacific Region, Sub-Saharan Africa, U.S. Virgin Islands, Central America, the Caribbean, and Israel, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer cannot help you, contact:

FORD MOTOR COMPANY  
FORD EXPORT OPERATIONS & GLOBAL INITIATIVES  
1555 Fairlane Drive  
Fairlane Business Park #3  
Allen Park, Michigan 48101  
U.S.A.

Telephone: (313) 594-4857

For customers in Guam, the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands (CNMI), American Samoa, and the U.S. Virgin Islands, please feel free to call our Toll-Free Number: (800) 841-FORD (3673).

FAX: (313) 390-0804

Email: [expcac@ford.com](mailto:expcac@ford.com)

If your vehicle must be serviced while you are traveling or living in Puerto Rico, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer cannot help you, contact:

Ford International Business Development Inc.  
Customer Relationship Center  
P.O. Box 11957  
Caparra Heights Station  
San Juan, Puerto Rico 00922-1957  
Telephone: (800) 841-FORD (3673)  
FAX: (313) 390-0804  
Email: [prcac@ford.com](mailto:prcac@ford.com)  
[www.ford.com.pr](http://www.ford.com.pr)

## Customer Assistance

If your vehicle must be serviced while you are traveling or living in the Middle East, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer cannot help you, contact:

Ford Middle East  
 Customer Relationship Center  
 P.O. Box 21470  
 Dubai, United Arab Emirates  
 Telephone: +971 4 3326084  
 Toll-Free Number for the Kingdom of Saudi Arabia: 800 8971409  
 Local Telephone Number for Kuwait: 24810575  
 FAX: +971 4 3327299  
 Email: [menacac@ford.com](mailto:menacac@ford.com)  
[www.me.ford.com](http://www.me.ford.com)

If you buy your vehicle in North America and then relocate to any of the above locations, register your vehicle identification number (VIN) and new address with Ford Motor Company Export Operations & Global Growth Initiatives by emailing [expcac@ford.com](mailto:expcac@ford.com).

If you are in another foreign country, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer employees cannot help you, they can direct you to the nearest Ford affiliate office.

**Customers in the U.S. should call 1-800-392-3673.**

### ORDERING ADDITIONAL OWNER'S LITERATURE

To order the publications in this portfolio, contact Helm, Incorporated at:

HELM, INCORPORATED  
 P.O. Box 07150  
 Detroit, Michigan 48207

Or to order a free publication catalog, call toll free: 1-800-782-4356

Monday-Friday 8:00 a.m. - 6:00 p.m. EST

Helm, Incorporated can also be reached by their website:  
[www.helminc.com](http://www.helminc.com).

*(Items in this catalog may be purchased by credit card, check or money order.)*

### Obtaining a French Owner's Guide

French Owner's Guides can be obtained from your authorized dealer or by contacting Helm, Incorporated using the contact information listed previously in this section.

## Customer Assistance

### REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (U.S. ONLY)

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Ford Motor Company.



If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Ford Motor Company.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to <http://www.safercar.gov>; or write to:

Administrator  
1200 New Jersey Avenue, Southeast  
Washington, D.C. 20590

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from <http://www.safercar.gov>.

### REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (CANADA ONLY)

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform Transport Canada, using their toll-free number: 1-800-333-0510, or online at: <https://wwwapps.tc.gc.ca/Saf-Sec-Sur/7/PCDB-BDPP/Index.aspx>.

## Cleaning

### WASHING THE EXTERIOR

Wash your vehicle regularly with cool or lukewarm water and a neutral pH shampoo, such as Motorcraft® Detail Wash (ZC-3-A), which is available from your authorized dealer.

- Never use strong household detergents or soap, such as dish washing or laundry liquid. These products can discolor and spot painted surfaces.
- Never wash a vehicle that is “hot to the touch” or during exposure to strong, direct sunlight.
- Always use a clean sponge or car wash mitt with plenty of water for best results.
- Dry the vehicle with a chamois or soft terry cloth towel in order to eliminate water spotting.
- It is especially important to wash the vehicle regularly during the winter months, as dirt and road salt are difficult to remove and cause damage to the vehicle.
- Immediately remove items such as gasoline, diesel fuel, bird droppings and insect deposits because they can cause damage to the vehicle’s paintwork and trim over time. Use Motorcraft® Bug and Tar Remover (ZC-42), which is available from your authorized dealer.
- Remove any exterior accessories, such as antennas, before entering a car wash.
- **Suntan lotions and insect repellents can damage any painted surface; if these substances come in contact with your vehicle, wash off as soon as possible.**
- **If your vehicle is equipped with running boards, do not use rubber, plastic and vinyl protectant products on the running board surface, as the area may become slippery.**

### Exterior chrome

- Wash the vehicle first, using cool or lukewarm water and a neutral pH shampoo, such as Motorcraft® Detail Wash (ZC-3-A).
- Use Motorcraft® Custom Bright Metal Cleaner (ZC-15), available from your authorized dealer. Apply the product as you would a wax to clean bumpers and other chrome parts; allow the cleaner to dry for a few minutes, then wipe off the haze with a clean, dry rag.
- **Never use abrasive materials such as steel wool or plastic pads as they can scratch the chrome surface.**

## Cleaning

### WAXING

- Wash the vehicle first.
- Use a quality wax that does not contain abrasives.
- Do not allow paint sealant to come in contact with any non-body (low-gloss black) colored trim, such as grained door handles, roof racks, bumpers, side moldings, mirror housings or the windshield cowl area. The paint sealant will “gray” or stain the parts over time.

### PAINT CHIPS

Your authorized dealer has touch-up paint to match your vehicle’s color. Take your color code (printed on a sticker in the driver’s door jamb) to your authorized dealer to ensure you get the correct color.

- Remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout before repairing paint chips.
- Always read the instructions before using the products.

### ALUMINUM WHEELS AND WHEEL COVERS

Aluminum wheels and wheel covers are coated with a clearcoat paint finish. In order to maintain their shine:

- Clean weekly with Motorcraft® Wheel and Tire Cleaner, which is available from your authorized dealer. Heavy dirt and brake dust accumulation may require agitation with a sponge. Rinse thoroughly with a strong stream of water.
- Never apply any cleaning chemical to hot or warm wheel rims or covers.
- Some automatic car washes may cause damage to the finish on your wheel rims or covers. Industrial-strength (heavy-duty) cleaners, or cleaning chemicals, in combination with brush agitation to remove brake dust and dirt, could wear away the clearcoat finish over time.
- Do not use hydrofluoric acid-based or high caustic-based wheel cleaners, steel wool, fuels or strong household detergent.
- To remove tar and grease, use Motorcraft® Bug and Tar Remover , available from your authorized dealer.

### ENGINE

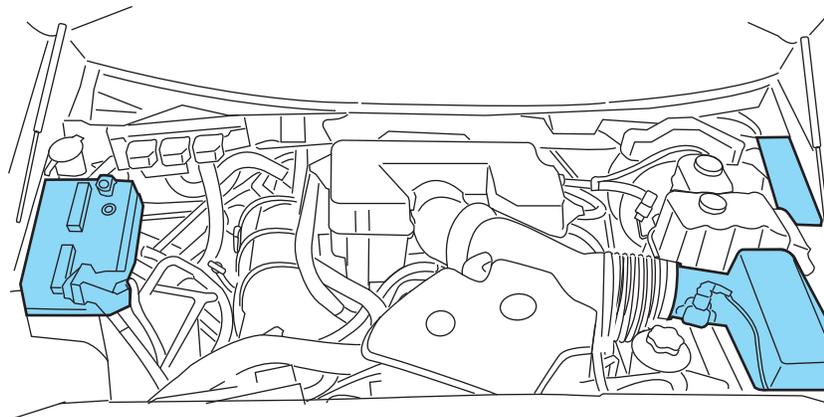
Engines are more efficient when they are clean because grease and dirt buildup keep the engine warmer than normal. When washing:

- Take care when using a power washer to clean the engine. The high-pressure fluid could penetrate the sealed parts and cause damage.

358

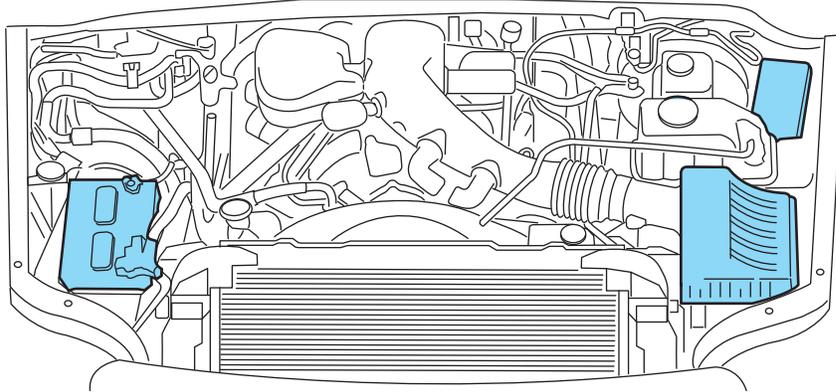
## Cleaning

- Do not spray a hot engine with cold water to avoid cracking the engine block or other engine components.
- Spray Motorcraft® Engine Shampoo and Degreaser (ZC-20) on all parts that require cleaning and pressure rinse clean.
- Never wash or rinse the engine while it is hot or running; water in the running engine may cause internal damage.
- Never wash or rinse any ignition coil, spark plug wire or spark plug well, or the area in and around these locations.
- Cover the highlighted areas to prevent water damage when cleaning the engine.



- **6.2L V8 gasoline engine**

## Cleaning



- **6.8L V10 gasoline engine**

### PLASTIC (NON-PAINTED) EXTERIOR PARTS

Use only approved products to clean plastic parts. These products are available from your authorized dealer.

- For routine cleaning, use Motorcraft® Detail Wash (ZC-3-A).
- If tar or grease spots are present, use Motorcraft® Bug and Tar Remover (ZC-42).

### WINDOWS AND WIPER BLADES

The windshield, rear and side windows and the wiper blades should be cleaned regularly. If the wipers do not wipe properly, substances on the vehicle's glass or the wiper blades may be the cause. These may include hot wax treatments used by commercial car washes, water repellent coatings, tree sap, or other organic contamination; these contaminants may cause squeaking or chatter noise from the blades, and streaking and smearing of the windshield. To clean these items, follow these tips:

- The windshield, rear windows and side windows may be cleaned with a non-abrasive cleaner such as Motorcraft® Ultra-Clear Spray Glass Cleaner (ZC-23), available from your authorized dealer.
- The wiper blades can be cleaned with isopropyl (rubbing) alcohol or Motorcraft® Premium Windshield Washer Concentrate (ZC-32-A) in the U.S., or Premium Quality Windshield Washer Fluid [CXC-37-(A, B, D, or F)] in Canada, available from your authorized dealer. This washer fluid contains special solution in addition to alcohol which

360

## Cleaning

helps to remove the hot wax deposited on the wiper blade and windshield from automated car wash facilities. Be sure to replace wiper blades when they appear worn or do not function properly.

- Do not use abrasives, as they may cause scratches.
- Do not use fuel, kerosene, or paint thinner to clean any parts.

### **INSTRUMENT PANEL/INTERIOR TRIM AND CLUSTER LENS (EXCEPT HARLEY-DAVIDSON)**

Clean the instrument panel, interior trim areas and cluster lens with a clean and damp, white cotton cloth, then with a clean and dry, white cotton cloth.

- Avoid cleaners or polishes that increase the gloss of the upper portion of the instrument panel. The dull finish in this area helps protect the driver from undesirable windshield reflection.
- Be certain to wash or wipe your hands clean if you have been in contact with certain products such as insect repellent and suntan lotion in order to avoid possible damage to the interior painted surfaces.
- Do not use household or glass cleaners as these may damage the finish of the instrument panel, interior trim and cluster lens.
- Do not allow air fresheners and hand sanitizers to spill on interior surfaces. If a spill occurs, **wipe off immediately**. Damage may not be covered by your warranty.



**WARNING:** Do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents when cleaning the steering wheel or instrument panel to avoid contamination of the airbag system.

If a staining liquid like coffee/juice has been spilled on the instrument panel or on interior trim surfaces, clean as follows:

1. Wipe up spilled liquid using a clean white cotton cloth.
2. Wipe the surface with a damp, clean, white cotton cloth. For more thorough cleaning, use a mild soap and water solution. If the spot cannot be completely cleaned by this method, the area may be cleaned using a commercially available cleaning product designed for automotive interiors.
3. If necessary, apply more soap and water solution or cleaning product to a clean, white, cotton cloth and press the cloth onto the soiled area—allow this to set at room temperature for 30 minutes.

## Cleaning

4. Remove the soaked cloth, and if it is not soiled badly, use this cloth to clean the area by using a rubbing motion for 60 seconds.
5. Following this, wipe area dry with a clean, white, cotton cloth.

### **INSTRUMENT PANEL AND CONSOLE (HARLEY-DAVIDSON ONLY)**

Your vehicle's instrument panel and console are uniquely painted with both high and low gloss paints that require special care. The high gloss area is similar to that of the vehicle's exterior; the low gloss area is designed to help protect the driver from undesirable windshield reflection.

#### **High gloss paint area**

In order to maintain the finish of the instrument panel and console, the high gloss areas should be treated similar to the that of exterior paint or glossy plastic surfaces. When cleaning the high gloss areas:

- **Do not use** paper towels or newspaper.
- **Do not use** silicone or Teflon® (PTFE)-based products.

Dust the high gloss areas with a clean, dry cloth, or use Motorcraft® Dusting Cloth (ZC-24).

For general cleaning, use mild, soapy water and a soft, damp cloth, then dry with a clean, dry cloth.

For removal of fine scuffs and scratches, use Scotch-Brite Microfiber Cloth or cheese cloth along with Motorcraft® Premium Liquid Wax (ZC-53-A). Note: Removal of deep scuffs and scratches should be performed by an authorized dealer or an experienced repair facility.

#### **Low gloss paint area**

The low gloss area of the instrument panel's upper dash should be cleaned with mild, soapy water and a soft, damp cloth, then dried with a clean, dry cloth. When cleaning the low gloss areas:

- **Do not use** paper towels or newspaper.
- **Do not use** silicone or Teflon® (PTFE)-based products.
- **Do not use** exterior paint waxes or sealants.

Dust the low gloss areas with a clean, dry cloth, or use Motorcraft® Dusting Cloth (ZC-24).

## Cleaning

### INTERIOR

For fabric, carpets, cloth seats and safety belts:

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
- Remove light stains and soil with Motorcraft® Professional Strength Carpet & Upholstery Cleaner (ZC-54).
- If grease or tar is present on the material, spot-clean the area first with Motorcraft® Spot and Stain Remover (ZC-14). In Canada, use Motorcraft® Multi-Purpose Cleaner (CXC-101).
- If a ring forms on the fabric after spot cleaning, clean the entire area immediately (but do not oversaturate) or the ring will set.
- Do not use household cleaning products or glass cleaners, which can stain and discolor the fabric and affect the flame retardant abilities of the seat materials.



**WARNING:** Do not use cleaning solvents, bleach or dye on the vehicle's seatbelts, as these actions may weaken the belt webbing.

### LEATHER SEATS (IF EQUIPPED, EXCEPT FOR THE KING RANCH® EDITION)

**For King Ranch® leather seats, refer to a separate section in this chapter.**

- Clean spills and stains as quickly as possible.
- For routine cleaning, wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth. For more thorough cleaning, wipe the surface with a mild soap and water solution. In Canada, use Motorcraft® Vinyl Cleaner (CXC-93). Dry the area with a soft cloth.
- If the leather cannot be completely cleaned using a mild soap and water solution, the leather may be cleaned using a commercially available leather cleaning product designed for automotive interiors.
- To check for compatibility, first test any cleaner or stain remover on an inconspicuous part of the leather.
- Do not use household cleaning products, alcohol solutions, solvents or cleaners intended for rubber, vinyl and plastics, or oil/petroleum-based leather conditioners. These products may cause premature wearing or damage to the leather.

363

## Cleaning

### LEATHER SEATS FOR THE KING RANCH® EDITION ONLY (IF EQUIPPED)

Your vehicle is equipped with seating covered in premium, top-grain leather which is extremely durable, but still requires special care and maintenance in order to ensure longevity and comfort.

Regular cleaning and conditioning will maintain the appearance of the leather.

#### Cleaning

For dirt, use a vacuum cleaner then use a clean, damp cloth or soft brush.

For routine cleaning, wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth. For more thorough cleaning, wipe the surface with a mild soap and water solution.

- Clean spills as quickly as possible.
- Test any cleaner or stain remover on an inconspicuous part of the leather as cleaners may darken the leather.
- Do not spill coffee, ketchup, mustard, orange juice or oil-based products on the leather as they may permanently stain the leather.
- Do not use household cleaning products, alcohol solutions, solvents or cleaners intended for rubber, vinyl or plastics.

#### Scratches

Natural Markings - Because the leather in the seat comes from genuine steer hides, there will be evidence of naturally occurring markings, such as small scars. These markings give character to the seating covers and should be considered as proof of a genuine leather product.

In order to lessen the appearance of certain scratches and other wear marks, apply conditioner on the affected area following the same instructions as in the *Conditioning* section.

#### Conditioning

Bottles of King Ranch® Leather Conditioner are available at the King Ranch® Saddle Shop. Visit the website at [www.krsaddleshop.com](http://www.krsaddleshop.com), or telephone (in the United States) 1-800-282-KING (5464). If you are unable to obtain King Ranch® Leather Conditioner, use another premium leather conditioner.

- Clean the surfaces using the steps outlined in the *Cleaning* section.
- Ensure the leather is dry then apply a nickel-sized amount of conditioner to a clean, dry cloth.
- Rub the conditioner into leather until it disappears. Allow the conditioner to dry and repeat the process for the entire interior. If a film appears, wipe off film with a dry, clean cloth.

364

## Cleaning

### UNDERBODY

Flush the complete underside of your vehicle frequently. Keep body and door drain holes free from packed dirt.

**Note:** Use care when using a power washer to clean the driveline, especially the driveshaft and interfacing components. The high-pressure fluid could penetrate the sealed parts and cause damage.

### FORD AND LINCOLN CAR CARE PRODUCTS

Your authorized dealer has many quality products available to clean your vehicle and protect its finishes. These quality products have been specifically engineered to fulfill your automotive needs; they are custom designed to complement the style and appearance of your vehicle. Each product is made from high quality materials that meet or exceed rigid specifications. For best results, use the following products or products of equivalent quality:

Motorcraft® Bug and Tar Remover (ZC-42)

Motorcraft® Custom Bright Metal Cleaner (ZC-15)

Motorcraft® Detail Wash (ZC-3-A)

Motorcraft® Dusting Cloth (ZC-24)

Motorcraft® Engine Shampoo and Degreaser (U.S. only) (ZC-20)

Motorcraft® Engine Shampoo (Canada only) (CXC-66-A)

Motorcraft® Multi-Purpose Cleaner (Canada only) (CXC-101)

Motorcraft® Premium Glass Cleaner (Canada only) (CXC-100)

Motorcraft® Professional Strength Carpet & Upholstery Cleaner (ZC-54)

Motorcraft® Spot and Stain Remover (U.S. only) (ZC-14)

Motorcraft® Ultra-Clear Spray Glass Cleaner (ZC-23)

Motorcraft® Vinyl Cleaner (Canada only) (CXC-93)

Motorcraft® Wheel and Tire Cleaner (ZC-37-A)

## Maintenance and Specifications

### SERVICE RECOMMENDATIONS

To help you service your vehicle, we provide *scheduled maintenance information* which makes tracking routine service easy.

If your vehicle requires professional service, your authorized dealer can provide the necessary parts and service. Check your *Warranty Guide* to find out which parts and services are covered.

Use only recommended fuels, lubricants, fluids and service parts conforming to specifications. Motorcraft® parts are designed and built to provide the best performance in your vehicle.

### PRECAUTIONS WHEN SERVICING YOUR VEHICLE

- Do not work on a hot engine.
- Make sure that nothing gets caught in moving parts.
- Do not work on a vehicle with the engine running in an enclosed space, unless you are sure you have enough ventilation.
- Keep all open flames and other burning material (such as cigarettes) away from the battery and all fuel related parts.

### Working with the engine off

1. Set the parking brake and ensure the gearshift is securely latched in P (Park).
2. Turn off the engine and remove the key.
3. Block the wheels to prevent the vehicle from moving unexpectedly.

### Working with the engine on

1. Set the parking brake and shift to P (Park).
2. Block the wheels.

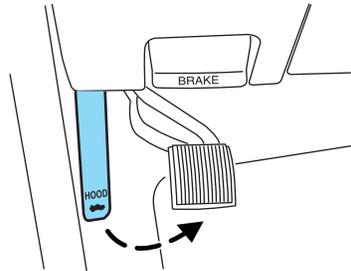


**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and/or personal burn injuries, do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### OPENING THE HOOD

1. Inside the vehicle, pull the hood release handle located under the bottom left corner of the instrument panel.
2. Go to the front of the vehicle to release the auxiliary latch located at the top center of the grille. Slide the handle left to release the auxiliary latch.
3. Lift the hood until the lift cylinders hold it open.

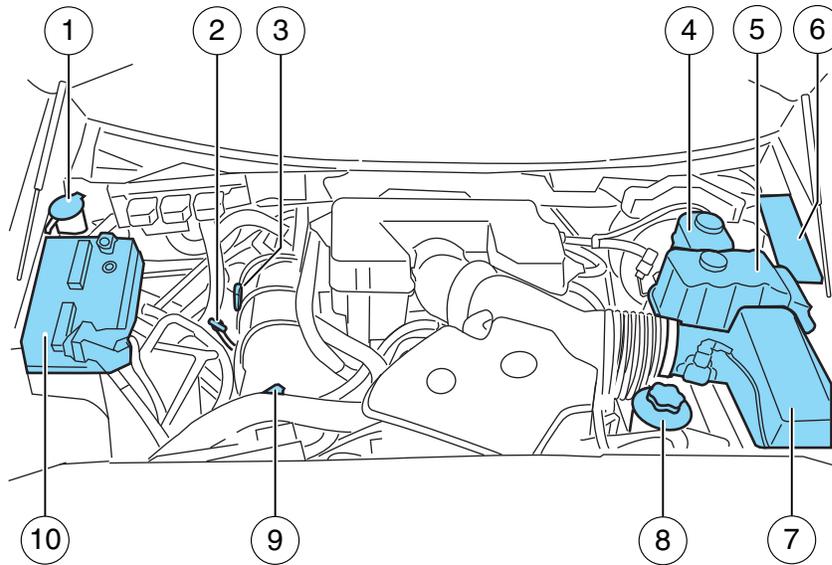


### IDENTIFYING COMPONENTS IN THE ENGINE COMPARTMENT

Refer to the diesel supplement for diesel engine component locations.

## Maintenance and Specifications

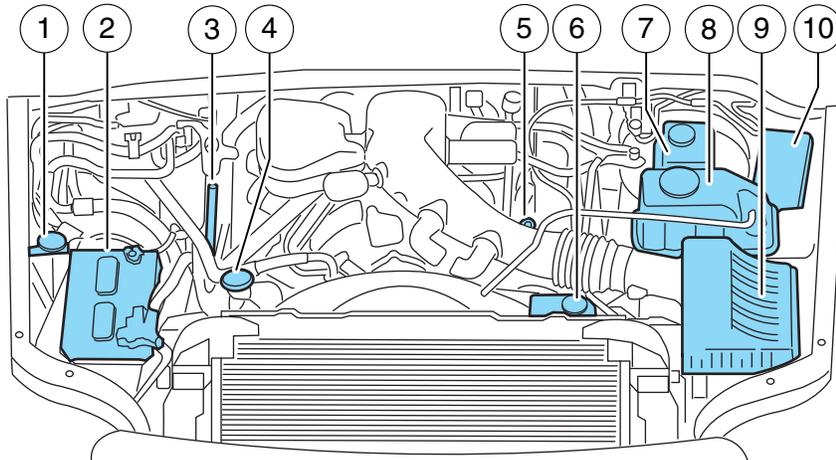
### 6.2L V8 gasoline engine



1. Windshield washer fluid reservoir
2. Engine oil dipstick
3. Automatic transmission fluid dipstick
4. Brake fluid reservoir
5. Engine coolant reservoir
6. Power distribution box
7. Air filter assembly
8. Power steering fluid reservoir
9. Engine oil filler cap
10. Battery

## Maintenance and Specifications

### 6.8L V10 gasoline engine



1. Windshield washer fluid reservoir
2. Battery
3. Automatic transmission fluid dipstick
4. Engine oil filler cap
5. Engine oil dipstick
6. Power steering fluid reservoir
7. Brake fluid reservoir
8. Engine coolant reservoir
9. Air filter assembly
10. Power distribution box

## Maintenance and Specifications

### WINDSHIELD WASHER FLUID

Add fluid to fill the reservoir if the level is low. In very cold weather, do not fill the reservoir completely.

Only use a washer fluid that meets Ford specifications. Do not use any special washer fluid such as windshield water repellent type fluid or bug wash. They may cause squeaking, chatter noise, streaking and smearing. Refer to *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* in this chapter.



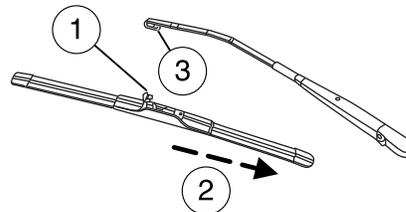
State or local regulations on volatile organic compounds may restrict the use of methanol, a common windshield washer antifreeze additive. Washer fluids containing non-methanol antifreeze agents should be used only if they provide cold weather protection without damaging the vehicle's paint finish, wiper blades or washer system.



**WARNING:** If you operate your vehicle in temperatures below 40°F (5°C), use washer fluid with antifreeze protection. Failure to use washer fluid with antifreeze protection in cold weather could result in impaired windshield vision and increase the risk of injury or accident.

### CHANGING THE WIPER BLADES

1. Pull the wiper arm away from the vehicle. Pry open the lock cover with your thumb (1) to release the blade and pull the wiper blade down toward the windshield to remove it from the arm (2).



2. Insert the wiper arm hook into the wiper arm (3).

Replace wiper blades at least once per year for optimum performance.

Poor wiper quality can be improved by cleaning the wiper blades and the windshield. Refer to *Windows and wiper blades* in the *Cleaning* chapter.

370

## Maintenance and Specifications

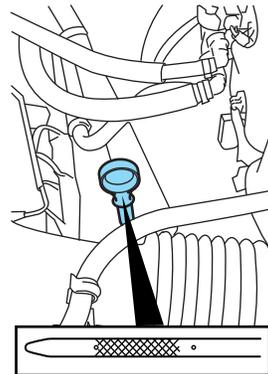
To prolong the life of the wiper blades, it is highly recommended to scrape off the ice on the windshield before turning on the wipers. The layer of ice has many sharp edges and can damage the micro edge of the wiper rubber element.

### ENGINE OIL

#### Checking the engine oil

Refer to the *scheduled maintenance information* for the appropriate intervals for checking the engine oil.

1. Make sure the vehicle is on level ground.
2. Turn the engine off and wait 15 minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan.
3. Set the parking brake and ensure the gearshift is securely latched in P (Park).
4. Open the hood. Protect yourself from engine heat.
5. Locate and carefully remove the engine oil dipstick.
  - 6.2L/6.8L gasoline engines only; for diesel engine information, refer to the diesel supplement.



6. Wipe the dipstick clean. Insert the dipstick fully, then remove it again.
  - If the oil level is **between the two holes**, the oil level is acceptable. **DO NOT ADD OIL.**
  - If the oil level is at or below the lower hole, add enough oil to raise the level to within the two holes.
  - Oil levels above the upper hole may cause engine damage. Some oil must be removed from the engine by a service technician.

## Maintenance and Specifications

7. Put the dipstick back in and ensure it is fully seated.

### Adding engine oil

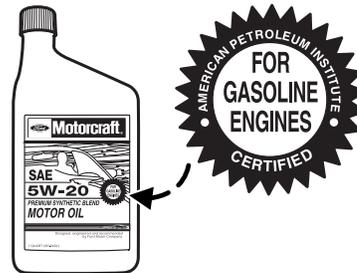
1. Check the engine oil. For instructions, refer to *Checking the engine oil* in this chapter.
2. If the engine oil level is not within the normal range, add only certified engine oil of the recommended viscosity. Remove the engine oil filler cap and use a funnel to pour the engine oil into the opening.
3. Recheck the engine oil level. Make sure the oil level is not above the normal operating range on the engine oil level dipstick.
4. Install the dipstick and ensure it is fully seated.
5. Fully install the engine oil filler cap by turning the filler cap clockwise 1/4 of a turn until three clicks are heard or until the cap is fully seated.

**To avoid possible oil loss, DO NOT operate the vehicle with the engine oil level dipstick and/or the engine oil filler cap removed.**

### Engine oil and filter recommendations

Look for this certification trademark.

(6.2L/6.8L gasoline engines only. For diesel engine information, refer to the diesel supplement).



### Use SAE 5W-20 engine oil

Only use oils certified for gasoline engines by the American Petroleum Institute (API). An oil with this trademark symbol conforms to the current engine and emission system protection standards and fuel economy requirements of the International Lubricant Standardization and Approval Committee (ILSAC), comprised of U.S. and Japanese automobile manufacturers.

To protect your engine and engine's warranty, use Motorcraft® SAE 5W-20 or an equivalent SAE 5W-20 oil meeting Ford specification WSS-M2C930-A. **SAE 5W-20 oil provides optimum fuel economy and durability performance meeting all requirements for your**

372

## Maintenance and Specifications

**vehicle's engine.** Refer to *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* later in this chapter for more information.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives, cleaners or other engine treatments. They are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that is not covered by Ford warranty.

Change your engine oil and filter according to the appropriate schedule listed in the *scheduled maintenance information*.

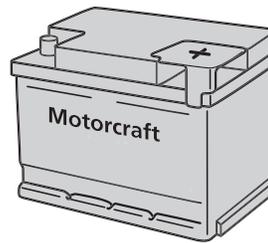
Ford production and Motorcraft® replacement oil filters are designed for added engine protection and long life. If a replacement oil filter is used that does not meet Ford material and design specifications, start-up engine noises or knock may be experienced.

It is recommended you use the appropriate Motorcraft® oil filter or another with equivalent performance for your engine application.

### BATTERY



**WARNING:** This vehicle may be equipped with more than one battery, removal of cable from only one battery does not disconnect the vehicle electrical system. Be sure to disconnect cables from all batteries when disconnecting power. Failure to do so may cause serious personal injury or property damage.



Your vehicle is equipped with a Motorcraft® maintenance-free battery which normally does not require additional water during its life of service.

**If your battery has a cover/shield, make sure it is reinstalled after the battery has been cleaned or replaced.**

For longer, trouble-free operation, keep the top of the battery clean and dry. Also, make certain the battery cables are always tightly fastened to the battery terminals.

If you see any corrosion on the battery or terminals, remove the cables from the terminals and clean with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.

## Maintenance and Specifications

It is recommended that the negative battery cable terminal be disconnected from the battery if you plan to store your vehicle for an extended period of time. This will minimize the discharge of your battery during storage.

**Note: Electrical or electronic accessories or components added to the vehicle by the dealer or the owner may adversely affect battery performance and durability.**



**WARNING:** Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide proper ventilation.



**WARNING:** When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and/or damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.



**WARNING:** Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.



**WARNING:** Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. **Wash hands after handling.**

Because your vehicle's engine is electronically controlled by a computer, some control conditions are maintained by power from the battery. When the battery is disconnected or a new battery is installed, the engine must relearn its idle and fuel trim strategy for optimum driveability and performance. To begin this process:

1. With the vehicle at a complete stop, set the parking brake.
2. Put the gearshift in P (Park), turn off all accessories and start the engine.

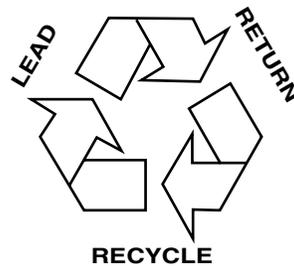
374

## Maintenance and Specifications

3. Run the engine until it reaches normal operating temperature.
4. Allow the engine to idle for at least one minute.
5. Turn the A/C on and allow the engine to idle for at least one minute.
6. Release the parking brake. With your foot on the brake pedal and with the A/C on, put the vehicle in D (Drive) and allow the engine to idle for at least one minute.
7. Drive the vehicle to complete the relearning process.
  - The vehicle may need to be driven 10 miles (16 km) or more to relearn the idle and fuel trim strategy.
  - **If you do not allow the engine to relearn its idle trim, the idle quality of your vehicle may be adversely affected until the idle trim is eventually relearned.**

If the battery has been disconnected or a new battery has been installed, the clock and radio settings must be reset once the battery is reconnected.

- Always dispose of automotive batteries in a responsible manner. Follow your local authorized standards for disposal. Call your local authorized recycling center to find out more about recycling automotive batteries.



### ENGINE COOLANT

#### Checking engine coolant

The concentration and level of engine coolant should be checked at the intervals listed in *scheduled maintenance information*. The coolant concentration should be maintained at 50/50 coolant and distilled water. For best results, coolant concentration should be tested with a refractometer such as Rotunda tool 300-ROB75240E available from your dealer. The level of coolant should be maintained at the FULL COLD level or within the COLD FILL RANGE in the coolant reservoir. If the level falls below, add coolant per the instructions in the *Adding engine coolant* section.

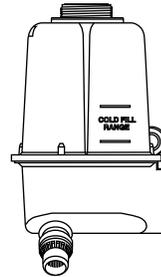
Your vehicle was factory-filled with a 50/50 engine coolant and water concentration. If the concentration of coolant falls below 40% or above

## Maintenance and Specifications

60%, the engine parts could become damaged or not work properly. **A 50/50 mixture of coolant and water provides the following:**

- **Increased freeze point suppression**
- **Increased boiling point.**
- **Protection against rust and other forms of corrosion.**
- **Proper function of calibrated gauges.**

When the engine is cold, check the level of the engine coolant in the reservoir.



- The engine coolant should be at the FULL COLD level, or within the COLD FILL or MIN / MAX range as listed on the engine coolant reservoir (depending upon application).
- Refer to *scheduled maintenance information* for service interval schedules.

If the engine coolant has not been checked at the recommended interval, the engine coolant reservoir may become low or empty. If the reservoir is low or empty, add engine coolant to the reservoir. Refer to *Adding engine coolant* in this chapter.

**Note:** Automotive fluids are not interchangeable; do not use engine coolant/antifreeze or windshield washer fluid outside of its specified function and vehicle location.

### Adding engine coolant

When adding coolant, make sure it is a 50/50 mixture of engine coolant and distilled water. Add the mixture to the coolant reservoir, **when the engine is cool**, until the appropriate fill level is obtained. If coolant is filled to the COLD FILL RANGE or FULL COLD level when the engine is not cool, the system will remain underfilled.



**WARNING:** Do not add engine coolant when the engine is hot. Steam and scalding liquids released from a hot cooling system can burn you badly. Also, you can be burned if you spill coolant on hot engine parts.

## Maintenance and Specifications



**WARNING:** Do not put engine coolant in the windshield washer fluid container. If sprayed on the windshield, engine coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.

- **DO NOT MIX** different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle. Make sure the correct coolant is used. Mixing of engine coolants may harm your engine's cooling system. The use of an improper coolant may harm engine and cooling system components and may void the warranty. Refer to *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* in this chapter.
- A large amount of water without engine coolant may be added, in case of emergency, to reach a vehicle service location. In this instance, the cooling system must be drained and refilled with a 50/50 mixture of engine coolant and distilled water as soon as possible. Water alone (without engine coolant) can cause engine damage from corrosion, overheating or freezing.
- **Do not use alcohol, methanol, brine or any engine coolants mixed with alcohol or methanol antifreeze (coolant).** Alcohol and other liquids can cause engine damage from overheating or freezing.
- **Do not add extra inhibitors or additives to the coolant.** These can be harmful and compromise the corrosion protection of the engine coolant.

For vehicles with overflow coolant systems with a non-pressurized cap on the coolant recovery system, add coolant to the coolant recovery reservoir when the engine is cool. Add the proper mixture of coolant and distilled water to the FULL COLD level. For all other vehicles which have a coolant degas system with a pressurized cap, or if it is necessary to remove the coolant pressure relief cap on the radiator of a vehicle with an overflow system, follow these steps to add engine coolant.



**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the engine is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system is under pressure; steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when the cap is loosened slightly.

Add the proper mixture of coolant and water to the cooling system by following these steps:

1. Before you begin, turn the engine off and let it cool.

## Maintenance and Specifications

2. When the engine is cool, wrap a thick cloth around the coolant pressure relief cap on the coolant reservoir (a translucent plastic bottle). Slowly turn cap counterclockwise (left) until pressure begins to release.
3. Step back while the pressure releases.
4. When you are sure that all the pressure has been released, use the cloth to turn it counterclockwise and remove the cap.
5. Fill the coolant reservoir slowly with the proper coolant mixture, to within the COLD FILL RANGE or the FULL COLD level on the reservoir. If you removed the radiator cap in an overflow system, fill the radiator until the coolant is visible and radiator is almost full.
6. Replace the cap. Turn until tightly installed. Cap must be tightly installed to prevent coolant loss.

After any coolant has been added, check the coolant concentration (refer to *Checking engine coolant*). If the concentration is not 50/50, drain some coolant and adjust the concentration. It may take several drains and additions to obtain a 50/50 coolant concentration.

Whenever coolant has been added, the coolant level in the coolant reservoir should be checked the next few times you drive the vehicle. If necessary, add enough 50/50 concentration of engine coolant and distilled water to bring the liquid level to the proper level.

If you have to add more than 1.0 quart (1.0 liter) of engine coolant per month, have your authorized dealer check the engine cooling system. Your cooling system may have a leak. Operating an engine with a low level of coolant can result in engine overheating and possible engine damage.

### Recycled engine coolant

Ford Motor Company does NOT recommend the use of recycled engine coolant since a Ford-approved recycling process is not yet available.



Used engine coolant should be disposed of in an appropriate manner. Follow your community's regulations and standards for recycling and disposing of automotive fluids.

### Coolant refill capacity

To find out how much fluid your vehicle's cooling system can hold, refer to *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* in this chapter.

## Maintenance and Specifications

**If your vehicle is equipped with a diesel engine**, refer to the *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* section of your diesel supplement.

Fill your engine coolant reservoir as outlined previously in the *Adding engine coolant* section.

### Severe climates

If you drive in extremely cold climates:

- **It may be necessary to increase the coolant concentration above 50%.**
- **NEVER increase the coolant concentration above 60%.**
- **A coolant concentration of 60% will provide improved freeze point protection. Increased engine coolant concentrations above 60% will decrease the overheat protection characteristics of the engine coolant and may cause engine damage.**
- **If available, refer to the chart on the coolant container to ensure the coolant concentration in your vehicle will provide adequate freeze protection at the temperatures in which you drive in the winter months.**

If you drive in extremely hot climates:

- **It is still necessary to maintain the coolant concentration above 40%.**
- **NEVER decrease the coolant concentration below 40%.**
- **Decreased engine coolant concentrations below 40% will decrease the corrosion/freeze protection characteristics of the engine coolant and may cause engine damage.**
- **If available, refer to the chart on the coolant container to ensure the coolant concentration in your vehicle will provide adequate protection at the temperatures in which you drive.**

Vehicles driven year-round in non-extreme climates should use a 50/50 mixture of engine coolant and distilled water for optimum cooling system and engine protection.

### What you should know about fail-safe cooling (if equipped)

If the engine coolant supply is depleted, this feature allows the vehicle to be driven temporarily before incremental component damage is incurred. The “fail-safe” distance depends on ambient temperatures, vehicle load and terrain.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### **How fail-safe cooling works**

If the engine begins to overheat:

- The engine coolant temperature gauge will move to the red (hot) area.
- The message center will indicate the engine is overheating.
- The service engine soon  indicator will illuminate.

If the engine reaches a preset over-temperature condition, the engine will automatically switch to alternating cylinder operation. Each disabled cylinder acts as an air pump and cools the engine.

When this occurs the vehicle will still operate. However:

- The engine power will be limited.
- The air conditioning system will be disabled.

Continued operation will increase the engine temperature and the engine will completely shut down, causing steering and braking effort to increase.

Once the engine temperature cools, the engine can be re-started. Take your vehicle to an authorized dealer as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

### **When fail-safe mode is activated**

You have limited engine power when in the fail-safe mode, so drive the vehicle with caution. The vehicle will not be able to maintain high-speed operation and the engine will run rough. Remember that the engine is capable of completely shutting down automatically to prevent engine damage; therefore:

1. Pull off the road as soon as safely possible and turn off the engine.
2. Arrange for the vehicle to be taken to an authorized dealer.
3. If this is not possible, wait a short period for the engine to cool.
4. Check the coolant level and replenish if low.



**WARNING:** Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

5. Re-start the engine and take your vehicle to an authorized dealer.

**Driving the vehicle without repairing the engine problem increases the chance of engine damage. Take your vehicle to an authorized dealer as soon as possible.**

380

## Maintenance and Specifications

### Engine fluid temperature management (except 6.8L V10)

Your vehicle has been designed to pull a trailer, but because of the added load, the vehicle's engine may temporarily reach higher temperatures during severe operating conditions such as ascending a long or steep grade while pulling a trailer in hot ambient temperatures.

At this time, you may notice your engine coolant temperature gauge needle move toward the H and the POWER REDUCED TO LOWER TEMP message may appear on the message center.

You may notice a reduction in the vehicle's speed caused by reduced engine power. Your vehicle has been designed to enter this mode if certain high temperature/high load conditions take place in order to manage the engine's fluid temperatures. The amount of speed reduction will depend on the vehicle loading, towing, grade, ambient temperature, and other factors. If this occurs, there is no need to pull off the road. The vehicle can continue to be driven while this message is active.



**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of collision and injury, be prepared that the vehicle speed may reduce and the vehicle may not be able to accelerate with full power until the fluid temperatures reduce.

The air conditioning may also cycle on and off during severe operating conditions to protect overheating of the engine. When the engine coolant temperature decreases to a more normal operating temperature, the air conditioning will turn on once again.

If you notice any of the following:

- the engine coolant temperature gauge moves fully into the red (hot) area
  - the coolant temperature warning light illuminates
  - the service engine soon indicator illuminates
1. Pull off the road as soon as safely possible and place the vehicle in P (Park).
  2. Leave the engine running until the coolant temperature gauge needle moves away from the H range. After several minutes, if this does not happen, follow the remaining steps.
  3. Turn the engine off and wait for it to cool before checking the coolant level.

## Maintenance and Specifications



**WARNING:** Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

4. If the coolant level is normal, you may restart your engine and continue on.
5. If the coolant is low, add coolant, restart the engine and take your vehicle to an authorized dealer. See *Adding engine coolant* in this chapter for more information.

Refer to fail-safe cooling for additional information.

### FUEL FILTER

Your vehicle is equipped with a lifetime fuel filter (gasoline vehicles only) that is integrated with the fuel tank. Regular maintenance or replacement is not needed. For diesel engine information, refer to the diesel supplement.

### WHAT YOU SHOULD KNOW ABOUT AUTOMOTIVE FUELS

#### Important safety precautions



**WARNING:** Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.



**WARNING:** The fuel system may be under pressure. If the fuel filler cap is venting vapor or if you hear a hissing sound, wait until it stops before completely removing the fuel filler cap. Otherwise, fuel may spray out and injure you or others.



**WARNING:** If you do not use the proper fuel filler cap, excessive vacuum in the fuel tank may damage the fuel system or cause the fuel cap to disengage in a collision, which may result in serious personal injury.



**WARNING:** Automotive fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.



**WARNING:** Fuel ethanol and gasoline may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.

## Maintenance and Specifications

Observe the following guidelines when handling automotive fuel:

- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before fueling your vehicle.
- Always turn off the vehicle before fueling.
- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuels such as gasoline and ethanol are highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed, call a physician immediately, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be visible for hours.
- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling too much fuel vapor of any kind can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.
- Avoid getting fuel liquid in your eyes. If fuel is splashed in the eyes, remove contact lenses (if worn), flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.
- Fuels can also be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If fuel is splashed on the skin and/or clothing, promptly remove contaminated clothing and wash skin thoroughly with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact with fuel liquid or vapor causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking “Antabuse” or other forms of disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing gasoline and/or ethanol vapors, or skin contact could cause an adverse reaction. In sensitive individuals, serious personal injury or sickness may result. If fuel is splashed on the skin, promptly wash skin thoroughly with soap and water. Consult a physician immediately if you experience an adverse reaction.
- FFV fuel tanks may contain zero to 85% ethanol. Any fuel blends containing gasoline and ethanol should be treated the same as “Fuel Ethanol.” To identify if your vehicle is an FFV, it may be equipped with a yellow fuel cap with the text “E85/Gasoline”, or check if there is a label on the fuel filler door.



## Maintenance and Specifications

Pure ethanol is the alcohol which is the intoxicating agent in liquor, beer and wine. It is distilled from the fermentation of plants such as field corn and sugar cane. When ethanol is produced for use in motor fuels, a small amount of gasoline is added to make it unfit for beverage use. The resulting ethanol blend is called denatured fuel ethanol meaning that it is denatured with 2% to 5% gasoline and is suitable for automotive use.

During the summer season, fuel ethanol may contain a maximum of 85% denatured ethanol (Ed85) and 15% unleaded gasoline. The fuel ethanol has a higher octane rating than unleaded regular or premium gasoline and this allows the design of engines with greater efficiency and power.

Winter blends may contain up to 75% denatured ethanol (Ed75) and up to 25% unleaded gasoline to enhance cold engine starts. Severely cold weather may require additional measures for reliable starting. Refer to *Starting* in the *Driving* chapter.

Ethanol is more chemically active than gasoline. It corrodes some metals and causes some plastic and rubber components to swell, break down or become brittle and crack, especially when mixed with gasoline. Special materials and procedures have been developed for flexible fuel vehicles and the dispensers used by ethanol fuel providers.



**WARNING:** Flexible fuel components and standard unleaded gasoline fuel components are not interchangeable. If your vehicle is not serviced in accordance with flexible fuel vehicles procedures, damage may occur and your warranty may be invalidated.



**WARNING:** When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the filler neck. Never smoke while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Care should be taken to avoid inhaling excess fumes.



**WARNING:** The flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity, which can cause a fire if fuel is pumped into an ungrounded fuel container.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### Refueling



**WARNING:** Fuel vapor burns violently and a fuel fire can cause severe injuries. To help avoid injuries to you and others:

- Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island;
- Turn off your engine when you are refueling;
- Do not smoke if you are near fuel or refueling your vehicle;
- Keep sparks, flames and smoking materials away from fuel;
- Stay outside your vehicle and do not leave the fuel pump unattended when refueling your vehicle — this is against the law in some places;
- Keep children away from the fuel pump; never let children pump fuel.
- Do not use personal electronic devices while refueling.

Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

- Place approved fuel container on the ground.
- DO NOT fill a fuel container while it is in the vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container while filling.
- DO NOT use a device that would hold the fuel pump handle in the fill position.

### Fuel filler cap

When fueling your vehicle:

1. Turn the engine off.
2. Carefully turn the filler cap counterclockwise until it spins off.
3. Pull to remove the cap from the fuel filler pipe.
4. To install the cap, align the tabs on the cap with the notches on the filler pipe.
5. Turn the filler cap clockwise until it clicks.

If the check fuel cap indicator comes on and stays on after you start the engine, the fuel filler cap may not be properly installed. Turn off the engine, remove the fuel filler cap, align the cap properly and reinstall it.

**If you must replace the fuel filler cap, replace it with a fuel filler cap that is designed for your vehicle. The vehicle warranty may**

385

## Maintenance and Specifications

**be void for any damage to the fuel tank or fuel system if the correct genuine Ford or Motorcraft® fuel filler cap is not used.**



**WARNING:** The fuel system may be under pressure. If the fuel filler cap is venting vapor or if you hear a hissing sound, wait until it stops before completely removing the fuel filler cap. Otherwise, fuel may spray out and injure you or others.



**WARNING:** If you do not use the proper fuel filler cap, excessive pressure or vacuum in the fuel tank may damage the fuel system or cause the fuel cap to disengage in a collision, which may result in possible personal injury.

### ***FFV (Flex Fuel Vehicle) fuel cap***

If your vehicle is FFV capable, it will have a yellow colored fuel cap.

### **Choosing the right fuel**

If your vehicle is a flexible fuel vehicle (FFV), use only UNLEADED FUEL and FUEL ETHANOL (Ed75–Ed85).

If your vehicle is not a flexible fuel vehicle (FFV), then only use UNLEADED fuel or UNLEADED fuel blended with a maximum of 10% ethanol. Do not use fuel ethanol (E85), diesel, methanol, leaded fuel or any other fuel.

The use of leaded fuel is prohibited by law and could damage your vehicle.

Your vehicle was not designed to use fuel or fuel additives with metallic compounds, including manganese-based additives.

**Note:** Use of any fuel other than those recommended may cause powertrain damage, a loss of vehicle performance, and repairs may not be covered under warranty.

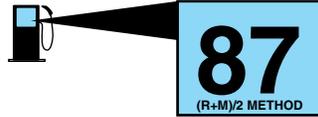
### **Octane recommendations**

Your vehicle is designed to use “Regular” unleaded gasoline with a pump (R+M)/2 octane rating of 87. Some stations offer fuels posted as “Regular” with an octane rating below 87, particularly in high altitude areas. Fuels with octane levels below 87 are not recommended.

386

## Maintenance and Specifications

Do not be concerned if your engine sometimes knocks lightly. However, if it knocks heavily under most driving conditions while you are using fuel with the recommended octane rating, see your authorized dealer to prevent any engine damage.



### ***FFV engine (if equipped)***

If your vehicle is flex fuel capable, it is designed to use Fuel Ethanol (Ed75–Ed85), “Regular” unleaded gasoline or any mixture of the two fuels.

**Use of other fuels such as Fuel Methanol may cause powertrain damage, a loss of vehicle performance, and your warranty may be invalidated.**

It is best not to alternate repeatedly between gasoline and E85. If you do switch fuels, it is recommended that you add as much fuel as possible—at least half a tank. Do not add less than five gallons (18.9L) when refueling. You should drive the vehicle immediately after refueling for at least 5 miles (8 km) to allow the vehicle to adapt to the change in ethanol concentration.

If you exclusively use E85 fuel, it is recommended to fill the fuel tank with regular unleaded gasoline at each scheduled oil change.

### **Fuel quality**

#### *Unleaded gasoline engines*

If you experience starting, rough idle or hesitation driveability problems during a cold start, try a different brand of “Regular” unleaded gasoline. “Premium” unleaded gasoline is not recommended for vehicles designed to use “Regular” unleaded gasoline because it may cause these problems to become more pronounced. If the problems persist, see your authorized dealer.

#### *FFV engines*

If you experience starting, rough idle or hesitation driveability problems during a cold start, try a different brand of E85 fuel. If the driveability problems continue, fill the vehicle with regular unleaded gasoline and drive vehicle normally until gasoline is used. See your authorized dealer if the problem persists.

## Maintenance and Specifications

Do not add aftermarket fuel additive products to your fuel tank. It should not be necessary to add any aftermarket products to your fuel tank if you continue to use high quality fuel of the recommended octane rating. These products have not been approved for your engine and could cause damage to the fuel system. Repairs to correct the effects of using an aftermarket product in your fuel may not be covered by your warranty.

Many of the world's automakers approved the World-Wide Fuel Charter that recommends gasoline specifications to provide improved performance and emission control system protection for your vehicle. Gasolines that meet the World-Wide Fuel Charter should be used when available. Ask your fuel supplier about gasolines that meet the World-Wide Fuel Charter.

### ***Diesel engine (if equipped)***

Refer to the diesel supplement for information regarding diesel fuel recommendations and requirements of your diesel-powered truck.

### **Cleaner air**

Ford endorses the use of reformulated "cleaner-burning" gasolines to improve air quality, per the recommendations in the *Choosing the right fuel* section.

### **Running out of fuel**

Avoid running out of fuel because this situation may have an adverse effect on powertrain components.

If you have run out of fuel:

- You may need to cycle the ignition from off to on several times after refueling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. On restarting, cranking time will take a few seconds longer than normal.
- Normally, adding 1 gallon (3.8L) of fuel is enough to restart the engine. If the vehicle is out of fuel and on a steep grade, more than 1 gallon (3.8L) may be required.
- The service engine soon  indicator may come on. For more information on the service engine soon  indicator, refer to *Warning lights and chimes* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### ESSENTIALS OF GOOD FUEL ECONOMY

#### Measuring techniques

Your best source of information about actual fuel economy is you, the driver. You must gather information as accurately and consistently as possible. Fuel expense, frequency of fill-ups or fuel gauge readings are NOT accurate as a measure of fuel economy. We do not recommend taking fuel economy measurements during the first 1,000 miles (1,600 km) of driving (engine break-in period). You will get a more accurate measurement after 2,000 miles–3,000 miles (3,000 km–5,000 km).

#### Filling the tank

The advertised fuel capacity of the fuel tank on your vehicle is equal to the rated refill capacity of the fuel tank as listed in the *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* section of this chapter.

The advertised capacity is the amount of the indicated capacity and the empty reserve combined. Indicated capacity is the difference in the amount of fuel in a full tank and a tank when the fuel gauge indicates empty. Empty reserve is the small amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank after the fuel gauge indicates empty.

**The amount of usable fuel in the empty reserve varies and should not be relied upon to increase driving range. When refueling your vehicle after the fuel gauge indicates empty, you might not be able to refill the full amount of the advertised capacity of the fuel tank due to the empty reserve still present in the tank.**

For consistent results when filling the fuel tank:

- Turn the engine/ignition switch to the off position prior to refueling, an error in the reading will result if the engine is left running.
- Use the same filling rate setting (low — medium — high) each time the tank is filled.
- Allow no more than two automatic click-offs when filling.
- Always use fuel with the recommended octane rating.
- Use a known quality gasoline, preferably a national brand.
- Have the vehicle loading and distribution the same every time.

Your results will be most accurate if your filling method is consistent.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### Calculating fuel economy

1. Fill the fuel tank completely and record the initial odometer reading (in miles or kilometers).
2. Each time you fill the tank, record the amount of fuel added (in gallons or liters).
3. After at least three to five tank fill-ups, fill the fuel tank and record the current odometer reading.
4. Subtract your initial odometer reading from the current odometer reading.
5. Follow one of the simple calculations in order to determine fuel economy:

Calculation 1: **Divide total miles traveled by total gallons used.**

Calculation 2: **Multiply liters used by 100, then divide by total kilometers traveled.**

Keep a record for at least one month and record the type of driving (city or highway). This will provide an accurate estimate of the vehicle's fuel economy under current driving conditions. Additionally, keeping records during summer and winter will show how temperature impacts fuel economy. In general, lower temperatures give lower fuel economy.

### Driving style — good driving and fuel economy habits

Give consideration to the lists that follow and you may be able to change a number of variables and improve your fuel economy.

#### **Habits**

- Smooth, moderate operation can yield up to 10% savings in fuel.
- Steady speeds without stopping will usually give the best fuel economy.
- Idling for long periods of time (greater than one minute) may waste fuel.
- Anticipate stopping; slowing down may eliminate the need to stop.
- Sudden or hard accelerations may reduce fuel economy.
- Slow down gradually.
- Driving at reasonable speeds (traveling at 55 mph [88 km/h] uses 15% less fuel than traveling at 65 mph [105 km/h]).
- Revving the engine before turning it off may reduce fuel economy.
- Using the air conditioner or defroster may reduce fuel economy.

390

## Maintenance and Specifications

- You may want to turn off the speed control in hilly terrain if unnecessary shifting between the top gears occurs. Unnecessary shifting of this type could result in reduced fuel economy.
- Warming up a vehicle on cold mornings is not required and may reduce fuel economy.
- Resting your foot on the brake pedal while driving may reduce fuel economy.
- Combine errands and minimize stop-and-go driving.

### **Maintenance**

- Keep tires properly inflated and use only recommended size.
- Operating a vehicle with the wheels out of alignment will reduce fuel economy.
- Use recommended engine oil. Refer to *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* in this chapter.
- Perform all regularly scheduled maintenance items. Follow the recommended maintenance schedule and owner maintenance checks found in *scheduled maintenance information*.

### **Conditions**

- Heavily loading a vehicle or towing a trailer may reduce fuel economy at any speed.
- Carrying unnecessary weight may reduce fuel economy (approximately 1 mpg [0.4 km/L] is lost for every 400 lb [180 kg] of weight carried).
- Adding certain accessories to your vehicle (for example bug deflectors, rollbars/light bars, running boards, ski/luggage racks) may reduce fuel economy.
- To maximize the fuel economy, drive with the tonneau cover installed (if equipped).
- Using fuel blended with alcohol may lower fuel economy.
- Fuel economy may decrease with lower temperatures during the first 8–10 miles (12–16 km) of driving.
- Driving on flat terrain offers improved fuel economy as compared to driving on hilly terrain.
- Transmissions give their best fuel economy when operated in the top cruise gear and with steady pressure on the gas pedal.
- Four-wheel-drive operation (if equipped) is less fuel efficient than two-wheel-drive operation.

## Maintenance and Specifications

- Close windows for high speed driving.

### EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM

Your vehicle is equipped with various emission control components and a catalytic converter which will enable your vehicle to comply with applicable exhaust emission standards. To make sure that the catalytic converter and other emission control components continue to work properly:

- Use only the specified fuel listed.
- Avoid running out of fuel.
- Do not turn off the ignition while your vehicle is moving, especially at high speeds.
- Have the items listed in *scheduled maintenance information* performed according to the specified schedule.

The scheduled maintenance items listed in *scheduled maintenance information* are essential to the life and performance of your vehicle and to its emissions system.

If other than Ford, Motorcraft® or Ford-authorized parts are used for maintenance replacements or for service of components affecting emission control, such non-Ford parts should be equivalent to genuine Ford Motor Company parts in performance and durability.



**WARNING:** Do not park, idle, or drive your vehicle in dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, which can start a fire.

Illumination of the service engine soon  indicator, charging system warning light or the temperature warning light, fluid leaks, strange odors, smoke or loss of engine power could indicate that the emission control system is not working properly.

An improperly operating or damaged exhaust system may allow exhaust to enter the vehicle. Have a damaged or improperly operating exhaust system inspected and repaired immediately.



**WARNING:** Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment.

## Maintenance and Specifications

Do not make any unauthorized changes to your vehicle or engine. By law, vehicle owners and anyone who manufactures, repairs, services, sells, leases, trades vehicles, or supervises a fleet of vehicles are not permitted to intentionally remove an emission control device or prevent it from working. Information about your vehicle's emission system is on the Vehicle Emission Control Information Decal located on or near the engine. This decal also lists engine displacement.

Please consult your *Warranty Guide* for complete emission warranty information.

### On-board diagnostics (OBD-II)

Your vehicle is equipped with a computer that monitors the engine's emission control system. This system is commonly known as the on-board diagnostics system (OBD-II). The OBD-II system protects the environment by ensuring that your vehicle continues to meet government emission standards. The OBD-II system also assists your authorized dealer in properly servicing your vehicle. When the service engine soon  indicator illuminates, the OBD-II system has detected a malfunction. Temporary malfunctions may cause the service engine soon  indicator to illuminate. Examples are:

1. The vehicle has run out of fuel—the engine may misfire or run poorly.
2. Poor fuel quality or water in the fuel—the engine may misfire or run poorly.
3. The fuel cap may not have been securely tightened. See *Fuel filler cap* in this chapter.
4. Driving through deep water—the electrical system may be wet.

These temporary malfunctions can be corrected by filling the fuel tank with good quality fuel, properly tightening the fuel cap or letting the electrical system dry out. After three driving cycles without these or any other temporary malfunctions present, the service engine soon  indicator should stay off the next time the engine is started. A driving cycle consists of a cold engine startup followed by mixed city/highway driving. No additional vehicle service is required.

If the service engine soon  indicator remains on, have your vehicle serviced at the first available opportunity. Although some malfunctions detected by the OBD-II may not have symptoms that are apparent, continued driving with the service engine soon  indicator on can result in increased emissions, lower fuel economy, reduced engine and transmission smoothness, and lead to more costly repairs.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### Readiness for Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) testing

Some state/provincial and local governments may have Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) programs to inspect the emission control equipment on your vehicle. Failure to pass this inspection could prevent you from getting a vehicle registration. Your vehicle may not pass the I/M test if the service engine soon  indicator is on or not working properly (bulb is burned out), or if the OBD-II system has determined that some of the emission control systems have not been properly checked. In this case, the vehicle is considered not ready for I/M testing.

If the service engine soon  indicator is on or the bulb does not work, the vehicle may need to be serviced. Refer to *On-board diagnostics (OBD-II)* in this chapter.

If the vehicle's engine or transmission has just been serviced, or the battery has recently run down or been replaced, the OBD-II system may indicate that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing. To determine if the vehicle is ready for I/M testing, turn the ignition key to the on position for 15 seconds without cranking the engine. If the service engine soon  indicator blinks eight times, it means that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing; if the service engine soon  indicator stays on solid, it means that the vehicle is ready for I/M testing.

The OBD-II system is designed to check the emission control system during normal driving. A complete check may take several days. If the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing, the following driving cycle consisting of mixed city and highway driving may be performed:

15 minutes of steady driving on an expressway/highway followed by 20 minutes of stop-and-go driving with at least four 30-second idle periods.

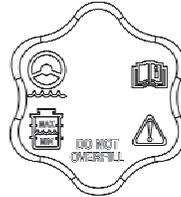
Allow the vehicle to sit for at least eight hours without starting the engine. Then, start the engine and complete the above driving cycle. The engine must warm up to its normal operating temperature. Once started, do not turn off the engine until the above driving cycle is complete. If the vehicle is still not ready for I/M testing, the above driving cycle will have to be repeated.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### POWER STEERING FLUID

Check the power steering fluid. Refer to *scheduled maintenance information*. If adding fluid is necessary, use only MERCON® ATF.

- Gasoline engine shown; diesel engine similar. Refer to *Identifying components in the engine compartment* in the diesel supplement.



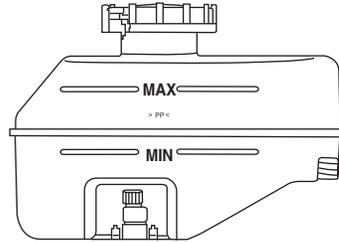
Check the fluid level when it is at ambient temperature, 20°F–80°F (-7°C–25°C):

1. Check the fluid level in the reservoir. It should be between the MIN and MAX range. Do not add fluid if the level is within this range.
2. If the fluid level is low. Add fluid to bring fluid level up to be between the MIN and MAX range.
3. Start the engine.
4. While the engine idles, turn the steering wheel left and right several times.
5. Turn the engine off.
6. Recheck the fluid level in the reservoir. Do not add fluid if the level is between the MIN and MAX range.
7. If the fluid is low, add fluid in small amounts, continuously checking the level until it is between the MIN and MAX range. Refer to *Maintenance products specifications and capacities* in this chapter for the proper fluid type. Be sure to put the cap back on the reservoir.

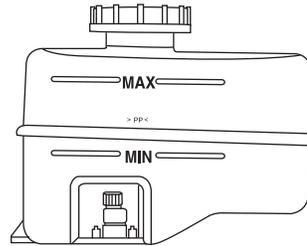
## Maintenance and Specifications

### BRAKE FLUID

- Vacuum boost system



- Hydroboost system



The fluid level will drop slowly as the brakes wear, and will rise when the brake components are replaced. Fluid levels between the top of the MIN and MAX lines are within the normal operating range; there is no need to add fluid. If the fluid levels are outside of the normal operating range, the performance of your brake system could be compromised; seek service from your authorized dealer immediately.

### TRANSMISSION FLUID

#### Checking automatic transmission fluid (if equipped)

Refer to your *scheduled maintenance information* for scheduled intervals for fluid checks and changes. Your transmission does not consume fluid. However, the fluid level should be checked if the transmission is not working properly, i.e., if the transmission slips or shifts slowly or if you notice some sign of fluid leakage.

Automatic transmission fluid expands when warmed. To obtain an accurate fluid check, drive the vehicle until it is at normal operating temperature (approximately 20 miles [30 km]). Verify that the transmission fluid temperature gauge, located on the instrument cluster, is within normal range.

1. Drive the vehicle 20 miles (30 km) or until it reaches normal operating temperature.

## Maintenance and Specifications

2. Park the vehicle on a level surface and engage the parking brake.
3. With the engine running, parking brake engaged and your foot on the brake pedal, move the gearshift lever through all of the gear ranges. Allow sufficient time for each gear to engage.
4. Latch the gearshift lever in P (Park) and leave the engine running.
5. Remove the dipstick, wiping it clean with a clean, dry lint free rag. If necessary, refer to *Identifying components in the engine compartment* in this chapter for the location of the dipstick.
6. Install the dipstick making sure it is fully seated in the filler tube.
7. Remove the dipstick and inspect the fluid level. The fluid should be in the designated area for normal operating temperature or ambient temperature.

Your vehicle is equipped with one of the following dipsticks.

### Low fluid level

Type A



Type B



Do not drive the vehicle if there is no indication of fluid on the dipstick and the ambient temperature is above 50°F (10°C).

### Correct fluid level

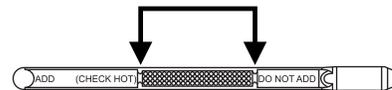
For vehicles equipped with 5-speed transmissions, the fluid should be checked at normal operating temperature 150°F-170°F (66°C-77°C) on a level surface. For vehicles equipped with 6-speed transmissions, the fluid should be checked at normal operating temperature 180°F-200°F (82°C-93°C) on a level surface. The normal operating temperature can be reached after approximately 20 miles (30 km) of driving.

## Maintenance and Specifications

Type A



Type B



For vehicles equipped with 5-speed transmissions, the transmission fluid should be in this range if at normal operating temperature (150°F-170°F [66°C-77°C]). For vehicles equipped with 6-speed transmissions, the transmission fluid should be in this range if at normal operating temperature (180°F-200°F [82°C-93°C]).

### High fluid level

Type A



Type B



Fluid levels above the safe range may result in transmission failure. An overfill condition of transmission fluid may cause shift and/or engagement concerns and/or possible damage.

High fluid levels can be caused by an overheating condition.

## Maintenance and Specifications

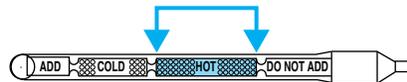
### **Adjusting automatic transmission fluid levels**

Before adding any fluid, make sure the correct type is used. The type of fluid used is normally indicated on the dipstick handle and also in the *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* section in this chapter.

### **Use of a non-approved automatic transmission fluid may cause internal transmission component damage.**

If necessary, add fluid in 1/2 pint (250 ml) increments through the filler tube until the level is correct.

Type A



Type B



If an overfill occurs, excess fluid should be removed by a qualified technician.

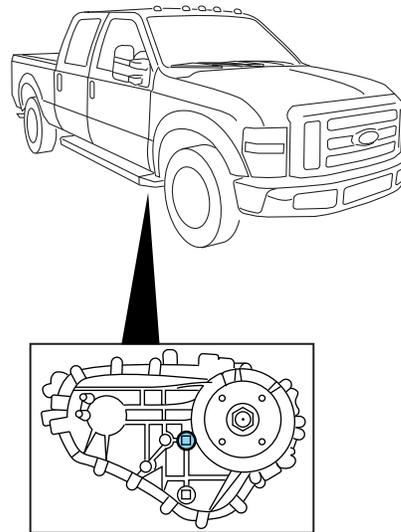
### **An overfill condition of transmission fluid may cause shift and/or engagement concerns and/or possible damage.**

Do not use supplemental transmission fluid additives, treatments or cleaning agents. The use of these materials may affect transmission operation and result in damage to internal transmission components.

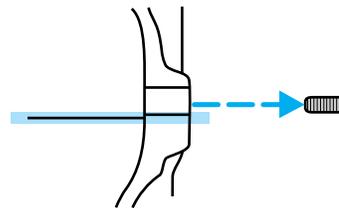
## Maintenance and Specifications

### TRANSFER CASE FLUID (IF EQUIPPED)

1. Clean the filler plug.
2. Remove the filler plug and inspect the fluid level.



3. Add only enough fluid through the filler opening so that the fluid level is at the bottom of the opening.



Use only fluid that meets Ford specifications. Refer to the *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* section in this chapter.

### AIR FILTER

Refer to the *scheduled maintenance information* for the appropriate intervals for changing the air filter element.

When changing the air filter element, use only the Motorcraft® air filter element listed. Refer to *Motorcraft® part numbers* in this chapter.

400

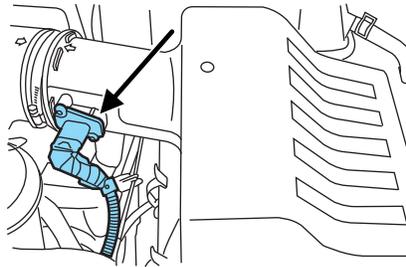
## Maintenance and Specifications

The following procedure is for vehicles equipped with a gasoline engine. If your vehicle is equipped with a diesel engine, refer to the diesel supplement.

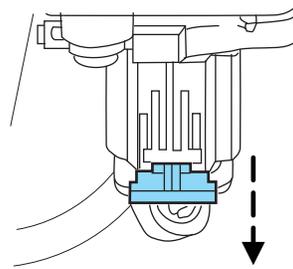
**Note:** Do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

### Changing the air filter element

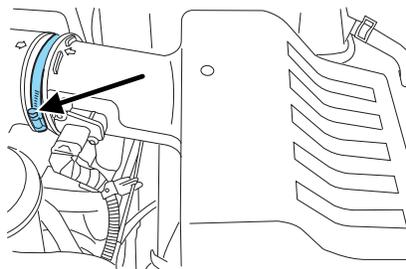
1. Locate the mass air flow sensor electrical connector on the air outlet tube. This connector will need to be unplugged.



2. Reposition the locking clip on the connector (connector shown from below for clarity), squeeze the connector and pull it off of the air outlet tube.



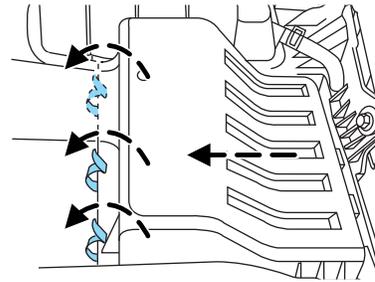
3. Clean the area around the air tube to air cover connection to prevent debris from entering the system and then loosen the bolt on the air tube clamp so the clamp is no longer snug to the air tube. It is not necessary to completely remove the clamp.



4. Pull the air tube off from the air cleaner housing.

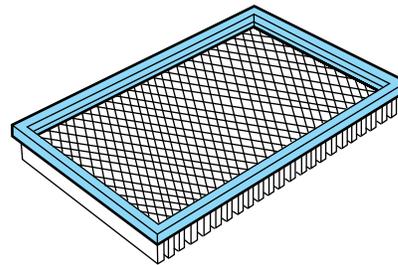
## Maintenance and Specifications

5. Release the three clamps that secure the cover to the air filter housing. Push the air filter cover toward the center of the vehicle and up slightly to release it.



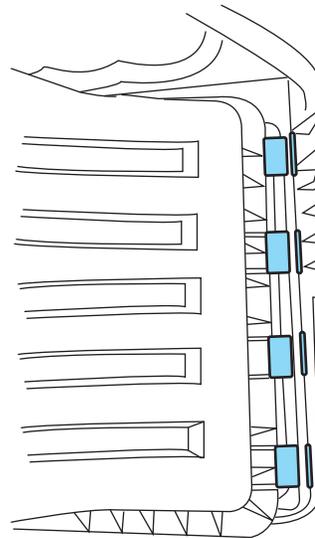
6. Remove the air filter element from the air filter housing.

7. Install a new air filter element.



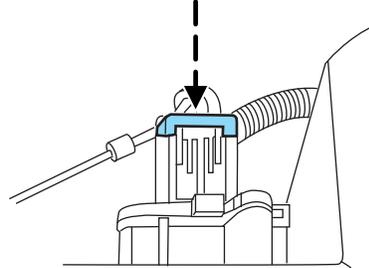
8. Replace the air filter housing cover and secure the clamps. Be careful not to crimp the filter element edges between the air filter housing and cover and ensure that the tabs on the edge are properly aligned into the slots.

9. Slip the air tube onto the air filter housing and tighten the air-tube clamp bolt snugly, but do not overtighten it.



## Maintenance and Specifications

10. Reconnect the mass air flow sensor electrical connector to the outlet tube. Make sure the locking tab on the connector is in the “locked” position (connector shown from below for clarity).



**Note:** Failure to use the correct air filter element may result in severe engine damage. The customer warranty may be void for any damage to the engine if the correct air filter element is not used.

### VEHICLE STORAGE

If you plan on storing your vehicle for an extended period of time (30 days or more), refer to the following maintenance recommendations to ensure your vehicle stays in good operating condition.

All motor vehicles and their components were engineered and tested for reliable, regular driving. Long term storage under various conditions may lead to component degradation or failure unless specific precautions are taken to preserve the components.

#### *General*

- Store all vehicles in a dry, ventilated place.
- Protect from sunlight, if possible.
- If vehicles are stored outside, they require regular maintenance to protect against rust and damage.

#### *Body*

- Wash vehicle thoroughly to remove dirt, grease, oil, tar or mud from exterior surfaces, rear-wheel housing and underside of front fenders. See the *Cleaning* chapter for more information.
- Periodically wash vehicles stored in exposed locations.
- Touch-up raw or primed metal to prevent rust.
- Cover chrome and stainless steel parts with a thick coat of auto wax to prevent discoloration. Re-wax as necessary when the vehicle is washed. See the *Cleaning* chapter for more information.
- Lubricate all hood, door and trunk lid hinges, and latches with a light grade oil. See the *Cleaning* chapter for more information.

## Maintenance and Specifications

- Cover interior trim to prevent fading.
- Keep all rubber parts free from oil and solvents.

### *Engine*

- The engine oil and filter should be changed prior to storage, as used engine oil contain contaminants that may cause engine damage.
- Start the engine every 15 days. Run at fast idle until it reaches normal operating temperature.
- With your foot on the brake, shift through all the gears while the engine is running.

### *Fuel system*

- Fill the fuel tank with high-quality fuel until the first automatic shutoff of the fuel pump nozzle.

**Note:** During extended periods of vehicle storage (30 days or more), fuel may deteriorate due to oxidation. Add a quality gas stabilizer product to the vehicle fuel system whenever actual or expected storage periods exceed 30 days. Follow the instructions on the additive label. The vehicle should then be operated at idle speed to circulate the additive throughout the fuel system.

### *Cooling system*

- Protect against freezing temperatures.
- When removing vehicle from storage, check coolant fluid level. Confirm there are no cooling system leaks, and fluid is at the recommended level.

### *Battery*

- Check and recharge as necessary. Keep connections clean.
- If storing your vehicle for more than 30 days without recharging the battery, it may be advisable to disconnect the battery cables to ensure battery charge is maintained for quick starting.

**Note:** If battery cables are disconnected, it will be necessary to reset memory features.

### *Brakes*

- Make sure brakes and parking brake are fully released.

### *Tires*

- Maintain recommended air pressure.

404

## Maintenance and Specifications

### *Miscellaneous*

- Make sure all linkages, cables, levers and pins under vehicle are covered with grease to prevent rust.
- Move vehicles at least 25 feet (8 m) every 15 days to lubricate working parts and prevent corrosion.

### **Removing vehicle from storage**

When your vehicle is ready to come out of storage, do the following:

- Wash your vehicle to remove any dirt or grease film build-up on window surfaces.
- Check windshield wipers for any deterioration.
- Check under the hood for any foreign material that may have collected during storage (mice/squirrel nests).
- Check the exhaust for any foreign material that may have collected during storage.
- Check tire pressures and set tire inflation per the Tire Label.
- Check brake pedal operation. Drive the vehicle 15 ft (4.5 meters) back and forth to remove rust build-up.
- Check fluid levels (including coolant, oil and gas) to make sure there are no leaks, and fluids are at recommended levels.
- If the battery was removed, clean the battery cable ends and inspect.

If you have any concerns or issues, contact your authorized dealer.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### MOTORCRAFT PART NUMBERS

Component	6.2L V8 engine	6.8L V10 engine
Air filter element	FA-1883	FA-1883
Oil filter	FL-820-S	FL-820-S
Battery (standard)	BXT-65-650	BXT-65-650
Battery (optional)	BXT-65-750	BXT-65-750
Spark plugs-platinum	1	

<sup>1</sup>For spark plug replacement, see your authorized dealer. Refer to the *scheduled maintenance information* for the appropriate intervals for changing the spark plugs.

**Replace the spark plugs with ones that meet Ford material and design specifications for your vehicle, such as Motorcraft® or equivalent replacement parts. The customer warranty may be void for any damage to the engine if such spark plugs are not used.**

## Maintenance and Specifications

### MAINTENANCE PRODUCT SPECIFICATIONS AND CAPACITIES

Item	Capacity	Ford part name	Ford part number / Ford specification
Front axle	5.8 pints (2.8L)	Motorcraft® SAE 80W-90 Premium Rear Axle Lubricant	XY-80W-90-QL / WSP-M2C197-A
Spindle bearing	—	High Temperature 4X4 Front Axle and Wheel Bearing Grease	XG-11 / WSS-M1C267-A1
Rear axle - F-250/350 (10.50 inch axle) <sup>1</sup>	6.9 pints (3.3L)	Motorcraft® SAE 75W-140 Synthetic Rear Axle Lubricant	XY-75W140-QL / WSL-M2C192-A
Rear axle - F-350 (Dana M80)	8.5 pints (4.0L)	Motorcraft® SAE 75W-90 Synthetic Rear Axle Lubricant	XY-75W90-QLS / WSS-M2C918-A
Rear axle - F-450/550 (Dana S110/S130)	14.0 pints (6.6L)	Motorcraft® SAE 75W-140 Synthetic Rear Axle Lubricant	XY-75W140-QL / WSL-M2C192-A
Brake fluid	Fill to line on reservoir	Motorcraft® High Performance DOT 3 Motor Vehicle Brake Fluid	PM-1-C / WSS-M6C62-A or WSS-M6C65-A1
Engine coolant (6.2L V8 engine) <sup>2</sup>	21.3 quarts (20.2L)	Motorcraft® Specialty Orange Engine Coolant (orange-colored)	VC-3-B (US) / CVC-3-B (Canada) / WSS-M97B44-D
Engine coolant (6.8L V10 engine) <sup>2</sup>	26.7 quarts (25.3L)		

## Maintenance and Specifications

Item	Capacity	Ford part name	Ford part number / Ford specification
Engine and fuel coolant - diesel engine		Refer to the diesel supplement.	
Engine oil (includes filter change) - 6.2L V8 and 6.8L V10 gas engines <sup>5</sup>	7.0 quarts (6.6L)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Motorcraft® SAE 5W-20 Premium Synthetic Blend Motor Oil (US)</li> <li>• Motorcraft® SAE 5W-20 Full Synthetic Motor Oil (US)</li> <li>• Motorcraft® SAE 5W-20 Super Premium Motor Oil (Canada)</li> <li>• Motorcraft® SAE 5W-20 Synthetic Motor Oil (Canada)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• XO-5W20-QSP (US)</li> <li>• XO-5W20-QFS (US)</li> <li>• CXO-5W20-LSP12 (Canada)</li> <li>• CXO-5W-20-LFS12 (Canada) / WSS-M2C930-A and API Certification Mark</li> </ul>
Engine oil (includes filter change) - diesel engine		Refer to the diesel supplement.	
Fuel tank (mid-ship)	28 gallons (106L)	—	—
Fuel tank (plastic)	35 gallons (132L)	—	—
Fuel tank (Aft axle)	40 gallons (151L)	—	—
Fuel tank - diesel engine		Refer to the diesel supplement.	

## Maintenance and Specifications

Item	Capacity	Ford part name	Ford part number / Ford specification
Hinges, latches, striker plates, fuel filler door hinge and seat tracks	—	Multi-Purpose Grease	XG-4 or XL-5 / ESB-M1C93-B
Lock cylinders	—	Motorcraft® Penetrating and Lock Lubricant	XL-1 / None
Transmission / parking brake linkages and pivots, brake pedal shift	—	Motorcraft® Premium Long-Life Grease	XG-1-C or XG-1-K / WSD-M1C227-A
Power steering fluid	Keep fluid level between MIN and MAX on reservoir	Motorcraft® MERCOR® V ATF	XT-5-QM / MERCOR® V
Transfer case fluid	2.0 quarts (1.9L)	Motorcraft® Transfer Case Fluid	XL-12 / —
Automatic transmission fluid (5-speed) <sup>3</sup>	17.5 quarts (16.6L) <sup>4</sup>	Motorcraft® MERCOR® LV ATF	XT-10-QLV / MERCOR® LV
Automatic transmission fluid (6-speed) <sup>3</sup>	18.5 quarts (17.5L) <sup>4,6</sup>		
	16.7 quarts (15.8L) <sup>4,7</sup>		

## Maintenance and Specifications

Item	Capacity	Ford part name	Ford part number / Ford specification
Windshield washer fluid	Fill as required	Motorcraft® Premium Windshield Washer Concentrate (US) Premium Quality Windshield Washer Fluid (Canada)	ZC-32-A (US) CXC-37-(A, B, D, and F) (Canada) / WSB-M8B16-A2 / - -

<sup>1</sup>Add 8 oz. (236 ml) of Additive Friction Modifier XL-3 or equivalent meeting Ford Specification EST-M2C118-A for complete refill of limited slip Ford axles. Ford design rear axles contain a synthetic lubricant that does not require changing unless the axle has been submerged in water.

<sup>2</sup>Add the coolant type originally equipped in your vehicle.

<sup>3</sup>Ensure the correct automatic transmission fluid is used. Transmission fluid requirements are indicated on the dipstick blade or the dipstick handle. Check the container to verify the fluid being added is of the correct type. Refer to your *scheduled maintenance information* to determine the correct service interval.

**Automatic transmissions that require MERCON® IV should only use MERCON® IV fluid. Use of any fluid other than the recommended fluid may cause transmission damage.**

<sup>4</sup>Indicates only approximate dry-fill capacity. Some applications may vary based on cooler size and if equipped with an in-tank cooler. The amount of transmission fluid and fluid level should be set by the indication on the dipstick's normal operating range.

<sup>5</sup>Use of synthetic or synthetic blend motor oil is not mandatory. Engine oil need only meet the requirements of Ford specification WSS-M2C930-A and the API Certification mark.

<sup>6</sup> Refer to *Checking automatic transmission fluid* in this chapter for the correct dipstick type. Fill to the proper capacity according to dipstick Type A.

<sup>7</sup> Refer to *Checking automatic transmission fluid* in this chapter for the correct dipstick type. Fill to the proper capacity according to dipstick Type B.

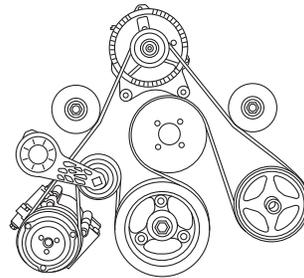
## Maintenance and Specifications

### ENGINE DATA

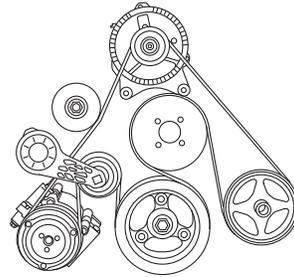
Engine	6.2L V8 engine	6.8L V10 engine
Cubic inches	378	413
Required fuel	Minimum 87 octane	Minimum 87 octane
Firing order	1-3-7-2-6-5-4-8	1-6-5-10-2-7-3-8-4-9
Spark plug gap	0.039–0.043 inch (1.0–1.1mm)	0.039–0.043 inch (1.0–1.1mm)
Ignition system	Coil on plug	Coil on plug
Compression ratio	9.8:1	9.2:1

### Engine drivebelt routing

6.2L V8 engine

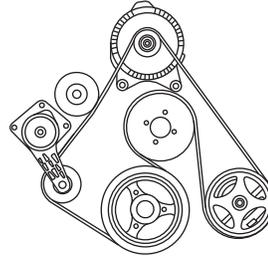


6.8L V10 engine with A/C



## Maintenance and Specifications

6.8L V10 engine - without A/C



### IDENTIFYING YOUR VEHICLE

#### Safety Compliance Certification Label

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration Regulations require that a Safety Compliance Certification Label be affixed to a vehicle and prescribe where the Safety Compliance Certification Label may be located. The Safety Compliance Certification Label is located on the structure by the trailing edge of the driver's door or the edge of the driver's door.

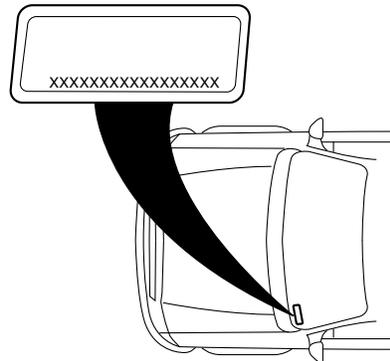
<b>MFD. BY FORD MOTOR CO. IN U.S.A.</b>			
DATE: XXXXX	GVWR: XXXXX LB/ XXXXX KG		
FGAWR: XXXXXX/XXXXXXXX	RGAWR: XXXXXX/XXXXXXXX		
THIS VEHICLE CONFORMS TO ALL APPLICABLE FEDERAL MOTOR VEHICLE SAFETY STANDARDS IN EFFECT ON THE DATE OF MANUFACTURE SHOWN ABOVE.			
VIN: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX	TYPE: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX		
MAXIMUM LOAD=OCCUPANTS + LUGGAGE=XXXKG/XXXLB			
OCCUPANTS: X TOTAL X FR X 2ND X RR OCCUPANTS LUGGAGE			
		XX	XXXKG/XXXLB
TIRE: XXXX/XXXXX XXX		X	XXXKG/XXXLB
PRESSURE (FR) XXX kPa/ XX PSI COLD			
PRESSURE (RR) XXX kPa/ XX PSI COLD			
<small>TRAILER TOWING - SEE OWNER GUIDE</small>			
EXT PNT: XXXXXX XXXXXX	RC: XX	DSC: XXXX	F0000
BAR   INT TR   TP/PS   R	AXLE   TR	SPR	T0000
X XX XXX X	XX X	X XXXX	

## Maintenance and Specifications

### Vehicle identification number (VIN)

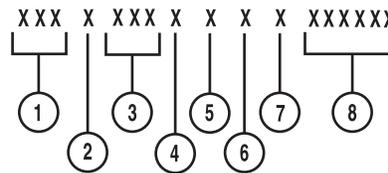
The vehicle identification number is located on the driver side instrument panel.

Please note that in the graphic, XXXX is representative of your vehicle identification number.



The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) contains the following information:

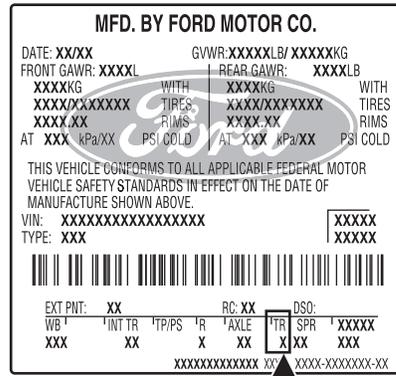
1. World manufacturer identifier
2. Brake system / Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) / Restraint Devices and their location
3. Make, vehicle line, series, body type
4. Engine type
5. Check digit
6. Model year
7. Assembly plant
8. Production sequence number



## Maintenance and Specifications

### TRANSMISSION CODE DESIGNATIONS

You can find a transmission code on the Safety Compliance Certification Label. The following table tells you which transmission each code represents.



Description	Code
Five-speed automatic (5R110W)	T
Six-speed automatic (6R140)	P

## Accessories

### FORD CUSTOM ACCESSORIES FOR YOUR VEHICLE

A wide selection of Ford Custom Accessories are available for your vehicle through your local Ford or Ford of Canada dealer. These quality accessories have been specifically engineered to fulfill your automotive needs; they are custom designed to complement the style and aerodynamic appearance of your vehicle. In addition, each accessory is made from high quality materials and meets or exceeds Ford's rigorous engineering and safety specifications. Ford Motor Company will repair or replace any properly dealer-installed Ford Custom Accessories found to be defective in factory-supplied materials or workmanship during the warranty period, as well as any component damaged by the defective accessories. The accessories will be warranted for whichever provides you the greatest benefit:

- 12 months or 12,000 miles (20,000 km) (whichever occurs first), or
- the remainder of your new vehicle limited warranty.

Contact your dealer for details and a copy of the warranty.

The following is a list of several Ford Custom Accessories. Not all accessories are available for all models. For a complete listing of the accessories that are available for your vehicle, please contact your dealer or visit our online store at: [www.fordaccessories.com](http://www.fordaccessories.com) (U.S. only).

#### Exterior style

- Bug shields
- Chrome exhaust tips
- Deflectors
- Running boards
- Splash guards
- Step bars
- Wheels
- Custom graphics\*
- Stainless steel wheel covers\*

#### Interior style

- Floor mats
- Electrochromic compass/temperature interior mirrors
- Custom seat covers\*

## Accessories

### Lifestyle

- Ash cup / smoker's package
- Bedliners and bedmats
- Subwoofer\*
- Towing mirrors
- Navigation\*
- Tonneau covers\*
- Trailer hitches, wiring harnesses and accessories
- Racks and carriers\*
- Truck bed camping tent\*
- Sportliner cargo liner\*
- Trailer hitch balls\*
- Rear seat entertainment\*

### Peace of mind

- Keyless entry keypad
- Remote start
- Vehicle security systems
- Wheel locks
- Vehicle tracking and recovery\*
- Protective seat covers\*
- Bumper and hitch mounted parking sensors\*
- Back up camera\*
- Back up alarm\*
- Cable lock\*
- Bed hooks\*
- Tool/Cargo boxes\*

### **Not all accessories are available for all models.**

\*Ford Licensed Accessories (FLA) are warranted by the accessory manufacturer's warranty. Ford Licensed Accessories are fully designed and developed by the accessory manufacturer and have not been designed or tested to Ford Motor Company engineering requirements. Contact your Ford dealer for details regarding the manufacturer's limited warranty and/or a copy of the FLA product limited warranty offered by the accessory manufacturer.

For maximum vehicle performance, keep the following information in mind when adding accessories or equipment to your vehicle:

- When adding accessories, equipment, passengers and luggage to your vehicle, do not exceed the total weight capacity of the vehicle or of the front or rear axle (GVWR or GAWR as indicated on the Safety Compliance Certification Label). Consult your authorized dealer for specific weight information.

## Accessories

- The Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and Canadian Radio Telecommunications Commission (CRTC) regulate the use of mobile communications systems — such as two-way radios, telephones and theft alarms - that are equipped with radio transmitters. Any such equipment installed in your vehicle should comply with FCC or CRTC regulations and should be installed only by your authorized dealer.
- Mobile communications systems may harm the operation of your vehicle, particularly if they are not properly designed for automotive use.
- To avoid interference with other vehicle functions, such as anti-lock braking systems, amateur radio users who install radios and antennas onto their vehicle should not locate the Amateur Radio Antennas in the area of the driver's side hood.
- Any non-Ford custom electrical or electronic accessories or components that are added to the vehicle by the authorized dealer or the owner may adversely affect battery performance and durability.

## Ford Extended Service Plan

### FORD ESP EXTENDED SERVICE PLANS (U.S. ONLY)

More than 30 million Ford and Lincoln owners have discovered the powerful protection of Ford ESP. It is the only extended service plan backed by Ford Motor Company, and provides “peace of mind” protection beyond the New Vehicle Limited Warranty coverage.

#### ***Up to 500+ Covered Vehicle Components***

There are four, new-vehicle Extended Service Plans with different levels of coverage. Ask your dealer for details.

**PremiumCare** – Our most comprehensive coverage. With over 500 covered components, this plan is so complete that we generally only discuss what’s not covered!

**ExtraCare** – Covers 113 components, and includes many high-tech items.

**BaseCare** – Covers 84 components.

**PowertrainCare** – Covers 29 critical components.

**Ford ESP is honored by all Ford and Lincoln Dealers in the U.S. and Canada** It’s the only extended service plan authorized and backed by Ford Motor Company. That means you get:

- Reliable, quality service anywhere you go.
- **Factory-trained technicians.**
- **Genuine Ford and Motorcraft® Parts.**

#### ***Rental car reimbursement***

**If your vehicle is kept overnight for covered repairs**, you are eligible for rental car coverage, including Bumper-to-Bumper warranty repairs, or manufacturer’s recalls.

#### ***Transferable coverage***

If you sell your vehicle before your Ford ESP coverage expires, you can transfer any remaining coverage to the new owner. Whenever you’re ready to sell your car, prospective buyers may feel better about taking a risk on your used vehicle. Ford ESP may add resale value!

Plus, **exclusive 24/7 roadside assistance**, including:

- Towing, flat-tire change and battery jump starts.
- Out-of-fuel and lock-out assistance.
- Travel expense reimbursement for lodging, meals and rental car.
- Destination assistance for taxi, shuttle, rental car coverage and emergency transportation.

418

## Ford Extended Service Plan

### ***Ford ESP Can Quickly Pay for Itself***

One service bill – the cost of parts and labor – can easily exceed the price of your Ford ESP Service Contract. With Ford ESP, you minimize your risk for unexpected repair bills and rising repair costs.

### ***Avoid the rising cost of properly maintaining your vehicle!***

Ford ESP also offers a Premium Maintenance Plan that covers items that **routinely wear out**.

The coverage is prepaid, so you never have to worry about affording your vehicle maintenance. It covers regular checkups, routine inspections, preventive care and replacement of items that require periodic attention for **normal “wear”**:

- **Wiper blades**
- **Spark plugs (except California)**
- **Clutch disc**
- **Brake pads and linings**
- **Shock absorbers**
- **Belts and hoses**

Contact your selling Ford or Lincoln dealership today so they can customize a Ford Extended Service Plan that fits your driving lifestyle and budget.

### ***Interest free finance options available***

Take advantage of our installment payment plan, just a 10% down payment will provide you with an affordable no interest, no-fee payment opportunity.

**Ford Extended Service Plan**



***Get Genuine Peace of Mind with Ford ESP!***

To learn more, complete the information below and mail this to:

**Ford ESP  
P.O. Box 8072  
Royal Oak, MI 48068-9933**

NAME (PLEASE PRINT) \_\_\_\_\_  
ADDRESS \_\_\_\_\_ APT.NO. \_\_\_\_\_  
CITY \_\_\_\_\_ STATE \_\_\_\_\_ ZIP \_\_\_\_\_  
E-MAIL: \_\_\_\_\_

## Ford Extended Service Plan

### **FORD ESP EXTENDED SERVICE PLANS (CANADA ONLY)**

You can get more protection for your vehicle by purchasing a Ford Extended Service Plan (ESP). Ford ESP is the only service contract backed by Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited. Depending on the plan you purchase, Ford ESP provides benefits such as:

- Rental reimbursement
- Coverage for certain maintenance and wear items
- Protection against repair costs after your New Vehicle Limited Warranty Coverage expires
- Roadside Assistance benefits

There are several Ford ESP plans available in various time, distance and deductible combinations. Each plan is tailored to fit your own driving needs, including reimbursement for towing and rental.

When you purchase Ford ESP, you receive added peace-of-mind protection throughout Canada and the United States, provided by a network of participating Ford Motor Company dealers.

For more information, visit your local Ford of Canada dealer or [www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca) to find the Ford Extended Service Plan that is right for you.

**Note:** Repairs performed outside of Canada and the United States are not eligible for Ford ESP coverage. This information is subject to change.

## Scheduled Maintenance

### GENERAL MAINTENANCE INFORMATION

The following information pertains to 6.2L V8 and 6.8L V10 gasoline engines only. Scheduled maintenance for the diesel engine can be found in the diesel supplement.

#### Why maintain your vehicle?

This guide describes the scheduled maintenance required for your vehicle. Carefully following this schedule helps protect against major repair expenses resulting from neglect or inadequate maintenance and may also help to increase the value of your vehicle when you sell or trade it.

It is your responsibility to see that all scheduled maintenance is performed and that the materials used meet Ford engineering specifications as identified in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter. Failure to perform scheduled maintenance specific in this guide will invalidate warranty coverage on parts affected by the lack of maintenance. Be sure receipts for completed maintenance are kept with the vehicle and confirmation of the work performed is always recorded in this guide.

Your dealer has factory-trained technicians who can perform the required maintenance using genuine Ford parts. They are committed to meeting your service needs and to assuring your continuing satisfaction.

#### Protecting your investment

Maintenance is an investment that will pay dividends in the form of improved reliability, durability and resale value. To ensure the proper performance of your vehicle and its emission control systems, it is imperative that scheduled maintenance be completed at the designated intervals.

Your vehicle is very sophisticated and built with multiple complex performance systems. Every manufacturer develops these systems using different specifications and performance features. That's why it's important to rely upon your dealership to properly diagnose and repair your vehicle.

Ford Motor Company has recommended maintenance intervals for various parts and component systems based upon engineering testing. Ford Motor Company relies upon this testing to determine the most appropriate mileage for replacement of oils and fluids to protect your vehicle at the lowest overall cost to you and recommends against maintenance schedules that deviate from the scheduled maintenance information.

422

## Scheduled Maintenance

Ford strongly recommends the use of genuine Ford replacement parts. Parts other than Ford, Motorcraft® or Ford-authorized remanufactured parts that are used for maintenance replacement or for the service of components affecting emission control must be equivalent to genuine Ford Motor Company parts in performance and durability. It is the owner's responsibility to determine the equivalency of such parts. Please consult your *Warranty Guide* for complete warranty information.

Chemicals or additives not approved by Ford are not required for factory recommended maintenance. In fact, Ford Motor Company recommends against the use of such additive products unless specifically recommended by Ford for a particular application.

### ***Oils, fluids and flushing***

In many cases, fluid discoloration is a normal operating characteristic and, by itself, does not necessarily indicate a concern or that the fluid needs to be changed. However, discolored fluids that also show signs of overheating and/or foreign material contamination should be inspected immediately by a qualified expert such as the factory-trained technicians at your dealership. Your vehicle's oils and fluids should be changed at the specified intervals or in conjunction with a repair. Flushing is a viable way to change fluid for many vehicle sub-systems during scheduled maintenance. It is critical that systems are flushed only with new fluid that is the same as that required to fill and operate the system, or using a Ford-approved flushing chemical.

### **Genuine Ford parts and service**

When planning your maintenance services, consider your dealership for all your vehicle's needs.

There are a lot of reasons why visiting your dealership for all your service needs is a great way to help keep your vehicle running great.

### ***Convenience***

Many dealerships have extended evening and Saturday hours to make your service visit more convenient. How's that for quality service?

### ***Factory-trained technicians***

Service technicians participate in extensive factory-sponsored certification training to help them become experts on the operation of your vehicle. Ask your dealership about the training and certification their technicians have received.

## Scheduled Maintenance

### ***Genuine Ford and Motorcraft® replacement parts***

Dealerships stock Ford and Motorcraft® branded replacement parts. These parts meet or exceed Ford Motor Company's specifications, and we stand behind them. Parts installed at your dealership carry a nationwide, 12 month/12,000 mile (20,000 km) parts and labor limited warranty. Your dealer can give you details.

### ***Value shopping for your vehicle's maintenance needs***

Your dealership recognizes the competitive landscape of maintenance and light repair automotive services. With factory-trained technicians, and one-stop service from routine maintenance like oil changes and tire rotations to repairs like brake service, check out the value your dealers can offer.

### **Owner checks and services**

Certain basic maintenance checks and inspections should be performed by the owner or a service technician at the intervals indicated. Service information and supporting specifications are provided in this owner's guide.

Any adverse condition should be brought to the attention of your dealer or qualified service technician as soon as possible for the proper service advice. The owner maintenance service checks are generally not covered by warranties so you may be charged for labor, parts or fluids used.

<b>Engine oil/coolant change intervals</b>	
<b>Engine oil (6.2L/6.8L)*</b>	6 months or 7,500 miles (12,000 km) (whichever comes first)
<b>Engine coolant, initial change</b>	6 years or 105,000 miles (168,000 km) (whichever comes first)
<b>Engine coolant, after initial change</b>	Every 3 years or 45,000 miles (72,000 km)
*If your vehicle is equipped with a diesel engine, refer to the diesel supplement for engine oil/coolant change schedules	

## Scheduled Maintenance

<b>Check every month</b>
Engine oil level
Function of all interior and exterior lights
Tires for wear and proper pressure, including spare
Windshield washer fluid level
<b>Check every six months</b>
Battery connections; clean if necessary
Body and door drain holes for obstructions; clean if necessary
Cooling system fluid level and coolant strength
Door weatherstrips for wear; lubricate if necessary
Hinges/latches/outside locks for proper operation; lubricate if necessary
Parking brake for proper operation
Safety belts and seat latches for wear and function
Safety warning lamps (brake, ABS, airbag, safety belt) for operation
Washer spray/wiper operation; clean or replace blades as necessary

### **Multi-point inspection**

In order to keep your vehicle running right, it is important to have the systems on your vehicle checked regularly. This can help identify potential issues and prevent major problems. Ford Motor Company recommends the following multi-point inspection be performed at every scheduled maintenance interval to help ensure your vehicle keeps running great.

## Scheduled Maintenance

<b>Multi-point inspection – Recommended each visit</b>	
Accessory drive belt(s)	Half-shaft dust boots (if equipped)
Battery performance	Horn operation
Clutch operation (if equipped)	Radiator, cooler, heater and A/C hoses
Engine air filter	Suspension component for leaks or damage
Exhaust system	Steering and linkage
Exterior lamps and hazard warning system operation	Tires for wear and proper pressure, including spare
Fluid levels*; fill if necessary	Windshield for cracks, chips or pits
For oil and fluid leaks	Washer spray and wiper operation
*Brake, coolant recovery reservoir, manual and automatic transmission (with an underhood dipstick), power steering (if equipped) and window washer	

Be sure to ask your dealership service advisor or technician about the multi-point vehicle inspection. It's a comprehensive way to perform a thorough inspection of your vehicle. It's your checklist that gives you immediate feedback on the overall condition of your vehicle. You'll know what's been checked, what's okay, as well as those things that may require future or immediate attention. The multi-point vehicle inspection is one more way to keep your vehicle running great!

# Scheduled Maintenance

**Multi-Point Inspection Report Card as Recommended by Ford Motor Company**

Owner's Member #: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Owner's Service Balance: \_\_\_\_\_

Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Today's Date: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Mile/Week/Mile: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Shop Inspection Month: \_\_\_\_\_

E-Mail Address: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Make/Model/Year: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Mileage: \_\_\_\_\_

**SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE ITEMS DUE FOR SERVICE ON THIS VEHICLE**  

<input type="checkbox"/> Cabin Air Filter	<input type="checkbox"/> Oil Filter
<input type="checkbox"/> Engine Air Filter	<input type="checkbox"/> Spark Plugs
<input type="checkbox"/> Engine Coolant	<input type="checkbox"/> Tire Rotation
<input type="checkbox"/> Fluid Filter	<input type="checkbox"/> Transmission Fluid
<input type="checkbox"/> Oil Change	<input type="checkbox"/> Transmission Fluid

**CHECK FLUID LEVELS AND FILL**  
 Oil and/or Oil Additives  
 Coolant  
 Brake Fluid  
 Power Steering  
 Windshield Washer  
 Transmission  
 Coolant Capacity Reservoir

**BATTERY**  
 State of Health: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Condition of \_\_\_\_\_  
 Factory spec cold cranking amps: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Anticorrosion: \_\_\_\_\_

**EXTERIOR BODY**  
 Note any existing exterior body damage or defects: \_\_\_\_\_

**TYRE BRAKE WEAR**  

TYRE TREAD	FRONT WHEELS	REAR WHEELS
<input type="checkbox"/> Tread Depth <input type="checkbox"/> Tread Pattern/Change <input type="checkbox"/> Tire Pressure - set to factory recommended PSI <input type="checkbox"/> Brake Lining	<input type="checkbox"/> Tread Depth <input type="checkbox"/> Tread Pattern/Change <input type="checkbox"/> Tire Pressure - set to factory recommended PSI <input type="checkbox"/> Brake Lining	<input type="checkbox"/> Tread Depth <input type="checkbox"/> Tread Pattern/Change <input type="checkbox"/> Tire Pressure - set to factory recommended PSI <input type="checkbox"/> Brake Lining

**SYNCHRONIZED VEHICLE REALIGNMENT (EVER)**  
 Yes  
 No

**CHECK FOLLOWING SYSTEMS**  
**STEERING AND SHOCKS**  
 Steering knuckle  
 Shock absorbers  
 Strut  
 Ball joints  
 Tie rod ends  
 Control arms  
 Sway bar links  
 Sway bar bushings  
 Sway bar end links

**EXHAUST SYSTEM**  
 Exhaust manifold  
 Exhaust pipe  
 Exhaust hangers  
 Catalytic converter  
 Muffler

**DRIVE SHAFTS AND DRIVE AXLES**  
 Drive shafts  
 Axle tubes  
 Axle bearings  
 Axle seals  
 Axle nuts and washers

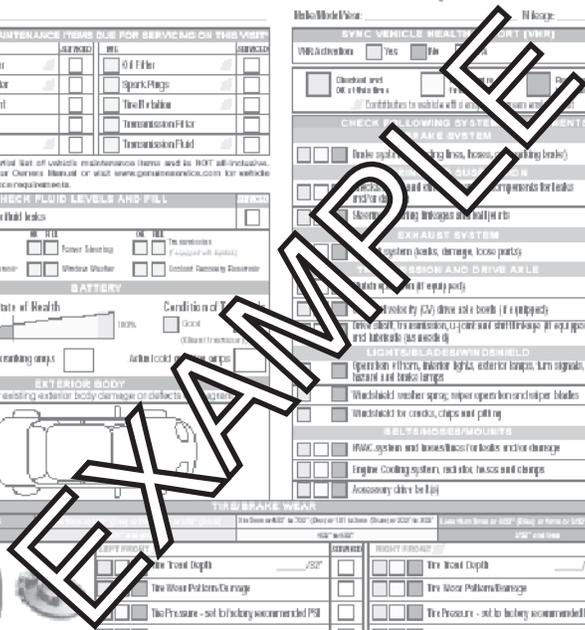
**LIGHTS/BLADES/WINDSHIELD**  
 Headlights  
 Turn signals  
 Brake lights  
 Horn  
 Windshield wipers  
 Windshield washer fluid  
 Windshield cracks, chips and pitting

**SALES AND SERVICE**  
 HVAC system and hoses/controls and/or change  
 Engine Cooling system, radiator, hoses and change  
 Accessory drive belt(s)

Comments: \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_

Service Advisor: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Technician: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Customer Signature: \_\_\_\_\_

2011-2012 Ford Motor Company. All Rights Reserved. 12-XXXXXXX



## Scheduled Maintenance

### **NORMAL SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE AND LOG**

The following section contains the “Normal Schedule”. This schedule is presented at specific mileage (kilometer) intervals with exceptions noted.

## Scheduled Maintenance

6.2L and 6.8L engines												
Miles (x 1,000)*	7.5	15	22.5	30	37.5	45	52.5	60	67.5	75		
Kilometers (x 1,000)*	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120		
Months*	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	54	60		
Change engine oil and filter	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Rotate tires, inspect tire wear and measure tread depth; dual rear wheels should only be rotated if unusual wear is observed	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Inspect wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Inspect automatic transmission fluid level (if equipped with dipstick); consult dealer for requirements		•		•		•		•		•		•
Inspect brake pads, shoes, rotors, drums, brake linings, hoses and parking brake		•		•		•		•		•		•
Inspect engine cooling system concentration and hoses		•		•		•		•		•		•
Inspect exhaust system and heat shields		•		•		•		•		•		•
Inspect front axle and U-joints; lubricate if equipped with grease fittings (4WD vehicles)		•		•		•		•		•		•
Inspect half-shaft boots (if equipped)		•		•		•		•		•		•
Inspect steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie-rod ends, driveshaft and U-joints; lubricate if equipped with grease fittings		•		•		•		•		•		•
Torque rear U-bolts (Transit Connect)		•		•		•		•		•		•
Inspect cabin air filter (if equipped)	•		•		•		•		•		•	

\* Whichever comes first

Scheduled maintenance for the diesel engine can be found in the diesel supplement

## Scheduled Maintenance

6.2L and 6.8L engines												
Miles (x 1,000)*	82.5	90	97.5	105	112.5	120	127.5	135	142.5	150		
Kilometers (x 1,000)*	132	144	156	168	180	192	204	216	228	240		
Months*	66	72	78	84	90	96	102	108	114	120		
Change engine oil and filter	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		
Rotate tires, inspect tire wear and measure tread depth; dual rear wheels should only be rotated if unusual wear is observed	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		
Inspect wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		
Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		
Inspect automatic transmission fluid level (if equipped with dipstick); consult dealer for requirements		•		•		•		•		•		
Inspect brake pads, shoes, rotors, drums, brake linings, hoses and parking brake		•		•		•		•		•		
Inspect engine cooling system concentration and hoses		•		•		•		•		•		
Inspect exhaust system and heat shields		•		•		•		•		•		
Inspect front axle and U-joints; lubricate if equipped with grease fittings (4WD vehicles)		•		•		•		•		•		
Inspect half-shaft boots (if equipped)		•		•		•		•		•		
Inspect steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie-rod ends, driveshaft and U-joints; lubricate if equipped with grease fittings		•		•		•		•		•		
Torque rear U-bolts (Transit Connect)		•		•		•		•		•		
Inspect cabin air filter (if equipped)	•		•		•		•		•		•	
* Whichever comes first												
Scheduled maintenance for the diesel engine can be found in the diesel supplement												

## Scheduled Maintenance

<b>6.2L and 6.8L engines</b>	
Every 15,000 miles (24,000 km)	Replace cabin air filter (if equipped)
Every 30,000 miles (48,000 km)	Replace climate-controlled seat filter (if equipped)
	Replace engine air filter
	Replace fuel filter (Ranger)
Every 60,000 miles (96,000 km)	Change automatic transmission fluid and filter on 5-speed TorqShift® transmission; consult dealer for requirements
	Replace front wheel bearing grease/grease seal if non-sealed bearings are used (2WD vehicles)
Every 105,000 miles (168,000 km)	Change engine coolant <sup>1</sup>
	Change manual transmission fluid (except Escape)
	Change rear axle fluid (Dana axles)
	Replace spark plugs
	Inspect accessory drive belt(s) <sup>2</sup>
Every 150,000 miles (240,000 km)	Change automatic transmission fluid and filter (except 5-speed TorqShift® transmission) (filter not required on 6F35, 6F50, DPS6 and AWF-21 transmissions); consult dealer for requirements
	Change front axle fluid (4WD vehicles)
	Change manual transmission fluid (Escape)
	Change rear axle fluid (RWD vehicles)
	Change transfer case fluid (4WD vehicles)
	Replace accessory drive belt(s) if not replaced within the last 100,000 miles (160,000 km)
	Replace front wheel bearings and seals if non-sealed bearings are used (2WD vehicles)
<sup>1</sup> Initial replacement at 105,000 miles (168,000 km) or 72 months; every 45,000 miles (72,000 km) or 36 months thereafter	
<sup>2</sup> Perform a follow-up inspection at 120,000 miles (192,000 km)	

## Scheduled Maintenance

### Maintenance schedule log

<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>

## Scheduled Maintenance

<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                  MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                  MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                  MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                  MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                  MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                  MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                  MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                  MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                  MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                  MILEAGE:</p>

## Scheduled Maintenance

<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>

## Scheduled Maintenance

### SPECIAL OPERATING CONDITIONS

The following information pertains to 6.2L V8 and 6.8L V10 gasoline engines only. Scheduled maintenance for the diesel engine can be found in the diesel supplement.

If you operate your vehicle **primarily** in one of the more demanding conditions listed below, you will need to have some items maintained more frequently. If you only **occasionally** operate your vehicle under these conditions, it is not necessary to perform the additional maintenance. For specific recommendations, see your dealership service advisor or technician.

<b>Towing a trailer or using a camper or car-top carrier</b>	
Inspect frequently, service as required	Inspect and lubricate U-joints
	See axle maintenance items under <i>Exceptions</i>
Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km)	Inspect wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag
	Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth
Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km) or 6 months	Change engine oil and filter
	Inspect and lubricate U-joints
Every 30,000 miles (48,000 km)	Change automatic transmission fluid (except 6R80 and TorqShift® transmissions)
	Replace front wheel bearing grease/grease seals if non-sealed bearings are used (2WD vehicles)
Every 60,000 miles (96,000 km)	Change transfer case fluid (4WD vehicles)
<b>Extensive idling and/or low-speed driving for long distances as in heavy commercial use (i.e. delivery, taxi, patrol car or livery)</b>	
Inspect frequently, service as required	Replace cabin air filter (if equipped)
	Replace engine air filter

## Scheduled Maintenance

<b>Extensive idling and/or low-speed driving for long distances as in heavy commercial use (i.e. delivery, taxi, patrol car or livery)</b>	
Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km)	Inspect brake system
	Inspect wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag
	Lubricate control arm and steering ball joints if equipped with grease fittings
	Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth
Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km) or 6 months	Inspect and lubricate U-joints
Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km), 6 months or 200 engine hours	Change engine oil and filter
Every 30,000 miles (48,000 km)	Change automatic transmission fluid (except 6R80 and TorqShift® transmissions)
	Replace front wheel bearing grease/grease seals if non-sealed bearings are used (2WD vehicles)
Every 60,000 miles (96,000 km)	Change transfer case fluid (4WD vehicles)
	Replace spark plugs
<b>Operating in dusty conditions such as unpaved or dusty roads</b>	
Inspect frequently, service as required	Replace cabin air filter (if equipped)
	Replace engine air filter
Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km)	Inspect the wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag
	Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth
Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km) or 6 months	Change engine oil and filter
	Inspect and lubricate U-joints

## Scheduled Maintenance

<b>Operating in dusty conditions such as unpaved or dusty roads</b>	
Every 30,000 miles (48,000 km)	Change automatic transmission fluid (except 6R80 and TorqShift® transmissions)
	Replace front wheel bearing grease/grease seals if non-sealed bearings are used (2WD vehicles)
Every 50,000 miles (80,000 km)	Change rear axle fluid (F-450/550 only)
Every 60,000 miles (96,000 km)	Change transfer case fluid (4WD vehicles)
<b>Off-road operation</b>	
Inspect frequently, service as required	Inspect steering linkage, ball joints and U-joints; lubricate if equipped with grease fittings
	Replace cabin air filter (if equipped)
	Replace engine air filter
Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km) or 6 months	Change engine oil and filter
	Inspect wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag
	Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth
Every 30,000 miles (48,000 km)	Change automatic transmission fluid (except 6R80 and TorqShift® transmissions)
	Replace front wheel bearing grease/grease seals if non-sealed bearings are used (2WD vehicles)
Every 50,000 miles (80,000 km)	Change rear axle fluid (F-450/550 only)
Every 60,000 miles (96,000 km)	Change transfer case fluid (4WD vehicles)
<b>Exclusive use of E85 (Flex Fuel Vehicles only)</b>	
Every oil change interval	If ran exclusively on E85, fill the fuel tank full with regular unleaded fuel

## Scheduled Maintenance

### Special operating condition log

<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE: DATE: HOURS: MILEAGE:</p>	<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE: DATE: HOURS: MILEAGE:</p>
<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE: DATE: HOURS: MILEAGE:</p>	<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE: DATE: HOURS: MILEAGE:</p>
<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE: DATE: HOURS: MILEAGE:</p>	<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE: DATE: HOURS: MILEAGE:</p>
<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE: DATE: HOURS: MILEAGE:</p>	<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE: DATE: HOURS: MILEAGE:</p>
<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE: DATE: HOURS: MILEAGE:</p>	<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE: DATE: HOURS: MILEAGE:</p>



## Scheduled Maintenance

### EXCEPTIONS

There are several exceptions to the Normal Schedule. They are listed below:

**Normal vehicle axle maintenance:** Rear axles and power take-off (PTO) units with synthetic fluid and light-duty trucks equipped with Ford-design axles are lubricated for life; do not check or change fluid unless a leak is suspected, service is required or the assembly has been submerged in water. During long periods of trailer towing with outside temperatures above 70°F (21°C) and at wide-open throttle for long periods above 45 mph (72 km/h), non-synthetic rear axle fluids should be changed every 3,000 miles (4,800 km) or three months, whichever comes first. This interval can be waived if the axle is filled with 75W140 synthetic gear fluid meeting Ford specification WSL-M2C192-A, part number F1TZ-19580-B or equivalent. Add friction modifier XL-3 (EST-M2C118-A) or equivalent for complete refill of Traction-Lok rear axles (refer to *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter for details).

**Police/Taxi/Livery vehicle axle maintenance:** Change rear axle fluid every 100,000 miles (160,000 km). Rear axle fluid change may be waived if the axle was filled with 75W140 synthetic gear fluid meeting Ford specification WSL-M2C192-A, part number FITZ-19580-B or equivalent. Add four ounces (118 mL) of additive friction modifier XL-3 (EST-M2C118-A) or equivalent for complete refill of Traction-Lok rear axles. The axle fluid should be changed anytime the axle has been submerged in water.

**E-450 and F-450/550 axle maintenance:** Change rear axle fluid every 100,000 miles (160,000 km) under normal driving conditions. For vehicles operated at or near maximum Gross Vehicle Weights, the rear axle fluid should be changed every 50,000 miles (80,000 km). In addition, this 50,000 mile (80,000 km) schedule should be observed when the vehicles are operated under the Special Operating Conditions.

**California fuel filter replacement:** If the vehicle is registered in California, the California Air Resources Board has determined that the failure to perform this maintenance item will not nullify the emission warranty or limit recall liability prior to the completion of the vehicle's useful life. Ford Motor Company, however, urges you to have all recommended maintenance services performed at the specified intervals and to record all vehicle service.

## Scheduled Maintenance

**Class A Motorhome:** Change brake fluid every two years.

**Hot climate oil change intervals:** If operating conditions are normal and you drive your vehicle under typical, everyday conditions **and** you are using an API performance category oil of SL or later (for example SM, etc.) then you can follow the 7,500 mile (12,000 km) normal service oil change intervals schedule. Vehicles operating in the Middle East, North Africa, Sub-Saharan Africa or locations with similar climates must follow the oil change interval of 3,000 mile (4,800 km) if the owner is using oils defined by the American Petroleum Institute (API) performance category of API SK or earlier (for example SJ, etc).

Edge/MKX AWD only – vehicles operating off-road in sand during high ambient temperatures must replace the AWD PTU (All-wheel drive Power Transfer Unit) lube every 20,000 miles (32,000 km).

**Engine air filter & cabin air filter replacement:** Engine air filter and cabin air filter life is dependent on exposure to dusty and dirty conditions. Vehicles operated in these conditions will require frequent inspection and replacement of the engine air filter and cabin air filter.

### ENGINE COOLANT CHANGE RECORD

Initial change	6 years or 105,000 miles (168,000 km) (whichever comes first)
After initial change	Every 3 years or 45,000 miles (72,000 km)

## Scheduled Maintenance

### Engine coolant change log

<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE: HOURS: DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE: HOURS: DATE: MILEAGE:</p>
<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE: HOURS: DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE: HOURS: DATE: MILEAGE:</p>
<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE: HOURS: DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p>DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE: HOURS: DATE: MILEAGE:</p>

## Index

### A

Accessory delay .....103  
 AdvanceTrac .....271  
 Airbag supplemental restraint system .....178, 182, 184  
   and child safety seats .....179  
   description .....178, 182, 184  
   disposal .....192  
   driver airbag .....180, 183, 185  
   indicator light .....187  
   operation .....180, 183, 185  
   passenger airbag .....180, 183, 185  
   passenger deactivation switch .....188  
   side airbag .....182  
 Air cleaner filter .....400–401, 406  
 Air conditioning .....77, 80  
   manual heating and air conditioning system .....77  
 Ambulance packages .....8  
 Antifreeze (see Engine coolant) .....375  
 Anti-lock brake system (see Brakes) .....268  
 Anti-theft system .....147, 149  
   arming the system .....148, 150  
   disarming a triggered system .....150  
   triggering .....150  
 Audio system (see Radio) ...59, 61  
 Automatic transmission .....286  
   driving an automatic overdrive .....284  
   fluid, adding .....396  
   fluid, checking .....396  
   fluid, refill capacities .....407  
   Selectshift (SST) .....289  
 Auxiliary Input Jack .....68

Auxiliary power point .....100  
 Axle  
   refill capacities .....407

### B

Battery .....373  
   acid, treating emergencies ....373  
   jumping a disabled battery ...343  
   maintenance-free .....373  
   replacement, specifications ...406  
   servicing .....373  
 Bed extender .....124  
 Belt-Minder® .....174  
 Booster seats .....209  
 Brakes .....268  
   anti-lock .....268  
   anti-lock brake system (ABS)  
     warning light .....269  
   fluid, checking and adding ...396  
   fluid, refill capacities .....407  
   parking .....269  
   shift interlock .....282  
   trailer .....254  
 Bulbs .....91

### C

Capacities for refilling fluids ....407  
 Car2U® Home Automation System .....115  
 Cassette tape player .....59  
 Cell phone use .....11  
 Changing a tire .....326  
 Child safety seats .....197  
   attaching with tether straps ..204  
   in front seat .....198, 204  
   in rear seat .....198, 204

443

## Index

- LATCH .....204  
 recommendations .....195
- Child safety seats - booster seats .....209
- Cleaning your vehicle  
 engine compartment .....358  
 instrument panel .....361–362  
 interior .....363  
 plastic parts .....360  
 safety belts .....363  
 washing .....357  
 waxing .....358  
 wheels .....358  
 wiper blades .....360
- Climate control (see Air conditioning or Heating) .....77, 80
- Clock .....60, 62
- Compass, electronic  
 set zone adjustment .....27
- Console .....99  
 overhead .....98–99
- Controls  
 power seat .....157  
 steering column .....111
- Coolant  
 checking and adding .....375  
 refill capacities .....378, 407
- Cruise control (see Speed control) .....109
- Customer Assistance .....314  
 Ford accessories for your vehicle .....365  
 Ford Extended Service Plan .....418, 421  
 Getting assistance outside the U.S. and Canada .....353  
 Getting roadside assistance ...314  
 Getting the service you need .....349
- 444
- Ordering additional owner's literature .....355  
 Utilizing the Mediation/Arbitration Program .....353
- D**
- Daytime running lamps (see Lamps) .....88
- Defrost  
 rear window and rearview mirrors .....80  
 windshield .....80
- Dipstick  
 automatic transmission fluid .....396  
 engine oil .....371
- Driving under special conditions .....292, 304, 308  
 sand .....306  
 snow and ice .....308  
 through water .....307, 310
- E**
- Electronic message center ...22, 39
- Emergencies, roadside  
 jump-starting .....343
- Emergency Flashers .....315
- Emission control system .....392
- Engine .....411  
 cleaning .....358  
 coolant .....375  
 diesel .....7  
 fail-safe cooling .....379  
 idle speed control .....373  
 refill capacities .....407  
 service points .....367–369
- Engine block heater .....266

## Index

- Engine oil .....371  
   checking and adding .....371  
   dipstick .....371  
   filter, specifications .....372, 406  
   recommendations .....372  
   refill capacities .....407  
 Event data recording .....9  
 Exhaust fumes .....265
- F**
- Fail safe cooling .....379  
 Fleet MyKey programming .....127  
 Flexible Fuel Vehicle (FFV) ....382  
 Floor mats .....121  
 Fluid capacities .....407  
 Fog lamps .....87  
 Four-Wheel Drive vehicles .....296  
   driving off road .....303  
   electronic shift .....297, 301  
   indicator light .....298  
   lever operated shift .....298  
   manual locking hubs .....297  
   preparing to drive your  
   vehicle .....281  
 Fuel .....382  
   calculating fuel  
   economy .....25, 389  
   cap .....385  
   capacity .....407  
   choosing the right fuel .....386  
   detergent in fuel .....388  
   filling your vehicle with  
   fuel .....382, 385, 389  
   filter, specifications .....382, 406  
   fuel pump shut-off .....316  
   improving fuel economy .....389  
   octane rating .....386–387, 411  
   quality .....387  
   running out of fuel .....388  
   safety information relating to  
   automotive fuels .....382  
 Fuel - flex fuel vehicle  
 (FFV) .....382, 386–387  
 Fuses .....316–317
- G**
- Garage door opener .....114  
 Gas cap (see Fuel cap) .....385  
 Gas mileage (see Fuel  
 economy) .....389  
 Gauges .....21
- H**
- Hazard flashers .....315  
 Headlamps .....86  
   aiming .....88–89  
   autolamp system .....86  
   daytime running lights .....88  
   flash to pass .....87  
   high beam .....87  
   replacing bulbs .....93  
   turning on and off .....86  
 Heating  
   heating and air conditioning  
   system .....77, 80  
 Hill descent mode .....277  
 Hill start assist .....291  
 Hood .....367
- I**
- Ignition .....262, 411  
 Illuminated visor mirror .....98

## Index

- Infant seats  
(see Safety seats) .....197
- Inspection/maintenance (I/M)  
testing .....394
- Instrument panel
  - cleaning .....361–362
  - cluster .....14
  - lighting up panel and  
interior .....88
- J**
- Jack .....326
  - positioning .....326
  - storage .....326
- Jump-starting your vehicle .....343
- K**
- Keyless entry system
  - autolock .....136
  - keypad .....146
  - locking and unlocking doors ..147
  - programming entry code .....146
- Keys .....127, 148
  - positions of the ignition .....262
- L**
- Lamps
  - autolamp system .....86
  - daytime running light .....88
  - fog lamps .....87
  - headlamps .....86
  - headlamps, flash to pass .....87
  - instrument panel, dimming ....88
  - interior lamps .....90
  - replacing bulbs .....93–96
- LATCH anchors .....204
- Lights, warning and indicator ....14  
446
- anti-lock brakes (ABS) .....269
- Loading instructions .....249
- Load limits .....242
- Locks
  - autolock .....136
  - childproof .....139
  - doors .....135
- Lug nuts .....342
- Lumbar support, seats .....158
- M**
- Manual transmission
  - fluid capacities .....407
- Message center .....22–23, 39
  - english/metric button .....27
  - system check button .....27
  - warning messages .....29, 47
- Mirrors .....103–104
  - automatic dimming rearview  
mirror .....104
  - fold away .....105, 107
  - heated .....80
  - programmable memory .....142
  - side view mirrors (power) ....104
  - signal .....108
- Moon roof .....113
- Motorcraft® parts .....406
- MyKey .....127
- N**
- Navigation system .....76
- O**
- Octane rating .....386–387
- Oil (see Engine oil) .....371

## Index

### P

Parental MyKey programming .....127  
 Parking brake .....269  
 Parts (see Motorcraft® parts) .....406  
 Pedals (see Power adjustable foot pedals) .....108  
 Power adjustable foot pedals ...108  
 Power distribution box (see Fuses) .....322  
 Power door locks .....135  
 Power mirrors .....104  
 Power point .....100  
 Power steering .....279  
   fluid, checking and adding ....395  
   fluid, refill capacity .....407  
 Power Windows .....102  
 Preparing to drive your vehicle .....281

### R

Radio .....59, 61  
 Rear-view camera system .....294  
 Recommendations for attaching safety restraints for children .....195  
 Relays .....316  
 Remote entry system .....140–141  
   illuminated entry .....143  
   locking/unlocking doors .....141  
   Remote start .....144  
   replacement/additional transmitters .....143  
   replacing the batteries .....142

Remote start .....144  
 Remote start climate operation .....84  
 Reverse sensing system .....292  
 Roadside assistance .....314

### S

Safety belts (see Safety restraints) .....166–168, 170–173  
 Safety Canopy .....183–184  
 Safety defects, reporting .....356  
 Safety restraints .....166–173  
   Belt-Minder® .....174  
   extension assembly .....172  
   for adults .....167–168, 170–172  
   for children .....192  
   warning light and chime .....173–174  
 Safety restraints - LATCH anchors .....204  
 Safety seats for children .....197  
 Safety Compliance Certification Label .....412  
 Satellite Radio Information .....73  
 Scheduled Maintenance Guide  
   Normal Scheduled Maintenance and Log .....428  
 Seats .....151  
   child safety seats .....197  
   cleaning .....364  
   climate control .....80, 159  
   easy access/easyout feature ..161  
   memory seat .....142, 161  
 SecuriCode keyless entry system .....146  
 447

## Index

- SecuriLock passive anti-theft system .....147–148
- Servicing your vehicle .....366
- Setting the clock .....60, 62
- Snowplowing .....7, 311–312
- SOS Post Crash Alert .....187
- Spark plugs, specifications .....406, 411
- Special notice .....8  
 ambulance conversions .....8  
 diesel-powered vehicles .....7  
 four-wheel drive vehicles .....313  
 utility-type vehicles .....7
- Speed control .....109
- Starting a flex fuel vehicle .....265
- Starting your vehicle .....262–265  
 jump starting .....343
- Steering wheel  
 controls .....111  
 tilting .....98
- SYNC® .....76
- T**
- Tailgate .....121
- Tilt steering wheel .....98
- Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)  
 Tires, Wheels and Loading ....234
- Tires .....216–218, 326  
 alignment .....226  
 care .....222  
 changing .....326, 329, 332  
 checking the pressure .....221  
 inflating .....219  
 label .....233  
 replacing .....224
- 448
- rotating .....227
- safety practices .....225
- sidewall information .....228
- snow tires and chains .....241
- spare tire .....327
- terminology .....218
- tire grades .....217
- treadwear .....217, 223
- Towing .....249  
 recreational towing .....261
- Trailer Brake  
 Controller-Integrated .....254  
 trailer towing .....249  
 wrecker .....347
- Traction control .....270
- Trailer Brake  
 Controller-Integrated .....254
- Trailer sway control .....277
- Transfer case  
 fluid checking .....400
- Transmission .....284  
 brake-shift interlock (BSI) ...282  
 fluid, checking and adding (automatic) .....396  
 fluid, refill capacities .....407
- Turn signal .....90
- U**
- Universal garage door opener ..114
- Upfitter controls .....112
- USB port .....70
- V**
- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) .....413
- Vehicle loading .....242
- Ventilating your vehicle .....266

## Index

### W

Warning lights (see Lights) .....	14	Windshield washer fluid and wipers .....	97
Washer fluid .....	370	checking and adding fluid .....	370
Water, Driving through .....	310	replacing wiper blades .....	370
Windows		Wrecker towing .....	347
power .....	102		

Ford & Mercury  
2011 Model Year  
(except F-650/750 and Hybrid vehicles)

# Warranty Guide





Your satisfaction is our #1 goal. If you have questions or concerns about your vehicle, we suggest you follow these steps:

1. Contact your Sales Representative or Service Advisor at your selling/servicing dealership.
2. If your inquiry or concern remains unresolved, contact the Sales Manager or Service Manager at the dealership.
3. If the inquiry or concern cannot be resolved at the dealership level, please contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center.

In the United States:

**Ford Motor Company  
Customer Relationship Center  
P.O. Box 6248  
Dearborn, MI 48121  
1-800-392-3673 (FORD)  
(TDD for the hearing impaired:  
1-800-232-5952)  
[www.customersaskford.com](http://www.customersaskford.com)**

In Canada:

**Customer Relationship Centre  
Ford Motor Company  
of Canada, Limited  
P.O. Box 2000  
Oakville, Ontario L6J 5E4  
1-800-565-3673 (FORD)  
[www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca)**

In the Asia Pacific Region, Caribbean,  
Central America, Israel and Sub-Saharan Africa:

**Ford Motor Company  
Ford Export Operations  
Attention: Customer Relations  
1555 Fairlane Drive  
Fairlane Business Park #3  
Allen Park, MI 48101  
Telephone: (313) 594-4857  
Fax: (313) 390-0804  
E-mail: [expcac@ford.com](mailto:expcac@ford.com)**

In Puerto Rico and Virgin Islands:

**Ford International Business  
Development, Inc.  
Customer Relationship Center  
P.O. Box 11957  
Caparra Heights Station  
San Juan, PR 00922-1957  
Telephone: 1-800-841-3673 (FORD)  
Fax: (313) 390-0804  
[www.ford.com.pr](http://www.ford.com.pr)**

In Middle East:

**Ford Middle East  
Customer Relationship Center  
P.O. Box 21470  
Dubai, United Arab Emirates  
Telephone: 971-4-3326084  
Fax: 971-4-3327299  
[www.me.ford.com](http://www.me.ford.com)**



## Table of Contents

<b>1. INTRODUCTION</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>2. IMPORTANT INFORMATION YOU SHOULD KNOW</b>	<b>2</b>
If You Need Customer Assistance	2
Know When Your Warranty Begins	2
Check Your Vehicle	2
Maintain Your Vehicle Properly	2
Who Pays For Warranty Repairs?	3
Do Warranties Apply In Other Countries?	4
<b>3. THE NEW VEHICLE LIMITED WARRANTY FOR YOUR 2011-MODEL VEHICLE</b>	<b>5</b>
Limitations And Disclaimers	5
What Is Covered?	8
What Is Not Covered?	12
<b>4. IN ADDITION ...</b>	<b>16</b>
Roadside Service Assistance (United States, Puerto Rico, And U.S. Virgin Islands)	16
<b>5. FEDERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR EMISSIONS WARRANTIES</b>	<b>17</b>
What Is Covered?	20
What Is Not Covered?	21
<b>6. CALIFORNIA REQUIREMENTS FOR EMISSIONS WARRANTIES</b>	<b>22</b>
What Is Covered?	26
What Is Not Covered?	29

<b>7. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION ABOUT YOUR EMISSIONS WARRANTY COVERAGE, UNDER FEDERAL AND CALIFORNIA REQUIREMENTS</b>	<b>30</b>
<b>8. NOISE EMISSIONS WARRANTY</b>	<b>32</b>
<b>9. FORD EXTENDED SERVICE PLAN</b>	<b>33</b>
<b>10. BETTER BUSINESS BUREAU (BBB) AUTO LINE PROGRAM</b>	<b>34</b>
<b>11. STATE WARRANTY ENFORCEMENT LAWS</b>	<b>35</b>
<b>12. IMPORTANT INFORMATION ABOUT AMBULANCE CONVERSIONS</b>	<b>35</b>
<b>13. IMPORTANT INFORMATION ABOUT FORD LIMOUSINE CONVERSIONS</b>	<b>36</b>

## 1. Introduction

**Ford Motor Company** and your selling dealer thank you for selecting one of our quality products. Our commitment to you and your vehicle begins with quality protection and service.

When you need warranty repairs, your selling dealer would like you to return to it for that service, but you may also take your vehicle to another Ford Motor Company dealership authorized for warranty repairs. Certain warranty repairs require special training though, so not all dealers are authorized to perform all warranty repairs. That means that, depending on the warranty repair needed, the vehicle may need to be taken to another dealer. If a particular dealership cannot assist you, then contact the Customer Relationship Center at 1-800-392-3673.

If you own or lease a 2011-model E-350 Livery Van equipped with the Livery Service Package or a 2011-model Crown Victoria Police Interceptor equipped with the Fleet Crown Police Package Option, refer to the Addendum Card that was given to you when you took delivery of your vehicle for further explanation of the amendments to the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. Please ask the vehicle modifier for a copy of the Addendum Card if you wish to review it prior to taking delivery of the vehicle.

This booklet explains in detail the warranty coverages that apply to your 2011-model car or light truck. If you bought a previously owned 2011-model vehicle, you are eligible for any remaining warranty coverages.

Ford Motor Company provides the **Emissions Defect Warranties** and **Emissions Performance Warranties** which cover your emissions control systems, and **Noise Emissions Warranty** which applies only to medium/heavy duty trucks over 10,000 pounds Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (pages 17-32).

## 2. Important information you should know

### IF YOU NEED CUSTOMER ASSISTANCE

Your Ford Motor Company dealer is available to assist you with all your automotive needs. Please follow the procedures outlined on the front page of this booklet.

In addition, if you are an eligible U.S. owner, you may use - at no cost - the services of the BBB AUTO LINE program. For details, see Better Business Bureau (BBB) AUTO LINE program, page 34 or call 1-800-955-5100.

### KNOW WHEN YOUR WARRANTY BEGINS

Your **Warranty Start Date** is the day you take delivery of your new vehicle or the day it is first put into service (for example, as a dealer demonstrator), whichever occurs first.

### CHECK YOUR VEHICLE

We try to check vehicles carefully at the assembly plant and the dealership, and we usually correct any damage to paint, sheet metal, upholstery, or other appearance items. But occasionally something may slip past us, and a customer may find that a vehicle was damaged before he or she took delivery. If you see any damage when you receive your vehicle, notify your dealership within one week.

### MAINTAIN YOUR VEHICLE PROPERLY

Your glove compartment contains an **Owner Guide** and a **Scheduled Maintenance Guide** which indicate the scheduled maintenance required for your vehicle. Proper maintenance guards against major repair expenses resulting from neglect or inadequate maintenance, may help increase the value you receive when you sell or trade your vehicle, and is important in allowing your vehicle to comply with applicable emissions standards.

It is your responsibility to make sure that all of the scheduled maintenance is performed and that the materials used meet Ford engineering specifications. Failure to perform scheduled maintenance as

specified in the Scheduled Maintenance Guide will invalidate warranty coverage on parts affected by the lack of maintenance. Make sure that receipts for completed maintenance work are retained with the vehicle and confirmation of maintenance work is always entered in your **Scheduled Maintenance Guide**.

Your Ford or Lincoln Mercury dealership, or Ford or Lincoln Mercury Auto Care Service Center, has factory-trained technicians who can perform the required maintenance using genuine Ford parts. The dealership looks forward to meeting your every service need to maximize your satisfaction with your vehicle.

### **WHO PAYS FOR WARRANTY REPAIRS?**

You will not be charged for repairs covered by any applicable warranty during the stated coverage periods, unless specifically stated elsewhere in this guide.

Some states have mandated alternate time coverage periods for parts of your vehicle (e.g. seatbelts).

Some states and/or local governments may require a tax on a portion of warranty repairs. Where applicable law allows, the tax must be paid by you, the owner of the vehicle.

During the Bumper to Bumper Warranty period, dealers may receive instructions to provide no-cost, service-type improvements - not originally included in your Scheduled Maintenance Guide - intended to increase your overall satisfaction with your vehicle.

Sometimes Ford may offer a special adjustment program to pay all or part of the cost of certain repairs beyond the terms of the applicable warranty. Check with your dealer or call 1-800-392-3673 to learn whether any adjustment program is applicable to your vehicle. Please have your vehicle identification number available.

**DO WARRANTIES APPLY IN OTHER COUNTRIES?**

The **New Vehicle Limited Warranty** and the **Emissions Warranties** described in this booklet apply to your vehicle if:

- it was originally purchased through the Ford Export Operations Military Sales Program; or
- it was originally sold or leased by Ford Motor Company or one of its dealers in the United States or U.S. Federalized Territories, and it was originally registered/licensed and operated in the United States, U.S. Federalized Territories, or Canada.

If you meet either of these two requirements, you do have warranty coverage when you travel with this vehicle outside the United States, U.S. Federalized Territories, or Canada. In some cases, however, you may have to pay the servicing Ford dealer in a foreign country or U.S. Federalized Territory for a repair that is covered under the U.S. warranty. If this happens, be sure to save the paid repair order or invoice. You should present this document to a U.S. Ford Motor Company dealer for warranty refund consideration. Refer to [www.Ford.com](http://www.Ford.com) for additional customer assistance reference information.

### 3. The New Vehicle Limited Warranty for your 2011-model vehicle

#### **LIMITATIONS AND DISCLAIMERS**

All of the warranties in this booklet are subject to the following limitations and disclaimers:

The warranties in this booklet are the only express warranties applicable to your vehicle. Ford does not assume or authorize anyone to assume for it any other obligation or liability in connection with your vehicle or these warranties. No person, including Ford employees or dealers, may modify or waive any part of these warranties.

Ford and its dealers reserve the right to make changes in or additions to vehicles built or sold by them at any time without incurring any obligation to make the same or similar changes or additions to vehicles previously built or sold.

Ford and its dealers also reserve the right to provide post-warranty repairs, conduct recalls, or extend the warranty coverage period for certain vehicles or vehicle populations, at the sole discretion of Ford. The fact that Ford has provided such measures to a particular vehicle or vehicle population in no way obligates Ford to provide similar accommodations to other owners of similar vehicles.

As a condition of these warranties, you are responsible for properly using, maintaining, and caring for your vehicle as outlined in your Owner Guide and Scheduled Maintenance Guide. Ford recommends that you maintain copies of all maintenance records and receipts for review by Ford.

Ford and your dealer are not responsible for any time or income that you lose, any inconvenience you might be caused, the loss of your transportation or use of your vehicle, the cost of rental vehicles, fuel, telephone, travel, meals, or lodging, the loss of personal or commercial property, the loss of revenue, or for any other incidental or consequential damages you may have.

Punitive, exemplary, or multiple damages may not be recovered unless applicable law prohibits their disclaimer.

You may not bring any warranty-related claim as a class representative, a private attorney general, a member of a class of claimants or in any other representative capacity.

Ford shall not be liable for any damages caused by delay in delivery or furnishing of any products and/or services.

You may have some implied warranties. For example, you may have an implied warranty of merchantability (that the car or light truck is reasonably fit for the general purpose for which it was sold) or an implied warranty of fitness for a particular purpose (that the car or light truck is suitable for your special purposes), if a special purpose was specifically disclosed to Ford itself not merely to the dealer before your purchase, and Ford itself not just the dealer told you the vehicle would be suitable for that purpose.

These implied warranties are limited, to the extent allowed by law, to the time period covered by the written warranties, or to the applicable time period provided by state law, whichever period is shorter.

These implied warranties do not apply at all if you use your vehicle for business or commercial purposes. In addition, the implied warranty of fitness for a particular purpose does not apply if your vehicle is used for racing, even if the vehicle is equipped for racing.

The warranties contained in this booklet and all questions regarding their enforceability and interpretation are governed by the law of the state in which you purchased your Ford vehicle. Some states do not allow Ford to limit how long an implied warranty lasts or to exclude or limit incidental or consequential damages, so the limitation and exclusions described above may not apply to you.

**NOTE: This information about the limitation of implied warranties and the exclusion of incidental and consequential damages under the NEW VEHICLE LIMITED WARRANTY also applies to the EMISSIONS WARRANTIES described on pages 17-31.**

Ford participates in the BBB AUTO LINE warranty dispute resolution program. You may contact BBB AUTO LINE by calling 800-955-5100.

You are required to submit your warranty dispute to the BBB AUTO LINE before exercising rights or seeking remedies under the Federal Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, 15 U.S.C. § 2301 et seq. To the extent permitted by the applicable state “Lemon Law”, you are also required to submit your warranty dispute to the BBB AUTO LINE before exercising any rights or seeking remedies under the “Lemon Law”. If you choose to seek remedies that are not created by the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act or the applicable state “Lemon Law,” you are not required to first use BBB AUTO LINE to resolve your dispute – although the program is still available to you.

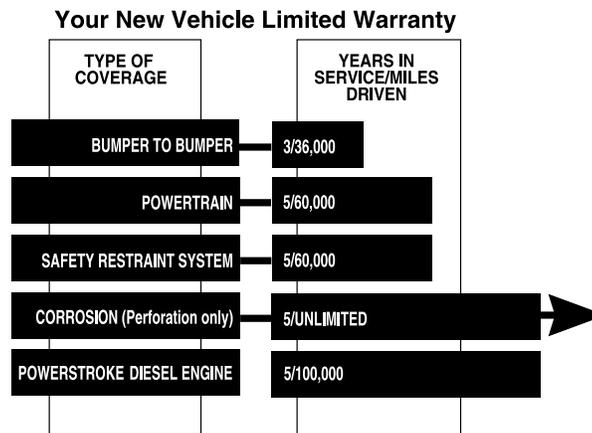
For more information regarding the BBB AUTO LINE program, see page 34 of this booklet.

## QUICK REFERENCE: WARRANTY COVERAGE

This chart gives a general summary of your warranty coverage provided by Ford Motor Company under the **New Vehicle Limited Warranty**. Please refer to the description of warranty coverage for more specific information.

For each type of coverage, the chart shows two measures:

- years in service
- miles driven



The measure that occurs first determines how long your coverage lasts. For example: Your Bumper to Bumper Coverage lasts for three years - unless you drive more than 36,000 miles before three years elapse. In that case, your coverage ends at 36,000 miles.

For more details on coverage, see:

- ➔ **What is Covered?** (pages 8-12)
- ➔ **What is Not Covered?** (pages 12-15)

### WHAT IS COVERED?

Your NEW VEHICLE LIMITED WARRANTY gives you specific legal rights. You may have other rights that vary from state to state. Under your New Vehicle Limited Warranty if:

- your Ford vehicle is properly operated and maintained, and

- was taken to a Ford dealership for a warranted repair during the warranty period,

then authorized Ford Motor Company dealers will, without charge, repair, replace, or adjust all parts on your vehicle that malfunction or fail during normal use during the applicable coverage period due to a manufacturing defect in factory-supplied materials or factory workmanship.

This warranty does not mean that each Ford vehicle is defect free. Defects may be unintentionally introduced into vehicles during the design and manufacturing processes and such defects could result in the need for repairs. For this reason, Ford provides the New Vehicle Limited Warranty in order to remedy any such defects that result in vehicle part malfunction or failure during the warranty period.

The remedy under this written warranty, and any implied warranty, is limited to repair, replacement, or adjustment of defective parts. This exclusive remedy shall not be deemed to have failed its essential purpose so long as Ford, through its authorized dealers, is willing and able to repair, replace, or adjust defective parts in the prescribed manner. Ford's liability, if any, shall in no event exceed the cost of correcting manufacturing defects as herein provided and upon expiration of this warranty, any such liability shall terminate.

Conditions that are not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty are described on pages 12-15. When making warranty repairs on your vehicle, the dealer will use Ford or Motorcraft parts or remanufactured or other parts that are authorized by Ford, at the discretion of Ford or the Ford dealership.

Nothing in this warranty should be construed as requiring defective parts to be replaced with parts of a different type or design than the original part, so long as the vehicle functions properly with the replacement part. Moreover, Ford and its authorized dealers are entitled to a reasonable time and a reasonable number of attempts within which to diagnose and repair any defect covered by this warranty.

In certain instances, Ford may authorize repairs at other than Ford dealer facilities.

Two separate warranties apply to tires on your new vehicle. The New Vehicle Limited Warranty covers tire defects in factory supplied material or workmanship for 100% of labor costs and on a pro rata adjustment basis for parts. (See the reimbursement schedule below).

For vehicles within the New Vehicle Limited Warranty time in service and mileage coverage period, defective tires will be replaced on a pro rata adjustment basis according to the following mileage-based Reimbursement Schedule:

MILES DRIVEN	PERCENT OF PARTS COVERED BY FORD
1-12,000	100%
12,001-24,000	60%
24,001-36,000	30%

The tire manufacturer also provides you with a separate tire warranty that may extend beyond the New Vehicle Limited Warranty coverage. You will find the manufacturer's tire warranty with the owner literature supplied with your vehicle. You have the option of having a tire warranty repair performed by the tire manufacturer's authorized service center. If you go to a tire service center for a repair covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty, you may be charged a prorated amount for wear or other charges. If so, you should present your paid invoice detailing the nature of the charges to any Ford Motor Company dealership for refund consideration. When making warranty repairs on your vehicle, the dealer will use Ford or Motorcraft parts or remanufactured or other parts that are authorized by Ford. In certain instances, Ford may authorize repairs at other than Ford dealer facilities. Tire replacements under warranty will be made with the same brand and model as originally equipped with the vehicle unless the same brand and model is no longer available, in which case a tire of the same brand, size, load, speed and tread type will be used. In some circumstances, Ford may authorize another brand and/or model to substitute for the original brand and model, even if still available.

Normal tire wear or damage is not reimbursable. See page 15 for details of what is not covered.

**Extended warranty coverage periods are available for certain vehicle parts and conditions. Specifically,**

(1) Your vehicle's Powertrain components are covered for five years or 60,000 miles, whichever occurs first. The extended coverage applies to the **Engine:** all internal lubricated parts, cylinder block, cylinder heads, electrical fuel pump, electronic engine control unit, engine mounts, flywheel, injection pump, manifold (exhaust and intake), manifold bolts, oil pan, oil pump, seals and gaskets, thermostat, thermostat housing, timing chain cover, timing chain (gears or belt), turbocharger/supercharger unit, valve covers, water pump;

**Transmission:** all internal parts, clutch cover, seals and gaskets, torque converter, transfer case (including all internal parts), transmission case, transmission mounts; **Front-Wheel Drive:** axle shafts, bearings (front and rear), center support bearing, drive shafts, final drive housing (including all internal parts), hubs-automatic front locking (four-wheel drive), locking rings (four-wheel drive), seals and gaskets, universal and constant velocity joints; **Rear-Wheel Drive:** axle shafts, bearings (front and rear), center support bearing, drive axle housing (including all internal parts), drive shaft, propeller shafts, retainers, supports, seals and gaskets, universal and constant velocity joints.

(2) Your vehicle's safety belts and air bag Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) are covered for an extended Safety Restraint Coverage Period, which lasts for five years or 60,000 miles, whichever occurs first.

(3) Your vehicle's body sheet metal panels are covered for an extended Corrosion Coverage Period, which lasts for five years, regardless of miles driven. The extended warranty coverage only applies if a body sheet metal panel becomes perforated due to corrosion during normal use due to a manufacturing defect in factory-supplied materials or factory workmanship. For damage caused by airborne material (environmental fallout) where there is no factory-related defect involved and therefore no warranty – our policy is to provide free repair of paint damage due to the airborne material for 12 months or 12,000 miles, whichever occurs first.

(4) Your vehicle's direct injection diesel engine and certain engine components are covered during the PowerStroke Diesel Engine Coverage Period, which lasts for five years or 100,000 miles, whichever occurs first. The following parts are covered during this extended coverage period: the engine, cylinder block, heads and all internal parts, intake and exhaust manifolds, timing gear, harmonic balancer, valve covers, oil pan and pump, water pump, fuel system (excluding fuel lines, fuel tank and frame mounted fuel conditioning module sometimes referred to as the frame mounted pump/filter/water separator), high pressure lines, gaskets and seals, glow plugs, turbocharger, two-stage turbocharger assembly, turbocharger actuator, powertrain control module, engine control module, high pressure fuel injection pump assembly, electronic driver unit, injectors, injection pressure sensor, fuel rail pressure sensor,

high pressure oil regulator, exhaust back pressure regulator and sensor, exhaust pressure sensor, manifold pressure sensor, intake air temperature sensor, crankshaft position sensor, camshaft position sensor, accelerator switch.

**NOTE:** Some components may also be covered by the Emissions Warranties. For more information, see pages 17-31.

### **Expedition Limousine Limited Warranty**

If you have purchased or leased a 2011-model Expedition EL (equipped with the 17L Builder's Package) converted into a limousine by a Ford Qualified Vehicle Modifier, your Expedition EL is eligible for the Ford Limousine Limited Warranty coverage for three years or 100,000 miles, whichever occurs first. This coverage begins on the Warranty Start Date and is in addition to the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. Refer to the warranty addendum card that was given to you when you took delivery of your 2011-model Expedition EL Limousine for details of the Ford Limousine Limited Warranty. See page 36 for additional details about the 17L Limousine Builder Package.

### **WHAT IS NOT COVERED UNDER THE NEW VEHICLE LIMITED WARRANTY?**

#### **Damage Caused By:**

- accidents, collision or objects striking the vehicle (including driving through a car wash)
- theft, vandalism, or riot
- fire or explosion
- using contaminated or improper fuel/fluids
- customer-applied chemicals or accidental spills
- driving through water deep enough to cause water to be ingested into the engine
- misuse of the vehicle, such as driving over curbs, overloading, racing or using the vehicle as a permanent stationary power source

**Damage Caused by Alteration or Modification**

The New Vehicle Limited Warranty does not cover any damage caused by:

- alterations or modifications of the vehicle, including the body, chassis, or components, after the vehicle leaves the control of Ford Motor Company
- tampering with the vehicle, tampering with the emissions systems or with the other parts that affect these systems (for example, but not limited to exhaust and intake systems)
- the installation or use of a non-Ford Motor Company part (other than a certified emissions part) or any part (Ford or non-Ford) designed for off-road use only installed after the vehicle leaves the control of Ford Motor Company, if the installed part fails or causes a Ford part to fail. Examples include, but are not limited to lift kits, oversized tires, roll bars, cellular phones, alarm systems, automatic starting systems and performance-enhancing powertrain components or software and performance “chips”

**Damage Caused by Use and/or the Environment**

The New Vehicle Limited Warranty does not cover surface rust, deterioration and damage of paint, trim, upholstery, and other appearance items that result from use and/or exposure to the elements. You, as the owner, are responsible for these items. Some examples are:

- dings, dents
- cuts, burns, punctures or tears
- road salt
- tree sap, bird and bee droppings
- windstorm, lightening, hail
- earthquake
- freezing, water or flood
- stone chips, scratches (some examples are on paint and glass)
- windshield stress cracks. However, limited coverage on windshield stress cracks will be provided for the first 12 months in service, regardless of miles driven, even though caused by use and/or exposure to the elements.

### **Maintenance/Wear**

The New Vehicle Limited Warranty does not cover: (1) parts and labor needed to maintain the vehicle; and (2) the replacement of parts due to normal wear and tear. You, as the owner, are responsible for these items. See your Scheduled Maintenance Guide. Some examples of maintenance and normal wear are:

- oil changes
- oils, lubricants, other fluids
- oil/air filters
- tire rotation/inflation
- cleaning/polishing
- clutch linings
- Wiper blades
- Wheel alignments and tire balancing
- Brake pad/lining

Where a vehicle has no factory-related defect, and is therefore not entitled to a warranty related repair, replacement or adjustment, it is Ford policy nonetheless to provide certain maintenance items, when necessary, free of charge during a limited period:

- wiper blade replacements will be provided during the first 12 months in service, regardless of miles driven
- wheel alignments and tire balancing (unless required by a warranty repair) will be provided during the first 12 months or 12,000 miles in service, whichever occurs first
- Brake pad/lining replacements will be provided during the first 12 months or 18,000 miles in service, whichever occurs first

### **SYNC Hands-Free Communications and Entertainment System**

If your vehicle is equipped with SYNC, the New Vehicle Limited Warranty does not cover repairs under certain conditions. Some examples include:

- Loss of personal recording media, software or data
- Failure to provide proper installation environment
- Damage caused by:
  - abnormal use such as insertion of foreign objects, fluid spillage
  - unauthorized modification to alter functionality or capability
  - computer or internet viruses, bugs, worms, Trojan Horses, cancelbots
  - installation of unauthorized software, peripherals and attachments
  - unauthorized, unapproved and/or incompatible repairs, upgrades and modification

- the defective function of your cellular phone or digital media device (i.e., inadequate signal reception by the external antenna, viruses or other software problems)

### **Tire Wear or Damage**

The New Vehicle Limited Warranty does not cover normal wear or worn out tires. Tires will not be replaced (unless required by a warranty repair) for wear or damage including:

- tire damage from road hazard such as cuts, snags, bruises, bulges, puncture, and impact breaks
- tire damage due to under or over inflation, tire chain use, racing, spinning (as when stuck in snow or mud), improper mounting or dismounting, or tire repair

### **Other Items or Conditions Not Covered**

The New Vehicle Limited Warranty does not cover:

- vehicles that have had the odometer disconnected, altered, or inoperative for an extended period of time with the result that the actual mileage cannot be determined
- vehicles that have ever been labeled or branded as dismantled, fire, flood, junk, rebuilt, reconstructed, or salvaged; this will void the New Vehicle Limited Warranty
- vehicles that have been determined to be a total loss by an insurance company; this will void the New Vehicle Limited Warranty
- converted Expedition EL Limousines that are not equipped with the Limousine Builder's Package (17L) Option, or if the wheelbase is extended beyond 140 inches, or if the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) exceeds 9,900 pounds. See important information about Expedition EL limousine conversion (page 36).
- any other Ford or Mercury vehicles that are converted to limousines. This will void the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. See important information about conversions (page 36)
- converted ambulances that are not equipped with the Ford Ambulance Prep Package, see important information about ambulance conversions (page 35)

## 4. In addition ...

### **ROADSIDE SERVICE ASSISTANCE (UNITED STATES, PUERTO RICO, AND U.S. VIRGIN ISLANDS)**

Your vehicle is covered by the complimentary Ford Roadside Assistance Program (unless you are driving a daily rental unit). Under this program, Ford will cover:

- Towing to the nearest Ford Motor Company dealership, or towing to your selling dealership if within 35 miles
- Flat tire change (vehicle must have useable spare)
- Fuel delivery (limited to two occurrences in a 12-month period up to 2 gal. gas, 5 gal. diesel)
- Jump starts
- Lock-out assistance (replacement key cost is customer responsibility)
- Winching (vehicle must be within 100 feet of a paved or county-maintained road)

The Roadside Assistance Program is separate from the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. It begins at the warranty start date and lasts for five years or 60,000 miles (whichever occurs first). If you need towing beyond the five years or 60,000 miles (whichever occurs first) period, Ford can arrange roadside assistance and charge your credit card unless the problem is covered by another Ford warranty. Ford will pay the tow charge under the other warranty.

**For emergency roadside assistance, call 1-800-241-3673, 24 hours a day, 365 days a year.**

Ford Rental cars (FRCS) that must be towed because a covered repair has failed during the warranty coverage period, Ford will cover towing to the nearest Ford Motor Company dealership.

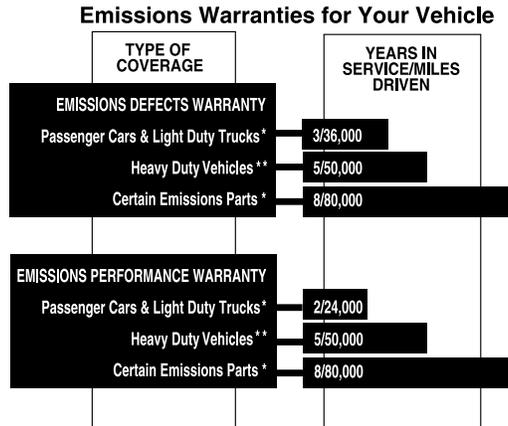
Ford Motor Company reserves the right to modify or discontinue Roadside Assistance at any time. Certain restrictions apply to Roadside Assistance benefits. Call 1-800-241-3673 for further details.

## 5. Federal requirements for emissions warranties

### QUICK REFERENCE: EMISSIONS WARRANTY COVERAGE

This chart shows your warranty coverage under two emissions warranties that Ford Motor Company provides, in compliance with Federal requirements. The warranties are:

- Emissions Defects Warranty
- Emissions Performance Warranty



\* Applies to vehicles up to 8,500 pounds gross vehicle weight rating (GVWR)

\*\* Applies to trucks over 8,500 pounds gross vehicle weight rating (GVWR) up to 19,500 pounds gross vehicle weight rating (GVWR)

For full details on emissions control coverage, see:

- ➔ **Emissions Defect Warranty** (page 18)
- ➔ **Emissions Performance Warranty** (page 19)
- ➔ **What is Covered?** (pages 20-21)
- ➔ **What is Not Covered?** (page 21)

## EMISSIONS DEFECT WARRANTY COVERAGE

During the warranty coverage period, Ford Motor Company warrants that:

- your vehicle or engine is designed, built, and equipped to meet - at the time it is sold - the emissions regulations of the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA).
- your vehicle or engine is free from emission-related defects in factory-supplied materials or workmanship, which are defects that could prevent the vehicle or engine from conforming with applicable EPA regulations.
- you will not be charged for diagnosis, repair, replacement, or adjustment of parts containing an emissions-related defect. Applicable parts are listed under **What is Covered?** on pages 20-21.

The warranty coverage period for:

- Passenger cars, light duty trucks (applies to vehicles up to 8,500 pounds GVWR)
  - 8 years or 80,000 miles (whichever occurs first) for catalytic converters, electronic engine control unit (ECU), transmission control module (TCM), and any other onboard emissions diagnostic module.
  - 3 years or 36,000 miles (whichever occurs first) for all other covered parts.
- Heavy duty vehicles (applies to trucks over 8,500 pounds GVWR up to 19,500 pounds GVWR)
  - 5 years or 50,000 miles (whichever occurs first) for all covered parts.

See WHAT IS COVERED for list of covered parts.

## EMISSIONS PERFORMANCE WARRANTY COVERAGE

Under Emissions Performance Warranty Coverage, Ford Motor Company will repair, replace, or adjust - with no charge for labor, diagnosis, or parts - any emissions control device or system, if you meet all of the following conditions:

- You have maintained and operated your vehicle according to the instructions on proper care in the **Owner Guide**, the **Scheduled Maintenance Guide**, and this booklet.
- Your vehicle fails to conform, during the warranty coverage period, to the applicable national EPA standards, as determined by an EPA approved inspection and maintenance program.
- You are subject to a penalty or sanction under local, state, or federal law because your vehicle has failed to conform to the emissions standards. (A penalty or sanction can include being denied the right to use your vehicle.)
- Your vehicle has not been tampered with, misused, or abused.

The warranty coverage period for:

- Passenger cars, light duty trucks (applies to vehicles up to 8,500 pounds GVWR)
  - 8 years or 80,000 miles (whichever occurs first) for catalytic converter, electronic emission control unit (ECU), transmission control module (TCM), and any other onboard emissions diagnostic module
  - 2 years or 24,000 miles (whichever occurs first) for all other covered parts.
- Heavy duty vehicles (applies to trucks over 8,500 pounds GVWR up to 19,500 pounds GVWR)
  - 5 years or 50,000 miles (whichever occurs first) for all covered parts.

See WHAT IS COVERED for list of covered parts.

Note that the warranty period begins on the **Warranty Start Date** as specified on page 2 of this booklet.

## WHAT IS COVERED?

For your vehicle if these parts contain an emissions-related defect, they are covered by both the Emissions Defect Warranty and the Emissions Performance Warranty.

- Air Flow Sensor
- Air/Fuel Feedback Control System and Sensors
- Air Induction System
- Catalytic Converters (including Selective Catalytic Reduction and Diesel Oxidation Catalysts)
- Cold Start Enrichment System (diesel only)
- Controls for Deceleration (diesel only)
- Diesel Exhaust Fluid System
- Diesel Particulate Filter
- Electronic Ignition System (diesel only)
- Electronic Engine Control Sensors and Switches
- Electronic Engine Control Unit (ECU)\*
- Evaporative Emission Control System
- Exhaust Gas Recirculation (EGR) System
- Exhaust Heat Control Valve
- Exhaust Manifold
- Exhaust Pipe (Manifold to Catalyst)
- Fuel Filler Cap and Neck Restrictor (non-diesel only)
- Fuel Injection System
- Fuel Injector Supply Manifold
- Fuel Tank (non-diesel only)
- Fuel Tank Pressure Control Valve
- Idle Air Bypass Valve
- Ignition Coil and/or Control Module
- Intake Manifold
- Intercooler Assembly - Engine Charger (diesel only)
- Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)/On-Board Diagnostic (OBD) System
- PCV system and Oil Filler Cap
- Secondary Air Injection System
- Spark Control Components
- Spark Plugs and Ignition Wires
- Synchronizer Assembly
- Thermostat
- Throttle Body Assembly (MFI)
- Transmission Control Module (TCM) and Solenoids
- Turbocharger Assembly
- Vacuum Distribution System

\* Includes hardware and emissions related software changes only

### **Important Information About List of Parts**

Also covered by the two emissions warranties are all emissions-related bulbs, hoses, clamps, brackets, tubes, gaskets, seals, belts, connectors, non-diesel fuel lines, sensors, and wiring harnesses that are used with components on the list of parts, above.

Concerning parts that should be replaced on a certain maintenance schedule: these parts remain under warranty until : (a) the first replacement time that is specified in your **Owner Guide** and the **Scheduled Maintenance Guide**; or (b) the time or mileage limits of the Federal Defect and Performance Warranties (whichever occurs first). Your Ford Motor Company dealer maintains a complete list of parts covered by emissions warranties. For more details about the specific parts covered by the Emissions Defect Warranty, contact your dealer.

### **WHAT IS NOT COVERED?**

Ford Motor Company may deny you emissions warranty coverage if your vehicle or a part does not contain an emissions-related defect or has failed because of abuse, neglect, improper maintenance, unapproved modifications, or any items included in **What Is Not Covered?**, pages 12-15.

If you need more information about getting service under the **Federal Emissions Performance Warranty**, or if you want to report what you believe to be violations of the terms of this warranty, you may contact:

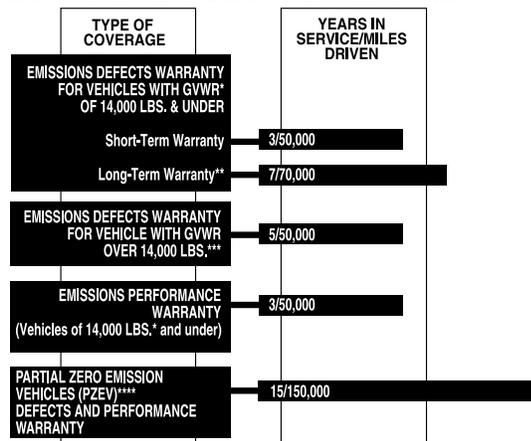
**Manager, Certification and Compliance Division  
(6405J)  
Warranty Claims  
Environmental Protection Agency  
Ariel Rios building  
1200 Pennsylvania Avenue, N.W.  
Washington, D.C. 20460**

## 6. California requirements for emissions warranties

### QUICK REFERENCE: EMISSIONS WARRANTY COVERAGE

This chart shows the emission warranty that Ford Motor Company provides for your vehicle under the emissions control warranty in accordance with the regulations of the California Air Resources Board. This coverage is in addition to Federal Emission warranties (Page 17).

**Emissions Warranties for California Certified Vehicles**



\* Gross Vehicle Weight Rating

\*\* These specific parts were selected on the basis of their estimated replacement cost at the time the California Air Resources Board certified your vehicle for sale in California (up to 14,000 GVWR).

\*\*\* Diesel engine vehicles over 14,000 pounds GVWR are covered for 5 years or 100,000 miles.

\*\*\*\* Refer to your Vehicle Emission Control Information Label for emissions certification information.

### Vehicles Eligible for California Emission Warranty Coverage

California emission warranty coverage applies if your vehicle meets the following two requirements:

- Your vehicle is registered in California or other states adopting California emission and warranty regulations,\* and
- Your vehicle is certified for sale in California as indicated on the vehicle emission control information label.

- \* Other states adopting California emissions and warranty regulation:
- **Passenger Car & Light-duty Trucks** (up to 8,500 pounds GVWR) - California, Connecticut, Maine, Maryland, Massachusetts, New Jersey, New Mexico, Oregon, Pennsylvania, Rhode Island, Vermont and Washington (NOTE: New York adopted California emissions standards, but not the California Emissions Warranty; the Federal Emission Control Warranty applies to all non-PZEV vehicles in New York)
  - **Medium-Duty Passenger Vehicles** (up to 10,000 pounds GVWR designed primarily for the transportation of persons. Excludes incomplete trucks, trucks with a seating capacity either over twelve persons total or over nine persons rearward of the driver's seat, or trucks with an open cargo area of at least six feet of interior length): California, Connecticut, Maine, Maryland, Massachusetts, New Mexico, Oregon, Rhode Island, Vermont and Washington
  - **Medium-Duty Vehicles** (over 8,500 pounds GVWR up to 14,000 pounds GVWR) - California, Connecticut, Maine, Maryland, Massachusetts, New Mexico, Oregon, Rhode Island, and Vermont.
  - **Light Heavy-Duty Diesel Engine Vehicles** (over 14,000 pounds GVWR up to 19,500 pounds GVWR) - California, Maine, and Pennsylvania.

### **Vehicles Eligible for California PZEV Emission Warranty Coverage**

California Partial Zero Emission Vehicles (PZEV) have extended coverage on all emission related parts. This extended warranty coverage applies if your vehicle is PZEV certified as indicated on the VECI label and is registered in California, Connecticut, Maine, Maryland, Massachusetts, New Jersey, New Mexico, New York, Rhode Island or Vermont.

For full details about coverage under California requirements for emissions control, see:

- ➔ **Defects Warranties** (pages 23-30)
- ➔ **Performance Warranty** (pages 23-25)
- ➔ **What Is Covered?** (pages 26-29)
- ➔ **What Is Not Covered?** (page 29)

### **EXPLANATION OF CALIFORNIA EMISSIONS WARRANTIES**

#### **Your Warranty Rights and Obligations**

The California Air Resources Board and Ford Motor Company are pleased to explain the emission control system warranty on your 2011-model vehicle. In California, new motor vehicles must be designed,

built, and equipped to meet the State's stringent anti-smog standards. Ford must warrant the emission control system on your vehicle for the periods of time listed on pages 24-25, provided there has been no abuse, neglect, or improper maintenance of your vehicle.

Your emission control system may include parts such as the carburetor or fuel injection system, the ignition system, catalytic converter, and the engine computer. Also included may be hoses, belts, connectors, and other emissions-related assemblies.

Where a warrantable condition exists, Ford Motor Company will repair your vehicle at no cost to you including diagnosis, parts, and labor.

### **Manufacturer's Warranty Coverage**

#### For Vehicles Eligible for California Emission Warranty Coverage

If Gross Vehicle Weight Rating is 14,000 lbs. or less:

For 3 years or 50,000 miles (whichever first occurs):

1. If your vehicle fails a Smog Check inspection, all necessary repairs and adjustments will be made by Ford to ensure that your vehicle passes the inspection. This is your emission control system **PERFORMANCE WARRANTY**.
2. If any emissions-related part on your vehicle is defective, the part will be repaired or replaced by Ford. This is your short-term emission control system **DEFECTS WARRANTY**.

For 7 years or 70,000 miles (whichever first occurs):

If an emissions-related part listed on page 27 with coverage for 7 years or 70,000 miles is defective, the part will be repaired or replaced by Ford. This is your long-term emission control system **DEFECTS WARRANTY**.

If Gross Vehicle Weight rating is over 14,000 lbs.:

For 5 years or 50,000 miles (gasoline powered engines and vehicles) or 5 years or 100,000 miles (diesel powered engines and vehicles) (whichever first occurs):

If an emissions-related part on your vehicle is defective, the part will be repaired or replaced by Ford. This is your emission control system **DEFECTS WARRANTY**.

For Vehicles Eligible for California PZEV Emission Warranty Coverage

For 15 years or 150,000 miles (whichever first occurs):

1. If an emissions-related part on your vehicle is defective, the part will be repaired or replaced by Ford. This is your emissions control system DEFECTS WARRANTY.
2. If your vehicle fails a Smog Check inspection, all necessary repairs and adjustments will be made by Ford to ensure that your vehicle passes the inspection. This is your emission control system PERFORMANCE WARRANTY.

**Owner's Warranty Responsibilities**

As the vehicle owner, you are responsible for the performance of the required maintenance listed in your owner's manual. Ford Motor Company recommends that you retain all receipts covering maintenance on your vehicle, but Ford cannot deny warranty coverage solely for the lack of receipts or for your failure to ensure the performance of all scheduled maintenance.

You are responsible for presenting your vehicle to a Ford Motor Company dealer as soon as a problem exists. The warranty repairs should be completed in a reasonable amount of time, not to exceed 30 days.

As the vehicle owner, you should also be aware that Ford Motor Company may deny you warranty coverage if your vehicle or a part has failed due to abuse, neglect, improper maintenance, or unapproved modifications.

If you have any questions regarding your warranty rights and responsibilities, or if you want to report what you believe to be violations of the terms of this warranty, you may contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center at 1-800-392-3673 (FORD) or the California Air Resources Board at:

**State of California Air Resources Board  
Mobile Source Operations Division  
P.O. Box 8001  
El Monte, California 91731-2990**

## WHAT IS COVERED?

If the parts on the following list contains a defect that affects emissions, they are covered by the Defects Warranties.

- Air Flow Sensor
- Air/Fuel Feedback Control System and Sensors
- Air Induction System
- Catalytic Converters (including Selective Catalytic Reduction and Diesel Oxidation Catalysts)
- Cold Start Enrichment System (diesel only)
- Controls for Deceleration (diesel only)
- Diesel Exhaust Fluid System
- Diesel Particulate Filter
- Electronic Ignition System (diesel only)
- Electronic Engine Control Sensors and Switches
- Electronic Engine Control Unit (ECU)\*
- Evaporative Emission Control System
- Exhaust Gas Recirculation (EGR) System
- Exhaust Heat Control Valve
- Exhaust Manifold
- Exhaust Pipe (Manifold to Catalyst)
- Fuel Filler Cap and Neck Restrictor (non-diesel only)
- Fuel Injection System
- Fuel Injector Supply Manifold
- Fuel Tank (non-diesel only)
- Fuel Tank Pressure Control Valve
- Idle Air Bypass Valve
- Ignition Coil and/or Control Module
- Intake Manifold
- Intercooler Assembly - Engine Charger (diesel and 2.0L EcoBoost engine only)
- Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)/On-Board Diagnostic (OBD) System
- PCV System and Oil Filler Cap
- Secondary Air Injection System
- Spark Control Components
- Spark Plugs and Ignition Wires
- Synchronizer Assembly
- Thermostat
- Throttle Body Assembly (MFI)
- Transmission Control Module (TCM) and Solenoids
- Turbocharger Assembly
- Vacuum Distribution System

\* Includes hardware and emissions related software changes only

**COVERAGE FOR 2011 MODEL VEHICLES (GVWR OF 14,000 LBS. OR LESS)  
UNDER LONG TERM DEFECTS WARRANTY**  
(Coverage for up to 7 years/70,000 miles, whichever first occurs)

Part Name	Engine, Size/Vehicle Line																																	
	1.6L Fiesta	2.0L Focus	2.0L TransitConnect	2.0L Explorer	2.3L Ranger	2.5L Fusion/Milan	2.5L Escape/Mariner	3.0L Fusion/Milan	3.0L Escape/Mariner	3.5L Fusion	3.5L Flex	3.5L Taurus	3.5L Edge	3.5L Explorer	3.5L F150	3.7L Edge	3.7L Mustang	3.7L F150	4.0L Ranger	4.0L Crown Victoria/Grand Marquis	4.6L F-Series	5.0L Mustang	5.0L F150	5.4L Mustang	5.4L F-Series	5.4L Expedition	6.2L F150 HD/Raptor	6.2L F-Series	6.7L F-Series	6.8L F-Series				
ABS Module	X																																	
Catalytic Converter																																		
Exhaust Converter Intermediate Pipe																																		
Diesel Particulate Filter																																		
Diesel Exhaust Fluid Tank Assembly																																		
Cam Timing Assembly	X																																	
Variable Camshaft Timing Kit																																		
Variable Camshaft Timing Housing (Right Hand)																																		
Variable Camshaft Timing Housing (Left Hand)																																		
Variable Camshaft Timing Solenoid																																		
Variable Camshaft Timing Assembly																																		
Turbocharger																																		
Charge Air Cooler																																		
Transmission Turbine Shaft Speed Sensor																																		
Transmission Output Shaft Speed Sensor																																		
Transmission Intermediate Speed Sensor																																		
Transmission Range Sensor																																		
Transmission Control Module																																		
Transmission Solenoid Assembly																																		
Fuel Tank	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
Fuel Tank Shield																																		
Fuel Filler Pipe																																		
Fuel Supply Manifold Assembly	X																																	
Fuel Delivery Module	X																																	
Fuel Pump Assembly																																		
Turbocharger Control Solenoid																																		
Intake Manifold																																		
Exhaust Manifold (Right-Hand)																																		

**COVERAGE FOR 2011 MODEL VEHICLES (GVWR OF 14,000 LBS. OR LESS)  
UNDER LONG TERM DEFECTS WARRANTY**  
(Coverage for up to 7 years/70,000 miles, whichever first occurs)

Part Name	Engine, Size/Vehicle Line																								
	1.6L Fiesta	2.0L Focus	2.0L Transit/Connect	2.0L Explorer	2.5L Focus/Milano	2.5L Explorer/Milano	3.0L Focus/Milano	3.0L Explorer/Milano	3.5L Focus/Milano	3.5L Explorer/Milano	3.7L Focus/Milano	3.7L Explorer/Milano													
Exhaust Manifold (Left-Hand)																									
Exhaust Manifold Gasket																									
EGR Cooler																									
EGR Tube to Manifold Connector																									
Emission Vacuum Connector																									
Fuel Injector																									
High Pressure Fuel Pump																									
Throttle Body Spacer																									
Fuel Vapor Storage Canister																									
Fuel Injector Fuel Supply Manifold																									
Fuel Injector Wiring Harness																									
Instrument Cluster (5)																									
Powertrain Control Wiring Harness																									
Engine Control Wiring Harness																									
Powertrain Engine Control Unit (ECU)																									
Engine Control Sensor Wiring Assembly																									
Main Body Wiring Harness (6)																									
Dash Panel & Headlamp Junction Wiring Assembly(6)																									
Main Wiring Assembly (6)																									
Rear Lamp Wiring Assembly (6)																									

(1)For F-Superduty 4x4 Manual Shift on the Fly (MSOF) Transfer Case Vehicles only  
 (2)for 4x4 only  
 (3)Transmission Solenoid Assembly requires replacement of Transmission Valve/Control Assembly  
 (4)for EcoBoost Engine only  
 (5)for Service Engine Soon/Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) functionality concerns only  
 (6)for MIL Illumination only

**Important Information about List of Parts**

There may be additional coverage for these parts through the Bumper to Bumper, Powertrain, or Diesel Engine limited warranties. In any case, the warranty with the broadest coverage applies.

Also covered by this warranty are all emissions-related bulbs, hoses, clamps, brackets, tubes, gaskets, seals, belts, connectors, non diesel fuel lines, and wiring harnesses that are used with components on the list of parts above.

Concerning parts that should be replaced on a certain maintenance schedule: these parts remain under warranty until the first required replacement time that is specified in your **Owner Guide** and the **Scheduled Maintenance Guide**.

**NOTE:** If the diagnosis does not reveal a defect, the Defects Warranty does not apply.

Your Ford Motor Company dealer maintains a complete list of covered parts. For more details about the specific parts that are covered by the Defects Warranty, contact your dealer.

**WHAT IS NOT COVERED?**

Ford Motor Company may deny you emissions warranty coverage if your vehicle or a part does not contain a defect that affects emissions or has failed because of abuse, neglect, improper maintenance, unapproved modifications, or any items included in **What Is Not Covered?**, pages 12-15.

## **7. Additional information about your emissions warranty coverage, under Federal and California requirements**

### **HOW DO I GET WARRANTY SERVICE?**

To get service under your emissions warranties, take your vehicle to any Ford Motor Company dealer as soon as possible after illumination of the Malfunction Indicator Light or it has failed an EPA-approved test or a California Smog Check inspection. Be sure to show the dealer the document that says your vehicle has failed the test.

Your dealer will determine whether the repair is covered by the warranty. If the dealer has a question about Emissions Performance Warranty coverage, it will forward the question to Ford Motor Company, which must make a final decision within 30 days after you bring your vehicle in for repair. (The decision will be made within a shorter time if state, local, or federal law requires you to have the vehicle repaired more quickly in order to avoid additional penalties.) The deadline for a determination about Emissions Performance Warranty Coverage does not need to be met if you request a delay, agree to a delay in writing, or if the delay is caused by an event for which neither Ford nor your dealer is responsible. If a question about Emissions Performance Warranty coverage is referred to Ford Motor Company, you will be notified by Ford Motor Company in writing if your claim for warranty coverage is denied. The notice will explain the basis for denying your claim. If you fail to receive this notice within a timely manner, as determined above, Ford will perform the warranty repair for you free of charge.

### **HOW DO I HANDLE EMERGENCY REPAIRS?**

If your vehicle needs an emergency warrantable repair and a Ford Motor Company dealer is not available, or if a Ford Motor Company dealer cannot perform warrantable repair(s) within 30 days of you bringing your vehicle to the dealer, repairs may be performed at any service establishment or by you using Ford equivalent replacement parts.

Ford will reimburse you for the cost of these warranty repairs including diagnosis, if you take the part(s) that are replaced and the repair receipt(s) to a Ford Motor Company dealer. The reimbursement shall not exceed Ford's suggested retail price for the warranted parts that are replaced and labor charges based on Ford's recommended time allowance for the warranty repair and the geographically appropriate hourly rate.

### **WHAT REPLACEMENT PARTS SHOULD I USE?**

Ford Motor Company recommends that you use genuine Ford replacement parts. However, when you are having non-warranty work done on your vehicle, you may choose to use non-Ford parts. If you decide to use non-Ford parts, be sure they are equivalent to Ford parts in performance, quality, and durability. If you use replacement parts that are not equivalent to Ford parts, your vehicle's emissions control systems may not work as effectively, and you may jeopardize your emissions warranty coverage.

For vehicles within the warranty period, Ford will repair at no cost to the owner, under the Federal Emissions Warranty, covered emission failures caused by properly installed Ford parts or non-Ford parts that have been certified by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA). Ford is not responsible for the cost of repairing any emission failures caused by non-Ford parts that have not been certified by the EPA.

**The maintenance, replacement, or repair of emissions control devices or systems can be performed by any automotive repair establishment or individual using Ford replacement parts or EPA certified parts without voiding your federal warranty coverage for future repairs during the warranty period.**

### **PROPER MAINTENANCE PRESERVES YOUR WARRANTY**

If you do not maintain your vehicle properly, Ford may have the right to deny you warranty coverage.

To have repairs made under this warranty, you may have to show that you have followed Ford's instructions on properly maintaining and using your vehicle. You will find these instructions in your **Owner Guide** and **Scheduled Maintenance Guide**. Be sure to save your service receipts and to keep accurate records of all maintenance work.

### **CUSTOMER ASSISTANCE**

If you are not satisfied with the handling of a warranty matter, see **Customer Assistance**, on the inside front cover, and **Better Business Bureau (BBB) AUTO LINE program**, page 34.

## 8. Noise emissions warranty

### NOISE EMISSIONS WARRANTY FOR CERTAIN LIGHT TRUCKS

Ford Motor Company warrants to the first person who purchases this vehicle for purposes other than resale and to each subsequent purchaser that this vehicle as manufactured by Ford, was designed, built and equipped to conform at the time it left Ford's control with all applicable U.S. EPA Noise Control Regulations.

This warranty covers this vehicle as designed, built and equipped by Ford Motor Company, and is not limited to any particular part, component or system of the vehicle as manufactured by Ford. Defects in design, assembly or in any part, component or system of the vehicle as manufactured by Ford, which, at the time it left Ford's control, caused noise emissions to exceed Federal standards, are covered by this warranty for the life of the vehicle.

### THE NOISE EMISSIONS WARRANTY OBLIGATIONS DO NOT APPLY TO:

- loss of time, inconvenience, loss of use of the vehicle, commercial loss or, other consequential damages.
- any vehicle which is not covered by the U.S. EPA Medium and Heavy Trucks Noise Emission Standards (40 C.F.R. Part 205, Subpart B). Among the non-covered vehicles are those lacking a partially or fully enclosed operator's compartment, such as a basic stripped chassis, those having a Gross Vehicle Weight Rating of 10,000 pounds or less, and those sold outside the United States and its territories. To the extent permitted by law, THIS WARRANTY IS EXPRESSLY INSTEAD of any express or implied warranty, condition, or guarantee, agreement, or representation, by any person with respect to conformity of this vehicle with the U.S. EPA Noise Control Regulations, including ANY IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS.

## 9. Ford Extended Service Plan

### **MORE PROTECTION FOR YOUR VEHICLE**

You can get additional protection for your new car or light truck by purchasing a Ford Extended Service Plan (Ford ESP). Ford ESP service contracts are backed by Ford Motor Company and they provide:

- additional benefits during the warranty period depending on the plan you purchase (such as: alternative transportation and coverage for certain maintenance and wear items; coverage for certain maintenance and wear items); and
- extended protection after your Bumper to Bumper Warranty expires.

You may purchase Ford ESP from any Ford Motor Company dealer or visit our website at [Ford-ESP.com](http://Ford-ESP.com). There are several Ford ESP plans available in various time, distance and deductible combinations. Each plan is tailored to fit your own driving needs, including reimbursement for towing and rental vehicles.

When you purchase Ford ESP, you receive peace-of-mind protection throughout the United States and Canada, provided by a network of more than 4,600 Ford Motor Company dealers.

This information is subject to change. Ask your dealer for complete details about Ford ESP coverage.

## 10. The Better Business Bureau (BBB) AUTO LINE Program (U.S. Only)

Your satisfaction is important to Ford Motor Company and to your dealer. If a warranty concern has not been resolved using the three-step procedure outlined on the first page of the Customer Assistance section, you may be eligible to participate in the BBB AUTO LINE program.

The BBB AUTO LINE program consists of two parts — mediation and arbitration. During mediation, a representative of the BBB will contact both you and Ford Motor Company to explore options for settlement of the claim. If an agreement is not reached during mediation and your claim is eligible, you may participate in the arbitration process. An arbitration hearing will be scheduled so that you can present your case in an informal setting before an impartial person. The arbitrator will consider the testimony provided and make a decision after the hearing.

You are not bound by the decision, but should you choose to accept the BBB AUTO LINE decision, Ford must abide by the accepted decision as well. Disputes submitted to the BBB AUTO LINE program are usually decided within forty days after you file your claim with the BBB.

BBB AUTO LINE Application: Using the information provided below, please call or write to request a program application. You will be asked for your name and address, general information about your new vehicle, information about your warranty concerns, and any steps you have already taken to try to resolve them. A Customer Claim Form will be mailed that will need to be completed, signed, and returned to the BBB along with proof of ownership. Upon request, the BBB will review the claim for eligibility under Program Summary Guidelines.

**You can get more information by calling BBB AUTO LINE at 1-800-955-5100, or writing to:**

**BBB AUTO LINE  
4200 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 800  
Arlington, Virginia 22203-1833**

BBB AUTO LINE applications can also be requested by calling the Ford Motor Company Customer Relationship Center at 1-800-392-3673.

**Note:** Ford Motor Company reserves the right to change eligibility limitations, modify procedures, or to discontinue this process at any time without notice and without obligation.

## 11. State warranty enforcement laws

These state laws - sometimes called lemon laws - allow owners to receive a replacement vehicle or a refund of the purchase price, under certain circumstances. The laws vary from state to state.

To the extent your state law allows, Ford Motor Company requires that you first send us a written notification of any defects or non-conformities that you have experienced with your vehicle. (This will give us the opportunity to make any needed repairs before you pursue the remedies provided by your state's law.)

In all other states where not specifically required by state law, Ford Motor Company requests that you give us the written notice. Send your written notification to:

**Ford Motor Company  
Customer Relationship Center  
P.O. Box 6248  
Dearborn, MI 48126**

## 12. Important information about ambulance conversions

Ford vehicles are suitable for producing ambulances only if equipped with the **Ford Ambulance Prep Package**. In addition, Ford urges ambulance manufacturers to follow the recommendations of the **Ford Incomplete Vehicle Manual** and the **Ford Truck Body Builders Layout Book** (and pertinent supplements).

**Using a Ford vehicle without the Ford Ambulance Prep Package to produce an ambulance could result in elevated underbody temperatures, fuel overpressurization, and the risk of fuel expulsion and fires. Such use also voids the Ford Bumper to Bumper Warranty and may void the Emissions Warranties.**

You may determine whether the vehicle is equipped with the **Ford Ambulance Prep Package** by inspecting the information plate on the driver's rear door pillar.

You may determine whether the ambulance manufacturer has followed Ford's recommendations by contacting the ambulance manufacturer of your vehicle.

### 13. Important information about Ford limousine conversions

Ford Motor Company authorizes only Ford Qualified Vehicle Modifiers (QVM's) to perform Ford Expedition EL conversions. To obtain a list of QVM's, visit our website at [www.fleet.ford.com/limo](http://www.fleet.ford.com/limo) or call 1-800-34-FLEET. Expedition EL is suitable for limousine conversion only if equipped with the proper Ford Limousine Builder's Package. The wheelbase on the Expedition EL with the Limousine Builder's Package (17L) may NOT be extended beyond 140" (258.89 total wheelbase) or in a manner that results in a Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) exceeding 9,900 pounds.

If an Expedition EL Limousine is NOT equipped with the Limousine Builder's Package or it is equipped with the Limousine Builder's Package but its wheelbase is extended beyond its limitations or if its GVWR exceeds the weight limitations, then the New Vehicle Limited Warranty is voided, any Ford Extended Service Plan (ESP) contract is voided, applicable Emissions warranties may be voided, and the vehicle modifier may be considered the vehicle "manufacturer" for Emissions Warranty coverage purposes (including responsibilities for emissions, warranty, recall, and in-use compliance).

Any other Ford or Mercury vehicle converted to a limousine will **void** the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.



February 2011  
Sixth Printing  
Warranty  
Ford  
Litho in U.S.A.  
[mercuryowner.com](http://mercuryowner.com)  
[fordowner.com](http://fordowner.com)  
[www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca)



BW7J 19T201 EA



This Quick Reference Guide is not intended to replace your vehicle Owner's Guide which contains more detailed information concerning the features of your vehicle, as well as important safety warnings designed to help reduce the risk of injury to you and your occupants. Please read your entire Owner's Guide carefully as you begin learning about your new vehicle and refer to the appropriate chapters when questions arise.

All information contained in this Quick Reference Guide was accurate at the time of duplication. We reserve the right to change features, operation and/or functionality of any vehicle specification at any time. Your Ford dealer is the best source for the most current information. For detailed operating and safety information, please consult your Owner's Guide.

Ford Motor Company Customer Relationship Center  
P.O. Box 6248 | Dearborn, MI 48121  
1-800-392-3673 (FORD)  
(TDD for the hearing impaired: 1-800-232-5952)  
www.fordowner.com  
www.ford.ca



## CONVENIENCE

### HEATED OUTSIDE MIRRORS (IF EQUIPPED)

To activate, press  on the climate control panel.

### SECURICODE™ KEYLESS ENTRY SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

This system allows you to lock or unlock the doors without a key. Ensure that you have your 5-digit factory code, located on your owner's wallet card in the glove box.

- To unlock the driver's door, enter your 5-digit factory code.
- To unlock all doors, enter your 5-digit factory code and, within five seconds, press 3-4.

### INTEGRATED KEYHEAD TRANSMITTER (IKT) REMOTE ENTRY ICONS

- Press  once to lock all doors. Press again to confirm all doors are closed.
- Press  once to unlock the driver's door. Press again within three seconds to unlock all doors.
- Press  to activate the panic alarm. Press again or turn the ignition on to deactivate.
- Car finder: Press  twice within three seconds to locate your vehicle. The horn will chirp and the turn lamps will flash.

### REMOTE START (IF EQUIPPED)

If your IKT has the  icon, you have remote start, which allows you to start the engine from outside the vehicle. To use, press  on your IKT to lock all the doors. Press  twice. (If you have a diesel engine, there will be a few seconds delay before the engine starts.) When you are ready to leave, insert the key into the ignition and turn to the on position before driving. To turn the engine off after using remote start, press  once. Refer to the Locks and Security chapter in your Owner's Guide for more information on the Remote Start feature.

### UNIVERSAL GARAGE DOOR OPENER (IF EQUIPPED)

Your vehicle may be equipped with a universal transmitter located on the driver's visor. This system has two primary features – a garage door opener and a platform for remote activation of devices in your home. This system's garage door opener function replaces the common hand-held garage door opener with a three button transmitter. For more information, refer to the Driver Controls chapter of your Owner's Guide.

### NAVIGATION SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

Your touch screen navigation system allows you to record CDs, listen to SIRIUS® satellite radio or HD Radio broadcasts, play DVDs and access SIRIUS® Travel Link™ in addition to navigating the vehicle. For more information, refer to your Navigation System Supplement.

### SYNC® (IF EQUIPPED)

Your SYNC® system has unique phone and media features which allow you to make and receive hands-free calls as well as play your media selections by artist, album, genre or similar music. You can receive Vehicle Health Reports and set up and use 911 Assist™ which can call emergency services if you have an accident. SYNC® Applink™ allows you to use applications on your smartphone such as Pandora and Stitcher. SYNC® also offers SYNC® Services which, if activated, can provide turn-by-turn directions, access to traffic reports, sports scores and business searches. To set up your profile for Vehicle Health Reports and SYNC® Services, please visit [www.SyncMyRide.com](http://www.SyncMyRide.com).

### SIRIUS® SATELLITE RADIO (IF EQUIPPED)

Your vehicle may be equipped with satellite radio. SIRIUS® satellite radio broadcasts music, sports, news and entertainment programming. For more information and a complete list of SIRIUS® satellite radio channels, visit [www.sirius.com](http://www.sirius.com) in the United States, [www.siriuscanada.ca](http://www.siriuscanada.ca) in Canada, or call SIRIUS® at 1-888-539-7474. Satellite radio is only available with a valid SIRIUS® radio subscription.



## FUEL FACTS

### DIESEL/BIODIESEL

If your vehicle has a green colored fuel cap, you have a diesel vehicle which is compatible with diesel fuel and also biodiesel B20 or less.

Biodiesel is a renewable fuel derived from vegetable oils and/or animal fats. Your diesel engine can operate on diesel fuels containing up to 20% biodiesel, or B20. (Use only biodiesel that meets ASTM D975 diesel or the ASTM D7467 B6-B20 biodiesel industry specifications.)

Ensure that you purchase biodiesel from a reputable source. Do not store biodiesel fuel in the fuel tank for more than one month.

### DIESEL EXHAUST FLUID (DEF)

The emissions system uses Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) which MUST be replenished at regular intervals. Failure to do so could cause vehicle speed limitations and/or result in the vehicle entering an idle-only mode.

Your message center will alert you when you begin to get low on DEF. The first alert will appear in the message center when you have approximately 800 miles left to empty. Certain conditions such as driving styles, trailer towing or fast acceleration will require filling the tank more often.

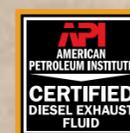
The DEF tank has a blue capped filler port and is next to your diesel fuel inlet. This tank can be filled using a nozzle at a DEF filling station or using a DEF bottle with a spout. Motorcraft® DEF bottles are recommended as they are designed to be spill proof and will



stop the flow of DEF when the tank is full.

Ensure that you do NOT put DEF in the fuel tank as this can cause engine

damage which is not covered by your vehicle's warranty. Immediately wipe away any DEF that has spilled on painted surfaces with water and a damp cloth to prevent damage to the paint.



Use only DEF certified by the American Petroleum Institute (API) such as Motorcraft® DEF or equivalent. Look for the API certification trademark.

The DEF capacity is 5 gallons (18.9L) for a pickup and 6 gallons (22.7L) for a chassis cab. Do NOT overfill the system as this could cause freeze damage to the DEF tank.

For more information on this system, refer to Selective Catalytic Reduction (SCR) System in your Diesel Supplement.

### FUEL FILTER

Your Ford truck includes a LOW FUEL PRESSURE monitor to let you know that the engine is not receiving the fuel it needs. Driving with low fuel pressure can damage injection equipment and void your warranty. Check or switch your fuel source if you are replacing filters more often than the recommended interval.

### FLEX FUEL VEHICLE (FFV, IF EQUIPPED)

If your vehicle has a yellow colored fuel cap, you have a flex fuel vehicle. Use only unleaded fuel or ethanol fuel (E85).

### DRAINING THE WATER SEPARATOR

Your vehicle is equipped with a state of the art diesel fuel delivery system. It includes a Diesel Fuel Conditioning Module (DFCM) and engine mounted fuel filter. The DFCM includes a filter, electronic fuel pump and water separator/drain mounted on the frame just below the cab driver side. Drain the DFCM (with engine off) during oil changes or as soon as possible when the WATER IN FUEL message is displayed. Ignoring the Water In Fuel message can cause the accumulated water to be passed to the engine resulting in fuel system damage.

### COOLANT

Your Super Duty uses Motorcraft® Specialty Orange Engine Coolant (orange-colored). **DO NOT** use glycol coolant as it is not compatible with your vehicle. **DO NOT MIX** different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle. **DO NOT MIX** recycled coolant and new (unused) coolant together in the vehicle, as the mixing of engine coolants may harm your engine's cooling system. The use of an improper coolant may harm engine and cooling system components and may void the warranty. Ensure that **ONLY** the correct coolant is used.

### TIRE PRESSURE

The recommended specifications are on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. As an added safety feature, your vehicle may be equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure warning light when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Refer to the Tires, Wheels and Loading chapter in your Owner's Guide for more information.

### ENGINE OIL SPECIFICATIONS

Quality engine oils help achieve good engine performance and durability. For normal or severe service, use Motorcraft® oil or an equivalent oil conforming to Ford Specifications as listed in the *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* in your *Diesel Supplement* or API service categories CJ-4 or CJ-4/SM.

# SUPER DUTY



## 2012

### QUICK REFERENCE GUIDE



June 2011  
First Printing  
Quick Reference Guide  
Super Duty  
Litho in U.S.A.



CC3J 19G217 AA

**MESSAGE CENTER**

The message center monitors many vehicle systems and alerts you to potential vehicle problems and conditions. Your message center also allows you to program and configure certain features without taking your hands off the wheel. Use the steering wheel controls to scroll, make selections and adjustments which will appear in the message center display in the instrument cluster. If equipped with an LCD screen, your main menu selections are: Gauge Mode, Trip A/B, Fuel Economy, Truck Apps (if equipped), Settings and Information.

**TURN SIGNAL OPERATION**

- To operate the left turn signal, push the lever down until it stops and release.
- To operate the right turn signal, push the lever up until it stops and release.
- To indicate a lane change, push the lever up/down to the first stop position and release. The turn signals will flash three times and stop.

**ADVANCETRAC® WITH RSC® STABILITY ENHANCEMENT SYSTEM (ALL SINGLE REAR WHEEL (SRW) VEHICLES)**

Helps you maintain stability and steerability of your vehicle during a variety of road conditions. Roll Stability Control™ (RSC®) helps to avoid a vehicle roll-over. If your vehicle becomes stuck, try turning off the AdvanceTrac® system (by pressing the control) to allow wheel spin and help increase momentum to help dig the vehicle out.

**ELECTRONIC LOCKING DIFFERENTIAL (ELD, IF EQUIPPED)**

The ELD is a device housed in the rear axle which allows both rear wheels to turn at the same speed. You can engage or disengage the ELD on the fly. When the axle is disengaged, it will function like a standard rear wheel axle. When it is engaged, the rear wheels will rotate at the same speed when turning, thereby being helpful on slippery and/or off road surfaces, particularly when one wheel is on a poor traction surface.

For vehicles with an electronic shift 4WD system, pull the knob on the 4WD control toward you. The indicator light will display in the instrument cluster indicating the system is engaged.

For 2WD vehicles and vehicles equipped with a manual shift 4WD system, turn the 4WD control to ON. The indicator light will appear in the instrument cluster indicating the system is engaged.

Use extreme caution when using any device or feature that may take your attention off the road. Ford recommends against the use of any hand-held device while driving and that you comply with all applicable laws. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of the vehicle.

**SELECTSHIFT AUTOMATIC™ TRANSMISSION (SST)**

Your vehicle is equipped with a SST gearshift lever which allows you to change gears without a clutch. Put the gearshift into M (manual) and press + to upshift and - to downshift.

To lock gears, put the gearshift lever into D (Overdrive). Press - to lock out the gears. Only the available gears will be displayed. Press + to unlock the gears.

**TOW/HAUL SWITCH**

To eliminate excessive transmission shifting, activate the tow/haul feature. This feature also provides engine exhaust braking in all forward gears when the transmission is in D (Overdrive). The engine exhaust braking will help slow the vehicle and assist the driver in controlling the vehicle when descending a grade. (Exhaust braking available on diesel only.)

**ELECTRONIC SHIFT ON THE FLY SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)**

This system allows you shift on the fly and select from the following modes:

- 2H (2WD)- Use for general on-road driving.
- 4H (4x4 High)- Use for extra traction. This mode is NOT intended for use on dry pavement.
- 4L (4x4 Low)- Uses extra gearing to provide maximum power to all four wheels at reduced speeds. This mode is NOT intended for use on dry pavement.

**HILL DESCENT CONTROL (IF EQUIPPED)**

This allows you to maintain vehicle speed while descending steep grades in a variety of road conditions. To enable, press the hill descent button. A light in the cluster will illuminate and a chime will sound. To increase descent speed, press the accelerator until the desired speed is reached. To decrease speed, press the brake until the desired speed is reached. Hill Descent Control can maintain vehicle speeds on downhill grades and can be engaged between 2 mph (3 km/h) to 12 mph (20 km/h). **Note:** Hill descent control requires a cooling down interval after sustained use. The amount of time that the feature can remain active before cooling varies with conditions. The system will provide a warning in the message center and a chime will sound when the system is about to disengage for cooling. At this time, manually apply the brakes as needed to maintain descent speed.

**UPFITTER CONTROLS (IF EQUIPPED)**

The Upfitter package provides four switches which can be customized to perform additional functions. They provide 8 amps, 12 amps or 20 amps of electrical battery power.

**POWER ADJUSTABLE FOOT PEDALS (IF EQUIPPED)**

Press the control to move the pedals closer or farther away from you. The pedals should only be adjusted when the vehicle is stopped and in P (Park).

**STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS**

Use the arrow controls to scroll through the message center menus and use OK to make selections. Use SET +/-, RSM and OFF to set and adjust the speed. Use the steering wheel controls on the right side to adjust volume, media selections and access voice commands (if equipped).

**SAFETY****REARVIEW CAMERA (IF EQUIPPED)**

This system provides a visual display of the area behind the vehicle. The display automatically appears on the navigation screen (if equipped) or in the rear view mirror when the vehicle is in Reverse (R) and uses colors (green, yellow and red) to alert you of your proximity to objects. **Note:** Visibility aids do not replace the need to watch where the vehicle is moving.

**REVERSE SENSING SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)**

The reverse sensing system may warn you if there is an object behind the vehicle that may be too low for you to see. A warning tone will sound which increases in frequency as the object gets closer and then will sound continuously when the object is less than 10 inches away. The system is active when the vehicle is in R (Reverse) and traveling less than 3 mph (5 km/h). **Note:** Visibility aids do not replace the need to watch where the vehicle is moving.

**ENGINE ONLY TRACTION CONTROL (ALL DUAL REAR WHEEL VEHICLES)**

This system helps you maintain stability and steerability of your vehicle, especially on slippery road surfaces such as snow, ice or gravel. During traction control operation, the traction control light will illuminate.

**ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE**

Your new Ford Super Duty comes with the assurance and support of 24-hour emergency roadside assistance. To receive roadside assistance in the United States, call 1 (800) 241-3673. In Canada, call 1 (800) 665-2006.

**TRAILER SWAY (IF EQUIPPED)**

Trailer sway uses the vehicle's AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system to detect and help reduce trailer sway by applying brake force at individual wheels and, if necessary, reducing engine power. This feature defaults to on. To turn off, refer to the Message Center section in the Instrument Cluster chapter of your Owner's Guide.

**SIDE AIRBAGS AND SAFETY CANOPY SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)**

Your vehicle may be equipped with side airbags and a safety canopy system which help protect you in the event of a crash.

**ADJUSTABLE HEAD RESTRAINTS**

Your vehicle's front row head restraints can be adjusted to suit your needs. Simply pull up to raise the head restraint. To lower, press the head restraint down while pressing and holding the guide sleeve adjust/release button.

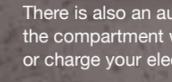
You may also be able to tilt the head restraint forward or backward for additional comfort. Pivot the head restraint forward to the desired location. After the head restraint reaches the forward-most tilt position, pivoting it forward again will release it to the rearward un-tilted position.

**FUNCTION****CENTER CONSOLE (IF EQUIPPED)**

- One 12V power point inside the storage compartment and one on the rear of the console
- 110V/150W AC power point outlet on the rear of the console

**UNDER SEAT LOCKING STORAGE (IF EQUIPPED)**

The under seat storage compartment in the second row has a programmable lock which provides a safe place to store items. Use your ignition key to program the lock.



There is also an auxiliary power point within the compartment which you can use to power or charge your electronic devices.

**MYKEY® (IF EQUIPPED)**

Allows you to program certain driving restrictions in order to promote good driving habits. When MyKey® is programmed, the following features are adjusted:

- Belt-Minder® will sound continuously and the audio will be muted until the safety belt is buckled.
- Audible and visual low fuel warnings are provided.
- Audio volume can be limited.
- Vehicle speed can be limited.
- Audible and visual warnings can be configured at preselected speeds.
- AdvanceTrac® cannot be programmed off.

**TAILGATE STEP (IF EQUIPPED)**

Your vehicle may be equipped with a tailgate step that allows easy entry into the truck bed. To use, open the tailgate. Pull the yellow latch lever to the unlock position to release the grab handle from its stowed position and raise the handle upright until you feel it latch and see the latch lever in the lock position. (The yellow lever only needs to be used when releasing the grab handle.) Rotate the center molding to unlatch the tailgate. Flip open the panel to widen the step. Always use the grab handle when stepping up or down on the tailgate step. Keep the step load (you + load) below 350 lb. (159 kg).

To close the tailgate step, fold the step panel, then lift and fully slide the tailgate step into the tailgate. Slide the latch at the bottom of the handle, then lower the handle. Never drive with the step deployed. Ensure that you fully close and latch the tailgate step before moving the vehicle.

<b>Table of Contents</b>	
<b>Introduction</b>	<b>2</b>
<b>Instrument Cluster</b>	<b>6</b>
<b>Driving</b>	<b>8</b>
<b>Roadside Emergencies</b>	<b>16</b>
<b>Cleaning</b>	<b>18</b>
<b>Maintenance and Specifications</b>	<b>20</b>
<b>Scheduled Maintenance Guide</b>	<b>68</b>
<b>Index</b>	<b>92</b>

All rights reserved. Reproduction by any means, electronic or mechanical including photocopying, recording or by any information storage and retrieval system or translation in whole or part is not permitted without written authorization from Ford Motor Company. Ford may change the contents without notice and without incurring obligation.

Copyright © 2011 Ford Motor Company

1

## Introduction

### POWER STROKE DIESEL ENGINE

Your new diesel engine will feel, drive and function somewhat differently than a gasoline engine. Therefore it is very important that you read and thoroughly familiarize yourself and others operating the vehicle with this guide. **A special procedure for turning off the diesel engine is in the *Driving* chapter. It is important to read and understand this material in order to maintain the best service life for your engine.**

This guide will acquaint you with the Power Stroke diesel engine. It provides recommendations on engine care and operating procedures. For complete vehicle information, also refer to the *Owner's Guide* included with the vehicle. It also describes equipment and gives specifications for equipment that was in effect when this guide was approved for printing, and should be considered a permanent part of the vehicle.

**Some aftermarket products may cause severe engine/transmission and/or exhaust system damage;** refer to the *Warranty Guide* for more information. **Your vehicle's powertrain control systems can detect and store information about vehicle modifications that increase horsepower and torque output such as whether or not performance-enhancing powertrain components commonly referred to as "performance chips" have been used. This information cannot be erased and will stay in the system's memory even if the modification is removed. The information can be retrieved by Ford Motor Company, Ford of Canada, Ford of Mexico and service and repair facilities when servicing your vehicle. This information may be used to determine if repairs will be covered by warranty.**

Ford may discontinue models or change specifications without any notice and without incurring obligations.

### Important notice

Ford vehicles are suitable for producing ambulances only if equipped with the Ford ambulance preparation package. In addition, Ford urges ambulance manufacturers to follow the recommendation of the *Ford Incomplete Vehicle Manual*, *Ford Truck Body Builder's Layout Book* (and pertinent supplements) and the *Qualified Vehicle Modifiers Guidelines*. Using a Ford vehicle without the Ford ambulance preparation package to produce an ambulance voids the Ford warranty and could result in elevated underbody temperatures, fuel overpressurization and the risk of fuel expulsion and fires. To determine whether the vehicle is equipped with the Ford ambulance preparation

2

## Introduction

package, inspect the information plate on the driver's side door pillar. Contact the manufacturer of your vehicle to determine whether the ambulance manufacturer's followed Ford's recommendations.



### WARNINGS

Throughout this guide, you will find warnings identified by the symbol . Warnings remind you to be especially careful to reduce the risk of personal injury.

### BREAKING-IN YOUR VEHICLE

Your vehicle does not need an extensive break-in. Try not to drive continuously at the same speed for the first 1,000 miles (1,600 km) of new vehicle operation. Vary your speed to allow parts to adjust themselves to other parts.

Drive your new vehicle at least 500 miles (800 km) before towing a trailer. Make sure you use the specified engine oil by checking the engine oil specification chart under *Engine oil* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

Do not add friction modifier compounds or special break-in oils during the first few thousand miles (kilometers) of operation, since these additives may prevent piston ring seating. See *Engine oil* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter of this supplement for more information on oil usage.

### DIESEL ENGINE INFORMATION

The diesel engine fuel system is a pressurized two-stage filtration system and consists of:

- a frame-mounted diesel fuel conditioner module (DFCM) / primary filter with an electric fuel pump and water drain,
- an engine-mounted secondary fuel filter,
- a fuel injector for each cylinder (8 total),
- a high-pressure fuel pump,
- a high-pressure fuel rail for each cylinder bank (2 total) and
- numerous high-pressure pipes from the high-pressure pump to the rails, and rails to the injectors.

The DFCM acts as a primary fuel filter/water separator which removes both water and impurities from the fuel. The engine mounted filter filters finer impurities from the diesel fuel. The engine-mounted fuel filter and

## Introduction

the DFCM filter should be changed at the recommended service interval or when indicated by the message center **LOW FUEL PRESSURE** message. Refer to the *scheduled maintenance information* in this supplement for more information.

The DFCM should be drained at regular intervals or when indicated by the message center message and water in fuel indicator light. See *Fuel filter/water separator* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

The fuel injection system is controlled through the powertrain control module (PCM).

Fuel is drawn from the fuel tank by a frame-mounted electric fuel pump located inside the DFCM and provides pressurized fuel to the engine. The fuel pump contains a pressure relief valve for overpressure protection in the event of restricted flow.

### Engine protection mode

Ford diesel engines are equipped with engine protection and emission control systems. These systems monitor critical temperatures and pressures, and modify engine operation accordingly. These features are intended to modify engine performance characteristics. If these modified engine performance characteristics persist for an extended period or the service engine soon  or powertrain malfunction/reduced power/electronic throttle control light  is illuminated, seek service from your authorized dealer.

### Lubrication system

It is important to change the engine oil at the recommended service intervals to maintain oil viscosity. Extending the oil and filter change interval beyond the recommended interval can negatively affect engine performance, fuel economy and engine life. Refer to *Engine oil* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

### Fast start glow plug system

The diesel engine glow system consists of:

- eight glow plugs (one per cylinder)
- the glow plug control module (GPCM)
- engine coolant temperature (ECT) sensor
- barometric pressure (BARO) sensor
- environmental temperature sensor

4

## Introduction

The glow plug system is electronically controlled by the PCM and GPCM. The GPCM energizes the glow plugs immediately after the ignition is turned on and kept on as determined by the GPCM using the ECT, BARO and environmental temperature sensor. The required time for the glow plugs to be energized decreases as the coolant temperature, barometric pressure and environmental temperature increase.



### Engine and secondary cooling system

The cooling system contains an engine cooling loop to cool the engine and a secondary cooling loop to cool the transmission, exhaust gas recirculation (EGR), charge air and fuel. The coolant serves three primary purposes: to provide heat transfer, freeze point protection, and corrosion protection using additives.

Vehicles with diesel engines typically are used to carry heavy loads and accumulate mileage rapidly. These two factors may cause the additives in the coolant to “wear out” in a shorter time. Refer to the *Special operating conditions* section for more information about coolant additives and coolant change intervals. Operating the engine with insufficient coolant and/or coolant additive can cause severe engine damage.

### Selective catalytic reduction (SCR) system

Your vehicle is equipped with a selective catalytic reduction (SCR) system to help reduce emission levels of oxides of nitrogen from the exhaust of the diesel engine. This system relies on the use of diesel exhaust fluid (DEF) which must be replenished at certain intervals. Failure to maintain proper DEF levels or if the DEF becomes contaminated will result in vehicle speed limitations and/or result in the vehicle entering an idle-only mode. See *Selective catalytic reduction (SCR) system* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter for more information.

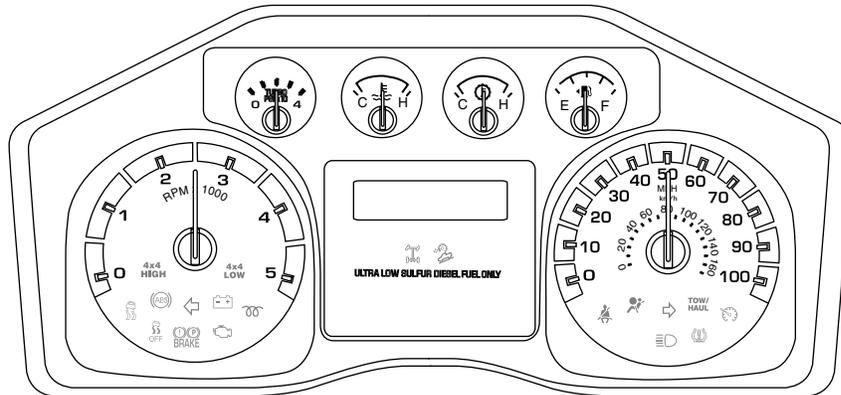
### Speed control (if equipped)

If vehicle speed goes outside a predetermined range from the set speed, the RES (Resume) function will not reset vehicle speed. Vehicle speed will need to be reset with the SET +/- button after reaching desired speed using accelerator pedal.

## Instrument Cluster

### WARNING LIGHTS

Base cluster with standard measure shown; metric and optional similar



**Note:** Some warning lights are reconfigurable telltale (RTT) indicator lights and will illuminate in the message center display and function the same as the other warning lights.

### Glow plug pre-heat indicator:



With the key in the on position, this light will illuminate if glow plug heat is necessary as a starting aid. Wait until the light goes off before starting. Refer to *Cold weather starting* in the *Driving* chapter of this supplement. After the engine starts, the light should turn off. The light should always illuminate at least momentarily when the engine is cold and the ignition is turned to on.

## Instrument Cluster

### Water in fuel:

During refueling, it is possible for water-contaminated diesel fuel to be pumped into your tank. Your vehicle's fuel system is equipped with a fuel filter/water separator to remove water from the fuel. The water in fuel light will illuminate when the DFCM has a significant quantity of water in it.



If the light illuminates when the engine is running, stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible, shut off the engine, then drain the DFCM. Refer to *Fuel filter/water separator* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter of this supplement for the drain procedure. Allowing water to stay in the system could result in extensive damage to, or failure of, the fuel injection system.

**Note:** Air will enter into the fuel system if the DFCM is drained while the system is running. The engine will not operate properly if air enters the system.



**WARNING:** Do not drain the DFCM while the engine is running. Fuel may ignite if the separator is drained while the engine is running or the vehicle is moving.

### Low/contaminated diesel exhaust fluid:

With the key in the on position, this light will illuminate if the exhaust fluid is contaminated and/or low. See *Diesel exhaust fluid* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter for more information.



## GAUGES

### Engine boost gauge:

Indicates the amount of manifold air pressure in the engine.



## Driving

### STARTING THE ENGINE

Read all starting instructions carefully before you start your vehicle.

For temperatures below 32°F (0°C), the use of the correct grade engine oil is essential for proper operation. Refer to *Engine oil specifications* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter for more information.

Your vehicle may be equipped with a cold weather starting strategy that prevents severe engine damage by assisting in engine lubrication warm-up. In extremely cold ambient temperatures, this strategy activates and prevents the accelerator pedal from being used for 30 seconds after starting the vehicle. By not allowing the accelerator pedal to be used, the engine oil is allowed to properly lubricate the bearings preventing engine damage due to lack of proper lubrication. After the 30 second warm-up period, the accelerator pedal will be operational again as long as the pedal is not being pressed when the 30 second time limit expires. When starting the engine in extremely cold temperatures (-15°F [-26°C]), it is recommended to allow the engine to idle for several minutes before driving the vehicle.

Ensure the gearshift lever is in P (Park) and the parking brake is fully set before you turn the key. Do not press the accelerator during starting.

### Engine-driven cooling fan (fan clutch)

Your vehicle is equipped with an engine driven cooling fan drive (also called a fan clutch). This fan drive changes the fan speed to match the vehicle's changing cooling air flow requirements. Fan speed, fan noise level and fuel consumption all will increase based on the driving conditions that include trailer towing, hill climbing, heavy loads, high speed and high ambient temperature, individually or in combination.

The fan drive is designed to provide the minimum fan speed (and resulting minimum fan noise and fuel consumption) required to meet the ever changing vehicle cooling air flow requirements. You will hear the amount of fan noise increasing and decreasing as the engine power requirements and vehicle driving conditions change as you drive. This is to be expected as being normal to the operation of your vehicle. High levels of fan noise might also be heard when your engine is first started, and should normally decrease after driving for a short time.

## Driving

### If the vehicle's speed is limited or the vehicle has entered an idle-only mode

If the vehicle's speed is limited or in an idle-only mode, the SCR system may be limiting the vehicle's functions due to low or contaminated diesel exhaust fluid (DEF). Check the DEF. See *Selective catalytic reduction (SCR) system* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter for more information.

### Cold weather starting

It is recommended that the engine block heater be used for starting when the temperature is -10°F (-23°C) or colder. Refer to *Engine block heater (if equipped)* in the *Driving* chapter of the *Owner's Guide*.

When operating in cold weather, use Motorcraft® cetane improvers or non alcohol-based cetane improvers from a reputable manufacturer.

Do not crank the engine for more than 10 seconds as starter damage may occur. If the engine fails to start, turn the key to 3 (off) and wait 30 seconds before trying again.



**WARNING:** Do not use starting fluid, such as ether, in the air intake system (see air filter decal). Such fluid could cause immediate explosive damage to the engine and possible personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not add gasoline, gasohol or alcohol to diesel fuel. This practice creates a serious fire hazard and causes engine performance problems.

1. Turn the key to on without turning the key to start. **Do not start the engine** until the glow-plug pre-heat indicator  turns off.
2. When the glow plug pre-heat indicator turns off, turn the key to start, then release the key as soon as the engine starts. The glow plugs may remain on for a period of time after engine start. If the engine is not started before the glow plug activation time ends, the glow plugs will need to be reset by turning the key to off. 
3. After the engine starts, **allow it to idle for about 15 seconds**. This is to protect the engine. Do not increase engine speed until the oil pressure gauge indicates normal pressure.

## Driving

### ENGINE IDLE SHUTDOWN (IF EQUIPPED)

Your vehicle may be equipped with an engine idle shutdown system. This system will automatically shut down your engine when it has been idling in P (Park) or N (Neutral) for five minutes (parking brake set) or 15 minutes (parking brake not set). When the engine idle shutdown process has started:

- A chime will sound and the message center will display **ENGINE TURNS OFF IN 30** (seconds) and start counting down.
- The 5 or 15 minute timer can be restarted by changing the position of the accelerator pedal, brake pedal or the park brake within the final 30 seconds.
- When the timer reaches zero, the engine shuts down and the message center will display **ENGINE TURNED OFF**.
- One minute after the engine has shut down, the electrical system will simulate key off, even though the ignition is still in the on position, initiating normal accessory delay period.
- The ignition must be moved to the off position to reset the system before restarting the vehicle.

**Note:** The engine idle shutdown idle timer will not start if:

- The engine is operating in power take-off (PTO) mode.
- The engine coolant temperature is below 60°F (16°C).
- The exhaust emission control device (DPF) is regenerating.

### STOPPING THE ENGINE

Turn the ignition to the off position.

To prolong engine life (especially after extended high speed, high ambient temperature, or high GVW/GCW operation, such as heavy loads and/or heavy trailers), it is recommended that a hot engine be idled for 3-5 minutes which will allow the turbocharged engine to cool down. For more information on GVW/GCW, see *Vehicle loading – with and without a trailer* in the *Owner guide*

## Driving

### COLD WEATHER OPERATION

Changing to a lighter grade engine oil also makes starting easier under these conditions. Refer to *Engine oil specifications* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter of this supplement.

Diesel fuel is adjusted seasonally for cold temperatures. Diesel fuel which has not been properly formulated for the ambient conditions may form wax crystals which can clog the fuel filters. At temperatures below 20°F (-7°C), if the engine starts, stalls after a short time, and then will not restart, the fuel filter(s) may be clogged. For best results in cold weather, use a diesel fuel which has been formulated for the ambient conditions. If you have been using biodiesel, you may need to use a fuel with lower biodiesel content, try another brand, or discontinue using biodiesel. Do not use alcohol based additives to correct fuel gelling. This may result in damage to the fuel injectors/system. Use the proper anti-gel & performance improver product as listed in the *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* section in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

Your vehicle is equipped with a diesel fuel conditioner module (DFCM) which recirculates fuel from the engine to help prevent fuel filter clogging. To avoid engine fuel starvation during cold weather operation of 32°F (0°C) or below, it is recommended that the fuel level in your tank should not be allowed to drop below ¼ full. This will help prevent air from entering the fuel system and stalling the engine.

Your vehicle is equipped with a an SCR system which uses diesel exhaust fluid (DEF) to operate properly. DEF must be replenished at certain intervals. When filling the vehicle's DEF tank in cold weather, special care must be taken to prevent damage to the DEF tank. For proper cold weather fill procedure, see *Selective Catalytic Reduction (SCR) System* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

In cold weather below 32°F (0°C), the engine may slowly increase to a higher idle speed if left idling in P (Park). As the engine warms-up, the engine sound level will decrease due to the activation of PCM-controlled sound reduction features.

If your vehicle is operated in a heavy snow storm or blowing snow conditions, the engine air induction may become partially clogged with snow and/or ice. If this occurs, the engine may experience a significant reduction in power output. At the earliest opportunity, clear all the snow and/or ice away from inside the air filter assembly. Remove the air cleaner cover and the pleated paper filter, leaving the foam filter in and remove any snow or ice. Ensure the foam filter is installed correctly in

## Driving

place. Remove any debris, snow and/or ice on the foam filter by brushing the surface with soft brush. Do not use water, solvents, or a hard brush for cleaning the foam filter.

In order to operate the engine in temperatures of 32°F (0°C) or lower, read the following instructions:

- Make sure that the batteries are of sufficient size and are fully charged. Check other electrical components to make sure they are in optimum condition.
- Use the proper coolant solution at the concentration recommended to protect the engine against damage from freezing.
- Try to keep the fuel tank full as much as possible at the end of operation to prevent condensation in the fuel system.
- Make sure you use proper cold weather engine oil and that it is at its proper level. Also, if necessary, make sure to follow the engine oil and filter change schedule found under the *Special operating conditions* section listed in the *scheduled maintenance information*.
- At temperatures of -10°F (-23°C) or below, it is recommended that you use an engine block heater to improve cold engine starting.
- If operating in arctic temperatures of -20°F (-29°C) or lower, consult your truck dealer for information about special cold weather equipment and precautions.

**Note:** Idling in cold weather will not heat the engine to its normal operating temperature. Long periods of idling, especially in cold weather, can cause a buildup of deposits which can cause engine damage.

The following cold weather idling guidelines are recommended:

- Use Motorcraft® cetane improvers or non alcohol-based cetane improvers from a reputable manufacturer.
- Maintain the engine cooling system properly.
- Avoid shutting the engine down after an extensive idling period. Drive the vehicle for several miles with the engine at normal operating temperatures under a moderate load.
- Consider using an engine block heater.
- For extended idle times use an approved idle speed increase device.

## Driving

### Winter operating tips for Arctic operation -20°F (-29°C) and below

The following information is provided as a guideline only, and is not intended to be the only source of possible solutions in resolving extreme cold temperature issues.

#### Starting aids:

The use of the factory engine block heater (if equipped) (refer to *Engine block heater* in the *Driving* chapter of the *Owner's Guide*) will assist in engine starting in extreme cold ambient temperatures.



**WARNING:** Do not use starting fluid, such as ether, in the air intake system (see air filter decal). Such fluid could cause immediate explosive damage to the engine and possible personal injury.

#### Idle control:

- Your vehicle may have a factory option for a stationary elevated idle control (SEIC) through dash-mounted upfitter switches will allow the operator to elevate the idle rpm for extended idle periods, as well as aftermarket equipment such as PTO operation. This feature must be configured even if ordered from the factory. See your authorized dealer for required upfitting.

### Operation in snow and rain

Vehicle operation in heavy snowfall or extreme rain conditions may feed excessive amounts of snow/water into the air intake system. This could plug/soak the air filter with snow and may cause the engine to lose power and possibly shut down.

The following actions are recommended after operating the vehicle up to 200 miles (320 km) in snowfall or extreme rain:

- **Snow:** At the earliest opportunity, open the hood and clear all the snow and ice from the air filter housing inlet (do not remove the foam filter) and reset the air filter restriction gauge.

**Note:** Removal of the foam filter degrades vehicle performance during snow and hot weather conditions.

- **Extreme rain:** The air filter will dry after about 15–30 minutes at highway speeds. At the earliest opportunity, open the hood and reset the air filter restriction gauge.

Refer to *Air filter and restriction gauge* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter of this supplement for more information.

## Driving

### Operation in standing water

Ingestion of water into the diesel engine can result in immediate and severe damage to the engine. If driving through water, slow down to avoid splashing water into the intake. If the engine stalls, and ingestion of water into the engine is suspected, do not try to restart the engine. Consult your dealer for service immediately.

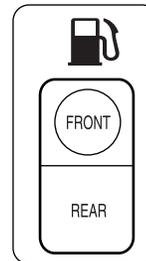
### Rapid heat supplemental heating system (if equipped)

The optional rapid heat feature is an electrically powered device that is designed to provide supplemental heat during engine warm up. For maximum effectiveness mid to low blower speed is recommended during initial warm up. When operating in automatic mode (when equipped) the climate control unit will determine the appropriate blower speed for existing conditions.

**Note:** Additional aftermarket electrical loads operated during engine warm up may impact the performance of the rapid heat supplemental heater.

### DUAL FUEL TANK SELECTOR CONTROL (IF EQUIPPED)

If your vehicle is equipped with dual fuel tanks, you will have a selector control, located to the right of the steering wheel, which allows you to draw fuel from either tank. Your fuel gauge and the DTE (distance to empty) will display the amount of fuel in the currently selected tank.



### INTEGRATED ENGINE BRAKING

This feature increases engine braking at higher engine speeds to provide better grade descent control with less brake and transmission wear and tear.

This feature is integrated with the tow/haul mode feature. When tow/haul mode is switched on, the integrated engine braking feature will also be active. For more information on tow/haul, see *Automatic transmission operation* in the *Owner Guide*.

## Driving

### TRAILER TOWING

Refer to your *Owner's Guide* for full details on towing a trailer.

Vehicle type	Rear axle ratio	Maximum GCWR - lb (kg)
F-250/F-350 Single Rear Wheel (SRW)	3.31/3.55/ 3.73	23500 (10659)
F-350 Dual Rear Wheel (DRW) Chassis Cab	3.73/4.10	24500 (11113)
F-350 Dual Rear Wheel (DRW) Pick-up	3.73	30000 (13608)
F-450 Chassis Cab	4.10	26000 (11793)
	4.30	30000 (13608)*
F-450 Pick-up	4.30	33000 (14969)
F-550 (17500/18000 lb GVWR)	4.10	26000 (11793)
	4.30	35000 (15875)*
F-550 (19000/19500 lb GVWR)	4.88	26000 (11793)
	4.88	35000 (15875)*
* Requires optional GCWR package		

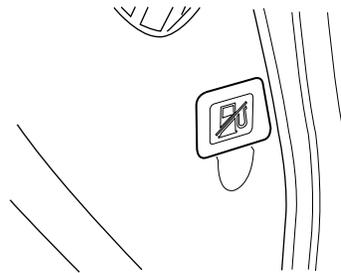
## Roadside Emergencies

### FUEL PUMP SHUT-OFF SWITCH

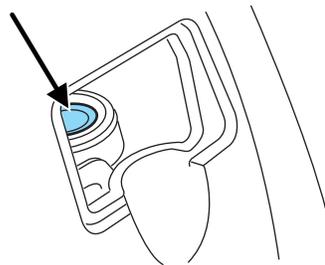
This device stops the electric fuel pump from sending fuel to the engine when your vehicle has had a substantial jolt.

After an accident, if the engine cranks but does not start, this switch may have been activated.

This switch is located on the passenger's side of the instrument panel. Open the front passenger door and remove the small access panel



The switch has a red button on top of it.



To reset the switch:

1. Turn the ignition off.
2. Check the fuel system for leaks.
3. If no leaks are apparent, reset the switch by pushing in on the reset button.
4. Turn the ignition on.
5. Wait a few seconds and return the key to off.
6. Make another check for leaks.

## Roadside Emergencies

### **JUMP STARTING YOUR VEHICLE**

The 6.7 diesel engine can be jump started using the same procedure as a gasoline engine. Use the primary battery (battery located on the passenger side) for any jump starting procedure and refer to your *Owner's Guide* for the proper method of jump starting.

### **RUNNING OUT OF DEF (DIESEL EXHAUST FLUID)**

If your vehicle runs out of DEF, it will enter into a speed limited mode and can also enter into an idle-only mode. Normal vehicle operation will not resume until DEF is refilled. See the *Selective Catalytic Reduction (SCR) System* section in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter for more information.

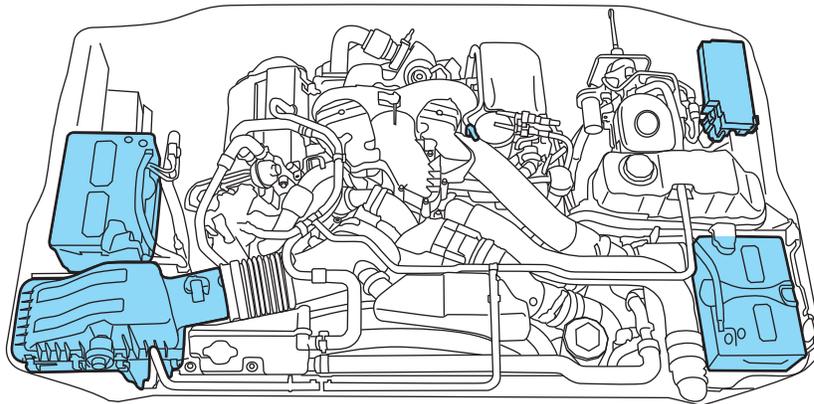
Contact roadside assistance for help in finding a retailer that sells DEF. See the *Customer Assistance* chapter in the *Owner's Guide* for more information.

## Cleaning

### ENGINE

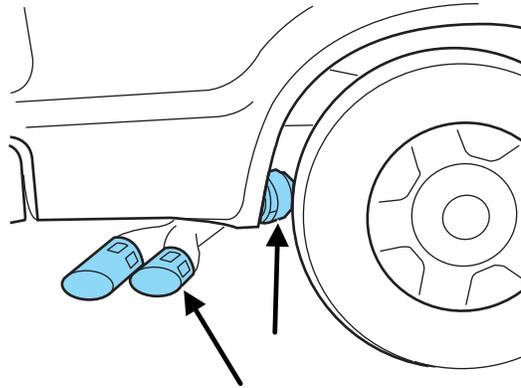
Engines are more efficient when they are clean because grease and dirt buildup keep the engine warmer than normal. When washing:

- Take care when using a power washer to clean the engine. The high-pressure fluid could penetrate the sealed parts and cause damage.
- Do not spray a hot engine with cold water to avoid cracking the engine block or other engine components.
- Spray Motorcraft® Engine Shampoo and Degreaser (ZC-20) on all parts that require cleaning and pressure rinse clean.
- Never wash or rinse the engine while it is running; water in the running engine may cause internal damage.
- Cover the highlighted areas to prevent water damage when cleaning the engine.



## Cleaning

### EXHAUST



The visible holes in each leg of the twin tip and the holes under the shield just inboard of the right rear tire(s) are functional. The holes need to be kept clear of mud/debris or foreign material to maintain proper function of the exhaust system. Clean and remove debris or foreign material if present as needed. Spraying with a hose during regular washing of vehicle should help keep holes clean and clear of debris or foreign material.

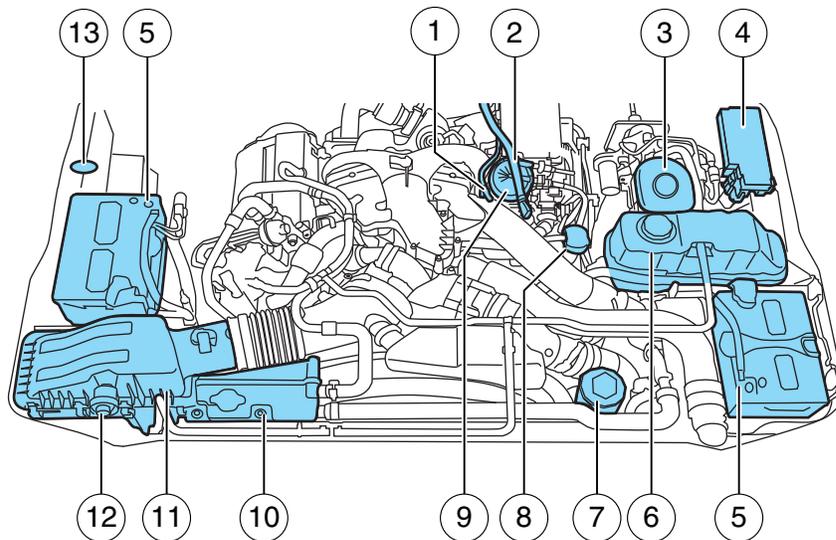
**!** **WARNING:** Failure to maintain the functional holes, in the tailpipe section of the exhaust, clean and free of debris or foreign material may result in the holes becoming blocked or plugged. Do not modify or remove the tail-pipe section. Blocked or plugged holes or removal/modification of the system could result in elevated exhaust gas temperatures which may result in vehicle/property damage or personal injury

**!** **WARNING:** The normal operating temperature of the exhaust system is very high. Never work around or attempt to repair any part of the exhaust system until it has cooled. Use special care when working around the diesel oxidation catalytic converter and/or the diesel particulate filter (DPF). The diesel oxidation catalytic converter and/or the DPF heats up to a high temperature after only a short period of engine operation and can stay hot even after the engine is turned off. Failure to follow these instructions may result in personal injury.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### IDENTIFYING COMPONENTS IN THE ENGINE COMPARTMENT

#### F-Super Duty



1. Engine oil dipstick
  2. Automatic transmission dipstick
  3. Brake fluid reservoir
  4. Power distribution box
  5. Batteries
  6. Engine cooling system coolant reservoir (primary high-temperature cooling system)
  7. Power steering fluid reservoir
  8. Engine oil fill
  9. Engine-mounted fuel filter assembly
  10. Secondary cooling system coolant reservoir
  11. Air filter assembly
  12. Air filter restriction gauge
  13. Windshield washer fluid reservoir
- 20

## Maintenance and Specifications

### SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE

The scheduled maintenance services in the *scheduled maintenance information* of this supplement are required because they are considered essential to the life and performance of your vehicle.

Use only recommended fuel, lubricants, fluids and service parts conforming to Ford specifications. Motorcraft® parts are designed and built for best performance in your vehicle.

### FUEL REQUIREMENTS - CHOOSING THE RIGHT FUEL: VEHICLES OPERATED WHERE ULTRA LOW SULFUR DIESEL FUEL IS REQUIRED (UNITED STATES/CANADA/PUERTO RICO/U.S. VIRGIN ISLANDS AND OTHER LOCALES)

**Use only Ultra Low Sulfur (15 ppm Sulfur Maximum) number 1-D or 2-D diesel fuel (also known as ULSD) in your 6.7L diesel engine.** The engine and exhaust system were designed to only use this fuel. Look for the **ULTRA-LOW SULFUR HIGHWAY DIESEL FUEL (15 ppm Sulfur Maximum)** label on fuel pumps when purchasing your fuel.

**Using low sulfur diesel fuel (16-500 ppm) or high sulfur diesel fuel (greater than 500 ppm) in a diesel engine designed to use only Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel fuel will cause certain emission components to malfunction which may also cause the service engine soon  light to illuminate indicating an emissions-related concern.**

Diesel fuel is adjusted seasonally for cold temperature. For best results at temperatures below 20°F (-7°C), it is recommended to use a diesel fuel which has been seasonally adjusted for the ambient conditions. See *Cold weather operation* in the *Driving* chapter of this supplement.

### FUEL REQUIREMENTS - CHOOSING THE RIGHT FUEL: VEHICLES OPERATED WHERE ULTRA LOW SULFUR DIESEL FUEL IS NOT REQUIRED

For the engine to operate reliably on low-sulfur or high-sulfur diesel fuel, the engine must be a factory built high-sulfur engine (available as a dealer order option for select markets) or a ULSD (ultra low sulfur diesel) fuel configured engine that has been retrofitted for high-sulfur diesel fuel using Ford Motor Company dealer service parts. Failure to use retrofit components other than those available through your authorized dealer will result in engine coolant system damage, engine overheating, SCR and/or DPF damage and possible base engine damage.

## Maintenance and Specifications

**Use only a diesel engine that has been configured for use with high sulfur diesel fuel in markets with diesel fuel that has sulfur content greater than 15 ppm. Using low sulfur diesel fuel (16–500 ppm) or high sulfur diesel fuel (greater than 500 ppm) in a diesel engine designed to use only Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel fuel may result in damage to engine emission control devices and the aftertreatment system, potentially rendering the vehicle inoperable. Engine damage from using the improper type of fuel is not covered under your warranty.**

Vehicles with engines configured for use with high sulfur diesel fuel will only be made available for sale in countries where ULSD fuel is generally not available or mandated by the government. Vehicles originally sold in a ULSD fuel market that are subsequently exported to non-ULSD fuel markets will need to be retrofitted (at the customer's expense using Ford authorized dealer service parts) in order to be reliably operated on non-ULSD fuel.

Diesel fuel is adjusted seasonally for cold temperature. For best results at temperatures below 20°F (-7°C), it is recommended to use a diesel fuel which has been seasonally adjusted for the ambient temperature. See *Cold weather operation* in the *Driving* chapter of this supplement.

### **BODIESEL**

This vehicle may be operated on diesel fuels containing up to 20% biodiesel, also known as B20.

To help achieve acceptable engine performance and durability when using biodiesel in your vehicle:

- Confirm the biodiesel content of the fuel to be B20 (20% biodiesel) or less.
- Only use biodiesel fuel of good quality that complies with industry standards.
- Follow the recommended service maintenance intervals section in the *Schedule Maintenance* chapter.
- Do not store biodiesel fuel in the fuel tank for more than 1 month.
- Consider changing brands or reducing biodiesel content if you have cold temperature fuel gelling issues or a frequent **LOW FUEL PRESSURE** message appearing.
- Do not use raw oils, fats or waste cooking greases.

Use of biodiesel in concentrations greater than 20% may cause damage to your vehicle, including engine and/or exhaust after-treatment

22

## Maintenance and Specifications

hardware (exhaust catalyst and particulate filter) failures. Concentrations greater than 20% can also cause fuel filter restrictions that may result in a lack of power and / or damage to fuel system components, including fuel pump and fuel injector failures.

5W-40 or 15W-40 oil is recommended for fuels with greater than 5% biodiesel (B5). Refer to the *Special operating conditions* section under the *Schedule Maintenance* chapter for more information about oil change intervals and other maintenance when operating on biodiesel.

Look for a label on the fuel pump to confirm the amount of biodiesel contained in a diesel fuel. Biodiesel content is often indicated with the letter “B” followed by the percent of biodiesel in the fuel. For example, B20 indicates a fuel containing 20% biodiesel. Ask the service station attendant to confirm the biodiesel content of a diesel fuel if you do not see a label on the fuel pump.

Biodiesel fuels degrade more easily than diesel fuels not containing biodiesel and should not be stored in the fuel tank for more than 1 month. If your vehicle will be parked or stored for more than 1 month, then your vehicle fuel tank should be emptied of biodiesel fuel, filled with a pure petroleum-based diesel fuel, and run for a minimum of 30 minutes.

**Note:** Degraded or oxidized biodiesel can damage fuel system seals and plastics and corrode steel parts.

During cold weather, if you have problems operating on biodiesel, you may need to use a diesel fuel with lower biodiesel content, try another brand, or discontinue the use of biodiesel.

Biodiesel fuel is a product that has been converted from renewable fuel sources, including vegetable oil, animal fat and cooking oil. Raw or refined vegetable oil, animal fat, cooking oil or recycled greases should **NOT** be used.



**WARNING:** Do not use home heating oil, agricultural fuel or any diesel fuel not intended for highway use. Damage to the fuel injection system, engine and exhaust catalyst can occur if an improper fuel is used. Do not add gasoline, gasohol or alcohol to diesel fuel. This practice creates a serious fire hazard and engine performance problems.

### Fuel quality

It should not be necessary to add any aftermarket additives to your fuel tank if you use a properly formulated diesel fuel that meets either the ASTM D975 diesel or the ASTM D7467 B6-B20 biodiesel industry

## Maintenance and Specifications

specifications. Outside of North America, use fuels meeting EN590 or equivalent local market standard. Aftermarket additives can damage the injector system or engine. Repairs to correct the effects of using an aftermarket product in your fuel may not be covered by your warranty.

Many of the world's automakers approved the World-wide Fuel Charter that recommends diesel fuel specifications to provide improved performance and emission control system protection for your vehicle. Diesel fuel that meets the World-wide Fuel Charter should be used when available. Ask your fuel supplier about fuel that meets the World-wide Fuel Charter.

**Do not blend used engine oil with diesel fuel under any circumstances.** Blending used oil with the fuel will significantly increase your vehicle's exhaust emissions and reduce engine life due to increased internal wear.

### ***Diesel fuel conditioner***

Additives that will improve fuel cetane numbers may be used to verify/enhance fuel quality. Use Motorcraft® or an equivalent cetane booster & performance improver as listed in the *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* section in this chapter. The customer warranty may be void from using additives that do not meet or exceed Ford specifications.

Do not use alcohol based additives to correct fuel gelling. This may result in damage to the fuel injectors/system. Use Motorcraft® or an equivalent anti-gel & performance improver as listed in the *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* section in this chapter. The customer warranty may be void from using additives that do not meet or exceed Ford specifications.

**Note:** These ultra-low sulfur formulations are designed to meet the emissions standards for the 6.7L engine and is backward compatible as well (i.e., can be used in Ford 7.3L, 6.9L, 6.4L and 6.0L diesel engines in Ford vehicles).

### ***Fueling tips***

Truck stops have pumps and nozzles designed for larger, heavy-duty trucks. When refueling at truck stops: if the nozzle shuts off repeatedly when refueling, wait 5–10 seconds; then use a slower rate of flow (don't depress the nozzle trigger as far).

If air is allowed to enter the fuel system (during fuel filter change or if you run out of fuel) the engine will purge the trapped air as it runs. To purge the air sooner: prior to engine start, prime the system by turning

24

## Maintenance and Specifications

the key to on for 30 seconds then to off. Repeat this several times. The engine may run rough and produce white smoke while air is in the system. This is normal and should correct itself in a short time.

An engine that suddenly becomes noisy or operates poorly after a fuel fill could be using substandard fuel (i.e., high water content, low cetane rating or gasoline in the fuel). Diesel fuel should be purchased from a reputable station which sells a large amount of diesel fuel.

Care should be taken whenever diesel fuel is stored. Use only clean, approved containers which will prevent the entry of dirt or water.

Diesel fuel must not be stored in a galvanized container. The fuel will dissolve the zinc in a galvanized container. The zinc will then remain in the solution until it is run through the engine where it will be deposited in the fuel injectors causing expensive-to-repair damage.

### Diesel fuel dispensing nozzle fill rate

This truck is equipped with a fuel fill pipe which is able to accept fuel up to 20 gallons per minute from a 1½ fuel dispensing nozzle. Pumping fuel at greater flow rates may result in premature nozzle shut-off or spitback.

### Fuel filler cap

Your fuel tank filler cap has an indexed design with a 1/4 turn on/off feature.

When fueling your vehicle:

1. Turn the engine off.
2. Carefully turn the filler cap counterclockwise until it spins off.
3. Pull to remove the cap from the fuel filler pipe.
4. To install the cap, align the tabs on the cap with the notches on the filler pipe.
5. Turn the filler cap clockwise 1/4 of a turn until it clicks at least once.

**If you must replace the fuel filler cap, replace it with a fuel filler cap that is designed for your vehicle. The vehicle warranty may be void for any damage to the fuel tank or fuel system if the correct genuine Ford or Motorcraft® fuel filler cap is not used.**



**WARNING:** The fuel system may be under pressure. If the fuel filler cap is venting vapor or if you hear a hissing sound, wait until it stops before completely removing the fuel filler cap. Otherwise, fuel may spray out and injure you or others.

## Maintenance and Specifications



**WARNING:** If you do not use the proper fuel filler cap, excessive pressure or vacuum in the fuel tank may damage the fuel system or cause the fuel cap to disengage in a collision, which may result in possible personal injury.

### Selective Catalytic Reduction (SCR) System

Your vehicle is equipped with a selective catalytic reduction (SCR) system to help reduce emission levels of oxides of nitrogen from the exhaust of the diesel engine. The system automatically injects diesel exhaust fluid (DEF) into the exhaust system to enable proper SCR function.

#### **Importance of maintaining the DEF level**

In order for the SCR system to operate properly, the DEF level must be maintained. Generally, the DEF tank should be filled during the oil change service interval. See the *scheduled maintenance information* in this supplement for more information. However, certain conditions or driving styles, such as trailer towing or fast rates of acceleration, will require the refilling of the DEF tank more often.

The engine control unit will monitor the amount of fluid available in the DEF tank. Running a system check in the message center will indicate whether the DEF level is ok or if it is less than 1/2 full. A message will automatically be displayed in the message center when the DEF level is low and needs to be refilled. When you see this message you should refill your tank. See *Message center* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter of your *Owner's Guide* for message center functions. For instructions on refilling your DEF tank, see *Filling the DEF tank* later in this section.

#### **DEF warning messages and vehicle operations**



**WARNING:** Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) must be refilled when low or replaced when contaminated or the vehicle speed will be speed limited to 50 mph (80 km/h). In these conditions, drive with caution and refill DEF immediately. If the DEF becomes empty or contaminated fluid is not replaced, the vehicle will become limited to idle speed only once stopped. In these conditions, be cautious where you stop the vehicle because you may not be able to drive long distances and will not be able to maintain highway speeds until DEF is refilled or replaced.

## Maintenance and Specifications

Your vehicle's message center will display a series of messages regarding the amount of DEF available. A systems check will display messages indicating the amount of DEF available (OK or under ½ full) or will produce a warning message that displays the mileage (kilometers) remaining as the fluid in the DEF tank nears empty. For more information on warning messages, see the *Message center* section in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter of your *Owner's Guide*.

As the DEF level nears empty, the DEF warning symbol will be displayed and chimes will sound with the messages starting at 500 miles (805 km) remaining before DEF is depleted. The warning symbol and messages will continue until the DEF tank is refilled.



Continued driving without refilling will result in the following actions as required by the California Air Resources Board (CARB) and /or U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA):

- Within a certain number of miles (kilometers) to empty, speed will be limited upon vehicle restart. Prior to this occurring a message will appear in the message center.
- Further vehicle operation without refilling your DEF tank will cause the engine to enter an idle-only condition. This will only occur upon vehicle refueling or extended idle and will be indicated by a message in the message center indicating required actions to resume normal operation. It is required to add a minimum of 0.5 gallons (1.9L) of DEF to the tank to exit the idle-only condition, but the vehicle will still be in the speed limiting mode until the tank is refilled completely.

For either vehicle speed limiting or idle-only condition, normal vehicle operation will resume when the DEF tank is refilled.

**Note:** When filling the DEF tank from empty, there may be a short delay before detecting the increased level of DEF. This must occur before full power is returned.

## Maintenance and Specifications

Low DEF Warnings and Actions — Instrument Cluster Messages (Optional message center messages shown, base message center messages similar)			
Cluster Message	Distance/Exhaust Fluid Level or Action	Customer Requested Actions	Vehicle Actions
Exhaust Fluid Level OK	Full exhaust fluid tank	Drive normally	None
Exhaust Fluid Under ½ Full	Exhaust fluid tank below ½ full	Drive normally	None
Exhaust Fluid Range 500 miles (805 km)	Approximately 500 miles (805 km) left before exhaust fluid tank is empty	Refill exhaust fluid	None
In 99 Miles (159 km) Speed Limited to 50 MPH (80 km/h) Exhaust Fluid Empty	Approximately 99 Miles (159 km) left before exhaust fluid tank is empty	Refill exhaust fluid	None
Speed Limited to 50 MPH (80 km/h) Upon Restart Exhaust Fluid Empty	0 Miles (0 km) – exhaust fluid tank is empty	Refill exhaust fluid	None
Speed Limited To 50 MPH (80 km/h) Exhaust Fluid Empty	Vehicle restarted with exhaust fluid tank empty	Refill exhaust fluid	Speed is limited to 50 MPH. (80 km/h)
Engine Idled Soon Exhaust Fluid Empty	This occurs 200 Miles (322 km) after the vehicle reaches the 0 mile (0 km) exhaust fluid range	Refill exhaust fluid	—

## Maintenance and Specifications

Low DEF Warnings and Actions — Instrument Cluster Messages (Optional message center messages shown, base message center messages similar)			
Cluster Message	Distance/Exhaust Fluid Level or Action	Customer Requested Actions	Vehicle Actions
Engine Idled-See Owner's Manual Exhaust Fluid Empty	<p>This occurs when the exhaust fluid is empty and:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The vehicle's diesel fuel tank is refueled or,</li> <li>• the engine is shut off for 10 minutes or,</li> <li>• the engine is idling with the parking brake engaged for 60 minutes.</li> </ul>	Refill exhaust fluid	Engine is limited to idle ONLY

## Maintenance and Specifications

### Filling the DEF tank

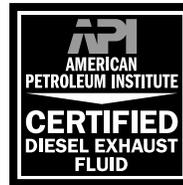
Your vehicle is equipped with a DEF tank with a blue-capped filler port located next to the diesel fuel fill inlet. The tank can be filled using a nozzle at a DEF filling station (similar to fuel fill) or using a DEF bottle with a spout. Motorcraft® DEF bottles are recommended as they are designed to be spill proof and will stop the flow of DEF when the tank is full. Other aftermarket bottles can be used, but they should have a seal on the spout and an internal vent tube to achieve best fill performance and prevent overfilling. Overfilling your DEF tank can cause damage to the tank. For DEF capacity, see *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* in this chapter.

**Note:** Do not put DEF in the fuel tank. This can cause engine damage not covered by your vehicle's warranty.

**Note:** Immediately wipe away any DEF that has spilled on painted surfaces with water and a damp cloth to prevent damage to the paint.

You can purchase DEF at your authorized dealer, most highway truck stops or you can contact roadside assistance for help in finding a retailer that sells DEF. See the *Customer Assistance* chapter in the *Owner's Guide* for more information. In addition, there is a government website locator for DEF at the following web address that can be used to find the nearest location to purchase DEF: <http://www.afdc.energy.gov/afdc/locator/def>.

Use only DEF certified by the American Petroleum Institute (API) such as Motorcraft® DEF or equivalent meeting Ford specification WSS-M99C130-A and/or ISO 22241. Look for API certification trademark shown here. Repairs resulting from the use of non-certified DEF products may not be covered by your vehicle's warranty.



Maintaining the purity of DEF is important to avoid malfunctions in the SCR system.

If DEF is removed from the tank for repair work, etc., the same DEF must not be used to refill the tank as its purity is no longer guaranteed.



**WARNING:** Make sure that DEF does not come into contact with eyes, skin or clothing. Should DEF contact your eyes, flush them with plenty of water and contact a physician. Clean affected skin with soap and water. If DEF is swallowed, drink plenty of water and contact a physician immediately.

## Maintenance and Specifications

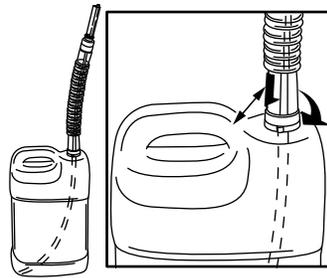
**⚠ WARNING:** Refill DEF in a well-ventilated area. When opening the cap on the DEF tank or bottle containing DEF, ammonia vapors may escape. The vapors can be irritating to skin, eyes and mucous membranes. Inhaling ammonia vapors can cause burning to the eyes, throat and nose and cause coughing and watery eyes.

To fill the DEF tank, see your authorized dealer or do the following (before filling the DEF tank in cold climates, see *Filling the DEF tank in cold climates* later in this section):

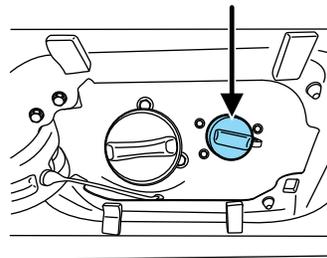
- **DEF bottle fill with spout:**

The following procedure applies to Motorcraft® DEF or similar DEF bottles; for other brands or bottle types, refer to the instructions on the bottle label.

1. Remove the cap from the DEF container. Remove the spout from the bottle and insert the straw end into the bottle. Ensure that the arrow above the nut is aligned with the bottle handle and the small tube end extends into the far corner of the bottle. Twist the spout nut on the container until it is tight.

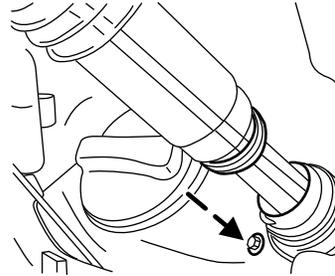


2. Open the DEF filler port on the vehicle by turning the blue cap counterclockwise.

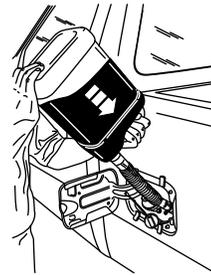


## Maintenance and Specifications

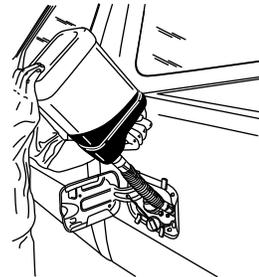
3. Lift and hold the DEF container, without tipping, and insert the spout into the DEF filler port until the small black seal on the spout is completely seated into the DEF filler port.



4A. While filling, the fluid level in the bottle will continually drop.

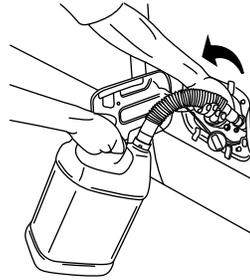


4B. When the DEF tank is full, the fluid level in the bottle will stop dropping, indicating the fluid has stopped flowing.



## Maintenance and Specifications

5. Once the level in the DEF bottle has stopped dropping, return the container to the vertical position slightly below the DEF filler port and let any DEF drain out of the spout. **DO NOT** try to continue to add DEF to the tank by shaking or repositioning the container to induce flow. This may cause spilling and overflow the tank. Overflowing the DEF tank can cause damage to the tank.



6. Once the spout has drained, remove the spout from the DEF filler port and install the blue cap on the DEF filler port.

7. Remove the spout from the DEF container and install the cap back on the bottle.

8. If the container is empty, discard the empty container, or recycle if possible. If there is DEF left in the container, retain it for later use. The spout is re-useable; after use, rinse it with clean water and store the spout to ensure it is kept clean. Do not use the DEF spout with any other chemicals.

9. Wipe away any DEF that has spilled on painted surfaces with water and a damp cloth.

- **DEF filling station nozzle fill:**

Filling the DEF tank using a nozzle is similar to a normal fuel fill. The nozzle will shut off automatically when the tank is full. Do not continue to fill the tank as this may cause spilling and overflow the tank which can cause damage.

**Note:** Some filling station nozzles may prevent filling of your DEF tank due to a magnetic mechanism in the nozzle. This is not a problem with your vehicle. To refill your tank either locate another filling station or use a bottle to refill the tank.

### **Filling the DEF tank in cold climates**

DEF will freeze below 12°F (-11°C); however, your vehicle is equipped with an automatic preheating system which allows the DEF system to operate below 12°F (-11°C). When the vehicle is not in operation for an extended period of time with temperatures at or below 12°F (-11°C), the DEF tank could freeze. If the tank is **OVERFILLED** and freezes, it could be damaged, therefore **DO NOT OVERFILL**.

## Maintenance and Specifications

To prevent overfilling of the DEF tank when filling with a bottle, Ford recommends using Motorcraft® DEF. Additionally, if the message center indicates **EXHAUST FLUID UNDER 1/2 FULL**, you should only add a MAXIMUM of 2 gallons (6.7L) of DEF to the tank to prevent freeze damage due to overfilling. If the message center indicates **EXHAUST FLUID LEVEL OK**, do not add DEF.

### **Contaminated DEF or inoperative SCR system**

SCR systems are sensitive to contamination of the DEF. USE ONLY API or ISO 22241 CERTIFIED DIESEL EXHAUST FLUID. If the SCR becomes contaminated or inoperative, the DEF light will illuminate and exhaust fluid system fault messages will appear in the message center.



Continued driving without replacing DEF or having the SCR system repaired will result in the following actions as required by the California Air Resources Board (CARB) and /or U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA):

- Within a certain number of miles (kilometers) to empty, speed will be limited upon restart. Prior to this occurring a message will appear in the message center.
- Further vehicle operation without replacing contaminated DEF will cause the engine to enter an idle-only condition. This will only occur upon vehicle refueling, vehicle idling in park for 1 hour, or engine shutdown for 10 minutes or more and will be indicated by a message in the message center indicating required actions to resume normal operation.

For either vehicle speed limiting or idle-only condition, normal vehicle operation will resume when the contaminated system is repaired. **To service a contaminated or inoperative system, see your authorized dealer.**

### **DEF guidelines and information**

- Use only DEF that carries the trademark: American Petroleum Institute (API) certified DEF or ISO 22241.
- Do not put DEF in the diesel fuel tank.
- Do not overfill the DEF tank.
- Do not re-use the DEF container or nozzle once it is emptied.

34

## Maintenance and Specifications

- Avoid spilling DEF on painted surfaces, carpeting or plastic components. Immediately wipe away any DEF that has spilled with a damp cloth and water. If it has already crystallized, use warm water and a sponge.
- Store DEF out of direct sunlight and in temperatures between 23°F (-5°C) — 68°F (20°C).
- DEF will freeze below 12°F (-11°C).
- Do not store DEF bottle in vehicle. If it leaks it could cause damage to interior components or release an ammonia odor inside the vehicle.
- DEF is non-flammable, non-toxic, colorless and water-soluble liquid.
- Do not dilute DEF with water or any other liquid.
- An ammonia odor may be smelled when the cap is removed or during refill. Refill DEF in a well ventilated area.

### Typical Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) Usage

The charts below illustrate *approximate* DEF usage for the given distances traveled under various driving conditions and when using the PTO. Your usage may vary depending on: driving style, trailer towing, loaded vehicle weight, weather, idle time, PTO usage, etc.

Pick-up (3.31 axle ratio)			
Driving style	Trailer towing / aggressive or city driving	Normal driving	Steady highway driving
DEF usage	4100 miles (6598 km) – 7100 miles (11426 km)	7100 miles (11426 km) – 9600 miles (15450 km)	9600 miles (15450 km) – 10000 miles (16093 km) +

Pick-up (3.55 axle ratio)			
Driving style	Trailer towing / aggressive or city driving	Normal driving	Steady highway driving
DEF usage	2800 miles (4506 km) – 5800 miles (9334 km)	5800 miles (9334 km) – 8100 miles (13036 km)	8100 miles (13036 km) – 9700 miles (15611 km)

## Maintenance and Specifications

Pick-up (3.73 axle ratio)			
Driving style	Trailer towing / aggressive or city driving	Normal driving	Steady highway driving
DEF usage	2050 miles (3299 km) – 5050 miles (8127 km)	5050 miles (8127 km) – 7300 miles (11748 km)	7300 miles (11748 km) – 8900 miles (14323 km)
Pick-up (4.30 axle ratio)			
Driving style	Trailer towing / aggressive or city driving	Normal driving	Steady highway driving
DEF usage	1100 miles (1770 km) – 4100 miles (6598 km)	4100 miles (6598 km) – 6300 miles (10139 km)	6300 miles (10139 km) – 7900 miles (12714 km)
Chassis cab (non-PTO)			
Driving style	Trailer towing / aggressive or city driving	Normal driving	Steady highway driving
DEF usage	1700 miles (2736 km) – 4700 miles (7564 km)	4700 miles (7564 km) – 7800 miles (12553 km)	7800 miles (12553 km) – 9300 miles (14967 km)
Chassis cab (with PTO)			
PTO usage	< - - - Cont. PTO usage — Min. PTO usage - - - >		
DEF usage	0 miles (0 km) — 7800 miles (12553 km)		

## Maintenance and Specifications

### FUEL FILTER/WATER SEPARATOR

#### Diesel Fuel Conditioner Module (DFCM)

The vehicle is equipped with a diesel fuel conditioning module (DFCM) located on the frame-rail under the driver-side floorboard near the transmission.

Water should be drained from the module assembly whenever the warning light comes on and the message center directs you to drain the water separator. This will occur when approximately 0.32 pints (150 ml) of water accumulates in the module. If water level is allowed to exceed this level, the water may be passed through to the engine and may cause fuel injection equipment damage.



#### Draining the DFCM

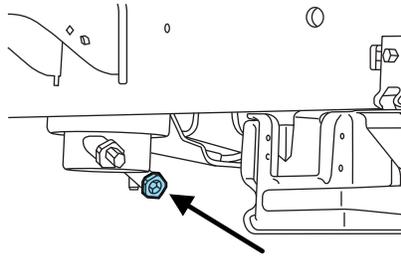
1. Stop the vehicle and **shut off** the engine.



**WARNING:** The vehicle must be stopped with the engine off when draining the DFCM. Fuel may ignite if the separator is drained while the engine is running or vehicle is moving.

**Note:** Air will enter into the fuel system if the DFCM is drained while the system is running. The engine will not operate properly if air enters the system.

2. Locate the DFCM and place an appropriate container under the drain port (see illustration).
3. Rotate the drain counterclockwise until the O-ring is visible. Allow the DFCM to drain for approximately 25 seconds or until clean fuel is observed. Rotate the drain clockwise to tighten it. If no liquid drains, the drain may be clogged. Have the DFCM serviced by your authorized dealer.



## Maintenance and Specifications

4. Make sure that the drain valve is fully tightened, then remove the container from under the vehicle.

**Note:** A loose drain valve can allow air to enter the fuel system and cause drivetrain issues. The engine will not operate properly. be sure that the drain valve is fully tightened.

5. Restart the engine. The **WATER IN FUEL DRAIN FILTER** or **WATER IN FUEL DRAIN FILTER SEE MANUAL** message and light should not be illuminated. If they continue to illuminate, have the fuel system checked and repaired.

### LOW FUEL PRESSURE MESSAGE

The engine is equipped with a low fuel pressure detection system. If the message center displays: **LOW FUEL PRESSURE** the following explains why and what to do:

- Cold start or cold operation (below 32°F (0°C)): If this message appears during a cold start or during cold operation up to 10 minutes after the initial cold start, monitor the message center. If it disappears and does not re-appear after the engine has fully warmed up, the low fuel pressure message is most likely caused by waxed or gelled fuel.

Do not use alcohol based additives to correct fuel gelling. This may result in damage to the fuel injectors/systems. Use an anti-gel additive as listed in *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* section in this chapter. The customer warranty may be void from using additives that do not meet or exceed Ford specifications.

If the low fuel pressure message persistently appears after re-fueling during the cold start and cold operation conditions defined previously and then disappear when the engine has fully warmed up, consider different fuel sources.

- Low fuel operation: If the message appears when the vehicle is warm and during low fuel tank level operation, i.e. the tank level is at or very near empty, refuel the vehicle and operate the vehicle. If the message reappears after fueling, see below. If the message does not come back, the low fuel pressure condition was due to low fuel levels in the fuel tank.
- Normal operation: If the message appears during normal operation when the vehicle / engine is fully warm, and fuel level is not low, the fuel filters must be changed regardless of the maintenance schedule interval.
- If replacement of the fuel filter does not remedy the low fuel pressure message during normal operation as defined above, take the vehicle to your authorized dealer.

38

## Maintenance and Specifications

### CHANGING THE ENGINE-MOUNTED AND DFCM FUEL FILTERS

Your vehicle is equipped with two fuel filters; one is mounted on top of the driver's side of the engine and the second filter, inside the DFCM, is mounted on the frame rail under the driver-side floorboard near the transmission. Both filters should be replaced at the same time. Regular fuel filter changes are an important part of engine maintenance; failing to keep with the scheduled maintenance could lead to engine performance issues and/or fuel injection system damage. Refer to the *scheduled maintenance information* of this supplement for more information.

Refer to *Motorcraft part numbers* later in this chapter for the fuel filter replacement part number. This part number includes filters and seals for both the engine-mounted and frame-mounted filters.

#### Removal - DFCM filter

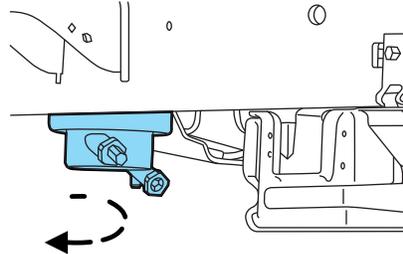
The DFCM filter is located in the lower portion of the DFCM housing.

1. Drain the DFCM. See *Fuel filter/water separator* earlier in this chapter.

To install the new DFCM filter, see *Installation - DFCM filter* later in this section.

2. Remove the lower portion of the DFCM housing (filter bowl) by turning it counterclockwise using a 32 mm socket.

**Note:** Depending on the amount seal swelling, removal of the filter bowl may be noisy and require some effort. Replace the seal prior to reinstalling the filter/bowl to improve assembly.



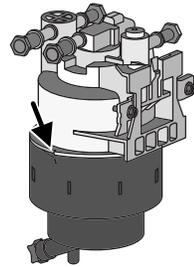
3. Remove and discard the old fuel filter element.

4. Carefully clean the mating surfaces using a lint-free rag.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### Installation – DFCM filter

1. Install the new filter into the filter bowl tabs and replace the seal on the DFCM header (top portion of DFCM). Refer to *Motorcraft part numbers* later in this chapter for the fuel filter kit part number.
2. Reinstall the lower portion of the housing by slowly turning it clockwise onto DFCM housing, allowing fuel to soak into the fuel filter element. Tighten the lower housing until it contacts the mechanical stop.



**Note:** The engine will not run properly if the DFCM fuel filter is not installed in the housing or if the filter bowl is not tightened to the mechanical stop.

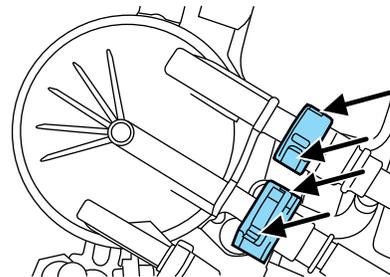
The system will need to be purged of air after removal/changing of the filter. See *Purging air from the fuel system after DFCM and engine mounted fuel filter replacement* following.

### Removal - Engine-mounted fuel filter

The engine-mounted fuel filter is a plastic disposable cartridge. To remove it, do the following:

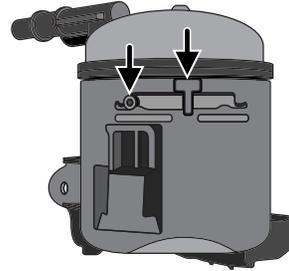
1. Disconnect both fuel lines by squeezing the connector tabs and pulling the lines straight off.

**Note:** Although the fuel system is not fully pressurized when the vehicle is off, some residual pressure may remain in the fuel system since it can take some time for the pressure to completely bleed off. Therefore, it is recommended to place a shop rag below the filter connectors to absorb the small amount of fuel that will drain.



## Maintenance and Specifications

2. Rotate the filter counterclockwise until the peg aligns with the release slot.



3. Pull the filter straight out from the bracket and discard the filter.

### **Installation – Engine-mounted fuel filter**

1. Install the new filter into the filter bracket. Turn the filter clockwise to lock it in place.
2. Reconnect both fuel lines.

**Using a fuel which has more than average impurities may require the fuel filter to be replaced more frequently than the service interval specifies.**

The system will need to be purged of air after removal/changing of the filter. See *Purging air from the fuel system after DFCM and engine-mounted fuel filter replacement* following.

### **Purging air from the fuel system after DFCM and engine mounted fuel filter replacement**

Turn the ignition key to on for 30 seconds, then turn it to off. Do this a total of six times in a row to purge any trapped air from the fuel system.

After filter service, a no start or rough running engine may indicate that air is entering the system through the filter bowl seal or drain. Make sure the drain is tight and the filter bowl has been tightened to the mechanical stop.

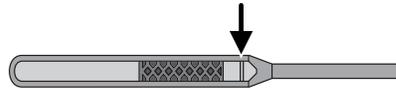
## Maintenance and Specifications

### ENGINE OIL

#### Checking the engine oil level

Because it is normal to add some oil between oil changes, check your engine oil level each time you stop for fuel. To check the engine oil level consistently and accurately, the following procedure is recommended:

1. Have engine at normal operating temperature (at least into the NORMAL range on the engine coolant temperature gauge).
2. Park the vehicle on a level surface, then turn off the engine and open the hood.
3. Allow at least **20 minutes** after engine shutdown to ensure that the oil contained in the upper parts of the engine has returned to the oil pan.
4. Protecting yourself from engine heat, pull out the dipstick, wipe it clean and reinsert fully.
5. Read oil level on both sides of dipstick and use highest level (reading) for the actual engine oil level.
6. Maintain the oil level within the crosshatch area on the dipstick by adding oil as required. Do not overfill the oil past the maximum line as depicted by the arrow.



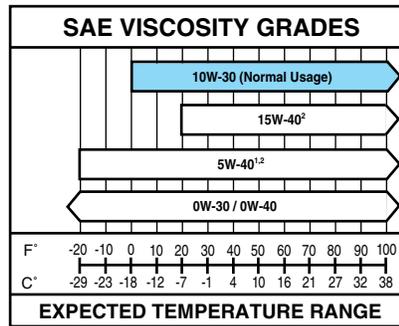
#### Engine oil specifications

To help achieve acceptable engine performance and durability, it is important that only engine oils of good quality are used in your diesel engine and it is changed at the recommended interval. For normal or severe service, use Motorcraft® oil or an equivalent oil conforming to Ford specifications as listed in the *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* section in this chapter or API service categories CJ-4 or CJ-4/SM. It is important to use these oils because they are compatible with the emission control equipment of your vehicle to meet the more stringent emission standards.

The use of correct oil viscosities for diesel engines is important for satisfactory operation. Determine which oil viscosity best suits the temperature range you expect to encounter for the next service interval from the following SAE viscosity grade chart.

42

## Maintenance and Specifications



<sup>1</sup>For severe duty usage, use SAE 5W-40 API CJ-4.

<sup>2</sup>For biodiesel (grades B6-B20) usage, use SAE 5W-40 or SAE 15W-40 API CJ-4.

An engine block heater is recommended at temperatures below  $-10^{\circ}\text{F}$  ( $-23^{\circ}\text{C}$ ).

A symbol has been developed by the American Petroleum Institute (API) to help you select the proper engine oil. It will be included on the oil container you purchase. The top section of the symbol shows the oil performance by the API designation. This should match the owner guide recommendation. The center section will show the SAE viscosity grade



The center section of the symbol shows the SAE viscosity grade

### Changing the engine oil and oil filter

Your vehicle is equipped with an Intelligent Oil Life Monitor™ that calculates the proper oil change service interval. When the message center indicates: **OIL CHANGE REQUIRED**, change the engine oil and oil filter. See the *Message center* section of the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for more information.

Refer to *Motorcraft part numbers* later in this chapter for the engine oil filter part number. This filter protects your engine by filtering harmful, abrasive or sludge particles and particles significantly smaller than most available “will-fit” filters.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### To change the engine oil and oil filter:

1. Unscrew the oil filter and oil pan drain plug and wait for the oil to drain.  
**Note:** The oil pan drain plug only requires 1/4 turn to removal/install. A 3/8 inch socket drive may be used to assist with removal/installation, but be careful not to over-tighten the plug during installation.
2. Replace the filter.
3. Reinstall the oil pan drain plug.
4. Refill the engine with new oil. For the proper capacity, see *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* in this chapter.
5. Reset the Intelligent Oil Life Monitor™. See *Message center* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for more information.



**WARNING:** Do not handle a hot oil filter with bare hands.



**WARNING:** Continuous contact with used motor oil has caused cancer in laboratory mice. Protect your skin by washing with soap and water.

### Engine lubrication for severe service operation

The following conditions define severe operation for which engine operation with SAE 5W-40 API CJ-4 is recommended. Oil and oil filter change intervals will be determined by the Intelligent Oil Life Monitor™ as noted previously.

- frequent or extended idling (over 10 minutes per hour of normal driving)
- low-speed operation/stationary use
- if vehicle is operated in sustained ambient temperatures below -10°F (-23°C) or above 100°F (38°C)
- frequent low-speed operation, consistent heavy traffic less than 25 mph (40 km/h)
- operating in severe dust conditions
- operating the vehicle off road
- towing a trailer over 1,000 miles (1,600 km)
- sustained, high-speed driving at Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (maximum loaded weight for vehicle operation)
- use of fuels with sulfur content other than ultra-low sulfur diesel (ULSD)
- use of high-sulfur diesel fuel

44

## Maintenance and Specifications

### ENGINE AND SECONDARY COOLING SYSTEM COOLANT

#### Checking engine coolant

The concentration, additive strength and level of coolant should be checked at the mileage intervals listed in the *scheduled maintenance information*. The coolant concentration should be maintained at 50/50 coolant and water. For best results, coolant concentration should be tested with a refractometer such as Rotunda tool 300-ROB75240E available from your dealer. Ford does not recommend the use of hydrometers or coolant test strips for measuring coolant concentration. The level of coolant should be maintained within the COLD FILL RANGE in the coolant reservoirs. If the level falls below, add coolant per the instructions in the *Adding coolant* section.

Your vehicle was factory-filled with a 50/50 coolant and water concentration. If the concentration of coolant falls below 40% or above 60%, the engine parts could become damaged or not work properly. **A 50/50 mixture of coolant and water provides the following:**

- **Improved freeze protection.**
- **Improved boiling protection.**
- **Protection against rust and other forms of corrosion.**
- **Enables calibrated gauges to work properly.**

When the engine is cold, check the level of coolant in the reservoirs. See *Identifying components in the engine compartment* for the location of the engine and secondary cooling system reservoirs.

- The coolant should be within the COLD FILL RANGE in the coolant reservoirs.
- Refer to the *scheduled maintenance information* for service interval schedules.
- Be sure to read and understand *Precautions when servicing your vehicle* in your *Owner's Guide*.

If the coolant has not been checked at the recommended interval, the engine or secondary coolant reservoir may become low or empty. If either reservoir is low or empty, add coolant to the reservoir(s). Refer to *Engine and secondary cooling system refill procedure* in this chapter.

**Note:** Automotive fluids are not interchangeable; do not use engine coolant or windshield washer fluid outside of its specified function and vehicle location.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### Adding coolant

When adding coolant, make sure it is a 50/50 mixture of coolant and distilled water. Add the mixture to the coolant reservoir(s), **when the engine is cool**, until the appropriate fill level is obtained.

If you have to add more than 1.0 quart (1.0 liter) of coolant per month, have your dealer check the cooling system. Your cooling system may have a leak. Operating an engine with a low level of coolant can result in engine overheating and possible engine damage.

**Note:** If coolant is added to bring the level within the COLD FILL RANGE when the engine is not cold, the system will remain underfilled.



**WARNING:** Do not add coolant when the engine is hot. Steam and scalding liquids released from a hot cooling system can burn you badly. Also, you can be burned if you spill coolant on hot engine parts.



**WARNING:** Do not put coolant in the windshield washer fluid container. If sprayed on the windshield, coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.

- **DO NOT MIX different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle. Make sure the correct coolant is used.** Refer to *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* in this chapter for the proper coolant type.
- **The use of an improper coolant may harm engine and cooling system components and may void the warranty.** Refer to *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* in this chapter for the proper coolant type.

**Note:** Do not use stop leak pellets or cooling system sealants/additives as they can cause damage to the engine cooling and/or heating systems. This damage would not be covered under your vehicle's warranty.

- A large amount of water without engine coolant may be added to the engine cooling system only, in case of emergency, to reach a vehicle service location. Avoid this procedure if delivery to the service location requires heavy engine loads. In this instance, the cooling system(s) must be drained, chemically cleaned with Motorcraft® Premium Cooling System Flush, and refilled with a 50/50 mixture of coolant and distilled water as soon as possible. Water alone (without coolant) can cause damage from corrosion, overheating or freezing. **DO NOT** use this method for the secondary cooling system. The secondary cooling system operates close to ambient temperature, and is susceptible to freezing in any subfreezing environment, in the absence of coolant.

## Maintenance and Specifications

- **Do not use alcohol, methanol or brine or any engine coolants mixed with alcohol or methanol antifreeze (coolant).** Alcohol and other liquids can cause engine damage from overheating or freezing.
- **Do not mix with recycled coolant. We do not recommend the use of recycled coolant in vehicles equipped with Motorcraft® Speciality Engine Coolant, since a Ford approved recycling process is not yet available.**



**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the engine is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system(s) are under pressure; steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when the cap is loosened slightly.

### Engine and secondary cooling system refill procedure

The following procedure should be used when refilling the engine or secondary cooling systems after it has been drained or become extremely low.

1. Before you remove the cap, turn the engine off and let it cool.
2. When the engine is cool, wrap a thick cloth around the cap. Slowly turn cap counterclockwise until pressure begins to release.
3. Step back while the pressure releases.
4. When you are sure that all the pressure has been released, use the cloth to turn it counterclockwise and remove the cap.
5. Slowly add a 50/50 mixture of coolant and distilled water to the coolant reservoir until the coolant level is within the COLD FILL RANGE as listed on the reservoir.
6. Reinstall the pressure relief cap.
7. Start and run the engine at 2,000 rpm for 2 minutes.
8. Shut engine off, and remove the pressure relief cap as previously outlined.
9. If required, add a 50/50 mixture of coolant and distilled water to the coolant reservoir until the coolant level is within the COLD FILL RANGE as listed on the reservoir.

## Maintenance and Specifications

10. Engine cooling system: Repeat Step 5 until the coolant level has stabilized (is no longer dropping after each step) AND the upper radiator hose at the radiator is warm to the touch (indicating that the engine thermostat is open and coolant is flowing through the radiator).

Secondary cooling system: Repeat Step 5 until the coolant level has stabilized (is no longer dropping after each step) AND the lower passenger side of the secondary radiator is warm to the touch (indicating secondary thermostat is open and coolant is flowing through the entire system).

11. Reinstall the pressure relief cap. Shut the engine off and let it cool.

12. Check the coolant level in the reservoir before you drive your vehicle the next few times (with the engine cool).

13. If necessary, add a 50/50 mixture of coolant and distilled water to the coolant reservoir until the coolant level is within the COLD FILL RANGE as listed on the reservoir. After any coolant has been added, check the coolant concentration. See *Engine and secondary cooling system coolant* earlier. If the concentration is not 50/50, drain some coolant and adjust the concentration. It may take several drains and additions to obtain a 50/50 coolant concentration.

Whenever coolant has been added, the coolant level in the reservoir should be checked the next few times you drive the vehicle. If needed, add a 50/50 concentration of coolant and distilled water to the proper level.

### **Coolant refill capacity**

To find out how much fluid your vehicle's cooling system can hold, refer to *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* in this chapter.

### **Coolant additives**

At specific mileage intervals of 15,000 miles (24,000 km), as listed in the *scheduled maintenance information* chapter, the coolant additive should be checked. The optional message center, if equipped, will also display the message **CHECK COOLANT ADDITIVE** at this time. The purpose of checking is to verify the correct concentration (freeze point protection) and additive strength (corrosion inhibitor) levels of the coolant for maximum engine performance and protection. Three products are available for ensuring the life and health of the coolant: two test kits and a coolant inhibitor additive:

- Rotunda 328-00007 (Matthew's Water CoolCheck) – Evaluates water quality (hardness, chloride, and pH) for 50/50 mixture of coolant and distilled water. Use distilled water. If distilled water is unavailable,

48

## Maintenance and Specifications

water meeting the requirements of Rotunda 328-00007, is sufficient for vehicle use. Using water that fails to meet the requirements can lead to coolant passage scaling and degrade the engine's durability and performance.

- Rotunda 328-00008 (Antifreeze Coolant ELC Contamination Kit) – Evaluates the coolant concentration (freeze point protection) and additive strength (corrosion inhibitor) for overall coolant health. Note that the first step is to verify that the vehicle's coolant concentration is in the window of 40 – 60%. If the concentration falls outside of that window, the evaluation of the corrosion inhibitor strength will not be valid. If the report results in a pass, the cooling system does not show excessive contamination, no action is required. If the report results as insufficient, the corrosion inhibitor (additive) strength of the coolant is too low. Add entire contents of one bottle of Motorcraft® Specialty Orange Engine Coolant Revitalizer to the coolant reservoir. The coolant can be recharged with this additive up to two times before the coolant must be changed-out. When exchanging the full coolant volume, the system must be flushed with Motorcraft Premium Cooling System Flush and refilled with distilled water and coolant concentrate (Motorcraft® Specialty Orange Engine Coolant).
- Motorcraft® Specialty Orange Engine Coolant Revitalizer – Additive to boost the corrosion inhibitor level based upon the test results of the Antifreeze Coolant ELC Contamination Kit. The revitalizer may be added two times over the life of the coolant. If additional dosages are required, the cooling system must be flushed with Motorcraft Premium Cooling System Flush and refilled with distilled water and coolant concentrate (Motorcraft® Specialty Orange Coolant).

Refer to *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* in this chapter for the proper coolant and additive specifications.

### Coolant change

At specific mileage intervals, as listed in the *scheduled maintenance information*, the coolant should be changed. The optional message center, if equipped, will also display the message **COOLANT CHANGE REQUIRED** at this time.

Refer to *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* in this chapter for the proper coolant.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### AIR FILTER RESTRICTION GAUGE AND AIR FILTER REPLACEMENT

#### Air filter restriction gauge:

The restriction gauge, located on the upper housing of the air filter assembly, measures the vacuum inside the air filter. The more the air filter is restricted (dirty, clogged), the higher the vacuum reading

Check the air filter restriction gauge whenever the hood is raised to perform general engine maintenance at least every 7,500 miles (12,000 km). If the vehicle is operated in extremely dusty conditions, check and reset the gauge at least every 500 miles (800 km), or two weeks, whichever comes first.

Change the air filter when the gauge reads near the “change filter” line and the chamber is filled with yellow. Engine performance and fuel economy are adversely affected when the maximum restriction is reached.

**Blowing-out the air filter element with compressed air is not recommended as the compressed air may damage the filter paper.**

**Note:** It is not possible to determine the level of filter clogging by visual appearance alone. A filter which appears to be dirty may actually have several thousand miles (kilometers) of life remaining.

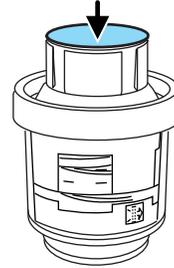
**Use the underhood air filter restriction gauge to determine when the air filter element needs to be changed.**



## Maintenance and Specifications

After installation of the new filter element, reset the gauge by pressing the reset button on top of the gauge.

**Note:** Vehicle operation in heavy snowfall or extreme rain conditions may feed excessive amounts of snow/water into the air intake system. This could plug/soak the air filter with snow and may cause the engine to lose power and possibly shut down.



The following actions are recommend after operating the vehicle up to 200 miles (320 km) in heavy snowfall or extreme rain:

- **Snow:** At the earliest opportunity, open the hood and clear all the snow and ice from the air filter housing inlet (do NOT remove the foam filter) and reset the air filter restriction gauge.
- **Extreme rain:** The air filter will dry after about 15–30 minutes at highway speeds. At the earliest opportunity, open the hood and reset the air filter restriction gauge.

### Air filter replacement:

When replacing the air filter element, use the Motorcraft® air filter element listed in *Motorcraft part numbers* later in this chapter.



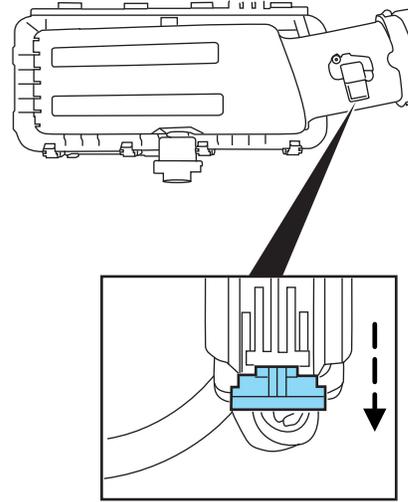
**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and/or personal burn injuries do not start your engine with the air filter removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

**Failure to use the correct air filter element may result in severe engine damage.**

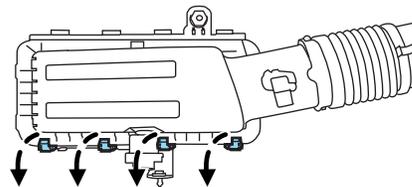
## Maintenance and Specifications

1. Locate the mass air flow sensor electrical connector on the air inlet tube. This connector will need to be unplugged.

Unlock the locking clip on the connector, then squeeze and pull the connector off of the air inlet tube.



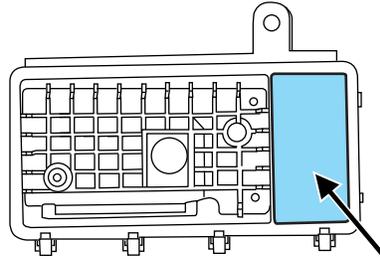
2. Release the four clamps that secure the cover to the air filter housing. Push the air filter cover forward (away from you) and up slightly to release it.



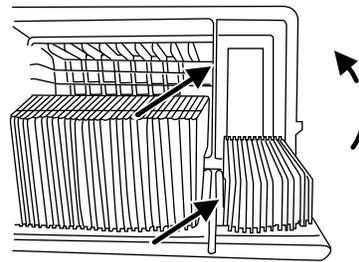
3. Remove the air filter element from the air filter housing.

## Maintenance and Specifications

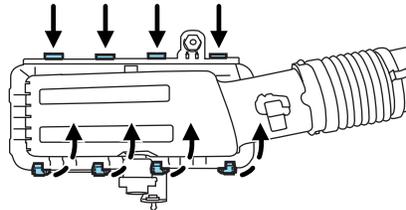
4. Remove and install a new foam filter if needed according to the service interval indicated in the *scheduled maintenance information* in this guide. If the foam filter is not being replaced, be sure the existing foam filter is in place.



5. Install a new air filter element. be sure that the groove seal on the pleated paper filter traps both sides of the vertical partition of the air box.



6. Replace the air filter housing cover and secure the clamps. Be careful not to crimp the filter element edges between the air filter housing and cover and ensure that the tabs on the edge are properly aligned into the slots.



7. Reconnect the mass air flow sensor electrical connector to the inlet tube. Make sure the locking tab on the connector is in the "locked" position.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### DIESEL EXHAUST SYSTEM: OXIDATION CATALYST/DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER SYSTEM

Your vehicle is equipped with a diesel particulate filter (DPF). The DPF is an inline filter in the exhaust system which reduces carbon emissions by trapping exhaust particles before they reach the tailpipe. The DPF looks similar to a traditional exhaust catalyst, except larger, and is part of the exhaust system under the vehicle. The DPF is coupled to a diesel oxidation catalyst, that reduces the amount of harmful exhaust emitted from the tailpipe. As soot gathers in the system it begins to restrict the filter. The soot gathered inside the filter needs to be periodically cleaned. The soot can be cleaned in two different ways; passive regeneration and active regeneration. Both methods occur automatically and require no actions from the driver/operator. During either one of these regeneration methods you may notice an increase/change in exhaust noise/tone. At certain times, the message center will display various messages related to the DPF. See *Message center* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter in the *Owner Guide* for more information.

#### Passive regeneration

In passive regeneration, the exhaust constituents / temperature are at an appropriate level where some soot can be reduced or oxidized (burned) thus cleaning the filter. This method occurs naturally as a result of normal engine operating conditions (at varying levels due to drive patterns).

#### Active regeneration

Once the DPF is full of exhaust particles, the engine control module will command the exhaust system to clean the DPF through a process called active regeneration. Active regeneration requires the engine computer to raise the exhaust temperature to eliminate the particles. During cleaning, the particles are converted to harmless gasses, and the DPF will then be clean and ready to continue trapping exhaust particles.

The regeneration process operates more efficiently when the vehicle is safely operated at least 30 mph (48 km/h) with a steady pedal for approximately 20 minutes to complete the process. The frequency and duration of regeneration will fluctuate as both are determined by how you drive your vehicle, outside air temperature, and altitude. For most driving, regeneration frequency will vary from 100 - 500 miles (161 - 805 km) between occurrences and each occurrence will last from 9 - 20 minutes. The duration of regeneration is usually reduced if a constant speed above 30 mph (48 km/h) is maintained.

54

## Maintenance and Specifications

When the engine control module detects that the DPF is nearly full of particulates and that the vehicle is not being operated in a manner to allow effective automatic cleaning, the message center will display **DRIVE TO CLEAN EXHAUST FILTER** for base message center and **Drive to Clean Exhaust System** for the optional message center, guiding the vehicle operator to drive in order to clean the DPF. If the vehicle is operated in a manner to allow effective automatic cleaning, the message center will display a cleaning exhaust filter message, which is the normal regeneration process. See *Message center* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter of the *Owner Guide* for more information.

**Note:** You can also choose OCR to clean the exhaust system at this point. See *How to start operator commanded regeneration (OCR)* later in this chapter.

If the operator is not able to drive in manner that allows effective automatic cleaning (active regeneration) or the operator instead wishes to perform regeneration of the DPF (cleaning) while at idle (stationary), then OCR (operator commanded regeneration) will need to be performed. See *Operator commanded regeneration (OCR)* following.

**Note:** Do not disregard the **DRIVE TO CLEAN EXHAUST FILTER** or **Drive to Clean Exhaust System** maintenance message for extended periods of time. Failure to perform active or operator commanded regeneration (OCR) (if equipped) when instructed may result in a clogged DPF. If your DPF fills beyond what can be safely regenerated, active regeneration and OCR will be disabled. This could cause irreversible damage to the DPF, requiring service and possible replacement that may not be covered by your warranty.

### Operator commanded regeneration (OCR) (if equipped)

If your vehicle is operated with significant stationary operation, passive and active regeneration may not sufficiently clean the DPF system. OCR allows you to manually start regeneration of the diesel particulate filter (DPF) at idle (while stationary) to clean the DPF. If you are not sure whether your vehicle is equipped with this feature, contact your authorized dealer.

### When to perform OCR

Use the OCR feature when the **DRIVE TO CLEAN EXHAUST FILTER** message appears in the message center and:

- the operator is not able to drive in manner that allows effective automatic cleaning (active regeneration),
- or the operator instead wishes to manually start regeneration (cleaning) of the DPF while the vehicle is idle (stationary).

## Maintenance and Specifications

### OCR precautions and safe exhaust position



**WARNING:** Failure to comply with the following instructions for operator commanded regeneration (OCR) may result in fire, serious injury, death and/or property damage.

Before you start OCR, observe/do the following:

- Place the vehicle in P (Park) with the parking brake set on stable, level ground.
- The vehicle must not be parked in a structure.
- The vehicle must be 10 – 15 feet (3 – 5 meters) away from any obstructions,
- and must be away from materials that can easily combust or melt such as: paper, leaves, petroleum products, fuels, plastics and other dry organic material, such as grass.
- Make sure there is a minimum of 1/8 tank of fuel.
- Make sure all fluids are at proper levels.

Make sure that the louvers (holes) located at the tip of the exhaust are also clear of any obstructions as they are used to introduce fresh air into the tailpipe to cool the exhaust gas as it leaves. See *Exhaust* under the *Cleaning* chapter for more information.

### How to start operator commanded regeneration (OCR)



**WARNING:** Stay clear of exhaust tip during regeneration. You or others can be burned.

**Note:** OCR will not be allowed until DPF load percentage has reached at least 80%. The DPF load percentage will fluctuate up and down when driving your vehicle due to active and passive regenerations.

**Note:** OCR will not be allowed to operate if the service engine soon light  is illuminated

**Note:** During the use of OCR, you may observe a light amount of white smoke. This is normal.

**Note:** During stationary PTO operation, OCR will change the engine speed to 2,000 or 2,400 rpm (depending on vehicle application), therefore it is recommended you exit PTO mode before starting OCR. During mobile PTO use, OCR is not necessary; regeneration will function normally.

56

## Maintenance and Specifications

### Base message center procedure

1. Start with the vehicle engine fully warmed.
2. Press the Info button on the steering wheel until the message center reads one of the following choices:
  - **EXHST XX% FULL CLEAN Y/N** or **EXHAUST FILTER FULL**: If the DPF needs cleaning and the vehicle is warmed up, a message requesting permission to initiate filter cleaning is displayed. Answer yes to this prompt and then follow the prompts regarding exhaust position as needed to initiate OCR. Be sure to understand each prompt. If you are not sure what is being asked by each prompt, contact your authorized dealer. The display will confirm the operation has started and when it has finished.
  - **DRIVE TO CLEAN EXHAUST FILTER + EXH OVERLOADED CLEAN? Y/N** +  : If the vehicle is warmed up, a message requesting permission to initiate filter cleaning is displayed. Answer yes to this prompt and then follow the prompts regarding exhaust position as needed to initiate OCR. Be sure to understand each prompt. If you are not sure what is being asked by each prompt, contact your authorized dealer. The display will confirm the operation has started and when it has finished. You can also drive to clean the filter. See *Active regeneration* earlier in this chapter.
  - **EXH OVERLOADED CLEAN? Y/N + REDUCED ENGINE POWER** +  : When the system is at this point of oversaturation you will not be able to allow cleaning. The vehicle must be serviced by an authorized dealer.
3. Once OCR starts, the engine's rpm will rise to approximately 2,000 - 2,400 rpm and the cooling fan will increase speed; you will hear a change in audible sound due to the fan and engine speed increase.

It is not necessary to open the hood on the engine compartment. Once OCR is complete, the engine rpm and fan will return to normal idling. The exhaust system will remain very hot for several minutes even after regeneration is complete. Do not reposition the vehicle over materials that could burn until the exhaust system has had sufficient time to cool. Depending on the amount of soot collected by the DPF, ambient temperature, and altitude, OCR may last from 10 to 25 minutes.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### Optional message center procedure

1. Start with the vehicle engine fully warmed.
2. From the main menu, select Gauge Mode and scroll through until one of the following options appear:
  - **Exhaust xx% Full** or **Exhaust Filter Full**: If the DPF needs cleaning and the vehicle is warmed up, you will be prompted to hold OK to clean. Press OK and then follow the prompts regarding exhaust position as needed to initiate OCR. Be sure to understand each prompt. If you are not sure what is being asked by each prompt, contact your authorized dealer. The display will confirm the operation has started and when it has finished.
  - **Drive to Clean Exhaust System + Exhaust Filter Overloaded** +  : When the exhaust system is overloaded cleaning will be allowed until a certain saturation level. If the vehicle is warmed up and ready you will be prompted to hold OK to clean. Press OK and then follow the prompts regarding exhaust position as needed to initiate OCR. Be sure to understand each prompt. If you are not sure what is being asked by each prompt, contact your authorized dealer. The display will confirm the operation has started and when it has finished. You can also drive to clean the filter. See *Active regeneration* earlier in this chapter.
  - **Exhaust Filter Overloaded + Reduced Engine Power** +  : When the system is at this point of oversaturation you will not be able to allow cleaning. The vehicle must be serviced by an authorized dealer.
3. Once OCR starts, the engine's rpm will rise to approximately 2,000 - 2,400 rpm and the cooling fan will increase speed; you will hear a change in audible sound due to the fan and engine speed increase.

It is not necessary to open the hood on the engine compartment. Once OCR is complete, the engine rpm and fan will return to normal idling. The exhaust system will remain very hot for several minutes even after regeneration is complete. Do not reposition the vehicle over materials that could burn until the exhaust system has had sufficient time to cool. Depending on the amount of soot collected by the DPF, ambient temperature, and altitude, OCR may last from 10 to 25 minutes.

### ***How to interrupt/cancel OCR***

If OCR needs to be cancelled, pressing the brake, accelerator, or shutting off the vehicle will stop OCR. Depending on the amount of time OCR was allowed to operate, soot may not have had sufficient time to be

58

## Maintenance and Specifications

eliminated, but the exhaust system and exhaust gas may still be hot. If the vehicle is shut off during OCR, you will notice turbo flutter. This is a normal consequence caused by shutting off a diesel engine during boosted operation and is considered normal.

### Filter service/maintenance

Over time a slight amount of ash will build up in the DPF which is not removed during the regeneration process. The DPF may need to be removed for ash cleaning at approximately 120,000 miles (193,000 km) or greater (actual mileage can vary greatly depending upon engine/vehicle operating conditions) and replaced with a new or remanufactured (ash cleaned) part. The filter may need to be replaced at approximately 250,000 miles (400,000 km) depending upon engine/vehicle operating conditions. In both cases the engine control system will set a service light  to inform you to bring the vehicle to the dealer for service.

If there are any issues with the oxidation catalyst/DPF system a service light  or  will be set by the engine control system to inform you to bring the vehicle into your authorized dealer for service.

### Resonator/Tailpipe assembly maintenance

The diesel resonator tail-pipe assembly is a uniquely functioning device that accompanies the Oxidation Catalyst/DPF assembly. The assembly serves multiple functions. First it serves as an acoustic device to attenuate exhaust noise. Second it provides an exit path for the exhaust from the vehicle. It also is designed to help control the temperature of the exhaust during DPF regeneration events. The visible holes in each leg of the twin tip and the holes under the shield just inboard of the right rear tire(s) are functional. The holes need to be kept clear of mud/debris or foreign material to maintain proper function of the exhaust system. Clean and remove debris or foreign material if present as needed. Spraying with a hose during regular washing of vehicle should help keep holes clean and clear of debris or foreign material.

**Note:** Additions of aftermarket devices or modifications to the exhaust system can reduce the effectiveness of the exhaust system as well as cause damage to the exhaust system and/or engine. These actions may also affect the vehicle's warranty. See the *Warranty Guide* for more information.

## Maintenance and Specifications

 **WARNING:** Failure to maintain the functional holes, in the tailpipe section of the exhaust, clean and free of debris or foreign material may result in the holes becoming blocked or plugged. Do not modify or remove the tail-pipe section. Blocked or plugged holes or removal/modification of the system could result in elevated exhaust gas temperatures which may result in vehicle/property damage or personal injury.

 **WARNING:** The normal operating temperature of the exhaust system is very high. Never work around or attempt to repair any part of the exhaust system until it has cooled. Use special care when working around the diesel oxidation catalytic converter and/or the diesel particulate filter (DPF). The diesel oxidation catalytic converter and/or the DPF heats up to a high temperature after only a short period of engine operation and can stay hot even after the engine is turned off. Failure to follow these instructions may result in personal injury.

### EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM(S) LAWS

In the U.S. federal law and certain state laws prohibit removing or rendering inoperative emission control system(s). Similar federal or provincial laws may apply in Canada. Ford recommends against any vehicle modification without determining applicable law.

 **WARNING:** Do not remove or alter the original equipment floor covering or insulation between it and the metal floor of the vehicle. The floor covering and insulation protect occupants of the vehicle from the engine and exhaust system heat and noise. On vehicles with no original equipment floor covering insulation, do not carry passengers in a manner that permits prolonged skin contact with the metal floor. Provide adequate insulation. Failure to follow these instructions may result in fire or personal injury.

Tampering with emissions control systems (including related sensors and the diesel exhaust fluid (DEF) injection system) can result in reduced engine power and the illumination of the service engine soon light  .

## Maintenance and Specifications

### **NOISE EMISSIONS WARRANTY, PROHIBITED TAMPERING ACTS AND MAINTENANCE**

On January 1, 1978, Federal regulation became effective governing the noise emission on trucks over 10,000 lbs. (4,536 kg) GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating). The following statements concerning prohibited tampering acts and maintenance, and the noise warranty found in the *Warranty Guide*, are applicable to complete chassis cabs over 10,000 lbs. (4,536 kg) GVWR.

#### **Tampering with noise control system prohibited**

Federal law prohibits the following acts or the causing thereof: (1) The removal or rendering inoperative by any person other than for purposes of maintenance, repair or replacement of any device or element of design incorporated into any new vehicle for the purpose of noise control prior to its sale or delivery to the ultimate purchaser or while it is in use, or (2) the use of the vehicle after such device or element of design has been removed or rendered inoperative by any person.

Among those acts which the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency may presume to constitute tampering are the acts listed below:

- Removal of hood blanket, fender apron absorbers, fender apron barriers, underbody noise shields or acoustically absorptive material.
- Tampering or rendering inoperative the engine speed governor, so as to allow engine speed to exceed manufacturer's specifications.

The complexity of the diesel engine makes it so the owner is discouraged from attempting to perform maintenance other than the services described in this supplement.

If you experience difficult starting, rough idling, excessive exhaust smoke, a decrease in engine performance or excess fuel consumption, perform the following checks:

- a plugged or disconnected air inlet system or engine air filter element.
- water in the fuel filter/water separator.
- a clogged fuel filter.
- contaminated fuel.
- air in the fuel system, due to loose connections.
- an open or pinched sensor hose.
- check engine oil level.
- wrong fuel or oil viscosity for climactic conditions.

If these checks do not help you correct the engine performance problem you are experiencing, consult an authorized dealer.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### FUELING



**WARNING:** Do not use starting fluid such as ether or gasoline in the diesel air intake system. Such fluids can cause immediate explosive damage to the engine and possible personal injury.

If you fuel your vehicle at a truck stop, you may notice that the fuel nozzle may shut off every 5–10 seconds. This is due to the flow rates being designed for larger heavy duty trucks. You may have to fuel at a slower rate (don't depress the nozzle trigger fully).

Do not run your diesel vehicle out of fuel as this will allow air to enter the fuel system which will make restarting difficult. Longer engine cranking time may be required once air is in the fuel system. If air enters the fuel system (either through running the fuel tank(s) empty or during a fuel filter change), the engine will self-purge the trapped air once it starts running. The engine may run roughly and produce white smoke while air is in the fuel system; this is normal and should stop after a short time.

### MINOR TROUBLESHOOTING GUIDE

#### Air purge procedure

Turn the key on for 30 seconds, then turn off. Repeat the procedure six times.

#### If the engine won't crank

Turn on the headlights. If the lights are dim, do not go on at all or when the ignition is turned to START the lights become dim or go out, the battery connections may be loose or corroded, or the battery may be discharged. If there is a clicking or stuttering sound coming from the engine compartment when you turn the key to START, this may also indicate a loose or corroded battery connection.

Check the battery connections at the battery posts, cable connection to the engine grounding point and at the starter connection.

If a discharged battery is suspected, have it checked and corrected.



**WARNING:** Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. **Wash hands after handling.**

- The gearshift lever must be in P (Park) or N (Neutral) in order for the starter to operate.

62

## Maintenance and Specifications

- Try operating the starter switch several times. Should the switch be corroded, this operation may clean the contacts or make the switch temporarily operable until you can reach the dealer.
- If all electrical connections are tight and you need assistance to start, refer to *Jump starting* in the *Roadside Emergencies* chapter of your *Owner's Guide*.

### If engine cranks but won't start

Prolonged starter cranking (in excess of 10 seconds) could cause damage to the starter motor.

- Check the fuel gauge. You may be out of fuel. If the gauge shows that there is fuel in the tank, the trouble may be in the electrical system or the fuel system. If equipped with an auxiliary tank, be sure that the tank control switch is set for the tank with fuel and not on an empty tank.
- Leaving the ignition key turned to on for over two minutes without starting may make starting difficult because the glow plugs will cease activation. Reset the system by turning the ignition key to off and then back to on again.

### If the engine runs hot

The following could cause the engine to overheat:

- Lack of coolant.
- Dirty cooling system.
- Plugged radiator fins, A/C condenser and/or oil cooler.
- Malfunctioning fan drive.
- Driving with frozen coolant.
- Sticking thermostat.
- Overloading or pulling heavy trailers during hot weather.
- Grill or radiator air blockage.
- Slipping or missing drive belt.
- Plugged or very dirty air filter.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### If fuses burn out

Burned-out or blown fuses usually indicate an electrical short-circuit, although a fuse may occasionally burn out from vibration. Insert a second fuse. If this fuse immediately burns out and you cannot locate the cause, return your vehicle to your dealer for a circuit check.



**WARNING:** Replacement fuses and circuit breakers must always be the same rating as the original equipment shown. Never replace a fuse or circuit breaker with one of a higher rating. Higher rated fuses or circuit breakers could allow circuit overloading in the event of a circuit malfunction, resulting in severe vehicle damage or personal injury due to fire.

Refer to the *Owner's Guide* for replacement of fuses.

### Selective catalytic reduction (SCR) system speed limit and Idle-only modes

If the vehicle's speed is limited or in an idle-only mode, the SCR system may be limiting the vehicle's functions due to low or contaminated diesel exhaust fluid (DEF). Check the DEF. See *Selective catalytic reduction (SCR) system* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter for more information.

### MOTORCRAFT® PART NUMBERS

Item	Ford Part Number
Engine oil filter	FL-2051
Foam pre-filter	FA-1907
* Air filter	FA-1902
Fuel filter kit (2 included - engine and frame rail mounted )	FD-4615
Battery (2 Required)	BXT-65-750
* Always use the authorized Motorcraft® air filter or an equivalent replacement part. <b>Failure to use the correct air filter may result in severe engine damage.</b>	

## Maintenance and Specifications

### MAINTENANCE PRODUCT SPECIFICATIONS AND CAPACITIES

Item	Capacity	Ford part name	Ford part number / Ford specification or specification
Engine coolant (primary high-temperature cooling system loop)*	29.4 quarts (27.8L)	Motorcraft® Specialty Orange Engine Coolant	VC-3-B (US) CVC-3-B (Canada) / WSS-M97B44-D
Engine coolant additive (primary high-temperature cooling system loop)	48.0 oz. (1.4L) per addition if required	Motorcraft® Specialty Orange Engine Coolant Revitalizer	VC-12 / —
Engine coolant additive (secondary cooling system)	16 oz. (473 mL) per addition if required		
Engine cooling system cleaner	1 quart (946 mL)	Motorcraft® Premium Cooling System Flush	VC-1 / —
Secondary cooling system cleaner	22.0 oz. (651 mL)		
Engine coolant (secondary cooling system*)	11.7 quarts (11.1L)	Motorcraft® Specialty Orange Engine Coolant	VC-3-B (US) CVC-3-B (Canada) / WSS-M97B44-D

## Maintenance and Specifications

Item	Capacity	Ford part name	Ford part number / Ford specification or specification
Engine oil (includes filter change)	13.0 quarts (12.4L)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Motorcraft® Motor Oil 10W30 Super Duty</li> <li>• Motorcraft® Motor Oil 15W40 Super Duty</li> <li>• Motorcraft® Motor Oil 5W40 Super Duty</li> <li>• Motorcraft® Motor Oil 0W30 Super Duty</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• XO-10W30-QSD / WSS-M2C171-E</li> <li>• XO-15W40-QSD / WSS-M2C171-E</li> <li>• XO-5W40-5QSD / WSS-M2C171-E</li> <li>• CXO-0W30-LAS12 / WSS-M2C171-D</li> </ul>
Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) — Pick-up	5 gallons (18.9L)	Motorcraft® Diesel Exhaust Fluid	PM-27-G / WSS-M99C130-A
Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) — Chassis Cab	6 gallons (22.7L)		
Cetane Booster & Performance Improver	—	Motorcraft® Cetane Booster & Performance Improver	PM-22-A (US) / PM-22-B (Canada) / —
Anti-Gel & Performance Improver	—	Motorcraft® Anti-Gel & Performance Improver	PM-23-A (US) / PM-23-B (Canada) / —
Fuel tank — Pick up regular cab long box and all short box	26 gallons (98.4L)	—	—

## Maintenance and Specifications

Item	Capacity	Ford part name	Ford part number / Ford specification or specification
Fuel tank — Pick Up long box (except regular cab)	37.5 gallons (142.0L)	—	—
Fuel tank — Chassis cab (midship)	28 gallons (106.0L)	—	—
Fuel tank — Chassis cab (aft of axle)	40 gallons (151.4L)	—	—
Fuel tank — Dual tanks	40 gallon (151.4L) and 28 gallon (106.0L)	—	—
Automatic transmission fluid	Refer to <i>Owner's Guide</i>		

\* Use only the recommended coolant for topping off and coolant changes. Using any other coolant may result in vehicle damage.

## Scheduled Maintenance Guide

### GENERAL MAINTENANCE INFORMATION

#### Why maintain your vehicle?

This guide describes the scheduled maintenance required for your vehicle. Carefully following this schedule helps protect against major repair expenses resulting from neglect or inadequate maintenance and may also help to increase the value of your vehicle when you sell or trade it.

It is your responsibility to see that all scheduled maintenance is performed and that the materials used meet Ford engineering specifications as identified in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter. Failure to perform scheduled maintenance specific in this guide will invalidate warranty coverage on parts affected by the lack of maintenance. Be sure receipts for completed maintenance are kept with the vehicle and confirmation of the work performed is always recorded in this guide.

Your Ford dealer has factory-trained technicians who can perform the required maintenance using genuine Ford parts. They are committed to meeting your service needs and to assuring your continuing satisfaction.

#### Protecting your investment

Maintenance is an investment that will pay dividends in the form of improved reliability, durability and resale value. To ensure the proper performance of your vehicle and its emission control systems, it is imperative that scheduled maintenance be completed at the designated intervals.

Your vehicle is equipped with the Intelligent Oil Life Monitor™ system which displays a message in the message center at the proper oil change service interval; this interval may be up to one year or 10,000 miles (16,000 km). When ENGINE OIL CHANGE DUE or OIL CHANGE REQUIRED appears in the message center display, it's time for an oil change; the oil change must be done within two weeks or 500 miles (800 km) of the OIL CHANGE REQUIRED message appearing. The Intelligent Oil Life Monitor™ must be reset after each oil change; refer to the *Instrument Cluster* chapter.

If your message center is prematurely reset or becomes inoperative, you should perform the oil change interval at six months, 5,000 miles (8,000 km) or 200 engine hours from your last oil change.

Your vehicle is very sophisticated and built with multiple complex performance systems. Every manufacturer develops these systems using different specifications and performance features. That's why it's important to rely upon your Ford dealership to properly diagnose and repair your vehicle.

68

## Scheduled Maintenance Guide

Ford Motor Company has recommended maintenance intervals for various parts and component systems based upon engineering testing. Ford Motor Company relies upon this testing to determine the most appropriate mileage for replacement of oils and fluids to protect your vehicle at the lowest overall cost to you and recommends against maintenance schedules that deviate from the scheduled maintenance information.

Ford strongly recommends the use of genuine Ford replacement parts. Parts other than Ford, Motorcraft® or Ford-authorized remanufactured parts that are used for maintenance replacement or for the service of components affecting emission control must be equivalent to genuine Ford Motor Company parts in performance and durability. It is the owner's responsibility to determine the equivalency of such parts. Please consult your *Warranty Guide* for complete warranty information.

Non Ford-approved chemicals or additives are not required for factory recommended maintenance. In fact, Ford Motor Company recommends against the use of such additive products unless specifically recommended by Ford for a particular application.

### ***Oils, fluids and flushing***

In many cases, fluid discoloration is a normal operating characteristic of the chemical compound and may not necessarily demonstrate that a fluid needs to be changed. Oils and fluids identified in this guide should be changed at the specified interval or in conjunction with a repair. Flushing is a viable way to change fluid for many vehicle sub-systems during scheduled maintenance and should only be done using the same fluid required to finish the maintenance procedure, or a Ford-approved flushing chemical.

### **Genuine Ford parts and service**

When planning your maintenance services, consider your dealership for all your vehicle's needs.

There are a lot of reasons why your dealership is a great way to help keep your vehicle running great.

### ***Convenience***

To make your service visit even more convenient, in many cases, you'll find extended evening hours and Saturday hours. How's that for quality service?

### ***Factory-trained technicians***

Service technicians participate in extensive factory-sponsored training to help them become the experts on the operation of your vehicle. Many participate in Ford-sponsored training to become certified. Ask your dealer about the training and certification their technicians have received.

## Scheduled Maintenance Guide

### **Genuine Ford and Motorcraft® replacement parts**

Dealerships stock Ford and Motorcraft® branded replacement parts. These parts meet or exceed Ford Motor Company's specifications, and we stand behind them. Maintenance parts installed at your dealership carry a nationwide, 12 month/12,000 mile (20,000 km) parts and labor limited warranty. Your dealer can give you details.

### **Value shopping for your vehicle's maintenance needs**

Your dealership recognizes the competitive landscape of maintenance and light repair automotive services. With factory-trained technicians, and one-stop service from routine maintenance like oil changes and tire rotations to repairs like brake service, check out the value your dealers can offer.

### **Owner checks and services**

Certain basic maintenance checks and inspections should be performed by the owner or a service technician at the intervals indicated. Service information and supporting specifications are provided in the *Owner's Guide*.

Any adverse condition should be brought to the attention of your dealer or qualified service technician as soon as possible for the proper service advice. The owner maintenance service checks are generally not covered by warranties so you may be charged for labor, parts or fluids used.

<b>Maximum oil change interval</b>	
Normal schedule	As indicated by the message center (do not exceed one year or 10,000 miles [16,000 km])
Special operating conditions	Refer to <i>Special operating conditions</i> later in this chapter
<b>Maximum fuel filter change interval</b>	
Normal schedule	22,500 miles (36,000 km) or as indicated by the message center (whichever comes first)
Special operating conditions	Refer to <i>Special operating conditions</i> later in this chapter

## Scheduled Maintenance Guide

<b>Engine coolant change interval</b>	
Initial change	6 years or 100,000 miles (160,000 km) (whichever comes first), or as indicated from the coolant tests for concentration (freeze-point) or additive strength (corrosion inhibitor)
After initial change	Every 3 years or 50,000 miles (80,000 km), or as indicated from the coolant tests for concentration (freeze-point) or additive strength (corrosion inhibitor)
Use engine coolant specified in the <i>Maintenance product specifications and capacities</i> table in the <i>Maintenance and Specifications</i> chapter	
Refer to <i>Special operating conditions</i> later in this chapter	
<b>Check every month</b>	
Engine air filter restriction gauge	
Fuel filter/water separator; drain if necessary (or if indicated by the message center)	
Holes/Slots in the tail pipe to make sure they are functional and clear of debris	
<b>Retightening lug nuts*</b>	
Vehicles with single rear wheels	Retighten the lug nuts to the specified torque at 500 miles (800 km) after any wheel disturbance (tire rotation, changing a flat tire, wheel removal, etc).
Vehicles with dual rear wheels	Retighten the wheel lug nuts to the specified torque at 100 miles (160 km), and again at 500 miles (800 km) of new vehicle operation and after any wheel disturbance (tire rotation, changing a flat tire, wheel removal, etc).
*Refer to <i>Wheel lug nut torque specifications</i> in your <i>Owner's Guide</i> for the proper lug nut torque specification	

## Scheduled Maintenance Guide

### Multi-point inspection

In order to keep your vehicle running right, it is important that you have the systems on your vehicle checked regularly. This can help identify any potential issue before there are any problems. Ford Motor Company suggests the following multi-point inspection to be performed at every scheduled maintenance interval as the way to ensure your vehicle keeps running right.

<b>Multi-point inspection - recommended each visit</b>	
Accessory drive belt(s)	Holes/Slots in the tail-pipe to make sure they are functional and clear of debris
Battery performance	Horn operation
Engine air filter	Radiators, coolers and heater and air conditioning hoses
Exhaust system	Shocks and struts and other suspension components for leaks and damage
Exterior lamps and hazard warning system operation	Tires for wear and check air pressure, including spare
Fluid levels*; fill if necessary	Windshield for cracks, chips and pitting
For oil and fluid leaks	Windshield washer spray and wiper operation
*Brake, engine coolant reservoir, secondary low-temperature cooling system reservoir, automatic transmission, power steering and window washer	

## Scheduled Maintenance Guide

### NORMAL SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE AND LOG

#### Intelligent Oil Life Monitor™

Your vehicle is equipped with an Intelligent Oil Life Monitor™ that determines when the engine oil should be changed based on how your vehicle is used. By using several important factors in its calculations, the monitor helps reduce the cost of owning your vehicle and reduce environmental waste at the same time. This means you won't have to remember to change the oil on a mileage-based schedule; the vehicle lets you know when an oil change is due by displaying OIL CHANGE REQUIRED in the message center. The following table is intended to provide examples of vehicle use and its impact on engine oil change intervals; it is provided as a guideline only. Actual engine oil change intervals will depend on several factors and will generally decrease with severity of use.

When to expect the OIL CHANGE REQUIRED message	
Miles (km)	Vehicle use and examples
7500-10000 (12000-16000)	<b>Normal</b>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Normal commuting with highway driving</li> <li>- No, or moderate, load/towing</li> <li>- Flat to moderately hilly roads</li> <li>- No extended idling</li> </ul>
5000-7499 (8000-11999)	<b>Severe</b>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Moderate to heavy load/towing</li> <li>- Mountainous or off-road conditions</li> <li>- Extended idling</li> <li>- Extended hot or cold operation</li> </ul>
3000-4999 (4000-7999)	<b>Extreme</b>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Maximum load/towing</li> <li>- Extreme hot or cold operation</li> <li>- Use of high sulfur diesel fuel</li> </ul>
Use the appropriate special operating condition for maintenance information when using high sulfur diesel fuels, operating your vehicle off-road or in dusty conditions (such as unpaved roads)	

## Scheduled Maintenance Guide

Normal Scheduled Maintenance	
At every oil change interval as indicated by the message center	Change engine oil and filter
	Refill diesel exhaust fluid tank
	Rotate tires, inspect tire wear and measure tread depth; vehicles equipped with dual rear wheels should only rotate the rear wheels if unusual wear is observed
	Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)
	Inspect air filter restriction gauge, replace filter as necessary
	Inspect automatic transmission fluid level
	Inspect brake pads, shoes, rotors, drums, brake linings, hoses and parking brake
	Inspect cabin air filter (if equipped)
	Inspect engine cooling system strength and hoses
	Inspect exhaust system and heat shields
	Inspect front axle and U-joints; lubricate if equipped with grease fittings (4WD vehicles)
	Inspect half-shaft boots (if equipped)
	Inspect steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie-rod ends, driveshaft and U-joints; lubricate if equipped with grease fittings
Inspect wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag	
Reset your Intelligent Oil Life Monitor™ after each engine oil and filter change; refer to the <i>Instrument Cluster</i> chapter in your <i>Owner's Guide</i> .	
<b>Do not exceed one year or 10,000 miles (16,000 km) between service intervals</b>	

## Scheduled Maintenance Guide

Additional maintenance items <sup>1</sup>													
Miles (x 1,000)	15	22.5	30	45	60	67.5	75	90	105	112.5	120	135	150
Kilometers (x 1,000)	24	36	48	72	96	108	120	144	160	172	184	206	240
Inspect engine and secondary cooling system concentration (freeze-point protection), additive strength (corrosion inhibitor), coolant level and hoses <sup>2</sup>	•		•	•	•		•	•			•	•	•
Replace engine- and frame-mounted fuel filters <sup>3</sup>		•				•							
Replace climate-controlled seat filter (if equipped)													
Replace air inlet foam filter		Replace at 45,000 miles (72,000 km), 97,500 miles (156,000 km) and 150,000 miles (240,000 km)											
Replace front wheel bearing grease and grease seal if non-sealed bearings are used (2WD vehicles)					•								
Inspect accessory drive belt(s) <sup>4</sup>									•				
Change rear axle fluid (Dana axles; refer to <i>Special operating conditions</i> )		Replace at 100,000 miles (160,000 km), then at 150,000 miles (240,000 km)											
Change engine coolant and secondary coolant		<sup>5</sup>											
Change automatic transmission fluid and filter on 6-speed TorqShift® transmission													•
Change front axle fluid (4WD vehicles)													•
Change transfer case fluid (4WD vehicles)													•

## Scheduled Maintenance Guide

Additional maintenance items <sup>1</sup>													
Miles (x 1,000)	15	22.5	30	45	60	67.5	75	90	105	112.5	120	135	150
Kilometers (x 1,000)	24	36	48	72	96	108	120	144	160	172	184	206	240
Replace accessory drive belt(s) if not replaced in the last 100,000 miles (160,000 km)													•
Replace front wheel bearings and seals if non-sealed bearings are used (2WD vehicles)													•
<sup>1</sup> Additional maintenance items can be performed within 3,000 miles (4,800 km) of the last oil change. Do not exceed the designated distance for the interval.													
<sup>2</sup> Every 15,000 miles (24,000 km), 600 engine hours or as indicated by the message center													
<sup>3</sup> Every 22,500 miles (36,000 km) or as indicated by the message center													
<sup>4</sup> Inspect at 90,000 miles (144,000 km), then every 15,000 miles (24,000 km); replace at 150,000 miles (240,000 km)													
<sup>5</sup> Initial replacement at 6 years, 100,000 miles (160,000 km) or as indicated from coolant tests for concentration (freeze-point) or additive strength (corrosion inhibitor) (whichever comes first); then every 3 years, 50,000 miles (80,000 km) or as indicated from coolant tests for concentration (freeze-point) or additive strength (corrosion inhibitor)													

## Scheduled Maintenance Guide

**Maintenance schedule log**

<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE:                  HOURS:                  DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE:                  HOURS:                  DATE: MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE:                  HOURS:                  DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE:                  HOURS:                  DATE: MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE:                  HOURS:                  DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE:                  HOURS:                  DATE: MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE:                  HOURS:                  DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE:                  HOURS:                  DATE: MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE:                  HOURS:                  DATE: MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE:                  HOURS:                  DATE: MILEAGE:</p>

## Scheduled Maintenance Guide

<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>

## Scheduled Maintenance Guide

<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>

## Scheduled Maintenance Guide

### SPECIAL OPERATING CONDITIONS

If you operate your vehicle **primarily** in one of the conditions listed below, you will need to have some items serviced more frequently. If you only **occasionally** operate your vehicle under any of these conditions, you don't need to perform the additional maintenance. For specific recommendations, see your dealership service advisor or technician.

<b>Frequent/extended idling (over 10 minutes per hour of normal driving) or frequent low speed operation if vehicle is used for stationary operation</b>	
As required	Change engine oil and filter as indicated by message center and perform services listed in the scheduled maintenance chart
Every 15,000 miles (24,000 km), 6 months, 600 engine hours or as indicated by message center	Replace engine- and frame-mounted fuel filters
Every 15,000 miles (24,000 km) or 600 engine hours	Inspect concentration (freeze-point protection) and additive strength (corrosion inhibitor); add engine coolant additive, if required
Every 60,000 miles (96,000 km) or 2,400 engine hours	Flush and refill engine coolant; do not add engine coolant additive

Perform the services noted in the preceding table at the specified time/mileage (km) period either within 3,000 miles (4,800 km) of the OIL CHANGE REQUIRED message appearing in the message center or when the time/mileage (km) reading indicates service is due.

**Example #1:** The OIL CHANGE REQUIRED message comes on at 19,751 miles (31,786 km); perform the 22,500 mile (36,000 km) fuel filter replacement.

**Example #2:** The OIL CHANGE REQUIRED message has **not** come on but the odometer reads 22,500 miles (36,000 km); perform the fuel filter replacement. (i.e., Intelligent Oil Life Monitor™ was reset at 15,000 miles [24,000 km].)

**Note:** Vehicles operating under these severe service conditions need to have their maintenance requirements adjusted. This needs to be considered when determining vehicle service intervals.

80

## Scheduled Maintenance Guide

**Note:** When adding coolant additive, do not exceed the specified maximum of 48 fl. oz. (1.4L). Operating the engine with excessive coolant additive may cause overheating which could lead to severe permanent engine damage.

**Note:** After initial coolant flush and fill at 60,000 miles (96,000 km) or 2,400 engine hours, flush and fill every 45,000 miles (72,000 km) or 1,800 engine hours thereafter.

<b>Frequent low speed operation, consistent heavy traffic less than 25 mph (40 km/h) and/or long rush hour traffic</b>	
As required	Change engine oil and filter as indicated by message center and perform services listed in the scheduled maintenance chart
Every 15,000 miles (24,000 km), 6 months, 600 engine hours or as indicated by message center	Replace engine- and frame-mounted fuel filters
Every 15,000 miles (24,000 km) or 600 engine hours	Inspect concentration (freeze-point protection) and additive strength (corrosion inhibitor); add engine coolant additive, if required
Every 60,000 miles (96,000 km)	Change transfer case fluid (4WD vehicles)
Every 60,000 miles (96,000 km) or 2,400 engine hours	Flush and refill engine coolant; do not add engine coolant additive

Perform the services noted in the preceding table at the specified time/mileage (km) period either within 3,000 miles (4,800 km) of the OIL CHANGE REQUIRED message appearing in the message center or when the time/mileage (km) reading indicates service is due.

**Example #1:** The OIL CHANGE REQUIRED message comes on at 19,751 miles (31,786 km); perform the 22,500 mile (36,000 km) fuel filter replacement.

**Example #2:** The OIL CHANGE REQUIRED message has **not** come on but the odometer reads 22,500 miles (36,000 km); perform the fuel filter replacement. (i.e., Intelligent Oil Life Monitor™ was reset at 15,000 miles [24,000 km].)

## Scheduled Maintenance Guide

**Note:** When adding coolant additive, do not exceed the specified maximum of 48 fl. oz. (1.4L). Operating the engine with excessive coolant additive may cause overheating which could lead to severe permanent engine damage.

**Note:** After initial coolant flush and fill at 60,000 miles (96,000 km) or 2,400 engine hours, flush and fill every 45,000 miles (72,000 km) or 1,800 engine hours thereafter.

<b>Sustained high-speed driving at Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (maximum loaded weight for vehicle operation)</b>	
As required	Change engine oil and filter as indicated by message center and perform services listed in the scheduled maintenance chart
Every 15,000 miles (24,000 km), 6 months, 600 engine hours or as indicated by message center	Replace engine- and frame-mounted fuel filters
Every 15,000 miles (24,000 km) or 600 engine hours	Inspect concentration (freeze-point protection) and additive strength (corrosion inhibitor); add engine coolant additive, if required
Every 30,000 miles (48,000 km)	Replace wheel bearing grease and grease seals if non-sealed bearings are used (2WD vehicles)
Every 50,000 miles (80,000 km)	Change rear axle fluid (if equipped with a Dana rear axle; some F-350s, all F-450/550s)
	Change transfer case fluid (4WD vehicles)
Every 60,000 miles (96,000 km) or 2,400 engine hours	Flush and refill engine coolant; do not add engine coolant additive

Perform the services noted in the preceding table at the specified time/mileage (km) period either within 3,000 miles (4,800 km) of the OIL CHANGE REQUIRED message appearing in the message center or when the time/mileage (km) reading indicates service is due.

**Example #1:** The OIL CHANGE REQUIRED message comes on at 19,751 miles (31,786 km); perform the 22,500 mile (36,000 km) fuel filter replacement.

**Example #2:** The OIL CHANGE REQUIRED message has **not** come on but the odometer reads 22,500 miles (36,000 km); perform the fuel filter replacement. (i.e., Intelligent Oil Life Monitor™ was reset at 15,000 miles [24,000 km].)

82

## Scheduled Maintenance Guide

**Note:** When adding coolant additive, do not exceed the specified maximum of 48 fl. oz. (1.4L). Operating the engine with excessive coolant additive may cause overheating which could lead to severe permanent engine damage.

**Note:** After initial coolant flush and fill at 60,000 miles (96,000 km) or 2,400 engine hours, flush and fill every 45,000 miles (72,000 km) or 1,800 engine hours thereafter.

<b>Operating in sustained ambient temperatures below -10°F (-23°C) or above 100°F (38°C)</b>	
As required	Change engine oil and filter as indicated by message center and perform services listed in the scheduled maintenance chart
Every 15,000 miles (24,000 km), 6 months, 600 engine hours or as indicated by message center	Replace engine- and frame-mounted fuel filters
Every 30,000 miles (48,000 km)	Replace wheel bearing grease/grease seals if non-sealed bearings are used (2WD vehicles)
Every 60,000 miles (96,000 km)	Change transfer case fluid (4WD vehicles)

Perform the services noted in the preceding table at the specified time/mileage (km) period either within 3,000 miles (4,800 km) of the OIL CHANGE REQUIRED message appearing in the message center or when the time/mileage (km) reading indicates service is due.

**Example #1:** The OIL CHANGE REQUIRED message comes on at 19,751 miles (31,786 km); perform the 22,500 mile (36,000 km) fuel filter replacement.

**Example #2:** The OIL CHANGE REQUIRED message has **not** come on but the odometer reads 22,500 miles (36,000 km); perform the fuel filter replacement. (i.e., Intelligent Oil Life Monitor™ was reset at 15,000 miles [24,000 km].)

## Scheduled Maintenance Guide

Towing a trailer or using a camper or car-top carrier	
As required	Change engine oil and filter as indicated by message center and perform services listed in the scheduled maintenance chart
Every 15,000 miles (24,000 km) or 600 engine hours	Inspect concentration (freeze-point protection) and additive strength (corrosion inhibitor); add engine coolant additive, if required
Every 15,000 miles (24,000 km), 6 months, 600 engine hours or as indicated by message center	Replace engine- and frame-mounted fuel filters
Every 30,000 miles (48,000 km)	Replace wheel bearing grease/grease seals if non-sealed bearings are used (2WD vehicles)
Every 60,000 miles (96,000 km)	Change transfer case fluid (4WD vehicles)
Every 60,000 miles (96,000 km) or 2,400 engine hours	Flush and refill engine coolant; do not add engine coolant additive

Perform the services noted in the preceding table at the specified time/mileage (km) period either within 3,000 miles (4,800 km) of the OIL CHANGE REQUIRED message appearing in the message center or when the time/mileage (km) reading indicates service is due.

**Example #1:** The OIL CHANGE REQUIRED message comes on at 19,751 miles (31,786 km); perform the 22,500 mile (36,000 km) fuel filter replacement.

**Example #2:** The OIL CHANGE REQUIRED message has **not** come on but the odometer reads 22,500 miles (36,000 km); perform the fuel filter replacement. (i.e., Intelligent Oil Life Monitor™ was reset at 15,000 miles [24,000 km].)

**Note:** When adding coolant additive, do not exceed the specified maximum of 48 fl. oz. (1.4L). Operating the engine with excessive coolant additive may cause overheating which could lead to severe permanent engine damage.

**Note:** After initial coolant flush and fill at 60,000 miles (96,000 km) or 2,400 engine hours, flush and fill every 45,000 miles (72,000 km) or 1,800 engine hours thereafter.

## Scheduled Maintenance Guide

<b>Off-road operation</b>	
As required	<p>Inspect functional holes in each leg of the twin tip and the holes under the shield just inboard of the right rear tire to make sure they are kept clean/clear of debris or foreign materials. Refer to the <i>Cleaning</i> chapter for more information</p> <p>Inspect steering and suspension ball joints and tie rods; lubricate if equipped with grease fittings</p>
Every 7,500 miles (12,000 km)	<p>Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise; dual rear wheels should only be rotated if unusual wear is observed</p> <p>Inspect brake system pads and rotors</p> <p>Inspect engine air filter restriction gauge; replace filter as indicated by gauge</p>
Every 7,500 miles (12,000 km) or 300 engine hours	<p>Change engine oil and filter</p> <p>Inspect and lubricate U-joints</p>
Every 15,000 miles (24,000 km), 6 months, 600 engine hours or as indicated by message center	Replace engine- and frame-mounted fuel filters
Every 30,000 miles (48,000 km)	Replace wheel bearing grease/grease seals if non-sealed bearings are used (2WD vehicles)
Every 50,000 miles (80,000 km)	<p>Change rear axle fluid (if equipped with a Dana rear axle; some F-350s, all F-450/550s)</p> <p>Change transfer case fluid (4WD vehicles)</p> <p>Inspect front axle fluid (4WD vehicles)</p>
Reset your Intelligent Oil Life Monitor™ after each engine oil and filter change; refer to the <i>Instrument Cluster</i> chapter of the <i>Owner's Guide</i> .	

## Scheduled Maintenance Guide

<b>Operating in dusty conditions (i.e. unpaved or dusty roads)</b>	
Every 7,500 miles (12,000 km)	Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth and inspect wheel ends for endplay and noise; dual rear wheels should only be rotated if unusual wear is observed
	Inspect brake system pads and rotors
	Inspect engine air filter restriction gauge; replace filter as indicated by gauge
	Inspect steering and suspension ball joints and tie rods; lubricate if equipped with grease fittings
Every 7,500 miles (12,000 km), 6 months or 300 engine hours	Change engine oil and filter
	Inspect and lubricate U-joints
Every 15,000 miles (24,000 km), 6 months, 600 engine hours or as indicated by message center	Replace engine- and frame-mounted fuel filters
Every 30,000 miles (48,000 km)	Replace wheel bearing grease/grease seals if non-sealed bearings are used (2WD vehicles)
Reset your Intelligent Oil Life Monitor™ after each engine oil and filter change; refer to the <i>Instrument Cluster</i> chapter of the <i>Owner's Guide</i> .	
<b>Use of Biodiesel, up to and including 20% Biodiesel (B20)</b>	
As required	Change engine oil and filter as indicated by message center and perform services listed in the scheduled maintenance chart
Every 15,000 miles (24,000 km), 6 months, 600 engine hours or as indicated by message center	Replace engine- and frame-mounted fuel filters

## Scheduled Maintenance Guide

<b>Use of non-Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel (ULSD) fuel - vehicles operated where ULSD fuel isn't required/available</b>	
Every 2,500 miles (4,000 km) or 3 months (if using high sulfur fuel with more than 500 ppm sulfur)	Change engine oil and filter
Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km) or 6 months (if using high sulfur fuel with less than 500 ppm sulfur)	Change engine oil and filter
Reset your Intelligent Oil Life Monitor™ after each engine oil and filter change; refer to the <i>Instrument Cluster</i> chapter of the <i>Owner's Guide</i> .	

## Scheduled Maintenance Guide

### Special operating condition log

<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:          MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:          MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:          MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:          MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:          MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:          MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:          MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:          MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:          MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:          MILEAGE:</p>

## Scheduled Maintenance Guide

<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>

## Scheduled Maintenance Guide

### EXCEPTIONS

In addition, there are several exceptions to the Normal Schedule. They are listed below:

**Normal vehicle axle maintenance:** Rear axles and power take-off (PTO) units with synthetic fluid and light-duty trucks equipped with Ford-design axles are lubricated for life; do not check or change fluid unless a leak is suspected, service is required or the assembly has been submerged in water. During long periods of trailer towing with outside temperatures above 70°F (21°C) and at wide-open throttle for long periods above 45 mph (72 km/h), non-synthetic rear axle fluids should be changed every 3,000 miles (4,800 km) or three months, whichever comes first. This interval can be waived if the axle is filled with 75W140 synthetic gear fluid meeting Ford specification WSL-M2C192-A, part number FITZ-19580-B or equivalent. Add friction modifier XL-3 (EST-M2C118-A) or equivalent for complete refill of Traction-Lok rear axles (refer to *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter for details).

**F-450 and F-550 axle maintenance:** Change rear axle fluid every 100,000 miles (160,000 km) under normal driving conditions on all commercial applications. For trucks operated at or near maximum Gross Vehicle Weights, the rear axle fluid should be changed every 50,000 miles (80,000 km). In addition, this 50,000 mile (80,000 km) schedule should be observed when the vehicles are operated under the Special Operating Conditions, where noted.

**Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF):** The DPF may need to be removed for ash cleaning at approximately 120,000 miles (192,000 km) or greater (actual mileage can vary greatly depending upon engine/vehicle operating conditions) and replaced with a new or remanufactured (ash cleaned) part. The filter may need to be replaced at approximately 250,000 miles (400,000 km) depending upon engine/vehicle operating conditions. In both cases the engine control system will set a service light (  ) to inform you to bring the vehicle to the dealer for service. If there are any issues with the oxidation catalyst/DPF system a service light (  or  ) will be set by the engine control system to inform you to bring the vehicle into a dealership for service.

## Scheduled Maintenance Guide

### ENGINE COOLANT CHANGE RECORD

Initial change	6 years or 105,000 miles (168,000 km) (whichever comes first), or as indicated from the coolant tests for concentration (freeze-point) or additive strength (corrosion inhibitor)
After initial change	Every 3 years or 45,000 miles (72,000 km), or as indicated from the coolant tests for concentration (freeze-point) or additive strength (corrosion inhibitor)

### Engine coolant change log

<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p><b>RO#:</b>            <b>P&amp;A CODE:</b>  <b>HOURS:</b>  <b>DATE:</b>        <b>MILEAGE:</b></p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p><b>RO#:</b>            <b>P&amp;A CODE:</b>  <b>HOURS:</b>  <b>DATE:</b>        <b>MILEAGE:</b></p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p><b>RO#:</b>            <b>P&amp;A CODE:</b>  <b>HOURS:</b>  <b>DATE:</b>        <b>MILEAGE:</b></p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p><b>RO#:</b>            <b>P&amp;A CODE:</b>  <b>HOURS:</b>  <b>DATE:</b>        <b>MILEAGE:</b></p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p><b>RO#:</b>            <b>P&amp;A CODE:</b>  <b>HOURS:</b>  <b>DATE:</b>        <b>MILEAGE:</b></p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p><b>RO#:</b>            <b>P&amp;A CODE:</b>  <b>HOURS:</b>  <b>DATE:</b>        <b>MILEAGE:</b></p>

## Index

### A

Additive  
 coolant .....48, 65  
 Air cleaner filter .....11, 50, 64  
 Air filter restriction gauge .....50  
 Antifreeze  
 (see Engine coolant) .....46

### B

Battery .....64  
 auxiliary battery .....64  
 jumping a disabled battery .....17  
 Biodiesel .....22  
 Break-in period .....3

### C

Cleaning your vehicle  
 engine compartment .....18–19  
 Cold weather operation .....9, 11  
 Coolant .....5, 46, 65  
 checking and adding .....46  
 refill capacities .....65  
 Coolant additive .....65  
 Coolant change .....45–46, 49, 65  
 Cooler .....5

### D

Diesel exhaust fluid  
 (DEF) .....17, 26  
 Diesel Particulate Filter  
 (DPF) .....54–55, 59  
 92

### E

Emergencies, roadside  
 jump-starting .....17  
 Emission control system .....54–55,  
 59–60  
 Engine .....20  
 cleaning .....18–19  
 coolant .....65  
 diesel .....2–3  
 refill capacities .....65  
 service points .....20  
 starting after a collision .....16  
 Engine fan .....8  
 Engine oil .....4, 42–43, 65  
 dipstick .....42  
 filter, specifications .....64  
 refill capacities .....65  
 specifications .....42, 65  
 Exhaust brake .....14  
 Exhaust filter .....54–55  
 Exhaust Fluid .....26  
 Exhaust system .....26, 54, 59

### F

Fan, Engine Cooling .....8  
 Filter  
 fuel .....39  
 Fuel .....14, 21  
 cap .....25  
 capacity .....65  
 dual tank selector switch .....14  
 filling your vehicle with  
 fuel .....25, 62  
 filter, specifications .....39, 64  
 fuel pump shut-off switch .....16  
 Fuel pump shut-off switch .....16

## Index

Fuel separator .....	37, 39	Oil (see Engine oil) .....	42
<b>G</b>		<b>P</b>	
Gas cap (see Fuel cap) .....	25	Parts (see Motorcraft® parts) ...	64
Gauges .....	7	<b>S</b>	
<b>I</b>		Selective Catalytic Reduction (SCR) System .....	26
Instrument panel cluster .....	6	Special notice .....	2
Intelligent Oil Life Monitor .....	43	ambulance conversions .....	2
<b>J</b>		diesel-powered vehicles .....	2
Jump-starting your vehicle .....	17	Speed control .....	5
<b>L</b>		Starting your vehicle .....	4, 8, 63
Lights, warning and indicator .....	6	jump starting .....	17
Low fuel pressure .....	3, 22, 38	<b>T</b>	
<b>M</b>		Towing trailer towing .....	15
Motorcraft® parts .....	64	Transmission lubricant specifications .....	65
<b>O</b>		Troubleshooting .....	62
OCR .....	54–55		



## Ford 6.7L Power Stroke® Diesel Operating, Maintenance & Care Tips

Vehicle Service	6.7L Normal	6.7L Special*
<b>Oil and Filter<sup>1,2</sup></b>	Oil change service intervals should be completed as indicated by the instrument cluster message center	Oil change service intervals should be completed as indicated by the instrument cluster message center
<b>Fuel Filter Change (both)<sup>1</sup></b>	Change every 3 <sup>rd</sup> oil change or every 22,500 miles (36,000 km) or as indicated by the message center which ever comes first	Change every 15,000 miles (24,000 km) or 600 engine hours or as indicated by the message center which ever comes first
<b>Coolant Check/Change<sup>3</sup></b>	Initial change at 105,000 miles or 72 months; subsequent changes every 45,000 miles	Initial change 60,000 miles or 2400 hours of engine operation; subsequent changes every 45,000 miles or 1800 hours
<b>Coolant Strength Check<sup>3</sup></b>	Check every 15,000 miles or 600 hours	Check every 15,000 miles or 600 hours

\* *Special = Operating Conditions like Extensive Towing, Long Idle Time, Extended Low Speed Driving.*

*For Off Road/Dusty Conditions oil change intervals should be every 7,500 miles (12,000 km) or 300 hours of engine operation.*

### **1 Use the Right Filters**

- Ford Motor Company can only attest to the quality and exact size of the filters provided by Motorcraft®. Only Motorcraft® air, fuel, and oil filters were designed specifically for the demands of the Ford Power Stroke® diesel engine. Genuine Motorcraft® filters provide superior filtration and never require adaptors.

### **2 Use the Right Oil & Diesel Fuel**

- API CJ-4 engine oil is required for 6.7L engine to meet federal emission standards. Operation of the 6.7L diesel engine requires Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel (ULSD) fuel.

### **2 Use the Right Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF)**

- Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) is required to meet 2010 calendar year exhaust emissions. Operation of the 6.7L diesel engine requires DEF. The DEF tank should be refilled at every oil change to avoid running out. DEF usage will increase when operating under Special Operating Conditions. If the DEF is empty the vehicle will automatically have a reduction in performance or de-rate of the engine until the DEF tank is refilled. Refill DEF tank with Motorcraft DEF or equivalent.

### **3 Take Care of Your Coolant**

- The coolant concentration should be maintained at 50/50 mix of Motorcraft® Specialty Orange Engine Coolant VC-3-B (U.S.) / CVC-3-B (Can.) or specification number WSS-M97B44-D and distilled water. The level of coolant should be maintained at the "COLD FILL" range in the coolant reservoir. If you suspect any coolant system leaks or lack of cooling, pressure test the cooling system. Refer to your Owner Guide for additional information.
- Engine coolant system strength (carboxylates) should be checked and serviced at the mileage or equivalent hour intervals specified by the vehicle's message center and maintenance schedule. Check coolant strength using the Rotunda Antifreeze Test Strip kit to determine if additive is required (Rotunda Antifreeze Coolant ELC Contamination Kit# 328-00008). If the carboxylate strength is too low add one bottle of Motorcraft® Specialty Orange Engine Coolant Revitalizer , VC-12 or equivalent. The coolant can be recharged with this additive up to two times before the cooling system must be flushed and refilled – Do not add Supplemental Coolant Additive if flush & refill is required.

### **Take Care of your Fuel Injection System**

- Diesel fuel quality is critical for reliable engine operation. Motorcraft® Cetane Booster & Performance Improver, PM-22-A (U.S.) / PM-22-B (Canada) can be added to improve fuel economy, starting ability, and reduce engine wear.
- The water separator should be drained monthly or when the "Water in Fuel Lamp" illuminates.
- Biodiesel fuel must not exceed 20% (B20). To avoid cold weather fuel gelling, add 6 oz. of Motorcraft® Anti-Gel & Performance Improver PM-23-A (U.S.) / PM-23-B (Canada) to every new tank of fuel.

### **Cold Start Performance**

- The glow plug system operates for up to 120 seconds and is completely independent of the "Wait to Start" lamp operation. Always wait until the "Wait to Start" lamp has turned off, before cranking the engine.
- To ensure optimum cold weather starting performance, and improve cabin heating, the 120 volt engine block heater should be used during any cold weather operation. The engine block heater is required when the vehicle is to be started at temperatures below -10F (-23C).

### **Performance Modifications May Impact Your Powertrain**

- Performance modifications may or may not be the root cause of a powertrain failure. If a non-Ford product (e.g. performance modifications, programmers, modified exhaust or air intake systems) fails or causes a Ford part to fail, the cost of the entire repair and any related damage will not be covered by the Ford New Vehicle Limited Warranty or any applicable Extended Service Plan (ESP/ESC) contract coverage.

**Signing below indicates that the customer has read and understands the information above:**

\_\_\_\_\_  
Customer Name

\_\_\_\_\_  
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

\_\_\_\_\_  
Customer Signature

\_\_\_\_\_  
Dealership Representative

## Table of Contents

<b>Table of Contents</b>	
<b>Introduction</b>	<b>5</b>
<b>Instrument Cluster</b>	<b>14</b>
Warning lights and chimes	14
Gauges	21
Message center	22
<b>Entertainment Systems</b>	<b>60</b>
AM/FM stereo	60
AM/FM stereo with CD	62
Auxiliary input jack	69
USB port	70
Satellite radio information	74
Navigation system	77
SYNC®	77
<b>Climate Controls</b>	<b>78</b>
Manual heating and air conditioning	78
Dual electronic automatic temperature control	81
Rear window defroster	84
<b>Lights</b>	<b>87</b>
Headlamps	87
Turn signal control	91
Interior lamps	91
Bulb replacement	92
<b>Driver Controls</b>	<b>98</b>
Windshield wiper/washer control	98
Steering wheel adjustment	99
Power windows	104
Mirrors	106
Speed control	111
Upfitter controls	114

## Table of Contents

<b>Locks and Security</b>	<b>130</b>
Keys	130
Locks	138
Anti-theft system	150
<b>Seating and Safety Restraints</b>	<b>154</b>
Seating	154
Safety restraints	169
Airbags	180
Child restraints	195
<b>Tires, Wheels and Loading</b>	<b>216</b>
Tire information	218
Tire inflation	220
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)	236
Vehicle loading	244
Trailer towing	251
Trailer brake controller-integrated	256
Recreational towing	263
<b>Driving</b>	<b>265</b>
Starting	265
Brakes	271
Traction Control™	274
AdvanceTrac®	275
Hill descent control	280
Transmission operation	287
Reverse sensing system	295
Rear-view camera system	297

## Table of Contents

<b>Roadside Emergencies</b>	<b>317</b>
Getting roadside assistance	317
Hazard flasher control	318
Fuel pump shut-off	319
Fuses and relays	319
Changing tires	329
Wheel lug nut torque	345
Jump starting	346
Wrecker towing	350
<b>Customer Assistance</b>	<b>352</b>
Reporting safety defects (U.S. only)	359
Reporting safety defects (Canada only)	359
<b>Cleaning</b>	<b>360</b>
<b>Maintenance and Specifications</b>	<b>369</b>
Engine compartment	370
Engine oil	374
Battery	376
Engine coolant	379
Fuel information	386
Air filter(s)	404
Part numbers	408
Maintenance product specifications and capacities	409
Engine data	413
<b>Accessories</b>	<b>417</b>
<b>Ford Extended Service Plan</b>	<b>419</b>

## Table of Contents

<b>Scheduled Maintenance</b>	<b>423</b>
Normal scheduled maintenance and log	428
<b>Index</b>	<b>443</b>

The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of going to print. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2011

## Introduction

### CONGRATULATIONS

Congratulations on acquiring your new Ford. Please take the time to get well acquainted with your vehicle by reading this handbook. The more you know and understand about your vehicle, the greater the safety and pleasure you will derive from driving it.

For more information on Ford Motor Company and its products visit the following website:

- In the United States: [www.ford.com](http://www.ford.com)
- In Canada: [www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca)
- In Australia: [www.ford.com.au](http://www.ford.com.au)
- In Mexico: [www.ford.com.mx](http://www.ford.com.mx)

Additional owner information is given in separate publications.

This Owner's Guide describes every option and model variant available and therefore some of the items covered may not apply to your particular vehicle. Furthermore, due to printing cycles it may describe options before they are generally available.

Remember to pass on this Owner's Guide when reselling the vehicle. It is an integral part of the vehicle.



**WARNING: Fuel pump shut-off:** In the event of an accident this feature will automatically cut off the fuel supply to the engine. It can also be activated through sudden vibration (e.g. collision when parking). To restart your vehicle, refer to *Fuel pump shut-off* in the *Roadside Emergencies* chapter.

### SAFETY AND ENVIRONMENT PROTECTION



#### Warning symbols in this guide

How can you reduce the risk of personal injury to yourself or others? In this guide, answers to such questions are contained in comments highlighted by the warning triangle symbol. These comments should be read and observed.

## Introduction

### **Warning symbols on your vehicle**

When you see this symbol, it is imperative that you consult the relevant section of this guide before touching or attempting adjustment of any kind.



### **Protecting the environment**

We must all play our part in protecting the environment. Correct vehicle usage and the authorized disposal of waste, cleaning and lubrication materials are significant steps toward this aim. Information in this respect is highlighted in this guide with the tree symbol.



### **CALIFORNIA PROPOSITION 65 WARNING**

 **WARNING:** Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and certain vehicle components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.

### **PERCHLORATE MATERIAL**

Certain components of this vehicle such as airbag modules, safety belt pretensioners, and button cell batteries may contain Perchlorate Material – Special handling may apply for service or vehicle end of life disposal. See [www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate](http://www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate).

### **BREAKING-IN YOUR VEHICLE**

Your vehicle does not need an extensive break-in. Try not to drive continuously at the same speed for the first 1,000 miles (1,600 km) of new vehicle operation. Vary your speed frequently in order to give the moving parts a chance to break in.

Drive your new vehicle at least 1,000 miles (1,600 km) before towing a trailer. For more detailed information about towing a trailer, refer to *Trailer towing* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter.

6

## Introduction

Do not add friction modifier compounds or special break-in oils since these additives may prevent piston ring seating. See *Engine oil* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter for more information on oil usage.

### SPECIAL NOTICES

#### New Vehicle Limited Warranty

For a detailed description of what is covered and what is not covered by your vehicle's New Vehicle Limited Warranty, refer to the *Warranty Guide* that is provided to you along with your Owner's Guide.

#### Special instructions

For your added safety, your vehicle is fitted with sophisticated electronic controls.



**WARNING:** Please read the section *Airbag Supplemental Restraint System (SRS)* in the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter. Failure to follow the specific warnings and instructions could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** Front seat mounted rear-facing child or infant seats should **NEVER** be placed in front of an active passenger airbag.

#### Notice to owners of diesel-powered vehicles

Read the diesel supplement for information regarding correct operation and maintenance of your Diesel-powered light truck.

#### Notice to owners of pickup trucks and utility type vehicles



**WARNING:** Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.

Before you drive your vehicle, please read this Owner's Guide carefully. Your vehicle is not a passenger car. As with other vehicles of this type, failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury or death.

#### Using your vehicle with a snowplow

For more information and guidelines for using your vehicle with a snowplow, refer to the *Driving* chapter.

## Introduction

### Using your vehicle as an ambulance

If your light truck is equipped with the Ford Ambulance Preparation Package, it may be utilized as an ambulance. Ford urges ambulance manufacturers to follow the recommendations of the *Ford Incomplete Vehicle Manual*, *Ford Truck Body Builder's Layout Book* and the *Qualified Vehicle Modifiers (QVM) Guidelines* as well as pertinent supplements. For additional information, please contact the Truck Body Builders Advisory Service at <http://www.fleet.ford.com/truckbbas/> and then by selecting "Contact Us" or by phone at 1-877-840-4338.

Use of your Ford light truck as an ambulance, without the Ford Ambulance Preparation Package voids the Ford New Vehicle Limited Warranty and may void the Emissions Warranties. In addition, ambulance usage without the preparation package could cause high underbody temperatures, overpressurized fuel and a risk of spraying fuel which could lead to fires.

If your vehicle is equipped with the Ford Ambulance Preparation Package, it will be indicated on the Safety Compliance Certification Label. The label is located on the driver's side door pillar or on the rear edge of the driver's door. You can determine whether the ambulance manufacturer followed Ford's recommendations by directly contacting that manufacturer. Ford Ambulance Preparation Package is only available on certain Diesel engine equipped vehicles.

### Using your vehicle as a stationary power source (PTO)

Refer to the *Driving* chapter for more information and guidelines for operating a vehicle equipped with an aftermarket power take-off system.

## DATA RECORDING

### Service Data Recording

Service data recorders in your vehicle are capable of collecting and storing diagnostic information about your vehicle. This potentially includes information about the performance or status of various systems and modules in the vehicle, such as engine, throttle, steering or brake systems. In order to properly diagnose and service your vehicle, Ford Motor Company, Ford of Canada, and service and repair facilities may access or share among them vehicle diagnostic information received through a direct connection to your vehicle when diagnosing or servicing your vehicle. For U.S. only (if equipped), if you choose to use the SYNC® Vehicle Health Report, you consent that certain diagnostic information may also be accessed electronically by Ford Motor Company and Ford authorized service facilities, and that the diagnostic information may be used for any purpose. See your SYNC® supplement for more information.

8

## Introduction

### Event Data Recording

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle; this data will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating;
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or the brake pedal; and
- How fast the vehicle was travelling; and
- Where the driver was positioning the steering wheel.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

**Note:** EDR data is recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data or information (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) is recorded (see limitations regarding 911 Assist and Traffic, directions and Information privacy below). However, parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have such special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR. Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada do not access event data recorder information without obtaining consent, unless pursuant to court order or where required by law enforcement, other government authorities or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada.

## Introduction

**Note: Including to the extent that any law pertaining to Event Data Recorders applies to SYNC® or its features, please note the following: Once 911 Assist (if equipped) is enabled (set ON), 911 Assist may, through any paired and connected cell phone, disclose to emergency services that the vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or, in certain vehicles, the activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to 911 Assist may also be capable of being used to electronically or verbally provide to 911 operators the vehicle location (such as latitude and longitude), and/or other details about the vehicle or crash or personal information about the occupants to assist 911 operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not activate the 911 Assist feature. See your SYNC® supplement for more information.**

**Additionally, when you connect to Traffic, Directions and Information (if equipped, U.S. only), the service uses GPS technology and advanced vehicle sensors to collect the vehicle's current location, travel direction, and speed ("vehicle travel information"), only to help provide you with the directions, traffic reports, or business searches that you request. If you do not want Ford or its vendors to receive this information, do not activate the service. Ford Motor Company and the vendors it uses to provide you with this information do not store your vehicle travel information. For more information, see Traffic, Directions and Information, Terms and Conditions. See your SYNC® supplement for more information.**

### Vehicle Modification Data Recording

Some aftermarket products may cause severe engine and/or transmission damage; refer to the *What is not covered* section in *The new vehicle limited warranty for your vehicle* chapter of your vehicle's *Warranty Guide* for more information. Some vehicles are equipped with Powertrain Control Systems that can detect and store information about vehicle modifications that, for example, increase horsepower and torque output; this information cannot be erased and will stay in the system's memory even if the modification is removed. When a dealer or repair facility works on your vehicle, it may be necessary for them to access the information in the Powertrain Control System. This information will likely identify if any unauthorized modifications have been made to the system, which may be used to determine if the warranty has been violated and if repairs will be covered by warranty.

10

## Introduction

### CELL PHONE USE

The use of mobile communications equipment has become increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, drivers must not compromise their own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits.

Mobile communication equipment includes, but is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, text messaging devices and portable two-way radios.



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that you use extreme caution when using any device or feature that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle.

We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving and that you comply with all applicable laws.

### EXPORT UNIQUE (NON-UNITED STATES/CANADA) VEHICLE SPECIFIC INFORMATION

For your particular global region, your vehicle may be equipped with features and options that are different from the features and options that are described in this Owner's Guide. A market unique supplement may be supplied that complements this book. By referring to the market unique supplement, if provided, you can properly identify those features, recommendations and specifications that are unique to your vehicle. This Owner's Guide is written primarily for the U.S. and Canadian Markets. Features or equipment listed as standard may be different on units built for Export. **Refer to this Owner's Guide for all other required information and warnings.**

## Introduction

These are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.

### Vehicle Symbol Glossary

Safety Alert		See Owner's Guide	
Fasten Safety Belt		Airbag - Front	
Airbag - Side		Child Seat Lower Anchor	
Child Seat Tether Anchor		Brake System	
Anti-Lock Brake System		Parking Brake System	
Brake Fluid - Non-Petroleum Based		Parking Aid System	
Stability Control System		Speed Control	
Master Lighting Switch		Hazard Warning Flasher	
Fog Lamps-Front		Fuse Compartment	
Fuel Pump Reset		Windshield Wash/Wipe	
Windshield Defrost/Demist		Rear Window Defrost/Demist	

## Introduction

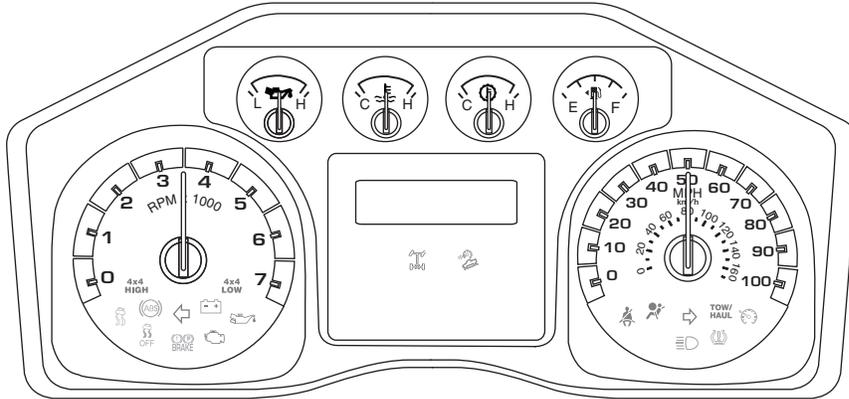
### Vehicle Symbol Glossary

Power Windows Front/Rear		Power Window Lockout	
Child Safety Door Lock/Unlock		Interior Luggage Compartment Release	
Panic Alarm		Engine Oil	
Engine Coolant		Engine Coolant Temperature	
Do Not Open When Hot		Battery	
Avoid Smoking, Flames, or Sparks		Battery Acid	
Explosive Gas		Fan Warning	
Power Steering Fluid		Maintain Correct Fluid Level	
Service Engine Soon		Engine Air Filter	
Passenger Compartment Air Filter		Jack	
Check Fuel Cap		Low Tire Pressure Warning	

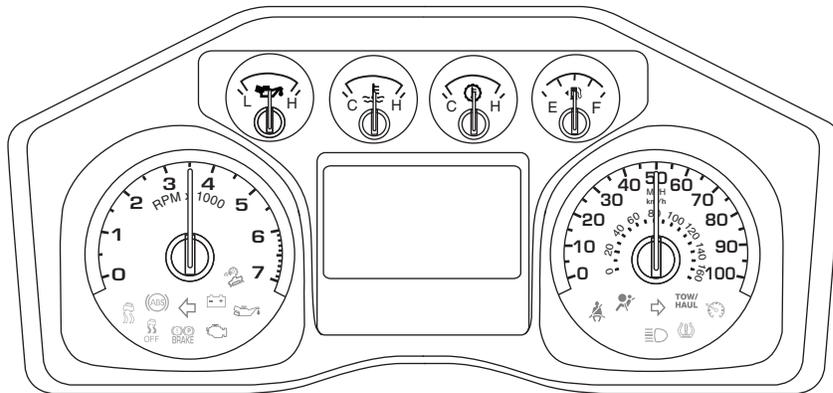
## Instrument Cluster

### WARNING LIGHTS AND CHIMES

**Base instrument cluster with standard measure shown; metric similar**



**Optional instrument cluster with standard measure shown; metric similar**

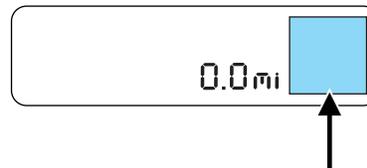


Warning lights and gauges can alert you to a vehicle condition that may become serious enough to cause expensive repairs. A warning light may illuminate when a problem exists with one of your vehicle's functions. Many lights will illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure the bulb works. If any light remains on after starting the vehicle, refer to the respective system warning light for additional information.

## Instrument Cluster

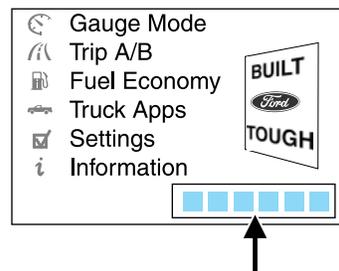
### Standard message center

**Note:** Some warning lights are reconfigurable telltale (RTT) indicator lights and will illuminate in the message center. These lights function the same as the other warning lights.



### Optional message center

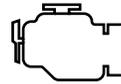
**Note:** Some warning lights are reconfigurable telltale (RTT) indicator lights and will illuminate in the message center. These lights function the same as the other warning lights. The first three positions will only display one warning telltale at a time; the last three positions can cycle between different warning telltales.



**Service engine soon:** The service engine soon indicator  illuminates when the ignition is first

turned to the on position to check the bulb and to indicate whether the vehicle is ready for Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) testing. Normally, the service engine soon indicator will stay on until the engine is cranked, then turn itself off if no malfunctions are present. However, if after 15 seconds the service engine soon indicator blinks eight times, it means that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing. See the *Readiness for Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) testing* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

Solid illumination after the engine is started indicates the on-board diagnostics system (OBD-II) has detected a malfunction. Refer to *On-board diagnostics (OBD-II)* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter. If the light is blinking, engine misfire is occurring which could damage your catalytic converter. Drive in a moderate fashion (avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration) and have your vehicle serviced immediately by your authorized dealer.



## Instrument Cluster

 **WARNING:** Under engine misfire conditions, excessive exhaust temperatures could damage the catalytic converter, the fuel system, interior floor coverings or other vehicle components, possibly causing a fire.

**Check fuel cap:** Displays when the fuel cap may not be properly installed. Continued driving with this light on may cause the Service engine soon warning indicator to come on. Refer to *Fuel filler cap* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.



**Low fuel (RTT):** Displays when the fuel level in the fuel tank is at or near empty (refer to *Fuel gauge* in this chapter).

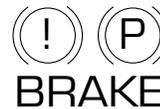


**Powertrain malfunction/Reduced power/Electronic throttle control (RTT):**

Displays when the engine has defaulted to a “limp-home” operation or when a transmission problem has been detected and shifting may be restricted. If the light remains on, have the system serviced immediately by your authorized dealer.



**Brake system warning light:** To confirm the brake system warning light is functional, it will momentarily illuminate when the ignition is turned to the on position when the engine is not running, or in a position between on and start, or by applying the parking brake when the ignition is turned to the on position.



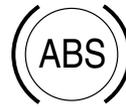
If the brake system warning light does not illuminate at this time, seek service immediately from your authorized dealer. Illumination after releasing the parking brake indicates low brake fluid level and the brake system should be inspected immediately by your authorized dealer.

## Instrument Cluster



**WARNING:** Driving a vehicle with the brake system warning light on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It will take you longer to stop the vehicle. Have the vehicle checked by your authorized dealer. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.

**Anti-lock brake system:** If the ABS light stays illuminated or continues to flash, a malfunction has been detected, have the system serviced immediately by your authorized dealer. Normal braking is still functional unless the brake warning light also is illuminated.



**Airbag readiness:** If this light fails to illuminate when the ignition is turned to on, continues to flash or remains on, have the system serviced immediately by your authorized dealer. A chime will sound if there is a malfunction in the indicator light.



**Safety belt:** Reminds you to fasten your safety belt. A Belt-Minder® chime will also sound to remind you to fasten your safety belt. Refer to the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter to activate/deactivate the Belt-Minder® chime feature.



**Charging system:** Illuminates when the battery is not charging properly. If it stays on while the engine is running, there may be a malfunction with the charging system. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. This indicates a problem with the electrical system or a related component.



**Engine oil pressure (RTT and static warning light):** Displays when the oil pressure falls below the normal range. Refer to *Engine oil* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.



## Instrument Cluster

**Door ajar (RTT):** Displays when the ignition is in the on position and any door is not completely closed.

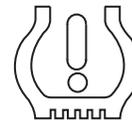


**Engine coolant temperature (RTT):** Illuminates when the engine coolant temperature is high. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible, switch off the engine and let cool. Refer to *Engine coolant* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.



**WARNING:** Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

**Low tire pressure warning (if equipped):** Illuminates when your tire pressure is low. If the light remains on at start up or while driving, the tire pressure should be checked. Refer to *Inflating your tires* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter. When the ignition is first turned to on, the light will illuminate for three seconds to ensure the bulb is working. If the light does not turn on, have the system inspected by your authorized dealer. For more information on this system, refer to *Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS)* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter.



**Hill descent (if equipped):** Displays when using the hill descent mode. Refer to the *Driving* chapter for transmission function and operation.



**Transmission Tow/Haul Feature (if equipped):** Displays when the Tow/Haul feature has been activated. Refer to the *Driving* chapter for transmission function and operation. If the light flashes steadily, have the system serviced immediately, damage to the transmission could occur.

**TOW  
HAUL**

## Instrument Cluster

### **AdvanceTrac®/Traction control**

**(if equipped):** Displays when the AdvanceTrac®/Traction control is active. If the light remains on, have the system serviced immediately, refer to the *Driving* chapter for more information.



### **AdvanceTrac®/Traction control**

**off light (if equipped):** Illuminates when AdvanceTrac®/Traction control has been disabled by the driver. Refer to the *Driving* chapter for more information.



### **4X2 (RTT) (if equipped):**

Displays momentarily when two-wheel drive high is selected. If the light fails to display when the ignition is turned on, or remains on, have the system serviced immediately by your authorized dealer.

**4x2**

### **Four wheel drive low (RTT and static) (if equipped):**

Displays when four-wheel drive low is engaged. If the light fails to display when the ignition is turned on, or remains on, have the system serviced immediately by your authorized dealer.

**4x4  
LOW**

### **Four wheel drive high (RTT and static) (if equipped):**

Displays when four-wheel drive high is engaged. If the light fails to display when the ignition is turned on, or remains on, have the system serviced immediately by your authorized dealer.

**4x4  
HIGH**

### **Electronic locking differential (RTT and static) (if equipped):**

Displays when using the electronic locking differential.



## Instrument Cluster

**Speed control (if equipped):** The speed control system indicator light changes color to indicate what mode the system is in:



- **On (amber light):** Illuminates when the speed control system is turned on. Turns off when the speed control system is engaged or turned off.
- **Engaged (green light):** Illuminates when the speed control system is engaged. Turns off when the speed control system is disengaged.

**Turn signal:** Illuminates when the left or right turn signal or the hazard lights are turned on. If the indicators stay on or flash faster, check for a burned out bulb.



**High beams:** Illuminates when the high-beam headlamps are turned on.



**Diesel warning lights:** If your vehicle is equipped with a diesel engine, it has some unique warning lights; refer to *Instrument Cluster* in your diesel supplement for detailed information on their function.

- Glow plug pre-heat
- Water in fuel
- Diesel exhaust fluid



**Key-in-ignition warning chime:** Sounds when the key is left in the ignition in the off or accessory position and the driver's door is opened.

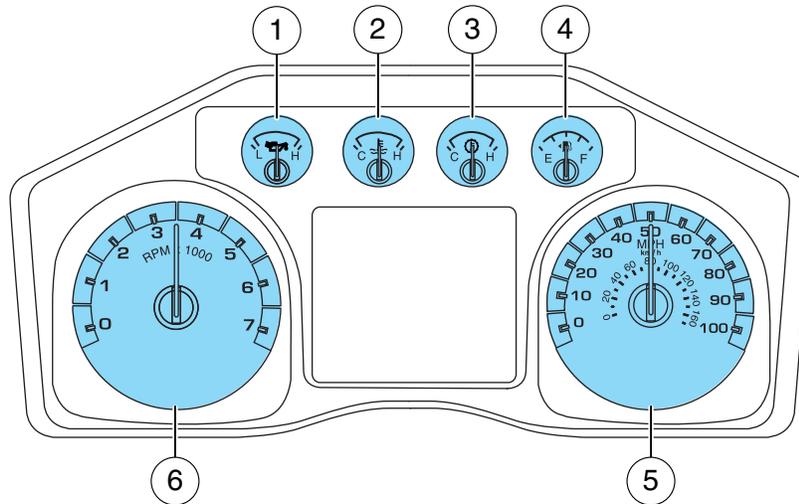
**Headlamps on warning chime:** Sounds when the headlamps or parking lamps are on, the ignition is off (the key is not in the ignition) and the driver's door is opened.

20

## Instrument Cluster

### GAUGES

Base cluster with automatic transmission shown. Metric similar.



1. **Engine oil pressure gauge:** Indicates engine oil pressure. The needle should stay in the normal operating range (between L and H). If the needle falls below the normal range, stop the vehicle, turn off the engine and check the engine oil level. Add oil if needed. If the oil level is correct, have your vehicle checked at your authorized dealer.

2. **Engine coolant temperature gauge:** Indicates engine coolant temperature. At normal operating temperature, the needle will be in the normal range (between H and C). **If it enters the red section, the engine is overheating. Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible, switch off the engine and let the engine cool.**



**WARNING:** Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

3. **Transmission fluid temperature gauge:** If the gauge is in the: **Normal area** The transmission fluid is within the normal operating temperature (between H and C).

## Instrument Cluster

**Yellow area** The transmission fluid is higher than normal operating temperature. This can be caused by special operation conditions (i.e. snowplowing, towing or off road use). Refer to *Special operating conditions* in the *scheduled maintenance information* for instructions. Operating the transmission for extended periods of time with the gauge in the yellow area may cause internal transmission damage.

Altering the severity of the driving conditions is recommended to lower the transmission temperature into the normal range.

**Red area** The transmission fluid is overheating. Stop the vehicle to allow the temperature to return to normal range.

If the gauge is operating in the yellow or red area, stop the vehicle and verify the airflow is not restricted such as snow or debris blocking airflow through the grill. If the gauge continues to show high temperatures, see your authorized dealer.

4. **Fuel gauge:** Indicates approximately how much fuel is left in the fuel tank (when the ignition is in the on position). The fuel gauge may vary slightly when the vehicle is in motion or on a grade. The fuel icon and arrow indicates which side of the vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

Refer to *Filling the tank* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter for more information.

5. **Speedometer:** Indicates the current vehicle speed.

6. **Tachometer:** Indicates the engine speed in revolutions per minute. Driving with your tachometer pointer continuously at the top of the scale may damage the engine.

**Odometer and trip odometer:** The odometer is displayed on the lower line in the message center and registers the total accumulated distance the vehicle has traveled. For trip odometer, refer to *Standard message center* or *Optional message center* in this chapter.

### STANDARD MESSAGE CENTER

Your vehicle's message center is capable of monitoring many vehicle systems and will alert you to potential vehicle problems and various conditions with an informational message followed by a long indicator chime.

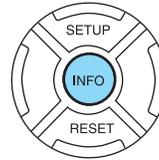
The message center display is located in the instrument cluster and the controls are located on the steering wheel.

## Instrument Cluster

### Selectable features

#### **Info (information menu)**

Press the INFO button repeatedly to cycle through the following features:



#### **TRIP A/B**

Registers the distance of individual journeys. Press and release the INFO button until the TRIP A/B appear in the display (this represents the trip mode). Press and hold the RESET button for two seconds to reset.

Refer to *UNITS* later in this section to switch the display from metric to English.

#### **XXX° (outside air temperature) (if equipped)**

This displays the outside temperature.

Refer to *UNITS* later in this section to switch the display from Metric to English.

#### **MYKEY MILES (km) (if programmed)**

For more information, refer to *MyKey®* in the *Locks and Security* chapter.

#### **XXX MILES (km) TO E**

This displays an estimate of approximately how far you can drive with the fuel remaining in your tank under normal driving conditions. Remember to turn the ignition off when refueling to allow this feature to correctly detect the added fuel.

The low fuel indicator will illuminate when the fuel level is at approximately 1/16 of the tank.

DTE is calculated using a running average fuel economy, which is based on your recent driving history of 500 miles (800 km). This value is not the same as the average fuel economy display. The running average fuel economy is re-initialized to a factory default value if the battery is disconnected.

#### **XX.X AVG MPG (L/100km)**

Average fuel economy displays your average fuel economy in miles/gallon or liters/100 km.

## Instrument Cluster

If you calculate your average fuel economy by dividing distance traveled by gallons of fuel used (liters of fuel used by 100 kilometers traveled), your figure may be different than displayed for the following reasons:

- Your vehicle was not perfectly level during fill-up
- Differences in the automatic shut-off points on the fuel pumps at service stations
- Variations in top-off procedure from one fill-up to another
- Rounding of the displayed values to the nearest 0.1 gallon (liter)

1. Drive the vehicle at least 5 miles (8 km) with the speed control system engaged to display a stabilized average.

2. Record the highway fuel economy for future reference.

It is important to press the RESET button (press and hold RESET for two seconds in order to reset the function) after setting the speed control to get accurate highway fuel economy readings.

### **MPG (L/km) ↑ ↓**

This displays instantaneous fuel economy as a bar graph ranging from ↓ poor economy to ↑ excellent economy.

Your vehicle must be moving to calculate instantaneous fuel economy. When your vehicle is not moving, this function shows ↓, one or no bars illuminated. Instantaneous fuel economy cannot be reset.

### **TIMER**

Timer displays the trip elapsed drive time.

To operate, do the following:

1. Press and release RESET in order to start the timer.
2. Press and release RESET to pause the timer.
3. Press and hold RESET until the timer resets.

### **TBC GAIN (if equipped)**

Displays the level of trailer brake gain or if the trailer is not connected.

### **EXHAUST FILTER (diesel only)**

Refer to *Diesel exhaust system: oxidation catalyst/diesel particulate filter system* in your diesel supplement for more information.

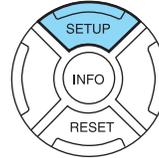
24

## Instrument Cluster

### **System check and vehicle feature customization**

Press the SETUP button repeatedly to cycle the message center through the following features:

**Note:** Some items are optional and will not appear.



**Note:** When returning to the SETUP menu and a non-English language has been selected, HOLD RESET FOR ENGLISH will be displayed to change back to English. Press and hold the RESET button to change back to English.

### **RESET FOR SYSTEM CHECK**

When this message appears, press the RESET button and the message center will begin to cycle through the following systems and provide a status of the item if needed.

1. OIL LIFE
2. EXHAUST FLUID LEVEL (Diesel only)
3. ENGINE HOURS
4. ENGINE IDLE HOURS
5. CHARGING SYSTEM
6. DOOR
7. BRAKE SYSTEM
8. TBC GAIN = XX.X (if equipped)
9. FUEL LEVEL
10. MYKEY DISTANCE (if MyKey® is programmed)
11. MYKEY(S) PROGRAMMED
12. ADMIN KEYS PROGRAMMED

**Note:** Some systems show a message only if a condition is present.

### **OIL LIFE**

This displays the remaining oil life.

An oil change is required whenever indicated by the message center and according to the recommended maintenance schedule.

## Instrument Cluster

To reset the oil monitoring system to 100% after each oil change, perform the following:

1. Press and release the SETUP button to display “OIL LIFE XXX% HOLD RESET = NEW”.
2. Press and hold the RESET button for two seconds and release to reset the oil life to 100%.

**Note:** To change oil life 100% value (if equipped with this feature) to another value, proceed to Step 3.

3. Once “OIL LIFE SET TO XXX%” is displayed, release and press the RESET button to change the oil life start value. Each release and press will reduce the value by 10%.

### UNITS

Displays the current units English or Metric.

Press the RESET button to change from English to Metric.

### AUTOLAMP (SEC)

This feature keeps your headlights on for up to three minutes after the ignition is switched off.

Press the RESET control to select the new autolamp delay values of 0, 10, 20, 30, 60, 90, 120 or 180 seconds.

### AUTOLOCK

This feature automatically locks all vehicle doors when the vehicle is shifted into any gear, putting the vehicle in motion.

Press the RESET control to turn autolock on or off.

### AUTOUNLOCK

This feature automatically unlocks all vehicle doors when the driver's door is opened within 10 minutes of the ignition being turned off.

Press RESET to turn it off or on.

### COURTESY WIPE

One extra wipe will occur a few seconds after washing the front window to clear any excess washer fluid remaining on the windshield.

Press RESET to turn this feature on or off.

### CREATE MYKEY / MYKEY SETUP/ CLEAR MYKEY

For more information refer to *MyKey*® in the *Locks and Security* chapter.

26

## Instrument Cluster

### RESET FOR ZONE SETTING

This feature changes the compass zone setting.

Most geographic areas (zones) have a magnetic north compass point that varies slightly from the northerly direction on maps. This variation is four degrees between adjacent zones and will become noticeable as the vehicle crosses multiple zones. A correct zone setting will eliminate this error.

Refer to *Compass zone/calibration adjustment*.

### ZONE <XX> RESET = CHANGE

The compass heading is displayed as one of N, NE, E, SE, S, SW, W and NW in the message center display.

Refer to *Compass zone/calibration adjustment*.

### RESET FOR CALIBRATION

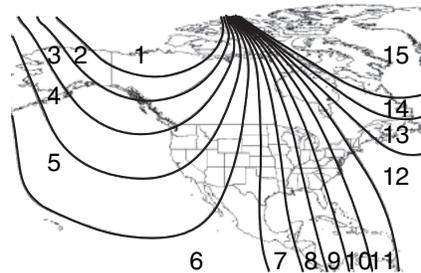
This feature calibrates the compass.

The compass reading may be affected when you drive near large buildings, bridges, power lines and powerful broadcast antenna. Magnetic or metallic objects placed in, on or near the vehicle may also affect compass accuracy. Usually, when something affects the compass readings, the compass will correct itself after a few days of operating your vehicle in normal conditions. If the compass still appears to be inaccurate, a manual calibration may be necessary.

Refer to *Compass zone/calibration adjustment*.

### *Compass zone/calibration adjustment*

1. Determine your magnetic zone by referring to the zone map.
2. Turn ignition to the on position.
3. Start the engine.



4. From the SETUP menu, press and release the RESET button until the message center display changes to show the current zone setting ZONE <XX> RESET = CHANGE.

## Instrument Cluster

5. Press and release the RESET button repeatedly until the correct zone setting for your geographic location is displayed on the message center. The range of zone values are from 1 to 15 and “wraps” back to 1.

6. To exit the zone setting mode, and to “lock in” your change:

- press and release the SETUP button or,
- press INFO button to exit or,
- wait four seconds and the zone will be “locked in”.

Perform compass calibration in an open area free from steel structures and high voltage lines. For optimum calibration, turn off all electrical accessories (heater/air conditioning, wipers, etc.) and make sure all vehicle doors are shut.

7. Press the RESET button until the display reads RESET FOR CALIBRATION to start the compass calibration function.

8. Slowly drive the vehicle in a circle (less than 3 mph [5 km/h]) until the CIRCLE SLOWLY TO CALIBRATE display changes to CALIBRATION COMPLETED. It will take up to five circles to complete calibration.

9. The compass is now calibrated.

**Note:** If the RESET button is pressed or three minutes has expired, the display will go back to the INFO menu and will show CAL instead of the compass heading until the compass is calibrated.

### **RESET FOR REMOTE START (if equipped)**

Press RESET to enable remote start on or off and choose the remote start duration time (5, 10, 15 minutes) and other options.

### **REAR PARK AID (if equipped)**

This feature sounds a warning tone to warn the driver of obstacles near the rear bumper, and functions only when R (Reverse) gear is selected.

Press RESET to turn this feature on or off. You can also choose to turn this feature on/off when the vehicle is placed in reverse.

### **TBC MODE (if equipped)**

Allows you to choose the trailer brake mode.

Press RESET to choose:

- ELECTRIC
- EOH (electric over hydraulic)

### **TRAILER SWAY (if equipped)**

This feature uses the electronic stability control to mitigate trailer sway,

Press RESET to turn it off or on.

28

## Instrument Cluster

### **LANGUAGE = ENGLISH / SPANISH / FRENCH**

Allows you to choose which language the message center will display in. Selectable languages are English, Spanish, or French.

Waiting four seconds or pressing the RESET button cycles the message center through each of the language choices.

Press and hold the RESET button for two seconds to set the language choice.

### **System warnings**

System warnings alert you to possible problems or malfunctions in your vehicle's operating systems.

In the event of a multiple warning situation, the message center will cycle the display to show all warnings by displaying each one for four seconds.

The message center will display the last selected feature if there are no more warning messages.

Types of messages and warnings:

- Some messages will appear briefly to inform you of something you may need to take action on or be informed of.
- Some messages will appear once and then again when the vehicle is restarted.
- Some messages will reappear after clearing or being reset if a problem or condition is still present and needs your attention.
- Some messages can be acknowledged and reset by pressing RESET. This allows you to use the full message center functionality by clearing the message.

**PARK BRAKE ENGAGED** — Displayed when the parking brake is applied (or not fully released).

**CHECK BRAKE SYSTEM** — Displayed when a fault has been detected by the ABS module.

**CHECK CHARGING SYSTEM**— Displayed when the electrical system is not maintaining proper voltage. If you are operating electrical accessories when the engine is idling at a low speed, turn off as many of the electrical loads as soon as possible. If the warning stays on or comes on when the engine is operating at normal speeds, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

**DRIVER DOOR AJAR** — Displayed when the driver's door is not completely closed.

## Instrument Cluster

**PASSENGER DOOR AJAR** — Displayed when the passenger's door is not completely closed.

**REAR LEFT DOOR AJAR** — Displayed when the rear left door is not completely closed.

**REAR RIGHT DOOR AJAR** — Displayed when the rear right door is not completely closed.

**CHECK FUEL CAP** — Displayed when the fuel cap may not be properly closed. Refer to *What you should know about automotive fuels* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

**PARK BRAKE ENGAGED** — Displayed when the parking brake is set, the engine is running and the vehicle is driven more than 3 mph (5 km/h). If the warning stays on after the parking brake is released, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

**CHECK BRAKE SYSTEM** — Displayed when a fault has been detected by the ABS module.

**BRAKE FLUID LEVEL LOW** — Indicates the brake fluid level is low and the brake system should be inspected immediately. Refer to *Brake fluid* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

**FUEL LEVEL LOW** — Displayed as a reminder of a low fuel condition.

**CHECK PARK AID (if equipped)** — Displayed when the transmission is in R (Reverse) and the reverse sensing system (park aid) is disabled. Refer to *Rear park aid* in this section to enable.

**TIRE PRESSURE SENSOR FAULT (if equipped)** — Displayed when a tire pressure sensor is malfunctioning, or your spare tire is in use. For more information on how the system operates under these conditions, refer to *Understanding Your Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

**LOW TIRE PRESSURE (if equipped)** — Displayed when one or more tires on your vehicle have low tire pressure. Refer to *Inflating your tires* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter.

**TIRE PRESSURE MONITOR FAULT (if equipped)** — Displayed when the tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) is functioning. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

**TRAIN LEFT FRONT TIRE (if equipped)** — Displayed when training the TPMS. Refer to *TPMS reset procedure* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

30

## Instrument Cluster

**TRAIN RIGHT FRONT TIRE (if equipped)** — Displayed when training the TPMS. Refer to *TPMS reset procedure* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

**TRAIN RIGHT REAR TIRE (if equipped)** — Displayed when training the TPMS. Refer to *TPMS reset procedure* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

**TRAIN LEFT REAR TIRE (if equipped)** — Displayed when training the TPMS. Refer to *TPMS reset procedure* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

**TIRES NOT TRAINED – REPEAT (if equipped)** — Displayed when an error occurs while training the TPMS. Refer to *TPMS reset procedure* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

**TRAINING COMPLETE (if equipped)** — Displayed when training of the TPMS is complete. Refer to *TPMS reset procedure* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

**TRACTION CONTROL OFF (if equipped)** — Displayed when the traction control has been disabled by the driver. Refer to the *Driving* chapter for more information.

**INTKEY COULD NOT PROGRAM** — Displayed when an attempt is made to program a fifth integrated key to the remote keyless entry system. For more information on integrated key, refer to the *Locks and Security* chapter.

**KEY COULD NOT PROGRAM** — Displayed when an attempt is made to program a spare key using two existing MyKeys. Refer to *MyKey®* in the *Locks and Security* chapter for more information.

**VEHICLE SPEED 80 MPH MAX** — Displayed when a MyKey® is in use and the Admin has enabled the MyKey speed limit and the vehicle speed is 80 mph (130 km/h). Refer to *MyKey®* in the *Locks and Security* chapter for more information.

**SPEED LIMITED TO 80 MPH** — Displayed when starting the vehicle and MyKey® is in use and the MyKey speed limit is on. Refer to *MyKey®* in the *Locks and Security* chapter for more information.

**CHECK SPEED DRIVE SAFELY** — Displayed when a MyKey® is in use and the optional setting is on and the vehicle exceeds a preselected speed. Refer to *MyKey®* in the *Locks and Security* chapter for more information.

## Instrument Cluster

**VEHICLE NEAR TOP SPEED** — Displayed when a MyKey® is in use and the MyKey speed limit is on and the vehicle speed is approaching 80 mph (130 km/h). Refer to *MyKey®* in the *Locks and Security* chapter for more information.

**TOP SPEED MYKEY SETTING** — Displayed when a MyKey® is in use and the MyKey speed limit is on and the vehicle speed is 80 mph (130 km/h). Refer to *MyKey®* in the *Locks and Security* chapter for more information.

**BUCKLE UP TO UNMUTE AUDIO** — Displayed when a MyKey® is in use and Belt-Minder® is activated. Refer to *MyKey®* in the *Locks and Security* chapter for more information.

**ADVTRAC ON MYKEY SETTING (if equipped)** — Displayed when a MyKey® is in use when trying to disable the ESC system and the optional setting is on. Refer to *MyKey®* in the *Locks and Security* chapter for more information.

**SERVICE ADVANCETRAC (if equipped)** — Displayed when the AdvanceTrac® system has detected a condition that requires service. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

**TO STOP ALARM START VEHICLE (if equipped)** — Displayed when the perimeter alarm system is armed and the vehicle is entered using the key on the driver's side door. In order to prevent the perimeter alarm system from triggering, the ignition must be turned to start or on before the 12 second chime expires. See *Perimeter alarm system* in the *Locks and Security* chapter.

**SECURITY SYSTEM FAULT** — Displayed when the security system has detected a fault. See your authorized dealer for service.

**WIRING FAULT ON TRAILER (if equipped)** — Displayed and accompanied by a single chime if there are certain faults in the vehicle wiring and trailer wiring/brake system. Refer to *Trailer towing* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

**TRAILER BRAKE MODULE FAULT (if equipped)** — Displayed and accompanied by a single chime in response to faults sensed by the TBC. Refer to *Trailer towing* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

**TRAILER CONNECTED (if equipped)** — Displayed when a correct trailer connection (a trailer with electric trailer brakes) is sensed during a given ignition cycle. Refer to *Trailer towing* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

**TRAILER BRAKE GAIN = XX.X (if equipped)** — Displays the current gain setting for the trailer brake. Refer to *Trailer towing* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

## Instrument Cluster

**TBC GAIN = XX.X NO TRAILER (if equipped)** — Displays the current gain setting for the trailer brake when a trailer is not connected. Refer to *Trailer towing* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

**TRAILER DISCONNECTED (if equipped)** — Displayed and accompanied by a single chime when a trailer connection becomes disconnected, either intentionally or unintentionally, and has been sensed during a given ignition cycle. Refer to *Trailer towing* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

**TRAILER SWAY REDUCE SPEED (if equipped)** — Displayed when the trailer sway control has detected trailer sway. For more information, refer to the *Driving* chapter for more information.

**CHECK PARK AID (if equipped)** — Displayed when the transmission is in R (Reverse) and the reverse sensing system (park aid) is disabled.

**TRANSPORT MODE CONTACT DEALER (if equipped)** — Displayed when the vehicle is set to transport mode. The transport mode is used to disable certain vehicle functions to prevent battery discharge when the vehicle is in the transport/inventory phase and is not driven long enough to maintain the battery's charge. This mode can be disabled by doing the following: Turn the ignition on, without starting the engine. Press and release the brake pedal fully five times and press the hazard button four times (on, off, on, off) within 10 seconds.

**CHECK LOCKING DIFFERENTIAL (if equipped)** — Displayed when an electronic locking differential (ELD) system fault is present. For more information, refer to *Electronic locking differential (ELD)* in the *Driving* chapter.

**ELD ENGAGED/DISENGAGED (if equipped)** — Displayed when the electronic locking differential is engaged. See *Electronic locking differential* in the *Driving* chapter for more information.

**ELD DISENGAGED (if equipped)** — Displayed when the electronic locking differential is disengaged. See *Electronic locking differential* in the *Driving* chapter for more information.

**TO ENGAGE ELD RELEASE PEDAL (if equipped)** — Displayed when the electronic locking differential requests this condition be met in order to engage. See *Electronic locking differential* in the *Driving* chapter for more information.

**TO ENGAGE ELD SLOW TO XX MPH/KM/H (if equipped)** — Displayed when the electronic locking differential requests that a certain speed be met in order to engage. See *Electronic locking differential* in the *Driving* chapter for more information.

## Instrument Cluster

**CHECK 4X4 (if equipped)** — Displayed when a 4X4 system fault is present. For more information, refer to *Four-wheel drive (4WD) operation* in the *Driving* chapter.

**4X4 SHIFT IN PROGRESS** — Displayed when the 4X4 system is making a shift. For further information, refer to *Four-wheel drive (4WD) operation* in the *Driving* chapter.

**FOR 4X4 LOW SLOW TO 3 MPH (if equipped)** — Displayed when 4X4 LOW is selected while the vehicle is moving. For more information, refer to *Four-wheel drive (4WD) operation* in the *Driving* chapter.

**FOR 4X4 LOW APPLY BRAKE (if equipped)** — Displayed when trying to select 4X4 LOW. For more information, refer to *Four-wheel drive (4WD) operation* in the *Driving* chapter.

**FOR 4X4 LOW SHIFT TO N (if equipped)** — Displayed when 4X4 LOW is selected and the vehicle is stopped. For more information, refer to *Four-wheel drive (4WD) operation* in the *Driving* chapter.

**TO EXIT 4X4 LOW SLOW TO 3 MPH (if equipped)** — Displayed when 2WD is selected while the vehicle is operating in 4X4 LOW. For more information, refer to *Four-wheel drive (4WD) operation* in the *Driving* chapter.

**TO EXIT 4X4 LOW SHIFT TO N (if equipped)** — Displayed when 2WD is selected while the vehicle has been stopped in 4X4 LOW. For more information, refer to *Four-wheel drive (4WD) operation* in the *Driving* chapter.

**TO EXIT 4X4 LOW APPLY BRAKE (if equipped)** — Displayed when 2WD is selected from 4X4 LOW mode. For more information, refer to *Four-wheel drive (4WD) operation* in the *Driving* chapter.

**SHIFT DELAYED PULL FORWARD (if equipped)** — May display when shifting to or from 4X4 LOW. For more information, refer to *Four-wheel drive (4WD) operation* in the *Driving* chapter.

**HILL DESCENT CONTROL READY (if equipped)** — Displayed when the hill descent control switch is turned on.

**HILL DESCENT CONTROL FAULT (if equipped)** — Displayed when a hill descent system fault is present.

**HILL CNTRL OFF SYSTEM COOLING (if equipped)** — Displayed when the hill descent system is cooling due to overuse.

**HILL DESCENT CONTROL OFF (if equipped)** — Displayed when the hill descent system is deactivated.

**FOR HILL CNTRL 20 MPH OR LESS (if equipped)** — Displayed when the vehicle speed requirement for hill control mode entry has not been met.

## Instrument Cluster

**DRIVER RESUME CONTROL (if equipped)** — Displayed when the hill control and off-road mode require the driver to resume control.

**FOR HILL CNTRL SELECT GEAR (if equipped)** — Displayed when the driver is requested to select a transmission gear to enable operation of the hill mode and off-road mode.

**ENGINE WARMING PLEASE WAIT XX (diesel engine only)** — Displayed in extremely cold weather, typically below  $-15^{\circ}\text{F}$  ( $-26^{\circ}\text{C}$ ), if the engine block heater is not utilized. The engine will not respond to accelerator pedal movement for 30 seconds; this is done so the engine oil can be properly circulated to avoid engine damage from lack of lubrication. A timer will begin a countdown from 30 seconds. Once the counter has reached 0 seconds, OK TO DRIVE will be displayed and the engine will respond to accelerator pedal movement. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**OK TO DRIVE (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the time counter has reached 0 (zero) and the engine is sufficiently warm enough to drive in extremely cold weather (refer to the engine warming please wait message description mentioned previously). Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**WATER IN FUEL DRAIN FILTER (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the water separator has reached a predetermined capacity and needs to be drained. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**ENGINE TURNS OFF IN XX (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the vehicle is in the final 30 seconds of a countdown to where the engine will intentionally be turned off by the PCM. The diesel engine shutdown for extended idling is an optional feature. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**ENGINE TURNED OFF (diesel engine only)** — Displayed after the 30 second countdown. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**DRIVE TO CLEAN EXHAUST FILTER (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) is full of particles (exhaust soot) and the vehicle is not being operated in a manner to allow normal cleaning. This message will stay on until the exhaust filter cleaning has begun, at which time the CLEANING EXHAUST FILTER message will be displayed. It is recommended the vehicle operator drive the vehicle above 30 mph (48 km/h) until the CLEANING EXHAUST FILTER message turns off. This message is NORMAL. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

## Instrument Cluster

**Note:** If this message is ignored, your vehicle will continue to fill the Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) with particles (exhaust soot). If cleaning is not permitted, the  light will illuminate and engine power may be limited. If the vehicle is still not operated in a manner to allow cleaning, the service engine soon light  will illuminate and engine power will be further limited. Dealer service will then be required to restore your vehicle to full-power operation.

**Note:** Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) regeneration will not initiate at idle or in Power Take Off (PTO) mode. When DRIVE TO CLEAN EXHAUST FILTER is displayed in the message center, PTO and/or Stationary Elevated Idle Control (SEIC) must be disengaged/inactive in order to properly clean the DPF. The vehicle must be driven until the CLEANING EXHAUST FILTER message turns off.

**CLEANING EXHAUST FILTER (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the vehicle has entered the cleaning mode. Various engine actions will raise the exhaust temperature in the Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) system to burn off the particles (exhaust soot). After the particles are burned off, the exhaust temperature will fall back to normal levels. This message is NORMAL. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.



**WARNING:** When the CLEANING EXHAUST FILTER message appears in the message center, do not park near flammable materials, vapors or structures until filter cleaning is complete.

**EXHAUST FILTER DRIVE COMPLETE (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) has been adequately cleaned after the DRIVE TO CLEAN EXHAUST FILTER followed by CLEANING EXHAUST FILTER messages have been displayed. This message is NORMAL. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**EXHAUST FILTER CLEANED (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) has been adequately cleaned by the manual regeneration process (OCR). Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**EXHAUST CLEAN STOPPED (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) manual regeneration process (OCR) has been stopped. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

## Instrument Cluster

**STOP SAFELY NOW (diesel engine only)** — Displayed and a chime sounds when the vehicle exhaust system temperature exceeds intended operating range. If this warning occurs, engine power is reduced and the engine will shut down when the vehicle speed is below 3 mph (5 km/h).

**Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible** and contact your authorized dealer. Depending on the severity of the over-temperature condition, the vehicle may not restart after cycling the ignition off. If the vehicle restarts, there may be limited power. If the exhaust over-temperature condition reoccurs, the message center will display STOP SAFELY NOW, the chime will sound, and engine power will be reduced again and shut down below 3 mph (5 km/h). Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**REDUCED ENGINE POWER (diesel engine only)** — Displayed approximately two hours after the DRIVE TO CLEAN EXHAUST SYSTEM message has displayed and the vehicle operator has not driven the vehicle above 30 mph (48 km/h) for at least 20 minutes to clean the DPF. At this point the vehicle must be serviced by an authorized dealer. This message is normal. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**EXHAUST FLUID RANGE XXX MI (diesel engine only)** — Displays the distance you can travel before depleting the remaining diesel exhaust fluid. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**SPEED LIMITED XXMPH IN XX MI EXHAUST FLUID EMPTY (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the diesel exhaust fluid is nearing empty. The vehicle's top speed will become limited in the displayed distance. The diesel exhaust fluid must be replenished to resume normal operation of the vehicle. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**XX MPH MAX UPON RESTART EXHAUST FLUID EMPTY (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the remaining diesel exhaust fluid level is depleted. Speed will be limited upon restart. The diesel exhaust fluid must be replenished to resume normal operation of the vehicle. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**SPEED LIMITED TO XX MPH EXHAUST FLUID EMPTY (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the diesel exhaust fluid is empty. The diesel exhaust fluid must be replenished to resume normal operation of the vehicle. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

## Instrument Cluster

**ENGINE IDLED SOON EXHAUST FLUID EMPTY (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the SCR system detects low exhaust fluid. The engine will eventually enter into an idle only mode. The diesel exhaust fluid must be replenished to resume normal operation of the vehicle. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**ENGINE IDLED SEE MANUAL (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when a problem exists with the SCR system. The vehicle will enter into an idle-only mode. If the exhaust fluid is empty, it must be replenished to resume normal operation of the vehicle. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**SPEED LIMITED XXMPH IN XXXMI EXHAUST FLUID SYSTEM FAULT (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the SCR system detects a fault. The vehicle's top speed will become limited in the displayed distance and count down from this point. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

**XX MPH MAX UPON RESTART EXHAUST FLUID SYSTEM FAULT (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the SCR system detects a fault. The vehicle's top speed will become limited upon restarting. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

**SPEED LIMITED TO XX MPH EXHAUST FLUID SYSTEM FAULT (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the SCR system detects a fault. The vehicle's top speed is limited. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

**ENGINE IDLED SOON EXHAUST FAULT SEE MANUAL (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the SCR system detects a fault. The engine will eventually enter into an idle-only mode. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

**ENGINE IDLED SEE MANUAL EXHAUST FLUID SYSTEM FAULT (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the SCR system detects a fault. The engine will enter into an idle only mode. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

**ENGINE OIL DILUTED (diesel engine only)** — Displays once the engine oil has become diluted and needs to be changed. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**ENGINE OIL CHANGE SOON** — Displayed when the engine oil life remaining is 5% to 1%. Refer to the *scheduled maintenance information* for more information.

## Instrument Cluster

**OIL CHANGE REQUIRED** — Displayed when the oil life left reaches 0%. Refer to the *scheduled maintenance information* for more information.

**LOW FUEL PRESSURE SEE MANUAL (diesel engine only)** — If this message appears during a cold start or during cold operation 32°F (0°C) up to 10 minutes after the initial cold start; monitor the message center and if it disappears and does not re-appear after the engine has fully warmed up, the low fuel pressure message is most likely caused by waxed or gelled fuel. To prevent this, use an anti-gel additive. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information. The customer warranty may be void from using additives that do not meet or exceed Ford specifications. If the low fuel pressure message persistently appears after re-fueling during the cold start and cold operation conditions defined previously and then disappear when the engine has fully warmed up, consider different fuel sources.

- **Low Fuel Operation:** If the message appears when the vehicle is warm and during low fuel tank level operation, i.e. the tank level is at or very near empty, refuel the vehicle and operate the vehicle. If the message reappears after fueling, see below. If the message does not come back, the low fuel pressure condition was due to low fuel levels in the fuel tank.
- **Normal Operation:** If the message appears during normal operation when the vehicle / engine is fully warm, and fuel level is not low, the fuel filters must be changed regardless of the maintenance schedule interval. If replacement of the fuel filter does not remedy the low fuel pressure message during normal operation as defined above, please take the vehicle to your authorized dealer.

### OPTIONAL MESSAGE CENTER (IF EQUIPPED)

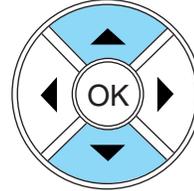
Your vehicle's message center is capable of monitoring many vehicle systems and will alert you to potential vehicle problems and various conditions with a informational messages and/or warnings.

The message center is also used to program/configure the different features of your vehicle.

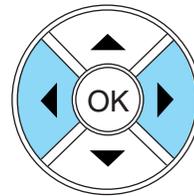
The message center display is located in the instrument cluster. Use the steering wheel mounted buttons to navigate through the message center.

## Instrument Cluster

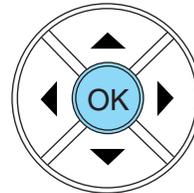
Press the up/down buttons to move up/down through the message center choices.



Press the left/right buttons to move left/right through the message center choices.



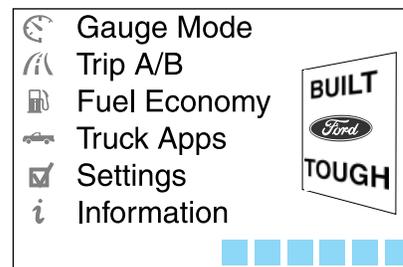
Press the OK button to select highlighted options and confirm choices/messages.



### Main menu

From the main menu screen you can choose the following:

- Gauge Mode
- Trip A/B
- Fuel Economy
- Truck Apps (if equipped)
- Settings
- Information



Scroll up/down to highlight one of the options, then press the right arrow key or OK to enter into that menu option.

## Instrument Cluster

### **Gauge Mode**

In this mode, the following options are available in different graphical formats:

- Engine Oil Temperature (diesel only)
- Transmission Temperature
- Compass (see Compass following for compass options)
- Exhaust Filter (diesel only). Refer to *Diesel exhaust system: oxidation catalyst/diesel particulate filter system* in your diesel supplement for more information.
- Blank

**Compass:** The compass orientation can be changed between fixed north or rotating north. To change the modes, press OK when the compass display is shown. Use the right arrow to choose the mode. Press and hold OK to set the mode.

### **Trip A/B**

In this mode, Trip A or B registers the following:

- Trip Time — shows the elapsed trip time. This timer will stop when the vehicle is turned off and will restart when the vehicle is restarted.
- Trip Distance — shows the accumulated trip distance.
- Fuel Used — shows the amount of fuel used for a given trip.
- Average MPG (L/100km) — shows the average distance traveled per unit of fuel used for a given trip.
- Odometer — shows the vehicle's total accumulated distance. This value cannot be reset.

Press the right arrow key to reach Trip B. Press the left arrow to go back to Trip A.

Press OK to pause the Trip A or B screen/press again to un-pause.

Press and hold OK to reset the currently displayed trip information.

### **Fuel Economy**

In this mode, fuel economy information is displayed as follows:

- Instant MPG (L/100km) — shows instantaneous fuel usage.
- Miles (kilometers) to empty — shows the approximate distance the vehicle can travel before running out of fuel.
- Average MPG (L/100km) — shows the average fuel usage based on time. See Fuel Hist. following to change the time interval. Press and hold OK to reset this value.

## Instrument Cluster

If you calculate your average fuel economy by dividing miles traveled by gallons of fuel used (liters of fuel used by 100 kilometers traveled), your figure may be different than displayed for the following reasons:

- Your vehicle was not perfectly level during fill-up.
- Differences in the automatic shut-off points on the fuel pumps at service stations.
- Variations in top-off procedure from one fill-up to another.
- Rounding of the displayed values to the nearest 0.1 gallon (liter).

To determine your average highway fuel economy, do the following:

1. Drive the vehicle at least 5 miles (8 km) with the speed control system engaged to display a stabilized average.
2. Record the highway fuel economy for future reference.

It is important to press RESET in order to reset the function after setting the speed control to get accurate highway fuel economy readings.

For more information refer to *Essentials of good fuel economy* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

**Fuel Hist.:** Press the right arrow key (when in the Fuel Econ. menu) to reach Fuel Hist. Fuel history shows fuel usage (AVG MPG or L/100km) as a bar graph based on time. The duration time can be changed as follows:

Duration– Press the right arrow key (when in the Fuel Hist. menu) to reach the following duration choices.

- 5 Minutes
- 10 Minutes
- 30 Minutes
- Last 5 Resets

Use the up/down arrows keys to highlight one of the choices; press and hold OK to set your choice.

The graph is updated each minute with the fuel economy that was achieved during the prior 5, 10, 30 minutes or last 5 resets of driving.

## Instrument Cluster

### **Truck Apps (if equipped)**

In this mode, off-road and trailer towing application options are available.

Off Road*
Pitch and bank angle (in degrees). Displays the pitch angle (front to rear) and bank angle (side to side) of the road surface.
Steering angle (in degrees). Displays the steering angle of the front wheels after the vehicle has been driven for a period of time.
Differential lock/unlock. Displays the state (locked or unlocked) of the electronic locking differential.
Energy flow. Displays the operating mode of the transfer case: 4X2, 4X4 Low or 4X4 High.

\* If equipped—your vehicle may be equipped with some or all of these options.

When “Press OK for info” is displayed, pressing OK will give you information on the following options if equipped (**Note:** Information is only available when traveling less than 3 mph [5 km/h]):

- ELD (electronic locking differential)
- Hill Descent Control
- 4X4 System
- Traction Control
- Advancetrac + RSC

**Trailer:** Press the right arrow key (when in the Off Road menu) to reach the Trailer menu (vehicle must be equipped with factory installed trailer brake controller). The following information is displayed:

- Active trailer name or default trailer.
- Accumulated trailer distance.
- Trailer gain and output.
- Trailer disconnected

## Instrument Cluster

When “Press OK for options” is displayed, pressing OK will open the trailer options menus:

<b>Trailer*</b>	
Change Active Trailer	<p>When this is highlighted, press the right arrow key to change the currently selected trailer. Use the up and down arrows to select a trailer and press the OK button to choose the highlighted trailer.</p> <p>Adding a new trailer– Use the up/down arrows to highlight “New Trailer” from the Change Active Trailer menu and press the right arrow key to enter the New Trailer input screen. Use the up/down arrow keys to choose alpha, numeric and symbol characters and then press the right arrow to move the character space over. Continue adding characters as needed. Press the left arrow to go back and change a previously selected character. When finished with the new trailer name, press OK to accept the new trailer name.</p>
Connection Checklist (if equipped)	<p>Press the right arrow button when this is highlighted to show the trailer connection types: Conventional, Fifth Wheel and Gooseneck. Use the up/down arrows to highlight one of these choices and press OK to display the connection checklist. Follow the on-screen instructions to go through the connections list.</p>
Delete Trailer	<p>Press the right arrow button when this is highlighted to show currently stored trailers. Use the up/down arrows to highlight the trailer you want to delete and press OK to delete. Follow the on-screen prompts to exit or confirm delete.</p>
Information Screen	<p>Press the right arrow button when this is highlighted to display information on the following vehicle features: Tow Haul mode, Trailer Brake Controller.</p>

## Instrument Cluster

<b>Trailer*</b>	
Rename Trailer	Press the right arrow button when this is highlighted to display saved or default trailers. Use the up/down buttons to highlight a trailer and press OK to select it. Use the up/down arrow buttons to change the characters as needed. When done, press OK to accept the change.
Reset Trailer Mileage / Kilometers (if equipped)	Press the right arrow button when this is highlighted to display accumulated distance on a given trailer within the list of trailer(s). Use the up/down buttons to select a trailer, then press and hold OK to reset the trailer mileage (kilometers).

\* If equipped—your vehicle may be equipped with some or all of these options.

### **Settings**

In this mode, you can configure different driver setting choices. Press the right arrow key (when in the Settings menu) to reach the Driver Assist menu:

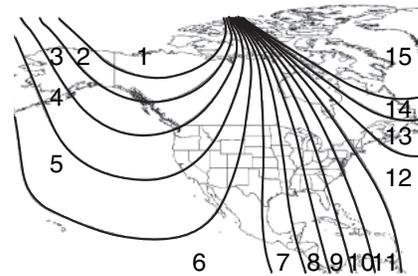
<b>Driver Assist*</b>	
Rear Park Aid	On/Off
Rear View Camera	Camera Delay
Trailer Brake Mode	Electric or Elect. Over Hydraulic
Trailer Sway Control	On/Off

\* If equipped—your vehicle may be equipped with some or all of these options.

<b>Vehicle*</b>	
Autolamp Delay	Off or XXX seconds
Compass	Zone Setting (1–15) See the diagram below to determine your magnetic zone.

## Instrument Cluster

Determine which magnetic zone you are in for your geographic location by referring to the zone map.



Vehicle* (cont'd)		
Compass (cont'd)	Calibration (When choosing Calibration, follow the on-screen directions to calibrate the compass)	
Easy Entry/Exit	On/Off	
DTE Calculation (distance to empty)	Normal History Used	
	Towing History Used	
Locks	Autolock,	On/Off
	Autounlock	On/Off
	Unlocking	One Stage or Two Stage
Maintenance	Coolant (if equipped)	Hold OK if coolant maintenance performed
	Fuel Filter (diesel only)	Hold OK if Fuel Filter Changed
Menu Control	Standard: with standard set, pressing the up/down arrows from a lower level menu will escape to the main menu. Memory On: with memory on set, pressing the up/down arrows will navigate to the previous lower level menu.	
Oil Life Reset (if equipped)	Set to XXX% (Press and hold OK to set).	
Remote Start	Duration	5, 10 or 15 minutes
	System	Enable/Disable
Wiper Control	On/Off	

\* If equipped—your vehicle may be equipped with some or all of these options.

## Instrument Cluster

<b>MyKey</b>	
Create MyKey	Hold OK to create MyKey
*AdvanceTrac	Always on or Selectable
*MAX Speed	80 MPH (120 km/h) or Off
*Speed Warning	45, 55 or 65 MPH (75, 90 or 105 km/h), Off
*Volume Limiter	On/Off
*Clear MyKeys	Hold OK to Clear MyKeys
*Only displays if MyKey is programmed.	
<b>Language</b>	
English, Español, Français	
<b>Units</b>	
Units	English or Metric
<b>System Reset</b>	
Hold OK to Reset System to Factory Default	

### **Information**

In this mode, you can view different vehicle system information and perform a system check.

When “Press OK for info” is displayed, pressing OK will give you information on the currently selected/displayed options. Information is only available when traveling less than 3 mph (5 km/h).

<b>MyKey</b>	
Admin Keys (Number of admin keys)	
MyKeys (Number of MyKeys programmed)	
MyKey Miles (km) (Distance traveled using a programmed MyKey)	
<b>System Check*</b>	
Oil Life	
Engine Hours	
Engine Idle Hours	
Doors	
Exhaust Fluid Level (diesel only)	
Brakes	
Trailer Brake	Gain and Output (when trailer is connected)
Ctrl.	No trailer (when no trailer is connected)

## Instrument Cluster

System Check*	
Trailer Sway	
Park Aid	Check Rear Park Aid
Fuel Level (distance to empty)	

\* If equipped—your vehicle may be equipped with some or all of these options.

Some items will only display during a system check if a problem has been detected. If an issue exists on one of the monitored systems, the message center will display the number of warnings that need immediate attention in red and the number of informational warnings will be listed in amber. Use the up/down arrow buttons to scroll through the list; press the right arrow button to display specific information on the highlighted warning.

### **Compass/transmission indicator displays**

The compass heading will display in the upper right corner of the message center; the transmission gear indicator displays in the right side of the message center when using the SelectShift Automatic™ transmission feature. These displays will not be shown in all screen modes. For example: when programming certain vehicle features or in certain information menus.

### **System warnings and status messages**

System warnings alert you to possible problems or malfunctions in your vehicle's operating systems.

In the event of a multiple warning situation, the message center will cycle the display to show all warnings by displaying each one for four seconds.

The message center will display the last selected feature if there are no more warning messages.

Types of messages and warnings:

- Some messages will appear briefly to inform you of something you may need to take action on or be informed of.
- Some messages will appear once and then again when the vehicle is restarted.
- Some messages will reappear after clearing or being reset if a problem or condition is still present and needs your attention.
- Some messages can be acknowledged and reset by pressing OK. This allows you to use the full message center functionality by clearing the message.

48

## Instrument Cluster

**DOOR AJAR** — Displayed when the door is not completely closed.

**DRIVER DOOR AJAR** — Displayed when the driver door is not completely closed.

**LEFT REAR DOOR AJAR** — Displayed when the rear left door is not completely closed.

**PASSENGER DOOR AJAR** — Displayed when the passenger door is not completely closed.

**RIGHT REAR DOOR AJAR** — Displayed when the rear right door is not completely closed.

**CHECK FUEL CAP** — Displayed when the fuel cap may not be properly closed. Refer to *What you should know about automotive fuels* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

**FUEL LEVEL LOW** — Displayed as a reminder of a low fuel condition.

**BRAKE FLUID LEVEL LOW** — Indicates the brake fluid level is low and the brake system should be inspected immediately. Refer to *Brake fluid* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

**CHECK BRAKE SYSTEM** — Displayed when the brake system needs servicing. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

**PARK BRAKE ENGAGED** — Displayed when the parking brake is set, the engine is running and the vehicle is driven more than 3 mph (5 km/h). If the warning stays on after the parking brake is released, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

**ADVANCETRAC OFF (if equipped)** — Displayed when the AdvanceTrac® system has been disabled by the driver.

**SERVICE ADVANCETRAC (if equipped)** — Displayed when the AdvanceTrac® system has detected a condition that requires service. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

**TRANSPORT MODE CONTACT DEALER (if equipped)** — Displayed when the vehicle is set to transport mode. The transport mode is used to disable certain vehicle functions to prevent battery discharge when the vehicle is in the transport/inventory phase and is not driven long enough to maintain the battery's charge. This mode can be disabled by doing the following: Turn the ignition on, without starting the engine. Press and release the brake pedal fully five times and press the hazard button four times (on, off, on, off) within 10 seconds.

**CHECK COOLANT ADDITIVE (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the coolant additive needs to be checked. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

## Instrument Cluster

**POWER REDUCED TO LOWER ENGINE TEMP** — Displayed when the engine temperature gauge needle moves to H. You may notice reduced engine power. Refer to *Engine coolant* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter for more information.

**CLEANING EXHAUST FILTER (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the vehicle has entered the cleaning mode. Various engine actions will raise the exhaust temperature in the Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) system to burn off the particles (exhaust soot). After the particles are burned off, the exhaust temperature will fall back to normal levels. This message is NORMAL. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.



**WARNING:** When the CLEANING EXHAUST FILTER message appears in the message center, do not park near flammable materials, vapors or structures until filter cleaning is complete.

**DRIVE TO CLEAN EXHAUST SYSTEM (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) is full of particles (exhaust soot) and the vehicle is not being operated in a manner to allow normal cleaning. This message will stay on until the exhaust filter cleaning has begun, at which time the CLEANING EXHAUST FILTER message will be displayed. It is recommended the vehicle operator drive the vehicle above 30 mph (48 km/h) until the CLEANING EXHAUST FILTER message turns off. This message is NORMAL. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**Note:** If this message is ignored, your vehicle will continue to fill the Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) with particles (exhaust soot). If cleaning is not permitted, the  light will illuminate and engine power may be limited. If the vehicle is still not operated in a manner to allow cleaning, the service engine soon light  will illuminate and engine power will be further limited. Dealer service will then be required to restore your vehicle to full-power operation.

**STOP SAFELY NOW (diesel engine only)** — Displayed and a chime sounds when the vehicle exhaust system temperature exceeds intended operating range. If this warning occurs, engine power is reduced and the engine will shut down when the vehicle speed is below 3 mph (5 km/h).

**Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible** and contact your authorized dealer. Depending on the severity of the over-temperature condition, the vehicle may not restart after cycling the ignition off. If the vehicle restarts, there may be limited power. If the exhaust over-temperature condition reoccurs, the message center will display

50

## Instrument Cluster

STOP SAFELY NOW, the chime will sound, and engine power will be reduced again and shut down below 3 mph (5 km/h). Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**ENGINE OIL DILUTED (diesel engine only)** — Displays once the engine oil has become diluted and needs to be changed. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**ENGINE OIL CHANGE SOON** — Displayed when the engine oil life remaining is 5% to 1%.

**OIL CHANGE REQUIRED** — Displayed when the oil life left reaches 0%.

**ENGINE TURNS OFF IN 1 SECOND (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the vehicle is in the final second of a countdown to where the engine will intentionally be turned off by the PCM. The diesel engine shutdown is a (regulatory) requirement which may be required of a particular diesel vehicle for sale in states requiring this feature. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**ENGINE TURNS OFF IN XX SECONDS (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the vehicle is in the final 30 seconds of a countdown to where the engine will intentionally be turned off by the PCM. The diesel engine shutdown for extended idling is an optional feature. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**ENGINE TURNED OFF (diesel engine only)** — Displayed after the 30 second countdown. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**ENGINE WARMING PLEASE WAIT (diesel engine only)** — Displayed in extremely cold weather, typically below  $-15^{\circ}\text{F}$  ( $-26^{\circ}\text{C}$ ), if the engine block heater is not utilized. The engine will not respond to accelerator pedal movement for 30 seconds; this is done so the engine oil can be properly circulated to avoid engine damage from lack of lubrication. A timer will begin a countdown from 30 seconds. Once the counter has reached 0 seconds, OK TO DRIVE will be displayed and the engine will respond to accelerator pedal movement. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**EXHAUST FILTER DRIVE COMPLETE (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) has been adequately cleaned after the DRIVE TO CLEAN EXHAUST FILTER followed by CLEANING EXHAUST FILTER messages have been displayed. This message is NORMAL. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

## Instrument Cluster

**EXHAUST FILTER CLEANED (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) has been adequately cleaned by the manual regeneration process (OCR). Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**EXHAUST CLEAN STOPPED (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) manual regeneration process (OCR) has been stopped. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**EXHAUST FLUID RANGE XXX MI (diesel engine only)** — Displays the distance you can travel before depleting the remaining diesel exhaust fluid. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**IN XX MILES, SPEED LIMITED TO XX MPH EXHAUST FLUID EMPTY (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the diesel exhaust fluid is nearing empty. The vehicle's top speed will become limited in the displayed distance. The diesel exhaust fluid must be replenished to resume normal operation of the vehicle. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**SPEED LIMITED TO XX MPH UPON RESTART EXHAUST FLUID EMPTY (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the remaining diesel exhaust fluid level is depleted. Speed will be limited upon restart. The diesel exhaust fluid must be replenished to resume normal operation of the vehicle. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**SPEED LIMITED TO XX MPH EXHAUST FLUID EMPTY (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the diesel exhaust fluid is empty. The diesel exhaust fluid must be replenished to resume normal operation of the vehicle. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**ENGINE IDLED SOON EXHAUST FLUID EMPTY (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the SCR system detects low exhaust fluid. The engine will eventually enter into an idle only mode. The diesel exhaust fluid must be replenished to resume normal operation of the vehicle. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**ENGINE IDLED - SEE OWNER'S MANUAL EXHAUST FLUID EMPTY (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when a problem exists with the SCR system. The vehicle will enter into an idle-only mode. If the exhaust fluid is empty, it must be replenished to resume normal operation of the vehicle. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

## Instrument Cluster

**IN XX MILES, SPEED LIMITED TO 50 MPH EXHAUST FLUID SYSTEM FAULT (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the SCR system detects a fault. The vehicle's top speed will become limited in the displayed distance starting at 50 miles (80 km) and count down from this point. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

**SPEED LIMITED TO 50 MPH UPON RESTART EXHAUST FLUID SYSTEM FAULT (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the SCR system detects a fault. The vehicle's top speed will become limited upon restarting. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

**SPEED LIMITED TO 50 MPH EXHAUST FLUID SYSTEM FAULT (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the SCR system detects a fault. The vehicle's top speed is limited. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

**ENGINE IDLED SOON EXHAUST FLUID SYSTEM FAULT SEE MANUAL (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the SCR system detects a fault. The engine will enter into an idle only mode. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

**ENGINE IDLED - SEE OWNER'S MANUAL EXHAUST FLUID SYSTEM FAULT (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when the SCR system detects a fault. The engine will eventually enter into an idle-only mode. Press OK to override the idle mode. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

**FUEL FILTER CHANGE REQUIRED (diesel engine only)** — Displayed when a fuel filter change is required. Refer to the *scheduled maintenance information*.

**LOW FUEL PRESSURE (diesel engine only)** — If this message appears during a cold start or during cold operation 32°F (0°C) up to 10 minutes after the initial cold start; monitor the message center and if it disappears and does not re-appear after the engine has fully warmed up, the low fuel pressure message is most likely caused by waxed or gelled fuel. To prevent this, use an anti-gel additive. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information. The customer warranty may be void from using additives that do not meet or exceed Ford specifications. If the low fuel pressure message persistently appears after re-fueling during the cold start and cold operation conditions defined previously and then disappear when the engine has fully warmed up, consider different fuel sources.

## Instrument Cluster

- **Low Fuel Operation:** If the message appears when the vehicle is warm and during low fuel tank level operation, i.e. the tank level is at or very near empty, refuel the vehicle and operate the vehicle. If the message reappears after fueling, see below. If the message does not come back, the low fuel pressure condition was due to low fuel levels in the fuel tank.
- **Normal Operation:** If the message appears during normal operation when the vehicle / engine is fully warm, and fuel level is not low, the fuel filters must be changed regardless of the maintenance schedule interval. If replacement of the fuel filter does not remedy the low fuel pressure message during normal operation as defined above, please take the vehicle to your authorized dealer.

**REDUCED ENGINE POWER (diesel engine only)** — Displayed approximately two hours after the DRIVE TO CLEAN EXHAUST SYSTEM message has displayed and the vehicle operator has not driven the vehicle above 30 mph (48 km/h) for at least 20 minutes to clean the DPF. At this point the vehicle must be serviced by an authorized dealer. This message is normal. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**WATER IN FUEL DRAIN FILTER SEE MANUAL (if equipped)** — Displayed when the water separator has reached a predetermined capacity and needs to be drained. Refer to your diesel supplement for more information.

**LOW TIRE PRESSURE** — Displayed when one or more tires on your vehicle have low tire pressure. Refer to *Inflating Your Tires* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter.

**TIRE PRESSURE MONITOR FAULT** — Displayed when the Tire Pressure Monitoring System is malfunctioning. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, have the system inspected by your authorized dealer.

**TIRE PRESSURE SENSOR FAULT** — Displayed when a tire pressure sensor is malfunctioning, or your spare tire is in use. For more information on how the system operates under these conditions, refer to *Understanding Your Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

**TIRES NOT TRAINED - REPEAT** — Displayed when an error occurs while training the TPMS. Refer to *TPMS reset procedure* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

54

## Instrument Cluster

**TRAIN INNER LEFT REAR TIRE** — Displayed when training the TPMS. Refer to *TPMS reset procedure* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

**TRAIN INNER RIGHT REAR TIRE** — Displayed when training the TPMS. Refer to *TPMS reset procedure* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

**TRAIN LEFT FRONT TIRE** — Displayed when training the TPMS system. Refer to *TPMS reset procedure* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

**TRAIN LEFT REAR TIRE** — Displayed when training the TPMS system. Refer to *TPMS reset procedure* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

**TRAIN RIGHT FRONT TIRE** — Displayed when training the TPMS system. Refer to *TPMS reset procedure* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

**TRAIN RIGHT REAR TIRE** — Displayed when training the TPMS system. Refer to *TPMS reset procedure* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

**TRAIN SPARE TIRE (if equipped)** — Displayed when training the TPMS. Refer to *TPMS reset procedure* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

**TRAINING COMPLETE** — Displayed when training of the TPMS system is complete. Refer to *TPMS reset procedure* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

**POWER STEERING ASSIST FAULT** — The power steering system has disabled power steering assist due to a system error; service is required.

**SERVICE POWER STEERING** — The power steering system has detected a condition that requires service.

**SERVICE POWER STEERING NOW** — The power steering system has detected a condition that requires service immediately.

**BUCKLE UP TO UNMUTE AUDIO** — Displayed when a MyKey® is in use and Belt-Minder® is activated. Refer to *MyKey®* in the *Locks and Security* chapter for more information.

**TRACTION CONTROL OFF (if equipped)** — Displayed when the traction control has been disabled by the driver. Refer to the *Driving* chapter for more information.

**CHECK 4X4 (if equipped)** — Displayed when a 4X4 system fault is present. For more information, refer to *Four-wheel drive (4WD) operation* in the *Driving* chapter.

## Instrument Cluster

**4X4 SHIFT IN PROGRESS (if equipped)** — Displayed when the 4X4 system is making a shift. For further information, refer to *Four-wheel drive (4WD) operation* in the *Driving* chapter.

**FOR 4X4 LOW APPLY BRAKE (if equipped)** — Displayed when trying to select 4X4 LOW. For more information, refer to *Four-wheel drive (4WD) operation* in the *Driving* chapter.

**FOR 4X4 LOW SHIFT TO N (if equipped)** — Displayed when 4X4 LOW is selected and the vehicle is stopped. For more information, refer to *Four-wheel drive (4WD) operation* in the *Driving* chapter.

**FOR 4X4 LOW SLOW TO 3 MPH (if equipped)** — Displayed when 4X4 LOW is selected while the vehicle is moving. For more information, refer to *Four-wheel drive (4WD) operation* in the *Driving* chapter.

**TO EXIT 4X4 LOW APPLY BRAKE (if equipped)** — Displayed when 2WD is selected from 4X4 LOW mode. For more information, refer to *Four-wheel drive (4WD) operation* in the *Driving* chapter.

**TO EXIT 4X4 LOW SHIFT TO N (if equipped)** — Displayed when 2WD is selected while the vehicle has been stopped in 4X4 LOW. For more information, refer to *Four-wheel drive (4WD) operation* in the *Driving* chapter.

**TO EXIT 4X4 LOW SLOW TO 3 MPH (if equipped)** — Displayed when 2WD is selected while the vehicle is operating in 4X4 LOW. For more information, refer to *Four-wheel drive (4WD) operation* in the *Driving* chapter.

### **TO ENGAGE LOCKING DIFFERENTIAL RELEASE**

**ACCELERATOR PEDAL (if equipped)** — Displayed when the electronic locking differential requests that the accelerator pedal be released in order to engage. See *Electronic locking differential* in the *Driving* chapter for more information.

**TO ENGAGE LOCKING DIFFERENTIAL SLOW TO XX MPH/KM/H (if equipped)** — Displayed when the electronic locking differential requests that a certain speed be met in order to engage. See *Electronic locking differential* in the *Driving* chapter for more information.

**LOCKING DIFFERENTIAL ENGAGED/DISENGAGED (if equipped)** — Displayed when the electronic locking differential is engaged. See *Electronic locking differential* in the *Driving* chapter for more information.

**LOCKING DIFFERENTIAL DISENGAGED (if equipped)** — Displayed when the electronic locking differential is disengaged. See *Electronic locking differential* in the *Driving* chapter for more information.

## Instrument Cluster

**FOR HILL DESCENT REDUCE SPEED (if equipped)** — Displayed when the vehicle speed requirement for off-road mode entry has not been met.

**FOR HILL DESCENT SELECT GEAR (if equipped)** — Displayed when the driver is able to select a transmission gear for hill descent mode.

**HILL DESCENT - DRIVER RESUME CONTROL (if equipped)** — Displayed when hill descent control mode is deactivated and the driver must resume control.

**HILL DESCENT CONTROL FAULT (if equipped)** — Displayed when a hill descent system fault is present.

**HILL DESCENT CONTROL OFF (if equipped)** — Displayed when hill descent control mode becomes inactive.

**HILL DESCENT CONTROL OFF SYSTEM COOLING (if equipped)** — Displayed when the hill descent system is cooling due to overuse.

**HILL DESCENT CONTROL READY (if equipped)** — Displayed when the hill descent control switch is turned on.

**REDUCE ACCELERATOR TO PREVENT WHEEL SLIP (if equipped)** — Displayed when the vehicle senses that torque to the drive wheels has overcome the available traction.

**SHIFT DELAYED PULL FORWARD (if equipped)** — May display when shifting to or from 4X4 LOW. For more information, refer to *Four-wheel drive (4WD) operation* in the *Driving* chapter.

**SLOW VEHICLE TO XX KM/H FOR ELD (if equipped)** — Displayed when the vehicle speed requirement for the electronic locking differential mode has not been met.

**SLOW VEHICLE TO XX MPH FOR ELD (if equipped)** — Displayed when the vehicle speed requirement for the electronic locking differential mode has not been met.

**CHECK LOCKING DIFFERENTIAL (if equipped)** — Displayed when an electronic locking differential (ELD) system fault is present. For more information, refer to *Electronic locking differential (ELD)* in the *Driving* chapter.

**CHECK SPEED DRIVE SAFELY** — Displayed when a MyKey® is in use and the optional setting is on and the vehicle exceeds a preselected speed. Refer to *MyKey®* in the *Locks and Security* chapter for more information.

## Instrument Cluster

**COULD NOT PROGRAM INTEGRATED KEY** — Displayed when an attempt is made to program a fifth integrated key to the remote keyless entry system. For more information on integrated key, refer to the *Locks and Security* chapter.

**ESC ALWAYS ON - MYKEY SETTING** — Displayed when a MyKey® is in use and the ESC cannot be deactivated. Refer to *MyKey®* in the *Locks and Security* chapter for more information.

**MYKEY ACTIVE DRIVE SAFELY** — Displayed when a MyKey® is in use. Refer to *MyKey®* in the *Locks and Security* chapter for more information.

**MYKEY COULD NOT PROGRAM** — Displayed when an attempt is made to program a spare key using two existing MyKeys. Refer to *MyKey®* in the *Locks and Security* chapter for more information.

**SECURITY SYSTEM FAULT (if equipped)** — Displayed when the security system has detected a fault. See your authorized dealer for service.

**SPEED LIMITED TO 130 KM/H** — Displayed when starting the vehicle and MyKey® is in use and the MyKey speed limit is on. Refer to *MyKey®* in the *Locks and Security* chapter for more information.

**SPEED LIMITED TO 80 MPH** — Displayed when starting the vehicle and MyKey® is in use and the MyKey speed limit is on. Refer to *MyKey®* in the *Locks and Security* chapter for more information.

**VEHICLE AT TOP SPEED - MYKEY SETTING** — Displayed when a MyKey® is in use and the MyKey speed limit is on and the vehicle speed is 80 mph (130 km/h). Refer to *MyKey®* in the *Locks and Security* chapter for more information.

**VEHICLE NEAR TOP SPEED** — Displayed when a MyKey® is in use and the MyKey speed limit is on and the vehicle speed is approaching 80 mph (130 km/h). Refer to *MyKey®* in the *Locks and Security* chapter for more information.

**CHECK REAR PARK AID (if equipped)** — Displayed when the transmission is in R (Reverse) and the park aid is disabled.

**REAR PARK AID OFF (if equipped)** — Displayed when the rear park aid is disabled by the driver.

**REAR PARK AID ON (if equipped)** — Displayed when the rear park aid is enabled.

## Instrument Cluster

**TO STOP ALARM, START VEHICLE (if equipped)** — Displayed when the perimeter alarm system is armed and the vehicle is entered using the key on the driver's side door. In order to prevent the perimeter alarm system from triggering, the ignition must be turned to start or on before the 12 second chime expires. See *Perimeter alarm system* in the *Locks and security* chapter.

**TRAILER BRAKE GAIN: XX.X [OUTPUT] (if equipped)** — Displays the current gain setting for the trailer brake. Refer to *Trailer towing* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

**TRAILER BRAKE GAIN: XX.X NO TRAILER (if equipped)** — Displays the current gain setting for the trailer brake when a trailer is not connected. Refer to *Trailer towing* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

**TRAILER BRAKE MODULE FAULT (if equipped)** — Displayed and accompanied by a single chime, in response to faults sensed by the TBC. Refer to *Trailer towing* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

**TRAILER CONNECTED (if equipped)** — Displayed when a correct trailer connection (a trailer with electric trailer brakes) is sensed during a given ignition cycle. Refer to *Trailer towing* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

**TRAILER DISCONNECTED (if equipped)** — Displayed when a trailer connection becomes disconnected, either intentionally or unintentionally, and has been sensed during a given ignition cycle. Refer to *Trailer towing* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

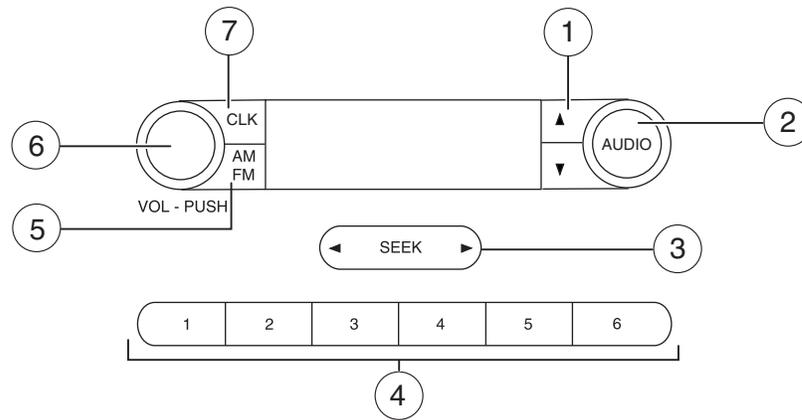
**TRAILER SWAY REDUCE SPEED (if equipped)** — Displayed when the trailer sway control has detected trailer sway. For more information, refer to the *Driving* chapter for more information.

**WIRING FAULT ON TRAILER (if equipped)** — Displayed if there are certain faults in the vehicle wiring and trailer wiring/brake system. Refer to *Trailer towing* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

## Entertainment Systems

### AUDIO SYSTEMS

#### AM/FM stereo system (if equipped)



**⚠ WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device or feature that may take their focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of the vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving, encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible and that you become aware of applicable state and local laws that may affect use of electronic devices while driving.

The AM/FM stereo system does not contain rear speakers; only front driver side and passenger side speakers.

**Accessory delay:** Your vehicle is equipped with accessory delay. With this feature, the window switches and radio may be used for up to 10 minutes after the ignition is turned off or until either front door is opened.

## Entertainment Systems

1. **▲ / ▼ (Tuner):** Press to manually go up or down the radio frequency. Press and hold for a fast advance through radio frequencies. Also use in AUDIO mode to gain access to various settings.



2. **AUDIO:** Press AUDIO repeatedly to access the following settings:



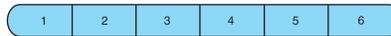
- **TREB (Treble):** Press AUDIO to reach the treble setting. Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK ▶ .
- **BASS (Bass):** Press AUDIO to reach the bass setting. Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK ▶ .
- **BAL (Balance):** Press AUDIO to reach the balance setting. Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK ▶ to adjust between the left and right speakers.
- **Setting the clock:** Press and hold CLK until the hours start to flash, then use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK ▶ to adjust. To adjust minutes, press CLK again to make the minutes start to flash and use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK ▶ to adjust. Press CLK again to exit the clock setting mode.

**Note:** If your vehicle is equipped with a navigation system, refer to *Setting the clock* in your *Navigation supplement*.

3. **SEEK:** Press ◀ SEEK ▶ to access the previous/next strong station.



4. **Memory presets:** To set a station: Select frequency band AM/FM1/FM2; tune to a station, press and hold a preset button until sound returns. You may store up to six stations in each frequency band for a total of 18.



5. **AM/FM:** Press AM/FM to select AM/FM1/FM2 frequency band.



## Entertainment Systems

6. **ON/OFF/Volume:** Press VOL - PUSH to turn ON/OFF. Turn VOL - PUSH to increase/decrease volume.

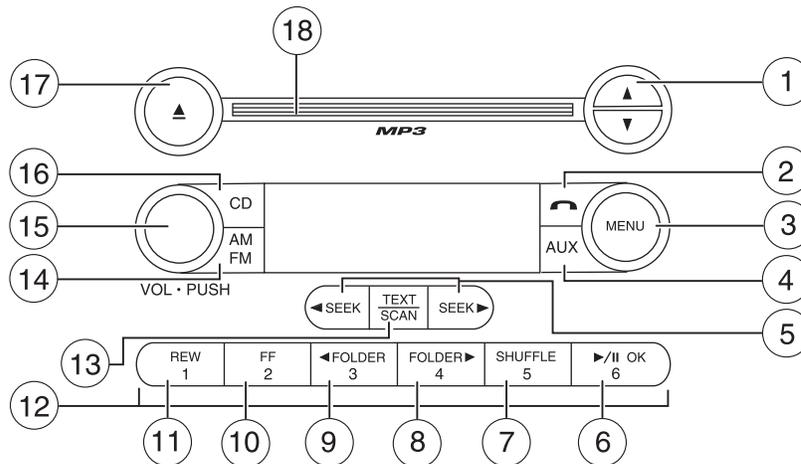
VOL - PUSH



7. **CLK (Clock):** Press CLK to toggle between the clock and radio frequency.



### AM/FM stereo single CD/satellite-compatible sound system (if equipped)



**⚠ WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device or feature that may take their focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of the vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving, encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible and that you become aware of applicable state and local laws that may affect use of electronic devices while driving.

## Entertainment Systems

**Accessory delay:** Your vehicle is equipped with accessory delay which allows you to operate the window switches and the audio for up to 10 minutes after the ignition has been turned off or until either front door is opened.

1. ▲ / ▼ : Press ▲ / ▼ to manually go up or down the radio frequency. Press and hold for a fast advance through radio frequencies.



**In satellite radio mode (if equipped),** press ▲ / ▼ to tune to the next/previous channel.

*Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS® radio subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.*

2. ☎ (Phone): If your vehicle is equipped with SYNC®, press to access SYNC PHONE features. For further information, please refer to your SYNC® supplement. If your vehicle is not equipped with SYNC®, the display will read NO PHONE.



3. MENU: Press MENU repeatedly to access to the following settings:



**Setting the clock:** Press MENU until SET HOUR or SET MINUTES is displayed. Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to adjust the hours/minutes.

**Note:** If your vehicle is equipped with a navigation system, refer to *Setting the clock* in your *Navigation supplement*.

**SATELLITE RADIO MENU (if equipped):** Press MENU when satellite radio mode is active to access. Press OK to enter into the satellite radio menu. Press ▲ / ▼ to cycle through the following options:

- **CATEGORY:** Press OK to enter category mode. Press ▲ / ▼ to scroll through the list of available SIRIUS® channel Categories (Pop, Rock, News, etc.) Press OK when the desired category appears in the display. After a category is selected, press SEEK to search for that specific category of channels only (i.e. ROCK). You may also select CATEGORY ALL to seek all available SIRIUS® categories and channels. Press OK to close and return to the main menu.

## Entertainment Systems

- **SAVE SONG:** Press OK to save the currently playing song title in the system's memory. (If you try to save something other than a song, CANT SAVE will appear in the display.) When the chosen song is playing on any satellite radio channel, the system will alert you with an audible prompt. Press OK while SONG ALERT is in the display and the system will take you to the channel playing the desired song. You can save up to 20 song titles. If you attempt to save a song when the system is full, the display will read REPLACE SONG? Press OK to access the saved songs and press ▲ / ▼ to cycle through the saved songs. When the song appears in the display that you would like to replace, press OK. SONG REPLACED will appear in the display.
- **DELETE SONG:** Press OK to delete a song title from the system's memory. Press ▲ / ▼ to cycle through the saved songs. When the song title appears in the display that you would like to delete, press OK. The song will appear in the display for confirmation. Press OK again and the display will read SONG DELETED. If you do not want to delete the currently listed song, press ▲ / ▼ to select either RETURN or CANCEL.  
**Note:** If there are no songs presently saved, the display will read NO SONGS.
- **DELETE ALL SONGS:** Press OK to delete all songs from the system's memory. The display will read ARE YOU SURE? Press OK to confirm deletion of all saved songs and the display will read ALL DELETED.  
**Note:** If there are no songs presently saved, the display will read NO SONGS.
- **ENABLE ALERTS / DISABLE ALERTS:** Press OK to enable/disable the satellite alert status which alerts you when your selected songs are playing on a satellite radio channel. (The system default is disabled.) SONG ALERTS ENABLED/DISABLED will appear in the display. The menu listing will display the opposite state. For example, if you have chosen to enable the song alerts, the menu listing will read DISABLE as the alerts are currently on, so your other option is to turn them off.

*Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS® radio subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.*

**AUTOSET:** Press MENU until the display reads AUTOSET. Autoset allows you to set the strongest local radio stations without losing your original manually set preset stations for AM/FM1/FM2. Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to turn on/off.

## Entertainment Systems

When the six strongest stations are filled, the station stored in preset 1 will begin playing. If there are less than six strong stations, the system will store the last one in the remaining presets.

**BASS:** Press MENU to reach the bass setting. Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to adjust.

**TREB (Treble):** Press MENU to reach the treble setting. Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to adjust.

**L . . R (Balance):** Press MENU to reach the balance setting. Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to adjust the audio between the left (L) and right (R) speakers.

**B . . F (Fade):** Press MENU to reach the fade setting. Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to adjust the audio between the back (B) and front (F) speakers.

**SPEEDVOL (Speed sensitive volume, if equipped):** Press MENU to reach the SPEEDVOL setting. Radio volume automatically gets louder with increasing vehicle speed to compensate for road and wind noise. Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to adjust.

The default setting is *off*; increasing your vehicle speed will not change the volume level.

Adjust 1–7: Increasing this setting from 1 (lowest setting) to 7 (highest setting) allows the radio volume to automatically change slightly with vehicle speed to compensate for road and wind noise.

Recommended level is 1–3; SPEED OFF turns the feature off and level 7 is the maximum setting.

**Track/Folder mode:** Available only on MP3 discs in CD mode. In Track mode, pressing ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ will scroll through all tracks on the disc

In Folder mode, pressing ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ will scroll only through tracks within the selected folder.

Press ◀ FOLDER, FOLDER ▶ to access the previous/next folder (if available).

**COMPRESS (Compression):** Available only in CD/MP3 mode. Press MENU until COMPRESS ON/OFF appears in the display.

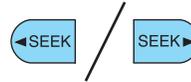
## Entertainment Systems

Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to toggle ON/OFF. When COMPRESS is ON, the system will bring the soft and loud CD passages together for a more consistent listening level.

4. **AUX:** Press repeatedly to cycle through LINE IN (auxiliary audio mode, if equipped) and SAT1, SAT2 and SAT3 modes (satellite radio, if equipped). For location and further information on auxiliary audio mode, refer to *Auxiliary input jack* later in this chapter. *Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS® radio subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.*



5. **SEEK: In radio mode,** press ◀ / ▶ to access the previous/next strong station.



**In CD/MP3 mode,** press ◀ / ▶ to access the previous/next CD/MP3 track.

**In satellite radio mode (if equipped),** press ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to seek to the previous/next channel. If a specific category is selected, (Jazz, Rock, News, etc.), press ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to seek to the previous/next channel in the selected category. Press and hold ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to fast seek through the previous /next channels.

In TEXT MODE, press ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to view the previous/additional display text.

In CATEGORY MODE, press ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to select a category. *Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS® radio subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.*

6. ▶ / || **OK (Play/Pause):** This control is operational in CD/MP3 mode. When a CD/MP3 is playing, press to pause or play the current CD/MP3. The CD/MP3 status will display in the radio display.



**OK:** Use in various menu selections.

## Entertainment Systems

7. **SHUFFLE:** In CD/MP3 mode, press SHUFFLE to engage shuffle mode. SHUFFLE ON will appear in the display. If you wish to engage shuffle mode right away, press SEEK to begin random play. Otherwise, random play will begin when the current track is finished playing. CD SHUF will appear in the display. To disengage, press SHUFFLE again. SHUFFLE OFF will appear in the display.



**Note:** In CD/MP3 mode, press SHUFFLE to play the tracks in random order. In MP3 folder mode, the system will randomly play all tracks within the current folder.

8. **FOLDER** : In folder mode, press FOLDER to access next folder on MP3 discs, if available.



9. **FOLDER:** In folder mode, press FOLDER to access the previous folder on MP3 discs, if available.



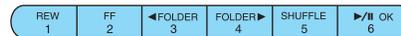
10. **FF (Fast forward):** Press FF to manually advance in a CD/MP3 track.



11. **REW (Rewind):** Press REW to manually reverse in a CD/MP3 track.



12. **Memory presets:** To set a station: Select frequency band AM/FM1/FM2; tune to a station, press and hold a preset control until sound returns. You may store up to six stations in each frequency band for a total of 18.



**In satellite radio mode (if equipped),** there are 18 available presets, six each for SAT1, SAT2 and SAT3. To save satellite channels in your memory presets, tune to the desired channel then press and hold a preset control until sound returns.

*Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS® radio subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.*

13. **TEXT/SCAN: In radio and CD/MP3 mode,** press and hold for a brief sampling of radio stations or CD tracks. Press again to stop.



**In CD/MP3 mode,** press and release to display track title, artist name, and disc title.

## Entertainment Systems

**In satellite radio mode (if equipped)**, press and release to enter TEXT MODE and display the current song title. While in TEXT MODE, press again to scroll through the current song title, artist, channel category and the SIRIUS® long channel name.

**In TEXT MODE** sometimes the display requires additional text to be displayed. When the “>” indicator is active, press SEEK ► to view the additional display text. When the “<” indicator is active, press ◀ SEEK to view the previous display text.

**In satellite radio mode (if equipped)**, press and hold to hear a brief sampling of the next channels. Press again to stop. In CATEGORY MODE, press SCAN to hear a brief sampling of the channels in the selected category. Press again to stop.

*Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS® radio subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.*

14. **AM/FM:** Press AM/FM to select AM/FM1/FM2 frequency band.



15. **ON/OFF/Volume:** Press VOL-PUSH to turn on/off. Turn VOL-PUSH to increase/decrease volume.



**Note:** If the volume is set above a certain level and the ignition is turned off, the volume will come back on at a “nominal” listening level when the ignition switch is turned back on.

16. **CD:** Press to enter CD/MP3 mode. If a CD is already loaded into the system, CD/MP3 play will begin where it ended last.



17. **▲ (CD eject):** Press to eject a CD.



18. **CD slot:** Insert a CD label side up in the CD slot.



## Entertainment Systems

### Auxiliary input jack (if equipped)

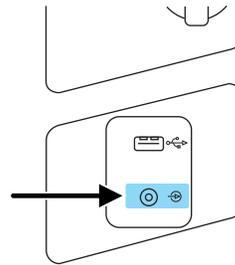


**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device or feature that may take their focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of the vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving, encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible and that you become aware of applicable state and local laws that may affect use of electronic devices while driving.

Your vehicle may be equipped with an auxiliary input jack (AIJ). The auxiliary input jack, located on the instrument panel below the power point, provides a way to connect your portable music player to the in-vehicle audio system. This allows the audio from a portable music player to be played through the vehicle speakers with high fidelity.

To achieve optimal performance, please observe the following instructions when attaching your portable music device to the audio system.

If your vehicle is equipped with a navigation system, refer to the *Auxiliary input jack* section in the *Audio Features* chapter of your *Navigation System* supplement.



#### Required equipment:

1. Any portable music player designed to be used with headphones
2. An audio extension cable with stereo male 1/8 in. (3.5 mm) connectors at each end

#### To play your portable music player using the auxiliary input jack:

1. Begin with the vehicle parked and the radio turned off.
2. Ensure that the battery in your portable music player is new or fully charged and that the device is turned off.
3. Attach one end of the audio extension cable to the headphone output of your player and the other end of the audio extension cable to the AIJ in your vehicle.
4. Turn the radio on, using either a tuned FM station or a CD loaded into the system. Adjust the volume to a comfortable listening level.

## Entertainment Systems

5. Turn the portable music player on and adjust the volume to 1/2 the volume.
6. Press AUX on the vehicle radio repeatedly until LINE, LINE IN or SYNC LINE IN appears in the display. You should hear audio from your portable music player although it may be low.
7. Adjust the sound on your portable music player until it reaches the level of the FM station or CD by switching back and forth between the AUX and FM or CD controls.

### Troubleshooting:

1. Do not connect the audio input jack to a line level output. Line level outputs are intended for connection to a home stereo and are not compatible with the AIJ. The AIJ will only work correctly with devices that have a headphone output with a volume control.
2. Do not set the portable music player's volume level higher than is necessary to match the volume of the CD or FM radio in your audio system as this will cause distortion and will reduce sound quality. Many portable music players have different output levels, so not all players should be set at the same levels. Some players will sound best at full volume and others will need to be set at a lower volume.
3. If the music sounds distorted at lower listening levels, turn the portable music player volume down. If the problems persist, replace or recharge the batteries in the portable music player.
4. The portable music player must be controlled in the same manner when it is used with headphones as the AIJ does not provide control (play, pause, etc.) over the attached portable music player.
5. For safety reasons, connecting or adjusting the settings on your portable music player should not be attempted while the vehicle is moving. Also, the portable music player should be stored in a secure location, such as the center console or the glove box, when the vehicle is in motion. The audio extension cable must be long enough to allow the portable music player to be safely stored while the vehicle is in motion.

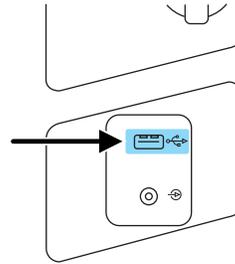
### USB port (if equipped)



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device that may take their focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of the vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving, encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible and that you become aware of applicable state and local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

## Entertainment Systems

Your vehicle may be equipped with a USB port located on the instrument panel. This feature allows you to plug in media playing devices, memory sticks, and also to charge devices if they support this feature. For further information on this feature, refer to *Accessing and using your USB port* in the SYNC® supplement or *Navigation System* supplement.



### GENERAL AUDIO INFORMATION

#### Radio frequencies:

AM and FM frequencies are established by the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and the Canadian Radio and Telecommunications Commission (CRTC). Those frequencies are:

AM: 530, 540–1700, 1710 kHz

FM: 87.7, 87.9–107.7, 107.9 MHz

#### Radio reception factors:

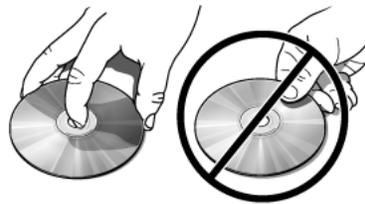
There are three factors that can affect radio reception:

- Distance/strength: The further you travel from an FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.
- Terrain: Hills, mountains, tall buildings, power lines, electric fences, traffic lights and thunderstorms can interfere with your reception.
- Station overload: When you pass a broadcast tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and play while the weak station frequency is displayed.

#### CD/CD player care

Do:

- Handle discs by their edges only. (Never touch the playing surface).
- Inspect discs before playing.
- Clean only with an approved CD cleaner.



## Entertainment Systems

- Wipe discs from the center out.

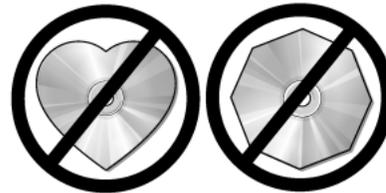


Don't:

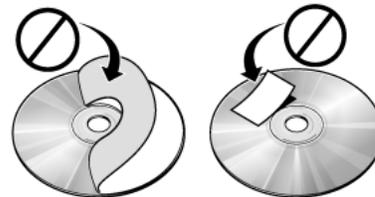
- Expose discs to direct sunlight or heat sources for extended periods of time.
- Clean using a circular motion.

**CD units are designed to play commercially pressed 4.75 in (12 cm) audio compact discs only. Due to technical incompatibility, certain recordable and re-recordable compact discs may not function correctly when used in Ford CD players.**

**Do not use any irregular shaped CDs or discs with a scratch protection film attached.**



**CDs with homemade paper (adhesive) labels should not be inserted into the CD player as the label may peel and cause the CD to become jammed. It is recommended that homemade CDs be identified with permanent felt tip marker rather than adhesive labels. Ballpoint pens may damage CDs. Please contact your authorized dealer for further information.**



## Entertainment Systems

### Audio system warranty and service

Refer to the *Warranty Guide/Customer Information Guide* for audio system warranty information. If service is necessary, see your dealer or qualified technician.

### MP3 track and folder structure

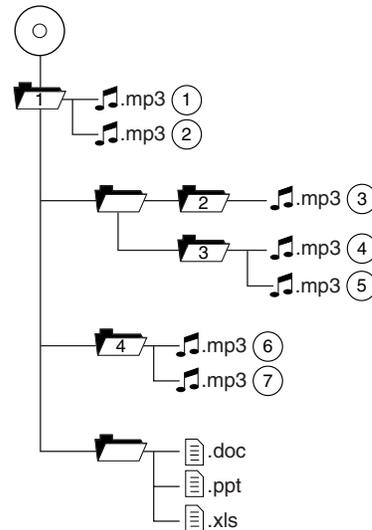
Your MP3 system recognizes MP3 individual tracks and folder structure as follows:

- There are two different modes for MP3 disc playback: MP3 track mode (system default) and MP3 folder mode. For more information on track and folder mode, refer to *Sample MP3 structure* in the following section.
- MP3 track mode ignores any folder structure on the MP3 disc. The player numbers each MP3 track on the disc (noted by the .mp3 file extension) from T001 to a maximum of T255.  
**Note:** The maximum number of playable MP3 files may be less depending on the structure of the CD and exact model of radio present.
- MP3 folder mode represents a folder structure consisting of one level of folders. The CD player numbers all MP3 tracks on the disc (noted by the .mp3 file extension) and all folders containing MP3 files, from F001 (folder) T001 (track) to F253 T255.
- Creating discs with only one level of folders will help with navigation through the disc files.

## Entertainment Systems

### Sample MP3 structure

If you are burning your own MP3 discs, it is important to understand how the system will read the structures you create. While various files may be present, (files with extensions other than mp3), only files with the .mp3 extension will be played. Other files will be ignored by the system. This enables you to use the same MP3 disc for a variety of tasks on your work computer, home computer and your in vehicle system.



In track mode, the system will display and play the structure as if it were only one level deep (all .mp3 files will be played, regardless of being in a specific folder). In folder mode, the system will only play the .mp3 files in the current folder.

### Satellite radio information (if equipped)

**Satellite radio channels:** SIRIUS® broadcasts a variety of music, news, sports, weather, traffic and entertainment satellite radio channels. For more information and a complete list of SIRIUS® satellite radio channels, visit [www.sirius.com](http://www.sirius.com) in the United States, [www.siriuscanada.ca](http://www.siriuscanada.ca) in Canada, or call SIRIUS® at 1-888-539-7474.

**Satellite radio reception factors:** To receive the satellite signal, your vehicle has been equipped with a satellite radio antenna located on the roof of your vehicle. The vehicle roof provides the best location for an unobstructed, open view of the sky, a requirement of a satellite radio system. Like AM/FM, there are several factors that can affect satellite radio reception performance:

- **Antenna obstructions:** For optimal reception performance, keep the antenna clear of snow and ice build-up and keep luggage and other material as far away from the antenna as possible.

## Entertainment Systems

- **Terrain:** Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with your reception.
- **Station overload:** When you pass a ground based broadcast repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and result in an audio mute.

Unlike AM/FM audible static, you will hear an audio mute when there is a satellite radio signal interference. Your radio display may display NO SIGNAL to indicate the interference.

**SIRIUS® satellite radio service:** SIRIUS® satellite radio is a subscription based satellite radio service that broadcasts music, sports, news and entertainment programming. A service fee is required in order to receive SIRIUS® service. Vehicles that are equipped with a factory installed SIRIUS® satellite radio system include hardware and a limited subscription term, which begins on the date of sale or lease of the vehicle.

For information on extended subscription terms, the online media player and other SIRIUS® features, please contact SIRIUS® at 1-888-539-7474.

**Note:** SIRIUS® reserves the unrestricted right to change, rearrange, add or delete programming including canceling, moving or adding particular channels, and its prices, at any time, with or without notice to you. Ford Motor Company shall not be responsible for any such programming changes.

**Satellite radio electronic serial number (ESN):** This 12-digit Satellite Serial Number is needed to activate, modify or track your satellite radio account. You will need this number when communicating with SIRIUS®. While in satellite radio mode, you can view this number on the radio display by pressing the AUX and preset 1 controls simultaneously.

## Entertainment Systems

Radio Display	Condition	Action Required
ACQUIRING	Radio requires more than two seconds to produce audio for the selected channel.	No action required. This message should disappear shortly.
SAT FAULT	Internal module or system failure present.	If this message does not clear within a short period of time, or with an ignition key cycle, your receiver may have a fault. See your authorized dealer for service.
INVALID CHNL	Channel no longer available.	This previously available channel is no longer available. Tune to another channel. If the channel was one of your presets, you may choose another channel for that preset button.
UNSUBSCRIBED	Subscription not available for this channel.	Contact SIRIUS® at 1-888-539-7474 to subscribe to the channel or tune to another channel.
NO TEXT	Artist information not available.	Artist information not available at this time on this channel. The system is working properly.
NO TEXT	Song title information not available.	Song title information not available at this time on this channel. The system is working properly.

## Entertainment Systems

Radio Display	Condition	Action Required
NO TEXT	Category information not available.	Category information not available at this time on this channel. The system is working properly.
NO SIGNAL	Loss of signal from the SIRIUS® satellite or SIRIUS® tower to the vehicle antenna.	You are in a location that is blocking the SIRIUS® signal (i.e., tunnel, under an overpass, dense foliage, etc.). The system is working properly. When you move into an open area, the signal should return.
UPDATING	Update of channel programming in progress.	No action required. The process may take up to three minutes.
CALL SIRIUS® 1-888-539-7474	Satellite service has been deactivated by SIRIUS® satellite radio.	Call SIRIUS® at 1-888-539-7474 to re-activate or resolve subscription issues.

### NAVIGATION SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

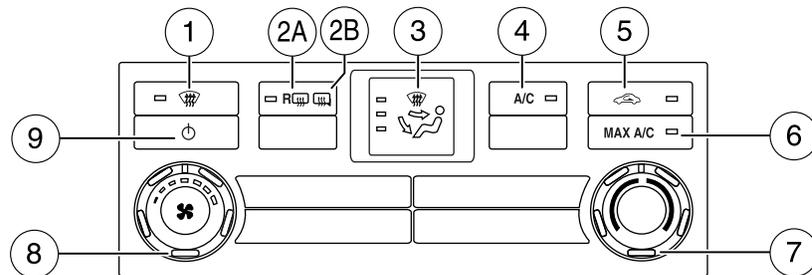
Your vehicle may be equipped with a navigation system. Refer to the *Navigation System* supplement for further information.

### SYNC® (IF EQUIPPED)

Your vehicle may be equipped with SYNC®, a hands-free communications and entertainment system with special phone and media features. For more information, please refer to the *SYNC®* supplement or to the *SYNC®* section in the *Navigation System* supplement (if equipped).

## Climate Controls

### SINGLE ZONE CLIMATE CONTROL



1. **Defrost:** Distributes outside air through the windshield defroster vents and de-mister vents. Can be used to clear the windshield of fog and thin ice. The system will automatically provide outside air to reduce window fogging. Press this button again to return to the previous air flow selection.
2. A. **Rear defroster (if equipped):** Press to activate/deactivate the rear window defroster. Refer to *Rear window defroster* later in this chapter for more information. If your vehicle is equipped with both rear defroster and heated mirrors, the same button will activate both.
2. B. **Heated mirrors (if equipped):** Press to activate/deactivate. This feature will remove ice and snow from the side view mirrors.
3. **Multifunction control:** Press repeatedly to cycle through the settings to choose:
  - : Distributes air through the windshield defroster vents, de-mister vents, floor vents and rear seat floor vents. The system will automatically provide outside air to reduce window fogging.
  - : Distributes air through the instrument panel vents.
  - : Distributes air through the instrument panel vents, floor vents, rear seat floor vents and de-mister vents.
  - : Distributes air through the floor vents and rear seat floor vents.
4. **A/C (if equipped):** Press to activate/deactivate air conditioning. Use with recirculated air to improve cooling performance and efficiency. A/C engages automatically in MAX A/C, (defrost) and (floor/defrost).

## Climate Controls

5.  **Recirculated air (if equipped):** Press to activate/deactivate air recirculation in the vehicle. Recirculated air may reduce the amount of time needed to cool down the interior of the vehicle and may also help reduce undesired odors from reaching the interior of the vehicle. Recirculated air engages automatically when MAX A/C is selected or can be engaged manually in any airflow mode except  (defrost). When the ignition switch is turned off and back on, the climate system will return to the recirculated air mode only if the A/C button LED is illuminated and the air distribution selection is either  (panel) or  (panel/floor).
6. **MAX A/C (if equipped):** Distributes recirculated air through the instrument panel vents to cool the vehicle. This re-cooling of the interior air is more economical and efficient than normal A/C mode. Recirculated air may also help reduce undesirable odors from entering the vehicle. Press the MAX A/C button again for normal A/C operation.
7. **Temperature control:** Controls the temperature of the airflow in the vehicle.
8.  **Fan speed adjustment:** Controls the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.
9.  **Power:** Press to activate/deactivate the climate control system. When the system is off, outside air is prevented from entering the vehicle.

### Operating tips

- To reduce fog build-up on the windshield during humid weather, select  (defrost) or  (floor/defrost). Temperature and/or fan speed can also be increased to improve clearing.
- To reduce humidity build-up inside the vehicle: do not drive with the system off or with recirculated air engaged and A/C off.
- Do not put objects under the front seats that will interfere with the airflow to the back seats.
- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.
- To improve the A/C cool down, drive with the windows slightly open for 2-3 minutes after start up or until the vehicle has been “aired out.”
- A small amount of air may be felt from the floor vent regardless of the air distribution setting that is selected.

## Climate Controls

If you are driving during extreme high ambient temperatures and idling for extended periods of time in gear, it is recommended to run the A/C in the MAX A/C position, adjust the blower fan speed to the lowest setting and put the vehicle's transmission into the P (Park) position to continue to receive cool air from your A/C system.

### **For maximum cooling performance (MAX A/C):**

1. Select MAX A/C.
2. Move the temperature control to the coolest setting.
3. Set the fan speed to the highest setting and then adjust as necessary to maintain comfort.
  - A/C and  (recirculated air) will be automatically selected.
  - Airflow will automatically be directed out of the panel vents.

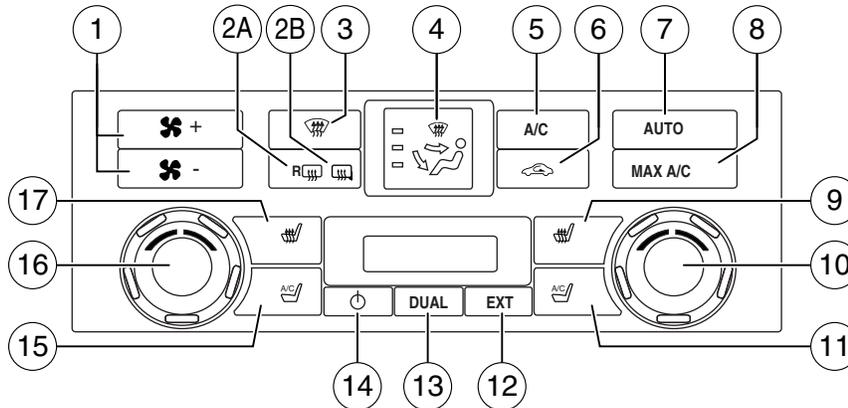
To aid in side window defogging/demisting in cold weather:

1. Select  (panel/floor).
2. Select A/C.
3. Adjust the temperature control to maintain comfort.
4. Set the fan speed to the highest setting.
5. Direct the outer instrument panel vents towards the side windows.

To increase airflow to the outer instrument panel vents, close the vents located in the middle of the instrument panel.

## Climate Controls

### DUAL ZONE AUTOMATIC TEMPERATURE CONTROL (IF EQUIPPED)



*Temperature conversion:* To switch between Fahrenheit and Celsius, refer to *Optional or Standard message center* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter.

1. - / + **Fan speed control:** Press to decrease/increase the fan speed.
2. A. **Rear defroster (if equipped):** Press to activate/deactivate the rear window defroster. Refer to *Rear window defroster* later in this chapter for more information. If your vehicle is equipped with both rear defroster and heated mirrors, the same button will activate both.
2. B. **Heated mirrors (if equipped):** Press to activate/deactivate. This feature will remove ice and snow from the side view mirrors.
3. **Defrost:** Distributes outside air through the windshield defroster vents and de-mister vents. Can be used to clear the windshield of fog and thin ice. The system will automatically provide outside air to reduce window fogging. Press this button again to return to the previous air flow selection.

## Climate Controls

4.  **Manual control:** Allows you to manually select where airflow is directed. To return to full automatic control, press AUTO. When choosing to control airflow manually, press repeatedly to toggle through the settings to choose:
-  : Distributes air through the windshield defroster vents, de-mister vents, floor vents and rear seat floor vents. The system will automatically provide outside air to reduce window fogging.
  -  : Distributes air through the instrument panel vents.
  -  : Distributes air through the instrument panel vents, floor vents, rear seat floor vents and de-mister vents.
  -  : Distributes air through the floor vents and rear seat floor vents.
5. **A/C:** Press to activate/deactivate air conditioning. Use with recirculated air to improve cooling performance and efficiency. A/C engages automatically in MAX A/C,  (defrost) and  (floor/defrost).
6.  **Recirculated air:** Press to activate/deactivate air recirculation in the vehicle. Recirculated air may reduce the amount of time needed to cool down the interior of the vehicle and may also help reduce undesired odors from reaching the interior of the vehicle. Recirculated air engages automatically when MAX A/C is selected or can be engaged manually in any airflow mode except  (defrost). When the ignition switch is turned off and back on, the climate system will return to the recirculated air mode only if the A/C button LED is illuminated and the air distribution selection is either  (panel) or  (panel/floor).
7. **AUTO:** Press to engage automatic temperature control. Select the desired temperature using the temperature control. The system will automatically determine fan speed, airflow location, A/C on or off, and outside or recirculated air, to heat or cool the vehicle to reach the desired temperature.
8. **MAX A/C:** Distributes recirculated air through the instrument panel vents to cool the vehicle. This re-cooling of the interior air is more economical and efficient than normal A/C mode. Recirculated air may also help reduce undesirable odors from entering the vehicle. Press the MAX A/C button again for normal A/C operation.
9.  **Passenger heated seat (if equipped):** Press to control the passenger heated seat. Refer to *Heated and cooled seats* in the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter for more information.

## Climate Controls

10. **Passenger temperature:** Turn to increase/decrease the air temperature on the passenger side of the vehicle. The recommended initial setting is between 72°F (22°C) and 75°F (24°C), then adjust for comfort. The passenger side temperature setting will appear in the upper right corner of the display.

11.  **Passenger cooled seat (if equipped):** Press to control the passenger cooled seat. Refer to *Heated and cooled seats* in the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter for more information.

12. **EXT:** Press to display the exterior temperature. Press again to display cabin temperature settings. To switch between Fahrenheit and Celsius, refer to *Message center* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter.

13. **DUAL:** Press to engage/disengage separate passenger side temperature control.

14.  **Power:** Press to activate/deactivate the climate control system. When the system is off, outside air is prevented from entering the vehicle.

15.  **Driver cooled seat (if equipped):** Press to control the driver cooled seat. Refer to *Heated and cooled seats* in the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter for more information.

16. **Driver temperature:** Turn to increase/decrease the air temperature on the driver side of the vehicle. The control also adjusts the passenger side temperature when PASS TEMP is disengaged. The recommended initial setting is between 72°F (22°C) and 75°F (24°C), then adjust for comfort. The driver side temperature setting will appear in the upper left corner of the display.

17.  **Driver heated seat (if equipped):** Press to control the driver heated seat. Refer to *Heated and cooled seats* in the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter for more information.

### Operating tips

- To reduce fog build-up on the windshield during humid weather, select  (defrost)  (floor/defrost).
- To reduce humidity build-up inside the vehicle, do not drive with the system off, or with  (recirculated air) engaged and A/C off.
- Do not put objects under the front seats that will interfere with the airflow to the back seats.
- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.

## Climate Controls

- To improve the A/C cool down, drive with the windows slightly open for 2-3 minutes after start up or until the vehicle has been “aired out”.
- A small amount of air may be felt from the floor vent regardless of the air distribution setting that is selected.

During extreme high ambient temperatures when idling stationary for extended periods of time in gear, it is recommended to run the A/C in the max A/C position, reduce blower fan speed from the highest setting and put the vehicle's transmission into the P (Park) gear position (automatic transmission only) to continue to receive cool air from your A/C system.

### For maximum cooling performance:

- Automatic operation:
  1. Press AUTO for full automatic operation.
  2. Do not override A/C or  (recirculated air).
  3. Set the temperature to 60°F (16°C).
- Manual operation:
  1. Select MAX A/C. The system will automatically default to single zone operation and set the temperature to 60°F (16°C).
    - A/C and  (recirculated air) will be selected.
    - Airflow will be directed out of the panel vents.
  2. Fan speed will be automatically increased to the highest setting but can be adjusted as desired.

To aid in side window defogging/demisting in cold weather:

1. Select  (panel/floor).
2. Select A/C.
3. Adjust the temperature control to maintain comfort.
4. Set the fan speed to the highest setting.
5. Direct the outer instrument panel vents towards the side windows.

To increase airflow to the outer instrument panel vents, close the vents located in the middle of the instrument panel.

### REAR WINDOW DEFROSTER (IF EQUIPPED)

The rear defroster control is located on the climate control panel and works to defrost your rear window from fog and thin ice. If equipped, it also operates the heated mirror to remove snow and thin ice from the side mirrors.

84

## Climate Controls

Ensure that the ignition on. Press to turn the defroster on/off. The indicator light will illuminate when activated. For vehicles with a sliding rear window– the defroster will be disabled when the window is opened.

**Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean the inside of the rear window or to remove decals from the inside of the rear window. This may cause damage to the heated grid lines and will not be covered by your warranty.**

### REMOTE START CLIMATE OPERATION (IF EQUIPPED)

The climate control system will condition the cabin temperature during remote start based on the outside temperature. Engine idle may increase to help with adjusting the cabin temperature.

**Note:** No climate control adjustments will be recognized during remote start operation and none of the climate function indicators will be illuminated while the vehicle is in remote start. Once the ignition is cycled to the on position, the climate control system will return to the previous settings (last ignition-on cycle) and adjustments can be made normally. If the previous setting was off, the climate control system will turn off.

If you previously had any of the following activated: heated seats (if equipped), cooled seats (if equipped), heated mirrors (if equipped), or rear defrost, they will not return to their previous settings (on) when the ignition is turned on and will need to be re-activated if desired.

For more information on remote start climate settings and options, refer to *Message Center* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter.

### Manual climate control

For hot weather conditions:

- The climate control system will be set to MAX A/C.

For cold weather conditions:

- The climate control system will be set to provide maximum heating in  (floor/defrost) mode.
- Rear defrost/heated mirrors (if equipped) will be activated.

For moderate weather conditions:

- The interior cabin will be heated, cooled or off, based upon the previous operating state (last ignition-on cycle).
- Rear defrost/heated mirrors (if equipped) will be deactivated.

## Climate Controls

### **Automatic climate control**

For hot weather conditions:

- The interior cabin will be set to 72°F (22°C).
- The cooled seats (if equipped) will be set to high.

For cold weather conditions:

- The interior cabin will be set to 72°F (22°C).
- The heated seats (if equipped) will be set to high.
- Rear defrost/heated mirrors (if equipped) will be activated.

For moderate weather conditions:

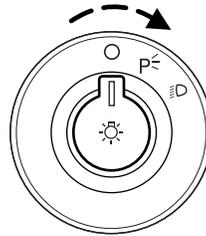
- The interior cabin will be heated, cooled, or off, based upon the previous operating state (last ignition-on cycle).
- Heated/cooled seats (if equipped) will be deactivated.
- Rear defrost/heated mirrors (if equipped) will be deactivated.

## Lights

### HEADLAMP CONTROL

Rotate the headlamp control clockwise to the first position  to turn on the parking lamps.

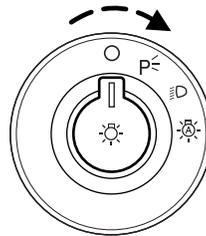
Rotate clockwise to the second position  to also turn on the headlamps.



### Autolamp control (if equipped)

The autolamp system provides light sensitive automatic on-off control of the exterior lights normally controlled by the headlamp control.

- To turn autolamps on, rotate the control to .
- To turn autolamps off, rotate the control from the autolamp position.



**Note:** If the vehicle is equipped with autolamps, it will have the *headlamps on with windshield wipers feature*. If the windshield wipers are turned on, the exterior lamps will turn on with the headlamp control in the autolamp position.

The autolamp system also keeps the lights on for a predetermined amount of time after the ignition switch is turned to off. You can change the amount of time the lamps stay on by using the programming procedure that follows:

#### Autolamps - Programmable exit delay

Programmable exit delay allows the length of the autolamp exit delay to be changed.

To program the auto lamp exit time delay:

1. Start with the ignition in the off position and the headlamp control in the autolamp position.
2. Turn the headlamp control to off.
3. Turn the ignition switch to on and then back to off.

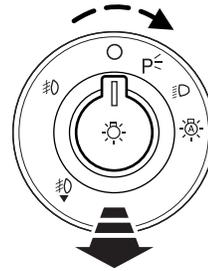
## Lights

4. Turn the headlamp control to the autolamp position. The headlamps will turn on.
5. Wait the desired amount of time for the exit delay you want (up to three minutes), then turn the headlamps off.

### Fog lamp control (if equipped)

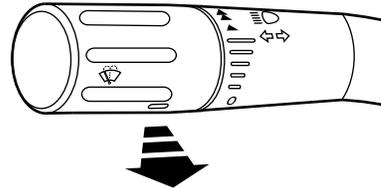
The headlamp control also operates the fog lamps. The fog lamps can be turned on only when the headlamp control is in the  or  position and the high beams are not turned on.

Pull headlamp control towards you to turn fog lamps on. The fog lamp indicator light  will illuminate.



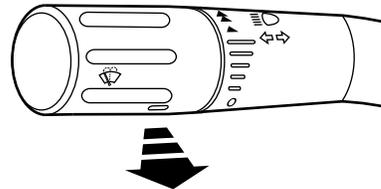
### High beams

Pull the lever fully past the detent to activate. Pull the lever fully again to deactivate.



### Flash-to-pass

Pull toward you slightly to activate and release to deactivate.



## Lights

### Daytime running lamps (DRL) (if equipped)

Turns the headlamps on with a reduced output.

To activate:

- the ignition must be in the on position,
- the headlamp control is in the off or parking lamp position and
- the parking brake must be disengaged.
- the transmission is not in P (Park)

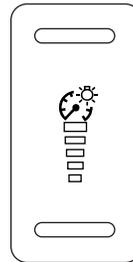


**WARNING:** Always remember to turn on your headlamps at dusk or during inclement weather. The Daytime Running Lamp (DRL) system does not activate the tail lamps and generally may not provide adequate lighting during these conditions. Failure to activate your headlamps under these conditions may result in a collision.

### PANEL DIMMER CONTROL

Use to adjust the brightness of the instrument panel and all applicable lit components in the vehicle during headlamp and parking lamp operation.

- Tap the top or bottom of the control to brighten/dim all interior lit components incrementally, or
- Press and hold at the first position the top or bottom of the control until the desired lighting level is reached.
- Press and hold the top of the control to the full on position to activate the “dome on” feature. This will turn on the interior courtesy lights. The lights will remain on until the bottom of the control is pressed.



### AIMING THE HEADLAMPS

Your vehicle is equipped with an aerodynamic headlamp system. The aerodynamic headlamps can only be aimed in the vertical direction (up/down) using the procedure following. The headlamps on your vehicle are properly aimed at the assembly plant and should not normally need adjustment.

## Lights

### Vertical aim adjustment

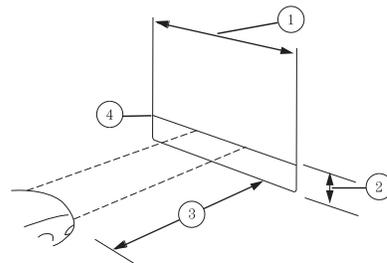
The headlamps on your vehicle can only be vertically adjusted. Your vehicle does not require horizontal aim adjustments.

To adjust the headlamps:

1. Park the vehicle directly in front of a wall or screen on a level surface, approximately 25 feet (7.6 meters) away.

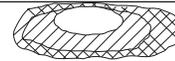
- (1) 8 feet (2.4 meters)
- (2) Center height of lamp to ground
- (3) 25 feet (7.6 meters)
- (4) Horizontal reference line

2. Measure the height from the center of your headlamp (indicated by a 3.0 mm circle on the lens) to the ground and mark an 8 foot (2.4 meter) horizontal reference line on the vertical wall or screen at this height (a piece of masking tape works well).

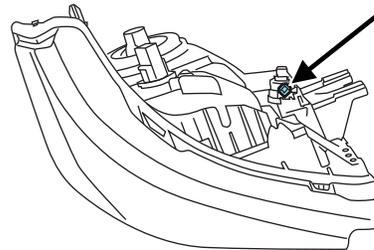


3. Turn on the low beam headlamps to illuminate the wall or screen and open the hood. Cover one of the headlamps so no light from that lamp hits the wall.

4. On the wall or screen you will observe a light pattern with a distinct horizontal edge towards the right. If this edge is not at the horizontal reference line, the beam will need to be adjusted so the edge is at the same height as the horizontal reference line.



5. Locate the vertical adjuster on each headlamp, then use a #2 Philips head to turn the adjuster either counterclockwise (to adjust down) or clockwise (to adjust up) aligning the upper edge of the light pattern up to the horizontal line.



6. Repeat Steps 3–5 for the other headlamp.

7. Close the hood and turn off the lamps.

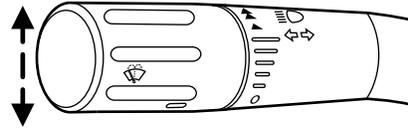
90

## Lights

### TURN SIGNAL CONTROL

The turn signal lever does not mechanically lock in the upward or downward position when activated. The turn signal control activation and cancellation is electronic.

- To operate the left turn signal, push the lever down until it stops and release.
- To operate the right turn signal, push the lever up until it stops and release.
- To manually cancel turn signal operation, push the lever again in either direction.



### Lane change

To indicate a left or right lane change:

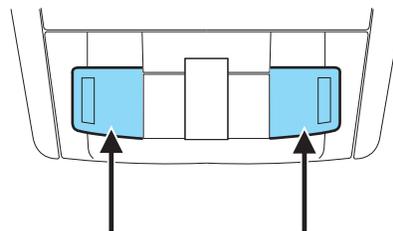
- Push the lever up/down to the first stop position and release. The turn signals will flash three times and stop.
- Push the lever up/down to the first stop position and hold. The turn signals will flash for as long as the lever is held in this position.

### INTERIOR LAMPS

#### Front map lamps (if equipped)

The map lamps are located on the overhead console. Press the controls on either side of each map lamp to turn on the lamps. The map lamps also light when:

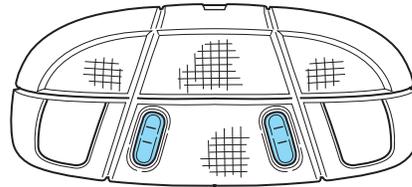
- any door is opened,
- the instrument panel dimmer switch is rotated up until the courtesy lamps come on, and
- any of the remote entry controls are pressed and the ignition is off.



## Lights

### Rear dome/map lamps

Your vehicle may have map lamps within the rear dome lamp. Press the switches on either side of the dome lamp to turn the lamps on.



## BULB REPLACEMENT

### Lamp assembly condensation

Exterior lamps are vented to accommodate normal changes in pressure. Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a thin film of mist can form on the interior of the lens. The thin mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation. Clearing time may take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

Examples of acceptable condensation are:

- Presence of thin mist (no streaks, drip marks or droplets)
- Fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens

Examples of unacceptable moisture (usually caused by a lamp water leak) are:

- Water puddle inside the lamp
- Large water droplets, drip marks or streaks present on the interior of the lens

Take your vehicle to a dealer for service if any of the above conditions of unacceptable moisture are present.

## Lights

### Replacing exterior bulbs

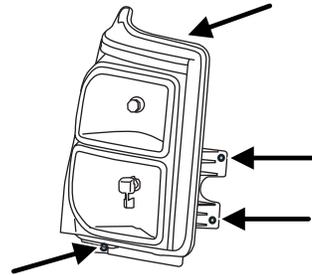
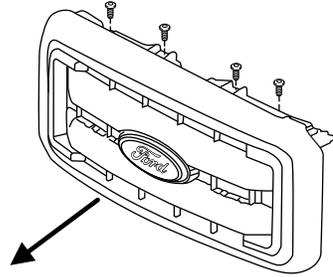
Check the operation of all the bulbs frequently.

Function	Number of bulbs	Trade number
Headlamps	2	H13/9008
Park/Turn lamp	2	3157NA
Sidemarkers	2	W5W
Tail/stop/turn/sidemarkers (pick-up only)	2	3157
Tail/stop/turn/sidemarkers (chassis cabs only; if equipped)	2	3157
Back-up (pick-ups only)	2	921
Back-up (chassis cabs only)	2	3157
High-mount brake lamp	1	922
Fog lamp	2	9145
License plate lamp	2	194
Cargo lamp	2	906
Map lamp	2	12V6W
Dome/reading lamps	3	578
Interior visor lamp (if equipped)	4	194
Mirror turn signal	2	2825
Mirror clearance lamp	2	2825
*Front clearance lamps (2) and front identification lamps (3)	5	194
*Rear fender clearance	4	LED**
*Rear identification	3	193**
To replace all instrument panel lights - see your authorized dealer		
* Dual rear wheels, or if equipped.		
** See your authorized dealer to replace the lamp assembly.		

## Lights

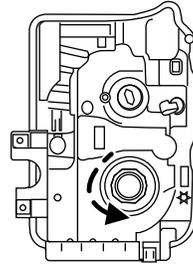
### **Replacing headlamps, park lamps, turn lamps**

1. Make sure that the exterior lamps are off, then open the hood.
2. Using masking tape or a marker, make an alignment mark between one of the grille brackets and the vehicle radiator support to ensure correct grille alignment during re-assembly. Do not scratch the black coating from the radiator support.
3. Remove the two grille to headlamp assembly push pins and the four bolts attaching the top of the grille to the radiator support.
4. Pull the top of the grille forward to gain access to the lower grille spring clips.
5. Depress the spring clips through the lower inner grille access openings using a flat head screwdriver.
6. Pull the grill straight out to remove.
7. Remove the four bolts from the headlamp assembly.
8. Pull the assembly straight out disengaging one snap clip from the fender.
9. Disconnect the electrical connector by squeezing the release tab and pushing the connector forward, then pulling it rearward.

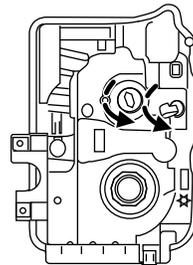


## Lights

10. For the headlamp bulb, remove the bulb by turning it counterclockwise and pulling it straight out.



11. For the park or turn lamp bulb, remove the bulb by turning it counterclockwise and pulling it straight out.

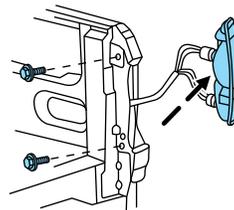


**WARNING:** Handle a halogen headlamp bulb carefully and keep out of children's reach. Grasp the bulb only by its plastic base and do not touch the glass. The oil from your hand could cause the bulb to break the next time the headlamps are operated.

Install the new bulb(s) in reverse order.

### **Replacing brake/tail/turn/back-up lamp bulbs (pick-ups only)**

1. Make sure the headlamps are off, then open the tailgate to expose the lamp assemblies.
2. Remove the two bolts from the tail lamp assembly and carefully pull the lamp assembly from the tailgate pillar by releasing the two retaining tabs.
3. Rotate the bulb socket counterclockwise and remove from lamp assembly.
4. Pull the bulb straight out of the socket.

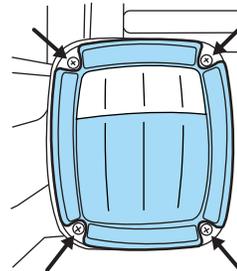


## Lights

Install the new bulb(s) in reverse order.

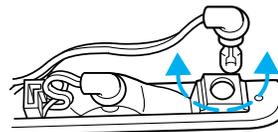
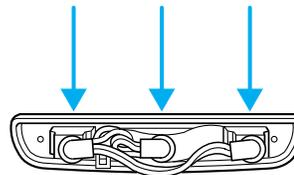
### **Replacing brake/tail/turn/back-up lamp bulbs (chassis cabs only) (if equipped)**

1. Make sure the headlamps are off.
2. Remove the four screws and the lamp lens from lamp assembly.
3. Carefully pull the bulb straight out of the socket and push in the new bulb.



### **Replacing cargo lamp and high-mount brake lamp bulbs**

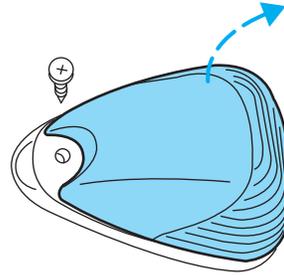
1. Make sure the headlamps are off.
2. Remove the screws and lamp assembly from the vehicle as wiring permits.
3. Remove the bulb socket by rotating it counterclockwise.
4. Pull the bulb straight out of the socket.



## Lights

### **Replacing front clearance and identification lamp bulbs (if equipped)**

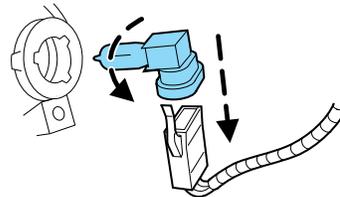
1. Make sure the headlamps are off.
2. Remove the screw and lens from the lamp assembly.
3. Pull the bulb straight out of the socket.



Install the bulb(s) in reverse order.

### **Replacing fog lamp bulbs (if equipped)**

1. Make sure the headlamps are off.
2. Remove the bulb socket from the fog lamp by turning it counterclockwise.
3. Disconnect the electrical connector from the fog lamp bulb.

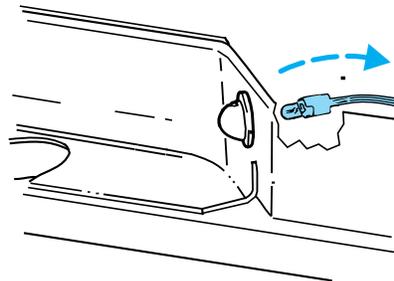


Install the new bulb(s) in reverse order.

### **Replacing license plate lamp bulbs**

The license plate bulbs are located behind the rear bumper. To change the license plate lamp bulbs:

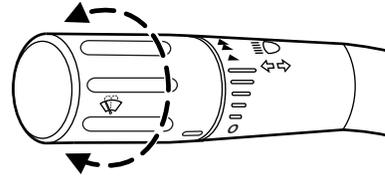
1. Reach behind the rear bumper to locate the bulb.
2. Twist the bulb socket counterclockwise and carefully pull to remove it from the lamp assembly.
3. Pull out the old bulb from the socket and push in the new bulb.
4. Install the bulb socket in lamp assembly by turning it clockwise.



## Driver Controls

### MULTI-FUNCTION LEVER

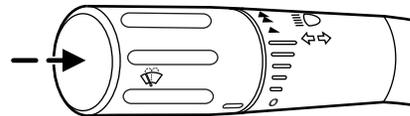
**Windshield wiper:** Rotate the end of the control away from you to increase the speed of the wipers; rotate towards you to decrease the speed of the wipers.



**Speed dependent wipers:** When the wiper control is set on the intermittent settings, the speed of the wipers will automatically adjust with the vehicle speed. The faster your vehicle is travelling the faster the wipers will go.

**Windshield washer:** Press the end of the stalk:

- briefly: causes a single swipe of the wipers without washer fluid.
- a quick press and hold: the wipers will swipe three times with washer fluid.
- a long press and hold: the wipers and washer fluid will be activated for up to 10 seconds.



**Courtesy wipe feature:** One extra wipe will occur a few seconds after washing the front window to clear any excess washer fluid remaining on the windshield.

**Note:** Do not operate the washer when the washer reservoir is empty. This may cause the washer pump to overheat. Check the washer fluid level frequently. Do not operate the wipers when the windshield is dry. This may scratch the glass, damage the wiper blades and cause the wiper motor to burn out. Before operating the wiper on a dry windshield, always use the windshield washer. In freezing weather, be sure the wiper blades are not frozen to the windshield before operating the wipers.

### Windshield wiper rainlamp feature (if equipped with autolamp)

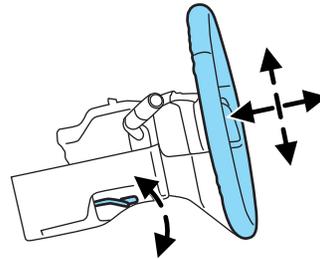
When the windshield wipers are turned on during daylight, and the headlamp control is in the autolamp position, the exterior lamps will turn on after a brief delay and will remain on until the wipers are turned off.

## Driver Controls

### TILT/TELESCOPE STEERING WHEEL

To adjust the steering wheel:

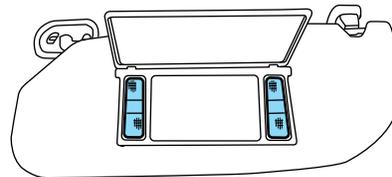
1. Pull the lever down to unlock the steering column.
2. While the lever is in the down position, move the steering wheel up or down and in or out until you find the desired position.
3. While holding the steering wheel in place, pull the lever up to its original position to lock the steering column.



**WARNING:** Never adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is moving.

### ILLUMINATED VISOR MIRROR (IF EQUIPPED)

Lift the mirror cover to turn on the visor mirror lamps.

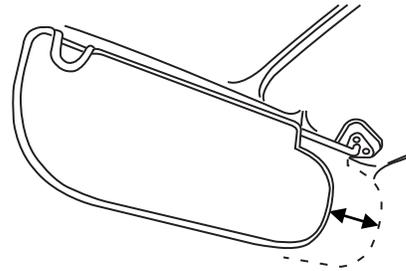


## Driver Controls

### Slide-on-rod feature (if equipped)

Rotate the visor towards the side window and extend it rearward for additional sunlight coverage.

**Note:** To stow the visor back into the headliner, visor must be retracted before moving it back towards the windshield.



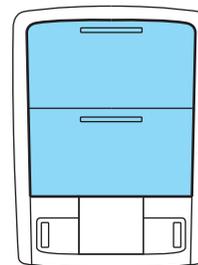
### OVERHEAD CONSOLE (IF EQUIPPED)

The appearance of your vehicle's overhead console will vary according to your option package.

#### Storage compartment (if equipped)

Press the release tab on the rear edge of the bin door to open the storage compartment. The door will open to the full open position.

The storage compartment may be used to secure sunglasses or a similar object.

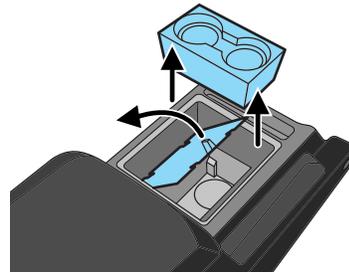
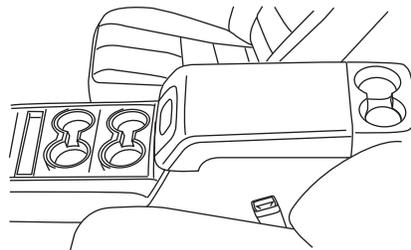


## Driver Controls

### CENTER CONSOLE (IF EQUIPPED)

Your vehicle may be equipped with a variety of console features. These include:

- Locking storage compartment with hanging file folder supports
- Storage for laptop computer, binder or book between the hanging file folder support and the passenger side of the console bin
- One 12V power point inside the storage compartment and one on the rear of the console
- 110V AC power point outlet on the rear of the console
- Rear cupholders
- Two removable front cupholder modules
- Removable false bottom tray for accessing hidden storage compartment (also has space for a large cup)



**WARNING:** Use only soft cups in the cupholder. Hard objects can injure you in a collision.

### AUXILIARY POWER POINT (12V DC)

**Power outlets are designed for accessory plugs only. Do not insert any other object in the power outlet for this will damage the outlet and blow the fuse. Do not hang any type of accessory or accessory bracket from the plug. Improper use of the power outlet can cause damage not covered by your warranty.**

## Driver Controls

Auxiliary power points can be found in the following locations:

- On the instrument panel (two locations)
- Inside the center console storage compartment (if equipped)
- On the rear of the center console (if equipped)
- Inside the 20-percent front seat console (if equipped)
- Inside the rear under seat storage compartment (if equipped)

Do not use the power point for operating the cigarette lighter element (if equipped).

**Note:** Do not plug optional electrical accessories into the cigarette lighter socket (if equipped). Improper use of the lighter can cause damage not covered by your warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.

To prevent the fuse from being blown, do not use the power point(s) over the vehicle capacity of 12V DC/180W. If the power point or cigar lighter socket is not working, a fuse may have blown. Refer to *Fuses and relays* in the *Roadside Emergencies* chapter for information on checking and replacing fuses.

To have full capacity usage of your power point, the engine is required to be running to avoid unintentional discharge of the battery. To prevent the battery from being discharged:

- do not use the power point longer than necessary when the engine is not running,
- do not leave battery chargers, video game adapters, computers and other devices plugged in overnight or when the vehicle is parked for extended periods.

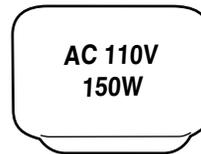
Always keep the power point caps closed when not being used.

### **Power point (110V AC) (if equipped)**

The 110V AC power point outlet is used for powering electrical devices that require up to 150W. Exceeding the 150W limit will cause the power point to cut off the power temporarily to provide overload protection.

## Driver Controls

**Note:** The 110V AC power point is equipped with a cap which provides protection from inserting objects into the socket. The cap should always be in a closed position whenever the power point outlet is not in use.



The 110V AC power point is located on the back of the center console.

The power outlet is not designed for the following electric appliances; they may not work properly:

- Cathode ray tube type televisions
- Motor loads, such as vacuum cleaners, electric saws and other electric power tools, compressor-driven refrigerators, etc.
- Measuring devices, which process precise data, such as medical equipment, measuring equipment, etc.
- Other appliances requiring an extremely stable power supply: microcomputer-controlled electric blankets, touch sensor lamps, etc.



**WARNING:** Do not keep electrical devices plugged in the power point whenever the device is not in use. Do not use any extension cord with the 110V AC power point, since it will defeat the safety protection design provided by the cap and twist tab. Doing so may cause the power point to overload due to powering multiple devices that can reach beyond the 150W load limit and could result in fire or serious injury.

The power point can switch to a fault mode when it is overloaded, overheated, or shorted. For overloading and shorting conditions, unplug your device and turn the ignition key off then on. For an overheating condition, let the system cool off, then turn the ignition key off then on. The 110V AC power point can provide power whenever the vehicle ignition is in the on position and the power point green indicator light located in the top left corner is turned on. Refer to the indicator light code below for the power point status.

### Indicator light codes

Green light is on — Power point is ready to supply power

Green light is off — Power point power supply is off. Ignition is not in the on position

## Driver Controls

Green light is blinking — Power point is in fault mode

**Note:** The 110V AC power point will turn off after 13 minutes if the ignition is in the on position without the engine running. Keep the engine running or cycle the ignition before the 13 minute time-out to keep the inverter on.

### POWER WINDOWS (IF EQUIPPED)



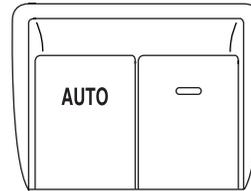
**WARNING:** Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle and do not let children play with the power windows. They may seriously injure themselves.



**WARNING:** When closing the power windows, you should verify they are free of obstructions and ensure that children and/or pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.

Press and pull the window switches to open and close windows.

- Press down (to the first detent) and hold the switch to open.
- Pull up (to the first detent) and hold the switch to close.



**Rear Window Buffeting:** When one or both of the rear windows are open, the vehicle may demonstrate a wind throb or buffeting noise. This noise can be alleviated by lowering a front window approximately 2–3 in. (5–8 cm).

### One-touch down

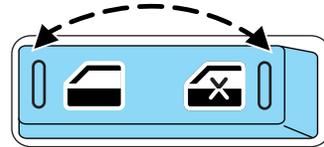
Allows the driver's window to open fully without holding the control down. Press the switch completely down to the second detent and release quickly. The window will open fully. Momentarily press the switch to any position to stop the window operation.

## Driver Controls

### Window lock (if equipped)

The window lock feature allows only the driver to operate the power windows.

To lock out all the window controls (except for the driver's) press the right side of the control. Press the left side to restore the window controls.

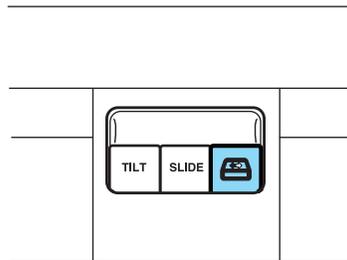


### Power sliding back window (if equipped)

The control is located on the overhead console.

Press and hold the  control to open the window all the way to the full open position.

Pull and hold the  control to close the window.



**WARNING:** When operating the power sliding back window you must ensure all rear seat occupants and/or cargo are not in the proximity of the back window.



**WARNING:** Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle and do not let children play with the power sliding back window. They may seriously injure themselves.

### Accessory delay

With accessory delay, the window switches may be used for up to 10 minutes after the ignition switch is turned to the off position or until either front door is opened.

## Driver Controls

### INTERIOR MIRROR

The interior rearview mirror has two pivot points on the support arm which lets you adjust the mirror up or down and from side to side.



**WARNING:** Do not adjust the mirror while the vehicle is in motion.

### Automatic dimming interior rear view mirror (if equipped)

The interior rear view mirror has an auto-dimming function. The electronic day/night mirror will change from the normal (high reflective) state to the non-glare (darkened) state when bright lights (glare) reach the mirror. When the mirror detects bright light from behind the vehicle, it will automatically adjust (darken) to minimize glare.

The mirror will automatically return to the normal state whenever the vehicle is placed in R (Reverse) to ensure a bright clear view when backing up.

**Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the interior rear view mirror since this may impair proper mirror performance.**

**Note:** A rear center passenger and/or raised rear center headrest (if equipped) may also block the light from reaching the sensor.

**Do not clean the housing or glass of any mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.**

**Note:** If equipped with a rearview camera system, a video image will display in the mirror or the navigation system display (if equipped) when the vehicle is put in R (Reverse). As you shift into any other gear from R (Reverse), the image will remain for a few seconds and then turn off. Refer to *Rearview camera system* in the *Driving* chapter.

### EXTERIOR MIRRORS

#### Power side view mirrors (if equipped)

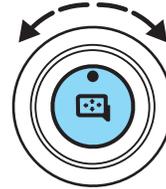


**WARNING:** Do not adjust the mirror while the vehicle is in motion.

## Driver Controls

To adjust your mirrors:

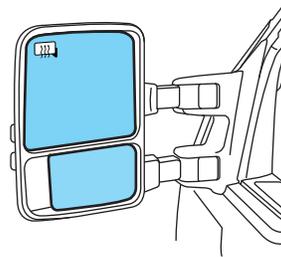
1. Rotate the control clockwise to adjust the right mirror and rotate the control counterclockwise to adjust the left mirror.
2. Move the control in the direction you wish to tilt the mirror.
3. Return to the center position to lock mirrors in place.



The spotter mirror below the main glass (if equipped) must be adjusted manually.

### Heated outside mirrors (if equipped)

The main mirror glass and lower convex spotter mirror are heated to remove ice, mist and fog. To activate the heated mirrors, press the heated mirror control  located on the climate control panel.



**Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or attempt to re-adjust the mirror glass if it is frozen in place.**

**These actions could cause damage to the glass and mirrors.**

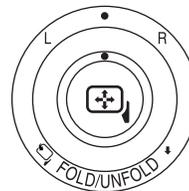
**Do not clean the housing or glass of any mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.**

### Fold-away mirrors

Fold the side mirrors in carefully before driving through a narrow space, like an automatic car wash.

### Power-fold mirrors (if equipped)

You can fold the side mirrors simultaneously using the power mirror switch.

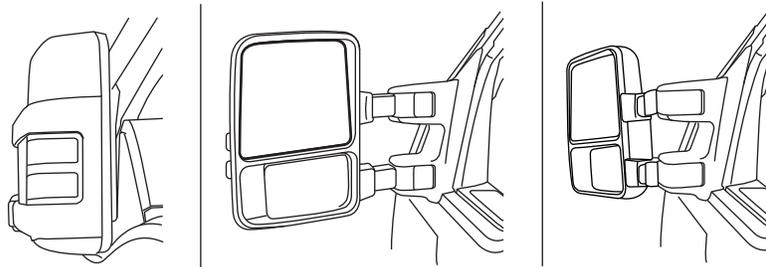


## Driver Controls

To operate the power-fold mirrors:

1. Rotate the switch to the center/neutral position.
2. Momentarily pull the switch rearward to auto fold in.
3. Momentarily pull the switch rearward again to fold back to design position.

**Note:** When power-folding the mirrors, it is normal to hear the sound of the motors.



Power-fold mirror positions, from left to right: Position 1, Position 2, Position 3

The power-fold mirrors may be folded forward/rearward manually to any of the three positions shown and electrically to positions 1 and 2 only. If a mirror is folded manually forward to position 3, you must manually fold it back to position 1 or 2 in order for the power-fold function to continue functioning. **Note:** Although it is possible to electrically fold the mirror from position 3 to 2, it was not designed for this functionality and may not always work under all conditions.

**Note:** Ten or more switch activations within one minute, or repeated fold/unfolding of the mirrors while holding the switch rearward during the full travel may cause the system to disable the fold/unfold function to protect the motors from overheating. Should this occur, wait approximately 3½ minutes for the system to reset and function to return to normal.

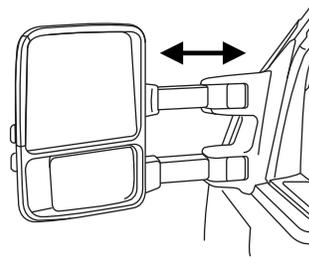
**Note:** The power-fold mirrors are designed to operate while the vehicle is stationary or traveling at moderate speeds. If you attempt to power-fold the mirrors at high speeds, they may not fully fold forward/rearward - slow down and power-fold or manually fold the mirrors in order to complete the fold operation.

## Driver Controls

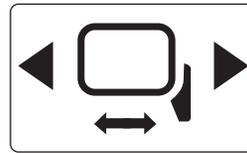
**Note:** If the power fold/telescope mirror glass appears loose or vibrates when driving, it is possible that the mirrors have been manually folded or telescoped. To minimize the vibration, ensure that the mirrors are electronically folded and telescoped in/out with the switches on the door trim panel. If the power fold mirrors are out of sync, electronically power-fold the mirrors to re-sync the motors. This will cause a loud “click” and the mirrors will jerk during re-synchronization. This is normal.

### Telescoping mirrors (if equipped)

The telescoping feature allows the mirror to extend approximately 2.75 inches (70 mm). This feature is especially useful to the driver when towing a trailer. Mirrors can be manually pulled out or pushed in to the desired telescopic position.



If equipped with PowerScope™ power telescoping mirrors, you can simultaneously position both mirrors using the power telescope switch found on the door trim panel.



- To telescope the mirrors outboard, press and hold the left side of the power telescope switch until the mirrors reach their desired position. When the end of travel is reached, it is normal to hear the power telescoping motors running as long as you continue to hold the switch.
- To telescope the mirrors inboard, press and hold the right side of the power telescope switch until the mirrors reach their desired position.

### Memory mirrors (if equipped)

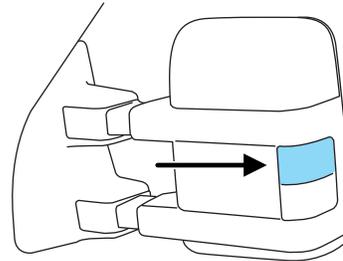
This system allows automatic positioning of the outside rearview mirrors. For more information on this feature, refer to *Memory seats/power mirrors/adjustable pedals* in the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter.

## Driver Controls

### Mirror-mounted side turn signal indicator (if equipped)

When the vehicle turn signals are activated, the outer portion of the mirror housing will blink amber.

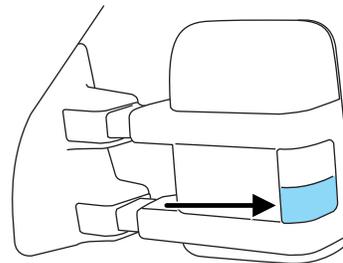
The turn signal feature can be seen by other drivers who may approach from the rear of the vehicle.



### Clearance lamps (if equipped)

Illuminates when the headlamps or parking lamps are switched on.

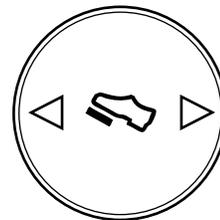
This provides additional visibility of your vehicle to other drivers on the road.



### POWER ADJUSTABLE FOOT PEDALS (IF EQUIPPED)

The accelerator and brake pedal should only be adjusted when the vehicle is stopped and the gearshift lever is in the P (Park) position.

The control is located on the left side of the steering column. Press and hold the rear of the control to move the pedals toward you. Press and hold the front of the control to move the pedals away from you.



**WARNING:** Never adjust the accelerator and brake pedal with feet on the pedals while the vehicle is moving.

## Driver Controls

The accelerator and brake pedal positions are saved when doing a memory set function and can be recalled along with the vehicle personality features when a memory position is selected. Refer to *Memory seats/power mirrors/adjustable pedals* in the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter.

### SPEED CONTROL (IF EQUIPPED)

With speed control set, you can maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal.



**WARNING:** Do not use the speed control in heavy traffic or on roads that are winding, slippery or unpaved.

### Using speed control

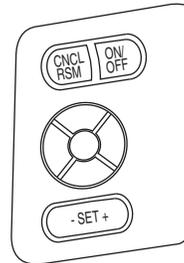
The speed controls are located on the steering wheel.

#### **CNCL (Cancel)/RSM (Resume):**

Press to cancel or resume a set speed.

**ON/OFF:** Press to turn the system on or off.

– **SET +:** Press to set a speed or to decrease or increase a set speed.



The speed control system uses two  indicator lights in the instrument cluster:

- an amber indicator light which illuminates when the system is on, and
- a green indicator light which illuminates when the system is engaged.

### **Setting speed control**

To set speed control:

1. Press and release ON.
2. Accelerate to the desired speed.
3. Press and release SET +.
4. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.
5. The green indicator light  on the instrument cluster will turn on.

## Driver Controls

**Note:**

- Vehicle speed may vary momentarily when driving up and down a steep hill.
- If the vehicle speed increases above the set speed on a downhill, you may want to apply the brakes to reduce the speed.
- If the vehicle speed decreases more than 10 mph (16 km/h) below your set speed on an uphill, your speed control will disengage.

**Disengaging a set speed**

To disengage speed control, tap the brake pedal or press and release CNCL.

Disengaging the speed control will not erase the previous set speed.

**Resuming a set speed**

Press and release RSM. This will automatically return the vehicle to the previously set speed.

**Increasing speed while using speed control**

To increase the set speed:

- Press and hold SET + until you get to the desired speed, then release. You can also use SET + to operate the tap-up function. Press and release SET + to increase the vehicle set speed in approximately 1 mph (2 km/h) increments.
- Use the accelerator pedal to get to the desired speed then press and release SET +.

**Reducing speed while using speed control**

To reduce a set speed:

- Press and hold SET – until you get to the desired speed, then release. You can also use SET – to operate the tap-down function. Press and release SET – to decrease the vehicle set speed in approximately 1 mph (2 km/h) increments.
- Press the brake pedal until the desired vehicle speed is reached then press and release SET +.

**Turning off speed control**

To turn off the speed control, press OFF or turn off the ignition.

**Note:** When you turn off the speed control or the ignition, your speed control set speed memory is erased.

112

## Driver Controls

### STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS (IF EQUIPPED)

#### Audio control features

**MEDIA:** Press repeatedly to scroll through available audio modes.

**◀◀ SEEK ▶▶:** Press to select the previous/next radio station preset or CD track (if equipped). Press and hold to select the previous/next radio station frequency or to reverse/forward a CD.

**+ VOL – (Volume):** Press to increase or decrease the volume.

#### Navigation system hands free control features (if equipped)

Press and hold VOICE briefly until the voice  icon appears on the navigation display to use the voice command feature.

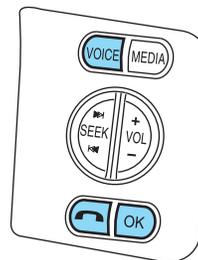
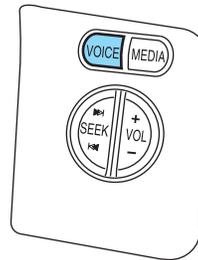
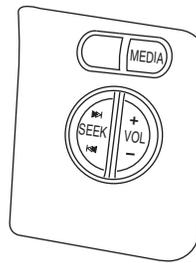
Press VOICE to complete a voice command.

For further information on the Navigation system, refer to the *Navigation System* supplement.

#### SYNC® system hands free control feature (if equipped)

Press VOICE briefly until the voice  icon appears on the display to use the voice command feature. You will hear a tone and LISTENING will appear in the radio display. Press and hold VOICE to exit voice command.

Press  to activate phone mode or answer a phone call. Press and hold  to end call or exit phone mode.



## Driver Controls

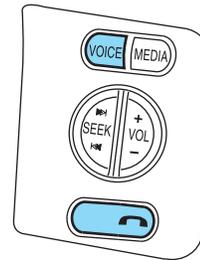
Press **◀◀ ▶▶** to scroll through various menus and selections. Press OK to confirm your selection.

For further information on the SYNC® system, refer to the *SYNC®* supplement.

### Navigation system/SYNC® hands free control features (if equipped)

Press VOICE briefly until the voice  icon appears on the navigation display to use the voice command feature.

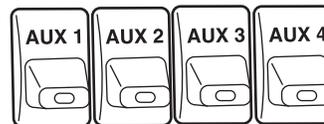
Press  to activate phone mode or answer a phone call. Press and hold  to exit phone mode or end call.



For further information on the Navigation system/SYNC® system, refer to the *Navigation System* and *SYNC®* supplements.

### UPFITTER CONTROLS (IF EQUIPPED)

Your vehicle may be equipped with the Upfitter option package which will provide four switches, mounted in the center of the instrument panel, labeled AUX 1, AUX 2, AUX 3 and AUX 4. These switches will only operate while the ignition is in the on position, whether the engine is



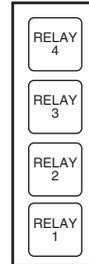
running or not. It is, however, recommended that the engine remain running to maintain battery charge when using the Upfitter switches for extended duration or higher current draws. (This is even more important for vehicles with diesel engines since the glow plugs are also draining battery power when the ignition key is in the on position.)

When switched on by the operator they provide 8 amps, 12 amps or 20 amps of electrical battery power for a variety of personal or commercial uses.

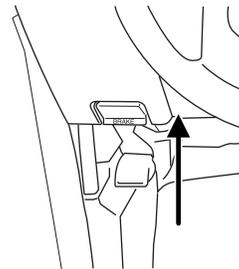
If your vehicle is equipped with this option, there will also be a relay box located on the driver side end of the instrument panel. See your authorized dealer for service.

## Driver Controls

The relays are coded as shown in the accompanying illustration.



There will also be one power lead for each switch found as a blunt-cut and sealed wire located below the instrument panel and to the left of the steering column.



They are coded as follows:

Switch	Circuit number	Wire color	Fuse
AUX 1	CAC05	Yellow	25A
AUX 2	CAC06	Green with Brown Trace	25A
AUX 3	CAC07	Violet with Green Trace	10A
AUX 4	CAC08	Brown	15A

More detailed information about Upfitter switches can be found at <https://www.fleet.ford.com/truckbbas/>.

### MOON ROOF (IF EQUIPPED)

The moon roof control is located on the overhead console.



**WARNING:** Do not let children play with the moon roof or leave children unattended in the vehicle. They may seriously hurt themselves.

## Driver Controls



**WARNING:** When closing the moon roof, you should verify that it is free of obstructions and ensure that children and/or pets are not in the proximity of the moon roof opening.

The moon roof is equipped with an automatic, one-touch, express opening and closing feature. To stop motion at any time during the one-touch operation, press the control a second time.

**To open the moon roof:** Press and release the SLIDE control and the moon roof will open automatically to the “comfort” position. Press and release again to fully open. Press the switch again to stop the moon roof.

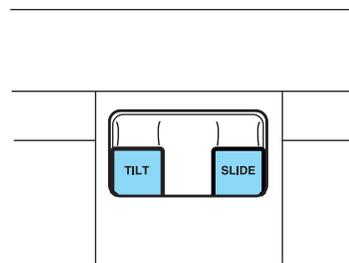
**To close the moon roof:** Pull and release the SLIDE control, the moon roof will close automatically. Press the switch again to stop the moon roof.

**Bounce-back:** When an obstacle has been detected in the moon roof opening as the moon roof is closing, the moon roof will automatically open and stop at a prescribed position.

**Bounce-back override:** To override bounce-back function, pull and hold the SLIDE switch within two seconds of a bounce-back event. The closing force will begin to increase each time the moon roof is closed for the first three closing cycles, with bounce-back active. For example: Bounce-back can be used to overcome the resistance of ice on the moon roof or seals

**To vent the moon roof:** Press and release the TILT control, the moon roof will move to the vent position automatically from any moon roof position. Press the switch again to stop the moon roof. Pull and hold the TILT control to close the moon roof.

The moon roof has a built-in sliding shade that can be manually opened or closed when the glass panel is shut. To close the shade, pull it toward the front of the vehicle.



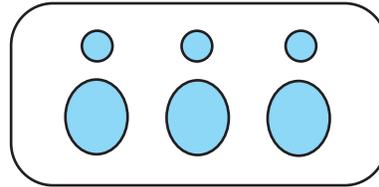
## Driver Controls

### UNIVERSAL GARAGE DOOR OPENER (IF EQUIPPED)

Your vehicle may be equipped with a universal garage door opener which can be used to replace the common hand-held transmitter.

### Car2U® Home Automation System (if equipped)

The Car2U® Home Automation System is a universal transmitter located in the driver's visor that includes two primary features – a garage door opener and a platform for remote activation of devices within the home. The Car2U® system's garage door opener function replaces the common



hand-held garage door opener with a three-button transmitter that is integrated into the interior of your vehicle. After being programmed for garage doors, the Car2U® system transmitter can be programmed to operate security devices and home lighting systems.



**WARNING:** Make sure that people and objects are clear of the garage door or security device you are programming. Do not program the Car2U® system with the vehicle in the garage.

Do not use the Car2U® system with any garage door opener that lacks safety stop and reverse features as required by U.S. Federal Safety Standards (this includes any garage door opener manufactured before April 1, 1982).

Be sure to keep the original remote control transmitter for use in other vehicles as well as for future Car2U® system programming. It is also recommended that upon the sale or lease termination of the vehicle, the programmed Car2U® system buttons should be erased for security reasons. Refer to *Erasing the Car2U® Home Automation System buttons* later in this section.

Read the instructions completely before attempting to program the Car2U® system. Because of the steps involved, it may be helpful to have another person assist you in programming the transmitter.

Additional Car2U® system information can be found on-line at [www.learcar2U.com](http://www.learcar2U.com) or by calling the toll-free Car2U® system help line at 1-866-572-2728.

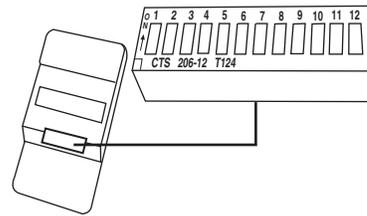
## Driver Controls

### **Types of garage door openers (rolling code and fixed code)**

The Car2U® Home Automation System may be programmed to operate rolling code and fixed code garage door openers.

- Rolling code garage door openers were produced after 1996 and are code protected. Rolling code means the coded signal is changed every time your remote control garage door opener is used.
- Fixed code garage door openers were produced prior to 1996. Fixed code uses the same coded signal every time. It is manually programmed by setting DIP switches for a unique personal code.

If you do not know if your garage door opener is a rolling code or fixed code device, open your garage door opener's remote control battery cover. If a panel of DIP switches is present your garage door opener is a fixed code device. If not, your garage door opener is a rolling code device.



**Note:** Programming the Car2U® system to a community gate will require a unique set of instructions depending on the gate system model. Contact the Car2U® help line at 1-866-572-2728 to program your Car2U® system.

**Note:** Accidentally entering the program mode may override previously programmed buttons. This can happen by pressing and releasing the outer two buttons, or all three buttons, simultaneously. If this happens, do not press any button until the module times out after approximately 2.5 seconds and resets to normal mode. When time-out occurs, all three LEDs will flash rapidly for a few seconds then turn off. Any settings should remain as previously set.

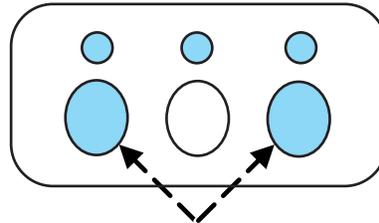
### **Rolling code programming**

**Note:** Programming the rolling code garage door opener involves time-sensitive actions. Read the entire procedure prior to beginning so you will know which actions are time-sensitive. If you do not follow the time-sensitive actions, the device will time out and you will have to repeat the procedure.

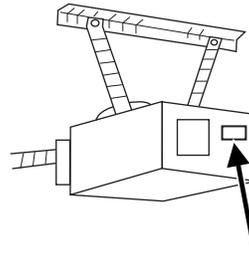
**Note:** Do not program the Car2U® system with the vehicle in the garage. Make sure that your key is on and engine off while programming the transmitter.

## Driver Controls

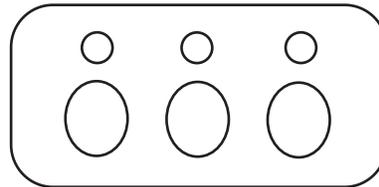
1. Firmly press the two outer Car2U® system buttons for 1–2 seconds, then release.



2. Go to the garage to locate the garage door opener motor and its “learn” button. You may need a ladder to reach the unit and you may need to remove the unit’s cover or light lens to locate the “learn” button. Press the “learn” button, after which you will have 10–30 seconds to return to your vehicle and complete the following steps. If you cannot locate the “learn” button, refer to the Owner’s Guide of your garage door opener or call the toll-free Car2U® system help line at 1-866-57Car2U (1-866-572-2728).



3. Return to your vehicle. Press and hold the Car2U® system button you would like to use to control the garage door. You may need to hold the button from 5–20 seconds, during which time the selected button indicator light will blink slowly. Immediately (within 1 second) release the button once the garage door moves. When the button is released, the indicator light will begin to blink rapidly until programming is complete.



4. Press and release the button again. The garage door should move, confirming that programming is successful. If your garage door does not operate, repeat the previous steps in this section.

After successful programming, you will be able to operate your Car2U® system by pressing the button you programmed to activate the opener.

## Driver Controls

The indicator light above the selected button will turn on to confirm that the Car2U® system is responding to the button command.

To program another rolling code device such as an additional garage door opener, a security device or home lighting, repeat Steps 1 through 4 substituting a different function button in Step 3 than what you used for the garage door opener. For example, you could assign the left-most button to the garage door, the center button to a security device, and the right-most button to another garage door opener.

**Note:** The Car2U® system allows for three devices to be programmed. If you need to change or replace any of the three devices after it has been initially programmed, it is necessary to erase the current settings using the *Erasing the Car2U® Home Automation System buttons* procedure and then programming all of the devices being used.

### Fixed code programming

**Note:** Do not program the Car2U® system with the vehicle in the garage.

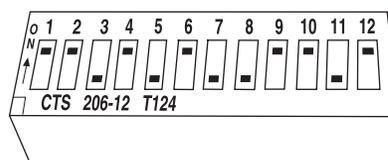
Make sure that your key is on and engine off while programming the transmitter.

1. To program units with fixed code DIP switches, you will need the garage door hand-held transmitter, paper and a pen or pencil.
2. Open the battery cover and record the switch settings from left to right for all 8 to 12 switches. Use the figure below:

When a switch is in the up, on, or + position, circle “L.”

When a switch is in the middle, neutral, or 0 position, circle “M.”

When a switch is in the down, off, or – position, circle “R.”

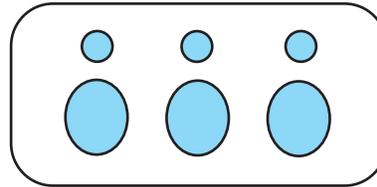


## Driver Controls

Switch position	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
Up, on or +	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L
Middle, neutral or 0	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M
Down, off or -	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R

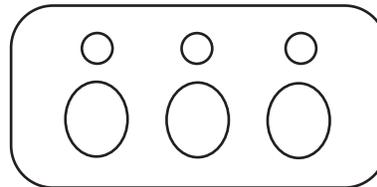
L=left; M=middle; R=right

3. To input these positions into the Car2U® system, simultaneously press all three Car2U® system buttons for a few seconds and then release to put the device into programming mode. The indicator lights will blink slowly. Within 2.5 minutes enter your corresponding DIP switch settings from left to right into your Car2U® system by pressing and releasing the buttons corresponding to the settings you circled.



4. After inputting switch settings, simultaneously press and release all three Car2U® system buttons. The indicator lights will turn on.

5. Press and hold the Car2U® system button you would like to use to control the garage door. Immediately (within 1 second) release the button once the garage door moves. During this time the selected button indicator light will blink slowly. Do not release the button until you see the garage door move. Most garage doors open quickly. You may need to hold the button from 5–55 seconds before observing movement of the garage door.



6. The indicator light will (begin to) blink rapidly until programming is complete. If your garage door opener does not operate following these steps, repeat Steps 2 through 6. Otherwise, call the toll-free Car2U® help line at 1-866-57Car2U (1-866-572-2728).

## Driver Controls

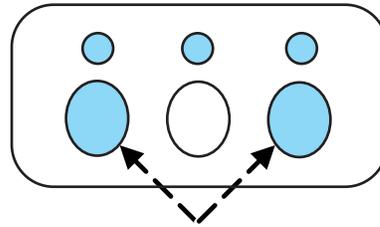
After successful programming, you will be able to operate your Car2U® system by pressing the button you programmed to activate the opener. The indicator light above the selected button will turn on to confirm that the Car2U® system is responding to the button command.

### **Erasing the Car2U® Home Automation System buttons**

**Note:** The system allows for three devices to be programmed. If you need to change or replace any of the three devices after it has been initially programmed, it will be necessary to erase the current settings using the procedure below and then reprogramming all of the devices being used.

To erase programming on the Car2U® system (individual buttons cannot be erased), use the following procedure:

1. Firmly press the two outside Car2U® system buttons simultaneously for approximately 20 seconds until the indicator lights begin to blink rapidly. The indicator lights are located directly above the buttons.
2. Once the indicator lights begin to blink, release your fingers from the buttons. The codes for all buttons are erased.



If you sell your vehicle equipped with the Car2U® system, it is recommended that you erase the programming for security reasons.

### **FCC and RSS-210 Industry Canada Compliance**

The Car2U® system complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes and modifications to the Car2U® system transmitter by other than an authorized service facility could void authorization to use the equipment.

## Driver Controls

### POSITIVE RETENTION FLOOR MAT (IF EQUIPPED)



**!** **WARNING:** Always use floor mats that are designed to fit the foot well of your vehicle. Only use floor mats that leave the pedal area unobstructed. Only use floor mats that are firmly secured to retention posts so that they cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals or impair safe operation of your vehicle in other ways.

- Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.
- Always make sure that the floor mats are properly attached to the retention posts in the carpet that are supplied with your vehicle. Floor mats must be properly secured to both retention posts to ensure mats do not shift out of position.
- Never place floor mats or any other covering in the vehicle foot well that cannot be properly secured to prevent them from moving and interfering with the pedals or the ability to control the vehicle.
- Never place floor mats or any other covering on top of already installed floor mats. Floor mats should always rest on top of vehicle carpeting surface and not another floor mat or other covering. Additional floor mats or any other covering will reduce the pedal clearance and potentially interfere with pedal operation.
- Check attachment of floor mats on a regular basis. Always properly reinstall and secure floor mats that have been removed for cleaning or replacement.
- Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver foot well while the vehicle is moving. Objects that are loose can become trapped under the pedals causing a loss of vehicle control.

## Driver Controls

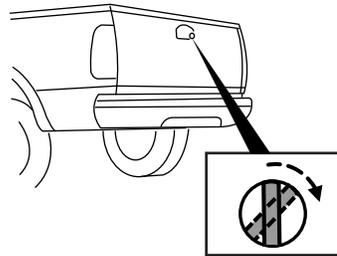
### WARNING (Continued)

- Failure to properly follow floor mat installation or attachment instructions can potentially cause interference with pedal operation causing loss of control of vehicle.
- To install floor mats, position the floor mat so that the eyelet is over the retention post and press down to lock in.
- To remove the floor mat, reverse the installation procedure.

### TAILGATE LOCK

Your vehicle may be equipped with a tailgate lock designed to help prevent theft of the tailgate.

- Insert ignition key and turn to the right to engage lock.
- Turn ignition key to the left to unlock.



### Tailgate removal

Your tailgate is removable to allow more room for loading.



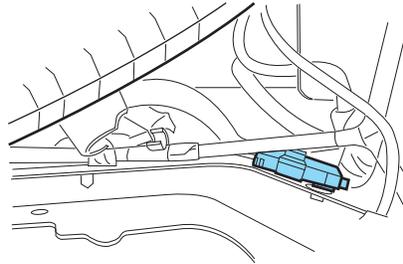
**WARNING:** Always properly secure cargo to prevent shifting cargo or cargo falling from vehicle, which could result in compromised vehicle stability and serious personal injury to vehicle occupants or others.

**Note:** If equipped with a rearview camera system, do Steps 1 through 3 before removing the tailgate.

## Driver Controls

1. Before removal of the tailgate, locate and disconnect the tailgate in-line connector under the pickup box on the passenger side of the vehicle near the spare tire.

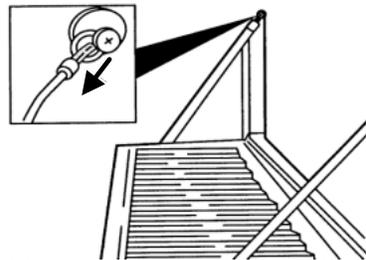
2. Install a protective cap (tethered to the wire assembly) onto the in-line rearview camera system connector that remains under the pickup box.



3. Partially lower tailgate and carefully feed tailgate harness up through the gap between the pickup box and the bumper. Place the tailgate harness out of the way under the pickup box.

4. Lower the tailgate.

5. Using a screwdriver, gently pry the spring clip (on each connector) past the head of the support screw. Disconnect cable.



6. Disconnect the other cable.

7. Lift tailgate to a 45-degree angle from horizontal.

8. Lift right side off of its hinge.

9. Lift tailgate to a 80-degree angle from horizontal.

10. Remove tailgate from left side hinge by sliding tailgate to the right.

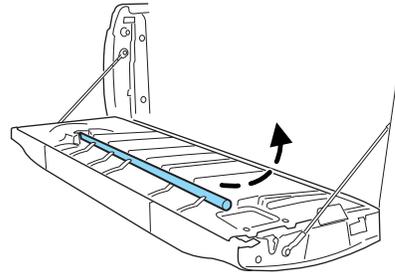
To install, follow the removal procedures in reverse order.

## Driver Controls

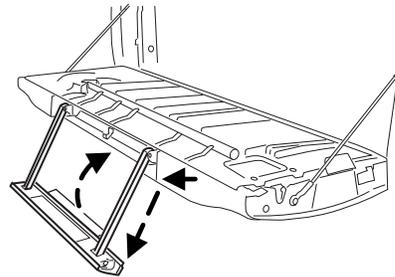
### Tailgate step (if equipped)

Your vehicle may be equipped with a feature that allows easier entry into the truck bed. To open the tailgate step:

1. Flip down the tailgate.
2. Pull the yellow latch lever to the unlock position (🔓) to release the grab handle from its stowed position and raise the handle upright until you feel it latch and see the latch lever in the lock position (🔒). The yellow lever only needs to be used when releasing the grab handle.



3. Rotate the center molding to unlatch the tailgate step and pull it towards you to extend it.
4. Flip open the step panel to widen the step.



**Note:** To reduce risk of falling:

- Operate step only when the vehicle is on level surface.
- Operate step only in areas with sufficient lighting
- Always open flip panel to widen step.
- Always use grab handle when stepping up and down.
- Step not intended for bare-footed use.
- Keep step clean from contamination before use (e.g. snow, mud)
- Keep the step load (you + load) below 350 lb (159 kg).
- Never drive with step deployed.

To close the tailgate step:

1. Close the step panel, then lift and fully close the tailgate step into the tailgate.
2. Slide the latch at the bottom of the handle, then lower the handle.

## Driver Controls

**Note:**

- Fully close and latch the tailgate step before moving the vehicle.
- Never drive with the step or grab handle deployed.
- Replace slip resistance tape (serviceable item) if worn out.
- Replace handle molding (serviceable item) if damaged.
- Do not tow with grab handle or step frame.

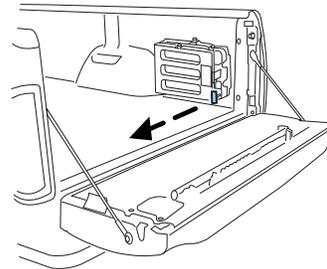
**Bed extender (if equipped)**

Your vehicle may be equipped with a cargo management feature in the truck bed.

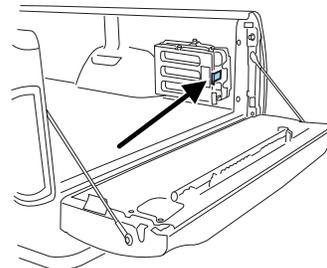
**Note:** This feature is not intended for off-road usage.

To open the bed extender into tailgate mode:

1. Pull the locking pin toward the center of the vehicle.

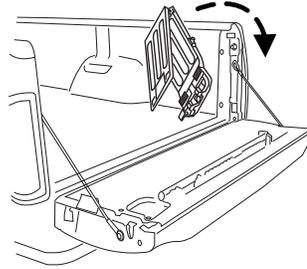


2. Open the latches to release the panels.

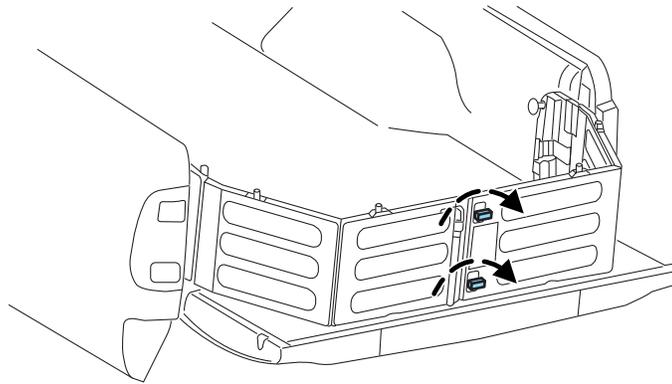


## Driver Controls

3. Rotate the panels toward the tailgate.



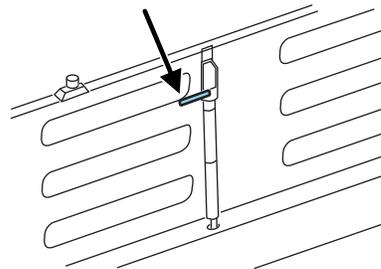
Repeat Steps 1–3 for the other side of the bed extender.



4. Connect the two panels, then rotate both knobs a quarter-turn clockwise to secure the panels.

5. Ensure the latch rod is inserted into the tailgate hole and the locking pins on both sides are engaged into their holes in the pick-up box.

6. Reverse steps for storage of the bed extender.



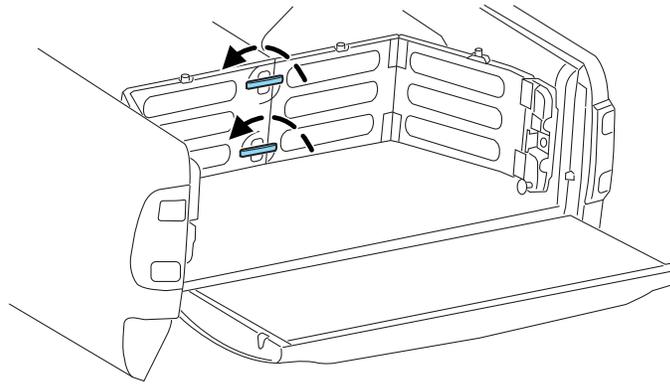
## Driver Controls

**Note:** When the vehicle is in motion, ensure the locking pins and knobs are fully engaged.

**Note:** Ensure all cargo is secured.

**Note:** When the vehicle is in motion, the tailgate load must not exceed 150 lb (68 kg).

**Note:** The bed extender should always be kept in the grocery mode or stowed position with the tailgate closed when not being used for the purpose of restraining cargo in the tailgate mode.

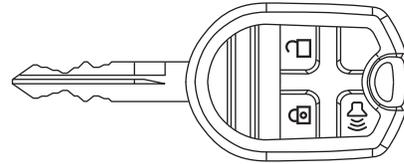


To open the bed extender into grocery mode, follow Steps 1–4 by rotating the panels away from the tailgate. Close the tailgate.

## Locks and Security

### KEYS

Your vehicle may be equipped with two integrated keyhead transmitters (IKTs). The key blade functions as a programmed key which starts the vehicle and unlocks/locks all the doors. The transmitter portion functions as the remote entry transmitter.



Your IKTs are programmed to your vehicle; using a non-programmed key will not permit your vehicle to start. If you lose your authorized dealer supplied IKTs, replacement IKTs are available through your authorized dealer. Standard SecuriLock® keys without remote entry transmitter functionality can also be purchased from your authorized dealer if desired.

Always carry a spare key with you in case of an emergency.

For more information regarding programming replacement IKTs, refer to the *SecuriLock® passive anti-theft system* section later in this chapter.

**Note:** Your vehicle's IKTs were issued with a security tag that provides important vehicle key cut information. It is recommended that you keep the tag in a safe place for future reference.



### MYKEY® (IF EQUIPPED)

The MyKey® feature allows you to program a restricted driving mode to promote good driving habits. All but one of the keys programmed to the vehicle can be activated as a MyKey®. The key will remain restricted until MyKey® is cleared. Any remaining keys are referred to as an “administrator key” or admin key. The admin key can be used to create a MyKey®, program optional MyKey® settings, and clear the MyKey® feature. When the MyKey® feature is enabled the user can use the system check in the message center to see how many MyKeys™ and admin keys are programmed to the vehicle, and how many total miles have been driven with the MyKey® active.

#### MyKey® restricted features

**Standard settings – These settings cannot be changed**

130

## Locks and Security

- The audio system will be muted whenever Belt-Minder® is activated until the safety belts are buckled. Refer to the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter for a detailed description of Belt-Minder® operation.
- Low fuel warnings are displayed in the message center followed by a chime when the vehicle has only 1/8 tank of fuel.
- If equipped, any of the following: parking aid, Blind Spot Information System (BLIS®) with cross traffic alert and forward collision warning systems cannot be turned off.

### Optional settings – These settings can be changed

- Vehicle speed is limited to 80 mph (130 km/h). Visual warnings are displayed followed by a chime when the vehicle speed has reached 80 mph (130 km/h).
- Visual warnings are displayed followed by a chime when a preselected vehicle speed of 45, 55 or 65 mph (75, 90, or 105 km/h) is exceeded.
- The maximum volume of the audio system is limited to 45%. MYKEY VOLUME LIMITED will be displayed in the radio or navigation screen (if equipped) when attempting to exceed the limited volume.
- The AdvanceTrac® system cannot be turned off. When this optional setting is on, the MyKey® user will not be able to deactivate the system. **Note:** It may be beneficial to deactivate the AdvanceTrac® system if the vehicle is stuck in snow, mud, or sand.

### Create a MyKey®

To program MyKey® on one of the keys programmed to the vehicle, insert the key that you want to make a MyKey® into the ignition. (For vehicles equipped with push button start, put the intelligent access key in the backup slot with the buttons facing out of the slot; see the *Driving* chapter for the location of the backup slot.) Turn the ignition on. Use the message center buttons to do the following:

For standard message center:

1. Press SETUP until PRESS RESET TO CREATE MYKEY is displayed.
2. Press and release the RESET button. HOLD RESET TO CONFIRM MYKEY will be displayed.
3. Press and hold the RESET button for two seconds until MARK THIS AS RESTRICTED is displayed.
4. Wait until KEY RESTRICTED AT NEXT START is displayed.

## Locks and Security

For optional message center:

1. At the main menu screen select SETTING then MYKEY by pressing OK or the right arrow key.
2. Press OK to select CREATE MYKEY.
3. Hold OK as prompted until you see MARK THIS KEY AS RESTRICTED.

MyKey® is successfully programmed. Make sure you label it so you can distinguish it from the admin keys. **Note:** To program the optional settings go to Step 2 in the *Programming MyKey® optional settings* section. If your vehicle is equipped with remote start, see the *Using MyKey® with remote start systems* section.

**Note:** The MyKey® can be cleared within the same key cycle that it was created, otherwise a standard key (administrator key) is required to clear the MyKey® programming. To clear all MyKeys® go to Step 2 in the *Clear MyKey®* section.

### Programming MyKey® optional settings

To program the optional settings, use the message center buttons to do the following:

For standard message center:

1. Press SETUP until RESET FOR MYKEY SETTINGS is displayed.
2. Press and release the RESET button to display MyKey® setup menus. The first menu shown is:  
MYKEY MAX MPH <80 MPH> OFF
3. If you don't want to change the maximum speed setting, press the SETUP button to display the next menu. The remaining menus appear as follows with the default settings shown:  
MYKEY MPH TONES 45 55 65 <OFF>  
MYKEY VOLUME LIMIT <ON> OFF  
MYKEY ADVTRAC CTRL ON <OFF>.
4. On any of the menus press RESET to highlight your choice with the <...>.
5. Press SETUP to enter your choice. The next optional setting will be displayed.
6. Repeat Steps 4 and 5 until you are done changing the optional settings.

## Locks and Security

For optional message center:

1. At the main menu screen select **SETTING** then **MYKEY** by pressing **OK** or the right arrow key.
2. Use the up and down arrows to get to any of the optional features.
3. Press the right arrow key to bring up the settings available for each feature.
4. Press **OK** or the right arrow key to make your choice.

### **Clear MyKey®**

To reset all MyKeys® as admin keys do the following:

For standard message center:

1. Turn the vehicle on using the admin key.
2. Press **SETUP** until **PRESS RESET TO CLEAR MYKEY** is displayed.
3. Press and release the **RESET** button. **HOLD RESET TO CONFIRM CLEAR** is displayed.
4. Press and hold the **RESET** button for two seconds until **ALL MYKEYS CLEARED** is displayed.

For optional message center:

1. At the main menu screen select **SETTING** then **MYKEY** by pressing **OK** or the right arrow key.
2. Press the down arrow key to get to **CLEAR MYKEYS**.
3. Hold **OK** until you see **ALL MYKEYS CLEARED**.

### **Check MyKey® system status**

The vehicle system check will provide the status of the following MyKey® parameters:

- **MYKEY MILES** — This odometer only tracks distance when a MyKey® is used. If mileage does not accumulate as expected, then the MyKey® is not being used by the intended user. The only way to reset this odometer to zero is by clearing MyKey®. If this odometer is lower than the last time you checked, then the MyKey® system has been recently cleared.
- **# MYKEY(S) PROGRAMMED** — Indicates how many MyKeys® are programmed to the vehicle. Can be used to detect deletion of a MyKey®.
- **# ADMIN KEYS PROGRAMMED** — Indicates how many admin keys are programmed to the vehicle. Can be used to detect if an additional spare key has been programmed to the vehicle

## Locks and Security

Refer to *Message center* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for MyKey® system warnings displays.

### Using MyKey® with remote start systems

MyKey® is not compatible with non Ford-approved aftermarket remote start systems. If you choose to install a remote start system please see your authorized dealer for a Ford approved remote start system.

The following information MAY help customers who choose to use a non Ford-approved remote start system. The actions proved below do not make MyKey® compatible with non Ford-approved remote start system, but it MAY help you to retain some MyKey® functions.

### Vehicles equipped with traditional keys

When using a non Ford-approved remote start system, the default settings may recognize the remote start system as an additional admin key with its associated privileges. This makes it NOT compatible with MyKey®. The following action may help you to retain some MyKey® functions:

1. Restart the engine when you insert a key into the ignition cylinder.
2. In addition to the key that you have already programmed as a MyKey®, owners of vehicles equipped with traditional keys may want to program the non Ford-approved remote start system as a MyKey® if the remote start fob is used by the MyKey® driver.

To program a non Ford-approved remote start system as MyKey®, do the following:

1. Enter the vehicle and close all doors.
2. Remote start the vehicle using a remote start fob.
3. Follow steps 1-4 in the *Create a MyKey®* section.

### Vehicles equipped with intelligent access key (push button start)

- It is not possible to program any remote start system as MyKey® on vehicles equipped with an intelligent access key (push button start). Therefore, you should treat the remote start fob as you would any other admin key. When the vehicle is started using remote start, the system will stall the engine when you either enter the vehicle or shift the vehicle into gear. Prior to the engine stall, the vehicle will have administrative privileges. When you restart the engine, the vehicle will identify the user as an admin or MyKey® drive depending on the settings of the actual key used to start the vehicle.

## Locks and Security

**Note:** For all vehicles, the number of MYKEY(S) PROGRAMMED or ADMIN KEYS PROGRAMMED that is displayed in the MyKey® system status menus will include the non Ford-approved remote start system as an additional key in the total count. See the *Check MyKey® system status* section.

**Note:** For all vehicles with a non Ford-approved remote start installed, it is possible to program all “real” keys as MyKeys®, in which case, you will need to use your remote start system to reset all MyKeys® as admin keys by doing the following:

1. Enter the vehicle, close all doors.
2. Remote start the vehicle using your remote start fob.
3. Follow steps 1-4 in the *Clear MyKey®* section.

### Using MyKey® with remote start systems

MyKey® is not compatible with non Ford-approved aftermarket remote start systems. If you choose to install a remote start system please see your authorized dealer for a Ford-approved remote start system.

When using a Ford-approved remote start system, the default settings will recognize the remote start system as an additional admin key with its associated privileges. Owners of vehicles equipped with traditional keys should program the remote start system as a MyKey® in addition to the key that they have already programmed as a MyKey®. To program the remote start system as MyKey®, do the following:

1. Enter the vehicle and close all doors.
2. Remote start the vehicle using a remote start fob.
3. Follow Steps 1-4 in the *Create a MyKey®* section.

**Note:** For all vehicles, the number of MYKEY(S) PROGRAMMED or ADMIN KEYS PROGRAMMED that is displayed in the MyKey® system status menus will include the remote start system as an additional key in the total count. See the *Check MyKey® system status* section.

**Note:** For all vehicles with remote start installed, it is possible to program all “real” keys as MyKeys®, in which case, you will need to use your remote start system to reset all MyKeys® as admin keys by doing the following:

1. Enter the vehicle, close all doors.
2. Remote start the vehicle using your remote start fob.
3. Follow Steps 1-4 in the *Clear MyKey®* section.

## Locks and Security

### Troubleshooting

Condition	Potential Causes
Can't create a MyKey®	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Key in the ignition is already a MyKey®.</li> <li>• Key in the ignition is the last remaining admin key (there always has to be at least one admin key).</li> <li>• SecuriLock® passive anti-theft system is disabled or in unlimited mode.</li> <li>• Vehicle has been started using a non Ford-approved remote start system that is programmed as MyKey®. Refer to <i>Using MyKey® with remote start systems</i> section.</li> </ul>
Cannot program the MyKey® optional settings	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Key in the ignition is a MyKey®.</li> <li>• No MyKeys® are programmed to the vehicle. Refer to <i>Create a MyKey®</i> section.</li> <li>• Vehicle has been started using a non Ford-approved remote start system that is programmed as MyKey®. Refer to <i>Using MyKey® with remote start systems</i> section.</li> </ul>
Cannot clear MyKey®	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Key in the ignition is a MyKey® .</li> <li>• No MyKeys® are programmed to the vehicle. Refer to <i>Create a MyKey®</i> section.</li> <li>• Vehicle has been started using a non Ford-approved remote start system that is programmed as MyKey®. Refer to <i>Using MyKey® with remote start systems</i> section.</li> </ul>
Lost the only admin key	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Purchase a new key from your authorized dealer.</li> </ul>

## Locks and Security

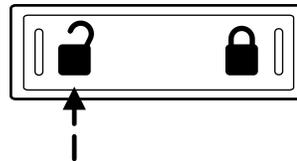
Condition	Potential Causes
Lost any key	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For programming spare keys, refer to the <i>Programming spare keys</i> section in this chapter.</li> </ul>
I accidentally programmed all keys as MyKeys®	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Vehicle has a non Ford-approved remote start system that is recognized as an admin key. Refer to the <i>Using MyKey® with remote start systems</i> section to reset all MyKeys® as admin keys.</li> </ul>
No MyKey® function with (if equipped) intelligent access key with push button start	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• An admin intelligent access key is present at a push-and-start vehicle.</li> <li>• No MyKeys® are programmed to the vehicle. Refer to <i>Create a MyKey®</i> section.</li> <li>• Vehicle has been started using a non Ford-approved remote start system (as an admin key) then a MyKey® is inserted without restarting the engine.</li> </ul>
MyKey® programmed total includes one additional key	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Unknown key has been programmed to the vehicle as a MyKey®.</li> <li>• Vehicle is equipped with a non Ford-approved remote start system. Refer to <i>Using MyKey® with remote start systems</i> section.</li> </ul>
Admin keys programmed total includes one additional key	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Unknown key has been programmed to the vehicle as admin key.</li> <li>• Vehicle is equipped with a non Ford-approved remote start system. Refer to <i>Using MyKey® with remote start systems</i> section.</li> </ul>

## Locks and Security

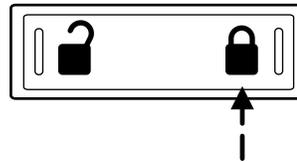
Condition	Potential Causes
MyKey® distance does not accumulate	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• MyKey® is not being used by the intended user.</li> <li>• MyKey® system has been recently cleared.</li> <li>• Vehicles has been started using a non Ford-approved remote start system (as an admin key) then a MyKey® is inserted without recycling the MyKey® in ignition.</li> </ul>

### POWER DOOR LOCKS (IF EQUIPPED)

Press control to unlock all doors.



Press control to lock all doors.



### Smart locks (if equipped)

This feature prevents you from locking yourself out of the vehicle if your key is still in the ignition.

When you open the driver's door and you lock the vehicle with the power door lock control, all the doors will lock, then the driver's door will automatically unlock reminding you that your key is still in the ignition.

## Locks and Security

The vehicle can still be locked, with the key in the ignition, using the manual lock button on the door, locking the driver's door with a key, by simultaneously pressing button 7 • 8 and the 9 • 0 controls on the remote entry keypad (if equipped), or using the  button on the remote entry transmitter (if equipped).

### **Autolock feature (if equipped)**

The autolock feature will lock all the doors when:

- all the doors are closed,
- the ignition is in the on position,
- you shift into any gear putting the vehicle in motion, and
- the vehicle attains a speed greater than 12 mph (20 km/h) for greater than two seconds.

The autolock feature repeats when:

- any door is opened then closed while the ignition is in the on position and the vehicle speed is 9 mph (15 km/h) or lower, and
- the vehicle then attains a speed greater than 12 mph (20 km/h) for greater than two seconds.

### **Deactivating/activating autolock feature**

There are four methods to enable/disable this feature:

- Through your authorized dealer,
- by using a power door unlock/lock procedure,
- using a keypad procedure (if equipped), or
- or by using the instrument cluster message center (if equipped). Refer to *Message center* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter.

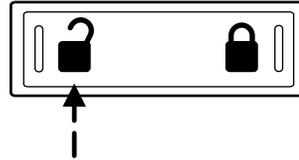
**Note:** The autolock feature can be activated/deactivated independently of the autounlock feature.

### **Power door lock switch autolock enable/disable procedure**

Before starting, ensure the ignition is in the off position and all vehicle doors are closed. You must complete Steps 1–5 within 30 seconds or the procedure will have to be repeated. If the procedure needs to be repeated, wait a minimum of 30 seconds before beginning again.

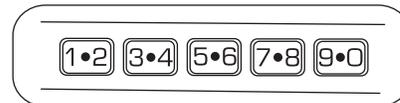
## Locks and Security

1. Place the key in the ignition and turn the ignition to the on position.
2. Press the power door unlock control on the door panel three times.
3. Turn the ignition from the on position to the off position.
4. Press the power door unlock control on the door panel three times.
5. Turn the ignition back to the on position. The horn will chirp one time to confirm programming mode has been entered and is active.
6. To enable/disable the autolock feature, press the unlock control, then press the lock control. The horn will chirp once if autolock was deactivated or twice (one short and one long chirp) if autolock was activated.
7. Turn the ignition to the off position. The horn will chirp once to confirm the procedure is complete.



### **Keyless entry keypad autolock enable/disable procedure**

1. Turn the ignition to the off position.
2. Close all the doors.
3. Enter factory-set 5-digit entry code.
4. Press and hold the 3 • 4. While holding the 3 • 4 press the 7 • 8.
5. Release the 7 • 8.
6. Release the 3 • 4.



The user should receive a **horn chirp** to indicate the system has been disabled or a chirp followed by a honk to indicate the system has been enabled.

### **Autounlock feature (if equipped)**

The autounlock feature will unlock all the doors when:

- the ignition is in the on position, all the doors are closed, and the vehicle has been in motion at a speed greater than 12 mph (20 km/h);
- the vehicle has then come to a stop and the ignition is turned to the off ) or accessory position; and
- the driver door is opened within 10 minutes of the ignition being transitioned to the off or accessory position.

140

## Locks and Security

**Note:** The doors will not autounlock if the vehicle has been electronically locked before the driver door is opened.

### **Deactivating/activating autounlock feature**

There are three methods to enable/disable this feature:

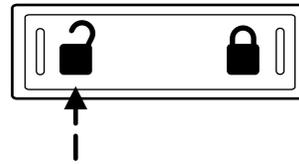
- Through your authorized dealer,
- by using a power door unlock/lock sequence,
- using a keypad procedure (if equipped)
- or by using the instrument cluster message center (if equipped). Refer to *Optional message center* in the *Driver controls* chapter.

**Note:** The autounlock feature can be activated/deactivated independently of the autolock feature.

### **Power door lock switch autounlock enable/disable procedure**

Before starting, ensure the ignition is in the off position and all vehicle doors are closed. You must complete Steps 1–5 within 30 seconds or the procedure will have to be repeated. If the procedure needs to be repeated, wait a minimum of 30 seconds before beginning again.

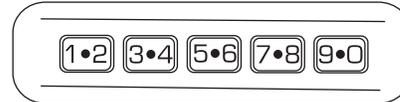
1. Place the key in the ignition and turn the ignition to the on position.
2. Press the power door unlock control on the door panel three times.
3. Turn the ignition from the on position to the off position.
4. Press the power door unlock control on the door panel three times.
5. Turn the ignition back to the on position. The horn will chirp one time to confirm programming mode has been entered and is active.
6. To enable/disable the autounlock feature, press the lock control, then press the unlock control. The horn will chirp once if autounlock was deactivated or twice (one short and one long chirp) if autounlock was activated.
7. Turn the ignition to the off position. The horn will chirp once to confirm the procedure is complete.



## Locks and Security

### **Keyless entry keypad autounlock enable/disable procedure**

1. Turn the ignition to the off position.
2. Close all the doors.
3. Enter factory-set 5-digit entry code.
4. Press and hold the 3 • 4. While holding the 3 • 4, press and release the 7 • 8. While still holding the 3 • 4, press and release the 7 • 8 a second time.
5. Release the 3 • 4.



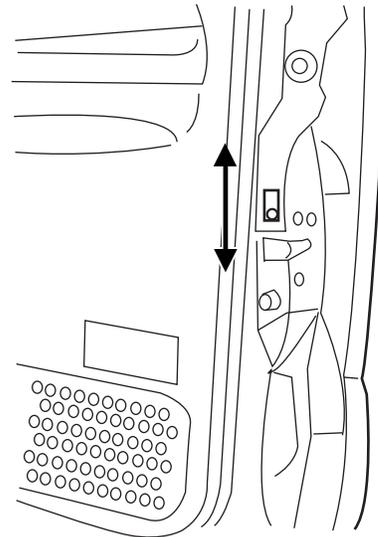
The user should receive a **horn chirp** to indicate the system has been disabled or a chirp followed by a honk to indicate the system has been enabled.

### **CHILDPROOF DOOR LOCKS (IF EQUIPPED)**

- When these locks are set, the rear doors cannot be opened from the inside.
- The rear doors can be opened from the outside when the childproof door locks are set, but the doors are unlocked.

The childproof locks are located on the rear edge of each rear door and must be set separately for each door. Setting the lock for one door will not automatically set the lock for both doors.

- Move lock control up to engage the childproof lock.
- Move lock control down to disengage the childproof lock.



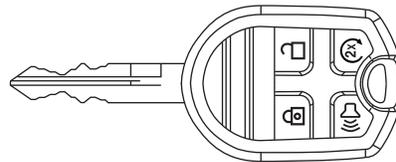
## Locks and Security

### REMOTE ENTRY SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

The integrated keyhead transmitter (IKT) complies with part 15 of the FCC rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

**Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.**

There are two possible types of IKTs: vehicles with the remote start feature will have the IKT shown. Vehicle's without remote start will not have the remote start button (2x) .



The typical operating range for your IKT is approximately 33 feet (10 meters). A decrease in operating range could be caused by:

- weather conditions,
- nearby radio towers,
- structures around the vehicle, or
- other vehicles parked next to your vehicle.

The IKT allows you to:

- remotely unlock the vehicle doors.
- remotely lock all the vehicle doors.
- remotely start the engine (if equipped with remote start).
- activate the personal alarm.
- operate the illuminated entry feature.

The remote entry lock/unlock feature operates in any ignition position except while the key is held in the start position. The panic feature operates with the key in the off position.

If there are problems with the remote entry system, make sure to take **ALL integrated keyhead transmitters** with you to the authorized dealer in order to aid in troubleshooting the problem.

## Locks and Security

### Two step door unlocking

1. Press  and release to unlock the driver's door. **Note:** The parking lamps and interior lamps will illuminate (refer to the *Illuminated entry* feature later in this section) if the control on the overhead lamp is **not** set to the **off** position.
2. Press  and release again within three seconds to unlock the passenger doors.

The battery saver feature will turn off the lamps 10 minutes after the ignition is turned to the off position.

### One step door unlocking

If the one step door unlocking feature is activated, press  and release once to unlock all of the doors. **Note:** The parking lamps and interior lamps will illuminate (refer to the *Illuminated entry* feature later in this section) if the control on the overhead lamp is **not** set to the **off** position.

### Switching from two step to one step door unlocking

Your vehicle comes with two step unlocking enabled. Unlocking can be switched between two step and one step door unlocking by pressing and holding both the  and  buttons simultaneously on the remote entry transmitter for approximately four seconds. The hazard lamps will flash twice to indicate that the vehicle has switched to one step unlocking. Repeat the procedure to switch back to two-step unlocking.

### Locking the doors

1. Press  and release to lock all the doors. The parking lamps will illuminate if all the doors are closed and locked.
2. Press  and release again within three seconds to confirm that all the doors are closed and locked. **Note:** The doors will lock again, the horn will chirp once, and the parking lamps will illuminate once more. If any of the doors are not properly closed the horn will make two quick chirps and the parking lamps will not flash.

### Car finder

Press  twice within three seconds. The horn will chirp and the turn lamps will flash. It is recommended that this method be used to locate your vehicle, rather than using the panic alarm.

### Sounding a panic alarm

Press  to activate the alarm. Press again or turn the ignition to on to deactivate.

144

## Locks and Security

**Note:** The panic alarm will only operate when the ignition is off.

### Memory feature (seat, mirrors and adjustable pedals)

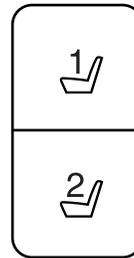
The integrated keyhead transmitter (IKT) allows you to recall the memory seat/power mirrors/adjustable pedals feature.

Press  to automatically move the driver seat, power mirrors and adjustable pedals to the desired memory position. (The seat position corresponds to the transmitter being used).

### Programming memory feature to transmitter

To activate this feature:

1. Move the driver seat, power mirrors, and adjustable pedals to the desired positions using the associated controls.
2. Press and hold control button 1 for five seconds. A tone will be heard after two seconds confirming memory position has been set. Continue to hold until a second tone is heard after five seconds.
3. Within three seconds press .
4. Wait 10 seconds, then press .
5. Repeat this procedure for memory 2 and another transmitter if desired.



### Deprogramming memory feature from transmitter

To deactivate this feature:

1. Press and hold either the 1 or 2 control on the driver's door for five seconds. A tone will be heard after 1½ seconds when the memory store is done, continue to hold until a second tone is heard after five seconds.
2. Within three seconds press .
3. Repeat this procedure for another transmitter if desired.

### Replacing the battery

The integrated keyhead transmitter (IKT) or intelligent access key (IA key) uses one coin type three-volt lithium battery CR2032 or equivalent.

## Locks and Security

### Integrated keyhead transmitter (IKT)

To replace the battery:

1. Twist a thin coin in the slot near the key ring to remove the battery cover (1).

**Note:** Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals on the back surface of the circuit board.

2. Carefully peel up the rubber gasket (2) from the transmitter if it does not come off with battery cover.

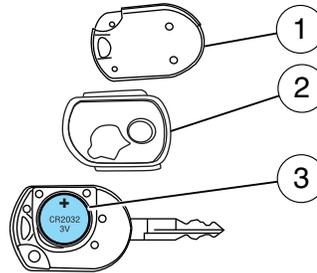
3. Remove the old battery (3).

**Note:** Please refer to local regulations when disposing of transmitter batteries.

4. Insert the new battery. Refer to the instructions inside the IKT for the correct orientation of the battery. Press the battery down to ensure that the battery is fully seated in the battery housing cavity.

5. Snap the battery cover back onto the key.

**Note:** Replacement of the battery will **not** cause the IKT or IA key to become de-programmed from your vehicle. They should operate normally after battery replacement.



### Replacing lost Integrated Keyhead Transmitters (IKTs)

If you would like to have your Integrated Keyhead Transmitters reprogrammed because you lost one, or would like to buy additional IKTs, you can either reprogram them yourself, or take **all IKTs** to your authorized dealer for reprogramming.

#### **How to reprogram your Integrated Keyhead Transmitters (IKTs)**

To program a new Integrated Keyhead Transmitter yourself, refer to *Programming spare keys* in the *SecuriLock® passive anti-theft system* section of this chapter. **Note:** At least two IKTs are required to perform this procedure yourself.

### Illuminated entry

The interior lamps and parking lamps illuminate when the remote entry system is used to unlock the door(s).

## Locks and Security

The illuminated entry system will turn off the lights if:

- the ignition switch is turned to the on position, or
- the remote transmitter lock control is pressed, or
- the 7 • 8 and the 9 • 0 controls on the keyless entry keypad are pressed, or
- after 25 seconds of illumination.

The dome lamp control (if equipped) must **not** be set to the off position for the illuminated entry system to operate.

The lights will not turn off if:

- they have been turned on with the dimmer control, or
- any door is open.

The battery saver will shut off the interior lamps 30 minutes after the ignition has been turned to the off position, 10 minutes after if the dome lamp is off, and 30 minutes after if the dome lamp switch is left on.

### Remote start (if equipped)

Your vehicle may be equipped with the remote start feature which allows you to start the engine from outside the vehicle. If your integrated keyhead transmitter (IKT) has a  icon, you have remote start. The remote start feature has an extended operating range which allows you to remote start your vehicle from a farther distance from your vehicle. All the buttons have this increased range performance capability when equipped with remote start.

Many states and provinces have restrictions for the use of remote start. Check your local and state or provincial laws for specific requirements regarding remote start systems.

**Note:** Do not use remote start if your vehicle is low on fuel.



**WARNING:** To avoid exhaust fumes, do not use remote start if your vehicle is parked indoors or areas that are not well ventilated.

The remote start system will not work if:

- The ignition is in the on position.
- The alarm system is triggered.
- The feature has been disabled.
- The hood is not closed.

## Locks and Security

- Two remote vehicle starts have already been attempted within the last hour.
- The vehicle is not in P (Park).

### Starting the engine with remote start

To start the engine using remote start:

**Note:** Each button press must be done within 3 seconds of each other. If this sequence is not followed the vehicle will not remote start and the horn will not chirp.

1. Press  on the IKT to lock all the doors.
2. Press  two times. The exterior lamps will flash twice.

**Note:** On diesel engines there will be a 3 second delay before the engine starts.

If for some reason, the system fails to start, the horn will chirp twice.

3. Insert the key in the ignition and turn to the on position before driving.

The power windows will be inhibited during the remote start and the radio will not turn on.

The parking lamps will remain on and the engine will run for 5, 10, or 15 minutes, depending on how you programmed the system. To select the duration of the remote start system refer to *Message center* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter.

### Extending the engine run time

To keep the engine running for another remote start duration, repeat Steps 1 and 2 with the engine still running. If you programmed the duration to last 10 minutes, the second 10 minutes will begin immediately so that, for example, if the vehicle had been running from the first remote start for five minutes, the engine will continue to run for a total of 15 minutes. You can only extend the remote start once.

If the vehicle is remote started then remote stopped, wait at least five seconds before remote starting a second time.

The ignition switch must be turned to the on position and then back to the off position or allow one hour to pass before using remote start again.

### Turning the engine off after using remote start

- Press  one time. The parking lamps will turn off.

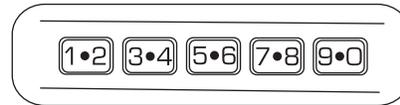
You may have to be closer to the vehicle than when starting due to ground reflection and the added noise of the running engine.

## Locks and Security

You can disable or enable the remote start system through the message center. Refer to *Message center* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter.

### SECURICODE™ KEYLESS ENTRY SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

You can use the keyless entry keypad to lock or unlock the doors without using a key.



The keypad can be operated with the factory set 5-digit entry code; this code is located on the owner's wallet card in the glove box, is marked on the computer module, and is available from your authorized dealer. You can also create your own 5-digit personal entry code.

When pressing the controls on the keypad, press the middle of the controls to ensure a good activation.

### Programming a personal entry code and keypad association to memory feature

To create your own personal entry code:

1. Enter the factory set code.
2. Within five seconds press the 1 • 2 on the keypad.
3. Enter your personal 5-digit code. Each number must be entered within five seconds of each other.
4. To associate the entry code with a memory setting, enter a sixth digit to indicate which driver should be set in a memory recalled by the personal entry code:
  - Pressing 1 • 2 recalls Driver 1 settings.
  - Pressing 3 • 4 recalls Driver 2 settings.
  - Pressing other keypad buttons or not pressing a keypad button as a sixth digit does not set a driver and will not recall a memory setting.
 

**Note:** The factory-set code cannot be associated with a memory setting.
5. The doors will again lock then unlock to confirm that your personal entry code has been programmed to the module.

#### Tips:

- Do not set a code that uses five of the same number.
- Do not use five numbers in sequential order.
- The factory set code will work even if you have set your own personal code.

## Locks and Security

### Erasing personal code

1. Enter the factory set 5–digit code.
2. Within five seconds, press the 1 • 2 on the keypad and release.
3. Press and hold the 1 • 2 for two seconds. This must be done within five seconds of completing Step 2.

Your personal code is now erased and only the factory set 5–digit code will work.

### Anti-scan feature

If an incorrect code has been entered seven times (35 consecutive button presses), the keypad will go into an anti-scan mode. This mode disables the keypad for one minute and the keypad lamp will flash during this time.

The anti-scan feature will turn off after:

- one minute of keypad inactivity.
- pressing the  control on the remote entry transmitter.
- the ignition is turned to the on position.

### Unlocking and locking the doors using keyless entry

**To unlock the driver's door**, enter the factory set 5–digit code or your personal code. Each number must be pressed within five seconds of each other. The interior lamps will illuminate after entering a valid keypad entry code.

**To unlock all doors**, press the 3 • 4 control within five seconds.

**To lock all doors**, press the 7 • 8 and the 9 • 0 at the same time. You **do not** need to enter the keypad code first. **Note:** The interior lamps will turn off.

### SECURILOCK® PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

SecuriLock® passive anti-theft system is an engine immobilization system. This system is designed to help prevent the engine from being started unless a **coded key programmed to your vehicle** is used. The use of the wrong type of coded key may lead to a “no-start” condition. The message center will display: **STARTING SYSTEM FAULT**.

Your vehicle comes with two coded keys; additional coded keys may be purchased from your authorized dealer. The authorized dealer can program your spare keys to your vehicle or you can program the keys yourself. Refer to *Programming spare keys* for instructions on how to program the coded key.

150

## Locks and Security

**Note:** The SecuriLock® passive anti-theft system is not compatible with non-Ford aftermarket remote start systems. Use of these systems may result in vehicle starting problems and a loss of security protection.

**Note:** Large metallic objects, electronic devices that are used to purchase gasoline or similar items, or a second coded key on the same key chain may cause vehicle starting issues. You need to prevent these objects from touching the coded key while starting the engine. These objects will not cause damage to the coded key, but may cause a momentary issue if they are too close to the key when starting the engine. If a problem occurs, turn the ignition off, remove all objects on the key chain away from the coded key and restart the engine.

**Note: Do not leave a duplicate coded key in the vehicle. Always take your keys and lock all doors when leaving the vehicle.**

### Automatic arming

The vehicle is armed immediately after turning the ignition off.

### Automatic disarming

Switching the ignition on with a **coded key** disarms the vehicle.

### Replacement keys

If your keys are lost or stolen and you don't have an extra coded key, you will need to have your vehicle towed to an authorized dealer. The key codes need to be erased from your vehicle and new coded keys will need to be programmed.

Replacing coded keys can be very costly. Store an extra programmed key away from the vehicle in a safe place to help prevent any inconveniences. Please visit an authorized dealer to purchase additional spare or replacement keys.

### Programming spare keys

A maximum of eight keys can be coded to your vehicle. Only SecuriLock® keys can be used. To program a **coded key** yourself, you will need two previously programmed **coded keys** (keys that already operate your vehicle's engine) and the new unprogrammed key(s) readily accessible for timely implementation of each step in the procedure.

If two previously programmed coded keys are not available, you must bring your vehicle to your authorized dealer to have the spare coded key(s) programmed.

Please read and understand the entire procedure before you begin.

## Locks and Security

1. Insert the first previously programmed **coded key** into the ignition and turn the ignition from the 1 (off) position to the 3 (on) position (maintain ignition in the 3 (on) position for at least one second, but no more than 10 seconds).

2. Turn ignition from the 3 (on) position back to the 1 (off) position in order to remove the first **coded key** from the ignition.

3. After three seconds but within 10 seconds of removing the first **coded key**, insert the second previously programmed **coded key** into the ignition and turn the ignition from the 1 (off) position to the 3 (on) position (maintain ignition in the 3 (on) position for at least one second but no more than 10 seconds).

4. Turn the ignition from the 3 (on) position back to the 1 (off) position in order to remove the second **coded key** from the ignition.

5. After three seconds but within 10 seconds of removing the second **coded key**, insert the new unprogrammed key (new key/valet key) into the ignition and turn the ignition from the 1 (off) position to the 3 (on) position (maintain ignition in the 3 (on) position for at least one second, but no more than 10 seconds). This step will program your new key to a coded key.

6. To program additional new unprogrammed key(s), repeat Steps 1 through 5.

If successful, the new coded key(s) will start the vehicle's engine.

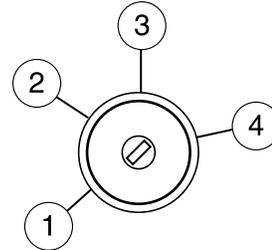
If not successful, the new coded key(s) will not start the vehicle's engine and you may repeat Steps 1 through 5. If failure repeats, bring your vehicle to your authorized dealer to have the new spare key(s) programmed.

### PERIMETER ALARM SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

The perimeter anti-theft system will warn you in the event of an unauthorized entry to your vehicle.

If there is any potential perimeter anti-theft problem with your vehicle, ensure **ALL remote entry transmitters** are taken to the authorized dealer to aid in troubleshooting.

152



## Locks and Security

### Arming the system

When armed, this system will respond if unauthorized entry is attempted. When unauthorized entry occurs, the system will flash the park/turn lamps and will sound the horn.

The system is ready to arm whenever the key is removed from the ignition. Either of the following actions will prearm the alarm system:

- Press the  control on the remote entry transmitter.
- Open a door and press the power door lock control to lock all the doors, and then close the door.
- Press and hold the 7 • 8 and 9 • 0 controls on the keyless entry pad at the same time to lock the doors (driver's door must be closed).

There is a 20 second countdown when any of the above actions occur before the vehicle becomes armed.

Each door and the hood is armed individually, and if any are open, they must be closed before the open entry point can enter the 20 second countdown.

The turn signal lamps will flash once when all doors and the hood are closed indicating the vehicle is locked and entering the 20 second countdown.

### Disarming the system

You can disarm the system by any of the following actions:

- Unlock the doors by pressing the  control on your remote entry transmitter.
- Turn the ignition to the on position with a programmed coded ignition key.
- Unlock the doors by using your keyless entry pad.
- If using a key in the driver's door to unlock the vehicle, a chime will sound when you open the door and you will have 12 seconds to disarm the alarm system using any of the actions above, otherwise the alarm will trigger.

Pressing the power door unlock control within the 20 second prearmed mode will return the vehicle to a disarmed state.

### Triggering the anti-theft system

The armed system will be triggered if any door or hood is opened without using the key or the remote entry transmitter.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

### FRONT SEATS

 **WARNING:** Reclining the seatback can cause an occupant to slide under the seat's safety belt, resulting in severe personal injuries in the event of a collision.

 **WARNING:** Do not pile cargo higher than the seatbacks to reduce the risk of injury in a collision or sudden stop.

 **WARNING:** Before returning the seatback to its original position, make sure that cargo or any objects are not trapped behind the seatback. After returning the seatback to its original position, pull on the seatback to ensure that it has fully latched. An unlatched seat may become dangerous in the event of a sudden stop or collision.

 **WARNING:** Never adjust the driver's seat or seatback when the vehicle is moving.

 **WARNING:** Always drive and ride with your seatback upright and the lap belt snug and low across the hips.

### Adjustable head restraints

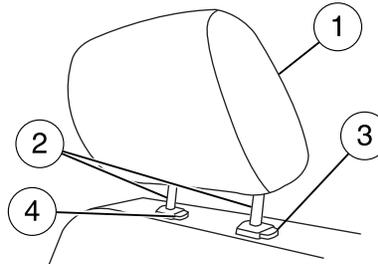
Your vehicle is equipped with front row outboard head restraints that are vertically adjustable.

 **WARNING:** To minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash, the driver and passenger occupants should not sit in and/or operate the vehicle, until the head restraint is placed in its proper position. The driver should never adjust the head restraint while the vehicle is in motion.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

The adjustable head restraints consist of :

- a trimmed energy absorbing foam and structure (1),
- two steel stems (2),
- a guide sleeve adjust/release button (3),
- and a guide sleeve unlock/remove button (4).



To adjust the head restraint, do the following:

1. Adjust the seatback to an upright driving/riding position.
2. Raise the head restraint by pulling up on the head restraint.
3. Lower the head restraint by pressing and holding the guide sleeve adjust/release button (3) and pushing down on the head restraint.

Properly adjust the head restraint so that the top of the head restraint is even with the top of your head and positioned as close as possible to the back of your head. For occupants of extremely tall stature, adjust the head restraint to its full up position.



**WARNING:** The adjustable head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied.

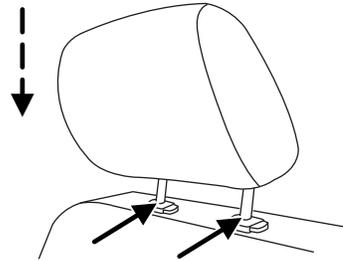
To remove the adjustable head restraint, do the following:

1. Pull up the head restraint until it reaches the highest adjustment position.
2. Simultaneously press and hold both the adjust/release button (3) and the unlock/remove button (4), then pull up on the head restraint.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

To reinstall the adjustable head restraint, do the following:

1. Insert the two stems (2) into the guide sleeve collars.
2. Push the head restraint down until it locks.



Properly adjust the head restraint so that the top of the head restraint is even with the top of your head and positioned as close as possible to the back of your head. For occupants of extremely tall stature, adjust the head restraint to its full up position.



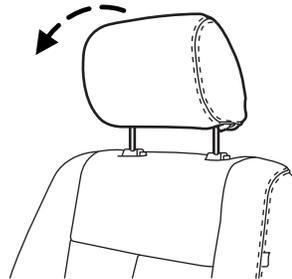
**WARNING:** To minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash, head restraints must be installed properly.

### ***Tilting head restraints (if equipped)***

The front head restraints may have a tilting feature for extra comfort. To tilt the head restraint, do the following:

1. Adjust the seatback to an upright driving/riding position.
2. Pivot the head restraint forward towards your head to the desired location.

After the head restraint reaches the forward-most tilt position, pivoting it forward again will then release it to the rearward un-tilted position.



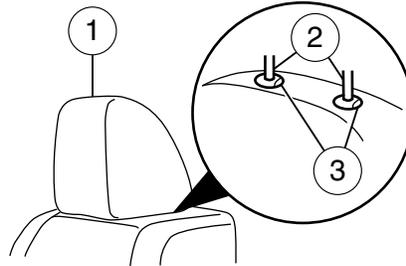
### ***Front row center non-adjustable head restraint (if equipped)***

Vehicle's equipped with a front center seat will have head restraints that are non-adjustable.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

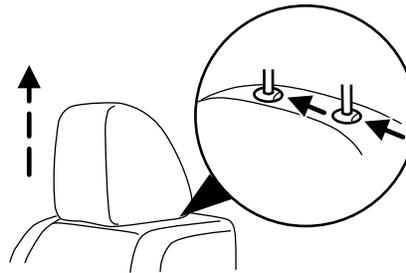
The non-adjustable head restraints consist of:

- a trimmed energy absorbing foam and structure (1),
- two steel stems (2),
- and two guide sleeve unlock/remove buttons (3).



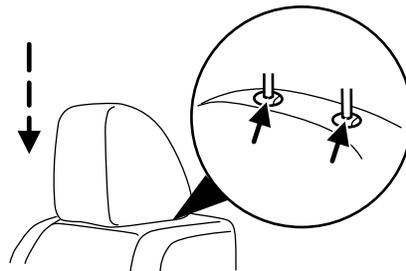
To remove the non-adjustable head restraint, do the following:

Simultaneously press and hold both unlock/remove buttons, then pull up on the head restraint.



To reinstall the non-adjustable head restraint, do the following:

1. Insert the two stems into the guide sleeve collars.
2. Push the head restraint down until it locks.



**WARNING:** The non-adjustable head restraint is a safety device. It should be installed whenever the seat is occupied.

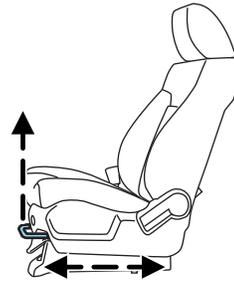
## Seating and Safety Restraints



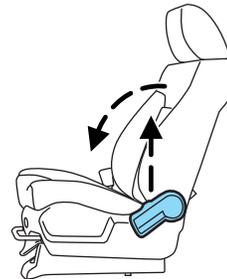
**WARNING:** To minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash, head restraints must be installed properly.

### Front seat

- Lift the track release bar to move the seat forward or rearward. Make sure that the seat is relatched into place.

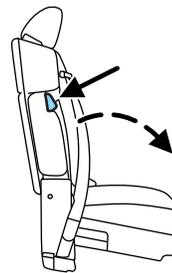


- Pull the release lever handle located on the side of the seat up to move the seatback forward or backward.



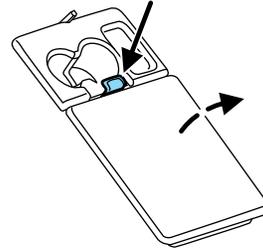
### 20 percent front seat armrest and console (if equipped)

To release the armrest and gain access to the cupholders and seatback storage bin, press the button on the right-hand side of the seat and pull the seatback down.



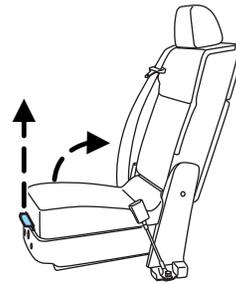
## Seating and Safety Restraints

Pull up on the tab to open the storage bin.

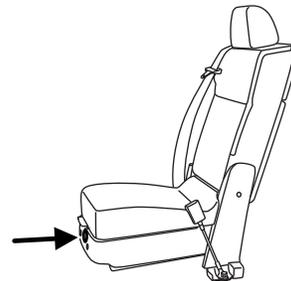


Lift up on the seatback to return it to the upright position.

To gain access to the under-seat storage compartment (if equipped) in your seat cushion, lift the latch to open the lid. The lid cannot be opened when the armrest is down.



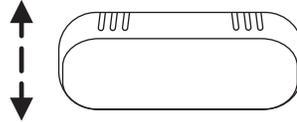
The under-seat storage compartment (if equipped) has a programmable lock. Use the ignition key to program the lock to the compartment. Electronics may be powered or charged using the under-seat storage compartment auxiliary power point. Refer to *Auxiliary power point (12VDC)* in the *Drive Controls* chapter.



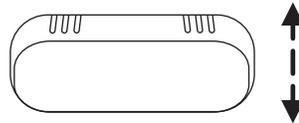
## Seating and Safety Restraints

### Adjusting the front power seat (if equipped)

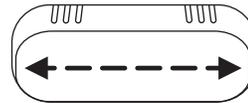
Move the front of the control up or down to tilt the seat cushion.



Move the rear of the control up or down to raise or lower the seat cushion.

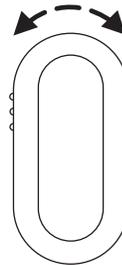


Move the control in the directions shown to move the seat forward or backward.



### Power recline (if equipped)

Press the control to recline the seatback forward or rearward.



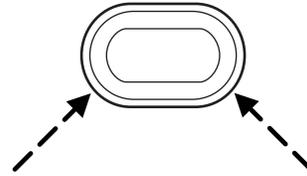
## Seating and Safety Restraints

### Using the power lumbar support (if equipped)

The power lumbar control is located on the outboard side of the seat.

Press one side of the control to adjust firmness.

Press the other side of the control to adjust softness.

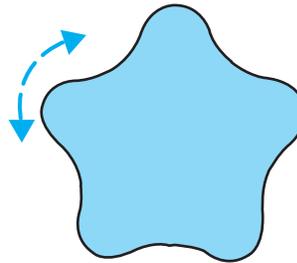


### Using the manual lumbar support (if equipped)

The lumbar support control is located on the outboard side of the seat.

Turn the lumbar support forward toward the front of the vehicle for more support.

Turn the lumbar support backward toward the rear of the vehicle for less support.



### Heated and cooled seats (if equipped)

The controls for the climate controlled seats are located on the climate control system.

#### Heated seats



**WARNING:** Persons who are unable to feel pain to the skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion, or other physical conditions, must exercise care when using the seat heater. The seat heater may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket or cushion, because this may cause the seat heater to overheat. Do not puncture the seat with pins, needles, or other pointed objects because this may damage the heating element which may cause the seat heater to overheat. An overheated seat may cause serious personal injury.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

**Note:** Do not do the following:

- Place heavy objects on the seat
- Operate the seat heater if water or any other liquid is spilled on the seat. Allow the seat to dry thoroughly.

The heated seats will only function when the engine is running.

To operate the heated seats:

Press the heated seat button/symbol to cycle through the various heat settings and off. Warmer settings are indicated by more indicator lights.



### Cooled seats

The cooled seats will only function when the engine is running.

To operate the cooled seats:

Press the cooled seat button/symbol to cycle through the various cooling settings and off. Cooler settings are indicated by more indicator lights.

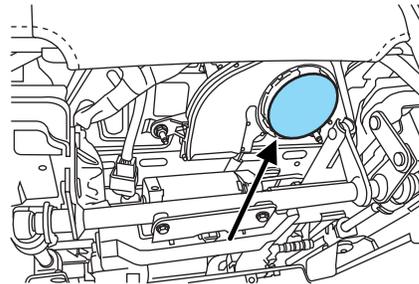


If the engine falls below 350 rpm while the cooled seats are on, the feature will turn itself off and will need to be reactivated.

### ***Climate controlled seats air filter replacement (if equipped)***

The heated and cooled seat system includes air filters that must be replaced periodically. Refer to *Scheduled maintenance information*.

- There is a filter located under each front seat.



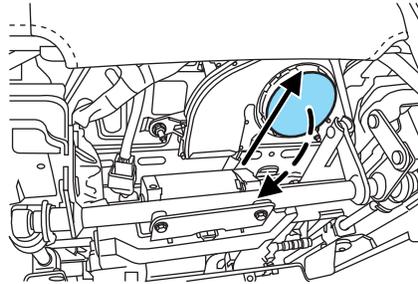
- The filter can be accessed from the 2nd row foot-well area. Move the front seats all the way to the full front and full up positions to ease access.

162

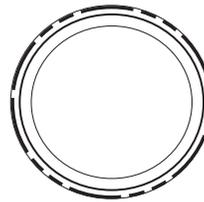
## Seating and Safety Restraints

To remove an air filter:

1. Turn the vehicle off.
2. Push up on the outside rigid edge of the filter until the tabs are released, then rotate the air filter toward the front of the vehicle.

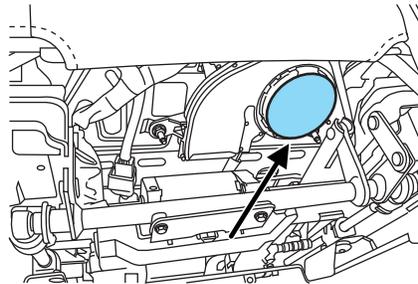


3. Remove filter.



To install a filter:

1. First, position the filter in its housing making sure that the far forward end is all the way up in the housing.
2. Push in on the center of the outside edge of the filter and rotate up into the housing until it clips into position.



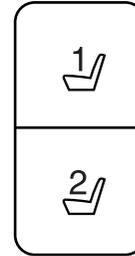
## Seating and Safety Restraints

### Memory seats/power mirrors/adjustable pedals (if equipped)

This system allows automatic positioning of the driver seat, power mirrors, and adjustable pedals to two programmable positions.

The memory control is located on the driver's door.

- To program position 1, move the memory features to the desired positions using the associated controls. Press and hold button 1 for at least two seconds. A chime will sound confirming that a memory position has been set.
  - To program position 2, repeat the previous procedure using button 2.
- A memory position may be programmed at any time.



To program the memory feature to a remote entry transmitter, refer to *Remote entry system* in the *Locks and Security* chapter.

A programmed memory position can be recalled:

- in any gearshift position if the ignition is **not** on.
- only in P (Park) or N (Neutral) if the ignition is on.

The memory positions are also recalled when you press your remote entry transmitter  (unlock) control (if the transmitter is programmed to a memory position) or, when you enter a valid personal entry code that is programmed to a memory position. The mirrors will move to the programmed position and the seat will move to the easy entry position. The seat will move to the final position when the key is in the ignition (if easy entry feature is enabled).

### Easy-access/easy-out feature (if equipped)

The easy entry feature can be turned off or on through the vehicle message center. Refer to *Message center* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter.

The easy entry feature automatically moves the driver's seat 2 inches (5 cm) forward when:

- the transmission is in P (Park)
  - the key is inserted into the ignition cylinder
- (If the seat is located less than 2 inches [5 cm] from the front of the seat track, the seat will travel up to ¼ inch (6 mm) to the front of the seat track).

164

## Seating and Safety Restraints

The easy out feature automatically moves the driver's seat 2 inches (5 cm) backward when:

- the transmission is in P (Park)
- the key is removed from the ignition cylinder

(If the seat is located less than 2 inches (5 cm) from the rear of the seat track, the seat will travel up to ¼ inch (6 mm) to the rear of the seat track).

If the memory setting is programmed through the remote transmitter, upon unlocking the door via remote entry system, the seat position will travel to the desired memory setting less 2 inches (5 cm). Once entering the vehicle and inserting the key in the ignition while in P (Park), the easy entry feature will move the seat an additional 2 inches (5 cm) to the desired memory location. See *Locks and Security* for activating the memory seat feature through the remote entry system.

### REAR SEATS

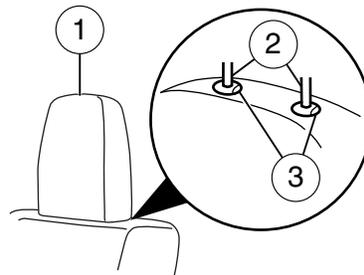
#### Non-adjustable second-row head restraints

Your vehicle is equipped with second row head restraints that are non-adjustable.



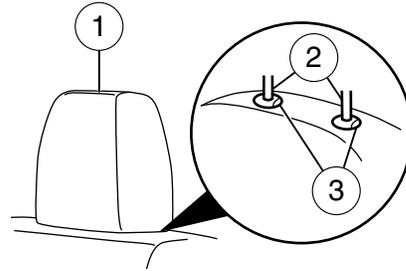
**WARNING:** To minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash, the driver and passenger occupants should not sit in and/or operate the vehicle, until the head restraint is placed in its proper position. The driver should never adjust the head restraint while the vehicle is in motion.

Outboard head restraints (Crew Cab)



## Seating and Safety Restraints

Center head restraint (Crew Cab)



The non-adjustable second row head restraints consist of :

- a trimmed energy absorbing foam and structure (1),
- two steel stems (2),
- and two guide sleeve unlock/remove buttons (3).

Removal of the second-row non-adjustable head restraints is the same as the front row center head restraint. Refer to *Front-row center non-adjustable head restraint* in this chapter.



**WARNING:** The non-adjustable head restraint is a safety device. It should be installed whenever the seat is occupied.

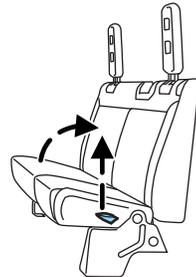


**WARNING:** To minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash, head restraints must be installed properly.

**Note:** The SuperCab has rear outboard head restraints that are not removable and are bolted to the back wall.

### Folding up the rear seats (SuperCab)

1. Pull control to release seat cushion.
2. Rotate seat cushion up until it locks into vertical storage position.



## Seating and Safety Restraints

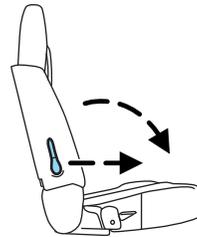
### ***Returning the seat to seating position***

 **WARNING:** Make sure that cargo or any objects are not trapped underneath the seat cushion before returning the seat cushion to its original position, and that the seat cushion locks into place. Failure to do so may prevent the seat from operating properly in the event of a crash, which could increase the risk of serious injury.

1. Pull control on the side of the seat to release seat cushion from storage position.
2. Push seat cushion down until it locks into horizontal position.

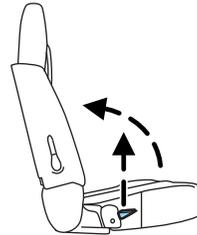
### ***Folding the rear seatback (Crew Cab)***

1. Pull forward on the control to fold down the seatback.
2. Pull down on the handle and lift up on the seatback to return it to the original position.



### ***Folding up the rear seat cushion***

1. Pull control to release seat cushion.
2. Rotate seat cushion up until it locks into vertical storage position.



### ***Returning the seat to the seating position***

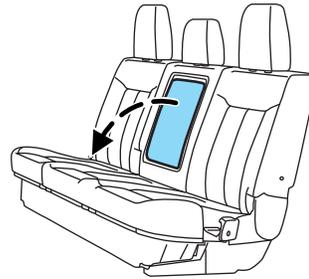
 **WARNING:** Make sure that cargo or any objects are not trapped underneath the seat cushion before returning the seat cushion to its original position, and that the seat cushion locks into place. Failure to do so may prevent the seat from operating properly in the event of a crash, which could increase the risk of serious injury.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

1. Pull control on the side of the seat to release seat cushion from storage position.
2. Push seat cushion down until it locks into horizontal position.

### **Rear center armrest (if equipped)**

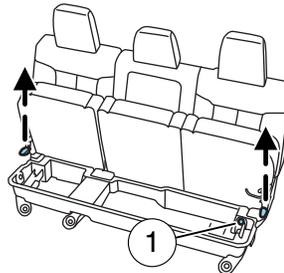
To use the armrest simply rotate it forward from the seatback.



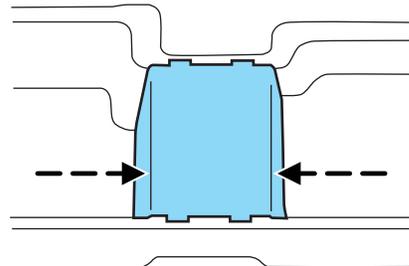
### **Rear under seat storage (if equipped) (Crew Cab)**

The rear seat has storage space located under the seat cushion.

Lift up the lever and flip up the seat cushion to access the storage space and the power point (1).

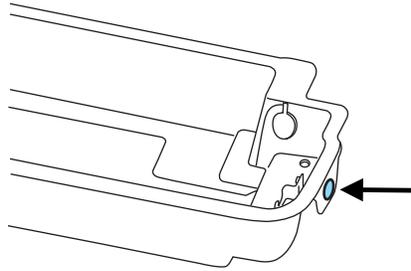


To remove the storage space divider, squeeze the sides and lift it from the storage tub.



## Seating and Safety Restraints

Use your vehicle key to lock the storage space.



### SAFETY RESTRAINTS



**WARNING:** Always drive and ride with your seatback upright and the lap belt snug and low across the hips.



**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of injury, make sure children sit where they can be properly restrained.



**WARNING:** Never let a passenger hold a child on his or her lap while the vehicle is moving. The passenger cannot protect the child from injury in a collision.



**WARNING:** All occupants of the vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their safety belts, even when an air bag supplemental restraint system (SRS) is provided.



**WARNING:** It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and safety belts. Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a safety belt properly.



**WARNING:** In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

 **WARNING:** Each seating position in your vehicle has a specific safety belt assembly which is made up of one buckle and one tongue that are designed to be used as a pair. 1) Use the shoulder belt on the outside shoulder only. Never wear the shoulder belt under the arm. 2) Never swing the safety belt around your neck over the inside shoulder. 3) Never use a single belt for more than one person.

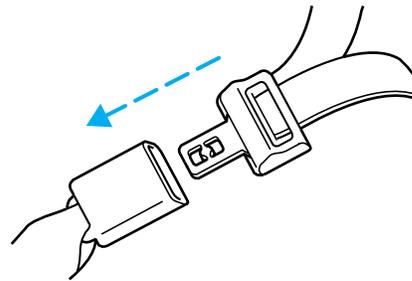
 **WARNING:** When possible, all children 12 years old and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position.

 **WARNING:** Safety belts and seats can become hot in a vehicle that has been closed up in sunny weather; they could burn a small child. Check seat covers and buckles before you place a child anywhere near them.

 **WARNING:** Front and rear seat occupants, including pregnant women, should wear safety belts for optimum protection in an accident.

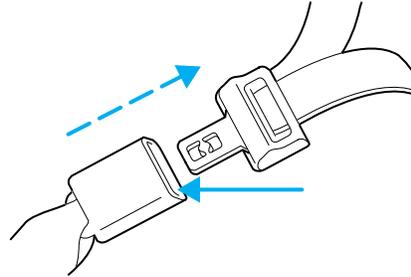
### Combination lap and shoulder belts

1. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from) until you hear a snap and feel it latch. Make sure the tongue is securely fastened in the buckle.



## Seating and Safety Restraints

- To unfasten, push the release button and remove the tongue from the buckle.

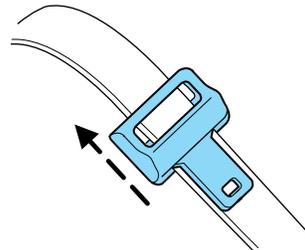


### **Safety belt with cinch tongue (front and rear center seat only)**

The cinch tongue will slide up and down the belt webbing when the belt is stowed or while putting safety belts on. When the lap/shoulder safety belt is buckled, the cinch tongue will allow the lap portion to be shortened, but pinches the webbing to keep the lap portion from getting longer. The cinch tongue is designed to slip during a crash, so always wear the shoulder belt properly and don't allow any slack in either the lap or shoulder portions.

Before you can reach and latch a combination lap and shoulder belt (with a cinch tongue) into the buckle, you may have to lengthen the lap belt portion of it.

- To lengthen the lap belt, pull some webbing out of the shoulder belt retractor.
- While holding the webbing below the tongue, grasp the tip (metal portion) of the tongue so that it is parallel to the webbing and slide the tongue upward.



- Provide enough lap belt length so that the tongue can reach the buckle.

### **How to fasten the cinch tongue**

- Pull the combination lap and shoulder belt from the retractor so that the shoulder belt portion of the safety belt crosses your shoulder and chest.
- Be sure the belt is not twisted. If the belt is twisted, remove the twist.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

3. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle for your seating position until you hear a snap and feel it latch.
4. Make sure the tongue is securely fastened to the buckle by pulling on the tongue.



**WARNING:** The lap belt should fit snugly and as low as possible around the hips, not across the waist.



**WARNING:** Front and rear seat occupants, including pregnant women, should wear safety belts for optimum protection in an accident.



**WARNING:** Each seating position in your vehicle has a specific safety belt assembly which is made up of one buckle and one tongue that are designed to be used as a pair. 1) Use the shoulder belt on the outside shoulder only. Never wear the shoulder belt under the arm. 2) Never swing the safety belt around your neck over the inside shoulder. 3) Never use a single belt for more than one person.

While you are fastened in the safety belt, the combination lap/shoulder belt with a cinch tongue adjusts to your movement. However, if you brake hard, turn hard, or if your vehicle receives an impact of 5 mph (8 km/h) or more, the safety belt will become locked and help reduce your forward movement.

### ***Restraint of pregnant women***



**WARNING:** Always ride and drive with your seatback upright and the safety belt properly fastened. The lap portion of the safety belt should fit snug and be positioned low across the hips. The shoulder portion of the safety belt should be positioned across the chest. Pregnant women should also follow this practice. See figure below.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

Pregnant women should always wear their safety belt. The lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned low across the hips below the belly and worn as tight as comfort will allow. The shoulder belt should be positioned to cross the middle of the shoulder and the center of the chest.



### Safety belt locking modes

All safety restraints in the vehicle are combination lap and shoulder belts. The driver safety belt and the optional front and rear center seat safety belt have the first locking mode described below only. All outboard passenger and outboard rear safety belts have both types of locking modes described as follows:

#### Vehicle sensitive mode

This is the normal retractor mode, which allows free shoulder belt length adjustment to your movements and locking in response to vehicle movement. For example, if the driver brakes suddenly or turns a corner sharply, or the vehicle receives an impact of approximately 5 mph (8 km/h) or more, the combination safety belts will lock to help reduce forward movement of the driver and passengers.

In addition, the retractor is designed to lock if the webbing is pulled out too quickly. If this occurs, let the belt retract slightly and pull webbing out again in a slow and controlled manner.

#### Automatic locking mode

In this mode, the shoulder belt is automatically pre-locked. The belt will still retract to remove any slack in the shoulder belt. The automatic locking mode is not available on the driver safety belt or the optional front or rear seat center safety belt.

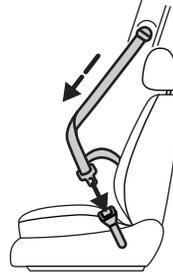
#### When to use the automatic locking mode

This mode should be used **any time** a child safety seat is installed in a front outboard passenger seating position or any outboard rear seating position (if equipped). The optional front and rear seat center safety belt have a cinch mechanism. Refer to *Safety belt with cinch tongue* earlier in this chapter. Children 12 years old and under should be properly restrained in a rear seat whenever possible. Refer to *Safety restraints for children* or *Safety seats for children* later in this chapter.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

### *How to use the automatic locking mode*

1. Buckle the combination lap and shoulder belt (front safety belt/buckle shown, rear similar).
2. Grasp the shoulder portion and pull downward until the entire belt is pulled out.



- Allow the belt to retract. As the belt retracts, you will hear a clicking sound. This indicates the safety belt is now in the automatic locking mode.

### **How to disengage the automatic locking mode**

Disconnect the combination lap/shoulder belt and allow it to retract completely to disengage the automatic locking mode and activate the vehicle sensitive (emergency) locking mode.



**WARNING:** After any vehicle collision, the safety belt system at all passenger seating positions must be checked by an authorized dealer to verify that the “automatic locking retractor” feature for child seats is still functioning properly. In addition, all safety belts should be checked for proper function.



**WARNING:** BELT AND RETRACTOR ASSEMBLY MUST BE REPLACED if the safety belt assembly “automatic locking retractor” feature or any other safety belt function is not operating properly when checked by an authorized dealer. Failure to replace the belt and retractor assembly could increase the risk of injury in collisions.

### **Energy management feature**

- This vehicle has a safety belt system with an energy management feature at the front outboard seating positions to help further reduce the risk of injury in the event of a head-on collision.
- The front outboard safety belt systems have a retractor assembly that is designed to pay out webbing in a controlled manner. This feature is designed to help reduce the belt force acting on the occupant’s chest.

174

## Seating and Safety Restraints

### Safety belt pretensioner

The safety belt pretensioners at the front outboard seating positions are designed to tighten the safety belts firmly against the occupant's body during frontal collisions, and in side collisions and rollovers. This helps increase the effectiveness of the safety belts. In frontal collisions, the safety belt pretensioners can be activated alone or, if the collision is of sufficient severity, together with the front airbags.

The driver and front outboard passenger safety belt system (including retractors, buckles and height adjusters) must be replaced if the vehicle is involved in a collision that results in the activation of the safety belt pretensioners. Refer to the *Child restraint and safety belt maintenance* section in this chapter.

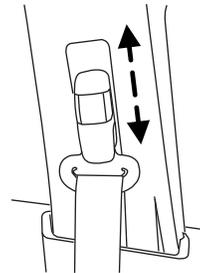


**WARNING:** Failure to replace the safety belt assembly under the above conditions could result in severe personal injuries in the event of a collision.

### Front safety belt height adjustment

Your vehicle has safety belt height adjustments at the front outboard seating positions. Adjust the height of the shoulder belt so the belt rests across the middle of your shoulder.

To adjust the shoulder belt height, pull on the center button and slide the height adjuster down. Release the button and pull down on the height adjuster to make sure it is locked in place. To adjust the belt upward, slide the adjuster up and then pull down on the height adjuster to make sure it is locked in place.



**WARNING:** Position the safety belt height adjusters so that the belt rests across the middle of your shoulder. Failure to adjust the safety belt properly could reduce the effectiveness of the safety belt and increase the risk of injury in a collision.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

### Safety belt extension assembly

If the safety belt is too short when fully extended, a safety belt extension assembly can be obtained from an authorized dealer.

Use only extensions manufactured by the same supplier as the safety belt. Manufacturer identification is located at the end of the webbing on the label. Also, use the safety belt extension only if the safety belt is too short for you when fully extended.



**WARNING:** Do not use extensions to change the fit of the shoulder belt across the torso.

### Safety belt warning light and indicator chime

The safety belt warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster and a chime sounds to remind the occupants to fasten their safety belts.

#### Conditions of operation

If...	Then...
The driver's safety belt is not buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the on position...	The safety belt warning light illuminates 1-2 minutes and the warning chime sounds 4-8 seconds.
The driver's safety belt is buckled while the indicator light is illuminated and the warning chime is sounding...	The safety belt warning light and warning chime turn off.
The driver's safety belt is buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the on position...	The safety belt warning light and indicator chime remain off.

### Belt-Minder®

The Belt-Minder® feature is a supplemental warning to the safety belt warning function. This feature provides additional reminders to the driver that the driver's safety belt is unbuckled by intermittently sounding a chime and illuminating the safety belt warning lamp in the instrument cluster.

176

## Seating and Safety Restraints

If...	Then...
The driver's safety belt is not buckled before the vehicle has reached at least 3 mph (5 km/h) and 1-2 minutes have elapsed since the ignition switch has been turned to the on position...	The Belt-Minder® feature is activated - the safety belt warning light illuminates and the warning chime sounds for six seconds every 30 seconds, repeating for approximately five minutes or until safety belt is buckled.
The driver's safety belt is buckled while the safety belt indicator light is illuminated and the safety belt warning chime is sounding...	The Belt-Minder® feature will not activate.
The driver's safety belt is buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the on position...	The Belt-Minder® feature will not activate.

The following are reasons most often given for not wearing safety belts (All statistics based on U.S. data):

Reasons given...	Consider..
"Crashes are rare events"	<b>36700 crashes occur every day.</b> The more we drive, the more we are exposed to "rare" events, even for good drivers. <i>1 in 4 of us will be seriously injured in a crash during our lifetime.</i>
"I'm not going far"	<b>3 of 4</b> fatal crashes occur within <b>25 miles (40 km)</b> of home.
"Belts are uncomfortable"	We design our safety belts to enhance comfort. If you are uncomfortable - try different positions for the safety belt upper anchorage and seatback which should be as upright as possible; this can improve comfort.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

Reasons given...	Consider...
"I was in a hurry"	<b>Prime time for an accident.</b> Belt-Minder® reminds us to take a few seconds to buckle up.
"Safety belts don't work"	<b>Safety belts</b> , when used properly, <b>reduce risk of death</b> to front seat occupants by <b>45% in cars</b> , and by <b>60% in light trucks</b> .
"Traffic is light"	<b>Nearly 1 of 2 deaths occur in single-vehicle crashes</b> , many when no other vehicles are around.
"Belts wrinkle my clothes"	Possibly, but a serious crash can do much more than wrinkle your clothes, particularly if you are unbelted.
"The people I'm with don't wear belts"	Set the example, teen deaths occur 4 times more often in vehicles with TWO or MORE people. Children and younger brothers/sisters imitate behavior they see.
"I have an airbag"	Airbags offer greater protection when used with safety belts. Frontal airbags are not designed to inflate in rear and side crashes or rollovers.
"I'd rather be thrown clear"	Not a good idea. <b>People</b> who are <b>ejected are 40 times more likely to DIE</b> . Safety belts help prevent ejection, WE CAN'T "PICK OUR CRASH".

 **WARNING:** Do not sit on top of a buckled safety belt or insert a latchplate into the buckle to avoid the Belt-Minder® chime. To do so may adversely affect the performance of the vehicle's airbag system.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

### **Deactivating/activating the Belt-Minder® feature (Driver only)**

**Note:** If you are using MyKey®, the Belt-Minder® cannot be disabled. Also, if the Belt-Minder® has been previously disabled, it will be re-enabled during the use of MyKey®. Refer to *MyKey®* in the *Locks and Security* chapter.

The Belt-Minder® feature can be deactivated/activated by performing the following procedure:

Before following the procedure, make sure that the following conditions are met:

- the parking brake is set
- the gearshift is in P (Park)
- the ignition switch is in the off position
- all vehicle doors are closed
- the driver's safety belt is unbuckled
- the parking lamps/headlamps are in the off position



**WARNING:** While the design allows you to deactivate your Belt-Minder®, this system is designed to improve your chances of being safely belted and surviving an accident. We recommend you leave the Belt-Minder® system activated for yourself and others who may use the vehicle. To reduce the risk of injury, do not deactivate/activate the Belt-Minder® feature while driving the vehicle.

### **Belt-Minder® activation and deactivation procedure**

*Read Steps 1 - 5 thoroughly before proceeding with the deactivation/activation programming procedure.*

1. Turn the ignition switch to the on position. (DO NOT START THE ENGINE)
2. Wait until the safety belt warning light turns off. (approximately one minute)
  - Step 3 must be completed within 30 seconds after the safety belt warning light turns off.
3. Buckle then unbuckle the safety belt three times at a moderate speed, ending with the safety belt in the unbuckled state.
  - After Step 3 is complete, the safety belt warning light will be turned on for three seconds.
  - If Step 4 does not occur within 10 seconds at the end of Step 3, Belt-Minder® will automatically exit programming mode without changing its enable status.

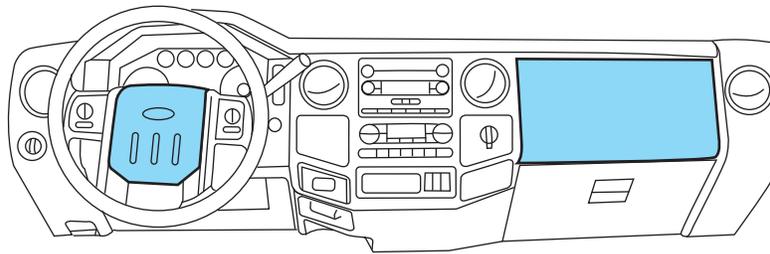
## Seating and Safety Restraints

4. Within seven seconds of the light turning on, buckle then unbuckle the safety belt.

- This will disable the Belt-Minder® feature if it is currently enabled. As confirmation, the safety belt warning light will flash four times per second for three seconds.
- This will enable the Belt-Minder® feature if it is currently disabled. As confirmation, the safety belt warning light will flash four times per second for three seconds, followed by three seconds with the light off, then followed by the safety belt warning light flashing four times per second for three seconds again.

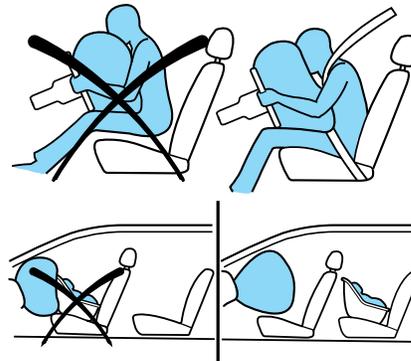
After receiving confirmation, the deactivation/activation procedure is complete.

### AIRBAG SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM (SRS)



#### Important SRS precautions

The SRS is designed to work with the safety belt to help protect the driver and right front passenger from certain upper body injuries. Airbags DO NOT inflate slowly; there is a risk of injury from a deploying airbag.



## Seating and Safety Restraints

 **WARNING:** All occupants of the vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their safety belts, even when an air bag supplemental restraint system (SRS) is provided.

 **WARNING:** When possible, all children 12 years old and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position.

 **WARNING:** The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) recommends a minimum distance of at least 10 inches (25 cm) between an occupant's chest and the driver airbag module.

 **WARNING:** Never place your arm over the airbag module as a deploying airbag can result in serious arm fractures or other injuries.

To properly position yourself away from the airbag:

- Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.
- Recline the seat slightly one or two degrees from the upright position.

 **WARNING:** Do not put anything on or over the airbag module. Placing objects on or over the airbag inflation area may cause those objects to be propelled by the airbag into your face and torso causing serious injury.

 **WARNING:** Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the airbag supplemental restraint systems or its fuses. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

 **WARNING:** The front passenger airbag is not designed to offer protection to an occupant in the center front seating position.

 **WARNING:** Modifying or adding equipment to the front end of the vehicle (including frame, bumper, front end body structure and tow hooks) may affect the performance of the airbag system, increasing the risk of injury. Do not modify the front end of the vehicle.

## Seating and Safety Restraints



**WARNING:** Additional equipment such as snowplow equipment may effect the performance of the airbag sensors increasing the risk of injury. Please refer to the *Body Builders Layout Book* for instructions about the appropriate installation of additional equipment.

### Children and airbags

For additional important safety information, read all information on safety restraints in this guide.

Children must always be properly restrained. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of injury in a collision.



**WARNING:** An infant in a rear-facing seat faces a high risk of serious or fatal injuries from a deploying passenger airbag. Rear facing infant seats should NEVER be placed in the front seats, unless the passenger airbag is turned off. See *Passenger airbag ON/OFF switch*.



**WARNING:** Front seating positions only: If seating two adults and a child, Ford recommends properly restraining the child in the center front seating position, but only if doing so will not interfere with driving the vehicle. This arrangement provides lap and shoulder belt and airbag protection for adult occupants and an attachment method for a child restraint. If the child seat interferes with driving the vehicle and the child restraint is forward-facing, the child may be restrained in the passenger seat. Move the seat as far rearward as possible to minimize the likelihood of interaction with the front passenger airbag. Never place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. Always properly restrain all occupants, including the child in an appropriate child seat or booster.

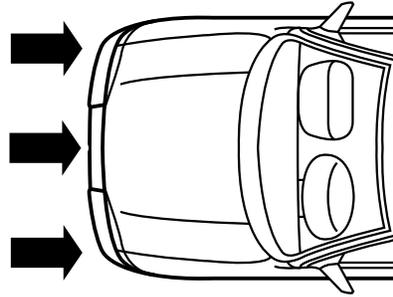
## Seating and Safety Restraints

### How does the airbag supplemental restraint system work?

The airbag SRS is designed to activate when the vehicle sustains sufficient longitudinal deceleration. The fact that the airbags did not inflate in a collision does not mean that something is wrong with the system. Rather, it means the forces were not of the type sufficient to cause activation. Airbags are designed to inflate in frontal and near-frontal collisions, not rollover, side-impact, or rear-impacts.

The airbags inflate and deflate rapidly upon activation. After airbag deployment, it is normal to notice a smoke-like, powdery residue or smell the burnt propellant. This may consist of cornstarch, talcum powder (to lubricate the bag) or sodium compounds (e.g., baking soda) that result from the combustion process that inflates the airbag. Small amounts of sodium hydroxide may be present which may irritate the skin and eyes, but none of the residue is toxic.

While the system is designed to help reduce serious injuries, it may also cause minor abrasions, swelling or temporary hearing loss. Because airbags must inflate rapidly and with considerable force, there is the risk of death or serious injuries such as fractures, facial and eye injuries or internal injuries, particularly to occupants who are not properly restrained or are otherwise out of position at the time of airbag deployment. Thus, it is extremely important that occupants be properly restrained as far away from the airbag module as possible while maintaining vehicle control.



**WARNING:** Several air bag system components get hot after inflation. Do not touch them after inflation.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

 **WARNING:** If the air bag has deployed, **the air bag will not function again and must be replaced immediately.** If the air bag is not replaced, the unrepaired area will increase the risk of injury in a collision.

The SRS consists of:

- driver and passenger airbag modules (which include the inflators and airbags),
- seat-mounted side airbags (if equipped) . Refer to *Seat-mounted side airbag system* later in this chapter
- Safety Canopy® System (if equipped). Refer to *Safety Canopy® System* later in this chapter.
- one or more impact and safing sensors,
- a readiness light and tone
- and the electrical wiring which connects the components.

The diagnostic module monitors its own internal circuits and the supplemental airbag electrical system wiring (including the impact sensors), the system wiring, the airbag system readiness light, the airbag backup power and the airbag ignitors.

### Seat-mounted side airbag system (if equipped)

 **WARNING:** Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover on the side of the seatbacks of the front seats or in front seat areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a collision.

 **WARNING:** Do not use accessory seat covers. The use of accessory seat covers may prevent the deployment of the side airbags and increase the risk of injury in an accident.

 **WARNING:** Do not lean your head on the door. The side airbag could injure you as it deploys from the side of the seatback.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

**WARNING:** Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the airbag SRS, its fuses or the seat cover on a seat containing an airbag. See an authorized dealer.

**WARNING:** All occupants of the vehicle should always wear their safety belts even when an airbag SRS is provided.

### **How does the side airbag system work?**

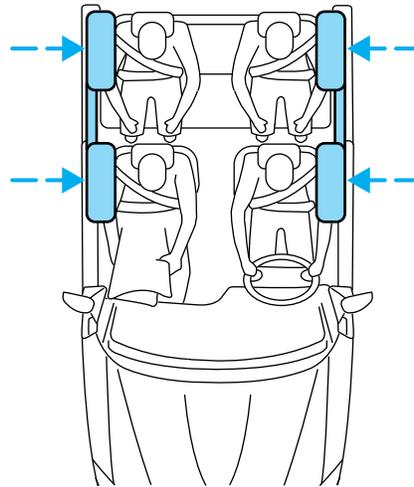
The design and development of the side airbag system included recommended testing procedures that were developed by a group of automotive safety experts known as the Side Airbag Technical Working Group. These recommended testing procedures help reduce the risk of injuries related to the deployment of side airbags.

The side airbag system consists of the following:

- An inflatable bag (airbag) with a gas generator concealed behind the outboard bolster of the driver and front passenger seatbacks.
- A special seat cover designed to allow airbag deployment.
- The same warning light, electronic control and diagnostic unit as used for the front airbags.
- Crash sensors located on the front doors.
- One crash sensor located on each side of the c-pillar (Crew cab and SuperCab only).

Side airbags, in combination with safety belts, can help reduce the risk of severe injuries in the event of a significant side impact collision.

The side airbags are fitted on the outboard side of the seatbacks of the front seats. In certain lateral collisions, the airbag on the side affected by the collision will be inflated. The airbag was designed to inflate between the door panel and occupant to further enhance the protection provided occupants in side impact collisions.



## Seating and Safety Restraints

The airbag SRS is designed to activate when the vehicle sustains lateral deceleration sufficient to cause the sensors to close an electrical circuit that initiates airbag inflation.

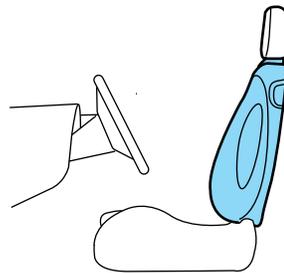
The fact that the airbags did not inflate in a collision does not mean that something is wrong with the system. Rather, it means the forces were not of the type sufficient to cause activation. Side airbags are designed to inflate in side-impact collisions, not roll-over, rear-impact, frontal or near-frontal collisions, unless the collision causes sufficient lateral deceleration.



**WARNING:** Several airbag system components get hot after inflation. Do not touch them after inflation.



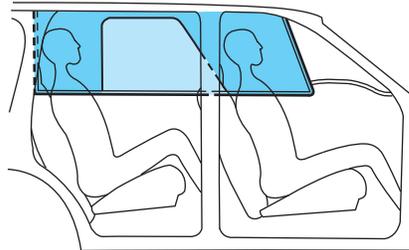
**WARNING:** If the side airbag has deployed, **the airbag will not function again. The side airbag system (including the seat) must be inspected and serviced by an authorized dealer.** If the airbag is not replaced, the unrepaired area will increase the risk of injury in a collision.



### Safety Canopy® System (if equipped)



**WARNING:** Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying Safety Canopy®. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a collision.



## Seating and Safety Restraints



**WARNING:** Do not lean your head on the door. The Safety Canopy® could injure you as it deploys from the headliner.



**WARNING:** Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the Safety Canopy® System, its fuses, the A, B, or C pillar trim, or the headliner on a vehicle containing a Safety Canopy®. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.



**WARNING:** All occupants of the vehicle including the driver should always wear their safety belts even when an airbag SRS and Safety Canopy® System is provided.



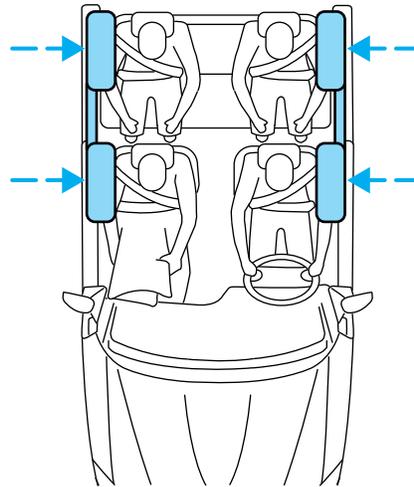
**WARNING:** To reduce risk of injury, do not obstruct or place objects in the deployment path of the inflatable Safety Canopy®.

### How does the Safety Canopy® System work?

The design and development of the Safety Canopy system included recommended testing procedures that were developed by a group of automotive safety experts known as the Side Airbag Technical Working Group. These recommended testing procedures help reduce the risk of injuries related to the deployment of side airbags (including the Safety Canopy).

The Safety Canopy system consists of the following:

- An inflatable curtain with a gas generator concealed behind the headliner between the A and C pillar.
- A headliner designed to flex open above the side doors to allow Safety Canopy deployment.
- The same warning light, electronic control and diagnostic unit as used for the front airbags.



## Seating and Safety Restraints

- Two crash sensors located on the C-pillar (one on each side) (SuperCab and Crew Cab only).
- Crash sensors located on the front doors.
- Rollover sensor in the restraints control module (RCM).

The Safety Canopy system, in combination with safety belts, can help reduce the risk of severe injuries in the event of a significant side impact collision or rollover event.

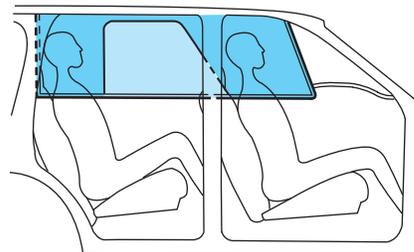
Children 12 years old and under should always be properly restrained in the second row seats. The Safety Canopy will not interfere with children restrained using a properly installed child or booster seat because it is designed to inflate downward from the headliner above the doors along the side window opening.

The Safety Canopy system is designed to activate when the vehicle sustains lateral deceleration sufficient to cause the RCM to initiate Safety Canopy inflation or when a certain likelihood of a rollover event is detected by the rollover sensor.

The Safety Canopy is mounted to roof side-rail sheet metal, behind the headliner, above each row of seats. The Safety Canopy is designed to inflate between the side window area and occupants to further enhance protection provided in side impact collisions and rollover events.

The fact that the Safety Canopy did not activate in a collision does not mean that something is wrong with the system. Rather, it means the forces were not of the type sufficient to cause activation. The Safety Canopy is designed to inflate in certain side impact collisions or rollover events, not in rear impact, frontal or near-frontal collisions, unless the collision causes sufficient lateral deceleration or rollover likelihood.

 **WARNING:** Several Safety Canopy system components get hot after inflation. Do not touch them after inflation.



## Seating and Safety Restraints



**WARNING:** If the Safety Canopy system has deployed, the Safety Canopy will not function again unless replaced. The Safety Canopy system (including the A, B, C, and D pillar trim and headliner) must be inspected and serviced by an authorized dealer. If the Safety Canopy is not replaced, it will not function again, which will increase the risk of injury in a future collision.

### Determining if the system is operational

The SRS uses a readiness light in the instrument cluster or a tone to indicate the condition of the system. Refer to *Warning lights and chimes* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter. Routine maintenance of the side airbag is not required.

A difficulty with the system is indicated by one or more of the following:

- The readiness light (same light as for front airbag system) will either flash or stay lit.
- The readiness light will not illuminate immediately after ignition is turned on.
- A series of five beeps will be heard. The tone pattern will repeat periodically until the problem and/or light are repaired.

If any of these things happen, even intermittently, have the SRS serviced at your authorized dealer immediately. Unless serviced, the system may not function properly in the event of a collision.

### SOS Post-Crash Alert System™

The system automatically flashes the turn signal lamps and sounds the horn three times at four second intervals in the event of a serious impact that deploys an airbag (front, side, side curtain [if equipped] or Safety Canopy® [if equipped]) or the safety belt pretensioners.

The system can be turned off when any one of the following actions are taken by the driver or any other person:

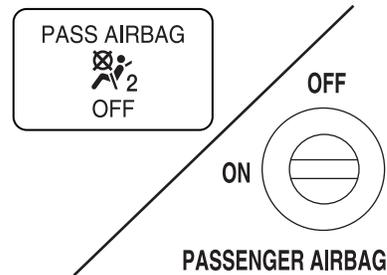
- pressing the hazard control button,
- or pressing the panic button on the remote entry transmitter.

The feature will continue to operate until the vehicle runs out of power.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

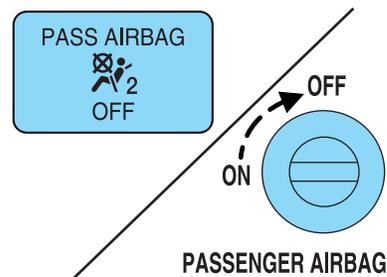
### Passenger airbag ON/OFF switch (if equipped)

**WARNING:** An airbag ON/OFF switch may be installed in this vehicle. Before driving, *always* look at the face of the switch to be sure the switch is in the proper position in accordance with these instructions and warnings. Failure to put the switch in a proper position can increase the risk of serious injury or death in a collision.



### Turning the passenger airbag off

1. Insert the ignition key, turn the switch to OFF position and hold in the OFF position while removing the key.
2. When the ignition is turned to the on position the "pass airbag off" light illuminates briefly, momentarily shuts off and then turns back on. This indicates that the passenger airbag is deactivated.



**WARNING:** If the light fails to illuminate when the passenger air bag switch is in the OFF position and the ignition switch is in on, have the passenger air bag switch serviced at your authorized dealer immediately.

**WARNING:** In order to avoid inadvertent activation of the switch, always remove the ignition key from the passenger air bag ON/OFF switch.

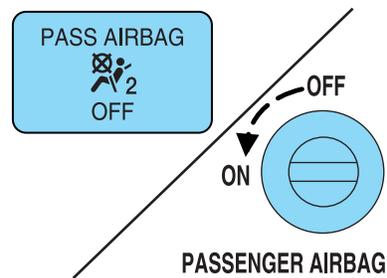
## Seating and Safety Restraints

**!** **WARNING:** An infant in a rear-facing seat faces a high risk of serious or fatal injuries from a deploying passenger airbag. Rear facing infant seats should NEVER be placed in the front seats, unless the passenger airbag is turned off.

### Turning the passenger airbag back on

The passenger airbag remains off until you turn it back on.

1. Insert the ignition key and turn the switch to ON.
2. The “pass airbag off” light will briefly illuminate when the ignition is turned to on. This indicates that the passenger airbag is operational.



**!** **WARNING:** If the “pass airbag off” light is illuminated when the passenger airbag switch is in the ON position and the ignition switch is in on, have the passenger airbag switch serviced at your authorized dealer immediately.

The passenger side airbag should always be ON (the “pass airbag off” light should *not* be illuminated) unless the passenger is a person who meets the requirements stated either in Category 1, 2 or 3 of the NHTSA/Transport Canada deactivation criteria which follows.

**!** **WARNING:** The safety belts for the driver and right front passenger seating positions have been specifically designed to function together with the airbags in certain types of crashes. When you turn OFF your airbag, you not only lose the protection of the airbag, you also may reduce the effectiveness of your safety belt system, which was designed to work with the airbag. If you are not a person who meets the requirements stated in the NHTSA/Transport Canada deactivation criteria turning OFF the airbag can increase the risk of serious injury or death in a collision.

## Seating and Safety Restraints



**WARNING:** If your vehicle has rear seats, always transport children who are 12 and younger in the rear seat. Always use safety belts and child restraints properly. DO NOT place a child in a rear facing infant seat in the front seat unless your vehicle is equipped with an airbag ON/OFF switch and the passenger airbag is turned OFF. This is because the back of the infant seat is too close to the inflating airbag and the risk of a fatal injury to the infant when the airbag inflates is substantial.

The vast majority of drivers and passengers are much safer with an airbag than without. To do their job and reduce the risk of life threatening injuries, airbags must open with great force, and this force can pose a potentially deadly risk in some situations, particularly when a front seat occupant is not properly buckled up. The most effective way to reduce the risk of unnecessary airbag injuries without reducing the overall safety of the vehicle is to make sure all occupants are properly restrained in the vehicle, especially in the front seat. This provides the protection of safety belts and permits the airbags to provide the additional protection they were designed to provide. If you choose to deactivate your airbag, you are losing the very significant risk reducing benefits of the airbag and you are also reducing the effectiveness of the safety belts, because safety belts in modern vehicles are designed to work as a safety system with the airbags.

Read all airbag warning labels in the vehicle as well as the other important airbag instructions and warnings in this Owner's Guide.

### ***NHTSA deactivation criteria (excluding Canada)***

1. **Infant.** An infant (less than 1 year old) must ride in the front seat because:

- the vehicle has no rear seat;
- the vehicle has a rear seat too small to accommodate a rear-facing infant seat; or
- the infant has a medical condition which, according to the infant's physician, makes it necessary for the infant to ride in the front so that the driver can constantly monitor the child's condition.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

2. **Child age 1 to 12.** A child age 1 to 12 must ride in the front seat because:

- the vehicle has no rear seat;
- although children ages 1 to 12 ride in the rear seat(s) whenever possible, children ages 1 to 12 sometimes must ride in the front because no space is available in the rear seat(s) of the vehicle; or
- the child has a medical condition which, according to the child's physician, makes it necessary for the child to ride in the front seat so that the driver can constantly monitor the child's condition.

3. **Medical condition.** A passenger has a medical condition which, according to his or her physician:

- causes the passenger airbag to pose a special risk for the passenger; and
- makes the potential harm from the passenger airbag in a crash greater than the potential harm from turning OFF the airbag and allowing the passenger, even if belted, to hit the dashboard or windshield in a crash.



**WARNING:** This vehicle has special energy management safety belts for the driver and right front passenger. These particular belts are specifically designed to work with airbags to help reduce the risk of injury in a collision. The energy management safety belt is designed to give or release additional belt webbing in some accidents to reduce concentration of force on an occupant's chest and reduce the risk of certain bone fractures and injuries to underlying organs. In a crash, if the airbag is turned OFF, this energy management safety belt might permit the person wearing the belt to move forward enough to incur a serious or fatal injury. The more severe the crash, and the heavier the occupant, the greater the risk is. Be sure the airbag is turned ON for any person who does not qualify under the NHTSA deactivation criteria.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

### **Transport Canada deactivation criteria (Canada Only)**

1. **Infant:** An infant (less than 1 year old) must ride in the front seat because:
  - my vehicle has no rear seat;
  - the rear seat in my vehicle cannot accommodate a rear-facing infant seat; or
  - the infant has a medical condition which, according to the infant's physician, makes it necessary for the infant to ride in the front seat so that the driver can monitor the infant's condition.
2. **Child age 12 or under:** A child age 12 or under must ride in the front seat because:
  - my vehicle has no rear seat;
  - although children age 12 and under ride in the rear seat whenever possible, children age 12 and under have no option but to sometimes ride in the front seat because rear seat space is insufficient; or
  - the child has a medical condition that, according to the child's physician, makes it necessary for the child to ride in the front seat so that the driver can monitor the child's condition.
3. **Medical condition:** A passenger has a medical condition that, according to his or her physician:
  - poses a special risk for the passenger if the airbag deploys; and
  - makes the potential harm from the passenger airbag deployment greater than the potential harm from turning OFF the airbag and experiencing a crash without the protection offered by the airbag

 **WARNING:** This vehicle has special energy management safety belts for the driver and right front passenger. These particular belts are specifically designed to work with airbags to help reduce the risk of injury in a collision. The energy management safety belt is designed to give or release additional belt webbing in some accidents to reduce concentration of force on an occupant's chest and reduce the risk of certain bone fractures and injuries to underlying organs. In a crash, if the airbag is turned OFF, this energy management safety belt might permit the person wearing the belt to move forward enough to incur a serious or fatal injury. The more severe the crash, and the heavier the occupant, the greater the risk is. Be sure the airbag is turned ON for any person who does not qualify under the NHTSA deactivation criteria.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

### Disposal of airbags and airbag equipped vehicles

See authorized dealer. Airbags MUST BE disposed of by qualified personnel.

### SAFETY RESTRAINTS FOR CHILDREN

See the following sections for directions on how to properly use safety restraints for children. Also see *Airbag supplemental restraint system (SRS)* in this chapter for special instructions about using airbags.

### Important child restraint precautions



**WARNING:** Always make sure your child is secured properly in a device that is appropriate for their height, age and weight. Child safety restraints must be purchased separately from the vehicle. Failure to follow these instructions and guidelines may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.



**WARNING:** All children are shaped differently. The Recommendations for Safety Restraints are based on probable child height, age and weight thresholds from NHTSA and other safety organizations or are the minimum requirements of law. Ford recommends checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician (CPST) and consult your pediatrician to make sure your child seat is appropriate for your child, and is compatible with and properly installed in the vehicle. To locate a child seat fitting station and CPST contact the NHTSA toll free at 1-888-327-4236 or on the internet at <http://www.nhtsa.dot.gov>. In Canada, check with your local St. John Ambulance office for referral to a CPST or for further information, contact your provincial ministry of transportation, your local St. John Ambulance office at <http://www.sfa.ca>, or Transport Canada at 1-800-333-0371 (<http://www.tc.gc.ca>). Failure to properly restrain children in safety seats made especially for their height, age, and weight may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

<b>Recommendations for Safety Restraints for Children</b>		
	<b>Child size, height, weight, or age</b>	<b>Recommended restraint type</b>
Infants or toddlers	Children weighing 40 lb (18 kg) or less (generally age four or younger)	Use a child safety seat (sometimes called an infant carrier, convertible seat, or toddler seat).
Small children	Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a child safety seat (generally children who are less than 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall, are greater than age four (4) and less than age twelve (12), and between 40 lb (18 kg) and 80 lb (36 kg) and upward to 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by your child restraint manufacturer)	Use a belt-positioning booster seat.
Larger children	Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a belt-positioning booster seat (generally children who are at least 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall or greater than 80 lb (36 kg) or 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by child restraint manufacturer)	Use a vehicle safety belt having the lap belt snug and low across the hips, shoulder belt centered across the shoulder and chest, and seatback upright.

- You are required by law to properly use safety seats for infants and toddlers in the U.S. and Canada.
- Many states and provinces require that small children use approved booster seats until they reach age eight, a height of 4 ft 9 in. (1.45 meters) tall, or 80 lb (36 kg). Check your local and state or provincial laws for specific requirements regarding the safety of children in your vehicle.
- When possible, always properly restrain children twelve (12) years of age and under in a rear seating position of your vehicle. Accident statistics suggest that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in a front seating position.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

### *Recommendations for attaching child safety restraints for children*

Restraint Type	Child Weight	Use any attachment method as indicated below by "X"				
		LATCH (lower anchors and top tether anchor)	LATCH (lower anchors only)	Safety belt and top tether anchor	Safety belt and LATCH (lower anchors and top tether anchor)	Safety belt only
Rear facing child seat	Up to 48 lb (21 kg)					X
Forward facing child seat	Up to 48 lb (21 kg)			X		
Forward facing child seat	Over 48 lb (21 kg)			X		



**WARNING:** Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat.

NEVER place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the vehicle seat all the way back. When possible, all children age 12 and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position. If all children cannot be seated and restrained properly in a rear seating position, properly restrain the largest child in the front seat.



**WARNING:** Always carefully follow the instructions and

warnings provided by the manufacturer of any child restraint to determine if the restraint device is appropriate for your child's size, height, weight, or age. Follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions and warnings provided for installation and use in conjunction with the instructions and warnings provided by the vehicle manufacturer. A safety seat that is improperly installed or utilized, is inappropriate for your child's height, age, or weight or does not properly fit the child may increase the risk of serious injury or death.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

 **WARNING:** Never let a passenger hold a child on his or her lap while the vehicle is moving. The passenger cannot protect the child from injury in a collision, which may result in serious injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Never use pillows, books, or towels to boost a child. They can slide around and increase the likelihood of injury or death in a collision.

 **WARNING:** Always restrain an unoccupied child seat or booster seat. These objects may become projectiles in a collision or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious injury.

 **WARNING:** Never place, or allow a child to place, the shoulder belt under a child's arm or behind the back because it reduces the protection for the upper part of the body and may increase the risk of injury or death in a collision.

 **WARNING:** Do not leave children, unreliable adults, or pets unattended in your vehicle.

### Transporting children

Always make sure your child is secured properly in a device that is appropriate for their age, height and weight. All children are shaped differently. The child height, age and weight thresholds provided are recommendations or the minimum requirements of law. The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) provides education and training to ensure that all children ages 0 to 16 are properly restrained in the correct restraint system. Ford recommends checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician (CPST) and your pediatrician to make sure your seat is appropriate for your child and properly installed in the vehicle. To locate a child seat fitting station and CPST contact the NHTSA toll free at **1-888-327-4236** or on the internet at <http://www.nhtsa.dot.gov>. In Canada, check with your local St. John Ambulance office for referral to a CPST or for further information, contact your provincial ministry of transportation, your local St. John Ambulance office at <http://www.sfa.ca>, or Transport Canada at 1-800-333-0371 (<http://www.tc.gc.ca>).

198

## Seating and Safety Restraints

Follow all the safety restraint and airbag precautions that apply to adult passengers in your vehicle.

If the child is the proper height, age, and weight (as specified by your child safety seat or booster manufacturer), fits the restraint and can be restrained properly, then restrain the child in the child safety seat or with the belt-positioning booster. Remember that child seats and belt-positioning boosters vary and may be designed to fit children of different heights, ages and weights. Children who are too large for child safety seats or belt-positioning boosters (as specified by your child safety seat manufacturer) should always properly wear safety belts.

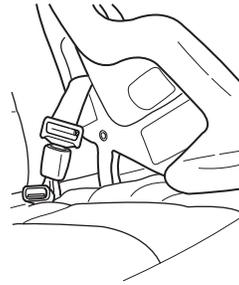
### SAFETY SEATS FOR CHILDREN

#### Infant and/or toddler seats

Use a safety seat that is recommended for the size and weight of the child.

When installing a child safety seat:

- Review and follow the information presented in the *Airbag supplemental restraint system (SRS)* section in this chapter.
- Carefully follow all of the manufacturer's instructions included with the safety seat you put in your vehicle. If you do not install and use the safety seat properly, the child may be injured in a sudden stop or collision.



Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. NEVER place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the vehicle seat all the way back.

Children 12 and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position whenever possible. If all children cannot be seated and restrained properly in a rear seating position, properly restrain the largest child in the front seat.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

### Installing child safety seats with automatic locking mode combination lap and shoulder belts (front passenger and rear outboard seating positions)

Check to make sure the child seat is properly secured before each use. Children 12 and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position whenever possible. If all children cannot be seated and restrained properly in a rear seating position, properly restrain the largest child in the front seat.

When installing a child safety seat with combination lap/shoulder belts:

- Use the correct safety belt buckle for that seating position.
- Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle until you hear a snap and feel it latch. Make sure the tongue is securely fastened in the buckle.
- Keep the buckle release button pointing up and away from the safety seat, with the tongue between the child seat and the release button, to prevent accidental unbuckling.
- Place vehicle seat back in upright position.
- This vehicle does not require the use of a locking clip.



**WARNING:** Depending on where you secure a child restraint, and depending on the child restraint design, you may block access to certain safety belt buckle assemblies and/or LATCH lower anchors, rendering those features potentially unusable. To avoid risk of injury, occupants should only use seating positions where they are able to be properly restrained.

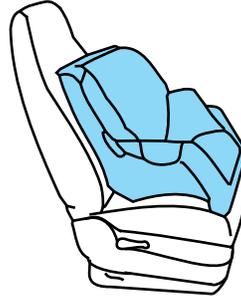
### Installing the child safety seat

Perform the following steps when installing the child seat in the outboard combination lap/shoulder belts:

**Note:** Although the child seat illustrated is a forward facing child seat, the steps are the same for installing a rear facing child seat.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

1. Position the child safety seat in a seat with a combination lap and shoulder belt.

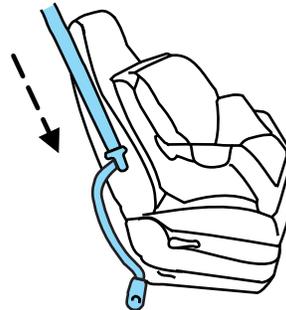


**WARNING:** An airbag can kill or injure a child in a child seat. Child seats should NEVER be placed in the front seats, unless the passenger airbag switch is turned off, See *Passenger airbag on/off switch*.



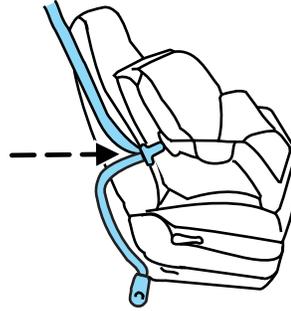
**WARNING:** Rear facing child seats should NEVER be placed in the front seats unless the passenger airbag switch is turned off.

2. Pull down on the shoulder belt and then grasp the shoulder belt and lap belt together.

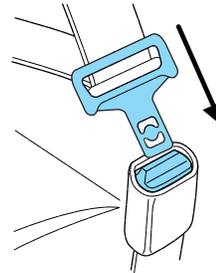


## Seating and Safety Restraints

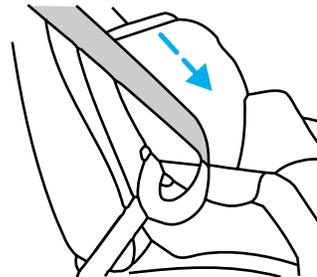
3. While holding the shoulder and lap belt portions together, route the tongue through the child seat according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions. Be sure the belt webbing is not twisted.



4. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from) for that seating position until you hear and feel the latch engage. Make sure the tongue is latched securely by pulling on it.



5. Put the safety belt in the automatic locking mode. To do so, grasp the shoulder portion of the belt and pull downward until all of the belt is pulled out.

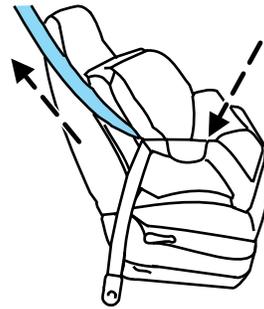


6. Allow the belt to retract to remove slack. The belt will click as it retracts to indicate it is in the automatic locking mode.

7. Try to pull the belt out of the retractor to make sure the retractor is in the automatic locking mode (you should not be able to pull more belt out). If the retractor is not locked, repeat Steps 5 and 6.

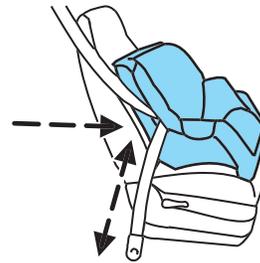
## Seating and Safety Restraints

8. Remove remaining slack from the belt. Force the seat down with extra weight, e.g., by pressing down or kneeling on the child restraint while pulling up on the shoulder belt in order to force slack from the belt. This is necessary to remove the remaining slack that will exist once the additional weight of the child is added to the child restraint. It also helps to achieve the proper snugness of the child seat to the vehicle. Sometimes, a slight lean towards the buckle will additionally help to remove remaining slack from the belt.



9. Attach the tether strap (if the child seat is equipped). Refer to *Attaching child safety seats with tether straps* later in this chapter.

10. Before placing the child in the seat, forcibly move the seat forward and back to make sure the seat is securely held in place. To check this, grab the seat at the belt path and attempt to move it side to side and forward. There should be no more than 1 inch (2.5 cm) of movement for proper installation.



11. Ford recommends checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician (CPST) to make certain the child restraint is properly installed. In Canada, check with your local St. John Ambulance office for referral to a CPST.

### **Installing child safety seats in cinch tongue combination lap and shoulder belt seating positions (All front center and Super/Crew cab rear center positions)**

The belt webbing below the tongue is the lap portion of the combination lap/shoulder belt, and the belt webbing above the tongue is the shoulder belt portion of the combination lap/shoulder belt.

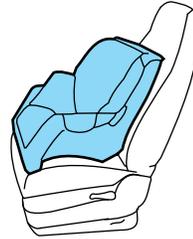


**WARNING:** Always use both lap and shoulder safety belt in the Regular Cab center seating position if applicable.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

**Note:** Although the child seat illustrated is a forward facing child seat, the steps are the same for installing a rear facing child seat.

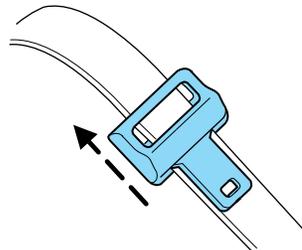
1. Position the child safety seat in the center seat.



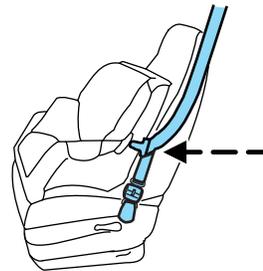
**WARNING:** Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move seat all the way back.

**WARNING:** Rear facing child seats should NEVER be placed in front of an active airbag.

2. Slide the tongue up the webbing.

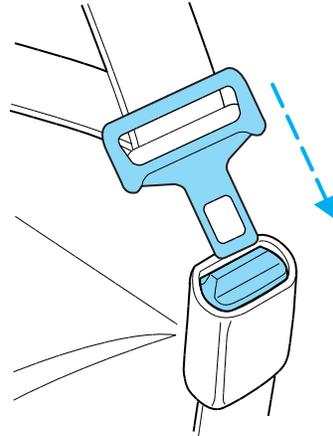


3. While holding both shoulder and lap portions next to the tongue, route the tongue and webbing through the child seat according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions. Be sure that the belt webbing is not twisted.

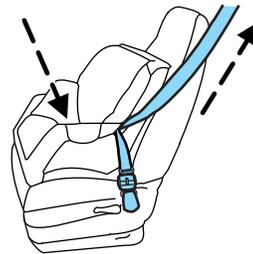


## Seating and Safety Restraints

4. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle for that seating positions until you hear a snap and feel it latch. Make sure the tongue is securely latched to the buckle by pulling on the tongue.



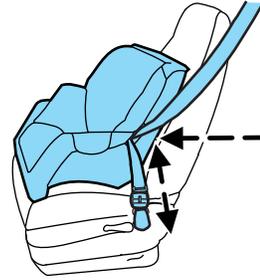
5. Remove remaining slack from the belt. Force the seat down with extra weight, e.g., by pressing down or kneeling on the child restraint while pulling up on the shoulder belt in order to force slack from the belt. This is necessary to remove the remaining slack that will exist once the additional weight of the child is added to the child restraint. It also helps to achieve the proper snugness of the child seat to the vehicle. Sometimes, a slight lean towards the buckle will additionally help to remove remaining slack from the belt.



6. Attach the tether strap (if the child seat is equipped). Refer to *Attaching child safety seats with tether straps* later in this chapter.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

7. Before placing the child in the seat, forcibly move the seat forward and back to make sure the seat is securely held in place. To check this, grab the seat at the belt path and attempt to move it side to side and forward. There should be no more than 1 inch (2.5 cm) of movement for proper installation.



8. Ford recommends checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician (CPST) to make certain the child restraint is properly installed. In Canada, check with your local St. John Ambulance office for referral to a CPST.

### Attaching child safety seats with LATCH (Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children) attachments

The LATCH system is composed of three vehicle anchor points: two (2) lower anchors located where the vehicle seat back and seat cushion meet (called the “seat bight”) and one (1) top tether anchor located behind that seating position. Your vehicle is **not** equipped with the lower anchor points in the seat bight. For this vehicle use the vehicle safety belt and upper tether to secure a child seat. See *Attaching child safety seats with tether straps* and *Recommendations for attaching safety restraints for children* in this chapter for more information.

### Attaching child safety seats with tether straps

Many forward-facing child safety seats include a tether strap which extends from the back of the child safety seat and hooks to an anchoring point called the top tether anchor. Tether straps are available as an accessory for many older safety seats. Contact the manufacturer of your child seat for information about ordering a tether strap, or to obtain a longer tether strap if the tether strap on your safety seat does not reach the appropriate top tether anchor in the vehicle.

The passenger seats of your vehicle may be equipped with built-in tether strap anchors located behind the seats as described below.

The tether anchors in your vehicle may be straps on the seatback or an anchor bracket mounted to the body shell on the back panel.

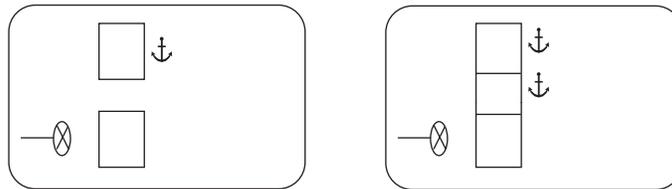
The SuperCab rear seat has three straps behind the top of the seat back that function as both routing loops for the tether straps and anchor loops.

206

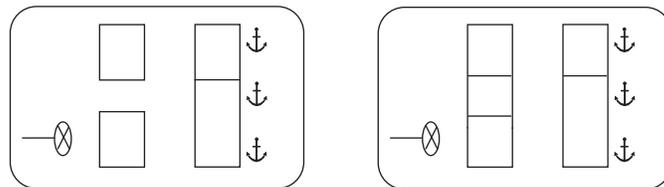
## Seating and Safety Restraints

The tether strap anchors in your vehicle are in the following positions (shown from top view):

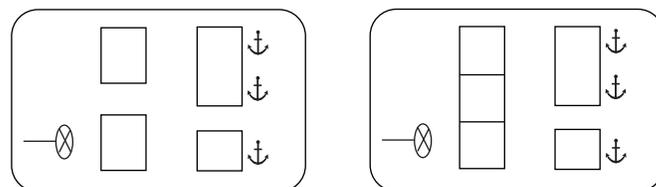
- **F-Series Regular Cab**



- **F-Series SuperCab**



- **F-Series Crew Cab**



Attach the tether strap only to the appropriate tether anchor as shown. The tether strap may not work properly if attached somewhere other than the correct tether anchor.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

Once the child safety seat has been installed using the safety belt, you can attach the top tether strap.

### Tether strap attachment

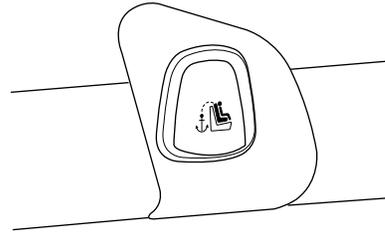
1. Route the child safety seat tether strap over the back of the seat.

For vehicles with adjustable head restraints, route the tether strap under the head restraint and between the head restraint posts, other wise route the tether strap over the top of the seatback. If the top of the safety seat hits the head restraint, raise the head restraint to let the child seat fit further rearward.

2. Locate the correct anchor for the selected seating position.

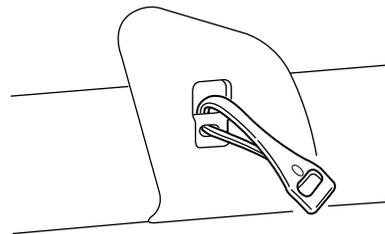
3. You may need to pull the seatback forward to access the tether anchors. Make sure the seat is locked in the upright position before installing the child seat. Refer to the *Rear folding seat system with load floor* section in this chapter for information on how to operate the rear seats.

4. Remove tether cover.



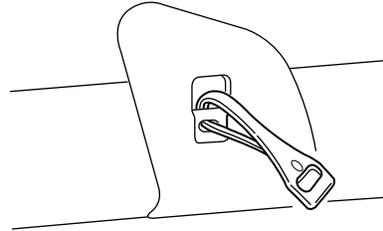
5. Clip the tether strap to the anchor as shown.

- Front seats (Regular Cab)



## Seating and Safety Restraints

- Rear seats (Crew Cab)



If the tether strap is clipped incorrectly, the child safety seat may not be retained properly in the event of a collision.

6. Refer to the *Installing child safety seats with automatic locking mode combination lap and shoulder belts* and *Installing child safety seats in cinch tongue combination lap and shoulder belt seating positions* sections of this chapter for further instructions to secure the child safety seat.

7. Tighten the child safety seat tether strap according to the manufacturer's instructions.

If the safety seat is not anchored properly, the risk of a child being injured in a collision greatly increases.

If your child restraint system is equipped with a tether strap, and the child restraint manufacturer recommends its use, Ford also recommends its use.

### ***Tether strap attachment (rear SuperCab only)***

There are three loops of webbing just above the back of the rear seat (along the bottom edge of the rear window) in the SuperCab. These loops are to be used as both routing loops and anchor loops for up to three child safety seat tether straps.

These straps may be secured below the back of the seat with rubber bands. To access, reach below the back of the seat and pull tether loop out of the rubber band securing it.

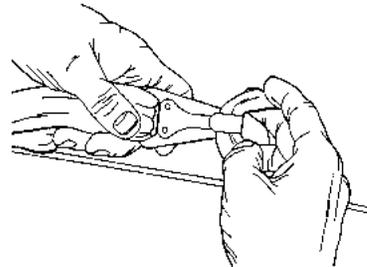
## Seating and Safety Restraints

Many tether straps cannot be tightened if the tether strap is hooked to the loop directly behind the child seat. To provide a tight tether strap:

1. Route the tether strap through the loop directly behind the child seat.

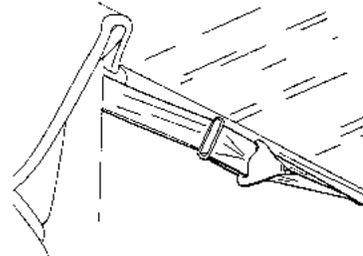


2. Attach the strap hook onto the loop behind an adjacent seating position.



3. Install the child safety seat tightly using the vehicle belts. Follow the instructions in this chapter.

4. Tighten the tether strap according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions.



A single loop can be used to route and anchor more than one child seat. For example, the center loop can be used as a routing loop for a child safety seat in the center rear seat and as an anchoring loop for child seats installed in the outboard rear seats.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

### Child booster seats

The belt-positioning booster (booster seat) is used to improve the fit of the vehicle safety belt. Children outgrow a typical child seat (e.g., convertible or toddler seat) when they weigh about 40 lb (18 kg) and are around four (4) years of age. Consult your child safety seat owner guide for the weight, height, and age limits specific to your child safety seat. Keep your child in the child safety seat if it properly fits the child, remains appropriate for their weight, height and age AND if properly secured to the vehicle.

Although the lap/shoulder belt will provide some protection, children who have outgrown a typical child seat are still too small for lap/shoulder belts to fit properly, and wearing an improperly fitted vehicle safety belt could increase the risk of serious injury in a crash. To improve the fit of both the lap and shoulder belt on children who have outgrown child safety seats, Ford Motor Company recommends use of a belt-positioning booster.

Booster seats position a child so that vehicle lap/shoulder safety belts fit better. They lift the child up so that the lap belt rests low across the hips and the knees bend comfortably at the edge of the cushion, while minimizing slouching. Booster seats may also make the shoulder belt fit better and more comfortably. Try to keep the belt near the middle of the shoulder and across the center of the chest. Moving the child closer (a few centimeters or inches) to the center of the vehicle, but remaining in the same seating position, may help provide a good shoulder belt fit.

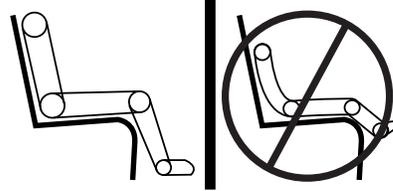
### ***When children should use booster seats***

Children need to use booster seats from the time they outgrow the toddler seat until they are big enough for the vehicle seat and lap/shoulder belt to fit properly. Generally this is when they reach a height of at least 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall (around age eight to age twelve and between 40 lb (18 kg) and 80 lb (36 kg) or upward to 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by your child restraint manufacturer). Many state and provincial laws require that children use approved booster seats until they reach age eight, a height of 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall, or 80 lb (36 kg).

## Seating and Safety Restraints

Booster seats should be used until you can answer YES to ALL of these questions when seated without a booster seat:

- Can the child sit all the way back against the vehicle seat back with knees bent comfortably at the edge of the seat cushion?
- Can the child sit without slouching?



- Does the lap belt rest low across the hips?
- Is the shoulder belt centered on the shoulder and chest?
- Can the child stay seated like this for the whole trip?

### **Types of booster seats**

There are generally two types of belt-positioning booster seats: backless and high back. Always use booster seats in conjunction with the vehicle lap/shoulder belt.

- Backless booster seats

If your backless booster seat has a removable shield, remove the shield. If a vehicle seating position has a low seat back or no head restraint, a backless booster seat may place your child's head (as measured at the tops of the ears) above the top of the seat. In this case, move the backless booster to another seating position with a higher seat back or head restraint and lap/shoulder belts, or consider using a high back booster seat.



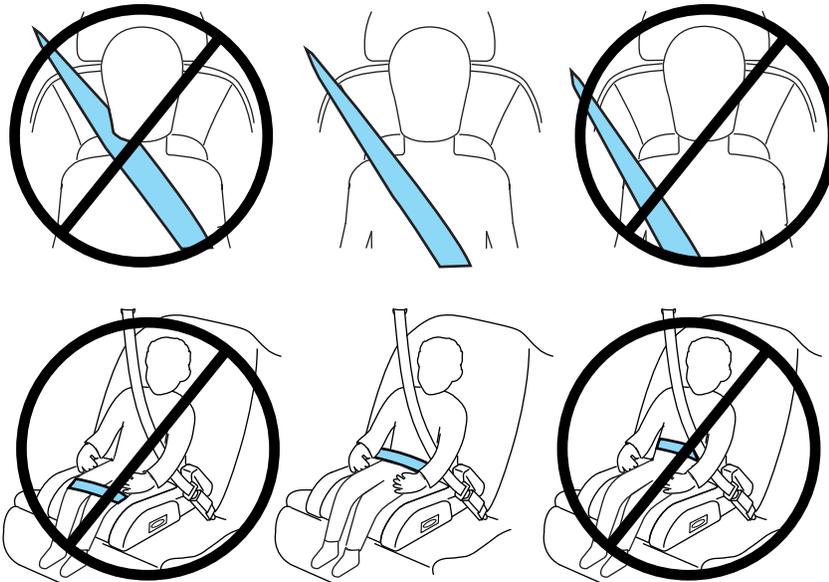
## Seating and Safety Restraints

- High back booster seats

If, with a backless booster seat, you cannot find a seating position that adequately supports your child's head, a high back booster seat would be a better choice.



Children and booster seats vary in size and shape. Choose a booster that keeps the lap belt low and snug across the hips, never up across the stomach, and lets you adjust the shoulder belt to cross the chest and rest snugly near the center of the shoulder. The drawings below compare the ideal fit (center) to a shoulder belt uncomfortably close to the neck and a shoulder belt that could slip off the shoulder. The drawings below also show how the lap belt should be low and snug across the child's hips.



## Seating and Safety Restraints

If the booster seat slides on the vehicle seat, placing a rubberized mesh sold as shelf or carpet liner under the booster seat may improve this condition. Do not introduce any item thicker than this under the booster seat. Check with the booster seat manufacturer's instructions.

### ***The importance of shoulder belts***

Using a booster without a shoulder belt increases the risk of a child's head hitting a hard surface in a collision. For this reason, you should never use a booster seat with a lap belt only. It is generally best to use a booster seat with lap/shoulder belts in the back seat.

Move a child to a different seating location if the shoulder belt does not stay positioned on the shoulder during use.

Follow all instructions provided by the manufacturer of the booster seat.



**WARNING:** Never place, or allow a child to place, the shoulder belt under a child's arm or behind the back because it reduces the protection for the upper part of the body and may increase the risk of injury or death in a collision.

### **Child restraint and safety belt maintenance**

Inspect the vehicle safety belts and child safety seat systems periodically to make sure they work properly and are not damaged. Inspect the vehicle and child seat safety belts to make sure there are no nicks, tears or cuts. Replace if necessary. All vehicle safety belt assemblies, including retractors, buckles, front safety belt buckle assemblies, buckle support assemblies (slide bar-if equipped), shoulder belt height adjusters (if equipped), shoulder belt guide on seatback (if equipped), child safety seat LATCH and tether anchors, and attaching hardware, should be inspected after a collision. Refer to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions for additional inspection and maintenance information specific to the child restraint. Ford Motor Company recommends that all safety belt assemblies in use in vehicles involved in a collision be replaced. However, if the collision was minor and an authorized dealer finds that the belts do not show damage and continue to operate properly, they do not need to be replaced. Safety belt assemblies not in use during a collision should also be inspected and replaced if either damage or improper operation is noted.

For proper care of soiled safety belts, refer to *Interior* in the *Cleaning* chapter.

214

## Seating and Safety Restraints

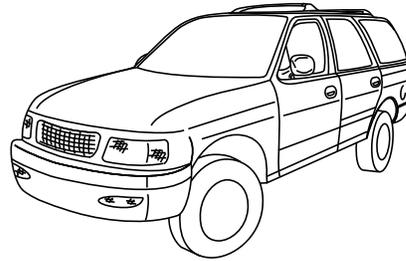


**WARNING:** Failure to inspect and if necessary replace the safety belt assembly or child restraint system under the above conditions could result in severe personal injuries in the event of a collision.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### NOTICE TO UTILITY VEHICLE AND TRUCK OWNERS

Utility vehicles and trucks handle differently than passenger cars in the various driving conditions that are encountered on streets, highways and off-road. Utility vehicles and trucks are not designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions.



**WARNING:** Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles. To reduce the risk of serious injury or death from a rollover or other crash you must:

- Avoid sharp turns and abrupt maneuvers;
- Drive at safe speeds for the conditions;
- Keep tires properly inflated;
- Never overload or improperly load your vehicle; and
- Make sure every passenger is properly restrained.



**WARNING:** In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. All occupants must wear seat belts and children/infants must use appropriate restraints to minimize the risk of injury or ejection.

Study your owner's guide and any supplements for specific information about equipment features, instructions for safe driving and additional precautions to reduce the risk of an accident or serious injury.

### VEHICLE CHARACTERISTICS

#### Four-wheel drive (4WD) system (if equipped)

A vehicle equipped with 4WD (when selected) has the ability to use all four wheels to power itself. This increases traction which may enable you to safely drive over terrain and road conditions that a conventional two-wheel drive vehicle cannot.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

Power is supplied to all four wheels through a transfer case or power transfer unit. 4WD vehicles allow you to select different drive modes as necessary. Information on transfer case operation and shifting procedures can be found in the *Driving* chapter. Information on transfer case maintenance can be found in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter. You should become thoroughly familiar with this information before you operate your vehicle.

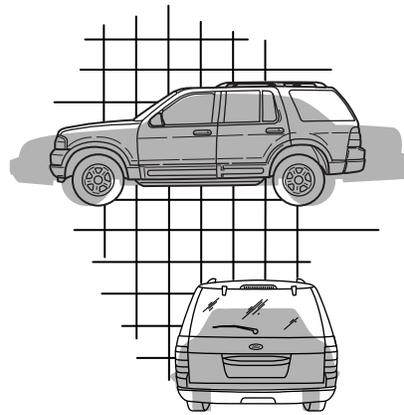
On some 4WD models, the initial shift from two-wheel drive to 4WD while the vehicle is moving can cause a momentary clunk and ratcheting sound. These sounds are normal as the front drivetrain comes up to speed and is not cause for concern.

**!** **WARNING:** Do not become overconfident in the ability of 4WD vehicles. Although a 4WD vehicle may accelerate better than two-wheel drive vehicle in low traction situations, it won't stop any faster than two-wheel drive vehicles. Always drive at a safe speed.

### How your vehicle differs from other vehicles

SUVs and trucks can differ from some other vehicles in a few noticeable ways. Your vehicle may be:

- Higher – to allow higher load carrying capacity and to allow it to travel over rough terrain without getting hung up or damaging underbody components.
- Shorter – to give it the capability to approach inclines and drive over the crest of a hill without getting hung up or damaging underbody components. All other things held equal, a shorter wheelbase may make your vehicle quicker to respond to steering inputs than a vehicle with a longer wheelbase.

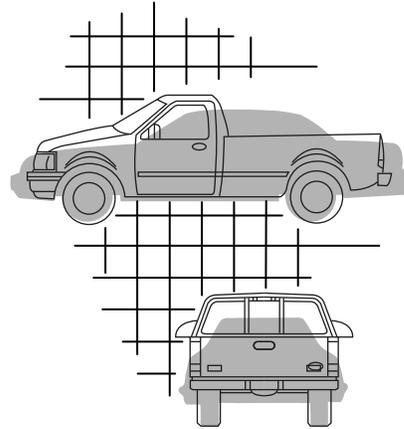


## Tires, Wheels and Loading

- Narrower – to provide greater maneuverability in tight spaces, particularly in off-road use.

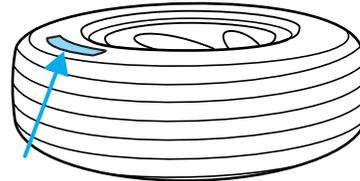
As a result of the above dimensional differences, SUVs and trucks often will have a higher center of gravity and a greater difference in center of gravity between the loaded and unloaded condition.

These differences that make your vehicle so versatile also make it handle differently than an ordinary passenger car.



### INFORMATION ABOUT UNIFORM TIRE QUALITY GRADING

Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic passenger car tires. The Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example:



- **Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A**

These Tire Quality Grades are determined by standards that the United States Department of Transportation has set.

Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic passenger car tires. They do not apply to deep tread, winter-type snow tires, space-saver or temporary use spare tires, light truck or "LT" type tires, tires with nominal rim diameters of 10 to 12 inches or limited production tires as defined in Title 49 Code of Federal Regulations Part 575.104(c)(2).

**U.S. Department of Transportation-Tire quality grades:** The U.S. Department of Transportation requires Ford Motor Company to give you the following information about tire grades exactly as the government has written it.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1½) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices, and differences in road characteristics and climate.

### Traction AA A B C



**WARNING:** The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics.

The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

### Temperature A B C



**WARNING:** The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 139. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

### TIRES

Tires are designed to give many thousands of miles of service, but they must be maintained in order to get the maximum benefit from them.

219

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### Glossary of Tire Terminology

- **Tire label:** A label showing the OE (Original Equipment) tire sizes, recommended inflation pressure and the maximum weight the vehicle can carry.
- **Tire Identification Number (TIN):** A number on the sidewall of each tire providing information about the tire brand and manufacturing plant, tire size and date of manufacture. Also referred to as DOT code.
- **Inflation pressure:** A measure of the amount of air in a tire.
- **Standard load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a maximum load at 35 psi [37 psi (2.5 bar) for Metric tires]. Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.
- **Extra load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a heavier maximum load at 41 psi [43 psi (2.9 bar) for Metric tires]. Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.
- **kPa:** Kilopascal, a metric unit of air pressure.
- **PSI:** Pounds per square inch, a standard unit of air pressure.
- **Cold inflation pressure:** The tire pressure when the vehicle has been stationary and out of direct sunlight for an hour or more and prior to the vehicle being driven for 1 mile (1.6 km).
- **Recommended inflation pressure:** The cold inflation pressure found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door.
- **B-pillar:** The structural member at the side of the vehicle behind the front door.
- **Bead area of the tire:** Area of the tire next to the rim.
- **Sidewall of the tire:** Area between the bead area and the tread.
- **Tread area of the tire:** Area of the perimeter of the tire that contacts the road when mounted on the vehicle.
- **Rim:** The metal support (wheel) for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

### INFLATING YOUR TIRES

Safe operation of your vehicle requires that your tires are properly inflated. Remember that a tire can lose up to half of its air pressure without appearing flat.

220

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

Every day before you drive, check your tires. If one looks lower than the others, use a tire gauge to check pressure of all tires and adjust if required.

At least once a month and before long trips, inspect each tire and check the tire pressure with a tire gauge (including spare, if equipped). Inflate all tires to the inflation pressure recommended by Ford Motor Company.

You are strongly urged to buy a reliable tire pressure gauge, as automatic service station gauges may be inaccurate. Ford recommends the use of a digital or dial-type tire pressure gauge rather than a stick-type tire pressure gauge.

Use the recommended cold inflation pressure for optimum tire performance and wear. Under-inflation or over-inflation may cause uneven treadwear patterns.



**WARNING:** Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failures and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation or “blowout”, with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury. Under-inflation increases sidewall flexing and rolling resistance, resulting in heat buildup and internal damage to the tire. It also may result in unnecessary tire stress, irregular wear, loss of vehicle control and accidents. A tire can lose up to half of its air pressure and not appear to be flat!

Always inflate your tires to the Ford recommended inflation pressure even if it is less than the maximum inflation pressure information found on the tire. The Ford recommended tire inflation pressure is found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver’s door. Failure to follow the tire pressure recommendations can cause uneven treadwear patterns and adversely affect the way your vehicle handles.

**Note:** Do not reduce tire pressure to change the ride characteristics of the vehicle. If you do not maintain the inflation pressure at the levels specified by Ford, your vehicle may experience a condition known as “shimmy”. Shimmy is a severe vibration and oscillation in the steering wheel after the vehicle travels over a bump or dip in the road that does not dampen out by itself. Shimmy may result from significant under-inflation of the tires, improper tires (load range, size, or type), or vehicle modifications such as lift-kits. In the event that your vehicle experiences shimmy, you should slowly reduce speed by either lifting off the accelerator pedal or lightly applying the brakes. The shimmy will cease as the vehicle speed decreases.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

**Maximum Permissible Inflation Pressure** is the tire manufacturer's maximum permissible pressure and/or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label.

When weather temperature changes occur, tire inflation pressures also change. A 10°F (6°C) temperature drop can cause a corresponding drop of 1 psi (7 kPa) in inflation pressure. Check your tire pressures frequently and adjust them to the proper pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label.

To check the pressure in your tire(s):

1. Make sure the tires are cool, meaning they are not hot from driving even a mile.

If you are checking tire pressure when the tire is hot, (i.e. driven more than 1 mile [1.6 km]), never "bleed" or reduce air pressure. The tires are hot from driving and it is normal for pressures to increase above recommended cold pressures. A hot tire at or below recommended cold inflation pressure could be significantly under-inflated.

**Note:** If you have to drive a distance to get air for your tire(s), check and record the tire pressure first and add the appropriate air pressure when you get to the pump. It is normal for tires to heat up and the air pressure inside to go up as you drive.

2. Remove the cap from the valve on one tire, then firmly press the tire gauge onto the valve and measure the pressure.
3. Add enough air to reach the recommended air pressure.

**Note:** If you overfill the tire, release air by pushing on the metal stem in the center of the valve. Then recheck the pressure with your tire gauge.

4. Replace the valve cap.
5. Repeat this procedure for each tire, including the spare.

**Note:** Some spare tires operate at a higher inflation pressure than the other tires. For T-type/mini-spare tires (see the *Dissimilar spare tire/wheel information* section for description): Store and maintain at 60 psi (4.15 bar). For full-size and dissimilar spare tires (see the *Dissimilar spare tire/wheel information* section for description): Store and maintain at the higher of the front and rear inflation pressure as shown on the Tire Label.

222

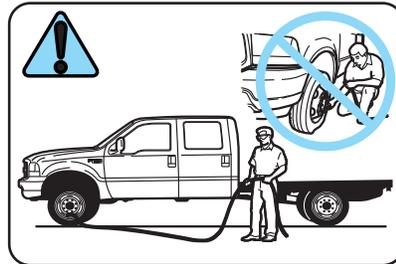
## Tires, Wheels and Loading

6. Visually inspect the tires to make sure there are no nails or other objects embedded that could poke a hole in the tire and cause an air leak.
7. Check the sidewalls to make sure there are no gouges, cuts or bulges.

### Tire inflation information

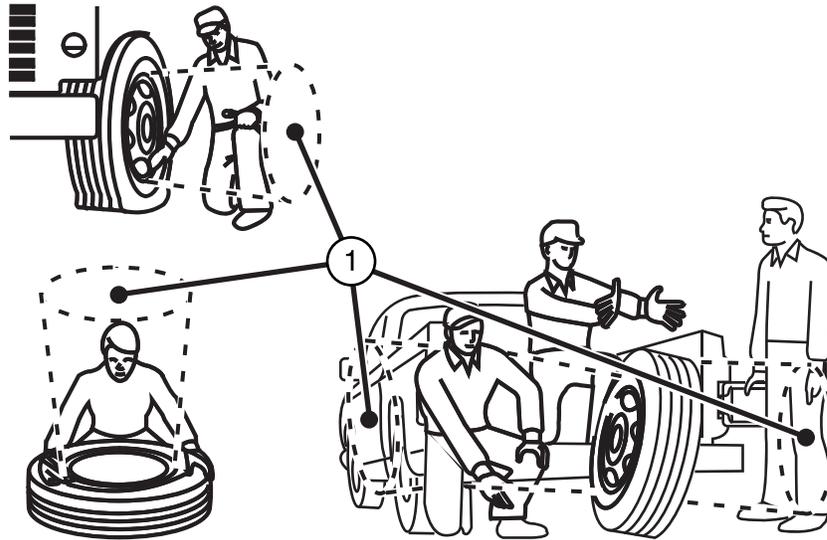
All tires with Steel Carcass Plies (if equipped):

This type of tire utilizes steel cords in the sidewalls. As such, they cannot be treated like normal light truck tires. Tire service, including adjusting tire pressure, must be performed by personnel trained, supervised and equipped according to Federal Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) regulations. For example, during any procedure involving tire inflation, the technician or individual must utilize a remote inflation device, and ensure that all persons are clear of the trajectory area.



 **WARNING:** An inflated tire and rim can be very dangerous if improperly used, serviced or maintained. To reduce the risk of serious injury, never attempt to re-inflate a tire which has been run flat or seriously under-inflated without first removing the tire from the wheel assembly for inspection. Do not attempt to add air to tires or replace tires or wheels without first taking precautions to protect persons and property.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading



**WARNING:** Stay out of the trajectory (1) as indicated in the illustration.

### TIRE CARE

#### Inspecting your tires and wheel valve stems

Periodically inspect the tire treads for uneven or excessive wear and remove objects such as stones, nails or glass that may be wedged in the tread grooves. Check the tire and valve stems for holes, cracks, or cuts that may permit air leakage and repair or replace the tire and replace the valve stem. Inspect the tire sidewalls for cracking, cuts, bruises and other signs of damage or excessive wear. If internal damage to the tire is suspected, have the tire demounted and inspected in case it needs to be repaired or replaced. For your safety, tires that are damaged or show signs of excessive wear should not be used because they are more likely to blow out or fail.

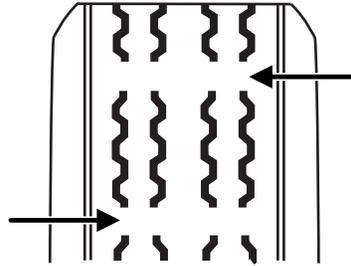
Improper or inadequate vehicle maintenance can cause tires to wear abnormally. Inspect all your tires, including the spare, frequently, and replace them if one or more of the following conditions exist:

224

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### Tire wear

When the tread is worn down to 1/16th of an inch (2 mm), tires must be replaced to help prevent your vehicle from skidding and hydroplaning. Built-in treadwear indicators, or “wear bars”, which look like narrow strips of smooth rubber across the tread will appear on the tire when the tread is worn down to 1/16th of an inch (2 mm). When the tire tread wears down to the same height as these “wear bars”, the tire is worn out and must be replaced.



### Damage

Periodically inspect the tire treads and sidewalls for damage (such as bulges in the tread or sidewalls, cracks in the tread groove and separation in the tread or sidewall). If damage is observed or suspected have the tire inspected by a tire professional. Tires can be damaged during off-road use, so inspection after off-road use is also recommended.



#### **WARNING: Age**

Tires degrade over time depending on many factors such as weather, storage conditions, and conditions of use (load, speed, inflation pressure, etc.) the tires experience throughout their lives. In general, tires should be replaced after six years regardless of tread wear. However, heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process and may require tires to be replaced more frequently.

You should replace your spare tire when you replace the road tires or after six years due to aging even if it has not been used.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN)

Both U.S. and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

This begins with the letters "DOT" and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000 the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

### Tire replacement requirements

Your vehicle is equipped with tires designed to provide a safe ride and handling capability.



**WARNING:** Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, load index, speed rating and type (such as P-metric versus LT-metric or all-season versus all-terrain) as those originally provided by Ford. The recommended tire and wheel size may be found on either the Safety Compliance Certification Label or the Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or edge of the driver's door. If this information is not found on these labels then you should contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. Additionally the use of non-recommended tires and wheels could cause steering, suspension, axle or transfer case/power transfer unit failure. If you have questions regarding tire replacement, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading



**WARNING:** When mounting replacement tires and wheels, you should not exceed the maximum pressure indicated on the sidewall of the tire to set the beads without additional precautions listed below. If the beads do not seat at the maximum pressure indicated, re-lubricate and try again.

When inflating the tire for mounting pressures up to 20 psi (138 kPa) greater than the maximum pressure on the tire sidewall, the following precautions must be taken to protect the person mounting the tire:

1. Make sure that you have the correct tire and wheel size.
2. Lubricate the tire bead and wheel bead seat area again.
3. Stand at a minimum of 12 ft (3.66 m) away from the tire wheel assembly.
4. Use both eye and ear protection.

For a mounting pressure more than 20 psi (138 kPa) greater than the maximum pressure, an authorized dealer or other tire service professional should do the mounting.

Always inflate steel carcass tires with a remote air fill with the person inflating standing at a minimum of 12 ft (3.66 m) away from the tire wheel assembly.

**Important:** Remember to replace the wheel valve stems when the road tires are replaced on your vehicle.

It is recommended that the two front tires or two rear tires generally be replaced as a pair.

The tire pressure sensors mounted in the wheels are not designed to be used in aftermarket wheels.

The use of wheels or tires not recommended by Ford Motor Company may affect the operation of your tire pressure monitoring system(if equipped).

If the TPMS indicator is flashing, your TPMS is malfunctioning. Your replacement tire might be incompatible with your TPMS, or some component of the TPMS may be damaged(if equipped).

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### Safety Practices

 **WARNING:** If your vehicle is stuck in snow, mud, sand, etc., do not rapidly spin the tires; spinning the tires can tear the tire and cause an explosion. A tire can explode in as little as three to five seconds.

 **WARNING:** Do not spin the wheels at over 35 mph (56 km/h). The tires may fail and injure a passenger or bystander.

Driving habits have a great deal to do with your tire mileage and safety.

- Observe posted speed limits
- Avoid fast starts, stops and turns
- Avoid potholes and objects on the road
- Do not run over curbs or hit the tire against a curb when parking

### Highway hazards

No matter how carefully you drive there's always the possibility that you may eventually have a flat tire on the highway. Drive slowly to the closest safe area out of traffic. This may further damage the flat tire, but your safety is more important.

If you feel a sudden vibration or ride disturbance while driving, or you suspect your tire or vehicle has been damaged, immediately reduce your speed. Drive with caution until you can safely pull off the road. Stop and inspect the tires for damage. If a tire is under-inflated or damaged, deflate it, remove wheel and replace it with your spare tire and wheel. If you cannot detect a cause, have the vehicle towed to the nearest repair facility or tire dealer to have the vehicle inspected.

### Tire and Wheel Alignment

A bad jolt from hitting a curb or pothole can cause the front end of your vehicle to become misaligned or cause damage to your tires. If your vehicle seems to pull to one side when you're driving, the wheels may be out of alignment. Have an authorized dealer check the wheel alignment periodically.

Wheel misalignment in the front or the rear can cause uneven and rapid treadwear of your tires and should be corrected by an authorized dealer. Front-wheel drive (FWD) vehicles and those with an independent rear suspension (if equipped) may require alignment of all four wheels.

228

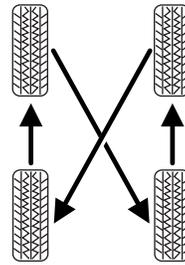
## Tires, Wheels and Loading

The tires should also be balanced periodically. An unbalanced tire and wheel assembly may result in irregular tire wear.

### Tire rotation

Rotating your tires at the recommended interval (as indicated in the *Scheduled Maintenance* chapter) will help your tires wear more evenly, providing better tire performance and longer tire life.

- Rear-wheel drive (RWD) vehicles/Four-wheel drive (4WD) vehicles (front tires at top of diagram)



Sometimes irregular tire wear can be corrected by rotating the tires.

**Note:** If your tires show uneven wear ask an authorized dealer to check for and correct any wheel misalignment, tire imbalance or mechanical problem involved before tire rotation.

**Note:** Your vehicle may be equipped with a dissimilar spare tire/wheel. A dissimilar spare tire/wheel is defined as a spare tire and/or wheel that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels. If you have a dissimilar spare tire/wheel it is intended for temporary use only and should not be used in a tire rotation.

**Note:** After having your tires rotated, inflation pressure must be checked and adjusted to the vehicle requirements.

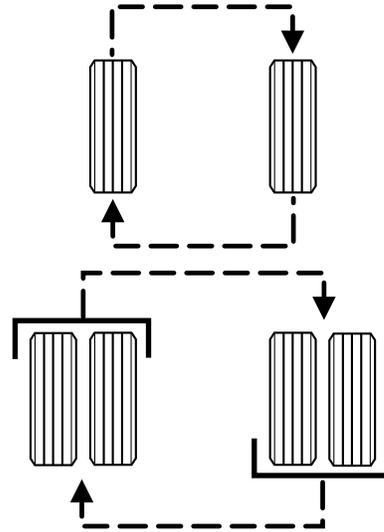


**WARNING:** If the tire label shows different tire pressures for the front and rear tires and the vehicle is equipped with TPMS (tire pressure monitoring system), then the settings for the TPMS sensors need to be updated. Always perform the TPMS reset procedure after tire rotation. If the system is not reset, it may not provide a low tire pressure warning when necessary. See the TPMS reset procedure in this chapter.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

- Dual rear wheel (DRW) vehicles – Six tire rotation

If your vehicle is equipped with dual rear wheels it is recommended that the front and rear tires (in pairs) be rotated only side to side. We do not recommend splitting up the dual rear wheels. Rotate them side to side as a set/pair. After tire rotation, inflation pressures must be adjusted for the tires new positions in accordance with vehicle requirements.



Sometimes irregular tire wear can be corrected by rotating the tires.

**Note:** If your tires show uneven wear ask your authorized dealer to check for and correct any wheel misalignment, tire imbalance or mechanical problem involved before tire rotation.

**Note:** Your vehicle may be equipped with a dissimilar spare tire/wheel. A dissimilar spare tire/wheel is defined as a spare tire and/or wheel that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels. If you have a dissimilar spare tire/wheel it is intended for temporary use only and should not be used in a tire rotation.

**Note:** After having your tires rotated, inflation pressure must be checked and adjusted to the vehicle requirements.

### INFORMATION CONTAINED ON THE TIRE SIDEWALL

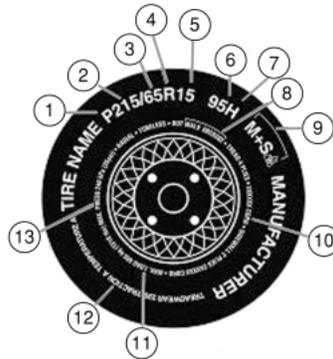
Both U.S. and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

230

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### Information on “P” type tires

P215/65R15 95H is an example of a tire size, load index and speed rating. The definitions of these items are listed below. (Note that the tire size, load index and speed rating for your vehicle may be different from this example.)



1. **P:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association (T&RA), that may be used for service on cars, SUVs, minivans and light trucks.

**Note:** If your tire size does not begin with a letter this may mean it is designated by either ETRTO (European Tire and Rim Technical Organization) or JATMA (Japan Tire Manufacturing Association).

2. **215:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

3. **65:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire's ratio of height to width.

4. **R:** Indicates a “radial” type tire.

5. **15:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

6. **95:** Indicates the tire's load index. It is an index that relates to how much weight a tire can carry. You may find this information in your owner's guide. If not, contact a local tire dealer.

**Note:** You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

7. **H:** Indicates the tire's speed rating. The speed rating denotes the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time under a standard condition of load and inflation pressure. The tires on your vehicle may operate at different conditions for load and inflation pressure. These speed ratings may need to be adjusted for the difference in conditions. The ratings range from 81 mph (130 km/h) to 186 mph (299 km/h). These ratings are listed in the following chart.

**Note:** You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.

Letter rating	Speed rating - mph (km/h)
M	81 mph (130 km/h)
N	87 mph (140 km/h)
Q	99 mph (159 km/h)
R	106 mph (171 km/h)
S	112 mph (180 km/h)
T	118 mph (190 km/h)
U	124 mph (200 km/h)
H	130 mph (210 km/h)
V	149 mph (240 km/h)
W	168 mph (270 km/h)
Y	186 mph (299 km/h)

**Note:** For tires with a maximum speed capability over 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the letters ZR. For those with a maximum speed capability over 186 mph (299 km/h), tire manufacturers always use the letters ZR.

8. **U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN):** This begins with the letters "DOT" and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000 the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

9. **M+S or M/S:** Mud and Snow, or

**AT:** All Terrain, or

**AS:** All Season.

232

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

10. **Tire Ply Composition and Material Used:** Indicates the number of plies or the number of layers of rubber-coated fabric in the tire tread and sidewall. Tire manufacturers also must indicate the ply materials in the tire and the sidewall, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others.

11. **Maximum Load:** Indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire. Refer to the Safety Compliance Certification Label, which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door, for the correct tire pressure for your vehicle.

### 12. Treadwear, Traction and Temperature Grades

- **Treadwear:** The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1½) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.
- **Traction:** The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.
- **Temperature:** The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

13. **Maximum Permissible Inflation Pressure:** Indicates the tire manufacturers' maximum permissible pressure and/or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the vehicle label.

The tire suppliers may have additional markings, notes or warnings such as standard load, radial tubeless, etc.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### Additional information contained on the tire sidewall for “LT” type tires

“LT” type tires have some additional information beyond those of “P” type tires; these differences are described below.

**Note:** Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.

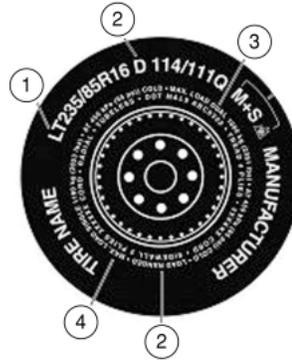
1. **LT:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association (T&RA), that is intended for service on light trucks.

2. **Load Range/Load Inflation**

**Limits:** Indicates the tire’s load-carrying capabilities and its inflation limits.

3. **Maximum Load Dual lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a dual; defined as four tires on the rear axle (a total of six or more tires on the vehicle).

4. **Maximum Load Single lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a single; defined as two tires (total) on the rear axle.



## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### Information on “T” type tires

“T” type tires have some additional information beyond those of “P” type tires; these differences are described below:

T145/80D16 is an example of a tire size.

**Note:** The temporary tire size for your vehicle may be different from this example. Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.

1. **T:** Indicates a type of tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association (T&RA), that is intended for temporary service on cars, SUVs, minivans and light trucks.

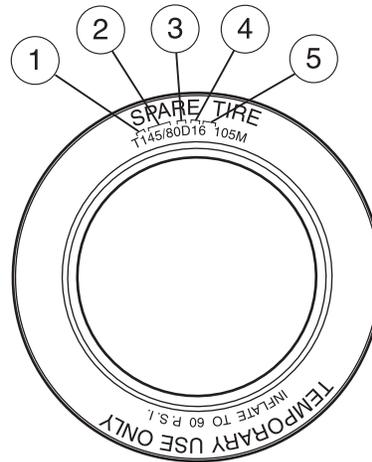
2. **145:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

3. **80:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire’s ratio of height to width. Numbers of 70 or lower indicate a short sidewall.

4. **D:** Indicates a “diagonal” type tire.

**R:** Indicates a “radial” type tire.

5. **16:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.



### Location of the tire label

You will find a Tire Label containing tire inflation pressure by tire size and other important information located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver’s door. Refer to the payload description and graphic in the *Vehicle loading – with and without a trailer* section.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS) (IF EQUIPPED)

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)



As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

The tire pressure monitoring system complies with part 15 of the FCC rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.



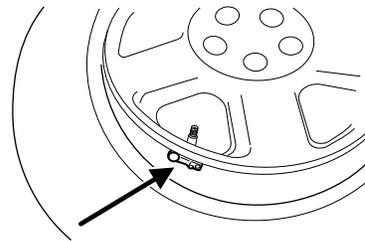
**WARNING:** The tire pressure monitoring system is NOT a substitute for manually checking tire pressure. The tire pressure should be checked periodically (at least monthly) using a tire gauge, see *Inflating your tires* in this chapter. Failure to properly maintain your tire pressure could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.

### Changing Tires with a TPMS

**Note:** Each road tire is equipped with a tire pressure sensor located inside the tire/wheel cavity. The pressure sensor is attached to the valve stem. The pressure sensor is covered by the tire and is not visible unless the tire is removed. Care must be taken when changing the tire to avoid damaging the sensor.

It is recommended that you always have your tires serviced by an authorized dealer.

The tire pressure should be checked periodically (at least monthly) using an accurate tire gauge, refer to *Inflating your tires* in this chapter.



## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### **Understanding your tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS)**

The tire pressure monitoring system measures pressure in your four road tires and sends the tire pressure readings to your vehicle. The low tire pressure warning light will turn on if the tire pressure is significantly low. Once the light is illuminated, your tires are under-inflated and need to be inflated to the manufacturer's recommended tire pressure. Even if the light turns on and a short time later turns off, your tire pressure still needs to be checked. Visit [www.checkmytires.org](http://www.checkmytires.org) for additional information.

### ***When your temporary spare tire is installed***

When one of your road tires needs to be replaced with the temporary spare, the TPMS will continue to identify an issue to remind you that the damaged road wheel/tire needs to be repaired and put back on your vehicle.

To restore the full functionality of the tire pressure monitoring system, have the damaged road wheel/tire repaired and remounted on your vehicle. For additional information, refer to *Changing tires with a TPMS* in this section.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### ***When you believe your system is not operating properly***

The main function of the tire pressure monitoring system is to warn you when your tires need air. It can also warn you in the event the system is no longer capable of functioning as intended. Please refer to the following chart for information concerning your tire pressure monitoring system:

<b>Low tire pressure warning light</b>	<b>Possible cause</b>	<b>Customer action required</b>
Solid warning light	Tire(s) under-inflated	1. Make sure tires are at the proper pressure. See <i>Inflating your tires</i> in this chapter. 2. After inflating your tires to the manufacturer's recommended pressure as shown on the Tire Label (located on the edge of driver's door or the B-Pillar), the vehicle must be driven for at least two minutes over 20 mph (32 km/h) before the light turns off.
	Spare tire in use	Repair the damaged road wheel/tire and reinstall it on the vehicle to restore system functionality. For a description on how the system functions, refer to <i>When your temporary spare tire is installed</i> in this section.
	TPMS malfunction	If the tires are properly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.
	Tire rotation without sensor training	On vehicles with different front and rear tire pressures, the TPMS must be retrained following every tire rotation. See <i>Tire rotation</i> in this chapter.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

Low tire pressure warning light	Possible cause	Customer action required
Flashing warning light	Spare tire in use	Repair the damaged road wheel/tire and reinstall it on the vehicle to restore system functionality. For a description on how the system functions, refer to <i>When your temporary spare tire is installed</i> in this section.
	TPMS malfunction	If the tires are properly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

### ***When inflating your tires***

When putting air into your tires (such as at a gas station or in your garage), the tire pressure monitoring system may not respond immediately to the air added to your tires.

It may take up to two minutes of driving over 20 mph (32 km/h) for the light to turn off after you have filled your tires to the recommended inflation pressure.

### ***How temperature affects your tire pressure***

The tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) monitors tire pressure in each pneumatic tire. While driving in a normal manner, a typical passenger tire inflation pressure may increase approximately 2 to 4 psi (14 to 28 kPa) from a cold start situation. If the vehicle is stationary overnight with the outside temperature significantly lower than the daytime temperature, the tire pressure may decrease approximately 3 psi (21 kPa) for a drop of 30°F (17°C) in ambient temperature. This lower pressure value may be detected by the TPMS as being significantly lower than the recommended inflation pressure and activate the TPMS warning light for low tire pressure. If the low tire pressure warning light is on, visually check each tire to verify that no tire is flat. (If one or more tires are flat, repair as necessary.) Check air pressure in the road tires. If any tire is under-inflated, carefully drive the vehicle to the nearest location where air can be added to the tires. Inflate all the tires to the recommended inflation pressure.

240

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### TPMS reset procedure

**The TPMS reset procedure needs to be performed after each tire rotation on vehicles that require different recommended tire pressures in the front tires as compared to the rear tires.**



**WARNING:** To determine the required pressure(s) for your vehicle, refer to the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. See *Vehicle loading - with and without a trailer* in this chapter for more information.

### Overview

To provide the vehicle's load carrying capability, some vehicles require different recommended tire pressures in the front tires as compared to the rear tires. The tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) equipped on these vehicles is designed to illuminate the low tire pressure warning light at two different pressures; one for the front tires and one for the rear tires.

Since tires need to be rotated to provide consistent performance and maximum tire life, the tire pressure monitoring system needs to know when the tires are rotated to determine which set of tires are on the front and which are on the rear. With this information, the system can detect and properly warn of low tire pressures.

### TPMS reset tips:

- To reduce the chances of interference from another vehicle, the TPMS reset procedure should be performed at least three feet (one meter) away from another Ford Motor Company vehicle undergoing the TPMS reset procedure at the same time.
- Do not wait more than two minutes between resetting each tire sensor or the system will time-out and the entire procedure will have to be repeated on all four wheels.
- A double horn chirp indicates the need to repeat the procedure.

### Performing the TPMS reset procedure

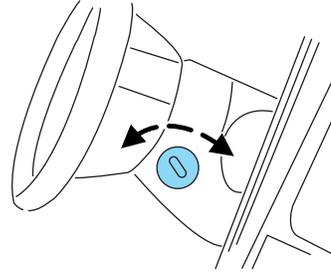
It is recommended that you read the entire procedure before attempting.

1. Drive the vehicle above 20 mph (32 km/h) for at least two minutes and then park in a safe location where you can easily get to all four tires and have access to an air pump.
2. Place the ignition in the off position and keep the key in the ignition.

241

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

3. Cycle the ignition to the on position with the engine off.



4. Turn the hazard flashers on then off three times. This must be accomplished within 10 seconds.



If the reset mode has been entered successfully, the horn will sound once, the TPMS indicator (⚠) will flash and the message center (if equipped) will display **TRAIN LEFT FRONT TIRE**. If this does not occur, please try again starting at Step 2.

If after repeated attempts to enter the reset mode, the horn does not sound, the TPMS indicator (⚠) does not flash and the message center (if equipped) does not display **TRAIN LEFT FRONT TIRE**, seek service from your authorized dealer.

5. Train the TPMS sensors in the tires using the following TPMS reset sequence starting with the **left front tire** in the following clockwise order:

- Left front (Driver's side front tire)
- Right front (Passenger's side front tire)
- Right rear (Passenger's side rear tire)
- Left rear (Driver's side rear tire)

6. Remove the valve cap from the valve stem on the left front tire; decrease the air pressure until the horn sounds.

**Note:** The single horn chirp confirms that the sensor identification code has been learned by the module for this position. If a double horn is heard, the reset procedure was unsuccessful, and must be repeated.

7. Remove the valve cap from the valve stem on the right front tire; decrease the air pressure until the horn sounds.

242

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

8. Remove the valve cap from the valve stem on the right rear tire; decrease the air pressure until the horn sounds.

9. Remove the valve cap from the valve stem on the left rear tire; decrease the air pressure until the horn sounds.

Training is complete after the horn sounds for the last tire trained (driver's side rear tire), the TPMS indicator stops flashing, and the message center (if equipped) displays:

### **TRAINING COMPLETE.**

10. Turn the ignition off. If two short horn beeps are heard, the reset procedure was unsuccessful and must be repeated.

If after repeating the procedure and two short beeps are heard when the ignition is turned to off, seek assistance from your authorized dealer.

11. Set all four tires to the recommended air pressure as indicated on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. See *Vehicle loading - with and without a trailer* in this chapter for more information.

### **SNOW TIRES AND CHAINS**



**WARNING:** Snow tires must be the same size, load index, speed rating as those originally provided by Ford. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. Additionally, the use of non-recommended tires and wheels could cause steering, suspension, axle or transfer case/power transfer unit failure.

**Note:** Do not use snow chains on vehicles with 20 inch wheels and tires.

The tires on your vehicle have all-weather treads to provide traction in rain and snow. However, in some climates, you may need to use snow tires and chains. If you need to use chains, it is recommended that steel wheels (of the same size and specifications) be used, as chains may chip aluminum wheels.

**Note:** The suspension insulation and bumpers will help prevent vehicle damage. Do not remove these components from your vehicle when using snow tires and chains.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

Follow these guidelines when using snow tires and chains:

- If possible, avoid fully loading your vehicle.
- Use only SAE Class S chains.
- Install chains securely, verifying that the chains do not touch any wiring, brake lines or fuel lines.
- Drive cautiously. If you hear the chains rub or bang against your vehicle, stop and retighten the chains. If this does not work, remove the chains to prevent damage to your vehicle.
- Remove the tire chains when they are no longer needed. Do not use tire chains on dry roads.

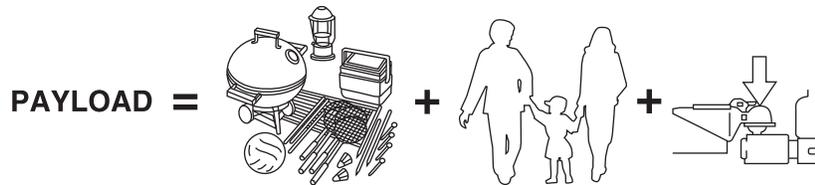
### VEHICLE LOADING – WITH AND WITHOUT A TRAILER

This section will guide you in the proper loading of your vehicle and/or trailer, to keep your loaded vehicle weight within its design rating capability, with or without a trailer. Properly loading your vehicle will provide maximum return of vehicle design performance. Before loading your vehicle, familiarize yourself with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight ratings, with or without a trailer, from the vehicle's Tire Label or Safety Compliance Certification Label:

**Base Curb Weight** – is the weight of the vehicle including a full tank of fuel and all standard equipment. It does not include passengers, cargo, or optional equipment.

**Vehicle Curb Weight** – is the weight of your new vehicle when you picked it up from your authorized dealer plus any aftermarket equipment.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading



**Payload** – is the combined weight of cargo and passengers that the vehicle is carrying. The maximum payload for your vehicle can be found on the Tire Label on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door (vehicles exported outside the US and Canada may not have a Tire Label). Look for **“THE COMBINED WEIGHT OF OCCUPANTS AND CARGO SHOULD NEVER EXCEED XXX kg OR XXX lb.”** for maximum payload. The payload listed on the Tire Label is the maximum payload for the vehicle as built by the assembly plant. If any aftermarket or authorized-dealer installed equipment has been installed on the vehicle, the weight of the equipment must be subtracted from the payload listed on the Tire Label in order to determine the new payload.

**!** **WARNING:** The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

Example only:



### TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION

SEATING CAPACITY	TOTAL 5	FRONT 2	REAR 3
------------------	---------	---------	--------

The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed : **XXX kg or XXX lbs.**

TIRE	SIZE	COLD TIRE PRESSURE	SEE OWNERS MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION
FRONT	LT225/75R 16.5E	200 KPA, 29 PSI	SEE OWNERS MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION
REAR	LT225/75R 16.5E	200 KPA, 29 PSI	
SPARE	T145/80D16 P225/60R17	420 KPA, 60 PSI 200 KPA, 29 PSI	





### TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION RENSEIGNEMENTS SUR LES PNEUS ET LE CHARGEMENT

SEATING CAPACITY NOMBRE DE PLACES	TOTAL 5	FRONT AVANT 2	REAR ARRIÈRE 3
--------------------------------------	---------	------------------	-------------------

The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed 492 kg or 1085 lbs.  
Le poids total des occupants et du chargement ne doit jamais dépasser 492 kg ou 1085 lbs.

TIRE PNEU	SIZE DIMENSIONS	COLD TIRE PRESSURE PRESSION DES PNEUS A FROID	SEE OWNER'S MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION
FRONT AVANT	P235/70R16	240 KPA, 35 PSI	VOIR LE MANUEL DE L'USAGER POUR PLUS DE RENSEIGNEMENTS
REAR ARRIÈRE	P235/70R16	240 KPA, 35 PSI	
SPARE DE SECOURS	T145/90R17	415 KPA, 60 PSI	





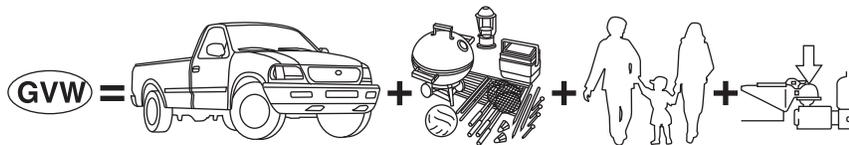
**Cargo Weight** – includes all weight added to the Base Curb Weight, including cargo and optional equipment. When towing, trailer tongue load or king pin weight is also part of cargo weight.

**GAW (Gross Axle Weight)** – is the total weight placed on each axle (front and rear) – including vehicle curb weight and all payload.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

**GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating)** – is the maximum allowable weight that can be carried by a single axle (front or rear). **These numbers are shown on the Safety Compliance Certification Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The total load on each axle must never exceed its GAWR.**

**Note:** For trailer towing information refer to *Trailer towing* found in this chapter or the *RV and Trailer Towing Guide* provided by your authorized dealer.

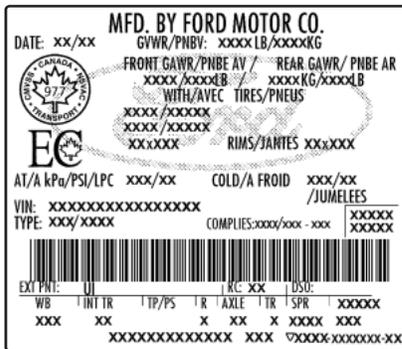
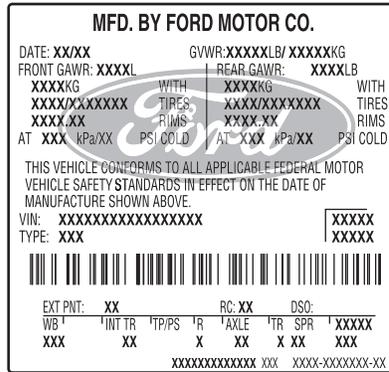


**GVW (Gross Vehicle Weight)** – is the Vehicle Curb Weight + cargo + passengers.

**GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating)** – is the maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle (including all options, equipment, passengers and cargo). **The GVWR is shown on the Safety Compliance Certification Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The GVW must never exceed the GVWR.**

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

- Example only:



**⚠ WARNING:** Exceeding the Safety Compliance Certification Label vehicle weight rating limits could result in substandard vehicle handling or performance, engine, transmission and/or structural damage, serious damage to the vehicle, loss of control and personal injury.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading



**GCW (Gross Combined Weight)** – is the weight of the loaded vehicle (GVW) plus the weight of the fully loaded trailer.

**GCWR (Gross Combined Weight Rating)** – is the maximum allowable weight of the vehicle and the loaded trailer – including all cargo and passengers – that the vehicle can handle without risking damage. (Important: The towing vehicle's braking system is rated for operation at GVWR, not at GCWR.) Separate functional brakes should be used for safe control of towed vehicles and for trailers where the GCW of the towing vehicle plus the trailer exceed the GVWR of the towing vehicle. **The GCW must never exceed the GCWR.**

**Maximum Loaded Trailer Weight** – is the highest possible weight of a fully loaded trailer the vehicle can tow. It assumes a vehicle with only mandatory options, no cargo (internal or external), a tongue load of 10–15% (conventional trailer) or king pin weight of 15–25% (fifth wheel trailer), and driver only (150 lb. [68 kg]). **Consult your authorized dealer (or the *RV and Trailer Towing Guide* provided by your authorized dealer) for more detailed information.**

**Tongue Load or Fifth Wheel King Pin Weight** – refers to the amount of the weight that a trailer pushes down on a trailer hitch.

**Examples:** For a 5,000 lb. (2,268 kg) conventional trailer, multiply 5,000 by 0.10 and 0.15 to obtain a proper tongue load range of 500 to 750 lb. (227 to 340 kg). For an 11,500 lb. (5,216 kg) fifth wheel trailer, multiply by 0.15 and 0.25 to obtain a proper king pin load range of 1,725 to 2,875 lb. (782 to 1,304 kg)



**WARNING:** Do not exceed the GVWR or the GAWR specified on the Safety Compliance Certification Label.



**WARNING:** Do not use replacement tires with lower load carrying capacities than the original tires because they may lower the vehicle's GVWR and GAWR limitations. Replacement tires with a higher limit than the original tires do not increase the GVWR and GAWR limitations.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading



**WARNING:** Exceeding any vehicle weight rating limitation could result in serious damage to the vehicle and/or personal injury.

### Steps for determining the correct load limit:

1. Locate the statement “The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lb.” on your vehicle’s placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lb.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the “XXX” amount equals 1,400 lb. and there will be five 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lb. (1400-750 (5 x 150) = 650 lb.). In metric units (635-340 (5 x 68) = 295 kg.)
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

The following gives you a few examples on how to calculate the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity:

- Another example for your vehicle with 1,400 lb. (635 kg) of cargo and luggage capacity. You decide to go golfing. Is there enough load capacity to carry you, 4 of your friends and all the golf bags? You and four friends average 220 lb. (99 kg) each and the golf bags weigh approximately 30 lb. (13.5 kg) each. The calculation would be: 1400 - (5 x 220) - (5 x 30) = 1400 - 1100 - 150 = 150 lb. Yes, you have enough load capacity in your vehicle to transport four friends and your golf bags. In metric units, the calculation would be: 635 kg - (5 x 99 kg) - (5 x 13.5 kg) = 635 - 495 - 67.5 = 72.5 kg.
- A final example for your vehicle with 1,400 lb. (635 kg) of cargo and luggage capacity. You and one of your friends decide to pick up cement from the local home improvement store to finish that patio you have been planning for the past 2 years. Measuring the inside of the vehicle with the rear seat folded down, you have room for 12-100 lb. (45 kg) bags of cement. Do you have enough load capacity

250

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

to transport the cement to your home? If you and your friend each weigh 220 lb. (99 kg), the calculation would be:  $1400 - (2 \times 220) - (12 \times 100) = 1400 - 440 - 1200 = -240$  lb. No, you do not have enough cargo capacity to carry that much weight. In metric units, the calculation would be:  $635 \text{ kg} - (2 \times 99 \text{ kg}) - (12 \times 45 \text{ kg}) = 635 - 198 - 540 = -103$  kg. You will need to reduce the load weight by at least 240 lb. (104 kg). If you remove 3-100 lb. (45 kg) cement bags, then the load calculation would be:

$1400 - (2 \times 220) - (9 \times 100) = 1400 - 440 - 900 = 60$  lb. Now you have the load capacity to transport the cement and your friend home. In metric units, the calculation would be:  $635 \text{ kg} - (2 \times 99 \text{ kg}) - (9 \times 45 \text{ kg}) = 635 - 198 - 405 = 32$  kg.

The above calculations also assume that the loads are positioned in your vehicle in a manner that does not overload the Front or the Rear Gross Axle Weight Rating specified for your vehicle on the Safety Compliance Certification Label found on the edge of the driver's door.

### Special loading instructions for owners of pick-up trucks and utility-type vehicles



**WARNING:** For important information regarding safe operation of this type of vehicle, see the *Preparing to drive your vehicle* section in the *Driving* chapter of this owner's guide.



**WARNING:** Loaded vehicles may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, should be taken when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

Your vehicle can haul more cargo and people than most passenger cars. Depending upon the type and placement of the load, hauling cargo and people may raise the center of gravity of the vehicle.

### TRAILER TOWING

**Note:** The trailer towing chart in this section applies to vehicles equipped with a gasoline engine; for vehicles equipped with a diesel engine, refer to your diesel supplement.

Your vehicle may tow a Conventional/Class IV trailer or fifth-wheel trailer provided the maximum trailer weight is less than or equal to the maximum trailer weight for your engine and rear axle ratio.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

Towing a trailer places an additional load on your vehicle's engine, transmission, axle, brakes, tires and suspension. Inspect these components carefully prior to and after any towing operation. Refer to *Transmission fluid temperature gauge* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for the transmission fluid temperature information.

To find the maximum trailer weight allowed for your vehicle, consult your authorized dealer (or the *RV and Trailer Towing Guide* provided by your authorized dealer).

### To calculate your maximum trailer weight on your own:

1. **Pick-up trucks:** Take curb weight, hitch hardware and the driver's weight, then subtract them from the GCWR listed for your vehicle series and drive axle ratio listed on the following table.
2. **Chassis cabs and pick-up trucks with aftermarket equipment:** Weigh your vehicle at a certified scale and subtract this actual curb weight, hitch hardware and the driver's weight from the GCWR listed for your vehicle series and drive axle ratio listed on the following table.

The weight of all additional cargo and passengers must be subtracted from the maximum trailer weight calculated above.

Further trailer/hitch restrictions and limitations exist depending on the type of trailer and hitch used. This information follows the table listing the maximum GCWRs.

For load specification terms found on the label and instructions on calculating your vehicle's load, refer to *Vehicle loading - with and without a trailer* in this chapter when figuring the total weight of your vehicle.

**Note:** Do not exceed the tire ratings specified on the Tire Label or Safety Compliance Certification Label.



**WARNING:** Do not exceed the GVWR or the GAWR specified on the certification label.



**WARNING:** Towing trailers beyond the maximum recommended gross trailer weight exceeds the limit of the vehicle and could result in engine damage, transmission damage, structural damage, loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

Vehicle type	Rear axle ratio	Maximum GCWR - lb (kg)
F-250/F-350 Single Rear Wheel (SRW)	3.73	19000 (8617)
	4.30	22000 (9977)
F-350 Dual Rear Wheel (DRW)	3.73	19500 (8844)
	4.30	22500 (10204)
F-450/550	4.88	26000 (11791)

### Preparing to tow

Use the proper equipment for towing a trailer and make sure it is properly attached to your vehicle. Contact your authorized dealer or a reliable trailer dealer as soon as possible if you require assistance.

### Hitches



**WARNING:** ON PICK-UP TRUCKS, the trailer hitch provided on this vehicle enhances collision protection for the fuel system. DO NOT REMOVE!

Do not mount a ball hitch (sometimes referred to as a trailer ball hitch or trailer ball) to the bumper or use a hitch that clamps onto the vehicle's bumper or attaches to the axle. You must distribute the load in your trailer so that 10–15% for conventional towing or 15–25% for fifth-wheel towing of the total weight of the trailer is on the tongue.

### Hitch ratings

The standard hitch has two ratings depending on mode of operation:

- **Weight-carrying** - requires a draw bar and hitch ball. The draw bar supports all the vertical tongue load of the trailer.
- **Weight-distributing** - requires an aftermarket weight-distributing system which includes draw bar, hitch ball, spring bars and snap-up brackets. The vertical tongue load of the trailer is distributed between the truck and the trailer by this system.

To determine which trailer hitch your vehicle is equipped with, refer to the trailer hitch label located on trailer hitch cross tube. Once you determine which trailer hitch you have consult your authorized dealer, the *RV and Trailer Towing Guide* provided by your dealer or online at [https://www.fleet.ford.com/showroom/rv\\_trailer\\_towing/default.asp](https://www.fleet.ford.com/showroom/rv_trailer_towing/default.asp).

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

 **WARNING:** The hitch rating listed on the trailer hitch label are maximum possible trailer ratings for that hitch but may not be what your vehicle is capable of towing. To find the maximum trailer weight allowed for your specific vehicle, consult your authorized dealer (or the *RV and Trailer Towing Guide* provided by your authorized dealer).

 **WARNING:** Towing trailers beyond the maximum tongue weight exceeds the limit of the towing system and could result in vehicle structural damage, loss of vehicle control and personal injury.

### ***Weight-distributing hitch***

When hooking-up a trailer using a weight-distributing hitch, always use the following procedure:

1. Park the vehicle (without the trailer) on a level surface.
2. Measure the height of the top of the front wheel opening on the fender, this is H1.
3. Attach the trailer to the vehicle without the weight distributing bars connected.
4. Measure the height of the top of the front wheel opening on the fender a second time, this is H2.
5. Install and adjust the tension in the weight distributing bars so that the height of the front fender is approximately halfway between H1 and H2.
6. Check that the trailer is level. If not level, adjust the ball height accordingly and repeat Steps 3–6.

 **WARNING:** Do not adjust a weight-distributing hitch to any position where the rear bumper of the vehicle is higher than it was before attaching the trailer. Doing so will defeat the function of the weight-distributing hitch, which may cause unpredictable handling, and could result in serious personal injury.

### ***Fifth-wheel trailer hitch (if equipped)***

To find the maximum trailer weight allowed for your vehicle, consult your authorized dealer (or the *RV and Trailer Towing Guide* provided by your authorized dealer).

254

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### Fifth-wheel and gooseneck towing

Your vehicle may be equipped with a fifth-wheel prep package. This package enables your vehicle to accept certain fifth-wheel trailer hitches and gooseneck ball hitches. The fifth-wheel trailer hitch is attached to the four mounting pads in the pick-up bed; an optional 7-pin connector provided in the bed as well. Alternatively, if a gooseneck ball hitch is used, the ball is attached to the tube in the center of the bed.

Shorter pick-up boxes (e.g. 6' 6" F-250/350) provide less clearance between the cab and fifth-wheel/gooseneck trailer compared to "long box" pick-ups. When selecting a trailer and tow vehicle, it's critical that this combination provide clearance between the cab and tow vehicle for turns up to and including 90 degrees. Failure to follow this recommendation could result in the trailer contacting the cab of the tow vehicle during tight turns that are typical during low-speed parking and turning maneuvers. This contact could result in damage to the trailer and tow vehicle.



**WARNING:** The mounting pads in the bed are specifically designed for certain fifth-wheel trailer hitches and gooseneck ball hitches. Do not use these mounting pads for other purposes. Doing so could result in vehicle structural damage, loss of vehicle control, and personal injury. Contact your authorized dealer to purchase gooseneck and fifth-wheel hitches that are compatible with your vehicle.



**WARNING:** Towing trailers beyond the maximum limit of the towing system could result in vehicle structural damage, loss of vehicle control and personal injury.

### Fifth-wheel and gooseneck hitch ratings



**WARNING:** The hitch rating listed on the trailer hitch label is the maximum possible trailer rating. To find the maximum trailer weight allowed for your specific vehicle, consult your authorized dealer or the *RV and Trailer Towing Guide* provided by your authorized dealer.

### Safety chains

Always connect the trailer's safety chains to the frame or hook retainers of the vehicle hitch. To connect the trailer's safety chains, cross the chains under the trailer tongue and allow slack for turning corners.

255

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

If you use a rental trailer, follow the instructions that the rental agency gives to you.

**Do not attach safety chains to the bumper.**

### Trailer brakes

Electric brakes and manual, automatic or surge-type trailer brakes are safe if installed properly and adjusted to the manufacturer's specifications. The trailer brakes must meet local and Federal regulations.



**WARNING:** If you own a trailer with a hydraulic brake system, do not connect the trailer's hydraulic brake system directly to your vehicle's brake system. The vehicle's brake system is only designed to carry the appropriate amount of brake fluid for the vehicle alone. Connecting a hydraulic trailer braking system could adversely affect your vehicle's braking performance, which could result in loss of vehicle control, crash or serious injury.

The braking system of the tow vehicle is rated for operation at the GVWR not GCWR.

### ***Integrated trailer brake controller (if equipped)***

Your vehicle may be equipped with a fully integrated electronic trailer brake controller (TBC). When used properly, the TBC helps ensure smooth and effective trailer braking by powering the trailer's electric brakes with a proportional output based on the towing vehicle's brake pressure.

The Ford TBC has been tested to be compatible with several major brands of electric-over-hydraulic trailer brakes; contact your authorized dealer for information on which brands can be used.



**WARNING:** The Ford TBC has been verified to be compatible with trailers having electric-actuated drum brakes (one to four axles) and some electric-over-hydraulic types, but not hydraulic surge types. It is the responsibility of the customer to ensure that the trailer brakes are adjusted appropriately, functioning normally and all electric connections are properly made. Failure to do so may result in loss of vehicle control, crash or serious injury.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

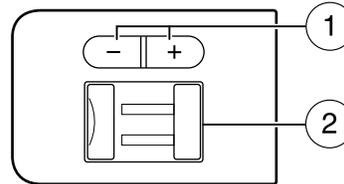
The TBC user interface consists of the following:

### 1. +/- (GAIN adjustment

**buttons):** Pressing these buttons adjusts the TBC's power output to the trailer brakes (in 0.5 increments). The GAIN setting can be increased to a maximum of

10.0 or decreased to a minimum of 0 (no trailer braking). Pressing and holding a button raises or lowers the setting continuously. The gain setting displays in the message center as follows: TBC GAIN = XX.X.

The trailer brake controller (TBC) is designed to display three items of information in the instrument cluster message center. These are: gain setting, output bar graph, and trailer connectivity status. They appear in the message center as follows:



- **TBC GAIN = XX.X NO TRAILER:** The instrument cluster message center displays the current gain setting during a given ignition cycle and when adjusting the gain. This message is also displayed during manual activation without a trailer connected or when gain adjustments are made with no trailer connected.
- **TBC GAIN = XX.X OUTPUT = /////:** When the vehicle's brake pedal is pushed, or when the manual control is activated, bar indicators illuminate in the instrument cluster message center to indicate the amount of power going to the trailer brakes relative to the brake pedal or manual control input. One bar indicates the least amount of output with six bars indicating maximum output.
- **TRAILER CONNECTED:** This message is displayed when a correct trailer wiring connection (a trailer with electric trailer brakes) has been sensed during a given ignition cycle.
- **TRAILER DISCONNECTED:** This message is displayed and accompanied by a single chime, when a trailer connection was determined and then a disconnection, either intentionally or unintentionally, has been sensed during a given ignition cycle. It is also displayed if a truck or trailer wiring fault occurs causing the trailer to appear disconnected. This message is also displayed during manual activation without a trailer connected.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

2. **Manual control lever:** Slide the control lever to the left to activate power to the trailer's electric brakes independent of the tow vehicle's brakes (see the following *Procedure for adjusting GAIN* section for instructions on proper use of this feature). If the manual control is activated while the brake is also applied, the greater of the two inputs determines the power sent to the trailer brakes.

- **Stop lamps:** Activating the TBC manual control lever illuminates both the trailer brake lamps and the tow vehicle brake lamps except the center high-mount stop lamp (presuming proper trailer electrical connection). Pressing the vehicle brake pedal also illuminates both trailer and vehicle brake lamps.

### Procedure for adjusting GAIN:

The GAIN setting is used to set the TBC for the specific towing condition and should be changed as towing conditions change. Changes to towing conditions include trailer load, vehicle load, road conditions and weather.

The GAIN should be set to provide the maximum trailer braking assistance while ensuring the trailer wheels do not lock when braking; locked trailer wheels may lead to trailer instability.

**Note:** This should only be performed in a traffic-free environment at speeds of approximately 20–25 mph (30–40 km/h).

1. Make sure the trailer brakes are in good working condition, functioning normally and properly adjusted. See your trailer dealer if necessary.
2. Hook up the trailer and make the electrical connections according to the trailer manufacturer's instructions.
3. When a trailer with electric brakes is plugged in, the **TRAILER CONNECTED** message displays in the instrument cluster message center.
4. Use the GAIN adjustment (+/-) buttons to increase or decrease the GAIN setting to the desired starting point. A GAIN setting of 6.0 is a good starting point for heavier loads.
5. In a traffic-free environment, tow the trailer on a dry, level surface at a speed of 20–25 mph (30–40 km/h) and squeeze the manual control lever completely.
6. If the trailer wheels lock up (indicated by squealing tires), reduce the GAIN setting; if the trailer wheels turn freely, increase the GAIN setting. Repeat Steps 5 and 6 until the GAIN setting is at a point just below

258

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

trailer wheel lock-up. If towing a heavier trailer, trailer wheel lock-up may not be attainable even with the maximum GAIN setting of 10.

### **Explanation of instrument cluster warning messages:**

The TBC interacts with the instrument cluster message center to display the following messages:

**TRAILER BRAKE MODULE FAULT:** This message is displayed and accompanied by a single chime, in response to faults sensed by the TBC. In the event this message is seen, please contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible for diagnosis and repair. The TBC may still function, but performance may be degraded.

**WIRING FAULT ON TRAILER:** This message is displayed when a *Short circuit on the electric brake output wire* has occurred. If the **WIRING FAULT ON TRAILER** message is displayed and accompanied by a single chime, with no trailer connected, the problem is with the vehicle wiring from the TBC to the 7-pin connector at the bumper. If the message is only displayed with a trailer connected, the problem is related to the trailer wiring; consult your trailer dealer for assistance. This can be a short to ground (i.e., chaffed wire) or a short to voltage (i.e., pulled pin on trailer emergency break-away battery) or trailer brakes drawing too much current.

**Note:** Your TBC can be diagnosed by your authorized dealer to determine exactly which trailer fault has occurred; however, if the fault is with the trailer this diagnosis is **not** covered under your Ford warranty.

### **Points to Remember:**

- Remember to adjust gain setting before using the TBC for the first time.
- Readjust gain setting on the TBC (according to procedure above) whenever road, weather and trailer or vehicle loading conditions change from those that existed when the gain was initially set.
- The sliding lever on the TBC should be used only for manual activation of trailer brakes to assist with proper adjustment of the GAIN. Misuse, such as application during trailer sway, could cause instability of trailer and/or tow vehicle.
- Avoid towing in adverse weather conditions. The TBC does not provide anti-lock control of the trailer wheels. Trailer wheels can lock up on slippery surfaces, resulting in reduced stability of trailer and tow vehicle.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

- The TBC is equipped with a feature which reduces output at vehicle speeds below 11 mph (18 km/h) so trailer and vehicle braking is not jerky or harsh. This feature is only available when applying the brakes using the vehicle's brake pedal, not the TBC.
- The TBC interacts with the brake system of the vehicle, including ABS, in order to reduce the likelihood of trailer wheel lock-up; therefore, if these systems are not functioning properly, the TBC may not function at full performance.
- Your vehicle's brake system and the trailer brake system work independently of each other; changing the GAIN setting on the TBC does not affect the operation of your vehicle's brakes whether a trailer is attached or not.
- When the vehicle is turned off, the TBC output is disabled and the display is shut down; turning the ignition from off to on awakens the TBC module.
- The TBC is only a factory- or dealer-installed item; Ford is not responsible for warranty or performance of the TBC due to misuse or customer installation.
- **Do not attempt removal of the TBC without consulting the Workshop Manual; damage to the unit may result.**

### Trailer lamps

Trailer lamps are required on most towed vehicles. Make sure all running lights, brake lights, turn signals and hazard lights are working. Contact your authorized dealer or trailer rental agency for proper instructions and equipment for hooking-up trailer lamps.

### Driving while you tow

When towing a trailer:

- Consult your local motor vehicle laws for towing a trailer.
- Do not drive faster than 70 mph (113 km/h) during the first 500 miles (800 km) of trailer towing and don't make full-throttle starts.
- Turn off the speed control. The speed control may shut off automatically when you are towing on long, steep grades.
- Activate the tow/haul feature to eliminate excessive transmission shifting and assist in transmission cooling. For additional information, refer to *Automatic transmission operation* in the *Driving* chapter.
- Allow more distance for stopping with a trailer attached; anticipate stops and brake gradually.

260

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

Your vehicle may be equipped with a temporary or conventional spare tire. If the spare tire is different in size (diameter and/or width), tread type (All-Season or All-Terrain) or is from a different manufacturer other than the road tires on your vehicle, your spare tire is considered “temporary”. Consult information on the Tire Label or Safety Compliance Certification Label for limitations when using.

### Trailer towing safety tips

#### General

- Ensure that the trailer, safety chains and 7-pin electrical connectors are securely fastened.
- Make sure the truck receiver, draw bar and coupler are properly connected and adjusted.
- Check rear view and side mirrors for proper visibility especially when towing a trailer wider than the truck.
- When turning, make wide turns to allow trailer tires to properly clear any obstacles.
- Operate the vehicle at lower speeds than you would when not towing a trailer; the likelihood of trailer sway is greater at higher speeds.
- Be prepared for trailer sway due to buffeting when larger vehicles pass in either direction.
- If you will be towing a trailer frequently in hot weather, hilly conditions, at GCWR, or any combination of these factors, consider refilling your rear axle with synthetic gear lubricant if not already so equipped. Refer to *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter for the proper axle lubricant. Remember that regardless of the rear axle lubricant used, do not tow a trailer for the first 500 miles (800 km) of a new vehicle, and that the first 500 miles (800 km) of towing be done at no faster than 70 mph (113 km/h) with no full-throttle starts.

#### Loading

- Trailer loads should be evenly distributed front-to-back and left-to-right.
- Never exceed truck, trailer, receiver, ball, tongue, tire or coupler loading recommendations.
- Keep the center of gravity low for best handling.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### **Braking**

- Anticipate stops; allow more distance and time to stop than normal.
- Do not apply the trailer brakes for extended periods of time as they can overheat and lose effectiveness.
- The trailer brakes (including the shoes, drum and trailer brake magnets) must be inspected and serviced at intervals specified by the manufacturer.
- Electric brakes also require periodic adjustment to keep the shoes properly spaced. If the brakes get hot when driving or if they will not hold, chances are that they need adjustment.

### **Backing-up**

- Practice backing-up, particularly if you are a novice. Turn the steering wheel to the right to move the trailer's rear end to the right.
- Sharp steering movements may cause the trailer to jackknife or go out of control.

### **Tires**

- Select tires that meet the trailer loading requirements.
- All trailer tires should be of the same size, and construction.
- Always check tow vehicle and trailer tire pressure before towing.

### **Launching or retrieving a boat**

**Disconnect the wiring to the trailer before backing the trailer into the water. Reconnect the wiring to the trailer after the trailer is removed from the water.**

When backing down a ramp during boat launching or retrieval:

- Do not allow the static water level to rise above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.
- Do not allow waves to break higher than 6 in (15 cm) above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.

Exceeding these limits may allow water to enter vehicle components:

- Causing internal damage to the components.
- Affecting driveability, emissions and reliability.

Replace the rear axle lubricant any time the axle has been submerged in water. Rear axle lubricant quantities are not to be checked or changed unless a leak is suspected or repair required.

262

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### RECREATIONAL TOWING

Follow these guidelines if you have a need for recreational (RV) towing. An example of recreational towing would be towing your vehicle behind a motor home.

**Note:** Put your climate control system in recirculated air mode to prevent exhaust fumes from entering the vehicle. Refer to the *Climate Controls* chapter for more information.

In case of a roadside emergency with a disabled vehicle, see *Wrecker towing* in the *Roadside Emergencies* chapter.

These guidelines are designed to ensure that your transmission is not damaged after the vehicle is hooked-up to the RV or tow dolly.

Drivetrain configuration	Requirements for neutral towing
4x4 with manual-shift transfer case	Transmission in N (Neutral); transfer case in N (Neutral); hublocks set to FREE*
4x2 or 4x4 with electronic-shift transfer case	Do not tow your vehicle with any wheels on the ground, as vehicle or transmission damage may occur. It is recommended to tow your vehicle with all four (4) wheels off the ground such as when using a car-hauling trailer. Otherwise, no recreational towing is permitted.
*Always make sure that both hub locks are set to the same position.	

### RECOVERY HOOKS



**WARNING:** Using recovery hooks is dangerous and should only be done by a person familiar with proper vehicle recovery safety practices. Improper use of recovery hooks may cause hook failure and/or separation from the vehicle and could result in serious injury or death.



**WARNING:** Always slowly remove the slack from the recovery strap prior to pulling. Failure to do so can introduce significantly higher loads which can cause the recovery hooks to break off, or the recovery strap to fail which can cause serious injury or death.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading



**WARNING:** Never link two straps together with a clevis pin. These heavy metal objects could become projectiles if the strap breaks and can cause serious injury or death.

Your vehicle comes equipped with frame-mounted front recovery hooks. These hooks should never have a load applied to them greater than the GVWR of your vehicle.

Before using the recovery hooks:

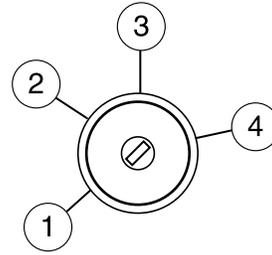
- Make sure all attaching points are secure and capable of withstanding the applied load.
- Never use chains, cables or tow straps with metal hook ends.
- Only use recovery straps that have a minimum breaking strength two to three times the GVW of the stuck vehicle.
- Make sure the recovery strap is in good condition and free of visible cuts, tears or damage.
- Use a damper device such as a tarp, heavy blanket or piece of carpet draped over the recovery strap to help absorb the energy in the event the strap breaks.
- Make sure the stuck vehicle is not loaded in excess of its GVWR specified on the certification label.
- Always align the tow vehicle and stuck vehicle in a straight line (within 10 degrees).
- Keep bystanders to the **sides** of the vehicle, at a distance of at least twice the length of the recovery strap. This helps avoid injury from the hazard of a recovery hook or strap breaking, or a vehicle lurching into their path.

## Driving

### STARTING

#### Positions of the ignition

1. Off— shuts off the engine and all accessories/locks the steering wheel and allows key removal. **Note:** In order to switch off the engine while the vehicle is in motion, shift to neutral and use the brakes to bring the vehicle to a safe stop. After the vehicle has stopped, turn the engine off and shift into park. Then, turn the key to the accessory or off position.



2. Accessory— allows the electrical accessories such as the radio to operate while the engine is not running. This position also unlocks the steering wheel.

3. On— all electrical circuits operational. Warning lights illuminated. Key position when driving.

4. Start— cranks the engine. Release the key as soon as the engine begins cranking.

**Note:** Do not store the key in the ignition after the vehicle is turned off and you have left the vehicle. This could cause a drain on the battery.

#### Preparing to start your vehicle

Engine starting is controlled by the powertrain control system.

This system meets all Canadian interference-causing equipment standard requirements regulating the impulse electrical field strength of radio noise.

When starting a fuel-injected engine, don't press the accelerator before or during starting. Only use the accelerator when you have difficulty starting the engine. For more information on starting the vehicle, refer to *Starting the engine* in this chapter.



**WARNING:** Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.

## Driving

 **WARNING:** Do not park, idle, or drive your vehicle in dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, which can start a fire.

 **WARNING:** Do not start your vehicle in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes can be toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine. See *Guarding against exhaust fumes* in this chapter for more instructions.

 **WARNING:** If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your dealer inspect your vehicle immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

### ***Important safety precautions***

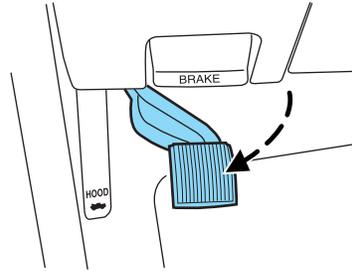
When the engine starts, the idle RPM runs faster to warm the engine. If the engine idle speed does not slow down automatically, have the vehicle checked. If your vehicle is operated in a heavy snow storm or blowing snow conditions, the engine air induction may become partially clogged with snow and/or ice. If this occurs, the engine may experience a significant reduction in power output. At the earliest opportunity, clear all the snow and/or ice away from the air induction inlet. The following starting instructions are for vehicles equipped with a gasoline engine; if your vehicle is equipped with a diesel engine, refer to *Starting the engine* in your diesel supplement.

Before starting the vehicle:

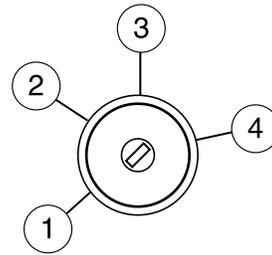
1. Make sure all occupants buckle their safety belts. For more information on safety belts and their proper usage, refer to the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter.
2. Make sure the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.

## Driving

- Make sure the parking brake is set.
- Make sure the gearshift is in P (Park).



3. Turn the key to 3 (on) without turning the key to 4 (start).



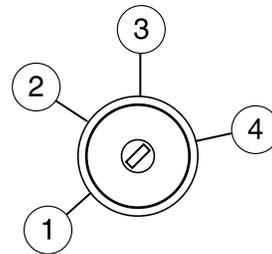
Some warning lights will briefly illuminate. See *Warning lights and chimes* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for more information regarding the warning lights.

### Starting the engine

1. Turn the key to 3 (on) without turning the key to 4 (start). If there is difficulty in turning the key, rotate the steering wheel until the key turns freely. This condition may occur when:

- the front wheels are turned.
- a front wheel is against the curb.

2. Turn the key to 4 (start), then release the key as soon as the engine begins cranking. Your vehicle has a computer assisted cranking system that assists in starting the engine. After releasing the key from the 4 (start) position, the engine may continue cranking for up to 10 seconds or until the vehicle starts.



## Driving

**Note:** Cranking may be stopped at any time by turning the key to the off position.

3. After idling for a few seconds, release the parking brake, apply the brake, shift into gear and drive.

**Note:** If the engine does not start on the first try, turn the key to the off position, wait 10 seconds and try Step 2 again. If the engine still fails to start, press the accelerator to the floor and try Step 2 again, keeping the accelerator on the floor until the engine begins to accelerate above cranking speeds; this will allow the engine to crank with the fuel shut off in case the engine is flooded with fuel.

Your vehicle may have remote start capability. Refer to *Remote entry system* in the *Locks and Security* chapter.

### Cold weather starting (flexible fuel vehicles only)

The starting characteristics of all grades of E<sub>85</sub> ethanol make it unsuitable for use when ambient temperatures fall below 0°F (-18°C). Consult your fuel distributor for the availability of winter grade ethanol. As the outside temperature approaches freezing, ethanol fuel distributors should supply winter grade ethanol (same as with unleaded gasoline). If summer grade ethanol is used in cold weather conditions, 0°F to 32°F (-18°C to 0°C), you may experience increased cranking times, rough idle or hesitation until the engine has warmed up.

You may experience a decrease in peak performance when the engine is cold when operating on E<sub>85</sub> ethanol.

Do not crank the engine for more than 10 seconds at a time as starter damage may occur. If the engine fails to start, turn the key to off and wait 30 seconds before trying again.

Do not use starting fluid such as ether in the air intake system. Such fluid could cause immediate explosive damage to the engine and possible personal injury.

If you should experience cold weather starting problems on E<sub>85</sub> ethanol, and neither an alternative brand of E<sub>85</sub> ethanol nor an engine block heater is available, the addition of unleaded gasoline to your tank will improve cold starting performance. Your vehicle is designed to operate on E<sub>85</sub> ethanol alone, unleaded gasoline alone, or any mixture of the two.

See *Choosing the right fuel* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter for more information on ethanol.

## Driving

### If the engine fails to start using the preceding instructions (flexible fuel vehicles only)

1. Press and hold down the accelerator 1/3 to 1/2 way to floor, then crank the engine.
2. When the engine starts, release the key, then gradually release the accelerator pedal as the engine speeds up. If the engine still fails to start, repeat Step 1.

### Guarding Against Exhaust Fumes



**WARNING:** If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your dealer inspect your vehicle immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

Carbon monoxide is present in exhaust fumes. Take precautions to avoid its dangerous effects.

### Important Ventilating Information

If the engine is idling while the vehicle is stopped for a long period of time, open the windows at least 1 inch (2.5 cm) or adjust the heating or air conditioning to bring in fresh air.

### ENGINE BLOCK HEATER (IF EQUIPPED)

An engine block heater warms the engine coolant which aids in starting and allows the heater/defroster system to respond quickly. If your vehicle is equipped with this system, your equipment includes a heater element which is installed in your engine block and a wire harness which allows the user to connect the system to a grounded 120 volt A/C electrical source. The engine block heater plug can be located through the center opening of the lower front bumper assembly. The block heater system is most effective when outdoor temperatures reach below 0°F (-18°C).

For flexible fuel vehicles, if operating with E85 ethanol, an engine block heater must be used if ambient temperature is below 0°F (-18°C).

See *Cold weather starting* earlier in this chapter for more information on starting with ethanol.



**WARNING:** Failure to follow engine block heater instructions could result in property damage or physical injury.

## Driving



**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of electrical shock, do not use your heater with ungrounded electrical systems or two-pronged (cheater) adapters.

Prior to using the engine block heater, follow these recommendations for proper and safe operation:

- For your safety, use an outdoor extension cord that is product certified by Underwriter's Laboratory (UL) or Canadian Standards Association (CSA). Use only an extension cord that can be used outdoors, in cold temperatures, and is clearly marked "Suitable for Use with Outdoor Appliances." Never use an indoor extension cord outdoors; it could result in an electric shock or fire hazard.
- Use a 16 gauge outdoor extension cord, minimum.
- Use as short an extension cord as possible.
- Do not use multiple extension cords. Instead, use one extension cord which is long enough to reach from the engine block heater cord to the outlet without stretching.
- Make certain that the extension cord is in excellent condition (not patched or spliced). Store your extension cord indoors at temperatures above 32°F (0°C). Outdoor conditions can deteriorate extension cords over a period of time.
- To reduce the risk of electrical shock, do not use your heater with ungrounded electrical systems or two pronged (cheater) adapters. Also ensure that the block heater, especially the cord, is in good condition before use.
- Make sure that when in operation, the extension cord plug /engine block heater cord plug connection is free and clear of water in order to prevent possible shock or fire.
- Be sure that areas where the vehicle is parked are clean and clear of all combustibles such as petroleum products, dust, rags, paper and similar items.
- Be sure that the engine block heater, heater cord and extension cord are solidly connected. A poor connection can cause the cord to become very hot and may result in an electrical shock or fire. Be sure to check for heat anywhere in the electrical hookup once the system has been operating for approximately a half hour.
- Finally, have the engine block heater system checked during your fall tune-up to be sure it's in good working order.

270

## Driving

### How to use the engine block heater

Ensure the receptacle terminals are clean and dry prior to use. To clean them, use a dry cloth.

Depending on the type of factory installed equipment, your engine block heater system may consume anywhere between 400 watts or 1000 watts of power per hour. Your factory installed block heater system does not have a thermostat; however, maximum temperature is attained after approximately three hours of operation. Block heater operation longer than three hours will not improve system performance and will unnecessarily use additional electricity.

Make sure system is unplugged and properly stowed before driving the vehicle. While not in use, make sure the protective cover seals the prongs of the engine block heater cord plug.

### BRAKES

Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake linings may be worn-out and should be inspected by an authorized dealer. If the vehicle has continuous vibration or shudder in the steering wheel while braking, the vehicle should be inspected by an authorized dealer.

Refer to *Warning lights and chimes* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for information on the brake system warning light.



### Four-wheel anti-lock brake system (ABS)

Your vehicle is equipped with an anti-lock braking system (ABS). This system helps you maintain steering control during emergency stops by keeping the brakes from locking. Noise from the ABS pump motor and brake pedal pulsation may be observed during ABS braking and the brake pedal may suddenly travel a little farther as soon as ABS braking is done and normal brake operation resumes. These are normal characteristics of the ABS and should be no reason for concern.

### Using ABS

When hard braking is required, apply continuous force on the brake pedal. Do not pump the brake pedal since this will reduce the effectiveness of the ABS and will increase your vehicle's stopping distance. The ABS will be activated immediately, allowing you to retain steering control during hard braking and on slippery surfaces. However, the ABS does not decrease stopping distance.

271

## Driving

### **Brake assist**

The brake assist system provides full braking force during panic braking situations. It detects a rapid application of the brake pedal and uses the ABS system to achieve maximum braking pressure. Once a panic brake application is detected, the system will remain activated as long as the brake pedal is pressed or ABS is engaged. The system is deactivated by either releasing the brake pedal or coming to a complete stop. When the system activates, noise from the ABS pump motor and brake pedal pulsation may be observed; this is normal.

### **ABS warning lamp**

The ABS lamp in the instrument cluster momentarily illuminates when the ignition is turned on. If the light does not illuminate during start up, remains on or flashes, the ABS may be disabled and may need to be serviced.



Even when the ABS is disabled, normal braking is still effective. If your BRAKE warning lamp illuminates with the parking brake released, have your brake system serviced immediately by an authorized dealer.



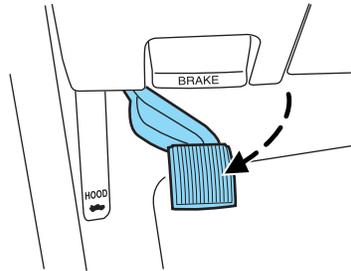
### **Brake over accelerator**

This vehicle is equipped with a brake over accelerator feature. In the event the accelerator pedal becomes stuck or entrapped, applying steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal will both slow the vehicle and reduce engine power. If you experience this condition, apply the brakes and bring your vehicle to a safe stop. Turn the engine off, shift to P (Park) and apply the parking brake, and then inspect the accelerator pedal for any interferences. If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle towed to the nearest authorized dealer.

## Driving

### Parking brake

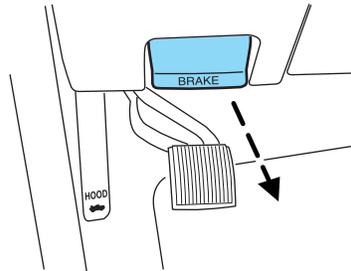
To set the parking brake, press the parking brake pedal down until the pedal stops.



The BRAKE warning lamp in the instrument cluster illuminates and remains illuminated until the parking brake is released.



Pull the release lever to release the parking brake. To prevent the pedal from releasing too quickly, place your left foot on the service brake pedal, then slowly pull the release lever until the pedal slowly releases. Make sure that the pedal is fully released. You may want to pull the release lever again to make sure the parking brake is fully released.



**WARNING:** Always set the parking brake fully and make sure that the gearshift is securely latched in P (Park).

If you're parking your vehicle on a grade or with a trailer, press and hold the brake pedal down, then set the parking brake. There may be a little vehicle movement as the parking brake sets to hold the vehicle's weight. This is normal and should be no reason for concern. If needed, press and hold the service brake pedal down, then try reapplying the parking brake. Chock the wheels if required. If the parking brake cannot hold the weight of the vehicle, the parking brake may need to be serviced or the vehicle may be overloaded.

## Driving

### ENGINE ONLY TRACTION CONTROL (DUAL REAR WHEEL (DRW) VEHICLES ONLY)

This system helps you maintain the stability and steerability of your vehicle, especially on slippery road surfaces such as snow or ice-covered roads and gravel roads. The system will allow your vehicle to make better use of available traction in these conditions.

During traction control operation, the traction control light will flash and the engine will not “rev-up” when you press further on the accelerator. This is normal system behavior and should be no reason for concern. Also, if traction control is on when the vehicle is put into four-wheel drive mode (if equipped), the traction control system will be automatically disabled. Traction control operation will resume when the vehicle is placed back into two-wheel drive mode.



**WARNING:** Aggressive driving in any road conditions can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of severe personal injury or property damage. The occurrence of a traction control event is an indication that at least some of the tires have exceeded their ability to grip the road; this may lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. If you experience a severe road event, SLOW DOWN.

### Switching off engine only traction control

The traction control switch is located on the instrument panel to the right of the climate control system. The traction control system will automatically turn on every time the ignition is turned off and on. The traction control system should normally be left on.

## TCS OFF

If you should become stuck in snow or ice or on a very slippery road surface, try switching the traction control system off. This may allow excess wheel spin to “dig” the vehicle out and enable a successful “rocking” maneuver.

If a system fault is detected, the TCS OFF indicator will illuminate, the traction control button will not turn the system on or off and your vehicle should be serviced by an authorized dealer.

274

## Driving

Engine only traction control (DRW only)		
Button functions	TCS OFF indicator	TCS
Default at start-up	Not illuminated	Enabled
Button pressed momentarily	Illuminated	Disabled
Button pressed again after deactivation	Not illuminated	Enabled
Transfer case switched to 4WD <sup>1</sup>	Illuminated	Disabled

<sup>1</sup>Engaging 4WD automatically disables TCS.

### ADVANCETRAC® WITH ROLL STABILITY CONTROL™ (RSC®) STABILITY ENHANCEMENT SYSTEM (SINGLE REAR WHEEL (SRW) VEHICLES ONLY)

The AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system provides the following stability enhancement features for certain driving situations:

- Traction control system (TCS), which functions to help avoid drive-wheel spin and loss of traction.
- Electronic stability control (ESC), which functions to help avoid skids or lateral slides.
- Roll Stability Control™ (RSC®), which functions to help avoid a vehicle roll-over.



**WARNING:** Vehicle modifications involving braking system, aftermarket roof racks, suspension, steering system, tire construction and/or wheel/tire size may change the handling characteristics of the vehicle and may adversely affect the performance of the AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system. In addition, installing any stereo loudspeakers may interfere with and adversely affect the AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system. Install any aftermarket stereo loudspeaker as far as possible from the front center console, the tunnel, and the front seats in order to minimize the risk of interfering with the AdvanceTrac® with RSC® sensors. Reducing the effectiveness of the AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

## Driving

 **WARNING:** Remember that even advanced technology cannot defy the laws of physics. It's always possible to lose control of a vehicle due to inappropriate driver input for the conditions. Aggressive driving on any road condition can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of personal injury or property damage. Activation of the AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system is an indication that at least some of the tires have exceeded their ability to grip the road; this could reduce the operator's ability to control the vehicle, potentially resulting in a loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. If your AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system activates, SLOW DOWN.

 **WARNING:** If a failure has been detected within the AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system, the stability control light will illuminate steadily. Verify that the AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system is not manually disabled. Press the stability control button located on the instrument panel to the right of the climate control system. If the stability control light still illuminates steadily, have the system serviced by an authorized dealer immediately. Operating your vehicle with AdvanceTrac® with RSC® disabled could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system automatically enables each time the engine is started. All features of the AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system (TCS, ESC, and RSC®) are active and monitor the vehicle from start-up. However, the system will only intervene if the driving situation requires it.

The AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system includes a stability control button located on the instrument panel to the right of the climate control system, a stability control light and a stability control off light in the instrument cluster. Both lights will illuminate temporarily during start-up as part of a normal system self-check. The stability control light may illuminate (flash) during certain driving situations which cause the AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system to operate. If the stability control light and stability control off light illuminate steadily, have the system serviced by an authorized dealer immediately. The message center will also indicate a failure with the AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system.



276

## Driving

**Note:** If the system cannot be turned off, refer to *MyKey*® in the *Locks and Security* chapter for more information.

When AdvanceTrac® with RSC® performs a normal system self-check, some drivers may notice a slight movement of the brake, and/or a rumble, grunting, or grinding noise after startup and when driving off.

When an event occurs that activates AdvanceTrac® with RSC® you may experience the following:

- A slight deceleration of the vehicle
- The stability control light will flash.
- A vibration in the pedal when your foot is on the brake pedal
- If the driving condition is severe and your foot is not on the brake, the brake pedal may move as the systems applies higher brake forces. You may also hear a whoosh of air from under the instrument panel during this severe condition.
- The brake pedal may feel stiffer than usual.

### **Traction control system (TCS)**

Traction control is a driver aid feature that helps your vehicle maintain traction of the wheels, typically when driving on slippery and/or hilly road surfaces, by detecting and controlling wheel spin.

Excessive wheel spin is controlled in two ways, which may work separately or in tandem: engine traction control and brake traction control. Engine traction control works to limit drive-wheel spin by momentarily reducing engine power. Brake traction control works to limit wheel spin by momentarily applying the brakes to the wheel that is slipping. Traction control is most active at low speeds.

During TCS events the stability control light in the instrument cluster will flash.

If the TCS is activated excessively in a short period of time, the braking portion of the system may become temporarily disabled to allow the brakes to cool down. In this situation, TCS will use only engine power reduction to help control the wheels from over-spinning. When the brakes have cooled down, the system will regain all features. Anti-lock braking, RSC®, and ESC are not affected by this condition and will continue to function during the cool-down period.

The engine traction control and brake traction control system may be deactivated in certain situations. See the *Switching off AdvanceTrac® with RSC®* section following.

## Driving

### Electronic stability control (ESC)

Electronic stability control (ESC) may enhance your vehicle's directional stability during adverse maneuvers, for example when cornering severely or avoiding objects in the roadway. ESC operates by applying brakes to one or more of the wheels individually and, if necessary, reducing engine power if the system detects that the vehicle is about to skid or slide laterally.

During ESC events, the stability control light in the instrument cluster will flash.

Certain adverse driving maneuvers may activate the ESC system, which include but are not limited to:

- Taking a turn too fast
- Maneuvering quickly to avoid an accident, pedestrian or obstacle
- Driving over a patch of ice or other slippery surfaces
- Changing lanes on a snow-rutted road
- Entering a snow-free road from a snow-covered side street, or vice versa
- Entering a paved road from a gravel road, or vice versa
- Cornering while towing a heavily loaded trailer (refer to *Trailer towing* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter).

The ESC system may be deactivated in certain situations. See the *Switching off AdvanceTrac® with RSC®* section following.

### Roll Stability Control™ (RSC®)

Roll Stability Control™ (RSC®) may help to maintain roll stability of the vehicle during adverse maneuvers. RSC® operates by detecting the vehicle's roll motion and the rate at which it changes and by applying the brakes to one or more wheels individually.

During an event that activates the Roll Stability Control™ (RSC®) the stability control light in the instrument cluster will flash.

Certain adverse driving maneuvers may activate the Roll Stability Control™ system, which include:

- Emergency lane-change
- Taking a turn too fast
- Quick maneuvering to avoid an accident, pedestrian or obstacle

The Roll Stability Control™ system may be deactivated in certain situations. See the *Switching off AdvanceTrac® with RSC®* section following.

278

## Driving

### Switching off AdvanceTrac® with RSC®

If the vehicle is stuck in snow, mud or sand, and seems to lose engine power, switching off certain features of the AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system may be beneficial because the wheels are allowed to spin. This will restore full engine power and will enhance momentum through the obstacle. To switch off the AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system, press the stability control button located on the instrument panel to the right of the climate control system. Full features of the AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system can be restored by pressing the button again or by turning off and restarting the engine.

If you switch off the AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system, the stability control off light will illuminate steadily. Pressing the stability control button again will turn off the stability control off light and reactivate the system.

In R (Reverse), ABS and the engine traction control and brake traction control features will continue to function; however, ESC and RSC® are disabled.

AdvanceTrac® with RSC® Features (SRW only)				
Button functions	Stability control light 	RSC®	ESC	TCS
Default at start-up	Illuminated during bulb check	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled
Button pressed momentarily	Illuminated solid	Enabled	Enabled <sup>1</sup>	Disabled
Button pressed and held for more than 5 seconds at vehicle speed under 35 mph (56 km/h)	Flashes then illuminated solid <sup>2</sup>	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled
Vehicle speed exceeds 35 mph (56 km/h) after button is pressed and held for more than 5 seconds	Illuminated solid	Enabled	Enabled <sup>1</sup>	Disabled
Button pressed again after deactivation	Not illuminated	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled
Transfer case switched to 4WD Low <sup>3</sup>	Illuminated	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled

<sup>1</sup>ESC has reduced sensitivity compared to fully active system.

<sup>2</sup>Lamp light starts blinking for 4 seconds after entering press and hold state.

<sup>3</sup>Engaging 4WD Low locked automatically disables RSC, ESC and TSC.

## Driving

### Trailer sway control

Your vehicle may be equipped with trailer sway control. When properly equipped, trailer sway control will use the vehicle's AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system to detect and help reduce trailer sway by applying brake force at individual wheels and, if necessary, by reducing engine power.



**WARNING:** Trailer sway control does not prevent a trailer from swaying, it mitigates the sway from increasing once it has occurred. If you are experiencing trailer sway it is likely that the trailer is improperly loaded for the correct tongue weight or the speed of the vehicle and trailer is too high. Pull the vehicle-trailer over to a safe location to check the trailer weight distribution and tongue load and reduce speed to a safe level while towing. If trailer sway is experienced, SLOW DOWN.

During trailer sway control events the stability control light in the instrument cluster will flash momentarily. The message center will also display **TRAILER SWAY REDUCE SPEED**. In some cases when trailer sway is detected, the vehicle speed is too high and may be above a speed at which trailer sway will not grow continuously. This may cause the system to activate multiple times, causing a gradual reduction in speed.

### Disabling trailer sway control

Trailer sway control can be disabled during any key cycle. See trailer sway control under the *Message center* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter. Note that regardless of chosen enable state, trailer sway control will be re-enabled at each new key cycle.



**WARNING:** Turning off trailer sway control increases the risk of loss of vehicle control, serious injury, or death. Ford does not recommend disabling this feature except in situations where speed reduction may be detrimental (e.g., hill climbing), the driver has significant trailer towing experience, and can control trailer sway and maintain safe operation.

### HILL DESCENT CONTROL (IF EQUIPPED)

Hill descent control allows the driver to set and maintain vehicle speed while descending steep grades in various surface conditions.

280

## Driving

 **WARNING:** Hill descent control cannot control descent in all surface conditions and circumstances, such as ice or extremely steep grades. Hill descent control is a driver assist system and cannot substitute for good judgment by the driver. Failure to do so may result in loss of vehicle control, crash or serious injury.

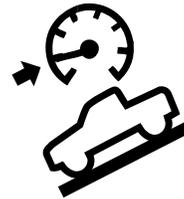
Hill descent control can maintain vehicle speeds on downhill grades between 2 mph (3 km/h) and 12 mph (20 km/h). Above 20 mph (32 km/h), the system remains armed, but descent speed cannot be set or maintained.

 **WARNING:** Hill descent control does not provide hill hold at zero mph (0 km/h). When stopped, the parking brake must be applied and/or the vehicle must be placed in P (Park) or it may roll away.

Hill descent control requires a cooling down interval after a period of sustained use. The amount of time that the feature can remain active before cooling varies with conditions. The system will provide a warning in the message center and a chime will sound when the system is about to disengage for cooling. At this time, manually apply the brakes as needed to maintain descent speed.

### Enabling hill descent control and setting the descent speed

1. Press and release the hill descent button located on the instrument panel. A light in the cluster will illuminate and chime will sound when this feature is activated.



2. To increase descent speed, press the accelerator pedal until the desired speed is reached. To decrease descent speed, press the brake pedal until the desired speed is reached.

Whether accelerating or decelerating, once the desired descent speed is reached, remove your feet from the pedals and the chosen vehicle speed will be maintained.

**Note:** Noise from the ABS pump motor may be observed during hill descent control operation. This is a normal characteristic of the ABS and should be no reason for concern.

## Driving

### Hill descent modes

- At speeds below 20 mph (32 km/h): When the HDC switch is pressed and HDC is active, the HDC telltale will flash.
- At speeds below 20 mph (32 km/h): When the HDC switch is pressed and conditions are not correct for hill descent activation, the HDC system will be enabled, the light in the cluster will be on solid and HILL DESCENT CONTROL READY will be displayed in the message center.
- At speeds above 20 mph (32 km/h): When the HDC switch is pressed, the HDC system will be enabled, the light in the cluster will not be illuminated and FOR HILL CNTRL, 20 MPH OR LESS will be displayed in the message center.

Refer to *Message center* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for hill descent control messages.

### STEERING

To help prevent damage to the power steering system:

- Never hold the steering wheel at its furthest turning points (until it stops) for more than three to five seconds when the engine is running.
- Do not operate the vehicle with a low power steering pump fluid level (below the MIN mark on the reservoir).
- Some noise is normal during operation. If excessive, check for low power steering pump fluid level before seeking service by your dealer.
- Heavy or uneven efforts may be caused by low power steering fluid. Check for low power steering pump fluid level before seeking service by your dealer.
- Do not fill the power steering pump reservoir above the MAX mark on the reservoir, as this may result in leaks from the reservoir.

If the power steering system breaks down (or if the engine is turned off), you can steer the vehicle manually, but it takes more effort.

If the steering wanders or pulls, check for:

- an improperly inflated tire
- uneven tire wear
- loose or worn suspension components
- loose or worn steering components
- improper steering alignment

282

## Driving

If any steering components are serviced or replaced, install new fasteners (many are coated with thread adhesive or have prevailing torque features which may not be re-used). Never re-use a bolt or nut. Torque fasteners to specifications in *Workshop Manual*.

A high crown in the road or high crosswinds may also make the steering seem to wander/pull.

### ELECTRONIC LOCKING DIFFERENTIAL (ELD) (IF EQUIPPED)

The electronic locking differential (ELD) is a device housed in the rear axle which allows both rear wheels to turn at the same speed. It provides added traction on slippery and/or off road surfaces, particularly when one wheel is on a poor traction surface. The ELD may be locked or unlocked by the vehicle operator and can be engaged or disengaged on the fly. When the axle is unlocked it will function like a standard rear axle. When the axle is locked it will not allow the rear wheels to rotate at different speeds when turning. It is not recommended for use on good traction surfaces such as dry pavement. Doing so may result in abnormal driving behavior and noise while cornering and excessive tire wear.

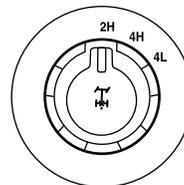
The ELD is affected by the following conditions of your vehicle:

- On 2WD vehicles and 4WD vehicles in 2H (4X2) or 4H (4X4 High), the ELD will not engage if the vehicle speed is above 25 mph (40 km/h).
- On 2WD vehicles and 4WD vehicles in 2H (4X2) or 4H (4X4 High), the ELD will automatically disengage at speeds above 25 mph (40 km/h) and will automatically reengage at speeds below 19 mph (30 km/h).
- On 4WD vehicles in 4L (4X4 Low), the ELD can be engaged at any speed and will not automatically disengage.

### Activating the electronic locking differential (ELD)

#### For vehicles equipped with an electronic shift 4WD system:

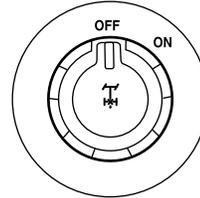
Pull the knob on the 4WD control toward you. The  indicator light will display in the instrument cluster.



## Driving

### For 2WD vehicles and vehicles equipped with a manual shift 4WD system:

Turn the control to ON. The  indicator light will display in the instrument cluster.



Once the  light is displayed in the instrument cluster, both rear wheel axle shafts will be locked together providing added traction.

If the  indicator light in the instrument cluster turns off, one of the following has occurred:

- The vehicle speed is too high.
- The left and right rear wheel speed difference is too high during an engagement attempt.
- The system has malfunctioned and will be accompanied by the CHECK LOCKING DIFFERENTIAL message in the message center. See your authorized Ford dealer for assistance.

**Note:** The ELD may have difficulty disengaging either by operator command or automatically if the driveline is under torque. If driving conditions allow, releasing the accelerator pedal or turning the steering wheel in the opposite direction may assist in disengagement.

**Note:** The ELD is designed for off-road use only and is not intended for use on dry pavement.

### PREPARING TO DRIVE



**WARNING:** Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.



**WARNING:** In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt.

Utility vehicles and trucks have larger tires and increased ground clearance, giving the vehicle a higher center of gravity than a passenger car.

284

## Driving

 **WARNING:** Vehicles with a higher center of gravity such as utility vehicles and trucks handle differently than vehicles with a lower center of gravity. Utility vehicles and trucks are **not** designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions. Avoid sharp turns, excessive speed or abrupt maneuvers in these vehicles. Failure to drive cautiously could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

 **WARNING:** Loaded vehicles, with a higher center of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Do not overload your vehicle and use extra precautions, such as driving at slower speeds, avoiding abrupt steering changes and allowing for increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle. Over-loading or loading the vehicle improperly can deteriorate handling capability and contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.

### BRAKE-SHIFT INTERLOCK

This vehicle is equipped with a brake-shift interlock feature that prevents the gearshift lever from being moved from P (Park) when the ignition is in the 3 (on) position and the brake pedal is not pressed.

If you cannot move the gearshift lever out of P (Park) with ignition in the on position and the brake pedal pressed, it is possible that a fuse has blown or the vehicle's brake lamps are not operating properly. Refer to *Fuses and relays* in the *Roadside Emergencies* chapter.

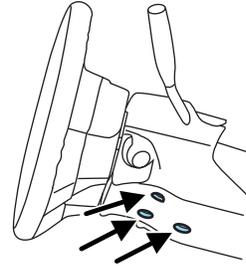
If the fuse is not blown and the brake lamps are working properly, the following procedure will allow you to move the gearshift lever from P (Park):

1. Apply the parking brake. Turn the ignition key to 1 (off), then remove the key.
2. Move the steering column to the full down and full rearward position (toward the driver's seat).
3. Remove the gearshift lever boot.
4. Place fingers into hole where the gearshift lever boot was removed from and pull top half of shroud up and forward to separate it from the lower half of the shroud. There is a hinge at the forward edge of the top shroud. Roll the top half of the shroud upward on the hinge point to clear the hazard flasher button, then pull straight rearward toward the driver's seat to remove.

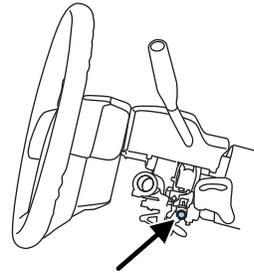
285

## Driving

5. Remove the top half of the shroud.
6. Remove the three fasteners under the column that secure the lower shroud half to the column.



7. Pull the lock lever into the full unlocked position and remove the lower shroud cover by pulling the lever handle through the slot in the cover.



8. Apply the brake and move the gearshift lever into N (Neutral).
9. Start the vehicle.

Perform Steps 4 through 8 in reverse order, making sure to engage the hinge pivots between the upper and lower halves of the shroud. Keep slight pressure in the forward direction as the halves are rotated together.



**WARNING:** Do not drive your vehicle until you verify that the brake lamps are working.



**WARNING:** When doing this procedure, you will be taking the vehicle out of park which means the vehicle can roll freely. To avoid unwanted vehicle movement, always fully set the parking brake prior to doing this procedure. Use wheel chocks if appropriate.

## Driving



**WARNING:** If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. See your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

### AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION OPERATION

#### Understanding the shift positions of the 5-speed automatic transmission (if equipped)

P R N D 3 2 1

This vehicle is equipped with an adaptive transmission shift strategy. Adaptive transmission shift strategy offers the optimal transmission operation and shift quality. When the vehicle's battery has been disconnected for any type of service or repair, the transmission will need to relearn the normal shift strategy parameters, much like having to reset your radio stations when your vehicle battery has been disconnected. The adaptive transmission shift strategy allows the transmission to relearn these operating parameters. This learning process could take several transmission upshifts and downshifts; during this learning process, slightly firmer shifts may occur. After this learning process, normal shift feel and shift scheduling will resume.

#### **P (Park)**

This position locks the transmission and prevents the rear wheels from turning.

To put your vehicle in gear:

- Start the engine
- Press the brake pedal
- Move the gearshift lever into the desired gear

To put your vehicle in P (Park):

- Come to a complete stop
- Move the gearshift lever and securely latch it in P (Park)



**WARNING:** Always set the parking brake fully and make sure the gearshift is latched in P (Park). Turn the ignition to the off position and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

## Driving

### R (Reverse)

With the gearshift lever in R (Reverse), the vehicle will move backward. Always come to a complete stop before shifting into and out of R (Reverse).

### N (Neutral)

With the gearshift lever in N (Neutral), the vehicle can be started and is free to roll. Hold the brake pedal down while in this position.

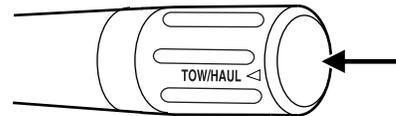
### D (Overdrive) with Tow/Haul Off

D (Overdrive) with tow/haul off is the normal driving position for the best fuel economy. The overdrive function allows automatic upshifts and downshifts through gears one through five.

### D (Overdrive) with Tow/Haul On

The tow/haul feature improves transmission operation when towing a trailer or a heavy load. All transmission gear ranges are available when using tow/haul.

To activate tow/haul, press the button on the end of the gearshift lever.



The TOW HAUL indicator light will illuminate in the instrument cluster.

**TOW  
HAUL**

Tow/haul delays upshifts to reduce frequency of transmission shifting. Tow/haul also provides engine braking in all forward gears when the transmission is in the D (Overdrive) position; this engine braking will slow the vehicle and assist the driver in controlling the vehicle when descending a grade. Depending on driving conditions and load conditions, the transmission may downshift, slow the vehicle and control the vehicle speed when descending a hill, without the accelerator pedal being pressed. The amount of downshift braking provided will vary based upon the amount the brake pedal is depressed.

To deactivate the tow/haul feature and return to normal driving mode, press the button on the end of the gearshift lever. The TOW HAUL light will no longer be illuminated.

When you shut-off and restart the engine, the transmission will automatically return to normal D (Overdrive) mode (Tow/Haul OFF).

288

## Driving



**WARNING:** Do not use the tow/haul feature when driving in icy or slippery conditions as the increased engine braking can cause the rear wheels to slide and the vehicle to swing around with the possible loss of vehicle control.

### 3 (Third)

Transmission starts and operates in third gear only.

Used for improved traction on slippery roads. Selecting 3 (Third) provides engine braking.

### 2 (Second)

Use 2 (Second) to start-up on slippery roads or to provide additional engine braking on downgrades.

### 1 (First)

- Provides maximum engine braking.
- Allows upshifts by moving gearshift lever.
- The transmission will not downshift into 1 (First) at high speeds; it will downshift to a lower gear and then shift into 1 (First) when the vehicle reaches slower speeds.

### Forced downshifts

- Allowed in D (Overdrive) or D (Drive).
- Press the accelerator to the floor.
- Allows transmission to select an appropriate gear.

### Understanding the shift positions of the 6-speed automatic transmission (if equipped)



This vehicle is equipped with an adaptive transmission shift strategy. Adaptive transmission shift strategy offers the optimal transmission operation and shift quality. When the vehicle's battery has been disconnected for any type of service or repair, the transmission will need

289

## Driving

to relearn the normal shift strategy parameters, much like having to reset your radio stations when your vehicle battery has been disconnected. The adaptive transmission shift strategy allows the transmission to relearn these operating parameters. This learning process could take several transmission upshifts and downshifts; during this learning process, slightly firmer shifts may occur. After this learning process, normal shift feel and shift scheduling will resume.

### **P (Park)**

This position locks the transmission and prevents the rear wheels from turning.

To put your vehicle in gear:

1. Start the engine
2. Press the brake pedal
3. Move the gearshift lever into the desired gear

To put your vehicle in P (Park):

1. Come to a complete stop
2. Move the gearshift lever and securely latch it in P (Park)



**WARNING:** Always set the parking brake fully and make sure the gearshift is latched in P (Park). Turn the ignition to the off position and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

### **R (Reverse)**

With the gearshift lever in R (Reverse), the vehicle will move backward. Always come to a complete stop before shifting into and out of R (Reverse).

### **N (Neutral)**

With the gearshift lever in N (Neutral), the vehicle can be started and is free to roll. Hold the brake pedal down while in this position.

### **D (Overdrive) with Tow/Haul Off**

D (Overdrive) with tow/haul off is the normal driving position for the best fuel economy. The overdrive function allows automatic upshifts and downshifts through gears one through six.

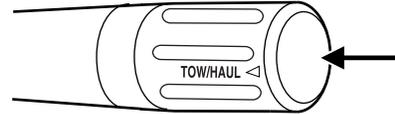
### **D (Overdrive) with Tow/Haul On**

The tow/haul feature improves transmission operation when towing a trailer or a heavy load. All transmission gear ranges are available when using tow/haul.

290

## Driving

To activate tow/haul, press the button on the end of the gearshift lever.



The TOW HAUL indicator light will illuminate in the instrument cluster.

**TOW  
HAUL**

Tow/haul delays upshifts to reduce frequency of transmission shifting. Tow/haul also provides engine braking in all forward gears when the transmission is in the D (Overdrive) position; this engine braking will slow the vehicle and assist the driver in controlling the vehicle when descending a grade. Depending on driving conditions and load conditions, the transmission may downshift, slow the vehicle and control the vehicle speed when descending a hill, without the brake pedal being pressed. The amount of downshift braking provided will vary based upon the amount the brake pedal is pressed.

Tow/haul may be automatically activated (without pressing the tow/haul button). This provides engine braking to assist the vehicles braking system when going downhill and repetitive braking is sensed. Once the tow/haul mode has been automatically activated it will not automatically deactivate.

To deactivate the tow/haul feature and return to normal driving mode, press the button on the end of the gearshift lever. The tow/haul light will no longer be illuminated.

Tow/haul will also deactivate when the vehicle is powered down for a few minutes.



**WARNING:** Do not use the tow/haul feature when driving in icy or slippery conditions as the increased engine braking can cause the rear wheels to slide and the vehicle to swing around with the possible loss of vehicle control.

### **M (Manual) without Overdrive**

With the gearshift lever in M (Manual), the driver can change gears up or down as desired. This is called SelectShift Automatic™ transmission (SST) mode. By moving the gearshift lever from drive position D (Overdrive) to M (Manual) you now have control of selecting the gear you desire using buttons on the shift lever.

## Driving

To return to normal D (Overdrive) position, move the shift lever back from M to D.

- The transmission will operate in gears one through six.

### 2 (Second)

Use 2 (Second) to start-up on slippery roads or to provide additional engine braking on downgrades.

### 1 (First)

- Provides maximum engine braking.
- Allows upshifts by moving gearshift lever.
- The transmission will not downshift into 1 (First) at high speeds; it will downshift to a lower gear and then shift into 1 (First) when the vehicle reaches slower speeds.

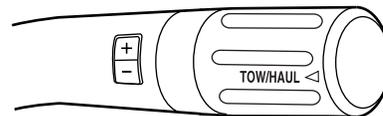
### Forced downshifts

- Allowed in D (Overdrive).
- Press the accelerator to the floor.
- Allows transmission to select an appropriate gear.

### ***Understanding your SelectShift Automatic™ transmission (SST) gearshift lever***

This vehicle is equipped with a SelectShift Automatic™ transmission (SST) gearshift lever. The SST is an automatic transmission with the ability for the driver to change gears up or down (without a clutch) as desired.

Use the buttons on the shifter to lock or unlock gears and manually select gears. Press the + button to upshift or the – button to downshift.



With the gearshift lever in D (Drive), press the – button to active SST. The available and selected gears will be indicated on the instrument cluster.



All available gears will be displayed with the current gear indicated. Press the – button again to lock out gears beginning with the highest

## Driving

gear. Example: press the – button twice to lock out 6th and 5th gears. Only the available gears will be displayed and the transmission will automatically shift between the available gears. Press the + button to unlock gears.

By moving the gearshift lever from the D (Drive) position to the M (Manual) position you may now manually select the gear you desire. Only the current gear will be displayed. Press the + button or the – button to upshift or downshift. If the – button is pressed at a vehicle speed that would cause an engine overspeed, the requested gear will flash then disappear and the transmission will remain in the current gear.

### Recommended shift speeds

Upshift according to the following chart:

Upshifts when accelerating (recommended for best fuel economy)		
Shift from:	Gasoline engines	Diesel engines
1 – 2	15 mph (24 km/h)	12 mph (19 km/h)
2 – 3	25 mph (40 km/h)	19 mph (31 km/h)
3 – 4	40 mph (64 km/h)	26 mph (42 km/h)
4 – 5	45 mph (72 km/h)	34 mph (55 km/h)
5 – 6	50 mph (80 km/h)	46 mph (74 km/h)

In order to prevent the engine from running at too low an RPM, which may cause it to stall, the SST will still automatically make some downshifts if it has determined that you have not downshifted in time. Although the SST will make some downshifts for you, it will still allow you to downshift at any time as long as the SST determines that the engine will not be damaged from over-revving.

The SST will not automatically upshift, even if the engine is approaching the RPM limit. It must be shifted manually by pressing the + button.

**Engine damage may occur if excessive engine revving is held without shifting.**

### Hill start assist (HSA)

The hill start assist feature makes it easier to pull away when the vehicle is on a slope without the need to use the parking brake. When the hill start assist feature is active, the vehicle will remain stationary on the slope for up to two seconds after you release the brake pedal. During this time, you have time to move your foot from the brake to the accelerator pedal and pull away. The brakes are released automatically

293

## Driving

once the engine has developed sufficient drive to prevent the vehicle from rolling down the slope. This is an advantage when pulling away on a slope; for example from a car park ramp, traffic lights or when reversing uphill into a parking space.

 **WARNING:** The hill start assist feature does not replace the parking brake. When you leave the vehicle, always apply the parking brake and select first or reverse gear.

### Using hill start assist

The hill start assist feature is activated automatically when the vehicle is stopped on a slope greater than five degrees. The hill start assist feature operates with the vehicle facing downhill if reverse gear is selected. The hill start assist feature will not operate if the parking brake is activated.

 **WARNING:** You must remain in the vehicle once you have activated the hill start assist feature.

### Activating hill start assist

1. Press the brake pedal to bring the vehicle to a complete standstill. Keep the brake pedal pressed.
2. If the sensors detect that the vehicle is on a slope, the hill start assist feature will be activated automatically.
3. When you remove your foot from the brake pedal, the vehicle will remain on the slope without rolling away for approximately up to two seconds. This hold time will automatically be extended if you are in the process of driving off.
4. Drive off in the normal manner. The brakes will be released automatically.

 **WARNING:** If the engine is revved excessively, or if a malfunction is detected when the hill start assist feature is active, the hill start assist feature will be deactivated.

### If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow

**Note:** Do not rock the vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature or damage to the transmission may occur.

**Note:** Do not rock the vehicle for more than a minute or damage to the transmission and tires may occur, or the engine may overheat.

294

## Driving

If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow, it may be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

### REVERSE SENSING SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

The reverse sensing system (RSS) sounds a tone to warn the driver of obstacles near the rear bumper when the R (Reverse) is selected and the vehicle is moving at speeds less than 3 mph (5 km/h). The system is not effective at speeds above 3 mph (5 km/h) and may not detect certain angular or moving objects.

 **WARNING:** To help avoid personal injury, please read and understand the limitations of the reverse sensing system as contained in this section. Reverse sensing is only an aid for some (generally large and fixed) objects when moving in reverse on a flat surface at “parking speeds”. Inclement weather may also affect the function of the RSS; this may include reduced performance or a false activation.

 **WARNING:** To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse and when using the RSS.

 **WARNING:** This system is not designed to prevent contact with small or moving objects. The system is designed to provide a warning to assist the driver in detecting large stationary objects to avoid damaging the vehicle. The system may not detect smaller objects, particularly those close to the ground.

 **WARNING:** Certain add-on devices such as large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks and any device that may block the normal detection zone of the RSS system may create false beeps.

## Driving

The RSS detects obstacles up to 6 feet (2 meters) from the rear bumper with a decreased coverage area at the outer corners of the bumper, (refer to the figures for approximate zone coverage areas). As you move closer to the obstacle, the rate of the tone increases. When the obstacle is less than 10 inches (25.0 cm) away, the tone will sound continuously. If the RSS detects a stationary or receding object further than 10 inches (25.0 cm) from the side of the vehicle, the tone will sound for only three seconds. Once the system detects an object approaching, the tone will sound again.

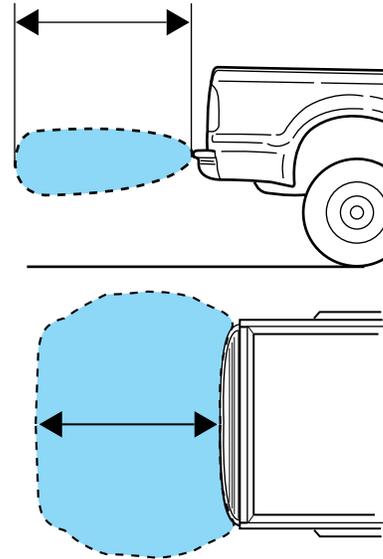
While receiving a warning the radio volume may be reduced to a predetermined level. After the warning goes away, the radio will return to the previous volume.

The RSS may have reduced performance or an increased chance of false detection if the tailgate is not locked and in the upright position. If the tailgate is down, the RSS tone may be heard intermittently or continuously. The tone may also be heard if items in the truck bed protrude rearward outside the bed.

The RSS automatically turns on when the gearshift lever is placed in R (Reverse) and the ignition is on. A control in the message center allows the driver to disable the system. Refer to *Message center* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for more information.

**Note:** If the system cannot be turned off, refer to *MyKey™ restricted features* in the *Locks and Security* chapter for more information.

**Note:** If your vehicle is equipped with a fully integrated electronic trailer brake controller (TBC) and a trailer with electric trailer brakes is connected to your vehicle, the RSS will be disabled. When the vehicle is shifted into reverse, the message center display will remain in the Rear Park Aid Off selection. For more information on the TBC, refer to the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter.



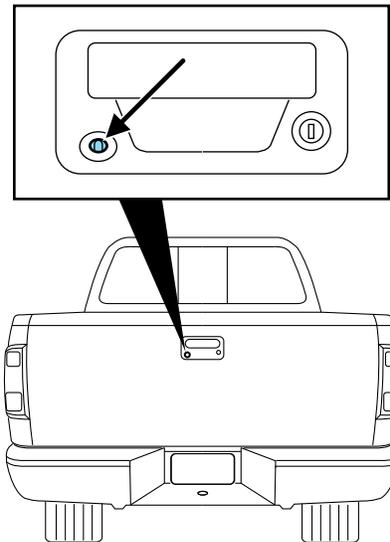
## Driving

**Keep the RSS sensors (located on the rear bumper/fascia) free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt (do not clean the sensors with sharp objects). If the sensors are covered, it will affect the accuracy of the RSS.**

**If your vehicle sustains damage to the rear bumper/fascia, leaving it misaligned or bent, the sensing zone may be altered causing inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alarms.**

### REARVIEW CAMERA SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

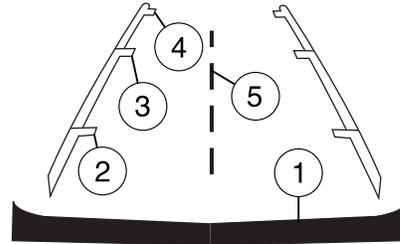
The rearview camera system, located on the tailgate, provides a video image, which appears in the rearview mirror or on the navigation screen (if equipped), of the area behind the vehicle. It adds assistance to the driver while reversing or reverse parking the vehicle.



To use the camera system, place the transmission in R (Reverse); an image will display on the left portion of the rearview mirror or on the navigation screen (if equipped). The area displayed on the screen may vary according to the vehicle orientation and/or road condition.

## Driving

- (1) Rear bumper
- (2) Red zone
- (3) Yellow zone
- (4) Green zone
- (5) Centerline of vehicle



Always use caution while backing.

Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are further away. Objects are getting closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones.

Use the side mirrors and rearview mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of the vehicle.

### **Image delay if displayed through the rearview mirror:**

When shifting out of R (Reverse) and into any other gear, the image in the rearview mirror will remain on for a few seconds before it shuts off to assist in parking or trailer hookup.

### **Image delay if displayed through the navigation screen:**

After shifting out of R (Reverse) and into any gear other than P (Park), the image in the navigation screen will remain until the vehicle speed reaches 5 mph (8 km/h), only if the rear camera delay feature is on, or until any navigation radio button is pressed.

**Note:** The default setting for the rear camera delay is off. Press the “Settings” button found on the navigation screen (if equipped) to set the rear camera delay feature to on or off.

When towing, the camera system will only see what is being towed behind the vehicle; this might not provide adequate coverage as it usually provides in normal operation and some objects might not be seen.

The camera lens for the camera is located on the tailgate. Keep the lens clean so the video image remains clear and undistorted. Clean the lens with a soft, lint-free cloth and non-abrasive cleaner.

**Note:** If the camera system image is not clear or seems distorted, it may be covered with water droplets, snow, mud or any other substance. If this occurs, clean the camera lens before using the camera system.

298

## Driving

 **WARNING:** The camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the rear view mirror and the side mirrors for maximum coverage.

 **WARNING:** Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.

 **WARNING:** Back up as slow as possible since higher speeds might limit your reaction time to stop the vehicle.

 **WARNING:** Do not use the camera system with the tailgate open.

If the back end of the vehicle is hit or damaged, then check with your authorized dealer to have your rearview camera system checked for proper coverage and operation.

### Night time and dark area use

At night time or in dark areas, the camera system relies on the reverse lamp lighting to produce an image. Therefore it is necessary that both reverse lamps are operating in order to get a clear image in the dark. If either of the lamps are not operating, stop using the camera system, at least in the dark, until the lamp(s) are replaced and functioning.

### Servicing

- If the image comes on while the vehicle is not in R (Reverse), have the system inspected by your authorized dealer.
- If the image is not clear, then check if there is anything covering the lens such as dirt, mud, ice, snow, etc. If the image is still not clear after cleaning, have your system inspected by your authorized dealer.

### FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE (4WD) OPERATION (IF EQUIPPED)

 **WARNING:** For important information regarding safe operation of this type of vehicle, see **Preparing to drive your vehicle** in this chapter.

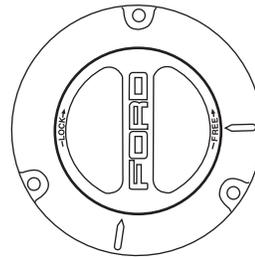
When four-wheel drive (4WD) is engaged, power is supplied to all four wheels through a transfer case. 4WD can be selected when additional driving power is desired.

## Driving

4WD operation is not recommended on dry pavement. Doing so could result in difficult disengagement of the transfer case, increased tire wear and decreased fuel economy.

### Manual Shift On Stop (MSOS) 4x4 system (if equipped)

The 4WD system is engaged or disengaged by rotating the control for both front wheel hub locks from the FREE or LOCK position, then manually engaging or disengaging the transfer case with the floor-mounted shifter. For increased fuel economy in 2WD, rotate both hub locks to the FREE position.



- **For proper operation, make sure that each hub is fully engaged and that both hub locks are set to the same position (both set to LOCK or both set to FREE). To engage LOCK, turn the hub locks completely clockwise; to disengage the hubs (FREE), turn the hub locks completely counterclockwise.**
- **The vehicle should not be driven in 4X4 High or 4X4 Low modes with the hub locks set to FREE as this condition may damage driveline system components.**
- Some vehicles may be equipped with wheel ornaments that cover the 4x4 manual hub lock. These ornaments must be removed to access the manual hub locks.

### Electronic Shift-On-the-Fly (ESOF) 4x4 system (if equipped)

**If equipped with the electronic shift 4WD system, and 4X4 Low is selected while the vehicle is moving above 3 mph (5 km/h), the 4WD system will not perform a shift. This is normal and should be no reason for concern.** Refer to Shifting to/from 4L (4X4 Low) for proper system operation.

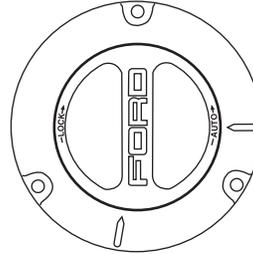
The ESOF 4WD system:

- provides 4x4 High engagement and disengagement while the vehicle is moving.
- is operated by a rotary control located on the instrument panel that allows you to select 4x2, 4x4 High or 4x4 Low operation.
- uses auto-manual hub locks that can be engaged and disengaged automatically based on the 4x4 mode selected.

300

## Driving

- auto-manual hub locks can be manually overridden by rotating the hub lock control from AUTO to LOCK if desired.
- **automatic operation of the hub locks is recommended**, and will increase fuel economy
- **For proper operation, make sure that each hub is fully engaged and that both hub locks are set to the same position (both set to LOCK or both set to AUTO). To engage LOCK, turn the hub locks completely clockwise; to engage AUTO, turn the hub locks completely counterclockwise.**



### 4WD system indicator lights

The indicator lights illuminate in the message center in the reconfigurable telltale (RTT) under the following conditions. Refer to *Warning lights and chimes* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter.

- **4X2** - Momentarily illuminates when 2H is selected on electronic shift 4WD systems only. **4x2**
- **4X4 HIGH** - Illuminates when 4H (4x4 High) is engaged. **4x4 HIGH**
- **4X4 LOW** - Illuminates when 4L (4x4 Low) is engaged. **4x4 LOW**
- **CHECK 4X4** – Displays when a 4x4 system fault is present

### Using a Manual Shift On Stop (MSOS) 4x4 system (if equipped)

**Note: High shift efforts may be encountered when attempting to shift into and out of 4x4 modes. It is recommended to allow the vehicle to roll at a speed below 3 mph (5 km/h) when shifting between modes.**

**Note:** Some noise may be heard as the 4x4 system shifts or engages. This is normal. In order to reduce engagement noise, it is recommended that all shifts be performed at speeds below 3 mph (5 km/h).

## Driving

**2H (2WD)** – For general on-road driving. Sends power to the rear wheels only should be used for street and highway driving. Provides optimal smoothness and fuel economy at high speeds.

**4H (4x4 High)** – Used for extra traction such as in snow or icy roads or in off road situations. **This mode is not intended for use on dry pavement.**

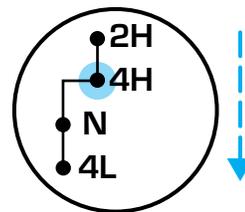
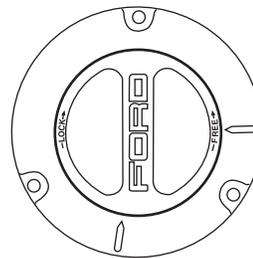
**N (Neutral)** – Only used when towing the vehicle. No power to front or rear wheels.

**4L (4x4 Low)** – Uses extra gearing to provide maximum power to all four wheels at reduced speeds. Intended only for off road applications such as deep sand, steep grades or pulling heavy objects.

### Shifting from 2H (2WD) to 4H (4x4 High)

Engage the locking hubs by rotating the hub lock control from FREE to LOCK, then move the transfer case lever from 2H (2WD) to 4H (4x4 High) at a stop or a vehicle speed below 3 mph (5 km/h).

- **For proper operation, make sure that both indicator arrows on the hub are aligned, and that both hubs are set to LOCK.**
- **Do not shift into 4H (4x4 High) with the rear wheels slipping.**
- **The vehicle should not be driven in 4X4 High with the hub locks disengaged as this condition may damage driveline system components.**

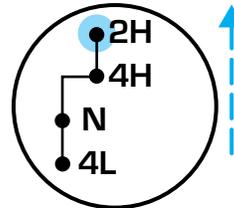


## Driving

### Shifting from 4H (4x4 High) to 2H (2WD)

Move the transfer case lever to 2H (2WD) at a stop or a vehicle speed below 3 mph (5 km/h).

With the vehicle at complete stop, disengage the locking hubs (optional) by rotating the hub lock control from LOCK to FREE.

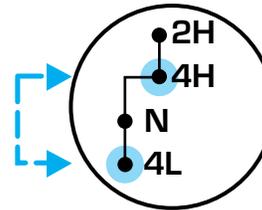


- **For proper operation, make sure that both indicator arrows on the hub are aligned, and that both hubs are set to FREE.**

### Shifting from 2H (2WD) or 4H (4x4 High) to 4L (4x4 Low)

1. Bring the vehicle to a stop or a speed below 3 mph (5 km/h).
2. Place the transmission in N (Neutral).
3. Move the transfer case shift lever through N (Neutral) directly to 4L (4x4 Low).

4. If the shift lever does not, or only partially moves to the 4L (4x4 Low) position, perform a shift with the transmission in N (Neutral) and the vehicle rolling at a speed below 3 mph (5 km/h). This will ensure the transfer case is fully engaged into 4L (4x4 Low).



**Note:** The vehicle should not be driven in 4X4 High with the hub locks disengaged as this condition may damage driveline system components.

### Shifting from 4L (4x4 Low) to 4H (4x4 High) or 2H (2WD)

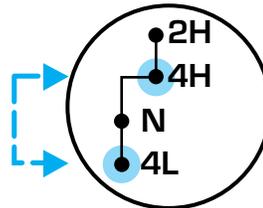
1. Bring the vehicle to a stop or a speed below 3 mph (5 km/h).
2. Place the gearshift lever in N (Neutral).

## Driving

3. Move the transfer case shift lever through N (Neutral) directly to 4H (4x4 High) or 2H (2WD).

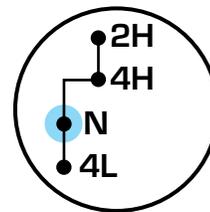
4. If the transfer case **will not** engage into 4H (4x4 High) or 2H (2WD), perform a shift with the transmission in N (Neutral) and the vehicle rolling at a speed below 3 mph (5 km/h).

5. If shifting to 2H (2WD) with the vehicle at a complete stop, disengage the locking hubs (optional) by rotating the hub lock control from LOCK to FREE.



### Using the N (Neutral) position

**The transfer case neutral position overrides the transmission and puts the vehicle in neutral regardless of transmission gearshift lever position. The vehicle can move forward or backwards.**



This position should only be used when towing the vehicle.

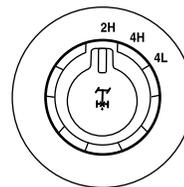


**WARNING:** Do not leave the vehicle unattended with the transfer case in the N (Neutral) position. Always set the parking brake fully and turn off the ignition when leaving the vehicle.

### Using the electronic shift 4WD system (if equipped)

**2H (2WD)** - For general on-road driving. Sends power to the rear wheels only and should be used for street and highway driving. Provides optimal smoothness and fuel economy at high speeds.

**4H (4X4 HIGH)** - Used for extra traction such as in snow or icy roads or in off road situations. **This mode is not intended for use on dry pavement.**



## Driving

**4L (4X4 LOW)** - Uses extra gearing to provide maximum power to all four wheels at reduced speeds. Intended only for off-road applications such as deep sand, steep grades, or pulling heavy objects. 4L (4x4 low) will not engage while the vehicle is moving above 3 mph (5 km/h); this is normal and should be no reason for concern. Refer to *Shifting to/from 4L (4x4 low)* for proper operation.

### **Shifting between 2H (4X2) and 4H (4X4 High)**

Move the 4WD control between 2H (4X2) and 4H (4X4 HIGH ) at any forward speed. The message center will display **4X4 SHIFT IN PROGRESS** during the system shift. **4X4 HIGH** will display in the message center if 4H is selected and **4X2** will momentarily display in the message center if 2H is selected.

If **SHIFT DELAYED PULL FORWARD** is displayed in the message center during the mode shift, transfer case gear tooth blockage is present. To alleviate this condition, place the transmission in a forward gear and move the vehicle forward approximately 5 feet (2 meters) to allow the transfer case to complete the mode shift.

**Note:** Momentarily releasing the accelerator pedal while performing a shift will improve engagement/disengagement times.

**Note:** Do not perform this operation if the rear wheels are slipping.

**Note:** Some noise may be heard as the system shifts or engages; this is normal.

**Note:** 4X4 high mode is not intended for use on dry pavement.

### **Shifting to/from 4L (4X4 low)**

1. Bring the vehicle to a speed of 3 mph (5 km/h) or less.
2. Place the transmission in N (Neutral).
3. Move the 4WD control to the desired position.

The message center will display **4X4 SHIFT IN PROGRESS** during the shift. The message center will then display the system mode selected. If any of the above shift conditions are not met, the shift will not occur and the message center will display information guiding the driver through the proper shifting procedures.

If **SHIFT DELAYED PULL FORWARD** is displayed in the message center, transfer case gear tooth blockage is present. To alleviate this condition, place the transmission in a forward gear, move the vehicle forward approximately 5 feet (1.5 m), and shift the transmission back to neutral to allow the transfer case to complete the range shift.

## Driving

**Note:** Some noise may be heard as the system shifts or engages; this is normal.

**Note:** 4x4 low mode is not intended for use on dry pavement.

### **Driving off-road with truck and utility vehicles**

4WD vehicles are specially equipped for driving on sand, snow, mud and rough terrain and have operating characteristics that are somewhat different from conventional vehicles, both on and off the road.

Your vehicle may be equipped with a long front air dam that may become damaged (due to reduced ground clearance) when taking your vehicle off-road. This air dam can either be removed or a shorter air dam can be purchased from your authorized dealer. In either case, if the air dam is to be removed (or replaced) before going off-road, refer to the *Workshop Manual* for the procedure or have your authorized dealer perform the work for you.

### **How your vehicle differs from other vehicles**

Truck and utility vehicles can differ from some other vehicles. Your vehicle may be higher to allow it to travel over rough terrain without getting hung up or damaging underbody components.

The differences that make your vehicle so versatile also make it handle differently than an ordinary passenger car.

Maintain steering wheel control at all times, especially in rough terrain. Since sudden changes in terrain can result in abrupt steering wheel motion, make sure you grip the steering wheel from the outside. Do not grip the spokes.

Drive cautiously to avoid vehicle damage from concealed objects such as rocks and stumps.

You should either know the terrain or examine maps of the area before driving. Map out your route before driving in the area. To maintain steering and braking control of your vehicle, you must have all four wheels on the ground and they must be rolling, not sliding or spinning.

### **Basic operating principles**

- Do not use 4WD on dry, hard surfaced roads. Doing so will produce excessive noise, increase tire wear and may damage drive components. 4WD modes are only intended for consistently slippery or loose surfaces.
- Drive slower in strong crosswinds which can affect the normal steering characteristics of your vehicle.

306

## Driving

- Be extremely careful when driving on pavement made slippery by loose sand, water, gravel, snow or ice.

### ***If your vehicle goes off the edge of the pavement***

- If your vehicle goes off the edge of the pavement, slow down, but avoid severe brake application, ease the vehicle back onto the pavement only after reducing your speed. Do not turn the steering wheel too sharply while returning to the road surface.
- It may be safer to stay on the apron or shoulder of the road and slow down gradually before returning to the pavement. You may lose control if you do not slow down or if you turn the steering wheel too sharply or abruptly.
- It often may be less risky to strike small objects, such as highway reflectors, with minor damage to your vehicle rather than attempt a sudden return to the pavement which could cause the vehicle to slide sideways out of control or roll over. Remember, your safety and the safety of others should be your primary concern.



**WARNING:** Vehicles with a higher center of gravity such as utility and four-wheel drive vehicles handle differently than vehicles with a lower center of gravity. Utility and four-wheel drive vehicles are **not** designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions. Avoid sharp turns, excessive speed and abrupt maneuvers in these vehicles. Failure to drive cautiously could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

### ***If your vehicle gets stuck***

If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow, it may be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts, in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

If your vehicle is severely stuck, it may need to be pulled out. Front tow/recovery hooks can be used to recover a vehicle stuck in the mud or snow. Refer to *Recovery hooks* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

**Do not rock the vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature or damage to the transmission may occur.**

**Do not rock the vehicle for more than a few minutes or damage to the transmission and tires may occur or the engine may overheat.**

## Driving



**WARNING:** Do not spin the wheels at over 35 mph (56 km/h). The tires may fail and injure a passenger or bystander.

Refer to *Gauges* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for transmission fluid temperature information.

### **Emergency maneuvers**

- In an unavoidable emergency situation where a sudden sharp turn must be made, remember to avoid “over-driving” your vehicle, i.e., turn the steering wheel only as rapidly and as far as required to avoid the emergency. Excessive steering will result in less vehicle control, not more. Additionally, smooth variations of the accelerator and/or brake pedal pressure should be utilized if changes in vehicle speed are called for. Avoid abrupt steering, acceleration or braking which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover and/or personal injury. Use all available road surface to return the vehicle to a safe direction of travel.
- In the event of an emergency stop, avoid skidding the tires and do not attempt any sharp steering wheel movements.



**WARNING:** Vehicles with a higher center of gravity such as utility and four-wheel drive vehicles handle differently than vehicles with a lower center of gravity. Utility and four-wheel drive vehicles are **not** designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions. Avoid sharp turns, excessive speed and abrupt maneuvers in these vehicles. Failure to drive cautiously could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

- If the vehicle goes from one type of surface to another (i.e., from concrete to gravel) there will be a change in the way the vehicle responds to a maneuver (steering, acceleration or braking). Again, avoid these abrupt inputs.

### **Parking**

On some 4WD vehicles, when the transfer case is in the N (Neutral) position, the engine and transmission are disconnected from the rest of the driveline. Therefore, the vehicle is free to roll even if the automatic transmission is in P (Park). Do not leave the vehicle unattended with the transfer case in the N (Neutral) position. Always set the parking brake fully and turn off the ignition when leaving the vehicle.

308

## Driving

 **WARNING:** Always set the parking brake fully and make sure the gearshift is latched in P (Park). Turn the ignition to the off position and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

 **WARNING:** If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. See your authorized dealer.

### **4WD systems**

4WD (when you select a 4WD mode), uses all four wheels to power the vehicle. This increases traction, enabling you to drive over terrain and road conditions that a conventional two-wheel drive vehicle cannot.

Power is supplied to all four wheels through a transfer case. On 4WD vehicles, the transfer case allows you to select 4WD when necessary. Information on transfer case operation and shifting procedures can be found in the *Driving* chapter. Information on transfer case maintenance can be found in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter. You should become thoroughly familiar with this information before you operate your vehicle.

### **Normal characteristics**

On some 4WD models, the initial shift from two-wheel drive to 4x4 while the vehicle is moving can cause some momentary clunk and ratcheting sounds. This is the front drivetrain coming up to speed and the automatic locking hubs engaging and is not cause for concern.

### **Sand**

When driving over sand, try to keep all four wheels on the most solid area of the trail. Avoid reducing the tire pressures but shift to a lower gear and drive steadily through the terrain. Apply the accelerator slowly and avoid spinning the wheels.

Avoid excessive speed because vehicle momentum can work against you and cause the vehicle to become stuck to the point that assistance may be required from another vehicle. Remember, you may be able to back out the way you came if you proceed with caution.

**Note:** If air is released from your tires, the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) indicator light may illuminate (if equipped).

## Driving

### **Mud and water**

If you must drive through high water, drive slowly. Traction or brake capability may be limited.

When driving through water, determine the depth; avoid water higher than the bottom of the hubs (if possible) and proceed slowly. If the ignition system gets wet, the vehicle may stall.



Once through water, always try the brakes. Wet brakes do not stop the vehicle as effectively as dry brakes. Drying can be improved by moving your vehicle slowly while applying light pressure on the brake pedal.

Be cautious of sudden changes in vehicle speed or direction when you are driving in mud. Even 4WD vehicles can lose traction in slick mud. As when you are driving over sand, apply the accelerator slowly and avoid spinning your wheels. If the vehicle does slide, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of the vehicle.

If the transmission, transfer case or front axle are submerged in water, their fluids should be checked and changed, if necessary.

### **Driving through deep water may damage the transmission.**

Refer to *Transmission temperature gauge* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for transmission fluid temperature information.

If the front or rear axle is submerged in water, the axle lubricant should be replaced.

After driving through mud, clean off residue stuck to rotating driveshafts and tires. Excess mud stuck on tires and rotating driveshafts causes an imbalance that could damage drive components.

“Tread Lightly” is an educational program designed to increase public awareness of land-use regulations and responsibilities in our nation's wilderness areas. Ford Motor Company joins the U.S. Forest

Service and the Bureau of Land Management in encouraging you to help preserve our national forest and other public and private lands by “treading lightly.”



## Driving

### ***Driving on hilly or sloping terrain***

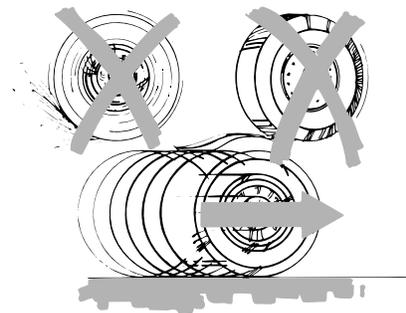
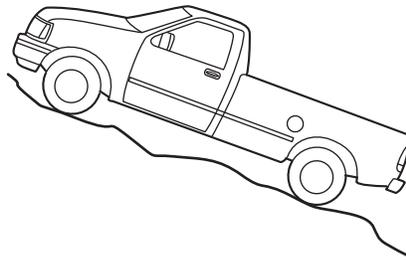
Although natural obstacles may make it necessary to travel diagonally up or down a hill or steep incline, you should always try to drive straight up or straight down. **Avoid driving crosswise or turning on steep slopes or hills.** A danger lies in losing traction, slipping sideways and possibly rolling over. Whenever driving on a hill, determine beforehand the route you will use. Do not drive over the crest of a hill without seeing what conditions are on the other side. Do not drive in reverse over a hill without the aid of an observer.

When climbing a steep slope or hill, start in a lower gear rather than downshifting to a lower gear from a higher gear once the ascent has started. This reduces strain on the engine and the possibility of stalling.

If you do stall out, do not try to turn around because you might roll over. It is better to back down to a safe location.

Apply just enough power to the wheels to climb the hill. Too much power will cause the tires to slip, spin or lose traction, resulting in loss of vehicle control.

Descend a hill in the same gear you would use to climb up the hill to avoid excessive brake application and brake overheating. Do not descend in neutral; instead, manually shift to a lower gear. Your vehicle has anti-lock brakes, apply the brakes steadily. Do not “pump” the brakes.



### ***Driving on snow and ice***

4WD vehicles have advantages over 2WD vehicles in snow and ice but can skid like any other vehicle.

## Driving

Should you start to slide while driving on snowy or icy roads, turn the steering wheel in the direction of the slide until you regain control.

Avoid sudden applications of power and quick changes of direction on snow and ice. Apply the accelerator slowly and steadily when starting from a full stop.

Avoid sudden braking as well. Although a 4WD vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in snow and ice, it won't stop any faster, because as in other vehicles, braking occurs at all four wheels. Do not become overconfident as to road conditions.

Make sure you allow sufficient distance between you and other vehicles for stopping. Drive slower than usual and consider using one of the lower gears. In emergency stopping situations, avoid locking of the wheels. Use a "squeeze" technique, push on the brake pedal with a steadily increasing force which allows the wheels to brake yet continue to roll so that you may steer in the direction you want to travel. If you lock the wheels, release the brake pedal and repeat the squeeze technique. If your vehicle is equipped with a Four Wheel Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS), apply the brake steadily. Do not "pump" the brakes. Refer to the *Brakes* section of this chapter for additional information on the operation of the anti-lock brake system.



**WARNING:** If you are driving in slippery conditions that require tire cables, then it is critical that you drive cautiously. Keep speeds down, allow for longer stopping distances and avoid aggressive steering to reduce the chances of a loss of vehicle control which can lead to serious injury or death. If the rear end of the vehicle slides while cornering, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of the vehicle.

### ***Maintenance and modifications***

The suspension and steering systems on your vehicle have been designed and tested to provide predictable performance whether loaded or empty and durable load carrying capability. For this reason, Ford Motor Company strongly recommends that you do not make modifications such as adding or removing parts (such as lift kits or stabilizer bars) or by using replacement parts not equivalent to the original factory equipment.

Any modifications to a vehicle that raise the center of gravity can make it more likely the vehicle will roll over as a result of a loss of control. Ford Motor Company recommends that caution be used with any vehicle equipped with a high load or device (such as ladder racks or pickup box cover).

312

## Driving

Failure to maintain your vehicle properly may void the warranty, increase your repair cost, reduce vehicle performance and operational capabilities and adversely affect driver and passenger safety. Frequent inspection of vehicle chassis components is recommended if the vehicle is subjected to heavy off-road usage.

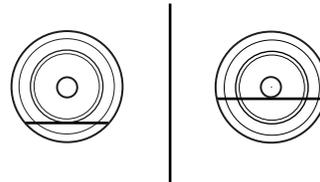
### VEHICLE USED AS A STATIONARY POWER SOURCE

Auxiliary equipment called power take-off, or PTO, is often added to the engine or transmission to operate utility equipment. Examples include a wheel-lift for tow trucks, cranes, tools for construction or tire service, and pumping fluids. PTO applications draw auxiliary horsepower from the powertrain, often while the vehicle is stationary. In this condition, there is limited cooling air flow through the radiator and around the vehicle that normally occurs when a vehicle is moving. The aftermarket PTO system installer, having the most knowledge of the final application, is responsible for determining whether additional chassis heat protection or powertrain cooling is required, and alerting the user to the safe and proper operation.

Ford Super Duty Vehicles are approved for use as a stationary (including split shaft capability) or mobile power source, within limits and operating guidelines detailed in the *Ford Truck Body Builders Layout Book*, found at [www.fleet.ford.com/truckbbas](http://www.fleet.ford.com/truckbbas), and through the Ford Truck Body Builders Advisory Service.

### DRIVING THROUGH WATER

If driving through deep or standing water is unavoidable, proceed very slowly. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the wheel rims (for cars) or the bottom of the hubs (for trucks).



When driving through water, traction or brake capability may be limited. Also, water may enter your engine's air intake and severely damage your engine or your vehicle may stall. **Driving through deep water where the transmission vent tube is submerged may allow water into the transmission and cause internal transmission damage.**

**Once through the water, always dry the brakes by moving your vehicle slowly while applying light pressure on the brake pedal.** Wet brakes do not stop the vehicle as quickly as dry brakes.

## Driving

### SNOWPLOWING

Ford recommends that the Super Duty F-Series used for snow removal include the Snow Plow Package Option.

#### Installing the snowplow

Weight limits and guidelines for selecting and installing the snowplow can be found in the *Ford Truck Body Builders Layout Book*, Snowplow section, found at [www.fleet.ford.com/truckbbas](http://www.fleet.ford.com/truckbbas). A typical installation affects the following:

- Certification to government safety laws such as occupant protection and airbag deployment, braking, and lighting. Look for an “Alterer’s Label” on the vehicle from the snowplow installer certifying that the installation meets all applicable Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards (FMVSS).
- The Total Accessory Reserve Capacity (TARC) is shown on the lower right side of the vehicle’s Safety Compliance Certification Label. This applies to Ford-completed vehicles of 10,000 lb. (4,536 kg) GVWR or less. This is the weight of permanently-attached auxiliary equipment, such as snowplow frame-mounting hardware, that can be added to the vehicle and satisfy Ford compliance certification to FMVSS. Exceeding this weight may require the auxiliary equipment installer additional safety certification responsibility. The Front Accessory Reserve Capacity (FARC) is added for customer convenience.
- Rear ballast weight behind the rear axle may be required to prevent exceeding the FGAWR, and provide front-to-rear weight balance for proper braking and steering.
- Front wheel toe may require re-adjustment to prevent premature uneven tire wear. Specifications are found in the *Ford Workshop Manual*.
- Headlight aim may require re-adjustment.
- The tire air pressures recommended for general driving are found on the vehicle’s Safety Certification Label. The maximum cold inflation pressure for the tire and associated load rating is imprinted on the tire sidewall. Tire air pressure may require re-adjustment within these pressure limits to accommodate the additional weight of the snowplow installation.
- Federal and some local regulations require additional exterior lamps for snowplow-equipped vehicles. Consult your authorized dealer for additional information.

314

## Driving

### Operating the vehicle with the snowplow attached

Do not use your vehicle for snow removal until it has been driven at least 500 miles (800 km).

The attached snowplow blade restricts airflow to the radiator, and may cause the engine to run at a higher temperature: Attention to engine temperature is especially important when outside temperatures are above freezing. Angle the blade to maximize airflow to the radiator and monitor engine temperature to determine whether a left or right angle provides the best performance.

Follow the severe duty schedule in your *scheduled maintenance information* for engine oil and transmission fluid change intervals.

### Snowplowing with your airbag-equipped vehicle

Your vehicle is equipped with a driver and passenger airbag Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) The SRS is designed to activate in certain frontal and offset frontal collisions when the vehicle sustains sufficient longitudinal deceleration.

Careless or high speed driving while plowing snow which results in sufficient vehicle decelerations can deploy the airbag. Such driving also increases the risk of accidents.



**WARNING:** All occupants of the vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their safety belts, even when an air bag supplemental restraint system (SRS) is provided.

Never remove or defeat the “tripping mechanisms” designed into the snow removal equipment by its manufacturer. Doing so may cause damage to the vehicle and the snow removal equipment as well as possible airbag deployment.



**WARNING:** Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the air bag supplemental restraint system (SRS) or its fuses. See your Ford or Lincoln Mercury dealer.



**WARNING:** Additional equipment such as snowplow equipment may effect the performance of the airbag sensors increasing the risk of injury. Please refer to the *Body Builders Layout Book* for instructions about the appropriate installation of additional equipment.

## Driving

### **Transmission operation while plowing**

Operate the vehicle with the automatic transmission gearshift lever in the D (Overdrive) position and tow/haul off.

- Shift transfer case to 4L (4x4 Low) when plowing in small areas at speeds below 5 mph (8 km/h).
- Shift transfer case to 4H (4x4 High) when plowing larger areas or light snow at higher speeds. Do not exceed 15 mph (24 km/h).
- Do not shift the transmission from a forward gear to R (Reverse) until the engine is at idle and the wheels are stopped.
- If the vehicle is stuck, shift the transmission in a steady motion between forward and reverse gears. Do not rock the vehicle for more than a few minutes. The transmission and tires may be damaged or the engine can overheat.

**Do not rock the vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature. Do not rock the vehicle for more than a minute. The transmission and tires may be damaged or the engine may overheat.**

Refer to *Gauges* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for transmission fluid temperature information.



**WARNING:** Do not spin the wheels at over 35 mph (55 km/h). The tires may fail and injure a passenger or bystander.

## Roadside Emergencies

### ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE

#### Vehicles sold in the U.S. : Getting roadside assistance

To fully assist you should you have a vehicle concern, Ford Motor Company offers a complimentary roadside assistance program. This program is separate from the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. The service is available:

- 24-hours, seven days a week
- for the coverage period listed on the Roadside Assistance Card included in your Owner Guide portfolio.

Roadside assistance will cover:

- a flat tire change with a good spare (except vehicles that have been supplied with a tire inflation kit)
- battery jump start
- lock-out assistance (key replacement cost is the customer's responsibility)
- fuel delivery – Independent Service Contractors, if not prohibited by state, local or municipal law shall deliver up to 2.0 gallons (7.5L) of gasoline or 5.0 gallons (18.9L) of diesel fuel to a disabled vehicle. Fuel delivery service is limited to two no-charge occurrences within a 12-month period.
- winch out – available within 100 feet (30.5 meters) of a paved or county maintained road, no recoveries.
- towing – Ford and Lincoln eligible vehicles towed to an authorized dealer within 35 miles (56 km) of the disablement location or to the nearest authorized dealer. If a member requests to be towed to an authorized dealer more than 35 miles (56 km) from the disablement location, the member shall be responsible for any mileage costs in excess of 35 miles (56 km).

Trailers shall be covered up to \$200 if the disabled eligible vehicle requires service at the nearest authorized dealer. If the trailer is disabled, but the towing vehicle is operational, the trailer does not qualify for any roadside services.

#### Vehicles sold in the U.S. : Using roadside assistance

Complete the roadside assistance identification card and place it in your wallet for quick reference. This card is found in the Owner's Guide portfolio in the glove compartment.

## Roadside Emergencies

U.S. Ford vehicle customers who require Roadside Assistance, call 1-800-241-3673.

If you need to arrange roadside assistance for yourself, Ford Motor Company will reimburse a reasonable amount for towing to the nearest dealership within 35 miles (56 km). To obtain reimbursement information, U.S. Ford vehicle customers call 1-800-241-3673. Customers will be asked to submit their original receipts.

### Vehicles sold in Canada : Getting roadside assistance

Canadian customers who require roadside assistance, call 1-800-665-2006.

### Vehicles sold in Canada : Using roadside assistance

Complete the roadside assistance identification card and place it in your wallet for quick reference. In Canada, the card is found in the Warranty Guide in the glove box.

Canadian Roadside coverage and benefits may differ from the U.S. coverage. Please refer to your Warranty Guide or visit our website at [www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca) for information on Canadian services and benefits.

Canadian customers who need to obtain roadside information, call 1-800-665-2006 or visit our website at [www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca).

### HAZARD FLASHER CONTROL

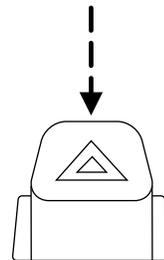
The hazard flasher is located on the steering column, just behind the steering wheel. The hazard flashers will operate when the ignition is in any position or if the key is not in the ignition.

- Press the flasher control and all front and rear direction signals will flash.
- Press the flasher control again to turn them off.

Use it when your vehicle is disabled and is creating a safety hazard for other motorists.

**Note:** With extended use, the flasher may run down your battery.

318



## Roadside Emergencies

### FUEL PUMP SHUT-OFF

In the event of a moderate to severe collision, this vehicle is equipped with a fuel pump shut-off feature that stops the flow of fuel to the engine. Not every impact will cause a shut-off.

Should your vehicle shut off after a collision due to this feature, you may restart your vehicle by doing the following:

1. Turn the ignition switch to the off position and wait 10 seconds.
2. Turn the ignition switch to the on position.
3. Repeat steps 1 and 2 to re-enable fuel pump.

**Note:** For vehicles equipped with a diesel engine, see the *Diesel supplement* for additional Fuel Pump Shut-off reset instructions.

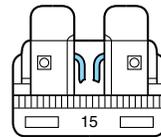


**WARNING:** Failure to inspect and if necessary repair fuel leaks after a collision may increase the risk of fire and serious injury. Ford Motor Company recommends that the fuel system be inspected by an authorized dealer after any collision.

### FUSES AND RELAYS

#### Fuses

If electrical components in the vehicle are not working, a fuse may have blown. Blown fuses are identified by a broken wire within the fuse. Check the appropriate fuses before replacing any electrical components.



**Note:** Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.

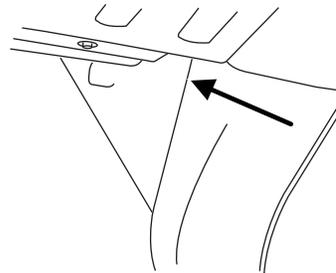
## Roadside Emergencies

### Standard fuse amperage rating and color

COLOR					
Fuse rating	Mini fuses	Standard fuses	Maxi fuses	Cartridge maxi fuses	Fuse link cartridge
2A	Grey	Grey	—	—	—
3A	Violet	Violet	—	—	—
4A	Pink	Pink	—	—	—
5A	Tan	Tan	—	—	—
7.5A	Brown	Brown	—	—	—
10A	Red	Red	—	—	—
15A	Blue	Blue	—	—	—
20A	Yellow	Yellow	Yellow	Blue	Blue
25A	Natural	Natural	—	Natural	Natural
30A	Green	Green	Green	Pink	Pink
40A	—	—	Orange	Green	Green
50A	—	—	Red	Red	Red
60A	—	—	Blue	Yellow	Yellow
70A	—	—	Tan	—	Brown
80A	—	—	Natural	Black	Black

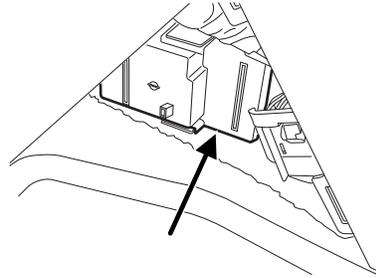
### Passenger compartment fuse panel

The fuse panel is located in the passenger's footwell. Remove the panel cover to access the fuses.

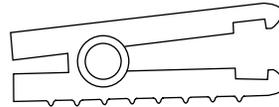


## Roadside Emergencies

To remove the fuse panel cover, pull the panel toward you. When the clips of the panel disengage, let the panel fall easily.



To remove a fuse use the fuse puller tool provided on the fuse panel cover.

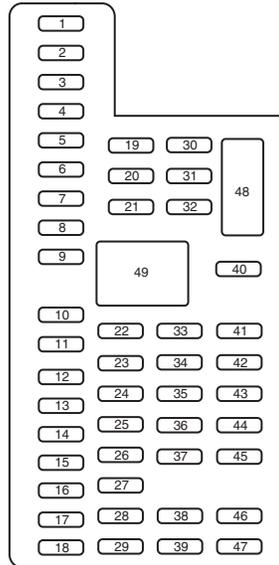


**WARNING:** Always disconnect the battery before servicing high current fuses.

**Always replace the cover to the passenger compartment fuse panel before reconnecting the battery.**

If the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, refer to the *Battery* section of the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

## Roadside Emergencies



The fuses are coded as follows.

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Circuits
1	30A	Not used (spare)
2	15A	Upfitter relay #4
3	30A	Not used (spare)
4	10A	Telescoping mirror switch, Interior lights, Hood lamp
5	20A	Moon roof
6	5A	Driver seat module
7	7.5A	Driver seat switch, Driver lumbar motor
8	10A	Power mirror switch
9	10A	Upfitter relay #3
10	10A	Run/accessory relay, Customer access feed

## Roadside Emergencies

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Circuits
11	10A	Instrument cluster
12	15A	Interior lighting, Lighted running board lamps
13	15A	Right turn signals and brake lamps, Right trailer tow (TT) stop turn relay
14	15A	Left turn signals and brake lamps, Left TT stop turn relay
15	15A	High-mounted stop lamps, Backup lamps, TT backup relay
16	10A	Right low beam headlamp
17	10A	Left low beam headlamp
18	10A	Keypad illumination, Passive anti-theft indicator (PATS), Powertrain control module (PCM), Brake shift interlock
19	20A	Subwoofer
20	20A	Power door locks
21	10A	Brake on/off switch
22	20A	Horn
23	15A	Not used (spare)
24	15A	Steering wheel control module, Diagnostic connector, Power fold mirror relay, Remote keyless entry
25	15A	Not used (spare)
26	5A	Steering wheel control module
27	20A	Amplifier
28	15A	Ignition switch
29	20A	SYNC®, GPS module, Radio faceplate
30	15A	Parking lamp relay, TT parking lamp relay

## Roadside Emergencies

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Circuits
31	5A	Trailer brake controller (brake signal), Customer access
32	15A	Moon roof, Telescoping mirror switch, Auto dimming mirrors, Power inverter, Driver and passenger door lock switch illumination
33	10A	Restraint control module
34	10A	Not used (spare)
35	5A	Select shift switch, Reverse park aid module, Trailer brake control module
36	10A	Fuel tank select switch
37	10A	PTC heater
38	10A	Radio faceplate
39	15A	High beam headlamps
40	10A	Parking lamps (in mirrors), Roof marker lamps
41	7.5A	Passenger airbag deactivation indicator
42	5A	Not used (spare)
43	10A	Wiper relay
44	10A	Upfitter switches
45	5A	Not used (spare)
46	10A	Climate control
47	15A	Fog lamps, Fog lamp indicator (in switch)
48	30A Circuit Breaker	Power windows switch, Power rear sliding window switch
49	Relay	Delayed accessory

## Roadside Emergencies

### Power distribution box

The power distribution box is located in the engine compartment. The power distribution box contains high-current fuses that protect your vehicle's main electrical systems from overloads.

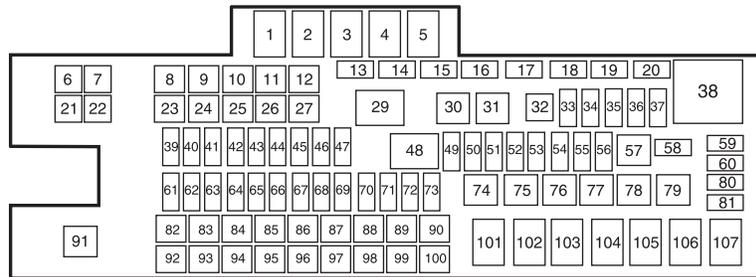


**WARNING:** Always disconnect the battery before servicing high current fuses.



**WARNING:** To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the power distribution box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.

If the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, refer to the *Battery* section of the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.



The high-current fuses are coded as follows:

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Circuits
1	Relay	Blower motor
2	—	Not used
3	Relay	Urea heaters (diesel engine)
4	—	Not used
5	Relay	Rear window defroster
6	—	Not used
7	50A*	Rear window defroster
8	30A*	Passenger seat
9	30A*	Driver seat

## Roadside Emergencies

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Circuits
10	—	Not used
11	—	Not used
12	—	Not used
13	—	Not used
14	—	Not used
15	Diode	Fuel pump (diesel engine)
16	—	Not used
17	15A**	Heated mirror
18	—	Not used
19	—	Not used
20	—	Not used
21	—	Not used
22	30A*	Trailer tow electric brake
23	40A*	Blower motor
24	—	Not used
25	30A*	Wipers
26	30A*	Trailer tow park lamps
27	25A*	Urea heaters (diesel engine)
28	—	Buss bar
29	Relay	Trailer tow park lamps
30	Relay	A/C clutch
31	Relay	Wipers
32	—	Not used
33	15A**	Vehicle power (VPWR) 1
34	15A**	VPWR 2 (diesel engine)
	20A**	VPWR 2 (gas engine)
35	10A**	VPWR 3
36	15A**	VPWR 4 (diesel engine)
	20A**	VPWR 4 (gas engine)
37	10A**	VPWR 5 (diesel engine)

## Roadside Emergencies

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Circuits
38	Relay	Powertrain control module (PCM) (diesel engine), Electronic control module (ECM) (gas engine)
39	10A**	4x4 hub lock
40	15A**	4x4 electronic lock
41	—	Not used
42	—	Not used
43	—	Not used
44	—	Not used
45	10A**	Run/start relay coil
46	10A**	Transmission control module (TCM) keep-alive power (diesel engine)
47	10A**	A/C clutch feed
48	Relay	Run/start
49	10A**	Rearview camera system
50	10A**	Blower motor relay coil
51	—	Not used
52	10A**	PCM/ECM/TCM run/start
53	10A**	4x4 module
54	10A**	Anti-lock brake system (ABS) run/start
55	10A**	Rear window defroster coil, Battery charge coil
56	20A**	Passenger compartment fuse panel run/start feed
57	Relay	Fuel pump
58	—	Not used
59	—	Not used
60	—	Not used
61	—	Not used

## Roadside Emergencies

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Circuits
62	—	Not used
63	—	Not used
64	—	Not used
65	—	Not used
66	20A**	Fuel pump
67	—	Not used
68	10A**	Fuel pump relay coil
69	—	Not used
70	10A**	Trailer tow backup lamp
71	10A**	Cannister vent (gas engine)
72	10A**	PCM/ECM relay coil feed keep-alive power
73	—	Not used
74	Relay	Trailer tow left-hand stop/turn
75	Relay	Trailer tow right-hand stop/turn
76	Relay	Backup lamp
77	—	Not used
78	—	Not used
79	—	Not used
80	—	Not used
81	—	Not used
82	20A*	Auxiliary power point #2
83	20A*	Auxiliary power point #1
84	30A*	4x4 shift motor
85	30A*	Heated/cooled seats
86	25A*	ABS coil feed
87	20A*	Auxiliary power point #5
88	—	Not used
89	40A*	Starter motor
90	25A*	Trailer tow battery charge
91	—	Not used

## Roadside Emergencies

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Protected Circuits
92	20A*	Auxiliary power point #4
93	20A*	Auxiliary power point #3
94	25A*	Upfitter #1
95	25A*	Upfitter #2
96	50A*	ABS pump
97	40A*	Invertor
98	—	Not used
99	—	Not used
100	25A*	Trailer tow turn signals
101	Relay	Starter
102	Relay	Trailer tow battery charge
103	—	Not used
104	—	Not used
105	—	Not used
106	—	Not used
107	—	Not used

\* Cartridge fuses \*\* Mini fuses

### CHANGING THE TIRES

If you get a flat tire while driving, do not apply the brake heavily. Instead, gradually decrease your speed. Hold the steering wheel firmly and slowly move to a safe place on the side of the road.

**Note:** If your vehicle is equipped with the tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS), the indicator light will illuminate when the spare tire is in use. To restore the full functionality of the monitoring system, all road wheels equipped with tire pressure monitoring sensors must be mounted on the vehicle.

If your vehicle is equipped with TPMS, have a flat serviced by an authorized dealer in order to prevent damage to the TPMS sensors, refer to *Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS)* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter. Replace the spare tire with a road tire as soon as possible. During repairing or replacing of the flat tire, have the authorized dealer inspect the TPMS sensor for damage.

## Roadside Emergencies

 **WARNING:** The use of tire sealants may damage your tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) and should not be used. However, if you must use a sealant, the TPMS sensor and valve stem on the wheel must be replaced by an authorized Ford dealer.

 **WARNING:** Refer to *Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS)* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for important information. If the tire pressure monitor sensor becomes damaged, it will no longer function.

### Dissimilar spare tire/wheel information

 **WARNING:** Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.

If you have a dissimilar spare tire/wheel, then it is intended for temporary use only. This means that if you need to use it, you should replace it as soon as possible with a road tire/wheel that is the same size and type as the road tires and wheels that were originally provided by Ford. If the dissimilar spare tire or wheel is damaged, it should be replaced rather than repaired.

A dissimilar spare tire/wheel is defined as a spare tire and/or wheel that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels and can be one of three types:

1. **T-type mini-spare:** This spare tire begins with the letter “T” for tire size and may have “Temporary Use Only” molded in the sidewall
2. **Full-size dissimilar spare with label on wheel:** This spare tire has a label on the wheel that states: “THIS TIRE AND WHEEL FOR TEMPORARY USE ONLY”

When driving with one of the dissimilar spare tires listed above, **do not:**

- Exceed 50 mph (80 km/h)
- Load the vehicle beyond maximum vehicle load rating listed on the Safety Compliance Label
- Use snow chains on the end of the vehicle with the dissimilar spare tire
- Use more than one dissimilar spare tire at a time
- Use commercial car washing equipment
- Try to repair the dissimilar spare tire

330

## Roadside Emergencies

Use of one of the dissimilar spare tires listed above at any one wheel location can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance
- Comfort and noise
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs
- Winter weather driving capability
- Wet weather driving capability

It is not recommended that the vehicle be operated in 4WD modes with a temporary emergency spare tire. If 4WD operation is necessary, do not operate above speeds of 10 mph (16 km/h) or for distances above 50 miles (80 km).

### 3. Full-size dissimilar spare without label on wheel

When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare tire/wheel, **do not:**

- Exceed 70 mph (113 km/h)
- Use more than one dissimilar spare tire/wheel at a time
- Use commercial car washing equipment
- Use snow chains on the end of the vehicle with the dissimilar spare tire/wheel

The usage of a full-size dissimilar spare tire/wheel can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance
- Comfort and noise
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs
- Winter weather driving capability
- Wet weather driving capability
- All-Wheel driving capability (if applicable)
- Load leveling adjustment (if applicable)

When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare tire/wheel additional caution should be given to:

- Towing a trailer
- Driving vehicles equipped with a camper body
- Driving vehicles with a load on the cargo rack

Drive cautiously when using a full-size dissimilar spare tire/wheel and seek service as soon as possible.

## Roadside Emergencies

### Spare tire information

**Note:** If your vehicle is equipped the tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS), the system indicator light will illuminate when the spare is in use. To restore the full functionality of the TPMS system, all road wheels equipped with the tire pressure monitoring sensors must be mounted on the vehicle.

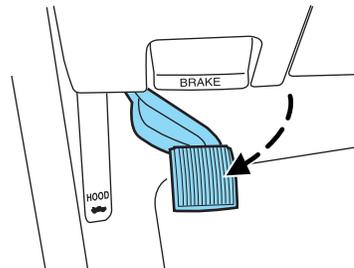
If your vehicle is equipped with TPMS, have a flat tire serviced by an authorized dealer in order to prevent damage to the TPMS sensor; refer to *Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)* in the *Tires, Wheel and Loading* chapter. Replace the spare tire with the road tire as soon as possible.

### Stopping and securing the vehicle

 **WARNING:** To help prevent the vehicle from moving when you change a tire, be sure the parking brake is set, then block (in both directions) the wheel that is diagonally opposite to the tire being changed.

Park on a level surface, activate hazard flashers and set the parking brake.

- Automatic transmission: Place gearshift lever in P (Park).
- Manual or electronic shift 4x4: Place transfer case in 4H or 4L.



## Roadside Emergencies

### Location of the spare tire and tools

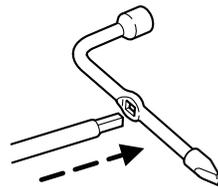
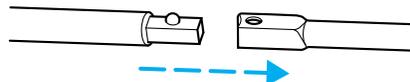
If your vehicle is equipped with a spare tire, jack and associated tools, refer to the following table for their locations:

Tool	Location
Spare tire (pick-up trucks only)	Under the vehicle, just forward of the rear bumper
Jack	Regular cab and Crew Cab: Fastened to floor pan behind rearmost seat on passenger side SuperCab: Under rear bench seat on passenger side
Jack handle, lug wrench, lug wrench extension (only available on Dual Rear Wheel [DRW] vehicles) and wheel chock (only available on Single Rear Wheel [SRW] vehicles equipped with a diesel engine)	Regular cab: Fastened to floor behind driver seat SuperCab: Fastened to floor under rear seat Crew Cab: Fastened to floor behind rear seat at driver side
Key and spare tire lock	In the glove box

### Removing the spare tire (with spare tire carrier only)

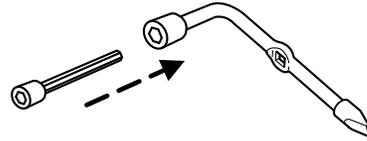
1. The following tools are required to remove the spare tire:

- one handle extension and two typical extensions. To assemble, align button with hole and slide parts together. To disconnect, depress button and pull apart.
- one wheel nut wrench. Slide over square end of jack handle.

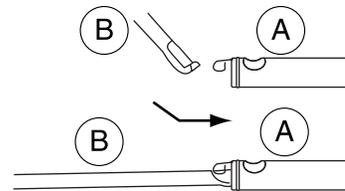


## Roadside Emergencies

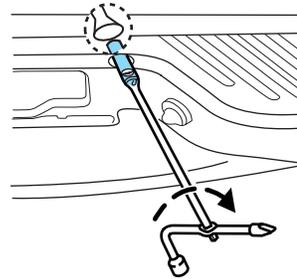
- **Vehicles equipped with dual rear wheels**, insert the lug wrench extension into the lug wrench to reach the lug nuts.



2. Attach the spare tire lock key (A) to the jack handle (B).



3. Fully insert the jack handle (with one extension) through the bumper hole and into the guide tube. The key and lock will engage with a slight push and counterclockwise turn. Some resistance will be felt when turning the jack handle assembly.



4. Turn the handle counterclockwise and lower the spare tire until you can slide the tire rearward and the cable is slack.
5. Remove the retainer through the center of the wheel.

## Roadside Emergencies

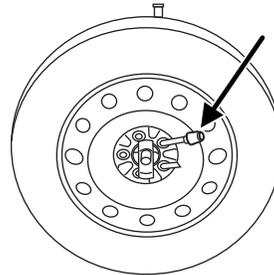
### If equipped with a tether, perform the following additional steps:

6. Lift the spare tire on end to access the tether attachment.

7. Use the lug wrench to remove the lug nut from the spare tire tether.

8. If not replacing the spare or flat tire to the underbody storage area, raise the wheel retainer up into the installed position.

9. Use the attached fastener strap (on the spare tire tether) to attach the tether end to the winch retainer prior to raising to the installed position.



### Tire change procedure



**WARNING:** When one of the rear wheels is off the ground, the transmission alone will not prevent the vehicle from moving or slipping off the jack, even if the transmission is in P (Park).



**WARNING:** To prevent the vehicle from moving when you change a tire, be sure the parking brake is set, then block (in both directions) the wheel that is diagonally opposite (other side and end of the vehicle) to the tire being changed.



**WARNING:** If the vehicle slips off the jack, you or someone else could be seriously injured.

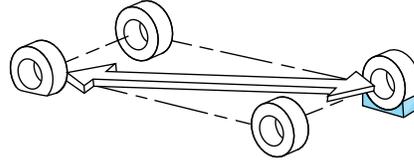


**WARNING:** Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.

**Note:** Passengers should not remain in the vehicle when the vehicle is being jacked.

## Roadside Emergencies

1. Turn engine off and block the wheel that is diagonally opposite of the flat tire using the wheel chock, if equipped. **If the vehicle is a 4x4**, lock the manual hub on the wheel.



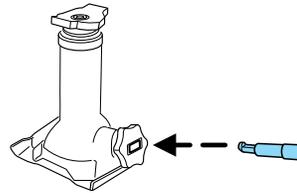
2. Remove the jack, jack handle, lug wrench and spare tire from the stowage locations.

3. Use the tip of the lug wrench to remove any wheel trim.

4. Loosen each wheel lug nut one-half turn counterclockwise but do not remove them until the wheel is raised off the ground.

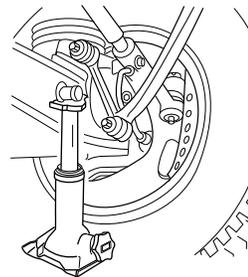
**The following steps apply to F-250/F-350 Single Rear Wheel (SRW) vehicles only:**

5. Insert the hooked end of the jack handle into the jack and use the handle to slide the jack under the vehicle.



6. Position the jack according to the following guides:

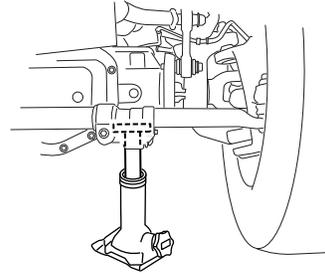
- Front (4x2)



## Roadside Emergencies

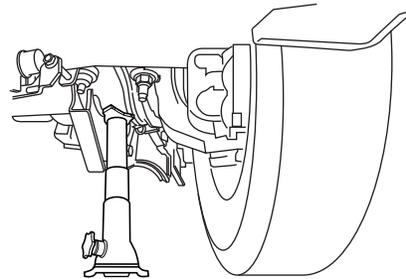
- Front driver side (4x4)

**Note:** Make sure the jack fits onto the flat area on the outboard side of the differential.

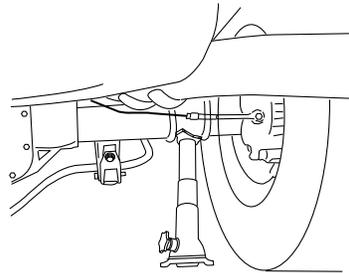


- Front passenger side (4x4)

**Note:** View shown from the rear of the vehicle to clearly identify the jack point. Place the jack directly under the axle.



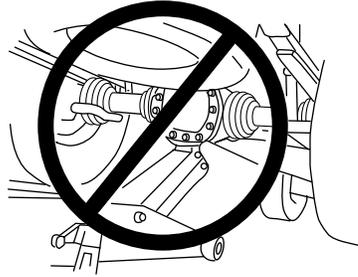
- Rear



## Roadside Emergencies

**Never use the front or rear differential as a jacking point.**

 **WARNING:** To lessen the risk of personal injury, do not put any part of your body under the vehicle while changing a tire. Do not start the engine when your vehicle is on the jack. The jack is only meant for changing the tire.



7. Turn the jack handle clockwise until the wheel is completely off the ground and high enough to install the spare tire.

8. Remove the lug nuts with the lug wrench.

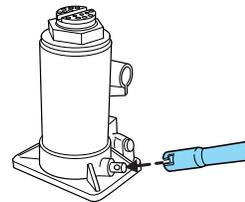
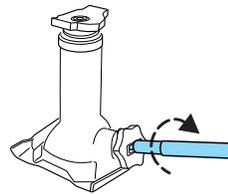
9. Replace the flat tire with the spare tire, making sure the valve stem is facing outward for all front wheels and single rear wheel vehicles. If replacing an inboard rear tire on dual rear wheel vehicles, the valve stem must be facing outward. If replacing the outboard wheel, the valve stem must be facing inward. Reinstall the lug nuts until the wheel is snug against the hub. Do not fully tighten the lug nuts until the wheel has been lowered.

10. Lower the wheel by turning the jack handle counterclockwise.

Go to Step 19.

**The following steps apply to F-350 Dual Rear Wheel (DRW) and F-450/F-550 vehicles only:**

11. Slide the notched end of the jack handle over the release valve and use the handle to slide the jack under the vehicle. Make sure the valve is closed by turning it clockwise.

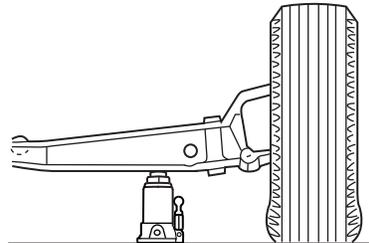


## Roadside Emergencies

12. Position the jack according to the following guides:

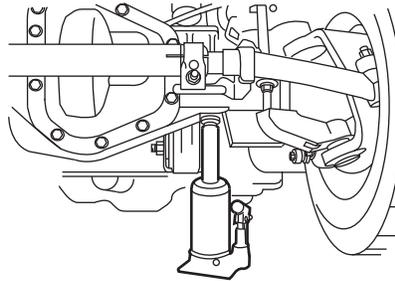
- Front (4x2): F-350 DRW

**Note:** Place jack directly under I-beam.



- Front driver side (4x4): F-350 DRW

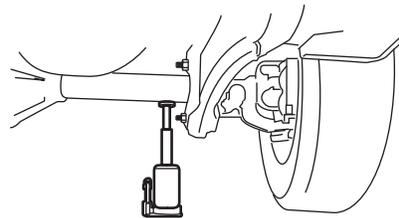
**Note:** Make sure the jack fits onto the flat area on the outboard side of the differential housing.



- Front passenger side (4x4): F-350 DRW

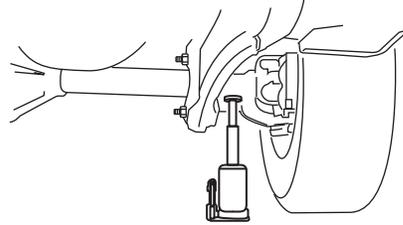
**Note:** View shown from the rear of the vehicle to clearly identify the jack point.

**Note:** Place the jack directly under axle and inboard of the radius arm so that the jack clears the radius arm.

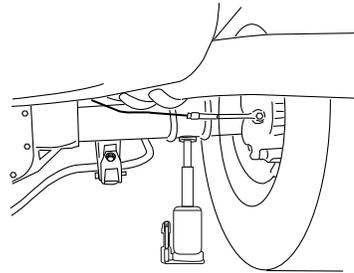


## Roadside Emergencies

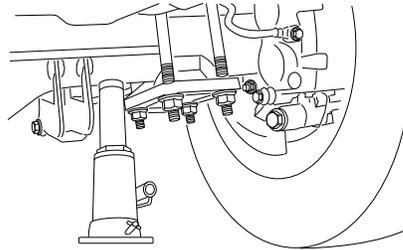
- Front: F-450/F-550



- Rear: F-350 DRW



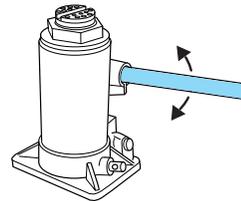
- Rear: F-450/F-550



13. Insert the jack handle into the pump linkage.

14. Use an up-and-down motion with the jack handle to raise the wheel completely off the ground.

**Hydraulic jacks are equipped with a pressure release valve that prevents lifting loads which exceed the jack's rated capacity.**



340

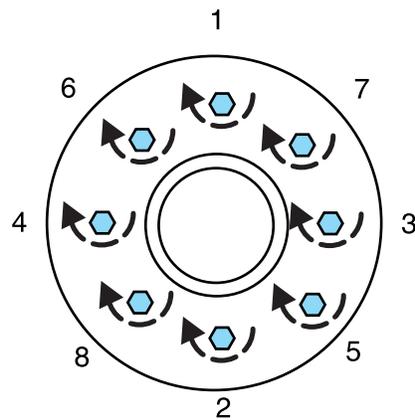
## Roadside Emergencies

15. Remove the lug nuts with the lug wrench.
16. Replace the flat tire with the spare tire, making sure the valve stem is facing outward on all front and inboard rear wheels. If replacing the outboard wheel, the valve stem must be facing inward. Reinstall the lug nuts until the wheel is snug against the hub. Do not fully tighten the lug nuts until the wheel has been lowered.
17. Lower the wheel by slowly turning the release valve counterclockwise. Opening the release valve slowly will provide a more controlled rate of descent.

**The following steps apply to all vehicles:**

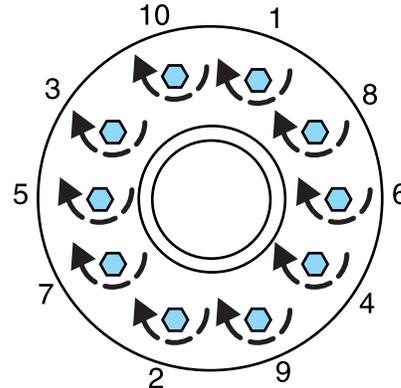
18. Remove the jack and fully tighten the lug nuts in the order shown. Refer to *Wheel lug nut torque specifications* later in this chapter for the proper lug nut torque specification.

**8-lug nut torque sequence**



## Roadside Emergencies

### 10-lug nut torque sequence



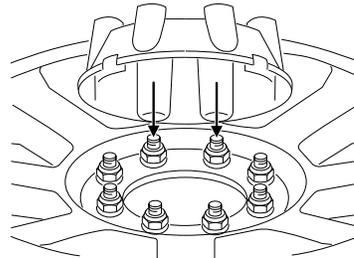
19. Stow the flat tire. Refer to *Stowing the flat/spare tire* if the vehicle is equipped with a spare tire carrier.

20. Stow the jack, jack handle and lug wrench. Make sure the jack is securely fastened so it does not rattle when driving.

21. Unblock the wheels.

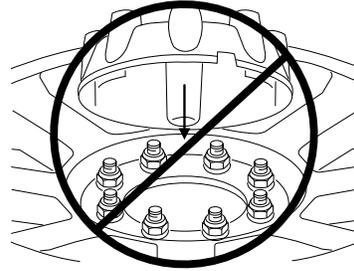
### The following step applies to F-250/F-350 Single Rear Wheel (SRW) vehicles only:

22. When installing the wheel center ornaments, ensure that the ornament retention towers on the back side of the ornament are aligned with the studs/lug nuts. The retention towers are designed to be installed over the studs/nuts and retain to the flange on the lug nut.



## Roadside Emergencies

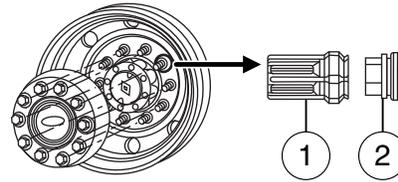
If the ornament retention towers are aligned between the studs/lug nuts, the ornament is improperly installed. This improper installation may appear and sound correct, but will not keep the ornament on the vehicle. Ornaments improperly installed in this manner will fall off or become loose with minimal force or impact.



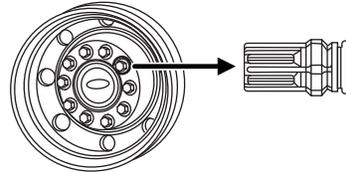
### **Installing dual rear wheel ornaments**

1. Align the ornament with the lug nuts.

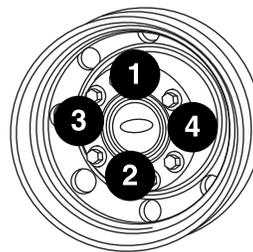
- (1) is the clip and (2) is the flange.



2. Hold the ornament so that all of the retention clips are sitting on the flange of the lug nuts.

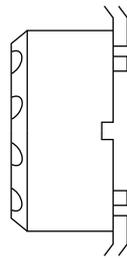
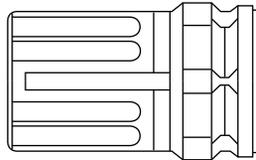


3. Use your hand or rubber mallet to tap the ornament in a star pattern. There should be an even gap between the ornament and the wheel.



## Roadside Emergencies

4. Be sure to install all the clips on the nuts over the flanges so that there is an even gap all around and the retention clips are fully seated.

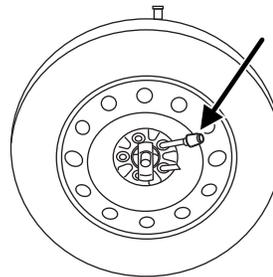


### Stowing the flat/spare tire

**Note:** Failure to follow spare tire stowage instructions may result in failure of cable or loss of spare tire.

**If you are stowing a tire that requires reattaching it to the vehicle with a tether, perform these steps first, then proceed with the steps following.**

1. Place the tire on end with the valve stem facing toward the front of the vehicle.
2. Place the tether into the bolt holes in the wheel and attach the lug nut using the lug winch.



3. Lay the tire on the ground with the valve stem facing up.
4. Slide the wheel partially under the vehicle and install the retainer through the wheel center. Pull on the cable to align the components at the end of the cable.

344

## Roadside Emergencies

5. Turn the jack handle clockwise until the tire is raised to its stowed position underneath the vehicle. The effort to turn the jack handle increases significantly and the spare tire carrier ratchets or slips when the tire is raised to the maximum tightness. Tighten to the best of your ability, to the point where the ratchet/slip occurs, if possible. The spare tire carrier will not allow you to overtighten. If the spare tire carrier ratchets or slips with little effort, take the vehicle to your authorized dealer for assistance at your earliest convenience.
6. Check that the tire lies flat against the frame and is properly tightened. Try to push or pull, then turn the tire to be sure it will not move. Loosen and retighten, if necessary. Failure to properly stow the spare tire may result in failure of the winch cable and loss of the tire.
7. Repeat this tightness check procedure when servicing the spare tire pressure (every six months, per *scheduled maintenance information*), or at any time that the spare tire is disturbed through service of other components.
8. If removed, install the spare tire lock (if equipped) into the bumper drive tube with the spare tire lock key (if equipped) and jack handle.

### WHEEL LUG NUT TORQUE SPECIFICATIONS

On vehicles equipped with single rear wheels, retighten the lug nuts to the specified torque at 500 miles (800 km) after any wheel disturbance (tire rotation, changing a flat tire, wheel removal, etc.).

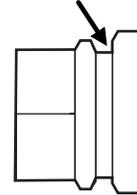
On vehicles equipped with dual rear wheels, retighten the wheel lug nuts to the specified torque at 100 miles (160 km), and again at 500 miles (800 km) of new vehicle operation and after any wheel disturbance (tire rotation, changing a flat tire, wheel removal, etc.).

Bolt size	Wheel lug nut torque*	
	ft-lb	N•m
M14 x 1.5	165	224
* Torque specifications are for nut and bolt threads free of dirt and rust. Use only Ford recommended replacement fasteners.		

It is important to follow the proper wheel mounting and lug nut torque procedures.

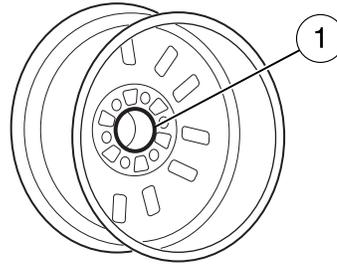
## Roadside Emergencies

On all two-piece flat wheel nuts, apply one drop of motor oil between the flat washer and the nut.



**!** **WARNING:** When a wheel is installed, always remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Ensure that any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub are secured so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels without correct metal-to-metal contact at the wheel mounting surfaces can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while the vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of control.

Inspect the wheel pilot hole (1) and mounting surface prior to installation. Remove any visible corrosion or loose particles.



## JUMP STARTING

**!** **WARNING:** The gases around the battery can explode if exposed to flames, sparks, or lit cigarettes. An explosion could result in injury or vehicle damage.

**!** **WARNING:** Batteries contain sulfuric acid which can burn skin, eyes and clothing, if contacted.

## Roadside Emergencies

**Do not attempt to push-start your automatic transmission vehicle. Automatic transmissions do not have push-start capability. Attempting to push-start a vehicle with an automatic transmission may cause transmission damage.**

### Preparing your vehicle

When the battery is disconnected or a new battery is installed, the automatic transmission must relearn its shift strategy. As a result, the transmission may have firm and/or soft shifts. This operation is considered normal and will not affect function or durability of the transmission. Over time, the adaptive learning process will fully update transmission operation.

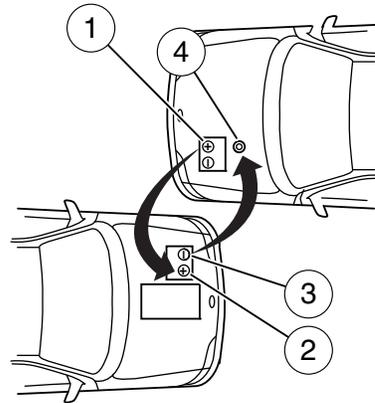
1. **Use only a 12-volt supply to start your vehicle.**
2. Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle as this could damage the vehicle's electrical system.
3. Park the booster vehicle close to the hood of the disabled vehicle making sure the two vehicles **do not** touch. Set the parking brake on both vehicles and stay clear of the engine cooling fan and other moving parts.
4. Check all battery terminals and remove any excessive corrosion before you attach the battery cables. Ensure that vent caps are tight and level.
5. Turn the heater fan on in both vehicles to protect from any electrical surges. Turn all other accessories off.

### Connecting the jumper cables

**Note:** In the illustration, the vehicle on the bottom is used to designate the assisting (boosting) battery.

## Roadside Emergencies

1. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the discharged battery.
2. Connect the other end of the positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal of the assisting battery.
3. Connect the negative (-) cable to the negative (-) terminal of the assisting battery.
4. Make the final connection of the negative (-) cable to an exposed metal part of the stalled vehicle's engine, away from the battery and the carburetor/fuel injection system.



**Note:** Do not attach the negative (-) cable to fuel lines, engine rocker covers, the intake manifold or electrical components as grounding points.



**WARNING:** Do not connect the end of the second cable to the negative (-) terminal of the battery to be jumped. A spark may cause an explosion of the gases that surround the battery.

Ensure that the cables are clear of fan blades, belts, moving parts of both engines, or any fuel delivery system parts.

### Jump starting

1. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and run the engine at moderately increased speed.
2. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.
3. Once the disabled vehicle has been started, run both engines for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

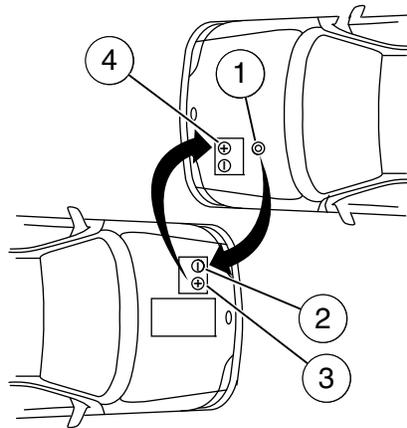
## Roadside Emergencies

### Removing the jumper cables

Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.

**Note:** In the illustration, the vehicle on the bottom is used to designate the assisting (boosting) battery.

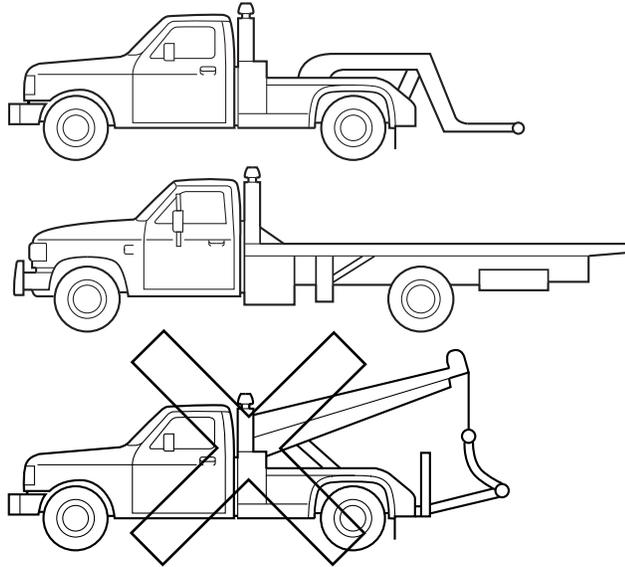
1. Remove the jumper cable from the ground metal surface.
2. Remove the jumper cable on the negative (-) terminal of the booster vehicle's battery.
3. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle's battery.
4. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the disabled vehicle's battery.



After the disabled vehicle has been started and the jumper cables removed, allow it to idle for several minutes so the engine computer can relearn its idle conditions.

## Roadside Emergencies

### WRECKER TOWING



If you need to have your vehicle towed, contact a professional towing service or, if you are a member of a roadside assistance program, your roadside assistance service provider.

It is recommended that the vehicle be towed with a wheel lift or flatbed equipment. Do not tow with a slingbelt. Ford Motor Company has not approved a slingbelt towing procedure.

On 4x2 vehicles, it is acceptable to tow the vehicle with the front wheels on the ground and the rear wheels off the ground using a wheel lift

On 4x4 vehicles, it is recommended that your vehicle be towed using flatbed equipment with all the wheels off the ground. However, a wheel lift may be used to lift the rear of the vehicle so long as, depending on vehicle configurations, the following preparations are met:

- On Electronic Shift-On-the-Fly (ESOF) vehicles, the 4x4 control is turned to the 2WD position prior to towing.
- On manual-shift transfer case vehicles, the front wheel hub locks are in the FREE position prior to towing.

## Roadside Emergencies

**Note:** Towing an ESOF 4x4 vehicle with the front wheels on the ground without disengaging the front hubs may cause damage to the automatic transmission.

**Note:** Towing a 4x2 or an ESOF 4x4 vehicle with the rear wheels on the ground for more than 50 miles (80 km) and/or in excess of 35 mph (56 km/h) may cause damage to the automatic transmission.

**Note:** On Dual Rear Wheel (DRW) vehicles, an outer rear wheel must be removed prior to using a wheel lift wrecker.

Ford Motor Company produces a towing manual for all authorized tow truck operators. Have your tow truck operator refer to this manual for proper hook-up and towing procedures for your vehicle.

**If the vehicle is towed by other means or incorrectly, vehicle damage may occur.**

### Emergency towing

In case of a roadside emergency with a disabled vehicle (without access to wheel dollies, car hauling trailer, or flatbed transport vehicle) your vehicle (regardless of transmission powertrain configuration) can be flat towed (all wheels on the ground) under the following conditions:

- Vehicle is facing forward so that it is being towed in a forward direction.
- Place the transmission in N (Neutral). Refer to *Brake-shift interlock* in the *Driving* chapter for specific instructions if you cannot move the gear shift lever into N (Neutral).
- Maximum speed is not to exceed 35 mph (56 km/h).
- Maximum distance is 50 miles (80 km).

## Customer Assistance

### GETTING THE SERVICES YOU NEED

Warranty repairs to your vehicle must be performed by an authorized dealer. While any authorized dealer handling your vehicle line will provide warranty service, we recommend you return to your selling authorized dealer who wants to ensure your continued satisfaction.

Please note that certain warranty repairs require special training and/or equipment, so not all authorized dealers are authorized to perform all warranty repairs. This means that, depending on the warranty repair needed, you may have to take your vehicle to another authorized dealer.

A reasonable time must be allowed to perform a repair after taking your vehicle to the authorized dealer. Repairs will be made using Ford or Motorcraft® parts, or remanufactured or other parts that are authorized by Ford.

### Away from home

If you are away from home when your vehicle needs service, contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center or use the online resources listed below to find the nearest authorized dealer.

In the United States:

#### Mailing address

Ford Motor Company  
Customer Relationship Center  
P.O. Box 6248  
Dearborn, MI 48121

#### Telephone

1-800-392-3673 (FORD)  
(TDD for the hearing impaired: 1-800-232-5952)

#### Online

Additional information and resources are available online at [fordowner.com](http://fordowner.com)

These are some of the items that can be found online:

- U.S. dealer locator by Dealer Name, City/State, or Zip Code
- Owner Guides
- Maintenance Schedules
- Recalls
- Ford Extended Service Plans
- Ford Genuine Accessories

352

## Customer Assistance

- Service specials and promotions.

In Canada:

### **Mailing address**

Customer Relationship Centre  
Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited  
P.O. Box 2000  
Oakville, Ontario L6J 5E4

### **Telephone**

1-800-565-3673 (FORD)

### **Online**

[www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca)

### **Additional assistance**

If you have questions or concerns, or are unsatisfied with the service you are receiving, follow these steps:

1. Contact your Sales Representative or Service Advisor at your selling/servicing authorized dealer.
2. If your inquiry or concern remains unresolved, contact the Sales Manager, Service Manager or Customer Relations Manager.
3. If you require assistance or clarification on Ford Motor Company policies, please contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center

In order to help you serve you better, please have the following information available when contacting a Customer Relationship Center:

- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
- Your telephone number (home and business)
- The name of the authorized dealer and city where located
- The vehicle's current odometer reading

In some states, you must directly notify Ford in writing before pursuing remedies under your state's warranty laws. Ford is also allowed a final repair attempt in some states.

In the United States, a warranty dispute must be submitted to the BBB AUTO LINE before taking action under the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, or to the extent allowed by state law, before pursuing replacement or repurchase remedies provided by certain state laws. This dispute handling procedure is not required prior to enforcing state created rights or other rights which are independent of the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act or state replacement or repurchase laws.

## Customer Assistance

### IN CALIFORNIA (U.S. ONLY)

California Civil Code Section 1793.2(d) requires that, if a manufacturer or its representative is unable to repair a motor vehicle to conform to the vehicle's applicable express warranty after a reasonable number of attempts, the manufacturer shall be required to either replace the vehicle with one substantially identical or repurchase the vehicle and reimburse the buyer in an amount equal to the actual price paid or payable by the consumer (less a reasonable allowance for consumer use). The consumer has the right to choose whether to receive a refund or replacement vehicle.

California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b) presumes that the manufacturer has had a reasonable number of attempts to conform the vehicle to its applicable express warranties if, within the first 18 months of ownership of a new vehicle or the first 18,000 miles (29,000 km), whichever occurs first:

1. Two or more repair attempts are made on the same non-conformity likely to cause death or serious bodily injury OR
2. Four or more repair attempts are made on the same nonconformity (a defect or condition that substantially impairs the use, value or safety of the vehicle) OR
3. The vehicle is out of service for repair of nonconformities for a total of more than 30 calendar days (not necessarily all at one time)

In the case of 1 or 2 above, the consumer must also notify the manufacturer of the need for the repair of the nonconformity at the following address:

Ford Motor Company  
16800 Executive Plaza Drive  
Mail Drop 3NE-B  
Dearborn, MI 48126

You are required to submit your warranty dispute to BBB AUTO LINE before asserting in court any rights or remedies conferred by California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b). You are also required to use BBB AUTO LINE before exercising rights or seeking remedies created by the Federal Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, 15 U.S.C. sec. 2301 et seq. If you choose to seek redress by pursuing rights and remedies not created by California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b) or the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, resort to BBB AUTO LINE is not required by those statutes.

### THE BETTER BUSINESS BUREAU (BBB) AUTO LINE PROGRAM (U.S. ONLY)

Your satisfaction is important to Ford Motor Company and to your dealer. If a warranty concern has not been resolved using the three-step

354

## Customer Assistance

procedure outlined earlier in this chapter in the *Getting the services you need* section, you may be eligible to participate in the BBB AUTO LINE program.

The BBB AUTO LINE program consists of two parts – mediation and arbitration. During mediation, a representative of the BBB will contact both you and Ford Motor Company to explore options for settlement of the claim. If an agreement is not reached during mediation or you do not want to participate in mediation, and if your claim is eligible, you may participate in the arbitration process. An arbitration hearing will be scheduled so that you can present your case in an informal setting before an impartial person. The arbitrator will consider the testimony provided and make a decision after the hearing.

Disputes submitted to the BBB AUTO LINE program are usually decided within forty days after you file your claim with the BBB. You are not bound by the decision, and may reject the decision and proceed to court where all findings of the BBB Auto Line dispute, and decision, are admissible in the court action. Should you choose to accept the BBB AUTO LINE decision, Ford is then bound by the decision, and must comply with the decision within 30 days of receipt of your acceptance letter.

BBB AUTO LINE Application: Using the information provided below, please call or write to request a program application. You will be asked for your name and address, general information about your new vehicle, information about your warranty concerns, and any steps you have already taken to try to resolve them. A Customer Claim Form will be mailed that will need to be completed, signed and returned to the BBB along with proof of ownership. Upon receipt, the BBB will review the claim for eligibility under the Program Summary Guidelines.

**You can get more information by calling BBB AUTO LINE at 1-800-955-5100, or writing to:**

**BBB AUTO LINE  
4200 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 800  
Arlington, Virginia 22203-1833**

BBB AUTO LINE applications can also be requested by calling the Ford Motor Company Customer Relationship Center at 1-800-392-3673.

**Note:** Ford Motor Company reserves the right to change eligibility limitations, modify procedures, or to discontinue this process at any time without notice and without obligation.

## Customer Assistance

### UTILIZING THE MEDIATION/ARBITRATION PROGRAM (CANADA ONLY)

For vehicles delivered to authorized Canadian dealers. In those cases where you continue to feel that the efforts by Ford of Canada and the authorized dealer to resolve a factory-related vehicle service concern have been unsatisfactory, Ford of Canada participates in an impartial third party mediation/arbitration program administered by the Canadian Motor Vehicle Arbitration Plan (CAMVAP).

The CAMVAP program is a straight forward and relatively speedy alternative to resolve a disagreement when all other efforts to produce a settlement have failed. This procedure is without cost to you and is designed to eliminate the need for lengthy and expensive legal proceedings.

In the CAMVAP program, impartial third-party arbitrators conduct hearings at mutually convenient times and places in an informal environment. These impartial arbitrators review the positions of the parties, make decisions and, when appropriate, render awards to resolve disputes. CAMVAP decisions are fast, fair, and final as the arbitrator's award is binding on both you and Ford of Canada.

CAMVAP services are available in all Canadian territories and provinces. For more information, without charge or obligation, call your CAMVAP Provincial Administrator directly at 1-800-207-0685 or visit [www.camvap.ca](http://www.camvap.ca).

### GETTING ASSISTANCE OUTSIDE THE U.S. AND CANADA

Before exporting your vehicle to a foreign country, contact the appropriate foreign embassy or consulate. These officials can inform you of local vehicle registration regulations and where to find unleaded fuel.

If you cannot find unleaded fuel or can only get fuel with an anti-knock index lower than is recommended for your vehicle, contact a regional office or owner relations/customer relationship office.

The use of leaded fuel in your vehicle without proper conversion may damage the effectiveness of your emission control system and may cause engine knocking or serious engine damage. Ford Motor Company/Ford of Canada is not responsible for any damage caused by use of improper fuel. Using leaded fuel may also result in difficulty importing your vehicle back into the U.S.

## Customer Assistance

If your vehicle must be serviced while you are traveling or living in Asia-Pacific Region, Sub-Saharan Africa, U.S. Virgin Islands, Central America, the Caribbean, and Israel, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer cannot help you, contact:

FORD MOTOR COMPANY  
FORD EXPORT OPERATIONS & GLOBAL INITIATIVES  
1555 Fairlane Drive  
Fairlane Business Park #3  
Allen Park, Michigan 48101  
U.S.A.

Telephone: (313) 594-4857

For customers in Guam, the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands (CNMI), America Samoa, and the U.S. Virgin Islands, please feel free to call our Toll-Free Number: (800) 841-FORD (3673).

FAX: (313) 390-0804

Email: [expcac@ford.com](mailto:expcac@ford.com)

If your vehicle must be serviced while you are traveling or living in Puerto Rico, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer cannot help you, contact:

Ford International Business Development Inc.

Customer Relationship Center

P.O. Box 11957

Caparra Heights Station

San Juan, Puerto Rico 00922-1957

Telephone: (800) 841-FORD (3673)

FAX: (313) 390-0804

Email: [prcac@ford.com](mailto:prcac@ford.com)

[www.ford.com.pr](http://www.ford.com.pr)

## Customer Assistance

If your vehicle must be serviced while you are traveling or living in the Middle East, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer cannot help you, contact:

Ford Middle East  
Customer Relationship Center  
P.O. Box 21470  
Dubai, United Arab Emirates  
Telephone: +971 4 3326084  
Toll-Free Number for the Kingdom of Saudi Arabia: 800 8971409  
Local Telephone Number for Kuwait: 24810575  
FAX: +971 4 3327299  
Email: [menacac@ford.com](mailto:menacac@ford.com)  
[www.me.ford.com](http://www.me.ford.com)

If you buy your vehicle in North America and then relocate to any of the above locations, register your vehicle identification number (VIN) and new address with Ford Motor Company Export Operations & Global Growth Initiatives by emailing [expcac@ford.com](mailto:expcac@ford.com).

If you are in another foreign country, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer employees cannot help you, they can direct you to the nearest Ford affiliate office.

**Customers in the U.S. should call 1-800-392-3673.**

### ORDERING ADDITIONAL OWNER'S LITERATURE

To order the publications in this portfolio, contact Helm, Incorporated at:

HELM, INCORPORATED  
P.O. Box 07150  
Detroit, Michigan 48207

Or to order a free publication catalog, call toll free: 1-800-782-4356

Monday-Friday 8:00 a.m. - 6:00 p.m. EST

Helm, Incorporated can also be reached by their website:  
[www.helminc.com](http://www.helminc.com).

*(Items in this catalog may be purchased by credit card, check or money order.)*

### Obtaining a French Owner's Guide

French Owner's Guides can be obtained from your authorized dealer or by contacting Helm, Incorporated using the contact information listed previously in this section.

358

## Customer Assistance

### REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (U.S. ONLY)

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety



Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Ford Motor Company.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Ford Motor Company.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to <http://www.safercar.gov>; or write to:

Administrator  
1200 New Jersey Avenue, Southeast  
Washington, D.C. 20590

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from <http://www.safercar.gov>.

### REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (CANADA ONLY)

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform Transport Canada, using their toll-free number: 1-800-333-0510, or online at: <https://wwwwaps.tc.gc.ca/Saf-Sec-Sur/7/PCDB-BDPP/Index.aspx>.

## Cleaning

### WASHING THE EXTERIOR

Wash your vehicle regularly with cool or lukewarm water and a neutral pH shampoo, such as Motorcraft® Detail Wash (ZC-3-A), which is available from your authorized dealer.

- Never use strong household detergents or soap, such as dish washing or laundry liquid. These products can discolor and spot painted surfaces.
- Never wash a vehicle that is “hot to the touch” or during exposure to strong, direct sunlight.
- Always use a clean sponge or car wash mitt with plenty of water for best results.
- Dry the vehicle with a chamois or soft terry cloth towel in order to eliminate water spotting.
- It is especially important to wash the vehicle regularly during the winter months, as dirt and road salt are difficult to remove and cause damage to the vehicle.
- Immediately remove items such as gasoline, diesel fuel, bird droppings and insect deposits because they can cause damage to the vehicle’s paintwork and trim over time. Use Motorcraft® Bug and Tar Remover (ZC-42), which is available from your authorized dealer.
- Remove any exterior accessories, such as antennas, before entering a car wash.
- **Suntan lotions and insect repellents can damage any painted surface; if these substances come in contact with your vehicle, wash off as soon as possible.**
- **If your vehicle is equipped with running boards, do not use rubber, plastic and vinyl protectant products on the running board surface, as the area may become slippery.**

### Exterior chrome

- Wash the vehicle first, using cool or lukewarm water and a neutral pH shampoo, such as Motorcraft® Detail Wash (ZC-3-A).
- Use Motorcraft® Custom Bright Metal Cleaner (ZC-15), available from your authorized dealer. Apply the product as you would a wax to clean bumpers and other chrome parts; allow the cleaner to dry for a few minutes, then wipe off the haze with a clean, dry rag.
- **Never use abrasive materials such as steel wool or plastic pads as they can scratch the chrome surface.**

360

## Cleaning

### WAXING

- Wash the vehicle first.
- Use a quality wax that does not contain abrasives.
- Do not allow paint sealant to come in contact with any non-body (low-gloss black) colored trim, such as grained door handles, roof racks, bumpers, side moldings, mirror housings or the windshield cowl area. The paint sealant will “gray” or stain the parts over time.

### PAINT CHIPS

Your authorized dealer has touch-up paint to match your vehicle’s color. Take your color code (printed on a sticker in the driver’s door jamb) to your authorized dealer to ensure you get the correct color.

- Remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout before repairing paint chips.
- Always read the instructions before using the products.

### ALUMINUM WHEELS AND WHEEL COVERS

Aluminum wheels and wheel covers are coated with a clear coat paint finish. In order to maintain their shine:

- Clean weekly with Motorcraft® Wheel and Tire Cleaner, which is available from your authorized dealer. Heavy dirt and brake dust accumulation may require agitation with a sponge. Rinse thoroughly with a strong stream of water.
- Never apply any cleaning chemical to hot or warm wheel rims or covers.
- Some automatic car washes may cause damage to the finish on your wheel rims or covers. Industrial-strength (heavy-duty) cleaners, or cleaning chemicals, in combination with brush agitation to remove brake dust and dirt, could wear away the clear coat finish over time.
- Do not use hydrofluoric acid-based or high caustic-based wheel cleaners, steel wool, fuels or strong household detergent.
- To remove tar and grease, use Motorcraft® Bug and Tar Remover , available from your authorized dealer.

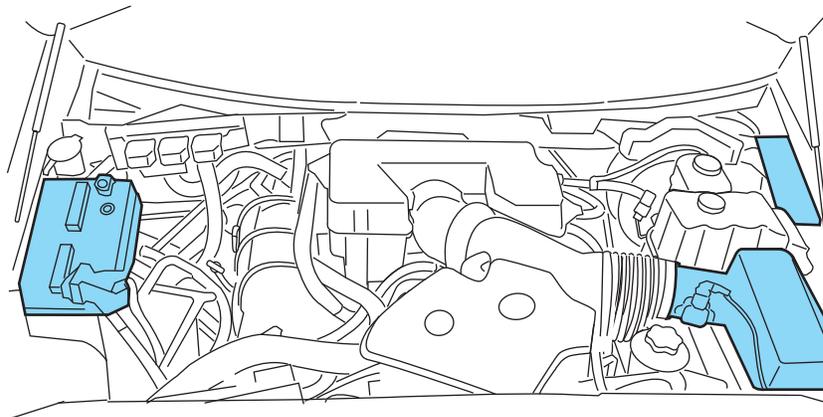
### ENGINE

Engines are more efficient when they are clean because grease and dirt buildup keep the engine warmer than normal. When washing:

- Take care when using a power washer to clean the engine. The high-pressure fluid could penetrate the sealed parts and cause damage.

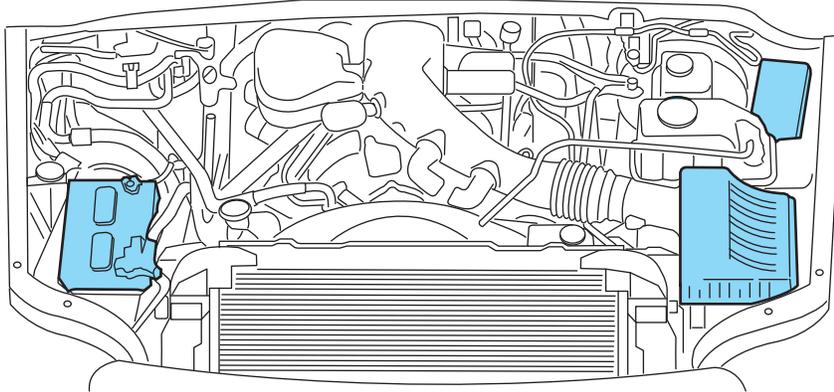
## Cleaning

- Do not spray a hot engine with cold water to avoid cracking the engine block or other engine components.
- Spray Motorcraft® Engine Shampoo and Degreaser (ZC-20) on all parts that require cleaning and pressure rinse clean.
- Never wash or rinse the engine while it is hot or running; water in the running engine may cause internal damage.
- Never wash or rinse any ignition coil, spark plug wire or spark plug well, or the area in and around these locations.
- Cover the highlighted areas to prevent water damage when cleaning the engine.



- **6.2L V8 gasoline engine**

## Cleaning



- **6.8L V10 gasoline engine**

### **PLASTIC (NON-PAINTED) EXTERIOR PARTS**

Use only approved products to clean plastic parts. These products are available from your authorized dealer.

- For routine cleaning, use Motorcraft® Detail Wash (ZC-3-A).
- If tar or grease spots are present, use Motorcraft® Bug and Tar Remover (ZC-42).

### **WINDOWS AND WIPER BLADES**

The windshield, rear and side windows and the wiper blades should be cleaned regularly. If the wipers do not wipe properly, substances on the vehicle's glass or the wiper blades may be the cause. These may include hot wax treatments used by commercial car washes, water repellent coatings, tree sap, or other organic contamination; these contaminants may cause squeaking or chatter noise from the blades, and streaking and smearing of the windshield. To clean these items, follow these tips:

- The windshield, rear windows and side windows may be cleaned with a non-abrasive cleaner such as Motorcraft® Ultra-Clear Spray Glass Cleaner (ZC-23), available from your authorized dealer.

## Cleaning

- The wiper blades can be cleaned with isopropyl (rubbing) alcohol or Motorcraft® Premium Windshield Washer Concentrate (ZC-32-A) in the U.S., or Premium Quality Windshield Washer Fluid [CXC-37-(A, B, D, or F)] in Canada, available from your authorized dealer. This washer fluid contains special solution in addition to alcohol which helps to remove the hot wax deposited on the wiper blade and windshield from automated car wash facilities. Be sure to replace wiper blades when they appear worn or do not function properly.
- Do not use abrasives, as they may cause scratches.
- Do not use fuel, kerosene, or paint thinner to clean any parts.

### INSTRUMENT PANEL/INTERIOR TRIM AND CLUSTER LENS (EXCEPT HARLEY-DAVIDSON)

Clean the instrument panel, interior trim areas and cluster lens with a clean and damp, white cotton cloth, then with a clean and dry, white cotton cloth.

- Avoid cleaners or polishes that increase the gloss of the upper portion of the instrument panel. The dull finish in this area helps protect the driver from undesirable windshield reflection.
- Be certain to wash or wipe your hands clean if you have been in contact with certain products such as insect repellent and suntan lotion in order to avoid possible damage to the interior painted surfaces.
- Do not use household or glass cleaners as these may damage the finish of the instrument panel, interior trim and cluster lens.
- Do not allow air fresheners and hand sanitizers to spill on interior surfaces. If a spill occurs, **wipe off immediately**. Damage may not be covered by your warranty.



**WARNING:** Do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents when cleaning the steering wheel or instrument panel to avoid contamination of the airbag system.

If a staining liquid like coffee/juice has been spilled on the instrument panel or on interior trim surfaces, clean as follows:

1. Wipe up spilled liquid using a clean white cotton cloth.
2. Wipe the surface with a damp, clean, white cotton cloth. For more thorough cleaning, use a mild soap and water solution. If the spot cannot be completely cleaned by this method, the area may be cleaned using a commercially available cleaning product designed for automotive interiors.

364

## Cleaning

3. If necessary, apply more soap and water solution or cleaning product to a clean, white, cotton cloth and press the cloth onto the soiled area—allow this to set at room temperature for 30 minutes.
4. Remove the soaked cloth, and if it is not soiled badly, use this cloth to clean the area by using a rubbing motion for 60 seconds.
5. Following this, wipe area dry with a clean, white, cotton cloth.

### **INSTRUMENT PANEL AND CONSOLE (HARLEY-DAVIDSON ONLY)**

Your vehicle's instrument panel and console are uniquely painted with both high and low gloss paints that require special care. The high gloss area is similar to that of the vehicle's exterior; the low gloss area is designed to help protect the driver from undesirable windshield reflection.

#### **High gloss paint area**

In order to maintain the finish of the instrument panel and console, the high gloss areas should be treated similar to the that of exterior paint or glossy plastic surfaces. When cleaning the high gloss areas:

- **Do not use** paper towels or newspaper.
- **Do not use** silicone or Teflon® (PTFE)-based products.

Dust the high gloss areas with a clean, dry cloth, or use Motorcraft® Dusting Cloth (ZC-24).

For general cleaning, use mild, soapy water and a soft, damp cloth, then dry with a clean, dry cloth.

For removal of fine scuffs and scratches, use Scotch-Brite Microfiber Cloth or cheese cloth along with Motorcraft® Premium Liquid Wax (ZC-53-A). Note: Removal of deep scuffs and scratches should be performed by an authorized dealer or an experienced repair facility.

#### **Low gloss paint area**

The low gloss area of the instrument panel's upper dash should be cleaned with mild, soapy water and a soft, damp cloth, then dried with a clean, dry cloth. When cleaning the low gloss areas:

- **Do not use** paper towels or newspaper.
- **Do not use** silicone or Teflon® (PTFE)-based products.
- **Do not use** exterior paint waxes or sealants.

Dust the low gloss areas with a clean, dry cloth, or use Motorcraft® Dusting Cloth (ZC-24).

## Cleaning

### INTERIOR

For fabric, carpets, cloth seats and safety belts:

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
- Remove light stains and soil with Motorcraft® Professional Strength Carpet & Upholstery Cleaner (ZC-54).
- If grease or tar is present on the material, spot-clean the area first with Motorcraft® Spot and Stain Remover (ZC-14). In Canada, use Motorcraft® Multi-Purpose Cleaner (CXC-101).
- If a ring forms on the fabric after spot cleaning, clean the entire area immediately (but do not oversaturate) or the ring will set.
- Do not use household cleaning products or glass cleaners, which can stain and discolor the fabric and affect the flame retardant abilities of the seat materials.



**WARNING:** Do not use cleaning solvents, bleach or dye on the vehicle's seatbelts, as these actions may weaken the belt webbing.

### LEATHER SEATS (IF EQUIPPED, EXCEPT FOR THE KING RANCH® EDITION)

**For King Ranch® leather seats, refer to a separate section in this chapter.**

- Clean spills and stains as quickly as possible.
- For routine cleaning, wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth. For more thorough cleaning, wipe the surface with a mild soap and water solution. In Canada, use Motorcraft® Vinyl Cleaner (CXC-93). Dry the area with a soft cloth.
- If the leather cannot be completely cleaned using a mild soap and water solution, the leather may be cleaned using a commercially available leather cleaning product designed for automotive interiors.
- To check for compatibility, first test any cleaner or stain remover on an inconspicuous part of the leather.
- Do not use household cleaning products, alcohol solutions, solvents or cleaners intended for rubber, vinyl and plastics, or oil/petroleum-based leather conditioners. These products may cause premature wearing or damage to the leather.

366

## Cleaning

### LEATHER SEATS FOR THE KING RANCH® EDITION ONLY (IF EQUIPPED)

Your vehicle is equipped with seating covered in premium, top-grain leather which is extremely durable, but still requires special care and maintenance in order to ensure longevity and comfort.

Regular cleaning and conditioning will maintain the appearance of the leather.

#### Cleaning

For dirt, use a vacuum cleaner then use a clean, damp cloth or soft brush.

For routine cleaning, wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth. For more thorough cleaning, wipe the surface with a mild soap and water solution.

- Clean spills as quickly as possible.
- Test any cleaner or stain remover on an inconspicuous part of the leather as cleaners may darken the leather.
- Do not spill coffee, ketchup, mustard, orange juice or oil-based products on the leather as they may permanently stain the leather.
- Do not use household cleaning products, alcohol solutions, solvents or cleaners intended for rubber, vinyl or plastics.

#### Scratches

Natural Markings - Because the leather in the seat comes from genuine steer hides, there will be evidence of naturally occurring markings, such as small scars. These markings give character to the seating covers and should be considered as proof of a genuine leather product.

In order to lessen the appearance of certain scratches and other wear marks, apply conditioner on the affected area following the same instructions as in the *Conditioning* section.

#### Conditioning

Bottles of King Ranch® Leather Conditioner are available at the King Ranch® Saddle Shop. Visit the website at [www.krsaddleshop.com](http://www.krsaddleshop.com), or telephone (in the United States) 1-800-282-KING (5464). If you are unable to obtain King Ranch® Leather Conditioner, use another premium leather conditioner.

- Clean the surfaces using the steps outlined in the *Cleaning* section.
- Ensure the leather is dry then apply a nickel-sized amount of conditioner to a clean, dry cloth.
- Rub the conditioner into leather until it disappears. Allow the conditioner to dry and repeat the process for the entire interior. If a film appears, wipe off film with a dry, clean cloth.

## Cleaning

### UNDERBODY

Flush the complete underside of your vehicle frequently. Keep body and door drain holes free from packed dirt.

**Note:** Use care when using a power washer to clean the driveline, especially the driveshaft and interfacing components. The high-pressure fluid could penetrate the sealed parts and cause damage.

### FORD AND LINCOLN CAR CARE PRODUCTS

Your authorized dealer has many quality products available to clean your vehicle and protect its finishes. These quality products have been specifically engineered to fulfill your automotive needs; they are custom designed to complement the style and appearance of your vehicle. Each product is made from high quality materials that meet or exceed rigid specifications. For best results, use the following products or products of equivalent quality:

- Motorcraft® Bug and Tar Remover (ZC-42)
- Motorcraft® Custom Bright Metal Cleaner (ZC-15)
- Motorcraft® Detail Wash (ZC-3-A)
- Motorcraft® Dusting Cloth (ZC-24)
- Motorcraft® Engine Shampoo and Degreaser (U.S. only) (ZC-20)
- Motorcraft® Engine Shampoo (Canada only) (CXC-66-A)
- Motorcraft® Multi-Purpose Cleaner (Canada only) (CXC-101)
- Motorcraft® Premium Glass Cleaner (Canada only) (CXC-100)
- Motorcraft® Professional Strength Carpet & Upholstery Cleaner (ZC-54)
- Motorcraft® Spot and Stain Remover (U.S. only) (ZC-14)
- Motorcraft® Ultra-Clear Spray Glass Cleaner (ZC-23)
- Motorcraft® Vinyl Cleaner (Canada only) (CXC-93)
- Motorcraft® Wheel and Tire Cleaner (ZC-37-A)

## Maintenance and Specifications

### SERVICE RECOMMENDATIONS

To help you service your vehicle, we provide *scheduled maintenance information* which makes tracking routine service easy.

If your vehicle requires professional service, your authorized dealer can provide the necessary parts and service. Check your *Warranty Guide* to find out which parts and services are covered.

Use only recommended fuels, lubricants, fluids and service parts conforming to specifications. Motorcraft® parts are designed and built to provide the best performance in your vehicle.

### PRECAUTIONS WHEN SERVICING YOUR VEHICLE

- Do not work on a hot engine.
- Make sure that nothing gets caught in moving parts.
- Do not work on a vehicle with the engine running in an enclosed space, unless you are sure you have enough ventilation.
- Keep all open flames and other burning material (such as cigarettes) away from the battery and all fuel related parts.

### Working with the engine off

1. Set the parking brake and ensure the gearshift is securely latched in P (Park).
2. Turn off the engine and remove the key.
3. Block the wheels to prevent the vehicle from moving unexpectedly.

### Working with the engine on



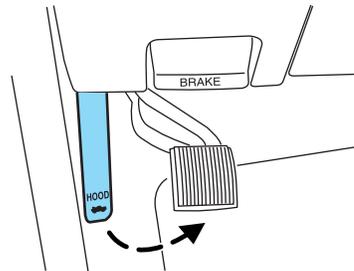
**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and/or personal burn injuries, do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

1. Set the parking brake and shift to P (Park).
2. Block the wheels.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### OPENING THE HOOD

1. Inside the vehicle, pull the hood release handle located under the bottom left corner of the instrument panel.
2. Go to the front of the vehicle to release the auxiliary latch located at the top center of the grille. Slide the handle left to release the auxiliary latch.
3. Lift the hood until the lift cylinders hold it open.

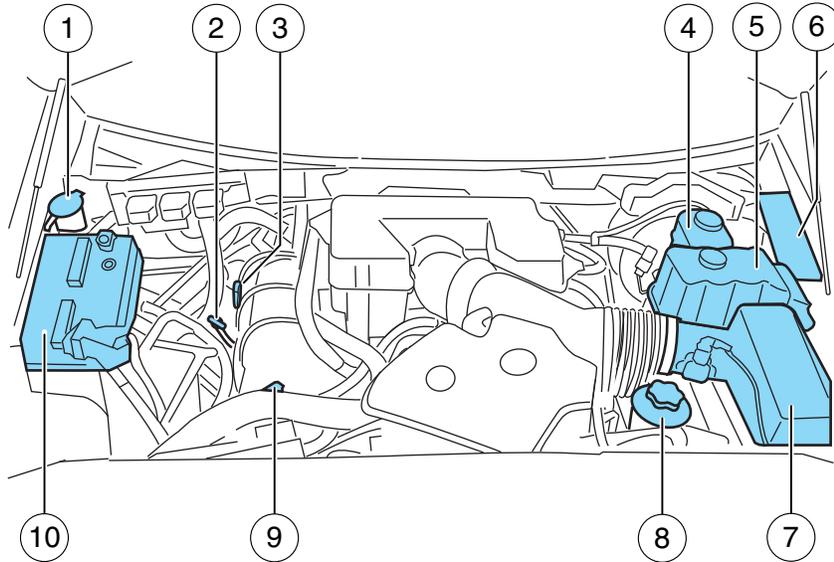


### IDENTIFYING COMPONENTS IN THE ENGINE COMPARTMENT

Refer to the diesel supplement for diesel engine component locations.

## Maintenance and Specifications

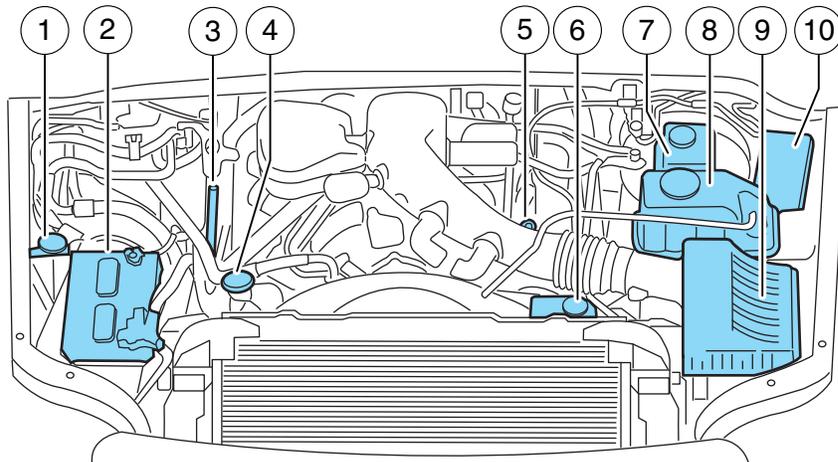
### 6.2L V8 gasoline engine



1. Windshield washer fluid reservoir
2. Engine oil dipstick
3. Automatic transmission fluid dipstick
4. Brake fluid reservoir
5. Engine coolant reservoir
6. Power distribution box
7. Air filter assembly
8. Power steering fluid reservoir
9. Engine oil filler cap
10. Battery

## Maintenance and Specifications

### 6.8L V10 gasoline engine



1. Windshield washer fluid reservoir
2. Battery
3. Automatic transmission fluid dipstick
4. Engine oil filler cap
5. Engine oil dipstick
6. Power steering fluid reservoir
7. Brake fluid reservoir
8. Engine coolant reservoir
9. Air filter assembly
10. Power distribution box

## Maintenance and Specifications

### WINDSHIELD WASHER FLUID

Add fluid to fill the reservoir if the level is low. In very cold weather, do not fill the reservoir completely.

Only use a washer fluid that meets Ford specifications. Do not use any special washer fluid such as windshield water repellent type fluid or bug wash. They may cause squeaking, chatter noise, streaking and smearing. Refer to *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* in this chapter.



State or local regulations on volatile organic compounds may restrict the use of methanol, a common windshield washer antifreeze additive. Washer fluids containing non-methanol antifreeze agents should be used only if they provide cold weather protection without damaging the vehicle's paint finish, wiper blades or washer system.



**WARNING:** If you operate your vehicle in temperatures below 40°F (5°C), use washer fluid with antifreeze protection. Failure to use washer fluid with antifreeze protection in cold weather could result in impaired windshield vision and increase the risk of injury or accident.

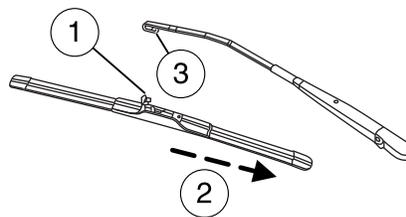
### CHANGING THE WIPER BLADES

1. Pull the wiper arm away from the vehicle. Pry open the lock cover with your thumb (1) to release the blade and pull the wiper blade down toward the windshield to remove it from the arm (2).

2. Insert the wiper arm hook into the wiper arm (3).

3. While holding the wiper arm, push the wiper blade up and away from the windshield.

4. Close the lock cover.



Replace wiper blades at least once per year for optimum performance.

373

## Maintenance and Specifications

Poor wiper quality can be improved by cleaning the wiper blades and the windshield. Refer to *Windows and wiper blades* in the *Cleaning* chapter.

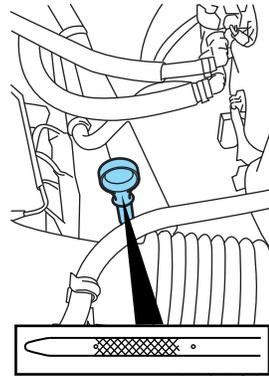
To prolong the life of the wiper blades, it is highly recommended to scrape off the ice on the windshield before turning on the wipers. The layer of ice has many sharp edges and can damage the micro edge of the wiper rubber element.

### ENGINE OIL

#### Checking the engine oil

Refer to the *scheduled maintenance information* for the appropriate intervals for checking the engine oil.

1. Make sure the vehicle is on level ground.
2. Turn the engine off and wait 15 minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan.
3. Set the parking brake and ensure the gearshift is securely latched in P (Park).
4. Open the hood. Protect yourself from engine heat.
5. Locate and carefully remove the engine oil dipstick.
  - 6.2L/6.8L gasoline engines only; for diesel engine information, refer to the diesel supplement.



6. Wipe the dipstick clean. Insert the dipstick fully, then remove it again.
  - If the oil level is **between the two holes**, the oil level is acceptable. **DO NOT ADD OIL.**
  - If the oil level is at or below the lower hole, add enough oil to raise the level to within the two holes.

374

## Maintenance and Specifications

- Oil levels above the upper hole may cause engine damage. Some oil must be removed from the engine by a service technician.
7. Put the dipstick back in and ensure it is fully seated.

### Adding engine oil

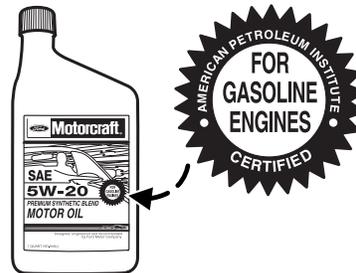
1. Check the engine oil. For instructions, refer to *Checking the engine oil* in this chapter.
2. If the engine oil level is not within the normal range, add only certified engine oil of the recommended viscosity. Remove the engine oil filler cap and use a funnel to pour the engine oil into the opening.
3. Recheck the engine oil level. Make sure the oil level is not above the normal operating range on the engine oil level dipstick.
4. Install the dipstick and ensure it is fully seated.
5. Fully install the engine oil filler cap by turning the filler cap clockwise 1/4 of a turn until three clicks are heard or until the cap is fully seated.

**To avoid possible oil loss, DO NOT operate the vehicle with the engine oil level dipstick and/or the engine oil filler cap removed.**

### Engine oil and filter recommendations

Look for this certification trademark.

(6.2L/6.8L gasoline engines only. For diesel engine information, refer to the diesel supplement).



### Use SAE 5W-20 engine oil

Only use oils certified for gasoline engines by the American Petroleum Institute (API). An oil with this trademark symbol conforms to the current engine and emission system protection standards and fuel economy requirements of the International Lubricant Standardization and Approval Committee (ILSAC), comprised of U.S. and Japanese automobile manufacturers.

## Maintenance and Specifications

To protect your engine and engine's warranty, use Motorcraft® SAE 5W-20 or an equivalent SAE 5W-20 oil meeting Ford specification WSS-M2C945-A. **SAE 5W-20 oil provides optimum fuel economy and durability performance meeting all requirements for your vehicle's engine.** Refer to *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* later in this chapter for more information.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives, cleaners or other engine treatments. They are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that is not covered by Ford warranty.

Change your engine oil and filter according to the appropriate schedule listed in the *scheduled maintenance information*.

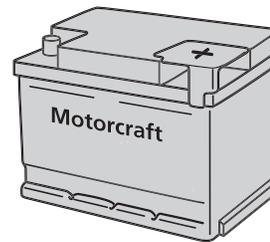
Ford production and Motorcraft® replacement oil filters are designed for added engine protection and long life. If a replacement oil filter is used that does not meet Ford material and design specifications, start-up engine noises or knock may be experienced.

It is recommended you use the appropriate Motorcraft® oil filter or another with equivalent performance for your engine application.

### BATTERY



**WARNING:** This vehicle may be equipped with more than one battery, removal of cable from only one battery does not disconnect the vehicle electrical system. Be sure to disconnect cables from all batteries when disconnecting power. Failure to do so may cause serious personal injury or property damage.



Your vehicle is equipped with a Motorcraft® maintenance-free battery which normally does not require additional water during its life of service.

**If your battery has a cover/shield, make sure it is reinstalled after the battery has been cleaned or replaced.**

For longer, trouble-free operation, keep the top of the battery clean and dry. Also, make certain the battery cables are always tightly fastened to the battery terminals.

376

## Maintenance and Specifications

If you see any corrosion on the battery or terminals, remove the cables from the terminals and clean with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.

It is recommended that the negative battery cable terminal be disconnected from the battery if you plan to store your vehicle for an extended period of time. This will minimize the discharge of your battery during storage.

**Note: Electrical or electronic accessories or components added to the vehicle by the dealer or the owner may adversely affect battery performance and durability.**



**WARNING:** Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide proper ventilation.



**WARNING:** When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and/or damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.



**WARNING:** Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.



**WARNING:** Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. **Wash hands after handling.**

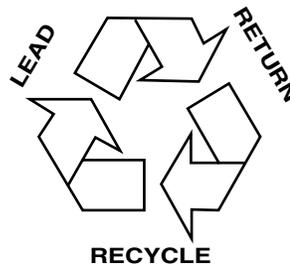
## Maintenance and Specifications

Because your vehicle's engine is electronically controlled by a computer, some control conditions are maintained by power from the battery. When the battery is disconnected or a new battery is installed, the engine must relearn its idle and fuel trim strategy for optimum driveability and performance. To begin this process:

1. With the vehicle at a complete stop, set the parking brake.
  2. Put the gearshift in P (Park), turn off all accessories and start the engine.
  3. Run the engine until it reaches normal operating temperature.
  4. Allow the engine to idle for at least one minute.
  5. Turn the A/C on and allow the engine to idle for at least one minute.
  6. Drive the vehicle to complete the relearning process.
- The vehicle may need to be driven 10 miles (16 km) or more to relearn the idle and fuel trim strategy.
  - **If you do not allow the engine to relearn its idle trim, the idle quality of your vehicle may be adversely affected until the idle trim is eventually relearned.**

If the battery has been disconnected or a new battery has been installed, the clock and radio settings must be reset once the battery is reconnected.

- Always dispose of automotive batteries in a responsible manner. Follow your local authorized standards for disposal. Call your local authorized recycling center to find out more about recycling automotive batteries.



## Maintenance and Specifications

### ENGINE COOLANT

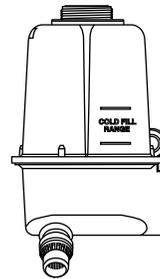
#### Checking engine coolant

The concentration and level of engine coolant should be checked at the intervals listed in *scheduled maintenance information*. The coolant concentration should be maintained at 50/50 coolant and distilled water. For best results, coolant concentration should be tested with a refractometer such as Rotunda tool 300-ROB75240E available from your dealer. Ford does not recommend the use of hydrometers or coolant test strips for measuring coolant concentration. The level of coolant should be maintained at the FULL COLD level or within the COLD FILL RANGE in the coolant reservoir. If the level falls below, add coolant per the instructions in the *Adding engine coolant* section.

Your vehicle was factory-filled with a 50/50 engine coolant and water concentration. If the concentration of coolant falls below 40% or above 60%, the engine parts could become damaged or not work properly. **A 50/50 mixture of coolant and water provides the following:**

- **Improved freeze protection.**
- **Improved boiling protection.**
- **Protection against rust and other forms of corrosion.**
- **Proper function of calibrated gauges.**

When the engine is cold, check the level of the engine coolant in the reservoir.



- The engine coolant should be at the FULL COLD level, or within the COLD FILL or MIN / MAX range as listed on the engine coolant reservoir (depending upon application).
- Refer to *scheduled maintenance information* for service interval schedules.

If the engine coolant has not been checked at the recommended interval, the engine coolant reservoir may become low or empty. If the reservoir is low or empty, add engine coolant to the reservoir. Refer to *Adding engine coolant* in this chapter.

## Maintenance and Specifications

**Note:** Automotive fluids are not interchangeable; do not use engine coolant/antifreeze or windshield washer fluid outside of its specified function and vehicle location.

### Adding engine coolant

When adding coolant, make sure it is a 50/50 mixture of engine coolant and distilled water. Add the mixture to the coolant reservoir, **when the engine is cool**, until the appropriate fill level is obtained. If coolant is filled to the COLD FILL RANGE or FULL COLD level when the engine is not cool, the system will remain underfilled.



**WARNING:** Do not add engine coolant when the engine is hot. Steam and scalding liquids released from a hot cooling system can burn you badly. Also, you can be burned if you spill coolant on hot engine parts.



**WARNING:** Do not put engine coolant in the windshield washer fluid container. If sprayed on the windshield, engine coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.

- **DO NOT MIX** different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle. Make sure the correct coolant is used. Mixing of engine coolants may harm your engine's cooling system. The use of an improper coolant may harm engine and cooling system components and may void the warranty. Refer to *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* in this chapter.

**Note:** Do not use stop leak pellets or cooling system sealants/additives as they can cause damage to the engine cooling and/or heating systems. This damage would not be covered under your vehicle's warranty.

- A large amount of water without engine coolant may be added, in case of emergency, to reach a vehicle service location. In this instance, the cooling system must be drained, chemically cleaned with Motorcraft® Premium Cooling System Flush, and refilled with a 50/50 mixture of engine coolant and distilled water as soon as possible. Water alone (without engine coolant) can cause engine damage from corrosion, overheating or freezing.
- **Do not use alcohol, methanol, brine or any engine coolants mixed with alcohol or methanol antifreeze (coolant).** Alcohol and other liquids can cause engine damage from overheating or freezing.

380

## Maintenance and Specifications

- **Do not add extra inhibitors or additives to the coolant.** These can be harmful and compromise the corrosion protection of the engine coolant.

For vehicles with overflow coolant systems with a non-pressurized cap on the coolant recovery system, add coolant to the coolant recovery reservoir when the engine is cool. Add the proper mixture of coolant and distilled water to the FULL COLD level. For all other vehicles which have a coolant degas system with a pressurized cap, or if it is necessary to remove the coolant pressure relief cap on the radiator of a vehicle with an overflow system, follow these steps to add engine coolant.



**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the engine is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system is under pressure; steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when the cap is loosened slightly.

Add the proper mixture of coolant and water to the cooling system by following these steps:

1. Before you begin, turn the engine off and let it cool.
2. When the engine is cool, wrap a thick cloth around the coolant pressure relief cap on the coolant reservoir (a translucent plastic bottle). Slowly turn cap counterclockwise (left) until pressure begins to release.
3. Step back while the pressure releases.
4. When you are sure that all the pressure has been released, use the cloth to turn it counterclockwise and remove the cap.
5. Fill the coolant reservoir slowly with the proper coolant mixture, to within the COLD FILL RANGE or the FULL COLD level on the reservoir. If you removed the radiator cap in an overflow system, fill the radiator until the coolant is visible and radiator is almost full.
6. Replace the cap. Turn until tightly installed. Cap must be tightly installed to prevent coolant loss.

After any coolant has been added, check the coolant concentration (refer to *Checking engine coolant*). If the concentration is not 50/50, drain some coolant and adjust the concentration. It may take several drains and additions to obtain a 50/50 coolant concentration.

Whenever coolant has been added, the coolant level in the coolant reservoir should be checked the next few times you drive the vehicle. If necessary, add enough 50/50 concentration of engine coolant and distilled water to bring the liquid level to the proper level.

## Maintenance and Specifications

If you have to add more than 1.0 quart (1.0 liter) of engine coolant per month, have your authorized dealer check the engine cooling system. Your cooling system may have a leak. Operating an engine with a low level of coolant can result in engine overheating and possible engine damage.

### Recycled engine coolant

Ford Motor Company does NOT recommend the use of recycled engine coolant since a Ford-approved recycling process is not yet available.



Used engine coolant should be disposed of in an appropriate manner. Follow your community's regulations and standards for recycling and disposing of automotive fluids.

### Coolant refill capacity

To find out how much fluid your vehicle's cooling system can hold, refer to *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* in this chapter.

**If your vehicle is equipped with a diesel engine**, refer to the *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* section of your diesel supplement.

Fill your engine coolant reservoir as outlined previously in the *Adding engine coolant* section.

### Severe climates

If you drive in extremely cold climates:

- **It may be necessary to increase the coolant concentration above 50%.**
- **NEVER increase the coolant concentration above 60%.**
- **A coolant concentration of 60% will provide improved freeze point protection. Increased engine coolant concentrations above 60% will decrease the overheat protection characteristics of the engine coolant and may cause engine damage.**
- **If available, refer to the chart on the coolant container to ensure the coolant concentration in your vehicle will provide adequate freeze protection at the temperatures in which you drive in the winter months.**

## Maintenance and Specifications

If you drive in extremely hot climates:

- **It is still necessary to maintain the coolant concentration above 40%.**
- **NEVER decrease the coolant concentration below 40%.**
- **Decreased engine coolant concentrations below 40% will decrease the corrosion/freeze protection characteristics of the engine coolant and may cause engine damage.**
- **If available, refer to the chart on the coolant container to ensure the coolant concentration in your vehicle will provide adequate protection at the temperatures in which you drive.**

Vehicles driven year-round in non-extreme climates should use a 50/50 mixture of engine coolant and distilled water for optimum cooling system and engine protection.

### What you should know about fail-safe cooling (if equipped)

If the engine coolant supply is depleted, this feature allows the vehicle to be driven temporarily before incremental component damage is incurred. The “fail-safe” distance depends on ambient temperatures, vehicle load and terrain.



**WARNING:** If fail-safe cooling activates, pull off the road as soon as safely possible and turn the engine off. The engine may automatically shut off while driving without further indication.

### How fail-safe cooling works

If the engine begins to overheat:

- The engine coolant temperature gauge will move to the red (hot) area.
- The message center will indicate the engine is overheating.
- The service engine soon  indicator will illuminate.

If the engine reaches a preset over-temperature condition, the engine will automatically switch to alternating cylinder operation. Each disabled cylinder acts as an air pump and cools the engine.

When this occurs the vehicle will still operate. However:

- The engine power will be limited.
- The air conditioning system will be disabled.

Continued operation will increase the engine temperature and the engine will completely shut down, causing steering and braking effort to increase.

## Maintenance and Specifications

Once the engine temperature cools, the engine can be re-started. Take your vehicle to an authorized dealer as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

### ***When fail-safe mode is activated***

You have limited engine power when in the fail-safe mode, so drive the vehicle with caution. The vehicle will not be able to maintain high-speed operation and the engine will run rough. Remember that the engine is capable of completely shutting down automatically to prevent engine damage; therefore:

1. Pull off the road as soon as safely possible and turn off the engine.
2. Arrange for the vehicle to be taken to an authorized dealer.
3. If this is not possible, wait a short period for the engine to cool.
4. Check the coolant level and replenish if low.



**WARNING:** Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

5. Re-start the engine and take your vehicle to an authorized dealer.

**Driving the vehicle without repairing the engine problem increases the chance of engine damage. Take your vehicle to an authorized dealer as soon as possible.**

### **Engine fluid temperature management (except 6.8L V10)**

Your vehicle has been designed to pull a trailer, but because of the added load, the vehicle's engine may temporarily reach higher temperatures during severe operating conditions such as ascending a long or steep grade while pulling a trailer in hot ambient temperatures.

At this time, you may notice your engine coolant temperature gauge needle move toward the H and the POWER REDUCED TO LOWER TEMP message may appear on the message center.

You may notice a reduction in the vehicle's speed caused by reduced engine power. Your vehicle has been designed to enter this mode if certain high temperature/high load conditions take place in order to manage the engine's fluid temperatures. The amount of speed reduction will depend on the vehicle loading, towing, grade, ambient temperature, and other factors. If this occurs, there is no need to pull off the road. The vehicle can continue to be driven while this message is active.

384

## Maintenance and Specifications



**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of collision and injury, be prepared that the vehicle speed may reduce and the vehicle may not be able to accelerate with full power until the fluid temperatures reduce.

The air conditioning may also cycle on and off during severe operating conditions to protect overheating of the engine. When the engine coolant temperature decreases to a more normal operating temperature, the air conditioning will turn on once again.

If you notice any of the following:

- the engine coolant temperature gauge moves fully into the red (hot) area
  - the coolant temperature warning light illuminates
  - the service engine soon indicator illuminates
1. Pull off the road as soon as safely possible and place the vehicle in P (Park).
  2. Leave the engine running until the coolant temperature gauge needle moves away from the H range. After several minutes, if this does not happen, follow the remaining steps.
  3. Turn the engine off and wait for it to cool before checking the coolant level.



**WARNING:** Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

4. If the coolant level is normal, you may restart your engine and continue on.
5. If the coolant is low, add coolant, restart the engine and take your vehicle to an authorized dealer. See *Adding engine coolant* in this chapter for more information.

Refer to fail-safe cooling for additional information.

### FUEL FILTER

Your vehicle is equipped with a lifetime fuel filter (gasoline vehicles only) that is integrated with the fuel tank. Regular maintenance or replacement is not needed. For diesel engine information, refer to the diesel supplement.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### WHAT YOU SHOULD KNOW ABOUT AUTOMOTIVE FUELS

#### Important safety precautions



**WARNING:** Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.



**WARNING:** The fuel system may be under pressure. If the fuel filler cap is venting vapor or if you hear a hissing sound, wait until it stops before completely removing the fuel filler cap. Otherwise, fuel may spray out and injure you or others.



**WARNING:** If you do not use the proper fuel filler cap, excessive vacuum in the fuel tank may damage the fuel system or cause the fuel cap to disengage in a collision, which may result in serious personal injury.



**WARNING:** Automotive fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.



**WARNING:** Fuel ethanol and gasoline may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.

Observe the following guidelines when handling automotive fuel:

- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before fueling your vehicle.
- Always turn off the vehicle before fueling.
- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuels such as gasoline and ethanol are highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed, call a physician immediately, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be visible for hours.
- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling too much fuel vapor of any kind can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.



## Maintenance and Specifications

- Avoid getting fuel liquid in your eyes. If fuel is splashed in the eyes, remove contact lenses (if worn), flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.
- Fuels can also be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If fuel is splashed on the skin and/or clothing, promptly remove contaminated clothing and wash skin thoroughly with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact with fuel liquid or vapor causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking “Antabuse” or other forms of disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing gasoline and/or ethanol vapors, or skin contact could cause an adverse reaction. In sensitive individuals, serious personal injury or sickness may result. If fuel is splashed on the skin, promptly wash skin thoroughly with soap and water. Consult a physician immediately if you experience an adverse reaction.
- FFV fuel tanks may contain zero to 85% ethanol. Any fuel blends containing gasoline and ethanol should be treated the same as “Fuel Ethanol.” To identify if your vehicle is an FFV, it may be equipped with a yellow fuel cap with the text “E85/Gasoline”, or check if there is a label on the fuel filler door.

Pure ethanol is the alcohol which is the intoxicating agent in liquor, beer and wine. It is distilled from the fermentation of plants such as field corn and sugar cane. When ethanol is produced for use in motor fuels, a small amount of gasoline is added to make it unfit for beverage use. The resulting ethanol blend is called denatured fuel ethanol meaning that it is denatured with 2% to 5% gasoline and is suitable for automotive use.

During the summer season, fuel ethanol may contain a maximum of 85% denatured ethanol (Ed85) and 15% unleaded gasoline. The fuel ethanol has a higher octane rating than unleaded regular or premium gasoline and this allows the design of engines with greater efficiency and power.

Winter blends may contain up to 75% denatured ethanol (Ed75) and up to 25% unleaded gasoline to enhance cold engine starts. Severely cold weather may require additional measures for reliable starting. Refer to *Starting* in the *Driving* chapter.

Ethanol is more chemically active than gasoline. It corrodes some metals and causes some plastic and rubber components to swell, break down or become brittle and crack, especially when mixed with gasoline. Special materials and procedures have been developed for flexible fuel vehicles and the dispensers used by ethanol fuel providers.

## Maintenance and Specifications

 **WARNING:** Flexible fuel components and standard unleaded gasoline fuel components are not interchangeable. If your vehicle is not serviced in accordance with flexible fuel vehicles procedures, damage may occur and your warranty may be invalidated.

 **WARNING:** When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the filler neck. Never smoke while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Care should be taken to avoid inhaling excess fumes.

 **WARNING:** The flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity, which can cause a fire if fuel is pumped into an ungrounded fuel container.

### Refueling

 **WARNING:** Fuel vapor burns violently and a fuel fire can cause severe injuries. To help avoid injuries to you and others:

- Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island;
- Turn off your engine when you are refueling;
- Do not smoke if you are near fuel or refueling your vehicle;
- Keep sparks, flames and smoking materials away from fuel;
- Stay outside your vehicle and do not leave the fuel pump unattended when refueling your vehicle — this is against the law in some places;
- Keep children away from the fuel pump; never let children pump fuel.
- Do not use personal electronic devices while refueling.

Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

- Place approved fuel container on the ground.
- DO NOT fill a fuel container while it is in the vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container while filling.
- DO NOT use a device that would hold the fuel pump handle in the fill position.

388

## Maintenance and Specifications

### Fuel filler cap

When fueling your vehicle:

1. Turn the engine off.
2. Carefully turn the filler cap counterclockwise until it spins off.
3. Pull to remove the cap from the fuel filler pipe.
4. To install the cap, align the tabs on the cap with the notches on the filler pipe.
5. Turn the filler cap clockwise until it clicks.

If the check fuel cap indicator comes on and stays on after you start the engine, the fuel filler cap may not be properly installed. Turn off the engine, remove the fuel filler cap, align the cap properly and reinstall it.

**If you must replace the fuel filler cap, replace it with a fuel filler cap that is designed for your vehicle. The vehicle warranty may be void for any damage to the fuel tank or fuel system if the correct genuine Ford or Motorcraft® fuel filler cap is not used.**



**WARNING:** The fuel system may be under pressure. If the fuel filler cap is venting vapor or if you hear a hissing sound, wait until it stops before completely removing the fuel filler cap. Otherwise, fuel may spray out and injure you or others.



**WARNING:** If you do not use the proper fuel filler cap, excessive pressure or vacuum in the fuel tank may damage the fuel system or cause the fuel cap to disengage in a collision, which may result in possible personal injury.

### ***FFV (Flex Fuel Vehicle) fuel cap***

If your vehicle is FFV capable, it will have a yellow colored fuel cap.

### **Choosing the right fuel**

If your vehicle is a flexible fuel vehicle (FFV), use only UNLEADED FUEL and FUEL ETHANOL (Ed75–Ed85).

If your vehicle is not a flexible fuel vehicle (FFV), then only use UNLEADED fuel or UNLEADED fuel blended with a maximum of 10% ethanol. Do not use fuel ethanol (E85), diesel, methanol, leaded fuel or any other fuel.

The use of leaded fuel is prohibited by law and could damage your vehicle.

## Maintenance and Specifications

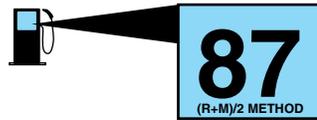
Your vehicle was not designed to use fuel or fuel additives with metallic compounds, including manganese-based additives.

**Note:** Use of any fuel other than those recommended may cause powertrain damage, a loss of vehicle performance, and repairs may not be covered under warranty.

### Octane recommendations

“Regular” unleaded gasoline with a pump (R+M)/2 octane rating of 87 is recommended. Some stations offer fuels posted as “Regular” with an octane rating below 87, particularly in high altitude areas. Fuels with octane levels below 87 are not recommended.

Do not be concerned if your engine sometimes knocks lightly. However, if it knocks heavily under most driving conditions while you are using fuel with the recommended octane rating, see your authorized dealer to prevent any engine damage.



### FFV engine (if equipped)

If your vehicle is flex fuel capable, it is designed to use Fuel Ethanol (Ed75–Ed85), “Regular” unleaded gasoline or any mixture of the two fuels.

**Use of other fuels such as Fuel Methanol may cause powertrain damage, a loss of vehicle performance, and your warranty may be invalidated.**

It is best not to alternate repeatedly between gasoline and E85. If you do switch fuels, it is recommended that you add as much fuel as possible—at least half a tank. Do not add less than five gallons (18.9L) when refueling. You should drive the vehicle immediately after refueling for at least 5 miles (8 km) to allow the vehicle to adapt to the change in ethanol concentration.

If you exclusively use E85 fuel, it is recommended to fill the fuel tank with regular unleaded gasoline at each scheduled oil change.

### Fuel quality

#### *Unleaded gasoline engines*

If you experience starting, rough idle or hesitation driveability problems during a cold start, try a different brand of “Regular” unleaded gasoline.

#### *FFV engines*

If you experience starting, rough idle or hesitation driveability problems during a cold start, try a different brand of E85 fuel. If the driveability

390

## Maintenance and Specifications

problems continue, fill the vehicle with regular unleaded gasoline and drive vehicle normally until gasoline is used. See your authorized dealer if the problem persists.

Do not add aftermarket fuel additive products to your fuel tank. It should not be necessary to add any aftermarket products to your fuel tank if you continue to use high quality fuel of the recommended octane rating. These products have not been approved for your engine and could cause damage to the fuel system. Repairs to correct the effects of using an aftermarket product in your fuel may not be covered by your warranty.

Many of the world's automakers approved the World-Wide Fuel Charter that recommends gasoline specifications to provide improved performance and emission control system protection for your vehicle. Gasolines that meet the World-Wide Fuel Charter should be used when available. Ask your fuel supplier about gasolines that meet the World-Wide Fuel Charter.

### **Diesel engine (if equipped)**

Refer to the diesel supplement for information regarding diesel fuel recommendations and requirements of your diesel-powered truck.

### **Cleaner air**

Ford endorses the use of reformulated "cleaner-burning" gasolines to improve air quality, per the recommendations in the *Choosing the right fuel* section.

### **Running out of fuel**

Avoid running out of fuel because this situation may have an adverse effect on powertrain components.

If you have run out of fuel:

- You may need to cycle the ignition from off to on several times after refueling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. On restarting, cranking time will take a few seconds longer than normal.
- Normally, adding 1 gallon (3.8L) of fuel is enough to restart the engine. If the vehicle is out of fuel and on a steep grade, more than 1 gallon (3.8L) may be required.
- The service engine soon  indicator may come on. For more information on the service engine soon  indicator, refer to *Warning lights and chimes* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### ESSENTIALS OF GOOD FUEL ECONOMY

#### Measuring techniques

Your best source of information about actual fuel economy is you, the driver. You must gather information as accurately and consistently as possible. Fuel expense, frequency of fill-ups or fuel gauge readings are NOT accurate as a measure of fuel economy. We do not recommend taking fuel economy measurements during the first 1,000 miles (1,600 km) of driving (engine break-in period). You will get a more accurate measurement after 2,000 miles–3,000 miles (3,000 km–5,000 km).

#### Filling the tank

The advertised fuel capacity of the fuel tank on your vehicle is equal to the rated refill capacity of the fuel tank as listed in the *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* section of this chapter.

The advertised capacity is the amount of the indicated capacity and the empty reserve combined. Indicated capacity is the difference in the amount of fuel in a full tank and a tank when the fuel gauge indicates empty. Empty reserve is the small amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank after the fuel gauge indicates empty.

**The amount of usable fuel in the empty reserve varies and should not be relied upon to increase driving range. When refueling your vehicle after the fuel gauge indicates empty, you might not be able to refuel the full amount of the advertised capacity of the fuel tank due to the empty reserve still present in the tank.**

For consistent results when filling the fuel tank:

- Turn the engine/ignition switch to the off position prior to refueling, an error in the reading will result if the engine is left running.
- Use the same filling rate setting (low — medium — high) each time the tank is filled.
- Allow no more than two automatic click-offs when filling.
- Always use fuel with the recommended octane rating.
- Use a known quality gasoline, preferably a national brand.
- Have the vehicle loading and distribution the same every time.

Your results will be most accurate if your filling method is consistent.

#### Calculating fuel economy

1. Fill the fuel tank completely and record the initial odometer reading (in miles or kilometers).

392

## Maintenance and Specifications

2. Each time you fill the tank, record the amount of fuel added (in gallons or liters).
3. After at least three to five tank fill-ups, fill the fuel tank and record the current odometer reading.
4. Subtract your initial odometer reading from the current odometer reading.
5. Follow one of the simple calculations in order to determine fuel economy:

Calculation 1: **Divide total miles traveled by total gallons used.**

Calculation 2: **Multiply liters used by 100, then divide by total kilometers traveled.**

Keep a record for at least one month and record the type of driving (city or highway). This will provide an accurate estimate of the vehicle's fuel economy under current driving conditions. Additionally, keeping records during summer and winter will show how temperature impacts fuel economy. In general, lower temperatures give lower fuel economy.

### Driving style — good driving and fuel economy habits

Give consideration to the lists that follow and you may be able to change a number of variables and improve your fuel economy.

#### **Habits**

- Smooth, moderate operation can yield up to 10% savings in fuel.
- Steady speeds without stopping will usually give the best fuel economy.
- Idling for long periods of time (greater than one minute) may waste fuel.
- Anticipate stopping; slowing down may eliminate the need to stop.
- Sudden or hard accelerations may reduce fuel economy.
- Slow down gradually.
- Driving at reasonable speeds (traveling at 55 mph [88 km/h] uses 15% less fuel than traveling at 65 mph [105 km/h]).
- Revving the engine before turning it off may reduce fuel economy.
- Using the air conditioner or defroster may reduce fuel economy.
- You may want to turn off the speed control in hilly terrain if unnecessary shifting between the top gears occurs. Unnecessary shifting of this type could result in reduced fuel economy.

## Maintenance and Specifications

- Warming up a vehicle on cold mornings is not required and may reduce fuel economy.
- Resting your foot on the brake pedal while driving may reduce fuel economy.
- Combine errands and minimize stop-and-go driving.

### **Maintenance**

- Keep tires properly inflated and use only recommended size.
- Operating a vehicle with the wheels out of alignment will reduce fuel economy.
- Use recommended engine oil. Refer to *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* in this chapter.
- Perform all regularly scheduled maintenance items. Follow the recommended maintenance schedule and owner maintenance checks found in *scheduled maintenance information*.

### **Conditions**

- Heavily loading a vehicle or towing a trailer may reduce fuel economy at any speed.
- Carrying unnecessary weight may reduce fuel economy (approximately 1 mpg [0.4 km/L] is lost for every 400 lb [180 kg] of weight carried).
- Adding certain accessories to your vehicle (for example bug deflectors, rollbars/light bars, running boards, ski/luggage racks) may reduce fuel economy.
- To maximize the fuel economy, drive with the tonneau cover installed (if equipped).
- Using fuel blended with alcohol may lower fuel economy.
- Fuel economy may decrease with lower temperatures during the first 8–10 miles (12–16 km) of driving.
- Driving on flat terrain offers improved fuel economy as compared to driving on hilly terrain.
- Transmissions give their best fuel economy when operated in the top cruise gear and with steady pressure on the gas pedal.
- Four-wheel-drive operation (if equipped) is less fuel efficient than two-wheel-drive operation.
- Close windows for high speed driving.

394

## Maintenance and Specifications

### EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM



**WARNING:** Do not park, idle, or drive your vehicle in dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, which can start a fire.



**WARNING:** Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your dealer inspect your vehicle immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

Your vehicle is equipped with various emission control components and a catalytic converter which will enable your vehicle to comply with applicable exhaust emission standards. To make sure that the catalytic converter and other emission control components continue to work properly:

- Use only the specified fuel listed.
- Avoid running out of fuel.
- Do not turn off the ignition while your vehicle is moving, especially at high speeds.
- Have the items listed in *scheduled maintenance information* performed according to the specified schedule.

The scheduled maintenance items listed in *scheduled maintenance information* are essential to the life and performance of your vehicle and to its emissions system.

If other than Ford, Motorcraft® or Ford-authorized parts are used for maintenance replacements or for service of components affecting emission control, such non-Ford parts should be equivalent to genuine Ford Motor Company parts in performance and durability.

Illumination of the service engine soon indicator, charging system warning light or the temperature warning light, fluid leaks, strange odors, smoke or loss of engine power could indicate that the emission control system is not working properly.

An improperly operating or damaged exhaust system may allow exhaust to enter the vehicle. Have a damaged or improperly operating exhaust system inspected and repaired immediately.

## Maintenance and Specifications

Do not make any unauthorized changes to your vehicle or engine. By law, vehicle owners and anyone who manufactures, repairs, services, sells, leases, trades vehicles, or supervises a fleet of vehicles are not permitted to intentionally remove an emission control device or prevent it from working. Information about your vehicle's emission system is on the Vehicle Emission Control Information Decal located on or near the engine. This decal also lists engine displacement.

Please consult your *Warranty Guide* for complete emission warranty information.

### On-board diagnostics (OBD-II)

Your vehicle is equipped with a computer that monitors the engine's emission control system. This system is commonly known as the on-board diagnostics system (OBD-II). The OBD-II system protects the environment by ensuring that your vehicle continues to meet government emission standards. The OBD-II system also assists your authorized dealer in properly servicing your vehicle. When the service engine soon  indicator illuminates, the OBD-II system has detected a malfunction. Temporary malfunctions may cause the service engine soon  indicator to illuminate. Examples are:

1. The vehicle has run out of fuel—the engine may misfire or run poorly.
2. Poor fuel quality or water in the fuel—the engine may misfire or run poorly.
3. The fuel cap may not have been securely tightened. See *Fuel filler cap* in this chapter.
4. Driving through deep water—the electrical system may be wet.

These temporary malfunctions can be corrected by filling the fuel tank with good quality fuel, properly tightening the fuel cap or letting the electrical system dry out. After three driving cycles without these or any other temporary malfunctions present, the service engine soon  indicator should stay off the next time the engine is started. A driving cycle consists of a cold engine startup followed by mixed city/highway driving. No additional vehicle service is required.

If the service engine soon  indicator remains on, have your vehicle serviced at the first available opportunity. Although some malfunctions detected by the OBD-II may not have symptoms that are apparent, continued driving with the service engine soon  indicator on can result in increased emissions, lower fuel economy, reduced engine and transmission smoothness, and lead to more costly repairs.

396

## Maintenance and Specifications

### Readiness for Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) testing

Some state/provincial and local governments may have Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) programs to inspect the emission control equipment on your vehicle. Failure to pass this inspection could prevent you from getting a vehicle registration. Your vehicle may not pass the I/M test if the service engine soon  indicator is on or not working properly (bulb is burned out), or if the OBD-II system has determined that some of the emission control systems have not been properly checked. In this case, the vehicle is considered not ready for I/M testing.

If the service engine soon  indicator is on or the bulb does not work, the vehicle may need to be serviced. Refer to *On-board diagnostics (OBD-II)* in this chapter.

If the vehicle's engine or transmission has just been serviced, or the battery has recently run down or been replaced, the OBD-II system may indicate that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing. To determine if the vehicle is ready for I/M testing, turn the ignition key to the on position for 15 seconds without cranking the engine. If the service engine soon  indicator blinks eight times, it means that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing; if the service engine soon  indicator stays on solid, it means that the vehicle is ready for I/M testing.

The OBD-II system is designed to check the emission control system during normal driving. A complete check may take several days. If the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing, the following driving cycle consisting of mixed city and highway driving may be performed:

15 minutes of steady driving on an expressway/highway followed by 20 minutes of stop-and-go driving with at least four 30-second idle periods.

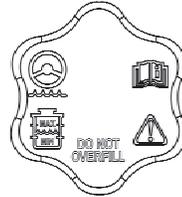
Allow the vehicle to sit for at least eight hours without starting the engine. Then, start the engine and complete the above driving cycle. The engine must warm up to its normal operating temperature. Once started, do not turn off the engine until the above driving cycle is complete. If the vehicle is still not ready for I/M testing, the above driving cycle will have to be repeated.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### POWER STEERING FLUID

Check the power steering fluid. Refer to *scheduled maintenance information*. If adding fluid is necessary, use only MERCON® ATF.

- Gasoline engine shown; diesel engine similar. Refer to *Identifying components in the engine compartment* in the diesel supplement.



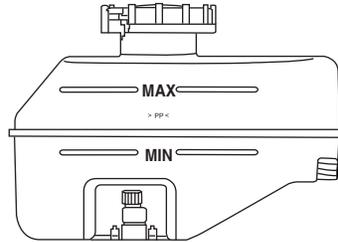
Check the fluid level when it is at ambient temperature, 20°F–80°F (-7°C–25°C):

1. Check the fluid level in the reservoir. It should be between the MIN and MAX range. Do not add fluid if the level is within this range.
2. If the fluid level is low. Add fluid to bring fluid level up to be between the MIN and MAX range.
3. Start the engine.
4. While the engine idles, turn the steering wheel left and right several times.
5. Turn the engine off.
6. Recheck the fluid level in the reservoir. Do not add fluid if the level is between the MIN and MAX range.
7. If the fluid is low, add fluid in small amounts, continuously checking the level until it is between the MIN and MAX range. Refer to *Maintenance products specifications and capacities* in this chapter for the proper fluid type. Be sure to put the cap back on the reservoir.

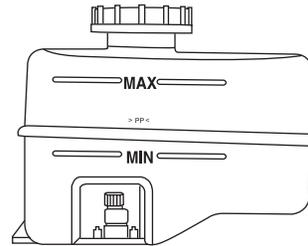
## Maintenance and Specifications

### BRAKE FLUID

- Vacuum boost system



- Hydroboost system



The fluid level will drop slowly as the brakes wear, and will rise when the brake components are replaced. Fluid levels between the top of the MIN and MAX lines are within the normal operating range; there is no need to add fluid. If the fluid levels are outside of the normal operating range, the performance of your brake system could be compromised; seek service from your authorized dealer immediately.

### TRANSMISSION FLUID

#### Checking automatic transmission fluid (if equipped)

Refer to your *scheduled maintenance information* for scheduled intervals for fluid checks and changes. Your transmission does not consume fluid. However, the fluid level should be checked if the transmission is not working properly, i.e., if the transmission slips or shifts slowly or if you notice some sign of fluid leakage.

Automatic transmission fluid expands when warmed. To obtain an accurate fluid check, drive the vehicle until it is at normal operating temperature (approximately 20 miles [30 km]). Verify that the transmission fluid temperature gauge, located on the instrument cluster, is within normal range.

1. Drive the vehicle 20 miles (30 km) or until it reaches normal operating temperature.

## Maintenance and Specifications

2. Park the vehicle on a level surface and engage the parking brake.
3. With the engine running, parking brake engaged and your foot on the brake pedal, move the gearshift lever through all of the gear ranges. Allow sufficient time for each gear to engage.
4. Latch the gearshift lever in P (Park) and leave the engine running.
5. Remove the dipstick, wiping it clean with a clean, dry lint free rag. If necessary, refer to *Identifying components in the engine compartment* in this chapter for the location of the dipstick.
6. Install the dipstick making sure it is fully seated in the filler tube.
7. Remove the dipstick and inspect the fluid level. The fluid should be in the designated area for normal operating temperature or ambient temperature.

Your vehicle is equipped with one of the following dipsticks.

### Low fluid level

Type A



Type B



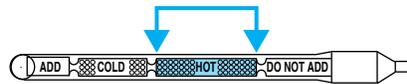
Do not drive the vehicle if there is no indication of fluid on the dipstick and the ambient temperature is above 50°F (10°C).

## Maintenance and Specifications

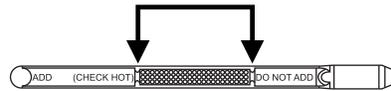
### Correct fluid level

For vehicles equipped with 5-speed transmissions, the fluid should be checked at normal operating temperature 150°F-170°F (66°C-77°C) on a level surface. For vehicles equipped with 6-speed transmissions, the fluid should be checked at normal operating temperature 180°F-200°F (82°C-93°C) on a level surface. The normal operating temperature can be reached after approximately 20 miles (30 km) of driving.

Type A



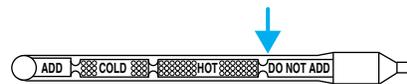
Type B



For vehicles equipped with 5-speed transmissions, the transmission fluid should be in this range if at normal operating temperature (150°F-170°F [66°C-77°C]). For vehicles equipped with 6-speed transmissions, the transmission fluid should be in this range if at normal operating temperature (180°F-200°F [82°C-93°C]).

### High fluid level

Type A



Type B



Fluid levels above the safe range may result in transmission failure. An overfill condition of transmission fluid may cause shift and/or engagement concerns and/or possible damage.

High fluid levels can be caused by an overheating condition.

## Maintenance and Specifications

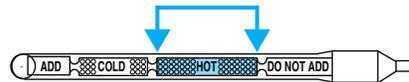
### **Adjusting automatic transmission fluid levels**

Before adding any fluid, make sure the correct type is used. The type of fluid used is normally indicated on the dipstick handle and also in the *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* section in this chapter.

### **Use of a non-approved automatic transmission fluid may cause internal transmission component damage.**

If necessary, add fluid in 1/2 pint (250 ml) increments through the filler tube until the level is correct.

Type A



Type B



If an overfill occurs, excess fluid should be removed by a qualified technician.

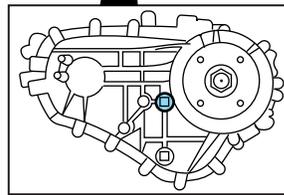
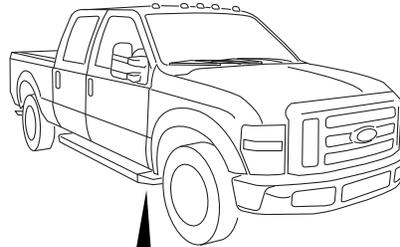
### **An overfill condition of transmission fluid may cause shift and/or engagement concerns and/or possible damage.**

Do not use supplemental transmission fluid additives, treatments or cleaning agents. The use of these materials may affect transmission operation and result in damage to internal transmission components.

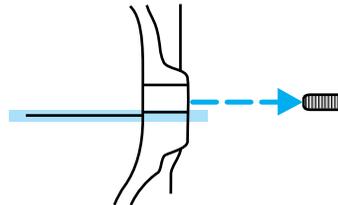
## Maintenance and Specifications

### TRANSFER CASE FLUID (IF EQUIPPED)

1. Clean the filler plug.
2. Remove the filler plug and inspect the fluid level.



3. Add only enough fluid through the filler opening so that the fluid level is at the bottom of the opening.



Use only fluid that meets Ford specifications. Refer to the *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* section in this chapter.

### AIR FILTER

Refer to the *scheduled maintenance information* for the appropriate intervals for changing the air filter element.

When changing the air filter element, use only the Motorcraft® air filter element listed. Refer to *Motorcraft® part numbers* in this chapter.

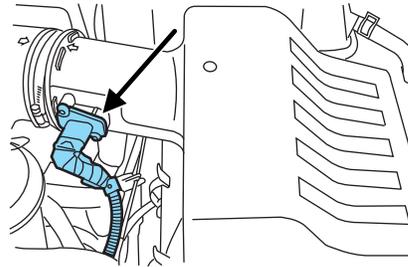
## Maintenance and Specifications

The following procedure is for vehicles equipped with a gasoline engine. If your vehicle is equipped with a diesel engine, refer to the diesel supplement.

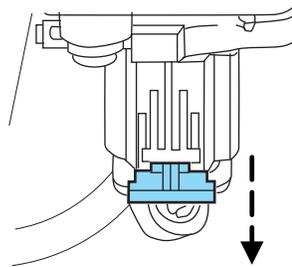
**Note:** Do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

### Changing the air filter element

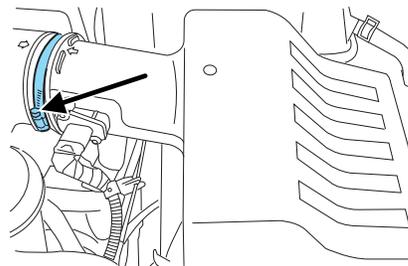
1. Locate the mass air flow sensor electrical connector on the air outlet tube. This connector will need to be unplugged.



2. Reposition the locking clip on the connector (connector shown from below for clarity), squeeze the connector and pull it off of the air outlet tube.



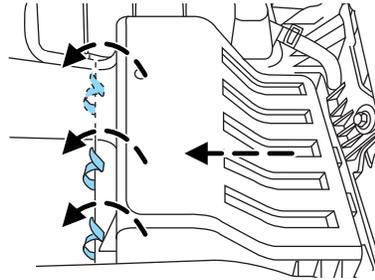
3. Clean the area around the air tube to air cover connection to prevent debris from entering the system and then loosen the bolt on the air tube clamp so the clamp is no longer snug to the air tube. It is not necessary to completely remove the clamp.



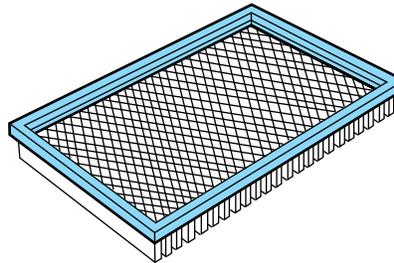
4. Pull the air tube off from the air cleaner housing.

## Maintenance and Specifications

5. Release the three clamps that secure the cover to the air filter housing. Push the air filter cover toward the center of the vehicle and up slightly to release it.

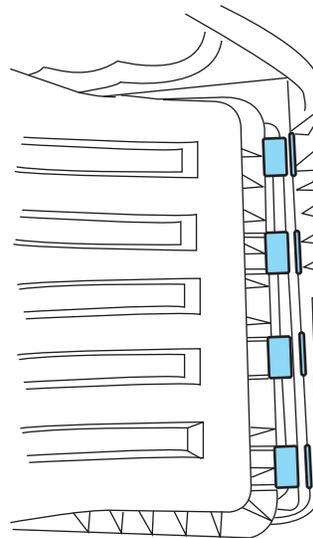


6. Remove the air filter element from the air filter housing.  
7. Install a new air filter element.



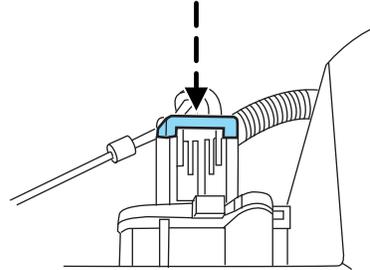
8. Replace the air filter housing cover and secure the clamps. Be careful not to crimp the filter element edges between the air filter housing and cover and ensure that the tabs on the edge are properly aligned into the slots.

9. Slip the air tube onto the air filter housing and tighten the air-tube clamp bolt snugly, but do not overtighten it.



## Maintenance and Specifications

10. Reconnect the mass air flow sensor electrical connector to the outlet tube. Make sure the locking tab on the connector is in the “locked” position (connector shown from below for clarity).



**Note:** Failure to use the correct air filter element may result in severe engine damage. The customer warranty may be void for any damage to the engine if the correct air filter element is not used.

### VEHICLE STORAGE

If you plan on storing your vehicle for an extended period of time (30 days or more), refer to the following maintenance recommendations to ensure your vehicle stays in good operating condition.

All motor vehicles and their components were engineered and tested for reliable, regular driving. Long term storage under various conditions may lead to component degradation or failure unless specific precautions are taken to preserve the components.

#### *General*

- Store all vehicles in a dry, ventilated place.
- Protect from sunlight, if possible.
- If vehicles are stored outside, they require regular maintenance to protect against rust and damage.

#### *Body*

- Wash vehicle thoroughly to remove dirt, grease, oil, tar or mud from exterior surfaces, rear-wheel housing and underside of front fenders. See the *Cleaning* chapter for more information.
- Periodically wash vehicles stored in exposed locations.
- Touch-up raw or primed metal to prevent rust.
- Cover chrome and stainless steel parts with a thick coat of auto wax to prevent discoloration. Re-wax as necessary when the vehicle is washed. See the *Cleaning* chapter for more information.
- Lubricate all hood, door and trunk lid hinges, and latches with a light grade oil. See the *Cleaning* chapter for more information.

406

## Maintenance and Specifications

- Cover interior trim to prevent fading.
- Keep all rubber parts free from oil and solvents.

### *Engine*

- The engine oil and filter should be changed prior to storage, as used engine oil contain contaminants that may cause engine damage.
- Start the engine every 15 days. Run at fast idle until it reaches normal operating temperature.
- With your foot on the brake, shift through all the gears while the engine is running.

### *Fuel system*

- Fill the fuel tank with high-quality fuel until the first automatic shutoff of the fuel pump nozzle.

**Note:** During extended periods of vehicle storage (30 days or more), fuel may deteriorate due to oxidation. Add a quality gas stabilizer product to the vehicle fuel system whenever actual or expected storage periods exceed 30 days. Follow the instructions on the additive label. The vehicle should then be operated at idle speed to circulate the additive throughout the fuel system.

### *Cooling system*

- Protect against freezing temperatures.
- When removing vehicle from storage, check coolant fluid level. Confirm there are no cooling system leaks, and fluid is at the recommended level.

### *Battery*

- Check and recharge as necessary. Keep connections clean.
- If storing your vehicle for more than 30 days without recharging the battery, it may be advisable to disconnect the battery cables to ensure battery charge is maintained for quick starting.

**Note:** If battery cables are disconnected, it will be necessary to reset memory features.

### *Brakes*

- Make sure brakes and parking brake are fully released.

### *Tires*

- Maintain recommended air pressure.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### Miscellaneous

- Make sure all linkages, cables, levers and pins under vehicle are covered with grease to prevent rust.
- Move vehicles at least 25 feet (8 m) every 15 days to lubricate working parts and prevent corrosion.

### MOTORCRAFT PART NUMBERS

Component	6.2L V8 engine	6.8L V10 engine
Air filter element	FA-1883	FA-1883
Oil filter	FL-820-S	FL-820-S
Battery (standard)	BXT-65-650	BXT-65-650
Battery (optional)	BXT-65-750	BXT-65-750
Spark plugs-platinum	<sup>1</sup>	
Windshield wiper blade	WW-2201-PF	

<sup>1</sup>For spark plug replacement, see your authorized dealer. Refer to the *scheduled maintenance information* for the appropriate intervals for changing the spark plugs.

**Replace the spark plugs with ones that meet Ford material and design specifications for your vehicle, such as Motorcraft® or equivalent replacement parts. The customer warranty may be void for any damage to the engine if such spark plugs are not used.**

## Maintenance and Specifications

### MAINTENANCE PRODUCT SPECIFICATIONS AND CAPACITIES

Item	Capacity	Ford part name	Ford part number / Ford specification
Front axle	5.8 pints (2.8L)	Motorcraft® SAE 80W-90 Premium Rear Axle Lubricant	XY-80W-90-QL / WSP-M2C197-A
Spindle bearing	—	High Temperature 4X4 Front Axle and Wheel Bearing Grease	XG-11 / WSS-M1C267-A1
Rear axle - F-250/350 (10.50 inch axle) <sup>1</sup>	6.9 pints (3.3L)	Motorcraft® SAE 75W-140 Synthetic Rear Axle Lubricant	XY-75W140-QL / WSL-M2C192-A
Rear axle - F-350 (Dana M80)	8.5 pints (4.0L)	Motorcraft® SAE 75W-90 Synthetic Rear Axle Lubricant	XY-75W90-QLS / WSS-M2C918-A
Rear axle - F-450/550 (Dana S110/S130)	14.0 pints (6.6L)	Motorcraft® SAE 75W-140 Synthetic Rear Axle Lubricant	XY-75W140-QL / WSL-M2C192-A
Brake fluid	Between MIN/MAX on brake fluid reservoir	Motorcraft® High Performance DOT 3 Motor Vehicle Brake Fluid	PM-1-C / WSS-M6C62-A or WSS-M6C65-A1
Engine coolant (6.2L V8 engine) <sup>2</sup>	21.3 quarts (20.2L)	Motorcraft® Specialty Orange Engine Coolant (orange-colored)	VC-3-B (US) / CVC-3-B (Canada) / WSS-M97B44-D
Engine coolant (6.8L V10 engine) <sup>2</sup>	26.7 quarts (25.3L)		

## Maintenance and Specifications

Item	Capacity	Ford part name	Ford part number / Ford specification
Engine and fuel coolant - diesel engine		Refer to the diesel supplement.	
Engine oil (includes filter change) - 6.2L V8 and 6.8L V10 gas engines <sup>5</sup>	7.0 quarts (6.6L)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Motorcraft® SAE 5W-20 Premium Synthetic Blend Motor Oil (US)</li> <li>• Motorcraft® SAE 5W-20 Full Synthetic Motor Oil (US)</li> <li>• Motorcraft® SAE 5W-20 Super Premium Motor Oil (Canada)</li> <li>• Motorcraft® SAE 5W-20 Synthetic Motor Oil (Canada)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• XO-5W20-QSP (US)</li> <li>• XO-5W20-QFS (US)</li> <li>• CXO-5W20-LSP12 (Canada)</li> <li>• CXO-5W-20-LFS12 (Canada) / WSS-M2C945-A and API Certification Mark</li> </ul>
Engine oil (includes filter change) - diesel engine		Refer to the diesel supplement.	
Fuel tank (mid-ship)	28 gallons (106L)	—	—
Fuel tank (plastic)	35 gallons (132L)	—	—
Fuel tank (Aft axle)	40 gallons (151L)	—	—
Fuel tank - diesel engine		Refer to the diesel supplement.	

## Maintenance and Specifications

Item	Capacity	Ford part name	Ford part number / Ford specification
Hinges, latches, striker plates, fuel filler door hinge and seat tracks	—	Multi-Purpose Grease	XG-4 or XL-5 / ESB-M1C93-B
Lock cylinders	—	Motorcraft® Penetrating and Lock Lubricant	XL-1 / None
Transmission / parking brake linkages and pivots, brake pedal shift	—	Motorcraft® Premium Long-Life Grease	XG-1-C or XG-1-K / WSD-M1C227-A
Power steering fluid	Keep fluid level between MIN and MAX on reservoir	Motorcraft® MERCOR® V ATF	XT-5-QM / MERCOR® V
Transfer case fluid	2.0 quarts (1.9L)	Motorcraft® Transfer Case Fluid	XL-12 / —
Automatic transmission fluid (5-speed) <sup>3</sup>	17.5 quarts (16.6L) <sup>4,6</sup>	Motorcraft® MERCOR® LV ATF	XT-10-QLV / MERCOR® LV
Automatic transmission fluid (6-speed) <sup>3</sup>	18.5 quarts (17.5L) <sup>4,7</sup>		
	16.7 quarts (15.8L) <sup>4,7</sup>		

## Maintenance and Specifications

Item	Capacity	Ford part name	Ford part number / Ford specification
Windshield washer fluid	Fill as required	Motorcraft® Premium Windshield Washer Concentrate (US) Premium Quality Windshield Washer Fluid (Canada)	ZC-32-A (US) CXC-37-(A, B, D, and F) (Canada) / WSB-M8B16-A2 / - -

412

<sup>1</sup>Add 8 oz. (236 ml) of Additive Friction Modifier XL-3 or equivalent meeting Ford Specification EST-M2C118-A for complete refill of limited slip Ford axles. Ford design rear axles contain a synthetic lubricant that does not require changing unless the axle has been submerged in water.

<sup>2</sup>Add the coolant type originally equipped in your vehicle.

<sup>3</sup>Ensure the correct automatic transmission fluid is used. Transmission fluid requirements are indicated on the dipstick blade or the dipstick handle. Check the container to verify the fluid being added is of the correct type. Refer to your *scheduled maintenance information* to determine the correct service interval.

**Automatic transmissions that require MERCON® IV should only use MERCON® IV fluid. Use of any fluid other than the recommended fluid may cause transmission damage.**

<sup>4</sup>Indicates only approximate dry-fill capacity. Some applications may vary based on cooler size and if equipped with an in-tank cooler. The amount of transmission fluid and fluid level should be set by the indication on the dipstick's normal operating range.

<sup>5</sup>Use of synthetic or synthetic blend motor oil is not mandatory. Engine oil need only meet the requirements of Ford specification WSS-M2C945-A and the API Certification mark.

<sup>6</sup> Refer to *Checking automatic transmission fluid* in this chapter for the correct dipstick type. Fill to the proper capacity according to dipstick Type A.

<sup>7</sup> Refer to *Checking automatic transmission fluid* in this chapter for the correct dipstick type. Fill to the proper capacity according to dipstick Type B.

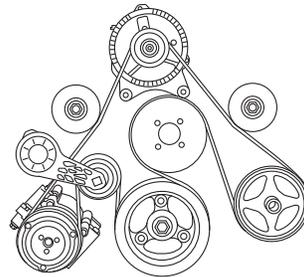
## Maintenance and Specifications

### ENGINE DATA

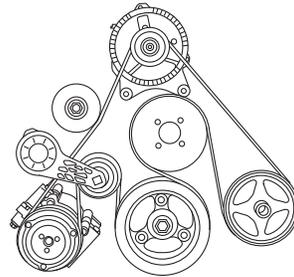
Engine	6.2L V8 engine	6.8L V10 engine
Cubic inches	378	413
Required fuel	Minimum 87 octane or Ethanol (E85)	Minimum 87 octane
Firing order	1-5-4-8-6-3-7-2	1-6-5-10-2-7-3-8-4-9
Spark plug gap	0.041–0.047 inch (1.04–1.20 mm)	0.039–0.043 inch (1.0–1.1 mm)
Ignition system	Coil on plug	Coil on plug
Compression ratio	9.8:1	9.2:1

### Engine drivebelt routing

6.2L V8 engine

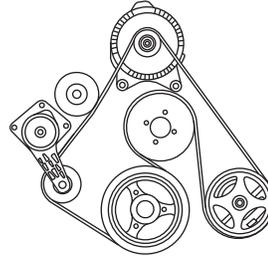


6.8L V10 engine with A/C



## Maintenance and Specifications

6.8L V10 engine - without A/C



### IDENTIFYING YOUR VEHICLE

#### Safety Compliance Certification Label

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration Regulations require that a Safety Compliance Certification Label be affixed to a vehicle and prescribe where the Safety Compliance Certification Label may be located. The Safety Compliance Certification Label is located on the structure by the trailing edge of the driver's door or the edge of the driver's door.

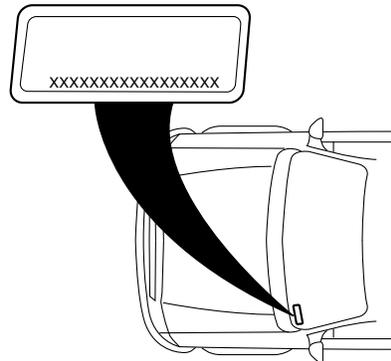
<b>MFD. BY FORD MOTOR CO. IN U.S.A.</b>			
DATE: XXXXX	GVWR: XXXXX LB/ XXXXX KG		
FGAWR: XXXXXX/XXXXXXXX	RGAWR: XXXXXX/XXXXXXXX		
THIS VEHICLE CONFORMS TO ALL APPLICABLE FEDERAL MOTOR VEHICLE SAFETY STANDARDS IN EFFECT ON THE DATE OF MANUFACTURE SHOWN ABOVE.			
VIN: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX	TYPE: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX		
MAXIMUM LOAD=OCCUPANTS + LUGGAGE=XXXKG/XXXLB			
OCCUPANTS: X TOTAL X FR X 2ND X RR OCCUPANTS LUGGAGE			
		XX	XXXKG/XXXLB
TIRE: XXXX/XXXXX XXX		X	XXXKG/XXXLB
PRESSURE (FR) XXX kPa/ XX PSI COLD			
PRESSURE (RR) XXX kPa/ XX PSI COLD			
<small>TRAILER TOWING - SEE OWNER GUIDE</small>			
EXT PNT: XXXXXX XXXXXX	RC: XX	D5Q: XXXX	F0000
BAR   INT TR   TP/PS   R	AXLE   TR   SPR	T0000	
X XX XXX X	XX X XXX		

## Maintenance and Specifications

### Vehicle identification number (VIN)

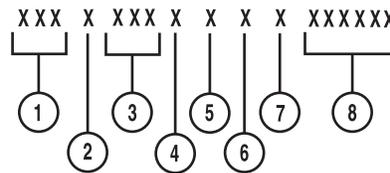
The vehicle identification number is located on the driver side instrument panel.

Please note that in the graphic, XXXX is representative of your vehicle identification number.



The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) contains the following information:

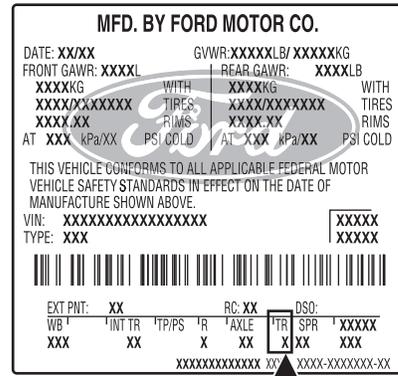
1. World manufacturer identifier
2. Brake system / Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) / Restraint Devices and their location
3. Make, vehicle line, series, body type
4. Engine type
5. Check digit
6. Model year
7. Assembly plant
8. Production sequence number



## Maintenance and Specifications

### TRANSMISSION CODE DESIGNATIONS

You can find a transmission code on the Safety Compliance Certification Label. The following table tells you which transmission each code represents.



Description	Code
Five-speed automatic (5R110W)	T
Six-speed automatic (6R140)	P
Six-speed automatic (6R140W)	W

## Accessories

### FORD CUSTOM ACCESSORIES FOR YOUR VEHICLE

A wide selection of Ford Custom Accessories are available for your vehicle through your local Ford or Ford of Canada dealer. These quality accessories have been specifically engineered to fulfill your automotive needs; they are custom designed to complement the style and aerodynamic appearance of your vehicle. In addition, each accessory is made from high quality materials and meets or exceeds Ford's rigorous engineering and safety specifications. Ford Motor Company will repair or replace any properly dealer-installed Ford Custom Accessories found to be defective in factory-supplied materials or workmanship during the warranty period, as well as any component damaged by the defective accessories. The accessories will be warranted for whichever provides you the greatest benefit:

- 12 months or 12,000 miles (20,000 km) (whichever occurs first), or
- the remainder of your new vehicle limited warranty.

Contact your dealer for details and a copy of the warranty.

The following is a list of several Ford Custom Accessories. Not all accessories are available for all models. For a complete listing of the accessories that are available for your vehicle, please contact your dealer or visit our online store at: [www.fordaccessories.com](http://www.fordaccessories.com) (U.S. only).

#### Exterior style

- Bug shields
- Bright metallic exhaust tips
- Deflectors
- Running boards
- Splash guards
- Step bars
- Fog lamps
- Custom graphics\*
- Stainless steel wheel covers\*

#### Interior style

- Floor mats
- Custom seat covers\*

#### Lifestyle

- Ash cup / smoker's package
- Bedliners and bedmats
- Navigation\*
- Tonneau covers\*
- Trailer hitches, wiring harnesses and accessories
- Racks and carriers\*
- Truck bed camping tent\*
- Sportliner cargo liner\*
- Rear seat entertainment\*

## Accessories

### Peace of mind

- Keyless entry keypad
- Remote start
- Vehicle security systems
- Wheel locks
- Protective seat covers\*
- Bumper and hitch mounted parking sensors\*
- Back up alarm\*
- Cable lock\*
- Bed hooks\*
- Tool/Cargo boxes\*

### Not all accessories are available for all models.

\*Ford Licensed Accessories (FLA) are warranted by the accessory manufacturer's warranty. Ford Licensed Accessories are fully designed and developed by the accessory manufacturer and have not been designed or tested to Ford Motor Company engineering requirements. Contact your Ford dealer for details regarding the manufacturer's limited warranty and/or a copy of the FLA product limited warranty offered by the accessory manufacturer.

For maximum vehicle performance, keep the following information in mind when adding accessories or equipment to your vehicle:

- When adding accessories, equipment, passengers and luggage to your vehicle, do not exceed the total weight capacity of the vehicle or of the front or rear axle (GVWR or GAWR as indicated on the Safety Compliance Certification Label). Consult your authorized dealer for specific weight information.
- The Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and Canadian Radio Telecommunications Commission (CRTC) regulate the use of mobile communications systems — such as two-way radios, telephones and theft alarms - that are equipped with radio transmitters. Any such equipment installed in your vehicle should comply with FCC or CRTC regulations and should be installed only by your authorized dealer.
- Mobile communications systems may harm the operation of your vehicle, particularly if they are not properly designed for automotive use.
- To avoid interference with other vehicle functions, such as anti-lock braking systems, amateur radio users who install radios and antennas onto their vehicle should not locate the Amateur Radio Antennas in the area of the driver's side hood.
- Any non-Ford custom electrical or electronic accessories or components that are added to the vehicle by the authorized dealer or the owner may adversely affect battery performance and durability.

418

## Ford Extended Service Plan

### FORD ESP EXTENDED SERVICE PLANS (U.S. ONLY)

More than 32 million Ford and Lincoln owners have discovered the powerful protection of Ford ESP. It is the only extended service plan backed by Ford Motor Company, and provides “peace of mind” protection beyond the New Vehicle Limited Warranty coverage.

#### ***Up to 500+ Covered Vehicle Components***

There are four, new-vehicle Extended Service Plans with different levels of coverage. Ask your dealer for details.

**PremiumCare** – Our most comprehensive coverage. With over 500 covered components, this plan is so complete that we generally only discuss what’s not covered!

**ExtraCare** – Covers 113 components, and includes many high-tech items.

**BaseCare** – Covers 84 components.

**PowertrainCare** – Covers 29 critical components.

**Ford ESP is honored by all Ford and Lincoln Dealers in the U.S. and Canada** It’s the only extended service plan authorized and backed by Ford Motor Company. That means you get:

- Reliable, quality service anywhere you go.
- **Factory-trained technicians.**
- **Ford Authorized Parts used with every covered repair.**

#### ***Rental car reimbursement***

**If your vehicle is kept overnight for covered repairs**, you are eligible for rental car coverage, including Bumper-to-Bumper warranty repairs, or manufacturer’s recalls.

#### ***Transferable coverage***

If you sell your vehicle before your Ford ESP coverage expires, you can transfer any remaining coverage to the new owner. Whenever you’re ready to sell your car, prospective buyers may feel better about taking a risk on your used vehicle. Ford ESP may add resale value!

Plus, **exclusive 24/7 roadside assistance**, including:

- Towing, flat-tire change and battery jump starts.
- Out-of-fuel and lock-out assistance.
- Travel expense reimbursement for lodging, meals and rental car.
- Destination assistance for taxi, shuttle, rental car coverage and emergency transportation.

## Ford Extended Service Plan

### ***Ford ESP Can Quickly Pay for Itself***

One service bill – the cost of parts and labor – can easily exceed the price of your Ford ESP Service Contract. With Ford ESP, you minimize your risk for unexpected repair bills and rising repair costs.

### ***Avoid the rising cost of properly maintaining your vehicle!***

Ford ESP also offers a Premium Maintenance Plan that covers items that **routinely wear out**.

The coverage is prepaid, so you never have to worry about affording your vehicle maintenance. It covers regular checkups, routine inspections, preventive care and replacement of items that require periodic attention for **normal “wear”**:

- **Wiper blades**
- **Spark plugs (except California)**
- **Clutch disc**
- **Brake pads and linings**
- **Shock absorbers**
- **Belts and hoses**

Contact your selling Ford or Lincoln dealership today so they can customize a Ford Extended Service Plan that fits your driving lifestyle and budget.

### ***Interest free finance options available***

Take advantage of our installment payment plan, just a 10% down payment will provide you with an affordable no interest, no-fee payment opportunity.

**Ford Extended Service Plan**



***Get Genuine Peace of Mind with Ford ESP!***

To learn more, complete the information below and mail this to:

**Ford ESP  
P.O. Box 8072  
Royal Oak, MI 48068-9933**

NAME (PLEASE PRINT) \_\_\_\_\_

ADDRESS \_\_\_\_\_ APT.NO. \_\_\_\_\_

CITY \_\_\_\_\_ STATE \_\_\_\_\_ ZIP \_\_\_\_\_

E-MAIL: \_\_\_\_\_

## Ford Extended Service Plan

### FORD ESP EXTENDED SERVICE PLANS (CANADA ONLY)

You can get more protection for your vehicle by purchasing a Ford Extended Service Plan (ESP). Ford ESP is the only service contract backed by Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited. Depending on the plan you purchase, Ford ESP provides benefits such as:

- Rental reimbursement
- Coverage for certain maintenance and wear items
- Protection against repair costs after your New Vehicle Limited Warranty Coverage expires
- Roadside Assistance benefits

There are several Ford ESP plans available in various time, distance and deductible combinations. Each plan is tailored to fit your own driving needs, including reimbursement for towing and rental.

When you purchase Ford ESP, you receive added peace-of-mind protection throughout Canada and the United States, provided by a network of participating Ford Motor Company dealers.

For more information, visit your local Ford of Canada dealer or [www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca) to find the Ford Extended Service Plan that is right for you.

**Note:** Repairs performed outside of Canada and the United States are not eligible for Ford ESP coverage.

## Scheduled Maintenance

### GENERAL MAINTENANCE INFORMATION

The following information pertains to 6.2L V8 and 6.8L V10 gasoline engines only. Scheduled maintenance for the diesel engine can be found in the diesel supplement.

#### Why maintain your vehicle?

Carefully following this schedule helps protect against major repair expenses resulting from neglect or inadequate maintenance and may also help to increase the value of your vehicle when you sell or trade it.

It is your responsibility to see that all scheduled maintenance is performed and that the materials used meet Ford engineering specifications as identified in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter. Failure to perform scheduled maintenance specific in this guide will invalidate warranty coverage on parts affected by the lack of maintenance. Be sure receipts for completed maintenance are kept with the vehicle and confirmation of the work performed is always recorded in this guide.

Your dealer has factory-trained technicians who can perform the required maintenance using genuine Ford parts. They are committed to meeting your service needs and to assuring your continuing satisfaction.

#### Protecting your investment

Maintenance is an investment that will pay dividends in the form of improved reliability, durability and resale value. To ensure the proper performance of your vehicle and its emission control systems, it is imperative that scheduled maintenance be completed at the designated intervals.

Your vehicle is very sophisticated and built with multiple complex performance systems. Every manufacturer develops these systems using different specifications and performance features. That's why it's important to rely upon your dealership to properly diagnose and repair your vehicle.

Ford Motor Company has recommended maintenance intervals for various parts and component systems based upon engineering testing. Ford Motor Company relies upon this testing to determine the most appropriate mileage for replacement of oils and fluids to protect your vehicle at the lowest overall cost to you and recommends against maintenance schedules that deviate from the scheduled maintenance information.

## Scheduled Maintenance

Ford strongly recommends the use of genuine Ford replacement parts. Parts other than Ford, Motorcraft® or Ford-authorized remanufactured parts that are used for maintenance replacement or for the service of components affecting emission control must be equivalent to genuine Ford Motor Company parts in performance and durability. It is the owner's responsibility to determine the equivalency of such parts. Please consult your *Warranty Guide* for complete warranty information.

Chemicals or additives not approved by Ford are not required for factory recommended maintenance. In fact, Ford Motor Company recommends against the use of such additive products unless specifically recommended by Ford for a particular application.

### ***Oils, fluids and flushing***

In many cases, fluid discoloration is a normal operating characteristic and, by itself, does not necessarily indicate a concern or that the fluid needs to be changed. However, discolored fluids that also show signs of overheating and/or foreign material contamination should be inspected immediately by a qualified expert such as the factory-trained technicians at your dealership. Your vehicle's oils and fluids should be changed at the specified intervals or in conjunction with a repair. Flushing is a viable way to change fluid for many vehicle sub-systems during scheduled maintenance. It is critical that systems are flushed only with new fluid that is the same as that required to fill and operate the system, or using a Ford-approved flushing chemical.

### **Genuine Ford parts and service**

When planning your maintenance services, consider your dealership for all your vehicle's needs.

There are a lot of reasons why visiting your dealership for all your service needs is a great way to help keep your vehicle running great.

### ***Convenience***

Many dealerships have extended evening and Saturday hours to make your service visit more convenient. How's that for quality service?

### ***Factory-trained technicians***

Service technicians participate in extensive factory-sponsored certification training to help them become experts on the operation of your vehicle. Ask your dealership about the training and certification their technicians have received.

## Scheduled Maintenance

### ***Genuine Ford and Motorcraft® replacement parts***

Dealerships stock Ford and Motorcraft® branded replacement parts. These parts meet or exceed Ford Motor Company's specifications, and we stand behind them. Parts installed at your dealership carry a nationwide, 12 month/12,000 mile (20,000 km) parts and labor limited warranty. Your dealer can give you details.

### ***Value shopping for your vehicle's maintenance needs***

Your dealership recognizes the competitive landscape of maintenance and light repair automotive services. With factory-trained technicians, and one-stop service from routine maintenance like oil changes and tire rotations to repairs like brake service, check out the value your dealers can offer.

### **Owner checks and services**

Certain basic maintenance checks and inspections should be performed by the owner or a service technician at the intervals indicated. Service information and supporting specifications are provided in this owner's guide.

Any adverse condition should be brought to the attention of your dealer or qualified service technician as soon as possible for the proper service advice. The owner maintenance service checks are generally not covered by warranties so you may be charged for labor, parts or fluids used.

<b>Engine oil/coolant change intervals</b>	
<b>Engine oil (6.2L/6.8L)*</b>	6 months or 7,500 miles (12,000 km) (whichever comes first)
<b>Engine coolant, initial change</b>	6 years or 105,000 miles (168,000 km) (whichever comes first)
<b>Engine coolant, after initial change</b>	Every 3 years or 45,000 miles (72,000 km)
*If your vehicle is equipped with a diesel engine, refer to the diesel supplement for engine oil/coolant change schedules	

## Scheduled Maintenance

Check every month
Engine oil level
Function of all interior and exterior lights
Tires for wear and proper pressure, including spare
Windshield washer fluid level
Check every six months
Battery connections; clean if necessary
Body and door drain holes for obstructions; clean if necessary
Cooling system fluid level and coolant strength
Door weatherstrips for wear; lubricate if necessary
Hinges/latches/outside locks for proper operation; lubricate if necessary
Parking brake for proper operation
Safety belts and seat latches for wear and function
Safety warning lamps (brake, ABS, airbag, safety belt) for operation
Washer spray/wiper operation; clean or replace blades as necessary

### Multi-point inspection

In order to keep your vehicle running right, it is important to have the systems on your vehicle checked regularly. This can help identify potential issues and prevent major problems. Ford Motor Company recommends the following multi-point inspection be performed at every scheduled maintenance interval to help ensure your vehicle keeps running great.

## Scheduled Maintenance

<b>Multi-point inspection – Recommended each visit</b>	
Accessory drive belt(s)	Half-shaft dust boots (if equipped)
Battery performance	Horn operation
Clutch operation (if equipped)	Radiator, cooler, heater and A/C hoses
Engine air filter	Suspension component for leaks or damage
Exhaust system	Steering and linkage
Exterior lamps and hazard warning system operation	Tires for wear and proper pressure, including spare
Fluid levels*; fill if necessary	Windshield for cracks, chips or pits
For oil and fluid leaks	Washer spray and wiper operation
*Brake, coolant recovery reservoir, manual and automatic transmission (with an underhood dipstick), power steering (if equipped) and window washer	

Be sure to ask your dealership service advisor or technician about the multi-point vehicle inspection. It's a comprehensive way to perform a thorough inspection of your vehicle. It's your checklist that gives you immediate feedback on the overall condition of your vehicle. You'll know what's been checked, what's okay, as well as those things that may require future or immediate attention. The multi-point vehicle inspection is one more way to keep your vehicle running great!

# Scheduled Maintenance

**Owner Advantage** Member's Member #: \_\_\_\_\_  
Member's Service Balance: \_\_\_\_\_

**Multi-Point Inspection Report Card as Recommended by Ford Motor Company**

Name: \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_ Mileage: \_\_\_\_\_ Static Inspection Mileage: \_\_\_\_\_

Home Address: \_\_\_\_\_

SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE ITEMS DUE FOR SERVICES ON THIS VEHICLE			
ITEM	STATUS	ITEM	STATUS
Oil Change	<input type="checkbox"/>	Oil Filter	<input type="checkbox"/>
Cabin Air Filter	<input type="checkbox"/>	Spark Plugs	<input type="checkbox"/>
Engine Air Filter	<input type="checkbox"/>	Tire Rotation	<input type="checkbox"/>
Engine Coolant	<input type="checkbox"/>	Transmission Fluid	<input type="checkbox"/>
Blind Spot Monitor	<input type="checkbox"/>		

\*This is only a partial list of vehicle maintenance items and is NOT all-inclusive. Please consult your Owner's Manual or visit [www.genuineparts.com](http://www.genuineparts.com) for vehicle specific maintenance requirements.

CHECK FLUID LEVELS AND FILL			
ITEM	STATUS	ITEM	STATUS
Oil and/or Oil Leaks	<input type="checkbox"/>	Power Steering	<input type="checkbox"/>
Brake Fluid	<input type="checkbox"/>	Windshield Washer	<input type="checkbox"/>
Coolant	<input type="checkbox"/>	Condition of Battery	<input type="checkbox"/>

**State of Health**

Factory spec cold cranking amps: \_\_\_\_\_

**Condition of**

Alternator: \_\_\_\_\_

Battery: \_\_\_\_\_

EXTERIOR BODY		TIRE/BRAKE WEAR	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Exterior body damage or defects	<input type="checkbox"/>	Front Tire Tread
<input type="checkbox"/>	Exhaust System	<input type="checkbox"/>	Left Rear Tire Tread
<input type="checkbox"/>	Exhaust Leaks	<input type="checkbox"/>	Right Rear Tire Tread
<input type="checkbox"/>	Exhaust Noise	<input type="checkbox"/>	Front Brake
<input type="checkbox"/>	Exhaust Smell	<input type="checkbox"/>	Rear Brake

Comments: \_\_\_\_\_

Service Advisor: \_\_\_\_\_ Customer Signature: \_\_\_\_\_

Technician: \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_

12-XXXXXXX

**NORMAL SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE AND LOG**

The following section contains the “Normal Schedule”. This schedule is presented at specific mileage (kilometer) intervals with exceptions noted.

428

## Scheduled Maintenance

6.2L and 6.8L engines												
Miles (x 1,000)*	7.5	15	22.5	30	37.5	45	52.5	60	67.5	75		
Kilometers (x 1,000)*	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120		
Months*	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	54	60		
Change engine oil and filter	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Rotate tires**, inspect tire wear and measure tread depth	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Inspect wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Inspect automatic transmission fluid level (if equipped with dipstick); consult dealer for requirements		•		•		•		•		•		•
Inspect brake pads, shoes, rotors, drums, brake linings, hoses and parking brake		•		•		•		•		•		•
Inspect engine cooling system concentration and hoses		•		•		•		•		•		•
Inspect exhaust system and heat shields		•		•		•		•		•		•
Inspect front axle and U-joints; lubricate if equipped with grease fittings (4WD vehicles)		•		•		•		•		•		•
Inspect half-shaft boots (if equipped)		•		•		•		•		•		•
Inspect steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie-rod ends, driveshaft and U-joints; lubricate if equipped with grease fittings		•		•		•		•		•		•
Torque rear U-bolts (Transit Connect)		•		•		•		•		•		•
Inspect cabin air filter (if equipped)	•		•		•		•		•		•	
* Whichever comes first												
**If equipped with dual rear wheels, rotate front wheels when specified, rear wheels only if unusual wear is noted												
Scheduled maintenance for the diesel engine can be found in the diesel supplement												

## Scheduled Maintenance

6.2L and 6.8L engines												
Miles (x 1,000)*	82.5	90	97.5	105	112.5	120	127.5	135	142.5	150		
Kilometers (x 1,000)*	132	144	156	168	180	192	204	216	228	240		
Months*	66	72	78	84	90	96	102	108	114	120		
Change engine oil and filter	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Rotate tires**, inspect tire wear and measure tread depth	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Inspect wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Perform multi-point inspection (recommended)	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Inspect automatic transmission fluid level (if equipped with dipstick); consult dealer for requirements		•				•				•		•
Inspect brake pads, shoes, rotors, drums, brake linings, hoses and parking brake		•				•				•		•
Inspect engine cooling system concentration and hoses		•				•				•		•
Inspect exhaust system and heat shields		•				•				•		•
Inspect front axle and U-joints; lubricate if equipped with grease fittings (4WD vehicles)		•				•				•		•
Inspect half-shaft boots (if equipped)		•				•				•		•
Inspect steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie-rod ends, driveshaft and U-joints; lubricate if equipped with grease fittings		•				•				•		•
Torque rear U-bolts (Transit Connect)		•				•				•		•
Inspect cabin air filter (if equipped)	•					•				•		•
* Whichever comes first												
**If equipped with dual rear wheels, rotate front wheels when specified, rear wheels only if unusual wear is noted												
Scheduled maintenance for the diesel engine can be found in the diesel supplement												

## Scheduled Maintenance

<b>6.2L and 6.8L engines</b>	
Every 15,000 miles (24,000 km)	Replace cabin air filter (if equipped)
Every 30,000 miles (48,000 km)	Replace climate-controlled seat filter (if equipped)
	Replace engine air filter
Every 60,000 miles (96,000 km)	Change automatic transmission fluid and filter on 5-speed TorqShift® transmission; consult dealer for requirements
	Replace front wheel bearing grease/grease seal if non-sealed bearings are used (2WD vehicles)
Every 97,500 miles (156,000 km)	Replace spark plugs
Every 105,000 miles (168,000 km)	Change engine coolant <sup>1</sup>
	Change manual transmission fluid (except Escape)
	Change rear axle fluid (Dana axles)
	Inspect accessory drive belt(s) <sup>2</sup>
Every 150,000 miles (240,000 km)	Change automatic transmission fluid and filter (except 5-speed TorqShift® transmission) (filter not required on 6F35, 6F50, DPS6 and AWF-21 transmissions); consult dealer for requirements
	Change front axle fluid (4WD vehicles)
	Change rear axle fluid (RWD vehicles)
	Change transfer case fluid (4WD vehicles)
	Replace accessory drive belt(s) if not replaced within the last 100,000 miles (160,000 km)
	Replace front wheel bearings and seals if non-sealed bearings are used (2WD vehicles)
<sup>1</sup> Initial replacement at 105,000 miles (168,000 km) or 72 months; every 45,000 miles (72,000 km) or 36 months thereafter	
<sup>2</sup> Perform a follow-up inspection at 120,000 miles (192,000 km)	

## Scheduled Maintenance

### Maintenance schedule log

<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>

## Scheduled Maintenance

<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:                    HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:                   MILEAGE:</p>

## Scheduled Maintenance

<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>

## Scheduled Maintenance

### SPECIAL OPERATING CONDITIONS

The following information pertains to 6.2L V8 and 6.8L V10 gasoline engines only. Scheduled maintenance for the diesel engine can be found in the diesel supplement.

If you operate your vehicle **primarily** in one of the more demanding conditions listed below, you will need to have some items maintained more frequently. If you only **occasionally** operate your vehicle under these conditions, it is not necessary to perform the additional maintenance. For specific recommendations, see your dealership service advisor or technician.

<b>Towing a trailer or using a camper or car-top carrier</b>	
Inspect frequently, service as required	Inspect and lubricate U-joints
	See axle maintenance items under <i>Exceptions</i>
Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km)	Inspect wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag
	Rotate tires*, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth
Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km) or 6 months	Change engine oil and filter
	Inspect and lubricate U-joints
Every 30,000 miles (48,000 km)	Change automatic transmission fluid (except 6R80 and TorqShift® transmissions)
	Replace front wheel bearing grease/grease seals if non-sealed bearings are used (2WD vehicles)
Every 60,000 miles (96,000 km)	Change transfer case fluid (4WD vehicles)
*If equipped with dual rear wheels, rotate front wheels when specified, rear wheels only if unusual wear is noted	

## Scheduled Maintenance

<b>Extensive idling and/or low-speed driving for long distances as in heavy commercial use (i.e. delivery, taxi, patrol car or livery)</b>	
Inspect frequently, service as required	Replace cabin air filter (if equipped)
	Replace engine air filter
Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km)	Inspect brake system
	Inspect wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag
	Lubricate control arm and steering ball joints if equipped with grease fittings
	Rotate tires*, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth
Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km) or 6 months	Inspect and lubricate U-joints
Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km), 6 months or 200 engine hours	Change engine oil and filter
Every 30,000 miles (48,000 km)	Change automatic transmission fluid (except 6R80 and TorqShift® transmissions)
	Replace front wheel bearing grease/grease seals if non-sealed bearings are used (2WD vehicles)
Every 60,000 miles (96,000 km)	Change transfer case fluid (4WD vehicles)
	Replace spark plugs
*If equipped with dual rear wheels, rotate front wheels when specified, rear wheels only if unusual wear is noted	

## Scheduled Maintenance

<b>Operating in dusty conditions such as unpaved or dusty roads</b>	
Inspect frequently, service as required	Replace cabin air filter (if equipped)
	Replace engine air filter
Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km)	Inspect the wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag
	Rotate tires*, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth
Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km) or 6 months	Change engine oil and filter
	Inspect and lubricate U-joints
Every 30,000 miles (48,000 km)	Change automatic transmission fluid (except 6R80 and TorqShift® transmissions)
	Replace front wheel bearing grease/grease seals if non-sealed bearings are used (2WD vehicles)
Every 50,000 miles (80,000 km)	Change rear axle fluid (F-450/550 only)
Every 60,000 miles (96,000 km)	Change transfer case fluid (4WD vehicles)
*If equipped with dual rear wheels, rotate front wheels when specified, rear wheels only if unusual wear is noted	

## Scheduled Maintenance

<b>Off-road operation</b>	
Inspect frequently, service as required	Inspect steering linkage, ball joints and U-joints; lubricate if equipped with grease fittings
	Replace cabin air filter (if equipped)
	Replace engine air filter
Every 5,000 miles (8,000 km) or 6 months	Change engine oil and filter
	Inspect wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag
	Rotate tires*, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth
Every 30,000 miles (48,000 km)	Change automatic transmission fluid (except 6R80 and TorqShift® transmissions)
	Replace front wheel bearing grease/grease seals if non-sealed bearings are used (2WD vehicles)
Every 50,000 miles (80,000 km)	Change rear axle fluid (F-450/550 only)
Every 60,000 miles (96,000 km)	Change transfer case fluid (4WD vehicles)
*If equipped with dual rear wheels, rotate front wheels when specified, rear wheels only if unusual wear is noted	
<b>Exclusive use of E85 (Flex Fuel Vehicles only)</b>	
Every oil change interval	If ran exclusively on E85, fill the fuel tank full with regular unleaded fuel

## Scheduled Maintenance

**Special operating condition log**

<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE: DATE: HOURS: MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE: DATE: HOURS: MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE: DATE: HOURS: MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE: DATE: HOURS: MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE: DATE: HOURS: MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE: DATE: HOURS: MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE: DATE: HOURS: MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE: DATE: HOURS: MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE: DATE: HOURS: MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p>RO#: P&amp;A CODE: DATE: HOURS: MILEAGE:</p>

## Scheduled Maintenance

<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DEALER VALIDATION:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">P&amp;A CODE:</p> <p>RO#:            HOURS:</p> <p>DATE:           MILEAGE:</p>

## Scheduled Maintenance

### EXCEPTIONS

There are several exceptions to the Normal Schedule. They are listed below:

**Normal vehicle axle maintenance:** Rear axles and power take-off (PTO) units with synthetic fluid and light-duty trucks equipped with Ford-design axles are lubricated for life; do not check or change fluid unless a leak is suspected, service is required or the assembly has been submerged in water. During long periods of trailer towing with outside temperatures above 70°F (21°C) and at wide-open throttle for long periods above 45 mph (72 km/h), non-synthetic rear axle fluids should be changed every 3,000 miles (4,800 km) or three months, whichever comes first. This interval can be waived if the axle is filled with 75W140 synthetic gear fluid meeting Ford specification WSL-M2C192-A, part number FITZ-19580-B or equivalent. Add friction modifier XL-3 (EST-M2C118-A) or equivalent for complete refill of Traction-Lok rear axles (refer to *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter for details).

**Police/Taxi/Livery vehicle axle maintenance:** Change rear axle fluid every 100,000 miles (160,000 km). Rear axle fluid change may be waived if the axle was filled with 75W140 synthetic gear fluid meeting Ford specification WSL-M2C192-A, part number FITZ-19580-B or equivalent. Add four ounces (118 mL) of additive friction modifier XL-3 (EST-M2C118-A) or equivalent for complete refill of Traction-Lok rear axles. The axle fluid should be changed anytime the axle has been submerged in water.

**California fuel filter replacement:** If the vehicle is registered in California, the California Air Resources Board has determined that the failure to perform this maintenance item will not nullify the emission warranty or limit recall liability prior to the completion of the vehicle's useful life. Ford Motor Company, however, urges you to have all recommended maintenance services performed at the specified intervals and to record all vehicle service.

**Class A Motorhome:** Change brake fluid every two years.

**Hot climate oil change intervals:** Vehicles operating in the Middle East, North Africa, Sub-Saharan Africa or locations with similar climates using an American Petroleum Institute (API) Certified for Gasoline Engines (Certification mark) oil or SM or greater, the normal oil change interval is 5,000 miles (8,000 km). If using an oil that is less than the API SM (i.e. SL) category, then the oil change service interval is 3,000 mile (4,800 km).

## Scheduled Maintenance

**Edge/MKX AWD only** – vehicles operating off-road in sand during high ambient temperatures must replace the AWD PTU (All-wheel drive Power Transfer Unit) lube every 20,000 miles (32,000 km).

**Engine air filter & cabin air filter replacement:** Engine air filter and cabin air filter life is dependent on exposure to dusty and dirty conditions. Vehicles operated in these conditions will require frequent inspection and replacement of the engine air filter and cabin air filter.

### ENGINE COOLANT CHANGE RECORD

Initial change	6 years or 105,000 miles (168,000 km) (whichever comes first)
After initial change	Every 3 years or 45,000 miles (72,000 km)

### Engine coolant change log

DEALER VALIDATION:	DEALER VALIDATION:
P&A CODE:	P&A CODE:
RO#:	RO#:
HOURS:	HOURS:
DATE:	DATE:
MILEAGE:	MILEAGE:
DEALER VALIDATION:	DEALER VALIDATION:
P&A CODE:	P&A CODE:
RO#:	RO#:
HOURS:	HOURS:
DATE:	DATE:
MILEAGE:	MILEAGE:
DEALER VALIDATION:	DEALER VALIDATION:
P&A CODE:	P&A CODE:
RO#:	RO#:
HOURS:	HOURS:
DATE:	DATE:
MILEAGE:	MILEAGE:

## Index

### A

Accessory delay .....105  
 AdvanceTrac .....275  
 Airbag supplemental restraint system .....180, 184, 186  
   and child safety seats .....182  
   description .....180, 184, 186  
   disposal .....195  
   driver airbag .....183, 185, 187  
   indicator light .....189  
   operation .....183, 185, 187  
   passenger airbag .....183, 185, 187  
   passenger deactivation switch .....190  
   side airbag .....184  
 Air cleaner filter .....403–404, 408  
 Air conditioning .....78, 81  
   manual heating and air conditioning system .....78  
 Ambulance packages .....8  
 Antifreeze  
   (see Engine coolant) .....379  
 Anti-lock brake system  
   (see Brakes) .....271  
 Anti-theft system .....150, 152  
   arming the system .....151, 153  
   disarming a triggered system .....153  
   triggering .....153  
 Audio system (see Radio) ...60, 62  
 Automatic transmission .....289  
   driving an automatic overdrive .....287  
   fluid, adding .....399  
   fluid, checking .....399  
   fluid, refill capacities .....409  
   Selectshift (SST) .....292  
 Auxiliary Input Jack .....69

Auxiliary powerpoint .....101  
 Axle  
   refill capacities .....409

### B

Battery .....376  
   acid, treating emergencies ....376  
   jumping a disabled battery ...346  
   maintenance-free .....376  
   replacement, specifications ...408  
   servicing .....376  
 Bed extender .....127  
 Belt-Minder® .....176  
 Booster seats .....211  
 Brakes .....271  
   anti-lock .....271  
   anti-lock brake system (ABS)  
     warning light .....272  
   fluid, checking and adding ...399  
   fluid, refill capacities .....409  
   parking .....273  
   shift interlock .....285  
   trailer .....256  
 Bulbs .....92

### C

Capacities for refilling fluids ....409  
 Car2U® Home Automation System .....117  
 Cassette tape player .....60  
 Cell phone use .....11  
 Changing a tire .....329  
 Child safety seats .....199  
   attaching with tether straps ..206  
   in front seat .....200, 206  
   in rear seat .....200, 206

443

## Index

- LATCH .....206
- recommendations .....197
- Child safety seats - booster seats .....211
- Cleaning your vehicle
  - engine compartment .....361
  - instrument panel .....364–365
  - interior .....366
  - plastic parts .....363
  - safety belts .....366
  - washing .....360
  - waxing .....361
  - wheels .....361
  - wiper blades .....363
- Climate control (see Air conditioning or Heating) .....78, 81
- Clock .....61, 63
- Compass, electronic
  - set zone adjustment .....27
- Console .....101
  - overhead .....100
- Controls
  - power seat .....160
  - steering column .....113
- Coolant
  - checking and adding .....379
  - refill capacities .....382, 409
- Cruise control  
(see Speed control) .....111
- Customer Assistance .....317
  - Ford accessories for your vehicle .....368
  - Ford Extended Service Plan .....419, 422
  - Getting assistance outside the U.S. and Canada .....356
  - Getting roadside assistance ...317
  - Getting the service you need .....352
- Ordering additional owner's literature .....358
- Utilizing the Mediation/Arbitration Program .....356
- D**
- Daytime running lamps  
(see Lamps) .....89
- Defrost
  - rear window and rearview mirrors .....81
  - windshield .....81
- Dipstick
  - automatic transmission fluid .....399
  - engine oil .....374
- Driving under special conditions .....294, 307, 311
  - sand .....309
  - snow and ice .....311
  - through water .....310, 313
- E**
- Electronic message center ...22, 39
- Emergencies, roadside
  - jump-starting .....346
- Emergency Flashers .....318
- Emission control system .....395
- Engine .....413
  - cleaning .....361
  - coolant .....379
  - diesel .....7
  - fail-safe cooling .....383
  - idle speed control .....376
  - refill capacities .....409
  - service points .....370–372
- Engine block heater .....269

## Index

- Engine oil .....374  
   checking and adding .....374  
   dipstick .....374  
   filter, specifications .....375, 408  
   recommendations .....375  
   refill capacities .....409  
 Event data recording .....9  
 Exhaust fumes .....269
- F**
- Fail safe cooling .....383  
 Fleet MyKey programming .....130  
 Flexible Fuel Vehicle (FFV) ....386  
 Floor mats .....123–124  
 Fluid capacities .....409  
 Fog lamps .....88  
 Four-Wheel Drive vehicles .....299  
   driving off road .....306  
   electronic shift .....300, 304  
   indicator light .....301  
   lever operated shift .....301  
   manual locking hubs .....300  
   preparing to drive your  
   vehicle .....284  
 Fuel .....386  
   calculating fuel  
   economy .....25, 392  
   cap .....389  
   capacity .....409  
   choosing the right fuel .....389  
   detergent in fuel .....391  
   filling your vehicle with  
   fuel .....386, 389, 392  
   filter, specifications .....385, 408  
   fuel pump shut-off .....319  
   improving fuel economy .....392  
   octane rating .....390, 413  
   quality .....390  
   running out of fuel .....391  
   safety information relating to  
   automotive fuels .....386  
 Fuel - flex fuel vehicle  
 (FFV) .....386, 389–390  
 Fuses .....319–320
- G**
- Garage door opener .....117  
 Gas cap (see Fuel cap) .....389  
 Gas mileage (see Fuel  
 economy) .....392  
 Gauges .....21
- H**
- Hazard flashers .....318  
 Headlamps .....87  
   aiming .....89–90  
   autolamp system .....87  
   daytime running lights .....89  
   flash to pass .....88  
   high beam .....88  
   replacing bulbs .....94  
   turning on and off .....87  
 Heating  
   heating and air conditioning  
   system .....78, 81  
 Hill descent mode .....280  
 Hill start assist .....293  
 Hood .....370
- I**
- Ignition .....265, 413  
 Illuminated visor mirror .....99

## Index

- Infant seats  
(see Safety seats) .....199
- Inspection/maintenance (I/M)  
testing .....397
- Instrument panel
  - cleaning .....364–365
  - cluster .....14
  - lighting up panel and  
interior .....89
- J**
- Jack .....329
  - positioning .....329
  - storage .....329
- Jump-starting your vehicle .....346
- K**
- Keyless entry system
  - autolock .....139
  - keypad .....149
  - locking and unlocking doors ..150
  - programming entry code .....149
- Keys .....130, 151
  - positions of the ignition .....265
- L**
- Lamps
  - autolamp system .....87
  - daytime running light .....89
  - fog lamps .....88
  - headlamps .....87
  - headlamps, flash to pass .....88
  - instrument panel, dimming ....89
  - interior lamps .....91
  - replacing bulbs .....94–97
- LATCH anchors .....206
- Lights, warning and indicator ....14  
446
- anti-lock brakes (ABS) .....272
- Loading instructions .....251
- Load limits .....244
- Locks
  - autolock .....139
  - childproof .....142
  - doors .....138
- Lug nuts .....345
- Lumbar support, seats .....161
- M**
- Manual transmission
  - fluid capacities .....409
- Message center .....22–23, 39
  - english/metric button .....27
  - system check button .....27
  - warning messages .....29, 48
- Mirrors .....106
  - automatic dimming rearview  
mirror .....106
  - fold away .....107, 109
  - heated .....81
  - programmable memory .....145
  - side view mirrors (power) ....106
  - signal .....110
- Moon roof .....115
- Motorcraft® parts .....408
- MyKey .....130
- N**
- Navigation system .....77
- O**
- Octane rating .....390
- Oil (see Engine oil) .....374

## Index

### P

Parental MyKey programming .....130  
 Parking brake .....273  
 Parts (see Motorcraft® parts) .....408  
 Pedals (see Power adjustable foot pedals) .....110  
 Power adjustable foot pedals ...110  
 Power distribution box (see Fuses) .....325  
 Power door locks .....138  
 Power mirrors .....106  
 Powerpoint .....101  
 Power steering .....282  
   fluid, checking and adding ....398  
   fluid, refill capacity .....409  
 Power Windows .....104  
 Preparing to drive your vehicle .....284

### R

Radio .....60, 62  
 Rear-view camera system .....297  
 Recommendations for attaching safety restraints for children .....197  
 Relays .....319  
 Remote entry system .....143–144  
   illuminated entry .....146  
   locking/unlocking doors .....144  
   Remote start .....147  
   replacement/additional transmitters .....146  
   replacing the batteries .....145

Remote start .....147  
 Remote start climate operation .....85  
 Reverse sensing system .....295  
 Roadside assistance .....317

### S

Safety belts (see Safety restraints) ..169–171, 173–174, 176  
 Safety Canopy .....185–186  
 Safety defects, reporting .....359  
 Safety restraints .....169–176  
   Belt-Minder® .....176  
   extension assembly .....176  
   for adults .....170–171, 173–174  
   for children .....195  
   warning light and chime .....176  
 Safety restraints - LATCH anchors .....206  
 Safety seats for children .....199  
 Safety Compliance Certification Label .....414  
 Satellite Radio Information .....74  
 Scheduled Maintenance Guide  
   Normal Scheduled Maintenance and Log .....428  
 Seats .....154  
   child safety seats .....199  
   cleaning .....367  
   climate control .....81, 162  
   easy access/easyout feature ..164  
   memory seat .....145, 164  
 SecuriCode keyless entry system .....149  
 SecuriLock passive anti-theft system .....150–151  
 447

## Index

- Servicing your vehicle .....369  
 Setting the clock .....61, 63  
 Snowplowing .....7, 314–315  
 SOS Post Crash Alert .....189  
 Spark plugs,  
   specifications .....408, 413  
 Special notice .....8  
   ambulance conversions .....8  
   diesel-powered vehicles .....7  
   four-wheel drive vehicles .....316  
   utility-type vehicles .....7  
 Speed control .....111  
 Starting a flex fuel vehicle .....268  
 Starting your vehicle .....265–268  
   jump starting .....346  
 Steering wheel  
   controls .....113  
   tilting .....99  
 SYNC® .....77
- T**
- Tailgate .....124  
 Tilt steering wheel .....99  
 Tire Pressure Monitoring  
 System (TPMS)  
   Tires, Wheels and Loading ....236  
 Tires .....218–219, 329  
   alignment .....228  
   care .....224  
   changing .....329, 332, 335  
   checking the pressure .....223  
   inflating .....220  
   label .....235  
   replacing .....226  
   rotating .....229  
   safety practices .....228  
   sidewall information .....230
- snow tires and chains .....243  
 spare tire .....330  
 terminology .....220  
 tire grades .....219  
 treadwear .....219, 225  
 Towing .....251  
   recreational towing .....263  
   Trailer Brake  
     Controller-Integrated .....256  
   trailer towing .....251  
   wrecker .....350  
 Traction control .....274  
 Trailer Brake  
   Controller-Integrated .....256  
 Trailer sway control .....280  
 Transfer case  
   fluid checking .....403  
 Transmission .....287  
   brake-shift interlock (BSI) ....285  
   fluid, checking and adding  
     (automatic) .....399  
   fluid, refill capacities .....409  
 Turn signal .....91
- U**
- Universal garage door opener ..117  
 Upfitter controls .....114  
 USB port .....70
- V**
- Vehicle Identification Number  
 (VIN) .....415  
 Vehicle loading .....244  
 Ventilating your vehicle .....269
- W**
- Warning lights (see Lights) .....14
- 448

**Index**

Washer fluid .....	373	Windshield washer fluid and wipers .....	98
Water, Driving through .....	313	checking and adding fluid .....	373
Windows		replacing wiper blades .....	373
power .....	104	Wrecker towing .....	350



Your satisfaction is our #1 goal. If you have any questions or concerns, or are unsatisfied with the service you are receiving, follow these steps:

1. Contact your Sales Representative or Service Advisor at your selling/servicing dealership.
2. If your inquiry or concern remains unresolved, contact the Sales Manager, Service Manager or Customer Relations Manager.
3. If you require assistance or clarification on Ford Motor Company policies or procedures, please contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center.

<b>In the United States:</b>	<b>In Canada:</b>
<p>Ford Motor Company Customer Relationship Center P.O. Box 6248 Dearborn, MI 48121 1-800-392-3673 (FORD) (TDD for the hearing impaired: 1-800-232-5952) <a href="http://www.customersaskford.com">www.customersaskford.com</a></p>	<p>Customer Relationship Centre Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited P.O. Box 2000 Oakville, Ontario L6J 5E4 1-800-565-3673 (FORD) <a href="http://www.ford.ca">www.ford.ca</a></p>
<b>In Asia-Pacific Region, Sub-Saharan Africa, U.S. Virgin Islands, Central America, the Caribbean, and Israel:</b>	<b>In Puerto Rico:</b>
<p>Ford Motor Company Ford Export Operations Attention: Customer Relations 1555 Fairlane Drive Fairlane Business Park #3 Allen Park, MI 48101 Telephone: (313) 594-4857 For customers in Guam, the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands (CNMI), America Samoa, and the U.S. Virgin Islands, please feel free to call our Toll-Free Number: (800) 841-FORD (3673) Fax: (313) 390-0804 E-mail: <a href="mailto:expcac@ford.com">expcac@ford.com</a></p>	<p>Ford International Business Development, Inc. P.O. Box 11957 Caparra Heights Station San Juan, PR 00922-1957 Telephone: (800) 841-FORD (3673) Fax: (313) 390-0804 E-mail: <a href="mailto:precac@ford.com">precac@ford.com</a> <a href="http://www.ford.com.pr">www.ford.com.pr</a></p>
<b>In Middle East:</b>	
<p>Ford Middle East Customer Relationship Center P.O. Box 21470 Dubai, United Arab Emirates Telephone: 971-4-3326084 Toll-free Number for the Kingdom of Saudi Arabia: 800 8971409 Local Telephone Number for Kuwait: 24810575 Fax: 971-4-3327299 E-mail: <a href="mailto:menacac@ford.com">menacac@ford.com</a> <a href="http://www.me.ford.com">www.me.ford.com</a></p>	



## Table of Contents

<b>1. INTRODUCTION</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>2. IMPORTANT INFORMATION YOU SHOULD KNOW</b>	<b>2</b>
<b>If You Need Customer Assistance</b>	<b>2</b>
<b>Know When Your Warranty Begins</b>	<b>2</b>
<b>Check Your Vehicle</b>	<b>2</b>
<b>Maintain Your Vehicle Properly</b>	<b>2</b>
<b>Who Pays For Warranty Repairs?</b>	<b>3</b>
<b>Do Warranties Apply In Other Countries?</b>	<b>4</b>
<b>3. THE NEW VEHICLE LIMITED WARRANTY FOR YOUR 2012-MODEL VEHICLE</b>	<b>5</b>
<b>Limitations And Disclaimers</b>	<b>5</b>
<b>What Is Covered?</b>	<b>8</b>
<b>What Is Not Covered?</b>	<b>12</b>
<b>4. IN ADDITION ...</b>	<b>16</b>
<b>Roadside Service Assistance (United States, Puerto Rico, And U.S. Virgin Islands)</b>	<b>16</b>
<b>5. FEDERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR EMISSIONS WARRANTIES</b>	<b>17</b>
<b>What Is Covered?</b>	<b>20</b>
<b>What Is Not Covered?</b>	<b>21</b>
<b>6. CALIFORNIA REQUIREMENTS FOR EMISSIONS WARRANTIES</b>	<b>22</b>
<b>What Is Covered?</b>	<b>26</b>
<b>What Is Not Covered?</b>	<b>29</b>

<b>7. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION ABOUT YOUR EMISSIONS WARRANTY COVERAGE, UNDER FEDERAL AND CALIFORNIA REQUIREMENTS</b>	<b>30</b>
<b>8. NOISE EMISSIONS WARRANTY</b>	<b>32</b>
<b>9. FORD EXTENDED SERVICE PLAN</b>	<b>33</b>
<b>10. BETTER BUSINESS BUREAU (BBB) AUTO LINE PROGRAM</b>	<b>34</b>
<b>11. STATE WARRANTY ENFORCEMENT LAWS</b>	<b>35</b>
<b>12. IMPORTANT INFORMATION ABOUT AMBULANCE CONVERSIONS</b>	<b>35</b>
<b>13. IMPORTANT INFORMATION ABOUT FORD LIMOUSINE CONVERSIONS</b>	<b>36</b>

## 1. Introduction

**Ford Motor Company** and your selling dealer thank you for selecting one of our quality products. Our commitment to you and your vehicle begins with quality protection and service.

When you need warranty repairs, your selling dealer would like you to return to it for that service, but you may also take your vehicle to another Ford Motor Company dealership authorized for warranty repairs. Certain warranty repairs require special training though, so not all dealers are authorized to perform all warranty repairs. That means that, depending on the warranty repair needed, the vehicle may need to be taken to another dealer. If a particular dealership cannot assist you, then contact the Customer Relationship Center at 1-800-392-3673.

This booklet explains in detail the warranty coverages that apply to your 2012-model car or light truck. If you bought a previously owned 2012-model vehicle, you are eligible for any remaining warranty coverages.

Ford Motor Company provides the **Emissions Defect Warranties** and **Emissions Performance Warranties** which cover your emissions control systems, and **Noise Emissions Warranty** which applies only to medium/heavy duty trucks over 10,000 pounds Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (pages 17-32).

## 2. Important information you should know

### IF YOU NEED CUSTOMER ASSISTANCE

Your Ford Motor Company dealer is available to assist you with all your automotive needs. Please follow the procedures outlined on the front page of this booklet.

In addition, if you are an eligible U.S. owner, you may use - at no cost - the services of the BBB AUTO LINE program. For details, see Better Business Bureau (BBB) AUTO LINE program, page 34 or call 1-800-955-5100.

### KNOW WHEN YOUR WARRANTY BEGINS

Your **Warranty Start Date** is the day you take delivery of your new vehicle or the day it is first put into service (for example, as a dealer demonstrator), whichever occurs first.

### CHECK YOUR VEHICLE

We try to check vehicles carefully at the assembly plant and the dealership, and we usually correct any damage to paint, sheet metal, upholstery, or other appearance items. But occasionally something may slip past us, and a customer may find that a vehicle was damaged before he or she took delivery. If you see any damage when you receive your vehicle, notify your dealership within one week.

### MAINTAIN YOUR VEHICLE PROPERLY

Your glove compartment contains an **Owner Guide** and a **Scheduled Maintenance Guide** which indicate the scheduled maintenance required for your vehicle. Proper maintenance guards against major repair expenses resulting from neglect or inadequate maintenance, may help increase the value you receive when you sell or trade your vehicle, and is important in allowing your vehicle to comply with applicable emissions standards.

It is your responsibility to make sure that all of the scheduled maintenance is performed and that the materials used meet Ford engineering specifications. Failure to perform scheduled maintenance as

specified in the Scheduled Maintenance Guide will invalidate warranty coverage on parts affected by the lack of maintenance. Make sure that receipts for completed maintenance work are retained with the vehicle and confirmation of maintenance work is always entered in your

### **Scheduled Maintenance Guide.**

Your Ford or Lincoln dealership, or Ford or Lincoln Auto Care Service Center, has factory-trained technicians who can perform the required maintenance using genuine Ford parts. The dealership looks forward to meeting your every service need to maximize your satisfaction with your vehicle.

### **WHO PAYS FOR WARRANTY REPAIRS?**

You will not be charged for repairs covered by any applicable warranty during the stated coverage periods, unless specifically stated elsewhere in this guide.

Some states have mandated alternate time coverage periods for parts of your vehicle (e.g. seatbelts).

Some states and/or local governments may require a tax on a portion of warranty repairs. Where applicable law allows, the tax must be paid by you, the owner of the vehicle.

During the Bumper to Bumper Warranty period, dealers may receive instructions to provide no-cost, service-type improvements - not originally included in your Scheduled Maintenance Guide - intended to increase your overall satisfaction with your vehicle.

Sometimes Ford may offer a special adjustment program to pay all or part of the cost of certain repairs beyond the terms of the applicable warranty. Check with your dealer or call 1-800-392-3673 to learn whether any adjustment program is applicable to your vehicle. Please have your vehicle identification number available.

## DO WARRANTIES APPLY IN OTHER COUNTRIES? Appendix L

The **New Vehicle Limited Warranty** and the **Emissions Warranties** described in this booklet apply to your vehicle if:

- it was originally purchased through the Ford Export Operations Military Sales Program; or
- it was originally sold or leased by Ford Motor Company or one of its dealers in the United States or U.S. Federalized Territories, and it was originally registered/licensed and operated in the United States, U.S. Federalized Territories, or Canada.

If you meet either of these two requirements, you do have warranty coverage when you travel with this vehicle outside the United States, U.S. Federalized Territories, or Canada. In some cases, however, you may have to pay the servicing Ford dealer in a foreign country or U.S. Federalized Territory for a repair that is covered under the U.S. warranty. If this happens, be sure to save the paid repair order or invoice. You should present this document to a U.S. Ford Motor Company dealer for warranty refund consideration. Refer to [www.Ford.com](http://www.Ford.com) for additional customer assistance reference information.

### 3. The New Vehicle Limited Warranty for your 2012-model vehicle

#### **LIMITATIONS AND DISCLAIMERS**

All of the warranties in this booklet are subject to the following limitations and disclaimers:

The warranties in this booklet are the only express warranties applicable to your vehicle. Ford does not assume or authorize anyone to assume for it any other obligation or liability in connection with your vehicle or these warranties. No person, including Ford employees or dealers, may modify or waive any part of these warranties.

Ford and its dealers reserve the right to make changes in or additions to vehicles built or sold by them at any time without incurring any obligation to make the same or similar changes or additions to vehicles previously built or sold.

Ford and its dealers also reserve the right to provide post-warranty repairs, conduct recalls, or extend the warranty coverage period for certain vehicles or vehicle populations, at the sole discretion of Ford. The fact that Ford has provided such measures to a particular vehicle or vehicle population in no way obligates Ford to provide similar accommodations to other owners of similar vehicles.

As a condition of these warranties, you are responsible for properly using, maintaining, and caring for your vehicle as outlined in your Owner Guide and Scheduled Maintenance Guide. Ford recommends that you maintain copies of all maintenance records and receipts for review by Ford.

Ford and your dealer are not responsible for any time or income that you lose, any inconvenience you might be caused, the loss of your transportation or use of your vehicle, the cost of rental vehicles, fuel, telephone, travel, meals, or lodging, the loss of personal or commercial property, the loss of revenue, or for any other incidental or consequential damages you may have.

Punitive, exemplary, or multiple damages may not be recovered unless applicable law prohibits their disclaimer.

You may not bring any warranty-related claim as a class representative, a private attorney general, a member of a class of claimants or in any other representative capacity.

Ford shall not be liable for any damages caused by delay in delivery or furnishing of any products and/or services.

You may have some implied warranties. For example, you may have an implied warranty of merchantability (that the car or light truck is reasonably fit for the general purpose for which it was sold) or an implied warranty of fitness for a particular purpose (that the car or light truck is suitable for your special purposes), if a special purpose was specifically disclosed to Ford itself not merely to the dealer before your purchase, and Ford itself not just the dealer told you the vehicle would be suitable for that purpose.

These implied warranties are limited, to the extent allowed by law, to the time period covered by the written warranties, or to the applicable time period provided by state law, whichever period is shorter.

These implied warranties do not apply at all if you use your vehicle for business or commercial purposes. In addition, the implied warranty of fitness for a particular purpose does not apply if your vehicle is used for racing, even if the vehicle is equipped for racing.

The warranties contained in this booklet and all questions regarding their enforceability and interpretation are governed by the law of the state in which you purchased your Ford vehicle. Some states do not allow Ford to limit how long an implied warranty lasts or to exclude or limit incidental or consequential damages, so the limitation and exclusions described above may not apply to you.

**NOTE: This information about the limitation of implied warranties and the exclusion of incidental and consequential damages under the NEW VEHICLE LIMITED WARRANTY also applies to the EMISSIONS WARRANTIES described on pages 17-31.**

Ford participates in the BBB AUTO LINE warranty dispute resolution program. You may contact BBB AUTO LINE by calling 800-955-5100.

You are required to submit your warranty dispute to the BBB AUTO LINE before exercising rights or seeking remedies under the Federal Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, 15 U.S.C. § 2301 et seq. To the extent permitted by the applicable state “Lemon Law”, you are also required to submit your warranty dispute to the BBB AUTO LINE before exercising any rights or seeking remedies under the “Lemon Law”. If you choose to seek remedies that are not created by the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act or the applicable state “Lemon Law,” you are not required to first use BBB AUTO LINE to resolve your dispute – although the program is still available to you.

For more information regarding the BBB AUTO LINE program, see page 34 of this booklet.

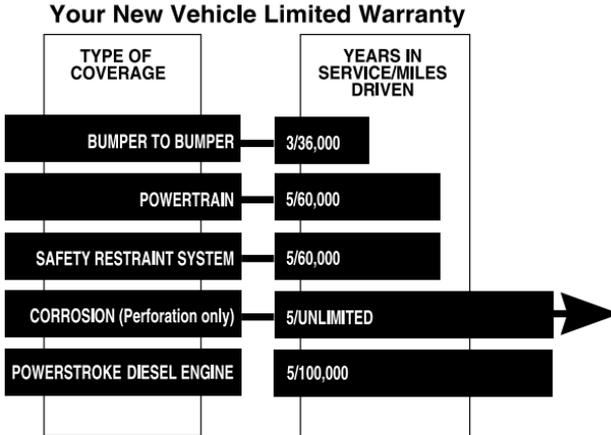
## QUICK REFERENCE: WARRANTY COVERAGE

Appendix L

This chart gives a general summary of your warranty coverage provided by Ford Motor Company under the **New Vehicle Limited Warranty**. Please refer to the description of warranty coverage for more specific information.

For each type of coverage, the chart shows two measures:

- years in service
- miles driven



The measure that occurs first determines how long your coverage lasts. For example: Your Bumper to Bumper Coverage lasts for three years - unless you drive more than 36,000 miles before three years elapse. In that case, your coverage ends at 36,000 miles.

For more details on coverage, see:

- ➔ **What is Covered?** (pages 8-12)
- ➔ **What is Not Covered?** (pages 12-15)

### WHAT IS COVERED?

Your NEW VEHICLE LIMITED WARRANTY gives you specific legal rights. You may have other rights that vary from state to state. Under your New Vehicle Limited Warranty if:

- your Ford vehicle is properly operated and maintained, and

- was taken to a Ford dealership for a warranted repair during the warranty period,

then authorized Ford Motor Company dealers will, without charge, repair, replace, or adjust all parts on your vehicle that malfunction or fail during normal use during the applicable coverage period due to a manufacturing defect in factory-supplied materials or factory workmanship.

This warranty does not mean that each Ford vehicle is defect free. Defects may be unintentionally introduced into vehicles during the design and manufacturing processes and such defects could result in the need for repairs. For this reason, Ford provides the New Vehicle Limited Warranty in order to remedy any such defects that result in vehicle part malfunction or failure during the warranty period.

The remedy under this written warranty, and any implied warranty, is limited to repair, replacement, or adjustment of defective parts. This exclusive remedy shall not be deemed to have failed its essential purpose so long as Ford, through its authorized dealers, is willing and able to repair, replace, or adjust defective parts in the prescribed manner. Ford's liability, if any, shall in no event exceed the cost of correcting manufacturing defects as herein provided and upon expiration of this warranty, any such liability shall terminate.

Conditions that are not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty are described on pages 12-15. When making warranty repairs on your vehicle, the dealer will use Ford or Motorcraft parts or remanufactured or other parts that are authorized by Ford, at the discretion of Ford or the Ford dealership.

Nothing in this warranty should be construed as requiring defective parts to be replaced with parts of a different type or design than the original part, so long as the vehicle functions properly with the replacement part. Moreover, Ford and its authorized dealers are entitled to a reasonable time and a reasonable number of attempts within which to diagnose and repair any defect covered by this warranty.

In certain instances, Ford may authorize repairs at other than Ford dealer facilities.

Two separate warranties apply to tires on your new vehicle. The New Vehicle Limited Warranty covers tire defects in factory supplied material or workmanship for 100% of labor costs and on a pro rata adjustment basis for parts. (See the reimbursement schedule below).

For vehicles within the New Vehicle Limited Warranty time in service and mileage coverage period, defective tires will be replaced on a pro rata adjustment basis according to the following mileage-based Reimbursement Schedule:

MILES DRIVEN	PERCENT OF PARTS COVERED BY FORD
1-12,000	100%
12,001-24,000	60%
24,001-36,000	30%

The tire manufacturer also provides you with a separate tire warranty that may extend beyond the New Vehicle Limited Warranty coverage. You will find the manufacturer's tire warranty with the owner literature supplied with your vehicle. You have the option of having a tire warranty repair performed by the tire manufacturer's authorized service center. If you go to a tire service center for a repair covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty, you may be charged a prorated amount for wear or other charges. If so, you should present your paid invoice detailing the nature of the charges to any Ford Motor Company dealership for refund consideration. When making warranty repairs on your vehicle, the dealer will use Ford or Motorcraft parts or remanufactured or other parts that are authorized by Ford. In certain instances, Ford may authorize repairs at other than Ford dealer facilities. Tire replacements under warranty will be made with the same brand and model as originally equipped with the vehicle unless the same brand and model is no longer available, in which case a tire of the same brand, size, load, speed and tread type will be used. In some circumstances, Ford may authorize another brand and/or model to substitute for the original brand and model, even if still available.

Normal tire wear or damage is not reimbursable. See page 14 for details of what is not covered.

**Extended warranty coverage periods are available for certain vehicle parts and conditions. Specifically,**

(1) Your vehicle's Powertrain components are covered for five years or 60,000 miles, whichever occurs first. The extended coverage applies to the **Engine:** all internal lubricated parts, cylinder block, cylinder heads, electrical fuel pump, electronic engine control unit, engine mounts, flywheel, injection pump, manifold (exhaust and intake), manifold bolts, oil pan, oil pump, seals and gaskets, thermostat, thermostat housing, timing chain cover, timing chain (gears or belt), turbocharger/supercharger unit, valve covers, water pump;

**Transmission:** all internal parts, clutch cover, seals and gaskets, torque converter, transfer case (including all internal parts), transmission case, transmission mounts; **Front-Wheel Drive:** axle shafts, bearings (front and rear), center support bearing, drive shafts, final drive housing (including all internal parts), hubs-automatic front locking (four-wheel drive), locking rings (four-wheel drive), seals and gaskets, universal and constant velocity joints; **Rear-Wheel Drive:** axle shafts, bearings (front and rear), center support bearing, drive axle housing (including all internal parts), drive shaft, propeller shafts, retainers, supports, seals and gaskets, universal and constant velocity joints.

(2) Your vehicle's safety belts and air bag Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) are covered for an extended Safety Restraint Coverage Period, which lasts for five years or 60,000 miles, whichever occurs first.

(3) Your vehicle's body sheet metal panels are covered for an extended Corrosion Coverage Period, which lasts for five years, regardless of miles driven. The extended warranty coverage only applies if a body sheet metal panel becomes perforated due to corrosion during normal use due to a manufacturing defect in factory-supplied materials or factory workmanship. For damage caused by airborne material (environmental fallout) where there is no factory-related defect involved and therefore no warranty – our policy is to provide free repair of paint damage due to the airborne material for 12 months or 12,000 miles, whichever occurs first.

(4) Your vehicle's direct injection diesel engine and certain engine components are covered during the PowerStroke Diesel Engine Coverage Period, which lasts for five years or 100,000 miles, whichever occurs first. The following parts are covered during this extended coverage period: the engine, cylinder block, heads and all internal parts, intake and exhaust manifolds, timing gear, harmonic balancer, valve covers, oil pan and pump, water pump, fuel system (excluding fuel lines, fuel tank and frame mounted fuel conditioning module sometimes referred to as the frame mounted pump/filter/water separator), high pressure lines, gaskets and seals, glow plugs, turbocharger, two-stage turbocharger assembly, turbocharger actuator, powertrain control module, engine control module, high pressure fuel injection pump assembly, electronic driver unit, injectors, injection pressure sensor, fuel rail pressure sensor,

high pressure oil regulator, exhaust back pressure regulator and sensor, exhaust pressure sensor, manifold pressure sensor, intake air temperature sensor, crankshaft position sensor, camshaft position sensor, accelerator switch.

**NOTE:** Some components may also be covered by the Emissions Warranties. For more information, see pages 17-31.

## **WHAT IS NOT COVERED UNDER THE NEW VEHICLE LIMITED WARRANTY?**

### **Damage Caused By:**

- accidents, collision or objects striking the vehicle (including driving through a car wash)
- theft, vandalism, or riot
- fire or explosion
- using contaminated or improper fuel/fluids
- customer-applied chemicals or accidental spills
- driving through water deep enough to cause water to be ingested into the engine
- misuse of the vehicle, such as driving over curbs, overloading, racing or using the vehicle as a permanent stationary power source

### **Damage Caused by Alteration or Modification**

The New Vehicle Limited Warranty does not cover any damage caused by:

- alterations or modifications of the vehicle, including the body, chassis, or components, after the vehicle leaves the control of Ford Motor Company
- tampering with the vehicle, tampering with the emissions systems or with the other parts that affect these systems (for example, but not limited to exhaust and intake systems)
- the installation or use of a non-Ford Motor Company part (other than a certified emissions part) or any part (Ford or non-Ford) designed for off-road use only installed after the vehicle leaves the control of Ford Motor Company, if the installed part fails or causes a Ford part to fail. Examples include, but are not limited to lift kits, oversized

tires, roll bars, cellular phones, alarm systems, automatic starting systems and performance-enhancing powertrain components or software and performance “chips”

### **Damage Caused by Use and/or the Environment**

The New Vehicle Limited Warranty does not cover surface rust, deterioration and damage of paint, trim, upholstery, and other appearance items that result from use and/or exposure to the elements. You, as the owner, are responsible for these items. Some examples are:

- dings, dents
- cuts, burns, punctures or tears
- road salt
- tree sap, bird and bee droppings
- windstorm, lightening, hail
- earthquake
- freezing, water or flood
- stone chips, scratches (some examples are on paint and glass)
- windshield stress cracks. However, limited coverage on windshield stress cracks will be provided for the first 12 months or 12,000 miles (which ever occurs first), even though caused by use and/or exposure to the elements.

### **Maintenance/Wear**

The New Vehicle Limited Warranty does not cover: (1) parts and labor needed to maintain the vehicle; and (2) the replacement of parts due to normal wear and tear. You, as the owner, are responsible for these items. See your Scheduled Maintenance Guide. Some examples of maintenance and normal wear are:

- oil changes
- oils, lubricants, other fluids
- oil/air filters
- tire rotation/inflation
- cleaning/polishing
- clutch linings
- Wiper blades
- Wheel alignments and tire balancing
- Brake pad/lining

Where a vehicle has no factory-related defect, and is therefore not entitled to a warranty related repair, replacement or adjustment, it is Ford policy nonetheless to provide certain maintenance items, when necessary, free of charge during a limited period:

- wiper blade replacements will be provided during the first six months in service, regardless of miles driven.
- wheel alignments and tire balancing (unless required by a warranty repair) will be provided during the first 12 months or 12,000 miles in service, whichever occurs first
- Brake pad/lining replacements will be provided during the first 12 months or 18,000 miles in service, whichever occurs first

### **SYNC Hands-Free Communications and Entertainment System**

If your vehicle is equipped with SYNC, the New Vehicle Limited Warranty does not cover repairs under certain conditions. Some examples include:

- Loss of personal recording media, software or data
- Failure to provide proper installation environment
- Damage caused by:
  - abnormal use such as insertion of foreign objects, fluid spillage
  - unauthorized modification to alter functionality or capability
  - computer or internet viruses, bugs, worms, Trojan Horses, cancelbots
  - installation of unauthorized software, peripherals and attachments
  - unauthorized, unapproved and/or incompatible repairs, upgrades and modification
  - the defective function of your cellular phone or digital media device (i.e., inadequate signal reception by the external antenna, viruses or other software problems)

### **Tire Wear or Damage**

The New Vehicle Limited Warranty does not cover normal wear or worn out tires. Tires will not be replaced (unless required by a warranty repair) for wear or damage including:

- tire damage from road hazard such as cuts, snags, bruises, bulges, puncture, and impact breaks
- tire damage due to under or over inflation, tire chain use, racing, spinning (as when stuck in snow or mud), improper mounting or dismounting, or tire repair

The New Vehicle Limited Warranty does not cover:

- vehicles that have had the odometer disconnected, altered, or inoperative for an extended period of time with the result that the actual mileage cannot be determined
- vehicles that have ever been labeled or branded as dismantled, fire, flood, junk, rebuilt, reconstructed, or salvaged; this will void the New Vehicle Limited Warranty
- vehicles that have been determined to be a total loss by an insurance company; this will void the New Vehicle Limited Warranty
- converted Expedition EL Limousines that are not equipped with the Limousine Builder's Package (17L) Option, or if the wheelbase is extended beyond 140 inches, or if the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) exceeds 9,900 pounds. See important information about Expedition EL limousine conversion (page 36).
- any other Ford vehicles that are converted to limousines. This will void the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. See important information about conversions (page 36)
- converted ambulances that are not equipped with the Ford Ambulance Prep Package, see important information about ambulance conversions (page 35)
- Aftermarket parts or components, sometimes installed by Ford Motor Company or an authorized Ford dealership, may not be covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. Any damage caused to Ford components due to the failure of aftermarket parts (other than a certified emissions part) is not covered.

## 4. In addition ...

### **ROADSIDE SERVICE ASSISTANCE (UNITED STATES, PUERTO RICO, AND U.S. VIRGIN ISLANDS)**

Your vehicle is covered by the complimentary Ford Roadside Assistance Program (unless you are driving a daily rental unit). Under this program, Ford will cover:

- Towing to the nearest Ford Motor Company dealership, or towing to your selling dealership if within 35 miles
- Flat tire change (vehicle must have useable spare)
- Fuel delivery (limited to two occurrences in a 12-month period up to 2 gal. gas, 5 gal. diesel)
- Jump starts
- Lock-out assistance (replacement key cost is customer responsibility)
- Winching (vehicle must be within 100 feet of a paved or county-maintained road)

The Roadside Assistance Program is separate from the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. It begins at the warranty start date and lasts for five years or 60,000 miles (whichever occurs first). If you need towing beyond the five years or 60,000 miles (whichever occurs first) period, Ford can arrange roadside assistance and charge your credit card. If the reason for the vehicle disablement is later found to be covered by another Ford warranty, Ford will provide a refund for the tow charge under the other warranty, through the dealership.

**For emergency roadside assistance, call 1-800-241-3673, 24 hours a day, 365 days a year.**

Ford Rental cars (FRCS) that must be towed because a covered repair has failed during the warranty coverage period, Ford will cover towing to the nearest Ford Motor Company dealership.

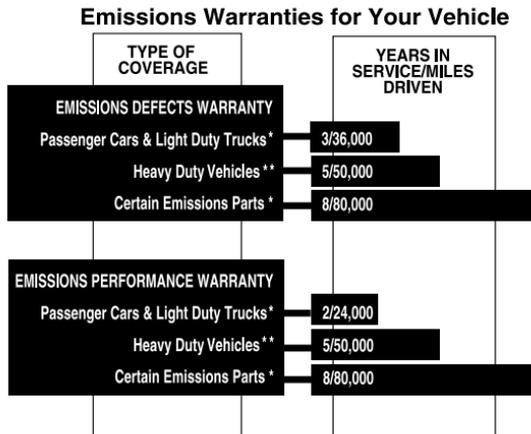
Ford Motor Company reserves the right to modify or discontinue Roadside Assistance at any time. Certain restrictions apply to Roadside Assistance benefits. Call 1-800-241-3673 for further details.

## 5. Federal requirements for emissions warranties

### QUICK REFERENCE: EMISSIONS WARRANTY COVERAGE

This chart shows your warranty coverage under two emissions warranties that Ford Motor Company provides, in compliance with Federal requirements. The warranties are:

- Emissions Defects Warranty
- Emissions Performance Warranty



\* Applies to vehicles up to 8,500 pounds gross vehicle weight rating (GVWR)

\*\* Applies to trucks over 8,500 pounds gross vehicle weight rating (GVWR) up to 19,500 pounds gross vehicle weight rating (GVWR)

For full details on emissions control coverage, see:

- ➔ **Emissions Defect Warranty** (page 18)
- ➔ **Emissions Performance Warranty** (page 19)
- ➔ **What is Covered?** (pages 20-21)
- ➔ **What is Not Covered?** (page 21)

During the warranty coverage period, Ford Motor Company warrants that:

- your vehicle or engine is designed, built, and equipped to meet - at the time it is sold - the emissions regulations of the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA).
- your vehicle or engine is free from emission-related defects in factory-supplied materials or workmanship, which are defects that could prevent the vehicle or engine from conforming with applicable EPA regulations.
- you will not be charged for diagnosis, repair, replacement, or adjustment of parts containing an emissions-related defect. Applicable parts are listed under **What is Covered?** on pages 20-21.

The warranty coverage period for:

- Passenger cars, light duty trucks (applies to vehicles up to 8,500 pounds GVWR)
  - 8 years or 80,000 miles (whichever occurs first) for catalytic converters, electronic engine control unit (ECU), transmission control module (TCM), and any other onboard emissions diagnostic module.
  - 3 years or 36,000 miles (whichever occurs first) for all other covered parts.
- Heavy duty vehicles (applies to trucks over 8,500 pounds GVWR up to 19,500 pounds GVWR)
  - 5 years or 50,000 miles (whichever occurs first) for all covered parts.

See WHAT IS COVERED for list of covered parts.

## EMISSIONS PERFORMANCE WARRANTY COVERAGE Appendix L

Under Emissions Performance Warranty Coverage, Ford Motor Company will repair, replace, or adjust - with no charge for labor, diagnosis, or parts - any emissions control device or system, if you meet all of the following conditions:

- You have maintained and operated your vehicle according to the instructions on proper care in the **Owner Guide**, the **Scheduled Maintenance Guide**, and this booklet.
- Your vehicle fails to conform, during the warranty coverage period, to the applicable national EPA standards, as determined by an EPA approved inspection and maintenance program.
- You are subject to a penalty or sanction under local, state, or federal law because your vehicle has failed to conform to the emissions standards. (A penalty or sanction can include being denied the right to use your vehicle.)
- Your vehicle has not been tampered with, misused, or abused.

The warranty coverage period for:

- Passenger cars, light duty trucks (applies to vehicles up to 8,500 pounds GVWR)
  - 8 years or 80,000 miles (whichever occurs first) for catalytic converter, electronic emission control unit (ECU), transmission control module (TCM), and any other onboard emissions diagnostic module
  - 2 years or 24,000 miles (whichever occurs first) for all other covered parts.
- Heavy duty vehicles (applies to trucks over 8,500 pounds GVWR up to 19,500 pounds GVWR)
  - 5 years or 50,000 miles (whichever occurs first) for all covered parts.

See WHAT IS COVERED for list of covered parts.

Note that the warranty period begins on the **Warranty Start Date** as specified on page 2 of this booklet.

## WHAT IS COVERED?

## Appendix L

For your vehicle if these parts contain an emissions-related defect, they are covered by both the Emissions Defect Warranty and the Emissions Performance Warranty.

- Air Flow Sensor
- Air/Fuel Feedback Control System and Sensors
- Air Induction System
- Catalytic Converters (including Selective Catalytic Reduction and Diesel Oxidation Catalysts)
- Cold Start Enrichment System (diesel only)
- Controls for Deceleration (diesel only)
- Diesel Exhaust Fluid System
- Diesel Particulate Filter
- Electronic Ignition System (diesel only)
- Electronic Engine Control Sensors and Switches
- Electronic Engine Control Unit (ECU)\*
- Evaporative Emission Control System
- Exhaust Gas Recirculation (EGR) System
- Exhaust Manifold
- Exhaust Pipe (Manifold to Catalyst)
- Fuel Filler Cap and Neck Restrictor (non-diesel only)
- Fuel Injection System
- Fuel Injector Supply Manifold
- Fuel Tank (non-diesel only)
- Fuel Tank Pressure Control Valve
- Idle Air Bypass Valve
- Ignition Coil and/or Control Module
- Intake Manifold
- Intercooler Assembly - Engine Charger (diesel and 2.0L EcoBoost engines only)
- Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)/On-Board Diagnostic (OBD) System
- PCV system and Oil Filler Cap
- Secondary Air Injection System
- Spark Control Components
- Spark Plugs and Ignition Wires
- Synchronizer Assembly
- Thermostat
- Throttle Body Assembly (MFI)
- Transmission Control Module (TCM) and Solenoids
- Turbocharger Assembly
- Vacuum Distribution System

\* Includes hardware and emissions related software changes only

## Important Information About List of Parts

Also covered by the two emissions warranties are all emissions-related bulbs, hoses, clamps, brackets, tubes, gaskets, seals, belts, connectors, non-diesel fuel lines, sensors, and wiring harnesses that are used with components on the list of parts, above.

Concerning parts that should be replaced on a certain maintenance schedule: these parts remain under warranty until : (a) the first replacement time that is specified in your **Owner Guide** and the **Scheduled Maintenance Guide**; or (b) the time or mileage limits of the Federal Defect and Performance Warranties (whichever occurs first). Your Ford Motor Company dealer maintains a complete list of parts covered by emissions warranties. For more details about the specific parts covered by the Emissions Defect Warranty, contact your dealer.

### WHAT IS NOT COVERED?

Ford Motor Company may deny you emissions warranty coverage if your vehicle or a part does not contain an emissions-related defect or has failed because of abuse, neglect, improper maintenance, unapproved modifications, or any items included in **What Is Not Covered?**, pages 12-15.

If you need more information about getting service under the **Federal Emissions Performance Warranty**, or if you want to report what you believe to be violations of the terms of this warranty, you may contact:

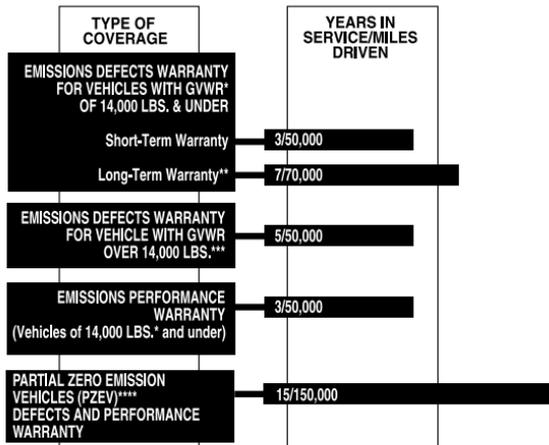
**Manager, Certification and Compliance Division  
(6405J)  
Warranty Claims  
Environmental Protection Agency  
Ariel Rios building  
1200 Pennsylvania Avenue, N.W.  
Washington, D.C. 20460**

## 6. California requirements for emissions warranties

### QUICK REFERENCE: EMISSIONS WARRANTY COVERAGE

This chart shows the emission warranty that Ford Motor Company provides for your vehicle under the emissions control warranty in accordance with the regulations of the California Air Resources Board. This coverage is in addition to Federal Emission warranties (Page 17).

**Emissions Warranties for California Certified Vehicles**



\* Gross Vehicle Weight Rating

\*\* These specific parts were selected on the basis of their estimated replacement cost at the time the California Air Resources Board certified your vehicle for sale in California (up to 14,000 GVWR).

\*\*\* Diesel engine vehicles over 14,000 pounds GVWR are covered for 5 years or 100,000 miles.

\*\*\*\* Refer to your Vehicle Emission Control Information Label for emissions certification information.

### Vehicles Eligible for California Emission Warranty Coverage

California emission warranty coverage applies if your vehicle meets the following two requirements:

- Your vehicle is registered in a state\* that has adopted and is enforcing California emission warranty regulations applicable for your vehicle at the time of repair, and
- Your vehicle is certified for sale in California as indicated on the vehicle emission control information label.

\* Subject to change, the following states have adopted and are enforcing California emission warranty regulations:

- **Passenger Car & Light-duty Trucks** (up to 8,500 pounds GVWR) - Arizona, California, Connecticut, Maine, Maryland, Massachusetts, New Jersey, Oregon, Pennsylvania, Rhode Island, Vermont and Washington (NOTE: New York adopted California emissions standards, but not the California Emissions Warranty; the Federal Emission Control Warranty applies to all non-PZEV vehicles in New York)
- **Medium-Duty Passenger Vehicles** (up to 10,000 pounds GVWR designed primarily for the transportation of persons. Excludes incomplete trucks, trucks with a seating capacity either over twelve persons total or over nine persons rearward of the driver's seat, or trucks with an open cargo area of at least six feet of interior length): Arizona, California, Connecticut, Maine, Maryland, Massachusetts, Oregon, Rhode Island, Vermont and Washington
- **Medium-Duty Vehicles** (over 8,500 pounds GVWR up to 14,000 pounds GVWR) - Arizona, California, Connecticut, Maine, Maryland, Massachusetts, Oregon, Rhode Island, and Vermont.
- **Light Heavy-Duty Diesel Engine Vehicles** (over 14,000 pounds GVWR up to 19,500 pounds GVWR) - California, Maine, and Pennsylvania.

### **Vehicles Eligible for California PZEV Emission Warranty Coverage**

California Partial Zero Emission Vehicles (PZEV) have extended coverage on all emission related parts. This extended warranty coverage applies if your vehicle is PZEV certified as indicated on the VECI label and is registered in a state that has adopted and is enforcing California PZEV emissions warranty, which may include the following states, subject to change: California, Connecticut, Maine, Maryland, Massachusetts, New Jersey, New York, Rhode Island or Vermont.

For full details about coverage under California requirements for emissions control, see:

- ➔ **Defects Warranties** (pages 24-30)
- ➔ **Performance Warranty** (pages 24-25)
- ➔ **What Is Covered?** (pages 26-29)
- ➔ **What Is Not Covered?** (page 29)

## EXPLANATION OF CALIFORNIA EMISSIONS WARRANTIES

### Your Warranty Rights and Obligations

The California Air Resources Board and Ford Motor Company are pleased to explain the emission control system warranty on your 2012-model vehicle. In California, new motor vehicles must be designed, built, and equipped to meet the State's stringent anti-smog standards. Ford must warrant the emission control system on your vehicle for the periods of time listed on pages 24-25, provided there has been no abuse, neglect, or improper maintenance of your vehicle.

Your emission control system may include parts such as the carburetor or fuel injection system, the ignition system, catalytic converter, and the engine computer. Also included may be hoses, belts, connectors, and other emissions-related assemblies.

Where a warrantable condition exists, Ford Motor Company will repair your vehicle at no cost to you including diagnosis, parts, and labor.

### Manufacturer's Warranty Coverage

#### For Vehicles Eligible for California Emission Warranty Coverage

If Gross Vehicle Weight Rating is 14,000 lbs. or less:

For 3 years or 50,000 miles (whichever first occurs):

1. If your vehicle fails a Smog Check inspection, all necessary repairs and adjustments will be made by Ford to ensure that your vehicle passes the inspection. This is your emission control system PERFORMANCE WARRANTY.
2. If any emissions-related part on your vehicle is defective, the part will be repaired or replaced by Ford. This is your short-term emission control system DEFECTS WARRANTY.

For 7 years or 70,000 miles (whichever first occurs):

If an emissions-related part listed on page 27 with coverage for 7 years or 70,000 miles is defective, the part will be repaired or replaced by Ford. This is your long-term emission control system DEFECTS WARRANTY.

If Gross Vehicle Weight rating is over 14,000 lbs.:

For 5 years or 50,000 miles (gasoline powered engines and vehicles) or  
5 years or 100,000 miles (diesel powered engines and vehicles)  
(whichever first occurs):

If an emissions-related part on your vehicle is defective, the part will be repaired or replaced by Ford. This is your emission control system DEFECTS WARRANTY.

For 15 years or 150,000 miles (whichever first occurs):

1. If an emissions-related part on your vehicle is defective, the part will be repaired or replaced by Ford. This is your emissions control system DEFECTS WARRANTY.
2. If your vehicle fails a Smog Check inspection, all necessary repairs and adjustments will be made by Ford to ensure that your vehicle passes the inspection. This is your emission control system PERFORMANCE WARRANTY.

### **Owner's Warranty Responsibilities**

As the vehicle owner, you are responsible for the performance of the required maintenance listed in your owner's manual. Ford Motor Company recommends that you retain all receipts covering maintenance on your vehicle, but Ford cannot deny warranty coverage solely for the lack of receipts or for your failure to ensure the performance of all scheduled maintenance.

You are responsible for presenting your vehicle to a Ford Motor Company dealer as soon as a problem exists. The warranty repairs should be completed in a reasonable amount of time, not to exceed 30 days.

As the vehicle owner, you should also be aware that Ford Motor Company may deny you warranty coverage if your vehicle or a part has failed due to abuse, neglect, improper maintenance, or unapproved modifications.

If you have any questions regarding your warranty rights and responsibilities, or if you want to report what you believe to be violations of the terms of this warranty, you may contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center at 1-800-392-3673 (FORD) or the California Air Resources Board at:

**State of California Air Resources Board  
Mobile Source Operations Division  
9528 Telstar Avenue  
El Monte, California 91731-2990**

## WHAT IS COVERED?

## Appendix L

If the parts on the following list contains a defect that affects emissions, they are covered by the Defects Warranties.

- Air Flow Sensor
- Air/Fuel Feedback Control System and Sensors
- Air Induction System
- Catalytic Converters (including Selective Catalytic Reduction and Diesel Oxidation Catalysts)
- Cold Start Enrichment System (diesel only)
- Controls for Deceleration (diesel only)
- Diesel Exhaust Fluid System
- Diesel Particulate Filter
- Electronic Ignition System (diesel only)
- Electronic Engine Control Sensors and Switches
- Electronic Engine Control Unit (ECU)\*
- Evaporative Emission Control System
- Exhaust Gas Recirculation (EGR) System
- Exhaust Manifold
- Exhaust Pipe (Manifold to Catalyst)
- Fuel Filler Cap and Neck Restrictor (non-diesel only)
- Fuel Injection System
- Fuel Injector Supply Manifold
- Fuel Tank (non-diesel only)
- Fuel Tank Pressure Control Valve
- Idle Air Bypass Valve
- Ignition Coil and/or Control Module
- Intake Manifold
- Intercooler Assembly - Engine Charger (diesel and 2.0L EcoBoost engines only)
- Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)/On-Board Diagnostic (OBD) System
- PCV System and Oil Filler Cap
- Secondary Air Injection System
- Spark Control Components
- Spark Plugs and Ignition Wires
- Thermostat
- Throttle Body Assembly (MFI)
- Transmission Control Module (TCM) and Solenoids
- Turbocharger Assembly
- Vacuum Distribution System

\* Includes hardware and emissions related software changes only



**"COVERAGE FOR 2012 MODEL VEHICLES (GVWR OF 14,000 LBS. OR LESS)"  
 UNDER CALIFORNIA LONG TERM DEFECTS WARRANTY  
 "(Coverage for up to 7 years/70,000 miles, whichever first occurs)"**

Part Name	1.6L Fiesta	2.0L Focus	2.0L Edge	2.0L Explorer	2.0L Transit Connect	2.5L Escape	3.0L Fusion	3.0L Escape	3.5L Edge	3.5L Explorer	3.5L F-150	3.5L Flex	3.5L Fusion	3.5L Taurus	3.7L Edge	3.7L F-150	3.7L Mustang	4.6L E-Series	5.0L F-150	5.0L Mustang	5.4L E-Series	5.4L Expedition	5.4L Mustang	6.2L F-150	6.2L F-Superduty	6.7L F-Superduty	6.8L E-Series	6.8L F-Superduty		
Intake Manifold	X																													
Exhaust Manifold (Right-Hand)						X																								
Exhaust Manifold (Left-Hand)			X																											
Exhaust Manifold Gasket							X																							
Exhaust Gasket												X(3)																		
EGR Cooler																														
EGR Valve																														
EGR Tube to Manifold Connector						X																	X							
Exhaust Adaptor										X																				
Emission Vacuum Connector											X																			
Fuel Injector Kit																														
Fuel Injector												X(3)														X				
Fuel Vapor Storage Canister																														
Fuel Injector Fuel Supply Manifold												X																		
High Pressure Fuel Line																														
Instrument Cluster (1)	X	X	X	X		X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
Glow Plug Control Module																														
Powertrain Control Wiring Harness	X	X	X	X		X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Powertrain Engine Control Unit (ECU)	X	X	X	X		X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Main Body Wiring Harness (2)	X	X	X	X		X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Dash Panel & Headlamp Junction Wiring Assembly(2)	X	X	X	X		X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Main Wiring Assembly (2)	X	X	X	X		X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Rear Lamp Wiring Assembly (2)						X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X

(1)for Service Engine Soon/Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) functionality concerns only

(2)for MIL illumination only

(3)for EcoBoost Engine only

## Important Information about List of Parts

There may be additional coverage for these parts through the Bumper to Bumper, Powertrain, or Diesel Engine limited warranties. In any case, the warranty with the broadest coverage applies.

Also covered by this warranty are all emissions-related bulbs, hoses, clamps, brackets, tubes, gaskets, seals, belts, connectors, non diesel fuel lines, and wiring harnesses that are used with components on the list of parts above.

Concerning parts that should be replaced on a certain maintenance schedule: these parts remain under warranty until the first required replacement time that is specified in your **Owner Guide** and the **Scheduled Maintenance Guide**.

**NOTE:** If the diagnosis does not reveal a defect, the Defects Warranty does not apply.

Your Ford Motor Company dealer maintains a complete list of covered parts. For more details about the specific parts that are covered by the Defects Warranty, contact your dealer.

### **WHAT IS NOT COVERED?**

Ford Motor Company may deny you emissions warranty coverage if your vehicle or a part does not contain a defect that affects emissions or has failed because of abuse, neglect, improper maintenance, unapproved modifications, or any items included in **What Is Not Covered?**, pages 12-15.

## **7. Additional information about your emissions warranty coverage, under Federal and California requirements**

### **HOW DO I GET WARRANTY SERVICE?**

To get service under your emissions warranties, take your vehicle to any Ford Motor Company dealer as soon as possible after illumination of the Malfunction Indicator Light or it has failed an EPA-approved test or a California Smog Check inspection. Be sure to show the dealer the document that says your vehicle has failed the test.

Your dealer will determine whether the repair is covered by the warranty. If the dealer has a question about Emissions Performance Warranty coverage, it will forward the question to Ford Motor Company, which must make a final decision within 30 days after you bring your vehicle in for repair. (The decision will be made within a shorter time if state, local, or federal law requires you to have the vehicle repaired more quickly in order to avoid additional penalties.) The deadline for a determination about Emissions Performance Warranty Coverage does not need to be met if you request a delay, agree to a delay in writing, or if the delay is caused by an event for which neither Ford nor your dealer is responsible. If a question about Emissions Performance Warranty coverage is referred to Ford Motor Company, you will be notified by Ford Motor Company in writing if your claim for warranty coverage is denied. The notice will explain the basis for denying your claim. If you fail to receive this notice within a timely manner, as determined above, Ford will perform the warranty repair for you free of charge.

### **HOW DO I HANDLE EMERGENCY REPAIRS?**

If your vehicle needs an emergency warrantable repair and a Ford Motor Company dealer is not available, or if a Ford Motor Company dealer cannot perform warrantable repair(s) within 30 days of you bringing your vehicle to the dealer, repairs may be performed at any service establishment or by you using Ford equivalent replacement parts.

Ford will reimburse you for the cost of these warranty repairs including diagnosis, if you take the part(s) that are replaced and the repair receipt(s) to a Ford Motor Company dealer. The reimbursement shall not exceed Ford's suggested retail price for the warranted parts that are replaced and labor charges based on Ford's recommended time allowance for the warranty repair and the geographically appropriate hourly rate.

## WHAT REPLACEMENT PARTS SHOULD I USE? Appendix L

Ford Motor Company recommends that you use genuine Ford replacement parts. However, when you are having non-warranty work done on your vehicle, you may choose to use non-Ford parts. If you decide to use non-Ford parts, be sure they are equivalent to Ford parts in performance, quality, and durability. If you use replacement parts that are not equivalent to Ford parts, your vehicle's emissions control systems may not work as effectively, and you may jeopardize your emissions warranty coverage.

For vehicles within the warranty period, Ford will repair at no cost to the owner, under the Federal Emissions Warranty, covered emission failures caused by properly installed Ford parts or non-Ford parts that have been certified by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA). Ford is not responsible for the cost of repairing any emission failures caused by non-Ford parts that have not been certified by the EPA.

**The maintenance, replacement, or repair of emissions control devices or systems can be performed by any automotive repair establishment or individual using Ford replacement parts or EPA certified parts without voiding your federal warranty coverage for future repairs during the warranty period.**

### PROPER MAINTENANCE PRESERVES YOUR WARRANTY

If you do not maintain your vehicle properly, Ford may have the right to deny you warranty coverage.

To have repairs made under this warranty, you may have to show that you have followed Ford's instructions on properly maintaining and using your vehicle. You will find these instructions in your **Owner Guide** and **Scheduled Maintenance Guide**. Be sure to save your service receipts and to keep accurate records of all maintenance work.

### CUSTOMER ASSISTANCE

If you are not satisfied with the handling of a warranty matter, see **Customer Assistance**, on the inside front cover, and **Better Business Bureau (BBB) AUTO LINE program**, page 34.

## 8. Noise emissions warranty

### NOISE EMISSIONS WARRANTY FOR CERTAIN LIGHT TRUCKS

Ford Motor Company warrants to the first person who purchases this vehicle for purposes other than resale and to each subsequent purchaser that this vehicle as manufactured by Ford, was designed, built and equipped to conform at the time it left Ford's control with all applicable U.S. EPA Noise Control Regulations.

This warranty covers this vehicle as designed, built and equipped by Ford Motor Company, and is not limited to any particular part, component or system of the vehicle as manufactured by Ford. Defects in design, assembly or in any part, component or system of the vehicle as manufactured by Ford, which, at the time it left Ford's control, caused noise emissions to exceed Federal standards, are covered by this warranty for the life of the vehicle.

### THE NOISE EMISSIONS WARRANTY OBLIGATIONS DO NOT APPLY TO:

- loss of time, inconvenience, loss of use of the vehicle, commercial loss or, other consequential damages.
- any vehicle which is not covered by the U.S. EPA Medium and Heavy Trucks Noise Emission Standards (40 C.F.R. Part 205, Subpart B). Among the non-covered vehicles are those lacking a partially or fully enclosed operator's compartment, such as a basic stripped chassis, those having a Gross Vehicle Weight Rating of 10,000 pounds or less, and those sold outside the United States and its territories. To the extent permitted by law, THIS WARRANTY IS EXPRESSLY INSTEAD of any express or implied warranty, condition, or guarantee, agreement, or representation, by any person with respect to conformity of this vehicle with the U.S. EPA Noise Control Regulations, including ANY IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS.

## 9. Ford Extended Service Plan

### MORE PROTECTION FOR YOUR VEHICLE

You can get additional protection for your new car or light truck by purchasing a Ford Extended Service Plan (Ford ESP). Ford ESP service contracts are backed by Ford Motor Company and they provide:

- additional benefits during the warranty period depending on the plan you purchase (such as: alternative transportation and coverage for certain maintenance and wear items; coverage for certain maintenance and wear items); and
- extended protection after your Bumper to Bumper Warranty expires.

You may purchase Ford ESP from any Ford Motor Company dealer or visit our website at [Ford-ESP.com](http://Ford-ESP.com). There are several Ford ESP plans available in various time, distance and deductible combinations. Each plan is tailored to fit your own driving needs, including reimbursement for towing and rental vehicles.

When you purchase Ford ESP, you receive peace-of-mind protection throughout the United States and Canada, provided by a network of more than 4,600 Ford Motor Company dealers.

This information is subject to change. Ask your dealer for complete details about Ford ESP coverage.

## 10. The Better Business Bureau (BBB) AUTO LINE Program (U.S. Only)

Your satisfaction is important to Ford Motor Company and to your dealer. If a warranty concern has not been resolved using the three-step procedure outlined on the first page of the Customer Assistance section, you may be eligible to participate in the BBB AUTO LINE program.

The BBB AUTO LINE program consists of two parts — mediation and arbitration. During mediation, a representative of the BBB will contact both you and Ford Motor Company to explore options for settlement of the claim. If an agreement is not reached during mediation and your claim is eligible, you may participate in the arbitration process. An arbitration hearing will be scheduled so that you can present your case in an informal setting before an impartial person. The arbitrator will consider the testimony provided and make a decision after the hearing.

You are not bound by the decision, but should you choose to accept the BBB AUTO LINE decision, Ford must abide by the accepted decision as well. Disputes submitted to the BBB AUTO LINE program are usually decided within forty days after you file your claim with the BBB.

**BBB AUTO LINE Application:** Using the information provided below, please call or write to request a program application. You will be asked for your name and address, general information about your new vehicle, information about your warranty concerns, and any steps you have already taken to try to resolve them. A Customer Claim Form will be mailed that will need to be completed, signed, and returned to the BBB along with proof of ownership. Upon request, the BBB will review the claim for eligibility under Program Summary Guidelines.

**You can get more information by calling BBB AUTO LINE at 1-800-955-5100, or writing to:**

**BBB AUTO LINE**

**4200 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 800**

**Arlington, Virginia 22203-1833**

BBB AUTO LINE applications can also be requested by calling the Ford Motor Company Customer Relationship Center at 1-800-392-3673.

**Note:** Ford Motor Company reserves the right to change eligibility limitations, modify procedures, or to discontinue this process at any time without notice and without obligation.

## 11. State warranty enforcement laws

These state laws - sometimes called lemon laws - allow owners to receive a replacement vehicle or a refund of the purchase price, under certain circumstances. The laws vary from state to state.

To the extent your state law allows, Ford Motor Company requires that you first send us a written notification of any defects or non-conformities that you have experienced with your vehicle. (This will give us the opportunity to make any needed repairs before you pursue the remedies provided by your state's law.)

In all other states where not specifically required by state law, Ford Motor Company requests that you give us the written notice. Send your written notification to:

**Ford Motor Company  
Customer Relationship Center  
P.O. Box 6248  
Dearborn, MI 48126**

## 12. Important information about ambulance conversions

Ford vehicles are suitable for producing ambulances only if equipped with the **Ford Ambulance Prep Package**. In addition, Ford urges ambulance manufacturers to follow the recommendations of the **Ford Incomplete Vehicle Manual** and the **Ford Truck Body Builders Layout Book** (and pertinent supplements).

**Using a Ford vehicle without the Ford Ambulance Prep Package to produce an ambulance could result in elevated underbody temperatures, fuel overpressurization, and the risk of fuel expulsion and fires. Such use also voids the Ford Bumper to Bumper Warranty and may void the Emissions Warranties.**

You may determine whether the vehicle is equipped with the **Ford Ambulance Prep Package** by inspecting the information plate on the driver's rear door pillar.

You may determine whether the ambulance manufacturer has followed Ford's recommendations by contacting the ambulance manufacturer of your vehicle.

### 13. Important information about Ford limousine conversions

Ford Motor Company authorizes only Ford Qualified Vehicle Modifiers (QVM's) to perform Ford Expedition EL conversions. To obtain a list of QVM's, visit our website at [www.fleet.ford.com/limo](http://www.fleet.ford.com/limo) or call 1-800-34-FLEET. Expedition EL is suitable for limousine conversion only if equipped with the proper Ford Limousine Builder's Package. The wheelbase on the Expedition EL with the Limousine Builder's Package (17L) may NOT be extended beyond 140" (258.89 total wheelbase) or in a manner that results in a Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) exceeding 9,900 pounds.

If an Expedition EL Limousine is NOT equipped with the Limousine Builder's Package or it is equipped with the Limousine Builder's Package but its wheelbase is extended beyond its limitations or if its GVWR exceeds the weight limitations, then the New Vehicle Limited Warranty is voided, any Ford Extended Service Plan (ESP) contract is voided, applicable Emissions warranties may be voided, and the vehicle modifier may be considered the vehicle "manufacturer" for Emissions Warranty coverage purposes (including responsibilities for emissions, warranty, recall, and in-use compliance).

Any other Ford vehicle converted to a limousine will **void the New Vehicle Limited Warranty**.